Washington State
Department of Transportation

TECHNICAL MANUAL

Design Manual

Volume 1 – Procedures

M 22-01.06

December 2009

Division 1 – General Information
Division 2 – Hearings, Environmental, and Permits
Division 3 – Project Documentation
Division 4 – Surveying
Division 5 – Right of Way and Access Control
Division 6 – Soils and Paving
Division 7 – Structures
Division 8 – Hydraulics
Division 9 – Roadside Development
Division 10 – Traffic Safety Elements

Environmental and Engineering Programs
Design Office

Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Information

Materials can be provided in alternative formats: large print, Braille, cassette tape, or on computer disk for people with disabilities by calling the Office of Equal Opportunity (OEO) at 360-705-7097. Persons who are deaf or hard of hearing may contact OEO through the Washington Relay Service at 7-1-1.

Title VI Notice to Public

It is the Washington State Department of Transportation's (WSDOT) policy to assure that no person shall, on the grounds of race, color, national origin or sex, as provided by Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be otherwise discriminated against under any of its federally funded programs and activities. Any person who believes his/her Title VI protection has been violated, may file a complaint with WSDOT's Office of Equal Opportunity (OEO). For Title VI complaint forms and advice, please contact OEO's Title VI Coordinator at 360-705-7098 or 509-324-6018.

To get the latest information on WSDOT administrative and engineering manuals, sign up for e-mail updates for individual manuals at: www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals

Washington State Department of Transportation
Administrative and Engineering Publications
PO Box 47304
Olympia, WA 98504-7304

Phone: 360-705-7430
E-mail: engrpubs@wsdot.wa.gov
Internet: www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals

Foreword

The *Design Manual* is for use by Washington State Department of Transportation engineering personnel. It provides policies, procedures, and methods for developing and documenting the design of improvements to the transportation network in Washington. It has been developed for state facilities and may not be appropriate for all county roads or city streets that are not state highways.

The *Design Manual* supplements the engineering analyses and judgment that must be applied to Improvement and Preservation projects. It provides uniform procedures for documenting and implementing design decisions.

The Federal Highway Administration has agreed to approve designs that follow the guidance in the *Design Manual*; therefore, following the guidance is mandatory for state highway projects. When proposed designs meet the requirements contained in the *Design Manual,* little additional documentation is required.

The design environment changes rapidly, often without warning to the practitioner. To track every change, and to make improvements based upon each change, is not feasible. The intent of this manual is to provide recommended values for critical dimensions. Flexibility is permitted to encourage independent design tailored to individual situations. However, when flexibility is applied to a proposed design and the critical dimensions do not meet *Design Manual* criteria, additional documentation is required to record the decision-making process.

The addition of new or modified design criteria to the *Design Manual* through the revision process does not imply that existing features are deficient or inherently dangerous. Nor does it suggest or mandate immediate engineering review or the initiation of new projects.

The *Design Manual* emphasizes cost-effective, environmentally conscious, and context sensitive design. Designers are encouraged to view the highway corridor beyond the vehicular movement context, so guidance regarding the use of the highway corridor by transit, pedestrians, and bicyclists is included. To accommodate multimodal use, the criteria provided for one mode is to be appropriately adapted to individual locations.

The complexity of transportation design requires the designer to make fundamental trade-off decisions that balance competing considerations. Although this adds to the complexity of design, it acknowledges the unique needs of specific projects and the relative priorities of various projects and programs. Improvements must necessarily be designed and prioritized in light of finite transportation funding.

Updating the *Design Manual* is an ongoing process and revisions are issued regularly. Comments, questions, and improvement ideas are welcomed. Use the comment form on the following page or the online version at the Design Policy Internet Page: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/policy

/s/ Pasco Bakotich III

Pasco Bakotich III, P.E.
State Design Engineer

Comment Form

From:	______________________	Date:	______________
	______________________	Phone:	______________
	______________________		

To: WSDOT
Headquarters, Design Office
Mail Stop 47329
PO Box 47329
Olympia, WA 98504-7329

Subject: *Design Manual* Comment

Comment (marked copies attached):

Division 1 – General Information

Chapter 100 Manual Description
100.01 Purpose
100.02 Presentation and Revisions
100.03 Manual Applications
100.04 Manual Use
100.05 Manual Organization

Chapter 110 Design-Build Projects
110.01 General
110.02 References
110.03 Terminology and Language Used
110.04 Design and Documentation Responsibility

Chapter 120 Planning
120.01 General
120.02 References
120.03 Acronyms and Definitions
120.04 Legislation and Policy Development
120.05 Planning at WSDOT
120.06 Linking Transportation Plans
120.07 Linking WSDOT Planning to Programming

Chapter 130 Project Development Sequence
130.01 General
130.02 References
130.03 Definitions
130.04 Project Development Sequence

Division 2 – Hearings, Environmental, and Permits

Chapter 210 Public Involvement and Hearings
210.01 General
210.02 References
210.03 Definitions
210.04 Public Involvement
210.05 Public Hearings
210.06 Environmental Hearing
210.07 Corridor Hearing
210.08 Design Hearing
210.09 Limited Access Hearing
210.10 Combined Hearings
210.11 Administrative Appeal Hearing
210.12 Follow-Up Hearing
210.13 Documentation

Chapter 220 Project Environmental Documentation
220.01 General
220.02 References
220.03 Definitions/Acronyms
220.04 Determining the Environmental Documentation
220.05 Identifying the Project Classification
220.06 Environmental Impact Statements: Class I Projects
220.07 Categorical Exclusions: Class II Projects
220.08 Environmental Assessments: Class III Projects
220.09 Reevaluations
220.10 Commitment File
220.11 Documentation

Chapter 230 Environmental Permits and Approvals
230.01 General
230.02 Permits and Approvals
230.03 Project Types and Permits
230.04 Design Process and Permit Interaction

Division 3 – Project Documentation

Chapter 300 Design Documentation, Approval, and Process Review
300.01 General
300.02 References
300.03 Definitions
300.04 Design Documentation
300.05 Project Development
300.06 FHWA Approval
300.07 Design Approval
300.08 Project Development Approval
300.09 Process Review

Chapter 310 Value Engineering
310.01 General
310.02 References
310.03 Definitions
310.04 Procedure
310.05 Documentation

Chapter 320 Traffic Analysis
320.01 General
320.02 References
320.03 Design Year
320.04 Definitions
320.05 Travel Forecasting (Transportation Modeling)
320.06 Traffic Analysis
320.07 Scope of Traffic Impact Analysis
320.08 Traffic Data
320.09 Traffic Impact Analysis Methodologies
320.10 Traffic Analysis Software
320.11 Mitigation Measures
320.12 Traffic Impact Analysis Report

Division 4 – Surveying

Chapter 400 Surveying and Mapping
400.01 General
400.02 References
400.03 Procedures
400.04 Datums
400.05 Global Positioning System
400.06 WSDOT Survey Monument Database
400.07 Geographic Information System
400.08 Photogrammetric Surveys
400.09 Documentation

Chapter 410 Monumentation
410.01 General
410.02 References
410.03 Definitions
410.04 Control Monuments
410.05 Alignment Monuments
410.06 Property Corners
410.07 Other Monuments
410.08 Filing Requirements
410.09 Documentation

Division 5 – Right of Way and Access Control

Chapter 510 Right of Way Considerations
510.01 General
510.02 References
510.03 Special Features
510.04 Easements and Permits
510.05 Programming for Funds
510.06 Appraisal and Acquisition
510.07 Transactions
510.08 Documentation

Chapter 520 Access Control
520.01 General
520.02 References
520.03 Definitions
520.04 Vocabulary

Chapter 530 Limited Access Control
530.01 General
530.02 Achieving Limited Access
530.03 Full Control (Most Restrictive)
530.04 Partial Control
530.05 Modified Control (Least Restrictive)
530.06 Access Approaches
530.07 Frontage Roads
530.08 Turnbacks
530.09 Adjacent Railroads
530.10 Modifications to Limited Access Highways
530.11 Documentation

Chapter 540 Managed Access Control
540.01 General
540.02 References
540.03 Definitions
540.04 Design Considerations
540.05 Managed Access Highway Classes
540.06 Corner Clearance Criteria
540.07 Access Connection Categories
540.08 Access Connection Permit
540.09 Permitting and Design Documentation
540.10 Other Considerations
540.11 Preconstruction Conference
540.12 Adjudicative Proceedings
540.13 Documentation

Chapter 550 Interchange Justification Report
550.01 General
550.02 References
550.03 Definitions
550.04 Procedures
550.05 Interchange Justification Report and Supporting Analyses
550.06 Report Organization and Appendices
550.07 Updating an IJR
550.08 Documentation

Chapter 560 Fencing
560.01 General
560.02 References
560.03 Design Criteria
560.04 Fencing Types
560.05 Gates
560.06 Procedure
560.07 Documentation

Division 6 – Soils and Paving

Chapter 610 Investigation of Soils, Rock, and Surfacing Materials
610.01 General
610.02 References
610.03 Materials Sources
610.04 Geotechnical Investigation, Design, and Reporting
610.05 Use of Geotechnical Consultants
610.06 Geotechnical Work by Others
610.07 Surfacing Report
610.08 Documentation

Chapter 620 Design of Pavement Structure
620.01 General
620.02 Estimating Tables

Chapter 630 Geosynthetics
630.01 General
630.02 References
630.03 Geosynthetic Types and Characteristics
630.04 Geosynthetic Function Definitions and Applications
630.05 Design Approach for Geosynthetics
630.06 Design Responsibility
630.07 Documentation

Division 7 – Structures

Chapter 700 Project Development Roles and Responsibilities for Projects With Structures
700.01 General
700.02 Procedures

Chapter 710 Site Data for Structures
710.01 General
710.02 References
710.03 Required Data for All Structures
710.04 Additional Data for Waterway Crossings
710.05 Additional Data for Grade Separations
710.06 Additional Data for Widenings
710.07 Documentation

Chapter 720 Bridges
720.01 General
720.02 References
720.03 Bridge Locations
720.04 Bridge Site Design Elements
720.05 Documentation

Chapter 730 Retaining Walls and Steep Reinforced Slopes
730.01 General
730.02 References
730.03 Design Principles
730.04 Design Requirements
730.05 Guidelines for Wall/Slope Selection
730.06 Design Responsibility and Process
730.07 Documentation

Chapter 740 Noise Barriers
740.01 General
740.02 References
740.03 Design
740.04 Procedures
740.05 Documentation

Division 8 – Hydraulics

Chapter 800 Hydraulic Design
800.01 General
800.02 References
800.03 Hydraulic Considerations
800.04 Safety Considerations
800.05 Design Responsibility
800.06 Documentation

Division 9 – Roadside Development

Chapter 900 Roadside Development
900.01 General
900.02 References
900.03 Legal Requirements
900.04 Roadside Classification Plan
900.05 Roadside Manual
900.06 Project Development
900.07 Documentation

Chapter 910 Contour Grading
910.01 General
910.02 References
910.03 Procedures
910.04 Recommendations
910.05 Documentation

Chapter 920 Vegetation
920.01 General
920.02 References
920.03 Discussion
920.04 Design Guidelines
920.05 Documentation

Chapter 930 Irrigation
930.01 General
930.02 References
930.03 Design Considerations
930.04 Documentation

Chapter 940 Soil Bioengineering
940.01 General
940.02 References
940.03 Uses for Soil Bioengineering
940.04 Design Responsibilities and Considerations
940.05 Documentation

Chapter 950 Public Art
950.01 General
950.02 References
950.03 Definitions
950.04 Standard Architectural Design
950.05 Criteria for Public Art
950.06 Process and Project Delivery Timing
950.07 Approvals
950.08 Documentation

Division 10 – Traffic Safety Elements

Chapter 1010 Work Zone Safety and Mobility
1010.01 General
1010.02 References
1010.03 Definitions
1010.04 Work Zone Safety and Mobility
1010.05 Transportation Management Plans and Significant Projects
1010.06 Work Zone TMP Strategy Development
1010.07 Capacity Analysis
1010.08 Work Zone Design Standards
1010.09 Temporary Traffic Control Devices
1010.10 Other Traffic Control Devices or Features
1010.11 Traffic Control Plan Development and PS&E
1010.12 Training and Resources
1010.13 Documentation

Chapter 1020 Signing
1020.01 General
1020.02 References
1020.03 Design Components
1020.04 Overhead Installation
1020.05 State Highway Route Numbers
1020.06 Mileposts
1020.07 Guide Sign Plan
1020.08 Documentation

Chapter 1030 Delineation
1030.01 General
1030.02 References
1030.03 Definitions
1030.04 Pavement Markings
1030.05 Guideposts
1030.06 Barrier Delineation
1030.07 Object Markers
1030.08 Wildlife Warning Reflectors
1030.09 Documentation

Chapter 1040 Illumination
1040.01 General
1040.02 References
1040.03 Definitions
1040.04 Design Considerations
1040.05 Required Illumination
1040.06 Additional Illumination
1040.07 Design Criteria
1040.08 Documentation

Chapter 1050 Intelligent Transportation Systems
1050.01 General
1050.02 References
1050.03 Traffic Data Collection
1050.04 Traffic Flow Control
1050.05 Motorist Information
1050.06 Systems Engineering
1050.07 Documentation

Division 11 – Project Design Criteria

Chapter 1100 Design Matrix Procedures
1100.01 General
1100.02 Selecting a Design Matrix
1100.03 Using a Design Matrix

Chapter 1110 Minor Operational Enhancement Projects
1110.01 General
1110.02 References
1110.03 Definitions
1110.04 Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix Procedures
1110.05 Selecting a Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix
1110.06 Project Type
1110.07 Using a Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix
1110.08 Project Approval
1110.09 Documentation

Chapter 1120 Basic Design Level
1120.01 General
1120.02 Basic Safety
1120.03 Minor Safety and Minor Preservation Work
1120.04 Documentation

Chapter 1130 Modified Design Level
1130.01 General
1130.02 Design Speed
1130.03 Alignment
1130.04 Roadway Widths
1130.05 Cross Slopes
1130.06 Sideslopes
1130.07 Bike and Pedestrian
1130.08 Bridges
1130.09 Intersections
1130.10 Documentation

Chapter 1140 Full Design Level
1140.01 General
1140.02 References
1140.03 Definitions
1140.04 Functional Classification
1140.05 Terrain Classification
1140.06 Geometric Design Data
1140.07 Design Speed
1140.08 Traffic Lanes
1140.09 Shoulders
1140.10 Medians
1140.11 Curbs
1140.12 Parking
1140.13 Pavement Type
1140.14 Structure Width
1140.15 Right of Way Width

1140.16 Grades
1140.17 Fencing
1140.18 Documentation

Division 12 – Geometrics

Chapter 1210 Geometric Plan Elements
1210.01 General
1210.02 References
1210.03 Definitions
1210.04 Horizontal Alignment
1210.05 Distribution Facilities
1210.06 Number of Lanes and Arrangement
1210.07 Pavement Transitions
1210.08 Procedures
1210.09 Documentation

Chapter 1220 Geometric Profile Elements
1220.01 General
1220.02 References
1220.03 Vertical Alignment
1220.04 Coordination of Vertical and Horizontal Alignments
1220.05 Airport Clearance
1220.06 Railroad Crossings
1220.07 Procedures
1220.08 Documentation

Chapter 1230 Geometric Cross Section
1230.01 General
1230.02 References
1230.03 Definitions
1230.04 Roadways
1230.05 Medians and Outer Separations
1230.06 Roadsides
1230.07 Roadway Sections
1230.08 Documentation

Chapter 1240 Turning Roadways
1240.01 General
1240.02 References
1240.03 Definitions
1240.04 Turning Roadway Widths
1240.05 Documentation

Chapter 1250 Superelevation
1250.01 General
1250.02 References
1250.03 Definitions
1250.04 Superelevation Rate Selection
1250.05 Existing Curves
1250.06 Turning Movements at Intersections
1250.07 Runoff for Highway Curves
1250.08 Runoff for Ramp Curves
1250.09 Documentation

Chapter 1260 Sight Distance
1260.01 General
1260.02 References
1260.03 Definitions
1260.04 Stopping Sight Distance
1260.05 Passing Sight Distance
1260.06 Decision Sight Distance
1260.07 Documentation

Chapter 1270 Auxiliary Lanes
1270.01 General
1270.02 References
1270.03 Definitions
1270.04 Climbing Lanes
1270.05 Passing Lanes
1270.06 Slow-Moving Vehicle Turnouts
1270.07 Shoulder Driving for Slow Vehicles
1270.08 Emergency Escape Ramps
1270.09 Chain-Up and Chain-Off Areas
1270.10 Documentation

Division 13 – Intersections and Interchanges

Chapter 1310 Intersections at Grade
1310.01 General
1310.02 References
1310.03 Definitions
1310.04 Intersection Configurations
1310.05 Design Considerations
1310.06 Design Vehicle Selection
1310.07 Design Elements
1310.08 U-Turns
1310.09 Intersection Sight Distance
1310.10 Traffic Control at Intersections
1310.11 Signing and Pavement Marking
1310.12 Procedures
1310.13 Documentation

Chapter 1320 Roundabouts
1320.01 General
1320.02 References
1320.03 Definitions
1320.04 Roundabout Types
1320.05 Capacity Analysis
1320.06 Geometric Design
1320.07 Pedestrians
1320.08 Bicycles
1320.09 Signing and Pavement Marking
1320.10 Illumination
1320.11 Access, Parking, and Transit Facilities
1320.12 Design Procedures
1320.13 Documentation

Chapter 1330 Traffic Control Signals
1330.01 General
1330.02 References
1330.03 Definitions
1330.04 Procedures
1330.05 Signal Warrants
1330.06 Conventional Traffic Signal Design
1330.07 Documentation

Chapter 1340 Road Approaches
1340.01 General
1340.02 References
1340.03 Definitions
1340.04 Design Considerations
1340.05 Road Approach Design Template
1340.06 Sight Distance
1340.07 Road Approach Location
1340.08 Drainage
1340.09 Procedures
1340.10 Documentation

Chapter 1350 Railroad Grade Crossings
1350.01 General
1350.02 References
1350.03 Plans
1350.04 Traffic Control Systems
1350.05 Pullout Lanes
1350.06 Crossing Surfaces
1350.07 Crossing Closure
1350.08 Traffic Control During Construction and Maintenance
1350.09 Railroad Grade Crossing Petitions and WUTC Orders
1350.10 Grade Crossing Improvement Projects
1350.11 Light Rail
1350.12 Documentation

Chapter 1360 Interchanges
1360.01 General
1360.02 References
1360.03 Definitions
1360.04 Interchange Design
1360.05 Ramps
1360.06 Interchange Connections
1360.07 Ramp Terminal Intersections at Crossroads
1360.08 Interchanges on Two-Lane Highways
1360.09 Interchange Plans for Approval
1360.10 Documentation

Chapter 1370 Median Crossovers
1370.01 General
1370.02 Analysis
1370.03 Design
1370.04 Approval
1370.05 Documentation

Division 14 – HOV and Transit

Chapter 1410 High-Occupancy Vehicle Facilities
1410.01 General
1410.02 References
1410.03 Definitions
1410.04 Preliminary Design and Planning
1410.05 Operations
1410.06 Design Criteria
1410.07 Documentation

Chapter 1420 HOV Direct Access
1420.01 General
1420.02 References
1420.03 Definitions
1420.04 HOV Access Types and Locations
1420.05 Direct Access Geometrics
1420.06 Passenger Access
1420.07 Traffic Design Elements
1420.08 Documentation

Chapter 1430 Transit Facilities
1430.01 General
1430.02 References
1430.03 Definitions
1430.04 Park & Ride Lots
1430.05 Transfer/Transit Centers
1430.06 Bus Stops and Pullouts
1430.07 Passenger Amenities
1430.08 Roadway Design and Design Vehicle Characteristics
1430.09 Intersection Radii
1430.10 Universal Access
1430.11 Documentation

Division 15 – Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities

Chapter 1510 Pedestrian Facilities
1510.01 General
1510.02 References
1510.03 Definitions
1510.04 Policy
1510.05 Pedestrian Facility Design
1510.06 Pedestrian Facility Design: Structures
1510.07 Other Pedestrian Facilities
1510.08 Illumination and Signing
1510.09 Work Zone Pedestrian Considerations
1510.10 Documentation

Chapter 1520 Bicycle Facilities
1520.01 General
1520.02 References
1520.03 Definitions
1520.04 Facility Selection
1520.05 Project Requirements
1520.06 Shared-Use Path Design
1520.07 Bike Lane Design

1520.08 Shared Roadway Design
1520.09 Signed Shared Roadway
1520.10 Documentation

Division 16 – Roadside Safety Elements

Chapter 1600 Roadside Safety
1600.01 General
1600.02 References
1600.03 Definitions
1600.04 Clear Zone
1600.05 Features to Be Considered for Mitigation
1600.06 Median Considerations
1600.07 Other Roadside Safety Features
1600.08 Documentation

Chapter 1610 Traffic Barriers
1610.01 General
1610.02 References
1610.03 Definitions
1610.04 Project Criteria
1610.05 Barrier Design
1610.06 Beam Guardrail
1610.07 Cable Barrier
1610.08 Concrete Barrier
1610.09 Special-Use Barriers
1610.10 Bridge Traffic Barriers
1610.11 Other Barriers
1610.12 Documentation

Chapter 1620 Impact Attenuator Systems
1620.01 General
1620.02 Design Criteria
1620.03 Selection
1620.04 Documentation

Division 17 – Roadside Facilities

Chapter 1710 Safety Rest Areas and Traveler Services
1710.01 General
1710.02 References
1710.03 Documentation

Chapter 1720 Weigh Sites
1720.01 General
1720.02 Definitions
1720.03 Planning, Development, and Responsibilities
1720.04 Permanent Facilities
1720.05 Portable Facilities
1720.06 Shoulder Sites
1720.07 Federal Participation
1720.08 Procedures
1720.09 Documentation

Volume 1 – Procedures Exhibits

Exhibit 110-1	Design Documentation Sequence for a Typical Design-Build Project
Exhibit 120-1	Relationship Between Transportation Plans and Planning Organizations
Exhibit 120-2	Transportation Improvement Programs
Exhibit 120-3	Linking Planning and Programming
Exhibit 130-1	Program Elements: Highway Preservation
Exhibit 130-2	Program Elements: Highway Improvement
Exhibit 130-3	Highway System Plan Implementation
Exhibit 210-1	Types of Public Hearings
Exhibit 210-2	Public Hearing Formats
Exhibit 210-3	Prehearing Packet Checklist
Exhibit 210-4	Sequence for Corridor, Design, and Environmental Hearings
Exhibit 210-5	Sequence for Limited Access Hearing
Exhibit 210-6	Hearing Summary Approvals
Exhibit 230-1	Project Environmental Matrix 1: Permit Probabilities for Interstate Routes (Main Line)
Exhibit 230-2	Project Environmental Matrix 2: Permit Probabilities for Interstate Interchange Areas
Exhibit 230-3	Project Environmental Matrix 3: Permit Probabilities for NHS Routes, Non-Interstate (Main Line)
Exhibit 230-4	Project Environmental Matrix 4: Permit Probabilities for Interchange Areas, NHS (Except Interstate), and Non-NHS
Exhibit 230-5	Project Environmental Matrix 5: Non-NHS Routes (Main Line)
Exhibit 230-6	Endnotes for Project Environmental Matrices
Exhibit 230-7	Environmental Interrelationship: HMA/PCCP/BST Main Line Overlay
Exhibit 230-8	Environmental Interrelationship: Safety Corridor Channelization Main Line
Exhibit 300-1	Design Matrix Documentation Requirements
Exhibit 300-2	Design Approval Level
Exhibit 300-3	Approvals
Exhibit 300-4	PS&E Process Approvals
Exhibit 300-5	Common Components of Design Documentation Package
Exhibit 300-6	Evaluate Upgrade (EU) Documentation Contents List
Exhibit 300-7	Deviation Request and Project Analysis Contents List
Exhibit 300-8	Design to Construction Transition Project Turnover Checklist Example
Exhibit 310-1	Seven-Phase Job Plan for VE Studies
Exhibit 310-2	VE Study Team Tools
Exhibit 320-1	Measures of Effectiveness by Facility Type
Exhibit 400-1	Interagency Agreement
Exhibit 400-2	Report of Survey Mark Example
Exhibit 410-1	Monument Documentation Summary

Exhibit 410-2	DNR Permit Application
Exhibit 410-3	DNR Completion Report Form
Exhibit 410-4	Land Corner Record
Exhibit 510-1	Appraisal and Acquisition
Exhibit 520-1	Access Control Vocabulary
Exhibit 530-1a	Full Access Control Limits: Interchange
Exhibit 530-1b	Full Access Control Limits: Interchange
Exhibit 530-1c	Full Access Control Limits: Interchange With Roundabouts
Exhibit 530-1d	Full Access Control Limits: Ramp Terminal With Transition Taper
Exhibit 530-1e	Full Access Control Limits: Single Point Urban Interchange
Exhibit 530-2a	Partial Access Control Limits: At-Grade Intersections
Exhibit 530-2b	Partial Access Control Limits: Roundabout Intersections
Exhibit 530-3a	Modified Access Control Limits: Roundabout Intersections
Exhibit 530-3b	Modified Access Control Limits: Intersections
Exhibit 540-1	Minimum Corner Clearance: Distance From Access Connection to Public Road or Street
Exhibit 540-2	Managed Access Highway Class Description
Exhibit 550-1	Interstate Routes: Interchange Justification Report Content and Review Levels
Exhibit 550-2	Non-Interstate Routes: IJR Content and Review Levels
Exhibit 550-3	Interstate IJR: Process Flow Chart
Exhibit 550-4	Non-Interstate IJR: Process Flow Chart
Exhibit 550-5	IJR: Stamped Cover Sheet Example
Exhibit 610-1	Materials Source Development
Exhibit 620-1	Estimating: Miscellaneous Tables
Exhibit 620-2a	Estimating: Hot Mix Asphalt Pavement and Asphalt Distribution Tables
Exhibit 620-2b	Estimating: Asphalt Distribution Tables
Exhibit 620-3	Estimating: Bituminous Surface Treatment
Exhibit 620-4	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Typical Section Formulae and Example
Exhibit 620-5a	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5b	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5c	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5d	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5e	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5f	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5g	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5h	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 630-1	Selection Criteria for Geotextile Class
Exhibit 630-2	Maximum Sheet Flow Lengths for Silt Fences
Exhibit 630-3	Maximum Contributing Area for Ditch and Swale Applications
Exhibit 630-4	Design Process for Drainage and Erosion Control: Geotextiles and Nonstandard Applications
Exhibit 630-5	Design Process for Separation, Soil Stabilization, and Silt Fence
Exhibit 630-6	Examples of Various Geosynthetics

Exhibit 630-7	Geotextile Application Examples
Exhibit 630-8	Definition of Slope Length
Exhibit 630-9	Definition of Ditch or Swale Storage Length and Width
Exhibit 630-10	Silt Fences for Large Contributing Area
Exhibit 630-11	Silt Fence End Treatment
Exhibit 630-12	Gravel Check Dams for Silt Fences
Exhibit 700-1	Determination of the Roles and Responsibilities for Projects With Structures: Project Development Phase
Exhibit 710-1	Bridge Site Plan Scales
Exhibit 710-2	Bridge Site Data Checklist
Exhibit 720-1	Bridge Vertical Clearances
Exhibit 720-2	Highway Structure Over Railroad
Exhibit 720-3	Embankment Slope at Bridge Ends
Exhibit 730-1	Summary of Mechanically Stabilized Earth (MSE) Gravity Wall/Slope Options Available
Exhibit 730-2	Summary of Prefabricated Modular Gravity Wall Options Available
Exhibit 730-3	Summary of Rigid Gravity and Semigravity Wall Options Available
Exhibit 730-4	Summary of Nongravity Wall Options Available
Exhibit 730-5	Summary of Anchored Wall Options Available
Exhibit 730-6	Other Wall/Slope Options Available
Exhibit 730-7	Typical Mechanically Stabilized Earth Gravity Walls
Exhibit 730-8	Typical Prefabricated Modular Gravity Walls
Exhibit 730-9	Typical Rigid Gravity, Semigravity Cantilever, Nongravity Cantilever, and Anchored Walls
Exhibit 730-10	Typical Rockery and Reinforced Slopes
Exhibit 730-11	MSE Wall Drainage Detail
Exhibit 730-12	Retaining Walls With Traffic Barriers
Exhibit 730-13a	Retaining Wall Design Process
Exhibit 730-13b	Retaining Wall Design Process: Proprietary
Exhibit 740-1	Standard Noise Wall Types
Exhibit 900-1	Funding Source Determines Extent of Restoration
Exhibit 940-1	Soil Bioengineering Design
Exhibit 1010-1	General Lane Closure Work Zone Capacity
Exhibit 1010-2	Minimum Work Zone Clear Zone Distance
Exhibit 1010-3	Transportation Management Plan Components Checklist
Exhibit 1010-4	Abrupt Edge Pavement Drop-Off Protection
Exhibit 1020-1	Reflective Sheeting Requirements for Overhead Signs
Exhibit 1020-2	Timber Posts
Exhibit 1020-3	Wide Flange Steel Posts
Exhibit 1020-4	Laminated Wood Box Posts
Exhibit 1030-1	Pavement Marking Material Guide
Exhibit 1030-2	Guidepost Placement
Exhibit 1040-1a	Freeway Lighting Applications

Exhibit 1040-1b	Freeway Lighting Applications
Exhibit 1040-1c	Freeway Lighting Applications
Exhibit 1040-2	Freeway Ramp Terminals
Exhibit 1040-3	Ramp With Meter
Exhibit 1040-4	Freeway-to-Freeway Connection
Exhibit 1040-5	HOT (High-Occupancy Toll) Lane Enter/Exit Zone
Exhibit 1040-6	Lane Reduction
Exhibit 1040-7	Add Lane
Exhibit 1040-8a	Intersection With Left-Turn Channelization: Divided Highway
Exhibit 1040-8b	Intersections With Left-Turn Channelization
Exhibit 1040-9	Intersections With Drop Lane/Right-Turn Lane Channelization
Exhibit 1040-10	Intersections With Traffic Signals
Exhibit 1040-11	Intersection Without Channelization
Exhibit 1040-12	Roundabout
Exhibit 1040-13	Railroad Crossing With Gates or Signals
Exhibit 1040-14	Midblock Pedestrian Crossing
Exhibit 1040-15	Transit Flyer Stop
Exhibit 1040-16	Major Parking Lot
Exhibit 1040-17	Minor Parking Lot
Exhibit 1040-18	Truck Weigh Site
Exhibit 1040-19	Safety Rest Area
Exhibit 1040-20	Chain-Up/Chain-Off Parking Area
Exhibit 1040-21	Tunnel
Exhibit 1040-22	Bridge Inspection Lighting System
Exhibit 1040-23	Traffic Split Around an Obstruction
Exhibit 1040-24	Construction Work Zone and Detour
Exhibit 1040-25	Light Levels and Uniformity Ratios
Exhibit 1050-1	Systems Engineering “V” Diagram
Exhibit 1050-2a	ITS Project Systems Engineering Review Form
Exhibit 1050-2b	ITS Project Systems Engineering Review Form Instructions

Exhibit 1100-1	Design Matrix Selection Guide
Exhibit 1100-2	Sites With Potential for Improvement
Exhibit 1100-3	NHS Highways in Washington
Exhibit 1100-4	Design Matrix 1: Interstate Routes (Main Line)
Exhibit 1100-5	Design Matrix 2: Interstate Interchange Areas
Exhibit 1100-6	Design Matrix 3: Main Line NHS Routes (Except Interstate)
Exhibit 1100-7	Design Matrix 4: Interchange Areas, NHS (Except Interstate), and Non-NHS
Exhibit 1100-8	Design Matrix 5: Main Line Non-NHS Routes
Exhibit 1110-1	Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix Selection Guide
Exhibit 1110-2	Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix 1: Interstate and NHS Freeway Routes
Exhibit 1110-3	Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix 2: NHS Nonfreeway Routes
Exhibit 1110-4	Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix 3: Non-NHS Routes
Exhibit 1110-5	Q Project Design Summary/Approval Template
Exhibit 1110-6	Refuge Lane for T-Intersections on Two-Lane Highways
Exhibit 1130-1	Desirable Design Speed
Exhibit 1130-2	Stopping Sight Distance: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-3	Minimum Crest Vertical Curve Length: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-4	Minimum Superelevation: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-5	Side Friction Factor
Exhibit 1130-6	One-Way Roadway and Ramp Turning Roadway Widths: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-7	Design Vehicles: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-8	Evaluation for Stopping Sight Distance for Crest Vertical Curves: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-9a	Evaluation for Stopping Sight Distance for Horizontal Curves: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-9b	Evaluation for Stopping Sight Distance Obstruction for Horizontal Curves: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-10	Multilane Highways and Bridges: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-11	Two-Lane Highways and Bridges: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-12a	Minimum Total Roadway Widths for Two-Lane Two-Way Highway Curves: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-12b	Minimum Total Roadway Widths for Two-Lane Two-Way Highway Curves: Modified Design Level, Based on the Delta Angle
Exhibit 1130-13	Main Line Roadway Sections: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-14	Ramp Roadway Sections: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1140-1	Desirable Design Speed
Exhibit 1140-2	Minimum Shoulder Width
Exhibit 1140-3	Shoulder Width for Curbed Sections in Urban Areas
Exhibit 1140-4	Median Width

Exhibit 1140-5	Geometric Design Data: Interstate
Exhibit 1140-6	Geometric Design Data: Principal Arterial
Exhibit 1140-7	Geometric Design Data: Minor Arterial
Exhibit 1140-8	Geometric Design Data: Collector
Exhibit 1140-9	Geometric Design Data: Urban Managed Access Highways
Exhibit 1210-1	Maximum Angle Without Curve
Exhibit 1210-2a	Alignment Examples
Exhibit 1210-2b	Alignment Examples
Exhibit 1210-2c	Alignment Examples
Exhibit 1220-1	Grade Length
Exhibit 1220-2a	Coordination of Horizontal and Vertical Alignments
Exhibit 1220-2b	Coordination of Horizontal and Vertical Alignments
Exhibit 1220-2c	Coordination of Horizontal and Vertical Alignments
Exhibit 1220-3	Grading at Railroad Crossings
Exhibit 1230-1	Divided Highway Roadway Sections
Exhibit 1230-2	Undivided Multilane Highway Roadway Sections
Exhibit 1230-3	Two-Lane Highway Roadway Sections
Exhibit 1230-4a	Ramp Roadway Sections
Exhibit 1230-4b	Ramp Roadway Sections
Exhibit 1230-5a	Shoulder Details
Exhibit 1230-5b	Shoulder Details
Exhibit 1230-6a	Divided Highway Median Sections
Exhibit 1230-6b	Divided Highway Median Sections
Exhibit 1230-6c	Divided Highway Median Sections
Exhibit 1230-7a	Roadway Sections in Rock Cuts: Design A
Exhibit 1230-7b	Roadway Sections in Rock Cuts: Design B
Exhibit 1230-8	Roadway Sections With Stepped Slopes
Exhibit 1230-9a	Bridge End Slopes
Exhibit 1230-9b	Bridge End Slopes
Exhibit 1240-1a	Traveled Way Width for Two-Lane Two-Way Turning Roadways
Exhibit 1240-1b	Traveled Way Width for Two-Lane Two-Way Turning Roadways: Based on the Delta Angle
Exhibit 1240-2a	Traveled Way Width for Two-Lane One-Way Turning Roadways
Exhibit 1240-2b	Traveled Way Width for Two-Lane One-Way Turning Roadways: Based on the Delta Angle
Exhibit 1240-3a	Traveled Way Width for One-Lane Turning Roadways
Exhibit 1240-3b	Traveled Way Width for One-Lane Turning Roadways: Based on the Delta Angle, Radius on Outside Edge of Traveled Way
Exhibit 1240-3c	Traveled Way Width for One-Lane Turning Roadways: Based on the Delta Angle, Radius on Inside Edge of Traveled Way
Exhibit 1250-1	Minimum Radius for Normal Crown Section
Exhibit 1250-2	Minimum Radius for Existing Curves
Exhibit 1250-3	Side Friction Factor

Exhibit 1250-4a	Superelevation Rates (10% Max)
Exhibit 1250-4b	Superelevation Rates (8% Max)
Exhibit 1250-4c	Superelevation Rates (6% Max)
Exhibit 1250-5	Superelevation Rates for Intersections and Low-Speed Urban Roadways
Exhibit 1250-6a	Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-6b	Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-6c	Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-6d	Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-6e	Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-7a	Superelevation Transitions for Ramp Curves
Exhibit 1250-7b	Superelevation Transitions for Ramp Curves
Exhibit 1260-1	Design Stopping Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-2	Stopping Sight Distance: Design Criteria Selection
Exhibit 1260-3	Design Stopping Sight Distance on Grades
Exhibit 1260-4	Stopping Sight Distance on Grades
Exhibit 1260-5	Stopping Sight Distance: Crest Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1260-6	Sight Distance: Crest Vertical Curve
Exhibit 1260-7	Stopping Sight: Distance for Sag Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1260-8	Sight Distance: Sag Vertical Curve
Exhibit 1260-9	Sight Distance Area on Horizontal Curves
Exhibit 1260-10	Horizontal Stopping Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-11	Sight Distance: Horizontal Curves
Exhibit 1260-12	Stopping Sight Distance: Overlapping Horizontal and Crest Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1260-13	Existing Stopping Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-14	Passing Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-15	Passing Sight Distance: Crest Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1260-16	Decision Sight Distance
Exhibit 1270-1	Climbing Lane Example
Exhibit 1270-2a	Speed Reduction Warrant: Performance for Trucks
Exhibit 1270-2b	Speed Reduction Warrant Example
Exhibit 1270-3	Auxiliary Climbing Lane
Exhibit 1270-4	Passing Lane Example
Exhibit 1270-5	Length of Passing Lanes
Exhibit 1270-6	Passing Lane Configurations
Exhibit 1270-7	Buffer Between Opposing Passing Lanes
Exhibit 1270-8	Auxiliary Passing Lane
Exhibit 1270-9	Slow-Moving Vehicle Turnout
Exhibit 1270-10	Emergency Escape Ramp Example
Exhibit 1270-11	Emergency Escape Ramp Length
Exhibit 1270-12	Rolling Resistance (R)
Exhibit 1270-13	Typical Emergency Escape Ramp
Exhibit 1270-14	Chain Up/Chain Off Area

Exhibit 1310-1	Intersection Area
Exhibit 1310-2a	Indirect Left Turns: Signalized Intersections
Exhibit 1310-2b	Indirect Left Turns: Unsignalized Intersections
Exhibit 1310-3	Split Tee Intersections
Exhibit 1310-4	Split Intersections
Exhibit 1310-5	Design Vehicle Types
Exhibit 1310-6	Minimum Intersection Design Vehicle
Exhibit 1310-7	Left-Turn Storage With Trucks (ft)
Exhibit 1310-8	U-Turn Spacing
Exhibit 1310-9	U-Turn Roadway
Exhibit 1310-10	Interchange Ramp Terminal Details
Exhibit 1310-11	Right-Turn Corner
Exhibit 1310-12a	Left-Turn Storage Guidelines: Two-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-12b	Left-Turn Storage Guidelines: Four-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-13a	Left-Turn Storage Length: Two-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-13b	Left-Turn Storage Length: Two-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-13c	Left-Turn Storage Length: Two-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-14a	Median Channelization: Widening
Exhibit 1310-14b	Median Channelization: Median Width 11 ft or More
Exhibit 1310-14c	Median Channelization: Median Width 23 ft to 26 ft
Exhibit 1310-14d	Median Channelization: Median Width of More Than 26 ft
Exhibit 1310-14e	Median Channelization: Minimum Protected Storage
Exhibit 1310-14f	Median Channelization: Two-Way Left-Turn Lane
Exhibit 1310-15	Right-Turn Lane Guidelines
Exhibit 1310-16	Right-Turn Pocket and Right-Turn Taper
Exhibit 1310-17	Right-Turn Lane
Exhibit 1310-18	Acceleration Lane
Exhibit 1310-19a	Traffic Island Designs
Exhibit 1310-19b	Traffic Island Designs: Compound Curve
Exhibit 1310-19c	Traffic Island Designs
Exhibit 1310-20a	Turning Path Template
Exhibit 1310-20b	Turning Path Template
Exhibit 1310-20c	Turning Path Template
Exhibit 1310-21	U-Turn Median Openings
Exhibit 1310-22a	Sight Distance at Intersections
Exhibit 1310-22b	Sight Distance at Intersections
Exhibit 1320-1	Roundabout Elements
Exhibit 1320-2	Entry Angle
Exhibit 1320-3	Turning Radius (R)
Exhibit 1320-4	Mini Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-5	Single-Lane Roundabout

Exhibit 1320-6a	Multilane Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-6b	Multilane Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-6c	Multilane Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-7a	Teardrop Roundabout at Ramp Terminals
Exhibit 1320-7b	Double Teardrop
Exhibit 1320-7c	Teardrop Roundabout With Ramps
Exhibit 1320-8	Initial Ranges
Exhibit 1320-9	Speed vs. Radius
Exhibit 1320-10	Approach Leg Alignment
Exhibit 1320-11	Circulating Roadway Slope
Exhibit 1320-12	Speed vs. Intersection Sight Distance
Exhibit 1320-13a	Design Iteration Steps
Exhibit 1320-13b	Design Iteration Steps
Exhibit 1320-14a	Truck Turning Paths
Exhibit 1320-14b	Truck Turning Paths
Exhibit 1320-15a	Fastest Path Radii
Exhibit 1320-15b	Fastest Path Radii
Exhibit 1320-15c	Fastest Path Radii
Exhibit 1320-16	Consecutive Radii
Exhibit 1320-17	Coinciding Radii and Conflict Points
Exhibit 1320-18	Entry Design Path
Exhibit 1320-19	Entry and Exit Curves
Exhibit 1320-20	Central Island and Cross Section
Exhibit 1320-21	Approach Stopping Sight Distance to Crosswalk
Exhibit 1320-22	Stopping Sight Distance on Circulatory Roadway
Exhibit 1320-23	Exit Stopping Sight Distance to Crosswalk
Exhibit 1320-24	Intersection Sight Distance
Exhibit 1320-25	Landscaping Height Restrictions for Intersection Sight Distance
Exhibit 1320-26	Right-Turn Slip Lane Termination
Exhibit 1320-27	Add and Drop Lanes
Exhibit 1320-28	Railroad Gate Configuration
Exhibit 1320-29	Bicycle Lanes
Exhibit 1320-30	Roundabout Signing
Exhibit 1320-31	Roundabout Striping and Pavement Marking
Exhibit 1320-32	Roundabout Illumination
Exhibit 1320-33a	Multiple Access Circulation
Exhibit 1320-33b	Multiple Access Circulation
Exhibit 1330-1	Responsibility for Facilities
Exhibit 1330-2	Standard Intersection Movements and Head Numbers
Exhibit 1330-3	Phase Diagrams: Four-Way Intersections
Exhibit 1330-4	Left-Turn Lane Configuration Examples
Exhibit 1330-5	Examples of Acceptable Barriers Closing Pedestrian Crossings

Exhibit 1330-6a	Pedestrian Push Button Locations
Exhibit 1330-6b	Pedestrian Push Button Locations
Exhibit 1330-7	Decision Zone Loop Placement
Exhibit 1330-8	Loop Numbering Layout
Exhibit 1330-9	Signal Display Maximum Heights
Exhibit 1330-10	Signal Display Areas
Exhibit 1330-11a	Strain Pole and Foundation Selection Procedure
Exhibit 1330-11b	Strain Pole and Foundation Selection Procedure
Exhibit 1330-12	Strain Pole and Foundation Selection Example
Exhibit 1330-13	Conduit and Conductor Sizes
Exhibit 1330-14a	Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14b	Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14c	Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14d	Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14e	Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14f	Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-15	Strain Pole and Foundation Selection Example
Exhibit 1330-16	Conduit and Conductor Sizes
Exhibit 1340-1	Road Approach Design Templates
Exhibit 1340-2	Road Approach Access Category
Exhibit 1340-3	Road Approach Design Template A1
Exhibit 1340-4	Road Approach Design Templates B1 and C1
Exhibit 1340-5	Road Approach Design Template D1
Exhibit 1340-6	Road Approach Sight Distance
Exhibit 1350-1	Sight Distance at Railroad Crossing
Exhibit 1350-2	Typical Pullout Lane at Railroad Crossing
Exhibit 1360-1	Basic Interchange Patterns
Exhibit 1360-2	Interchange Spacing
Exhibit 1360-3	Minimum Ramp Connection Spacing
Exhibit 1360-4	Ramp Design Speed
Exhibit 1360-5	Maximum Ramp Grade
Exhibit 1360-6	Ramp Widths
Exhibit 1360-7a	Lane Balance
Exhibit 1360-7b	Lane Balance
Exhibit 1360-8	Main Line Lane Reduction Alternatives
Exhibit 1360-9	Acceleration Lane Length
Exhibit 1360-10	Deceleration Lane Length
Exhibit 1360-11a	Gore Area Characteristics
Exhibit 1360-11b	Gore Area Characteristics
Exhibit 1360-12	Length of Weaving Sections
Exhibit 1360-13a	On-Connection: Single-Lane, Tapered
Exhibit 1360-13b	On-Connection: Single-Lane, Parallel

Exhibit 1360-13c	On-Connection: Two-Lane, Parallel
Exhibit 1360-13d	On-Connection: Two-Lane, Tapered
Exhibit 1360-14a	Off-Connection: Single-Lane, Tapered
Exhibit 1360-14b	Off-Connection: Single-Lane, Parallel
Exhibit 1360-14c	Off-Connection: Single-Lane, One-Lane Reduction
Exhibit 1360-14d	Off-Connection: Two-Lane, Tapered
Exhibit 1360-14e	Off-Connection: Two-Lane, Parallel
Exhibit 1360-15a	Collector-Distributor: Outer Separations
Exhibit 1360-15b	Collector Distributor: Off-Connections
Exhibit 1360-15c	Collector Distributor: On-Connections
Exhibit 1360-16	Loop Ramp Connections
Exhibit 1360-17	Temporary Ramps
Exhibit 1360-18	Interchange Plan
Exhibit 1410-1	Minimum Traveled Way Widths for Articulated Buses
Exhibit 1410-2	Typical HOV Lane Sections
Exhibit 1410-3	Roadway Widths for Two-Lane Ramps With an HOV Lane
Exhibit 1410-4a	Single-Lane Ramp Meter With HOV Bypass
Exhibit 1410-4b	Two-Lane Ramp Meter With HOV Bypass
Exhibit 1410-5a	Enforcement Area: One Direction Only
Exhibit 1410-5b	Enforcement Area: Median
Exhibit 1420-1	Minimum Ramp Widths for Articulated Buses
Exhibit 1420-2	Gap Acceptance Length for Parallel On Connections
Exhibit 1420-3	Drop Ramp
Exhibit 1420-4	T Ramp
Exhibit 1420-5	Flyover Ramp
Exhibit 1420-6	Side Platform Flyer Stop
Exhibit 1420-7	At-Grade Crossing Flyer Stop
Exhibit 1420-8	Transit Stops at Ramps
Exhibit 1420-9	Other Transit Stops
Exhibit 1420-10	Single-Lane Parallel On Connection
Exhibit 1420-11	HOV Direct Access Acceleration Lane Length
Exhibit 1420-12	Single-Lane Parallel Off Connection
Exhibit 1420-13	Drop Ramp Gore Area Characteristics
Exhibit 1420-14	Deceleration Lane Length for Buses
Exhibit 1420-15	T Ramp Design
Exhibit 1420-16	Flyer Stop Signing
Exhibit 1420-17	HOV Direct Access Signing: Main Line
Exhibit 1420-18	HOV Direct Access Signing: Local Street and Ramp Terminal
Exhibit 1420-19	HOV Direct Access Overhead Signs
Exhibit 1420-20	HOV Direct Access Shoulder-Mounted Signs
Exhibit 1430-1	Bus Berth Designs
Exhibit 1430-2	Transit Center Sawtooth Bus Berth

Exhibit 1430-3	Bus Turnout Transfer Center
Exhibit 1430-4	Off-Street Transfer Center
Exhibit 1430-5	Minimum Bus Zone Dimensions
Exhibit 1430-6	Bus Stop Pullouts: Arterial Streets
Exhibit 1430-7	Minimum Bus Zone and Pullout After Right-Turn Dimensions
Exhibit 1430-8	Shelter Siting
Exhibit 1430-9	Typical Bus Shelter Design
Exhibit 1430-10	Turning Template for a 40-Foot Bus
Exhibit 1430-11	Turning Template for an Articulated Bus
Exhibit 1430-12	Intersection Design
Exhibit 1430-13	Cross-Street Width Occupied by Turning Vehicle for Various Angles of Intersection and Curb Radii
Exhibit 1430-14	Passenger Loading Pad
Exhibit 1510-1	Pedestrian Route Geometrics
Exhibit 1510-2	Shared-Use Path
Exhibit 1510-3	Sidewalk With Buffer
Exhibit 1510-4	Driveway/Sidewalk Crossings
Exhibit 1510-5	Curb Ramps
Exhibit 1510-6	Curb Ramp Common Elements
Exhibit 1510-7	Examples of Acceptable Barriers Closing Pedestrian Crossings
Exhibit 1510-8	Counter Slope Alternative
Exhibit 1510-9	Curb Ramp Drainage
Exhibit 1510-10	Pedestrian Push Button Locations
Exhibit 1510-11	Obstructed Line of Sight at Intersection
Exhibit 1510-12	Midblock Pedestrian Crossing
Exhibit 1510-13	Midblock Crossing With Beacon
Exhibit 1510-14	Raised Island With Pedestrian Pass-Through
Exhibit 1510-15	Improved Line of Sight at Intersection
Exhibit 1510-16	Curb Extension Examples
Exhibit 1510-17	Pedestrian Railroad Warning Device
Exhibit 1510-18	Pedestrian Railroad Crossings
Exhibit 1510-19	Pedestrian Bridges
Exhibit 1510-20	Pedestrian Tunnel
Exhibit 1510-21	Pedestrian Access Ramp
Exhibit 1510-22	Work Zones and Pedestrian Facilities
Exhibit 1510-23	Pedestrian Access Route
Exhibit 1510-24	Sidewalk Recommendations
Exhibit 1510-25	Crosswalk Guidelines
Exhibit 1510-26	Crosswalks and Pedestrian Access Route Cross Slope
Exhibit 1510-27	U.S. Access Board Accessibility Requirements for Pedestrian Facility Design
Exhibit 1520-1	Bike Facility Selection
Exhibit 1520-2	Shared-Use Path

Exhibit 1520-3	Typical Redesign of a Diagonal Midblock Crossing
Exhibit 1520-4	Adjacent Shared-Use Path Intersection
Exhibit 1520-5	Bicycle Design Speeds
Exhibit 1520-6	Bikeway Curve Widening
Exhibit 1520-7	R Values and Subsurfacing Needs
Exhibit 1520-8	Bike Lane
Exhibit 1520-9	Shared Roadway
Exhibit 1520-10	Signed Shared Roadway: Designated Bike Route
Exhibit 1520-11a	Two-Way Shared-Use Path: Independent Alignment
Exhibit 1520-11b	Two-Way Shared-Use Path: Adjacent to Roadway
Exhibit 1520-12	Refuge Area
Exhibit 1520-13	At-Grade Railroad Crossings
Exhibit 1520-14a	Barrier Adjacent to Bicycle Facilities
Exhibit 1520-14b	Barrier Adjacent to Bicycle Facilities
Exhibit 1520-15	Stopping Sight Distance
Exhibit 1520-16	Sight Distances for Crest Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1520-17	Lateral Clearance on Horizontal Curves
Exhibit 1520-18	Typical Bike Lane Cross Sections
Exhibit 1520-19	Typical Bicycle/Auto Movements at Intersection of Multilane Streets
Exhibit 1520-20a	Bicycle Crossing of Interchange Ramp
Exhibit 1520-20b	Bicycle Crossing of Interchange Ramp
Exhibit 1520-21	Bike Lanes Approaching Motorists' Right-Turn-Only Lanes
Exhibit 1600-1	Design Clear Zone Distance Table
Exhibit 1600-2	Design Clear Zone Inventory Form
Exhibit 1600-3	Recovery Area
Exhibit 1600-4	Design Clear Zone for Ditch Sections
Exhibit 1600-5	Guidelines for Embankment Barrier
Exhibit 1600-6	Mailbox Location and Turnout Design
Exhibit 1600-7	Glare Screens
Exhibit 1610-1	Type 7 Bridge Rail Upgrade Criteria
Exhibit 1610-2	Longitudinal Barrier Deflection
Exhibit 1610-3	Longitudinal Barrier Flare Rates
Exhibit 1610-4	Traffic Barrier Locations on Slopes
Exhibit 1610-5	Old Type 3 Anchor
Exhibit 1610-6	Guardrail Connections
Exhibit 1610-7	Concrete Barrier Shapes
Exhibit 1610-8	Concrete Barrier Placement Guidance: Assessing Impacts to Wildlife
Exhibit 1610-9	Transitions and Connections
Exhibit 1610-10a	Barrier Length of Need on Tangent Sections
Exhibit 1610-10b	Barrier Length of Need
Exhibit 1610-10c	Barrier Length of Need on Curves
Exhibit 1610-10d	W-Beam Guardrail Trailing End Placement for Divided Highways

Exhibit 1610-11	Beam Guardrail Post Installation
Exhibit 1610-12a	Beam Guardrail Terminals
Exhibit 1610-12b	Beam Guardrail Terminals
Exhibit 1610-13a	Cable Barrier Locations on Median Slopes
Exhibit 1610-13b	Cable Barrier Locations on Shoulder Slopes
Exhibit 1610-14	Thrie Beam Rail Retrofit Criteria
Exhibit 1620-1	Impact Attenuator Sizes
Exhibit 1620-2a	Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-2b	Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-2c	Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-2d	Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-2e	Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-3a	Impact Attenuator Systems: Work Zone Installations
Exhibit 1620-3b	Impact Attenuator Systems: Work Zone Installations
Exhibit 1620-4a	Impact Attenuator Systems: Older Systems
Exhibit 1620-4b	Impact Attenuator Systems: Older Systems
Exhibit 1620-5	Impact Attenuator System Comparison
Exhibit 1620-6	Impact Attenuator Distance Beyond Length of Need
Exhibit 1710-1	Typical Truck Storage
Exhibit 1710-2	Typical Single RV Dump Station Layout
Exhibit 1710-3	Typical Two RV Dump Station Layout
Exhibit 1720-1	Truck Weigh Site: Multilane Highways
Exhibit 1720-2	Truck Weigh Site: Two-Lane Highways
Exhibit 1720-3	Vehicle Inspection Installation
Exhibit 1720-4	Minor Portable Scale Site
Exhibit 1720-5	Major Portable Scale Site
Exhibit 1720-6	Small Shoulder Site
Exhibit 1720-7	Large Shoulder Site
Exhibit 1720-8	MOU Related to Vehicle Weighing and Equipment: Inspection Facilities on State Highways

Chapter 100 Manual Description

100.01 Purpose
100.02 Presentation and Revisions
100.03 Manual Applications
100.04 Manual Use
100.05 Manual Organization

100.01 Purpose

The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) has developed the *Design Manual* to reflect policy, outline a uniformity of methods and procedures, and communicate vital information to its employees and others who develop projects on state highways. When properly used, the manual will facilitate the development of a highway system consistent with the needs of the traveling public.

WSDOT designers are required to comply with the *Design Manual*. The Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) has agreed to approve designs that follow guidance in the *Design Manual*; therefore, adherence to the guidance presented is not optional for state highway projects.

The information, guidance, and references contained herein are not intended as a substitute for sound engineering judgment. The *Design Manual* is not a comprehensive textbook on highway engineering, nor does it attempt to cover all the possible scenarios Washington's highways present. It is recognized that some situations encountered are beyond the scope of this presentation.

If you have design questions not answered by the *Design Manual*, contact the Headquarters (HQ) Design Office.

100.02 Presentation and Revisions

The *Design Manual* is available on the Internet and in print. It can be accessed electronically through the:

- WSDOT Home Page:
  www.wsdot.wa.gov/
- Design Policy Web Page:
  www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/policy/
- Engineering Publications Web Page:
  www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals/index.htm

The online version of the manual enables you to conduct a word search of the entire manual. Opening an individual chapter is faster, but a word search is limited to that chapter. Hard-copy editions are available on a department cost-recovery basis (they are free to WSDOT employees).

The *Design Manual* is continually revised to reflect changing processes, procedures, regulations, policies, and organizations. Feedback from users is encouraged to improve the manual for everyone. Comments may be submitted by any method that is convenient for you. There is a comment form in the front of the manual, or comments may be made via the contact names on the Design Policy Internet page (see link above). Note that the Design Policy Internet page includes a link to an errata page, which provides a list of known technical errors in the manual. Manual users are encouraged to view this page on a regular basis.

A contents section lists all chapters and the major headings of the sections/pages. The exhibits section lists all the exhibits in the manual and provides their page numbers.

Most chapters include a list of references, including laws, administrative codes, manuals, and other publications, which are the basis for the information in the chapter. Most chapters also include definitions for the specialized vocabulary used in the chapter; some words or phrases have more than one dictionary meaning.

100.03 Manual Applications

Design Manual guidance is provided to encourage the statewide uniform application of design details under normal conditions. It also guides designers through the project development process used by WSDOT. The *Design Manual* is used by the department to:

- Interpret current design principles, including American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) policy and federal and state laws.
- Develop projects that meet drivers' expectations.
- Balance the benefits and costs of highway construction projects.

The *Design Manual* is designed to allow for flexibility in design for specific and unusual situations. For unusual circumstances, the manual provides mechanisms for documenting the reasons for the choices made.

The *Design Manual* is developed for use on state highways and may not be suitable for projects on county roads or city streets.

100.04 Manual Use

The WSDOT *Design Manual* is intended to be used for design of department-owned facilities, especially the transportation facilities associated with state highways as designated by RCW 47.17.

For state highway routes, all projects must be designed using the *Design Manual* geometric control criteria (see Chapter 1100 and Division 11). If WSDOT guidance is not used on a project, appropriate documentation and approvals are required (see Chapters 300 and 1100).

When WSDOT designs facilities that will be turned over to local jurisdictions, those facilities are to be designed using appropriate local geometric design criteria.

When local jurisdictions design any element of state highway facilities, the *Design Manual* must be used. Local jurisdictions are free to adopt this manual for their local criteria or to develop their own specialized guidance for facilities not on state highway routes.

100.05 Manual Organization

The *Design Manual* is split into the following two volumes:

- Volume 1 contains *procedural topics*, including project documentation, permitting and hearings, site data, project investigation, and guidance for coordination with specialty group functions such as traffic, right of way, bridge and structures, and geotechnical design.
- Volume 2 addresses *design criteria and geometrics*. The design matrices are included in this volume because they communicate expectations for which elements are included in projects.

Each volume is divided into a series of divisions that address a portion of the project development and design processes. The divisions are comprised of chapters that address the general topic in detail and are, in some cases, specific to a particular discipline. Both volumes contain a complete Contents section and a complete Index.

(1) Volume 1: Procedures

Division 1 – General Information: Presents general background on planning, managing project delivery, project development, and programming.

- **Chapter 100 – Manual Description:** Chapter content and resources within the *Design Manual*.
- **Chapter 110 – Design-Build Projects:** How the *Design Manual* applies to design-build projects: includes terminology and reference to design-build contract documents.
- **Chapter 120 – Planning:** Critical information, such as corridor studies and route development plans, relating to the corridor in which the project resides.
- **Chapter 130 – Project Development Sequence:** The project development sequence from the Washington Transportation Plan through the contract document: emphasizes the Project Summary and Change Management process.

Division 2 – Hearings, Environmental, and Permits: Provides the designer with information about the public involvement and hearings process, the environmental documentation process, and the permit process.

- **Chapter 210 – Public Involvement and Hearings:** Developing a project-specific public involvement plan; the ingredients of an effective public involvement plan; and methods for public involvement.
- **Chapter 220 – Project Environmental Documentation:** An elementary background on the environmental documentation process and its requirements.
- **Chapter 230 – Environmental Permits and Approvals:** Permits that may be required for highway and bridge projects.

Division 3 – Project Documentation: Provides designers with information on value engineering, traffic analysis, design documentation, and approvals.

- **Chapter 300 – Design Documentation, Approval, and Process Review:** Building the Project File (PF) and the Design Documentation Package (DDP) and recording the recommendations and decisions that lead to a project by preserving the documents from the planning, scoping, programming, and design phases (includes permits, approvals, contracts, utility relocation, right of way, advertisement and award, and construction).
- **Chapter 310 – Value Engineering:** A systematic, multidisciplinary process study early in the project design stage to provide recommendations to improve scope, functional design, constructibility, environmental impacts, or project cost—required by federal law for high-cost, complex projects.
- **Chapter 320 – Traffic Analysis:** Procedural guidance and general requirements for conducting traffic analyses.

Division 4 – Surveying: Includes criteria for surveying, mapping, and monumentation requirements.

- **Chapter 400 – Surveying and Mapping:** The procedures within WSDOT for project surveying.
- **Chapter 410 – Monumentation:** The requirements and procedures for Monumentation.

Division 5 – Right of Way and Access Control: Provides guidance on right of way considerations; interchange justification reports; limited/managed access; and fencing.

- **Chapter 510 – Right of Way Considerations:** The right of way and easement acquisition process.
- **Chapter 520 – Access Control:** WSDOT Access Control program information.
- **Chapter 530 – Limited Access Control:** Clarification on full, partial, and modified limited access control.
- **Chapter 540 – Managed Access Control:** The classes of managed access highways and the access connection permitting process.
- **Chapter 550 – Interchange Justification Report:** The process for access point revisions on limited access controlled highways and the steps for producing an interchange justification report.
- **Chapter 560 – Fencing:** The purpose of fencing, types of fencing, and fencing design criteria.

Division 6 – Soils and Paving: Presents guidance for investigating soils, rock, and surfacing materials; estimating tables; and guidance and criteria for the use of geosynthetics.

- **Chapter 610 – Investigation of Soils, Rock, and Surfacing Materials:** The requirements for qualifying a materials source, geotechnical investigations, and the documentation to be included in the Project File.
- **Chapter 620 – Design of Pavement Structures:** Estimating tables for the design of pavement structures.
- **Chapter 630 – Geosynthetics:** The types/applications of geosynthetic drainage, earthwork, erosion control, and soil reinforcement materials.

Division 7 – Structures: Provides guidance for the design of structures for highway projects, including site data for structures, bridges, retaining walls, and noise walls.

- **Chapter 700 – Project Development Roles and Responsibilities for Projects With Structures:** WSDOT's project development process: roles and responsibilities for projects with structures during the project development phase of a project.
- **Chapter 710 – Site Data for Structures:** Information required by the HQ Bridge and Structures Office to provide structural design services.
- **Chapter 720 – Bridges:** Basic design considerations for developing preliminary bridge plans and guidelines on basic bridge geometric features.
- **Chapter 730 – Retaining Walls and Steep Reinforced Slopes:** Design principles, requirements, and guidelines for retaining walls and steep reinforced slopes.
- **Chapter 740 – Noise Barriers:** Factors considered when designing a noise barrier.

Division 8 – Hydraulics: Addresses the issue of hydraulics and serves as a guide to highway designers to identify and consider hydraulic-related factors that may impact the design.

- **Chapter 800 – Hydraulic Design:** Hydraulic considerations for highway projects involving flood plains, stream crossings, channel changes, and groundwater.

Division 9 – Roadside Development: Provides guidance on the portion of state highways between the traveled way and the right of way boundary.

- **Chapter 900 – Roadside Development:** Managing the roadside environment, including the area between the traveled way and the right of way boundary, unpaved median strips, and auxiliary facilities such as rest areas, wetlands, and stormwater treatment facilities.
- **Chapter 910 – Contour Grading:** Contour grading to achieve operational, environmental, and visual functions.
- **Chapter 920 – Vegetation:** The use of vegetation in the roadside environment and when to contact the Landscape Architect.
- **Chapter 930 – Irrigation:** Design considerations for irrigation on highway projects.
- **Chapter 940 – Soil Bioengineering:** Design considerations for the use of bioengineering techniques on highway projects.
- **Chapter 950 – Public Art:** Policies and procedures for including public art in state transportation corridors.

Division 10 – Traffic Safety Elements: Introduces the designer to traffic safety elements such as work zone traffic control, signing, delineation, illumination, traffic control signals, and Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS).

- **Chapter 1010 – Work Zone Safety and Mobility:** Planning, design, and preparation of highway project plans that address work zone safety and mobility requirements.
- **Chapter 1020 – Signing:** The use of signing to regulate, warn, and guide motorists.
- **Chapter 1030 – Delineation:** The use of pavement markings to designate safe traffic movement.
- **Chapter 1040 – Illumination:** Illumination design on state highway construction projects.
- **Chapter 1050 – Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS):** Applying computer and communication technology to optimize the safety and efficiency of the highway system.

(2) Volume 2: Design Criteria

Division 11 – Project Design Criteria: Provides design criteria guidance for basic design, modified design, and full design that are part of the design matrices in Chapter 1100.

- **Chapter 1100 – Design Matrix Procedures:** Includes design matrices that provide consistency across projects according to funding type and highway system. Each design matrix sets forth the design levels for a given type of need, which would be automatically approved by the department and FHWA. The chapter also discusses deviation approvals and how to apply the appropriate design level for the majority of Improvement and Preservation projects.
- **Chapter 1110 – Minor Operational Enhancement Projects:** Design matrices for low-cost, quick-fix projects that improve the operation of a state highway facility.
- **Chapter 1120 – Basic Design Level:** The required basic safety work and minor preservation and safety work included in the preservation of pavement structures and pavement service life while maintaining safe operation of the highway.
- **Chapter 1130 – Modified Design Level:** Design guidance unique to the modified design level of preserving and improving existing roadway geometrics and safety and operational elements.
- **Chapter 1140 – Full Design Level:** Guidance for the highest level of highway design, used on new and reconstructed highways to improve roadway geometrics and safety and operational elements.

Division 12 – Geometrics: Covers geometric plan elements; horizontal alignment; lane configurations and pavement transitions; geometric profile elements; vertical alignment; geometric cross sections; and sight distance.

- **Chapter 1210 – Geometric Plan Elements:** The design of horizontal alignment, lane configuration, and pavement transitions.
- **Chapter 1220 – Geometric Profile Elements:** The design of vertical alignment.
- **Chapter 1230 – Geometric Cross Section:** Roadway width and roadside slope design.
- **Chapter 1240 – Turning Roadways:** Widening curves to make the operating conditions comparable to those on tangent sections.
- **Chapter 1250 – Superelevation:** Superelevating curves and ramps so design speeds can be maintained.
- **Chapter 1260 – Sight Distance:** Stopping, passing, and decision sight distance design elements.
- **Chapter 1270 – Auxiliary Lanes:** Auxiliary facilities such as climbing lanes, passing lanes, slow-vehicle turnouts, shoulder driving for slow vehicles, emergency escape ramps, and chain-up areas.

Division 13 – Intersections and Interchanges: Addresses the design considerations of at-grade intersections, roundabouts, road approaches, railroad grade crossings, and traffic interchanges.

- **Chapter 1310 – Intersections at Grade:** Designing intersections at grade, including at-grade ramp terminals.
- **Chapter 1320 – Roundabouts:** Guidance on the design of roundabouts.
- **Chapter 1330 – Traffic Control Signals:** The use of power-operated traffic control devices that warn or direct traffic.
- **Chapter 1340 – Road Approaches:** The application and design of road approaches on state highways.
- **Chapter 1350 – Railroad Grade Crossings:** The requirements for highways that cross railroads.
- **Chapter 1360 – Traffic Interchanges:** The design of interchanges on interstate highways, freeways, and other multilane divided routes.
- **Chapter 1370 – Median Crossovers:** Guidance on locating and designing median crossovers for use by maintenance, traffic service, emergency, and law enforcement vehicles.

Division 14 – HOV and Transit: Provides design guidance on HOV lanes and transit facilities.

- **Chapter 1410 – High-Occupancy Vehicle Facilities:** Evaluating and designing high-occupancy vehicle (HOV) facilities.
- **Chapter 1420 – HOV Direct Access:** Design guidance on left-side direct access to HOV lanes and transit facilities.
- **Chapter 1430 – Transit Benefit Facilities:** Operational guidance and information for designing transit facilities such as park & ride lots, transfer/transit centers, and bus stops and pullouts.

Division 15 – Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities: Provides guidance on pedestrian and bicycle facility design.

- **Chapter 1510 – Pedestrian Facilities:** Designing facilities that encourage efficient pedestrian access that meets ADA.
- **Chapter 1520 – Bicycle Facilities:** Selecting and designing useful and cost-effective bicycle facilities.

Division 16 – Roadside Safety Elements: Addresses design considerations for the area outside the roadway, and includes clear zone, roadside hazards, safety mitigation, traffic barriers, and impact attenuator systems.

- **Chapter 1600 – Roadside Safety:** Clear zone design, roadside hazards to consider for mitigation, and some roadside safety features.
- **Chapter 1610 – Traffic Barriers:** Design of traffic barriers based on the design levels identified in the design matrices.
- **Chapter 1620 – Impact Attenuator Systems:** Permanent and work zone impact attenuator systems.

Division 17 – Roadside Facilities: Provides design guidance for the area outside the roadway, including rest areas and truck weigh sites.

- **Chapter 1710 – Safety Rest Areas and Traveler Services:** Typical layouts for safety rest areas.
- **Chapter 1720 – Weigh Sites:** Guidance on designing permanent, portable, and shoulder-sited weigh sites.

Chapter 110 Design-Build Projects

110.01 General
110.02 References
110.03 Terminology and Language Used
110.04 Design and Documentation Responsibility

110.01 General

This chapter emphasizes that the *Design Manual* applies to the delivery methods of all Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) capital projects, including design-build projects. Certain terms are defined to coincide with WSDOT design-build project delivery; however, it is beyond the scope of this manual to extensively define design-build projects. Design-build projects are based on their own contractual documents (such as a Request for Proposal), which present directive language intended to legally define the project and identify requirements and controls, roles and responsibilities, and procedures and outcomes.

Design-build is a method of project delivery in which WSDOT executes a single contract with one entity (the design-builder) for design and construction services to provide a finished product. In a traditional WSDOT design-bid-build contract, the design process is completed independent of the construction contract. Chapter 130, Project Development Sequence, provides background on this traditional delivery method. Note that much of Chapter 130 also applies to design-build projects, particularly the discussions on project planning and preliminary design, since those functions typically occur prior to hiring a design-builder.

Delivering a project using design-build contracting eliminates *very few steps* when compared to the typical WSDOT design-bid-build process. The same project work tasks and products are normally required whether performed by WSDOT or the design-builder. The timing, order, and level of task detail performed are what make design-build contracting different than design-bid-build. The design-build process may shift many tasks and responsibilities from WSDOT to the design-builder depending on the project's scope/risk analysis. The shift changes the order and development detail of the tasks and thus must be reflected in the process through contractual documents.

According to state law, to be considered for design-build designation in Washington State, a project must be greater than $10 million and provide the opportunity for one of the following:

- Highly specialized construction activities requiring significant input into the design.
- Greater innovation and efficiencies between the designer and the builder.
- Significant savings in project delivery time.

110.02 References

(1) Design-Build Guidance

The Design-Build Guidance Statements listed below are available at:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Projects/delivery/designbuild/

- Design Quality Control, Quality Assurance, and Quality Verification on Design-Build Projects
- Project Basic Configuration Development
- Use of Reference Documents on Design-Build Projects

110.03 Terminology and Language Used

(1) Application of Terminology

Several terms are encountered throughout the *Design Manual* that are not normally applicable to design-build project delivery. They are expanded in this chapter to provide appropriate meaning for design-build projects and design-build personnel. It is intended that design-build personnel acknowledge these expanded meanings and apply them throughout the manual, which will eliminate the need to restate them each time they are encountered.

design-builder The firm, partnership, joint venture, or organization that contracts with WSDOT to perform the work.

designer This term applies to WSDOT design personnel. Wherever "designer" appears in this manual, design-build personnel shall deem it to mean: Engineer of Record, Design Quality Assurance Manager, design-builder, or any other term used in the design-build contract to indicate design-build personnel responsible for the design elements of a design-build project, depending on the context of information being conveyed.

Project Engineer This term applies to WSDOT personnel. Wherever "Project Engineer" appears in this manual, the design-builder shall deem it to mean "Engineer of Record."

Request for Proposal (RFP) The document package issued by WSDOT requesting submittal of proposals for the project and providing information relevant to the preparation and submittal of proposals, including the instructions to proposers, contract documents, bidding procedures, and reference documents.

Additional terms are presented in each chapter of the *Design Manual*.

(2) Language Used for Design Flexibility

The *Design Manual* is primarily written for WSDOT engineering personnel; however, design-builders, local agencies, and developers also use it for state and local agency projects. As stated in the Foreword, the intent of this manual is to provide recommended values for critical dimensions. Flexibility is permitted to encourage independent design tailored to individual situations. However, when flexibility is applied to a proposed design and the critical dimensions do not meet *Design Manual* criteria, additional documentation is required to record the decision-making process.

With the exclusion of this chapter, the *Design Manual* is intentionally written to avoid or minimize the use of directive words like "shall" and "should" in order to retain this important flexibility for the larger set of users.

In the case of design-build projects, design flexibility applies to the extent allowed by the contract. The design-builder shall refer to the project-specific RFP for design guidance. The RFP will identify design decisions and provide technical specifications relating to the project's design.

110.04 Design and Documentation Responsibility

In the traditional design-bid-build format, WSDOT bears the entire responsibility and risk for any design-related issues. As the owner, all responsibility for design decisions and conformance to standards rests with WSDOT.

For design-build projects, many design responsibilities shift to the design-builder once the Notice to Proceed is issued. WSDOT is still responsible for establishing the scope, performance measurements, and existing conditions of the site as part of preliminary design. Any preliminary design done by WSDOT would be filed and documented in the Design Documentation Package (DDP) and/or the Project File (PF), which are provided to the selected design-builder to maintain throughout the design-build project design phase and then returned to WSDOT for retention.

Design guidance applies to design-build projects.

It is important to note that the design guidance presented in this manual has valid application based not on delivery method, but on roadway classifications, traffic volumes, and other route characteristics discussed in Chapter 1100 (and other chapters). For example, a design-build Improvement project on an interstate facility would be based on the Interstate matrices in Chapter 1100, which direct the designer/Engineer of Record to apply the appropriate design level presented in Division 11.

Design documentation is required on design-build projects.

It is also important to specify that design documentation is a requirement for WSDOT Improvement projects, regardless of delivery method. WSDOT still holds the valid requirement to have an organized design documentation file and as-constructed plans for future reference after the project is built.

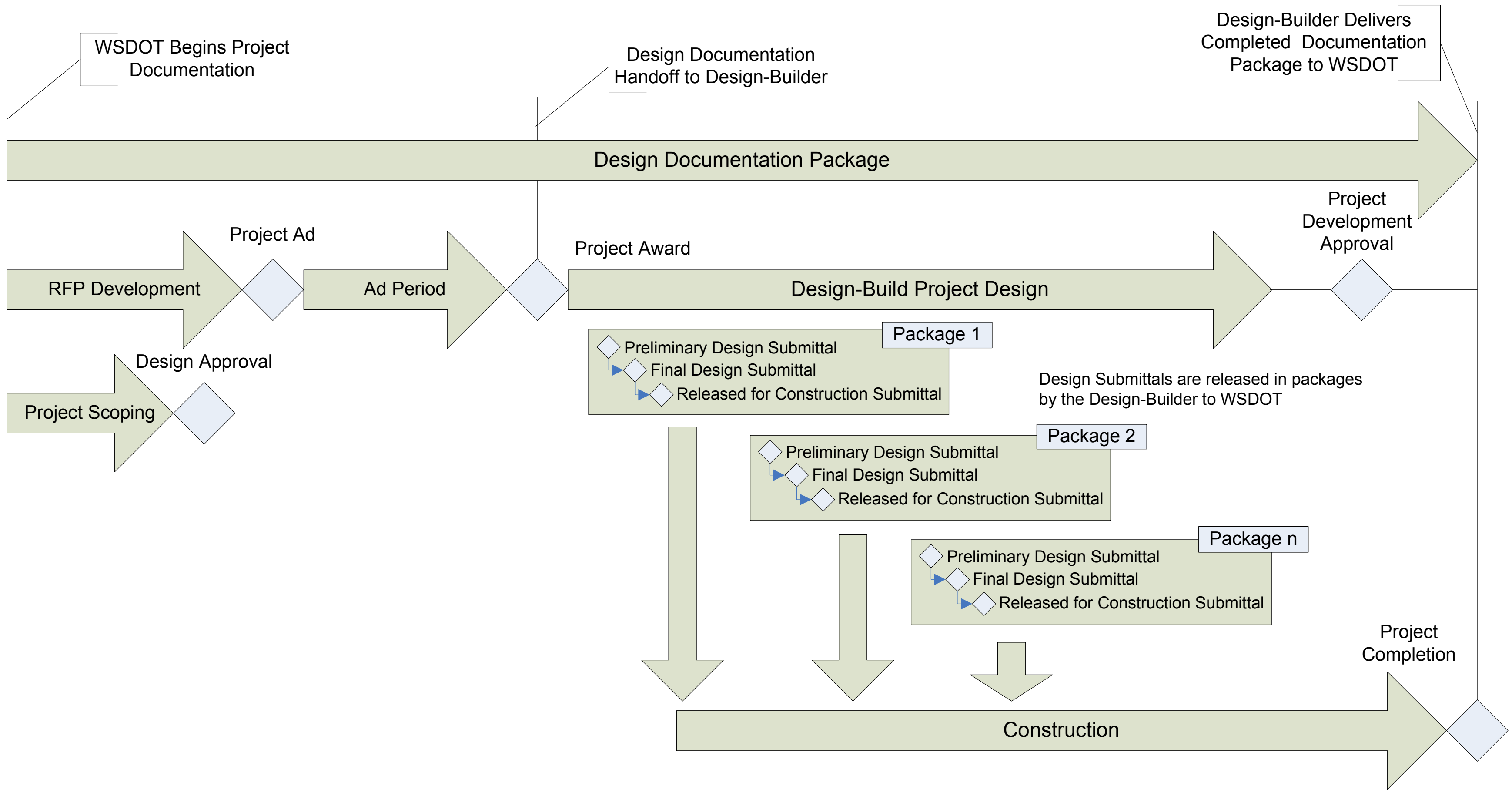
Plan accuracy, conformance with established design guidelines, and constructibility of the project rests with the design-builder.

The DDP and the PF include all the elements identified in the project RFP. The RFP specifies various DDP and PF submittals to WSDOT, identifying how each item will be submitted (report, plan sheet element, design parameter element, and so on) and who is responsible for the development status (such as *complete*, *in progress*, or *not started*) of each item. The RFP also indicates that some of the DDP and PF items have components that were started by WSDOT and that the design-builder shall complete or update those item(s). It is the design-builder's responsibility to obtain copies of the information from WSDOT for use in completing the DDP and PF items.

The DDP and the PF require retention of original, signed documents—not copies.

The RFP typically specifies that the design-builder shall provide WSDOT with updates to the DDP and PF items throughout construction of the project.

For further guidance on design documentation and WSDOT acceptance thereof, see Chapter 300, the project RFP, and the Design Documentation Checklist.



Notes:

- The Design Documentation Package (DDP) is started by WSDOT during scoping/pre-RFP design. The design-builder completes the DDP as the project proceeds.
- The design-builder shall refer to the RFP for specific review and approval processes. The RFP will specify procedures for design submittals, including notifications to WSDOT and the time allowed for reviews.
- WSDOT will review design submittals for conformance with requirements of the contract.

Design Documentation Sequence for a Typical Design-Build Project
Exhibit 110-1

Chapter 120 Planning

120.01 General
120.02 References
120.03 Acronyms and Definitions
120.04 Legislation and Policy Development
120.05 Planning at WSDOT
120.06 Linking Transportation Plans
120.07 Linking WSDOT Planning to Programming

120.01 General

Transportation planning is a decision-making process required by federal and state law that is used to implement complex, interrelated transportation and land use solutions. Transportation interests from affected jurisdictions, including local, regional, and state governments, as well as businesses, transportation providers, and community groups, typically identify transportation needs. These needs are then evaluated within the framework provided by local, regional, and state land use and transportation policies, as well as state and federal laws. They are interpreted in terms of constructed or service strategies that would meet those transportation needs, and the strategies are then evaluated based on projected fiscal constraints.

120.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users (SAFETEA-LU), 2005

23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) 450, Subpart B, Statewide Transportation Planning

23 CFR 450, Subpart C, Metropolitan Transportation Planning and Programming

23 United States Code (USC) 134, Metropolitan planning

23 USC 135, Statewide planning

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 35.58.2795, Public transportation systems – Six-year transit plans

RCW 35.77.010(2) and RCW 36.81.121(2), Perpetual advanced six-year plans for coordinated transportation program expenditures – Nonmotorized transportation – Railroad right-of-way

RCW 36.70A, Growth management – Planning by selected counties and cities

RCW 43.21C, State environmental policy

RCW 47.05, Priority programming for highway development

RCW 47.06, Statewide transportation planning

RCW 47.06B, Coordinating special needs transportation

RCW 47.38, Roadside areas – Safety rest areas

RCW 47.39, Scenic and Recreational Highway Act of 1967 (and changes thereto)

RCW 47.50, Highway access management

RCW 47.76.220, State rail plan – Contents

RCW 47.80, Regional transportation planning organizations

RCW 70.94, Washington clean air act (includes commute trip reduction law)

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-51 and 52, Highway access management

WAC 468-86, RTPO planning standards and guidelines

(2) Supporting Information

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT

120.03 Acronyms and Definitions

ACCT	Agency Council on Coordinated Transportation
ARB	Agency Request Budget
B/C	Benefit/Cost
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
CIPP	Capital Improvement and Preservation Program
CLB	Current Law Budget
CMP	Corridor Management Plan
CTR	Commute Trip Reduction
FAST	Freight Action Strategy for the Everett-Seattle-Tacoma Corridor
FGTS	Freight and Goods Transportation System
FHWA	Federal Highway Administration
FTA	Federal Transit Administration
GMA	Growth Management Act
HSP	State Highway System Plan
HSS	Highways of Statewide Significance
ISTEA	Intermodal Surface Transportation Efficiency Act of 1991
LOS	Level of Service
MTIP	Metropolitan Transportation Improvement Program
MPO	Metropolitan Planning Organization
PSRC	Puget Sound Regional Council
RCW	Revised Code of Washington
RDP	Route Development Plan

RTID	Regional Transportation Investment District
RTIP	Regional Transportation Improvement Program
RTPO	Regional Transportation Planning Organization
SEPA	State Environmental Policy Act
SHSP	State Highway System Plan, also known as the HSP
STIP	Statewide Transportation Improvement Program
TDM	Transportation Demand Management
TIP	Transportation Improvement Program
TPO	Transportation Planning Office
UPO	Central Puget Sound Urban Planning Office
USC	United States Code
WAC	Washington Administrative Code
WSDOT	Washington State Department of Transportation
WTP	Washington Transportation Plan

120.04 Legislation and Policy Development

The Washington State Legislature requires WSDOT to plan, develop, maintain, and preserve the transportation network in accordance with state and federal laws. The Washington State Transportation Commission, which is appointed by the Governor, interprets these requirements through a set of policies that guide the process.

The following are highlights of federal and state legal requirements that influence or direct planning activities conducted by WSDOT. These legal requirements must be satisfied for WSDOT to be eligible to receive or expend federal and state transportation funds.

(1) Federal Law: Safe, Accountable, Flexible, Efficient Transportation Equity Act: A Legacy for Users (SAFETEA-LU)

SAFETEA-LU was signed into law in 2005 and represents the largest surface transportation investment in our nation's history. The two landmark bills that brought surface transportation into the 21st century—the Intermodal Surface Transportation Efficiency Act of 1991 (ISTEA) and the Transportation Equity Act for the 21st Century (TEA-21)—shaped the highway program to meet the nation's changing transportation needs. SAFETEA-LU builds on this firm foundation, supplying the funds and refining the programmatic framework for investments needed to maintain and grow our vital transportation infrastructure.

SAFETEA-LU acknowledges the importance of statewide and metropolitan transportation planning activities at the state and regional levels. Following are the mandatory federal planning requirements included in SAFETEA-LU.

- **Statewide Planning:** 23 USC 135 and 23 CFR 450, Subpart B, outline the federal requirements for statewide planning by state departments of transportation
- **Metropolitan Planning:** 23 USC 134 and 23 CFR 450, Subpart C, outline the federal requirements for Metropolitan Planning Organizations (MPOs).

Each urbanized area (an area determined by the U.S. Census Bureau to have a population of 50,000 or more with a density of at least 500 per square mile) is required to have an MPO. The MPO develops and obtains approval of a metropolitan transportation plan and transportation improvement program to receive and expend federal transportation capital or operating assistance. The 2000 Census identified 13 urbanized areas in Washington; these areas have established 11 MPOs (ftp://ftp.wsdot.wa.gov/public/Cartography/RTPO/rtpompoSimple.jpg):

- Benton-Franklin Council of Governments (BFCOG)
- Cowlitz-Wahkiakum Council of Governments (CWCOG)
- Lewis-Clark Valley Metropolitan Planning Organization (LCVMPO)
- Puget Sound Regional Council (PSRC)
- Skagit Metropolitan Planning Organization (Skagit MPO)
- Southwest Washington Regional Transportation Council (SWRTC)
- Spokane Regional Transportation Council (SRTC)
- Thurston Regional Planning Council (TRPC)
- Wenatchee Valley Transportation Council (WVTC)
- Whatcom County Council of Governments (WCCOG)
- Yakima Valley Conference of Governments (YVCOG)

MPOs cover the metropolitan areas prescribed by federal law. They also serve as the lead agencies for Regional Transportation Planning Organizations (RTPOs), as enabled by state law (RCW 47.80), that form to include the MPO area (in some cases RTPOs cover a larger area). MPOs with a population over 200,000 are also designated as Transportation Management Areas (TMA).

Each MPO has a transportation policy board consisting of local elected city and county officials. These boards may also consist of representatives from ports, transit agencies, tribes, WSDOT, major employers, the public, and other local transportation interests. Typically, each MPO also has a technical committee composed of staff from local planning and public works departments and WSDOT regional personnel.

The results of this transportation planning process are transportation plans and programs that are consistent with and implement local comprehensive plans. The MPO planning process provides for:

- A forum to gain local consensus on regional transportation needs.
- The creation of a metropolitan transportation plan to identify future transportation facilities and services needed to support and implement local comprehensive plans.
- Targeted transportation studies used to develop the metropolitan transportation plan.
- A forum to decide how to allocate certain categories of transportation funds.
- The development of a three-year list of facilities and services (to be funded by member organizations) called the Metropolitan Transportation Improvement Program (MTIP).

Metropolitan transportation plans provided a significant building block for the development of the Washington Transportation Plan created by WSDOT.

(2) State Laws: Planning Mandates Shape Project Selection

The state of Washington has adopted several important laws affecting transportation planning at various levels. These laws provide the framework for transportation decision making, ultimately guiding the programming, design, and construction of transportation facilities and services. The following is a partial list of the state laws that address transportation planning:

(a) Statewide Transportation Planning (RCW 47.06)

This set of laws establishes that " . . . the state has an appropriate role in developing statewide transportation plans." RCW 47.06 specifies that state-owned transportation facilities and services, as well as those transportation facilities and services of state interest, be addressed in these plans and that these plans guide short-term investment decisions and the long-range vision for transportation system development.

1. Washington Transportation Plan (WTP)

The WTP provides guidance for the development, maintenance, and operation of a comprehensive and balanced multimodal transportation system. The overall direction of the WTP, prepared pursuant to RCW 47.06, is provided by the Washington State Transportation Commission. The WTP provides the direction for investment decision making at WSDOT for all modes of transportation.

The WTP covers all major transportation modes and includes:

- Meeting federal requirements.
- Critical factors affecting transportation.
- Important issues concerning each mode and strategies to solve problems or improve function.
- Plans for development and integration of the various modes of transportation.
- Major improvements in facilities and services to meet transportation needs.
- Financial resources required to implement recommendations.

The WTP is a dynamic plan that is updated on a regular basis to address changing conditions. Information and recommendations for the WTP are received from WSDOT regions and Headquarters (HQ), Metropolitan Planning Organizations, Regional Transportation Planning Organizations, local governmental agencies, private transportation operators, and the public.

The WTP addresses transportation facilities owned and operated by the state, including state highways, Washington State Ferries, and state-owned airports. It also addresses facilities and services that the state does not own, but has interest in. These include public transportation, freight rail, intercity passenger rail, marine ports and navigation, nonmotorized transportation, and aviation.

2. **State Highway System Plan (SHSP or HSP)**

   The State Highway System Plan is the highway component of the WTP. The HSP defines service objectives, action strategies, and costs to plan for, maintain, operate, preserve, and improve the state highway system for a duration of 20 years. The HSP is updated every two years, in coordination with local plan updates, to reflect completed work and changing transportation needs, policies, and revenues.

3. **State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA)**

   The State Environmental Policy Act requires the environmental effects of state and local agency actions be evaluated per WAC 197-11. Certain categorical exemptions exist. Agencies are required to adopt these regulations by reference and may develop more specific regulations for their own agency to specify how SEPA will be implemented.

   WSDOT adopted agency-specific SEPA regulations in 1986. Per WAC 468-12-800(3), the following transportation planning activities are categorically exempt under these rules:

   > *The development, adoption, and revision of transportation plans and six-year construction programs and any other studies, plans, and programs that lead to proposals that have not yet been approved, adopted, or funded and that do not commit WSDOT to proceed with the proposals.*

   Local government comprehensive plans developed pursuant to the Growth Management Act contain a transportation element and these Comprehensive Plans include a SEPA review.

   Typically, transportation planning does not require review under the National Environmental Policy ACT (NEPA) because there is no federal action in the development of state and local transportation plans.

(b) **Growth Management Act (GMA)**

Enacted in March 1990, the state's Growth Management Act (RCW 36.70A) requires cities and counties that meet certain population or growth-rate thresholds to adopt comprehensive plans. Jurisdictions that are required to or choose to plan under the GMA must also adopt and enforce ordinances that implement the policies adopted in the comprehensive plans. Under the GMA, comprehensive plans carry the force of law and require full public participation in their development.

A comprehensive plan is a series of coordinated policy statements and formal plans that direct growth and articulate how a community will be developed in the future. They include elements that address housing, utilities, capital facilities, economic development, land use, and transportation. GMA planning requires that the transportation element be consistent with and support the land use elements in comprehensive plans.

Continuous coordination and open discussion during the development of local comprehensive plans are key to developing valid plans that direct the growth of a community. Representatives from neighboring jurisdictions, special purpose districts, WSDOT, and others with an interest in future development must be involved at the beginning and throughout the planning process. This is to ensure comprehensive plans are consistent with all other state and local plans.

Local comprehensive plans are important to WSDOT because they influence how state facilities not classified as transportation facilities of statewide significance should be addressed, how state highways will be impacted by local land use, and how access requirements will be met or maintained.

WSDOT seeks to work in partnership with local governments as they develop comprehensive plans to help create a balance between mobility and access needs, while emphasizing design components that improve or maintain community livability. It is also WSDOT's responsibility to review and comment on local comprehensive plans and amendments.

(c) **Regional Transportation Planning Organizations (RTPOs)**

Washington has two types of "regional" or "area-wide" transportation planning organizations: MPOs and RTPOs. MPOs, which serve areas with urbanized populations over 50,000, were introduced in the discussion on federal laws in 120.04(1). An RTPO (RCW 47.80.020) is a voluntary organization enabled under state law. In an area where an MPO exists, the MPO is required by state law to be the lead agency for the RTPO.

Although voluntary, cities, counties, ports, tribes, and transit agencies usually become members of the RTPO; their participation is the best way to influence local and statewide transportation planning.

RTPOs perform some functions similar to MPOs, and like MPOs, they provide a forum for information exchange and collective decision making between local governments and WSDOT. WSDOT is represented on each RTPO technical advisory committee and on most RTPO Policy Boards.

Fourteen RTPOs exist in Washington State, covering all counties of the state except San Juan County (see Exhibit 120-1). Of the eleven MPOs listed in 120.04(1), only Lewis-Clark Valley MPO is not the lead agency for an RTPO. In addition to the ten RTPOs with MPOs as lead agencies, there are also the following RTPOs:

- Palouse RTPO (Asotin County is an adjunct member)
- Peninsula RTPO
- QUADCO RTPO
- Northeastern Washington RTPO (N. E. W.)

(d) **Transportation Facilities and Services of Statewide Significance (RCW 47.06.140)**

The Legislature has declared certain transportation facilities and services that promote and maintain significant statewide travel and economic development to be of statewide significance.

Transportation facilities and services of statewide significance (TFSSS) are considered essential public facilities (RCW 36.70A.200). Essential public facilities cannot be precluded from operation or expansion by local comprehensive plans and development regulations. This means that WSDOT's interest in these facilities and services takes precedence over local interests in the planning process. These facilities must comply with local ordinances and permits.

Planning for TFSSS must be conducted with a statewide perspective in mind. WSDOT, in consultation with transportation providers and regulators, is responsible for developing a statewide, multimodal plan for these facilities and services. The balance between providing for the movement of people and goods and the needs of local communities is the main consideration.

One category of transportation facilities and services of statewide significance is highways of statewide significance (HSS). The HSS designation was approved by the Legislature to identify significant state-owned transportation facilities and establish that HSS routes:

- Have standardized levels of service (LOS) for mobility.
- Receive a higher priority for WSDOT mobility improvement funding.
- Are specifically exempt from concurrency requirements (except in Island County).
- Will be the focus of Regional Transportation Improvement District funding (King, Pierce, and Snohomish counties).

HSS routes include the Interstate highway system, interregional state principal arterials, and ferry connections that serve statewide travel.

WSDOT makes the final decision regarding the acceptable level of service (LOS) for highways of statewide significance. The MPOs and RTPOs, in consultation with WSDOT, set the acceptable LOS on regionally significant state highways (non-HSS). For a list of highways of statewide significance in Washington, see: www.wsdot.wa.gov/planning/HSS/Default.htm

(e) **Functional Classification of Highways and Roadways (RCW 47.05.021)**

Functional classification is the grouping of highways, roads, and streets that serve similar functions into distinct systems or classes within the existing or future highway network. The objective of functional classification is to define the appropriate role (mobility versus access) of various highways in providing service and influencing development. Generally, the higher functional classification routes provide mobility between communities, have higher travel speeds, and serve longer-distance travel. The lower functional classification routes focus on providing localized access to the land adjacent to the roadway. Functional classification is important in:

- Identifying routes for inclusion in the National Highway System.
- Providing the basis for administering the Surface Transportation Program.
- Determining design levels for a specific route.
- Planning.
- Establishing access control.
- Providing information for land use plans and decisions.
- Conducting needs assessments and cost allocation studies.
- Helping to determine the level of maintenance.
- Conducting the priority programming process.

State highways are subdivided into three functional classifications. (See Chapter 1140, Full Design Level, for definitions of the collector, minor arterial, and principal arterial classifications.)

(f) **Freight and Goods Transportation System (FGTS)**

The FGTS is established to develop the most effective and efficient system for moving freight from suppliers to destinations. The FGTS is required by RCW 47.05.021(4).

The FGTS ranks state highways, county roads, and city streets based on annual tonnage carried. Freight corridors with statewide significance, usually designated as Strategic Freight Corridors, are those routes that carry an average of four million or more gross tons by truck annually.

The tonnage classifications used for designating the FGTS are as follows:

- T-1 = more than 10 million tons per year
- T-2 = 4 million to 10 million tons per year
- T-3 = 300,000 to 4 million tons per year
- T-4 = 100,000 to 300,000 tons per year
- T-5 = at least 20,000 tons in 60 days

The FGTS is primarily used to establish funding eligibility for Freight Mobility Strategic Investment Board (FMSIB) grants, support highways of statewide significance designation, fulfill federal reporting requirements, and plan for pavement needs and upgrades. At a minimum, WSDOT updates the list of T-1 and T-2 roadways every two years to assist in FMSIB strategic freight corridor designation.

The Freight Mobility Strategic Investment Board (FMSIB) uses the FGTS to designate strategic freight corridors and is obligated to update the list of designated strategic corridors every two years per RCW 47.06A.020(3). WSDOT provides staff and logistical support to FMSIB, including updates to the FGTS.

Further information on the FGTS can be accessed here:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Freight/FGTS/default.htm

(g) **Access Control (RCW 47.50, WAC 468-51, and WAC 468-52)**

Access control is a program that combines traffic engineering and land use regulatory techniques. Access control balances the desire and need for access (from adjacent properties to streets and highways) with other elements such as safety, preservation of capacity, support for alternative transportation modes, and preservation and enhancement of communities.

There are two types of access control on state highways: limited access control and managed access control (see Chapters 520, 530, and 540). For limited access control, WSDOT purchases the right to limit access to a highway. Managed access control is a regulatory program established by state law that requires access to state highways in unincorporated areas be managed by WSDOT to protect the public and preserve highway functionality. Cities also have authority to grant access to state highways with managed access within incorporated areas. WSDOT retains authority on state highways with limited access.

WSDOT has established the Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan for access control, which is consulted when transportation improvement strategies are planned.

120.05 Planning at WSDOT

The role of planning at WSDOT is to identify transportation needs and facilitate the development and implementation of sound, innovative investments and strategies. Many groups within WSDOT conduct planning activities that directly or indirectly influence the design of transportation facilities.

These groups serve a variety of departmental purposes, including advocating multi-modal strategies, providing technical assistance, and implementing a wide variety of programs, projects, and services.

The following is a list of the groups involved in planning, which includes their responsibilities and their effect on the design of transportation facilities.

(1) Transportation Planning Office

The Transportation Planning Office of the Strategic Planning and Programming Division at WSDOT Headquarters consists of three branches: Systems Analysis and Program Development; Policy Development and Regional Coordination; and Central Puget Sound Urban Planning Office (UPO).

(a) **Systems Analysis and Program Development Branch**

The major responsibilities of the Systems Analysis and Program Development Branch are to:

- Coordinate planning activities and provide technical assistance to WSDOT regions.
- Oversee the development and programming of the State Highway System Plan (HSP).
- Collect and process data, conduct studies, and develop travel forecasts.

(b) **Policy Development and Regional Coordination Branch**

Policy Development and Regional Coordination Branch responsibilities include:

- Coordination of planning activities and technical assistance to WSDOT regions, the Central Puget Sound UPO, eleven MPOs, and fourteen RTPOs.
- Management oversight of the MPOs to ensure fulfillment of federal metropolitan transportation planning regulations in 23 USC 134 and the RTPOs regarding state requirements in RCW 47.80, WAC 468-86, and the WSDOT regional planning standards.
- Administration of federal and state planning grants for planning organizations.
- Development of the Washington Transportation Plan (WTP) in partnership with other WSDOT organizations, MPOs, and RTPOs. (See 120.04(2)(b) for a description of the WTP.)

The responsibilities of the Central Puget Sound UPO are discussed in 120.05(4).

(2) Public Transportation Division

The Public Transportation Division works to enhance mobility options by managing, coordinating, and advocating for rail, commuting options, and public transportation programs throughout the state. The division's mission is to:

- Improve transportation choices, connections, coordination, and efficiency.
- Provide planning, project oversight, financial, and technical assistance to public transportation providers.

The division also oversees the state Commute Trip Reduction Program and provides technical assistance and grants to help reduce vehicle miles traveled by commuters in urban regions of the state.

The Public Transportation Division's plans and programs add value to highway and roadway design decisions by emphasizing enhancement, improvement, and coordination of intermodal connections. It is recommended that these plans and programs be referenced during the design process to ensure coordination and efficiency.

(a) **Public Transportation and Commute Options Office**

Programs organized by the Public Transportation and Commute Options Office support passenger transportation systems and services through grants, technical assistance, research, and planning. The office works in partnership with local communities and governments to promote, improve, expand, and coordinate public transportation resources, and access to those resources, throughout the state. The major emphases in the public transportation program include:

- Implement projects and strategies identified in the Public Transportation Plan for Washington State and the Washington Transportation Plan.
- Identify, support, coordinate, and monitor the planning, capital, and operating funding needs of small urban and rural public transportation providers.
- Improve the effectiveness and efficiency of public transportation through training, technical assistance, and coordination with agencies engaged in public transportation, including nonprofit agencies and private for-profit bus and taxi companies.
- Establish mobility options in areas where public transportation is limited or does not exist.
- Develop, implement, and manage grant programs to enhance and sustain statewide mobility.
- Monitor compliance for safety, including the drug and alcohol programs of rural public transportation providers.
- Manage information and data for the efficient coordination of transportation programs and providers.
- Provide leadership and support for the Agency Council on Coordinated Transportation (ACCT). ACCT is an interagency team responsible for recommending policies and guidelines to promote institutional and operational structures that encourage the efficient coordination of transportation programs and providers.

(b) **Transportation Demand Management Office (TDM)**

The TDM Office advocates for, creates, and develops effective solutions to capacity constraints within the state transportation system. The TDM Office provides financial and technical support within WSDOT and external transportation organizations to help ensure demand management can be implemented whenever such programs are appropriate and cost-effective.

Program support is provided in areas such as land use planning, TDM research, parking management, high-capacity transportation planning, and policy development for the state's freeway high-occupancy vehicle system.

The TDM Office also assists public and private employers, jurisdictions, and other interested parties with implementation of RCW 70.94.521 through 551. The goals of the commute trip reduction (CTR) statutes are to reduce air pollution, traffic congestion, and the consumption of fossil fuels. The TDM Office provides financial and technical support to employers to meet their mandated CTR requirements.

The TDM Office provides leadership through developing policies and guidelines that help direct public and private investment in the state's transportation system. An essential function of the TDM Office is to develop and maintain a TDM Strategic Plan for WSDOT. This plan helps ensure the Washington Transportation Plan and all other internal planning processes incorporate TDM activities.

Regional and local TDM activities and planning functions are further supported by the TDM Office through coordinating and implementing statewide TDM programs and providing public information, marketing tools, and training opportunities. The office also administers local TDM grant programs and planning grants that generate commute efficiencies in certain urban areas of the state.

(c) **Freight Systems Division**

The movement of truck freight is the focus of the Freight Systems Division's Truck Office. The Truck Office is working to develop a strategic freight investment plan to increase our state's economic vitality, improve marketplace competitiveness, and ensure resiliency. It is also working to integrate truck freight requirements into WSDOT's highway design, planning, operations, and project prioritization. The office works with planners and designers; MPO's; RTPO's; local jurisdictions; other WSDOT offices (HQ and region); ports; railroads; trucking companies and associations; and other stakeholders.

(3) Rail Office

Intercity passenger rail and freight rail are the focus of the Rail Office. Passenger and freight rail services are an important part of our state transportation system. Moving people and goods by rail is often safer and more environmentally friendly than adding traffic to our already congested highways. Improvements to the state's rail system, whether funded by the private sector or the public sector, can help mitigate the impacts of our fast-growing economy and population.

The Intercity Rail Passenger Plan for Washington State defines a passenger rail system that links major population centers throughout the state and provides the blueprint for needed improvements to these intercity rail systems. The plan emphasizes incrementally upgrading the Amtrak passenger rail system along the Pacific Northwest Rail Corridor in western Washington. The vision is to reduce travel times and provide better passenger rail service in the Pacific Northwest. A number of activities unrelated to passenger rail are continually underway in the corridor, requiring extensive coordination among various agencies and private organizations. The corridor also serves some of the world's busiest ports. WSDOT is working with the Puget Sound Regional Council and other area agencies through the

Freight Action Strategy for the Everett-Seattle-Tacoma Corridor (FAST Corridor) project to plan for the elimination of at-grade highway/railroad crossing conflicts and to improve port access.

The Washington State Freight Rail Plan fulfills a Federal Railroad Administration requirement that the states establish, update, and revise a rail plan. It also fulfills the Washington State legislative directive (RCW 47.76.220) that WSDOT prepare and periodically revise a state rail plan that identifies, evaluates, and encourages essential rail services. The plan identifies the abandonment status of various rail lines, provides analysis of the various alternatives to these proposed abandonments, and provides recommendations that are incorporated into the Washington Transportation Plan.

(4) Highways and Local Programs Division (H&LP)

WSDOT's H&LP Division is a statewide organization with staff in all six WSDOT regions and at Headquarters. Under WSDOT's stewardship agreement with the FHWA, H&LP serves as the steward of the local agency federal-aid program by administering and managing federal funds from project development through construction administration. H&LP provides assistance to cities, counties, ports, tribal governments, transit, and metropolitan and regional planning organizations in obtaining federal and state grant funds to build and improve local transportation systems. H&LP, on behalf of the Secretary of WSDOT, is responsible for preparing and submitting the Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (STIP) to FHWA, without which no federal project would be authorized. In addition, H&LP provides federal compliance oversight on federally funded projects and technical assistance and training, and it promotes cooperative planning and partnerships between WSDOT and local agencies.

(5) WSDOT Regions and the Central Puget Sound Urban Planning Office (UPO)

The planning roles at the WSDOT regions and the Central Puget Sound UPO are similar in many ways. Following are descriptions of the different region and UPO planning roles:

(a) **WSDOT Region Planning**

Each WSDOT region has a Planning Office that has several roles, including:

- Conducting and overseeing a variety of long-range planning studies.
- Coordinating and assisting planning organizations outside WSDOT.
- Assisting in the development of prioritized plans.
- Administering internal WSDOT programs.
- Overseeing access control activities.
- Performing Development Services activities.

For the Olympic and Northwest Regions, many of these long-range planning functions are assigned to the Central Puget Sound UPO.

Each region Planning Office conducts long-range planning studies such as route development plans, corridor master plans, and site-specific transportation alternatives and studies. These studies evaluate alternative solutions for both existing and projected transportation needs, initiate the long-range public involvement process, and ultimately provide the foundation for inclusion of identified improvement strategies into the Washington Transportation Plan (WTP) and the State Highway System Plan (HSP).

Region Planning offices coordinate with and assist the local Metropolitan Planning Organizations (MPOs) and Regional Transportation Planning Organizations (RTPOs). In some cases, the region Planning Office provides staff support for the local RTPO.

The region works with the Washington State Patrol to include its weigh sites and other highway-related needs in WSDOT projects.

Often, the region Planning Office is responsible for administering internal WSDOT programs such as traffic modeling and the Travel Demand Management (TDM) program and responding to citizen's concerns about pedestrian, bicycle, and other transportation-related issues.

The region Planning Office also reviews and provides comments on local comprehensive plans so development regulations, local transportation elements, and WSDOT goals and interests are consistent.

Development Services reviews new developments affecting state highways, such as master-planned communities, major subdivisions, and commercial projects. Developers provide mitigation for their impacts to the state highway system under the State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA) and the Highway Access Management program. The Development Services section works closely with the local lead agency during SEPA reviews and the permitting process to secure appropriate improvements to the state transportation system from developers.

(b) **The Central Puget Sound Urban Planning Office (UPO)**

The Central Puget Sound UPO is based in Seattle and is part of the Strategic Planning and Programming Division. It has a similar role to a region Planning Office, yet the UPO role is more specialized. The UPO oversees WSDOT's long-range planning efforts in the four-county Central Puget Sound area of King, Pierce, Snohomish, and Kitsap counties. This is the same area covered by the MPO called the Puget Sound Regional Council (PSRC), located in Seattle. The four-county region is geographically split between WSDOT's Olympic and Northwest regions.

Development Services' responsibilities remain with the Northwest and Olympic Regions' Planning offices.

The Central Puget Sound Urban Planning Office also participates in the review of documents mandated by the Growth Management Act (GMA). This includes the review of draft comprehensive plans as well as the Draft Environmental Impact Statements that provide supporting documentation to the comprehensive plans. The UPO also provides staffing and logistical support for the Regional Transportation Investment District (RTID). The RTID, a regional transportation planning committee created by legislation, provides funding for major transportation projects in King, Pierce, and Snohomish counties.

The UPO also has the responsibility of coordinating plans developed by Washington State Ferries with the strategies contained in the State Highway System Plan.

(6) Washington State Ferries Division

The Long-Range Ferry System Plan, prepared by the Washington State Ferries Division, considers recent trends in ferry ridership, system costs, regional economy, and other system and site factors. It is recommended that designers contact the Washington State Ferries Planning Office during the design phase of any conceptual solution occurring near a ferry terminal or for a project that might add significant traffic to or around a ferry terminal.

(7) Aviation Division

The WSDOT Aviation Division:

- Provides general aviation airport aid, including an award-winning lighting program.
- Provides technical assistance for airspace and incompatible land use matters that may affect airport operations or compromise safety.
- Coordinates all air search and rescue and air disaster relief.
- Administers pilot and aircraft registration.

This division is responsible for development of the Washington State Airport System Plan. The division also operates 17 state airports strategically placed throughout the state.

120.06 Linking Transportation Plans

A major WSDOT objective is that our transportation system allows the public to travel on the state's highways quickly, safely, and with the least possible inconvenience and expense. To fulfill WSDOT's and the public's desire for a seamless transportation system, coordination of transportation planning efforts is essential.

(1) Coordination of Planning Efforts

Coordination of planning efforts between city, county, MPO, RTPO, public and private transportation providers, and state transportation plans is not only required by federal and state laws—it makes good business sense. Exhibit 120-1 is a diagram that explains the general relationships between the various transportation planning processes and organizations.

Cities and counties explore their needs and develop *comprehensive plans.* Among other components, each comprehensive plan contains a land use element and a transportation element, which must be consistent with each other. The transportation element (sometimes known as the *local transportation plan*) supports the land use element. The requirements in the Growth Management Act (see 120.04(2)(b)) guide most of the comprehensive plans developed in the state of Washington.

MPOs and RTPOs coordinate and develop metropolitan and regional transportation plans. These plans cover multiple cities and, for RTPOs, encompass at least one county. The purpose of metropolitan and regional transportation plans is to accurately capture a region's transportation needs in one document: to develop a financial strategy to address the unfunded needs and to ensure local plan consistency across jurisdictional boundaries.

Planning is undertaken to ensure consistent policy among the various jurisdictions, whether state, regional, or local. It does not matter where the planning process begins because the process is both cyclic and iterative. If one component of a plan changes, it may or may not affect other components. If any one plan changes significantly, it may affect each of the other plans in the cycle. Early communication and coordination of conceptual solutions are critical to ensuring project delivery.

(2) Transportation Improvement Programs

Exhibit 120-2 shows the coordination of effort that produces consistent and comprehensive transportation plans and programs.

From these transportation plans, each town, city, county, and public transportation provider develops a detailed list of projects that will be constructed in the ensuing three to six years. This detailed list of transportation projects is called the six-year Regional Transportation Improvement Program (also known as the Six-Year RTIP) or the three-year Metropolitan Transportation Improvement Program (MTIP).

The six-year RTIP and the three-year MTIP must be financially constrained, meaning that the total cost of all projects cannot exceed the established revenue authority. Financially constraining the RTIP and the MTIP is one method used to ensure the list of projects represents what the local agency intends to build in the near future to implement local transportation plans. Once each jurisdiction develops its individual Transportation Improvement Program (TIP), the RTPO and the MPO compile these individual TIPs into a regional or metropolitan TIP.

Each RTPO/MPO completes a Regional or Metropolitan Transportation Improvement Program (RTIP or MTIP) at least once every two years (RCW 47.80.023). The RTIPs/MTIPs must meet the requirements of federal and state laws regarding transportation improvement programs and plans. To achieve this, the RTIP/MTIP:

- Is developed cooperatively by local government agencies, public transit agencies, and the WSDOT regions within each area.
- Includes all federally funded WSDOT Highway Construction Program projects.
- Includes all significant transportation projects, programs, and transportation demand management measures proposed to be implemented during each year of the next period.
- Identifies all significant projects, whether funded by state or federal funds.
- Includes all significant projects from the local transit development plans and comprehensive transportation programs required by RCW 35.58.2795, 35.77.010(2), and 36.81.121(2) for transit agencies, cities, towns, and counties.
- Includes all transportation projects funded by the FHWA and the FTA.
- Includes all federally funded public lands transportation projects.
- Includes all WSDOT projects, regardless of funding source, and clearly designates regionally significant projects as such.
- Complies with all state (RCW 70.94) and federal (40 CFR 51 and 93) Clean Air Act requirements (where applicable).
- Includes only projects consistent with local, regional, and metropolitan transportation plans.
- Includes a financial section outlining how the RTIP/MTIP is financially constrained, showing sources and amounts of funding reasonably expected to be received for each year of the ensuing six/three-year period, and includes an explanation of all assumptions supporting the expected levels of funding.

Funding agencies often give preference to jointly sponsored transportation projects. RTPOs and MPOs can develop jointly sponsored projects since they represent multiple agencies. Major projects backed by an RTPO or an MPO have a better chance of receiving funding.

(3) Development of the STIP

An important role of the WSDOT Highways and Local Programs Division is to combine all RTIP, MTIP, and HSP projects in appropriate years, and all of the state and federally funded projects and projects of regional significance, into the (three-year) Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (STIP).

Development of a new STIP every two years is required by federal law in order to expend federal transportation dollars. The state of Washington, however, develops a new STIP each year to enhance project flexibility and ensure project delivery.

The Governor's approval of the MTIPs, plus the FHWA's and the FTA's approval of the STIP, are required prior to expenditure of federal funds.

120.07 Linking WSDOT Planning to Programming

Exhibit 120-3 is a flowchart describing the process conceptual solutions must go through to receive funding. This chart also describes the link between planning and program development. (For more information, see Chapter 300 for project definition, Chapter 1100 for design matrices, and Chapter 220 for environmental documentation.)

(1) The Role of the Systems Analysis and Program Development Branch

The WSDOT planning process determines *what* facilities or services will be provided *where*. The role of WSDOT Systems Analysis and Program Development Branch is to determine *when* the improvements will be implemented. The WSDOT Systems Analysis and Program Development Branch prioritizes the projects that are selected from the State Highway System Plan component of the Washington Transportation Plan (see 120.04(2)(a)1.).

Taking the HSP from the planning stage through the programming stage is another role of the Systems Analysis and Program Development Branch. The Systems Analysis and Program Development Branch and the Project Control and Reporting Office manage the statewide highway construction program, including:

- Recommending subprogram funding levels.
- Developing project priorities.
- Preparing, executing, and monitoring the highway construction program.

The Systems Analysis and Program Development Branch is responsible for the oversight of the *Programming Process*. The legislative authorization for this activity is in RCW 47.05, Priority Programming. The Programming Process describes how projects that have been identified in the HSP are prioritized.

(2) Subprogram Categories

Subprogram categories for the service objectives and action strategies have been established within WSDOT's budget to allow decision makers to determine timing and the amount of money to invest in meeting transportation needs. (See the HSP for the service objectives and action strategies.)

The order of needs within each subprogram category is usually prioritized based on benefit/cost methodology; however, some subprograms do not have a prioritization methodology attached to them (such as Economic Initiatives).

The department may combine projects that are scheduled to be constructed within six years of each other to eliminate projects at the same location just a few years apart.

Following completion of construction, WSDOT evaluates the effectiveness of the project on the performance of the transportation system.

(3) WSDOT Budgets

WSDOT uses the State Highway System Plan component of the twenty-year Washington Transportation Plan as the basis for prioritizing and programming to select projects for the Agency Request Budget (ARB) and Current Law Budget (CLB). To be selected, a project must already be included in the HSP.

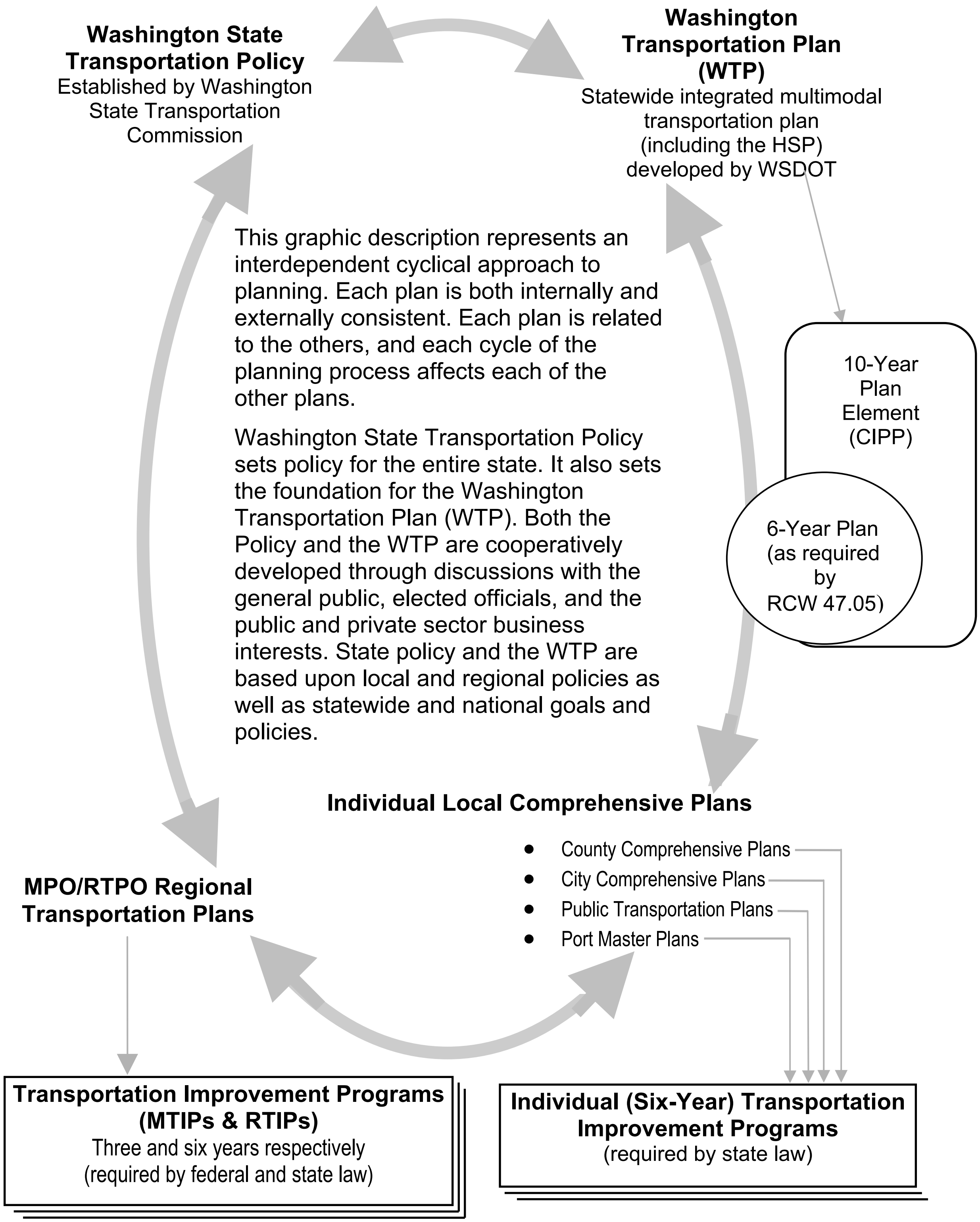
WSDOT operates on a two-year funding cycle. This is primarily because the state Legislature appropriates state transportation funds on a biennial basis. The Washington State Transportation Commission recommends a Six-Year Plan Element and the ten-year Capital Improvement and Preservation Program (CIPP). The plans are developed to better implement the federal and state laws influencing transportation and land use; to encourage a longer-range perspective in the funding of transportation projects; and to be consistent with local and regional transportation planning processes. These plan elements are used to develop the two-year budget proposals.

When appropriated by the Legislature, WSDOT's two-year budget is forwarded to the appropriate RTPOs and MPOs for any needed revisions to the RTIPs and MTIPs.

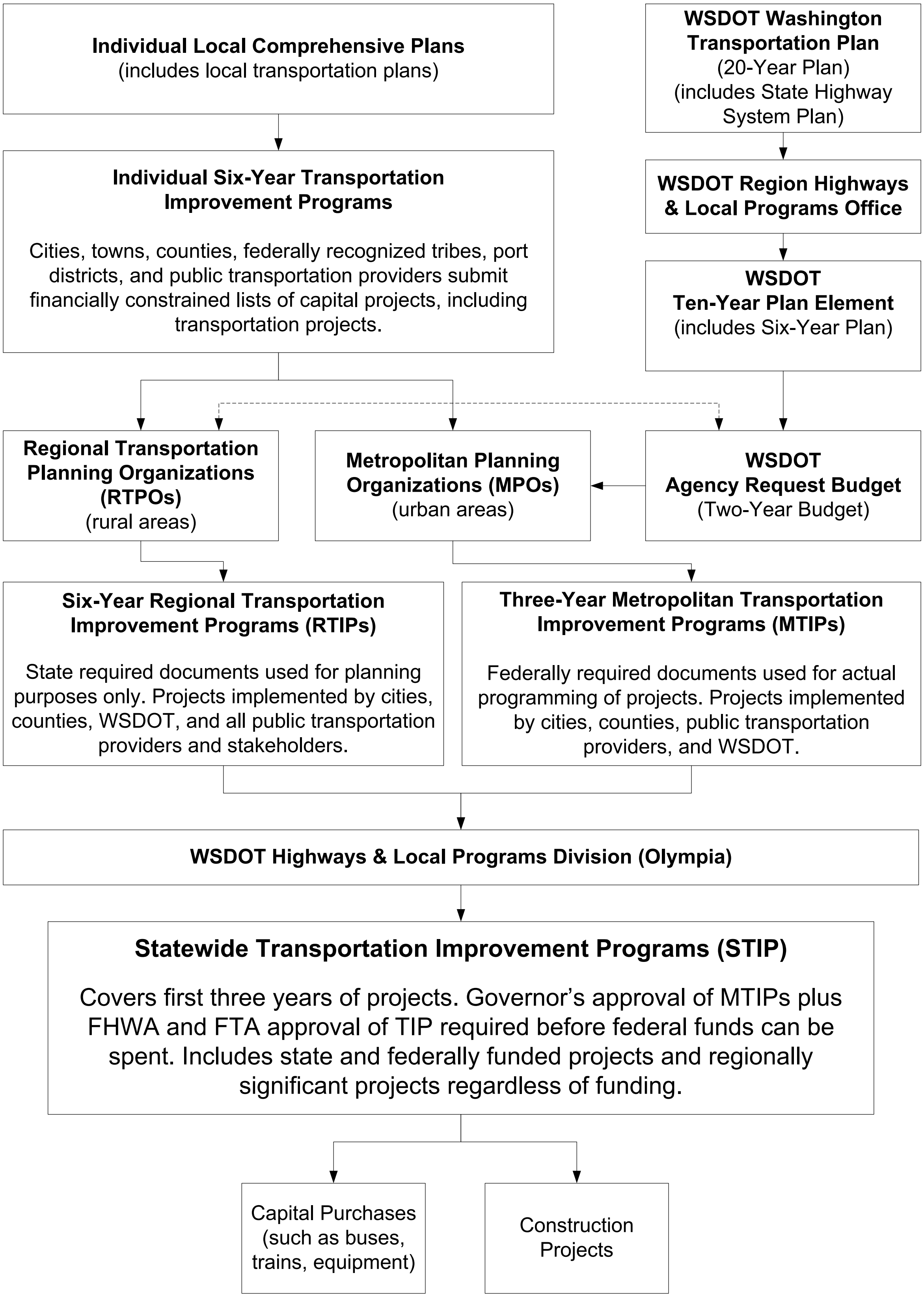
(4) Key Points of Planning and Programming at WSDOT

Following is a list of key points to remember about WSDOT's planning and programming processes:

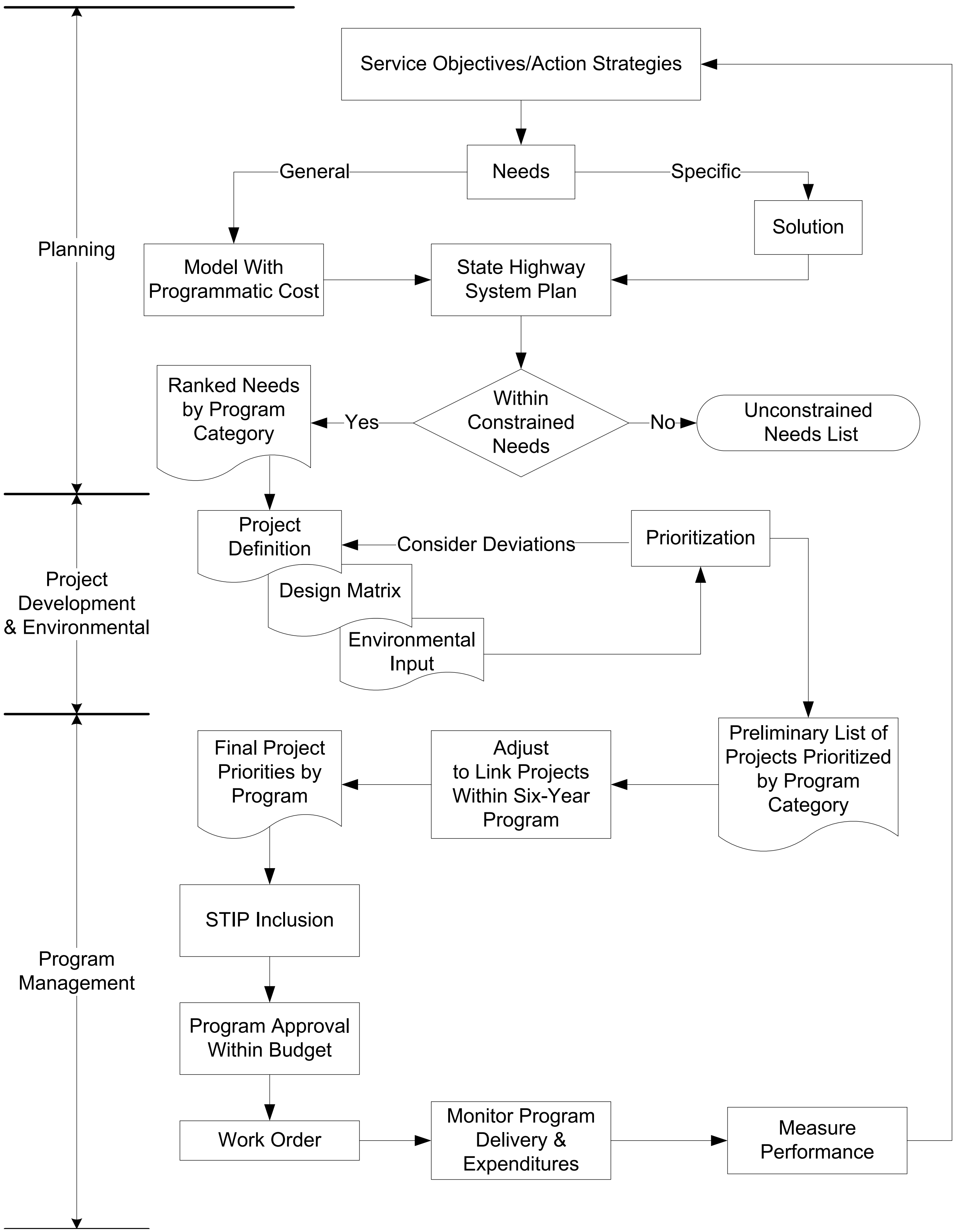
- Executive policy sets the direction for the WTP.
- Federal transportation laws and state transportation and land use laws guide solutions to address the needs for transportation facilities and services.
- The WTP is developed in partnership with MPOs and RTPOs and is tied to the land use plans of towns, cities, and counties.
- Region Planning offices are responsible for meeting many of the state and federal planning requirements.
- The SHSP is a component of the WTP.
- The SHSP sets forth service objectives and action strategies.
- Conceptual solutions are prioritized within most budget categories based on benefit/cost analyses to obtain the greatest benefit at the least cost.
- Tradeoffs between project categories are made by policy choice through a multitiered process.
- An improvement strategy must be listed in the HSP to be considered for project funding.



Relationship Between Transportation Plans and Planning Organizations
Exhibit 120-1



Transportation Improvement Programs
Exhibit 120-2



Linking Planning and Programming
Exhibit 120-3

Chapter 130 Project Development Sequence

130.01 General
130.02 References
130.03 Definitions
130.04 Project Development Sequence

130.01 General

The purpose of this chapter is to describe the project development sequence beginning with the Washington Transportation Plan (WTP) through the contract documents.

Projects go through a development process to ensure:

- All elements are considered.
- Local agencies and the public have an opportunity to comment on the department's proposed action.
- The final project successfully improves the functioning of the transportation system as identified in the purpose and need statement of the Project Summary.

Projects are measured for performance based on the objective of the projects using "before and after" analysis and are submitted to the Washington State Department of Transportation's (WSDOT's) quarterly performance report, the Gray Notebook.

Changes in project scope, schedule, and budget are reviewed and approved using the Project Control and Reporting Process and are controlled by and reported to the Washington State Legislature. Approved changes are reported in the Gray Notebook.

130.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.05.010, Priority programming for highway development

(2) Design Guidance

Environmental Procedures Manual, M 31-11, WSDOT
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Publications/Manuals/M31-11.htm

Local Agency Guidelines (LAG), M 36-63, WSDOT
www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals/fulltext/m36-63/LAGManual.pdf

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT
www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals/fulltext/M22-31/PlansPreparation.pdf

Programming and Operations Manual, M 12-51, *WSDOT*
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Publications/Manuals/M12-51.htm

(3) Supporting Information

Construction Manual, M 41-01, WSDOT
www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals/fulltext/m41-01/construction.pdf

130.03 Definitions

benefit cost (b/c) ratio A method for prioritizing highway Improvement projects. The b/c ratio is determined by dividing measurable benefits (based on improvement in performance) by measurable costs for a specific time period.

Capital Improvement and Preservation Program (CIPP) WSDOT's program of projects developed each biennium that delivers capital investments in highway, marine, and rail facilities that have been funded in part or in whole by the state Legislature. The CIPP is submitted to the Governor and, ultimately, by the Governor to the Legislature.

Capital Program Management System (CPMS) A computer database used to develop and manage the highway and marine construction programs. The CPMS allows users to establish and maintain project data and is used to manage and deliver statewide construction programs.

*From "*Understanding Flexibility in Transportation Design – Washington*," WSDOT, April 2005

context sensitive solutions (CSS) *A collaborative, interdisciplinary approach that involves all stakeholders to develop a transportation facility that fits its physical setting and preserves scenic, aesthetic, historic, and environmental resources, while maintaining safety and mobility. CSS is an approach that considers the total context within which a transportation improvement project will exist.**

Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) The division of the U.S. Department of Transportation with jurisdiction over the use of federal transportation funds for state highway and local road and street improvements.

Federal Transit Administration (FTA) The division of the U.S. Department of Transportation with jurisdiction over the use of federal funds for financial assistance to develop new transit systems and improve, maintain, and operate existing systems.

Geographic Information System (GIS) A computerized geographic information system used to store, analyze, and map data. Data may be used with GIS if the data includes the Accumulated Route Mile (ARM) or State Route Milepost (SRMP) programs. Global Positioning System (GPS) technology provides a means of collecting data and is an alternative to ARM and SRMP. WSDOT's primary desktop tool to view and analyze GIS data is ArcGIS software. GIS is used to gather and analyze data to support the purpose and need as described in the Project Summary.
http://wwwi.wsdot.wa.gov/gis/supportteam/default.asp

Highway Construction Program (HCP) A comprehensive multiyear program of highway Improvement and Preservation projects selected by the Legislature.

Highway System Plan (HSP) A WSDOT planning document that addresses the state highway system element of the Washington Transportation Plan (WTP). The HSP defines the service objectives, action strategies, and costs to maintain, operate, preserve, and improve the state highway system for 20 years. The HSP is the starting point for the state highway element of the CIPP and the state Highway Construction Program. It is periodically updated to reflect completed work and changing transportation needs, policies, and revenues. It compares highway needs to revenues, describes the "constrained" costs of the highway programs, and provides details of conceptual solutions and performance in the improvement program.

Metropolitan Planning Organization (MPO) A lead agency designated by the Governor to administer the federally required transportation planning process in a metropolitan area with a population over 50,000. The MPO is responsible for the 20-year long-range plan and Transportation Improvement Program (TIP).

National Highway System (NHS) A network of roadways designated by Congress that consists of all interstate routes; a large percentage of urban and rural principal arterials; and strategic highways and highway connectors.

pedestrian accident location (PAL) A highway section typically less than 0.25 mile where a six-year analysis of accident history indicates that the section has had four accidents in a 0.1-mile segment.

planning Transportation planning is a decision-making process required by federal and state law used to solve complex, interrelated transportation and land use problems (see Chapter 120).

Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) The project development activity that follows Project Definition and culminates in the completion of contract-ready documents and the engineer's cost estimate.

preliminary engineering (PE) A term used to describe the Project Delivery process from project scoping through PS&E review.

priority array A collection of similar needs identified in the HSP, prioritized based on the methodology adopted by WSDOT to meet the requirements of RCW 47.05.

Priority Array Tracking System (PATS) A database that allows tracking of highway needs and their solutions. The system is designed to ensure WSDOT addresses the highest-ranked transportation needs. Deficiencies are tracked for each strategy in the HSP.

Project Control and Reporting (PC&R) The Headquarters (HQ) Project Control and Reporting Office is responsible for monitoring, tracking, and reporting delivery of the Highway Construction Program in coordination with the Program Management offices in each of the six WSDOT regions and the Urban Corridors Office.

Project Summary A document that comprises the Project Definition, Design Decisions Summary, and Environmental Review Summary. The Project Summary ensures the project scope addresses the need identified in the HSP, the design complies with design guidelines, and potential environmental impacts and required permits are understood. The Project Summary is prepared by the region and reviewed and approved by Headquarters prior to budget submittal.

Regional Transportation Planning Organization (RTPO) A planning organization authorized by the Legislature in 1990 as part of the Growth Management Act. The RTPO is a voluntary organization with representatives from state and local governments that are responsible for coordinating transportation planning activities within a region.

Project Scoping See Chapter 300.

Statewide Transportation Improvement Program (STIP) A planning document that includes all federally funded projects and other regionally significant projects for a three-year period.

Surface Transportation Program (STP) A federal program established by Congress in 1991 that provides a source of federal funding for highway and bridge projects.

Transportation Improvement Program (TIP) A three-year transportation improvement strategy required from MPOs by Congress, which includes all federally funded or regionally significant projects.

Transportation Information and Planning Support (TRIPS) A mainframe computer system designed to provide engineering, maintenance, planning, and accounting staff with highway inventory, traffic, and accident data.

Transportation Planning Studies These studies identify the current functions of a corridor and forecast future demands on the system. Data collection and public involvement are used to forecast future needs that will improve the function of a state route.

Washington State Pavement Management System (WSPMS) A computer system that stores data about the pavement condition of all the highways in the state. Information available includes the latest field review and past contracts for every main line mile of state highway. Calculations are used to determine whether a given section of pavement is a *past due*, *due*, or *future due* preservation need.

Washington Transportation Plan (WTP) A WSDOT planning document developed in coordination with local governments, regional agencies, and private transportation providers. The WTP addresses the future of transportation facilities owned and operated by the state as well as those the state does not own but in which it has an interest. It identifies needed transportation investments, which are defined by service objectives and specific desired outcomes for each transportation mode.

130.04 Project Development Sequence

The *Design Manual* addresses the project development process beginning with scoping, through programming with the Legislature, to project development approval.

Project development is a multidisciplinary effort that evaluates a variety of solutions for project needs. The following information pertains to the needs identified in the Highway System Plan, which suggests a list of proposed solutions based on an incremental approach. This process bridges the gap from need identification to project construction. Project Definition documents provide the framework for further development of the project scope, schedule, and estimate, and they record key decisions made early in the project development process. The contract documents provide sufficient detail to enable contractors to construct the project. Final project design decisions are documented and stored in the Design Documentation Package (DDP).

Integrating planning, program development, and project delivery are important elements for the efficient and successful delivery of the transportation projects in the Capital Improvement and Preservation Program (CIPP) approved by the Legislature. The program development process needs a global understanding in order to eliminate later corrective modifications or rework. Project modifications and rework are costly, and they impact delivery commitments made to the Legislature and the public. These projects are developed such that information and processes flow seamlessly between the planning and implementation phases of a project.

Executive Order 1028.01 directs the department to adopt the principle of context sensitive solutions as a method that allows planners, programmers, and designers to best optimize the conditions and resources in the project vicinity. Planners, programmers, and designers are directed to:

- Engage with representatives of the affected communities from the project's inception.
- Ensure transportation objectives are clearly described and discussed with local communities in a process that encourages communication.
- Pay attention to and address community and citizen concerns.
- Ensure the project is a safe facility for both users and the community.

The following sections discuss the project development sequence.

(1) Washington State Highway System Plan (HSP)

The HSP is the modal element of the Washington Transportation Plan (WTP) that addresses the state highway system. The HSP, managed by the HQ Systems Analysis and Program Development (SA&PD) Section of the HQ Strategic Planning and Programming Division, includes a comprehensive assessment of existing and projected 20-year needs of the state highway system. Preservation of existing assets and safety, mobility, freight, bicycle, and pedestrian issues are among the 20-year needs. The HSP also lists potential solutions addressing these needs.

The SA&PD Section has the lead role in identifying state highway needs through coordination with WSDOT Headquarters, various technical groups, and region Planning Offices that coordinate with external Regional Transportation Planning Organizations (RTPOs) and Metropolitan Planning Organizations (MPOs). The SA&PD Section develops a 20-year plan of construction needs.

The HSP identifies the following four major programs used to manage the state-owned transportation system:

- Maintenance Program (M)
- Traffic Operations Program (Q)
- Preservation Program (P)
- Improvement Program (I)

You can access the HSP at: www.wsdot.wa.gov/planning/HSP.htm

(2) Highway Construction Program

In every odd-numbered year, the Legislature meets to consider and pass a Transportation Budget. One piece of this budget is funding for the Highway Construction Program. In order to control expenditures and track budget dollars and commitments, WSDOT groups capital projects into programs, subprograms, and categories based on the action strategies, objectives, and goals in the HSP. The department has identified three subprograms within the Preservation Program and six subprograms within the Improvement Program, four of which are shown in Exhibit 130-2.

(a) **Prioritizing Project Needs and Solutions**

Based on the Strategic Plan, WSDOT uses the following elements for future investments in Washington's transportation system:

- Preservation of existing assets
- Safety
- Mobility, including special needs transportation
- Economic vitality
- Environment quality and health
- Stewardship

With the Highway System Plan, WSDOT has developed an incremental tiered approach to address project needs. This approach separates strategies into three investment tiers to be implemented incrementally over the life of the 20-year plan, to maximize performance improvement for every dollar invested.

The tiered approach was developed to address emerging congestion and provide interim relief when funding for major improvement work is limited. The three tiers include:

1. **Tier I**

   Focuses on low-cost projects that deliver a high return on capital investment and have short delivery schedules. These include incident management, Intelligent Transportation Systems, access management projects, ramp modifications, turn lanes, and intersection improvements.

2. **Tier II**

   Focuses on moderate- to higher-cost projects that deliver potential network benefits to both highways and local roads. These include improvements to parallel corridors (including local roads) and adding auxiliary lanes and direct access ramps.

3. **Tier III**

   Focuses on highest-cost projects that can deliver corridor-wide benefits. These include commuter rail, HOV/HOT lanes, and interchange modifications. (See the Highway System Plan online for more information.)

This tiered approach is consistent with legislative direction provided in RCW 47.05.010.

(b) **Background Information**

The HQ Systems Analysis and Program Development (SA&PD) Section begins the prioritization process for a category of work, as required by state law, by identifying the potential benefit(s) associated with solving the needs. There are insufficient resources of time and money to analyze the benefits and costs of all needs in each category of the Highway System Plan each biennium, so an initial ranking system is used to reduce the effort. Because the primary objective of WSDOT's prioritization process is to provide the most beneficial improvement for the least possible cost, needs in each category are ranked based on their potential to provide a benefit. The process is as follows:

1. The HQ SA&PD Section works with the technical experts at Headquarters to develop the ranked lists and forwards them to the region program managers for their actions. They also place the lists of needs on the department's internal website with instructions on what to do with the ranked lists.

2. The regions scope projects to address the identified needs. The biennial programming instructions provide guidance to the regions on how far down the ranked "needs lists" to go.

   To obtain a consistent approach and eligibility for federal funding, WSDOT has developed a set of design matrices. Each design matrix sets forth the level of development for a given type of need that would be automatically approved by the department and FHWA (see Chapters 1100 and 1110).

   WSDOT has also developed a tool using GIS called the Transportation Analysis Business Area of the GIS Workbench. This tool provides users a common source of consistent data statewide.
   http://wwwi.wsdot.wa.gov/gis/SupportTeam/gis_workbench/default.asp

   Design teams and managers are encouraged to use the WSDOT *Project Management Online Guide* to map out the direction and the expectations for the project (www.wsdot.wa.gov/Projects/ProjectMgmt/Process.htm). They are also encouraged to make use of GIS and the Transportation Analysis Business Area of the GIS Workbench to analyze transportation and environmental resource data in the project area.

3. The regions prepare a cost estimate for the approved scope of work and compare the cost to the potential benefit in order to determine which projects are the most beneficial to construct.

In order to minimize disruptions to the public and take advantage of cost savings, the department may adjust priorities by combining solutions to HSP-identified needs into a single contract. However, adjusting priorities is generally limited to a six-year period.

(c) **Building the Program**

The basic building blocks for the Highway Construction Program are the project phases in the Capital Improvement and Preservation Program (CIPP).

1. **Carry-Forward Projects**

   "Carry-forward" project commitments typically represent job phases that will continue into the next biennium.

   The "book-building process," which includes a list of projects that will be started, continued, or completed in the next biennium, starts with carry-forward projects.

   The regions need to review carry-forward projects and determine the potential for project delays and cost overruns in the current biennium that could affect the next biennium. Maintain close coordination between the region, the HQ Project Control and Reporting Office, the HQ SA&PD Section, the Project Development Engineer, and the Construction Engineer to ensure projects under development and under construction are accomplished as planned.

2. **New Improvement Projects**

   New Improvement project phase starts are proposed based on improvement(s) in system performance and the cost-effectiveness of the proposed project. These new project starts represent needs that are identified in the Highway System Plan (HSP). The HQ SA&PD Section determined the needs the regions will develop projects to solve. Once Headquarters has established the level of needs to scope, the regions will begin scoping projects for the Highway Construction Program. Note: Regions cannot propose a project unless a need has been identified in the HSP.

   After the new projects have been selected and the carry-forward projects identified and their planned expenditures and schedules verified, the program of projects is developed and the project data is inputted into CPMS for balancing to the projected revenue—for both dollars and workforce (FTEs). Project summaries are then developed to document the proposed scope. The program of projects is shared with region executives and their input is incorporated. Adjustments are made to ensure the program can be accomplished within the constraints of the available workforce and facilities in the region.

(d) **Roles and Responsibilities Within WSDOT for Developing the Highway Construction Program**

WSDOT regions, working with support offices such as Environmental, Utilities, Right of Way, and Construction, develop and design the projects that deliver the transportation program. Designers have a tool called the *Project Management Online Guide* to assist with the process:
http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/Projects/ProjectMgmt/Process.htm

Executive Order 1032.00 directs the department to ensure capital projects are consistent with the principles of the project management process.

Executive Order 1028.01 directs the department to use the principles of context sensitive solutions (CSS), which includes public outreach, coordination, and collaborative decision making. Designers are encouraged to consider the public outreach process in the project work plan. WSDOT has developed a guide to assist designers: www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/Urban/PDF/UnderstandingFlexibilityInTransportationDesignWashington.pdf

The HQ Budget and Financial Analysis Office and various offices in the HQ Strategic Planning and Programming Division share responsibility for developing a capital investment plan. The plan includes a forecast of available revenue by fund source and recommends investment levels based on the Washington Transportation Plan. The HQ Systems Analysis and Program Development (SA&PD) Section issues programming instructions, based on the preliminary budget targets, which assist the regions as they begin scoping highway projects.

Once a ten-year plan has been determined and the proposed projects scoped, the SA&PD Section finalizes a budget request, including a project list for submittal to the Legislature. The Legislature sets funding levels for the different programs within WSDOT that will deliver the project list for the funding amount identified in the scoping document.

(e) **Categories of Work**

The HSP presents the budgets for the Maintenance (M), Operations (Q), Preservation (P), and Improvement (I) programs. Strategies and conceptual solutions are limited to the Preservation and Improvement programs. Each of these programs is divided into subprograms, as shown in the Exhibits 130-1 and 130-2.

(3) Project Summary

The Project Summary is developed in the region when a project is proposed for programming. The intent of the Project Summary is to initiate the development of a project by identifying the need that generated the project and the proposed solution to solve that need.

The regions prepare the Project Summary during project scoping. The information provided guides the project through the design process to project approval.

The Project Summary:

- Defines the purpose and need for the project and spells out the scope of work.
- Includes a cost/benefit measure to determine the project's cost-effectiveness.
- Documents the design decisions or assumptions that the region made while determining the project scope.
- Identifies the major factors that will influence the scope, schedule, and budget and includes a cost increase factor for unidentified risks.
- Establishes initial preliminary engineering, right of way, and construction cost estimates.
- Documents the project delivery schedule.
- Requires approval by the HQ SA&PD Section prior to submittal to the Legislature for programming consideration.
- Documents the potential environmental impacts and permits that may be required.

Regions are encouraged to place special emphasis on project scoping, estimating, and scheduling during program development as a means to verify that program delivery stays within the appropriated dollars and workforce. Resources available to the regions include: Highway System Plan; route development plans, and other approved corridor studies; Design Matrices; *Roadside Classification Plan*; Environmental Workbench and other planning; and design and environmental documents to ensure project scoping is consistent.

The initial environmental classification and documentation required for the project is established in the Environmental Review Summary (ERS) section of the Project Summary. Environmental classification at the Project Summary stage has several benefits. It helps clarify the impacts associated with a project and also helps to establish a realistic schedule and PE cost estimate. All projects require supporting State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA) documentation. For projects eligible for federal funding, National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) documentation is also required.

When scoping projects, regions are encouraged to take full advantage of expertise available from the HQ Systems Analysis and Program Development (SA&PD) Section of the Strategic Planning and Programming Division, FHWA, the HQ Environmental Services Office, and local agencies. These resources can help the regions evaluate a project's impacts and provide the appropriate project direction. They will also help ensure all aspects are considered and the proposed solution is eligible for available funding.

The HQ SA&PD Section coordinates review of the Project Summary and forwards any comments to the regions for resolution prior to approval. Once all comments and outstanding issues are resolved, the Project Summary can be approved and copies distributed.

(4) Environmental Document

The environmental document is a statement that identifies impacts to the natural and constructed environment as a result of a project and its potential mitigation. The statement may consist of one or two pages for categorically exempted projects, a SEPA Checklist, Documented Categorical Exclusion (DCE), or an Environmental Assessment (EA) or Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) for major projects (see Chapter 220).

(5) Design Documentation Package (DDP)

The DDP, which is a portion of the Project File, is a formal document of design considerations and conclusions reached in the development of a project. The Project File records various design recommendations that are reviewed within the department and, when approved, become the project design (see Chapter 300).

(6) Right of Way/Limited Access Plans

Right of way/limited access plans are the official state documents used to acquire real estate, property, and access rights. These plans determine rights of access from abutting property owners, interchange/intersection spacing, access points per mile, or other selective approaches to a highway facility. Right of way plans are used to obtain the "Order of Public Use and Necessity," which is the authority to acquire real property and property rights under eminent domain.

The establishment of limited access control is considered whenever major improvements, reconstruction, relocation, significant new rights of way, or new facilities are required. (See Chapters 520, 530, and 540, and the *Plans Preparation Manual* for more information.)

(7) Contract Documents

The contract Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) are the final documents needed for the advertisement of a construction contract. Contract plans conform to the basic design features approved in the Project Summary, environmental documents, and Design Documentation Package. Present the work in the plans and contract specifications in a clear and concise manner to avoid misinterpretation. A tool available to the designer to check whether required items are addressed during the PS&E preparation is the "PS&E Review Checklist," available at: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/ProjectDev/. Projects may go through PS&E preparation, but they will not be advertised for construction until the required work and approvals are complete (see the *Plans Preparation Manual*).

Program P – Highway Preservation

P-1 ROADWAY
- Paving/Safety Restoration

P-2 STRUCTURES
- Preservation
- Catastrophic Reduction

P-3 OTHER FACILITIES
- Rest Areas
- Unstable Slopes
- Weigh Stations
- Major Drainage/ Electrical

Program Elements: Highway Preservation
Exhibit 130-1

Program I – Highway Improvement

I-1 MOBILITY
- Urban
- Rural
- HOV Lanes
- Urban Bike Connection

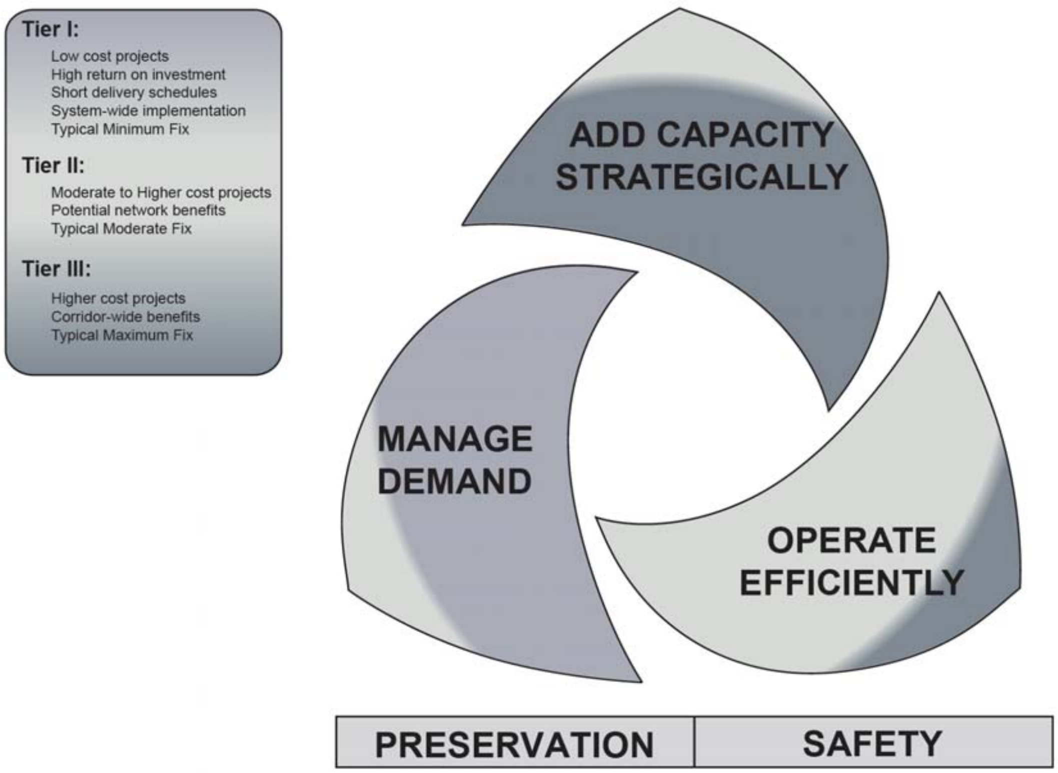
I-2 SAFETY
- Collision Reduction
- Collision Prevention

I-3 ECONOMIC INITIATIVES
- All-Weather Highways
- Trunk System Completion
- New Safety Rest Areas
- Bridge Restriction
- Scenic Byways
- Bike Touring Routes
- Avalanche/Flood Control

I-4 ENVIRONMENTAL RETROFIT
- Stormwater Runoff
- Fish Barrier Removal
- Noise Reduction
- Chronic Environmental Deficiencies
- Managing Environmental Mitigation Sites

Program Elements: Highway Improvement
Exhibit 130-2

**Washington State Highway System Plan: Implementation –
Safety, Economic Vitality, and Mobility Strategies**



Highway System Plan Implementation
Exhibit 130-3

Chapter 210 Public Involvement and Hearings

210.01 General
210.02 References
210.03 Definitions
210.04 Public Involvement
210.05 Public Hearings
210.06 Environmental Hearing
210.07 Corridor Hearing
210.08 Design Hearing
210.09 Limited Access Hearing
210.10 Combined Hearings
210.11 Administrative Appeal Hearing
210.12 Follow-Up Hearing
210.13 Documentation

210.01 General

The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) strives to keep the public informed about transportation issues, involve the public in transportation decision making, and make transportation decisions based on the public's best interests.

One of the best ways to achieve WSDOT's goals is to collaborate with the public, community groups, and various agencies. These participants often have differing, and sometimes conflicting, perspectives and interests. In addition, many participants and organizations are not able to spend the time and effort required to fully engage in transportation decision making. Despite these challenges, active collaboration:

- Gives WSDOT access to important information and new ideas.
- Puts us in a position to help solve problems and resolve conflicts.
- Creates a sense of community.
- Fosters greater acceptance of projects.
- Helps us build and sustain a credible and trusting relationship with the public.
- Ultimately leads to transportation improvements that better meet the public's needs and desires.

When collaborating with the public about transportation projects or issues, WSDOT uses more formal techniques like public hearings, direct mail, and presentations to city councils and legislators; as well as less formal but equally important techniques, like telephone and e-mail discussions, meetings with community groups, media relations, and project Internet pages.

Law requires that many types of capital transportation projects go through a formal public hearing process; thus, the legal procedures necessary for public hearings is the primary focus of this chapter. Public involvement plans are briefly discussed, and referrals to WSDOT's communications resources are included to further guide their development and implementation.

210.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

United States Code (USC) Title 23, Highways, Sec. 128, Public hearings

USC Title 23, Highways, Sec. 771.111, Early coordination, public involvement, and project development

23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) 200.7, FHWA Title VI Policy

23 CFR 200.9(b)(4), Develop procedures for the collection of statistical data of participants and beneficiaries of state highway programs

23 CFR 200.9(b)(12), Develop Title VI information for dissemination to the general public

23 CFR 450.212, Public involvement

28 CFR Part 35, Nondiscrimination on the basis of disability in state and local government services

49 CFR Part 27, Nondiscrimination on the basis of disability in programs or activities receiving federal financial assistance

Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (28 CFR Part 36, Appendix A)

Civil Rights Restoration Act of 1987

Executive Order 12898, Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations

Executive Order 13166, Improving Access to Services for Persons with Limited English Proficiency

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.50, Highway Access Management

RCW 47.52, Limited Access Facilities

Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended

Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964

(2) Design Guidance

Design Manual, Chapter 220, for environmental references, and Division 14 chapters for access control and right of way references

Environmental Procedures Manual, M 31-11
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Publications/Manuals/M31-11.htm

HQ Access and Hearings Engineer, (360) 705-7251, and home page:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/accessandhearings

(3) Supporting Information

Improving the Effectiveness of Public Meetings and Hearings, Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) Guidebook

Public Involvement Techniques for Transportation Decision-Making, FHWA September 1996; provides tools and techniques for effective public involvement:
www.fhwa.dot.gov/reports/pittd/cover.htm

Relocation brochures: www.wsdot.wa.gov/realestate

WSDOT *Communications Manual* for public involvement:
wwwi.wsdot.wa.gov/Communications/

WSDOT Context Sensitive Solutions Internet site and national context sensitive site:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/biz/csd/ExecutiveOrder.htm
www.contextsensitivesolutions.org/

210.03 Definitions

affidavit of publication A notarized written declaration stating that a ***notice of hearing*** (or ***notice of opportunity for a hearing***) was published in the legally prescribed manner.

affidavit of service by mailing A notarized written declaration stating that the limited access hearing packet was mailed at least 15 days prior to the hearing and entered into the record at the hearing.

auxiliary aids and services (1) Qualified interpreters, notetakers, transcription services, written materials, telephone handset amplifiers, assistive listening devices, assistive listening systems, telephones compatible with hearing aids, open and closed captioning, telecommunications devices for deaf persons (TDDs), videotext displays, or other effective methods for making aurally delivered materials available to individuals with hearing limitations; (2) Qualified readers, taped texts, audio recordings, Brailled materials, large print materials, or other effective methods for making visually delivered materials available to individuals with visual impairments; (3) Acquisition or modification of equipment or devices; (4) Other similar services and actions; and (5) Providing and disseminating information, written materials, and notices in languages other than English, where appropriate.

context sensitive solutions (CSS) *A collaborative, interdisciplinary approach that involves all stakeholders to develop a transportation facility that fits its physical setting and preserves scenic, aesthetic, historic, and environmental resources, while maintaining safety and mobility. CSS is an approach that considers the total context within which a transportation improvement project will exist.** (See 210.02 and 210.04(2) for more information).

*From "*Understanding Flexibility in Transportation Design – Washington*," WSDOT, April 2005

court reporter A person with a license to write and issue official accounts of judicial or legislative proceedings.

findings and order A document containing the findings and conclusions of a limited access hearing approved by the Environmental and Engineering Programs Director (see 210.09(12) and (13)).

hearing An assembly to which the public is invited and at which participation is encouraged. Types of hearings include:

- ***administrative appeal hearing*** A formal process whereby a property owner may appeal WSDOT's implementation of access management legislation. The appeal is heard by an administrative law judge (ALJ), who renders a decision. (See Chapter 540 for administrative appeal hearing procedures.)
- ***combined hearing*** A hearing held when there are public benefits to be gained by combining environmental, corridor, design, and/or limited access subjects.

- ***corridor hearing*** A formal or informal hearing that presents the corridor alternatives to the public for review and comment before a commitment is made to any one route or location. This type of hearing is beneficial for existing corridors with multiple Improvement projects programmed over a long duration.
- ***design hearing*** A formal or informal hearing that presents the design alternatives to the public for review and comment before the selection of a preferred alternative.
- ***environmental hearing*** A formal or informal hearing documenting that social, economic, and environmental impacts have been considered and that public opinion has been solicited.
- ***limited access hearing*** A formal hearing that gives local public officials, owners of abutting properties, and other interested persons an opportunity to be heard about the limitation of access to the highway system.
- ***formal hearing format*** A hearing conducted by a moderator using a formal agenda, overseen by a hearing examiner, and recorded by a court reporter, as required by law. Limited access hearings require the use of the formal hearing format (see 210.05(3)).
- ***informal hearing format*** A hearing where oral comments are recorded by a court reporter, as required by law. An informal hearing often uses the "open house" format (see 210.04(1)(a)). A formal agenda and participation by a hearing examiner are optional.

hearing agenda An outline of the actual public hearing elements, used with formal hearings. (See 210.05(9)(a) for contents.)

Hearing Coordinator The Access and Hearings Manager within the Headquarters (HQ) Access and Hearings Section, (360) 705-7266.

hearing examiner An administrative law judge from the Office of Administrative Hearings, or a WSDOT designee, appointed to moderate a hearing.

hearing script A written document of text to be presented orally by department representatives at a hearing.

hearing summary Documentation prepared by the region and approved by Headquarters that summarizes environmental, corridor, and design hearings. (See 210.05(10) for content requirements.)

hearing transcript A document prepared by the court reporter that transcribes verbatim all oral statements made during the hearing, including public comments. This document becomes part of the official hearing record.

NEPA National Environmental Policy Act.

notice of appearance A form provided by WSDOT for anyone wanting to receive a copy of the findings and order and the adopted limited access plan (see 210.09(3) and (8)).

notice of hearing (or ***hearing notice)*** A published advertisement that a public hearing will be held.

notice of opportunity for a hearing An advertised offer to hold a public hearing.

order of hearing The official establishment of a hearing date by the State Design Engineer.

prehearing packet A concise, organized collection of all necessary prehearing data, prepared by the region and approved by the HQ Access and Hearings Engineer prior to the hearing (see 210.05(4) and Exhibit 210-3).

project management plan A formal, approved document that defines how the project is executed, monitored, and controlled. It may be in summary or detailed form and may be composed of one or more subsidiary management plans and other planning documents. For further information, see the *Project Management Online Guide*: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Projects/ProjectMgmt/Process.htm

public involvement plan A plan to collaboratively involve the public in decision making, tailored to the specific needs and conditions of a project and the people and communities it serves. It is often part of a broader communications plan.

relocation assistance program A program that establishes uniform procedures for relocation assistance that will ensure legal entitlements and provide fair, equitable, and consistent treatment to persons displaced by WSDOT-administered projects, as defined in the *Right of Way Manual*.

résumé An official notification of action taken by WSDOT following adoption of a findings and order (see 210.09(14)).

SEPA State Environmental Policy Act.

study plan A term associated with environmental procedures, this plan proposes an outline or "road map" of the environmental process to be followed during the development of a project that requires complex NEPA documentation. (See 210.06 and the *Environmental Procedures Manual*.)

210.04 Public Involvement

Developing and implementing an effective plan for collaboration with the public:

- Is critical to the success of WSDOT's project delivery effort.
- Provides an opportunity to understand and achieve diverse community and transportation goals.

Effective public involvement must begin with clearly defined, project-related goals that focus on specific issues, specific kinds of input needed, and specific people or groups that need to be involved. The more detailed a public involvement plan, the greater its chances of obtaining information WSDOT can use in decision making.

Transportation projects with high visibility or community issues or effects often attract the attention of a broad range of interested people. These types of projects will best benefit from early public involvement, which can influence the project's success and community acceptance.

Developing a profile (through demographic analysis) of the affected community is critical to achieving successful public involvement and should be the first order of business when developing a public involvement plan. The profile will enable the department to tailor its outreach efforts toward the abilities and needs of the community.

Individuals from minority and ethnic groups and low-income households, who are traditionally underserved by transportation, often find participation difficult. While these groups form a growing portion of the population, particularly in urban areas, historically they have experienced barriers to participation in the public decision-making process and are therefore underrepresented. These barriers arise from both the historical nature of the public involvement process and from cultural, linguistic, and economic differences. For example, a community made up of largely senior citizens (with limited mobility/automobile usage) may mean:

- Meetings/open houses are planned in locations easily accessible to them, such as senior centers and neighborhood community centers.
- Meetings are scheduled in the mornings or midday to accommodate individuals who prefer not to leave home after dark.
- Meetings are scheduled in the evenings to accommodate persons who work during the day.

A project's affected area might consist of a population with limitations in speaking or understanding English. This may entail:

- Developing/disseminating materials in other languages, as appropriate.
- Having a certified translator on hand at the meetings.

Extra effort may be needed to elicit involvement from people unaccustomed to participating in the public involvement process. They often have different needs and perspectives than those who traditionally participate in transportation decision making, and they may have important, unspoken issues that should be heard. They not only may have greater difficulty getting to jobs, schools, recreation, and shopping than the population at large, but also they are often unaware of transportation proposals that could dramatically change their lives.

NEPA and SEPA environmental policies and procedures are intended to provide relevant environmental information to public officials, agencies, and citizens, and allow public input to be considered before decisions are made. There are also various other laws, regulations, and policies that emphasize public involvement, including 23 CFR, Title VI of the Civil Rights Act, the Americans with Disabilities Act, and Executive Orders 12898 and 13166.

WSDOT's collaborative process with the public should be open, honest, strategic, consistent, inclusive, and continual. Initiating a project in an atmosphere of collaboration and partnership can go a long way toward providing equal opportunities for all parties (local, state, tribal, private, nonprofit, or federal) to participate in a project vision. This collaboration requires an intensive communications effort that is initiated during project visioning and extends through construction and eventual operation of the facility.

Department specialists in public communications, environmental procedures, traffic engineering, real estate services, and limited access control are routinely involved with public outreach efforts and project hearings. Depending on the scale and complexity of a project, the region is encouraged to engage the participation of interdisciplinary experts when developing a public involvement plan and communicating project details.

(1) Public Involvement Plan

The region develops a public involvement plan for its own use and guidance. To engage the public, share the decision-making process, identify issues, and resolve concerns, the region communicates with the affected community through group presentations, open house meetings, newspaper articles, fliers, and other methods. The public involvement plan includes methods that will elicit the best participation from the community, including traditionally underrepresented groups.

Developing an effective public involvement plan is a strategic effort. WSDOT must identify audiences, messages, strategies, and techniques that will meet the unique needs of a proposed transportation project, as well as the needs of the public.

The ultimate goal of the public involvement plan is to allow members of the public opportunities throughout the process to:

- Learn about the project.
- Provide information and options.
- Collaborate.
- Provide input intended to influence WSDOT decisions.

The plan will outline ways to identify and involve the communities affected by the project; provide them with accessible information through reader-friendly documents, graphics, plans, and summaries; and involve them in decision making.

An effective public involvement plan:

- Is tailored to the project.
- Encourages interactive communication.
- Demonstrates to residents that their input is valued and utilized.
- Includes all affected communities.
- Identifies and resolves issues early in the project development process.
- Ensures public access to relevant and comprehensible information.
- Informs the public of the purpose, need for, and benefits of the proposed action.
- Informs the public about the process that will be used to make decisions.
- Gains public support.
- Provides equal opportunity, regardless of disability, race, national origin, color, gender, or income.

The region Communications and Environmental offices can provide expertise in developing a public involvement plan tailored to a specific project. The HQ Access and Hearings Section specializes in procedures for public hearings. Real Estate Services personnel can provide expertise regarding acquisition, relocation assistance, and other related programs. Enlisting the support of these groups is essential to the success of WSDOT projects.

WSDOT recognizes local, state, federal, and tribal staff and elected officials as active sponsors of proposed projects. Those officials might help develop and implement the public involvement plan. Early and continued contact with these resources is key to the success of a project.

The public involvement plan might include:

- Objectives.
- Strategies.
- Tactics (or a list of proposed activities).
- Proposed time schedule to accomplish each project.
- Methods to track public comments.
- Methods used to consider comments during the decision-making process, including follow-up procedures.
- Personnel, time, and funds needed to carry out the plan.
- Identification of the project partners and stakeholders.

Early use of demographics can help identify the public to be involved. After identification, a variety of methods can be chosen to encourage the most effective public involvement. This might include (directly or indirectly) any or all of the following:

- Adjacent property owners and tenants
- Indian tribes
- Low-income groups
- Minority groups
- Cooperating and participating agencies
- Local, state, and federal government staff and elected officials
- Community groups such as clubs, civic groups, business groups, environmental groups, labor unions, disability advocacy groups, and churches
- Commuters and the traveling public
- Emergency and utility service providers
- Adjacent billboard owners and clients
- The general public and others known to be affected
- Others expressing interest

The following are examples of common outreach methods:

- Public and open house meetings
- Drop-in information centers or booths
- Advisory committee meetings
- Design workshops
- Meetings with public officials
- Individual (one-on-one) meetings
- Meetings with community groups
- Project Internet pages
- WSDOT project e-mail alert lists
- Surveys
- Questionnaires
- Telephone hot lines
- Using established media relations and contacts
- Internet blogs
- Direct mail

- Individual e-mails and letters
- Advisory committees and groups
- Public hearings

(a) **Public Meetings and Open Houses**

Public meetings range from large informational workshops to small groups using one-on-one meetings with individuals. They are less formal than hearings. The region evaluates the desired outcome from a meeting, decides how the input will be tracked, and then plans accordingly.

- Open house meetings can be effective for introducing a project to the public and stimulating an exchange of ideas.
- Small meetings are useful for gaining information from community groups, underrepresented groups, neighborhood groups, and advisory committees.
- Workshop formats, where large groups are organized into small discussion groups, serve to maximize the participation of all attendees while discouraging domination by a few groups or individuals.

(b) **Follow-Up Procedures**

Effective public involvement is an ongoing collaborative exchange, and it is necessary to provide follow-up information several times during a large project to maintain a continuing exchange of information.

At significant stages, the region provides information about the project. Follow-up information conveys, as accurately as possible, how public input was considered during development of the project.

It may become necessary to revise the public involvement plan as the project evolves, conditions change, oppositional groups emerge, or new issues arise. Sometimes innovative methods must be used to ensure the inclusion of affected community members. This is especially important for underrepresented groups, such as minority and low-income groups, and in communities where a significant percentage of the affected population does not speak English. Consider the need for translators, interpreters, and providing written information in languages other than English. Reference information on limited English proficiency is provided in 210.04(2)(d). A resident advisory committee can often help identify community issues and concerns as well as recommend effective methods for public involvement.

(2) Public Involvement References

Following are a number of recommended publications, references, and training courses available to assist regions in developing public involvement plans for their projects.

(a) **WSDOT Project Management Online Guide**

A project's public involvement plan is an essential element of the overall project management plan. The WSDOT *Project Management Online Guide* is an Internet resource intended to support delivery of transportation projects through effective project management and task planning. The guide includes best practices, tools, templates, and examples to enhance the internal and external communication processes: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Projects/ProjectMgmt/Process.htm

(b) **WSDOT Communications Intranet Page**

The WSDOT Communications Intranet page provides guidance for effective communications. This resource includes a *Communications Manual*, key messaging, and WSDOT's communications philosophy, and is an excellent resource for developing a public involvement plan:
wwwi.wsdot.wa.gov/Communications/

(c) **Context Sensitive Solutions and Community Involvement**

A proposed transportation project must consider both its physical aspects as a facility serving specific transportation objectives and its effects on the aesthetic, social, economic, and environmental values within a larger community setting. context sensitive solutions is a collaborative, interdisciplinary approach that involves the community in the development of a project. WSDOT's philosophy encourages collaboration and consensus-building as highly advantageous to all parties to help avoid delays and other costly obstacles to project implementation. WSDOT endorses the context sensitive solutions approach for all projects, large and small, from early planning through construction and eventual operation of the facility. For further information, see WSDOT Executive Order E-1028.01 on context sensitive solutions:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/biz/csd/ExecutiveOrder.htm
http://wwwi.wsdot.wa.gov/docs/

Additionally, the following HQ Design, Highways and Local Programs, and Environment Internet pages offer an excellent array of publications, training, and resources for public involvement:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/Urban/Default.htm
www.wsdot.wa.gov/TA/Operations/LocalPlanning/contextsensitivesolutions.html
www.wsdot.wa.gov/TA/Operations/LocalPlanning/Research.html
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Environment/EJ/

(d) **Federal Highway Administration References**

Improving the Effectiveness of Public Meetings and Hearings, FHWA Guidebook, provides a variety of techniques and processes based on the practical community involvement experience of its authors:
http://ntl.bts.gov/DOCS/nhi.html

Public Involvement Techniques for Transportation Decision-making, FHWA September 1996, provides tools and techniques for effective public involvement:
www.fhwa.dot.gov/reports/pittd/cover.htm

How to Engage Low-Literacy and Limited-English-Proficiency Populations in Transportation Decisionmaking, FHWA 2006, provides tools and techniques for identifying and including these populations:
www.fhwa.dot.gov/hep/lowlim/index.htm

23 CFR 630, Subpart J, Final Rule on Work Zone Safety and Mobility, Work Zone Public Information and Outreach Strategies. This Internet guide is designed to help transportation agencies plan and implement effective public information and outreach campaigns to mitigate the effects of road construction work zones:
www.ops.fhwa.dot.gov/wz/info_and_outreach/index.htm

(3) Legal Compliance Statements

All public announcements shall include the required statements relative to the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) and Title VI legislation. The region Communications Office and the HQ Communications Office Intranet page can provide the current version of both of these statements for legal compliance.

(a) **ADA Compliance**

The ADA and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act require WSDOT to inform the general public of its obligation to ensure programs and activities are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities. For publications, the notice must provide a way to obtain the materials in alternative formats (such as Braille or taped). For public meetings and hearings, the notice must inform the public that reasonable accommodations can be made for a variety of needs.

The public meeting/hearing facility must always meet minimum ADA accessibility standards (such as ramps for wheelchair access, wide corridors, and accessible rest rooms). Additionally, WSDOT must provide, upon request, reasonable accommodations to afford equal access for persons with disabilities to information, meetings, and so on. Reasonable accommodations can include services and auxiliary aids such as qualified interpreters, transcription services, assistive listening devices for persons who are deaf or hard of hearing, or additional lighting for persons with visual impairments. The WSDOT Office of Equal Opportunity can provide assistance for reasonable accommodation provisions.

(b) **Title VI of the Civil Rights Act**

Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 requires that WSDOT inform the general public of its obligation to ensure that no person shall, on the grounds of race, color, national origin and/or sex, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be otherwise discriminated against under any of its federally funded programs and activities.

210.05 Public Hearings

By state and federal law, certain capital transportation projects propose actions that require a public hearing. The remainder of this chapter provides guidance on public hearing procedures.

The common types of public hearings associated with WSDOT projects include environmental, design, corridor, and limited access hearings, which are discussed in subsequent sections. The guidance in this chapter covers project actions that trigger a hearing and the procedures for effectively planning, conducting, and completing the hearing process.

The different types of public hearings follow similar steps for planning and preparation of project materials and information. These steps facilitate efficient reviews and approvals required for the hearing to proceed as planned. Special attention to the scheduling of deliverables and notifications leading up to the hearing help the process progress smoothly.

Public hearing formats are either *formal* or *informal*. Limited access hearings are always conducted as formal hearings. An informal process can be used for most other hearings.

Hearings are often conducted in accordance with NEPA/SEPA procedures for public involvement during the environmental documentation phase of the project. The region reviews the requirements for hearings during the early stages of project development and before completion of the draft environmental documents.

(1) Coordinating the Hearing

Preparing for and conducting a successful public hearing requires considerable coordination and effort. The best way to do this is by establishing a support team to identify and carry out the tasks and arrangements. It is crucial to identify and schedule tasks and deliverables well in advance of a public hearing. A project team might enlist the support of region specialists from Communications, Environmental, Government Relations, Right of Way, Real Estate, and Traffic offices, as well as the HQ Hearing Coordinator, HQ NEPA Policy staff, Office of Equal Opportunity, and others involved with the project. The following exhibits and narrative help identify whether a public hearing is required and how to prepare.

(2) Selecting the Hearing Type

By law, certain project actions or proposed conditions require that specific types of public hearings are conducted. Exhibit 210-1 identifies project conditions and their associated hearing requirements. If one or more of the conditions in Exhibit 210-1 occurs, a notice of opportunity for a hearing is required by federal and state law (USC Title 23 §771.111 and RCW 47.52) and by WSDOT policy. Consult the Hearing Coordinator in the HQ Access and Hearings Section, as well as project environmental specialists, for hearing requirements.

(3) Selecting the Hearing Format

The types of public hearing formats used by WSDOT are known as formal and informal. Hearing formats are different than hearing types. In some cases, the hearing type will dictate the required format, such as with limited access hearings. The following text and Exhibit 210-2 provide guidance on formats.

(a) **Formal Hearings**

A formal hearing is conducted by a moderator using a formal agenda, overseen by a hearing examiner, and recorded by a court reporter, as required by law. Limited access hearings and administrative appeal hearings require the use of the formal hearing format. For projects that require a formal public hearing, it is common for WSDOT to hold a public open house preceding the hearing.

The following are required for all formal hearings:

- Hearing notice with a fixed time and date (see 210.05(5) and (6))
- Fixed agenda and script
- Hearing examiner
- Hearing moderator (may be the hearing examiner)
- Court reporter

- Specified comment period
- Hearing summary (see 210.05(10))

In addition to providing oral comments, people can write opinions on the comment forms available at or after the hearing and submit them before the announced deadline.

(b) **Informal Hearings**

An informal hearing is also known as an open format hearing. Individual oral comments are recorded by a court reporter. The presence of a hearing examiner and a formal agenda are optional.

These events are typically scheduled for substantial portions of an afternoon or evening so people can drop by at their convenience and fully participate. Activities usually include attending a presentation, viewing exhibits, talking to project staff, and submitting written or oral comments.

The following items are features of an open format (or informal) hearing:

- They can be scheduled to accommodate people's work schedules.
- Brief presentations about the project and hearing process are advertised at preset times in the hearing notice. Presentations can be live, videotaped, or computerized.
- Agency or technical staff is present to answer questions and provide details of the project.
- Information is presented buffet-style, allowing participants access to specific information.
- Graphics, maps, photos, models, videos, and related documents are frequently used.
- People have the opportunity to clarify their comments by reviewing materials and asking questions before commenting.
- People can comment formally before a court reporter, or they can write opinions on comment forms and submit them before the announced deadline.

(4) Hearing Preparation

When region staff have determined that a formal or informal public hearing will be held, they should contact the HQ Hearing Coordinator to discuss preliminary details. The HQ Hearing Coordinator specializes in assisting with preparations for the hearing and will usually attend. Other WSDOT groups involved with the project and tasked with developing and implementing the public involvement plan can assist with hearing preparations and provide assistance at the hearing.

The exhibits in this chapter can be used as checklists to identify important milestones and work products needed. Important elements include setting an initial target date for the hearing and agreeing on staff roles and responsibilities at the hearing.

(a) **Setting the Hearing Date and Other Arrangements.**

The State Design Engineer sets the hearing date at the recommendation of the HQ Hearing Coordinator. This is known as the order of hearing. Final arrangements for the hearing date can be handled by telephone or brief check-in meetings between the HQ Hearing Coordinator and the region.

The region proposes a hearing date based on the following considerations:

- Convenient for community participation. Contact local community and government representatives to avoid possible conflict with local activities. Consider times and locations that are most appropriate for the community.
- For corridor and design hearings, at least 30 days after circulation of the draft environmental impact statement (DEIS) or the published notice of availability of any other environmental document.
- In most cases, more than 45 days after submittal of the prehearing packet.

The region makes other arrangements as follows:

- Reviews the location of the hearing hall to ensure it is easily accessed by public transportation (whenever possible), convenient for community participation, and ADA accessible.
- Arranges for a court reporter.
- Requests that the HQ Hearing Coordinator provide a hearing examiner for all limited access hearings and for other hearings, if desired.
- Develops a hearing agenda for all limited access hearings and for other types of hearings, if desired.
- If requested in response to the hearing notice, provides communication auxiliary aids and other reasonable accommodations required for persons with disabilities. Examples include interpreters for persons who are deaf; audio equipment for persons who are hard of hearing; language interpreters; and the use of guide animals and Braille or taped information for persons with visual impairments.
- All public hearings and meetings require the development of procedures for the collection of statistical data (race, color, sex, and national origin) on state highway program participants and beneficiaries such as relocatees, impacted citizens, and affected communities. Public Involvement Forms should be available for meeting attendees to complete. This form requests attendees to provide information on their race, ethnicity, national origin, and gender. It is available in English, Spanish, Korean, Russian, Vietnamese, Tagalog, and Traditional and Simplified Chinese at:
  www.wsdot.wa.gov/equalopportunity/PoliciesRegs/titlevi.htm
- If demographics indicate that 5% or 1,000 persons or more in the affected project area speak a language other than English, vital documents, advertisements, notices, newspapers, mailing notices, and other written and verbal media and informational materials may need to be translated into other languages to ensure social impacts to communities and people are recognized and considered throughout the transportation planning and decision-making process. In addition, language interpreters may need to be present during the hearings or public meetings to ensure individuals and minority communities are included throughout the process.

(b) **Developing the Prehearing Packet**

The region prepares a prehearing packet, which contains an organized grouping of project information to be used at the hearing. The project team members and specialists enlisted to support the public involvement and hearing processes typically coordinate to produce the prehearing packet elements. Much of the information needed in the prehearing packet will come from the project's public involvement plan.

The following information is included in the prehearing packet:

1. **Project Background Information and Exhibits**

   A project vicinity map and pertinent plans and exhibits for the hearing. The prehearing packet also contains a brief written narrative of the project. Usually, this narrative is already prepared and available in Project File documents, public involvement plans, or on a project Internet page.

2. **Proposed Hearing Type, Format, and Logistics**

   The prehearing packet identifies the type of hearing required. A hearing support team provides various planning details and helps with arrangements (date, time, place, and announcements). A public open house is often scheduled on the same day, preceding a formal hearing, to provide opportunity for community involvement.

3. **News Release**

   The region Communications Office can assist in preparing announcements for the hearing and other public events.

4. **Legal Hearing Notice**

   Notices must contain certain legal statements provided by the HQ Access and Hearings Section. (See 210.05(5) and (6) for guidance on notices.)

5. **List of Newspapers and Other Media Sources**

   These are the media sources used to announce the hearing. The region Communications Office has developed relations with reporters and media outlets, including minority publications and media, and is accustomed to working these issues. Enlist the office's support for hearing preparations.

6. **List of Legislators and Government Agencies Involved**

   Special notice is sent to local officials and legislators announcing public hearings. At formal hearings, the moderator and agenda typically identify those officials so they can interact with the public. The HQ Government Relations Office can assist with identifying and notifying legislators and key legislative staff within the project area.

7. **The Hearing Agenda and Script**

   These are required for formal hearings and are prepared by the region. The HQ Access and Hearings Section can provide sample agendas and scripts to support the region in its hearing preparations.

Exhibit 210-3 provides a checklist of prehearing packet contents, including additional items needed for limited access hearings.

(c) **Preparing and Sending a Prehearing Packet**

You should prepare a prehearing packet at least 45 days in advance of the public hearing and send it to the HQ Access and Hearings Section. The HQ Hearing Coordinator reviews and concurs with the region's plans and recommends the State Design Engineer's approval of the hearing date. Headquarters concurrence with the prehearing packet typically requires two weeks after receipt of the information.

(5) Public Hearing Notices: Purpose and Content

There are two types of public notices for hearings: notice of hearing and notice of opportunity for a hearing. Consult the HQ Hearing Coordinator for specific project hearing requirements and implementation strategies.

(a) **Notice of Hearing**

A notice of hearing is prepared and published when a hearing is required by law and cannot be waived.

(b) **Notice of Opportunity for a Hearing**

In select cases, a notice of opportunity for a hearing is prepared and published in order to gauge the public's interest in having a particular hearing. This kind of notice is only used if the requirements for a hearing can be legally waived. In these cases, documentation is required as set forth in 210.05(7).

(c) **Content Requirements**

The HQ Access and Hearings Section provides sample notices to the region upon request. Public notices include statements that are required by state and federal statutes. Some important elements of a notice include the following:

- A map or graphic identifying project location and limits.
- For a notice of opportunity for a hearing, include the procedures for requesting a hearing and the deadline, and note the existence of the relocation assistance program for persons or businesses displaced by the project.
- For an environmental, corridor, design, or combined corridor-design hearing, or for a notice of opportunity for a hearing, announce the availability of the environmental document and accessible locations.
- Project impacts to wetlands; flood plains; prime and unique farmlands; Section 4(f), 6(f), or 106 properties; endangered species or related habitats; or affected communities.
- Information on any associated prehearing presentation(s).
- Americans with Disabilities Act and Title VI legislation statements.

(6) Publishing Hearing Notices: Procedure

To advertise a legal notice of hearing or a notice of opportunity for a hearing, use the following procedure for appropriate media coverage and timing requirements:

(a) **Headquarters Concurrence**

As part of the prehearing packet, the region transmits the proposed notice and a list of the newspapers in which the notice will appear to the HQ Hearing Coordinator for concurrence prior to advertisement.

(b) **Region Distribution of Hearing Notice**

Upon receiving Headquarters concurrence, the region distributes copies of the hearing notice and news release as follows:

- Send a copy of the hearing notice and a summary project description to appropriate legislators and local officials one week before the first publication of a hearing notice. Provide the HQ Government Relations Office with a copy of all materials that will be distributed to legislators, along with a list of legislative recipients.
- Advertise the hearing notice in the appropriate newspapers within one week following the mailing to legislators. The advertisement must be published in a newspaper with general circulation in the vicinity of the proposed project or with a substantial circulation in the area concerned, such as foreign language and local newspapers. If affected limited-English-proficient populations have been identified, other foreign language newspapers may be appropriate as well. The legal notices section may be used or, preferably, a paid display advertisement in a prominent section of the newspaper, such as the local news section. With either type of advertisement, request that the newspaper provide an affidavit of publication.
- Distribute the project news release to all appropriate news media about three days before the first publication of a hearing notice, using newspapers publishing the formal advertisement of the notice.
- Additional methods may also be used to better reach interested or affected groups or individuals, including notifications distributed via project e-mail lists, ads in local community news media, direct mail, fliers, posters, and telephone calls.
- For corridor and design hearings, the first notice publication must occur at least 30 days before the date of the hearing. The second publication must be 5 to 12 days before the date of the hearing (see Exhibit 210-4). The first notice for a corridor or design hearing shall not be advertised prior to public availability of the draft environmental document.
- For limited access and environmental hearings, the notice must be published at least 15 days prior to the hearing. The timing of additional publications is optional (see Exhibit 210-5).
- For a notice of opportunity for a hearing, the notice must be published once each week for two consecutive weeks. The deadline for requesting a hearing must be at least 21 days after the first date of publication and at least 14 days after the second date of publication.
- A copy of the published hearing notice is sent to the HQ Hearing Coordinator at the time of publication.

(c) **Headquarters Distribution of Hearing Notice**

The HQ Hearing Coordinator sends a copy of the notice of hearing to the Transportation Commission, Attorney General's Office, HQ Communications Office, and FHWA (if applicable).

For a summary of the procedure and timing requirements, see Exhibit 210-4 (for environmental, corridor, and design hearings) or Exhibit 210-5 (for limited access hearings).

(7) No Hearing Interest: Procedure and Documentation

As described in 210.05(5), in select cases the region can satisfy certain project hearing requirements by advertising a notice of opportunity for a hearing. This procedure can be beneficial, particularly with limited access hearings in cases where very few abutting property owners are affected. If no hearing requests are received after issuing the notice of opportunity, the following procedures and documentation are required to waive a hearing.

(a) **Corridor or Design Hearing**

If no requests are received for a corridor or design hearing, the region transmits a package, which includes the notice of opportunity for a hearing, the affidavit of publication of the notice, and a letter stating that there were no requests for a hearing, to the HQ Access and Hearings Section.

(b) **Limited Access Hearing**

When a notice of opportunity for a hearing is used to fulfill the requirements for a limited access hearing and there are no requests for a hearing, the following steps are taken:

- The region must secure signed hearing waivers from every abutting property owner whose access rights will be affected by the project, as well as the affected local agency. The HQ Access and Hearings Section can supply a sample waiver to the region.
- The Project Engineer must contact every affected property owner of record (not tenant) and the local agency to explain the proposed project. This explanation must include information on access features, right of way acquisition (if any), and the right to a hearing. Property owners must also be advised that signing the waiver will not affect their right to fair compensation for their property, nor will it affect their access rights or relocation benefits.
- The region transmits the original signed waivers to the HQ Access and Hearings Section, along with the affidavit of publication of the notice of opportunity for a limited access hearing and a recommendation for approval of the right of way plan. Once the completed package is received by the HQ Access and Hearings Section, it is submitted to the State Design Engineer for review and approval.

(c) **Environmental Hearing**

Environmental hearings cannot use the process of waivers to satisfy project hearing requirements.

(8) Prehearing Briefs and Readiness

After publication of a hearing notice, the region should expect to receive public requests for information and project briefings, including requests for information in languages other than English.

(a) **Presentation of Material for Inspection and Copying**

The information outlined in the hearing notice and other engineering and environmental studies, as well as information intended to be presented at the hearing, must be made available for public review and copying throughout the period between the first advertisement and the approval of the hearing summary or findings and order. The information may also need to be available in languages other than English if indicated by demographics. The information need not be in final form, but it must include every item currently included in the hearing presentation. The environmental documents must also be available for public review.

These materials are made available in the general locality of the project. The region reviews the variables (the locations of the Project Office and project site; the interested individuals; and the probability of requests for review) and selects a mutually convenient site for the presentation of the information. In accordance with RCW 42.56, a record should be kept for future evidence, stating who came in, when, and what data they reviewed and copied.

(b) **Hearing Briefing**

On controversial projects, the HQ Hearing Coordinator arranges for a briefing (held before the hearing) for those interested in the project. Attendants typically include appropriate Headquarters, region, and FHWA personnel, with special notice to the Secretary of Transportation. Region personnel present the briefing.

(c) **Prehearing Presentation**

The region is encouraged to give an informal presentation to the public for discussion of the project prior to the hearing. A prehearing presentation is informal, with ample opportunity for exchange of information between WSDOT and the public. Providing community members with opportunities to talk about their concerns in advance of the hearing promotes positive public relationships, and can make the actual hearing proceed more smoothly. Prehearing presentations can be open house meetings, drop-in centers, workshops, or other formats identified in the public involvement plan.

The prehearing presentation is usually held about one week before the hearing for more controversial projects, modified as needed.

Include the date, time, and place in the hearing notice and ensure it is mailed in time to give adequate notice of the prehearing presentation.

(9) Conducting the Hearing

The hearing is facilitated by the Regional Administrator or a designee. Normally, a hearing examiner is used when significant controversy or considerable public involvement is anticipated. A hearing examiner is required for limited access hearings.

A verbatim transcript of the proceedings is made by a court reporter.

Hearings are generally more informative and gain more public participation when an informal format is used, where people’s views and opinions are openly sought in a casual and personal way. The informal hearing format may be used for all hearings except limited access hearings. At least one court reporter is required to take individual testimony. Use displays, exhibits, maps, and tables, and have knowledgeable staff available to answer specific questions about the proposed project.

It is the responsibility of the hearing moderator and other department representatives to be responsive to all reasonable and appropriate questions. If a question or proposal is presented at the limited access hearing that can only be answered at a later date, the region shall reserve an exhibit to respond to the comment in the findings and order. The hearing moderator must not allow any person to be harassed or subjected to unreasonable cross-examination.

(a) **Hearing Agenda Items**

For all limited access hearings, and for other formal hearings, the region prepares a hearing agenda to ensure all significant items are addressed. A hearing agenda includes the following:

1. **Opening Statement**
   - Highway and project name.
   - Purpose of hearing.
   - Description of how the hearing will be conducted.
   - Introduction of elected officials.
   - Federal/State/County/City relationship.
   - Statutory requirements being fulfilled by the hearing.
   - Status of the project with regard to NEPA/SEPA documents.
   - Description of information available for review and copying.
   - For environmental, corridor, or design hearings, notice that written statements and other exhibits can be submitted during the open record period following the hearing.
   - Statement that all who want to receive written notification of WSDOT's action as a result of the hearing may add their names to the interest list or file a notice of appearance for limited access hearings.

2. **Project History**

   Present a brief project history, including purpose and need for the project, public involvement program, future hearing opportunities, and hearings held.

3. **Presentation of Plans**

   Develop alternatives that include comparable levels of detail, and present them equally. Include the no-action alternative. Refer to any supporting studies that are available to the public.

   Identify a preliminary preferred alternative, if selected by WSDOT, for more detailed development. When a preliminary preferred alternative has been identified, stress that it is subject to revision and reevaluation based on public comments, additional studies, and other information that may become available.

4. **Environmental, Social, and Economic Discussion**

   Discuss all positive and negative environmental, social, and economic effects (or summarize the major effects), and refer to the environmental documentation.

5. **Statements, Plans, or Counterproposals From the Public**

   Accept public views or statements regarding the proposal presented, the alternatives, and the social, economic, and environmental effects identified. Avoid evaluating the views presented while conducting the hearing.

6. **Relocation Assistance Program**

   Explain the relocation assistance program and relocation assistance payments available. At all hearings, the relocation assistance brochure must be available for free distribution, including (if appropriate) brochures in languages other than English. Real Estate Services personnel should be available.

   If the project does not require any relocations, the relocation assistance discussion may be omitted. Make a simple statement to the effect that relocation assistance is provided, but currently no relocations have been identified for the project. The relocation brochure and personnel should still be available to the public at the hearing.

7. **Acquisition**

   Discuss right of way acquisition, estimated cost, and currently proposed construction schedules and critical activities that may involve or affect the public.

8. **Closing**

   Summarize the hearing and announce proposed future actions.

9. **Adjournment**

   Adjourn the hearing with sincere gratitude for the public's valuable participation.

(10) Hearing Summary and Adoption

Upon completion of a public hearing, a documentation and approval procedure leads to official adoption of the hearing proceedings. After the hearing, a summary is prepared by the region. There are two types of summary documents used, depending on the type of hearing. For environmental, corridor, and design hearings, a hearing summary is produced. Following a limited access hearing, a findings and order document is prepared. Each of these packages is comprised of documentation assembled by the region and approved by Headquarters.

(a) **Hearing Summary Contents**

The hearing summary includes the following elements:

1. Hearing transcript.
2. Copy of the affidavit of publication of the hearing notice.
3. Hearing material:
   - Copies of the letters received before and after the hearing.
   - Copies or photographs of, or references to, every exhibit used in the hearing.

4. Summary and analyses of all oral and written comments. Include consideration of the positive and negative social, economic, and environmental aspects of these comments.

(b) **Limited Access Hearing Findings and Order**

Following a limited access hearing, the "summary" document is labeled the findings and order. Refer to 210.09(12) for the process description and required documentation for findings and order documents.

(c) **Adoption and Approval**

For specific hearing types, see subsequent sections in this chapter related to adoption procedures.

Exhibit 210-6 identifies the Headquarters approval authority for hearing summary and findings and order documents.

210.06 Environmental Hearing

Early coordination with appropriate agencies and the public may help to determine the appropriate level of environmental documentation, the scope of the document, the level of analysis, and related environmental disciplines to be analyzed.

Environmental documents address the positive and negative social, economic, and environmental project effects, as described in Chapter 220 and the *Environmental Procedures Manual*. The project environmental documentation is the first step in the environmental hearing procedure. Each step of the hearing procedure is dovetailed into the environmental process and is important in achieving the appropriate project documentation. Corridor and design hearings are not normally required for Environmental Assessments, SEPA Checklists, and categorically excluded projects. However, the opportunity for an environmental hearing might be required or advisable for controversial proposals. When an environmental hearing is not required, an informational meeting may serve as a useful forum for public involvement in the environmental process. Consult with region environmental staff and the HQ Hearing Coordinator for specific project requirements.

Projects requiring an Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) must use an evaluation process called *scoping* in the NEPA and SEPA requirements. This process helps the project proponents identify the significant issues and possible alternatives analyzed and documented in the Draft EIS, and it must follow the public involvement plan included in the environmental study plan for the project.

After the project has been thoroughly analyzed through the environmental evaluation process and discussed within the community using informal public involvement methods, a hearing is held to present and gather testimony. The hearing is timed to fall within the comment period for the Draft EIS.

For an environmental hearing, the hearing notice must be published at least 15 days prior to the hearing. The timing of additional publications is optional (see Exhibit 210-4).

Responses to comments on the Draft EIS must be addressed in the Final EIS.

(1) Environmental Hearing Summary

The environmental hearing summary includes the items outlined in 210.05(10).

(2) Adoption of Environmental Hearing

Chapter 220 and the *Environmental Procedures Manual* provide guidance on NEPA and SEPA procedures, documentation requirements, and approvals.

210.07 Corridor Hearing

A corridor hearing is a public hearing that:

- Is held before WSDOT is committed to a preferred alternative establishing the final route corridor.
- Is held to ensure opportunity is afforded for effective participation by interested persons in the process of determining the need for and location of a state highway.
- Provides the public an opportunity to present views on the social, economic, and environmental effects of the proposed alternative highway corridors.

A corridor hearing is required if any of the following project actions would occur:

- Proposed route on new location.
- Substantial social, economic, or environmental impacts.
- Significant change in layout or function of connecting roads or streets.

When a corridor hearing is held, the region must provide enough design detail on the proposed alignment(s) within the corridor(s) that an informed presentation can be made at the hearing. Justification to abandon an existing corridor must also be presented.

For general procedures and notification requirements, see 210.05 and Exhibit 210-4.

(1) Corridor Hearing Summary

After the hearing, the region:

- Reviews the hearing transcript.
- Responds to all questions or proposals submitted at or subsequent to the hearing.
- Compiles a corridor hearing summary.
- Transmits three copies (four copies for Interstate projects) to the HQ Access and Hearings Section.

When appropriate, the hearing summary may be included in the FEIS. If not included, submit the complete corridor hearing summary to the HQ Access and Hearings Section within approximately two months following the hearing.

The corridor hearing summary includes the items outlined in 210.05(10).

(2) Adoption of Corridor Hearing Summary

The HQ Access and Hearings Section prepares a package that contains the corridor hearing summary and a formal description of the project and forwards it to the Director of Environmental and Engineering Programs for adoption. The HQ Hearing Coordinator notifies the region when adoption has occurred and returns an approved copy to the region.

210.08 Design Hearing

A design hearing is a public hearing that:

- Is held after a route corridor is established and approved, but before final design of a highway is engineered.
- Is held to ensure an opportunity is afforded for the public to present its views on each proposed design alternative, including the social, economic, and environmental effects of those designs.

A design hearing is required if any of the following project actions will occur:

- Substantial social, economic, or environmental impacts.
- Significant change in layout or function of connecting roads or streets.
- Acquisition of a significant amount of right of way results in relocation of individuals, groups, or institutions.

For general procedures and notification requirements, see 210.05 and Exhibit 210-4.

(1) Design Hearing Summary

The design hearing summary includes the elements outlined in 210.05(10).

Submit the complete hearing summary to the HQ Access and Hearings Section within approximately two months following the hearing.

If new studies or additional data are required subsequent to the hearing, the region compiles the information in coordination with the HQ Design Office.

(2) Adoption of Design Hearing Summary

After the hearing, the region reviews the hearing transcript, responds to all questions or proposals submitted at or subsequent to the hearing, compiles a hearing summary, and transmits three copies (four copies for Interstate projects) to the HQ Access and Hearings Section. When appropriate, the design hearing summary may be included in the final environmental document. The HQ Access and Hearings Section prepares a formal document that identifies and describes the project and submits it to the State Design Engineer for approval. One approved copy is returned to the region. The HQ Hearing Coordinator notifies the region that adoption has occurred.

On Interstate projects, the State Design Engineer (or designee) submits the approved design hearing summary to the FHWA for federal approval. If possible, this submittal is timed to coincide with the submittal of the Design Decision Summary to the FHWA.

(3) Public Notification of Action Taken

The region prepares a formal response to individuals who had unresolved questions at the hearing. The region keeps the public advised regarding the result(s) of the hearing process, such as project adoption or revision to the plan. A project newsletter sent to those on the interest list is an effective method of notification. Project news items can be sent via e-mail or by more traditional methods.

210.09 Limited Access Hearing

Limited access hearings are required by law (per RCW 47.52) whenever limited access is established or revised on new or existing highways. Decisions concerning limited access hearings are made on a project-by-project basis by the State Design Engineer based on information that includes the recommendations submitted by the region (see Chapters 510, 520, 530, and 540).

Limited access hearing procedures generally follow those identified in 210.05; however, several unique products and notifications are also prepared. These include limited access hearing plans and notifications sent to abutting property owners and local jurisdictions. (See 210.09(4) and Exhibit 210-3 for a listing of these products.) Exhibit 210-5 presents a summary of the limited access hearing procedures.

Prior to the limited access hearing (RCW 47.52.131), discussions with the local jurisdictions shall be held on the merits of the limited access report and the limited access hearing plan(s). These are required exhibits for the limited access hearing. (See Chapter 530 for guidance on limited access reports.)

The following information applies only to limited access hearings and procedures for approval of the findings and order.

(1) Hearing Examiner

The HQ Access and Hearings Section hires an administrative law judge from the Office of Administrative Hearings to conduct the limited access hearing.

(2) Order of Hearing

The order of hearing officially establishes the hearing date. The State Design Engineer approves the order of hearing. The HQ Hearing Coordinator then notifies the region, the Attorney General's Office, and the hearing examiner of the official hearing date.

(3) Limited Access Hearing Plan

The region prepares a limited access hearing plan to be used as an exhibit at the formal hearing and forwards it to the HQ Plans Engineer for review and approval approximately 45 days before the hearing. This is a Phase 2 Plan (see Chapter 510). The HQ Plans Engineer schedules the approval of the limited access hearing plan on the State Design Engineer's calendar.

(4) Limited Access Hearing Information to Abutters

The region prepares an information packet that must be mailed to abutters, and other entities as specified below, at least 15 days prior to the hearing and concurrent with advertisement of the hearing notice. These items are elements of the prehearing packet as described in 210.05(4)(b) and in Exhibit 210-3. If some of the limited access hearing packets are returned as undeliverable, the region must make every effort to communicate with the property owners.

The limited access hearing packet for abutters contains the following:

- Limited access hearing plan
- Limited access hearing notice
- Notice of appearance

The region also sends the limited access hearing packet to:

- The county and/or city.
- The owners of property listed on the county tax rolls as abutting the section of highway, road, or street being considered at the hearing as a limited access facility.
- Local agencies and public officials who have requested a notice of hearing or who, by the nature of their functions, objectives, or responsibilities, are interested in or affected by the proposal.
- Every agency, organization, official, or individual on the interest list.

The limited access hearing packet is also sent, when applicable, to:

- State resource, recreation, and planning agencies.
- Tribal governments.
- Appropriate representatives of the Department of the Interior and the Department of Housing and Urban Development.
- Other federal agencies.
- Public advisory groups.

(5) Affidavit of Service by Mailing

The region prepares an affidavit of service by mailing. This affidavit states that the limited access hearing packet was mailed at least 15 days prior to the hearing and that it will be entered into the record at the hearing.

(6) Limited Access Hearing Plan Revisions

The limited access hearing plan cannot be revised after the State Design Engineer (or designee) approves the plan without rescheduling the hearing. If significant revisions to the plan become necessary during the period between the approval and the hearing, the revisions can be made and must be entered into the record as a revised (red and green) plan at the hearing.

(7) Limited Access Hearing Notice

The limited access hearing notice must be published at least 15 calendar days before the hearing. This is a legal requirement and the hearing must be rescheduled if the advertising deadline is not met. Publication and notice requirements are the same as those required in 210.05, except that the statutory abutter mailing must be mailed after notification to the appropriate legislators.

(8) Notice of Appearance

The HQ Hearing Coordinator transmits the notice of appearance form to the region. Anyone wanting to receive a copy of the findings and order and the adopted right of way and limited access plan must complete a notice of appearance form and return it to WSDOT either at the hearing or by mail.

(9) Reproduction of Plans

The HQ Hearing Coordinator submits the hearing plans for reproduction at least 24 days prior to the hearing. The reproduced plans are sent to the region at least 17 days before the hearing, for mailing to the abutters at least 15 days before the hearing.

(10) Limited Access Hearing Exhibits

The region retains the limited access hearing exhibits until preparation of the draft findings and order is complete. The region then submits all the original hearing exhibits and three copies to the HQ Access and Hearings Section as part of the findings and order package. Any exhibits submitted directly to Headquarters are sent to the region for inclusion with the region's submittal.

(11) Limited Access Hearing Transcript

The court reporter furnishes the original limited access hearing transcript to the region. The region forwards the transcript to the hearing examiner, or presiding authority, for signature certifying that the transcript is complete. The signed original and three copies are returned to the region for inclusion in the findings and order package.

(12) Findings and Order

The findings and order is a document containing the findings and conclusions of a limited access hearing, based entirely on the evidence in the hearing record. The region reviews a copy of the transcript from the court reporter and prepares a findings and order package. The package is sent to the HQ Access and Hearings Section.

The findings and order package contains:

- The draft findings and order.
- Draft responses to comments (reserved exhibits).
- A draft findings and order plan as modified from the hearing plan.
- All limited access hearing exhibits: originals and three copies.
- The limited access hearing transcript: original and three copies.
- The notice of appearance forms.
- Estimate of the number of copies of the final findings and order plan and text the region will need for the mailing.

(13) Adoption of Findings and Order

The Environmental and Engineering Programs Director adopts the findings and order based on the evidence introduced at the hearing and any supplemental exhibits.

Following adoption of the findings and order, the HQ Plans Section makes the necessary revisions to the limited access hearing plan, which then becomes the findings and order plan.

The HQ Access and Hearings Section arranges for reproduction of the findings and order plan and the findings and order text and transmits them to the region.

The region mails a copy of the findings and order plan and the findings and order text to all parties that filed a notice of appearance and to all local governmental agencies involved. Subsequent to this mailing, the region prepares an affidavit of service by mailing and transmits it to the HQ Access and Hearings Section.

At the time of mailing, but before publication of the résumé, the region notifies the appropriate legislators of WSDOT's action.

(14) Résumé

The résumé is an official notification of action taken by WSDOT following adoption of a findings and order. The HQ Access and Hearings Section provides the résumé to the region. The region must publish the résumé once each week for two consecutive weeks, not to begin until at least ten days after the mailing of the findings and order.

(15) Final Establishment of Access Control

When the findings and order is adopted, the findings and order plan becomes a Phase 4 Plan (see Chapter 510). The establishment of access control becomes final 30 days from the date the findings and order is mailed by the region, as documented by the affidavit of service by mailing.

(16) Appeal Process

An appeal from the county or city must be in the form of a written disapproval, submitted to the Secretary of Transportation, requesting a hearing before a board of review.

An appeal from abutting property owners must be filed in the Superior Court of the state of Washington, in the county where the limited access facility is to be located, and shall affect only those specific ownerships. The plan is final for all other ownerships.

210.10 Combined Hearings

A combined hearing often alleviates the need to schedule separate hearings to discuss similar information. A combined hearing is desirable when the timing for circulation of the draft environmental document is simultaneous with the timing for corridor and design hearings and when all alternative designs are available for each alternative corridor.

When deciding whether to combine hearings, consider:

- Whether there is controversy.
- Whether alternative corridors are proposed.
- The nature of the environmental concerns.
- The benefits to the public of a combined hearing.

210.11 Administrative Appeal Hearing

Administrative appeal hearings apply only to managed access highways, are conducted as formal hearings, and are initiated by a property owner seeking to appeal a decision made to restrict or remove an access connection. This is also known as an adjudicative proceeding, and the procedure is presented in Chapter 540.

210.12 Follow-Up Hearing

A new hearing or the opportunity for a hearing is required for any previously held hearing when any one of the following occurs (USC 23, §771.111):

- Major actions (such as adoption of findings and order and approval of hearing summaries) did not occur within three years following the date the last hearing was held or the opportunity for a hearing was afforded.
- A substantial change occurs in the area affected by the proposal (due to unanticipated development, for example).
- A substantial change occurs in a proposal for which an opportunity for a hearing was previously advertised or a hearing was held.
- A significant social, economic, or environmental effect is identified that was not considered at earlier hearings.

210.13 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Proposed Project Actions or Conditions	**Types of Hearings**[1]					
	Environmental	**Design**	**Corridor**	**Limited Access**	**Combined**	**Follow-Up**
Proposed route on new location			X	X		
Substantial social, economic, or environmental impacts	X	X	X	X		
Significant change in layout or function of connecting roads or streets		X	X	X		
Acquisition of significant amount of right of way results in relocation of individuals, groups, or institutions	X	X				
Significant adverse impact on abutting real property	X					
An EIS is required or a hearing is requested for an EA	X					
Significant public interest or controversy	X					
Regulatory agencies have hearing requirements that could be consolidated into one hearing process	X					
Limited access control is established or revised				X		
If several hearings are required, consider efficiency of combining					X	
Major actions not taken within 3 years after date last hearing was held						X[2]
An unusually long time has elapsed since the last hearing or the opportunity for a hearing						X
Substantial change in proposal since prior hearing						X
Significant social, economic, or environmental effect is identified and was not considered at prior hearing						X

Notes:

[1] This table presents a list of project actions that correspond to required public hearings. The list is intended as a guide and is not all-inclusive. In cases where several types of hearings are anticipated for a project, a combined hearing may be an effective method. Consult with region and Headquarters environmental staff, the designated Assistant State Design Engineer, and the HQ Access and Hearings Section to identify specific hearing requirements and strategies.

[2] Posthearing major actions include: FHWA approvals (for Interstate projects); adoption of hearing summaries and findings and order; and public notification of action taken, such as publishing a résumé.

Types of Public Hearings
Exhibit 210-1

Hearing Type	Hearing Format	
	Formal	Informal
Limited Access	Required	Not allowed
Environmental	Either format acceptable	
Design	Either format acceptable	
Corridor	Either format acceptable	
Combined	Format depends on type*	
Follow-Up	Format depends on type*	

Notes:

Check with the HQ Hearing Coordinator to identify specific hearing type and appropriate hearing format.

* If a combined or follow-up hearing includes a limited access hearing, then that portion of the hearing must adhere to the formal format.

Public Hearing Formats

Exhibit 210-2

Prehearing Packet Items	All Hearings	Additional Items for Limited Access Hearings
Brief project description; purpose and public benefit; history; known public perceptions; and support or opposition	X	
Proposed hearing type	X	
Hearing arrangements: proposed date, time, and place	X	
Proposed hearing format: formal or informal	X	[1]
Notice of whether an open house event will precede the hearing	X	
Vicinity map	X	
Plans for corridor and design alternatives with descriptions	X	
News release	X	
Legal notice of hearing	X	X[2]
List of newspapers and other media sources that will cover the news release and hearing notice	X	
List of legislators and government agencies involved	X	
Hearing agenda	[3]	X[3]
Hearing script	[3]	X[3]
Limited access report (see Chapter 530)		X
Limited access hearing plan(s) (see Chapter 530)		X
List of abutting property owners		X
Notice of appearance form		X

Notes:

The prehearing packet is prepared by the region and transmitted to the HQ Access and Hearings Section for review, concurrence, and processing. This information is assembled in advance of the hearing to facilitate timely announcements and a smooth-flowing event. The HQ Hearing Coordinator requires the prehearing packet 45 days (or sooner) in advance of the proposed hearing date.

[1] Limited access hearings are required by law to be formal.

[2] For a limited access hearing, each abutting property owner affected by the project must receive the hearing notice, along with the notice of appearance form and specific limited access hearing plan(s) showing their parcel(s). Indicate in the prehearing packet the number of affected property owners to whom the packets will be mailed.

[3] A hearing agenda and hearing script are required for a limited access hearing. Any formal hearing requires a fixed agenda and a script. It is recognized that the script may be in draft format at the time of submittal of the prehearing packet. The HQ Hearing Coordinator can assist in its completion and can provide sample scripts and agendas.

Prehearing Packet Checklist
Exhibit 210-3

Sequence for Corridor, Design, and Environmental Hearings	
Preparatory Work	
Consult with HQ Hearing Coordinator and environmental specialists to determine specific requirements for a hearing or a notice of opportunity for a hearing.	[see 210.05 & Exhibit 210-1]
Assemble support team; identify and schedule tasks and deliverables.	[see 210.05(4)]
Prepare prehearing packet (news releases, legal notices, exhibits).	[see 210.05(4)(b) & Exhibit 210-3]
♦ **Minimum 45 Days Prior to Hearing: Transmit Prehearing Packet to HQ** HQ Hearing Coordinator reviews and concurs; schedules hearing.	[see 210.05(4)(b)]
Public Notifications and News Releases	[see 210.05(5) & (6)]
♦ **35–40 Days Prior to Hearing** (1 week prior to first public ad) Send notice to legislators and local officials.	
♦ **33–35 Days Prior to Hearing** (about 3 days before advertisement) Send letter with news release to media.	
♦ **30 Days Prior to Hearing** Draft EIS becomes available and its open comment period begins.	
Corridor and Design Hearings ♦ **30 Days Prior to Hearing: Publish First Notice*** Advertise at least 30 days in advance of hearing, but not prior to public availability of draft environmental document. ♦ **5–12 Days Prior to Hearing: Publish Second Notice**	
Environmental Hearings ♦ **15 Days Prior to Hearing: Publish First Notice** Advertise at least 15 days in advance; timing of additional notices optional. (If done in combination with design or corridor hearing, use 30-day advance notice.)	
Prehearing Briefings	[see 210.05(8)]
♦ **5–12 Days Prior to Hearing** Region confers with local jurisdictions; conducts hearing briefings and presentations; and makes hearing materials and information available for public inspection and copying.	
Conduct the Hearing	[see 210.05(9)]
Conduct environmental, corridor, or design hearing.	
Posthearing Actions	
Court reporter provides hearing transcript to region (usually within 2 weeks).	
♦ **2 Months After Hearing: Prepare Hearing Summary and Send to HQ** Region addresses public comments from hearing and throughout comment period; prepares hearing summary and transmits to HQ Hearing Coordinator for processing.	[see 210.05(10)]
HQ Hearing Coordinator transmits hearing summary package to HQ approval authority for approval.	[see Exhibit 210-6]
HQ Hearing Coordinator notifies region of adoption and returns a copy of approved hearing summary to region.	

Notes:

Important timing requirements are marked ♦

* If the advertisement is a notice of opportunity for a hearing, requests must be received within 21 days after the first advertisement. If there are no requests, see 210.05(7).

Sequence for Corridor, Design, and Environmental Hearings
Exhibit 210-4

Sequence for Limited Access Hearing	
Preparatory Work	
Consult with HQ Access and Hearings Section. Determine requirements for a limited access hearing or a notice of opportunity for a hearing.	[see 210.05 & Exhibit 210-1]
Assemble support team; identify and schedule tasks and deliverables.	[see 210.05(4)]
Prepare limited access report and limited access hearing plan(s).	[see Chapters 510 & 530]
Prepare prehearing packet (legal notice, exhibits, information packets for abutting property owners).	[see 210.05(4)(b) & Exhibit 210-3]
♦ **Minimum 45 Days Prior to Hearing: Transmit Prehearing Packet to HQ – Transmit Limited Access Report and hearing plans for Approval** HQ Hearing Coordinator reviews and concurs; schedules hearing; transmits limited access report and limited access hearing plan.	[see 210.05(4)(b) & 210.09]
♦ **45 Days Prior to Hearing** HQ actions: Calendar order of hearing & limited access hearing plan approved	[see 210.09(2) & (3)]
♦ **24 Days Prior to Hearing: HQ Reproduction of Plans** HQ action: Approved limited access hearing plan(s) are reproduced in number sufficient for mailing to abutters and other handout needs; one set to be used as hearing exhibit.	[see 210.09(9)]
Notifications, News Releases, Confer With Local Agencies	
♦ **35–40 Days Prior to Hearing** Send notice to legislators and local officials (1 week prior to first public ad).	[see 210.05(6)]
♦ **33–35 Days Prior to Hearing** Send letter with news release to media (about 3 days before advertisement).	[see 210.05(6)]
♦ **15 Days Prior to Hearing: Publish First Notice*** Advertise at least 15 days in advance; timing of additional notices optional.	[see 210.05(6)]
♦ **15 Days Prior to Hearing: Send Hearing Packets to Abutters** (Hearing notice, limited access hearing plan, notice of appearance form).	[see 210.05(4)]
♦ **15 Days Prior to Hearing: Confer With Local Jurisdictions**	[see 210.05(8)]
Conduct the Hearing	[see 210.05(6)]
Using agenda and script, conduct formal limited access hearing.	
Posthearing Actions	
Court reporter provides limited access hearing transcript to region.	[see 210.09(11)]
Region prepares findings and order document and transmits to HQ Hearing Coordinator.	[see 210.09(12)]
Environmental and Engineering Programs Director adopts findings and order.	[see 210.09(13)]
Limited access hearing plan becomes findings and order plan.	[see 210.09(15)]
Findings and order reproduced and mailed to abutters and local jurisdictions.	[see 210.09(13)]
HQ provides résumé to region and region publishes.	[see 210.09(14)]

Notes:

Important timing requirements are marked ♦

* If the advertisement is a notice of opportunity for a hearing, requests must be received within 21 days after the first advertisement. If there are no requests, see 210.05(7).

Sequence for Limited Access Hearing
Exhibit 210-5

Hearing Summary Document	WSDOT HQ Approval Authority
Limited access hearing findings and order	Environmental and Engineering Programs Director
Corridor hearing summary	Environmental and Engineering Programs Director
Environmental hearing summary	HQ Environmental Services Office Director[1]
Design hearing summary	State Design Engineer

Note:

[1] If the environmental hearing summary is included in the Final Environmental Document (FEIS, EA), the HQ Environmental Services Office Director approves the summary. If the summary is separate from the Final Environmental Document, the State Design Engineer approves.

Hearing Summary Approvals
Exhibit 210-6

Chapter 220 Project Environmental Documentation

220.01 General
220.02 References
220.03 Definitions/Acronyms
220.04 Determining the Environmental Documentation
220.05 Identifying the Project Classification
220.06 Environmental Impact Statements: Class I Projects
220.07 Categorical Exclusions: Class II Projects
220.08 Environmental Assessments: Class III Projects
220.09 Reevaluations
220.10 Commitment File
220.11 Documentation

220.01 General

The term "environmental documentation" refers to the documents produced for a project to satisfy the requirements contained in the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and the State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA). The *Environmental Procedures Manual* provides detailed instructions on how to determine what level of documentation is required and how to prepare the documents. This chapter provides a summary of the relevant provisions in the *Environmental Procedures Manual*.

The purpose of the environmental document is to provide decision-makers, agencies, and the public with information on a project's environmental impacts, alternatives to the proposed action, and mitigation measures to reduce unavoidable impacts. Final environmental documents identify and evaluate the project to be constructed. Because projects vary in their level of environmental impacts, the rules on environmental documentation allow for different levels of documentation. As a project's impacts increase, so does the level of documentation.

The region Environmental Office and the NEPA/SEPA Compliance Section of the Headquarters (HQ) Environmental Services Office routinely provide environmental documentation assistance to designers and project engineers.

220.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

42 United States Code (USC) Chapter 55, National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (NEPA)

23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 771, Environmental Impact and Related Procedures

23 CFR Part 771.135 Section 4(f) (49 USC 303), Policy on Lands, Wildlife and Waterfowl Refuges, and Historic Sites

36 CFR Part 800, Protection of Historic and Cultural Properties

40 CFR Parts 1500-1508, Council for Environmental Quality Regulations for Implementing NEPA

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 43.21C, State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA)

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 197-11, SEPA Rules

WAC 468-12, WSDOT SEPA Rules

(2) Design Guidance

Environmental Procedures Manual, M 31-11, WSDOT

220.03 Definitions/Acronyms

Categorical Exclusion (CE) (NEPA) or ***Categorical Exemption (CE)*** (SEPA) Actions that do not individually or cumulatively have a significant effect on the environment.

DCE Documented Categorical Exclusion (NEPA)

Determination of Nonsignificance (DNS) (SEPA) The written decision by the Regional Administrator that a proposal will not have a significant impact and no EIS is required.

Determination of Significance (DS) (SEPA) A written decision by the Regional Administrator that a proposal could have a significant adverse impact and an EIS is required.

Environmental Assessment (EA) (NEPA) A document prepared for federally funded, permitted, or licensed projects that are not categorical exclusions (CE), but do not appear to be of sufficient magnitude to require an EIS. The EA provides enough analysis to determine whether an EIS or a FONSI should be prepared.

Environmental Classification Summary (ECS) A form used to evaluate and classify projects for the construction program. The ECS supports a decision of a documented CE.

Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) A detailed written statement of a proposed course of action, project alternatives, and possible impacts of the proposal.

Environmental Review Summary (ERS) Part of the Project Summary document, the ERS identifies environmental permits and approvals. It is prepared in the region and is required for Design Approval.

Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI) (NEPA) A federal document indicating that a proposal will not significantly affect the environment and an EIS is not required.

NEPA National Environmental Policy Act

ROD Record of Decision

SEPA State Environmental Policy Act

220.04 Determining the Environmental Documentation

The Environmental Review Summary (ERS) provides the first indication of what form the environmental documentation will take. The ERS is developed as part of the Project Summary, which is prepared during the scoping phase of all projects in the construction program. The Project Summary includes three components:

- Project Definition
- Design Decisions Summary
- Environmental Review Summary

The ERS form is found in the Project Summary database in each region. The *Environmental Procedures Manual* has detailed instructions on how to prepare the ERS. The process for classifying projects and determining the environmental document is similar for NEPA and SEPA and generally is as follows:

- Once the project has been sufficiently developed to assess any environmental impacts, the region completes the ERS based on the best information available at the scoping phase of development.
- The Region Environmental Manager then concurs with the classification by signing the ERS and returning the completed form to the region Design Office for inclusion in the Project Summary package.
- For NEPA, if a project has been determined to be a Categorical Exclusion (CE), the NEPA environmental review process is considered complete. If it is determined that a Documented Categorical Exclusion (DCE), Environmental Assessment (EA), or Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) is required, the region evaluates the project schedule and arranges for preparation of the appropriate document.
- For SEPA, the signing and submittal of the ERS completes the environmental classification process. On projects that are categorized as exempt from SEPA, the environmental process is complete unless the project requires consultation under the Endangered Species Act. On projects that do not meet the criteria for a SEPA Categorical Exemption (WAC 197-11-800 and WAC 468-12) and require a SEPA checklist (WAC 197-11-960) or an EIS, those documents are prepared as necessary prior to Project Development Approval.

The ERS allows environmental staff to consider at this early stage potential impacts and mitigations and required permits. For many projects, the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) Environmental GIS Workbench coupled with a site visit provides sufficient information to fill out the ERS (see the *Environmental Procedures Manual*).

For most WSDOT projects, the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) is the lead agency for NEPA. Other federal lead agencies on WSDOT projects are the Federal Aviation Administration, Federal Railroad Administration, and the Federal Transit Administration (FTA).

220.05 Identifying the Project Classification

Based on the environmental considerations identified during preparation of the ERS, WSDOT projects are classified for NEPA/SEPA purposes to determine the type of environmental documentation required. Projects with a federal nexus (using federal funds, involving federal lands, or requiring federal approvals or permits) are subject to NEPA and SEPA. Projects that are state funded only, with no federal nexus that includes federal permits, follow SEPA guidelines. Since many WSDOT projects are prepared with the intent of obtaining federal funding, NEPA guidelines are usually followed. The *Environmental Procedures Manual* provides detailed definitions of the classes of projects. It lists the types of work typically found in each class, FHWA/federal agency concurrence requirements, and procedures for classifying and, if necessary, reclassifying the type of environmental documentation for projects.

Projects subject to NEPA are classified as Class I, II, or III as follows:

- Class I projects require preparation of an EIS because the action is likely to have significant adverse environmental impacts.
- Class II projects are Categorical Exclusions or Documented Categorical Exclusions that meet the definitions contained in 40 CFR 1508.4 and 23 CFR 771.117. These are actions that are not likely to cause significant adverse environmental impacts.
- Class III projects require an Environmental Assessment (EA) because the significance of the impact on the environment is not clearly established.

SEPA has a similar, but not identical, system. SEPA recognizes projects that are categorically exempt, projects that require an EIS, and projects that do not require an EIS. WSDOT projects that are CEs under NEPA (Class II) may not be categorically exempt under SEPA.

If the project is not exempt under SEPA, WSDOT must issue a threshold determination and then prepare a SEPA Checklist or EIS. The threshold determination may be a Determination of Nonsignificance (DNS) or a Determination of Significance (DS) requiring an EIS. WSDOT may adopt a NEPA EA FONSI to satisfy the requirements for a DNS.

220.06 Environmental Impact Statements: Class I Projects

Class I projects are actions that are likely to have significant impact on the environment because of their effects on land use, planned growth, development patterns, traffic volumes, travel patterns, transportation services, and natural resources, or because they are apt to create substantial public controversy. An EIS may follow an EA if significant impacts are discovered during preparation of an EA. The *Environmental Procedures Manual* has details on EIS documents and procedures. WSDOT typically prepares a joint NEPA/SEPA EIS to satisfy both statutes.

Examples of projects that usually require an EIS, as referenced in 23 CFR 771.115, are:

- New controlled access freeway.
- Highway projects of four or more lanes in a new location.

- New construction or extension of fixed-rail transit facilities (for example, rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, or automated guideway transit).
- New construction or extension of a separate roadway for buses or high-occupancy vehicles not located within an existing highway facility.
- Construction of a new ferry terminal or large-scale changes to existing terminal facilities.

Although examples are given, it is important to remember that it is the size and significance of the potential impacts that determine the need for an EIS, not the size of the project. "Significance" is not always clearly defined; it is generally determined by the impact's "context" and "intensity." Having a significant impact in just one area is sufficient to warrant preparation of an EIS.

A very small percentage of WSDOT's projects go through the EIS process. Typically, these are the larger, more complicated projects often found in urban areas or involving new right of way and important natural or cultural resources. The process takes from two to five years or longer depending on the issues and stakeholders. EISs are expensive because of the amount of information produced, the level of design required, the frequency of redesign to address issues that are discovered, and the higher level of agency and public involvement. WSDOT has prepared an EIS "Reader-Friendly Tool Kit" to simplify the content of EISs and to improve them as a communication tool to inform the public and decision-makers. Both federal and state initiatives exist to streamline the EIS process and reduce costs.

220.07 Categorical Exclusions: Class II Projects

The FHWA NEPA Regulations identify project types that qualify as CEs (23 CFR 771.117). In general, CEs are actions that, based on past experience with similar projects, do not have significant environmental impacts. CEs are subject to reevaluation by FHWA where there are unusual circumstances such as new environmental impacts; controversy on environmental grounds; unforeseen impacts to cultural, historic, or recreational resources (Section 4(f) or Section 106); or inconsistencies with federal, state, or local laws.

CEs are defined further by two subcategories: CEs not requiring FHWA concurrence and Documented Categorical Exclusions (DCEs). Projects defined as CEs not requiring FHWA concurrence must meet the requirements of the *Memorandum of Understanding Between WSDOT and FHWA on Programmatic Categorical Exclusion Approvals*, signed May 25, 1999 (see the *Environmental Procedures Manual*). This may include preparation of a Biological Assessment (BA) to document effects to endangered and threatened species. If a "no effects" determination is the outcome of the BA, the only NEPA documentation required is a signed ERS that is included in the Project Summary package sent to HQ Systems Analysis and Program Development. No other NEPA documentation or approval by FHWA is required.

For DCEs, additional environmental documentation is required and FHWA approval must be obtained before the Project File can be approved. All environmental documentation must be completed before finalizing the PS&E package and going to ad. The ERS is then renamed the Environmental Classification Summary (ECS), signed by the Region Environmental Manager, and sent with federal permits and documentation to FHWA for approval.

After obligation of project design funds, detailed environmental studies for CE documentation may be required for DCE projects to determine the environmental, economic, and social impacts. WSDOT then finalizes the ECS and submits it to FHWA for final approval.

220.08 Environmental Assessments: Class III Projects

Under NEPA, when the significance of the impact of a proposed project on the environment is not clearly established, an Environmental Assessment (EA) is prepared to determine the extent of environmental impact and whether an EIS is needed. WSDOT may adopt the EA to satisfy requirements for a SEPA DNS, but the EA will not satisfy the EIS requirement under SEPA. No EIS is required when the EA supports a NEPA Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI). Issuance of a FONSI (normally by the FHWA) is the final step in the EA process. (See the *Environmental Procedures Manual* for details on EA documentation and procedures.)

220.09 Reevaluations

Both NEPA and SEPA allow for reevaluating the project classification or environmental document. In general, reevaluations are required when there are substantial changes to the scope of a project, such that the project is likely to have significant adverse environmental impacts, or there is new information that increases the likelihood that a project will have significant adverse environmental impacts. Reevaluations are also required if project construction has not begun within five years of completing the NEPA process.

Because FHWA must concur with the NEPA classification, any major change in a project classification for a project involving federal funds requires the processing of a revised ECS form. Minor changes may be handled informally if FHWA concurs.

For SEPA, when the scope of a project is changed, a revised ERS is normally required, with some exceptions. As part of that revision process, the environmental classification needs to be reassessed. The decision on whether or not to revise the ERS is made by the region Environmental Office in coordination with the region Program Management Office. For many minor-scope changes, a new ERS is not required. A note to the file or a follow-up memo is then prepared to document the revision.

In some cases, new circumstances may cause a change in the environmental classification but not a change in scope. Document any changes in classification with a note to the file or a follow-up memo.

220.10 Commitment File

As an initial part of project development, the region establishes a project commitment file. Establishment of this file generally coincides with preparation of the environmental document or could occur at later stages as required. The file consists of proposed mitigating measures, commitments made to resource or other agencies with permitting authority, and other documented commitments made on the project. Also included in the file are design and environmental commitments. Other commitment types (ROW, Maintenance, and so on) may be added at the region's discretion.

The region continues to maintain the commitment file as a project progresses through its development process. Whenever commitments are made, they are incorporated into project documents and transferred from one phase of the project to the next. Commitments are normally included or identified in the following documents or actions:

- Environmental documents and consultations
- Design Documentation Package (DDP)
- Environmental permits
- MOUs/Letters to stakeholders
- Right of way plans
- Access plans
- Findings and order from access hearings
- Contract document
- Preconstruction conference
- Change orders
- End of project report
- Maintenance

To organize and track commitments made during the development and implementation of a project, WSDOT has established a Commitment Tracking System (CTS). This system provides easy access and retrieval of commitment information. Reports from the system establish the commitment record for the Project File. When a commitment is made, log it in the CTS. The entry requires sufficient detail necessary to document the commitment, including references to correspondence, agreement numbers, and so on. A commitment may be revised when WSDOT and the organization or individual involved agree to the revision.

When commitments are completed, the CTS is updated with the date the commitment was finished and appropriate comments. Commitments requiring ongoing maintenance need to be formally passed off to HQ Maintenance and Operations for incorporation into the Maintenance Program.

220.11 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Chapter 230 Environmental Permits and Approvals

230.01 General
230.02 Permits and Approvals
230.03 Project Types and Permits
230.04 Design Process and Permit Interaction

230.01 General

Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) projects are subject to a variety of federal, state, and local environmental permits and approvals. The *Environmental Procedures Manual* provides detailed guidance on the applicability of each permit and approval. Because the facts of each project vary and the environmental regulations are complex, reliance on either the *Design Manual* or the *Environmental Procedures Manual* is insufficient. Consult the region and Headquarters (HQ) Environmental offices.

230.02 Permits and Approvals

The Environmental Review Summary (ERS), which is prepared as part of the Project Summary, identifies some of the most common environmental permits that might be required based on the information known at that stage. As the project design develops, additional permits and approvals can be identified. Conducting project site visits for engineering and environmental features may reduce project delays due to late discoveries. Coordinate with the region and HQ Environmental offices.

Table 500-1 of the *Environmental Procedures Manual* provides a comprehensive list of the environmental permits and approvals that may be required for WSDOT projects. For each permit or approval, the responsible agency is identified, the conditions that trigger the permit are listed, and the statutory authority is cited:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals/fulltext/M31-11/500.pdf

The conditions that trigger a permit or approval are discussed in detail in Part 5 of the *Environmental Procedures Manual*. The permit triggers are subject to interpretation and change as new regulations are developed or court decisions are rendered that alter their applicability. Determining which permits and approvals apply and how they apply is dependent on the facts of each project. Consult the region or HQ Environmental Office at each stage of the project design to review the permits and approvals that might be required based on the project design.

230.03 Project Types and Permits

Understanding and anticipating what permits and approvals may be required for a particular project type will assist the designer in project delivery. This section provides information on what project types are likely to trigger which permits. The purpose of this section is to inform designers of the potential for permits. It does not substitute for the information developed in the Environmental Review Summary, prepared during the Project Summary, or more specific permit information developed during design. The intent is to provide a familiar and reasonably quick method for gauging the relative complexity of the permit process. Designers are encouraged to use the expertise in the region and HQ Environmental offices.

(1) Project Types

To make the evaluation familiar, this chapter uses the design matrices developed in Chapter 1100 as a template. The project types and definitions are found in Chapter 1100, with the exception of some additional project types for bridge work. These additional bridge projects are defined below. Rather than identify levels of design for each project type, the matrices identify permits and approvals. While every project is unique to some degree, there are common facts associated with project types that allow for a level of predictability. As the project type gets more complex, the predictability of which environmental permits and approvals may be triggered decreases.

Exhibits 230-1 through 230-6 present certain project types combined with assumptions on environmental conditions to generate probabilities about required permits and approvals. The probabilities cannot be substituted for a fact-based analysis of the project and the applicability of any particular environmental permit or approval. Contact the region and/or HQ Environmental offices before decisions are made about whether a permit or approval applies. Coordination with the HQ Bridge and Structures Office and the HQ Environmental Services Office is recommended for bridge projects.

(2) Permit Probability

The probabilities for needing a permit are divided into low, medium, and high. A low probability generally means that the thresholds for triggering an environmental permit or approval may not be reached under the assumptions behind the project type. A medium probability means that there is the potential to trigger the application of the permit or approval. A high probability means that there is a likelihood of triggering the permit or approval.

The assumptions underlying the project types and probabilities are shown as endnotes following the matrices (see Exhibit 230-6). Some general assumptions were made regarding the project types: for main line projects on the Interstate, National Highway System main line (except Interstate), or non-National Highway System, all bridgework is assumed to be over water. For interchange projects on the Interstate and non-Interstate, all bridgework is assumed to be over roads (see Chapter 1100).

The environmental permits and approvals selected for inclusion in the matrices represent the ones that are most frequently triggered. The other permits and approvals listed in Table 500-1 of the *Environmental Procedures Manual* are more limited in their application and often require very specific fact situations. They are discussed in more detail in the *Environmental Procedures Manual*.

(3) Additional Bridge Projects

The additional bridge projects are as follows:

(a) **Bridge Replacement (Obsolete, Structural)**

These are projects to replace or rehabilitate state-owned bridges when continued maintenance and preservation strategies can no longer accommodate safe, continuous movement of people and goods. The projects include new or replacement bridge (on or over, main line, interchange ramp, or water body) and repair or replacement of reinforced concrete, steel, or timber bridges. Obsolete replacement typically includes bridges that have a narrow width or low vertical clearance or a restrictive waterway opening. Structural replacement is replacement of a bridge that has a structural deficiency in a superstructure or substructure element.

(b) **Existing Bridge Widening**

This is widening an existing bridge for an existing highway.

(c) **Bridge Deck Rehabilitation**

These are structures Preservation projects that repair delaminated concrete bridge deck and add a protective overlay that will provide a sound, smooth surface; prevent further corrosion of the reinforcing steel; and preserve operational and structural capacity. The goal is to ensure safe, long-lasting riding surfaces on all reinforced concrete bridges.

(d) **Bridge Scour Countermeasures**

These are measures undertaken to reduce the risk of bridge foundation scour damage and streambank erosive forces that increase the potential of bridge collapse due to flooding and long-term waterway changes. The goal is to maintain the structural integrity of the roadway prism and highway structures. Bridge scour repair can include repair to the streambed around a bridge column or repairs to streambanks near a bridge. This category typically involves an in-depth engineering and environmental review for site and reach processes. Extensive documentation and permitting are typically needed. Early and close coordination with the permit agency representatives through the region Environmental Office is essential. Close coordination with the HQ Bridge Preservation Office, HQ Hydraulics Section, and HQ Environmental Services Office (watershed and permit programs) are useful to ensure a one-WSDOT project approach is established early in the design phase.

(e) **Steel Bridge Painting**

This includes measures undertaken to preserve the load-carrying capacity of steel bridges by maintaining properly functioning paint systems to provide protection against corrosion. These measures include high-pressure washing and spot abrasive blasting to prepare steel surfaces for painting. This category typically involves discharge of wastewater into waters of the state and the decisions surrounding the need for full or partial containment of the wash water and blast media used for preparing the steel surfaces. Early and close coordination with the Bridge Management Engineer is necessary. A thorough review of the *Standard Specifications'* current Water Quality Implementing Agreement (WQIA) and available Programmatic Permits, such as the General Hydraulic Project Approval (GHPA) and National Pollution Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permits, is also recommended. Early project scoping for determination of wildlife usage is another factor for early coordination with all departments.

(f) **Bridge Seismic Retrofit**

This is seismic retrofit of a bridge element (typically bridge columns). For example, measures undertaken to reduce the vulnerability of existing state-owned bridges in the high to moderate seismic risk areas to earthquake damage that could cause collapse, excessive repair costs, or lengthy closures to traffic. This includes Phase 1 repairs (prevent span separation), Phase 2 repairs (retrofit single-column supports), and Final Phase repairs (retrofit multiple-column supports).

(g) **Special Bridge Repair (Electrical/Mechanical Retrofit)**

This covers rehabilitating a major portion of an existing bridge to include electrical and mechanical repairs, such as for a movable bridge, a bridge over navigable water, or sign support structures.

(h) **Other Bridge Structures**

This includes major repair or replacement of Sign Bridges, Cantilever Sign Supports, Bridge-Mounted Sign Supports, Tunnels, and High Mast Light Standards.

(i) **New Special Structures**

These are measures taken to build a new floating, movable, suspension, or cable stayed bridge for new or existing roadway.

⇩ Project Type / Permit or Approval[***] ⇨	Section 404 Individual Permits	Section 404 Nationwide Permits (NWP)	Water Quality 401 Certification[1]	Coastal Zone Management (CZM) Certification[2]	Threatened and Endangered Species	Hydraulic Project Approval (HPA)	Shoreline Substantial Development Permit	Flood Plain Development Permit	Aquatic Resource Use Authorization	NPDES Municipal Stormwater Permit[3]	NPDES Stormwater Construction Permit	NPDES Industrial Discharge Permit	State Waste Discharge (SWD) Permit[4]	Section 9 Bridge Permit[5]	Section 10 Permit[6]	Section 106	Section 4(f) 6(f)	Critical/Sensitive Areas Ordinances[7]	Noise Variance
(1-1) Preventive Maintenance																			
Pavement Restoration																			
(1-2) Diamond Grinding	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(1-3) Milling with HMA Inlays	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(1-4) Nonstructural Overlay	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
Pavement Rehab./Resurf.																			
(1-5) HMA Structural Overlays	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(1-6) PCCP Overlays	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(1-7) Dowel Bar Retrofit	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
Bridge Rehabilitation																			
(1-8) Bridge Widening	M	M	M	M	M	H	H	M	L	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	L	M	L**
(1-8a) Existing Bridge Replacement	M/H	H	H	H	M/H	H	H	M	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	H	M	M	M
(1-8b) Bridge Deck Rehabilitation	M	L	L	H	M	M	H	L	L	H	L	L	L	M	L	M	L	L	M
(1-8c) Bridge Scour Countermeasures	M	H	H	H	H	H	H	L	M	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	L	H	L
(1-8d) Steel Bridge Painting	L	L	H	H	M	H	L	L	L	L	L	L*	L	M	L	L	L	L	M**
(1-8e) Bridge Seismic Retrofit	L	M	M	M	M	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L	L	L
(1-8f) Special Bridge Repair	L	M	M	M	M	M	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L	L	M
Safety																			
(1-9) Median Barrier	L	M	M	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L
(1-10) Guardrail Upgrades	L	M	M	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L
(1-11) Bridge Rail Upgrades	L	L	L	H	L	L	H	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
Reconstruction																			
(1-12) New/Reconstruction	M/H	H	H	H	M/H	H	H	M	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	H	M	M	M

Note: For an explanation of the matrices, see Exhibit 230-6.

Project Environmental Matrix 1:
Permit Probabilities for Interstate Routes (Main Line)
Exhibit 230-1

⇩ Project Type / Permit or Approval(***) ⇨	Section 404 Individual Permits	Section 404 Nationwide Permits (NWP)	Water Quality 401 Certification[1]	Coastal Zone Management (CZM) Certification[2]	Threatened and Endangered Species	Hydraulic Project Approval (HPA)	Shoreline Substantial Development Permit	Flood Plain Development Permit	Aquatic Resource Use Authorization	NPDES Municipal Stormwater Permit[3]	NPDES Stormwater Construction Permit	NPDES Industrial Discharge Permit	State Waste Discharge (SWD) Permit[4]	Section 9 Bridge Permit[5]	Section 10 Permit[6]	Section 106	Section 4(f) 6(f)	Critical/Sensitive Areas Ordinances[7]	Noise Permit
(2-1) Preventive Maintenance																			
Pavement Restoration																			
(2-2) Diamond Grinding	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(2-3) Milling with HMA Inlays	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(2-4) Nonstructural Overlay	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
Pavement Rehab./Resurf.																			
(2-5) HMA Structural Overlays	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(2-6) PCCP Overlays	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(2-7) Dowel Bar Retrofit	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
Bridge Rehabilitation																			
(2-8) Bridge Deck Rehabilitation	M	L	L	H	M	M	H	L	L	H	L	L	L	M	L	M	L	L	M**
(2-8a) Steel Bridge Painting	L	L	H	H	M	H	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	M	L	L	L	L	L
(2-8b) Bridge Seismic Retrofit	L	M	M	M	M	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L	L	L
Safety																			
(2-9) Guard Rail Upgrades	L	M	M	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(2-10) Bridge Rail Upgrades	L	L	L	M	L	L	M	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
Reconstruction																			
(2-11) New/Reconstruction	M/H	H	H	H	H	H	H	M	L	H	H	L	L	L	L	H	M	M	M

Note: For an explanation of the matrices, see Exhibit 230-6.

Project Environmental Matrix 2:
Permit Probabilities for Interstate Interchange Areas
Exhibit 230-2

⇩- Project Type / Permit or Approval(***) ⇨	Section 404 Individual Permits	Section 404 Nationwide Permits (NWP)	Water Quality 401 Certification[1]	Coastal Zone Management (CZM) Certification[2]	Threatened and Endangered Species	Hydraulic Project Approval (HPA)	Shoreline Substantial Development Permit	Flood Plain Development Permit	Aquatic Resource Use Authorization	NPDES Municipal Stormwater Permit[3]	NPDES Stormwater Construction Permit	NPDES Industrial Discharge Permit	State Waste Discharge (SWD) Permit[4]	Section 9 Bridge Permit[5]	Section 10 Permit[6]	Section 106	Section 4(f) 6(F)	Critical/Sensitive Areas Ordinances[7]	Noise Permit
Preservation																			
Roadway																			
(3-1) Non-Interstate Freeway	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(3-2) HMA/PCCP/BST Overlays	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(3-3) Replace HMA w/ PCCP at I/S	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
Structures																			
(3-4) Bridge Replacement	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	M	H	H	L	L	M	M	M	M	M	L
(3-5) Bridge Deck Rehab.	M	L	L	H	M	M	H	L	L	H	L	L	L	M	L	M	L	L	M
(3-5a) Bridge Scour	M	H	H	H	H	H	H	L	M	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	L	H	L
(3-5b) Steel Bridge Painting	L	L	H	H	M	H	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	M	L	L	L	L	L
(3-5c) Bridge Seismic Retrofit	L	M	M	M	M	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L	L	L
(3-5d) Special Bridge Repair	L	M	M	M	M	M	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L	L	M
Improvements																			
Mobility																			
(3-6) Non-Interstate Freeway	M/H	H	H	H	M/H	H	H	M	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	M**
(3-7) Urban	M/H	H	H	H	M/H	H	H	M	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	M**
(3-8) Rural	M	H	H	L	M	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(3-9) HOV	M	M	M	L	M	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	M
(3-10) Bike/Ped. Connectivity	M	H	H	L	M	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
Safety																			
(3-11) Non-Interstate Freeway	L	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(3-12) Intersection	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(3-13) Corridor	L	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(3-14) Median Barrier	L	M	M	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(3-15) Guardrail Upgrades	L	M	M	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(3-16) Bridge Rail Upgrades	L	L	L	M	L	L	M	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(3-17) Risk: Roadside	L	H	H	L	L	L	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(3-18) Risk: Sight Distance	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(3-19) Risk: Roadway Width	L	H	H	L	L	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(3-20) Risk: Realignment	M	H	H	L	M	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
Economic Development																			
(3-21) Freight and Goods (Frost Free)	M	H	H	M	M	M	M	M	L	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	M
(3-22) Four-Lane Trunk System	M	H	H	M	M	M	M	M	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	H	H	H	M
(3-23) Rest Areas (New)	M	H	H	L	M	M	M	L	L	H	H	L	M	L	L	H	H	H	L
(3-24) Bridge Restrictions	M	H	H	H	M	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(3-25) Bike Routes (Shldrs)	L	M	M	L	L	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L

Note: For an explanation of the matrices, see Exhibit 230-6.

Project Environmental Matrix 3:
Permit Probabilities for NHS Routes, Non-Interstate (Main Line)
Exhibit 230-3

⇩ Project Type / Permit or Approval(***) ⇨	Section 404 Individual Permits	Section 404 Nationwide Permits (NWP)	Water Quality 401 Certification[1]	Coastal Zone Management (CZM) Certification[2]	Threatened and Endangered Species	Hydraulic Project Approval (HPA)	Shoreline Substantial Development Permit	Flood Plain Development Permit	Aquatic Resource Use Authorization	NPDES Municipal Stormwater Permit[3]	NPDES Stormwater Construction Permit	NPDES Industrial Discharge Permit	State Waste Discharge (SWD) Permit[4]	Section 9 Bridge Permit[5]	Section 10 Permit[6]	Section 106	Section 4(f) 6(F)	Critical/Sensitive Areas Ordinances[7]	Noise Permit
Preservation																			
Roadway																			
(4-1) Non-Interstate Freeway	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(4-2) HMA/PCCP/BST	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
Overlays Ramps	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
Structures																			
(4-3) Bridge Replacement	M	H	H	M	L	L	M	M	L	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	M
(4-4) Bridge Deck Rehab.	M	L	L	H	M	M	H	L	L	H	L	L	L	M	L	M	L	L	L
(4-4a) Steel Bridge Painting	L	L	H	H	M	H	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	M	L	L	L	L	L
(4-4b) Bridge Seismic Retrofit	L	M	M	M	M	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L	L	L
Improvements																			
Mobility																			
(4-5) Non-Interstate Freeway	M/H	H	H	H	M/H	H	H	M	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	M**
(4-6) Urban	M/H	H	H	H	M/H	H	H	M	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	M**
(4-7) Rural	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(4-8) HOV By Pass	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	M
(4-9) Bike/Ped. Connectivity	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
Safety																			
(4-10) Non-Interstate Freeway	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(4-11) At Grade	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(4-12) Intersection	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(4-13) Guardrail Upgrades	L	M	M	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(4-14) Bridge Rail Upgrades	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(4-15) Risk: Roadside	L	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(4-16) Risk: Sight Distance	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(4-17) Risk: Roadway Width	L	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(4-18) Risk: Realignment	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
Economic Development																			
(4-19) Four-Lane Trunk System	M	H	H	M	M	M	M	M	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	H	H	H	M

Note: For an explanation of the matrices, see Exhibit 230-6.

Project Environmental Matrix 4:
Permit Probabilities for Interchange Areas, NHS (Except Interstate), and Non-NHS
Exhibit 230-4

⇩ Project Type / Permit or Approval(***) ⇨	Section 404 Individual Permits	Section 404 Nationwide Permits (NWP)	Water Quality 401 Certification[1]	Coastal Zone Management (CZM) Certification[2]	Threatened and Endangered Species	Hydraulic Project Approval (HPA)	Shoreline Substantial Development Permit	Flood Plain Development Permit	Aquatic Resource Use Authorization	NPDES Municipal Stormwater Permit[3]	NPDES Stormwater Construction Permit	NPDES Industrial Discharge Permit	State Waste Discharge (SWD) Permit[4]	Section 9 Bridge Permit[5]	Section 10 Permit[6]	Section 106	Section 4(f) 6(F)	Critical/Sensitive Areas Ordinances[7]	Noise Permit
Preservation																			
Roadway																			
(5-1) HMA/PCCP	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(5-2) BST	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(5-3) BST Routes/Basic Safety	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(5-4) Replace HMA with PCCP at I/S	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	
Structures																			
(5-5) Bridge Replacement	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	M	H	H	L	L	M	M	M	M	M	M
(5-6) Bridge Repl. (Multilane)	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	M	H	H	L	L	M	M	M	M	M	M
(5-7) Bridge Deck Rehab	M	L	L	H	M	M	H	L	L	H	L	L	L	M	L	M	L	L	M
(5-7a) Bridge Scour Countermeasures	M	H	H	H	H	H	H	L	M	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	L	H	L
(5-7b) Steel Bridge Painting	L	L	H	H	M	H	L	L	L	L	L	H	L	M	L	L	L	L	L
(5-7c) Bridge Seismic Retrofit	L	M	M	M	M	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L	L	L
(5-7d) Special Bridge Repair	L	M	M	M	M	M	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L	L	M
Improvements																			
Mobility																			
(5-8) Non-Interstate Freeway	H	H	H	M/H	H	H	M	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	M	M**
(5-9) Urban	H	H	H	M/H	H	H	M	M	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	M	M**
(5-10) Rural	M	H	H	L	M	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(5-11) HOV	M	M	M	L	M	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	M
(5-12) Bike/Ped. Connectivity	M	M	H	L	M	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
Safety																			
(5-13) Non-Interstate Freeway	L	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(5-14) Intersection	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(5-15) Corridor	L	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(5-16) Median Barrier	L	M	M	L	L	L	L	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(5-17) Guardrail Upgrades	L	M	M	L	L	L	M	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(5-18) Bridge Rail Upgrades	L	L	L	M	L	L	M	L	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(5-19) Risk: Roadside	L	H	H	L	L	L	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(5-20) Risk: Sight Distance	L	L	L	L	L	L	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(5-21) Risk: Roadway Width	L	H	H	L	L	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
(5-22) Risk: Realignment	M	H	H	L	M	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L
Economic Development																			
(5-23) Freight and Goods (Frost Free)	M	H	H	M	M	M	M	M	L	H	H	L	L	L	L	M	M	M	M
(5-24) Rest Areas (New)	M	H	H	M	M	M	M	L	L	H	H	L	M	L	L	H	H	H	L
(5-25) Bridge Restrictions	M	H	H	H	M	L	M	L	L	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	M
(5-26) Bike Routes (Shldrs)	L	M	M	L	L	M	M	M	L	H	M	L	L	L	L	M	L	L	L

Note: For an explanation of the matrices, see Exhibit 230-6.

Project Environmental Matrix 5:
Non-NHS Routes (Main Line)
Exhibit 230-5

NOTES

For Exhibits 230-1 through 230-5

For main line projects on the Interstate, National Highway System main line (except Interstate), or non-National Highway System, all bridgework is assumed to be over water. For interchange projects on the Interstate and non-Interstate, all bridgework is assumed to be over roads (see Chapter 1100).

NEPA/SEPA Endnotes

(*) Programmatic permits may apply

(**) Night work may require noise variance

(***) NEPA/SEPA compliance is required on all projects. The level of documentation will correspond to the complexity of the project and the potential environmental impacts anticipated. (See region or Headquarters environmental staff.)

Section 404 IP Endnotes

L = Low probability assumes the work is covered by an NWP.

M = Medium probability assumes the potential for impacts beyond the thresholds for an NWP.

H = High probability assumes a likelihood for impacts beyond the thresholds for an NWP.

Section 404 NWP Endnotes

L = Low probability assumes no work and/or fill below the OHWM or wetlands in waters of the U.S.

M = Medium probability assumes potential for work and/or fill below the OHWM in waters of the U.S. and/or minimal wetland fill.

H = High probability assumes likelihood for work and/or fill in waters of the U.S. below the OHWM or wetland fills below 25 cy or 1/10 acres.

Section 401 Endnotes

[1] Parallels probability of Section 404 IP/NWP. Includes reference to Corps/Ecology/Tribes Regional General Conditions.

CZM Endnotes

[2] Parallels probability of Section 401 within 15 coastal counties only and involving waters of the state subject to Shoreline Management Act.

ESA Endnotes

L = Low probability assumes either applicable programmatic BA or individual BA and No Effect Determination.

M = Medium probability assumes either applicable programmatic or individual BA and Not Likely to Adversely Affect Determination.

H = High probability assumes either applicable programmatic or individual BA and adverse effect determination (Biological Opinion).

HPA Endnotes

L = Low probability assumes no work within or over waters of the state subject to HPA.

M = Medium probability assumes potential for limited work within or over waters of the state.

H = High probability assumes likelihood for work within or over waters of the state.

Shoreline Endnotes

L = Low probability assumes no work within shorelines of the state.

M = Medium probability assumes potential for work within shorelines of the state.

H = High probability assumes likelihood for work within shorelines of the state.

Endnotes for Project Environmental Matrices
Exhibit 230-6

Floodplain Endnotes

L = Low probability assumes no fill in the 100-year floodplain.

M = Medium probability assumes potential for fill in the 100-year floodplain.

H = High probability assumes likelihood for fill in the 100-year floodplain.

Aquatic Resource Use Authorization Endnotes (DNR)

L = Low probability assumes no new structures or use of aquatic lands. (“Use” is subject to interpretation by DNR.)

M = Medium probability assumes potential for new structures or use of aquatic lands.

H = High probability assumes likelihood for new structures or use of aquatic lands. May need to define USE and include Easement Over Navigable Water.

Section 402 NPDES Municipal Stormwater General Permit Endnotes

[3] Applies to construction, operation, and maintenance activities in areas governed by Phase I and Phase II of the Municipal Stormwater Permit Program.

L = Low probability assumes project exempt from NPDES Municipal Stormwater Permit.

H = High probability assumes project subject to NPDES Municipal Stormwater Permit.

Section 402 NPDES Stormwater Construction General Permit Endnotes

L = Low probability assumes ground disturbance of less that one acre.

M = Medium probability assumes ground disturbance of one acre or more.

H = High probability assumes likelihood of ground disturbance of one acre or more.

Section 402 NPDES Industrial Discharge General Permit Endnotes

L = Low probability assumes no bridge or ferry terminal washing over waters of the state.

M = Medium probability assumes potential for bridge or ferry terminal washing over waters of the state.

H = High probability assumes likelihood for bridge or ferry terminal washing over waters of the state.

State Waste Discharge Permit Endnotes

[4] Applies to discharges of commercial or industrial wastewater into waters of the state; does not cover stormwater discharges under NPDES program.

L = Low probability assumes SWD permit does not apply.

M = Medium probability assumes potential for SWD permit.

Section 9 Bridge Permit Endnotes

[5] Applies to work on bridges across navigable waters of the U.S.

L = Low probability assumes no bridgework.

M = Medium probability assumes potential for work on a bridge across navigable water.

H = High probability assumes likelihood for work on a bridge across navigable water.

Section 10 Permit Endnotes

[6] Applies to obstruction, alteration, or improvement of navigable waters of the U.S.

L = Low probability assumes no obstructions, alterations, or improvements to navigable waters.

M = Medium probability assumes potential for obstructions, alterations, or improvements to navigable waters.

H = High probability assumes likelihood for obstructions, alterations, or improvements to navigable waters.

Endnotes for Project Environmental Matrices

Exhibit 230-6 (continued)

Section 106 Endnotes

L = Low probability assumes no federal nexus and/or activities exempted per the statewide Programmatic Agreement on Section 106 signed by FHWA, WSDOT, OAHP and ACHP.

M = Medium probability assumes a federal nexus; therefore, Section 106 federal regulations apply.

H = High probability assumes a federal nexus and/or the likelihood for discovery of historic or culturally significant artifacts. (See 36 CFR Part 800, the *Environmental Procedures Manual*, current WSDOT Policy, and the Section 106 Programmatic Agreement.)

Section 4(f)/6(f) Endnotes

L = Low probability assumes no use of or acquisition of new right of way.

M = Medium probability assumes potential use of or acquiring of new right of way.

H = High probability assumes likelihood for use of or acquiring of new right of way. Review triggers: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Environment/Compliance/Section4Fguidance.htm

Critical/Sensitive Areas Endnotes

[7] The mechanism for critical/sensitive areas review varies by jurisdiction.

L = Low probability assumes no work inside or outside of right of way in critical/sensitive areas.

M = Medium probability assumes potential for work inside or outside of right of way in critical/sensitive areas.

H = High probability assumes likelihood for work inside or outside of right of way in critical/sensitive areas.

Noise Variance Endnotes

L = Low probability assumes no night work.

M = Medium probability assumes potential for night work.

H = High probability assumes likelihood for night work.

Endnotes for Project Environmental Matrices

Exhibit 230-6 (continued)

230.04 Design Process and Permit Interaction

Environmental permits require information prepared during the design phase to demonstrate compliance with environmental rules, regulations, and policies. To avoid delays in project delivery, it is necessary for the designer to understand and anticipate this exchange of information. The timing of this exchange often affects design schedules, while the permit requirements can affect the design itself. In complex cases, the negotiations over permit conditions can result in iterative designs as issues are raised and resolved.

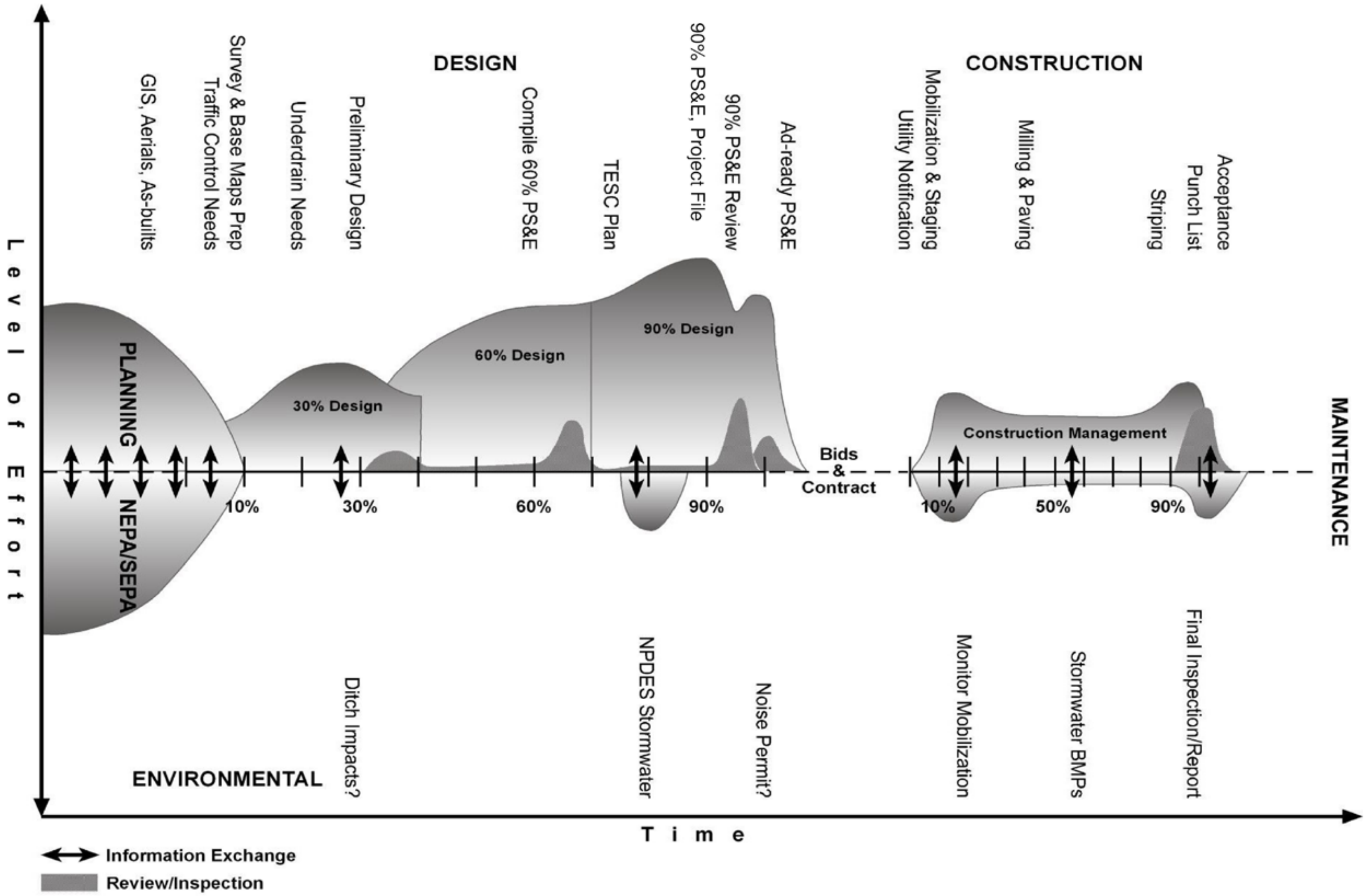
The permit process begins well in advance of the actual permit application. For some permits, WSDOT has already negotiated permit conditions through the use of programmatic and general permits. These permits typically apply to repetitive, relatively simple projects, and the permit conditions apply regardless of the actual facts of the project type. For complex projects, the negotiations with permit agencies often begin during the environmental documentation phase for compliance with NEPA and SEPA. The mitigation measures developed for the NEPA/SEPA documents are captured as permit conditions on the subsequent permits.

For many project types, the permit process begins during the design phase. This section illustrates the interaction between design and permitting for two relatively uncomplicated projects. Exhibits 230-7 and 230-8 illustrate project timelines for two project types and the interaction of typical permits for those project types. The project types are an overlay project and a channelization project. The exhibits illustrate the level of effort over time for both design components and environmental permits.

The overlay project assumes that only an NPDES Municipal Stormwater General Permit is required. Compliance with this permit is through application of the *Highway Runoff Manual* and the implementation of WSDOT's 1997 Stormwater Management Plan. The possibility for a noise variance exists because of the potential for night work.

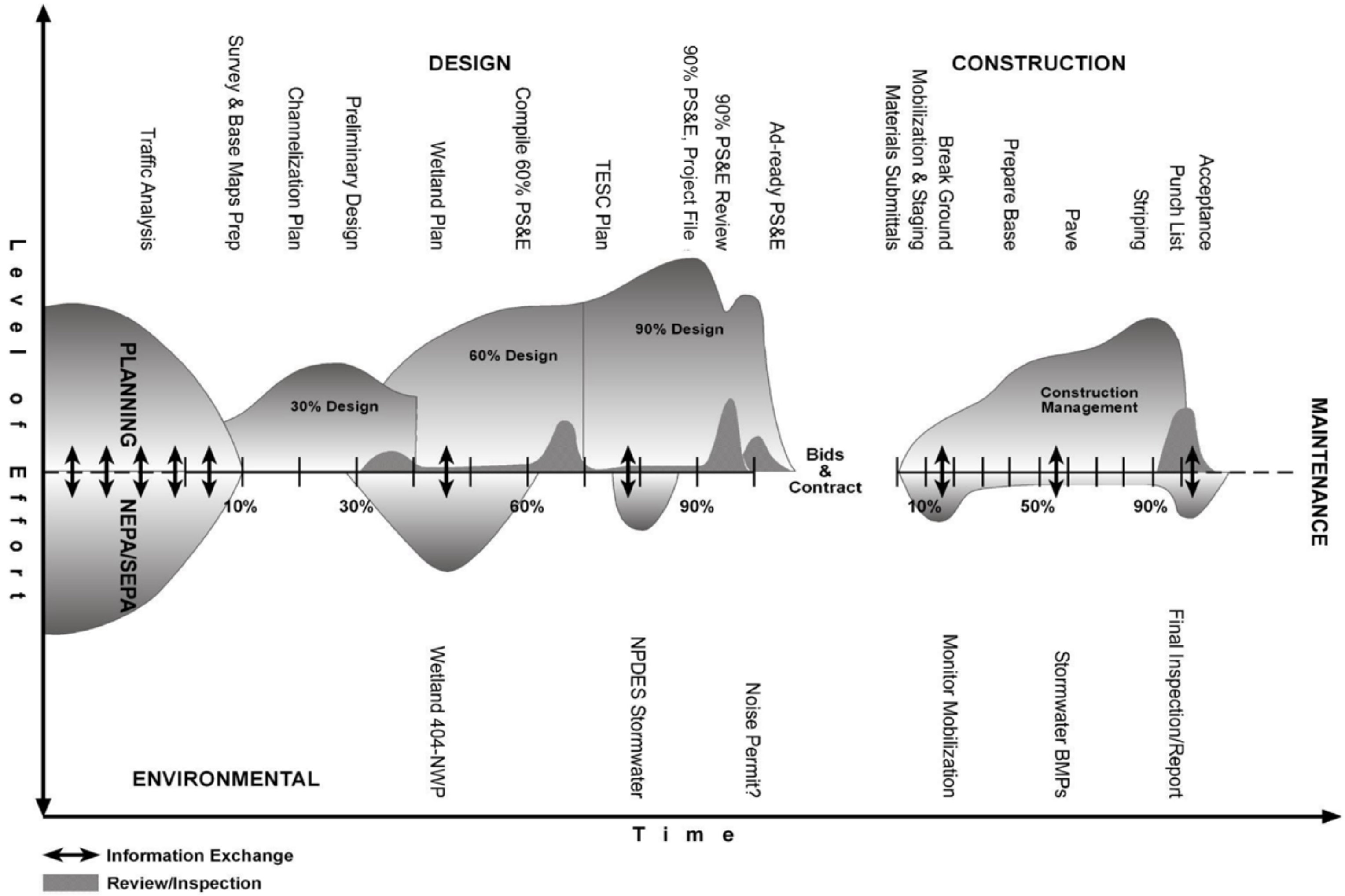
The channelization project assumes minor amounts of new right of way are required. Because roadside ditches are often at the edge of the right of way, it is assumed that the potential for impacting wetlands exists. Usually the amount of fill is minor and the project may qualify for a Corps of Engineers Section 404 Nationwide Permit. A wetland mitigation plan is required to meet permit requirements, and the plan's elements have the potential to affect design, including stormwater facilities.

The interaction of design and permitting increases in complexity as the project type becomes more complex. More detailed analysis of environmental permits and their requirements is available in the *Environmental Procedures Manual* and through consultation with region and HQ Environmental offices.



Environmental Interrelationship: HMA/PCCP/BST Main Line Overlay

Exhibit 230-7



Environmental Interrelationship: Safety Corridor Channelization Main Line

Exhibit 230-8

Chapter 300 Design Documentation, Approval, and Process Review

300.01 General
300.02 References
300.03 Definitions
300.04 Design Documentation
300.05 Project Development
300.06 FHWA Approval
300.07 Design Approval
300.08 Project Development Approval
300.09 Process Review

300.01 General

The Project File (PF) contains the documentation for planning, scoping, programming, design, approvals, contract assembly, utility relocation, needed right of way, advertisement, award, construction, and maintenance review comments for a project. A Project File is completed for all projects and is retained by the region office responsible for the project. Responsibility for the project may pass from one office to another during the life of a project, and the Project File follows the project as it moves from office to office. Portions of the Project File that are not designated as components of the Design Documentation Package (DDP) may be purged when retention of the construction records is no longer necessary.

The DDP is a part of the Project File. It documents and explains design decisions and the design process that was followed. The DDP is retained in a permanent, retrievable file for a period of 75 years, in accordance with Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) records retention policy.

For operational changes and developer projects, design documentation is also needed. It is retained by the region office responsible for the project, in accordance with WSDOT records retention policy. All participants in the design process are to provide the appropriate documentation for their decisions.

For emergency projects, also refer to the *Emergency Relief Procedures Manual*. It provides the legal and procedural guidelines for WSDOT employees to prepare all necessary documentation to respond to, and recover from, emergencies and disasters that affect the operations of the department.

300.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) 635.111, Tied bids

23 CFR 635.411, Material or product selection

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.28.030, Contracts – State forces – Monetary limits – Small businesses, minority, and women contractors – Rules

RCW 47.28.035, Cost of project, defined

"Washington Federal-Aid Stewardship Agreement," as implemented in the design matrices (see Chapter 1100)

(2) Design Guidance

WSDOT Directional Documents Index, including the one listed below:
http://wwwi.wsdot.wa.gov/docs/

- Executive Order E 1010, "Certification of Documents by Licensed Professionals," WSDOT

WSDOT technical manuals, including those listed below:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Publications/Manuals/index.htm

- *Advertisement and Award Manual*, M 27-02, WSDOT
- *Emergency Relief Procedures Manual*, M 3014, WSDOT
- *Hydraulics Manual*, M 23-03, WSDOT
- *Plans Preparation Manual*, M 22-31, WSDOT
- *Project Control and Reporting Manual*, M 30-26, WSDOT
- *Roadside Classification Plan*, M 25-31, WSDOT

Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan, WSDOT
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/accessandhearings/tracking.htm

Washington State Highway System Plan, WSDOT
www.wsdot.wa.gov/planning/HSP

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

300.03 Definitions

corridor analysis Documentation that justifies a change in design level and/or decisions to include, exclude, or modify design elements. A corridor analysis addresses needs and design solutions within a substantial segment of roadway. A corridor analysis is useful beyond a specific project contained within it, and is an appropriate document to address design speed.

Design Approval Documented approval of the design criteria, which becomes part of the Design Documentation Package. This approval is an endorsement of the design criteria by the designated representative of the approving organization as shown in Exhibit 300-2.

design exception (DE) A method to document a geometric feature that has been preauthorized to exclude improvement of an existing design element for various types of projects, as designated in the design matrices (see Chapter 1100). A DE designation indicates that the design element is normally outside the scope of the project type (see Exhibit 300-1).

design variance A recorded decision to differ from the design level specified in the *Design Manual*, such as an Evaluate Upgrade (EU) not upgraded, a DE, or a deviation. EUs leading to an upgrade are documented but are not considered to be variances. A project or corridor analysis may also constitute a design variance if that analysis leads to a decision to use a design level or design classification that differs from what the *Design Manual* specifies for the project type.

Design Variance Inventory (DVI) A list of design elements that will not be improved in accordance with the *Design Manual* criteria designated for the project.

Design Variance Inventory System (DVIS) A database application developed to generate the DVI form. The DVIS also provides query functions, giving designers an opportunity to search for previously granted variances. The DVIS was started in the early 2000s and does not identify prior variances. The *Design Manual* is constantly being refined and guidelines change over time. What may have been a design variance previously may not be a deviation today. The DVIS database is intended for internal WSDOT use only, and WSDOT staff access it from:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev

deviation A documented decision granting approval at project-specific locations to differ from the design level specified in the *Design Manual* (see Chapter 1100 and Exhibit 300-1).

environmental acronyms (see Chapter 220 for definitions)

- ***NEPA*** National Environmental Policy Act
- ***SEPA*** [Washington] State Environmental Policy Act
- ***CE*** NEPA: Categorical Exemption
- ***DCE*** Documented Categorical Exclusion
- ***CE*** SEPA: Categorical Exception
- ***EA*** Environmental Assessment
- ***ECS*** Environmental Classification Summary
- ***EIS*** Environmental Impact Statement
- ***ERS*** Environmental Review Summary
- ***FONSI*** Finding Of No Significant Impact
- ***ROD*** Record of Decision

evaluate upgrade (EU) A decision-making process to determine whether or not to upgrade an existing design element as designated in the design matrices. Documentation is required (see Exhibit 300-1).

FHWA Federal Highway Administration.

HQ Washington State Department of Transportation Headquarters organization.

Project Analysis Documentation that justifies a change in design level and/or decisions to include, exclude, or modify design elements specific to a project only (also see Chapter 1100).

Project Change Request Form A form used to document and approve revisions to project scope, schedule, or budget from a previously approved Project Definition (see Project Summary).

Project Development Approval Final approval of all project development documents by the designated representative of the approving organization prior to the advertisement of a capital transportation project (see Exhibit 300-2).

Project File (PF) A file containing all documentation and data for all activities related to a project (see 300.01 and 300.04).

- ***Design Documentation Package (DDP)*** The portion of the Project File, including Design Approval and Project Development Approval, that will be retained long term in accordance with WSDOT document retention policies. Depending on the scope of the project, it contains the Project Summary and some or all of the other documents discussed in this chapter. Common components are listed in Exhibit 300-5. Technical reports and calculations are part of the Project File, but are not designated as components of the DDP. Include estimates and justifications for decisions made in the DDP (see 300.04(2)). The DDP explains how and why the design was chosen, and documents approvals (see 300.01).

Project Summary A set of electronic documents consisting of the Design Decisions (DD), the Environmental Review Summary (ERS), and the Project Definition (PD). The Project Summary is part of the design documentation required to obtain Design Approval and is ultimately part of the design documentation required for Project Development Approval (see 300.06).

- ***Design Decisions (DD)*** An electronic document that records major design decisions regarding roadway geometrics, roadway and roadside features, and other issues that influence the project scope and budget.
- ***Environmental Review Summary (ERS)*** An electronic document that records the environmental requirements and considerations for a specific project.
- ***Project Definition (PD)*** An electronic document that records the purpose and need of the project, along with program level and design constraints.

scoping phase The first phase of project development for a specific project, the scoping phase follows identification of the need for a project and precedes detailed project design. It is the process of identifying the work to be done and developing a cost estimate for completing the design and construction. The Project Summary, engineering and construction estimates, and possibly several technical reports (geotechnical, surfacing, bridge condition, and so on) are developed during this phase.

300.04 Design Documentation

(1) Purpose

Design documentation records the evaluations and decisions by the various disciplines that result in design recommendations. Design assumptions and decisions made prior to and during the scoping phase are included. Changes that occur throughout project development are documented. Required justifications and approvals are also included.

The "Design Documentation Checklist" has been developed as a tool (optional) to assist in generating the contents of the DDP and the PF:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

(2) Design Documents

The DDP portion of the PF preserves the decision documents generated during the design process. In each package, a summary (list) of the documents is recommended.

The design documents commonly included in the PF and DDP for all but the simplest projects are listed in Exhibit 300-5.

Documentation is not required for components not related to the project as dictated by the design matrices.

The DVI is needed for all projects that have design variances. The DVI lists all EUs not upgraded to the applicable design level, DEs, and deviations as indicated by the design matrices. Record variances resulting from a project or corridor analysis in the DVI. Use the DVIS database to record and manage:

- Individual design variances identified during project development.
- Variances resulting from a project or corridor analysis.

The DVIS database is found at the Project Development website:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev

The ERS and the PD are required for most projects. Exceptions will be identified by the HQ Project Control and Reporting Office.

The DD is not required for the following project types unless they involve reconstructing the lanes, shoulders, or fill slopes. Since these and some other project types are not included in the design matrices, evaluate them with respect to modified design level (M) for non-NHS routes and full design level (F) for NHS routes. Include in the evaluation only those design elements specifically impacted by the project. Although the following list illustrates some of the project types that do not require a DD, the list is not intended to be a complete accounting of all such projects. Consult with the HQ System Analysis and Program Development Office for projects not included on the list.

- Bridge painting
- Crushing and stockpiling
- Pit site reclamation
- Lane marker replacement
- Guidepost replacement
- Signal rephasing
- Signal upgrade
- Seismic retrofit
- Bridge joint repair
- Navigation light replacement
- Signing upgrade
- Illumination upgrade
- Rumble strips
- Electrical upgrades
- Major drainage
- Bridge scour
- Fish passage
- Other projects approved by the HQ Design Office

(3) Certification of Documents by Licensed Professionals

All original technical documents must bear the certification of the responsible licensee (see Executive Order E 1010).

(4) Design Exception (DE), Evaluate Upgrade (EU), and Deviation Documentation

In special cases, projects may need to address design elements, which are shown as blank cells in a design matrix (see Exhibit 300-1). These special cases must be coordinated with the appropriate Assistant State Design Engineer (ASDE) and the HQ Project Control and Reporting Office. When this is necessary, document the reasons for inclusion of that work in your project.

Matrix Cell Contents	Design Element Meets Specified Design Level	Document to File[1]	Record in DVIS[2]
Blank cell in design matrix		No[3]	No
Cell Entry			
Full (F), Modified (M), or Basic (B) (with no DE or EU qualifiers)	Yes	No	No
	No[4]	Yes[5]	Yes
Design Exception (DE)	Yes[3]	DDP	No
	No	DDP	Yes
Evaluate Upgrade (EU)[5]	Yes	DDP	No
	No	DDP	Yes

DDP = Design Documentation Package

Notes:

[1] See 300.04(3).

[2] See 300.04(2).

[3] Document to the DDP if the element is included in the project as identified in the Project Summary or Project Change Request Form.

[4] Nonconformance with specified design level (see Chapter 1100) requires an approved deviation.

[5] Requires supporting justification (see 300.04(4)).

Design Matrix Documentation Requirements
Exhibit 300-1

When the design matrices specify a DE for a design element, the DE documentation specifies the matrix and row, the design element, and the limits of the exception. Some DEs require justification. Include this in the DVIS. When a DVI is required for the project, the DE locations are recorded in the inventory.

The EU process determines whether an item of work will or will not be done, through analysis of factors such as benefit/cost, route continuity, accident reduction potential, environmental impact, and economic development. Document all EU decisions to the DDP using the list in Exhibit 300-6 as a guide for the content. The cost of the improvement must always be considered when making EU decisions. EU examples on the Internet can serve as models for development of EU documentation. The appropriate approval authority for EUs is designated in Exhibit 300-2.

Deviation requests are stand-alone documents that require enough information and project description for an approving authority to make an informed decision of approval or denial. Documentation of a deviation contains justification and is approved at the appropriate administrative level, as shown in Exhibit 300-2. Submit the request as early as possible because known deviations are to be approved prior to Design Approval.

(5) Deviation Approval

Deviation approval is at the appropriate administrative level, as shown in Exhibit 300-2.

If the element meets current AASHTO guidance adopted by FHWA, such as *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*, but not *Design Manual* criteria, it is a deviation from the *Design Manual* that does not require approval by FHWA or the HQ Design Office. The following documentation is required:

- Identify the design element.
- Explain why the design level specified in the design matrices was not used.
- Explain which AASHTO guidance was used, including the title of the AASHTO guidance, the publication date, and the chapter and page number of the guidance.

When applying for deviation approval, it is necessary to provide two explanations. The first identifies the design element and explains why the design level specified in the design matrices was not or cannot be used. The second provides the justification for the proposed design. Justification for a deviation is to be supported by at least two explanations, which may include the following:

- Accident history and accident analysis
- Benefit/cost analysis
- Engineering judgment*
- Environmental issues
- Route continuity

*Engineering judgment may include a reference to another publication, with an explanation of why that reference is applicable to the situation encountered on the project.

Reference a corridor or project analysis, if one exists, as supporting justification for design deviations dealing with route continuity issues (see Chapter 1100).

Once a deviation is approved, it applies to that project only. When a new project is programmed at the same location, the subject design element is to be reevaluated and either the subject design element is rebuilt to conform to the applicable design level or a new deviation is developed, approved, and preserved in the DDP for the new project. Check the DVIS for help in identifying previously granted deviations.

A change in a design level resulting from an approved corridor planning study, or a corridor or project analysis as specified in design matrix notes, is documented similar to a deviation. Use Exhibit 300-7 as a guide to the outline and contents of your project analysis. Design elements that do not comply with the design level specified in an approved corridor or project analysis are documented as deviations.

To prepare a deviation request, use the list in Exhibit 300-7 as a general guide for the sequence of the content. The list is not all-inclusive of potential content and it might include suggested topics that do not apply to a particular project.

For design deviation examples, see: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev

300.05 Project Development

In general, the region initiates the development of a specific project by preparing the Project Summary. Some project types may be initiated by other WSDOT groups such as the HQ Bridge and Structures Office or the HQ Traffic Office, rather than the region. The project coordination with other disciplines (such as Real Estate Services, Roadside and Site Development, Utilities, and Environmental) is started in the project scoping phase and continues throughout the project's development. The region coordinates with state and federal resource agencies and local governments to provide and obtain information to assist in developing the project.

The project is developed in accordance with all applicable Directives, Instructional Letters, Supplements, and manuals; the Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan; the Washington State Highway System Plan; approved corridor planning studies; the Washington Federal-Aid Stewardship Agreement as implemented in the design matrices (see Chapter 1100); and the Project Summary.

The region develops and maintains documentation for each project. The Project File includes documentation of project work, including planning; scoping; public involvement; environmental action; design decisions; right of way acquisition; Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) development; project advertisement; and construction. Refer to the *Plans Preparation Manual* for PS&E documentation. Exhibit 300-8 is an example checklist of recommended items to be turned over to the construction office at the time of project transition. An expanded version is available here: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/ProjectDev/

All projects involving FHWA action require NEPA clearance. Environmental action is determined through the ECS form. The environmental approval levels are shown in Exhibit 300-3.

Upon receipt of the ECS approval for projects requiring an EA or EIS under NEPA, the region proceeds with environmental documentation, including public involvement, appropriate for the magnitude and type of the project (see Chapter 210).

Design Approval and approval of right of way plans are required prior to acquiring property. If federal funds are used to purchase the property, then NEPA clearance is also required.

The ASDEs work with the regions on project development and conduct process reviews on projects as described in 300.09.

(1) Scoping Phase

Development of the project scope is the initial phase of project development. This effort is prompted by the Washington State Highway System Plan. The project scoping phase consists of determining a project's description, schedule, and cost estimate. The intent is to make design decisions early in the project development process that focus the scope of the project. During the project scoping phase, the Project Summary documents are produced.

(2) Project Summary

The Project Summary provides information on the results of the scoping phase; links the project to the Washington State Highway System Plan and the Capital Improvement and Preservation Program (CIPP); and documents the design decisions, the environmental classification, and agency coordination. The Project Summary is developed and approved before the project is funded for design and construction, and it consists of ERS, DD, and PD documents. The Project Summary database contains specific online instructions for completing the documents.

(a) Environmental Review Summary (ERS)

The ERS lists the required environmental permits and approvals, environmental classifications, and environmental considerations. This form also lists the requirements by environmental and permitting agencies. If there is a change in the PD or DD, the information in the ERS must be reviewed and revised to match the rest of the Project Summary. The ERS is prepared during the scoping phase and is approved by the region. During final design and permitting, revisions may need to be made to the ERS and be reapproved by the region.

(b) Design Decisions (DD)

The DD generally provides the design matrix used to develop the project, as well as the roadway geometrics, design deviations, EUs, other roadway features, roadside restoration, and any design decisions made during the scoping of a project. The information contained in this form is compiled from various databases of departmental information, field data collection, and evaluations made in development of the PD and the ERS. Design decisions may be revised throughout the project development process based on continuing evaluations.

The appropriate ASDE concurs with the Design Decisions for all projects requiring one. The region design authority approves the DD when confident there will be no significant change in the PD or estimated cost. Schedule, scope, or cost changes require a Project Change Request Form to be submitted and approved by the appropriate designee, in accordance with the *Project Control and Reporting Manual*.

(c) Project Definition (PD)

The PD identifies the various disciplines and design elements that will be encountered in project development. It also states the purpose and need for the project, the program categories, and the recommendations for project phasing. The PD is completed early in the scoping phase to provide a basis for full development of the ERS, DD, schedule, and estimate. If circumstances necessitate a change to an approved PD, process a Project Change Request Form for approval by the appropriate designee.

300.06 FHWA Approval

For all NHS projects, the level of FHWA oversight varies according to the type of project, the agency doing the work, and the funding source as shown in Exhibit 300-2. Oversight and funding do not affect the level of design documentation required for a project.

FHWA approval is required for any new or revised access point (including interchanges, temporary access breaks, and locked gate access points) on the Interstate System, regardless of funding (see Chapter 550).

Documents for projects requiring FHWA review, Design Approval, and Project Development Approval are submitted through the HQ Design Office. Include applicable project documents as specified in Exhibit 300-5.

300.07 Design Approval

When the Project Summary documents are complete, and the region is confident that the proposed design adequately addresses the purpose and need for the project, a Design Approval may be pursued and granted at this early stage. Early approval is an option at this point in the design phase and is likely most relevant to larger projects with longer PE phases because it provides early, approved documentation that locks in design policy for three years. This is a benefit for longer PE phases in that it avoids design changes due to policy updates during that time and provides consistency when purchasing right of way or publishing environmental documentation. If early Design Approval is not beneficial for a subject project, the typical items (below) that are part of this package become required in the combined Design Approval/Project Development Approval Package. Design Approval may occur prior to NEPA approval. Approval levels for design and PS&E documents are presented in Exhibits 300-2, 3, and 4.

The following items are typically provided for Design Approval:

- Stamped cover sheet (project description).
- One- or two-page reader-friendly memo that describes the project.
- Project Summary documents.
- Corridor or project analysis.
- Known variances.
- Design Criteria worksheets or equivalent: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev
- Design Variances Inventory (for known variances at this stage).
- Channelization plans, intersection plans, or interchange plans (if applicable).
- Alignment plans and profiles (if project significantly modifies either the existing vertical or horizontal alignment).
- Current cost estimate with a confidence level.

Design Approval is entered into the Design Documentation Package and remains valid for three years or as approved by the HQ Design Office. Evaluate policy changes or revised design criteria that are adopted by the department during this time to determine whether these changes would have a significant impact on the scope or schedule of the project. If it is determined that these changes will not be incorporated into the project, document this decision with a memo from the region Project Development Engineer that is included in the DDP. For an overview of design policy changes, consult the Detailed Chronology of Design Policy Changes Affecting Shelved Projects: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/policy/designpolicy

(1) Alternative Project Delivery Methods

Design Approval applies to projects delivered using alternative means, including design-build projects. Design documentation begins in the project scoping phase and continues through the life of the design-build project. This documentation is thus started by WSDOT and is completed by the design-builder. Since Design Approval is related to project scoping, this milestone may very well be accomplished prior to issuing a Design-Build Request for Proposal (see Exhibit 110-1). However, the design-builder shall refer to the RFP for direction on approval milestones.

300.08 Project Development Approval

When all project development documents are completed and approved, Project Development Approval is granted by the approval authority designated in Exhibit 300-2. The Project Development Approval becomes part of the DDP. (See 300.04 and Exhibit 300-5 for design documents that may lead to Project Development Approval.) Exhibits 300-2 through 300-4 provide approval levels for project design and PS&E documents.

The following items must be approved prior to Project Development Approval:

- Required environmental documents
- Design Approval documents (and any supplements)
- Updated Design Variance Inventory (all project variances)
- Cost estimate
- Stamped cover sheet (project description)

Project Development Approval remains valid for three years. Evaluate policy changes or revised design criteria that are adopted by the department during this time to determine whether these changes would have a significant impact on the scope or schedule of the project. If it is determined that these changes will not be incorporated into the project, document this decision with a memo from the region Project Development Engineer that is included in the DDP. For an overview of design policy changes, consult the Detailed Chronology of Design Policy Changes Affecting Shelved Projects at: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/policy/designpolicy

(1) Alternative Project Delivery Methods

For projects delivered using alternative methods, such as design-build, the design-builder shall refer to the project RFP for specification on final and intermediate deliverables and final records for the project. Project Development Approval is *required* prior to project completion.

It is a prudent practice to start the compilation of design documentation early in a project and to acquire Project Development Approval before the completion of the project. At the start of a project, it is critical that WSDOT project administration staff recognize the importance of all required documentation and how it will be used in the design-build project delivery process.

300.09 Process Review

The process review is done to provide reasonable assurance that projects are prepared in compliance with established policies and procedures and that adequate records exist to show compliance with state and federal requirements. Process reviews are conducted by WSDOT, FHWA, or a combination of both.

The design and PS&E process review is performed in each region at least once each year by the HQ Design Office. The documents used in the review process are the Design Documentation Checklist, the PS&E Review Checklist, and the PS&E Review Summary. These are generic forms used for all project reviews. Copies of these working documents are available for reference when assembling project documentation. The HQ Design Office maintains current copies at:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev

Each project selected for review is examined completely and systematically beginning with the scoping phase (including planning documents) and continuing through contract plans and, when available, construction records and change orders. Projects are normally selected after contract award. For projects having major traffic design elements, the HQ Maintenance and Operations Programs' Traffic Operations Office is involved in the review. The WSDOT process reviews may be held in conjunction with FHWA process reviews.

The HQ Design Office schedules the process review and coordinates it with the region and FHWA.

(a) Process Review Agenda

A process review follows this general agenda:

1. Review team meets with region personnel to discuss the object of the review.
2. Review team reviews the design and PS&E documents, construction documents, and change orders (if available) using the checklists.
3. Review team meets with region personnel to ask questions and clarify issues of concern.
4. Review team meets with region personnel to discuss findings.
5. Review team submits a draft report to the region for comments and input.
6. If the review of a project shows a serious discrepancy, the region design authority is asked to report the steps that will be taken to correct the deficiency.
7. Process review summary forms are completed.
8. Summary forms and checklists are evaluated by the State Design Engineer.
9. Findings and recommendations of the State Design Engineer are forwarded to the region design authority for action and/or information within 30 days of the review.

Project Design	FHWA Oversight Level	Deviation and Corridor/Project Approval[1][2]	EU Approval[2]	Design and Project Development Approvals
Interstate				
New/Reconstruction[3] Federal funds No federal funds	[4] [5]	FHWA	Region	FHWA[10]
Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS) over $1 million	[6]	HQ Design	Region	HQ Design
All other[7] Federal funds State funds Local agency funds	[6] [6] [5]	HQ Design	Region	Region
National Highway System (NHS)				
Managed access highway outside incorporated cities and towns or inside unincorporated cities and towns, or limited access highway	[6]	HQ Design	Region	Region
Managed access highway within incorporated cities and towns[8] Inside curb or EPS[9] Outside curb or EPS	[6] [6]	HQ Design HQ H&LP	Region N/A	Region City/Town
Non-National Highway System (Non-NHS)				
Improvement project on managed access highway outside incorporated cities and towns or within unincorporated cities and towns, or on limited access highway (Matrix lines 5-8 through 5-27)	N/A	HQ Design	Region	Region
Improvement project on managed access highway within incorporated cities/towns[8] Inside curb or EPS[9] Outside curb or EPS (Matrix lines 5-8 through 5-27)	N/A N/A	HQ Design HQ H&LP	Region N/A	Region City/Town
Preservation project on managed access highway outside incorporated cities and towns or within unincorporated cities and towns, or on limited access highway[11] (Matrix lines 5-1 through 5-7)	N/A	Region[12]	Region	Region
Preservation project on managed access highway within incorporated cities and towns[8][11] Inside curb or EPS[9] Outside curb or EPS (Matrix lines 5-1 through 5-7)	N/A N/A	Region HQ H&LP	Region N/A	Region City/Town

For table notes, see the following page.

Design Approval Level
Exhibit 300-2

FHWA = Federal Highway Administration
HQ = WSDOT Headquarters
H&LP = WSDOT Highways & Local Programs Office
EPS = Edge of paved shoulder where curbs do not exist

Notes:

[1] These approval levels also apply to deviation processing for local agency work on a state highway.

[2] See 300.04(4).

[3] For definition, see Chapter 1100.

[4] Requires FHWA review and approval (full oversight) of design and PS&E submitted by HQ Design Office.

[5] To determine the appropriate oversight level, FHWA reviews the Project Summary (or other programming document) submitted by the HQ Design Office or by WSDOT Highways & Local Programs through the HQ Design Office.

[6] FHWA oversight is accomplished by process review (see 300.09).

[7] Reduction of through lane or shoulder widths (regardless of funding) requires FHWA review and approval of the proposal, except shoulder reductions as allowed by 1140.09 for seismic retrofit projects.

[8] Applies to the area within the incorporated limits of cities and towns.

[9] Includes raised medians.

[10] FHWA will provide Design Approval prior to NEPA Approval, but will not provide Project Development Approval until NEPA is complete.

[11] For Bridge Replacement projects in the Preservation program, follow the approval level specified for Improvement projects.

[12] For guidance on access deviations, see Chapters 530 and 540.

Design Approval Level
Exhibit 300-2 (continued)

Item	Approval Authority		
	Region	HQ	FHWA
Program Development			
Work Order Authorization		X	X[1]
Public Hearings			
Corridor Hearing Summary		X[2]	
Design Summary		X[3]	
Access Hearing Plan		X[4]	
Access Findings and Order		X[5]	
Environmental by Classification			
Environmental Classification Summary (ECS) NEPA			X
Class I NEPA (EIS)		[7]	X
Class I SEPA (EIS)		X	
Class II NEPA – Categorical Exclusion (CE)* (Per MOU)	X		
Class II NEPA – Documented Categorical Exclusion (DCE)	[6]		X
Class II SEPA – Categorical Exemption (CE)	X		
Class III NEPA – Environmental Assessment (EA)		[7]	X
SEPA Checklist	X		
Design			
Experimental Features		X	X[9]
Environmental Review Summary	X		
Final Design Decisions	X	X[3]	
Final Project Definition		X[10]	
Interstate Interchange Justification Report		[7]	X
Non-Interstate Interchange Justification Report		X	
Break in Partial or Modified Limited Access		X	
Intersection Plans	X[11]		
Right of Way Plans	[12]	X	
Monumentation Map	X		
Materials Source Report		X[13]	
Pavement Determination Report		X[13]	
Roundabout Geometric Design (see Chapter 1320 for guidance)	X		

For table notes, see the following page.

Approvals
Exhibit 300-3

Item	Approval Authority		
	Region	HQ	FHWA
Design (continued)			
Resurfacing Report		X[13]	
Signal Permits	X[14]		
Geotechnical Report		X[13]	
Tied Bids	X[15]		X[9][15]
Bridge Design Plans (Bridge Layout)	X	X	
Hydraulic Report	X[16]	X[16]	
Preliminary Signalization Plans		X[6]	
Rest Area Plans		X	
Roadside Restoration Plans	X[18]	X[19]	
Structures Requiring TS&Ls		X	X
Planting Plans	X[18]	X[19]	
Grading Plans	X[18]	X[19]	
Continuous Illumination – Main Line		X[20]	
Project Change Request Form	X[21]	X[21]	
Work Zone Transportation Management Plan/Traffic Control Plan	X[22]		
Public Art Plan – Interstate (see Chapter 950)	X[18][23]	X[19][23]	X[9][19][23]
Public Art Plan – Non-Interstate (see Chapter 950)	X[18][23]	X[19][23]	
ADA Maximum Extent Feasible Document (see Chapter 1510)	X	X	

X Normal procedure * If on the preapproved list

Notes:

[1] Federal-aid projects only.
[2] Approved by Environmental and Engineering Programs Director.
[3] Approved by State Design Engineer.
[4] Approved by Right of Way Plans Manager.
[5] Refer to Chapter 210 for approval requirements.
[6] Final review & concurrence required at the region level prior to submittal to approving authority.
[7] Final review & concurrence required at HQ prior to submittal to approving authority.
[9] Applies to new/reconstruction projects on Interstate routes.
[10] Approved by HQ Project Control & Reporting.
[11] Include channelization details.
[12] Certified by the responsible professional licensee.
[13] Submit to HQ Materials Laboratory for review and approval.
[14] Approved by Regional Administrator or designee.
[15] See 23 CFR 635.111.
[16] See the *Hydraulics Manual* for approvals levels.
[18] Applies only to regions with a Landscape Architect.
[19] Applies only to regions without a Landscape Architect.
[20] Approved by State Traffic Engineer.
[21] Consult HQ Project Control & Reporting for clarification on approval authority.
[22] Region Traffic Engineer.
[23] The State Bridge and Structures Architect reviews and approves the public art plan (see Chapter 950 for further details on approvals).

Approvals
Exhibit 300-3 (continued)

Item	New/Reconstruction (Interstate only)	NHS and Non-NHS
DBE/training goals* **	(a)	(a)
Right of way certification for federal-aid projects	FHWA(b)	FHWA(b)
Right of way certification for state-funded projects	Region(b)	Region(b)
Railroad agreements	(c)	(c)
Work performed for public or private entities*	[1][2]	Region[1][2]
State force work*	FHWA[3](d)	Region[3](d)
Use of state-furnished stockpiled materials*	FHWA[4]	FHWA[4]
Stockpiling materials for future projects*	FHWA[4]	FHWA[4]
Work order authorization	[5](d)	[5](d)
Ultimate reclamation plan approval through DNR	Region	Region
Proprietary item use*	FHWA[4]	[4](c)
Mandatory material sources and/or waste sites*	FHWA[4]	Region[4]
Nonstandard bid item use*	Region	Region
Incentive provisions	FHWA	(e)
Nonstandard time for completion liquidated damages*	FHWA(e)	(e)
Interim liquidated damages*	(f)	(f)

Notes:

[1] This work requires a written agreement.

[2] Region approval subject to $250,000 limitation.

[3] Use of state forces is subject to $60,000 limitation and $100,000 in an emergency situation, as stipulated in RCWs 47.28.030 and 47.28.035.

[4] Applies only to federal-aid projects; however, document for all projects.

[5] Prior FHWA funding approval required for federal-aid projects.

Region or Headquarters Approval Authority:

(a) Office of Equal Opportunity

(b) HQ Real Estate Services Office

(c) HQ Design Office

(d) Project Control & Reporting Office

(e) HQ Construction Office

(f) Transportation Data Office

References:

**Plans Preparation Manual*

***Advertisement and Award Manual*

PS&E Process Approvals
Exhibit 300-4

Document[1]	Required for FHWA Oversight
Project Definition	X
Design Decisions Summary	X
Environmental Review Summary	X
Design Variance Inventory (and supporting information for DEs, EUs not upgraded, and deviations)[2]	X
Cost estimate	X
SEPA & NEPA documentation	X
Design Clear Zone Inventory (see Chapter 1600)	X
Interchange plans, profiles, roadway sections	X
Interchange justification report (if requesting new or revised access points)	X
Corridor or project analysis (see Chapter 1100)	X
Traffic projections and analysis	
Collision analysis	
Right of way plans	
Work zone traffic control strategy	
Record of Survey or Monumentation Map	
Documentation of decisions to differ from WSDOT design guidance	
Documentation of decisions for project components for which there is no WSDOT design guidance	
Paths and Trails Calculations[3]	

Notes:

[1] For a complete list, see the Design Documentation Checklist.
[2] Required for all highways.
[3] See the *Plans Preparation Manual*.

Common Components of Design Documentation Package
Exhibit 300-5

1. **Design Element Upgraded to the Level Indicated in the Matrix**
   - (a) Design element information
     - Design element
     - Location
     - Matrix number and row
   - (b) Cost estimate[1]
   - (c) B/C ratio[2]
   - (d) Summary of the justification for the upgrade[3]

2. **Design Element Not Upgraded to the Level Indicated in the Matrix**
   - (a) Design element information
     - Design element
     - Location
     - Matrix number and row
   - (b) Existing conditions
     - Description
     - Accident Summary
     - Advantages and disadvantages of leaving the existing condition unchanged
   - (c) Design using the *Design Manual* criteria
     - Description
     - Cost estimate[1]
     - B/C ratio[2]
     - Advantages and disadvantages of upgrading to the level indicated in the matrix
   - (d) Selected design, if different from existing but less than the level indicated in the matrix
     - Description
     - Cost estimate[1]
     - B/C ratio[2]
     - Advantages and disadvantages of the selected design
   - (e) Summary of the justification for the selected design[3]

Notes:

[1] An estimate of the approximate total additional cost for the proposed design. Estimate may be based on experience and engineering judgment.

[2] Include only when B/C is part of the justification. An approximate value based on engineering judgment may be used.

[3] A brief (one or two sentence) explanation of why the proposed design was selected.

Evaluate Upgrade (EU) Documentation Contents List

Exhibit 300-6

1. **Overview**
   - (a) The safety or improvement need that the project is to meet
   - (b) Description of the project as a whole
   - (c) Highway classification and applicable design matrix number and row
   - (d) Funding sources
   - (e) Evidence of deviations approved for previous projects (same location)

2. **Design Alternatives in Question**
   - (a) Existing conditions and design data
     - Location in question
     - Rural, urban, or developing
     - Approved corridor study
     - Environmental issues
     - Right of way issues
     - Number of lanes and existing geometrics
     - Present and 20-year projected ADT
     - Design speed, posted speed, and operating speed
     - Percentage of trucks
     - Terrain Designation
     - Managed access or limited access
   - (b) Collision Summary and Analysis
   - (c) Design using the *Design Manual* criteria
     - Description
     - Cost estimate
     - B/C ratio
     - Advantages and disadvantages
     - Reasons for considering other designs
   - (d) Other alternatives (may include “No-build” alternative)
     - Description
     - Cost estimate
     - B/C ratio
     - Advantages and disadvantages
     - Reasons for rejection
   - (e) Selected design requiring justification or documentation to file
     - Description
     - Cost estimate
     - B/C ratio
     - Advantages and disadvantages

3. **Concurrences, Approvals, and Professional Seals**

Deviation Request and Project Analysis Contents List
Exhibit 300-7

This checklist is recommended for use when coordinating project transition from design to construction.

1. **Survey**

- ❑ End areas (cut & fill)
- ❑ Staking data
- ❑ Horizontal/Vertical control
- ❑ Monumentation/control information

2. **Design Backup**

- ❑ Index for all backup material
- ❑ Backup calculations for quantities
- ❑ Geotech shrink/swell assumptions
- ❑ Design decisions and constraints
- ❑ Approved deviations & project/corridor analysis
- ❑ Hydraulics/Drainage information
- ❑ Clarify work zone traffic control/workforce estimates
- ❑ Geotechnical information (report)
- ❑ Package of as-builts used (which were verified) and right of way files
- ❑ Detailed assumptions for construction CPM schedule (working days)
- ❑ Graphics and design visualization information (aerials)
- ❑ Specific work item information for inspectors (details not covered in plans)
- ❑ Traffic counts
- ❑ Management of utility relocation

3. **Concise Electronic Information With Indices**

- ❑ Detailed survey information (see Survey above)
- ❑ Archived InRoads data
- ❑ Only one set of electronic information
- ❑ "Storybook" on electronic files (what's what)
- ❑ CADD files

4. **Agreements, Commitments, and Issues**

- ❑ Agreements and commitments by WSDOT
- ❑ RES commitments
- ❑ Summary of environmental permit conditions/commitments
- ❑ Other permit conditions/commitments
- ❑ Internal contact list
- ❑ Construction permits
- ❑ Utility status/contact
- ❑ Identification of the work elements included in the Turnback Agreement (recommend highlighted plan sheets)

5. **Construction Support**

- ❑ Assign a Design Technical Advisor (Design Lead) for construction support

An expanded version of this checklist is available at: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev

Design to Construction Transition Project Turnover Checklist Example
Exhibit 300-8

Chapter 310 Value Engineering

310.01 General
310.02 References
310.03 Definitions
310.04 Procedure
310.05 Documentation

310.01 General

Value engineering (VE) is a systematic process that uses a team from a variety of disciplines to improve the value of a project through the analysis of its functions. The VE process incorporates, to the greatest extent possible, the values of design; construction; maintenance; contractor; state, local and federal approval agencies; other stakeholders; and the public.

The primary objective of a value engineering study is value improvement. The value improvements might relate to scope definition, functional design, constructibility, coordination (both internal and external), or the schedule for project development. Other possible value improvements are reduced environmental impacts, reduced public (traffic) inconvenience, or reduced project cost.

Value engineering can be applied during any stage of a project's development, although the greatest benefits and resource savings are typically achieved early in development during the planning or scoping phases.

Value engineering may be applied more than once during the life of the project. Early application of a VE study helps to get the project started in the right direction, and repeated applications help to refine the project's direction based on new or changing information. The later a VE study is conducted in project development, the more likely it is that implementation costs will increase.

A VE study may be applied as a quick response study to address a problem or as an integral part of an overall organizational effort to stimulate innovation and improve performance characteristics.

310.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

23 United States Code (USC) 106, Project approval and oversight

(2) Design Guidance

Value Engineering for Highways, Study Workbook, U.S. Department of Transportation, FHWA

Value Standard and Body of Knowledge, SAVE International, The Value Society:
www.value-eng.org/

WSDOT value engineering website:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/ValueEngineering/

310.03 Definitions

value engineering (VE) A systematic process used by a multidisciplinary team to improve the value of a project through the analysis of its functions. The team identifies the functions of a project, establishes a worth for each function, generates alternatives through the use of creative thinking, and provides the needed functions to accomplish the original purpose—thus ensuring the lowest life cycle cost without sacrificing safety, quality, or environmental attributes. Value engineering is sometimes referred to as Value Analysis (VA) or Value Management (VM).

project The portion of a transportation facility that the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) proposes to construct, reconstruct, or improve, as described in the State Highway System Plan or applicable environmental documents. A project may consist of several contracts or phases over several years that are studied together as *one project*.

310.04 Procedure

The VE process uses the Seven-Phase Job Plan shown in Exhibit 310-1. Phase 7 is discussed in this chapter. A detailed discussion of Phases 1 through 6 can be found in the document, *Value Standard and Body of Knowledge,* developed by SAVE International, The Value Society. This document can be downloaded at the SAVE website: www.value-eng.org/

(1) Project Selection

(a) Requirements

Projects for VE studies may be selected from any of the categories identified in the Highway Construction Program, including Preservation and Improvement projects, depending on the size and/or complexity of the project. In addition to the cost, other issues adding to the complexity of the project design are considered in the selection process. They include critical constraints, difficult technical issues, expensive solutions, external influences, and complicated functional requirements.

The Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) requires a VE study for all design-bid-build and design-build projects that meet the following criteria:

- Each project on the federal-aid system with a total estimated cost of $25 million or more.
- A bridge project with a total estimated cost of $20 million or more.
- Any other project the United States Secretary of Transportation determines to be appropriate (23 USC 106).

Additionally, WSDOT policy requires a VE study for any non-NHS project with a *total* estimated cost of $25 million or more. This *total* estimated cost includes preliminary engineering, construction, right of way, and utilities. Other projects that should be considered for value engineering have a *total* estimated cost exceeding $5 million and include one or more of the following:

- Alternative solutions that vary the scope and cost
- New alignment or bypass sections
- Capacity improvements that widen the existing highway

- Major structures
- Interchanges
- Extensive or expensive environmental or geotechnical requirements
- Materials that are difficult to acquire or that require special efforts
- Inferior materials sources
- New/Reconstruction projects
- Major traffic control requirements or multiple construction stages

(b) **Statewide VE Study Plan**

On an annual basis, the State VE Manager coordinates with the Region VE Coordinators to prepare an annual VE Study Plan, with specific projects scheduled quarterly. The VE Study Plan is the basis for determining the projected VE program needs, including team members, team leaders, and training. The Statewide VE Study Plan is a working document, and close coordination is necessary between Headquarters (HQ) and the regions to keep it updated.

The Region VE Coordinator:

- Identifies potential projects for VE studies from the Project Summaries and the available planning documents for future work.
- Makes recommendations for the VE study timing.
- Presents a list of the identified projects to region management to prioritize into a regional annual VE Study Plan.

The State VE Manager:

- Reviews the regional annual VE Study Plan regarding the content and schedule of the plan.

The State VE Coordinator:

- Incorporates the regional annual VE Study plans and the HQ Study plans to create the Statewide VE Study Plan.

(c) **VE Study Timing**

Selecting the project at the appropriate stage of development (the timing of the study) is very important to the success of the VE study. Value can be added by performing a VE study at any time during project development; however, the WSDOT VE program identifies three windows of opportunity for performing a VE study.

1. **Scoping Phase**

   As soon as preliminary engineering information is available and the specific deficiencies or drivers are identified, the project scope and preliminary cost are under consideration. This is the best time to consider the various alternatives or design solutions, with the highest potential for the related recommendations of the VE team to be implemented. At the conclusion of the VE study, the project scope, preliminary cost, and major design decisions can be based on the recommendations.

When conducting a study during the scoping phase of a project, the VE study focuses on issues affecting project drivers. This stage often provides an opportunity for building consensus with stakeholders.

2. **Start of Design**

   At the start of design, the project scope and preliminary cost have already been established and the major design decisions have been made. Some Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) activities may have begun, and coordination has been initiated with the various service units that will be involved with the design. At this stage, the established project scope, preliminary cost, and schedule will define the limits of the VE study and there is still opportunity for the study to focus on the technical issues of the specific design elements.

3. **Design Approval**

   After the project receives Design Approval, most of the important project decisions have been made and the opportunity to affect the project design is limited. The VE study focuses on constructibility, construction sequencing, staging, traffic control, and any significant design issues identified during design development.

   An additional VE study may be beneficial late in the development stage when the estimated cost of the project exceeds the project budget. The value engineering process can be applied to the project to lower the cost while maintaining the value and quality of the design.

4. **Design-Build Projects**

   For design-build projects on which a VE study is required, perform the study prior to issuing the Request for Proposal (RFP). It is not practicable to perform a VE study in the design-build contract phase.

(d) **Study Preparation**

To initiate a VE study, the project manager submits a Request for Value Engineering Study form to the Region VE Coordinator at least two months before the proposed study date. The form may be downloaded from the WSDOT Value Engineering website: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/ValueEngineering/Tools/

The Region VE Coordinator then works with the State VE Coordinator to determine the team leader and team members for the VE study.

The design team prepares a study package of project information for each of the team members. (A list of potential items is shown in Exhibit 310-2.) The VE team members should receive this information at least one week prior to the study so they have time to review the material.

The region provides a facility and the equipment for the study (see Exhibit 310-2).

(e) **Team Leader**

The quality of the VE study is dependent on the skills of the VE team leader. This individual guides the team's efforts and is responsible for its actions during the study. The best VE team leader is knowledgeable and proficient in transportation design and construction and in the VE study process for transportation projects.

The VE team leader's responsibilities include the following:

- Plan, lead, and facilitate the VE Study.
- Ensure proper application of a value methodology and follow the Job Plan.
- Guide the team through the activities needed to complete the prestudy, the VE study, and the poststudy stages of a VE study.
- Schedule a preworkshop meeting with the project team and prepare the agenda for the VE study.

For best results, the team leader should be certified by the Society of American Value Engineers (SAVE) as a Certified Value Specialist (CVS) or as a Value Methodology Practitioner (VMP).

Team leadership can be supplied from within the region, from another region, or from Headquarters. A statewide pool of qualified team leaders is maintained by the State VE Coordinator, who works with the Region VE Coordinator to select the team leader. When no qualified team leader is available, or it is deemed beneficial for a particular study, consultants or other qualified leaders outside WSDOT may be employed.

(f) **Team Members**

The VE team is usually composed of five to ten people with diverse expertise relevant to the specific study. The team members may be selected from the regions; Headquarters; other local, state, or federal agencies; or the private sector.

Team members are selected based on what expertise is needed to address the major functional areas and critical high-cost issues of the study. All team members must be committed to the time required for the study. For best results, team members should have attended Value Engineering Module 1 training before participating in a VE study.

(g) **VE Study Requirements**

The time required to conduct a VE study varies with the complexity and size of the project, but typically ranges from three to five days. The VE team leader working with the project manager will determine the best length for the study.

The VE study Final Report includes an executive summary; a narrative description of project information; the background, history, constraints, and controlling decisions; the VE team focus areas; a discussion of the team speculation and evaluation processes; and the team's final recommendations. All of the team's evaluation documentation (including sketches, calculations, analyses, and rationale for recommendations) is included in the Final Report. A copy of the Final Report is to be included in the Project File. The project manager will specify the number of copies to be provided to the project team. The State VE Manager also provides a copy of the report to the FHWA for projects on the National Highway System or federal-aid system.

(2) Implementation

The project manager reviews and evaluates the VE team's recommendation(s) that are included in the Final Report. The project manager completes the VE Recommendation Approval form included in the Final Report.

For each recommendation that is not approved or is modified by the project manager, justification is to be provided in the form of a VE Decision Document. The VE Decision Document includes a specific response for each of the disapproved or modified recommendations. Responses include a summary statement containing the project manager's decision not to use the recommendation in the project.

Send the completed VE Recommendation Approval form and, if necessary, the VE Decision Document to the State VE Manager by September 1 of each year so the results can be included in the annual WSDOT VE Report to FHWA. If a VE Decision Document was submitted, it is to be forwarded to the State Design Engineer for review. The VE Recommendation Approval form and VE Decision Document are to be included in the Design Documentation Package.

310.05 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev

1. Information/Investigation Phase	Gather information. Investigate background information, technical input reports, and field data. Develop team focus and objectives.
2. Function Analysis Phase	Define project functions using a two-word active verb/measurable noun context. Review and analyze these functions to determine which need improvement, elimination, or creation to meet the project's goals.
3. Creative/Speculation Phase	Be creative and brainstorm alternative proposals and solutions.
4. Evaluation Phase	Analyze design alternatives, technical processes, life cycle costs, documentation of logic, and rationale.
5. Development Phase	Develop technical and economic supporting data to prove the feasibility of the desirable concepts. Develop team recommendations. Recommend long-term as well as interim solutions.
6. Presentation Phase	Present the recommendations of the VE team to the project team and region management in an oral presentation, and provide a written report.
7. Implementation Phase 310.04(2)	Evaluate the recommendations. Prepare an implementation plan (VE Decision Document), including the response of the managers and a schedule for accomplishing the decisions based on the recommendations.

Note:

Phases 1–6 are performed during the study; see *Value Standard and Body of Knowledge* for procedures during these steps.

Seven-Phase Job Plan for VE Studies

Exhibit 310-1

Project-Related Input* (Study Package)
Accident data
Aerial photos
Contour maps
Cross sections and profiles
Design file
Environmental documents
Estimates
Existing as-built plans
Geotechnical reports
Hydraulic Report
Land use maps
Large-scale aerial photographs
Plan sheets
Quadrant maps
Quantities
Right of way plans
Traffic data
Vicinity map
Study-Related Facilities and Equipment
AASHTO Green Book
Bridge list
Calculators
Computer projector
Design Manual
Easel(s) and easel paper pads
Field tables
Marking pens
Masking and clear tape
Network computer access (if available)
Power strip(s) and extension cords
Room with a large table and adequate space for the team
Scales, straight edges, and curves
Standard Plans
Standard Specifications
State Highway Log
Telephone
Vehicle or vehicles with adequate seating to transport the VE team for a site visit**

* Not all information listed may be available to the team, depending on the project stage.
** If a site visit is not possible, provide video of the project.

VE Study Team Tools
Exhibit 310-2

Chapter 320 Traffic Analysis

320.01 General
320.02 References
320.03 Design Year
320.04 Definitions
320.05 Travel Forecasting (Transportation Modeling)
320.06 Traffic Analysis
320.07 Scope of Traffic Impact Analysis
320.08 Traffic Data
320.09 Traffic Impact Analysis Methodologies
320.10 Traffic Analysis Software
320.11 Mitigation Measures
320.12 Traffic Impact Analysis Report

320.01 General

It is the Washington State Department of Transportation's (WSDOT's) responsibility to provide an interconnected transportation system to ensure the mobility of people and goods. In order to achieve these objectives, traffic engineers determine whether the proposed improvements will satisfy future needs by comparing the forecast directional hourly volume with the traffic-handling capacity of an improved facility. Project traffic forecasts and capacity are used to establish the number of through lanes, length of auxiliary lanes, signal timing, right of way needs, and other characteristics, so the facility can operate at an acceptable level of service through the design year.

This chapter provides guidance and general requirements for traffic analyses. Specific requirements for a traffic analysis depend on a variety of factors. These include:

- Project proponents (federal, state, local, and private sector).
- Lead agency.
- Legal requirements (laws, regulations, procedures, and contractual obligations).
- Purpose of the traffic analysis.

Along with these factors, examine capacity and safety needs, look at project benefits and costs, determine development impacts, and identify mitigation requirements.

This *Design Manual* does not cover capacity analysis; see the latest version of the *Highway Capacity Manual* (HCM).

320.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 43.21C, State environmental policy

The National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) of 1969

(2) Design Guidance

Highway Capacity Manual (HCM), latest edition, Transportation Research Board, National Research Council

Roadway Delineation Practices Handbook, FHWA report, Washington, DC, 1994

Sign Fabrication Manual, M 55-05, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

"Trip Generation," Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE)

(3) Supporting Information

Development Services Manual, M 3007.00, WSDOT

Long-Term Pavement Practices, NCHRP Synthesis 306, Transportation Research Board

Traffic Manual, M 51-02, WSDOT

320.03 Design Year

Roadway geometric design must consider projected traffic for the opening year and the design year. The design year for new construction and reconstruction projects is given in Chapter 1140. However, the design year for developer projects is often (but not always) the horizon year or build-out year. One early task for the traffic analyst is to determine the correct design year.

320.04 Definitions

annual average daily traffic (AADT) The total volume of traffic passing a point or segment of a highway facility in both directions for one year divided by the number of days in the year.

average daily traffic (ADT) The total volume during a given time period (in whole days): greater than one day and less than one year, divided by the number of days in that time period.

capacity The maximum sustainable flow rate at which vehicles or persons can reasonably be expected to traverse a point or uniform segment of a lane or roadway during a specified time period under given roadway, geometric, traffic, environmental, and control conditions. Capacity is usually expressed as vehicles per hour (vph), passenger cars per hour (pcph), or persons per hour (pph).

capture trips Trips that do not enter or leave the traveled ways of a project's boundary within a mixed-use development.

design hourly volume (DHV) Computed by taking the annual average daily traffic times the K-factor (see below). It can only be accurately determined in locations where there is a permanent traffic recording device active 365 days of the year. It correlates to the peak hour (see peak hour definition), but it is not equivalent. In some circumstances, it is necessary to use the peak hour data instead of DHV because peak hour can be collected using portable traffic recorders.

directional design hour volume (DDHV) The traffic volume for the design hour in the peak direction of flow, in vehicles per hour. For example, if during the design hour, 60% of the vehicles traveled eastbound and 40% traveled westbound, then the DDHV for the eastbound direction would be the DHV x 0.60.

K-factor The proportion of AADT occurring in the analysis hour is referred to as the K-factor, expressed as a decimal fraction (commonly called "K," "K30," or "K100"). The K30 is the thirtieth (K100 is the one-hundredth) highest peak hour divided by the annual average daily traffic. Normally, the K30 or K100 will be in the range of 0.09 to 0.10 for urban and rural areas. Average design hour factors are available on the web in the Transportation Data Office's Annual Peak Hour Report.

lead agency The public agency that has the principal responsibility for carrying out or approving a project.

level of service (LOS) A qualitative measure describing operational conditions within a traffic stream, based on service measures such as speed, travel time, freedom to maneuver, traffic interruptions, comfort, and convenience. Six levels of service are defined for each type of facility that has analysis procedures available. Letters designate each level, from A to F, with LOS A representing the best operating conditions and LOS F the worst. Each level of service represents a range of operating conditions and the driver's perception of those conditions. Safety is not included in the measures that establish service levels.

"pass-by" trips Pass-by trips are intermediate stops between an origin and a primary trip destination; for example, home to work, home to shopping.

peak hour The 60-minute interval that contains the largest volume of traffic during a given time period. If a traffic count covers consecutive days, the peak hour can be an average of the highest hour across all of the days. An a.m. peak is simply the highest hour from the a.m., and the p.m. peak is the highest from the p.m. The peak hour correlates to the DHV, but is not the same. However, it is close enough on items such as intersection plans for approval to be considered equivalent.

project Activities directly undertaken by government, financed by government, or requiring a permit or other approval from government.

"select zone" analysis A traffic model run, where the related project trips are distributed and assigned along a populated highway network. This analysis isolates the anticipated impact on the state highway network created by the project.

320.05 Travel Forecasting (Transportation Modeling)

While regional models are available in most urban areas, they may not be the best tool for reviewing developments. Most regional models are macroscopic in nature and do not do a good job of identifying intersection-level development impacts without further refinement of the model. The task of refining the model can be substantial and is not warranted in many instances. The region makes the determination whether a model or a trend line analysis can be used to take into account historical growth rates and background projects. This decision would be based on numerous factors, including the type, scale, and location of the development. The regional model is generally more appropriate for larger projects that generate a substantial number of new trips. The Traffic Impact Analysis (TIA) clearly describes the methodology and process used to develop the forecast that supports the analysis of a proposed project.

320.06 Traffic Analysis

The level of service (LOS) for operating state highway facilities is based upon measures of effectiveness (MOEs), in accordance with the latest version of the *Highway Capacity Manual*.

These MOEs (see Exhibit 320-1) describe the measures best suited for analyzing state highway facilities, such as freeway segments, signalized intersections, and on- or off-ramps. Depending on the facility, WSDOT LOS thresholds are LOS C and LOS D on state highway facilities. The LOS threshold for developer projects is set differently. Refer to Chapter 4 of the *Development Services Manual*.

(1) Trip Generation Thresholds

The following criteria are used as the starting point for determining when a TIA is needed:

- When a project changes local circulation networks that impact a state highway facility involving direct access to the state highway facility; includes a nonstandard highway geometric design feature, among others.
- When the potential for a traffic incident is significantly increased due to congestion-related collisions, nonstandard sight distance considerations, increases in traffic conflict points, and others.
- When a project affects state highway facilities experiencing significant delay: LOS “C” in rural areas or “D” in urban areas.

Note: A traffic analysis can be as simple as providing a traffic count or as complex as a microscopic simulation. The appropriate level of analysis is determined by the specifics of a project, the prevailing highway conditions, and the forecasted traffic. For developer projects, different thresholds may be used depending on local agency codes or interagency agreements (or both) between WSDOT and local agencies. For more information, refer to Chapter 4 of the *Development Services Manual*.

Type of Facility	Measure of Effectiveness (MOE)
Basic Freeway Segments	Density (pc/mi/ln)
Ramps	Density (pc/mi/ln)
Ramp Terminals	Delay (sec/veh)
Multilane Highways	Density (pc/mi/ln)
Two-Lane Highways	Percent-Time-Spent Following Average Travel Speed (mi/hr)
Signalized Intersections	Control Delay Per Vehicle (sec/veh)
Unsignalized Intersections	Average Control Delay Per Vehicle (sec/veh)
Urban Streets	Average Travel Speed (mi/hr)

Measures of Effectiveness by Facility Type
Exhibit 320-1

(2) Updating an Existing Traffic Impact Analysis

A TIA may require updating when the amount or character of traffic is significantly different from an earlier analysis. Generally, a TIA requires updating every two years. A TIA might require updating sooner in rapidly developing areas and not as often in slowly developing areas. In these cases, consultation with WSDOT is strongly recommended.

320.07 Scope of Traffic Impact Analysis

Consultation between the lead agency, WSDOT, and those preparing the TIA is recommended before commencing work on the analysis to establish the appropriate scope. At a minimum, the TIA includes the following elements:

(1) Boundaries of the Traffic Impact Analysis

Boundaries of the TIA are all state highway facilities impacted in accordance with the criteria in 320.06. Traffic impacts of local streets and roads can impact intersections on state highway facilities. In these cases, include an analysis of adjacent local facilities (driveways, intersections, and interchanges) upstream and downstream of the intersection with the state highway in the TIA. A "lesser analysis" may include obtaining traffic counts, preparing signal warrants, or a focused TIA. For developer projects, the boundaries (such as the city limits) may be determined by the local agency.

(2) Traffic Analysis Scenarios

WSDOT is interested in the effects of plan updates and amendments, as well as the effects of specific project entitlements (including but not limited to site plans, conditional use permits, subdivisions, and rezoning) that have the potential to impact a state highway facility. The complexity and/or magnitude of the impacts of a project normally dictate the scenarios necessary to analyze the project. Consultation between the lead agency, WSDOT, and those preparing the TIA is recommended to determine the appropriate scenarios for the analysis and why they should be addressed.

(a) **TIA Plan Amendment/Update**

When only a plan amendment or update is being sought in a TIA, the following scenarios are required:

1. Existing Conditions: Current year traffic volumes and peak hour LOS analysis of affected state highway facilities.
2. Proposed Project Only With Select Zone Analysis: Trip generation, distribution, and assignment in the year the project is anticipated to complete construction.
3. Plan Build-Out Only: Trip assignment and peak hour LOS analysis. Include current land uses and other pending plan amendments/anticipated developments.
4. Plan Build-Out Plus Proposed Project: Trip assignment and peak hour LOS analysis. Include proposed project and other pending plan amendments.

(b) **TIA Specific Entitlements**

When a plan amendment is not proposed and a proposed project is seeking specific entitlements (such as site plans, conditional-use permits, subdivisions, rezoning, and others), the following scenarios are required to be analyzed in the TIAs:

1. Existing Conditions: Current year traffic volumes and peak hour LOS analysis of affected state highway facilities.
2. Proposed Project Only: Trip generation, distribution, and assignment in the year the project is anticipated to complete construction.
3. Cumulative Conditions (Existing Conditions Plus Other Approved and Pending Projects Without Proposed Project): Trip assignment and peak hour LOS analysis in the year the project is anticipated to complete construction.
4. Cumulative Conditions Plus Proposed Project (Existing Conditions Plus Other Approved and Pending Projects Plus Proposed Project): Trip assignment and peak hour LOS analysis in the year the project is anticipated to complete construction.
5. Cumulative Conditions Plus Proposed Phases (Interim Years): Trip assignment and peak hour LOS analysis in the years the project construction phases are anticipated to be completed.

(c) **Inconsistent/Outdated Plan Elements**

In cases where the circulation element of the plan is not consistent with the land use element or the plan is outdated and not representative of current or future forecasted conditions, all scenarios from 320.07(2)(a) and (b) are to be utilized, with the exception of the duplication of (b)1 and (b)2.

320.08 Traffic Data

Prior to any fieldwork, consultation between the lead agency, WSDOT, and those preparing the TIA is recommended to reach consensus on the study data and assumptions. The following elements are a starting point in that consideration:

(1) Trip Generation

For trip generation forecasts, use the latest edition of the Institute of Transportation Engineers' (ITE) publication, "Trip Generation." Local trip generation rates are also acceptable if appropriate validation is provided to support them.

(a) **Trip Generation Rates**

When the land use has a limited number of studies to support the trip generation rates or when the Coefficient of Determination (R2) is below 0.75, consultation between the lead agency, WSDOT, and those preparing the TIA is recommended.

(b) **Pass-by Trips**

Pass-by trips are only considered for retail-oriented development. Reductions greater than 15% require consultation and acceptance by WSDOT. Include the justification for exceeding a 15% reduction in the TIA.

(c) **Captured Trips**

Captured trip reductions greater than 5% require consultation and acceptance by WSDOT. Include the justification for exceeding a 5% reduction in the TIA.

(d) **Transportation Demand Management (TDM)**

Consultation between the lead agency and WSDOT is essential before applying trip reduction for TDM strategies. Note: Reasonable reductions to trip generation rates are considered when adjacent state highway volumes are sufficient (at least 5,000 ADT) to support reductions for the land use.

(2) Traffic Counts

Prior to field traffic counts, consultation between the lead agency, WSDOT, and those preparing the TIA is recommended to determine the level of detail (location, signal timing, travel speeds, turning movements, and so forth) required at each traffic count site. All state highway facilities within the boundaries of the TIA are to be considered. Common rules for counting vehicular traffic include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Conduct vehicle counts to include at least one contiguous 24-hour period on Tuesdays, Wednesdays, or Thursdays during weeks not containing a holiday and in favorable weather conditions.
- Conduct vehicle counts during the appropriate peak hours (see peak hour discussion below).
- Where appropriate, consider seasonal and weekend variations in traffic, such as recreational routes, tourist seasons, and the harvest season.

(3) Peak Hours

To eliminate unnecessary analysis, consultation between the lead agency, WSDOT, and those preparing the TIA is recommended during the early planning stages of a project. In general, the TIA includes a morning (a.m.) and an evening (p.m.) peak hour analysis. Other peak hours (such as 11:30 a.m. to 1:30 p.m., weekends, and holidays) might also be required to determine the significance of the traffic impacts generated by a project.

(4) Collisions

Include the following in any discussion on the subject of collisions:

(a) **Crash History**

A listing of the location's 3-year crash history. (For direct access points and/or intersections, the list covers an area 0.1 mile to either side of the main line or crossroad intersection).

(b) **Collision Diagram**

A collision diagram illustrating the 3-year crash history at each location where the number of collisions at the location has been 15 or more in the last 3 years.

(c) **Collision Types and Locations**

The predominant collision types and their locations, any patterns, and an assessment of and mitigation for the development's traffic safety impacts.

Also, include in the collision discussion:

- Sight distance and any other pertinent roadway geometrics
- Driver expectancy and crash potential (if necessary)
- Special signing and illumination needs (if necessary)

320.09 Traffic Impact Analysis Methodologies

Typically, the traffic analysis methodologies for the facility types indicated below are used by WSDOT and will be accepted without prior consultation. When a state highway has saturated flows, the use of a microsimulation model is encouraged for the analysis; note, however, that the microsimulation model must be calibrated and validated for reliable results. Other analysis methods may be accepted; however, consultation between the lead agency, WSDOT, and those preparing the TIA is recommended to reach consensus on the data necessary for the analysis. The methodologies include:

- **Freeway Segments:** *Highway Capacity Manual* (HCM), operational analysis
- **Weaving Areas:** *Design Manual* (DM), HCM, operational analysis
- **Ramps and Ramp Junctions:** HCM, operational analysis or DM, WSDOT *Ramp Metering Guidelines* (most recent edition)
- **Multilane Highways:** HCM, operational analysis
- **Two-Lane Highways:** HCM, operational analysis
- **Signalized Intersections:** HCM, Highway Capacity Software, operational analysis, Synchro
- **Unsignalized Intersections:** HCM for capacity, Chapter 1330 and the MUTCD for signal warrants (if a signal is being considered)
- **Transit:** HCM, operational analysis
- **Pedestrians:** HCM
- **Bicycles:** HCM
- **WSDOT Criteria/Warrants:** MUTCD (stop signs), *Traffic Manual* (school crossings), DM Chapter 1040 (freeway lighting, conventional highway lighting)
- **Channelization:** DM
- **Roundabouts:** DM

WSDOT does not officially advocate the use of any special software. However, consistency with the HCM is advocated in most but not all cases. The WSDOT local development review units utilize the software mentioned. If different software or analytical techniques are used for the TIA, then consultation between the lead agency, WSDOT, and those preparing the TIA is recommended.

Challenge results that are significantly different than those produced with the analytical techniques above. The procedures in the *Highway Capacity Manual* do not explicitly address operations of closely spaced signalized intersections. Under such conditions, several unique characteristics are to be considered, including spill-back potential from the downstream intersection to the upstream intersection; effects of downstream queues on upstream saturation flow rates; and unusual platoon dispersion or compression between intersections. An example of such closely spaced operations is signalized ramp terminals at urban interchanges. Queue interactions between closely spaced intersections can seriously distort the procedures in the HCM.

320.10 Traffic Analysis Software

For applications that fall outside the limits of the HCM software, WSDOT makes use of the following software:

(1) TRANSYT-7F

TRANSYT-7F is a traffic signal timing optimization software package for traffic networks, arterial streets, or single intersections having complex or simple conditions.

TRANSYT-7F capabilities other than signal timing programs include:

- Lane-by-lane analysis.
- Direct CORSIM optimization.
- Multicycle and multiperiod optimization.
- Detailed simulation of existing conditions.
- Detailed analysis of traffic-actuated control.
- Hill-climb and genetic algorithm optimization.
- Optimization based on a wide variety of objective functions.
- Optimization of cycle length, phasing sequence, splits, and offsets.
- Explicit simulation of platoon dispersion, queue spillback, and spillover.
- Full flexibility in modeling unusual lane configurations and timing plans.

(2) Trafficware – Synchro

Synchro is a software application for optimizing traffic signal timing and performing capacity analyses. The software optimizes splits, offsets, and cycle lengths for individual intersections, an arterial, or a complete network. Synchro performs capacity analyses using both the Intersection Capacity Utilization (ICU) and HCM methods. Synchro provides detailed time space diagrams that can show vehicle paths or bandwidths. Synchro can be used for creating data files for SimTraffic and other third-party traffic software packages. SimTraffic models signalized and unsignalized intersections and freeway sections with cars, trucks, pedestrians, and buses.

Synchro capabilities other than signal timing programs include:

- Lane-by-lane analysis.
- Direct CORSIM optimization.
- Multicycle and multiperiod optimization.
- Detailed simulation of existing conditions.
- Detailed analysis of traffic-actuated control.
- Hill-climb and genetic algorithm optimization.
- Optimization based on a wide variety of objective functions.
- Optimization of cycle length, phasing sequence, splits, and offsets.
- Explicit simulation of platoon dispersion, queue spillback, and spillover.
- Full flexibility in modeling unusual lane configurations and timing plans.

(3) aaSIDRA

aaSIDRA is a software product that can analyze signalized and unsignalized intersections, including roundabouts in one package. It is a microanalytical traffic evaluation tool that employs lane-by-lane and vehicle drive cycle models.

aaSIDRA can perform signal timing optimization for actuated and pretimed (fixed-time) signals, with signal phasing schemes from the simplest to the most sophisticated.

aaSIDRA, or aaTraffic SIDRA (Signalized & unsignalized Intersection Design and Research Aid) software is for use as an aid for designing and evaluating of the following intersection types:

- Signalized intersections (fixed-time, pretimed, and actuated)
- Roundabouts
- Two-way stop sign control
- All-way stop sign control
- Yield sign control

(4) PTV America – Vissim

Vissim is a microscopic, behavior-based multipurpose traffic simulation program used for signal systems, freeway systems, or combined signal and freeway systems with complex or simple conditions.

The program offers a wide variety of urban and highway applications, integrating public and private transportation. Even complex traffic conditions are visualized at an unprecedented level of detail, providing realistic traffic models.

Vissim capabilities include:

- Dynamic Vehicle Assignment.
- Land use traffic impact studies and access management studies.
- Freeway and surface street interchanges.
- Signal timing, coordination, and preemption.
- Freeway weaving sections, lane adds, and lane drops.
- Bus stations, bus routes, carpools, and taxis.
- Ramp metering and HOV lanes.
- Unsignalized intersections and signal warrants.
- Incident detection and management.
- Queuing studies involving turn pockets and queue blockage.
- Toll plazas and truck weigh stations.
- Origin-destination traffic flow patterns.
- Verification and validation of other software.
- Surrogate for field data collection.
- Public presentation and demonstration.

(5) TSIS – Corsim

TSIS is a traffic simulation software package for signal systems, freeway systems, or combined signal and freeway systems having complex or simple conditions. Its strength lies in its ability to simulate traffic conditions at a level of detail beyond other simulation programs.

TSIS capabilities include:

- Land use traffic impact studies and access management studies.
- Freeway and surface street interchanges.
- Signal timing, coordination, and preemption.
- Freeway weaving sections, lane adds, and lane drops.
- Bus stations, bus routes, carpools, and taxis.
- Ramp metering and HOV lanes.
- Unsignalized intersections and signal warrants.
- Incident detection and management.
- Queuing studies involving turn pockets and queue blockage.
- Toll plazas and truck weigh stations.
- Origin-destination traffic flow patterns.
- Verification and validation of other software.
- Surrogate for field data collection.
- Public presentation and demonstration.

Use the most current version of Traffic Analysis Software. Current software licenses may be obtained from the Traffic Analysis Engineer at the HQ Traffic Office: (360) 705-7297.

320.11 Mitigation Measures

Consultation between the lead agency, WSDOT, and those preparing the TIA is recommended to reach consensus on the mitigation measures and the responsible party. Mitigation measures must be included in the TIA to determine whether a project's impacts can be eliminated or reduced to a level of insignificance. Eliminating or reducing impacts to a level of insignificance is the standard pursuant to SEPA and NEPA. The lead agency is responsible for administering the SEPA review process and has the principal authority for approving a local development proposal or land use change. WSDOT, as a lead agency, is responsible for reviewing the TIA for impacts that pertain to state highway facilities. However, the authority vested in the lead agency under SEPA does not take precedence over other authorities in law.

If the mitigation measures require work in the state highway right of way, an encroachment permit from WSDOT is required. This work is also subject to WSDOT standards and specifications. Consultation early in the planning process between the lead agency, WSDOT, and those preparing the TIA is strongly recommended. It will expedite the review of local development proposals and help reduce conflicts and misunderstandings in both the local agency SEPA review process and the WSDOT encroachment permit process.

Additional mitigation recommendations necessary to help relieve impacts include the following:

- Satisfy local agency guidelines and interlocal agreements.
- Address any LOS deficiencies in accordance with interlocal guidelines.
- Donation of right of way, frontage improvements, and channelization changes.
- Installation of a traffic signal; warrant analysis per MUTCD is required.
- Include current/future state projects (Sunshine Report).
- Clear zone if widening the state highway.
- Any proposed changes to state highway channelization require submittal of a complete channelization plan, per channelization plan checklist, for state review and approval.
- Possible restrictions of turning movements.
- Sight distance.
- Traffic mitigation payment (pro rata share contribution) to a programmed WSDOT project (see Chapter 4 of the *Development Services Manual).*

320.12 Traffic Impact Analysis Report

(1) TIA Minimum Contents

The minimum contents of a TIA report are listed below. The amount of text under each element varies depending upon the scale of the project.

(a) **Executive Summary**

(b) **Table of Contents**

1. List of Exhibits (Maps)
2. List of Tables

(c) **Introduction**

1. Description of the proposed project.
2. Location of the project.
3. Site plan including all access to state highways (site plan, map).
4. Circulation network including all access to state highways (vicinity map).
5. Land use and zoning.
6. Phasing plan including proposed dates of project (phase) completion.
7. Project sponsor and contact person(s).
8. References to other traffic impact studies.

(d) **Traffic Analysis**

1. Clearly stated assumptions.
2. Existing and projected traffic volumes, including turning movements; facility geometry, including storage lengths; and traffic controls, including signal phasing and multisignal progression where appropriate (exhibit/s).
3. Project trip generation, including references (tables).
4. Project-generated trip distribution and assignment (exhibit/s).
5. LOS and warrant analyses: existing conditions, cumulative conditions, and full-build of plan conditions with and without project.

(e) **Conclusions and Recommendations**

1. LOS and appropriate MOE quantities of impacted facilities with and without mitigation measures.
2. Mitigation phasing plan, including dates of proposed mitigation measures.
3. Define responsibilities for implementing mitigation measures.
4. Cost estimates for mitigation measures and financing plan.

(f) **Appendices**

1. Description of traffic data and how data was collected.
2. Description of methodologies and assumptions used in analyses.
3. Worksheets used in analyses; for example, signal warrant, LOS, and traffic count information.

Chapter 400 Surveying and Mapping

400.01 General
400.02 References
400.03 Procedures
400.04 Datums
400.05 Global Positioning System
400.06 WSDOT Monument Database
400.07 Geographic Information System
400.08 Photogrammetric Surveys
400.09 Documentation

400.01 General

The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) is permitted, by an agreement with the Board of Registration for Professional Engineers and Land Surveyors, to practice land surveying "under the direct supervision of a licensed professional land surveyor OR a licensed professional engineer" (see Exhibit 400-1, Interagency Agreement).

400.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 58.09, Surveys – Recording

RCW 58.20.120, System designation – Permitted uses

RCW 58.24.040(8), " . . . temporary removal of boundary marks or monuments"

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 332-120, Survey monuments – Removal or destruction

WAC 332-130, Minimum standards for land boundary surveys and geodetic control surveys and guidelines for the preparation of land descriptions

Interagency Agreement Between the Washington State Department of Transportation and the Board of Registration for Professional Engineers and Land Surveyors (1990)

(2) Design Guidance

Construction Manual, M 41-01, WSDOT

Highway Surveying Manual, M 22-97, WSDOT

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

WSDOT Survey Monument Database
www.wsdot.wa.gov/monument/

400.03 Procedures

For WSDOT projects, it is recommended that surveying activities include (if appropriate) but not be limited to the following items.

(1) Project Definition Phase

During the Project Definition phase, perform the following:

(a) Record any pertinent surveying information as detailed in the Design Documentation Checklist: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

(b) Conduct research to find recorded survey monuments existing within the project area.

(c) Determine and prioritize project survey needs and tasks to be completed. Needs and tasks may include the following issues:

- Cadastral
- Right of way
- Geodetic control
- Photogrammetry
- Other issues as needed

(2) Design and Development of the Plans, Specifications, and Estimates

During the design and development of the Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E), perform the following:

(a) The project manager and project surveyor hold a preliminary survey meeting, regarding:

- Project schedule.
- Anticipated survey requests.

For preliminary survey meeting specifics and roles and responsibilities of the project manager and project surveyor, see the *Highway Surveying Manual*.

(b) Perform field reconnaissance, mark existing recorded survey monuments, and determine the location of possible new survey monuments. Also, mark found unrecorded monuments for preservation if practical.

(c) Determine the impact to geodetic monuments and notify the Headquarters (HQ) Geographic Services Office.

(d) Refer to the *Highway Surveying Manual* to:

- Convert Washington State Plane Coordinates to project datum.
- Document the procedure and combined factor used for converting between datums.
- Determine survey collection methods.
- Collect primary, secondary, and tertiary survey data.
- Process and import secondary, tertiary, or other survey data into design software for use by designers.

(e) Apply to the Department of Natural Resources (DNR) for permits for monuments that will be disturbed or removed (see Chapter 410).

(f) Archive new primary and secondary survey control data in the WSDOT Monument Database and GIS, as appropriate, for future retrieval.

(g) Ensure that all survey monuments within the project right of way are shown on the contract plans in order to avoid accidental damage.

(h) Develop a Record of Survey (RCW 58.09) or a Monumentation Map as required (see Chapter 410).

(3) After Construction is Completed

(a) Complete a post construction survey as described in the *Highway Surveying Manual*.

(b) Have the DNR Completion Report signed and stamped by the appropriate professional in direct charge of the surveying work, then file with DNR asdescribed in Chapter 410.

400.04 Datums

A datum is a geometrical quantity (or set of quantities) that serves as a reference, forming the basis for computation of horizontal and vertical control surveys in which the curvature of the earth is considered. Adjusted positions of the datum, described in terms of latitude and longitude, may be transformed into State Plane Coordinates.

All engineering work (mapping, planning, design, right of way, and construction) for WSDOT projects is based on a common datum.

(1) Horizontal

WAC 332-130-060 states, "The datum for the horizontal control network in Washington shall be NAD83 (1991) [the North American Datum of 1983] as officially adjusted and published by the National Geodetic Survey of the United States Department of Commerce and as established in accordance with chapter 58.20 RCW. The datum adjustment shall be identified on all documents prepared; i.e., NAD83 (1991)." (See the *Highway Surveying Manual* for further information.)

(2) Vertical

The North American Vertical Datum of 1988 (NAVD88) as defined by the National Geodetic Survey (NGS) is the official civilian datum for surveying and mapping activities in the United States. WSDOT has adopted this datum. (See the *Highway Surveying Manual* for further information.)

400.05 Global Positioning System

A Global Positioning System (GPS) uses a constellation of satellites and earth stationed receivers to determine geodetic positions (latitude and longitude) on the surface of the earth. WSDOT personnel use this survey technology. (See the *Highway Surveying Manual* for more detailed discussions.)

GPS technology is changing rapidly. The key point is for the designer and surveyor to select the best tool (GPS or conventional applications) for doing the survey fieldwork. Often, a combination of GPS and conventional (Total Station) surveying is appropriate.

400.06 WSDOT Survey Monument Database

The WSDOT Survey Monument Database provides storage and retrieval capabilities for data associated with survey control monuments set by WSDOT. This database supports and tracks the Report of Survey Mark and aids in fulfilling WSDOT's obligation to contribute to the body of public record, thereby minimizing the duplication of survey work. The Report of Survey Mark provides data on specific GPS stations. (See Exhibit 400-2 for an example of a Report of Survey Mark.)

To access the WSDOT Survey Monument Database, see the following website:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/monument/

400.07 Geographic Information System

The Geographic Information System (GIS) is a compilation of information from many sources. Its purpose is to assemble data into a central database for the common good. The data is stored on many levels so the desired information can be selected and combined to achieve the desired product. Surveying and photogrammetric data are vital elements of this system.

400.08 Photogrammetric Surveys

Photogrammetric surveys are performed to furnish topographic or planimetric maps and cross sections for use in the reconnaissance, location, and preliminary design phases of highway work. To use photogrammetric surveys for final design and construction requires that the ground be nearly bare to obtain the necessary accuracy. By using well-planned aerial photography in stereoscopic plotters, contours and other physical features are delineated on map sheets to a scale consistent with the accuracies or detail required.

The usefulness of aerial photography is not limited to mapping. Taking the form of enlargements, mosaics, and digital images, it can be used as a visual communication tool (displays and exhibits) for planning, design, property acquisition, engineering, construction, litigation, and public relations.

To obtain information on preparation, procedure, and programming of aerial photography and photogrammetric mapping and applications, contact the HQ Geographic Services Office. When requesting a photogrammetric survey, specify the desired units and check the units of the product. Allow for the time required to communicate the complex and detailed work request, develop the service, and accomplish the product.

400.09 Documentation

For documentation related to monuments, see Chapter 410.

Primary and secondary survey control data are archived in the WSDOT Survey Monument Database and GIS when available.

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

INTERAGENCY AGREEMENT BETWEEN
THE WASHINGTON STATE DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
AND THE BOARD OF REGISTRATION FOR PROFESSIONAL
ENGINEERS AND LAND SURVEYORS

THE FOLLOWING Interagency Agreement is hereby entered into between the Washington State Department of Transportation (hereafter referred to as “WSDOT”) and the Washington State Board of Registration for Professional Engineers and Land Surveyors (hereafter referred to as “BOARD”).

I

DECLARATIONS OF THE PARTIES

A. WHEREAS the BOARD has the exclusive authority to regulate the practice of engineering and land surveying in Washington; and
B. WHEREAS WSDOT employees are required to practice land surveying as defined by RCW 18.43.020 in carrying out the program of said agency; and
C. WHEREAS WSDOT is exempted from necessarily using a licensed land surveyor to perform said surveys in accordance with the provisions of the Survey Recording Act, RCW 58.09.090; and
D. WHEREAS both the BOARD’S and WSDOT’S goals include the performance of land surveys in conformance with recognized standards of practice and relevant laws and administrative codes in order to safeguard life, health and property; and
E. WHEREAS the parties to this Agreement agree to the following Principles of Agreement.

II

PRINCIPLES OF AGREEMENT

A. The practice of land surveying performed by WSDOT employees shall be under the direct supervision of a licensed professional land surveyor OR licensed professional engineer. Said licensee shall hold a valid Washington license issued in conformance with RCW 18.43.
B. All surveys performed by WSDOT employees shall be performed in accordance with the Survey Standards promulgated under Chapter 332-130 WAC.
C. When a survey has been performed by WSDOT employees a survey map shall be prepared and filed with the county engineer in compliance with RCW 58.09.090(1)(a). Said map’s contents shall be in conformance with the requirements of RCW 58.09.060 and WAC 332-130. Furthermore, said map shall contain the stamp and signature of the licensee who was in direct responsible charge of the work.

Interagency Agreement
Exhibit 400-1

D. A record of corner information shall be filed in accordance with RCW 58.09.040(2) and 58.09.090(2) where WSDOT employees replace or restore an existing or obliterated general land office corner. Said record of corner information shall be signed and stamped by the professional land surveyor or professional engineer responsible for said work.

E. The temporary removal or destruction of any section corner or any other land boundary mark or monument shall be permitted if performed in compliance with RCW 58.24.040(7)(8).

F. Whether performed by a licensed professional engineer or a licensed professional land surveyor, any surveys performed by WSDOT shall be in accordance with the standards generally expected of those practicing professional land surveying.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF: The Washington State Department of Transportation and the Board of Registration have signed this Agreement.

/S/ 1/5/90

Ed W. Ferguson, PE Date
DEPUTY SECRETARY
Department of Transportation

This Agreement approved by motion of the Board dated January 19, 1990.

/S/ 1/19/90

Wesley E. Taft, PE Date
CHAIRMAN, Board of Registration

Interagency Agreement
Exhibit 400-1 (continued)

Washington State Department of Transportation

Geographic Services

SURVEY INFORMATION SYSTEM

Report of Survey Mark

GENERAL MONUMENT INFORMATION

Designation:	GP29530-21	**T.R.S:**	31N, 5E , 2	**ACCOUNTS INFORMATION**
Monument ID:	8	**Corner Code:**		**BOOK** **PROJECT** **INVOICE**
State:	WASHINGTON	**State Route:**	530	49 0L2030 23-94042
County:	SNOHOMISH	**Mile Post:**	20.590	
Region:	NW	**Station:**		
Nearest Town:	ARLINGTON	**Offset:**		
Usgs Quad:	ARLINGTON WEST	**Owner:**	GS	
		Bearing:	M	

Description

TO REACH THE STATION FROM THE INTERSECTION OF SR 530 AND SR 009 AT ARLINGTON, GO WEST 0.2 MILES ALONG SR 530 TO THE STATION ON THE RIGHT. IT IS LOCATED 1.1 METERS SOUTH OF A WITNESS POST, 33.5 METERS WEST OF THE APPROXIMATE CENTERLINE OF DIKE ROAD AND 1.2 METERS NORTH OF A GUARD RAIL. THE STATION IS A STANDARD WSDOT BRASS DISK SET IN A ROUND CONCRETE MONUMENT PROJECTING 0.2 FEET ABOVE THE GROUND. NOTE: 'POSITION UP-DATE BY OCCUPYING WITH G.P.S.' NOTE: TIED TO HPN 4/94. THIS IS A NAVD88 UPDATE.

CURRENT SURVEY CONTROL

DATUM	LATITUDE	UNIT	LONGTITUDE	UNIT	NETWORK	METHOD	ACCURACY
NAD 83/91	48 11 54.567381	N	122 08 03.530464	W	PRIMARY	GPS	2 CM

Report of Survey Mark Example
Exhibit 400-2

410.01 General
410.02 References
410.03 Definitions
410.04 Control Monuments
410.05 Alignment Monuments
410.06 Property Corners
410.07 Other Monuments
410.08 Filing Requirements
410.09 Documentation

410.01 General

Proper monumentation is important in referencing a highway's alignment, which is used to define its right of way. The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) can contribute to the body of public records and minimize duplication of survey work by establishing and recording monuments that are tied to a state plane coordinate system and to a standard vertical datum. WSDOT is required by law to perpetuate existing recorded monuments (RCW 58.09). The department provides monuments for realignments and new highway alignments and perpetuates existing monuments impacted by a project.

The Department of Natural Resources (DNR) is designated as the official agency for surveys and maps. New monuments set to establish property corners, highway alignment, and so on, shall be recorded on a Record of Survey or Monumentation Map and filed with the DNR Public Land Survey Office and the appropriate county auditor or county engineer. Records of Survey and Monumentation Maps are retained at DNR. Geodetic monuments are established and the Headquarters (HQ) Geographic Services Office retains their placement records. Geodetic monuments are recorded on a Report of Survey Mark. These records are made available to the public on the following website: www.wsdot.wa.gov/monument/

Existing monuments are not to be disturbed without first obtaining the DNR permits required by state law. DNR allows the temporary covering of a string of monuments under a single permit. State law requires replacement of land boundary monuments after temporary removal according to permit procedures. WSDOT control and alignment monuments may not be removed without replacement unless the location of the original position is perpetuated by reference and the appropriate document(s) prepared and filed with the county and the HQ Right of Way Plans Section. Other requirements pertaining to specific monuments are discussed below.

Exhibit 410-1 summarizes the documentation requirements for new and existing monuments.

The region is responsible for identifying and locating existing monuments, obtaining required permits before any existing monument is disturbed, and conducting the research to locate existing monuments as required by WAC 332-120-030, as follows:

Any person, corporation, association, department, or subdivision of the state, county or municipality responsible for an activity that may cause a survey monument to be removed or destroyed shall be responsible for ensuring that the original survey point is perpetuated. It shall be the responsibility of the governmental agency or others performing construction work or other activity (including road or street resurfacing projects) to adequately search the records and the physical area of the proposed construction work or other activity for the purpose of locating and referencing any known or existing survey monuments.

410.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 18.43, Engineers and land surveyors

RCW 58.09, Surveys – Recording

RCW 58.24, State agency for surveys and maps – Fees

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 332-120, Survey monuments – Removal or destruction

WAC 332-130, Minimum standards for land boundary surveys and geodetic control surveys and guidelines for the preparation of land descriptions

(2) Design Guidance

Highway Surveying Manual, M 22-97, WSDOT

Manual of Instructions for the Survey of the Public Lands of the United States, BLM, U.S. Department of the Interior, 1973

410.03 Definitions

monument As defined for this chapter, a monument is any physical object or structure that marks or references a survey point. This includes, but is not limited to, a point of curvature (P.C.), a point of tangency (P.T.), a property corner, a section corner, a General Land Office (GLO) survey point, a Bureau of Land Management (BLM) survey point, and any other permanent reference set by a governmental agency or private surveyor.

removal or destruction The physical disturbance or covering of a monument such that the survey point is no longer visible or readily accessible.

410.04 Control Monuments

Horizontal and vertical control monuments are permanent references required for the establishment of project coordinates tied to the Washington State plane system and elevations tied to a standard vertical datum. By establishing and recording permanent control monuments, WSDOT eliminates duplication of survey work and contributes to the body of public records.

Provide the horizontal and vertical control monuments for highway projects that require the location of existing or proposed alignment or right of way limits. Monuments set by other agencies may be used if within 1 mile of the project and where the required datum and accuracy were used.

When control monuments are required for a given project, show the existing and proposed control monuments on the contract plans.

For horizontal control:

- Use North American Datum 1983, revised 1991 (NAD83/91).
- Use a minimum of second order, Class II procedures as defined in the *Highway Surveying Manual*.
- Provide two monuments near the beginning of the project. Where possible, when setting horizontal control, set points to act as azimuth points. Place points so that line of sight is preserved between them and in an area that will not be disturbed by construction.
- Provide two monuments near the end of the project.
- Provide a pair of monuments at about 3-mile intervals throughout the length of the project.

For vertical control:

- Use North American Vertical Datum 1988 (NAVD88). (See the *Highway Surveying Manual* for orders of accuracy required.)
- Use at least second order procedures for primary vertical control within project limits as defined in the *Highway Surveying Manual*. Use third order for secondary control throughout the project.
- Provide vertical control throughout the length of the project. Desirable spacing is at or near each milepost. Maximum spacing is 3 miles apart.

All control monuments that are established, reestablished, or reset must be filed with the county engineer and the Department of Natural Resources (DNR). Submit a Record of Survey or a Monumentation Map that has been signed by the supervising, licensed, professional engineer or licensed, professional land survey. If the monument is not used to reference right of way or land corners, submit a Report of Survey Mark. (See the *Highway Surveying Manual* for more detailed guidance on Control Monuments.)

410.05 Alignment Monuments

Alignment monuments are permanent references required for the establishment or reestablishment of the highway and its right of way. Placing monuments at random points, in safe locations and tied to the Washington State plane coordinate system is recommended (see the *Highway Surveying Manual*).

Establishment, reestablishment, or resetting of alignment monuments is required on the following highway projects:

- New highway alignment projects.
- Highway realignment projects involving new right of way (monuments are only required for the realigned highway section).
- Highway projects where alignment monuments already exist.

Before an existing alignment monument is reestablished or reset, a DNR permit is required.

All alignment monuments that are established, reestablished, or reset must be filed with the appropriate county auditor or county engineer. The Record of Survey is filed with the county auditor in the county in which the monument is located, and a recorded copy is sent to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section. The original Monumentation Map is filed with the county engineer of the county in which the monument is located, and a recorded copy, with the filing signatures, is sent to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section. The HQ Right of Way Plans Section will forward a copy to DNR for its records.

410.06 Property Corners

A new property corner monument will be provided where an existing recorded monument has been invalidated as a direct result of a right of way purchase by the department. The new property corner monument shall be set by or under the direct supervision of a licensed professional engineer or licensed professional land surveyor.

The licensed land surveyor files the Record of Survey with the county auditor. A recorded copy of the Record of Survey is sent to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section and HQ Real Estate Services. The licensed professional engineer files a Monumentation Map with the county engineer of the county in which the monument is located, and a recorded copy is sent to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section and HQ Real Estate Services.

410.07 Other Monuments

A DNR permit is required before any monument may be removed or destroyed.

Existing section corners and BLM or GLO monuments impacted by a project shall be reset to perpetuate their existence. After completing the work, a DNR Land Corner Record is required.

Other permanent monuments established by any other governmental agency must not be disturbed until the agency has been contacted to determine specific requirements for the monument. If assistance is needed to identify a monument, contact the HQ Geographic Services Office.

Resetting monuments must be done by or under the direct supervision of a licensed professional engineer or a licensed professional land surveyor. If a Record of Survey is prepared, it will be filed with the county auditor in the county in which the monument is located. If a Monumentation Map is prepared, it is filed with the county engineer in the county in which the monument is located, and a recorded copy is sent to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section. The HQ Right of Way Plans Section will forward a copy to DNR for its records.

410.08 Filing Requirements

(1) DNR Permit

When a DNR permit is required, use the application form shown in Exhibit 410-2. The completed application must be signed by a licensed professional engineer or a licensed professional land surveyor and submitted to DNR. The DNR permit applications can be downloaded in TIFF, PDF, or Word format at the following website: www.dnr.wa.gov/htdocs/plso/download.htm

Monumentation work cannot be done until DNR has approved the permit. In extraordinary circumstances, verbal authorization may be granted by DNR pending the issuance of a written permit.

After resetting the monument, the survey method used must be filed with DNR using the completion report form shown in Exhibit 410-3. The form is to be signed by a licensed professional engineer or a licensed professional land surveyor.

(2) Documentation Map

When a Monumentation Map is required, a plan sheet is prepared. Generally, the plan sheet is based on a right of way plan obtained from the HQ Right of Way Plans Section. A Monumentation Map contains a description of all new and existing monuments indicating their kind, size, and location. In addition, it must contain the seal and signature of a licensed professional engineer or a licensed professional land surveyor (see the *Plans Preparation Manual*).

A copy of a Monumentation Map is filed with the county engineer in the county in which the monument is located, and a recorded copy is sent to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section. The HQ Right of Way Plans Section will forward a copy to DNR for its records.

(3) Land Corner Record

When a Land Corner Record is required, use the forms shown in Exhibit 410-4. The completed forms are to be signed and stamped by a licensed professional engineer or a licensed professional land surveyor and submitted to the county auditor for the county in which the monument is located.

410.09 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

SET NEW	
WSDOT Control Monument	
Before:	No permit required.
After:	File a copy of the Monumentation Map with the county engineer. Send the original to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section.
Alignment Monument	
Before:	No permit required.
After:	File a Record of Survey with the county auditor or a Monumentation Map with the county engineer. Send a copy to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section.
Property Corner Monument*	
Before:	Engage a licensed professional land surveyor.
After:	Licensed professional land surveyor files Record of Survey with county auditor, or a licensed professional engineer files a Monumentation Map with the county engineer and sends a copy to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section.
DISTURB EXISTING*	
Control Monument	
Before:	Obtain DNR permit.
After:	File a copy of the Monumentation Map with the county engineer. Send the original to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section.
Alignment Monument	
Before:	Obtain DNR permit.
After:	File a copy of the Monumentation Map with the county engineer. Send the original to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section.
Section Corner, BLM, or GLO Monument	
Before:	Obtain DNR permit.
After:	File Land Corner Record with the county engineer. Send a copy to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section.
All Other Monuments	
Before:	Obtain DNR permit. Contact governmental agency.
After:	File a copy of the Monumentation Map with the county engineer. Send the original to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section.

* Property corner monuments must be filed within 90 days of establishment, re-establishment, or restoration.

Monument Documentation Summary
Exhibit 410-1

APPLICATION FOR PERMIT TO REMOVE OR DESTROY A SURVEY MONUMENT

PERMIT NO.
You are hereby authorized to remove or destroy the described survey monument(s):

AUTHORIZING SIGNATURE/DATE
(DNR or Other Authorizing Agency)

APPLICANT INFORMATION:

NAME: TELEPHONE NO: DATE:

COMPANY OR AGENCY NAME AND ADDRESS:

I estimate that this work will be finished by (date)__________.

_________I request a variance from the requirement to reference to the Washington Coordinate System. (Please provide your justification in the space below.)

The variance request is approved; not approved. (FOR DNR USE ONLY) Reason for not approving:

MULTIPLE MONUMENTS:
______Check here if this form is being used for more than one monument. You must attach separate sheets showing the information required below for each monument affected. You must seal, sign and date each sheet.

INDEXING INFORMATION FOR AN INDIVIDUAL MONUMENT:
1) THE MONUMENT IS LOCATED IN: SEC TWP RGE 1/4-1/4
2) ADDITIONAL IDENTIFIER: (e.g., BLM designation for the corner, street intersection, plat name, block, lot, etc.)

MONUMENT INFORMATION: Describe: 3) the monument/accessories found marking the position,
4) the temporary references set to remonument the position (include coordinates when applicable), and
5) the permanent monument(s) to be placed on completion (if a permanent witness monument(s) is set include the references to the original position).

SEAL/SIGNATURE/DATE SIGNED

(Form prescribed 2/94 by the Public Land Survey Office, Dept. of Natural Resources, pursuant to RCW 58.24.040 (8).)

DNR Permit Application
Exhibit 410-2

COMPLETION REPORT FOR MONUMENT REMOVAL OR DESTRUCTION

(TO BE COMPLETED AND SENT TO THE DNR AFTER THE WORK IS DONE.)

_____I have perpetuated the position(s) as per the detail shown on the application form.

____
SEAL/SIGNATURE/DATE SIGNED

OR

______I was unable to fulfill the plan as shown on the application form. Below is the detail of what I did do to perpetuate the original position(s). (If the application covered multiple monuments attach sheets providing the required information. Seal, sign and date each sheet.)

____
SEAL/SIGNATURE/DATE SIGNED

DNR Completion Report Form
Exhibit 410-3

LAND CORNER RECORD

GRANTOR/SURVEYOR/PUBLIC OFFICER: This corner record correctly represents work performed by me or under my direction in conformance with the Survey Recording Act.

COMPANY OR AGENCY:

ADDRESS:

GRANTEE: PUBLIC SEAL/SIGNATURE/DATE

LEGAL: TWP: RGE: CORNER CODE:

ADDITIONAL IDENTIFIER:(BLM designation, street or plat names, block, lot, etc.)

COUNTY:

WASHINGTON PLANE COORDINATES: N: E:

ORDER: ZONE: DATUM (Date of adjustment):

CORNER INFORMATION: Discuss the history, evidence found, and perpetuation of the corner. Diagram the references; provide the date of work; and, if applicable, a reference to a map of record and/or the field book/page no. Use the back, if needed.

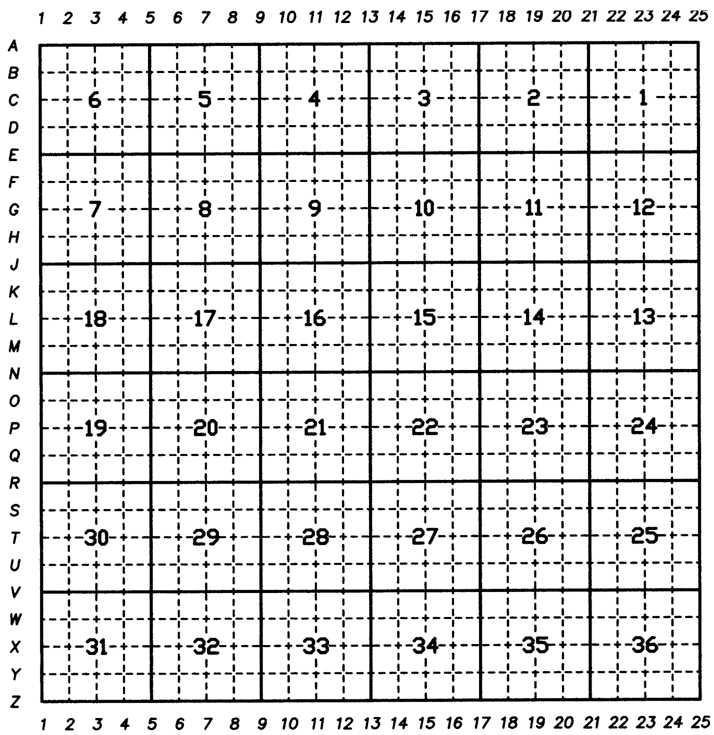
This form is in compliance with the intent of RCW 65.04.045 and prescribed by the Public Land Survey Office, Department of Natural Resources - 1/97.

Land Corner Record
Exhibit 410-4

MARK THE CORNER LOCATION BELOW AND FILL IN THE CORNER CODE BLANK ON THE OTHER SIDE:
For corners at the intersection of two lines, the corner code is the alphanumeric coordinate that corresponds to the appropriate intersection of lines.

For corners that are only on one line, the corner code is the line designation and the related line segment; i.e., a corner on line 5 between "B" and "C" is designated BC-5.

For corners that are between lines, the corner code is both line segments; i.e., a corner in the SE1/4 of the SE1/4 of section 18 is designated MN 4-5.



RCW 58.09.060 (2) requires the following information on this form: an accurate description and location, in reference to the corner position, of all monuments and accessories (a) found at the corner and (b) placed or replaced at the corner; (c) basis of bearings used to describe or locate such monuments or accessories; and (d) corollary information that may be helpful to relocate or identify the corner position.

SPACE FOR ADDITIONAL COMMENT:

Land Corner Record

Exhibit 410-4 (continued)

Chapter 510 Right of Way Considerations

510.01 General
510.02 References
510.03 Special Features
510.04 Easements and Permits
510.05 Programming for Funds
510.06 Appraisal and Acquisition
510.07 Transactions
510.08 Documentation

510.01 General

Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) Real Estate Services personnel participate in the project definition phase of a project to assist in minimizing right of way costs, defining route locations and acquisition areas, and determining potential problems and possible solutions.

Due to the variables in land acquisition, the categories of right of way costs considered in the project definition phase are:

- Purchase costs (acquisition compensation).
- Relocation assistance benefits payments.
- Other Real Estate Services staff expenses (acquisition services, relocation services, and interim property management services).

Right of way cost estimates are made by Real Estate Services specialists. When the parcels from which additional right of way will be acquired are known, title reports (including assessors' land areas) can be requested.

Real Estate Services personnel also make project field inspections at appropriate times throughout the development of a project to ensure adequate consideration is given to significant right of way elements involved (including possible social, economic, and environmental effects) in accordance with the *Right of Way Manual*.

During plan development:

- Title reports are examined for easements or other encumbrances that would reveal the existence and location of water lines, conduits, drainage or irrigation lines, and so on, that must be provided for in construction.
- Easements that indicate other affected ownerships are added to the right of way and limited access plan.
- Arrangements are made to obtain utility, railroad, haul road, detour routes, or other essential agreements, as instructed in the *Utilities Manual* and the *Agreements Manual*.
- Right of way acquisition, disposal, and maintenance are planned.
- Easements and permits are planned (to accommodate activities outside of the right of way).

For design right of way widths, see Chapter 1140. The widths may be modified based on Real Estate Services' input, but cannot be moved to coincide with property boundaries in anticipation of a total take. Jogs in the final widths of the right of way are held to a minimum. (See *Right of Way Manual* Chapter 6 for discussion of remainders.)

All acquisition documents are processed through Headquarters (HQ) Real Estate Services except temporary permits that are not shown on right of way plans and are not needed for the project (such as for driveway connections).

510.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 710

49 CFR Part 24, Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition for Federal and Federally Assisted Programs

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 8.26, Relocation assistance – Real property acquisition policy

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-100, Uniform relocation assistance and real property acquisition

(2) Design Guidance

Agreements Manual, M 22-99, WSDOT

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Right of Way Manual, M 26-01, WSDOT

Utilities Manual, M 22-87, WSDOT

510.03 Special Features

(1) Road Approaches

On managed access highways, the department will reconstruct legally existing road approaches that are removed or destroyed as part of the highway construction. New approaches required by new highway construction are negotiated by the region with the approval of the Regional Administrator. The negotiator coordinates with the region's design section to ensure new approaches conform to the requirements of Chapter 1340 for road approaches. All new approaches will be by permit through the appropriate region office.

On limited access highways, road approaches of any type must be approved by the State Design Engineer before there is legal basis for negotiation by Real Estate Services. When approved, approaches will be specifically reserved in the right of way transaction and will contain the identical limitations set by the State Design Engineer and as shown on the approved right of way and limited access plan.

(2) Cattle Passes

The desirability of or need for a cattle pass will be considered during the appraisal or negotiation process. A cattle pass will be approved only after complete studies of location, utilization, cost, and safety elements have proved its necessity. Upon approval, such an improvement and appurtenant rights will be established. Future right of access for maintenance is negotiated during acquisition.

On limited access highways, approval by the State Design Engineer and the addition of a traffic movement note on the right of way and limited access plan (see the *Plans Preparation Manual*) are required.

(3) Pit, Stockpile, and Waste Sites

These sites are investigated and planned as outlined in the *Plans Preparation Manual*. Detour and haul road agreements, approved by the Regional Administrator, are necessary when the state proposes to use city streets or county roads for the purpose of detouring traffic or hauling certain materials. (See the *Utilities Manual* for detour and haul road agreement guidelines.)

(4) International Boundaries

Construction proposed "within a 20-foot strip, 10 feet on each side of the international boundary," must be coordinated between the department and the British Columbia Ministry of Highways and Public Works.

Permission of the International Boundary Commission is required to work "within 10 feet of an international boundary." Their primary concern is monumentation of the boundary line and the line of sight between monuments. The Commission requires a written request stating what, when, and why construction will be done, sent to:

International Boundary Commission
2401 Pennsylvania Ave NW, Suite 475
Washington, DC 20037

510.04 Easements and Permits

(1) General

If others request rights within existing WSDOT ownership, they are to contact the region Real Estate Services Office.

Easements and permits to accommodate WSDOT activities outside the right of way usually fall into one of the categories defined below.

Easements and permits are processed in accordance with the requirements of the *Right of Way Manual*. The region Real Estate Services Office drafts the legal descriptions for all easements and permits for acquisition of property and property rights. HQ Real Estate Services drafts the legal description for all easements and permits for disposition of property or property rights. The region Real Estate Services Office either obtains or assists in obtaining easements and permits. The region is responsible for compliance with and appropriate retention of the final documents. Records of permanent property rights acquired are maintained by HQ Real Estate Services. Easements and permits are to be shown on the contract plans in accordance with the *Plans Preparation Manual*.

(2) Perpetual Easements

Perpetual easements are shown on the Right of Way Plans in accordance with the *Plans Preparation Manual*.

(a) **State Maintenance Easement**

Used when the state is to construct a facility and provide all maintenance. Examples are slope and drainage easements.

(b) **Dual Maintenance Easement**

Used when the state is to construct and maintain a facility and the owner is to maintain the remainder. Examples include the surface area above a tunnel and the area behind a retaining wall or noise wall.

(c) **Transfer Easement**

On occasion an easement must be acquired for transfer to another party. In these cases, contact the region Real Estate Services Office for early involvement. The right of way and limited access plan is modified to identify the party to whom the easement will be transferred. The department cannot obtain easements for transfer across lands under the jurisdiction of the Department of Natural Resources (DNR), and WSDOT cannot condemn for a transfer easement.

(3) Temporary Easements

Temporary easements are used when the state requires a temporary property right that involves either more than minor work or construction activities on privately owned property. In the cases where the rights required or the work to be performed is not beneficial to the property owner, just compensation must be paid.

When WSDOT is paying for the rights or when the encroachment is significant, temporary easements are shown on the right of way plans, in accordance with the *Plans Preparation Manual*. Consult the region Plans and Real Estate Services personnel for exceptions. If the easement is not mapped, mark and submit plans according to the following information.

(a) The region provides a right of way plan with the required temporary easement(s) delineated in red to the region Real Estate Services Office. These plan sheets provide:

- Ownership boundaries. Confirmation of ownership and parcel boundaries may be completed by a search of county records and mapping; a formal title report is required for temporary easements.
- Parcel number assigned to each ownership.
- Sufficient engineering detail to write legal descriptions.
- Statement of the intended use of each temporary easement area.

(b) In limited access areas, contact the HQ Access and Hearings Office.

(4) Construction Permits

Construction permits are used for temporary rights during construction. They are not used when WSDOT needs a perpetual right. A construction permit is only valid with the current owner and must be renegotiated if property ownership changes before construction begins. For private ownerships, a temporary construction easement is recommended. A construction permit is recommended for rights of entry to publicly owned property. Local agencies might require the use of specific forms when applying for these rights of entry. Regardless of the form or its name, the region is responsible for appropriate central storage of the original document.

When there is a benefit to the property owner (for example, driveway or parking lot approach improvements) the construction permit is usually obtained without the payment of compensation (for example, donation or mutual benefits). Consult the region Plans and Real Estate Services offices for exceptions.

510.05 Programming for Funds

For plan development, the phases in Exhibit 510-1 apply to the authorization of stage programming.

When federal funds are involved, special attention must be given to Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) requirements. When federal participation in right of way costs is anticipated, specific authorization must be obtained from the FHWA. The rules and procedures provided in RCW 8.26, WAC 468-100, and the *Right of Way Manual* must be followed to ensure federal and state participation. In many cases, federal funds are contingent upon the department setting up a relocation advisory procedure for any owner or tenant who is displaced by a project and desires such assistance. Relocation advisory assistance is a function of HQ Real Estate Services.

510.06 Appraisal and Acquisition

(1) All Highways

Exhibit 510-1 shows plan development phases for both limited access highways and managed access highways; thus, it applies to the authorization of right of way acquisition for all state highways.

(2) Exceptions

Exceptions can be made to the requirements in Exhibit 510-1 if unusual hardships result for the individual or the state. The approval of right of way hardship action will be based on the individual parcel merit and is processed in accordance with hardship acquisition policy (see the *Right of Way Manual*).

510.07 Transactions

(1) Private Ownerships

Right of way is ordinarily acquired from private property owners by region-level negotiation between the owner and the right of way agent.

(2) Utilities

The region determines the ownership of all utilities and makes arrangements for necessary adjustment, including relocation of portions of the utility, if necessary. Provisions for relocation or adjustment are included in the Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) when:

- The items are normal construction items and the department is obligated for the moving expense.
- The utility requests that relocation be performed by the department and the department has approved the request.

Readjustment may require WSDOT to purchase substitute rights of way or easements for eventual transfer to the utility. Such rights of way or easements must be shown on the right of way plans with the same engineering detail as highway right of way. On limited access highways, if an approach is required for maintenance of a utility, the approach will be shown on the approach schedule. (See the *Utilities Accommodation Policy* regarding location of and access to utilities.)

Negotiations with the utilities are often done by HQ Real Estate Services. Because of the considerable time required to obtain approvals, processing of utility relocation agreements must begin as soon as possible.

(3) Railways

Right of way is generally not acquired in fee from a railroad company. Instead, the state acquires a perpetual easement for encroachment or crossing. A construction and maintenance agreement may also be required. The easement must be shown on the right of way plan and identified by both highway and railroad stationing.

The HQ Design Office coordinates with the railroad design staff to determine a mutually agreeable location before the proposed easement is sent to Real Estate Services. The negotiations with the railroads are generally done by HQ Real Estate Services. Because of the considerable time required to obtain approvals, processing of railroad agreements must begin as soon as possible.

The perpetual easement document is executed by the Real Estate Services Director.

(4) Federal Agencies

Acquisition of right of way from most federal agencies must be negotiated and processed through several federal offices. Allow at least one year for efficient and economical right of way acquisition. Depending upon the particular federal agency involved, special exhibit maps and other documentation may be required, and the right of way may be acquired as an easement rather than in fee. The negotiations with the federal agencies are generally done by HQ Real Estate Services.

(5) Other State Agencies

Acquisition from other state agencies must be negotiated and processed through the individual agencies or designees. Negotiations with other state agencies are generally handled by HQ Real Estate Services. As in the case of federal agencies, substantial time must be allowed for compliance with applicable statutes and regulations peculiar to the agency before right of way will be granted.

(6) Condemnations

Condemnation can result from a disagreement between the department and the owner regarding a fair settlement or a faulty title. Since several months might elapse between the filing of a condemnation case and a court decision, the region Real Estate Services Office can be requested to investigate the possibility of obtaining a negotiated possession and use agreement as in the case of an emergency project or when a sundry site is required immediately.

510.08 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Plan Approval	Plan Approval	Programming of Funds for Appraisal and Acquisition
Limited Access Highways		
PHASE 1 Access Report Plan	State Design Engineer* approves access report plan for prehearing discussion with county and city officials. The access report plan may be used for preparation of federal-aid program data for appraisals if federal funds are to be used for right of way acquisition. It may be used for requesting advance appraisal funds through the Planning and Capital Program Management for all projects with either state or federal funds.	Program appraisals of total takes. (No acquisition.)
PHASE 2 Access Hearing Plan	State Design Engineer* approves access hearing plan for use at a public access hearing. R/W information is complete. The access hearing plan may be used for the preparation of federal-aid program data for negotiations on federally funded projects and for the preparation of true cost estimates and fund requests.	Program all appraisals and acquisitions. Note: Do not appraise or purchase partial takes in areas subject to controversy. Appraise or purchase total takes only if federal design hearing requirements are met.
PHASE 3 Findings and Order Plan	No signature required. Results of findings and order access hearing are marked in red and green on access hearing plan and sent to HQ R/W Plans Section.	Program appraisals of partial takes where data is available to appraisers. Acquisition of total takes.
PHASE 4 Final R/W and L/A Plan	State Design Engineer* approves final R/W and L/A plans or approves revisions to established R/W and L/A plans.	Program all remaining appraisals and all remaining acquisitions. Note: If appeal period is not complete, delay action in areas subject to controversy and possible appeal.
Managed Access Highways		
PHASE 5 Final R/W Plan	R/W plan submitted to HQ R/W Plans Section for approval.	Program appraisals.
	State Design Engineer* approves new R/W plans or approves revisions to established R/W plans.	Program all appraisals and acquisitions.

*Or a designee.

Appraisal and Acquisition
Exhibit 510-1

520.01 General
520.02 References
520.03 Definitions
520.04 Vocabulary

520.01 General

The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) controls access to the state's highways (with a few exceptions) in order to preserve the safety and efficiency of these highways as well as the public investment. All Washington State highways are distinguished as being either *limited access* or *managed access* highways. Control of access is accomplished by either acquiring rights of access from abutting property owners (limited access control) or by regulating access connections to the highway (managed access control). Until limited access rights have been acquired from abutting property owners, the route is a managed access highway. Managed access permits are issued either by a local authority (city or town) or by WSDOT.

Numerous studies have shown that controlling and limiting access to highways is a cost-effective way to help maintain the safety, capacity, and functional integrity of a highway. Adding more lanes to an existing highway is expensive and frequently not possible. Controlling access to our state highways, by promoting the use of frontage roads or other existing county or city roads and advocating the internal shared circulation within adjacent developments, is a proactive and cost-effective way to accomplish this objective.

WSDOT has been purchasing access rights and implementing limited access control since 1951 (RCW 47.52). While this has been effective, it is an expensive way to control access to the state highway system. Adequate funding to accomplish the purchasing of access rights has not kept up with the state's continuous population growth and land use development over the years. As a result, state lawmakers introduced a bill in the early 1990s titled "Highway Access Management," recognizing that controlling access to the state highway system by regulation was a cost-effective means to preserve the safety and capacity of our state highway system.

In 1991, the Legislature passed and the Governor approved RCW 47.50, titled "Highway access management." This new law directed WSDOT to develop new rules to be included in the Washington Administrative Code for those state highways not already limited access highways. The result was a new class of access control called managed access.

Chapter 530 describes limited access highways in greater detail. Chapter 540 describes managed access highways in greater detail.

The following references and definitions apply to Washington's access control as presented in Chapters 530 and 540.

520.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 18.43, Engineers and land surveyors

RCW 35.78, Streets – Classification and design standards

RCW 46.61, Rules of the road

RCW 47.17, State highway routes

RCW 47.24, City streets as part of state highways

RCW 47.32, Obstructions on right-of-way

RCW 47.50, Highway access management

RCW 47.52, Limited access facilities

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-51, Highway access management access permits – Administrative process

WAC 468-52, Highway access management – Access control classification system and standards

WAC 468-54, Limited access hearings

WAC 468-58, Limited access highways

(2) Design Guidance

Agreements Manual, M 22-99, WSDOT

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways" (MUTCD)

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Right of Way Manual, M 26-01, WSDOT

Utilities Accommodation Policy, M 22-86, WSDOT

WSDOT Headquarters (HQ) Access and Hearings Section's Internet page: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings

(3) Supporting Information

Access Management Manual, Transportation Research Board (TRB), Washington DC, 2003

Highways Over National Forest Lands, MOU between WSDOT and USFS, M 22-50, 2002: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Publications/Manuals/M22-50.htm

520.03 Definitions

access A means of entering or leaving a public road, street, or highway with respect to abutting property or another public road, street, or highway.

access control The limiting and regulating of public and private access to Washington State's highways, as required by state law.

Access Control Tracking System Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan A database list, related to highway route numbers and mileposts, that identifies either the level of limited access or the class of managed access: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings

access connection See ***approach and access connection***.

access connection permit A written authorization issued by the permitting authority for a specifically designed access connection to a managed access highway at a specific location; for a specific type and intensity of property use; and for a specific volume of traffic for the access connection based on the final stage of the development of the applicant's property. The actual form used for this authorization is determined by the permitting authority.

access deviation A deviation (see Chapter 300) that authorizes deferring or staging acquisition of limited access control, falling short of a 300-foot requirement, or allowing an existing access point to stay within 130 feet of an intersection on a limited access highway. Approval by the State Design Engineer is required (see Chapter 530).

access hearing plan A limited access plan prepared for presentation at an access hearing.

access point Any point that allows private or public entrance to or exit from the traveled way of a state highway, including "locked gate" access and maintenance access points.

access point spacing On a managed access highway, the distance between two adjacent access points on one side of the highway, measured along the edge of the traveled way from one access point to the next (see also ***corner clearance***).

access report plan A limited access plan prepared for presentation to local governmental officials at preliminary meetings before preparation of the access hearing plan.

access rights Property rights that allow an abutting property owner to enter and leave the public roadway system.

allowed Authorized.

application for an access connection An application provided by the permitting authority to be completed by the applicant for access to a managed access highway.

approach and access connection These terms are listed under the specific access section to which they apply. The first section below is for limited access highways and uses the term *approach*. The second section below is for managed access highways and uses the term *access connection*.

Approaches and access connections include any ability to leave or enter a highway right of way other than at an intersection with another road or street.

(a) ***limited access highways: approach*** An access point, other than a public road/street, that allows access to or from a limited access highway on the state highway system. There are five types of approaches to limited access highways that are allowed:

- ***Type A*** An off and on approach in a legal manner, not to exceed 30 feet in width, for the sole purpose of serving a single-family residence. It may be reserved by the abutting owner for specified use at a point satisfactory to the state at or between designated highway stations. This approach type is allowed on partial and modified control limited access highways.
- ***Type B*** An off and on approach in a legal manner, not to exceed 50 feet in width, for use necessary to the normal operation of a farm, but not for retail marketing. It may be reserved by the abutting owner for specified use at a point satisfactory to the state at or between designated highway stations. This approach type is allowed on partial and modified control limited access highways. This approach type may be used for wind farms when use of the approach is limited to those vehicles necessary to construct and maintain the farm for use in harvesting wind energy.
- ***Type C*** An off and on approach in a legal manner, for a special purpose and width to be agreed upon. It may be specified at a point satisfactory to the state at or between designated highway stations. This approach type is allowed on partial and modified control limited access highways and on full control limited access highways where no other reasonable means of access exists, as solely determined by the department.
- ***Type D*** An off and on approach in a legal manner, not to exceed 50 feet in width, for use necessary to the normal operation of a commercial establishment. It may be specified at a point satisfactory to the state at or between designated highway stations. This approach type is allowed only on modified control limited access highways.
- ***Type E*** This type is no longer allowed to be constructed because of the requirements that there be only one access point per parcel on a limited access state highway.
- ***Type F*** An off and on approach in a legal manner, not to exceed 30 feet in width, for the sole purpose of serving a wireless communication site. It may be specified at a point satisfactory to the state at or between designated highway stations. This approach type is allowed only on partial control limited access highways. (See WAC 468-58-080(vi) for further restrictions.)

(b) ***managed access highways: access connection*** An access point, other than a public road/street, that permits access to or from a managed access highway on the state highway system. There are five types of access connection permits:

- ***conforming access connection*** A connection to a managed access highway that meets current WAC and WSDOT location, spacing, and design criteria.
- ***grandfathered access connection*** Any connection to the state highway system that was in existence and in active use on July 1, 1990, and has not had a significant change in use.
- ***joint-use access connection*** A single connection to a managed access highway that serves two or more properties.

- ***nonconforming access connection*** A connection to a managed access highway that does not meet current WSDOT location, spacing, or design criteria, pending availability of a future conforming access connection.
- ***variance access connection*** A connection to a managed access highway at a location not normally allowed by current WSDOT criteria.

(c) ***managed access connection category*** There are four access connection permit categories for managed access connections to state highways: Category I, Category II, Category III, and Category IV (see Chapter 540).

annual daily traffic (ADT) The volume of traffic passing a point or segment of a highway, in both directions, during a period of time, divided by the number of days in the period, and factored to represent an estimate of traffic volume for an average day of the year.

average annual daily traffic (AADT) The average volume of traffic passing a point or segment of a highway, in both directions, during a year.

average weekday vehicle trip ends (AWDVTE) The estimated total of all trips entering plus all trips leaving the applicant's site based on the final stage of proposed development.

connection See ***approach and access connection***.

contiguous parcels Two or more pieces of real property, under the same ownership, with one or more boundaries that touch and have similarity of use.

corner clearance On a managed access highway, the distance from an intersection of a public road or street to the nearest access connection along the same side of the highway. The minimum corner clearance distance (see Chapter 540, Exhibit 540-1) is measured from the closest edge of the intersecting road or street to the closest edge of the traveled way of the access connection, measured along one side of the traveled way (through lanes) (see also ***access point spacing***).

DHV Design hourly volume.

E&EP WSDOT's Environmental and Engineering Programs Division.

easement A documented right, as a right of way, to use the property of another for designated purposes.

findings and order (F&O) A legal package containing information based on the hearing record from a limited access hearing (see Chapters 210 and 530).

findings and order (F&O) plan A limited access plan, prepared after a limited access hearing, which is based on the hearing record.

HQ WSDOT's Headquarters in Olympia.

intersection An at-grade access point connecting a state highway with a road or street duly established as a public road or public street by the local governmental entity.

limited access Full, partial, or modified access control is planned and established for each corridor and then acquired as the right to limit access to each individual parcel.

- ***planned limited access control*** Limited access control is planned for sometime in the future; however, no access hearing has been held.
- ***established limited access control*** An access hearing has been held and the Environmental and Engineering Programs Director has adopted the findings and order, which *establishes* the limits and level of control.
- ***acquired limited access control*** Access rights have been purchased.

limited access highway All highways listed as "Established L/A" on the Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan (see below) and where the rights of direct access to or from abutting lands have been acquired from the abutting landowners.

- ***full access control*** This most restrictive level of limited access provides access, using interchanges, for selected public roads/streets only, and prohibits highway intersections at grade.
- ***partial access control*** The second most restrictive level of limited access. At-grade intersections with selected public roads are allowed, and there may be some crossings and some driveway approaches at grade. Direct commercial access is not allowed.
- ***modified access control*** The least restrictive level of limited access. Characteristics are the same as for partial access control except that direct commercial access is allowed.

managed access highway Any highway not listed as "Established L/A" on the Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan and any highway or portion of a highway designated on the plan as "Established L/A" until such time as the limited access rights are acquired. Under managed access legislation, the property owner's access rights are regulated through an access connection permitting process.

Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan A map of Washington State that shows established and planned limited access highways:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings

median The portion of a divided highway separating vehicular traffic traveling in opposite directions.

median opening An opening in a continuous median for the specific purpose of allowing vehicle movement.

MOU Memorandum of Understanding. There is one MOU (*Highways Over National Forest Lands)* between the United States Forest Service (USFS) and WSDOT that requires the USFS to obtain a road approach permit for new access to a state highway that is crossing Forest Service land.

permit holder The abutting property owner or other legally authorized person to whom an access connection permit is issued by the permitting authority.

permitted access connection A connection for which an access connection permit has been issued by a permitting authority.

permitting authority The agency that has legal authority to issue managed access connection permits. For access connections in unincorporated areas, the permitting authority is WSDOT; for access connections within corporate limits, the permitting authority is a city or town.

right of way (R/W) A general term denoting land or interest therein, acquired for or designated for transportation purposes. More specifically, lands that have been dedicated for public transportation purposes or land in which WSDOT, a county, or a municipality owns the fee simple title, has an easement devoted to or required for use as a public road/street and appurtenant facilities, or has established ownership by prescriptive right.

right of way and limited access plan (R/W and L/A plan) A right of way plan that also shows limited access control details.

road approach A road or driveway built to provide private access to or from the state highway system.

shoulder The portion of the highway contiguous with the traveled lanes for the accommodation of stopped vehicles for emergency use and, where allowed, for bicycles (see Chapter 530).

state highway system All roads, streets, and highways designated as state routes in compliance with RCW 47.17.

520.04 Vocabulary

The entries shown in Exhibit 520-1 are examples of suitable wording for the distinctly different types of access control in Chapters 530 and 540.

These entries demonstrate the difference in terminology between limited access and managed access in the applicable WACs. For instance, there is nothing about *permit*, *connection*, *category*, or *class* in the limited access vocabulary and, likewise, nothing about *approach* or *type* in the managed access vocabulary.

Also note that Chapter 1340 uses *road approach* in a generic way, unrelated to WAC legal terminology, and makes no distinction related to access control.

Access Control Vocabulary	
functional classification of highways	Chapter 1140
intersections at grade, geometrics	Chapter 1310
roundabout geometrics	Chapter 1320
road approach geometrics	Chapter 1340
interchange geometrics	Chapter 1360
freeway access point	Chapter 550
Limited Access Highway (Chapter 530)	**Managed Access Highway (Chapter 540)**
Access point (freeway ramp or other access break) Approach (street, road, driveway) • Road approach (street, road, driveway) • Driveway approach (not street or road)	Access point (public or not) • Public access point • Access connection (not public)
(Level of) limited access (highway) • Full/partial/modified control limited access highway	Managed access highway class • Class (1-5) managed access highway
Type (A, B, C, D, F) approach Type A approach = Type A road approach	Category (I-IV) access connection
Allowed (policy)	Permitted (a document) or allowed (policy)
	Conforming access connection permit (among others)
Terms Not Used in Chapter 530	**Terms Not Used in Chapter 540**
class	classification (except functional)
category	type
connection	approach
permit or permitted	

Access Control Vocabulary
Exhibit 520-1

530.01 General
530.02 Achieving Limited Access
530.03 Full Control (Most Restrictive)
530.04 Partial Control
530.05 Modified Control (Least Restrictive)
530.06 Access Approaches
530.07 Frontage Roads
530.08 Turnbacks
530.09 Adjacent Railroads
530.10 Modifications to Limited Access Highways
530.11 Documentation

530.01 General

Limited access control is established to preserve the safety and efficiency of specific highways and to preserve the public investment. Limited access control is achieved by acquiring access rights from abutting property owners and by selectively limiting approaches to a highway. (For an overview of access control and the references list and definitions of terminology for this chapter, see Chapter 520, Access Control.)

Requirements for the establishment of limited access highways are set forth in Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.52. The level of limited access control is determined during the early stages of design in conformance with this chapter.

Highways controlled by acquiring abutting property owners' access rights are termed limited access highways and are further distinguished as having *full, partial, or modified* control. The number of access points per mile, the spacing of interchanges or intersections, and the location of frontage roads or local road/street approaches are determined by the:

- Functional classification and importance of the highway.
- Character of the traffic.
- Current and future land use.
- Environment and aesthetics.
- Highway design and operation.
- Economic considerations involved.

The Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) has jurisdiction on the Interstate System. The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) has full jurisdiction on all other limited access highways, whether they are inside or outside incorporated city limits.

WSDOT maintains a record of the status of limited access control, by state route number and milepost, in the Access Control Tracking System Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan database. The database is available at:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings

Nothing in this chapter is to be construed in any way that would prevent acquisition of short sections of full, partial, or modified control of access.

530.02 Achieving Limited Access

(1) Project Scoping Evaluation

The acquisition of full, partial, or modified control is to be evaluated during project scoping if the route is shown in the Access Control Tracking System Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan database as either "established" or "planned" for limited access. The matrices in Chapter 1100 list several project types for which acquisition is indicated as a Design Element.

The cost of acquiring limited access must be evaluated during project scoping to determine whether those costs will be included in the project. The evaluation includes consideration of the societal costs of collisions, current and future land use development, and the improved level of service of limited access highways. This cost will be evaluated against the cost to realign the highway in the future if limited access is not acquired at current prices.

(2) Process

All Washington State highways are managed access highways (see Chapter 540), except where limited access rights have been acquired. The right of way and limited access plans for routes show the acquired limited access boundaries. This is further represented in the Access Control Tracking System, a database that identifies the status and type of access control for all state highways. The database lists the specific types of limited access control (full, partial, or modified) and identifies whether the control is planned, established, or acquired for a specific route segment. If limited access has not been acquired, the database reports the type of managed access classification that currently applies. For help determining the status of limited access control for any state highway, consult the Headquarters (HQ) Access and Hearings Section.

(a) **Procedure for Limited Access Control**

Use the following procedure to achieve limited access control:

1. The Secretary of Transportation (or a designee) first identifies a highway as "Planned for Limited Access."
2. To establish or revise limited access on a new or existing highway, a limited access hearing is held. (See Chapter 210, Public Involvement and Hearings, regarding hearings, and Chapter 510, Right of Way, for the phases of appraisal and acquisition.)

   a. **Phase 1**

   The region develops a limited access report and a limited access report plan for department approval and presentation to local officials. The plan notes the level of limited access proposed to be established.

   b. **Phase 2**

   The region develops a limited access hearing plan for State Design Engineer (or designee) approval and for presentation at the hearing.

c. **Phase 3**

After the hearing, the region develops the findings and order and revises the limited access hearing plan to become the findings and order plan (see Chapter 210). The findings and order is processed and sent to the Headquarters (HQ) Access and Hearings Section for review and approval.

3. The Environmental and Engineering Programs Director, adopts the findings and order and thus establishes the limits and level of limited access control to be acquired.
4. The findings and order plan is now revised by the HQ right of way plans Section for approval by the State Design Engineer (or designee) as a Phase 4 final right of way and limited access plan.
5. Real Estate Services acquires limited access rights from individual property owners based on final design decisions and updates the right of way and limited access plans and the property deed.
6. These highways or portions thereof are now limited access highways and no longer fall under the managed access program.

(3) Access Report

The Access Report is developed by the region to inform local governmental officials of the proposed limited access highway and the principal access features involved, and to secure their approval. This report is not furnished to abutting property owners. Three copies of the report are submitted to the HQ Access and Hearings Section for review and approval prior to submission to local authorities.

(a) **Access Report Content**

The Access Report consists of the following:

1. A description of the existing and proposed highways, including data on the history of the existing highway, which may include references to collisions and locations identified in WSDOT's Priority Array.
2. Traffic analyses pertaining to the proposed highway, including available information about current and potential future traffic volumes on county roads and city streets crossing or severed by the proposed highway and reference sources such as origin-destination surveys.

   Traffic data developed for the Design Decision Summary, together with counts of existing traffic available from state or local records, is normally adequate. Special counts of existing traffic are obtained only if circumstances indicate that the available data is inadequate or outdated.
3. A discussion of factors affecting the design of the subject highway, including:
   - Design level.
   - Level of limited access, with definition.
   - Roadway section.
   - Interchange, grade separation, and intersection spacing.
   - Pedestrian and bicycle trails or paths.

- Operational controls with emphasis on proposed fencing, the general concept of illumination, signing, and other traffic control devices.
- Location of utilities and how they are affected.
- Proposed plan for landscaping and beautification, including an artist's graphic rendition or design visualization.

4. Governmental responsibility, and comprehensive planning, land use, and community service relative to the new highway.
5. The disposition of frontage roads, city street and county road intersections, and excess right of way.
6. An appendix containing:
   - A glossary of engineering terms.
   - A traffic volume diagram(s).
   - Pages showing diagrammatically or graphically the roadway section(s), operational controls, and rest areas (if rest areas are included in the project covered by the report).
   - A vicinity map.
   - An access report plan and profiles for the project.

   The limited access report plan shows the effects of the proposed highway on the street and road system by delineating the points of public access. (See the *Plans Preparation Manual* for a list of the minimum details to be shown on the plan and for a sample plan.)
7. Notifications and Reviews. Upon receipt of the State Design Engineer's approval of Phase 1 (see Exhibit 510-1), the region publishes the necessary copies, submits the limited access report to the county or city officials for review and approval, and meets with all involved local governmental agencies to discuss the report. Providing a form letter with a signature block for the local agency to use to indicate their approval of the limited access report can help expedite the review and approval process.

   Including local agencies as stakeholders from the onset of the project helps establish project expectations and positive working relationships, making reviews and approvals run as smoothly as possible. The region reviews any requests for modification and submits recommendations, with copies of any correspondence or related minutes, to the HQ Access and Hearings Section.

(4) Limited Access Hearing Plan

The region prepares a limited access hearing plan to be used as an exhibit at the public hearing (see Chapter 210 for hearings) and forwards it to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section for review. (See the *Plans Preparation Manual* for a list of data to be shown on the access hearing plan in addition to the access report plan data.)

When the plan review is completed by Headquarters, the access hearing plan is placed before the State Design Engineer for approval of Phase 2 authority (see Exhibit 510-1).

(5) Documentation

Documentation for the establishment of limited access control is in Chapter 210.

530.03 Full Control (Most Restrictive)

(1) Introduction

Full control limited access highways provide almost complete freedom from disruption by allowing access only through interchanges at selected public roads/streets, rest areas, viewpoints, or weigh stations, and by prohibiting at-grade crossings and approaches. Gated approaches are occasionally allowed, with approval of the requirements listed in Chapter 550, Exhibits 550-1 and 2.

At times, on state highways (except Interstate) where full access control has been established, staged acquisition of limited access may be used, subject to the approval of an access deviation, with initial acquisition as partial or modified control and with ultimate acquisition of full control planned on the highway. When there is no feasible alternative within reasonable cost, the decision to defer acquisition of limited access control must be documented and is subject to the approval of an access deviation.

(2) Application

Terminate full control limited access sections at apparent logical points of design change. The following guidelines are to be used for the application of full control on limited access highways.

(a) **Interstate**

Full control is required on Interstate highways.

(b) **Principal Arterial**

Documentation assessing the evaluation of full control is required for principal arterial highways requiring four or more through traffic lanes within a 20-year design period unless approved for partial or modified control on existing highways.

(c) **Minor Arterial and Collector**

Minor arterial and collector highways will not normally be considered for development to full control.

(3) Crossroads at Interchange Ramps

The extension of limited access control beyond an intersection is measured from the centerline of ramps, crossroads, or parallel roads (as shown in Exhibits 530-1a, 1b, and 1c), from the terminus of transition tapers (see Exhibit 530-1d), and in the case of ramp terminals at single point urban interchanges (as shown in Exhibit 530-1e). For guidance on interchange spacing, see Chapter 1360.

(a) **Ramps**

At-grade intersections and approaches are prohibited within the full length of any interchange ramp. The ramp is considered to terminate at its intersection with the local road or street.

(b) **Frontage Roads**

Direct access from the highway to a local service or frontage road is allowed only via the interchange crossroad (see Exhibits 530-1a, 1b, and 1c).

(c) **Interchange Crossroads**

In both urban and rural areas, full control limited access must be established and then acquired along the crossroad at an interchange for a minimum distance of 300 feet beyond the centerline of the ramp or the end of the transition taper.

If a frontage road or local road is located at or within 350 feet of a ramp, limited access will be established and then acquired along the crossroad and for an additional minimum distance of 130 feet in all directions from the centerline of the intersection of the crossroad and the frontage or local road (see Exhibits 530-1a, 1b, and 1c).

For interchanges incorporating partial cloverleaf or buttonhook ramps (see Exhibit 530-1b), limited access is required for all portions of the crossroad and frontage roads between the ramp terminals and for a distance of 300 feet beyond the ramp terminals. If an at-grade intersection for a local road or street is served directly opposite the ramp terminals, limited access will be extended for a minimum of 300 feet along that leg of the intersection.

When the intersection in question is a roundabout, see Exhibit 530-1c. This shows extension of full control to be 300 feet, measured from the center of the roundabout for an intersection with a ramp terminal. Exhibit 530-1c also shows that if a frontage road or local road is located at or within 350 feet of a ramp terminal, limited access will be established and then acquired along the crossroad (between the roundabouts) and for an additional minimum distance of 130 feet in all directions along the local frontage roadway, measured from the outside edge of the circulating roadway of the roundabout.

Exhibit 530-1d shows the terminus of transition taper and that full control limited access is extended a minimum distance of 300 feet beyond the end of the farthest taper.

For a single point urban interchange (SPUI) with a right- or left-turn “ramp branch” separated by islands, limited access control is established and acquired for a minimum distance of 300 feet from the intersection of the centerline of the ramp branch with the centerline of the nearest directional roadway (see Exhibit 530-1e.)

(d) **Levels of Limited Access: Location of Approaches**

Provide full control for 300 feet from the centerline of the ramp or terminus of a transition taper (see Exhibits 530-1a, 1b, 1c, 1d, and 1e).

If the economic considerations to implement full control for the entire 300 feet are excessive, then provide full control for at least the first 130 feet; partial or modified control may be provided for the remainder, for a total minimum distance of 300 feet of limited access. Contact the HQ Access and Hearings Section when considering this option.

An approved access deviation is required if the limited access control falls short of 300 feet or for any approach that has been allowed to remain within the first 130 feet.

Ensure approaches are far enough away from a frontage road intersection to provide efficient intersection operation.

(4) Location of Utilities, Bus Stops, and Mailboxes

(a) **Utilities**

Connecting utility lines are allowed along the outer right of way line between intermittent frontage roads. (See the *Utilities Accommodation Policy* regarding the location of and access to utilities.)

(b) **Bus Stops**

Common carrier or school bus stops are not allowed, except at:

- Railroad crossings (see Chapter 1350).
- Locations provided by the state on the interchanges (such as flyer stops).
- In exceptional cases, along the main roadway where pedestrian separation is available.

(c) **Mailboxes**

Mailboxes are not allowed on full control limited access highways. Mail delivery will be from frontage roads or other adjacent local roads.

(5) Pedestrian and Bicycle Crossings and Paths

All nonmotorized traffic is limited as follows:

- At-grade pedestrian crossings are allowed only at the at-grade intersections of ramp terminals.
- Pedestrian separations or other facilities provided specifically for pedestrian use.
- Bicyclists using facilities provided specifically for bicycle use (separated paths).
- Shared-use paths for bicyclists, pedestrians, and other forms of nonmotorized transportation.
- Bicyclists using the right-hand shoulders, except where such use has been specifically prohibited. Information pertaining to such prohibition is available from the Traffic Office of the HQ Maintenance and Operations Division.

Pedestrians and bicycles are allowed, consistent with "Rules of the Road" (RCW 46.61), within the limits of full control limited access highways. Where paths are allowed they must be documented on the right of way and limited access plan. The plan shows the location of the path and where the path crosses limited access and provides movement notes (see 530.10(1)).

530.04 Partial Control

(1) Introduction

Partial control may be established, when justified, on any highway except Interstate. Partial control provides a considerable level of protection from traffic interference and protects the highway from future strip-type development.

Upon acquisition of partial control limited access rights, the number, type, and use of access approaches of abutting property are frozen. The abutting property access rights and type of use are recorded on the property deed. The rights and use may not be altered by the abutting property owner, the local jurisdiction, or the region. This authority resides with the State Design Engineer (see 530.10).

(2) Application

Partial control will not normally be used in urban areas or inside corporate limits on existing principal arterial highways where traffic volumes are less than 700 design hourly volume (DHV).

Terminate limited access sections at apparent logical points of design change.

(a) **Principal Arterial**

Partial control is required when the estimated traffic volumes exceed 3000 average daily traffic (ADT) within a 20-year design period on principal arterial highways requiring two through traffic lanes. For multilane principal arterial highways, see 530.03(2)(b).

(b) **Minor Arterial**

The minimum route length is: urban, 2 miles; rural, 5 miles; and combination urban and rural, 3 miles.

Partial control is required on:

- Rural minor arterial highways at both new and existing locations.
- Urban minor arterial highways at new locations requiring four or more through traffic lanes within a 20-year design period or requiring only two through traffic lanes where the estimated traffic volumes exceed 3000 ADT within a 20-year design period.

Other rural minor arterial highways with only two lanes may be considered for partial control if any of the following conditions applies:

- The partial control can be acquired at a reasonable cost.
- The route connects two highways of a higher functional classification.
- The potential land development can result in numerous individual approaches, such as encountered in recreational or rapidly developing areas.
- The highway traverses publicly owned lands where partial control is desirable.

(c) **Collector: New Alignment**

Partial control is required on collector highways in new locations requiring four or more through traffic lanes in a 20-year design period.

(d) **Collector: Existing**

Existing collector highways will normally be considered for partial control limited access only when all of the following conditions apply:

- The highway serves an area that is not directly served by a higher functional classification of highway.
- Existing or planned development will result in traffic volumes significantly higher than what is required for partial control on minor arterials.
- Partial control can be established without a major impact on development of abutting properties within the constraints of established zoning at the time the partial control is proposed.

(3) Interchanges and Intersections

(a) **Interchanges**

Where an interchange occurs on a partial control limited access highway, full control applies at the interchange and interchange ramps. Refer to 530.03(3) and see Exhibits 530-1a, 1b, and 1c for required minimum lengths of access control along the crossroad. (See Chapter 1360 for guidance on interchange spacing.)

(b) **Intersections**

At an at-grade intersection on a partial control limited access highway, control will be established and acquired along the crossroad for a minimum distance of 300 feet from the centerline of the highway (see Exhibit 530-2a).

If another frontage or local road is located at or within 350 feet of the at-grade intersection, limited access will be established and then acquired along the crossroad, between the intersections, and:

- For an additional minimum distance of 130 feet in all directions from the centerline of the intersection of the frontage or local road (see Exhibit 530-2a).
- In the case of a roundabout, for an additional minimum distance of 300 feet along the crossroad, measured from the center of the roundabout (as shown in Exhibit 530-2b).

On multilane highways, measurements will be made from the centerline of the nearest directional roadway.

An approved access deviation is required if the limited access control falls short of 300 feet or for any access that has been allowed to remain within the first 130 feet.

At-grade intersections with public roads are limited to the number allowed for the functional classification of highway involved, as follows:

1. **Principal Arterial**

   If the ADT of the crossroad is less than 2000, 1-mile spacing (minimum), centerline to centerline. If over 2000 ADT within 20 years, plan for grade separation.

2. **Minor Arterial**

   If the ADT of the crossroad is less than 2000, ½-mile spacing (minimum), centerline to centerline. If over 2000 ADT within 20 years, plan for grade separation.

3. **Collector**

   Road (or street) plus property approaches, not more than six per side per mile.

With approval from the State Design Engineer, shorter intervals may be used where topography or other conditions restrict the design. Where intersecting roads are spaced farther apart than one per mile, median crossings may be considered for U-turns, in accordance with Chapter 1310. Keep U-turns to a minimum, consistent with requirements for operation and maintenance of the highway.

To discourage movement in the wrong direction on multilane highways, locate private approaches 300 feet or more from an at-grade intersection. At a tee intersection, a private approach may be located directly opposite the intersection or a minimum of 300 feet away from the intersection. Ensure a private approach directly opposite a tee intersection cannot be mistaken for a continuation or part of the public traveled way.

(4) Access Approach

Partial control is exercised to the level that, in addition to intersections with selected public roads, some crossings and private driveways may be allowed.

(a) Approach Types

Partial control limited access highways allow at-grade intersections with selected public roads and private approaches using Type A, B, C, and F approaches. (See Chapter 520 for the definitions of approach types.)

Type D, commercial approaches, are not allowed direct access to partial control limited access highways. Commercial access is allowed only by way of public roads.

The type of approach provided for each parcel takes into consideration current and potential land use and is based on an economic evaluation. (See 530.05(4) for a list of considerations.)

(b) Design Considerations

The following considerations are used to determine the number and location of access approaches on partial control limited access highways.

1. Access approaches must be held to a minimum. The number is limited as follows:
   - Principal arterial: two per side per mile
   - Minor arterial: four per side per mile
   - Collector: six per side per mile, including at-grade intersections
2. Approaches in excess of the number listed above may be allowed as stage construction if approved by the State Design Engineer.
3. Approaches are not allowed for parcels that have reasonable access to other public roads unless a parcel has extensive highway frontage.
4. Relocate or close approaches in areas where sight limitations create undue hazards.
5. Allow only one approach for each parcel, except for very large ownerships, or where terrain features do not allow the property to be served by a single approach. This includes contiguous parcels under a single ownership.
6. Where possible, locate a single approach to serve two or more parcels.
7. The approved design is to provide for future development of frontage roads that will eliminate an excessive number of approaches.

(5) Location of Utilities, Bus Stops, and Mailboxes

(a) Utilities

Connecting utility lines are allowed along the outer right of way line between intermittent frontage roads. (See the *Utilities Accommodation Policy* regarding the location of and access to utilities.)

(b) Bus Stops

Bus stops for both common carriers and school buses are not allowed on either two-lane or four-lane highways except:

- At railroad crossings (see Chapter 1350).
- At locations of intersections with necessary pullouts to be constructed by the state.
- Where shoulder widening has been provided for mail delivery service.
- For a designated school bus loading zone on or adjacent to the traveled lane, that has been approved by WSDOT.

Buses are not allowed to stop in the traveled lanes blocking at-grade intersections or private approaches to load or unload passengers.

School bus loading zones on partial control limited access highways must be posted with school bus loading zone signs, in accordance with the latest edition of the *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices* (MUTCD).

(c) Mailboxes

Locate mailboxes on frontage roads or at intersections, with the following exceptions for properties that are served by Type A or B approaches:

- Locate mailboxes on a four-lane highway only on the side of the highway on which the deeded approach is provided.
- Locate mailboxes on a two-lane highway on the side of the highway that is on the right in the direction of the mail delivery.

Wherever mailboxes are allowed on a partial control limited access highway, provide mailbox turnouts to allow mail delivery vehicles to stop clear of the through traffic lanes. (See Chapter 1600 for additional information concerning mailbox locations and turnouts.)

(6) Pedestrian and Bicycle Crossings and Paths

Pedestrian crossings are allowed when they are grade-separated.

At-grade pedestrian crossings are allowed:

- Only at intersections where an at-grade crossing is provided in accordance with Chapter 1510.
- On two-lane highways at mailbox locations.
- On two-lane highways not less than 100 feet from a school bus loading zone (pullout) adjacent to the traveled lane, if school district and WSDOT personnel determine that stopping in the traveled lane is hazardous.
- On two-lane highways where the school bus is stopped on the traveled lane to load or unload passengers and the required sign and signal lights are displayed.

On partial control limited access highways, pedestrian and bicycle traffic is allowed, consistent with "Rules of the Road" (RCW 46.61), except where unusual safety conditions support prohibition. Information pertaining to such prohibitions is available from the Traffic Office of the HQ Maintenance and Operations Division.

Where paths are allowed, they must be documented on the right of way and limited access plan. The plan shows the location of the path and where the path crosses limited access, and it provides movement notes (see 530.10(1)).

530.05 Modified Control (Least Restrictive)

(1) Introduction

Modified control is intended to prevent further deterioration in the safety and operational characteristics of existing highways by limiting the number and location of access points.

Upon acquisition of modified control limited access, the number, type, and use of access approaches of abutting property are frozen. The abutting property access rights and type of use are recorded on the property deed. The rights and use may not be altered by the abutting property owner, the local jurisdiction, or the region. This authority resides with the State Design Engineer (see 530.10).

(2) Application

In general, modified control is applied where some level of control is desired, but existing and potential commercial development precludes the implementation of full or partial control.

(a) **Existing Highways**

Modified control may be established and acquired on existing highways other than Interstate. Priority is given to highway segments where one or both of the following conditions applies:

- Commercial development potential is high, but most of the adjoining property remains undeveloped.
- There is a reasonable expectation that the adjoining property will be redeveloped to a more intensive land use, resulting in greater traffic congestion.

(b) **Design Analysis**

Selection of highways on which modified control may be applied is based on a design analysis that includes the following factors:

- Traffic volumes
- Level of service
- Safety
- Design class
- Route continuity
- Population density

- Local land use planning
- Current and potential land use
- Predicted growth rate
- Economic analysis

(c) **Exceptions**

Where modified control is to be established, developed commercial areas may be excepted from control when all or most of the abutting property has been developed to the extent that few, if any, additional commercial approaches will be needed with full development of the area. Contact the HQ Access and Hearings Section when considering this option. If this exception is within the limits of access control requirements, an approved access deviation is required.

(3) Intersections

At an intersection on a modified control limited access highway, access control will be established and acquired along the crossroad for a minimum distance of 130 feet:

- Measured from the centerline of a two-lane highway (see Exhibit 530-3b).
- Measured from the centerline of the nearest directional roadway of a four-lane highway (see Exhibit 530-3b).
- Measured from the outside edge of the circulating roadway of a roundabout (see Exhibit 530-3a).

Approaches are allowed within this area only when there is no reasonable alternative. An approved access deviation is required for any access that has been allowed to remain within the first 130 feet.

(4) Access Approach

The number and location of approaches on a highway with modified control must be carefully planned to provide a safe and efficient highway compatible with present and potential land use.

(a) **Approach Types**

Modified control limited access highways allow at-grade intersections with selected public roads and with private approaches using Type A, B, C, D, and F approaches. (See Chapter 520 for definitions of the approach types.)

The type of approach provided for each parcel takes into consideration present and potential land use and is based on an economic evaluation that considers:

- Local comprehensive plans, zoning, and land use ordinances.
- Property covenants and agreements.
- City or county ordinances.
- The highest and best use of the property.
- The highest and best use of adjoining lands.
- A change in use by merger of adjoining ownerships.
- All other factors bearing upon proper land use of the parcel.

(b) **Design Considerations**

The following considerations are used to determine the number and location of approaches:

1. Parcels that have access to another public road or street are not normally allowed direct access to the highway.
2. Relocate or close approaches located in areas where sight limitations create undue hazards.
3. Hold the number of access approaches to a minimum. Access approaches are limited to one approach for each parcel of land or where adjoining parcels are under one contiguous ownership.
4. Encourage joint use of access approaches where similar use of land allows.
5. Additional approaches may be allowed for future development consistent with local zoning. Once limited access has been acquired, this will require a value determination process (see 530.10).

Close existing access approaches not meeting the considerations above.

(5) Location of Utilities, Bus Stops, and Mailboxes

(a) **Utilities**

Connecting utility lines are allowed along the outer right of way line between intermittent frontage roads. (See the *Utilities Accommodation Policy* regarding location of and access to utilities.)

(b) **Bus Stops**

Bus stops and pedestrian crossings are allowed as follows:

- In rural areas, bus stops and pedestrian crossings are subject to the same restrictions as in 530.04(5) and (6).
- In urban areas, bus stops for both commercial carriers and school buses are allowed. (See Chapter 1430 for requirements.)

(c) **Mailboxes**

Locate mailboxes adjacent to or opposite all authorized approaches as follows:

- On a four-lane highway only on the side of the highway on which the deeded approach is provided.
- On a two-lane highway on the side of the highway that is on the right in the direction of the mail delivery.

Where mailboxes are allowed, a mailbox turnout is recommended to allow mail delivery vehicles to stop clear of the through traffic lanes. (See Chapter 1600 for additional information concerning mailbox locations and turnouts.)

(6) Pedestrian and Bicycle Traffic and Paths

Pedestrians and bicyclists are allowed, consistent with "Rules of the Road" (RCW 46.61), on modified control limited access highways except where unusual safety considerations support prohibition. Information pertaining to such prohibitions is available from the Traffic Office of the HQ Maintenance and Operations Division.

Where paths are allowed, they must be documented in the right of way and limited access plan. The plan shows the location of the path and where the path crosses limited access, and it provides movement notes (see 530.10(1)).

530.06 Access Approaches

(1) General

Access approaches may be allowed on limited access highways, consistent with the requirements outlined in 530.03, 530.04, and 530.05.

For additional information pertaining to approaches, refer to Chapters 1320 (roundabouts), 1340 (approach design templates), and 510 (right of way), and the *Plans Preparation Manual*.

(2) Definitions

The widths for the approach types are negotiated, and only the negotiated widths are shown on the right of way and limited access plan. (See Chapter 520 for definitions of the approach types.)

530.07 Frontage Roads

Local agency approval is required for any planned frontage roads, county roads, city streets, or cul-de-sacs. The local agency must also agree in writing to accept and maintain the new section as a county road or city street.

(1) General

Frontage roads are provided in conjunction with limited access highways to:

- Limit access to the main line.
- Provide access to abutting land ownerships.
- Restore the continuity of the local street or roadway system.

Refer to Chapter 1210 for frontage road general policy and Chapter 300 for required documentation.

By agreement under which the state is reimbursed for all costs involved, frontage roads that are not the responsibility of the state may be built by the state upon the request of a local political subdivision, a private agency, or an individual.

(2) County Road and City Street

To connect roads or streets that have been closed off by the highway, short sections of county roads or city streets that are not adjacent to the highway may be constructed if they will serve the same purpose as, and cost less than, a frontage road.

(3) Cul-de-sacs

For a frontage road or local street bearing substantial traffic that is terminated or closed at one end, provide a cul-de-sac (or other street or roadway consistent with local policy or practice) that is sufficient to allow vehicles to turn around without encroachment on private property.

530.08 Turnbacks

When WSDOT transfers jurisdiction of operating right of way to a city, town, or county, a turnback agreement is required. (See the *Agreements Manual* for turnback procedures.)

Locate the turnback limits at points of logical termination. This will allow WSDOT to retain an adequate amount of right of way for maintenance of the highway and for other operational functions.

In areas where limited access rights have been acquired from the abutting property owners, the limited access rights will continue to be required for highway purposes; therefore, the limited access rights will not be included as part of a turnback agreement.

When a signalized intersection is in the area of a turnback, locate the turnback limit outside the detector loops if WSDOT is continuing the ownership, operation, and maintenance of the signal system. For a roundabout, locate the turnback limit at the back of the raised approach splitter island if WSDOT is continuing the ownership, operation, and maintenance of the roundabout.

530.09 Adjacent Railroads

(1) General

A limited access highway and a railroad are considered adjacent when they have a common right of way border with no other property separating them. The allowed approaches only apply to adjacent railroad property that is directly used for current railroad operation.

(2) Requirements

It is in the public's interest to provide access to the railroad right of way, from limited access highways, for maintenance of the railroad and the utilities located on the railroad right of way where other access is not feasible. This applies to both new highways and to existing highways where limited access has been acquired.

Direct access is allowed where local roads are infrequent or there are few highway-railroad crossings from which trail-type access for maintenance purposes is feasible, and where unique topography or other unusual conditions justify its use.

Direct access from the highway is considered unnecessary and is not allowed where:

- There are local roads adjacent to or crossing the railroad.
- A trail-type road can be provided by the railroad between crossroads.
- The limited access highway is paralleled by a frontage road adjacent to the railroad.
- No highway previously existed adjacent to the railroad.

(3) Restrictions

To justify direct approaches for access to railroad right of way, all of the following conditions must be met:

- A maximum of one approach is allowed for every 2 miles of highway.
- The approach must not adversely affect the design, construction, stability, traffic safety, or operation of the highway.
- Except where the railroad is located in the median area, the approach is to be accomplished in a legal manner by right turns only, to and from the roadway nearest the railroad. Median crossing is not allowed.
- The approach is secured by a locked gate under arrangements satisfactory to the department. (See the Definitions section in Chapter 520 for Approach Type C, and Chapter 550.)
- The parking of any vehicles or railroad equipment is prohibited within limited access highway right of way.
- A special emergency maintenance permit must be obtained for periods of intensive railroad maintenance.
- The approach must be closed if the railroad operation ceases.
- Approaches are limited to use by the railroad company unless specific provisions for other use are shown on the right of way and limited access plan and included in the right of way negotiations.

530.10 Modifications to Limited Access Highways

(1) General

Modifications to limited access highways can only be made by the application of current design requirements and with the approval of the Environmental and Engineering Programs Director (or designee) and FHWA (when appropriate).

Any change is a modification to limited access; for example, constructing new fence openings, closing existing fence openings, adding trails that cross into and out of the right of way, and widening existing approaches. The right of way and limited access plan must be revised and, if private approaches are involved, deeds must be redone.

Any changes proposed on Interstate limited access facilities must include environmental documentation in the request. Contact the HQ Access and Hearings Section for assistance.

Consider the following factors when evaluating a request for modification of a limited access highway:

- Existing level of control on the highway
- Functional classification and importance of the highway
- Percentage of truck traffic
- Highway operations
- Present or future land use
- Environment or aesthetics
- Economic considerations
- Safety considerations

Evaluate all revisions to limited access highways to determine if access hearings are required.

For requirements to be met for selected modifications to full control limited access highways such as the Interstate System and multilane state highways, see Chapter 550, Interchange Justification Report.

(2) Modifications for Private Access Approaches

(a) Requirements

Examples of access modifications requested by abutting property owners include additional road approaches, changes in the allowed use, or additional users of existing road approaches.

Plan revisions that provide for additional access to abutting properties after WSDOT has purchased the access rights are discouraged. However, these revisions may be considered if all of the following can be established:

- There are no other reasonable alternatives.
- The efficiency and safety of the highway will not be adversely impacted.
- The existing situation causes extreme hardship on the owner(s).
- The revision is consistent with the limited access highway requirements.

(b) Procedures

The region initiates a preliminary engineering review of the requested modification to or break in limited access. This preliminary review will be conducted with the HQ Access and Hearings Section to determine whether conceptual approval can be granted for the request. If conceptual approval can be granted, then:

- The region initiates an engineering review of the requested modification.
- The region prepares and submits to the HQ Right of Way Plans Section a preliminary right of way and limited access plan revision, together with a recommendation for approval by the Environmental and Engineering Programs Director. When federal-aid funds are involved in any phase of the project, the proposed modification will be sent to FHWA for its review and approval.
- The recommendation will include an item-by-item analysis of the factors listed in 530.10(1) and 530.10(2)(a).

(c) Valuation Determination

Upon preliminary approval, region Real Estate Services prepares an appraisal for the value of the access change using a before and after appraisal.

- The appraisal follows the requirements set forth in the *Right of Way Manual*.
- The appraisal is reviewed by HQ Real Estate Services. If the appraisal data does not support a value of $1,500 or more, a minimum value of $1,500 is used.
- The appraisal package is sent to HQ Real Estate Services for review and approval.
- If federal-aid funds were involved in purchasing access control, HQ Real Estate Services will send a copy of the appraisal package to FHWA for its review and approval.

(d) **Final Processing**

- Region Real Estate Services informs the requester of the approved appraised value for the change.
- If the requester is still interested, the region prepares a "Surplus Disposal Package" for HQ Real Estate Services' review and approval.
- At the same time, the preliminary right of way and limited access plan revision previously transmitted is processed for approval.
- After the department collects the payment from the requester, the region issues a permit for the construction, if required.
- If an existing approach is being surrendered, region Real Estate Services obtains a conveyance from the property owner.
- HQ Real Estate Services prepares and processes a deed granting the change to the access rights.

(3) Modifications for Public At-Grade Intersections

(a) **Requirements**

- Public at-grade intersections on partial control limited access highways serve local arterials that form part of the local transportation network.
- Requests for new intersections on limited access highways must be made by or through the local governmental agency to WSDOT. The region will forward this request, including the data referenced in 530.10(1) and 530.10(2)(a) to the HQ Access and Hearings Section.
- New intersections require full application of current limited access acquisition and conveyance to WSDOT. The access acquisition and conveyance must be completed prior to beginning construction of the new intersection. The new intersection is to meet WSDOT design and spacing requirements.

(b) **Procedures**

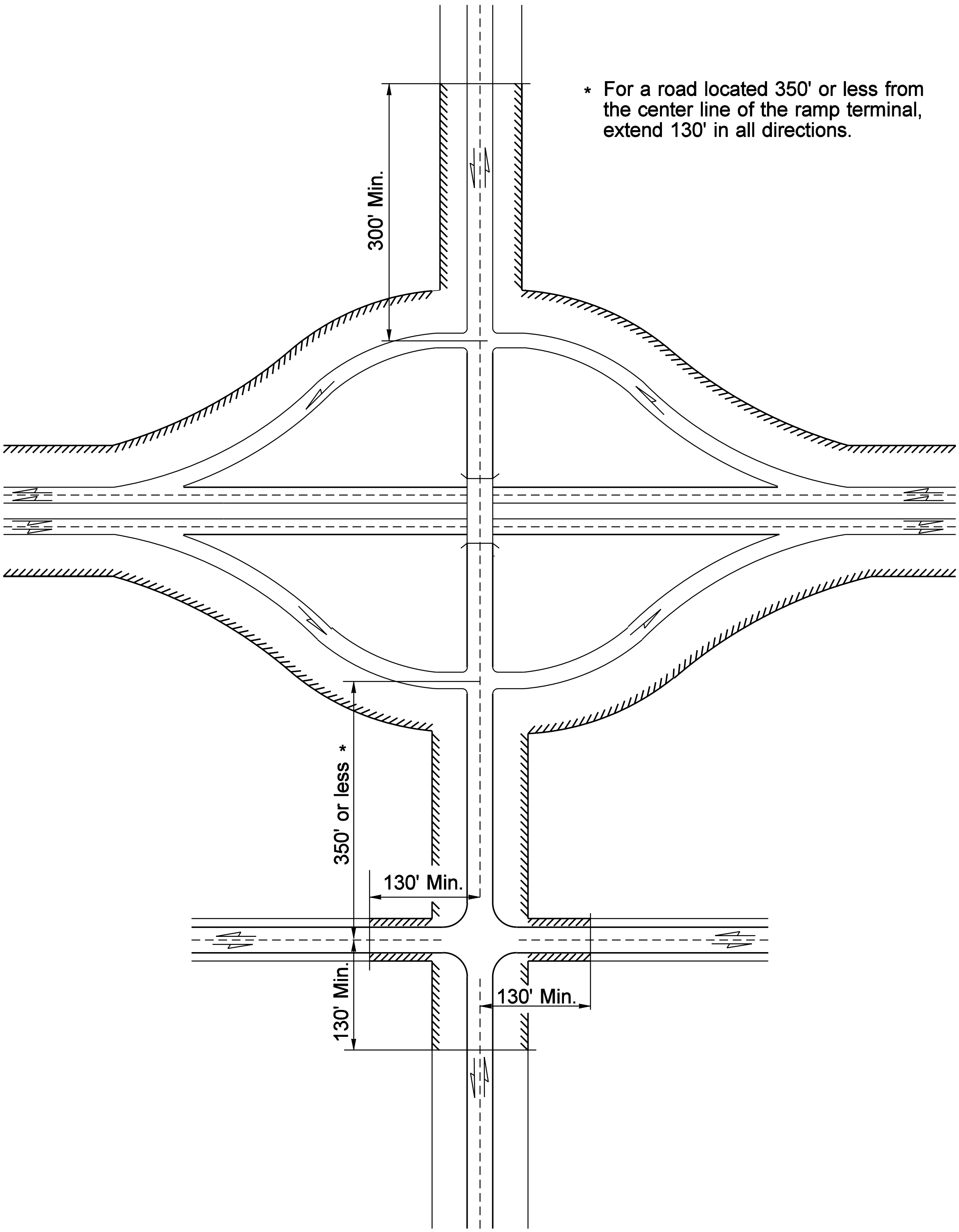
- The region evaluates the request for modification and contacts the HQ Access and Hearings Section for conceptual approval.
- The region submits an intersection plan for approval (see Chapter 1310) and a right of way and limited access plan revision request (see the *Plans Preparation Manual*). This plan includes the limited access design requirements along the proposed public at-grade intersection.
- The State Design Engineer approves the intersection plan.
- The Environmental and Engineering Programs Director (or designee) approves the access revision.
- The region submits the construction agreement to the State Design Engineer (see the *Agreements Manual*).
- The Environmental and Engineering Programs Director (or designee) approves the construction agreement.

(c) **Valuation Determination**

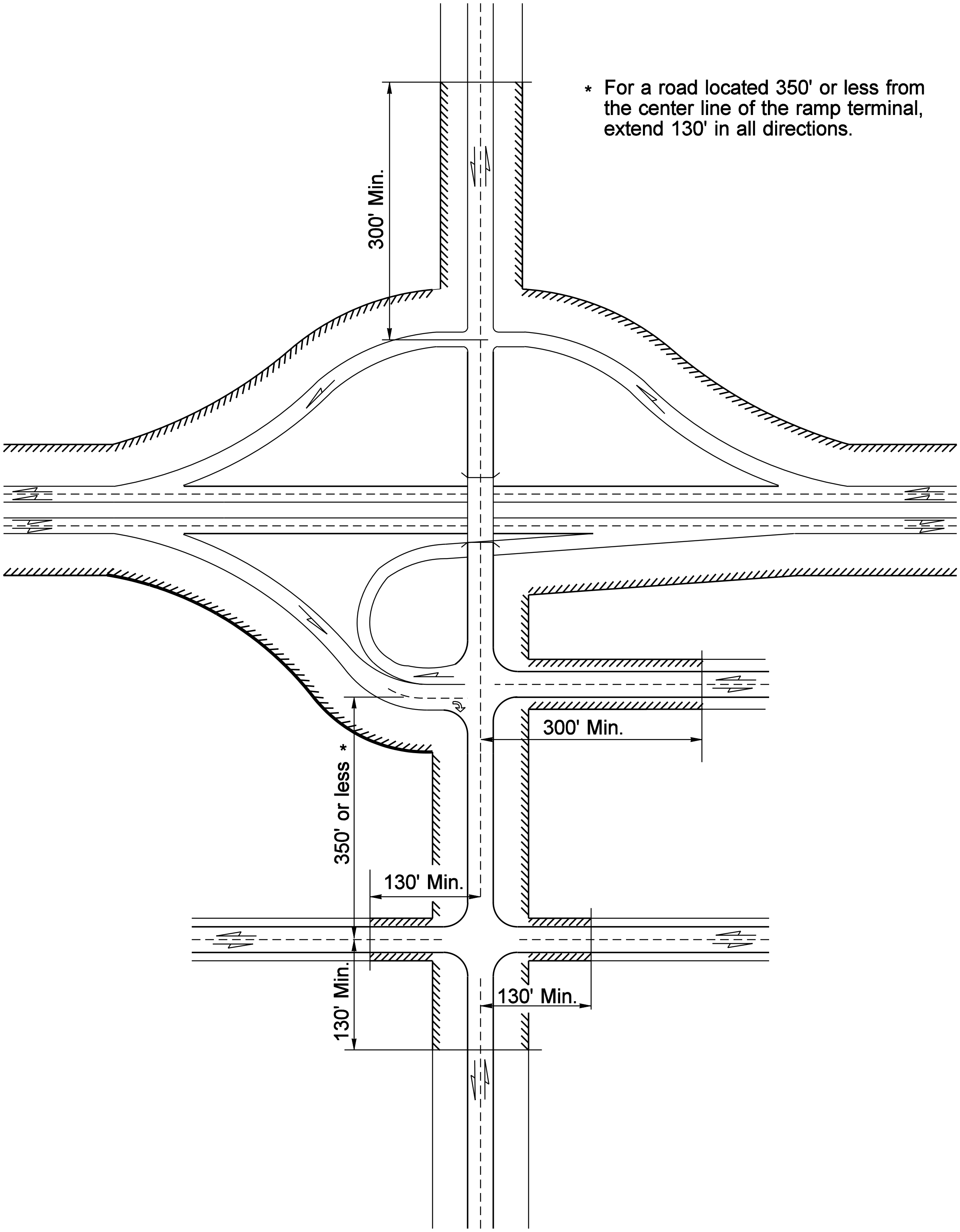
- When a requested public at-grade intersection will serve a local arterial that immediately connects to the local transportation network, compensation will not be required.
- When a requested public at-grade intersection will serve only a limited area, does not immediately connect to the local transportation network, or is primarily for the benefit of a limited number of developers, compensation for the access change will be addressed in the plan revision request. In these situations, compensation is appropriate and a value will be determined as outlined in 530.10(2)(c).

530.11 Documentation

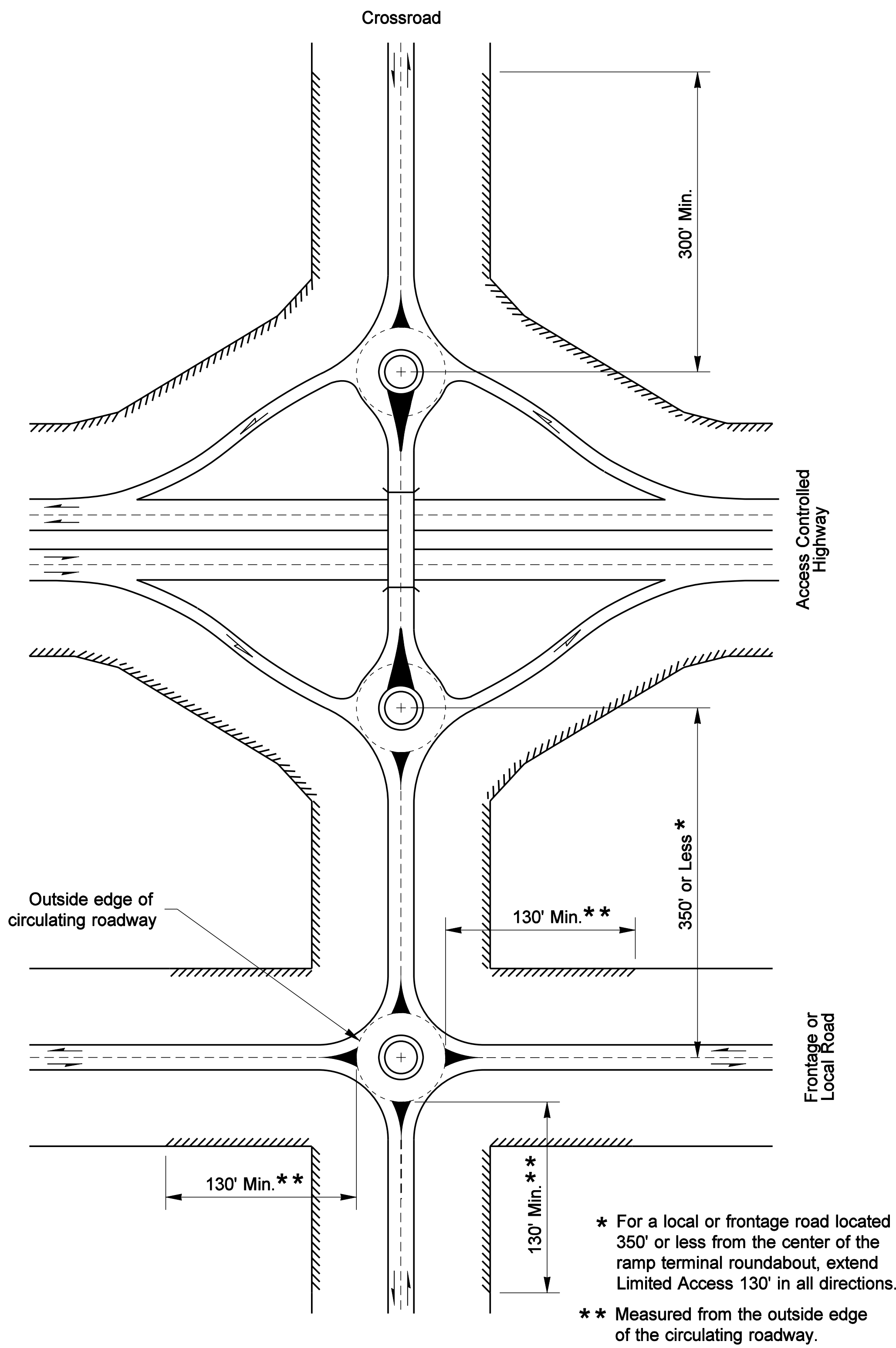
For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



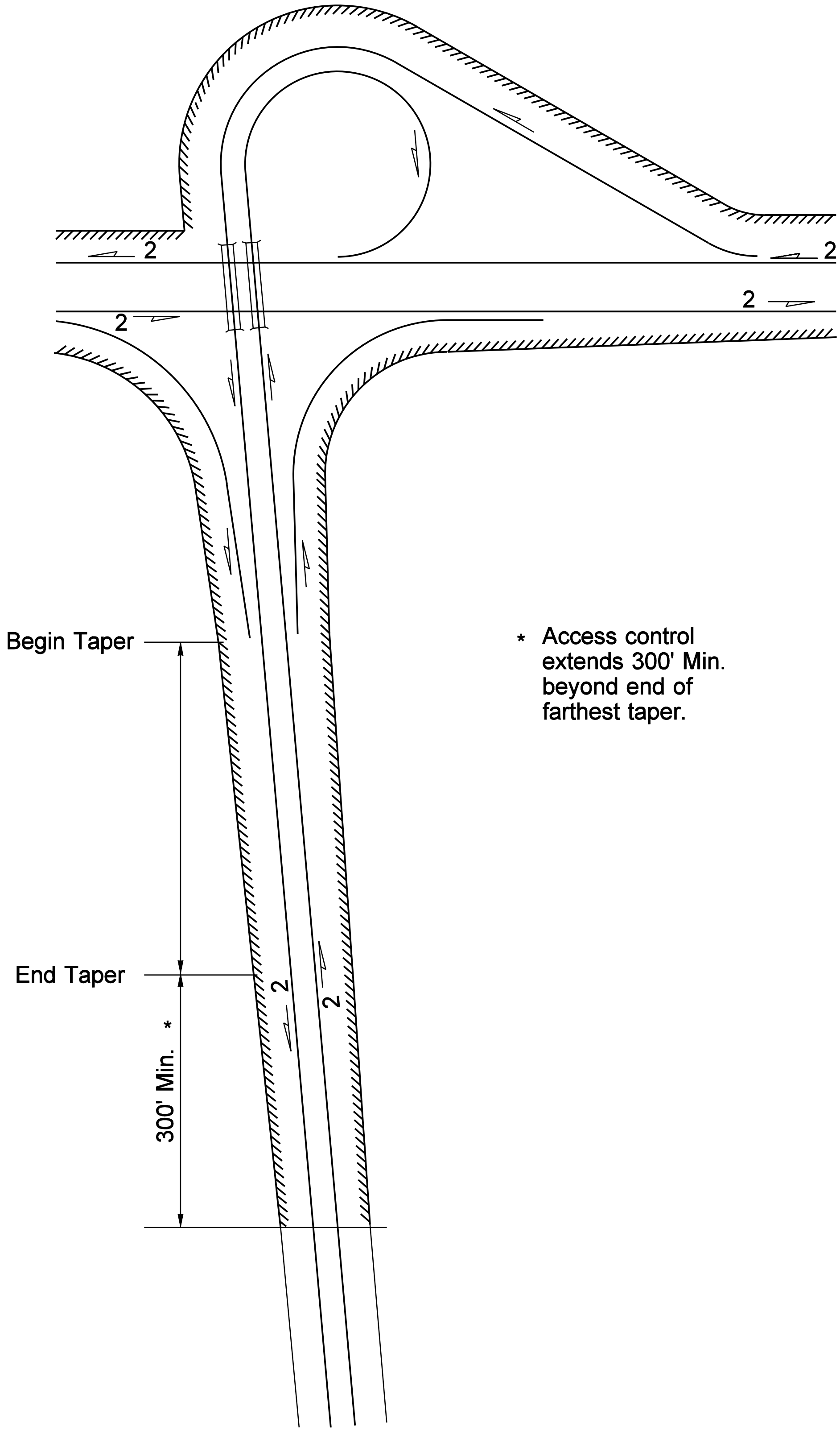
Full Access Control Limits: Interchange
Exhibit 530-1a



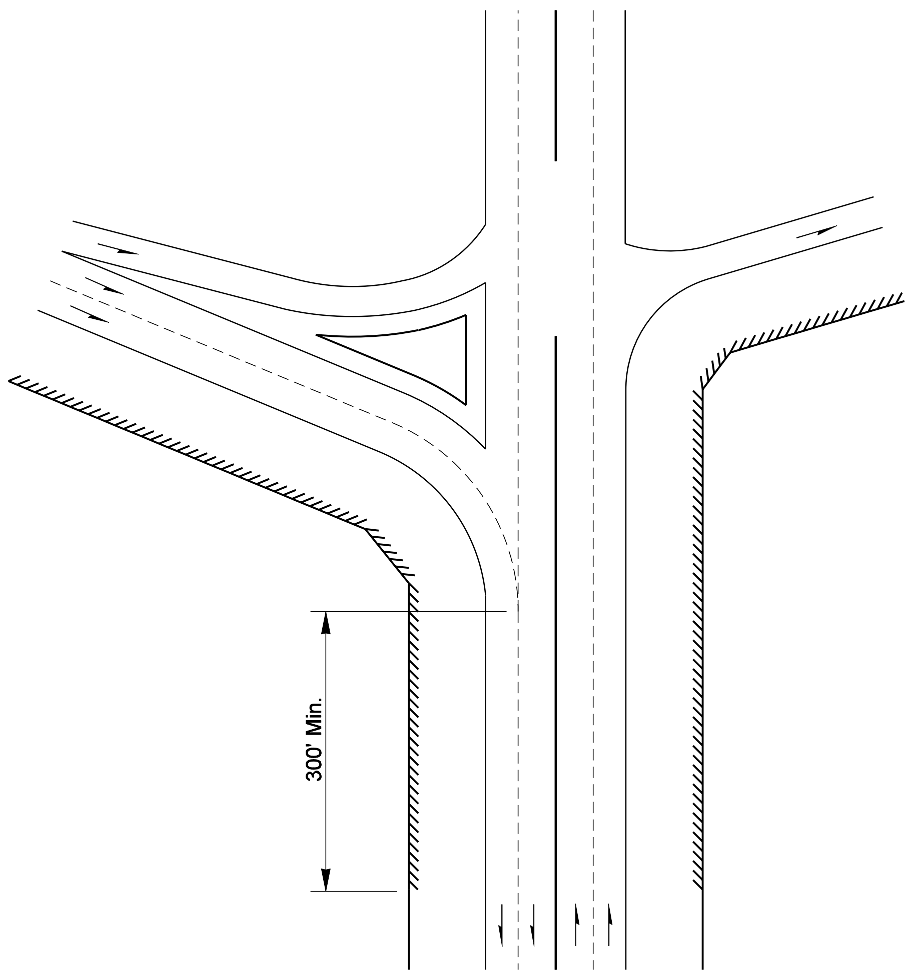
Full Access Control Limits: Interchange
Exhibit 530-1b



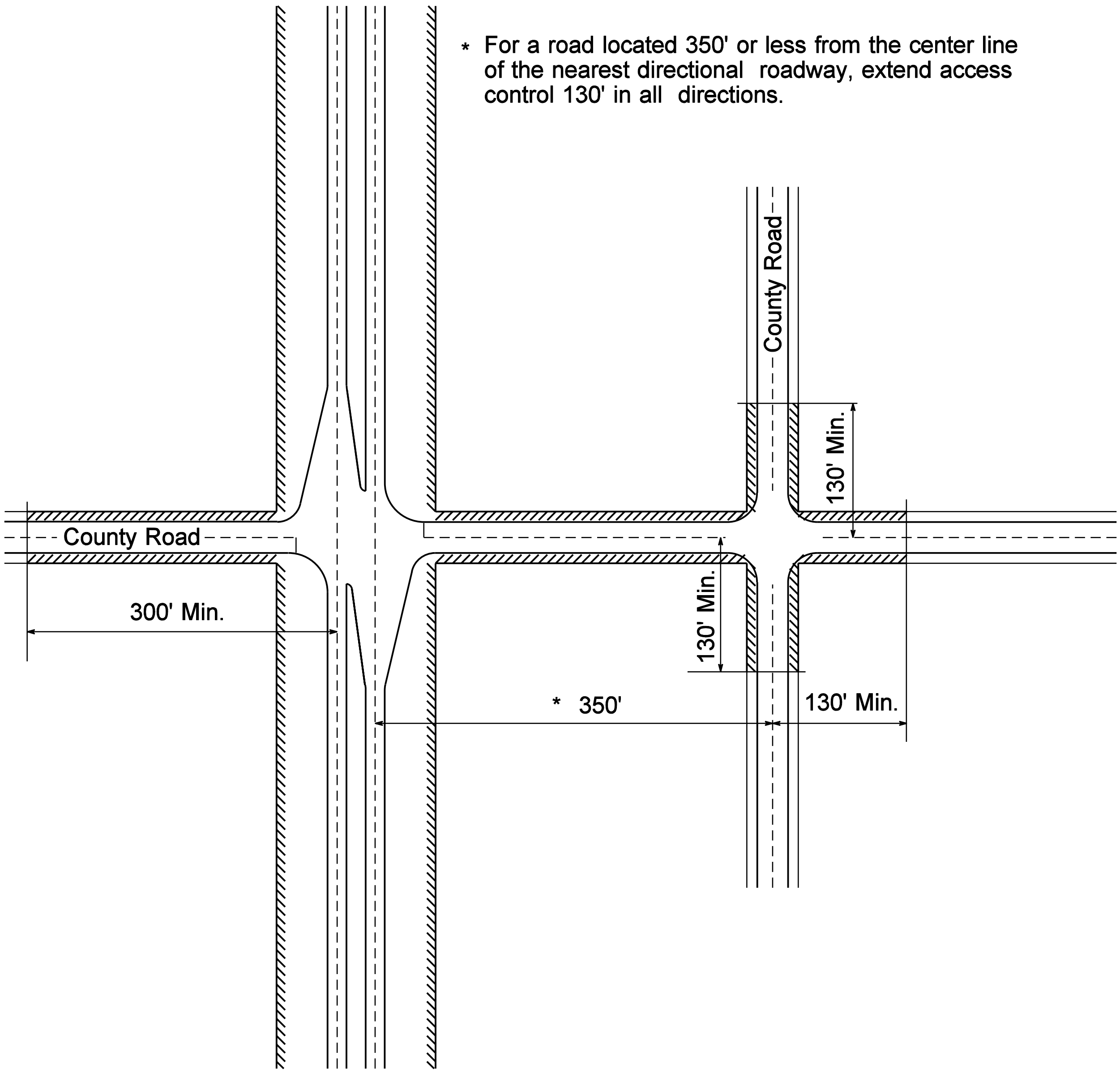
Full Access Control Limits: Interchange With Roundabouts
Exhibit 530-1c



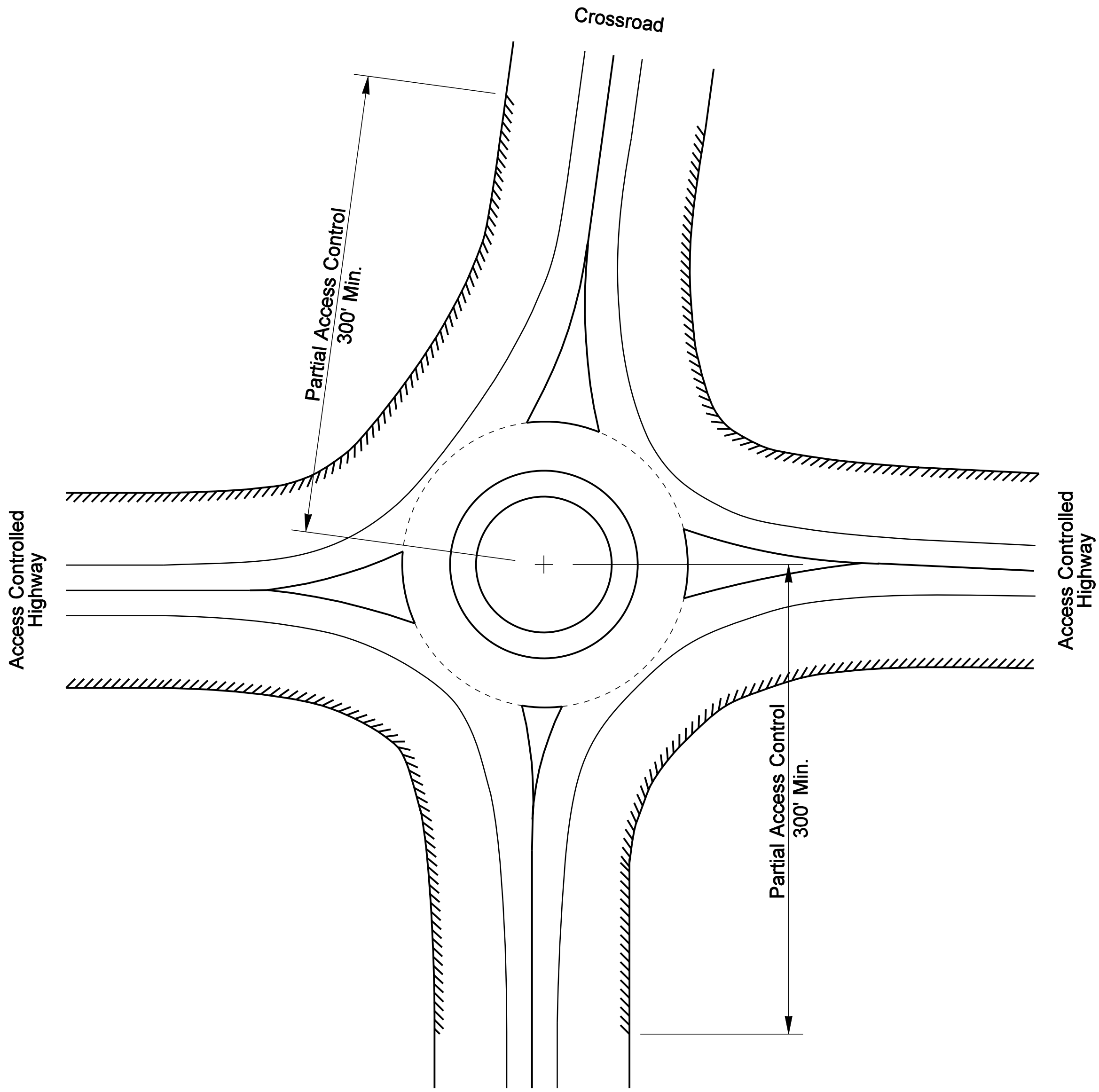
Full Access Control Limits: Ramp Terminal With Transition Taper
Exhibit 530-1d



Full Access Control Limits: Single Point Urban Interchange
Exhibit 530-1e



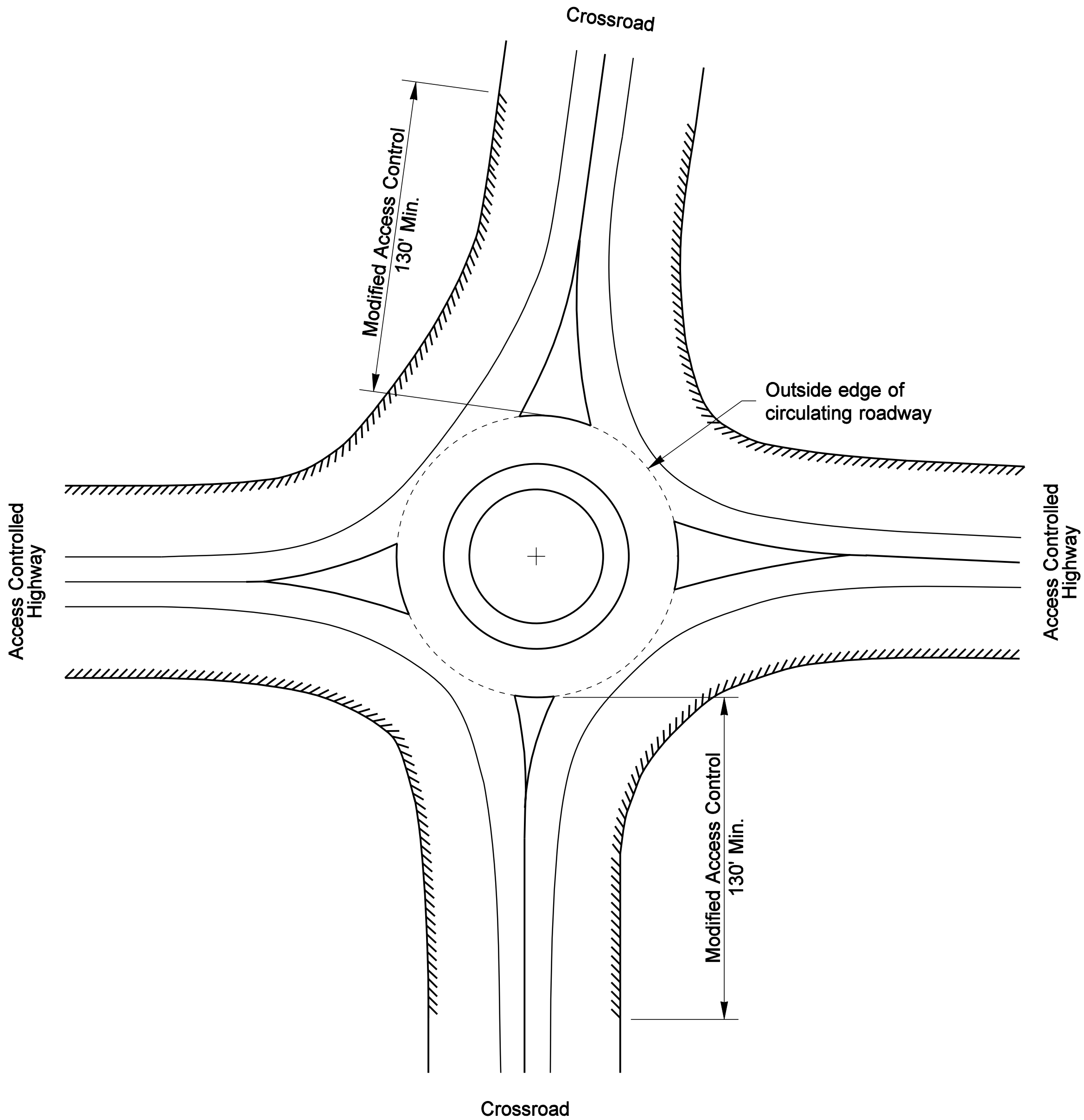
Partial Access Control Limits: At-Grade Intersections
Exhibit 530-2a



Note:

Partial access control is measured from the center of the roundabout.

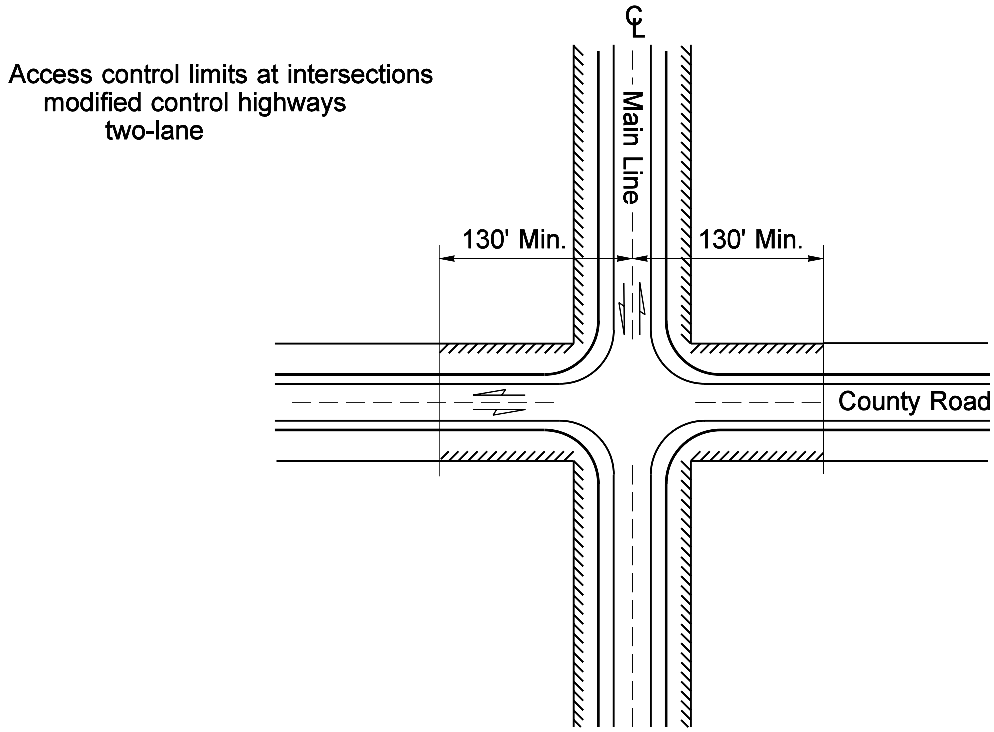
Partial Access Control Limits: Roundabout Intersections
Exhibit 530-2b

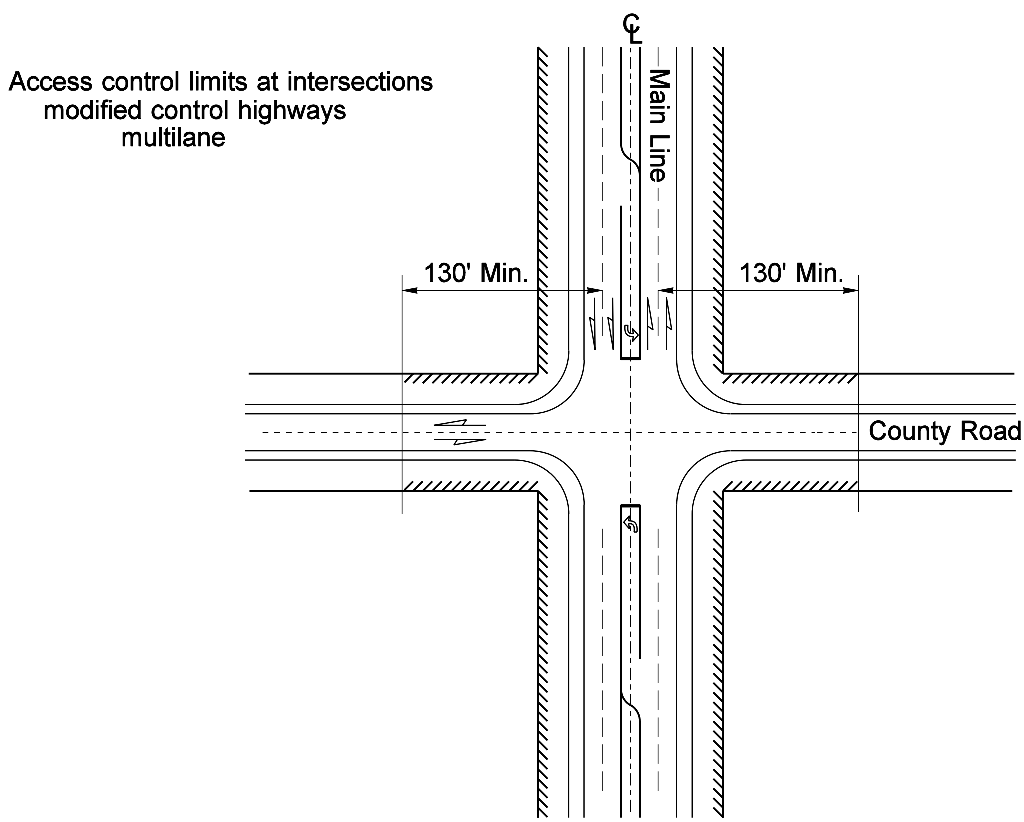


Note:

Modified access control is measured from the outside edge of the circulating roadway.

Modified Access Control Limits: Roundabout Intersections
Exhibit 530-3a





Modified Access Control Limits: Intersections
Exhibit 530-3b

Chapter 540 Managed Access Control

540.01 General
540.02 References
540.03 Definitions
540.04 Design Considerations
540.05 Managed Access Highway Classes
540.06 Corner Clearance Criteria
540.07 Access Connection Categories
540.08 Access Connection Permit
540.09 Permitting and Design Documentation
540.10 Other Considerations
540.11 Preconstruction Conference
540.12 Adjudicative Proceedings
540.13 Documentation

540.01 General

Access management is the systematic regulation of the location, spacing, design, and operation of driveway, city street, and county road connections to state highways. This chapter describes the access management process for granting permission to connect to managed access highways within cities and unincorporated areas. For an overview of access control, as well as the references list and definitions of terminology for this chapter, see Chapter 520, Access Control.

In Washington State, managed access highways include all state highways that are not limited access highways. State highways that are planned for or established as limited access, are treated as managed access highways until the limited access rights are acquired. For the list of highways, see the Access Control Tracking System Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan database:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings

Access to managed access highways is regulated by the governmental entity with jurisdiction over a highway's roadsides. Access connection permits are issued on managed access highways. The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) has access connection permitting authority over all state highways outside incorporated towns and cities. Incorporated towns and cities have access connection permitting authority for city streets that are part of state highways, as specified in Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.24.020. When a project is developed on a state highway, state law requires that existing permitted access connections be evaluated to determine whether they are consistent with all current department spacing, location, and design standards (see 540.05).

540.02 References

(1) State Laws and Codes

Chapter 520, Access Control, provides reference to laws and codes

(2) Design Guidance

Chapter 520, Access Control

Chapter 1100, Design Matrix Procedures

Chapter 1310, Intersections at Grade

Chapter 1340, Road Approaches

Chapter 1600, Roadside Safety

For additional references, see Chapter 520, Access Control.

540.03 Definitions

local roads For the purposes of this chapter, local roads are nonstate highways that are publicly owned.

median Used to separate opposing traffic and control access. Restrictive medians limit left turns to defined locations typically through the use of raised medians or barrier (see Chapter 1140).

MPO Metropolitan Planning Organization

RTPO Regional Transportation Planning Organization

For additional definitions, see Chapter 520, Access Control.

540.04 Design Considerations

Evaluate Access Connections when the Access column on the design matrices (see Chapter 1100) indicates Evaluate Upgrade (EU) or Full Design Level (F). Use the Access Control Tracking System database to identify the route classification and determine access connection requirements:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings

Review all connections and verify whether they are in the Roadway Access Management Permit System (RAMPS) database. Contact the region Development Services Office or the Headquarters (HQ) Access and Hearings Section for permission to log on to the link through this page:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings

If a nonconforming connection is identified, consider relocating, modifying, or eliminating the connection. It is not the intent of the managed access program that modifications to the connection will change the general functionality of the property.

Where current department standards cannot be met while providing the same general functionality, classify the connection as nonconforming and process the appropriate documentation as discussed below. This documentation is part of the permit process.

540.05 Managed Access Highway Classes

The principal objective of the managed access classification system is to maintain the safety and capacity of existing highways. This is accomplished by establishing access management criteria, which are to be adhered to in the planning and regional approval of access connections to the state highway system.

The classification system for state managed access highways consists of five classes. The classes are organized from Class 1, the most restrictive class for higher speeds and volumes, to Class 5, the least restrictive class for lower speeds and volumes. In general, most state highways outside the incorporated limits of a city or town have been designated as Class 1 or Class 2, with only the most urban and lowest-speed state highways within an incorporated town or city designated as Class 5. Exhibit 540-2 shows the five classes of highways, with a brief description of each class. WSDOT keeps a record of the assigned managed access classifications, by state route and milepost, in the Access Control Tracking System database:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings

One of the goals of state law is to restrict or keep access connections to a minimum in order to help preserve the safety, operation, and functional integrity of the state highway. On Class 1 highways, mobility is the primary function, while on Class 5 highways, access needs have priority over mobility needs. Class 2 highways also favor mobility, while Class 3 and Class 4 highways generally achieve a balance between mobility and access.

The most notable distinction between the five highway classes is the minimum spacing requirements of access connections. Minimum distances between access points on the same side of the highway are shown in Exhibit 540-2.

In all five highway classes, access connections are to be located and designed to minimize interference with transit facilities and high-occupancy vehicle (HOV) facilities on state highways where such facilities exist or are proposed in state, regional, metropolitan, or local transportation plans. In these cases, if reasonable access is available to the local road/street system, access is to be provided to the local road/street system rather than directly to the state highway. Following are the functional characteristics and the legal requirements for each class.

(1) Class 1

(a) **Functional Characteristics**

Class 1 highways provide for high-speed and/or high-volume traffic movements for interstate, interregional, and intercity (and some intracity) travel needs. Service to abutting land is subordinate to providing service to major traffic movements.

Highways in Class 1 are typically distinguished by a highly-controlled, limited number of (public and private) access points, restrictive medians with limited median openings on multilane facilities, and infrequent traffic signals.

(b) **Legal Requirements**

1. It is the intent that Class 1 highways be designed to have a posted speed limit of 50 to 65 mph. Intersecting streets, roads, and highways are planned with a minimum spacing of 1 mile. Spacing of ½ mile may be allowed, but only when no reasonable alternative access exists.

2. Private access connections to the state highway are not allowed except where the property has no other reasonable access to the local road/street system. When a private access connection must be provided, the following conditions apply:
   - The access connection continues until such time other reasonable access to a highway with a less restrictive access control class or access to the local road/street system becomes available and is allowed.
   - The minimum distance to another (public or private) access point is 1320 feet along the same side of the highway. Nonconforming access connection permits may be issued to provide access connections to parcels whose highway frontage, topography, or location otherwise precludes issuance of a conforming access connection permit; however, variance permits are not allowed.
   - No more than one access connection may be provided to an individual parcel or to contiguous parcels under the same ownership.
   - All private access connections are for right turns only on multilane facilities. This applies unless special conditions justify the exception and are documented by a traffic analysis in the access connection permit application that is signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer who is registered in accordance with RCW 18.43.
   - Additional access connections to the state highway are not allowed for newly created parcels resulting from property divisions. All access for these parcels must be provided by an internal road/street network. Access to the state highway will be at existing permitted locations or revised locations.
3. Restrictive medians are provided on multilane facilities to separate opposing traffic movements and to prevent unauthorized turning movements.

(2) Class 2

(a) **Functional Characteristics**

Class 2 highways provide for medium-to-high-speed and medium-to-high-volume traffic movements over medium and long distances for interregional, intercity, and intracity travel needs. Direct access service to abutting land is subordinate to providing service to traffic movements.

Highways in Class 2 are typically distinguished by existing or planned restrictive medians on multilane facilities and by large minimum distances between (public and private) access points.

(b) **Legal Requirements**

1. It is the intent that Class 2 highways be designed to have a posted speed limit of 35 to 50 mph in urbanized areas and 45 to 55 mph in rural areas. Intersecting streets, roads, and highways are planned with a minimum spacing of ½ mile. Less than ½-mile intersection spacing may be allowed, but only when no reasonable alternative access exists.

   In urban areas and developing areas where higher volumes are present or growth that will require signalization is expected in the foreseeable future, it is imperative that the location of any public access point be planned carefully to ensure adequate signal progression. The addition of all new public or private access points that might require signalization will require an engineering analysis that is signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer who is registered in accordance with RCW 18.43.

2. Private access connections to the state highway system are allowed only where the property has no other reasonable access to the local road/street system or where access to the local road/street system will cause unacceptable traffic operational conditions or safety concerns on that system. When a private access connection must be provided, the following conditions apply:
   - The access connection continues until such time other reasonable access to a highway with a less restrictive access control class or acceptable access to the local road/street system becomes available and is allowed.
   - The minimum distance to another (public or private) access point is 660 feet on the same side of the highway. Nonconforming access connection permits may be issued to provide access to parcels whose highway frontage, topography, or location precludes issuance of a conforming access connection permit.
   - Only one access connection is allowed for an individual parcel or to contiguous parcels under the same ownership. This applies unless the highway frontage exceeds 1320 feet and it can be shown that the additional access connection will not adversely affect the desired function of the state highway in accordance with the assigned managed access Class 2 or the safety or operation of the state highway.
   - Variance permits may be allowed if there are special conditions and the exception can be justified to the satisfaction of the department by a traffic analysis in the access connection permit application that is signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer who is registered in accordance with RCW 18.43.
   - All private access connections are for right turns only on multilane facilities. This applies unless there are special conditions and the exception can be justified to the satisfaction of the department by a traffic analysis in the access connection permit application that is signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer who is registered in accordance with RCW 18.43 and only if left-turn channelization is provided.
   - Additional access connections to the state highway are not allowed for newly created parcels that result from property divisions. All access for these parcels must be provided by an internal road/street network. Access to the state highway will be at existing permitted locations or at revised locations.
3. On multilane facilities, restrictive medians are provided to separate opposing traffic movements and to prevent unauthorized turning movements. However, a nonrestrictive median or a two-way left-turn lane may be used where special conditions exist and main line volumes are below 20,000 average daily traffic (ADT).

(3) Class 3

(a) **Functional Characteristics**

Class 3 highways provide for moderate travel speeds and moderate traffic volumes for medium and short travel distances for intercity, intracity, and intercommunity travel needs. There is a reasonable balance between access and mobility needs for highways in this class. This class is to be used primarily where the existing level of development of the adjoining land is less intensive than maximum buildout and where the probability of significant land use change and increased traffic demand is high.

Highways in Class 3 are typically distinguished by planned restrictive medians on multilane facilities and by meeting minimum distances between (public and private) access points. Two-way left-turn lanes may be used where special conditions justify them and main line traffic volumes are below 25,000 ADT. Development of properties with internal road/street networks and joint access connections is encouraged.

(b) **Legal Requirements**

1. It is the intent that Class 3 highways be designed to have a posted speed limit of 30 to 40 mph in urbanized areas and 45 to 55 mph in rural areas. In rural areas, intersecting streets, roads, and highways are planned with a minimum spacing of ½ mile. Less than ½-mile intersection spacing may be allowed, but only when no reasonable alternative access exists.

   In urban areas and developing areas where higher volumes are present or growth that will require signalization is expected in the foreseeable future, it is imperative that the location of any public access point be planned carefully to ensure adequate signal progression. Where feasible, major intersecting roadways that might ultimately require signalization are planned with a minimum of ½-mile spacing. The addition of all new public or private access points that may require signalization will require an engineering analysis that is signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer who is registered in accordance with RCW 18.43.

2. Private Access Connections
   - No more than one access connection may be provided to an individual parcel or to contiguous parcels under the same ownership. This applies unless it can be shown that additional access connections will not adversely affect the desired function of the state highway in accordance with the assigned managed access Class 3 and will not adversely affect the safety or operation of the state highway.
   - The minimum distance to another (public or private) access point is 330 feet on the same side of the highway. Nonconforming access connection permits may be issued to provide access to parcels whose highway frontage, topography, or location precludes issuance of a conforming access connection permit.
   - Variance permits may be allowed if there are special conditions and the exception can be justified to the satisfaction of the department by a traffic analysis in the access connection permit application that is signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer who is registered in accordance with RCW 18.43.

(4) Class 4

(a) **Functional Characteristics**

Class 4 highways provide for moderate travel speeds and moderate traffic volumes for medium and short travel distances for intercity, intracity, and intercommunity travel needs. There is a reasonable balance between direct access and mobility needs for highways in this class. This class is to be used primarily where the existing level of development of the adjoining land is more intensive and where the probability of major land use changes is less than on Class 3 highway segments.

Highways in Class 4 are typically distinguished by existing or planned nonrestrictive medians. Restrictive medians may be used to mitigate unfavorable operational conditions such as turning, weaving, and crossing conflicts. Minimum access connection spacing requirements apply if adjoining properties are redeveloped.

(b) **Legal Requirements**

1. It is the intent that Class 4 highways be designed to have a posted speed limit of 30 to 35 mph in urbanized areas and 35 to 45 mph in rural areas. In rural areas, intersecting streets, roads, and highways are planned with a minimum spacing of ½ mile. Less than ½-mile intersection spacing may be allowed, but only when no reasonable alternative access exists.

   In urban areas and developing areas where higher volumes are present or growth that will require signalization is expected in the foreseeable future, it is imperative that the location of any public access point be planned carefully to ensure adequate signal progression. Where feasible, major intersecting roadways that might ultimately require signalization are planned with a minimum of ½-mile spacing. The addition of all new public or private access points that may require signalization will require an engineering analysis that is signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer who is registered in accordance with RCW 18.43.

2. Private Access Connections
   - No more than one access connection may be provided to an individual parcel or to contiguous parcels under the same ownership. This applies unless it can be shown that additional access connections will not adversely affect the desired function of the state highway in accordance with the assigned managed access Class 4 and will not adversely affect the safety or operation of the state highway.
   - The minimum distance to another (public or private) access point is 250 feet on the same side of the highway. Nonconforming access connection permits may be issued to provide access connections to parcels whose highway frontage, topography, or location precludes issuance of a conforming access connection permit.
   - Variance permits may be allowed if there are special conditions and the exception can be justified to the satisfaction of the department by a traffic analysis in the access connection permit application that is signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer who is registered in accordance with RCW 18.43.

(5) Class 5

(a) **Functional Characteristics**

Class 5 highways provide for moderate travel speeds and moderate traffic volumes for primarily short travel distances for intracity and intracommunity trips and for access to state highways of a higher class. Access needs generally may be higher than the need for through-traffic mobility without compromising the public's health, welfare, or safety. These highways will normally have nonrestrictive medians.

(b) **Legal Requirements**

1. It is the intent that Class 5 highways be designed to have a posted speed limit of 25 to 35 mph. In rural areas, intersecting streets, roads, and highways are planned with a minimum spacing of ¼ mile. Less than ¼-mile spacing may be allowed where no reasonable alternative exists. In urban areas and developing areas where higher volumes are present or growth that will require signalization is expected in the foreseeable future, it is imperative that the location of any public access point be planned carefully to ensure adequate signal progression. Where feasible, major intersecting roadways that might ultimately require signalization are planned with a minimum of ¼-mile spacing. The addition of all new public or private access points that might require signalization will require an engineering analysis that is signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer who is registered in accordance with RCW 18.43.
2. Private Access Connections
   - No more than one access connection may be provided to an individual parcel or to contiguous parcels under the same ownership. This applies unless it can be shown that additional access connections will not adversely affect the desired function of the state highway in accordance with the assigned managed access Class 5 and will not adversely affect the safety or operation of the state highway.
   - The minimum distance to another (public or private) access point is 125 feet on the same side of the highway. Nonconforming access connection permits may be issued to provide access to parcels whose highway frontage, topography, or location precludes issuance of a conforming access connection permit.
   - Variance permits may be allowed if there are special conditions and the exception can be justified to the satisfaction of the department by a traffic analysis in the access connection permit application that is signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer who is registered in accordance with RCW 18.43.

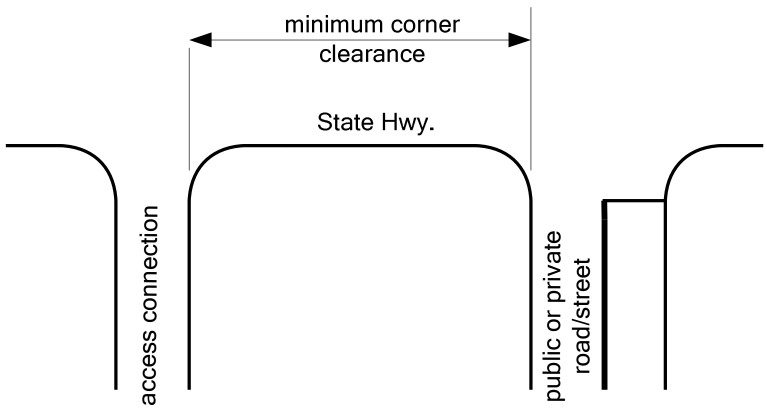
(6) Changes in Managed Access Classification

WSDOT, RTPOs, MPOs, or other entities such as cities, towns, or counties may initiate a review of managed access classifications per the process identified by Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-52. In all cases, WSDOT consults with the RTPOs, MPOs, and local agencies and takes into consideration comments received during the review process. For city streets that are designated as state highways, the department will obtain concurrence in the final classification assignment from the city or town.

The modified highway classification list shall be submitted to Headquarters for approval by the State Design Engineer or designee. WSDOT regions shall notify the RTPOs, MPOs, and local governmental entities in writing of the final determination of the reclassification.

540.06 Corner Clearance Criteria

In addition to the five access control classes, there are also corner clearance criteria that must be used for access connections near intersections (see Exhibit 540-1).



With Restrictive Median		
Position	**Access Allowed**	**Minimum (ft)**
Approaching Intersection	Right In/Right Out	115
Approaching Intersection	Right In Only	75
Departing Intersection	Right In/Right Out	230*
Departing Intersection	Right Out Only	100
Without Restrictive Median		
Position	**Access Allowed**	**Minimum (ft)**
Approaching Intersection	Full Access**	230*
Approaching Intersection	Right In Only	100
Departing Intersection	Full Access	230*
Departing Intersection	Right Out Only	100

* 125 ft may be used for Class 5 facilities with a posted speed of 35 mph or less.
** Full Access = All four movements (Right in/Right out; Left in/Left out)

Minimum Corner Clearance:
Distance From Access Connection to Public Road or Street
Exhibit 540-1

Corner clearance spacing must meet or exceed the minimum access point spacing requirements of the applicable managed access highway class. A single access connection may be placed closer to the intersection, in compliance with the permit application process specified in WAC 468-51 and in accordance with the following criteria:

- The minimum corner clearance criteria in Exhibit 540-1 may be used where access point spacing cannot be obtained due to property size and where a joint-use access connection cannot be secured or where it is determined by WSDOT not to be feasible because of conflicting land use or conflicting traffic volumes or operational characteristics.
- Some local agencies have adopted corner clearance as a design element in their design standards; these standards are to meet or exceed WSDOT standards. Coordinate with the local agency regarding corner clearance of an access connection on or near an intersecting local road or street.
- When a joint-use access connection or an alternate road/street system access—meeting or exceeding the minimum corner clearance requirements—becomes available, the permit holder must close the permitted access connection unless the permit holder shows to WSDOT's satisfaction that such closure is not feasible.

540.07 Access Connection Categories

Whenever an access connection permit is issued on a managed access state highway, the permit must also specify one of four access connection categories: Category I to Category IV. Categories I through III are based on the maximum vehicular usage of the access connection. Category IV specifies temporary use, usually for less than a year. Access connection permits must specify the category and the maximum vehicular usage of the access connection in the permit.

All access connections are determined by WSDOT to be in one of the following categories (WAC 468-51-040).

(1) Category I

"Category I – minimum connection" provides connection to the state highway system for up to ten single-family residences, a duplex, or a small multifamily complex of up to ten dwelling units that use a common access connection. This category also applies to permanent access connections to agricultural and forestlands, including field entrances; access connections for the operation, maintenance, and repair of utilities; and access connections serving other low-volume traffic generators expected to have average weekday vehicle trip ends (AWDVTE) of 100 or less.

(2) Category II

"Category II – minor connection" provides connection to the state highway system for medium-volume traffic generators expected to have an AWDVTE of 1,500 or less, but not included in Category I.

(3) Category III

"Category III – major connection" provides connection to the state highway system for high-volume traffic generators expected to have an AWDVTE exceeding 1,500.

(4) Category IV

"Category IV – temporary connection" provides a temporary, time-limited connection to the state highway system for a specific property for a specific use with a specific traffic volume. Such uses include, but are not limited to, logging, forestland clearing, temporary agricultural uses, temporary construction, and temporary emergency access. The department reserves the right to remove any temporary access connection at its sole discretion and at the expense of the property owner after the expiration of the permit. Further, a temporary access connection permit does not bind the department, in any way, to the future issuance of a permanent access connection permit at the temporary access connection location.

540.08 Access Connection Permit

RCW 47.50 requires all access connections to be permitted. This can be accomplished by the permitting process (see 540.09) or by the connection being "grandfathered" (in place prior to July 1, 1990).

All new access connections to state highways, as well as alterations and improvements to existing access connections, require an access connection permit. Every owner of property that abuts a managed access state highway has the right to reasonable access, but not a particular means of access. This right may be restricted with respect to the highway if reasonable access can be provided by way of another local road/street.

When a new private road or street is to be constructed, approval by the permitting authority is required for intersection design, spacing, and construction work on the right of way. However, if an access connection permit is issued, it will be rendered null and void if and when the road or street is duly established as a local road or street by the local governmental entity.

It is the responsibility of the applicant or permit holder to obtain all necessary local, state, and federal approvals and permits (which includes all environmental permits and documentation). The access connection permit only allows the applicant permission to connect to the state highway. It is also the responsibility of the applicant to acquire any and all property rights necessary to provide continuity from the applicant's property to the state highway.

The alteration or closure of any existing access connection caused by changes to the character, intensity of development, or use of the property served by the access connection or the construction of any new access connection must not begin before an access connection permit is obtained.

If a property owner or permit holder with a valid access connection permit wishes to change the character, use, or intensity of the property or development served by the access connection, the permitting authority must be contacted to determine whether an upgraded access connection permit will be required.

The applicant must obtain Design Approval as shown in Chapter 300, Exhibit 300-2.

540.09 Permitting and Design Documentation

An access connection permit is obtained from the department by submitting the appropriate application form, including the fee, plans, traffic data, and access connection information, to the department for review. All access connection and roadway design documents for Category II and III permits must bear the seal and signature of a professional engineer registered in Washington State.

The permitting process begins with the application. Upon submittal of the application with all the attached requirements, it is reviewed and either denied or accepted. If denied, the department must notify the applicant in writing stating the reasons, and the applicant will have thirty (30) days to submit a revised application. Once the application is approved and the permit is issued, the applicant may begin construction.

The Access Manager in each region keeps a record of all access points, including those that are permitted and those that are grandfathered (see 540.10). A permit for a grandfathered access point is not required but may be issued for record-keeping reasons.

(1) Conforming Access Connection Permit

Conforming access connection permits may be issued for access connections that conform to the functional characteristics and all legal requirements for the designated class of the highway.

(2) Nonconforming Access Connection Permit

Nonconforming access connection permits may be issued for short-term access connections pending the availability of a future joint-use access connection or local road/street system access:

- For location and spacing not meeting requirements.
- For Category I through IV permits.
- After an analysis and determination by the department that a conforming access connection cannot be made at the time of permit application submittal.
- After a finding that the denial of an access connection will leave the property without a reasonable means of access to the local road/street system.

In such instances, the permit is to be noted as being a nonconforming access connection permit and may contain the following specific restrictions and provisions:

- Limits on the maximum vehicular use of the access connection.
- The future availability of alternate means of reasonable access for which a conforming access connection permit can be obtained.
- The removal of the nonconforming access connection at the time the conforming access is available.
- The properties to be served by the access connection.
- Other conditions as necessary to carry out the provisions of RCW 47.50.

(3) Variance Access Connection Permit

Variance access connection is a special nonconforming or additional access connection permit issued for long-term use where future local road/street system access is not foreseeable:

- For location and spacing not meeting requirements or for an access connection that exceeds the number allowed for the class.
- After an engineering study demonstrates, to the satisfaction of the department, that the access connection will not adversely affect the safety, maintenance, or operation of the highway in accordance with its assigned managed access class.

In such instances, the permit is to be noted as being a variance access connection permit and may contain the following specific restrictions and provisions:

- Limits on the maximum vehicular use of the access connection.
- The properties to be served by the access connection.
- Other conditions as necessary to carry out the provisions of RCW 47.50.

This permit will remain valid until modified or revoked by the permitting authority unless an upgraded permit is required due to changes in property site use (see 540.09(1)).

A variance access connection permit must not be issued for an access connection that does not conform to minimum corner clearance requirements (see 540.06).

(4) Design Exceptions and Deviations

(a) **Outside Incorporated City Limits**

A deviation request will be required for nonconforming access connections if corner clearance criteria are not met. If a deviation is needed, the HQ Design Office is to be involved early in the process.

A Design Exception (DE) may be allowed for a single-family residence if the corner clearance criteria are not met. Such an access will be outside the corner radius and as close as feasible to the property line farthest away from the intersection. If two or more residences are served by the same driveway not meeting the corner clearance criteria, then a deviation request will be required.

For WSDOT projects, a short memo is retained in the Design Documentation Package (DDP) stating that the approved nonconforming permit satisfies the requirement of the DE. The DE is recorded in the Design Variance Inventory System (DVIS). Any deviations will be included in the DDP as well.

For non-WSDOT projects, the region Development Services Office or Local Programs Office is responsible for entering DEs into the DVIS.

(b) **Within Incorporated Cities**

In accordance with RCW 35.78.030 and RCW 47.50, incorporated cities and towns have jurisdiction over access permitting on streets designated as state highways. Accesses located within incorporated cities and towns are regulated by the city or town and no deviation by WSDOT will be required. Document decisions made on these accesses in the DDP.

540.10 Other Considerations

(1) Changes in Property Site Use With Permitted Access Connection

The access connection permit is issued to the permit holder for a particular type of land use generating specific projected traffic volumes at the final stage of proposed development. Any changes made in the use, intensity of development, type of traffic, or traffic flow require the permit holder, an assignee, or the property owner to contact the department to determine whether further analysis is needed because the change is significant and will require a new permit and modifications to the access connection (WAC 468-51-110).

A significant change is one that will cause a change in the category of the access connection permit or one that causes an operational, safety, or maintenance problem on the state highway system based on objective engineering criteria or available accident data. Such data will be provided to the property owner and/or permit holder and tenant upon written request (WAC 468-51-110).

(2) Existing Access Connections

(a) **Closure of Grandfathered Access Connections**

Any access connections that were in existence and in active use on July 1, 1990, are grandfathered.

The grandfathered access connection may continue unless:

- There are changes from the 1990 AWDVTE.
- There are changes from the 1990 established use.
- The department determines that the access connection does not provide minimum acceptable levels of highway safety and mobility based on accident and/or traffic data or accepted traffic engineering criteria, a copy of which must be provided to the property owner, permit holder, and/or tenant upon written request (WAC 468-51-130).

(b) **Department Construction Projects**

1. **Notification**

The department must notify affected property owners, permit holders, business owners, and emergency services in writing, when appropriate, whenever the department's work program requires the modification, relocation, or replacement of its access connections. In addition to written notification, the department will facilitate, when appropriate, a process that may include, but is not limited to, public notices, meetings, or hearings, as well as individual meetings.

2. **Modification Considerations**

When the number, location, or design of existing access connections to the state highway is being modified by a department construction project, the resulting modified access connections must provide the same general functionality for the existing property use as they did before the modification, taking into consideration the existing site design, normal vehicle types, and traffic circulation requirements. These are evaluated on an individual basis.

It is important to remember that the intent is not to damage the property owner by removing nonconforming access connections, but to eliminate access connections that are both nonconforming and not needed.

The permitting authority evaluates each property individually to make a determination about which category of access connection and which design template (see Chapter 1340) will be reasonable. If it is a commercial parcel, determine whether the business can function with one access connection. Each parcel, or contiguous parcels under the same ownership being used for the same purpose, is allowed only one access connection. If the business cannot function properly with only one access connection, a variance permit may be issued for additional access connections. If the property is residential, only one access connection is allowed; however, certain circumstances might require an additional access connection (see 540.09(4)).

3. **Costs: Replacement of/Modifications to Existing Access Connections**

   The costs of modifying or replacing the access points are borne by the department if the department construction project caused the replacement or modification. Modification of the connection may require a change to the existing permit.

(3) Work by Permit Holder's Contractor

The department requires that work by the owner's contractor be accomplished at the completion of the department's contract or be scheduled so as not to interfere with the department's contractor. The department may require a surety bond prior to construction of the access connection in accordance with WAC 468-51-070.

540.11 Preconstruction Conference

All new access connections, including alterations and improvements to existing access connections to the highway, require an access connection permit. The permitting authority may require a preconstruction conference prior to any work being performed on the access. The preconstruction conference must be attended by those necessary to ensure compliance with the terms and provisions of the permit. Details regarding the individual access connections will be included in the construction permit. This may include access connection widths, drainage requirements, surfacing requirements, mailbox locations, and other information (WAC 468-51-090).

540.12 Adjudicative Proceedings

Any person who can challenge any of the following departmental actions may request an adjudicative proceeding (an appeal to an Administrative Law Judge) within thirty (30) days of the department's written decision (WAC 468-51-150):

- Denial of an access connection permit application pursuant to WAC 468-51-080
- Permit conditions pursuant to WAC 468-51-150
- Permit modifications pursuant to WAC 468-51-120
- Permit revocation pursuant to WAC 468-51-120
- Closure of permitted access connection pursuant to WAC 468-51-120
- Closure of grandfathered access connection pursuant to WAC 468-51-130

An appeal of a decision by the department can be requested only if the administrative fee has been paid. If the fee has not been paid, the permit application is considered incomplete and an adjudicative proceeding cannot be requested.

(a) **Adjudicative Proceedings Process**

Following is a brief summary of the adjudicative proceeding process. For the purpose of this summary, the responsibilities of the department are separated into those actions required of the region and those actions required of Headquarters. The summary is written as if the appealable condition was a denial of an access connection request.

1. The region receives an access connection permit application, with fee.
2. The region processes the application and makes a determination that the access connection request will be denied.
3. The region sends the applicant a written letter denying the access connection. Included in this letter is notification that the applicant has thirty (30) days to request an adjudicative proceeding if the applicant disagrees with the region's denial decision. The region must notify affected property owners, permit holders, business owners, tenants, lessees, and emergency services, as appropriate.
4. The applicant requests, within thirty (30) days, an adjudicative proceeding.
5. The region reviews its initial denial decision and determines whether there is any additional information presented that justifies reversing the original decision.
6. If the region determines that the original denial decision will stand, the region then forwards copies of all applicable permit documentation to the HQ Access and Hearings Manager for review and processing.
7. The AHM reviews the permit application and sends the permit documentation and appeal request to the Office of the Attorney General (AG).
8. If the initial findings of the AG agree with the region's denial decision, the AG's Office sends the applicant a written letter, with the AG's signature, informing the applicant that a hearing will be scheduled for the applicant to appeal in person the department's decision to deny access.
9. The region reserves a location and obtains a court reporter, and Headquarters obtains an Administrative Law Judge (ALJ) to conduct the proceeding. The AG, by written letter, notifies the applicant of the time and place for the hearing. The AG's Office has ninety (90) days from receipt of the applicant's appeal to approve or deny the appeal application, schedule a hearing, or decide not to conduct a hearing. The actual hearing date can be set beyond this ninety-day (90-day) review period.

10. The AG's Office leads the department's presentation and works with the region regarding who will testify and what displays and other information will be presented to the ALJ. The AHM will typically not attend these proceedings.
11. After hearing all the facts, the ALJ issues a decision, usually within a few weeks after the proceedings. However, the ALJ has ninety (90) days in which to serve a written Initial Order stating the decision.
12. The ALJ's decision is final unless the applicant, or the department through the AHM, decides to appeal the ALJ's decision to the State Design Engineer. This second appeal must occur within twenty (20) days of the ALJ's written decision.
13. If appealed to the State Design Engineer, the State Design Engineer has ninety (90) days to review the Initial Order and all the facts and supporting documentation and issue a Final Order. The review by the State Design Engineer does not require the applicable parties to be present and may involve only a review of the material submitted at the adjudicative proceeding.
14. The State Design Engineer's decision is final unless appealed within thirty (30) days to the Washington State Superior Court.

The above represents a general timeline if all appeals are pursued. Based on the noted timelines, it can take nearly a year before a Final Order is issued. If appealed to Superior Court, up to an additional 18 months can be added to the process. In any case, contact the region Development Services Engineer for further guidance and direction if an appeal might be forthcoming.

540.13 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Class	Non-Conforming[1]	Variance[2]	Conforming[3]	Access Point Spacing**	Limitations[4]
Class 1 Mobility is the primary function	Yes*	No	No	1320 ft	• One access only to contiguous parcels under same ownership • Private access connection is not allowed unless no other reasonable access exists (must use local road/street system if possible)
Class 2 Mobility is favored over access	Yes*	Yes*	No	660 ft	• One access connection only to contiguous parcels under same ownership unless frontage > 1320 ft • Private access connection not allowed unless no other reasonable access exists; must use local road/street system if possible
Class 3 Balance between mobility and access in areas with less than maximum buildout	Yes	Yes	Yes	330 ft	• One access connection only to contiguous parcels under same ownership • Joint access connection for subdivisions preferred; private connection allowed, with justification
Class 4 Balance between mobility and access in areas with less than maximum buildout	Yes	Yes	Yes	250 ft	One access connection only to contiguous parcels under same ownership, except with justification
Class 5 Access needs may have priority over mobility	Yes	Yes	Yes	125 ft	More than one access connection per ownership, with justification

* The access connection continues only until such time other reasonable access to a highway with a less restrictive class or acceptable access to the local road/street system becomes available and is allowed.

** Minimum, on the same side of the highway.

[1] See 540.09(2).

[2] See 540.09(3).

[3] See 540.09(1).

[4] Unless grandfathered (see 540.08).

Managed Access Highway Class Description
Exhibit 540-2

Chapter 550 Interchange Justification Report

550.01 General
550.02 References
550.03 Definitions
550.04 Procedures
550.05 Interchange Justification Report and Supporting Analyses
550.06 Report Organization and Appendices
550.07 Updating an IJR
550.08 Documentation

550.01 General

An Interchange Justification Report (IJR) is the document used to justify a new access point or access point revision on limited access freeways and highways in Washington State. This chapter provides policy and guidance on developing the required documentation for an IJR, and the sequence of an IJR presentation, for both Interstate and non-Interstate limited access routes.

Federal law requires Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) approval of all revisions to the Interstate system, including changes to limited access. Both FHWA and Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) policy require the formal submission of a request to either break or revise the existing limited access on Interstate routes. Breaking or revising existing limited access on state routes must be approved by an Assistant State Design Engineer. An IJR is a stand-alone document that includes the necessary supporting information needed for a request. It documents the IJR team's assumptions and the design of the preferred alternative, the planning process, the evaluation of the alternatives considered, and the coordination that supports and justifies the request for an access revision.

Engineers at the WSDOT Headquarters (HQ) Design Office Access and Hearings Section specialize in providing support for meeting the guidance provided in this chapter. To ensure project success, consult with them before any of the IJR work is started. They can help you during the development of the study, Methods and Assumptions Document, and the Interchange Justification Report.

Establish an IJR support team to help integrate the planning, programming, environmental, traffic, safety, and design efforts that lead to development of a proposal. The team includes representatives from the HQ Access and Hearings Section and FHWA (for Interstate routes) to help determine the priority and level of detail needed to address each policy point and the scale of the required documentation.

The scale and complexity of the report varies considerably with the scope of the proposed access point revision. (See Exhibits 550-1 and 550-2 for an idea of what an IJR will include.) The support team, including HQ Access and Hearings, decides what an IJR will include. IJRs on the Interstate require that all eight policy points be addressed. The level of effort necessary to address each policy point is scalable and should vary depending on the complexity of the proposal. The level of effort is set by the support team and documented in the Methods and Assumptions Document. For non-Interstate IJRs, the support team will establish which policy points are needed and the level of analysis necessary based on the complexity of the project.

The support team reviews regional and state transportation plans to determine whether the need and proposed solution are already identified. Proposals to request new or reconstructed interchanges must be consistent with those plans.

When a local agency or developer is proposing an access point revision, WSDOT requires that a study team be formed.

The IJR will contain a cover sheet that will be stamped by the Engineer of Record responsible for the report's preparation and the Traffic Analysis Engineer responsible for the traffic analysis included in Policy Point 3. (See Exhibit 550-5 for an example.)

550.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 450 (implementing 23 United States Code [USC] Section 135)

40 CFR Parts 51 and 93 (regarding federal conformity with state and federal air quality implementation plans)

23 USC Sections 111 (requires the U.S. Secretary of Transportation to approve access revisions to the Interstate System), 134 (metropolitan transportation planning), and 135 (statewide transportation planning)

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 36.70A, Growth management – Planning by selected counties and cities

(2) Design Guidance

Highway Capacity Manual, Special Report No 209 (HCM), Transportation Research Council

Local Agency Guidelines (LAG), M 36-63, WSDOT

Traffic Analysis Toolbox (tools used in support of traffic operations analyses)
www.ops.fhwa.dot.gov/trafficanalysistools/index.htm

WSDOT HQ Access and Hearings web page (provides guidance and timelines for preparing IJRs and example Methods and Assumptions Documents):
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings

(3) Supporting Information

Notice of policy statement: "Additional Interchanges to the Interstate System," FHWA notice published in the Federal Register, October 22, 1990 (Vol. 55, No. 204)

Notice of policy statement: "Additional Interchanges to the Interstate System," FHWA notice published in the Federal Register, February 11, 1998 (Vol. 63, No. 28)
www.access.gpo.gov/su_docs/fedreg/a980211c.html

State Highway System Plan
www.wsdot.wa.gov/planning/HSP

550.03 Definitions

access A means of entering or leaving a public road, street, or highway with respect to abutting property or another public road, street, or highway.

access break Any point from inside or outside the state limited access right of way limited access hachures that crosses over, under, or physically through the plane of the limited access, is an access break or "break in access," including, but not limited to, locked gates and temporary construction access breaks.

access point Any point from inside or outside the limited access hachures that allows entrance to or exit from the traveled way of a limited access freeway, including "locked gate" access and temporary construction access.

access point revision A new access point or a revision of an existing interchange/ intersection configuration. Locked gates and temporary construction breaks are also access point revisions.

alternatives Possible solutions to accomplish a defined purpose and need. These include local and state transportation system mode and design options, locations, and travel demand management and transportation system management-type improvements such as ramp metering, mass transit, and high-occupancy vehicle (HOV) facilities.

area of influence The area that will be directly impacted by the proposed action: freeway main line, ramps, crossroads, immediate off-system intersections, and state and local roadway systems.

baseline The existing transportation system configuration and traffic volumes for a specific year against which to compare possible alternative solutions.

break See ***access break***.

collision rate Collisions per one million vehicle miles traveled and fatal rates per one hundred million vehicle miles.

design year 20 years from the beginning of construction.

ECS See Chapter 220.

FONSI See Chapter 220.

freeway A divided highway that has a minimum of two lanes in each direction for the exclusive use of traffic and with full control of access.

Interchange Justification Report (IJR) The document used to propose a revision to limited access freeways.

limited access Full, partial, or modified access control is planned and established for a corridor and then acquired as the right to limit access to each individual parcel.

Methods and Assumptions Document A mandatory document developed at the beginning of the IJR phase to record IJR assumptions, methodologies, criteria, and decisions (see 550.04(1)(c)).

need A statement that identifies the transportation problem(s) that the proposal is designed to address and explains how the problem will be resolved. An existing or anticipated travel demand that has been documented through a study process to require a change in access to the state's limited access freeway system.

no-build condition The baseline, plus state transportation plan and comprehensive plan improvements, expected to exist, as applied to the year of opening or the design year.

policy point There are eight policy points addressed in the IJR:

- Need for the Access Point Revision
- Reasonable Alternatives
- Operational & Collision Analyses
- Access Connections & Design
- Land Use & Transportation Plans
- Future Interchanges
- Coordination
- Environmental

proposal The combination of projects/actions selected through the study process to meet a specific transportation system need.

purpose General project goals such as improve safety, enhance mobility, or enhance economic development.

Record of Decision (ROD) Under the National Environmental Policy Act, the Record of Decision accompanies the Final Environmental Impact Statement; explains the reasons for the project decision; discusses alternatives and values considered in selection of the preferred alternative; and summarizes mitigation measures and commitments that will be incorporated in the project.

study area The transportation system area to study in the study process and for an IJR. The study area is a minimum of one interchange upstream and downstream from the proposal. The study area shall also include the intersecting roadway in the area to the extent necessary to ensure its ability to collect and distribute traffic to and from the interchange. The study area should be expanded as necessary to capture operational impacts of adjacent interchanges in the vicinity that are, or will be, bottlenecks or chokepoints that influence the operations of the study interchange.

support team An integral part of the IJR process consisting of an assemblage of people from the regions, FHWA (for Interstates), WSDOT HQ Access and Hearings, and other representatives organized to develop and analyze alternatives to meet the need of a proposal, including approval authorities.

Transportation Management Area (TMA) Urbanized areas with populations of 200,000 or greater are federally designated as Transportation Management Areas.

travel demand The demand travelers will make on the system based on the number and types of trips they will take and the mode and routes they will use. Local travel demand represents short trips that should be made on the local transportation system, such as intracity roads and streets. Regional travel demand represents long trips that are made on the regional transportation system, such as Interstate, regional, and/or intercity/interregional roads, streets, or highways.

traveled way The portion of the roadway intended for the movement of vehicles, exclusive of shoulders and lanes for parking, turning, and storage for turning.

trips Short trips are normally local. Long trips are normally interstate, regional, or interregional.

550.04 Procedures

Gaining concurrence and approval for an access point revision is a multistep process. It begins with assembling a support team to conduct a feasibility or planning-level study. The purpose of this study is to determine whether there are improvements that can be made to the local roadway network to meet the purpose and need of the proposed access modification. If the study shows that the purpose and need of the proposal cannot be achieved with the local infrastructure only, the next step would normally be to prepare an IJR (see the Interstate IJR Process Flow Chart, Exhibit 550-3).

Steps in the IJR process include:

- Assemble the support team to engage subject experts and decision makers.
- Determine whether a feasibility study needs to be conducted or already exists.
- Prepare Methods and Assumptions Document to lay the groundwork for the IJR—this is required.
- Support team endorses Methods and Assumptions Document to prepare the IJR.
- Prepare IJR.
- IJR Review and Approval.

Exhibits 550-1 and 550-2 list the project types most likely to affect freeway safety and operations, requiring the submission of an IJR. Consult the HQ Access and Hearings Section early for specific direction.

Guidance and examples on assumptions documents are provided here:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings

(1) Organize Support Team and Conduct Study

(a) Support Team

Establish a support team before beginning the feasibility study. This same support team would also be involved with the IJR process if the study shows that either a revision or a new access point is needed to meet the proposal purpose and need.

The support team normally consists of the following:

A support team comprised of subject experts and approval authorities will ensure your IJR the highest possible level of success.

- FHWA Area Engineer and Mobility and ITS Engineer (for Interstate projects)
- Region Planning, Design, or Project Development Engineer (or designee)
- HQ Assistant State Design Engineer
- HQ Access and Hearings Engineer
- HQ Traffic Office Representative
- Representative from local agencies (city, county, port, or tribal government)
- Recorder
- IJR writer

The support team enlists specialists, including:

- Metropolitan Planning Organization (MPO)
- Regional Transportation Planning Organization (RTPO)

- WSDOT region (planning, design, environmental, maintenance, and traffic)
- WSDOT Headquarters (design, bridge, traffic, and geotechnical)
- Project proponent specialists (region, local agency, developer)
- Transit agencies

The support team works together, from the corridor study through preparation of the assumptions document and completion of the IJR.

The support team's role is to:

- Review regional and state transportation plans to see if the request is consistent with the needs and solutions shown in those plans.
- Develop a charter that includes the processes for reaching agreement, resolving disputes, and assigning responsibility for final decisions.
- Develop purpose, need, and vision statements for the study. They should be consistent with the project environmental document.
- Expedite the study steps (and, if needed, the IJR development and review process) through early communication and agreement.
- Establish the agreed-upon study area (including baseline transportation improvements) and future travel demand forecasts for each of the alternatives being considered.
- Develop and endorse the Methods and Assumptions Document.
- Provide guidance and support.
- Evaluate data and identify possible alternatives for the proposal during the study and, if needed, for an IJR.
- Contribute material for the report that documents the discussions and decisions.
- Review results and determine whether an IJR is warranted.
- Ensure the compatibility of data used in various studies.
- Ensure integration of the Project Definition process, value engineering studies, public involvement efforts, environmental analyses, operational analyses, safety analyses, other analyses for the study (and, if needed, to prepare an IJR). This encourages the use of consistent data.
- Address design elements. Status of known deviations must be noted in Policy Point 4. Deviations are discouraged on new accesses.

(b) **Feasibility Study**

Study the transportation network in the area. This study will identify the segments of both the local and regional network that are currently experiencing congestion or safety deficiencies, or where planned land use changes will prompt the need to evaluate the demands on and the capacity of the transportation system. The study area includes the affected existing and proposed interchanges/intersections upstream and downstream from the proposed access point revision. Extend the study far enough that the proposal creates no significant impacts to the adjacent interchanges/intersections, then analyze only through the area of influence. When the area of influence extends beyond the one interchange/intersection upstream and downstream, extend the analysis far enough to include the extent of the traffic impacts.

Segments of the local and regional network within the study area will be evaluated for system improvements. Part of the study process is to identify local infrastructure needs and develop a proposal. The study must investigate investments in local infrastructure improvements to meet the purpose and need of the proposal. It must be shown that the local infrastructure alone cannot be improved to address the purpose and need.

During the study process and while developing a proposal, it is important to use the data and analysis methods required for an IJR. If the study indicates that an IJR is warranted, the study data can be utilized in the IJR.

(c) **Methods and Assumptions Document**

This document is developed to record assumptions used in the IJR, along with methodologies, criteria, and support team decisions. The document presents the proposed traffic analysis tool and approach, study area, peak hour(s) for analysis, traffic data, design year, opening year, travel demand forecasts, baseline conditions, and design year conditions. It also documents the team's decisions on how much detail will be included in each policy point. The signed Methods and Assumptions Document represents endorsement by the support team on the IJR approach, tools, data, and criteria used throughout the IJR process.

The Methods and Assumptions Document is dynamic, and is updated and re-endorsed when changed conditions warrant. The document also serves as a historical record of the processes, dates, and decisions made by the team. WSDOT and FHWA require the development and acceptance of the document, because early agreement on details results in the highest level of success for the IJR process.

Example Methods and Assumptions Documents and an outline of this process are provided online at: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings

(2) Conduct Analysis and Prepare IJR

Prepare a detailed IJR using the guidance in 550.05, Interchange Justification Report and Supporting Analyses, and Exhibit 550-3.

(a) **Policy Topics**

The IJR addresses the following eight specific policy topics (see Exhibits 550-1 and 550-2 for exceptions):

1. Need for the Access Point Revision
2. Reasonable Alternatives
3. Operational and Collision Analyses
4. Access Connections and Design
5. Land Use and Transportation Plans
6. Future Interchanges
7. Coordination
8. Environmental Processes

(b) **Early Initiation**

The IJR is initiated early in the environmental process. Traffic analyses help define the area of impact and the range of alternatives. Since the traffic data required for the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) or the State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA) and the operational/safety analyses of the IJR are similar. It is recommended that these documents be developed together, whenever feasible, using the same data sources and procedures. This can result in a benefit to the IJR process with concurrent data.

(3) IJR Review and Approval

Concurrence and approval of a new or revised access point is based on the IJR. The IJR contains sufficient information about and evaluation/analysis of the proposal to provide assurance that the safety and operations of the freeway and local systems are not significantly impacted.

The region, or proponents, with the help of the support team, prepares the IJR and submits four draft copies, including backup traffic data, to the HQ Access and Hearings Section for review.

For a final IJR submittal, contact the HQ Access and Hearing Section for the necessary number of copies.

An IJR is formally approved concurrently with the approval of the project environmental document.

(a) **Interstate IJR**

On Interstate projects, a submittal letter is sent by the region through the HQ Access and Hearings Section, requesting final FHWA approval of the IJR. Interstate IJRs are submitted by Headquarters to FHWA for concurrence and approval.

Interstate access point revisions are reviewed by both WSDOT Headquarters and FHWA. This can be a two-step process:

- If environmental documentation is not completed, a finding of engineering and operational acceptability is given.
- If the environmental documentation is complete, final approval can be given.

Some Interstate IJRs are reviewed and approved by the local FHWA Division Office. Other Interstate IJRs are reviewed and approved by the FHWA Headquarters Office in Washington DC. Additional review time is necessary for reports that have to be submitted to Washington DC (see Exhibit 550-1.)

Final IJR approval by FHWA is provided when the appropriate final environmental decision is complete: ECS, FONSI, or ROD (see definitions).

(b) **Non-Interstate IJR**

On non-Interstate projects, a different scaled process is followed based on the type of project being contemplated. The Methods and Assumptions Document development determines the scope and complexity of what is to be prepared. The project proponent, using the process in Exhibit 550-4, advances the Methods and Assumptions documentation to determine what will ultimately be prepared and approved. The range of outcomes could be that an IJR is not required (documented by the endorsed Methods and Assumptions Document), only selected policy points are required, or all eight are required to be prepared. In some cases, a support team is not required to create the Methods and Assumptions Document to make this determination (see Exhibit 550-2). In any scenario, for a project proposed on non-Interstate routes, concurrence from the study team is required on the Methods and Assumptions to document the acceptance of the scope and complexity of the IJR or the acceptance of the decision that an IJR is not required. If an IJR is prepared, the appropriate WSDOT Assistant State Design Engineer grants the final approval, not the FHWA (see Exhibit 550-4). Send a submittal letter to the HQ Access and Hearings Section requesting final approval of the non-Interstate project IJR.

550.05 Interchange Justification Report and Supporting Analyses

The eight policy points are presented below. Consult with the HQ Access and Hearings Section for guidance. Factors that affect the scope include location (rural or urban), access points (new or revised), ramps (new or existing), and ramp terminals (freeway or local road).

(1) Policy Point 1: Need for the Access Point Revision

What are the current and projected needs? Why are the existing access points and the existing or improved local system unable to meet the proposal needs? Is the anticipated demand short or long trip?

Describe the need for the access point revision and why the existing access points and the existing or improved local system do not address the need. How does the proposal meet the design year travel demand? Provide the analysis and data to support the need for the access request.

(a) **Project Description**

Describe the needs being addressed and the proposal. Demonstrate that improvements to the local transportation system and the existing interchanges cannot be improved to satisfactorily accommodate the design year travel demands. Describe traffic mitigation measures considered at locations where the level of service (LOS) is (or will be) below agreed-upon service standards in the design year. (See the State Highway System Plan for further information on LOS standards.) Additional measures of effectiveness (such as density, speed changes, delay, and travel times) should be discussed and documented in the Methods and Assumptions Document.

The access point revision is primarily to meet regional, not local, travel demands. Describe the local and regional traffic (trip link and/or route choice) benefiting from the proposal.

(b) **Analysis and Data**

The proposal analysis tools, data, and study area must be agreed upon by the support team. Use the Methods and Assumptions Document to detail the specific items and record the team's agreement to them. Establishing assumptions upfront ensures the project will have the highest rate of success. For further guidance and examples on assumptions documents, see:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings

Show that a preliminary (planning level) analysis, comparing build to no-build data, was conducted for the current year, year of opening, and design year, comparing baseline, no-build condition, and build alternatives. Include the following steps:

1. Define the study area. The study area is a minimum of one interchange upstream and downstream from the proposal. The study area should be expanded as necessary to capture operational impacts of adjacent interchanges in the vicinity that are, or will be, bottlenecks or chokepoints that influence the operations of the study interchange.
2. Establish baseline transportation networks and future land use projections for the study area. The baseline transportation network typically includes local, regional, and state transportation improvement projects that are funded. The land use projection includes population and employment forecasts consistent with the regional (MPO or RTPO) and local jurisdiction forecasts.
3. Collect and analyze current traffic volumes to develop current year, year of opening, and design year peak hour traffic estimates for the regional and local systems in the area of the proposal. Use regional transportation planning organization-based forecasts, refined by accepted travel demand estimating procedures. Forecasts for specific ramp traffic may require other methods of estimation procedures and must be consistent with the projections of the travel demand models. Modeling must include increased demand caused by anticipated development.
4. Identify the origins and destinations of trips on the local systems, the existing interchange/intersections, and the proposed access using existing information.
5. Develop travel demand forecasts corresponding to assumed improvements that might be made to the following:
    - The local system: widen, add new surface routes, coordinate the signal system, control access, improve local circulation, or improve parallel roads or streets.
    - The existing interchanges: lengthen or widen ramps, add park & ride lots, or add frontage roads.
    - The freeway lanes: add collector-distributor roads or auxiliary lanes.
    - Transportation system management and travel demand management measures.
6. Describe the current year, year of opening, and design year level of service at all affected locations within the study area, including local systems, existing ramps, and freeway lanes.

(2) Policy Point 2: Reasonable Alternatives

Describe the reasonable alternatives that have been evaluated.

Describe all reasonable alternatives that have been considered. These include the design options, locations, and transportation system management-type improvements such as ramp metering, mass transit, and HOV facilities that have been assessed and that meet the proposal design year needs.

After describing each of the alternatives that were proposed, explain why reasonable alternatives were omitted or dismissed from further consideration.

Future projects must be coordinated as described in Policy Point 7, Coordination.

(3) Policy Point 3: Operational and Collision Analyses

How will the proposal affect safety and traffic operations at year of opening and design year?

Policy Point 3 documents the procedures used to conduct the operational and collision analyses and the results that support the proposal.

The preferred operational alternative is selected, in part, by showing that it will meet the access needs without causing a significant adverse impact on the operation and safety of the freeway and the affected local network, or that the proposal impacts will be mitigated.

Document the results of the following analyses in the report:

- Operational Analysis – "No-Build" Alternative: An operational analysis of the current year, year of opening, and design year for the existing limited access freeway and the affected local roadway system. This is the baseline plus state transportation plan and comprehensive plan improvements expected to exist at the year of opening or design year. All of the alternatives will be compared to the no-build condition. The report should document the calibration process and results that show the current year operations match actual field conditions.
- Operational Analysis – "Build" Alternative: An operational analysis of the year of opening and design year for the proposed future freeway and the affected local roadway system.
- Collision Analysis: A collision analysis for the most current data year, year of opening, and design year of the existing limited access freeway and the affected local roadway system for the "no-build." A collision analysis should also be performed for the "build" as well.

The data used must be consistent with the data used in the environmental documentation. If not, provide justification for the discrepancies.

(a) Operational Analyses

Demonstrate that the proposal does not have a significant adverse impact on the operation of the freeway and the affected local roadway system. If there are proposal impacts, explain how the impacts will be mitigated.

To understand the proposal's positive and negative impacts to main line, crossroad, and local system operations, the selection of the appropriate analysis tool(s) is critical. This is a major piece of the assumptions process. Record the support team's tool selection agreement in the Methods and Assumptions

Document. FHWA's Traffic Analysis Toolbox provides an overview and details for making the best tool category selection.

Document the selected operational analysis procedures. For complex urban projects, a refined model might be necessary. WSDOT supports the traffic analysis and traffic simulation software listed on the HQ Traffic Operations website: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Traffic/Analysis/

All operational analyses shall be of sufficient detail, and include sufficient data and procedure documentation, to allow independent analysis during FHWA and Headquarters evaluation of the proposal. For Interstate proposals, Headquarters must provide concurrence before it transmits the proposal to FHWA with its recommendation.

Prepare a layout displaying adjacent interchanges/intersections and the data noted below, based on support team determination, which should show:

- Distances between intersections or ramps of a proposed interchange, and those of adjacent existing and known proposed interchanges.
- Design speeds.
- Grades.
- Truck volume percentages on the freeway, ramps, and affected roadways.
- Adjustment factors (such as peak hour factors).
- Affected freeway, ramp, and local roadway system traffic volumes for the "no-build" and each "build" option. This will include: a.m. and p.m. peaks (noon peaks, if applicable); turning volumes; average daily traffic (ADT) for the current year; and forecast ADT for year of opening and design year.
- Affected main line, ramp, and local roadway system lane configurations.

The study area of the operational analysis on the local roadway system includes documenting that the local network is able to safely and adequately collect and distribute any new traffic loads resulting from the access point revision. Expand the limits of the study area, if necessary, to analyze the coordination required with an in-place or proposed traffic signal system. Record the limits of the analysis as well as how the limits were established in the project Methods and Assumptions Document.

Document the results of analyzing the existing access and the proposed access point revision at all affected locations within the limits of the study area, such as weave, merge, diverge, ramp terminals, collision sites, and HOV lanes; along the affected section of freeway main line and ramps; and on the affected local roadway system. In the report, highlight the following:

- Any location for which there is a significant adverse impact on the operation or safety of the freeway facility, such as causing a reduction of the operational efficiency of a merge condition at an existing ramp; introducing a weave; or significantly reducing the level of service on the main line due to additional travel demand. Note what will be done to mitigate this adverse impact.
- Any location where a congestion point will be improved or eliminated by the proposal, such as proposed auxiliary lanes or collector-distributor roads for weave sections.

- Any local roadway network conditions that will affect traffic entering or exiting the freeway. If entering traffic is to be metered, explain the effect on the connecting local system (for example, vehicle storage).
- When the existing local and freeway network does not meet agreed-upon level of service standards, show how the proposal will improve the level of service or keep it from becoming worse than the no-build condition in the year of opening and the design year. Level of service should not be the only performance measure evaluated. There are other measures of effectiveness that can be used to illustrate a broader traffic operation perspective.

(b) **Collision Analysis**

This analysis identifies areas where there may be a safety concern. The study limits are the same as for operational analyses.

Identify and document all safety program (I2) locations. Identify and document collision histories, rates, and types for the freeway section and the adjacent affected local surface system. Project the rates that will result from traffic flow and geometric conditions imposed by the proposed access point revision. Document the basis for all assumptions.

Demonstrate that (1) the proposal does not have a significant adverse impact on the safety of the freeway or the adjacent affected local surface system, or (2) the impacts will be mitigated. The safety analysis for both existing and proposed conditions should include the following:

1. **Type of Collisions**
   - What types of collisions are occurring (overturns, rear-ends, enter-at-angle, hitting fixed object)?
   - What types of collision s are most prevalent?
   - Are there any patterns of collision type or cause?
2. **Severity of Collisions**
   - Fatalities, serious injuries, evident injuries, property damage
3. **Collision Rates and Numbers**
   - Document the number and rate of collisions within the study limits for existing and proposed conditions.
   - What are the existing and anticipated crash/serious injury/fatality rates and numbers by proximity to the interchange exit and entrance ramps?
   - How do these rates compare to similar corridors or interchanges?
   - How do these rates compare to the future rates and numbers?
   - What are the existing and anticipated crash/serious injury/fatality rates and numbers for the impacted adjacent and parallel road system (with and without the access revision)?
4. **Contributing Factors and Conclusions**
   - Document contributing causes of collisions and conclusions. What are the most prevalent causes?

- Evaluate and document the existing and proposed roadway conditions for geometric design standards, stopping sight distance, and other possible contributing factors. Would the proposal reduce the frequency and severity of collisions?

(4) Policy Point 4: Access Connections and Design

Will the proposal provide fully directional interchanges connected to public streets or roads, spaced appropriately, and designed to full design level geometric control criteria?

Provide for all directions of traffic movement on Interstate system-to-system type interchanges, unless justified. The intent is to provide full movement at all interchanges, whenever feasible. Partial interchanges are discouraged. Less than fully directional interchanges for special-purpose access for transit vehicles, for HOVs, or to or from park & ride lots will be considered on a case-by-case basis.

A proposed new or revised interchange access must connect to a public freeway, road, or street and be endorsed by the local governmental agency or tribal government having jurisdiction over said public freeway, road, or street.

Explain how the proposed access point relates to present and future proposed interchange configurations and the *Design Manual* spacing criteria. Note that urban and rural interchange spacing for crossroads also includes additional spacing requirements between adjacent ramps, as noted in Chapter 940.

Develop the proposal in sufficient detail to conduct a design and operational analysis. Include the number of lanes, horizontal and vertical curvature, lateral clearance, lane width, shoulder width, weaving distance, ramp taper, interchange spacing, and all traffic movements. This information is presented as a sketch or a more complex layout, depending on the complexity of the proposal.

The status of all known or anticipated project deviations must be noted in this policy point, as described in Chapter 300.

(5) Policy Point 5: Land Use and Transportation Plans

Is the proposed access point revision compatible with all land use and transportation plans for the area?

Show that the proposal is consistent with local and regional land use and transportation plans. Before final approval, all requests for access point revisions must be consistent with the regional or statewide transportation plan, as appropriate (see Chapter 120). The proposed access point revision may affect adjacent land use and, conversely, land use may affect the travel demand generated. Therefore, reference and show compatibility with the land use plans, zoning controls, and transportation ordinances in the affected area.

Explain the consistency of the proposed access point revision with the plans and studies, the applicable provisions of 23 CFR Part 450, the applicable transportation conformity requirements of 40 CFR Parts 51 and 93, and Chapter 36.70A RCW.

If the proposed access is not specifically referenced in the transportation plans, define its consistency with the plans and indicate the process for the responsible planning agency to incorporate the project. In urbanized areas, the plan refinement must be adopted by the metropolitan planning organization (MPO) before the project is designed. The action must also be consistent with the multimodal State Transportation Plan.

(6) Policy Point 6: Future Interchanges

Is the proposed access point revision compatible with a comprehensive network plan? Is the proposal compatible with other known new access points and known revisions to existing points?

The report must demonstrate that the proposed access point revision is compatible with other planned access points and revisions to existing points.

Reference and summarize any comprehensive freeway network study, plan refinement study, or traffic circulation study.

Explain the consistency of the proposed access point revision with those studies.

(7) Policy Point 7: Coordination

Are all coordinating projects and actions programmed and funded?

When the request for an access point revision is generated by new or expanded development, demonstrate appropriate coordination between the development and the changes to the transportation system.

Show that the proposal includes a commitment to complete the other noninterchange/nonintersection improvements that are necessary for the interchange/intersection to function as proposed. For example, if improvements to the local circulation system are necessary for the proposal to operate, they must be in place before new ramps are opened to traffic. If future reconstruction is part of the mitigation for design year level of service, the reconstruction projects must be in the State Highway System Plan and Regional Transportation Plan.

All elements for improvements are encouraged to include known fiscal commitments and an anticipated time for completion. If the project is to be constructed in phases, it must be demonstrated in Policy Point 3 that each phase can function independently and does not affect the safety and operational efficiency of the freeway. Identify the funding sources, both existing and projected, and the estimated time of completion for each project phase.

(8) Policy Point 8: Environmental Processes

What is the status of the proposal's environmental processes? This section should be something more than just a status report of the environmental process; it should be a brief summary of the environmental process.

All requests for access point revisions on freeways must contain information on the status of the environmental approval and permitting processes.

The following are just a few examples of environmental status information that may apply:

- Have the environmental documents been approved? If not, when is the anticipated approval date?
- What applicable permits and approvals have been obtained and/or are pending?
- Are there hearings still to be held?
- Is the environmental process waiting for an engineering and operational acceptability decision?
- Does the environmental document include a traffic analysis that can be used in the IJR analysis?

550.06 Report Organization and Appendices

Begin the IJR with an executive summary. Briefly describe the access point revision being submitted for a decision and why the revision is needed. Include a brief summary of the proposal.

The IJR must be assembled in the policy point order noted in 550.04(2).

Formatting for the IJR includes providing numbered tabs in the report for each policy point section and each appendix and numbering all pages, including references and appendices. A suggestion for page numbering is to number each individual section, such as "Policy Point 3, PP3–4" and "Appendix 2, A2–25." This allows for changes without renumbering the entire report.

On the bottom of each page, place the revision date for each version of the IJR. As an individual page is updated, this revision date will help track the most current version of that page. Also, include the title of the report on the bottom of each page.

Use a three-ring binder for ease of page replacement. Do not use comb or spiral binding.

Appendix A is reserved for the Methods and Assumptions Document. Include meeting notes where subsequent decisions are made as additional appendices to the original signed document.

Additional appendices may include documents such as technical memorandums, memos, and traffic analysis operations output.

550.07 Updating an IJR

Recognizing that the time period between the approval of the IJR, the environmental documentation, and the construction contract commonly spans several years, the approved IJR will be reviewed and updated to identify changes that may have occurred during this time period. Submit a summary assessment to the HQ Design Office for evaluation to determine whether the IJR needs to be updated. The HQ Design Office will forward the assessment to FHWA if necessary. The assessment is a document summarizing the significant changes since it was approved. Contact the HQ Access and Hearings Section to coordinate this summary assessment.

550.08 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Project Type	Support Team	Policy Point								Concurrence	Approval
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		
Interstate Routes											
New freeway-to-crossroad interchange in a Transportation Management Area[1]	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	FHWA and HQ	FHWA DC
New partial interchange	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	FHWA and HQ	FHWA DC
New HOV direct access	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	FHWA and HQ	FHWA DC
New freeway-to-freeway interchange	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	FHWA and HQ	FHWA DC
Revision to freeway-to-freeway interchange in a Transportation Management Area[1][2]	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	FHWA and HQ	FHWA
New freeway-to-crossroad interchange not in a Transportation Management Area[1]	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	HQ	FHWA
Revision to freeway-to-freeway interchange not in a Transportation Management Area[1][2]	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	HQ	FHWA
Revision to interchange[2][3]	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	HQ	FHWA
Transit flyer stop on main line	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	HQ	FHWA
Transit flyer stop on an on-ramp	No	✓		✓	✓					HQ	FHWA
Addition of entrance or exit ramps that complete basic movements at an existing interchange	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	HQ	FHWA
Abandonment of a ramp[4]	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	HQ	FHWA
Locked gate	No	✓			[5]					HQ	FHWA
Access breaks that do not allow any type of access to main line or ramps	No	✓	✓		[5]					HQ	FHWA
Pedestrian structure	No	✓			[5]					HQ	FHWA
Construction/emergency access break	No	✓	✓	✓	✓					Region	FHWA

Notes:

All policy points must be addressed on all studies. The scale and scope of the project dictate the level of effort needed to address each policy point. Blank cells in the table above indicate that the policy point will need to be addressed briefly in the IJR. Consult the HQ Access and Hearings Section for direction.

[1] In Washington, designated Transportation Management Areas include Clark, King, Kitsap, Pierce, Snohomish, and Spokane counties.

[2] "Revision" includes changes in interchange configuration, even though the number of access points does not change. Changing from a cloverleaf to a directional interchange is an example of a "revision."

[3] Revisions that might adversely affect the level of service of the through lanes. Examples include: doubling lanes for an on-ramp with double entry to the freeway; adding a loop ramp to an existing diamond interchange; and replacing a diamond ramp with a loop ramp. Revisions to the ramp terminal intersections may not require an IJR unless the traffic analysis shows an impact to the main line traffic.

[4] Unless it is a condition of the original approval.

[5] Update the right of way/limited access plan as necessary.

[6] As part of Policy Point 1, include a narrative stating that all other alternatives are not feasible.

Interstate Routes: IJR Content and Review Levels

Exhibit 550-1

Project Type	Support Team	Policy Point								Concurrence	Approval
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		
Non-Interstate Routes											
New freeway-to-crossroad interchange on a predominately grade-separated corridor	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Region	HQ
New freeway-to-freeway interchange	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Region	HQ
Revision to freeway-to-freeway interchange	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Region	HQ
New freeway-to-crossroad interchange on a predominately at-grade corridor[5]	No	✓		✓	✓					Region	HQ
Revision to interchange[1]	No	✓		✓	✓					Region	HQ
Addition of entrance or exit ramps that complete basic movements at an existing interchange	No	✓		✓	✓					Region	HQ
Abandonment of a ramp[2]	No	✓		✓						Region	HQ
Transit flyer stop on main line	Yes	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	Region	HQ
Transit flyer stop on an on-ramp	No	✓		✓	✓					Region	HQ
Locked gate[4]	No	✓			[3]					Region	HQ
Pedestrian structure	No	✓			[3]					Region	HQ
Construction/emergency access break	No	✓	✓	✓						Region	HQ

Notes:

Policy points to be addressed will be determined by the IJR support team. The scale and scope of the project dictate the level of effort needed to address each policy point. Blank cells in the table above indicate that the policy point will need to be addressed briefly in the IJR as determined by the support team. Consult the HQ Access and Hearings Section for direction.

[1] Revisions that might adversely affect the level of service of the through lanes. Examples include: doubling lanes for an on-ramp with double entry to the freeway; adding a loop ramp to an existing diamond interchange; and replacing a diamond ramp with a loop ramp.

[2] Unless it is a condition of the original approval.

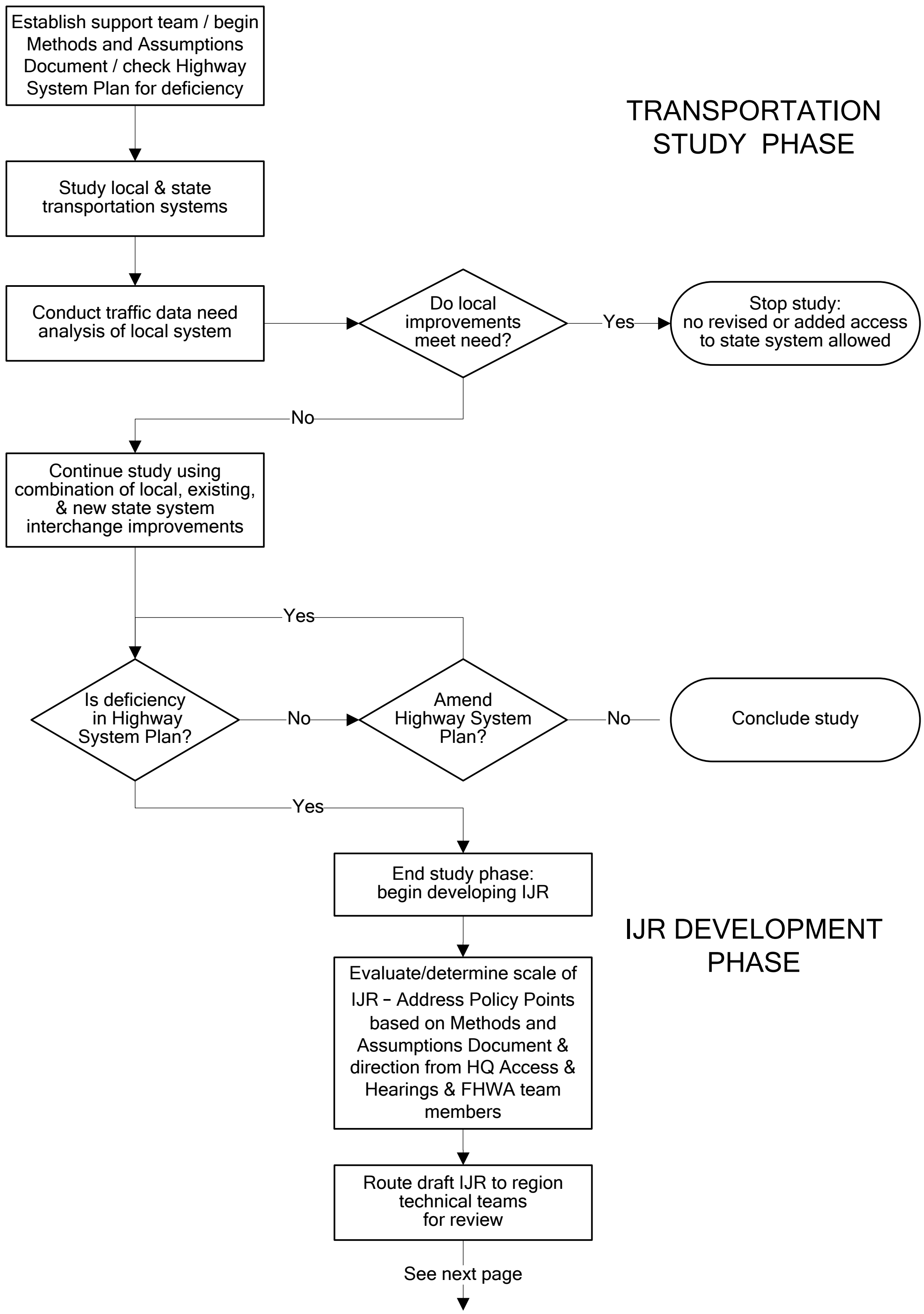
[3] Update the right of way/limited access plan as necessary.

[4] As part of Policy Point 1, include a narrative stating that all other alternatives are not feasible.

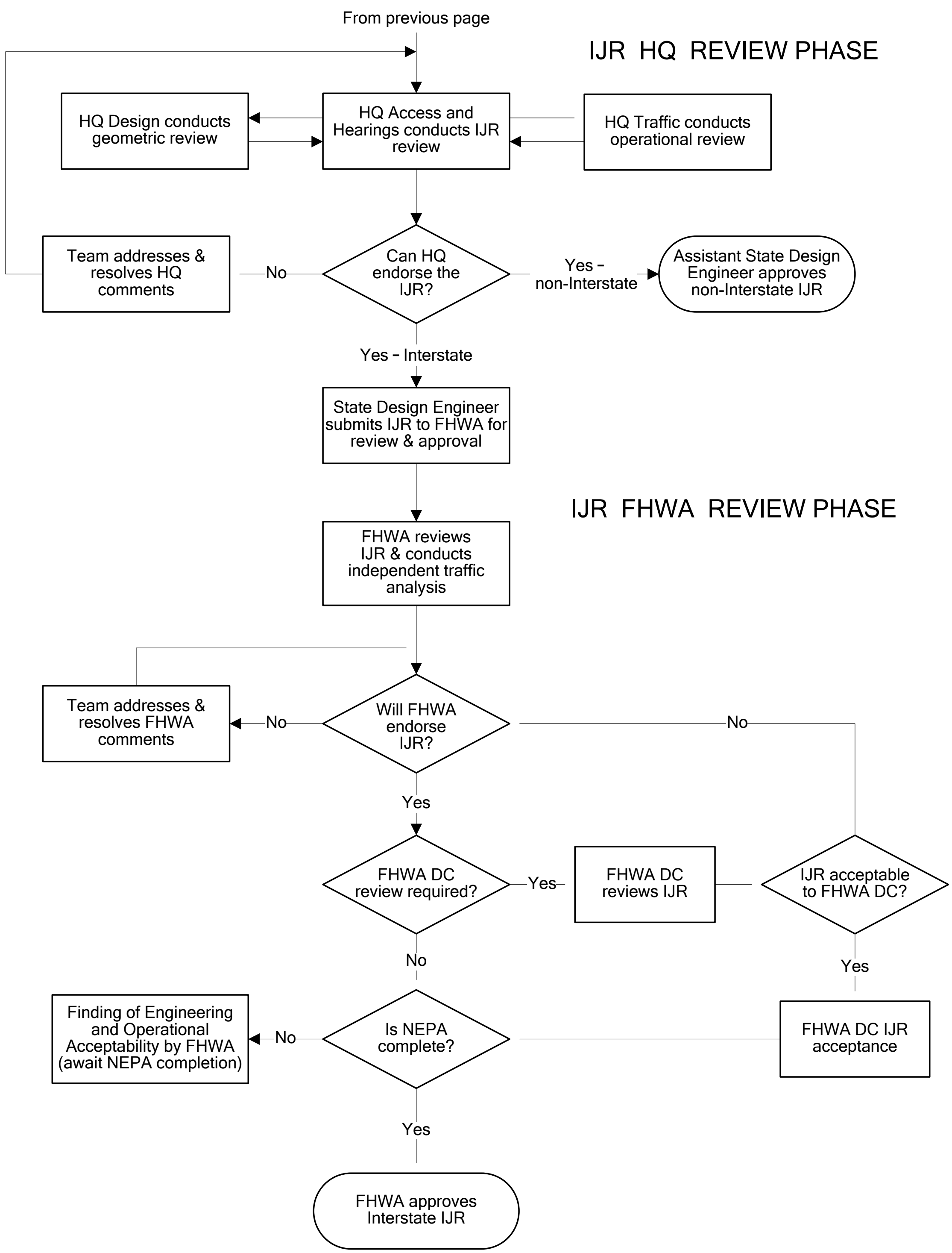
(5) Example: Revising an existing at-grade intersection into an access controlled grade-separated interchange.

Non-Interstate Routes: IJR Content and Review Levels

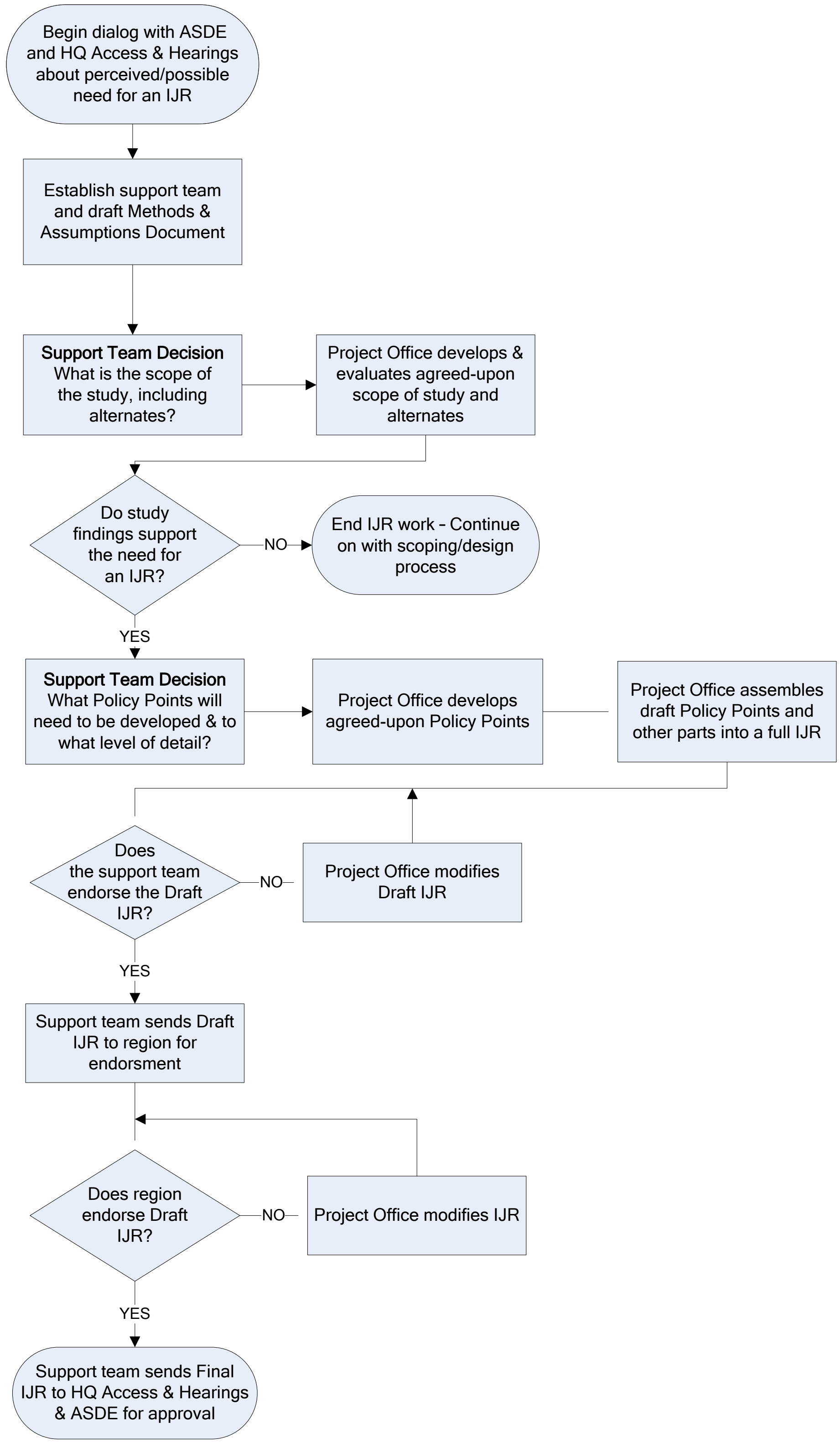
Exhibit 550-2



Interstate IJR: Process Flow Chart
Exhibit 550-3



Interstate IJR: Process Flow Chart
Exhibit 550-3 (continued)



Non-Interstate IJR: Process Flow Chart

Exhibit 550-4

Interchange Justification Report

"Project Title"
"MP to MP"

This ***Interchange Justification Report*** has been prepared under my direct supervision, in accordance with Chapter 18.43 RCW and appropriate Washington State Department of Transportation manuals.

☐ **IJR Engineer of Record**

By:__________________________________ **P.E.**
Project Engineer

Date:__________________________________**2010**

☐ **Traffic Analysis Engineer**

By:__________________________________ **P.E.**
Traffic Analysis Engineer

Date:__________________________________**2010**

☐ **Concurrence**
Region Traffic Engineer

By:__________________________________ **P.E.**

Date:__________________________________**2010**

☐ **Concurrence**
Project Development Engineer

By:__________________________________ **P.E.**

Date:__________________________________**2010**

☐ **WSDOT Approval**
Assistant State Design Engineer

By:__________________________________ **P.E.**

Date:__________________________________**2010**

☐ **FHWA Approval**
FHWA Safety and Design Engineer

By:__________________________________ **P.E.**

Date:__________________________________**2010**

IJR: Stamped Cover Sheet Example
Exhibit 550-5

Chapter 560 Fencing

560.01 General
560.02 References
560.03 Design Criteria
560.04 Fencing Types
560.05 Gates
560.06 Procedure
560.07 Documentation

560.01 General

Fencing is provided primarily to discourage encroachment onto Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) highway right of way from adjacent property, to delineate the right of way, and to replace fencing that has been disrupted by construction.

Encroachment onto the right of way is discouraged to limit the presence of people and animals that might disrupt the efficient flow of traffic on the facility. Although not the primary intent, fencing does provide some separation between people, animals, traffic flow, and other features.

560.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

560.03 Design Criteria

(1) General

Fencing on a continuous alignment usually has a pleasing appearance and is the most economical to construct and maintain. The recommended practice is to locate fencing on or, depending on the terrain, 12 inches inside the right of way line.

Where the anticipated or existing right of way line has abrupt irregularities over short distances, coordinate with Maintenance and Real Estate Services personnel to dispose of the irregularities as excess property (where possible) and fence the final property line in a manner acceptable to Maintenance.

Whenever possible, preserve the natural assets of the surrounding area and minimize the number of fence types on any particular project.

(2) Limited Access Highways

On highways with full and partial limited access control, fencing is mandatory unless it has been established that such fencing may be deferred. Fencing is not required for modified limited access control areas, but may be installed where appropriate. Fencing is required between frontage roads and adjacent parking or pedestrian areas (such as rest areas and flyer stops) and highway lanes or ramps unless other barriers are used to discourage access violations.

On new alignment, fencing is not provided between the frontage road and abutting property unless the abutting property was enclosed prior to highway construction. Such fencing is normally part of the right of way negotiation.

Unless there is a possibility of access control violation, fencing installation may be deferred until needed at the following locations:

- In areas where rough topography or dense vegetation provides a natural barrier.
- Along rivers or other natural bodies of water.
- In sagebrush country that is sparsely settled.
- In areas with high snowfall levels and sparse population.
- On long sections of undeveloped public or private lands not previously fenced.

When in doubt about fencing installation, consult the Headquarters (HQ) Access and Hearings Engineer.

(3) Managed Access Highways

Fencing is not required for managed access highways. When highway construction will destroy the fence of an abutting property owner (which was originally constructed on private property), the cost of replacement fencing may be included in the right of way payment. When the fences of several property owners will be impacted, it may be cost-effective to replace the fences as part of the project.

If fencing is essential to the safe operation of the highway, it will be constructed and maintained by the state. An example is the separation of traveled highway lanes from adjacent facilities with parking or pedestrian areas (such as rest areas and flyer stops).

(4) Special Sites

Fencing may be needed at special sites such as pit sites, stockpiles, borrow areas, and stormwater detention facilities.

Fencing is not normally installed around stormwater detention ponds. Evaluate the need to provide fencing around stormwater detention facilities when pedestrians or bicyclists are frequently present. Document your decision in the Design Documentation Package.

The following conditions suggest a need to evaluate fencing:

- Children or persons with mobility impairments are frequently present in significant numbers in locations adjacent to the facility, such as routes identified in school walk route plans or nearby residential areas or parks.
- Water depth reaches or exceeds 12 inches for several days.
- Sideslopes into the facility are steeper than 3H:1V.

Fencing proposed at sites that will be outside WSDOT right of way requires that local ordinances be followed if they are more stringent than WSDOT's.

Wetland mitigation sites are not normally fenced. When evaluating fencing for wetland mitigation sites, balance the need to restrict human access for safety considerations (such as the presence of children) with the need to provide animal habitat.

Other special sites where fencing may be required are addressed in the following chapters:

- Chapter 720, Bridges (refers to protective screening)
- Chapter 1510, Pedestrian Design Considerations
- Chapter 1520, Bicycle Facilities

The fencing types and designs for special sites are determined by the requirements of each situation.

560.04 Fencing Types

(1) Chain Link

Installation of chain link fence is appropriate for maximum protection against right of way encroachment on sections of high-volume highways in the following locations:

- Along existing business districts adjacent to a freeway.
- Between freeways and adjacent parallel city streets.
- Where existing streets have been cut off by freeway construction.
- In industrial areas.
- At large residential developments.
- On military reservations.
- At schools and colleges.
- In recreational and athletic areas.
- In developed areas at the intersection of two limited access highways.
- At any other location where a barrier is needed to protect against pedestrian, bicyclist, or livestock encroachment in limited access areas.

For roadway sections in rock cuts, see Chapter 1230.

The *Standard Plans* contains details for the approved types of chain link fence. The recommended uses for each type of fence are as follows:

(a) **Type 3**

This is a high fence for areas of intensified use, such as industrial areas or school playgrounds. Use this fence for new installations of high fencing. It may be used within the Design Clear Zone.

(b) **Type 4**

This is a lower fence for special use, such as between the traveled highway lanes and a rest area or flyer stop or as a rest area boundary fence if required by the development of the surrounding area. This fence may be used along a bike path or hiking trail to separate it from an adjacent roadway.

Justify why corrective action is not taken when existing fencing with a rigid top rail will be left in place within the limits of a proposed project. For cases where a more rigid fence is needed, contact the HQ Design Office.

Coated galvanized chain link fence is available in various colors and may be considered in areas where aesthetic considerations are important. Coated ungalvanized chain link fence is not recommended.

(2) Wire Fencing

The *Standard Plans* and the *Standard Specifications* contain details for the two approved types of wire fence. The recommended uses for each type of fence are as follows:

(a) **Type 1**

This fence is used in urban and suburban areas where improvements along the right of way are infrequent and future development is not anticipated. It may also be used adjacent to livestock grazing areas. The lower portion of this fence is wire mesh and provides a barrier to children and small animals.

(b) **Type 2**

This fence is used in farming areas to limit highway crossings by farm vehicles to designated approaches. These areas include irrigation districts to prevent ditch riders, maintenance personnel, and farmers from making unauthorized highway crossings, and where new alignment crosses parcels previously enclosed by barbed wire.

(3) Other Considerations

Extremely tall fences (7 to 10 feet high) may be used in areas where there are exceptional conditions such as large concentrations of deer or elk. (See the region Environmental Services Office and the *Roadside Manual* concerning wildlife management.)

Metal fencing can interfere with airport traffic control radar. When locating fencing in the vicinity of an airport, contact the Federal Aviation Administration to determine whether metal fence will create radar interference at the airport. If so, use nonmetallic fencing.

Do not straddle or obstruct surveying monuments with any type of fencing.

560.05 Gates

Keep the number of fence gates along limited access highways to a minimum. On limited access highways, all new gates must be approved as described in Chapter 550.

Usually such gates are necessary only to allow highway maintenance personnel and operating equipment to reach the state right of way without using the highway or freeway main line. Gates may be needed to provide access to utility supports, manholes, and so on, located within the right of way.

Use gates of the same type as each fence, and provide locks to deter unauthorized use.

In highly developed and landscaped areas where maintenance equipment is parked outside the fence, provide the double gate shown in the *Standard Plans*.

Where continuous fencing is not provided on limited access highways, Type C approaches (see Chapter 1340) are normally gated and locked, with a short section of fence on both sides of the gate.

560.06 Procedure

Fencing is addressed in the access report (see Chapter 530) and the Plans, Specifications, and Estimates, in accordance with the *Plans Preparation Manual*.

560.07 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Chapter 610 Investigation of Soils, Rock, and Surfacing Materials

610.01 General
610.02 References
610.03 Materials Sources
610.04 Geotechnical Investigation, Design, and Reporting
610.05 Use of Geotechnical Consultants
610.06 Geotechnical Work by Others
610.07 Surfacing Report
610.08 Documentation

610.01 General

It is the Washington State Department of Transportation's (WSDOT's) responsibility to understand the characteristics of the soil and rock materials that support or are adjacent to a transportation facility so that, when designed, constructed, and maintained, the facility will be adequate to safely carry the estimated traffic. It is also the responsibility of WSDOT to ensure the quality and quantity of all borrow, soils, rock, and surfacing materials used in the construction of transportation facilities. Specific requirements for geotechnical investigation, design, construction, and maintenance support are set forth in the WSDOT *Geotechnical Design Manual*.

The following information serves as guidance in the above areas. When a project consists of a surface overlay on an existing highway, the *WSDOT Pavement Policy* is used.

Before making project budget and schedule commitments to the Legislature, other agencies, and the public, it is necessary to identify the extent and estimated cost for a project. Contact the Region Materials Engineer (RME) and the Headquarters (HQ) Geotechnical Services Division as early as possible to obtain conceptual-level recommendations regarding how the project soil, rock, and groundwater conditions may affect the design of the project elements. The project soil, rock, and groundwater conditions, and the availability, quantity, and quality of borrow and surfacing materials, can affect the project scope, schedule, and budget.

Coordinate early in your project for geotechnical reporting and design.

The RME and the HQ Geotechnical Services Division will use existing subsurface information and their knowledge of the project area to assess the subsurface conditions within the project limits. If there is little information available or the information is poor, and the subsurface conditions have the potential to significantly affect the project budget or schedule, it may be necessary to obtain a limited number of geotechnical borings or test pits during Project Definition to assess soil, rock, and groundwater conditions within the project limits. Once the Project Definition has been developed and project funding secured, a more detailed geotechnical investigation follows during the design and Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) phases.

It is essential to involve the RME and the HQ Geotechnical Services Division in the design as soon as possible once the need for geotechnical work is identified. (See 610.04(3) for time-estimate information.) If major changes occur as the project is developed, inform the RME and the HQ Geotechnical Services Division as soon as possible so that the geotechnical design can be adapted to the changes without significant delay to the project.

610.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Construction Manual, M 41-01, WSDOT

Geotechnical Design Manual, M 46-03, WSDOT

Hydraulics Manual, M 23-03, WSDOT

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

WSDOT Pavement Policy
www.wsdot.wa.gov/biz/mats/pavement/WSDOT_Pavement_Policy.pdf

610.03 Materials Sources

(1) General

The region Project Development Engineer determines when a materials source is needed. The RME determines the best materials source for the project (see Exhibit 610-1). It is preferred that existing approved materials source sites be used when there are suitable sites available. When there are no approved sites available, the RME determines the locations for new materials sources. The RME contacts the HQ Geotechnical Services Division to provide a geotechnical investigation for the proposed site. The HQ Geotechnical Services Division provides geologic mapping of the site; develops a subsurface exploration plan and cost estimate; conducts the subsurface investigation; develops a subsurface geologic model including groundwater; evaluates slope stability issues; and makes recommendations. The HQ Geotechnical Services Division develops and provides a geotechnical report with materials source development recommendations to the RME. The RME uses this report and materials source recommendations to develop the Materials Source Report and to identify the quantity and quality of material that are intended for the life of the materials source.

Specific requirements for materials source investigations are set forth in the *Geotechnical Design Manual*.

(2) Materials Source Approval

The HQ Geotechnical Services Division must review and approve the Materials Source Report produced by the RME to ensure consistency with the geotechnical report produced by the HQ Geotechnical Services Division.

The HQ Materials Office and the HQ Design Office must approve each pit or quarry site before it is purchased, leased, or acquired on a royalty basis. Until the approval process is complete, the project cannot be advertised for bids. Local and state permits are required for materials sources. To avoid delay in advertising the project, begin the site investigations and permitting process in the early stages of the Project Definition phase.

610.04 Geotechnical Investigation, Design, and Reporting

(1) General

A geotechnical investigation is conducted on all projects that involve significant grading quantities (including state-owned materials source development), unstable ground, foundations for structures, and groundwater impacts (including infiltration). The goal of the geotechnical investigation is to preserve the safety of those who use the facility, as well as to preserve the economic investment by the state of Washington. Additional requirements regarding geotechnical investigations and who conducts these investigations are set forth in the *Geotechnical Design Manual*.

(2) Key Contacts for Initiating Geotechnical Work

For regions, the RME is the first person to contact for geotechnical work. Projects with structures designed by the HQ Bridge and Structures Office, Washington State Ferries (WSF) projects, and Urban Corridors projects generally require the involvement of the HQ Geotechnical Services Division. These particular WSDOT offices should contact the HQ Geotechnical Services Division directly for their geotechnical project needs. The specific roles and responsibilities of the RME and HQ Geotechnical Services Division, including application to the Project Management Process (PMP), are set forth in the *Geotechnical Design Manual*.

For information on retaining walls and noise walls, see *Design Manual* Chapters 730 and 740, respectively. For geosynthetic design, see Chapter 630.

(3) Scheduling Considerations for Geotechnical Work

The region Project Office, the HQ Bridge and Structures Office, the WSF, and the HQ Facilities Office are responsible for identifying the potential need for geotechnical work and requesting time and budget estimates from the RME or the HQ Geotechnical Services Division as early as possible to prevent delays to the project.

Once the geotechnical design request and the site data are received by the RME or the HQ Geotechnical Services Division, it can take from two to six months or more to complete the geotechnical design. Design completion depends on the complexity of the project, whether or not test holes are needed, current workload, the need to give the work to consultants, and how long it takes to obtain environmental permits and rights of entry.

If a consultant must be used, the minimum time required to complete a design (for even a simple project) is typically two and a half months.

In true emergency situations (such as a highway blocked by a landslide or a collapsed bridge), it is possible to get geotechnical design work completed (in-house or by consultants) more rapidly to at least provide a design for temporary mitigation.

Consider all of these factors when deciding how soon (in general, as early as possible) to initiate the geotechnical work for a project.

To incorporate geotechnical scheduling considerations into the overall project schedule, see the *Geotechnical Design Manual*, which provides a description and discussion of the Master Deliverables List (MDL) as it applies to geotechnical work.

(4) Site Data and Permits Needed to Initiate Geotechnical Work

(a) **Geotechnical Work During Project Definition Phase**

To initiate geotechnical work on a project during the Project Definition phase, provide the following information:

1. Project description.
2. Plan view or description showing the proposed alignment or alignment alternative(s).
3. Description of project scope as it relates to geotechnical features such as major cuts and fills, walls, structures, and potential stormwater facilities.

(b) **Geotechnical Work During Design and PS&E Phases**

To initiate geotechnical work on a project during the design and PS&E phases, provide the following information:

1. Project description.
2. Plan sheets showing:
    - Station and location of cuts, fills, walls, bridges, retention/detention ponds, and other geotechnical features to be designed.
    - Existing utilities; as-built plans are acceptable.
    - Right of way limits.
    - Wetlands.
    - Drainage features.
    - Existing structures.
    - Other features or constraints that could affect the geotechnical design or investigation.
3. Electronic files, or cross sections every 50 feet or as appropriate, to define existing and new ground line above and below walls, cuts, fills, and other pertinent information.
    - Show stationing.
    - Show locations of existing utilities, right of way lines, wetlands, and other constraints.
    - Show locations of existing structures that might contribute load to the cut, fill, wall, or other structure.
4. Right of entry agreements and permits required for geotechnical investigation.
5. Due date and work order number.
6. Contact person.

When the alignment and any constraints (as noted above) are staked, the stationing on the plans and in the field must be in the same units. Physical surveys are preferred to photogrammetric surveys to ensure adequate accuracy of the site data.

Permits and agreements to be supplied by the region might include the following:

- HPA
- Shoreline permits
- Tribal lands and waters
- Railroad easement and right of way
- City, county, or local agency use permits
- Sensitive area ordinance permits

The region Project Office is also responsible for providing survey locations of test holes once the test holes have been drilled. The survey information includes the station, offset, elevation, and test hole coordinates. Coordinates are the latitude and longitude or state plane coordinates (north or south as appropriate), but not project coordinates.

(5) Overview of Geotechnical Design Objectives for the Various Project Stages

Geotechnical design objectives for the various design phases are described in the *Geotechnical Design Manual*.

(6) Earthwork

(a) Project Definition

The designer contacts and meets with the RME (and the HQ Geotechnical Services Division as needed) at the project site to conduct a field review to help identify the geotechnical issues for the project.

In general, if soil/rock conditions are poor and/or large cuts or fills are anticipated, the RME requests that the HQ Geotechnical Services Division participate in the field review and reporting efforts.

The designer provides a description and location of the proposed earthwork to the RME as follows:

- For widening of existing facilities, the anticipated width, length, and location of the widening, relative to the current facility, are provided.
- For realignments, the approximate new location proposed for the facility is provided.
- Locations in terms of length can be by milepost or stations.

A brief conceptual-level report that summarizes the results of the investigation is provided to the designer.

(b) Project Design

Geotechnical data necessary to allow completion of the PS&E-level design is compiled during the design phase. This includes soil borings, testing, and geotechnical design based on final geometric data. Detailed design of cut and fill slopes can be done once the roadway geometry is established and geotechnical data are available. The purpose of this design effort is to determine the maximum stable cut or fill slope and, for fills, the potential for short- and long-term settlement. Also, the usability of the cut materials and the type of borrow needed for the project (if any) are evaluated. Evaluate the use of soil bioengineering as an option for building steeper slopes or to prevent surface erosion. (See Chapter 940, Soil Bioengineering, for more information.)

The designer requests a geotechnical report from the RME. The site data given in 610.04(4), as applicable, is provided. It is important that the request for the geotechnical report be made as early as possible in the design phase. Cost and schedule requirements to generate the report are project-specific and can vary widely. The time required to obtain permits and rights of entry must be considered when establishing schedule requirements.

The *Geotechnical Design Manual*, Chapter 24, summarizes the type of information and recommendations that are typically included in the geotechnical report for earthwork. The recommendations should include the background regarding analysis approach and any agreements with the region or other customers regarding the definition of acceptable level of risk.

The region Project Office uses the report to finalize design decisions for the project. To meet slope stability requirements, additional right of way might be required or a wall might be needed. Wall design is covered in Chapter 730. Construction timing might require importing material rather than using cut materials. The report is used to address this and other constructibility issues. The report is also used to proceed with completion of the PS&E.

(c) **PS&E Development**

Adequate geotechnical design information to complete the PS&E is typically received during the design phase. Additional geotechnical work might be needed when right of way cannot be acquired, restrictions are included in permits, or other requirements are added that result in changes to the design.

Special provisions and plan details, if not received as part of the report provided during design, are developed with the assistance of the RME or the HQ Geotechnical Services Division. The designer uses this information, as well as the design phase report, to complete the PS&E documents. Both the region Materials Laboratory and the HQ Geotechnical Services Division can review (if requested) the contract plans before the PS&E review process begins. Otherwise, they will review the contract plans during the normal PS&E review process.

(7) Hydraulic Structures, Ponds, and Environmental Mitigation

(a) **Project Definition**

The designer provides a description and location of the proposed hydraulic/environmental improvements and other pertinent site information and discusses the extent of the improvements with both the RME and the HQ Hydraulics Section to identify the geotechnical issues to be investigated. At this stage, only the identification and feasibility of the proposed hydraulic structures or environmental mitigation are investigated. The cost and schedule requirements for the geotechnical investigation are also determined at this time.

Examples of hydraulic structures include, but are not limited to, large culverts, pipe arches, underground detention vaults, and fish passage structures. Examples of environmental mitigation include, but are not limited to, detention/retention ponds, wetland creation, and environmental mitigation measures on fill slopes.

It is especially important to identify the potential to encounter high groundwater at the proposed hydraulic structure or pond location. In general, avoid high groundwater locations (see the *Highway Runoff Manual*) as groundwater can greatly affect design, constructibility, operations, performance, and maintenance.

(b) **Project Design**

The designer requests a geotechnical report from the RME. The site data given in 610.04(4), as applicable, is provided along with the following information:

- Pertinent field observations (such as unstable slopes, existing soft soils or boulders, evidence of high groundwater, or erosion around and damage to existing culverts or other drainage structures).
- Jurisdictional requirements for geotechnical design of berms/dams.

It is important that the request for the geotechnical report be made as early as possible in the design phase. Cost and schedule requirements to generate the report are project-specific and can vary widely. The time required to obtain permits and rights of entry must be considered when establishing schedule requirements. Furthermore, since the depth to groundwater can be critical to the feasibility of these types of facilities, and since seasonal variation of groundwater is typically important to know, it is essential to have adequate time to determine the effect of seasonal variations on groundwater.

The RME, with support from the HQ Geotechnical Services Division as needed, provides the following information in addition to the overall requirements specified in the *Geotechnical Design Manual*, when requested and where applicable, as part of the project geotechnical report:

- Soil boring logs.
- Soil pH and resistivity.
- Water table elevation.
- Soil infiltration rates (the highest rate for assessing spill containment/aquifer protection and the long-term rate for determining pond capacity).
- Bearing capacity and settlement for hydraulic structure foundations.
- Slope stability for ponds.
- Retention berm/dam design.
- Potential for and amount of differential settlement along culverts and pipe arches and the estimated time required for settlement to occur.
- Soil pressures and properties (primarily for underground detention vaults).
- Erosion potential.
- Geosynthetic design in accordance with Chapter 630.
- Recommendations for mitigation of the effects of soft or unstable soil on the hydraulic structures.
- Recommendations for construction.

Note that retaining walls that are part of a pond, fish passage, and so on, are designed in accordance with Chapter 730 and the *Geotechnical Design Manual*.

The designer uses the geotechnical information to:

- Finalize design decisions.
- Evaluate and mitigate environmental issues.
- Proceed with completion of the PS&E design. This includes determining the most cost-effective hydraulic structure/pond to meet the desired objectives; locating and sizing ponds and foundations for hydraulic structures; structural design; mitigating the effects of settlement; and satisfying local jurisdictional requirements for design.

(c) **PS&E Development**

During PS&E development, the designer uses the information provided in the geotechnical report to:

- Select pipe materials in accordance with corrosion, resistivity, and abrasion guidelines in the *Hydraulics Manual*.
- Consider and include construction recommendations.

Additional design and specification guidance and support from the RME or the HQ Geotechnical Services Division are sought as needed. Both sections provide careful review of the contract plans before the PS&E review process begins, if requested. Otherwise, they will review the contract plans during the normal PS&E review process.

(8) Signals, Sign Bridges, Cantilever Signs, and Luminaire Foundations

(a) **Project Definition and Design**

Geotechnical information is usually not required for signals, sign bridges, cantilever signs, and luminaires during Project Definition.

The region Traffic Design Office contacts the RME for conceptual foundation recommendations. The conceptual recommendations are based on existing information in the area and identify whether *Standard Plan* foundations are feasible or whether special-design foundations are required. If good soils are anticipated or the foundations will be placed in fill, *Standard Plan* foundations can be assumed. If special-design foundations are required, additional time and money can be included in the project to accommodate increased field exploration for foundation design, HQ Geotechnical Services Division involvement, and structural design by the HQ Bridge and Structures Office.

(b) **PS&E Development**

Foundation recommendations are made by either the RME or the HQ Geotechnical Services Division. The recommendations provide all necessary geotechnical information to complete the PS&E.

The region Traffic Design Office (or region Project Engineer in some cases) is responsible for delivering the following project information to the RME:

- Plan sheet showing the location of the structures (station and offset) and the planned structure type.
- Applicable values for: XYZ coordinates, strain pole class, sign bridge span length, luminaire height, variable message sign weight, wind load, CCTV pole height, and known utility information in the area.

The RME provides the following information to the requester if *Standard Plans* foundation types can be used:

- Allowable lateral bearing capacity of the soil
- Results of all field explorations
- Groundwater elevation
- Foundation constructibility

The region uses this information to complete the plan sheets and prepare any special provisions. If utilities are identified during the field investigation that could conflict with the foundations, the region pursues moving or accommodating the utility. Accommodation could require special foundation designs.

If special designs are required, the RME notifies the requester that special designs are required and forwards the information received from the region to the HQ Geotechnical Services Division. The HQ Geotechnical Services Division provides the HQ Bridge and Structures Office with the necessary geotechnical recommendations to complete the foundation designs. The region coordinates with the HQ Bridge and Structures Office to ensure they have all the information necessary to complete the design. Depending on the structure type and complexity, the HQ Bridge and Structures Office might produce the plan sheets and special provisions for the foundations, or they might provide the region with information so they can complete the plan sheets and special provisions.

Additional guidelines and requirements for design of foundations for these types of structures are contained in the *Geotechnical Design Manual*.

(9) Buildings, Park & Ride Lots, Communication Towers, and Rest Areas

In general, the RME functions as the clearinghouse for the geotechnical work to be conducted in each of the phases, for technical review of the work if it is performed by consultants, or for getting the work done in-house. For sites and designs that are more geotechnically complex, the RME contacts the HQ Geotechnical Services Division for assistance. (See the *Geotechnical Design Manual* for geotechnical investigation and design requirements for these types of facilities.)

Detailed geotechnical investigation guidance is provided in Facilities Operating Procedure 9.18, "Site Development": http://wwwi.wsdot.wa.gov/MaintOps/facilities/newpdf/SiteDevelopmentProcedure.pdf

In summary, this guidance addresses the following phases of design:

(a) **Site Selection**

Conceptual geotechnical investigation (based on historical data and minimal subsurface investigation) of several alternative sites is performed in which the geotechnical feasibility of each site for its intended use is evaluated, allowing the sites to be ranked. In this phase, geological hazards (such as landslides, rockfall, compressible soils, and liquefaction) are identified, and geotechnical data adequate to determine a preliminary cost to develop and build on the site is gathered.

(b) **Schematic Design**

For the selected site, the best locations for structures, utilities, and other elements of the project are determined based on site constraints and ground conditions. In this phase, the site is characterized more thoroughly than in the site selection phase, but subsurface exploration is not structure specific.

(c) **Design and PS&E Development**

The final locations of each of the project structures, utilities, and other project elements determined from the schematic design phase are identified. Once these final locations are available, a geotechnical investigation is conducted that is adequate to complete the final design of each of the project elements, such as structure foundations, detention/retention facilities, utilities, parking lots, roadways, and site grading. From this investigation and design, the final PS&E is developed.

(10) Retaining Walls, Reinforced Slopes, and Noise Walls

(a) **Project Definition**

The designer provides the RME with a description and location of the proposed walls or reinforced slopes, including the potential size of the proposed structures and other pertinent site information. At this stage, only the identification and feasibility of the proposed walls or reinforced slopes are investigated. A field review may also be conducted as part of the investigation effort. In general, if soil/rock conditions are poor and/or large walls or reinforced slopes are anticipated, the RME requests that the HQ Geotechnical Services Division participate in the field review and reporting efforts. The cost and schedule requirements for the geotechnical investigation are also determined at this time.

A brief conceptual-level report that summarizes the results of the investigation may be provided to the designer at this time, depending on the complexity of the geotechnical issues.

(b) **Project Design and PS&E Development**

Geotechnical data necessary to allow completion of the PS&E-level design for walls and reinforced slopes are compiled during the design and PS&E development phases. These include soils borings, testing, and final geometric data. Detailed designs of walls and reinforced slopes can be done once the roadway geometry is established and geotechnical data are available. The purpose of this design effort is to determine the wall and slope geometry needed for stability; noise wall and retaining wall foundation requirements; and the potential for short- and long-term settlement.

The designer requests a geotechnical report from the RME for retaining walls, noise walls, and reinforced slopes that are not part of the bridge preliminary plan. For walls that are part of the bridge preliminary plan, the HQ Bridge and Structures Office requests the geotechnical report for the walls from the HQ Geotechnical Services Division. (See Chapter 730 for the detailed design process for retaining walls and reinforced slopes, Chapter 740 for the detailed design process for noise walls, and the *Geotechnical Design Manual* for design requirements for all walls.) It is important that requests for a geotechnical report be made as early as possible in the design phase. The time required to obtain permits and rights of entry must be considered when establishing schedule requirements.

For retaining walls and reinforced slopes, the site data to be provided with the request for a geotechnical report are as given in Chapter 730. Supply right of entry agreements and permits required for the geotechnical investigation. The site data given in 610.04(4), as applicable, are provided for noise walls.

The RME or the HQ Geotechnical Services Division provides the information (see Chapter 730 or 740 for specific responsibilities for design) specified in the *Geotechnical Design Manual* as part of the project geotechnical report.

The recommendations may also include the background regarding the analysis approach and any agreements with the region or other customers regarding the definition of acceptable level of risk. Additional details and design issues to be considered in the geotechnical report are as provided in Chapter 1130 for retaining walls and reinforced slopes and in Chapter 740 for noise walls. The designer uses this information for final wall/reinforced slope selection and to complete the PS&E.

For final PS&E preparation, special provisions and plan details (if not received as part of the report provided during design) are developed with the assistance of the region Materials Laboratory or the HQ Geotechnical Services Division. Both the region Materials Laboratory and the HQ Geotechnical Services Division can review the contract plans before the PS&E review process begins, if requested. Otherwise, they will review the contract plans during the normal PS&E review process.

(11) Unstable Slopes

Unstable slope mitigation includes the stabilization of known landslides and rockfall that occur on slopes adjacent to the WSDOT transportation system and that have been programmed under the P3 Unstable Slope Program.

(a) **Project Definition**

The region Project Office provides the RME with a description and location of the proposed unstable slope mitigation work. Location of the proposed work can be milepost limits or stationing. The designer meets at the project site with the RME and HQ Geotechnical Services Division to conduct a field review, discuss project requirements, and identify geotechnical issues associated with the unstable slope project. The RME requests that the HQ Geotechnical Services Division participate in the field review and Project Definition reporting.

The level of work in the Project Definition phase for unstable slopes is conceptual in nature, not a final design. The geotechnical investigation generally consists of a field review, a more detailed assessment of the unstable slope, review of the conceptual mitigation developed during the programming phase of the project, and proposed modification (if any) to the original conceptual-level unstable slope mitigation. The design phase geotechnical services cost and schedule, including any required permits, are determined at this time. A brief conceptual-level report is provided to the designer that summarizes the results of the Project Definition investigation.

(b) **Project Design**

Geotechnical information and field data necessary to complete the unstable slope mitigation design is compiled during this design phase. This work includes, depending on the nature of the unstable slope problem, test borings, rock structure mapping, geotechnical field instrumentation, laboratory testing, and slope stability analysis. The purpose of this design effort is to provide design-level geotechnical recommendations to stabilize the known unstable slope.

The designer requests a geotechnical report from the HQ Geotechnical Services Division through the RME. The site data given in 610.04(4), as applicable, is provided along with the following information:

- A plan sheet showing the station and location of the proposed unstable slope mitigation project.
- If requested, the Digital Terrain Model (DTM) files necessary to define the on-ground topography of the project site (the limits of the DTM will have been defined during the Project Definition phase).

It is important that the request for the geotechnical report be made as early as possible in the design phase. Cost and schedule requirements to generate the report are project-specific and can vary widely. Unstable slope design investigations might require geotechnical monitoring of ground movement and groundwater over an extended period of time to develop the required field information for the unstable slope mitigation design. The time required to obtain rights of entry and other permits, as well as the long-term monitoring data, must be considered when establishing schedule requirements for the geotechnical report.

In addition to the geotechnical report requirements specified in the *Geotechnical Design Manual*, the HQ Geotechnical Services Division provides the following information as part of the project geotechnical report (as applicable):

- Unstable slope design analysis and mitigation recommendations.
- Constructibility issues associated with the unstable slope mitigation.
- Appropriate special provisions for inclusion in the contact plans.

The region Project Office uses the geotechnical report to finalize the design decisions for the project and the completion of the PS&E design.

(c) **PS&E Development**

Adequate geotechnical design information to complete the PS&E is typically obtained during the project design phase. Additional geotechnical work might be needed when right of way cannot be acquired, restrictions are included in permits, or other requirements are added that result in changes to the design.

Special provisions, special project elements, and design details, if not received as part of the design phase geotechnical report, are developed with the assistance of the RME and the HQ Geotechnical Services Division. The designer uses this information in conjunction with the design phase geotechnical report to complete the PS&E document. The RME and the HQ Geotechnical Services Division can review the contract plans before the PS&E review begins, if requested. Otherwise, they will review the contract plans during the normal PS&E review process.

(12) Rockslope Design

(a) **Project Definition**

The region Project Office provides the RME with a description and location of the proposed rock excavation work. For widening of existing rock cuts, the anticipated width and length of the proposed cut in relationship to the existing cut are provided. For new alignments, the approximate location and depth of the cut are provided. Location of the proposed cut(s) can be milepost limits or stationing. The designer meets at the project site with the RME and the HQ Geotechnical Services Division to conduct a field review, discuss project requirements, and identify any geotechnical issues associated with the proposed rock cuts. The RME requests that the HQ Geotechnical Services Division participate in the field review and Project Definition reporting.

The level of rockslope design work for the Project Definition phase is conceptual in nature. The geotechnical investigation generally consists of the field review, review of existing records, an assessment of existing rockslope stability, and preliminary geologic structure mapping. The focus of this investigation is to assess the feasibility of the rock cuts for the proposed widening or realignment, not final design. A brief conceptual-level report that summarizes the result of the Project Definition investigation is provided to the designer.

(b) **Project Design**

Detailed rockslope design is done once the roadway geometrics have been established. The rockslope design cannot be finalized until the roadway geometrics have been finalized. Geotechnical information and field data necessary to complete the rockslope design are compiled during this design phase. This work includes rock structure mapping, test borings, laboratory testing, and slope stability analysis. The purpose of this design effort is to determine the maximum stable cut slope angle and any additional rockslope stabilization measures that could be required.

The designer requests a geotechnical report from the HQ Geotechnical Services Division through the RME. The site data given in 610.04(4), as applicable, is provided.

It is important that the request for the geotechnical report be made as early as possible in the design phase. Cost and schedule requirements to generate the report are project-specific and can vary widely. The time required to obtain permits and rights of entry must be considered when establishing schedule requirements.

In addition to the geotechnical report requirements specified in the *Geotechnical Design Manual*, the HQ Geotechnical Services Division provides the following information as part of the project geotechnical report pertaining to rockslope design analysis and recommendations:

- Type of rockslope design analysis conducted and limitation of the analysis. Also included will be any agreements with the region and other customers regarding the definition of "acceptable risk."
- The slope(s) required for stability.

- Additional slope stabilization requirements (such as rock bolts or rock dowels).
- Rockslope ditch criteria (see Chapter 1230).
- Assessment of rippability.
- Blasting requirements, including limitations on peak ground vibrations and air blast over-pressure if required.
- Usability of the excavated material, including estimates of shrink and swell.
- Constructibility issues associated with the rock excavation.

The region Project Office uses the geotechnical report to finalize the design decisions for the project and the completion of the PS&E design for the rockslope elements of the project.

(c) **PS&E Development**

Adequate geotechnical design information to complete the PS&E is typically obtained during the design phase. Additional geotechnical work might be needed when right of way cannot be acquired, restrictions are included in permits, or other requirements are added that result in change to the design.

Special provisions, special blasting requirements, and plan details, if not received as part of the design phase geotechnical report, are developed with the assistance of the RME or the HQ Geotechnical Services Division. The designer uses this information in conjunction with the design phase geotechnical report to complete the PS&E documents. The RME and the HQ Geotechnical Services Division can review (if requested) the contract plans before the PS&E review begins. Otherwise, they will review the contract plans during the normal PS&E review process.

(13) Bridge Foundations

(a) **Project Definition**

The HQ Geotechnical Services Division supports the development of reasonably accurate estimates of bridge substructure costs beginning with the Project Definition phase. A field review is recommended for major projects and projects that are located in areas with little or no existing geotechnical information. The region office responsible for Project Definition coordinates field reviews. Subsurface exploration (drilling) is usually not required at this time, but might be needed if cost estimates cannot be prepared within an acceptable range of certainty.

Once it has received the necessary site data from the region Project Office, the HQ Bridge and Structures Office is responsible for delivering the following project information to the HQ Geotechnical Services Division:

- Alternative alignments and/or locations of bridge structures.
- A preliminary estimate of channelization (structure width).
- Known environmental constraints.

The HQ Geotechnical Services Division provides the following to the HQ Bridge and Structures and region offices:

- Summary of existing geotechnical information.
- Identification of geotechnical hazards (such as slides, liquefiable soils, and soft-soil deposits).
- Identification of permits that might be required for subsurface exploration (drilling).
- Conceptual foundation types and depths.
- If requested, an estimated cost and time to complete a geotechnical foundation report.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office uses this information to refine preliminary bridge costs. The region Project Office uses the estimated cost and time to complete a geotechnical foundation report to develop the project delivery cost and schedule.

(b) **Project Design**

The HQ Geotechnical Services Division assists the HQ Bridge and Structures Office with preparation of the bridge preliminary plan. Geotechnical information gathered for Project Definition will normally be adequate for this phase, as test holes for the final bridge design cannot be drilled until accurate pier location information is available. For selected major projects, a type, size, and location (TS&L) report might be prepared, which usually requires some subsurface exploration to provide a more detailed, though not final, estimate of foundation requirements.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office is responsible for delivering the following project information, based on bridge site data received from the region Project Office, to the HQ Geotechnical Services Division:

- Anticipated pier locations.
- Approach fill heights.
- For TS&L, alternate locations/alignments/structure types.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office can expect to receive the following:

- Conceptual foundation types, depths, and capacities.
- Permissible slopes for bridge approaches.
- For TS&L, a summary of site geology and subsurface conditions, and more detailed preliminary foundation design parameters and needs.
- If applicable or requested, the potential impact of erosion or scour potential (determined by the HQ Hydraulics Section) on foundation requirements.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office uses this information to complete the bridge preliminary plan. The region Project Office confirms right of way needs for approach embankments. For TS&L, the geotechnical information provided is used for cost estimating and preferred alternate selection. The preliminary plans are used by the HQ Geotechnical Services Division to develop the site subsurface exploration plan.

(c) **PS&E Development**

During this phase, or as soon as a 95% preliminary plan is available, subsurface exploration (drilling) is performed and a geotechnical foundation report is prepared to provide all necessary geotechnical recommendations needed to complete the bridge PS&E.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office is responsible for delivering the following project information to the HQ Geotechnical Services Division:

- 95% preliminary plans, concurrent with distribution for region approval.
- Estimated foundation loads and allowable settlement criteria for the structure when requested.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office can expect to receive:

- The bridge geotechnical foundation report.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office uses this information to complete the bridge PS&E. The region Project Office reviews the geotechnical foundation report for construction considerations and recommendations that might affect region items, estimates, staging, construction schedule, or other items.

Upon receipt of the structure PS&E review set, the HQ Geotechnical Services Division provides the HQ Bridge and Structures Office with a Summary of Geotechnical Conditions for inclusion in Appendix B of the contract.

(14) Geosynthetics

For design guidance on geosynthetics, refer to Chapter 630.

(15) Washington State Ferries Projects

(a) **Project Design**

The HQ Geotechnical Services Division assists the Washington State Ferries (WSF) with determining the geotechnical feasibility of all offshore facilities, terminal facility foundations, and bulkhead walls. For upland retaining walls and grading, utility trenches, and pavement design, the RME assists WSF with determining geotechnical feasibility.

In addition to the site data provided in Section 610.04(4), as applicable, the following information is supplied by WSF to the HQ Geotechnical Services Division or the RME, as appropriate, with the request for the project geotechnical report:

- A plan showing anticipated structure locations as well as existing structures.
- Relevant historical data for the site.
- A plan showing utility trench locations.
- Anticipated utility trench depths.
- Proposed roadway profiles.

WSF can expect to receive the following:

- Results of any borings or laboratory tests conducted.
- A description of geotechnical site conditions.
- Conceptual foundation types, depths, and capacities.

- Conceptual wall types.
- Assessment of constructibility issues that affect feasibility.
- Surfacing depths and/or pavement repair and drainage schemes.
- If applicable or requested, potential impact of erosion or scour potential (determined by the HQ Hydraulics Section) on foundation requirements.

WSF uses this information to complete the design report, design decisions, and estimated budget and schedule.

WSF is responsible for obtaining any necessary permits or right of entry agreements needed to access structure locations for the purpose of subsurface exploration (such as test hole drilling). The time required for obtaining permits and rights of entry must be considered when developing project schedules. Possible permits and agreements might include, but are not limited to:

- City, county, or local agency use permits.
- Sensitive area ordinance permits.

(b) **PS&E Development**

Subsurface exploration (drilling) is performed and a geotechnical foundation report is prepared to provide all necessary geotechnical recommendations needed to complete the PS&E.

The designer requests a geotechnical report from the HQ Geotechnical Services Division or the RME, as appropriate. The site data given in 610.04(4), as applicable, is provided along with the following information:

- A plan showing final structure locations as well as existing structures.
- Proposed structure loadings.

WSF can expect to receive the following:

- Results of any borings or laboratory tests conducted.
- A description of geotechnical site conditions.
- Final foundation types, depths, and capacities.
- Final wall types and geotechnical designs/parameters for each wall.
- Assessment of constructibility issues to be considered in foundation selection and when assembling the PS&E.
- Pile driving information: driving resistance and estimated overdrive.
- Surfacing depths and/or pavement repair and drainage schemes.

WSF uses this information to complete the PS&E.

Upon receipt of the WSF PS&E review set, the HQ Geotechnical Services Division provides WSF with a Summary of Geotechnical Conditions for inclusion in Appendix B of the Contract. A Final Geotechnical Project Documentation package is assembled by the HQ Geotechnical Services Division and sent to WSF or the Plans Branch, as appropriate, for reproduction and sale to prospective bidders.

610.05 Use of Geotechnical Consultants

Prior to authorizing a consultant to conduct the geotechnical investigation for a project, the region Project Office, the HQ Geotechnical Services Division, and the RME determine the scope of work and schedule for the project and whether or not the project will go to a geotechnical consultant.

Once the decision has been made to have a consultant conduct the geotechnical investigation for a project, the HQ Geotechnical Services Division or the RME assists in developing the geotechnical scope and estimate for the project (WSDOT Consultant Services assists in this process). A team meeting between the consultant team, the region or Washington State Ferries (depending on whose project it is), and the HQ Geotechnical Services Division/RME is conducted early in the project to develop technical communication lines and relationships. Good proactive communication between all members of the project team is crucial to the success of the project due to the complex supplier-client relationships.

Additional guidelines on the use of geotechnical consultants and the development of a scope of work for the consultant are provided in the *Geotechnical Design Manual*.

610.06 Geotechnical Work by Others

Geotechnical design work conducted for the design of structures, or other engineering works by other agencies or private developers within the right of way, is subject to the same geotechnical engineering requirements as for engineering works performed by WSDOT. Therefore, the provisions contained within this chapter also apply in principle to such work. All geotechnical work conducted for engineering works within the WSDOT right of way or that otherwise directly impacts WSDOT facilities must be reviewed and approved by the HQ Geotechnical Services Division or the RME, depending on the nature of the work.

Additional requirements for geotechnical work by others that impacts WSDOT facilities and land within the WSDOT right of way are set forth in the *Geotechnical Design Manual*.

610.07 Surfacing Report

Detailed criteria and methods that govern pavement rehabilitation can be found in *WSDOT Pavement Policy*. The RME provides the surfacing report to the region Project Office. This report provides recommended pavement types, surfacing depths, pavement drainage recommendations, and pavement repair recommendations.

610.08 Documentation

(1) Design Documentation

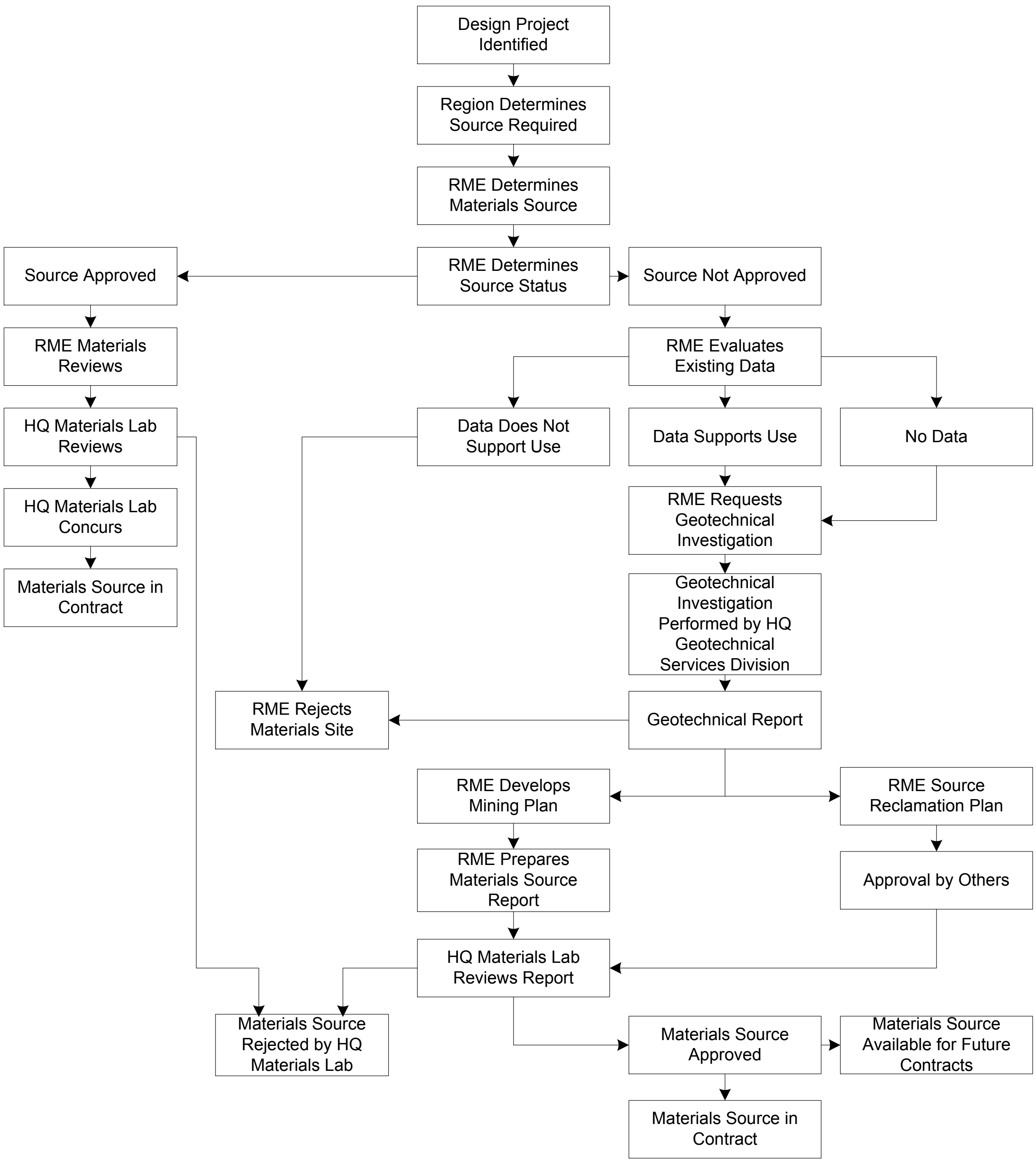
For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

(2) Final Geotechnical Project Documentation and Geotechnical Information for the Construction Contract

Once a project PS&E is near completion, all of the geotechnical design memorandums and reports are compiled together to form the Final Geotechnical Project Documentation, to be published for the use of prospective bidders. The detailed process for this is located in the *Plans Preparation Manual*.

Geotechnical information included in the contract consists of the final project boring logs and, as appropriate for the project, a Summary of Geotechnical Conditions. The boring logs from the geotechnical reports are incorporated into the contract by the region, WSF, or Urban Corridors Office (UCO) staff. The Summary of Geotechnical Conditions is provided to the region, WSF, or UCO by the HQ Geotechnical Services Division and/or RME.

Additional geotechnical project documentation requirements are set forth in the *Geotechnical Design Manual*.



Materials Source Development
Exhibit 610-1

Chapter 620 Design of Pavement Structure

620.01 General
620.02 Estimating Tables

620.01 General

Detailed criteria and methods that govern pavement design are in the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) *Pavement Policy*:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/biz/mats/pavement/WSDOT_Pavement_Policy.pdf

The pavement design for all Design-Build project RFPs will be conducted by the State Materials Lab, Pavement Division.

620.02 Estimating Tables

Exhibits 620-1 through 620-5h are to be used when detailed estimates are required. They are for pavement sections, shoulder sections, stockpiles, and asphalt distribution. Prime coats and fog seal are in Exhibit 620-2a.

Type of Material	Unit Dry Weight: Truck Measure lb/cy	Truck Measure T/cy	Compacted on Roadway lb/cy	Compacted on Roadway T/cy
Ballast	3,100	1.55	3,900	1.95
Crushed Surfacing Top Course	2,850	1.43	3,700	1.85
Crushed Surfacing Base Course	2,950	1.48	3,700	1.85
Screened Gravel Surfacing			3,700	1.85
**Gravel Base			3,400 – 3,800	1.70 – 1.90
Permeable Ballast			2,800	1.40
Maintenance Sand ⅜” – 0	2,900	1.45		
Mineral Aggregate 2” – 1”	2,600	1.30		
Mineral Aggregate 1¾” – ¾”	2,600	1.30		
Mineral Aggregate 1½” – ¾”	2,550	1.28		
Mineral Aggregate 1” – ¾”	2,500	1.25		
Mineral Aggregate ¾” – ½”	2,400	1.20		
Mineral Aggregate 1¼” – ¼’”	2,600	1.30		
Mineral Aggregate 1” – ¼”	2,600	1.30		
Mineral Aggregate ⅞” – ¼”	2,550	1.28		
Mineral Aggregate ¾” – ¼”	2,500	1.25		
Mineral Aggregate ⅝” – ¼”	2,650	1.33		
Mineral Aggregate ½” – ¼” or #4	2,600	1.30		
Mineral Aggregate ¼” or #4 – 0	2,900	1.45		
Concrete Aggr. No. 2 (1 ¼” - #4)	3,000	1.50		
Concrete Sand (Fine Aggregate)	2,900	1.45		
Crushed Cover Stone	2,850	1.43		

** 3,700 lb/cy (1.85 tons/cy) is recommended as the most suitable factor; however, if the grading approaches the coarseness of ballast, the factor would approach 3,800 lb/cy (1.90 tons/cy), and if the grading contains more than 45% sand, the factor would decrease, approaching 3,400 lb/cy (1.70 tons/cy) for material that is essentially all sand.

Notes:

- Weights shown are dry weights and corrections are required for water contents.
- The tabulated weights for the materials are reasonably close; however, apply corrections in the following order:

For specific gravity: $$\text{Wt.} = \frac{\text{tabular wt. x specific gravity on surface report}}{2.65}$$

For water content: Wt. = tabular wt. x (1 + free water % in decimals)

- If material is to be stockpiled, increase required quantities by 10% to allow for waste.
- Direct attention to the inclusion of crushed surfacing top course material that may be required for keystone when estimating quantities for projects having ballast course.

Estimating: Miscellaneous Tables

Exhibit 620-1

General Data[1][2][3]							
Hot Mix Asphalt Pavement							
Complete Mix							
Class of Mix	Depth (ft)	Spread per sy		sy per ton	Tons/Mile Width (ft)		
		lb	ton		10	11	12
HMA	0.10	137	0.0685	14.60	402	442	482

Prime Coats and Fog Seal															
Asphalt							Aggregate								
Application	Type of Asphalt[4]	Application gal[5] per sy	Tons[5] per sy	Tons/Mile Width (ft)			Application lb per sy	Tons/Mile Width (ft)			cy per sy	cy/Mile Width (ft)			
				10	11	12		10	11	12		10	11	12	
Prime Coat	MC-250	0.25	0.001004	5.9	6.5	7.1	30	88	97	106	0.0105	62	68	74	
Fog Seal	CSS-1	0.04	0.000167	1.0	1.1	1.2									

Specific Data[1][2][3]														
Hot Mix Asphalt Paving Quantities (tons/mile)*														
Width (ft)	Depth of Pavement (ft)													
	0.10	**0.15**	**0.20**	**0.25**	**0.30**	**0.35**	**0.40**	**0.45**	**0.50**	**0.55**	**0.60**	**0.65**	**0.70**	**0.75**
4	161	241	321	402	482	563	643	723	804	884	964	1045	1125	1206
6	241	362	482	603	723	844	964	1085	1206	1326	1447	1567	1688	1808
8	321	482	643	804	964	1125	1286	1447	1607	1768	1929	2090	2250	2411
10	402	603	804	1005	1206	1407	1607	1808	2009	2210	2411	2612	2813	3014
11	442	663	884	1105	1326	1547	1768	1989	2210	2431	2652	2873	3094	3315
12	482	723	964	1206	1447	1688	1929	2170	2411	2652	2893	3135	3376	3617
22	884	1326	1768	2210	2652	3094	3536	3978	4421	4863	5305	5747	6189	6631
24	964	1447	1929	2411	2893	3376	3858	4340	4822	5305	5787	6269	6751	7234
* Based on 137 lbs/sy of 0.10 ft compacted depth = 2.05 tons/cy														

Notes:

[1] The specific gravity of the aggregate will affect the weight of aggregate in the completed mix.

[2] The percentage of fine mineral in the coarse aggregate will affect the ratio of coarse to fine. If the coarse aggregate produced contains an excessive amount of fines (¼" to 0), increase the percentage of coarse aggregate and decrease the fines accordingly.

[3] Quantities shown do not provide for widening, waste from stockpile, or thickened edges.

[4] The column "Type of Asphalt" is shown for the purpose of conversion to proper weights for the asphalt being used and does not imply that the particular grade shown is required for the respective treatment.

[5] Quantities shown are retained (residual) asphalt.

Estimating: Hot Mix Asphalt Pavement and Asphalt Distribution Tables

Exhibit 620-2a

Asphalt Distribution (tons/mile)[1]																						
Asphalt Grade	Gal/ton @ 60° F	Width (ft)	Rate of Application (Gal./cy)																			
			0.05	0.10	0.15	0.20	0.25	0.30	0.35	0.40	0.45	0.50	0.55	0.60	0.65	0.70	0.75	0.80	0.85	0.90	0.95	1.00
SC, MC, RC 70	253	10	1.16	2.32	3.48	4.64	5.80	6.96	8.12	9.28	10.46	11.59	12.79	13.91	15.07	16.23	17.39	18.55	19.71	20.87	22.03	23.19
		11	1.28	2.55	3.83	5.10	6.38	7.65	8.93	10.20	11.48	12.75	14.03	15.30	16.58	17.86	19.13	20.41	21.68	22.96	24.23	25.51
		12	1.39	2.78	4.17	5.57	6.96	8.35	9.74	11.13	12.52	13.91	15.30	16.70	18.09	19.48	20.87	22.26	23.65	25.04	26.43	27.83
SC, MC, RC 250	249	10	1.18	2.36	3.53	4.71	5.89	7.07	8.25	9.42	10.60	11.78	12.96	14.14	15.31	16.49	17.67	18.85	20.03	21.20	22.38	23.56
		11	1.30	2.59	3.89	5.18	6.48	7.78	9.07	10.37	11.66	12.96	14.25	15.55	16.85	18.14	19.44	20.73	22.03	23.33	24.62	25.92
		12	1.41	2.83	4.24	5.65	7.07	8.48	9.90	11.31	12.72	14.14	15.55	16.96	18.38	19.79	21.20	22.62	24.03	25.45	26.86	28.27
SC, MC, RC 800	245	10	1.20	2.39	3.59	4.79	5.99	7.18	8.38	9.58	10.78	11.97	13.17	14.37	15.56	16.76	17.96	19.16	20.35	21.55	22.75	23.95
		11	1.30	2.63	3.95	5.27	6.59	7.90	9.22	10.54	11.85	13.17	14.49	15.80	17.12	18.44	19.79	21.07	22.39	23.71	25.02	26.34
		12	1.44	2.87	4.31	5.75	7.18	8.62	10.06	11.49	12.93	14.37	15.80	17.24	18.68	20.11	21.55	22.99	24.42	25.86	27.30	28.73
SC, MC, RC 3000	241	10	1.22	2.44	3.66	4.87	6.09	7.31	8.53	9.75	10.97	12.19	13.41	14.62	15.84	17.06	18.28	19.50	20.72	21.94	23.15	24.37
		11	1.34	2.68	4.02	5.36	6.69	8.03	9.37	10.71	12.05	13.39	14.73	16.07	17.41	18.74	20.08	21.42	22.76	24.10	25.44	26.78
		12	1.46	2.92	4.38	5.84	7.30	8.76	10.22	11.68	13.15	14.61	16.07	17.53	18.99	20.45	21.91	23.37	24.83	26.29	27.75	29.21
Paving Asphalt 200-300 PEN.	239	10	1.23	2.45	3.68	4.91	6.14	7.36	8.59	9.82	11.05	12.27	13.50	14.73	15.96	17.18	18.41	19.64	20.86	22.09	23.32	24.55
		11	1.35	2.70	4.05	5.40	6.75	8.10	9.45	10.80	12.15	13.50	14.85	16.20	17.55	18.90	20.25	21.60	22.95	24.30	25.65	27.00
		12	1.47	2.95	4.42	5.89	7.36	8.84	10.31	11.78	13.26	14.73	16.20	17.67	19.15	20.62	22.09	23.56	25.04	26.51	27.98	29.46
Emulsified Asphalt	240	10	1.22	2.44	3.67	4.89	6.11	7.33	8.56	9.77	11.00	12.22	13.44	14.67	15.89	17.11	18.33	19.56	20.78	22.00	23.22	24.44
		11	1.34	2.67	4.03	5.38	6.72	8.07	9.41	10.76	12.10	13.45	14.79	16.13	17.48	18.82	20.17	21.51	22.86	24.20	25.54	26.89
		12	1.47	2.93	4.40	5.87	7.33	8.80	10.27	11.73	13.20	14.67	16.13	17.60	19.07	20.53	22.00	23.47	24.93	26.40	27.87	29.33

Note:

[1] Quantities of asphalt shown are based on 60° F temperature. Recompute to the application temperature for the particular grade.

Estimating: Asphalt Distribution Tables

Exhibit 620-2b

Bituminous Surface Treatment[1]																	
Class of Mix	Type of Application	Average Application		Mineral Aggregate						Average Spread	Asphalt[2][4][5]						Basic[3] Asphalt Used
				10 ft		11 ft		12 ft			10 ft		11 ft		12 ft		
		lb/sy	cy/sy	T/mi	cy/mi	T/mi	cy/mi	T/mi	cy/mi	gal/sy	gal/mi	T/mi	gal/mi	T/mi	gal/mi	T/mi	
A	Prime Coat									0.48	2787	11.2	3065	12.3	3344	13.4	MC-250
	Crushed Screenings ¾" – ½"	35	0.0146	103	86	113	94	123	103								
	Tack Coat									0.43	2493	10.4	2743	11.4	2992	12.5	CRS-2
	Crushed Screenings ½" – ¼"	28	0.0106	81	62	89	68	97	74								
	Crushed Screenings ¼" – 0"	5	0.0017	15	10	16	11	18	12								
	Totals	68	0.0269	199	158	218	173	238	189	0.91	5280	21.6	5808	23.7	6336	25.9	
B	Seal Coat									0.50	2933	12.2	3227	13.4	3520	14.7	CRS-2
	Crushed Screenings ⅝" – ¼"	33	0.0123	95	72	105	79	114	86								
	Crushed Screenings ¼" – 0"	5	0.0017	15	10	16	11	18	12								
	Totals	38	0.0140	110	82	121	90	132	98	0.50	2933	12.2	3227	13.4	3520	14.7	
C	Seal Coat									0.45	2640	11.0	2904	12.1	3168	13.2	CRS-2
	Crushed Screenings ½" – ¼"	28	0.0106	81	62	89	68	97	74								
	Crushed Screenings ¼" – 0"	5	0.0017	15	10	16	11	18	12								
	Totals	33	0.0123	96	72	105	79	115	86	0.45	2640	11.0	2904	12.1	3168	13.2	
D	Seal Coat									0.43	2493	10.4	2743	11.4	2992	12.5	CRS-2
	Crushed Screenings ⅜" - #10	25	0.0088	73	51	81	57	88	62								
Preseal for B, C & D	Preseal									0.18	1027	4.3	1129	4.7	1232	5.1	CRS-2
	Crushed Screenings ¼" – 0"	12	0.0040	34	23	37	26	40	28								

Notes:

[1] Quantities shown do not provide for widening, waste from stockpile, or thickened edges.

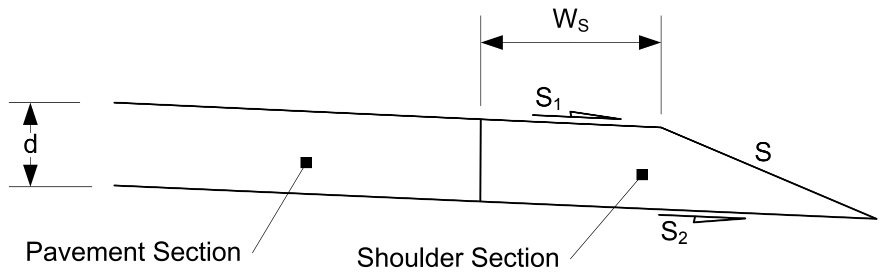
[2] Quantities of asphalt shown are based on 60°F temperature. Recompute to the application temperature for the particular grade.

[3] The column "Basic Asphalt Used" is shown for the purpose of conversion to proper weights for the asphalt being used and does not imply that the particular grade shown is required for the respective treatment.

[4] For cutbacks, decrease asphalt by 25%.

[5] For stress absorbing membrane (rubberized asphalt), increase asphalt by 25%.

Estimating: Bituminous Surface Treatment
Exhibit 620-3



W_S = Shoulder Width (Varies 4 ft, 6 ft, 8 ft, 10 ft, 12 ft)
d = Depth of Section (Varies 0.05 ft to 2 ft)
S = Side Slope (H:V) (Varies 2:1, 3:1, 4:1, and 6:1)
S_1 = Top Shoulder Slope (Varies –0.02 ft/ft or –0.05 ft/ft)
S_2 = Bottom Shoulder Slope (Varies –0.02 ft/ft or –0.05 ft/ft)

Formula for Shoulder Section		
Tons/mile = (A)(K) K=(5280/27)(1.85 tons/cy) $A = \frac{[d + W_S(1/S - S_1)]^2 S}{2(1 - SS_2)} - \frac{W_S^2}{2}(1/S - S_1)$		
Case 1	$S_1 = S_2 = -0.02$ ft/ft	$A = \frac{[d + W_S(1/S - 0.02)]^2 S}{2(1 - 0.02S)} - \frac{W_S^2}{2}(1/S - 0.02)$
Case 2	$S_1 = -0.02$ ft/ft, $S_2 = -0.05$ ft/ft	$A = \frac{[d + W_S(1/S - 0.02)]^2 S}{2(1 - 0.05S)} - \frac{W_S^2}{2}(1/S - 0.02)$
Case 3	$S_1 = -0.05$ ft/ft, $S_2 = -0.02$ ft/ft	$A = \frac{[d + W_S(1/S - 0.05)]^2 S}{2(1 - 0.02S)} - \frac{W_S^2}{2}(1/S - 0.05)$ *
Case 4	$S_1 = S_2 = -0.05$ ft/ft	$A = \frac{[d + W_S(1/S - 0.05)]^2 S}{2(1 - 0.05S)} - \frac{W_S^2}{2}(1/S - 0.05)$
*Limit: Positive Values of A only when d = W_S(0.03)		

EXAMPLE: Shoulder Section

Given:

Shoulder Width (Ws)	= 8 ft
Top Course	= 0.25 ft
Base Course	= 0.80 ft
Total Depth (d)	= 1.05 ft
Side Slope (S)	= 3:1
Shoulder Slope (S1)	= - 0.05
Subgrade Slope (S2)	= - 0.02

Depth	1.05 ft (Case 3)	= 3070 tons/mile
Top Course	0.25 ft (Case 4)	= <u>- 763</u> tons/mile
Base Course		= 2307 tons/mile
Top Course		= 763 tons/mile
Base Course		= 2307 tons/mile

Estimating: Base and Surfacing Typical Section Formulae and Example
Exhibit 620-4

Shoulder Section												
Shldr. Width W_s(ft)	Side Slope S:1	Case	Quantity in Tons Per Mile*									
			Surfacing Depth (ft)									
			0.05	0.10	0.15	0.20	0.25	0.30	0.35	0.40	0.45	0.50
4	2	1	73	148	226	304	385	468	553	639	728	818
		2	171	251	333	417	504	592	682	774	869	965
		3	N/A	N/A	131	205	281	360	440	522	605	691
		4	73	149	226	306	387	470	556	643	733	824
	3	1	74	150	230	313	398	486	577	671	768	868
		2	178	262	350	442	536	634	734	838	945	1056
		3	N/A	N/A	131	206	285	366	450	537	627	720
		4	74	151	231	315	402	492	585	681	780	883
	4	1	74	153	235	321	411	505	603	705	810	920
		2	185	275	370	469	572	681	793	910	1032	1158
		3	N/A	N/A	131	208	288	373	461	554	650	750
		4	75	154	237	326	418	516	617	724	834	950
	6	1	75	157	245	339	439	545	658	776	901	1032
		2	204	307	417	535	661	794	936	1085	1242	1406
		3	N/A	N/A	131	210	296	387	485	589	699	815
		4	76	160	252	351	459	574	696	827	965	1111
6	2	1	109	221	334	449	566	685	806	929	1053	1180
		2	325	444	565	688	812	939	1068	1199	1332	1467
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	239	349	461	575	691	809	929
		4	110	221	335	450	568	687	809	933	1058	1186
	3	1	110	223	339	457	579	703	830	961	1094	1230
		2	338	462	590	722	856	994	1134	1278	1426	1576
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	239	350	464	581	701	824	949
		4	110	223	340	460	583	709	838	970	1106	1245
	4	1	110	225	343	466	592	722	856	994	1136	1282
		2	352	483	619	760	905	1055	1209	1368	1531	1699
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	239	351	467	587	711	839	971
		4	111	226	346	470	599	733	871	1013	1160	1311
	6	1	112	229	353	483	620	762	911	1066	1227	1394
		2	386	534	690	853	1025	1204	1391	1585	1788	1998
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	239	353	474	600	733	871	1016
		4	112	233	360	496	640	791	950	1116	1291	1473
8	2	1	146	293	443	594	747	902	1059	1218	1379	1541
		2	526	683	843	1004	1167	1333	1500	1670	1841	2015
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	376	522	670	820	972	1125
		4	146	293	443	595	749	904	1062	1222	1384	1548
	3	1	146	295	447	602	760	920	1084	1250	1419	1591
		2	546	711	879	1050	1224	1402	1583	1766	1954	2144
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	376	523	673	825	981	1139
		4	146	296	448	604	763	926	1091	1260	1432	1607
	4	1	147	297	452	610	773	939	1109	1284	1462	1644
		2	568	741	919	1101	1288	1479	1675	1875	2080	2290
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	376	524	675	831	990	1153
		4	147	298	454	615	780	950	1124	1302	1486	1673
	6	1	148	302	462	628	801	979	1164	1355	1552	1755
		2	622	816	1017	1226	1443	1668	1900	2140	2388	2643
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	376	525	681	842	1009	1183
		4	149	305	469	641	820	1008	1203	1406	1616	1835

Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities

Exhibit 620-5a

Shoulder Section												
Shldr. Width W_s(ft)	Side Slope S:1	Case	Quantity in Tons Per Mile*									
			Surfacing Depth (ft)									
			0.55	0.60	0.65	0.70	0.75	0.80	0.85	0.90	0.95	1.00
4	2	1	910	1004	1100	1198	1297	1399	1502	1608	1715	1824
		2	1063	1163	1266	1370	1476	1585	1695	1807	1922	2038
		3	779	868	960	1053	1148	1245	1344	1445	1548	1652
		4	918	1013	1110	1210	1311	1415	1520	1628	1738	1849
	3	1	971	1076	1185	1296	1410	1527	1647	1770	1896	2024
		2	1169	1286	1406	1529	1655	1785	1918	2053	2193	2335
		3	816	914	1016	1120	1228	1338	1451	1567	1686	1807
		4	989	1098	1210	1326	1444	1566	1691	1820	1951	2086
	4	1	1034	1151	1273	1398	1528	1661	1798	1939	2085	2234
		2	1289	1424	1564	1708	1857	2010	2168	2330	2497	2668
		3	855	963	1075	1191	1311	1435	1562	1694	1830	1969
		4	1070	1194	1323	1456	1594	1737	1884	2035	2191	2352
	6	1	1169	1312	1462	1617	1779	1947	2121	2301	2488	2680
		2	1579	1759	1947	2142	2346	2557	2776	3002	3237	3479
		3	937	1066	1200	1341	1488	1641	1800	1966	2138	2315
		4	1265	1426	1596	1773	1957	2150	2350	2558	2774	2998
6	2	1	1308	1438	1570	1704	1840	1978	2117	2259	2402	2548
		2	1603	1742	1883	2026	2171	2318	2467	2618	2771	2926
		3	1050	1174	1299	1426	1555	1686	1819	1954	2090	2229
		4	1315	1447	1581	1716	1854	1994	2135	2279	2425	2573
	3	1	1369	1510	1655	1802	1953	2106	2262	2421	2583	2748
		2	1729	1886	2046	2209	2376	2545	2718	2894	3073	3255
		3	1078	1209	1343	1480	1620	1763	1909	2058	2209	2363
		4	1387	1532	1681	1832	1987	2145	2306	2471	2638	2809
	4	1	1432	1586	1743	1905	2070	2240	2413	2591	2772	2957
		2	1871	2048	2229	2415	2606	2801	3000	3204	3412	3625
		3	1106	1246	1389	1537	1688	1843	2003	2166	2333	2504
		4	1467	1628	1793	1963	2137	2315	2499	2686	2878	3075
	6	1	1567	1746	1932	2124	2322	2526	2736	2953	3175	3404
		2	2215	2441	2674	2916	3164	3421	3685	3957	4237	4525
		3	1167	1325	1488	1658	1833	2015	2203	2398	2598	2805
		4	1663	1861	2066	2279	2500	2729	2965	3209	3461	3721
8	2	1	1706	1872	2040	2211	2383	2557	2732	2910	3090	3271
		2	2190	2367	2547	2728	2912	3097	3285	3475	3666	3860
		3	1281	1438	1597	1758	1921	2086	2253	2422	2592	2765
		4	1713	1881	2051	2223	2397	2573	2751	2930	3112	3296
	3	1	1766	1944	2125	2309	2495	2685	2877	3072	3271	3472
		2	2338	2534	2734	2937	3144	3353	3566	3782	4001	4223
		3	1300	1464	1631	1801	1974	2149	2328	2509	2693	2880
		4	1785	1966	2151	2339	2530	2724	2921	3122	3326	3533
	4	1	1830	2020	2214	2411	2613	2819	3028	3242	3459	3681
		2	2504	2722	2945	3172	3404	3641	3882	4128	4378	4632
		3	1320	1491	1666	1845	2028	2215	2405	2600	2799	3001
		4	1865	2062	2263	2469	2679	2894	3114	3337	3566	3799
	6	1	1965	2181	2402	2630	2864	3105	3351	3604	3863	4128
		2	2907	3178	3457	3743	4038	4340	4650	4967	5292	5626
		3	1363	1549	1741	1940	2144	2355	2572	2795	3024	3259
		4	2061	2295	2536	2786	3043	3308	3580	3861	4149	4445

Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities

Exhibit 620-5b

Shoulder Section												
Shldr. Width W_s(ft)	Side Slope S:1	Case	Quantity in Tons Per Mile*									
			Surfacing Depth (ft)									
			0.05	0.10	0.15	0.20	0.25	0.30	0.35	0.40	0.45	0.50
10	2	1	182	366	551	739	928	1119	1312	1507	1704	1903
		2	773	969	1167	1367	1569	1773	1979	2187	2397	2609
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	543	724	908	1094	1281
		4	182	366	552	740	930	1122	1315	1511	1709	1909
	3	1	182	368	556	747	941	1137	1337	1539	1745	1953
		2	802	1007	1215	1426	1640	1858	2079	2303	2530	2760
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	543	725	910	1098	1289
		4	182	368	557	749	944	1143	1344	1549	1757	1968
	4	1	183	370	560	755	954	1156	1363	1573	1787	2006
		2	834	1049	1268	1492	1721	1954	2191	2433	2679	2930
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	543	726	912	1103	1298
		4	183	371	563	760	961	1167	1377	1592	1811	2035
	6	1	184	374	570	773	982	1196	1417	1644	1878	2117
		2	913	1153	1399	1654	1916	2186	2464	2750	3043	3344
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	543	727	917	1113	1316
		4	185	377	578	786	1001	1225	1456	1695	1942	2197
12	2	1	218	438	660	883	1109	1336	1566	1797	2030	2265
		2	1066	1301	1537	1776	2016	2259	2504	2750	2999	3249
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	956	1175	1397
		4	218	438	660	884	1110	1339	1569	1801	2035	2271
	3	1	219	440	664	891	1121	1354	1590	1829	2071	2315
		2	1106	1351	1599	1850	2104	2362	2623	2887	3154	3424
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	956	1177	1401
		4	219	441	666	894	1125	1360	1598	1839	2083	2330
	4	1	219	442	669	900	1134	1373	1616	1862	2113	2367
		2	1151	1407	1668	1933	2203	2478	2757	3040	3328	3621
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	956	1179	1405
		4	219	443	672	904	1142	1384	1630	1881	2137	2397
	6	1	220	446	679	918	1162	1413	1671	1934	2203	2479
		2	1259	1544	1836	2136	2444	2759	3083	3414	3752	4099
		3	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	957	1182	1413
		4	221	450	686	930	1182	1442	1709	1985	2268	2558
Pavement Section												
Width W_P (ft)			0.05	0.10	0.15	0.20	0.25	0.30	0.35	0.40	0.45	0.50
11			199	398	597	796	995	1194	1393	1592	1791	1990
12			217	434	651	868	1085	1302	1519	1737	1954	2171
22			398	796	1194	1592	1990	2388	2786	3184	3582	3980
24			434	868	1302	1737	2171	2605	3039	3473	3907	4341
* Tabulated quantities are based on compacted weight of 1.85 tons/yd^3												

Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities

Exhibit 620-5c

Shoulder Section												
Shldr. Width W_s(ft)	Side Slope S:1	Case	Quantity in Tons Per Mile*									
			Surfacing Depth (ft)									
			0.55	0.60	0.65	0.70	0.75	0.80	0.85	0.90	0.95	1.00
10	2	1	2104	2306	2511	2717	2925	3135	3347	3561	3777	3995
		2	2823	3039	3257	3477	3699	3923	4149	4378	4608	4840
		3	1471	1662	1855	2050	2247	2446	2646	2849	3053	3260
		4	2111	2315	2521	2729	2939	3151	3366	3582	3800	4020
	3	1	2164	2378	2595	2815	3038	3264	3492	3724	3958	4195
		2	2994	3230	3470	3714	3960	4209	4462	4718	4977	5239
		3	1483	1680	1880	2082	2288	2496	2707	2921	3138	3358
		4	2183	2401	2621	2845	3072	3303	3536	3773	4013	4256
	4	1	2228	2454	2684	2918	3156	3398	3643	3893	4147	4404
		2	3186	3446	3710	3980	4253	4531	4814	5101	5393	5689
		3	1496	1699	1905	2116	2330	2548	2770	2996	3227	3460
		4	2263	2496	2734	2976	3222	3473	3729	3989	4253	4522
	6	1	2363	2615	2873	3137	3407	3684	3966	4255	4550	4851
		2	3653	3969	4294	4626	4965	5313	5668	6031	6402	6781
		3	1524	1739	1960	2187	2420	2660	2906	3157	3415	3679
		4	2459	2729	3007	3292	3585	3887	4195	4512	4836	5168
12	2	1	2502	2740	2981	3224	3468	3714	3962	4212	4464	4718
		2	3502	3757	4013	4272	4533	4795	5060	5327	5596	5866
		3	1620	1845	2072	2301	2532	2765	2999	3236	3474	3714
		4	2509	2750	2992	3236	3482	3730	3981	4233	4487	4743
	3	1	2562	2813	3066	3322	3581	3843	4107	4375	4645	4919
		2	3698	3975	4255	4538	4824	5114	5406	5702	6001	6304
		3	1627	1857	2089	2324	2562	2803	3047	3294	3544	3796
		4	2581	2835	3092	3352	3615	3882	4151	4424	4700	4980
	4	1	2626	2888	3154	3424	3698	3976	4258	4544	4834	5128
		2	3918	4220	4526	4837	5152	5472	5796	6125	6458	6796
		3	1635	1869	2107	2348	2594	2844	3098	3355	3617	3882
		4	2661	2930	3204	3482	3765	4052	4344	4640	4941	5246
	6	1	2761	3049	3343	3643	3950	4262	4581	4906	5237	5575
		2	4453	4815	5185	5562	5948	6341	6742	7150	7566	7991
		3	1651	1894	2144	2400	2662	2930	3205	3485	3772	4065
		4	2857	3163	3477	3799	4128	4465	4810	5163	5524	5892

Pavement Section										
Width W_P (ft)	0.55	0.60	0.65	0.70	0.75	0.80	0.85	0.90	0.95	1.00
11	2189	2388	2587	2786	2985	3184	3383	3582	3781	3980
12	2388	2605	2822	3039	3256	3473	3690	3907	4124	4341
22	4378	4775	5173	5571	5969	6367	6765	7163	7561	7959
24	4775	5210	5644	6078	6512	6946	7380	7814	8249	8683

* Tabulated quantities are based on compacted weight of 1.85 tons/yd^3

Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities

Exhibit 620-5d

Shoulder Section												
Shldr. Width W_s(ft)	Side Slope S:1	Case	Quantity in Tons Per Mile*									
			Surfacing Depth (ft)									
			1.05	1.10	1.15	1.20	1.25	1.30	1.35	1.40	1.45	1.50
4	2	1	1935	2048	2163	2279	2398	2518	2640	2765	2891	3019
		2	2157	2277	2399	2524	2650	2779	2909	3042	3176	3312
		3	1759	1867	1977	2089	2203	2319	2437	2557	2678	2802
		4	1963	2078	2196	2315	2437	2561	2686	2814	2943	3075
	3	1	2156	2290	2428	2568	2711	2857	3006	3157	3312	3470
		2	2480	2629	2781	2936	3094	3255	3420	3588	3759	3933
		3	1932	2059	2190	2323	2459	2598	2740	2885	3033	3183
		4	2223	2364	2509	2656	2806	2960	3117	3277	3441	3607
	4	1	2387	2543	2704	2869	3038	3210	3387	3567	3752	3940
		2	2844	3025	3210	3399	3593	3792	3995	4202	4415	4631
		3	2113	2260	2412	2567	2726	2890	3057	3228	3403	3582
		4	2517	2686	2860	3039	3222	3410	3602	3799	4000	4206
	6	1	2879	3084	3295	3513	3736	3966	4201	4443	4691	4946
		2	3729	3986	4252	4525	4806	5094	5391	5695	6007	6327
		3	2499	2689	2886	3088	3297	3512	3733	3960	4193	4433
		4	3229	3468	3715	3969	4232	4502	4779	5065	5358	5659
6	2	1	2695	2844	2995	3147	3302	3459	3617	3778	3940	4104
		2	3083	3242	3403	3566	3731	3898	4067	4238	4411	4586
		3	2369	2511	2655	2802	2949	3099	3251	3404	3560	3717
		4	2722	2874	3028	3184	3341	3501	3663	3827	3993	4160
	3	1	2916	3086	3260	3436	3615	3798	3983	4170	4361	4555
		2	3440	3629	3821	4016	4214	4416	4620	4828	5039	5253
		3	2521	2681	2844	3010	3179	3351	3525	3703	3883	4067
		4	2983	3160	3341	3524	3711	3901	4094	4290	4490	4692
	4	1	3146	3339	3536	3737	3942	4151	4364	4580	4801	5026
		2	3843	4065	4291	4523	4758	4998	5243	5492	5746	6004
		3	2679	2858	3041	3228	3418	3613	3812	4014	4221	4431
		4	3276	3482	3692	3907	4127	4350	4579	4812	5049	5291
	6	1	3639	3880	4127	4381	4640	4906	5178	5456	5741	6031
		2	4820	5123	5434	5753	6079	6413	6755	7105	7462	7827
		3	3017	3236	3461	3693	3930	4174	4423	4679	4941	5210
		4	3989	4264	4547	4837	5136	5442	5756	6078	6407	6745
8	2	1	3454	3640	3827	4016	4207	4399	4594	4791	4989	5189
		2	4055	4253	4452	4654	4858	5063	5271	5480	5692	5906
		3	2939	3115	3293	3473	3655	3839	4024	4212	4401	4592
		4	3482	3670	3860	4052	4246	4442	4640	4840	5042	5246
	3	1	3675	3882	4092	4304	4520	4738	4959	5183	5410	5640
		2	4449	4677	4909	5144	5382	5624	5869	6116	6367	6622
		3	3070	3263	3459	3658	3859	4064	4271	4481	4695	4911
		4	3743	3956	4173	4392	4615	4841	5071	5303	5539	5778
	4	1	3906	4135	4368	4606	4847	5092	5341	5593	5850	6111
		2	4891	5155	5423	5696	5973	6255	6541	6832	7127	7427
		3	3208	3418	3632	3851	4073	4299	4529	4763	5001	5243
		4	4036	4278	4524	4775	5031	5291	5556	5825	6098	6376
	6	1	4399	4676	4959	5249	5545	5847	6155	6469	6790	7116
		2	5966	6315	6671	7035	7407	7787	8174	8569	8972	9383
		3	3501	3749	4002	4262	4529	4801	5079	5364	5655	5952
		4	4748	5060	5379	5706	6040	6383	6733	7091	7456	7830

Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5e

Shoulder Section												
Shldr. Width W_s(ft)	Side Slope S:1	Case	Quantity in Tons Per Mile*									
			Surfacing Depth (ft)									
			1.55	1.60	1.65	1.70	1.75	1.80	1.85	1.90	1.95	2.00
4	2	1	3148	3280	3414	3549	3687	3826	3967	4110	4255	4402
		2	3451	3591	3734	3878	4025	4173	4324	4477	4631	4788
		3	2927	3054	3183	3314	3447	3582	3718	3857	3997	4139
		4	3209	3344	3482	3622	3763	3907	4053	4201	4350	4502
	3	1	3630	3793	3959	4129	4300	4475	4653	4834	5017	5203
		2	4110	4291	4475	4662	4852	5045	5242	5441	5644	5850
		3	3337	3493	3652	3814	3979	4147	4318	4492	4668	4848
		4	3777	3950	4126	4305	4488	4673	4862	5054	5250	5448
	4	1	4133	4329	4529	4733	4941	5153	5369	5589	5812	6040
		2	4852	5078	5308	5543	5782	6026	6274	6527	6784	7046
		3	3764	3951	4142	4337	4535	4738	4944	5155	5369	5587
		4	4416	4631	4850	5074	5302	5535	5773	6015	6261	6512
	6	1	5206	5473	5745	6024	6310	6601	6898	7202	7512	7828
		2	6654	6989	7332	7683	8041	8407	8781	9163	9552	9950
		3	4678	4930	5188	5452	5722	5999	6282	6570	6865	7166
		4	5968	6285	6609	6941	7281	7628	7984	8347	8718	9096
6	2	1	4270	4438	4608	4779	4953	5128	5306	5485	5666	5849
		2	4763	4942	5123	5306	5491	5678	5868	6059	6252	6447
		3	3876	4038	4201	4365	4532	4701	4871	5044	5218	5394
		4	4330	4502	4676	4852	5030	5210	5391	5575	5761	5949
	3	1	4752	4951	5153	5359	5567	5778	5992	6208	6428	6651
		2	5471	5691	5915	6142	6372	6605	6842	7082	7325	7571
		3	4253	4442	4634	4829	5026	5227	5430	5637	5846	6058
		4	4898	5107	5320	5535	5754	5976	6201	6429	6660	6895
	4	1	5254	5486	5723	5963	6207	6455	6707	6963	7223	7487
		2	6267	6534	6806	7082	7363	7648	7938	8233	8532	8835
		3	4645	4864	5086	5312	5542	5776	6014	6256	6501	6751
		4	5537	5788	6044	6304	6569	6838	7111	7389	7672	7959
	6	1	6328	6630	6939	7254	7576	7903	8237	8577	8923	9275
		2	8200	8581	8969	9365	9769	10181	10600	11028	11463	11905
		3	5484	5765	6051	6344	6643	6949	7260	7578	7901	8231
		4	7090	7442	7803	8171	8547	8931	9322	9721	10128	10543
8	2	1	5391	5595	5801	6009	6219	6431	6644	6859	7077	7296
		2	6121	6339	6559	6780	7004	7230	7457	7687	7919	8153
		3	4785	4980	5177	5376	5577	5779	5984	6190	6398	6608
		4	5452	5660	5870	6082	6296	6512	6730	6950	7172	7396
	3	1	5873	6109	6347	6589	6833	7080	7330	7583	7839	8098
		2	6879	7140	7403	7670	7940	8214	8490	8770	9053	9339
		3	5129	5351	5576	5803	6034	6267	6503	6743	6985	7229
		4	6020	6265	6514	6765	7020	7278	7539	7804	8071	8342
	4	1	6376	6644	6917	7193	7473	7758	8046	8338	8634	8934
		2	7731	8040	8354	8671	8994	9321	9652	9988	10329	10674
		3	5488	5738	5992	6249	6511	6776	7046	7319	7596	7877
		4	6659	6946	7238	7534	7835	8140	8450	8764	9083	9406
	6	1	7449	7788	8133	8485	8842	9206	9575	9951	10333	10722
		2	9801	10227	10661	11103	11552	12009	12474	12947	13427	13915
		3	6255	6565	6880	7202	7530	7864	8204	8550	8903	9262
		4	8211	8600	8997	9401	9813	10233	10661	11096	11539	11990

Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5f

Shoulder Section												
Shldr. Width W_s(ft)	Side Slope S:1	Case	Quantity in Tons Per Mile*									
			Surfacing Depth (ft)									
			1.05	1.10	1.15	1.20	1.25	1.30	1.35	1.40	1.45	1.50
10	2	1	4214	4436	4659	4884	5111	5340	5571	5804	6038	6275
		2	5074	5310	5548	5788	6031	6275	6521	6769	7019	7272
		3	3468	3678	3890	4104	4320	4537	4757	4978	5201	5427
		4	4242	4466	4692	4920	5150	5382	5617	5853	6091	6331
	3	1	4435	4678	4924	5173	5424	5679	5936	6196	6460	6726
		2	5505	5774	6045	6320	6599	6880	7165	7453	7744	8038
		3	3581	3806	4035	4266	4501	4738	4978	5221	5467	5715
		4	4503	4752	5005	5261	5520	5782	6048	6316	6588	6863
	4	1	4666	4931	5201	5474	5751	6032	6317	6606	6899	7196
		2	5990	6295	6605	6919	7238	7561	7889	8221	8558	8900
		3	3698	3940	4186	4436	4689	4947	5208	5474	5743	6017
		4	4796	5074	5357	5644	5935	6232	6532	6838	7147	7462
	6	1	5158	5472	5792	6117	6449	6787	7132	7482	7839	8202
		2	7167	7561	7963	8373	8790	9215	9648	10088	10537	10993
		3	3950	4226	4509	4798	5093	5394	5701	6015	6334	6660
		4	5508	5856	6211	6574	6945	7323	7710	8104	8506	8915
12	2	1	4974	5231	5491	5752	6015	6281	6548	6816	7087	7360
		2	6139	6414	6691	6969	7250	7533	7818	8104	8393	8684
		3	3956	4200	4446	4694	4944	5195	5449	5704	5961	6220
		4	5002	5262	5524	5788	6055	6323	6593	6866	7140	7416
	3	1	5195	5474	5756	6041	6329	6619	6913	7209	7509	7811
		2	6609	6918	7230	7545	7863	8184	8509	8837	9168	9502
		3	4052	4310	4571	4836	5103	5372	5645	5921	6199	6481
		4	5262	5548	5837	6129	6424	6723	7024	7329	7637	7948
	4	1	5425	5727	6033	6342	6656	6973	7294	7619	7948	8282
		2	7138	7485	7836	8192	8553	8917	9287	9661	10039	10422
		3	4151	4425	4702	4983	5268	5557	5850	6147	6448	6753
		4	5556	5870	6189	6512	6840	7172	7509	7851	8197	8547
	6	1	5918	6268	6624	6986	7354	7728	8109	8495	8888	9287
		2	8422	8862	9309	9764	10227	10698	11176	11662	12156	12657
		3	4364	4669	4981	5298	5622	5952	6288	6630	6979	7333
		4	6268	6652	7043	7442	7849	8264	8687	9117	9555	10001
Pavement Section												
Width W_P (ft)			1.05	1.10	1.15	1.20	1.25	1.30	1.35	1.40	1.45	1.50
11			4179	4378	4576	4775	4974	5173	5372	5571	5770	5969
12			4558	4775	4993	5210	5427	5644	5861	6078	6295	6512
22			8357	8755	9153	9551	9949	10347	10745	11143	11541	11939
24			9117	9551	9985	10419	10853	11287	11722	12156	12590	13024
* Tabulated quantities are based on compacted weight of 1.85 tons/yd^3												

Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities

Exhibit 620-5g

Shoulder Section												
Shldr. Width W_s(ft)	Side Slope S:1	Case	Quantity in Tons Per Mile*									
			Surfacing Depth (ft)									
			1.55	**1.60**	**1.65**	**1.70**	**1.75**	**1.80**	**1.85**	**1.90**	**1.95**	**2.00**
10	2	1	6513	6753	6995	7239	7485	7733	7983	8234	8488	8743
		2	7526	7782	8041	8301	8563	8827	9094	9362	9632	9905
		3	5654	5883	6113	6346	6581	6817	7056	7296	7538	7782
		4	6573	6818	7064	7312	7562	7814	8069	8325	8583	8843
	3	1	6995	7266	7541	7819	8099	8382	8669	8958	9250	9545
		2	8335	8636	8940	9247	9557	9870	10187	10506	10829	11156
		3	5967	6221	6479	6739	7002	7268	7537	7809	8084	8361
		4	7141	7423	7707	7995	8286	8581	8878	9179	9482	9789
	4	1	7497	7802	8111	8423	8740	9060	9385	9713	10045	10381
		2	9246	9596	9951	10311	10675	11043	11416	11794	12176	12563
		3	6294	6575	6860	7149	7442	7739	8040	8344	8653	8966
		4	7780	8104	8432	8764	9101	9442	9788	10139	10494	10853
	6	1	8571	8946	9327	9715	10108	10508	10914	11326	11744	12169
		2	11457	11928	12408	12895	13390	13892	14403	14921	15447	15980
		3	6992	7330	7674	8025	8382	8744	9113	9488	9870	10257
		4	9333	9758	10191	10631	11079	11536	11999	12471	12950	13437
12	2	1	7634	7911	8189	8469	8751	9035	9321	9609	9899	10190
		2	8977	9272	9569	9868	10168	10471	10776	11083	11392	11703
		3	6481	6744	7009	7276	7544	7814	8087	8361	8637	8915
		4	7695	7975	8258	8542	8828	9117	9407	9700	9994	10291
	3	1	8116	8424	8735	9049	9365	9685	10007	10333	10661	10992
		2	9840	10180	10524	10871	11221	11575	11931	12291	12654	13020
		3	6765	7052	7342	7635	7931	8230	8532	8836	9144	9454
		4	8263	8581	8901	9225	9553	9883	10216	10553	10893	11236
	4	1	8619	8960	9304	9653	10006	10363	10723	11088	11456	11829
		2	10810	11202	11599	12000	12405	12816	13230	13650	14073	14502
		3	7061	7374	7691	8011	8335	8664	8996	9332	9672	10017
		4	8902	9262	9626	9994	10367	10745	11127	11514	11905	12300
	6	1	9692	10103	10521	10945	11374	11810	12253	12701	13155	13616
		2	13167	13684	14209	14741	15282	15830	16386	16949	17521	18100
		3	7694	8061	8434	8813	9199	9590	9988	10392	10802	11218
		4	10454	10915	11384	11861	12346	12838	13338	13846	14361	14885
Pavement Section												
Width W_P (ft)			**1.55**	**1.60**	**1.65**	**1.70**	**1.75**	**1.80**	**1.85**	**1.90**	**1.95**	**2.00**
11			6168	6367	6566	6765	6964	7163	7362	7561	7760	7959
12			6729	6946	7163	7380	7597	7814	8031	8249	8466	8683
22			12337	12735	13133	13530	13928	14326	1472	14122	15520	15918
24			13458	13892	14326	14761	15195	15629	16063	16497	16931	17365
* Tabulated quantities are based on compacted weight of 1.85 tons/yd^3												

Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5h

Chapter 630 Geosynthetics

630.01 General
630.02 References
630.03 Geosynthetic Types and Characteristics
630.04 Geosynthetic Function Definitions and Applications
630.05 Design Approach for Geosynthetics
630.06 Design Responsibility
630.07 Documentation

630.01 General

Geosynthetics include a variety of manufactured products that are used by the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) in drainage, earthwork, erosion control, and soil reinforcement applications.

The following geosynthetic applications are addressed in the *Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications)*:

- Low survivability underground drainage
- Moderate survivability underground drainage
- Separation
- Soil stabilization
- Moderate survivability permanent erosion control
- High survivability permanent erosion control
- Ditch lining
- Temporary silt fence

The *Standard Specifications* addresses geosynthetic properties as well as installation requirements and are not site-specific. The geosynthetic properties provided are based on the range of soil conditions likely to be encountered in Washington for the applications defined. Other applications, such as prefabricated edge drains, pond liners, and geotextile retaining walls, are currently handled by special provision.

Design responsibilities are discussed in 630.05 and illustrated in Exhibits 630-4 and 630-5.

This chapter does not address applications where geosynthetics are used to help establish vegetation through temporary prevention of erosion (vegetation mats).

630.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Highway Runoff Manual, M 31-15, WSDOT

Hydraulics Manual, M 23-03, WSDOT

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

WSDOT Pavement Policy
www.wsdot.wa.gov/biz/mats/pavement/WSDOT_Pavement_Policy.pdf

630.03 Geosynthetic Types and Characteristics

Geosynthetics include woven and nonwoven geotextiles, geogrids, geonets, geomembranes, and geocomposites. (Examples of the various types of geosynthetics are provided in Exhibit 630-6.) Terms used in the past for these construction materials include *fabrics*, *filter fabric*, or *filter cloth,* which are for the most part synonymous with the newer term *geotextile*.

(1) Definitions

Definitions of the geosynthetic types are as follows:

(a) **Woven Geotextiles**

Slit polymer tapes, monofilament fibers, fibrillated yarns, or multifilament yarns simply woven into a mat. Woven geotextiles generally have relatively high strength and stiffness and, except for the monofilament wovens, relatively poor drainage characteristics.

(b) **Nonwoven Geotextiles**

A sheet of continuous or staple fibers entangled randomly into a felt for needle-punched nonwovens and pressed and melted together at the fiber contact points for heat-bonded nonwovens. Nonwoven geotextiles tend to have low-to-medium strength and stiffness with high elongation at failure and relatively good drainage characteristics. The high elongation characteristic gives them superior ability to deform around stones and sticks.

(c) **Geogrids**

A polymer grid mat constructed either of coated yarns or a punched and stretched polymer sheet. Geogrids usually have high strength and stiffness and are used primarily for soil reinforcement.

(d) **Geonets**

Similar to geogrids, but typically lighter weight and weaker, with smaller mesh openings. Geonets are used in light reinforcement applications or are combined with drainage geotextiles to form a drainage structure.

(e) **Geomembranes**

Impervious polymer sheets that are typically used to line ponds or landfills. In some cases, geomembranes are placed over moisture-sensitive swelling clays to control moisture.

(f) **Geocomposites**

Prefabricated edge drains, wall drains, and sheet drains that typically consist of a cuspated or dimpled polyethylene drainage core wrapped in a geotextile. The geotextile wrap keeps the core clean so that water can freely flow through the drainage core, which acts as a conduit. Prefabricated edge drains are used in place of shallow geotextile-wrapped trench drains at the edges of the roadway to provide subgrade and base drainage. Wall drains and sheet drains are typically placed between the back of the wall and the soil to drain the soil retained by the wall.

630.04 Geosynthetic Function Definitions and Applications

The function of the geosynthetic varies with the application. (See Exhibit 630-7 for examples of the various applications.) The geosynthetic must be designed with its application function(s) in mind. Typical geosynthetic functions include filtration, drainage, separation, reinforcement, and erosion control.

(1) Definitions

Definitions of these functions and examples of their dominant applications are as follows:

(a) **Geosynthetic Filtration**

The passage of water through the geosynthetic relatively unimpeded (permeability or permittivity) without allowing passage of soil through the geosynthetic (retention). This is the primary function of geotextiles in underground drainage applications.

(b) **Drainage**

The carrying of water in the plane of the geosynthetic as a conduit (transmissivity) is a primary function of geocomposite drains. In some cases, the function includes thick, nonwoven needle-punched geotextiles placed in underground drainage applications where water must be transported away from a given location by the geosynthetic itself.

(c) **Separation**

The prevention of the mixing of two dissimilar materials. This is a primary function of geotextiles placed between a fine-grained subgrade and a granular base course beneath a roadway.

(d) **Reinforcement**

The strengthening of a soil mass by the inclusion of elements (geosynthetics) that have tensile strength. This is the primary function of high-strength geotextiles and geogrids in geosynthetic reinforced wall or slope applications, or in roadways placed over very soft subgrade soils that are inadequate to support the weight of the construction equipment or even the embankment itself.

(e) **Geosynthetic Erosion Control**

The minimizing of surficial soil particle movement due to the flow of water over the surface of bare soil or due to the disturbance of soil caused by construction activities under or near bodies of water. This is the primary function of geotextiles used as silt fences or placed beneath riprap or other stones on soil slopes. Silt fences keep eroded soil particles on the construction site, whereas geotextiles placed beneath riprap or other stones on soil slopes prevent erosion from taking place at all. In general, the permanent erosion control methods described in this chapter are only used where more natural means (like the use of biodegradable vegetation mats to establish vegetation to prevent erosion) are not feasible.

These functions control some of the geosynthetic properties, such as apparent opening size (AOS) and permittivity, and in some cases load-strain characteristics.

The application will also affect the geosynthetic installation conditions. These installation conditions influence the remaining geosynthetic properties needed, based on the *survivability* level required.

(f) **Geosynthetic Survivability**

The ability of the geosynthetic to resist installation conditions without significant damage, such that the geosynthetic can function as intended. Survivability affects the strength properties of the geosynthetic required.

630.05 Design Approach for Geosynthetics

The following questions must be answered to complete a geosynthetic design:

- Is a geosynthetic really needed?
- What geosynthetic properties will ensure the geosynthetic functions as intended?
- Where should the geosynthetic be located?
- Will maintenance of the geosynthetic, or the structure of which it is a part, be needed? If so, how will it be maintained?

The site conditions and purpose for the geotextile are reviewed to determine whether or not a geotextile is needed.

- For most drainage, separation, soil stabilization, permanent erosion control, and silt fence applications, if a geotextile is needed, the geotextile properties in the *Standard Specifications* can be used.
- In some situations where soil conditions are especially troublesome or in critical or high-risk applications, a project-specific design may be needed.
- The location of the geosynthetic will depend on how it is intended to function. (See Exhibit 630-7 for examples.)
- Consider the flow path of any groundwater or surface water when locating and selecting the geotextile to be used. For example, in permanent erosion control applications, water may flow to the geotextile from the existing ground as well as from the surface through wave action, stream flow, or overland sheet flow. For saturated fine sandy or silty subgrades, water must be able to flow from the subgrade through the geotextile soil stabilization layer during the pumping action caused by traffic loads.

Background information and the answers to each of these questions, or at least guidance to obtaining the answers to these questions, are provided for each of the following *Standard Specifications* applications:

(1) Underground Drainage: Low and Moderate Survivability

Geotextiles used for underground drainage must provide filtration to allow water to reach the drain aggregate without allowing the aggregate to be contaminated by finer soil particles.

Geotextile filtration properties are a function of the soil type. For underground drainage applications, if the subgrade soil is relatively clean gravel or coarse sand, a geotextile is probably not required. At issue is whether or not there are enough fines in the surrounding soil to eventually clog the drain rock or drain pipe if unrestricted flow toward the drain is allowed.

To approximately match the geotextile filtration properties to various soil types, specifications for three classes of Construction Geotextile for Underground Drainage are available in the *Standard Specifications*. For underground drainage applications, use the gradation of the soil, specifically the percent by weight passing the #200 sieve, to select the drainage geotextile class required. Base your selection of the appropriate class of geotextile on Exhibit 630-1.

Percent Passing the #200 Sieve	Geotextile Class
Less than 15%	A
15% to 50%	B
Greater than 50%	C

Selection Criteria for Geotextile Class
Exhibit 630-1

Obtain soil samples for geotextile underdrain design every 300 feet along the roadway alignment, using hand holes, and at major soil type transitions. This may be spread to every 1000 feet if the soil conditions appear to be uniform. Use existing soil data where feasible instead of taking new soil samples.

If soil conditions vary widely along the alignment where underground drainage geotextile is anticipated, different classes of drainage geotextile may be required for specific sections of a continuous system.

Strength properties for the underground drainage geotextile depend on the survivability level required to resist installation stresses.

Low survivability designates that the installation stresses placed on the geotextile will be relatively low, requiring only moderate geotextile strength to resist potentially damaging installation conditions. Examples of low survivability level underground drainage applications include:

- Trench drains.
- Drains placed behind walls or other structures to drain the backfill.
- A geotextile filter sheet placed behind a gabion wall to prevent fines from being washed through the gabion wall face. Trench depths, or the height of the geotextile filter sheet behind gabion walls, must be less than or equal to 6 feet for the low survivability level.

In moderate survivability applications, significant installation stresses may occur, requiring higher geotextile strength. Examples of the moderate survivability application include:

- Trench drains with a depth of greater than 6 feet.
- A geotextile filter sheet behind a gabion wall with a height greater than 6 feet.
- Any area drain.

An area drain is defined as a geotextile placed over or under a horizontal-to-moderately sloping (1.5H:1V or flatter slope) layer of drainage aggregate. Examples of area drains include:

- Drainage layers over cut-and-cover tunnels.
- Rock buttress drainage.

- Permeable base beneath highway pavement (see the *WSDOT Pavement Policy* for additional information on permeable bases).
- A parking lot drainage layer.

Note that pipe wrapping (the geotextile is wrapped around the surface of the pipe) is not included as an underground drainage application.

Locate the geotextile such that it will function as intended. For example, if the objective is to keep the drainage aggregate surrounding a drain pipe clean, locate the geotextile so that it completely separates the drainage aggregate from more silty surrounding soils, which may include native soils as well as relatively silty roadway base or fill materials.

Consider the flow path of any groundwater or surface water when locating the geotextile.

The flow path from the geotextile, as part of the groundwater drainage, is typically directed to a surface water conveyance system. Design of surface water conveyance is guided by the *Hydraulics Manual*. The surface water conveyance must be low enough to prevent backflow and charging of the groundwater drainage—typically, by matching inverts of groundwater drainage to crowns of surface water conveyance pipes. A 1-foot allowance is usually applied when connecting to open water or ditches.

(2) Separation

Geotextile used for separation must prevent penetration of relatively fine grained subgrade soil into the ballast or other roadway or parking lot surfacing material to prevent contamination of the surfacing material (the separation function). This application may also apply to situations other than beneath roadway or parking lot surfacing where it is not necessary for water to drain through the geotextile unimpeded (filtration), but where separation of two dissimilar materials is required.

Separation geotextile should only be used in roadway applications where the subgrade is can be prepared and compacted as required in the *Standard Specifications*, but without removal and replacement of the subgrade soil with granular material. Such removal and replacement defeats the purpose of the geotextile separator.

Separation geotextile placed beneath roadway surfacing is feasible if the subgrade resilient modulus is greater than 5,800 psi and if a saturated fine sandy, silty, or clayey subgrade is not likely to be present. Note that the feasibility of separation geotextile may be dependent on the time of year and weather conditions expected when the geotextile is to be installed.

For separation applications, a geotextile is not needed if the subgrade is dense and granular (silty sands and gravels), but is not saturated fine sands. In general, a separation geotextile is not needed if the subgrade resilient modulus is greater than 15,000 psi.

(3) Soil Stabilization

Geotextile used for soil stabilization must function as a separator, a filtration layer, and (to a minor extent) a reinforcement layer. This application is similar to the separation application, except the subgrade is anticipated to be softer and wetter than in the separation application.

Soil stabilization geotextile is used in roadway applications if the subgrade is too soft and wet to be prepared and compacted as required in the *Standard Specifications*. Soil stabilization geotextile is placed directly on the soft subgrade material, even if some overexcavation of the subgrade is performed. Backfill to replace the overexcavated subgrade is not placed below the geotextile soil stabilization layer, as this would defeat the purpose of the geotextile.

Anticipate the need for soil stabilization geotextile if the subgrade resilient modulus is less than or equal to 5,800 psi, or if a saturated fine sandy, silty, or clayey subgrade is likely to be present.

Consider the flow path of any groundwater or surface water when locating the soil stabilization geotextile and when selecting the geotextile to be used. For saturated fine sandy or silty subgrades, water must be able to flow from the subgrade through the geotextile soil stabilization layer during the pumping action caused by traffic loads.

Even if the subgrade is not anticipated to be saturated based on available data, if the subgrade is silty or clayey and it is anticipated that the geotextile will be installed during prolonged wet weather, a soil stabilization geotextile may still be needed.

Soil stabilization geotextile should not be used for roadway fills greater than 5 feet high or when extremely soft and wet silt, clay, or peat is anticipated at the subgrade level (for example, the deposits encountered in wetlands). In such cases, the reinforcement function becomes more dominant, requiring a site-specific design.

(4) Permanent Erosion Control: Moderate and High Survivability

The primary function of geotextile used for permanent erosion control is to protect the soil beneath it from erosion due to water flowing over the protected soil.

The need for a permanent erosion control geotextile depends on the type and magnitude of water flow over the soil being considered for protection, the soil type in terms of its erodability, and the type and amount of vegetative cover present (see the *Highway Runoff Manual*).

The source of flowing water could be streams, constructed channels, wave action, or runoff. Water may also flow from the soil behind the geotextile depending on the groundwater level.

If groundwater cannot escape through the geotextile, an erosion control system failure termed *ballooning* (resulting from water pressure buildup behind the geotextile) or soil piping could occur. Therefore, the geotextile must have good filtration characteristics.

Three classes of permanent erosion control geotextile are available to approximately match geotextile filtration characteristics to the soil. In order to select the drainage geotextile class, determine the gradation of the soil, specifically the percent by weight passing the #200 sieve. Base selection of the appropriate class of geotextile on Exhibit 630-1.

A minimal amount of soil sampling and testing is needed to determine the geotextile class required. Permanent erosion control geotextile generally does not extend along the roadway alignment for significant distances as does underground drainage geotextile. One soil sample per permanent erosion control location is sufficient. If multiple erosion control locations are anticipated along a roadway alignment, soil sampling requirements for underground drainage can be applied.

If soil conditions vary widely along the alignment where permanent erosion control geotextile is anticipated, different classes of erosion control geotextile may be required for specific sections of a continuous system.

Examples of the permanent erosion control application are the placement of geotextile beneath riprap or gabions along drainage channels, shorelines, and waterways; around bridge piers; and under slope protection for highway cut or fill slopes.

If a moderate survivability geotextile is to be used, the geotextile must be protected by a 12-inch aggregate cushion and be placed on slopes of 2H:1V or flatter to keep installation stresses to a relatively low level. Large stones can cause significant damage to a moderate survivability geotextile if the geotextile is not protected in this manner. If these conditions are not met, then a high survivability erosion control geotextile must be used.

(5) Ditch Lining

The primary function of the geotextile in a ditch lining application is to protect the soil beneath it from erosion. This ditch lining application is limited to constructed ditches less than 16 feet wide at the top with side slopes of 2H:1V or flatter. If the ditch does not meet these requirements, then permanent erosion control, with moderate or high survivability geotextile, must be used. It is assumed that only quarry spall-sized stones or smaller will be placed on the geotextile, so only a moderate survivability geotextile will be required.

Filtration is not a significant function in this application. Since the ditch is relatively shallow, it is expected that the main water source will be the water carried by the ditch, and little water will pass through the geotextile.

Another application with a similar geotextile function is the placement of geotextile below culvert outlets to prevent erosion at the outlet.

(6) Temporary Silt Fence

The primary function of geotextile used in a temporary silt fence is to prevent eroded material from being transported away from the construction site by runoff water. The silt fence acts primarily as a temporary dam and secondarily as a filter.

In some cases, depending on the topography, the silt fence may also function as a barrier to direct flow to low areas at the bottom of swales where the water can be collected and temporarily ponded. It is desirable to avoid the barrier function as much as possible, as silt fences are best suited to intercepting sheet flow rather than the concentrated flows that would occur in swales or intermittent drainage channels.

To function as intended, the silt fence should have a low enough permeability to allow the water to be temporarily retained behind the fence, allowing suspended soil particles in the water to settle to the ground. If the retention time is too long, or if the flow rate of water is too high, the silt fence could be overtopped, thus allowing silt-laden water to escape. Therefore, a minimal amount of water must be able to flow through the fence at all times.

Temporary water ponding is considered the primary method of silt removal and the filtration capabilities of the fence are the second line of defense. However, removal of silt-sized particles from the water directly by the geotextile creates severe filtration conditions for the geotextile, forcing the geotextile to either blind or allow the fines to pipe through the geotextile. (Blinding is the coating of the geotextile surface with soil particles such that the openings are effectively plugged.) If the geotextile openings (AOS) are designed to be small enough to capture most of the suspended soil particles, the geotextile will likely blind, reducing the permeability enough to allow water to overtop the fence. Therefore, it is best to allow some geotextile openings that are large enough to allow the silt-sized particles to easily pass through. Even if some silt particles pass through the fence, the water flow rate below the fence will be decreased and the volume of silt-laden water passing through the geotextile is likely to be relatively small and the water is partially filtered.

The geotextile apparent opening size (AOS) and permittivity are typically used to specify the filtration performance of geotextiles. The geotextile function in silt fence applications is more complex than this and AOS and permittivity do not relate directly to how well a silt fence will perform. However, nominal values of AOS and permittivity can be specified such that the types of geotextile products known to perform satisfactorily in this application are selected. These values are provided in the *Standard Specifications*.

The source of load on the geotextile is from silt buildup at the fence and water ponding. The amount of strength required to resist this load depends on whether or not the geotextile is supported with a wire or polymer grid mesh between the fence posts. Obviously, unsupported geotextile must have greater strength than supported geotextile. If the strength of the geotextile or its support system is inadequate, the silt fence could fail. Furthermore, unsupported geotextile must have enough stiffness that it does not deform excessively and allow silt-laden water to go over the top of the fence.

(a) **Need for Silt Fence**

The need for a silt fence can be anticipated where construction activities disturb and expose soil that could erode. The ground surface is considered disturbed if vegetative cover is at least partially removed over a significant area by construction activities. Consider whether or not silt-laden runoff water from the disturbed area can reach an environmentally sensitive area or a constructed stormwater system. If the exposed soil is a clean sand or gravel or if a significant zone of heavy vegetative cover separates the exposed soil from the environmentally sensitive area, a silt fence may not even be needed. Contact the Headquarters (HQ) Hydraulics Section for help in determining whether or not a silt fence is needed in such situations.

(b) **Feasibility of Silt Fence**

The feasibility of a geotextile silt fence depends on the magnitude of water flow to the fence, the steepness of the slope behind the fence ,and whether or not flow is concentrated at the fence. If the silt fence is not feasible, alternative erosion control methods may be needed (see the *Highway Runoff Manual*).

Consider all feasible erosion control options in terms of potential effectiveness and economy before making the final decision to use a silt fence. Select the best option for the site conditions, including site geometry and contours, soil type, and rainfall potential. Consider silt fences for temporary erosion control in disturbed areas in the following circumstances:

- Fully covering disturbed areas temporarily with polyethylene sheeting or other temporary covering is not feasible or practical.

- Permanent ground cover for disturbed areas is not yet established.
- Runoff water reaches the silt fence primarily as sheet flow rather than as concentrated flows, with the exception of some ditch and swale applications.
- Slopes above the silt fence are not steeper than 1.5H:1V.
- The sheet flow length (length of slope contributing runoff water to the silt fence) is not too long.

(c) **Sheet Flow Length**

Maximum sheet flow lengths allowed for silt fences are provided in Exhibit 630-2, which is based on the typical 2-year, 24-hour design storm for Washington, resulting in a 24-hour rainfall of 3 inches.

Slope	Sheet Flow Length
1.5H:1V	100 ft
2H:1V	115 ft
4H:1V	150 ft
6H:1V	200 ft

Maximum Sheet Flow Lengths for Silt Fences
Exhibit 630-2

The sheet flow length represents the area contributing runoff water from precipitation. The sheet flow length is defined in Exhibit 630-8. The sheet flow lengths provided in Exhibit 630-2 were determined assuming a bare soil condition, with the soil classified as a silt. These are worst-case assumptions because less runoff would be expected for sand or gravel soils or when some vegetation is present.

The sheet flow length is usually equal to or greater than the disturbed soil slope length. However, undisturbed sloping ground above the disturbed slope area may also contribute runoff to the silt fence area. The length of undisturbed sloping ground above the disturbed slope to be included in the total contributing slope length depends on the amount and type of vegetation present, the slope steepness, and the degree of development above the slope.

If unsure whether the proposed silt fence meets the requirements in Exhibit 630-2, contact the HQ Hydraulics Section for assistance.

Average or Ditch Swale Grade	Ditch or Swale Storage Length	Allowable Contributing Area per Foot of Ditch or Swale Storage Width
16%	13 ft	200 ft^2
10%	20 ft	250 ft^2
5%	40 ft	300 ft^2
4%	50 ft	400 ft^2
3%	65 ft	500 ft^2
2%	100 ft	600 ft^2
1%	200 ft	1000 ft^2

Maximum Contributing Area for Ditch and Swale Applications
Exhibit 630-3

(d) **Temporary Silt Fence**

Temporary silt fences may also be used in ditch or swale applications. If the area contributing runoff to the fence exceeds the value determined from Exhibit 630-3, hydraulic overload will occur. The ditch or swale storage length and width are defined in Exhibit 630-9. The assumptions used in the development of Exhibit 630-3 are the same as those used for Exhibit 630-2 in terms of the design storm and ground conditions.

As an example, if a site has a 13-foot-wide ditch with an average slope of 2%, the fence can be located such that 7800 ft^2 of area drain to it. If it appears that the area draining to the fence will be larger than the allowable, it may be possible to divide the contributing area into smaller areas and add a silt fence for each smaller area as shown in Exhibit 630-10.

The minimum storage length for the ditch behind each silt fence must be maintained. If this is not possible, it may be necessary to use an alternate erosion control structure, as described in the *Highway Runoff Manual,* or develop a special silt fence design.

Exhibit 630-3 was developed with the assumption that water will be able to pond to a depth of at least 2 feet behind the fence. If this is not the case (the ditch or swale depth is less than 2 feet), the table cannot be used. Furthermore, the ditch depth must be greater than the height of the silt fence at its lowest point within the ditch. Otherwise, there will not be enough storage available behind the fence and water will circumvent the fence by flowing around it.

(e) **Locating a Silt Fence**

Locate silt fences on contour as much as possible. At the ends of the fence, turn it up hill such that it captures the runoff water and prevents water from flowing around the end of the fence. This is illustrated in Exhibit 630-11.

Silt fences are designed to capture up to a 2-foot depth of water behind the fence. Therefore, the ground line at the ends of the fence must be at least 2 feet above the ground line at the lowest part of the fence. This 2-foot requirement applies to ditches as well as to general slope erosion control.

If the fence must cross contours (except for the ends of the fence), use gravel check dams placed perpendicular to the back of the fence to minimize concentrated flow and erosion along the back of the fence (see Exhibit 630-12).

- The gravel check dams are approximately 1 foot high at the back of the fence and are continued perpendicular to the fence at the same elevation until the top of the dam intercepts the ground surface behind the fence.
- Locate the gravel check dams every 10 feet along the fence.
- In general, the slope of the fence line is not to be steeper than 3H:1V.
- For the gravel check dams, use Crushed Surfacing Base Course, Gravel Backfill for Walls, or Permeable Ballast (see the *Standard Specifications*).

If the silt fence application is considered critical (such as when the fence is placed immediately adjacent to environmentally sensitive areas like streams, lakes, or wetlands), place a second silt fence below the first silt fence to capture any silt that passes through the first fence and/or place straw bales behind the silt fence. Locate silt fences at least 7 feet from an environmentally sensitive area.

Where this is impossible, and a silt fence must be used, a special design may be necessary.

Temporary silt fences are sometimes used to completely encircle underground drainage inlets or other similar features to prevent silt from entering the drainage system. This is acceptable, but the silt fence functions primarily as a barrier, and not as a ponding or filtering mechanism, unless the drainage inlet is in a depression that is large enough to allow water to pond behind the silt fence.

- If the drainage inlet and silt fence are not in a large enough depression, silt-laden water will simply be directed around the fence and must be captured by another fence or sedimentation pond downslope.
- If the depression is deep, locate the silt fence no more than 2 feet below the top of the depression to prevent overtopping. A site-specific design may be needed if the silt fence is located deeper than 2 feet within the depression.

It may be necessary to relocate silt fences during the course of a construction project as cuts and fills are built or as disturbed areas change. An erosion control/silt fence plan that accounts for the anticipated construction stages (and eventual removal) should be developed. Do not assume that one silt fence location can routinely be used for the entire life of the contract. Periodically check the locations in the field during the construction project, and field-adjust the silt fence locations as necessary to ensure the silt fences function as intended.

(7) Standard Specification Geotextile Application Identification in the Contract Plans

Identify the geotextile in the contract plan detail in a way that ties it to the appropriate application in the *Standard Specifications*. For example:

- If a geotextile is to be used to line an underground trench drain 3 feet deep and the native soil has less than 15% passing the #200 sieve, identify the geotextile on the plan sheet as “Construction Geotextile for Underground Drainage, Low Survivability, Class A.”
- If the geotextile is to be placed beneath riprap on a slope without a cushion layer between the geotextile and the riprap, and the native soil contains 35% passing the #200 sieve, identify the geotextile on the plan sheet as “Construction Geotextile for Permanent Erosion Control, High Survivability, Class B.”
- If the geotextile is to be placed between the roadway base course and a moist silt subgrade with a resilient modulus of 6,500 psi, and the roadway is planned to be constructed during the dry summer and early fall months, identify the geotextile on the plan sheet as “Construction Geotextile for Separation.”

(8) Site-Specific Designs (All Applications)

A site-specific design is required:

- For all reinforcement applications.
- For applications not covered by the *Standard Specifications*.

Consider a site-specific design for:

- High-risk applications.
- Exceptionally large geotextile projects: if the geotextile quantity in a single application is over 35,000 yd^2 or over 85,000 yd^2 for the separation application.
- Severe or unusual soil or groundwater conditions.

- Soil in the vicinity of the proposed geotextile location that consists of alternate thin layers of silt or clay with potentially water-bearing sand layers on the order of 1 to 3 inches thick or less.
- Soil known through past experience to be problematic for geosynthetic drains.
- Drains in native soil behind structures except drains contained within granular backfill.
- Drains designed to stabilize unstable slopes.
- Drains designed to mitigate frost heave.

In such cases, obtain assistance from the HQ Materials Laboratory, Geotechnical Services Division. To initiate the special design, provide a plan and cross section showing:

- The geosynthetic structure to be designed.
- The structure's relative location to other adjacent structures that it could potentially affect.
- The structure's intended purpose.
- Any soil data in the vicinity.

Consider a site-specific design for temporary silt fences:

- If silt fence must be used in intermittent streams or where a significant portion of the silt fence functions as a barrier that directs flow to the lower portions of the silt fence.
- If the fence must be located on steep slopes.
- In situations not meeting the requirements in Exhibits 630-2 and 630-3.
- If the 2-year, 24-hour design storm for the site is greater than the 3 inches assumed for the development of Exhibits 630-2 and 630-3.
- Where concentrated flow is anticipated.
- If closer than 7 feet from an environmentally sensitive area.
- If more than 2 feet of storage depth is needed.

For a site-specific temporary silt fence design, obtain assistance from the HQ Hydraulics Section. To initiate the design, send the following information to the HQ Hydraulics Section and a copy to the HQ Materials Laboratory, Geotechnical Services Division:

- Plan sheets showing proposed silt fence locations and grading contours.
- Estimate of the area contributing runoff to each silt fence, including percentage and general type of vegetative cover within the contributing area.
- Any available site soil information.

For all site-specific designs of applications not covered by the *Standard Specifications*, complete plans and special provisions are needed. In general, for site-specific designs of *Standard Specifications* applications, only a minor modification of the appropriate geotextile property table will be needed.

630.06 Design Responsibility

The design responsibility and process for geotextile design are illustrated in Exhibits 630-4 and 630-5. The region Project Development Office, in particular the region Project Manager, is responsible to initiate and develop all geotextile designs for the *Standard Specifications*, except for roadway separation and soil stabilization applications, which are initiated and developed by the region Materials Laboratory.

The region Materials Laboratory assists the region Project Manager with *Standard Specifications* underground drainage and permanent erosion control designs.

The region Environmental Design Office assists with *Standard Specifications*, permanent erosion control, and temporary silt fence designs.

Once the region Project Manager or Materials Laboratory has determined that a geotextile is appropriate, development of a geotextile design for the *Standard Specifications* includes the development of plan details showing the plan location and cross section of the geotextile installation. Standard details for geotextiles as provided in the *Plans Preparation Manual* may be used or modified to adapt to the specific project situation. Note that only minimum dimensions for drains are provided in these standard details.

Site-specific geosynthetic designs and applications not addressed by the *Standard Specifications* are designed by the region with the assistance of the HQ Materials Laboratory, Geotechnical Services Division, or the HQ Hydraulics Section as described in 630.05.

Design assistance by the HQ Geotechnical Services Division or HQ Hydraulics Section for site-specific design of *Standard Specifications* applications includes determination of geosynthetic properties and other advice as needed to complete the geosynthetic plans and any special provisions required.

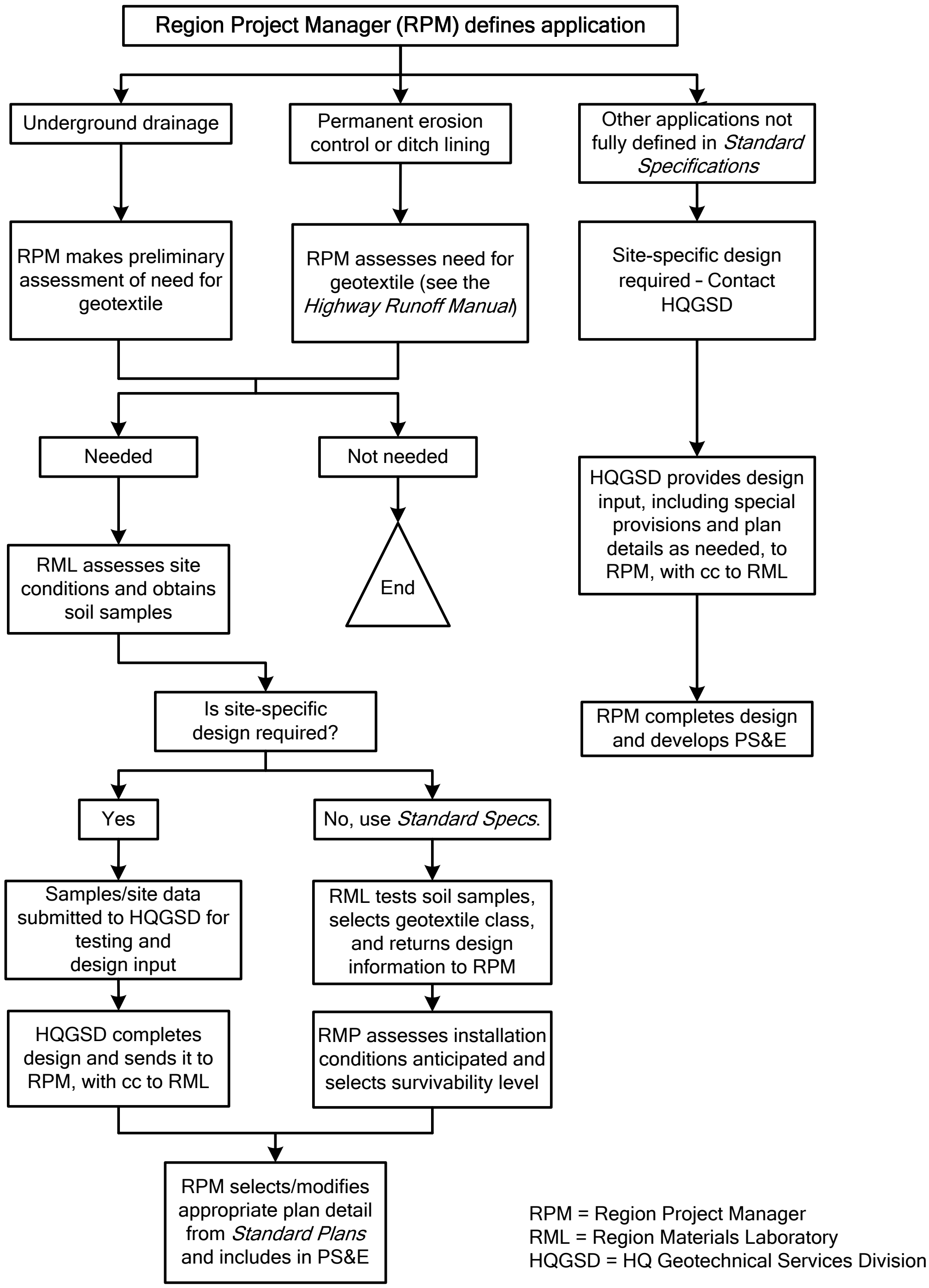
The HQ Geotechnical Services Division is fully responsible to develop and complete the following:

- Geosynthetic design, plan details that can be used to develop the contract plan sheets, and special provisions for geosynthetic reinforced walls, slopes, and embankments.
- Deep trench drains for landslide stabilization.
- Other applications that are an integral part of a Headquarters geotechnical design.

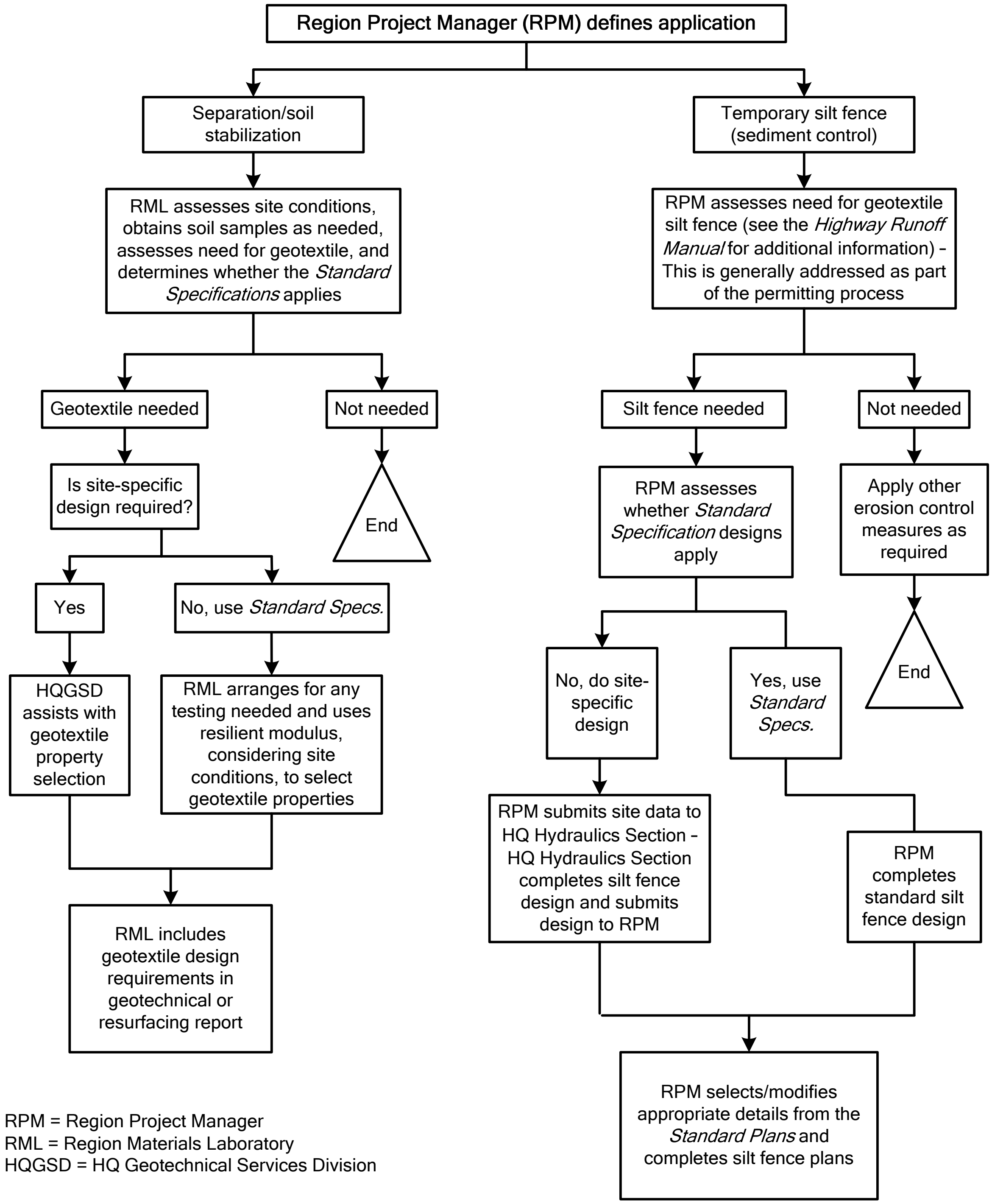
The region Project Manager incorporates the plan details and special provisions into the PS&E.

630.07 Documentation

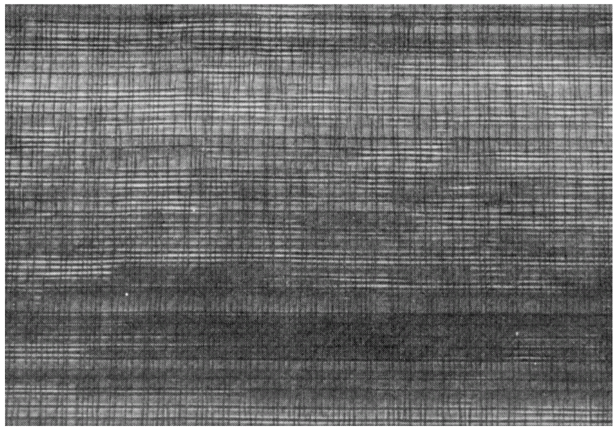
For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



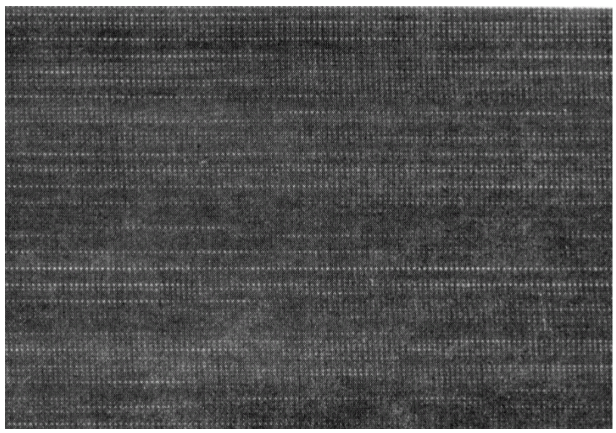
Design Process for Drainage and Erosion Control:
Geotextiles and Nonstandard Applications
Exhibit 630-4



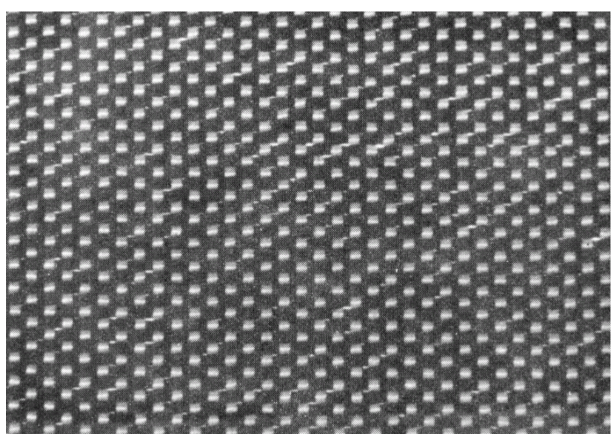
Design Process for Separation, Soil Stabilization, and Silt Fence
Exhibit 630-5



Slit Film Woven Geotextile

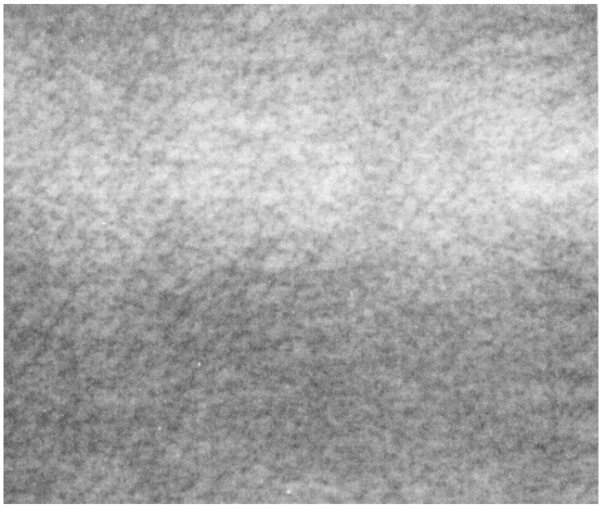


Monofilament Woven Geotextile

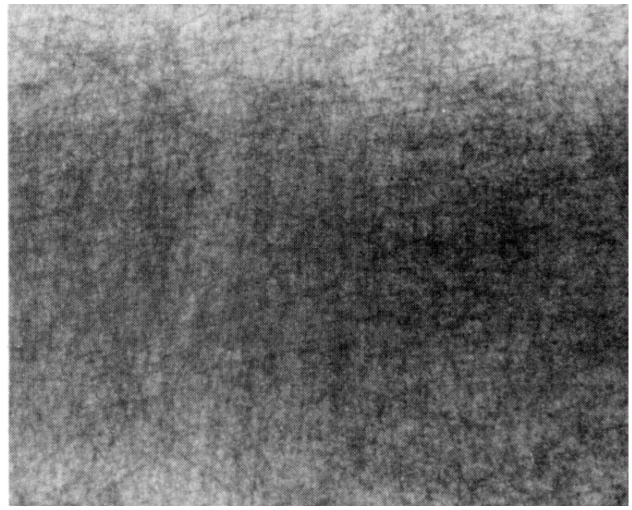


Multifilament Woven Geotextile

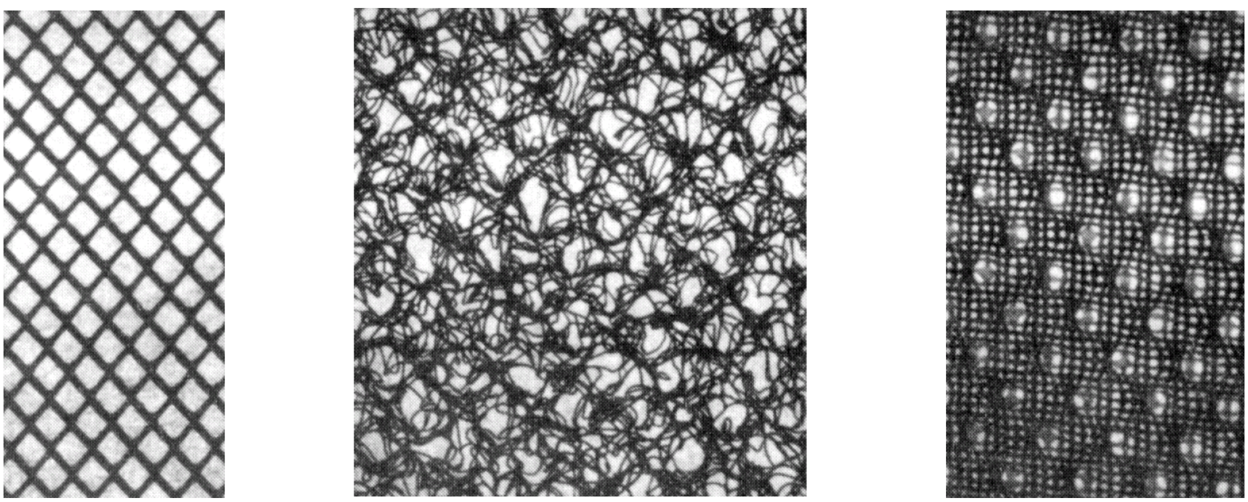
Examples of Various Geosynthetics
Exhibit 630-6



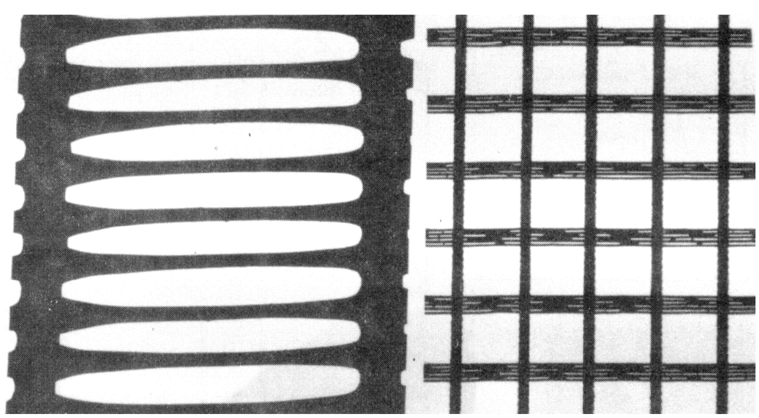
Needle-Punched Nonwoven Geotextile



Heat-Bonded Nonwoven Geotextile

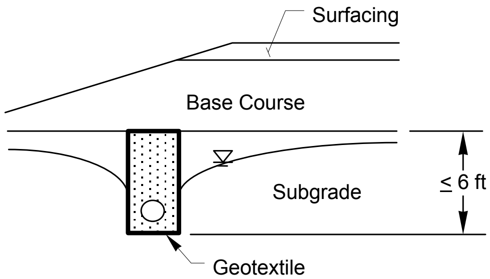


Geocomposite Drains (Geotextile With Core)

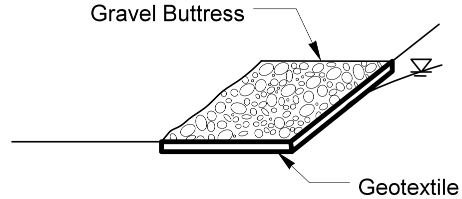


Extruded and Woven Geogrids

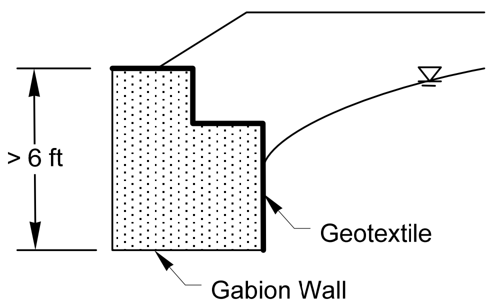
Examples of Various Geosynthetics
Exhibit 630-6 (continued)



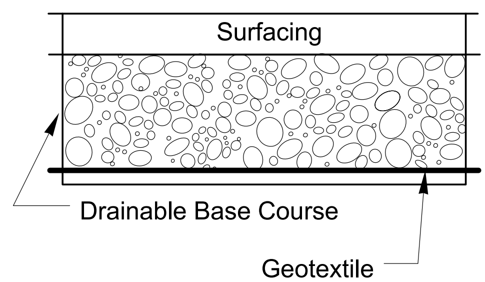
A. Underground Drainage:
Low Survivability
(Roadway Trench Drain)



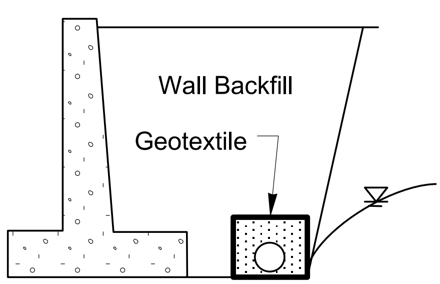
B. Underground Drainage:
Moderate Survivability
(Area Drain Beneath Buttress)



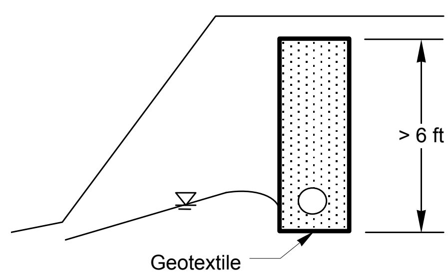
C. Underground Drainage:
Moderate Survivability
(Geotextile Sheet Drain)



D. Underground Drainage:
Moderate Survivability
(Area Drain Under Parking Lot or Roadway)

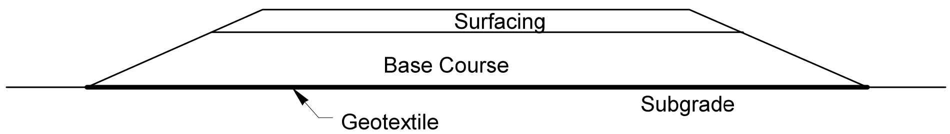


E. Underground Drainage:
Low Survivability
(Wrapped Drain Behind Foundation)

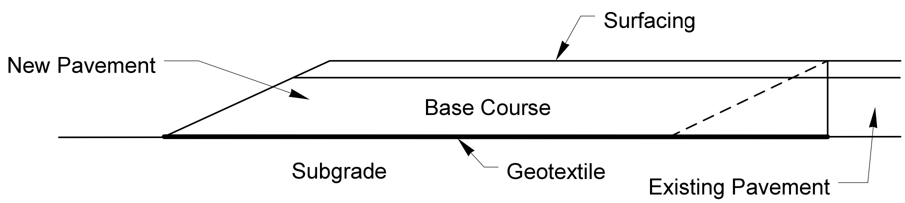


F. Underground Drainage:
Moderate Survivability
(Deep Trench Drain for Slope Stabilization)

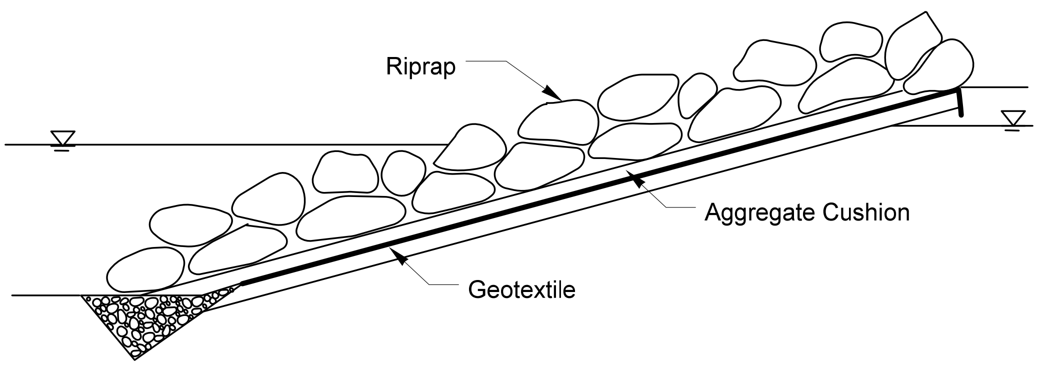
Geotextile Application Examples
Exhibit 630-7



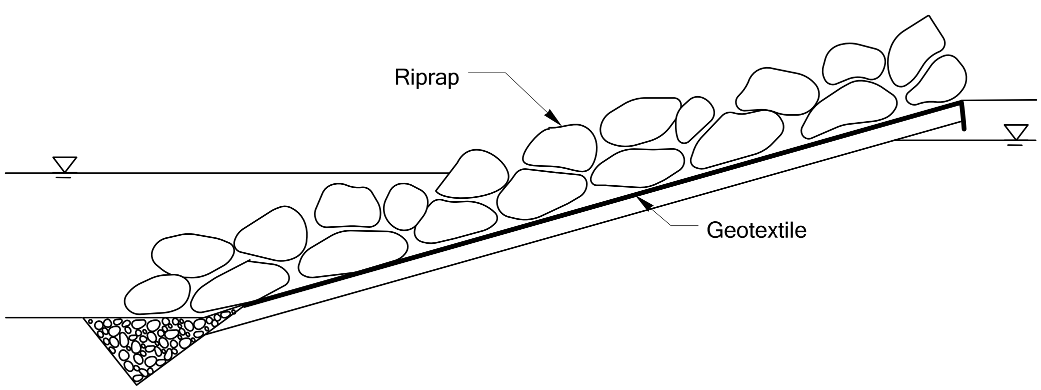
G. Separation or Soil Stabilization for New Roadway (Depends on Subgrade Condition)



H. Separation or Soil Stabilization for Widened Roadway (Depends on Subgrade Condition)

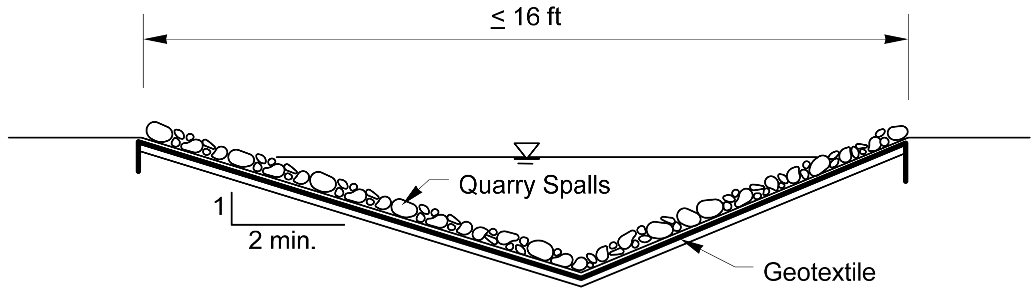


I. Permanent Erosion Control: Moderate Survivability

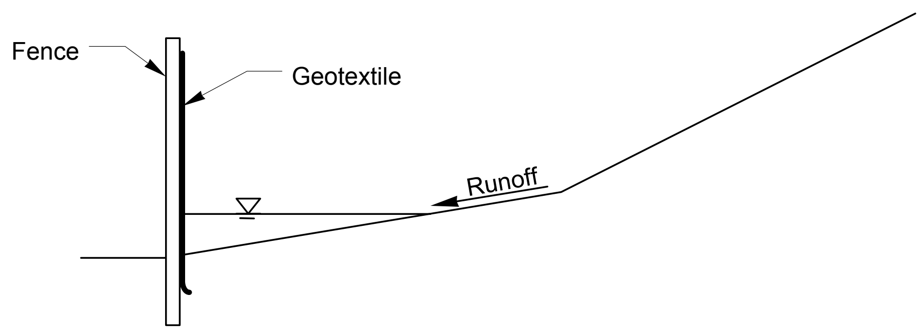


J. Permanent Erosion Control: High Survivability

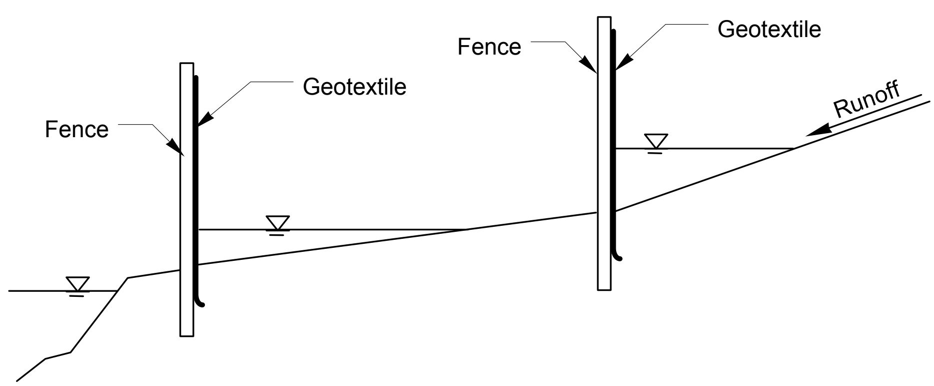
Geotextile Application Examples
Exhibit 630-7 (continued)



K. Ditch Lining

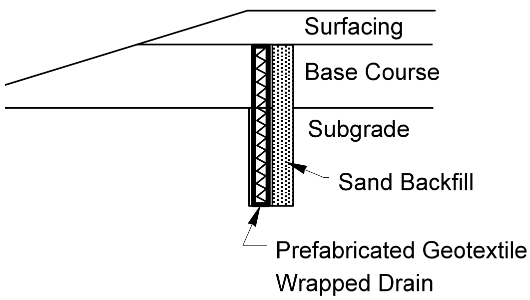


L. Silt Fence Not Immediately Adjacent to Environmentally Sensitive Area

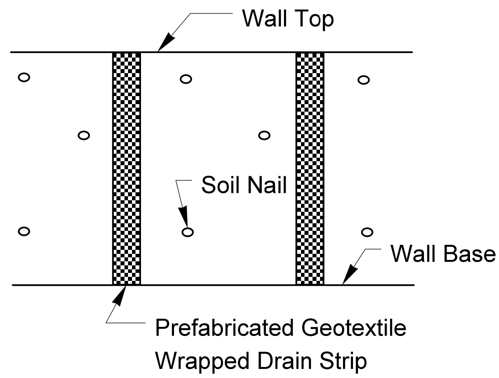


M. Silt Fence Immediately Adjacent to Environmentally Sensitive Area

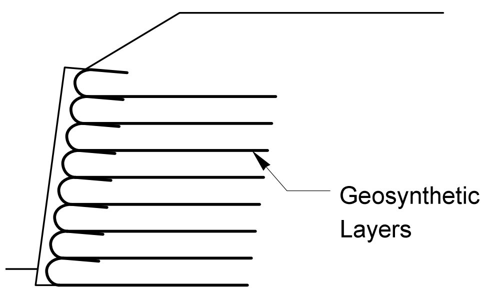
Geotextile Application Examples
Exhibit 630-7 (continued)



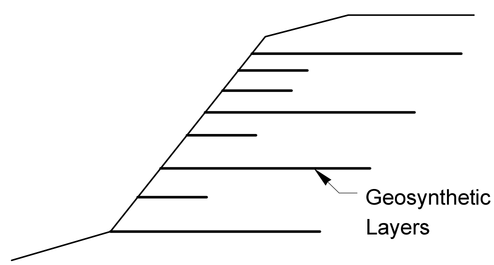
N. Prefabricated Edge Drain for Roadway



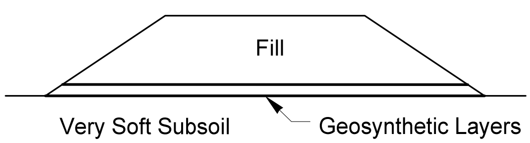
O. Prefabricated Drain Strip Behind Wall Face



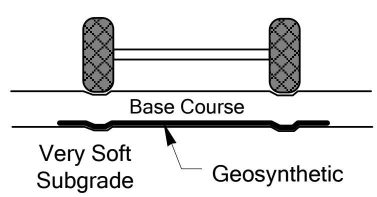
P. Geosynthetic Wall



Q. Geosynthetic Reinforced Slope

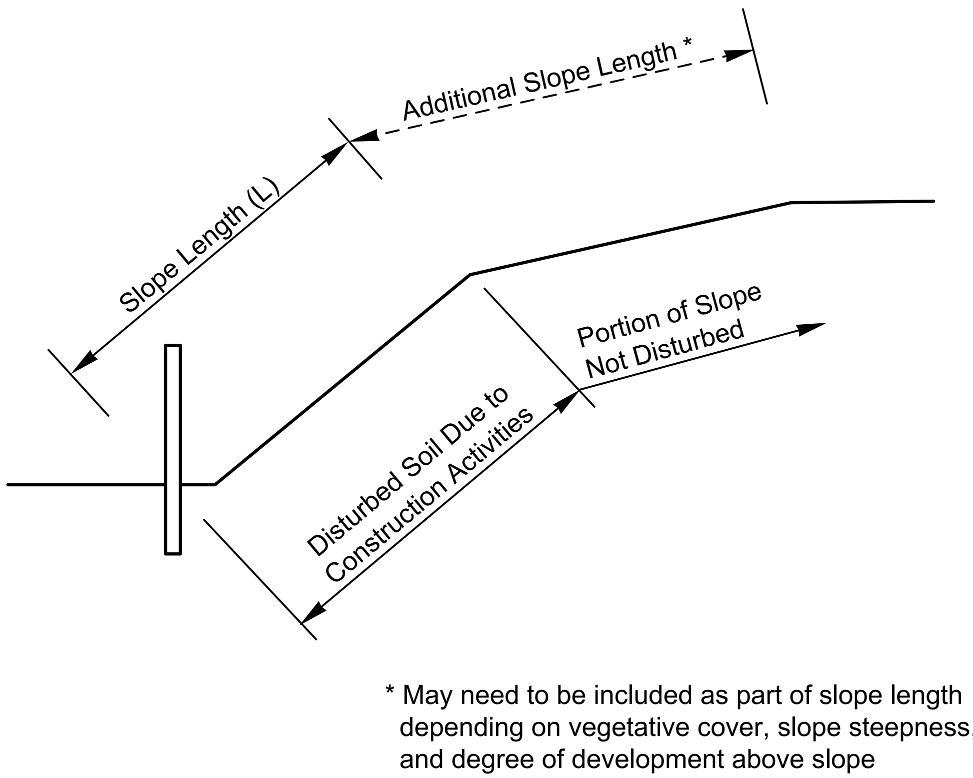


R. Geosynthetic Reinforced Embankment

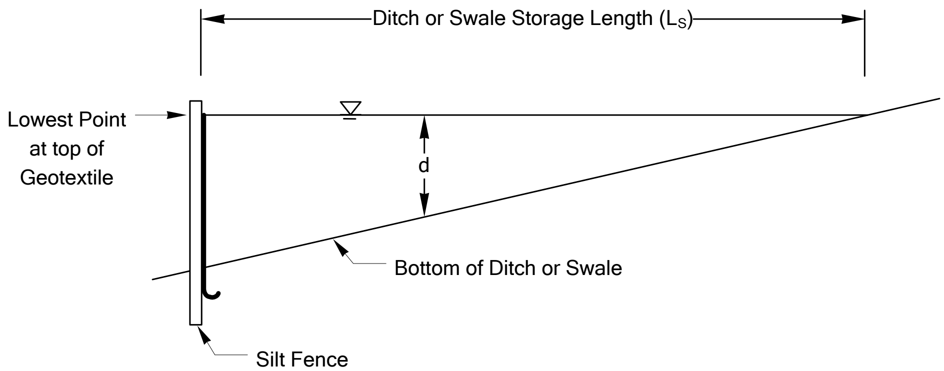


S. Geosynthetic Subgrade Reinforcement for Temporary Roads

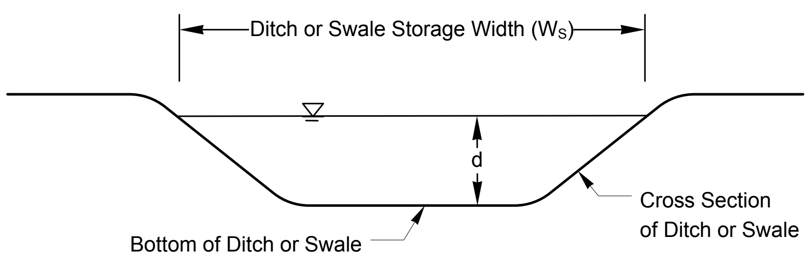
Geotextile Application Examples
Exhibit 630-7 (continued)



Definition of Slope Length
Exhibit 630-8



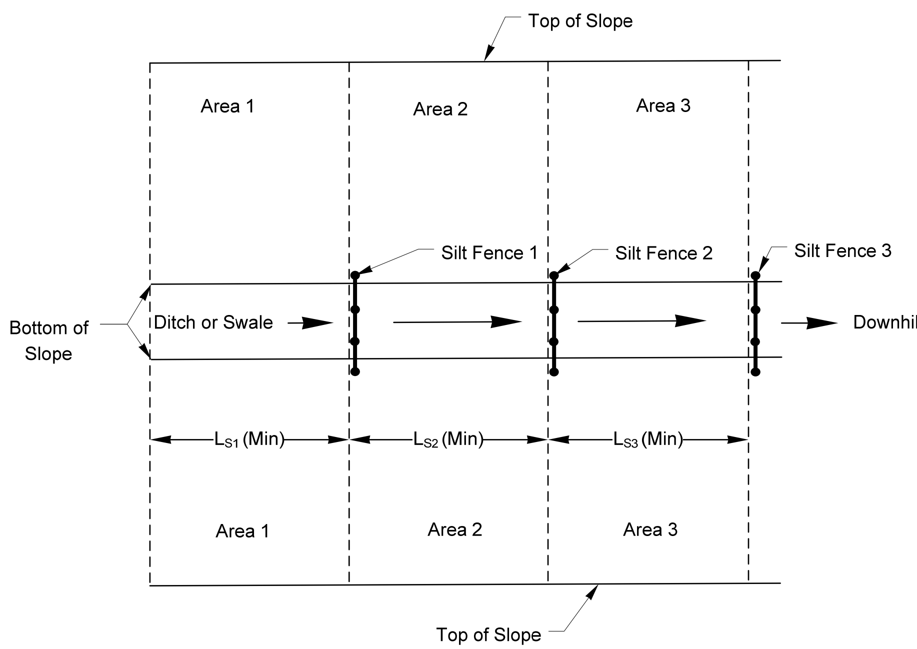
Storage Length



Storage Width

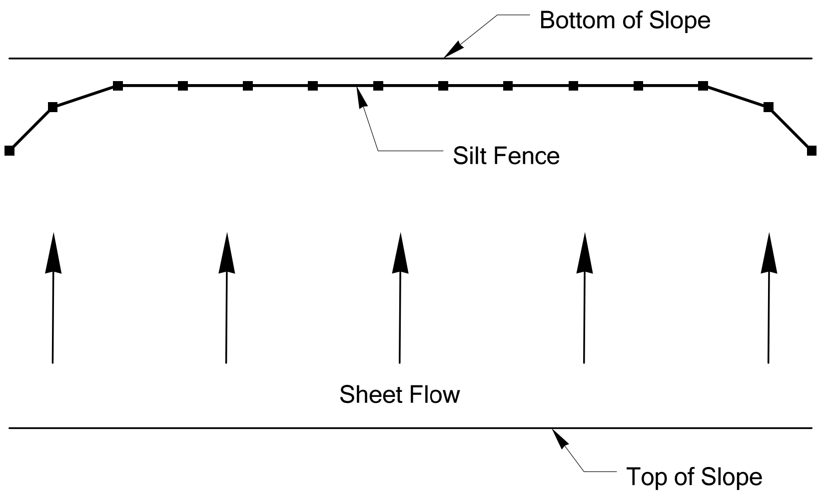
Definition of Ditch or Swale Storage Length and Width

Exhibit 630-9

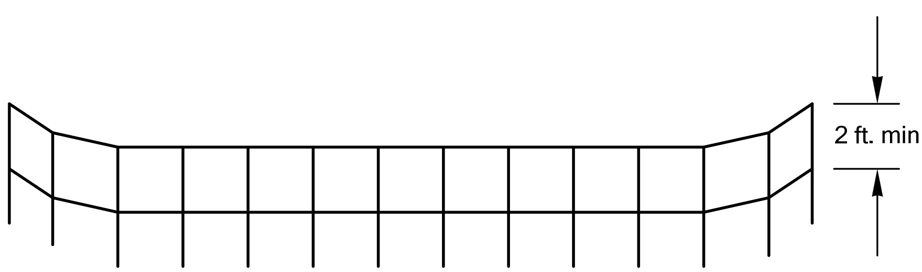


Method to keep contributing area to ditch or swale within allowable limits if contributing area is too large based on Exhibit 630-3.

Silt Fences for Large Contributing Area
Exhibit 630-10



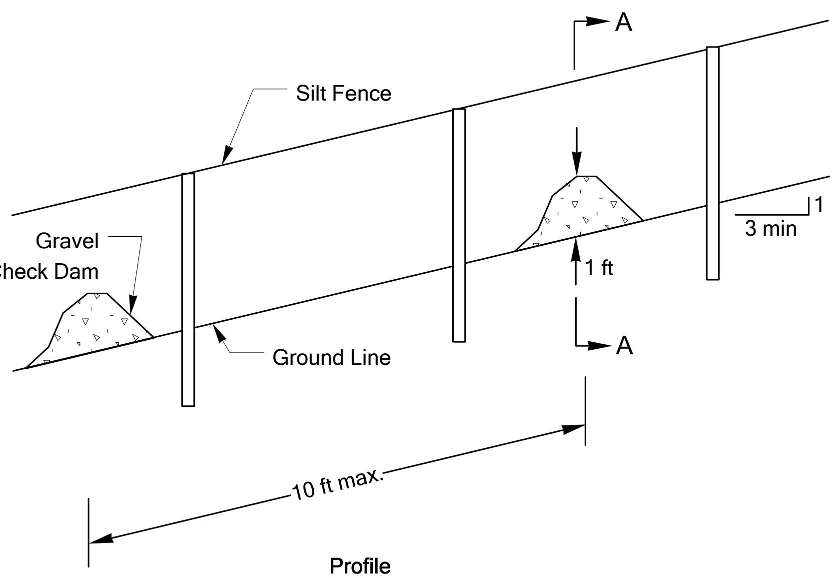
Silt Fence Plan



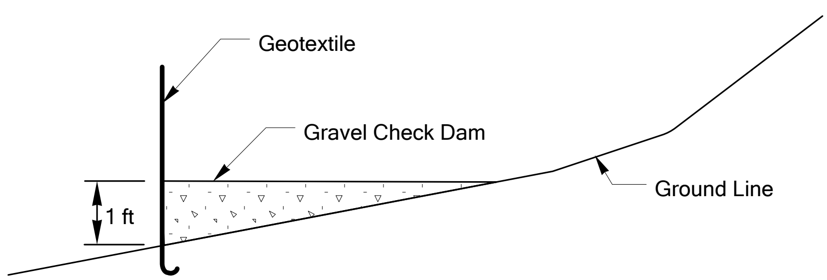
Silt Fence Profile

Silt fence plan and profile illustrating how silt fence will capture runoff water and not allow water to run around ends of fence.

Silt Fence End Treatment
Exhibit 630-11



Profile



Cross Section A-A

Gravel Check Dams for Silt Fences
Exhibit 630-12

Chapter 700 Project Development Roles and Responsibilities for Projects With Structures

700.01 General
700.02 Procedures

700.01 General

This chapter presents the project development process used by the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) in the regions and the Headquarters (HQ) Bridge and Structures Office to determine the roles and responsibilities for projects with structures during the project development phase of a project. This chapter complements WSDOT's *Project Management Online Guide*:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Projects/ProjectMgmt/Process.htm

For design procedures, see Division 7 chapters and the *Bridge Design Manual*.

The primary objective of this process is to provide a consistent means of selecting a bridge design team to perform the structural design work, whether it is by a consultant or the HQ Bridge and Structures Office.

If the local agency will be requesting any services from WSDOT, the local agency will contact WSDOT's Local Programs Engineer, who will help define the level of WSDOT's involvement in design and construction.

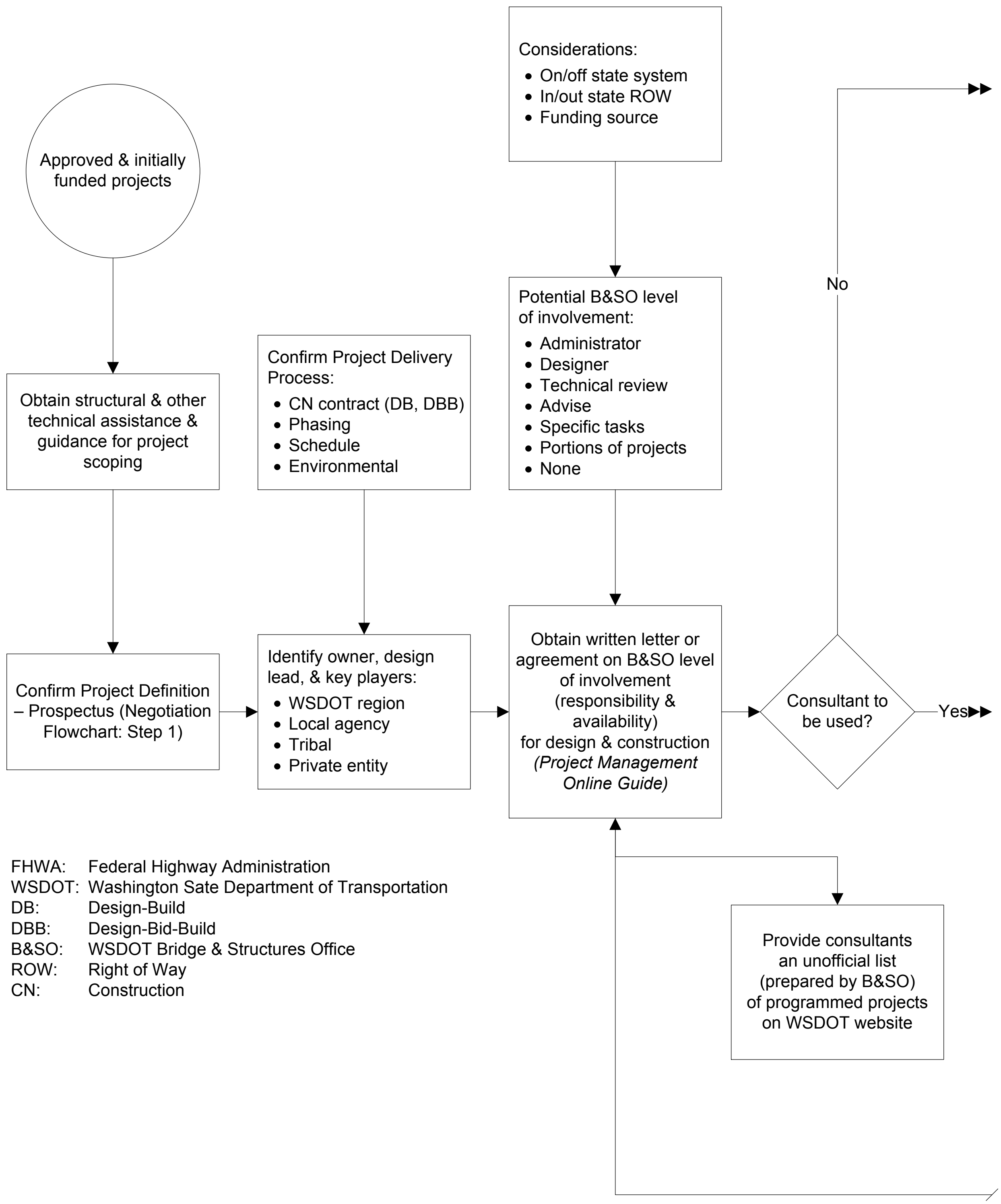
700.02 Procedures

The flow diagram (see Exhibit 700-1) begins at the left with the initial approval and funding of the project and ends at the right with the start of the project delivery process.

After a project is programmed, WSDOT is tasked with confirming the project scope and defining the structural team's level of involvement in design and construction. If a consultant is not used, the bridge design work will be performed by the HQ Bridge and Structures Office. If a consultant is used, the region and the HQ Bridge and Structures Office will determine the level of involvement and responsibility for the design.

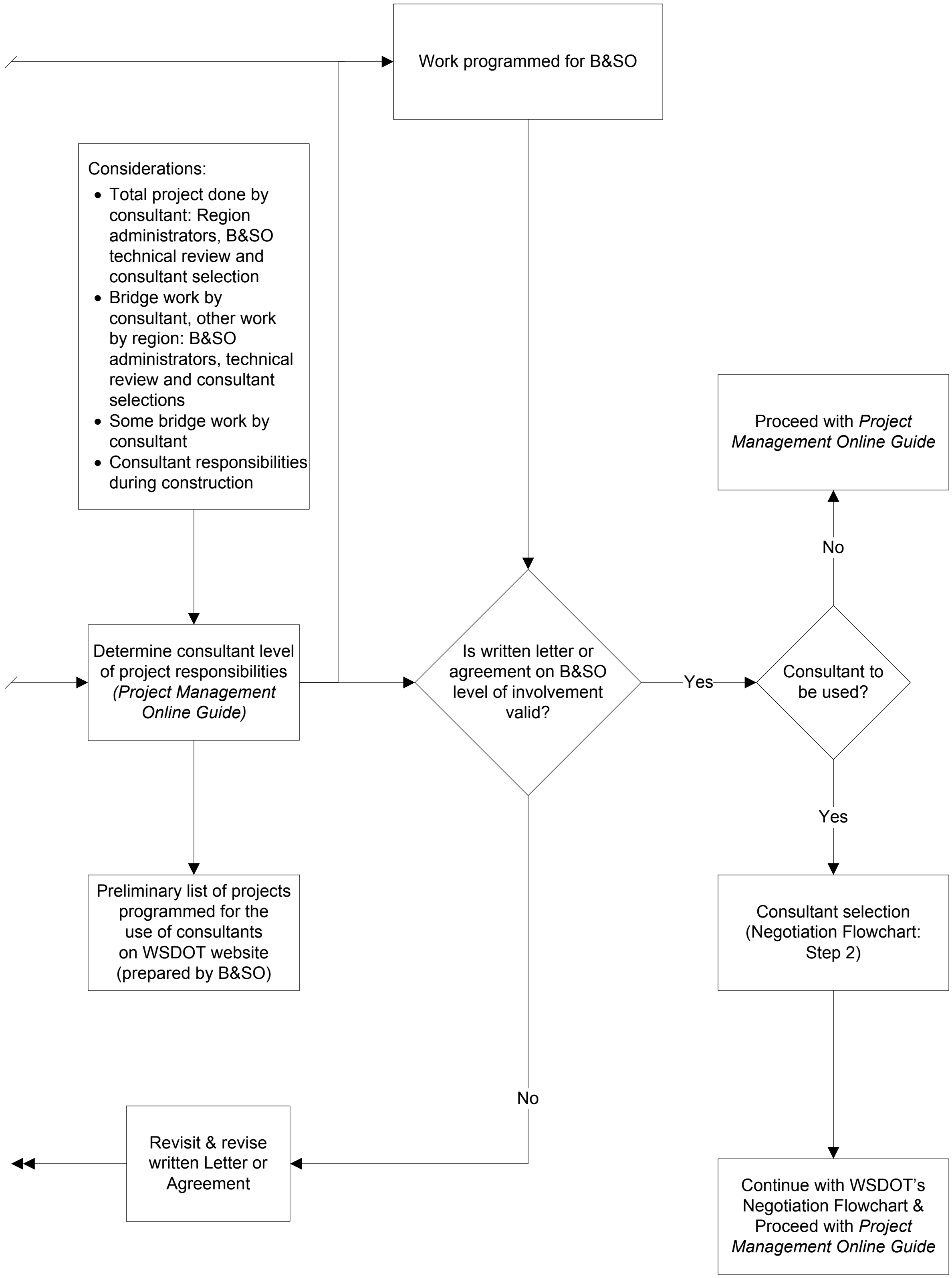
Agreements defining the level of involvement and responsibility will be developed and executed between the region office responsible for project development and the HQ Bridge and Structures Office, and the appropriate project delivery process will be implemented.

More information on this process and the desired outcomes is available on the HQ Bridge and Structures Office's home page: www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/bridge/



FHWA: Federal Highway Administration
WSDOT: Washington Sate Department of Transportation
DB: Design-Build
DBB: Design-Bid-Build
B&SO: WSDOT Bridge & Structures Office
ROW: Right of Way
CN: Construction

Determination of the Roles and Responsibilities for Projects With Structures: Project Development Phase
Exhibit 700-1



Determination of the Roles and Responsibilities for Projects With Structures: Project Development Phase
Exhibit 700-1 (continued)

710.01 General
710.02 References
710.03 Required Data for All Structures
710.04 Additional Data for Waterway Crossings
710.05 Additional Data for Grade Separations
710.06 Additional Data for Widenings
710.07 Documentation

710.01 General

The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) Headquarters (HQ) Bridge and Structures Office provides structural design services to the regions. This chapter describes the information required by the HQ Bridge and Structures Office to perform this function.

710.02 References

Bridge Design Manual, M 23-50, WSDOT

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

710.03 Required Data for All Structures

Bridge site data provides information about the type of crossing, topography, type of structure, and potential future construction. Submit bridge site data to the HQ Bridge and Structures Office. Provide a cover memo that gives general information on the project, describes the attachments, and transmits the forms and data included in the submittal. Submit site data as a CAD file, supplemental drawings, and a report. (See Exhibit 710-2 for items to include in a bridge site data submittal). Direct any questions relating to the preparation of bridge site data to the HQ Bridge and Structures Office. The *Bridge Design Manual* shows examples of required WSDOT forms.

(1) Scour

At any location where a structure can be in contact with water (such as culvert outfall, lake, river, or floodplain), there is a risk of scour. This risk must be analyzed. Contact the HQ Geotechnical Services Division and the HQ Hydraulics Office to determine whether a scour analysis is required.

(2) CAD Files and Supplemental Drawings

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office uses the microGDS Computer-Aided Drafting (CAD) system. CAD files prepared for use as bridge site data will be accepted in standard DGN, DXF, or DWG format.

Prepare plan, profile, and section drawings for all structures. Include copies of the CAD site data and supplemental drawings in the reduced plan sheet format with the submittal.

Use a complete and separate CAD file for each structure. (See the *Plans Preparation Manual* for information regarding drawing levels and use of the Bridge and Structures format.) The *Bridge Design Manual* contains examples of completed bridge preliminary plans. These plans show examples of the line styles and drawing format for site data in CAD.

Bridge site data is used to prepare the bridge layout plan, which is to be used in the contract plans. Include the following information in the CAD files or in the supplemental drawings:

(a) **Plan**

- The drawing scales shown are for the full-sized contract plan format and are a guide only. Consider the width and general alignment of the structure when selecting the scale. For structures on curved alignments or where the bridge width is nearly equal to or greater than the bridge length, consult the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for an appropriate plan scale.

Length of Structure	Scale
20 ft to 100 ft	1″=10′
100 ft to 500 ft	1″=20′
500 ft to 800 ft	1″=30′
800 ft to 1,100 ft	1″=40′
More than 1,100 ft	1″=50′

Bridge Site Plan Scales
Exhibit 710-1

- Vertical and horizontal datum control (see Chapters 400 and 410).
- Contours of the existing ground surface. Use intervals of 1, 2, 5, or 10 feet, depending on terrain and plan scale. The typical contour interval is 2 feet. Use 1-foot intervals for flat terrain. Use 5-foot or 10-foot intervals for steep terrain or small scales. Show contours beneath an existing or proposed structure and beneath the water surface of any waterway.
- Alignment of the proposed highway and traffic channelization in the vicinity.
- Location by section, township, and range.
- Type, size, and location of all existing or proposed sewers, telephone and power lines, water lines, gas lines, traffic barriers, culverts, bridges, buildings, and walls.
- Location of right of way lines and easement lines.
- Distance and direction to nearest towns or interchanges along the main alignment in each direction.
- Location of all roads, streets, and detours.
- Stage construction plan and alignment.
- Type, size, and location of all existing and proposed sign structures, light standards, and associated conduits and junction boxes. Provide proposed signing and lighting items when the information becomes available.
- Location of existing and proposed drainage.
- Horizontal curve data. Include coordinates for all control points.

(b) **Profile**

- Profile view showing the grade line of the proposed or existing alignment and the existing ground line along the alignment line.
- Vertical curve data.
- Superelevation transition diagram.

(c) **Section**

- Roadway sections on the bridge and at bridge approaches. Indicate the lane and shoulder widths, cross slopes and side slopes, ditch dimensions, and traffic barrier requirements.
- Stage construction roadway geometrics with the minimum lane and roadway widths specified.

(3) Report

Submit DOT Form 235-002, Bridge Site Data-General. Supplement the CAD drawings with the following items:

- Vicinity maps
- Class of highway
- Design speed
- Special requirements for replacing or relocating utility facilities
- ADT and DHV counts
- Truck traffic percentage
- Requirements for road or street maintenance during construction

(4) Video and Photographs

Submit a video of the site. Show all the general features of the site and details of existing structures. Scan the area slowly, spending extra time showing existing bridge pier details and end slopes. A “voice over” narrative on the video is necessary for orientation.

Color photographs of the structure site are desirable. Include detailed photographs of existing abutments, piers, end slopes, and other pertinent details for widenings, bridge replacements, or sites with existing structures.

710.04 Additional Data for Waterway Crossings

Coordinate with the HQ Hydraulics Section and supplement the bridge site data for all waterway crossings with the DOT Form 235-001, Bridge Site Data for Stream Crossings, and the following:

- Show riprap or other slope protection requirements at the bridge site (type, plan limits, and cross section) as determined by the HQ Hydraulics Section.
- Show a profile of the waterway. The extent will be determined by the HQ Hydraulics Section.
- Show cross sections of the waterway. The extent will be determined by the HQ Hydraulics Section.

The requirements for waterway profile and cross sections may be less stringent if the HQ Hydraulics Section has sufficient documentation (FEMA reports, for example) to make a determination. Contact the HQ Hydraulics Section to verify the extent of the information needed. Coordinate any rechannelization of the waterway with the HQ Hydraulics Section. Many waterway crossings require a permit from the U.S. Coast Guard (see Chapter 230). Generally, ocean tide-influenced waterways and waterways used for commercial navigation require a Coast Guard permit. These structures require the following additional information:

- Names and addresses of the landowners adjacent to the bridge site.
- Quantity of new embankment material within the floodway. This quantity denotes, in cubic yards, the material below and the material above normal high water.

Some waterways may qualify for an exemption from Coast Guard permit requirements if certain conditions are met (see the *Bridge Design Manual*). If the waterway crossing appears to satisfy these conditions, then submit a statement explaining why this project is exempt from a Coast Guard permit. Attach this exemption statement to the Environmental Classification Summary prepared for the project and submit it to the HQ Design Office for processing to the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA).

The region is responsible for coordination with the HQ Bridge and Structures Office, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, and U.S. Coast Guard for waterways that may qualify for a permit exemption. The HQ Bridge and Structures Office is responsible for coordination with the U.S. Coast Guard for waterways that require a permit.

710.05 Additional Data for Grade Separations

(1) Highway-Railroad Separation

Supplement bridge site data for structures involving railroads with the following:

(a) **Plan**

- Alignment of all existing and proposed railroad tracks.
- Center-to-center spacing of all tracks.
- Angle, station, and coordinates of all intersections between the highway alignment and each track.
- Location of railroad right of way lines.
- Horizontal curve data. Include coordinates for all circular and spiral curve control points.

(b) **Profile**

- For proposed railroad tracks: profile, vertical curve, and superelevation data for each track.
- For existing railroad tracks: elevations accurate to 0.1 foot taken at 10-foot intervals along the top of the highest rail of each track. Provide elevations to 50 feet beyond the extreme outside limits of the existing or proposed structure. Tabulate elevations in a format acceptable to the HQ Bridge and Structures Office.

(2) Highway-Highway Separation

Supplement bridge site data for structures involving other highways by the following:

(a) **Plan**

- Alignment of all existing and proposed highways, streets, and roads.
- Angle, station, and coordinates of all intersections between all crossing alignments.
- Horizontal curve data. Include coordinates for all curve control points.

(b) **Profile**

- For proposed highways: profile, vertical curve, and superelevation data for each.
- For existing highways: elevations accurate to 0.1 foot taken at 10-foot intervals along the centerline or crown line and each edge of shoulder, for each alignment, to define the existing roadway cross slopes. Provide elevations to 50 feet beyond the extreme outside limits of the existing or proposed structure. Tabulate elevations in a format acceptable to the HQ Bridge and Structures Office.

(c) **Section**

- Roadway sections of each undercrossing roadway indicating the lane and shoulder widths, cross slopes and side slopes, ditch dimensions, and traffic barrier requirements.
- Falsework or construction opening requirements. Specify minimum vertical clearances, lane widths, and shy distances.

710.06 Additional Data for Widenings

Bridge rehabilitations and modifications that require new substructure are defined as bridge widenings.

(1) Bridge Widenings

Submit DOT Form 235-002A, Supplemental Bridge Site Data-Rehabilitation/Modification. Supplement bridge site data for structures involving bridge widenings by the following:

(a) **Plan**

- Stations for existing back of pavement seats, expansion joints, and pier centerlines based on field measurements along the survey line and each curb line.
- Locations of existing bridge drains. Indicate whether these drains are to remain in use or be plugged.

(b) **Profile**

- Elevations accurate to 0.1 foot taken at 10-foot intervals along the curb line of the side of the structure being widened. Pair these elevations with corresponding elevations (same station) taken along the crown line or an offset distance (10-foot minimum from the curb line). This information will be used to establish the cross slope of the existing bridge. Tabulate elevations in a format acceptable to the HQ Bridge and Structures Office.

  Take these elevations at the level of the concrete roadway deck. For bridges with latex-modified or microsilica-modified concrete overlay, elevations at the top of the overlay will be sufficient. For bridges with a nonstructural overlay, such as an asphalt concrete overlay, take elevations at the level of the concrete roadway deck. For skewed bridges, take elevations along the crown line or at an offset distance (10-foot minimum from the curb line) on the approach roadway for a sufficient distance to enable a cross slope to be established for the skewed corners of the bridge.

710.07 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

PLAN (in CAD file)

______ Survey Lines and Station Ticks
______ Survey Line Intersection Angles
______ Survey Line Intersection Stations
______ Survey Line Bearings
______ Roadway and Median Widths
______ Lane and Shoulder Widths
______ Sidewalk Width
______ Connection/Widening for Traffic Barrier
______ Profile Grade and Pivot Point
______ Roadway Superelevation Rate (if constant)
______ Lane Taper and Channelization Data
______ Traffic Arrows
______ Mileage to Towns Along Main Line
______ Existing Drainage Structures
______ Existing Utilities: Type/Size/Location
______ New Utilities: Type/Size/Location
______ Light Standards, Junction Boxes, Conduits
______ Bridge-Mounted Signs and Supports
______ Contours
______ Bottom of Ditches
______ Test Holes (if available)
______ Riprap Limits
______ Stream Flow Arrow
______ R/W Lines and/or Easement Lines
______ Exist. Bridge No. (to be removed, widened)
______ Section, Township, Range
______ City or Town
______ North Arrow
______ SR Number
______ Scale

TABLES (in tabular format in CAD file)

______ Curb Line Elevations at Top of Existing Bridge Deck
______ Undercrossing Roadway Existing Elevations
______ Undercrossing Railroad Existing Elevations
______ Curve Data

OTHER SITE DATA (may be in CAD file or on supplemental sheets or drawings)

______ Superelevation Diagrams
______ End Slope Rate
______ Profile Grade Vertical Curves
______ Coast Guard Permit Status
______ Railroad Agreement Status
______ Highway Classification
______ Design Speed
______ ADT, DHV, and % Trucks

FORMS (information noted on the form or attached on supplemental sheets or drawings)

Bridge Site Data General

______ Slope Protection
______ Pedestrian Barrier/Pedestrian Rail Height Requirements
______ Construction/Falsework Openings
______ Stage Construction Channelization Plans
______ Bridge (before/with/after) Approach Fills
______ Datum
______ Video of Site
______ Photographs of Site
______ Control Section
______ Project Number
______ Region Number
______ Highway Section

Bridge Site Data for Stream Crossings

______ Water Surface Elevations and Flow Data
______ Riprap Cross Section Detail

Supplemental Bridge Site Data: Rehabilitation/Modification

BRIDGE, CROSSROAD, AND APPROACH ROADWAY CROSS SECTIONS (may be in CAD file or on separate drawings)

______ Bridge Roadway Width
______ Lane and Shoulder Widths
______ Profile Grade and Pivot Point
______ Superelevation Rate
______ Survey Line
______ PB/Pedestrian Rail Dimensions
______ Stage Construction Lane Orientations
______ Locations of Temporary Barrier
______ Conduits/Utilities in Bridge
______ Location and Depth of Ditches
______ Shoulder Widening for Barrier
______ Side Slope Rate

Bridge Site Data Checklist
Exhibit 710-2

720.01 General
720.02 References
720.03 Bridge Locations
720.04 Bridge Site Design Elements
720.05 Documentation

720.01 General

The National Bridge Inspection Standards (NBIS), published in the Code of Federal Regulations (23 CFR 650, Subpart C), defines a bridge as:

> *A structure including supports erected over a depression or an obstruction, such as water, highway, or railway, and having a track or passageway for carrying traffic or other moving loads, and having an opening measured along the center of the roadway of more than 20 feet between undercopings of abutments or spring lines of arches, or extreme ends of openings for multiple boxes; it may also include multiple pipes, where the clear distance between openings is less than half of the smaller contiguous opening.*

Bridge design is the responsibility of the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) Headquarters (HQ) Bridge and Structures Office, which develops a preliminary bridge plan for a new or modified structure in collaboration with the region. This chapter provides basic design considerations for the development of this plan. Unique staging requirements, constructibility issues, and other considerations are addressed during plan development. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office early in the planning stage regarding issues that might affect the planned project (see Chapter 700). A Project File (PF) is required for all bridge construction projects.

720.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

23 CFR Part 650, Subpart C – National Bridge Inspection Standards

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 480-60, Railroad companies – Clearances

(2) Design Guidance

Bridge Design Manual, M 23-50, WSDOT

Geotechnical Design Manual, M 46-03, WSDOT

Local Agency Guidelines (LAG), M 36-63, WSDOT

LRFD Bridge Design Specifications, 4th Edition, Washington DC, AASHTO, 2007

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-10, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

Traffic Manual, M 51-02, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

Manual for Railway Engineering, American Railway Engineering and Maintenance of Way Association (AREMA), 2006

720.03 Bridge Locations

Bridge locations are chosen to conform to the alignment of the highway. Conditions that can simplify design efforts, minimize construction activities, and reduce structure costs are:

- A perpendicular crossing.
- The minimum required horizontal and vertical clearances.
- A constant bridge width (without tapered sections).
- A tangential approach alignment of sufficient length not to require superelevation on the bridge.
- A crest vertical curve profile that will facilitate drainage.
- An adequate construction staging area.

720.04 Bridge Site Design Elements

(1) Structural Capacity

The structural capacity of a bridge is a measure of the structure's ability to carry vehicle loads. For new bridges, the bridge designer chooses the design load that determines the structural capacity. For existing bridges, the structural capacity is calculated to determine the "load rating" of the bridge. The load rating is used to determine whether or not a bridge is "posted" for legal weight vehicles or "restricted" for overweight permit vehicles.

(a) New Structures

All new structures that carry vehicular loads are designed to HL-93 notional live load in accordance with AASHTO's *LRFD Bridge Design Specifications*.

(b) Existing Structures

When the Structural Capacity column of a design matrix applies to the project, request a Structural Capacity Report from the Risk Reduction Engineer in the HQ Bridge and Structures Office. The report will state:

- The structural capacity status of the structures within the project limits.
- What action, if any, is appropriate.
- Whether a deficient bridge is included in the 6-year or 20-year plans for replacement or rehabilitation under the P2 program and, if so, in which biennium the P2 project is likely to be funded.

Include the Structural Capacity Report in the Design Documentation Package (DDP).

The considerations used to evaluate the structural capacity of a bridge are as follows:

1. On National Highway System (NHS) routes (including Interstate routes):
   - The operating load rating is at least 36 tons (which is equal to HS-20).
   - The bridge is not permanently posted for legal weight vehicles.
   - The bridge is not permanently restricted for vehicles requiring overweight permits.
2. On non-NHS routes:
   - The bridge is not permanently posted for legal weight vehicles.
   - The bridge is not permanently restricted for vehicles requiring overweight permits.

(2) Bridge Widths for Structures

(a) New Structures

Full design level widths are provided on all new structures (see Chapter 1140). All structures on city or county routes crossing over a state highway must conform to the *Local Agency Guidelines*. Use local city or county adopted and applied criteria when their minimum width exceeds state criteria.

(b) Existing Structures

For guidance on existing structures, see the design matrices in Chapter 1100.

(3) Horizontal Clearance

Horizontal clearance for structures is the distance from the edge of the traveled way to bridge piers and abutments, traffic barrier ends, or bridge end embankment slopes. Minimum distances for this clearance vary depending on the type of structure. The *Bridge Design Manual* provides guidance on horizontal clearance.

For structures involving railroads, contact the HQ Design Office Railroad Liaison.

(4) Medians

For multilane highways, the minimum median widths for new bridges are as shown in Chapters 1130 and 1140. An open area between two bridges is undesirable when the two roadways are separated by a median width of 26 feet or less. The preferred treatment is to provide a new single structure that spans the area between the roadways. When this is impracticable, consider widening the two bridges on the median sides to reduce the open area to 6 inches. When neither option is practicable, consider installing netting or other elements to enclose the area between the bridges. Consideration and analysis of all site factors are necessary if installation of netting or other elements is proposed. Document this evaluation in the Design Documentation Package and obtain the approval of the State Design Engineer.

(5) Vertical Clearance

Vertical clearance is the critical height under a structure that will accommodate vehicular and rail traffic based on its design characteristics. This height is the least height available from the lower roadway surface (including usable shoulders) or the plane of the top of the rails to the bottom of the bridge. Usable shoulders are the design shoulders for the roadway and do not include paved widened areas that may exist under the structure.

Construction of new bridges and the reconstruction or widening of existing structures often require the erection of falsework across the traveled way of a highway. The erection of this falsework can reduce the vertical clearance for vehicles to pass under the work area. The potential for accidents to occur by hitting this lower construction stage falsework is increased.

(a) **Vertical Falsework Clearance for Bridges Over Highways**

1. On all routes that require a 16-foot-6-inch vertical clearance, maintain the 16-foot-6-inch clearance for falsework vertical clearance.
   - On structures that currently have less than a 16-foot-6-inch vertical clearance for the falsework envelope, maintain existing clearance.
   - On new structures, maintain the falsework vertical clearance at least to those of the minimum vertical clearances referenced below.
2. Any variance from the above must be approved by the Regional Administrator or designee in writing and made a part of the Project File.

(b) **Minimum Clearance for New Structures**

For new structures, the minimum vertical clearances are as follows:

1. **Bridge Over a Roadway**

   The minimum vertical clearance for a bridge over a roadways is 16.5 feet.

2. **Bridge Over a Railroad Track**

   The minimum vertical clearance for a bridge over a railroad track is 23.5 feet (see Exhibit 720-2). A lesser clearance may be negotiated with the railroad company based on certain operational characteristics of the rail line; however, any clearance less than 22.5 feet requires the approval of the Washington State Utilities and Transportation Commission (WUTC) per WAC 480-60. Vertical clearance is provided for the width of the railroad clearance envelope. Coordinate railroad clearance issues with the HQ Design Office Railroad Liaison.

3. **Pedestrian Bridge Over a Roadway**

   The minimum vertical clearance for a pedestrian bridge over a roadway is 17.5 feet.

Project Type	Vertical Clearance	Documentation Requirement (see notes)
Interstate and Other Freeways[1]		
New Bridge	> 16.5 ft	[2]
Widening Over or Under Existing Bridge	> 16 ft	[2]
	< 16 ft	[4]
Resurfacing Under Existing Bridge	> 16 ft	[2]
	< 16 ft	[4]
Other With No Change to Vertical Clearance	> 14.5 ft	[3]
	< 14.5 ft	[4]
Nonfreeway Routes		
New Bridge	> 16.5 ft	[2]
Widening Over or Under Existing Bridge	> 15.5 ft	[2]
	< 15.5 ft	[4]
Resurfacing Under Existing Bridge	> 15.5 ft	[2]
	< 15.5 ft	[4]
Other With No Change to Vertical Clearance	> 14.5 ft	[3]
	< 14.5 ft	[4]
Bridge Over Railroad Tracks[7]		
New Bridge	> 23.5 ft < 23.5 ft	[2] [4][5]
Existing Bridge	> 22.5 ft < 22.5 ft	[2] [4][5]
Pedestrian Bridge Over Roadway		
New Bridge	> 17.5 ft	[2]
Existing Bridge	17.5 ft	[6]

Notes:

[1] Applies to all bridge vertical clearances over highways and under highways at interchanges.
[2] No documentation required.
[3] Document to Design Documentation Package.
[4] Approved deviation required.
[5] Requires written agreement between railroad company and WSDOT and approval via petition from the WUTC.
[6] Maintain 17.5-ft clearance.
[7] Coordinate railroad clearance with the HQ Design Office Railroad Liaison.

Bridge Vertical Clearances
Exhibit 720-1

(c) **Minimum Clearance for Existing Structures**

The criteria used to evaluate the vertical clearance for existing structures depend on the work being done on or under that structure. When evaluating an existing structure on the Interstate System, see 720.04(5)(e), Coordination. This guidance applies to bridge clearances over state highways and under state highways at interchanges. For state highways over local roads and streets, city or county vertical clearance requirements may be used as minimum design criteria. (See Exhibit 720-1 for bridge vertical clearances.)

1. **Bridge Over a Roadway**

For a project that will widen an existing structure over a highway or where the highway will be widened under an existing structure, the vertical clearance can be as little as 16.0 feet on the Interstate System or other freeways or 15.5 feet on nonfreeway routes. An approved deviation is required for clearance less than 16.0 feet on Interstate routes or other freeways and 15.5 feet on nonfreeway routes.

For a planned resurfacing of the highway under an existing bridge, if the clearance will be less than 16.0 feet on the Interstate System or other freeways and 15.5 feet on nonfreeway routes, evaluate the following options and include in a deviation request:

- Pavement removal and replacement.
- Roadway excavation and reconstruction to lower the roadway profile.
- Providing a new bridge with the required vertical clearance.

Reducing roadway paving and surfacing thickness under the bridge to achieve the minimum vertical clearance can cause accelerated deterioration of the highway and is not recommended. Elimination of the planned resurfacing in the immediate area of the bridge might be a short-term solution if recommended by the Region Materials Engineer (RME). Solutions that include milling the existing surface followed by overlay or inlay must be approved by the RME to ensure adequate pavement structure is provided.

For other projects that include an existing bridge where no widening is proposed on or under the bridge, and the project does not affect vertical clearance, the clearance can be as little as 14.5 feet. For these projects, document the clearance in the Design Documentation Package. For an existing bridge with less than a 14.5-foot vertical clearance, an approved deviation request is required.

2. **Bridge Over a Railroad Track**

For an existing structure over a railroad track, the vertical clearance can be as little as 22.5 feet. A lesser clearance can be used with the agreement of the railroad company and the approval of the Washington State Utilities and Transportation Commission. Coordinate railroad clearance issues with the HQ Design Office Railroad Liaison.

(d) **Signing**

Low-clearance warning signs are necessary when the vertical clearance of an existing bridge is less than 15 feet 3 inches. Refer to the *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices* and the *Traffic Manual* for other requirements for low-clearance signing.

(e) **Coordination**

The Interstate System is used by the Department of Defense (DOD) for the conveyance of military traffic. The Military Traffic Management Command Transportation Engineering Agency (MTMCTEA) represents the DOD in public highway matters. The MTMCTEA has an inventory of vertical clearance deficiencies over the Interstate System in Washington State. Contact the MTMCTEA, through the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), if either of the following changes is proposed to these bridges:

- A project would create a new deficiency of less than a 16.0-foot vertical clearance over an Interstate highway.
- The vertical clearance over the Interstate is already deficient (less than 16.0 feet) and a change (increase or decrease) to vertical clearance is proposed.

Coordination with MTMCTEA is required for these changes on all rural Interstate highways and for one Interstate route through each urban area.

(6) Liquefaction Impact Considerations

To determine the amount of settlement and the potential for the soil to flow laterally during the design level earthquake due to liquefaction, an analysis performed by the HQ Geotechnical Services Division is needed for each bridge project site location. The information collected is used by bridge engineers to determine the bridge's capability to withstand the movement and loading in a seismic event and to explore other foundation mitigation options not necessitating total bridge replacement.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office, in collaboration with the HQ Geotechnical Services Division, evaluates bridge-widening projects involving liquefiable soils and recommends appropriate liquefaction mitigation. The following guidance is intended to assist designers in making project decisions that balance project risks with project and program budget realities.

(a) **Design Decision Considerations**

The following design decision guidance is generally in order of the complexity of project decision making, starting with the most straightforward through the most complex.

1. New bridges will be designed to current seismic and liquefaction standards.
2. Bridge widening that does not require new substructure (a new column) does not require consideration of liquefaction mitigation.

3. Widening that involves any new substructure will require a settlement and lateral loading analysis by the HQ Bridge and Structures Office in collaboration with the HQ Geotechnical Services Division. Each analysis will be unique to the conditions at that particular bridge site.

    a. If a bridge has less than 15 years of its service life remaining, no liquefaction mitigation is necessary according to FHWA guidelines.

    b. If the HQ Geotechnical Services Division analysis demonstrates that the differential settlement induced by liquefaction between the existing bridge and the widened portion will not create forces great enough to cause collapse of the existing bridge, and if lateral loading and movement caused by the liquefaction is minimal, liquefaction mitigation may not be necessary. The decision must be endorsed by the State Geotechnical Engineer, the State Bridge Engineer and the Regional Administrator. The decision and rationale are to be included in the Design Documentation Package.

    c. If the HQ Geotechnical Services Division analysis demonstrates that the differential settlement induced by liquefaction or the lateral loading and movement will be substantial and these movements will result in the collapse of the existing and widened portion of the bridge, additional analysis and documentation are necessary for the project to proceed. A preliminary design and estimate of the mitigation necessary to prevent collapse needs to be performed. Consider alternative designs that eliminate or reduce the need for the widening.

(b) **Deferring Liquefaction Mitigation**

1. **Consideration of Deferment**

    If an alternative design concept is not feasible given the constraints of the project or program, consideration may be given to defer the liquefaction mitigation. Project-related structural retrofits that are deferred because of scope-related issues are to be considered for implementation through the WSDOT seismic retrofit program. The operating characteristics of the roadway and overall estimated cost of the liquefaction mitigation is typically considered in making that decision.

2. **Deferment Requires Approval**

    A decision to defer the mitigation to the seismic retrofit program is made by the WSDOT Chief Engineer after reviewing and considering the alternatives. The decision is to be included in the Design Documentation Package. A memo from the Chief Engineer will be provided to the structural designer of record documenting the agency's decision to defer the mitigation work to the WSDOT seismic retrofit program. A copy of the memo is to be included in the Design Documentation Package (DDP) and the contract general notes.

(7) Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities

When pedestrians or bicyclists are anticipated on bridges, provide facilities consistent with guidance in Chapters 1510 and 1520.

(8) Bridge Approach Slab

Bridge approach slabs are reinforced concrete pavement installed across the full width of the bridge ends. They provide a stable transition from normal roadway cross section to the bridge ends, and they compensate for differential expansion and contraction of the bridge and the roadway.

Bridge approach slabs are provided on all new bridges. If an existing bridge is being widened and it has an approach slab, slabs are required on the widenings. The region, with the concurrence of the State Geotechnical Engineer and the State Bridge Engineer, may decide to omit bridge approach slabs.

(9) Traffic Barrier End Treatment

Plans for new bridge construction and bridge traffic barrier modifications include provisions for the connection of bridge traffic barriers to the longitudinal barrier approaching and departing the bridge. Indicate the preferred longitudinal barrier type and connection during the review of the bridge preliminary plan.

(10) Bridge End Embankments

The design of embankment slopes at bridge ends depends on several factors. The width of the embankment is determined not only by the width of the roadway, but also by the presence of traffic barriers, curbs, and sidewalks, all of which create the need for additional widening. Examples of the additional widening required for these conditions are shown in the *Standard Plans*.

The end slope is determined by combining the recommendations of several technical experts within WSDOT. Exhibit 720-3 illustrates the factors taken into consideration and the experts involved in the process.

(11) Bridge Slope Protection

Slope protection provides a protective and aesthetic surface for exposed slopes under bridges. Slope protection is normally provided under:

- Structures over state highways.
- Structures within an interchange.
- Structures over other public roads unless requested otherwise by the public agency.
- Railroad overcrossings if requested by the railroad.

Slope protection is usually not provided under pedestrian structures.

The type of slope protection is selected at the bridge preliminary plan stage. Typical slope protection types are concrete slope protection, semi-open concrete masonry, and rubble stone.

(12) Slope Protection at Watercrossings

The HQ Hydraulics Section determines the slope protection requirements for structures that cross waterways. The type, limits, and quantity of slope protection are shown on the bridge preliminary plan.

(13) Protective Screening for Highway Structures

The Washington State Patrol (WSP) classifies the throwing of an object from a highway structure as an assault, not an accident. Therefore, records of these assaults are not contained in the WSP's accident databases. Contact the RME's office and the WSP for the history of reported incidents.

Protective screening might reduce the number of incidents, but will not stop a determined individual. Enforcement provides the most effective deterrent.

Installation of protective screening is analyzed on a case-by-case basis at the following locations:

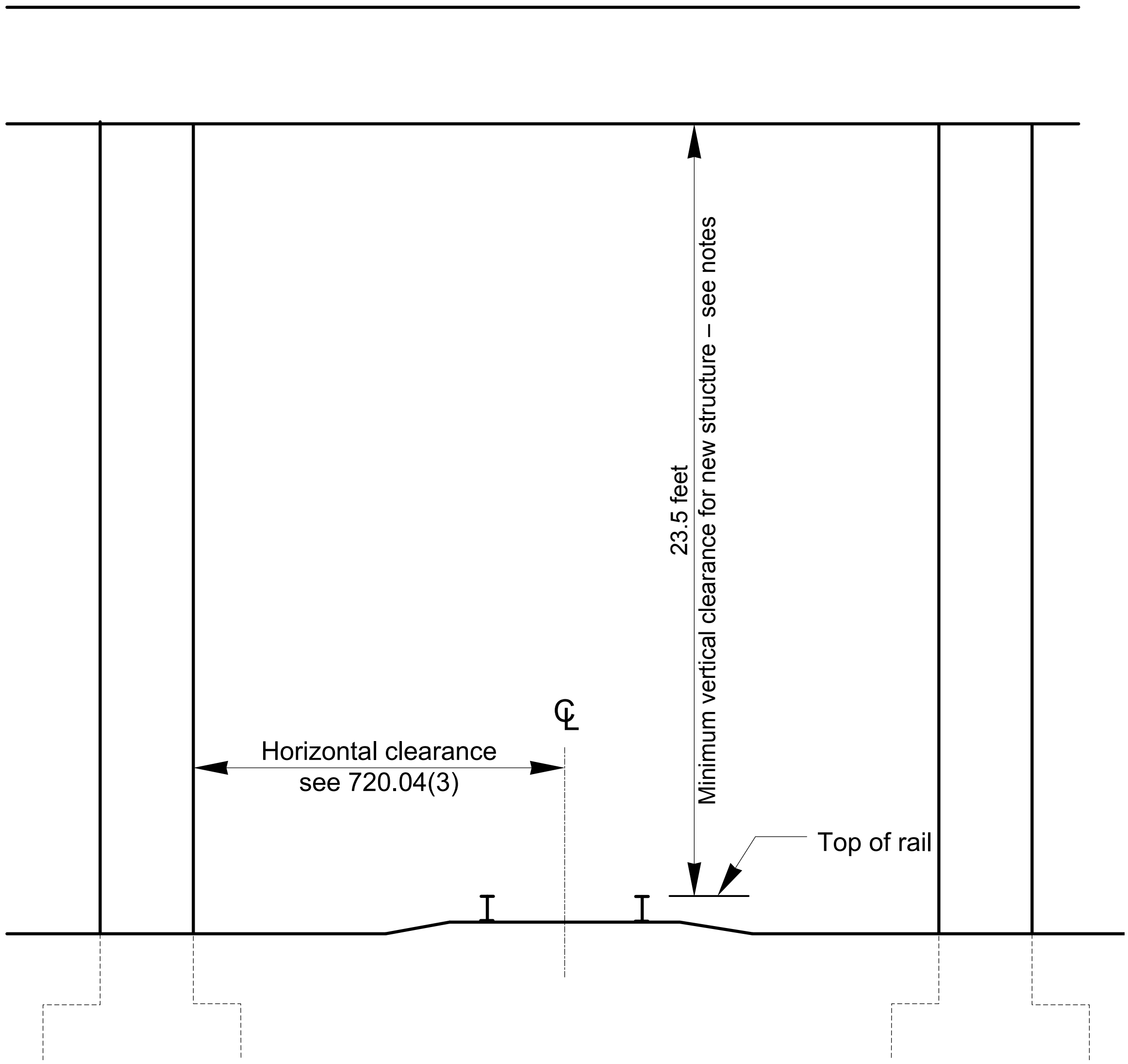
- On existing structures where there is a history of multiple incidents of objects being dropped or thrown and where enforcement has not changed the situation.
- On new structures near schools, playgrounds, or areas frequently used by children not accompanied by adults.
- In urban areas on new structures used by pedestrians where surveillance by local law enforcement personnel is not likely.
- On new structures with walkways where experience on similar structures within a 1-mile radius indicates a need.
- On private property structures, such as buildings or power stations, that are subject to damage.

In most cases, the installation of a protective screen on a new structure can be postponed until there are indications of need.

Submit all proposals to install protective screening on structures to the State Design Engineer for approval. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for approval to attach screening to structures and for specific design and mounting details.

720.05 Documentation

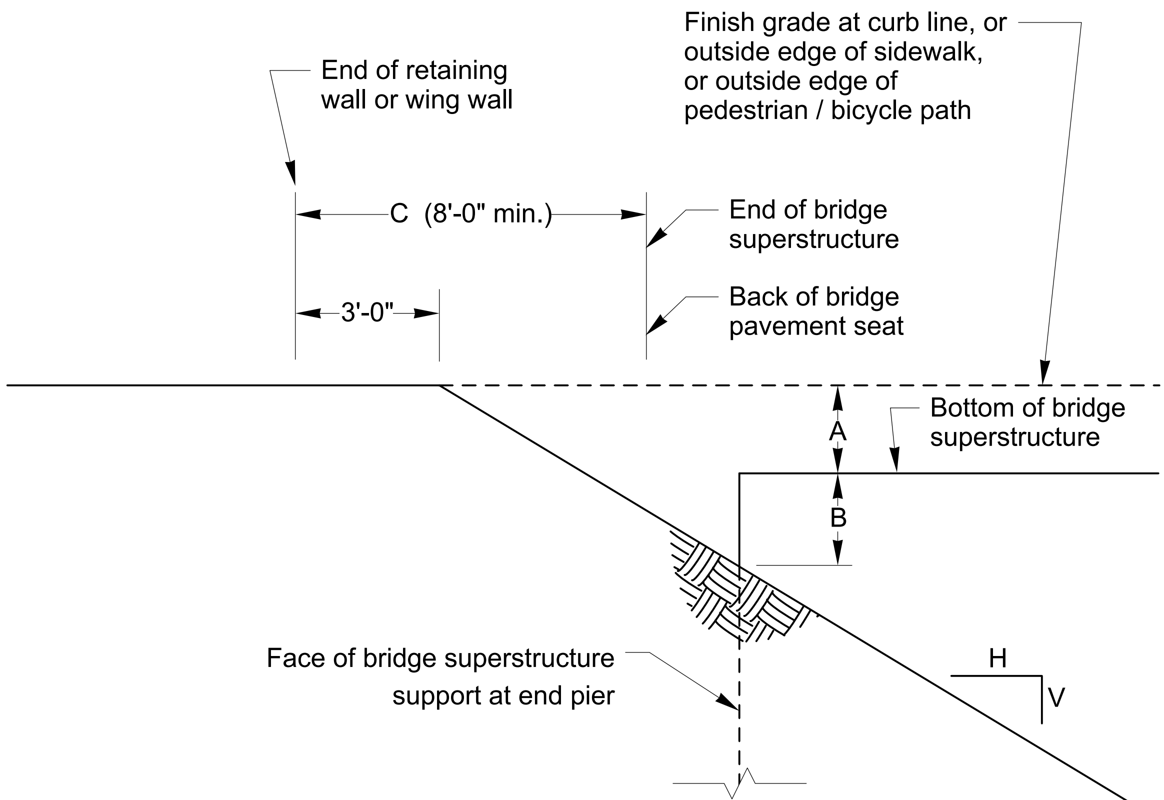
For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



Notes:

- Use 22.5-foot vertical clearance for existing structures.
- Lesser vertical clearance may be negotiated (see 720.04(5)).
- Increase horizontal clearance when the track is curved.
- Coordinate railroad clearance issues with the HQ Design Office Railroad Liaison.

Highway Structure Over Railroad
Exhibit 720-2



Bridge End Elevation

Applies to retaining wall or wing wall (or combination) extending beyond bridge superstructure (barrier omitted for clarity)

LEGEND

A = Superstructure depth: recommended by HQ Bridge and Structures Office

B = Vertical clearance from bottom of superstructure to embankment: recommended by Bridge Preservation Engineer

C = Distance from end of retaining wall or wing wall to back of pavement seat: recommended by HQ Bridge and Structures Office

H & V = Embankment slope: recommended by Geotechnical Engineer

Embankment Slope at Bridge Ends

Exhibit 720-3

Chapter 730 Retaining Walls and Steep Reinforced Slopes

730.01 General
730.02 References
730.03 Design Principles
730.04 Design Requirements
730.05 Guidelines for Wall/Slope Selection
730.06 Design Responsibility and Process
730.07 Documentation

730.01 General

The function of a retaining wall is to form a nearly vertical face through confinement and/or strengthening of a mass of earth or other bulk material. Likewise, the function of a reinforced slope is to strengthen the mass of earth or other bulk material such that a steep (up to 1H:2V) slope can be formed. In both cases, the purpose of constructing such structures is to make maximum use of limited right of way. The difference between the two is that a wall uses a structural facing, whereas a steep reinforced slope does not require a structural facing. Reinforced slopes typically use a permanent erosion control matting with low vegetation as a slope cover to prevent erosion. (See the *Roadside Manual* for more information.)

To lay out and design a retaining wall or reinforced slope, consider the following items:

- Functional classification
- Highway geometry
- Design Clear Zone requirements (see Chapter 1600)
- Amount of excavation required
- Traffic characteristics
- Constructibility
- Impact to adjacent environmentally sensitive areas
- Impact to adjacent structures
- Potential added lanes
- Length and height of wall
- Material to be retained
- Foundation support and potential for differential settlement
- Groundwater
- Earthquake loads
- Right of way costs
- Need for construction easements
- Risk
- Overall cost
- Visual appearance

If the wall or toe of a reinforced slope is to be located adjacent to the right of way line, consider the space needed in front of the wall/slope to construct it.

(1) Retaining Wall Classifications

Retaining walls are generally classified as gravity, semigravity, nongravity cantilever, or anchored. The various wall types and their classifications are summarized in Exhibits 730-1 through 730-6.

(a) **Gravity Walls**

Gravity walls derive their capacity to resist lateral soil loads through a combination of dead weight and sliding resistance. Gravity walls can be further subdivided into rigid gravity walls, prefabricated modular gravity walls, and mechanically stabilized earth (MSE) gravity walls.

Rigid gravity walls consist of a solid mass of concrete or mortared rubble, and they use the weight of the wall itself to resist lateral loads.

Prefabricated modular gravity walls consist of interlocking soil or rock-filled concrete, steel, or wire modules or bins (such as gabions). The combined weight resists the lateral loads from the soil.

MSE gravity walls use strips, bars, or mats of steel or polymeric reinforcement to reinforce the soil and create a reinforced soil block behind the face. The reinforced soil block then acts as a unit and resists the lateral soil loads through the dead weight of the reinforced mass. MSE walls may be constructed as fill walls, with fill and reinforcement placed in alternate layers to create a reinforced mass, or reinforcement may be drilled into an existing soil/rock mass using grouted anchor technology to create a reinforced soil mass (soil nail walls).

(b) **Semigravity Walls**

Semigravity walls rely more on structural resistance through cantilevering action of the wall stem. Generally, the backfill for a semigravity wall rests on part of the wall footing. The backfill, in combination with the weight of the wall and footing, provides the dead weight for resistance. An example of a semigravity wall is the reinforced concrete wall provided in the *Standard Plans*.

(c) **Nongravity Cantilever Walls**

Nongravity cantilever walls rely strictly on the structural resistance of the wall in which vertical elements of the wall are partially embedded in the soil or rock to provide fixity. These vertical elements may consist of piles (such as soldier piles or sheet piles), caissons, or drilled shafts. The vertical elements may form the entire wall face or they may be spanned structurally using timber lagging or other materials to form the wall face.

(d) **Anchored Walls**

Anchored walls derive their lateral capacity through anchors embedded in stable soil or rock below or behind all potential soil/rock failure surfaces. Anchored walls are similar to nongravity cantilevered walls except that anchors embedded in the soil/rock are attached to the wall facing structure to provide lateral resistance. Anchors typically consist of deadman or grouted soil/rock anchors.

Reinforced slopes are similar to MSE walls in that they also use fill and reinforcement placed in alternate layers to create a reinforced soil mass. However, the face is typically built at a 1.2H:1V to 1H:2V slope.

Rockeries (rock walls) behave to some extent like gravity walls. However, the primary function of a rockery is to prevent erosion of an oversteepened but technically stable slope. Rockeries consist of large, well-fitted rocks stacked on top of one another to form a wall.

An example of a rockery and reinforced slope is provided in Exhibit 730-10.

730.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 296-155, Safety standards for construction work

(2) Design Guidance

Bridge Design Manual, M 23-50, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Roadside Manual, M 25-39, WSDOT

730.03 Design Principles

The design of a retaining wall or reinforced slope consists of the following principal activities:

- Develop wall/slope geometry
- Provide adequate subsurface investigation
- Evaluate loads and pressures that will act on the structure
- Design the structure to withstand the loads and pressures
- Design the structure to meet aesthetic requirements
- Ensure wall/slope constructibility
- Coordinate with other design elements

The structure and adjacent soil mass also needs to be stable as a system, and the anticipated wall settlement needs to be within acceptable limits.

730.04 Design Requirements

(1) Wall/Slope Geometry

Wall/slope geometry is developed considering the following:

- Geometry of the transportation facility itself
- Design Clear Zone requirements (see Chapter 1600)
- Flare rate and approach slope when inside the Design Clear Zone (see Chapter 1610)
- Right of way constraints
- Existing ground contours
- Existing and future utility locations
- Impact to adjacent structures
- Impact to environmentally sensitive areas

For wall/slope geometry, also consider the foundation embedment and type anticipated, which requires coordination between the various design groups involved.

Retaining walls are designed to limit the potential for snagging vehicles by removing protruding objects (such as bridge columns, light fixtures, or sign supports).

Provide a traffic barrier shape at the base of a new retaining wall constructed 12 feet or less from the edge of the nearest traffic lane. The traffic barrier shape is optional at the base of the new portion when an existing vertical-faced wall is being extended (or the existing wall may be retrofitted for continuity). Depending on the application, precast or cast-in-place Single Slope Concrete Barrier with vertical back or Type 4 Concrete Barrier may be used for both new and existing walls except when the barrier face can be cast as an integral part of a new wall. Deviations may be considered, but they require approval as prescribed in Chapter 300. For deviations from the above, deviation approval is not required where sidewalk exists in front of the wall or in other situations where the wall face is otherwise inaccessible to traffic.

(2) Investigation of Soils

All retaining wall and reinforced slope structures require an investigation of the underlying soil/rock that supports the structure. Chapter 610 provides guidance on how to complete this investigation. A soil investigation is an integral part of the design of any retaining wall or reinforced slope. The stability of the underlying soils, their potential to settle under the imposed loads, the usability of any existing excavated soils for wall/reinforced slope backfill, and the location of the groundwater table are determined through the geotechnical investigation.

(3) Geotechnical and Structural Design

The structural elements of the wall or slope and the soil below, behind, and/or within the structure are designed together as a system. The wall/slope system is designed for overall external stability as well as internal stability. Overall external stability includes stability of the slope the wall/reinforced slope is a part of and the local external stability (overturning, sliding, and bearing capacity). Internal stability includes resistance of the structural members to load and, in the case of MSE walls and reinforced slopes, pullout capacity of the structural members or soil reinforcement from the soil.

(a) Scour

At any location where a retaining wall or reinforced slope can be in contact with water (such as a culvert outfall, ditch, wetland, lake, river, or floodplain), there is a risk of scour at the toe. This risk must be analyzed. Contact the HQ Geotechnical Services Division and HQ Hydraulics Office to determine whether a scour analysis is required.

(4) Drainage Design

One of the principal causes of retaining wall/slope failure is the additional hydrostatic load imposed by an increase in the water content in the material behind the wall or slope. This condition results in a substantial increase in the lateral loads behind the wall/slope since the material undergoes a possible increase in unit weight, water pressure is exerted on the back of the wall, and the soil shear strength undergoes a possible reduction. To alleviate this, adequate drainage for the retaining wall/slope needs to be considered in the design stage and reviewed by the region Materials Engineer during construction. The drainage features shown in the *Standard Plans* are the minimum basic requirements. Underdrains behind the wall/slope need to daylight at some point in order to adequately perform their drainage function. Provide positive drainage at periodic intervals to prevent entrapment of water.

Native soil may be used for retaining wall and reinforced slope backfill if it meets the requirements for the particular wall/slope system. In general, use backfill that is free-draining and granular in nature. Exceptions to this can be made depending on the site conditions as determined by the Geotechnical Services Division of the Headquarters (HQ) Materials Laboratory.

A typical drainage detail for a gravity wall (in particular, an MSE wall) is shown in Exhibit 730-11. Include drainage details with a wall unless otherwise recommended to be deleted by the Region Materials Engineer or HQ Geotechnical Services Division.

(5) Aesthetics

Retaining walls and slopes can have a pleasing appearance that is compatible with the surrounding terrain and other structures in the vicinity. To the extent possible within functional requirements and cost-effectiveness criteria, this aesthetic goal is to be met for all visible retaining walls and reinforced slopes.

Aesthetic requirements include consideration of the wall face material, top profile, terminals, and surface finish (texture, color, and pattern). Where appropriate, provide planting areas and irrigation conduits. These will visually soften walls and blend them with adjacent areas. Avoid short sections of retaining wall or steep slope where possible.

In higher walls, variations in slope treatment are recommended for a pleasing appearance. High continuous walls are generally not desirable from an aesthetic standpoint, because they can be quite imposing. Consider stepping high or long retaining walls in areas of high visibility. Plantings may be considered between wall steps.

Approval by the State Bridge and Structures Architect is required on all retaining wall aesthetics, including finishes, materials, and configuration (see Chapter 950).

(6) Constructibility

Consider the potential effect that site constraints might have on the constructibility of the specific wall/slope. Constraints to be considered include but are not limited to site geometry, access, time required to construct the wall, environmental issues, and impact on traffic flow and other construction activities.

(7) Coordination With Other Design Elements

(a) Other Design Elements

Retaining wall and slope designs are to be coordinated with other elements of the project that might interfere with or impact the design or construction of the wall/slope. Also consider drainage features; utilities; luminaire or sign structures; adjacent retaining walls or bridges; concrete traffic barriers; and beam guardrails. Locate these design elements in a manner that will minimize the impacts to the wall elements. In general, locate obstructions within the wall backfill (such as guardrail posts, drainage features, and minor structure foundations) a minimum of 3 feet from the back of the wall facing units.

Greater offset distances may be required depending on the size and nature of the interfering design element. If possible, locate these elements to miss reinforcement layers or other portions of the wall system. Conceptual details for accommodating concrete traffic barriers and beam guardrails are provided in Exhibit 730-12.

Where impact to the wall elements is unavoidable, the wall system needs to be designed to accommodate these impacts. For example, it may be necessary to place drainage structures or guardrail posts in the reinforced backfill zone of MSE walls. This may require that holes be cut in the upper soil reinforcement layers or that discrete reinforcement strips be splayed around the obstruction. This causes additional load to be carried in the adjacent reinforcement layers due to the missing soil reinforcement or the distortion in the reinforcement layers.

The need for these other design elements and their impacts on the proposed wall systems are to be clearly indicated in the submitted wall site data so the walls can be properly designed. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office (or the Geotechnical Services Division for geosynthetic walls/slopes and soil nail walls) for assistance regarding this issue.

(b) **Fall Protection**

Department of Labor and Industries regulations require that, when employees are exposed to the possibility of falling from a location 10 feet or more above the roadway (or other lower area), the employer is to ensure fall restraint or fall arrest systems are provided, installed, and implemented.

Design fall protection in accordance with WAC 296-155-24510 for walls that create a potential for a fall of 10 feet or more. During construction or other temporary or emergency condition, fall protection will follow WAC 296-155-505. Any need for maintenance of the wall's surface or the area at the top can expose employees to a possible fall. If the area at the top will be open to the public, see Chapters 560, Fencing, and 1510, Pedestrian Design Considerations.

For maintenance of a tall wall's surface, consider harness tie-offs if other protective means are not provided.

For maintenance of the area at the top of a tall wall, a fall restraint system is required when all of the following conditions will exist:

- The wall is on a cut slope.
- A possible fall will be of 10 feet or more.
- Periodic maintenance will be performed on the area at the top.
- The area at the top is not open to the public.

Recommended fall restraint systems are:

- Wire rope railing with top and intermediate rails of ½-inch-diameter steel wire rope.
- Brown vinyl-coated chain link fencing.
- Steel pipe railing with 1½-inch nominal outside diameter pipe as posts and top and intermediate rails.
- Concrete as an extension of the height of the retaining wall.

A fall restraint system is to be 42 inches high, plus or minus 3 inches, measured from the top of the finished grade, and capable of withstanding a 200 lb force from any direction, at the top, with minimal deflection. An intermediate cable or rail shall be halfway between the top rail and the platform. A toe board with a minimum height of 9 inches will be provided. Post spacing is no more than 8 feet on centers. (See the *Construction Manual* and WAC 296-155 for fall arrest and protection information.)

The designer is to contact maintenance personnel regarding fall protection and debris removal considerations.

Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for design details for any retrofit to an existing retaining wall and for any attachments to a new retaining wall.

730.05 Guidelines for Wall/Slope Selection

Wall/slope selection is dependent on:

- Whether the wall/slope will be located primarily in a cut or fill (how much excavation/shoring will be required to construct the wall or slope).
- If located in a cut, the type of soil/rock present.
- The need for space between the right of way line and the wall/slope or easement.
- The amount of settlement expected.
- The potential for deep failure surfaces to be present.
- The structural capacity of the wall/slope in terms of maximum allowable height.
- The nature of the wall/slope application.
- Whether or not structures or utilities will be located on or above the wall.
- Architectural requirements.
- Overall economy.

(1) Cut and Fill Considerations

Due to the construction technique and base width required, some wall types are best suited for cut situations, whereas others are best suited for fill situations. For example, anchored walls and soil nail walls have soil reinforcements drilled into the in-situ soil/rock and are therefore generally used in cut situations. Nongravity cantilevered walls are drilled or cut into the in-situ soil/rock, have narrow base widths, and are also well suited to cut situations. Both types of walls are constructed from the top down. Such walls are also used as temporary shoring to allow other types of walls or other structures to be constructed where considerable excavation will otherwise be required.

MSE walls and reinforced slopes, however, are constructed by placing soil reinforcement between layers of fill from the bottom up and are therefore best suited to fill situations. Furthermore, the base width of MSE walls is typically on the order of 70% of the wall height, which requires considerable excavation in a cut situation. Therefore, in a cut situation, base width requirements usually make MSE structures uneconomical and possibly unconstructible.

Semigravity (cantilever) walls, rigid gravity walls, and prefabricated modular gravity walls are free-standing structural systems built from the bottom up, but they do not rely on soil reinforcement techniques (placement of fill layers with soil reinforcement) to provide stability.

These types of walls generally have a narrower base width than MSE structures (on the order of 50% of the wall height). Both of these factors make these types of walls feasible in fill situations as well as many cut situations.

Reinforced slopes generally require more room overall to construct than a wall because of the sloping face, but they typically are a feasible alternative to a combination wall and fill slope to add a new lane. Reinforced slopes can also be adapted to the existing ground contours to minimize excavation requirements where fill is placed on an existing slope. Reinforced slopes might also be a feasible choice to repair slopes damaged by landslide activity or deep erosion.

Rockeries are best suited to cut situations as they require only a narrow base width, on the order of 30% of the rockery height. Rockeries can be used in fill situations, but the fill heights they support need to be kept relatively low. It is difficult to get the cohesive strength needed in granular fill soils to provide minimal stability of the soil behind the rockery at the steep slope typically used for rockeries in a cut (such as 1H:6V or 1H:4V).

The key considerations in deciding which walls or slopes are feasible are the amount of excavation or shoring required and the overall height. The site geometric constraints are defined to determine these elements. Another consideration is whether or not an easement will be required. For example, a temporary easement might be required for a wall in a fill situation to allow the contractor to work in front of the wall. For walls in cut situations, especially anchored walls and soil nail walls, a permanent easement may be required for the anchors or nails.

(2) Settlement and Deep Foundation Support Considerations

Settlement issues, especially differential settlement, are of primary concern in the selection of walls. Some wall types are inherently flexible and can tolerate a great deal of settlement without suffering structurally. Other wall types are inherently rigid and cannot tolerate much settlement. In general, MSE walls have the greatest flexibility and tolerance to settlement, followed by prefabricated modular gravity walls. Reinforced slopes are also inherently very flexible. For MSE walls, the facing type used can affect the ability of the wall to tolerate settlement. Welded wire and geosynthetic wall facings are the most flexible and the most tolerant to settlement, whereas concrete facings are less tolerant to settlement. In some cases, after the wall settlement is complete, concrete facing can be placed such that the concrete facing does not limit the wall’s tolerance to settlement. Facing may also be added for aesthetic reasons.

Semigravity (cantilever) walls and rigid gravity walls have the least tolerance to settlement. In general, total settlement for these types of walls needs to be limited to approximately 1 inch or less. Rockeries also cannot tolerate much settlement, as rocks can shift and fall out. Therefore, semigravity cantilever walls, rigid gravity walls, and rockeries are not used in settlement prone areas.

If very weak soils are present that will not support the wall and are too deep to be overexcavated, or if a deep failure surface is present that results in inadequate slope stability, select a wall type capable of using deep foundation support and/or anchors. In general, MSE walls, prefabricated modular gravity walls, and some rigid gravity walls are not appropriate for these situations. Walls that can be pile-supported, such as concrete semigravity cantilever walls, nongravity cantilever walls, and anchored walls, are more appropriate for these situations.

(3) Feasible Wall Heights and Limitations

Feasible wall heights are affected by issues such as the capacity of the wall structural elements, past experience with a particular wall, current practice, seismic risk, long-term durability, and aesthetics.

For height limitations, see Exhibits 730-1 through 730-6.

(4) Supporting Structures or Utilities

Not all walls are acceptable to support other structures or utilities. Issues that are to be considered include the potential for the wall to deform due to the structure foundation load, interference between the structure foundation and the wall components, and the potential long-term durability of the wall system. Using retaining walls to support other structures is considered to be a critical application, requiring a special design. In general, soil nail walls, semigravity cantilever walls, nongravity cantilever walls, and anchored walls are appropriate for use in supporting bridge and building structure foundations. In addition to these walls, MSE and prefabricated modular gravity walls may be used to support other retaining walls, noise walls, and minor structure foundations such as those for sign bridges and signals. On a project-specific basis, MSE walls can be used to support bridge and building foundations as approved by the HQ Bridge and Structures Office.

Consider the location of any utilities behind the wall or reinforced slope when making wall/slope selections. This is mainly an issue for walls that use some type of soil reinforcement and for reinforced slopes. It is best not to place utilities within a reinforced soil backfill zone because it will be impossible to access the utility from the ground surface without cutting through the soil reinforcement layers, thereby compromising the integrity of the wall.

Sometimes utilities, culverts, pipe arches, and so on must penetrate the face of a wall. Not all walls and facings are compatible with such penetrations. Consider how the facing can be formed around the penetration so that backfill soil cannot pipe or erode through the face. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for assistance regarding this issue.

(5) Facing Options

Facing selection depends on the aesthetic and structural needs of the wall system. Wall settlement may also affect the feasibility of the facing options. More than one wall facing may be available for a given system. Consider the available facing options when selecting a particular wall.

(a) **MSE Walls**

For MSE walls, facing options typically include:

- Precast modular panels.
- In some cases, full height precast concrete panels. Full height panels are generally limited to walls with a maximum height of 20 feet placed in areas where minimal settlement is expected.
- Welded wire facing.
- Timber facing.
- Shotcrete facing with treatment options that vary from a simple broom finish to a textured and colored finish.

- Segmental masonry concrete blocks.
- Cast-in-place concrete facing with various texturing options.

Plantings on welded wire facings can be attempted in certain cases. The difficulty is in providing a soil at the wall face that is suitable for growing plants and meets engineering requirements in terms of soil compressibility, strength, and drainage. If plantings in the wall face are attempted, use only small plants, vines, and grasses. Small bushes may be considered for plantings between wall steps. Larger bushes or trees are not considered in these cases due to the loads they can create on the wall face.

Geosynthetic facings are not acceptable for permanent facings due to potential facing degradation when exposed to sunlight. For permanent applications, use some type of timber, welded wire, or concrete face for geosynthetic walls. Shotcrete, masonry concrete blocks, cast-in-place concrete, welded wire, or timber are typically used for geosynthetic wall facings.

(b) **Soil Nail Walls**

Soil nail walls can use either architecturally treated shotcrete or a cast-in-place facia wall textured as needed to produce the desired appearance.

(c) **Prefabricated Modular Gravity Walls**

For prefabricated modular gravity walls, the facing generally consists of the structural bin or crib elements used to construct the walls. For some walls, the elements can be rearranged to form areas for plantings. In some cases, textured structural elements might also be feasible. This is also true of rigid gravity walls, though planting areas on the face of rigid gravity walls are generally not feasible. The concrete facing for semigravity cantilever walls can be textured as needed to produce the desired appearance.

(d) **Nongravity Cantilevered Walls**

For nongravity cantilevered walls and anchored walls, a textured cast-in-place or precast facia wall is usually installed to produce the desired appearance.

(6) Cost Considerations

Usually, more than one wall type is feasible for a given situation. Consider initial and future maintenance costs throughout the selection process, as the decisions made may affect the overall cost. For example, you may have to decide whether to shut down a lane of traffic to install a low-cost gravity wall system that requires more excavation room or use a more expensive anchored wall system that will minimize excavation requirements and impacts to traffic. In this case, determine whether the cost of traffic impacts and more excavation justifies the cost of the more expensive anchored wall system. Consider long-term maintenance costs when determining wall type.

Decisions regarding aesthetics can also affect the overall cost of the wall system. In general, the least expensive aesthetic options use the structural members of the wall as facing (welded wire or concrete or steel cribbing or bins), whereas the most expensive aesthetic options use textured cast-in-place concrete facias. In general, concrete facings increase in cost in the following order: shotcrete, segmental masonry concrete blocks, precast concrete facing panels, full height precast concrete facing panels, and cast-in-place concrete facing panels. Special architectural treatments usually increase the cost of any of these facing systems. Special wall terracing to provide locations for plants will also tend to increase costs. Therefore, weigh the costs against the value of the desired aesthetics.

Other factors that affect the costs of wall/slope systems include wall/slope size and length; access at the site and distance to the material supplier location; overall size of the project; and competition between wall suppliers. In general, costs tend to be higher for walls or slopes that are high, but short in length, due to lack of room for equipment to work. Sites that are remote or have difficult local access increase wall/slope costs. Small wall/slope quantities result in high unit costs. Lack of competition between materials or wall system suppliers can result in higher costs as well.

Some of the factors that increase costs are required parts of a project and are therefore unavoidable. Always consider such factors when estimating costs because a requirement may not affect all wall types in the same way. Current cost information can be obtained by consulting the *Bridge Design Manual* or by contacting the HQ Bridge and Structures Office.

(7) Summary

For wall/slope selection, consider factors such as the intended application; the soil/rock conditions in terms of settlement, need for deep foundations, constructibility, and impacts to traffic; and the overall geometry in terms of wall/slope height and length, location of adjacent structures and utilities, aesthetics, and cost. Exhibits 730-1 through 730-6 provide a summary of many of the various wall/slope options available, including their advantages, disadvantages, and limitations. Note that specific wall types in the exhibits may represent multiple wall systems, some or all of which will be proprietary.

730.06 Design Responsibility and Process

(1) General

The retaining walls available for a given project include standard walls, nonstandard walls, and reinforced slopes.

Standard walls are those walls for which standard designs are provided in the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) *Standard Plans*. These designs are provided for reinforced concrete cantilever walls up to 35 feet in height. The internal stability design and the external stability design for overturning and sliding stability have already been completed for these standard walls. Determine overall slope stability and allowable soil bearing capacity (including settlement considerations) for each standard-design wall location.

Nonstandard walls may be either proprietary (patented or trademarked) or nonproprietary. Proprietary walls are designed by a wall manufacturer for internal and external stability, except bearing capacity, settlement, and overall slope stability, which are determined by WSDOT. Nonstandard nonproprietary walls are fully designed by WSDOT.

The geosynthetic soil reinforcement used in nonstandard nonproprietary geosynthetic walls is considered to be proprietary. It is likely that more than one manufacturer can supply proprietary materials for a nonstandard nonproprietary geosynthetic wall.

Reinforced slopes are similar to nonstandard nonproprietary walls in terms of their design process.

(a) **Preapproved Proprietary Walls**

Some proprietary wall systems are preapproved. Preapproved proprietary wall systems have been extensively reviewed by the HQ Bridge and Structures Office and the Geotechnical Services Division. Design procedures and wall details for preapproved walls have already been agreed upon between WSDOT and the proprietary wall manufacturers, allowing the manufacturers to competitively bid a particular project without having a detailed wall design provided in the contract plans.

Note that proprietary wall manufacturers might produce several retaining wall options, and not all options from a given manufacturer have necessarily been preapproved. For example, proprietary wall manufacturers often offer more than one facing alternative. It is possible that some facing alternatives are preapproved, whereas others are not preapproved. WSDOT does not preapprove the manufacturer, but specific wall systems by a given manufacturer can be preapproved.

It is imperative with preapproved systems that the design requirements for all preapproved wall alternatives for a given project be clearly stated so that the wall manufacturer can adapt the preapproved system to specific project conditions. For a given project, coordination of the design of all wall alternatives with all project elements that impact the wall is critical to avoid costly change orders or delays during construction. These elements include drainage features, utilities, luminaires and sign structures, noise walls, traffic barriers, guardrails, or other walls or bridges.

In general, standard walls are the easiest walls to incorporate into project Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E), but they may not be the most cost-effective option. Preapproved proprietary walls provide more options in terms of cost-effectiveness and aesthetics and are also relatively easy to incorporate into a PS&E. Nonstandard state-designed walls and nonpreapproved proprietary walls generally take more time and effort to incorporate into a PS&E because a complete wall design needs to be developed. Some nonstandard walls (such as state-designed geosynthetic walls) can be designed relatively quickly, require minimal plan preparation effort, and only involve the region and the Geotechnical Services Division. Other nonstandard walls such as soil nail and anchored wall systems require complex designs, involve both the HQ Bridge and Structures Office and the Geotechnical Services Division, and require a significant number of plan sheets and considerable design effort.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office maintains a list of the proprietary retaining walls that are preapproved. The region consults the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for the latest list. The region consults the Geotechnical Services Division for the latest geosynthetic reinforcement list to determine which geosynthetic products are acceptable if a critical geosynthetic wall or reinforced slope application is anticipated.

(b) **Experimental Wall Systems**

Some proprietary retaining wall systems are classified as experimental by the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA). The HQ Bridge and Structures Office maintains a list of walls that are classified as experimental. If the wall intended for use is classified as experimental, a work plan is to be prepared by WSDOT and approved by the FHWA.

An approved public interest finding, signed by the State Design Engineer, is required for the use of a sole source proprietary wall.

(c) **Gabion Walls**

Gabion walls are nonstandard walls that are to be designed for overturning, sliding, overall slope stability, settlement, and bearing capacity. A full design for gabion walls is not provided in the *Standard Plans*. Gabion baskets are typically 3 feet high by 3 feet wide, and it is typically safe to build gabions two baskets high (6 feet) but only one basket deep. This results in a wall base width of 50% of the wall height, provided soil conditions are reasonably good (medium-dense to dense granular soils are present below and behind the wall).

(2) Responsibility and Process for Design

A flow chart illustrating the process and responsibility for retaining wall/reinforced slope design is provided in Exhibit 730-13a. As shown in the exhibit, the region initiates the process except for walls developed as part of a preliminary bridge plan. These are initiated by the HQ Bridge and Structures Office. In general, it is the responsibility of the design office initiating the design process to coordinate with other groups in the department to identify all wall/slope systems that are appropriate for the project in question. Coordinate with the region and the HQ Bridge and Structures Office, Geotechnical Services Division, and State Bridge and Structures Architect as early in the process as feasible.

Headquarters or region consultants, if used, are considered an extension of the Headquarters staff and must follow the process summarized in Exhibit 730-13a. All consultant designs, from development of the scope of work to the final product, are to be reviewed and approved by the appropriate Headquarters offices.

(a) **Standard Walls**

The regions are responsible for detailing retaining walls for which standard designs are available.

For standard walls greater than 10 feet in height, and for all standard walls where soft or unstable soil is present beneath or behind the wall, a geotechnical investigation will be conducted, or reviewed and approved, by the Geotechnical Services Division. Through this investigation, provide the foundation design, including bearing capacity requirements and settlement determination, overall stability, and the selection of the wall types most feasible for the site.

For standard walls 10 feet in height or less where soft or unstable soils are not present, it is the responsibility of the region Materials Laboratory to perform the geotechnical investigation. If it has been verified that soil conditions are adequate for the proposed standard wall that is less than or equal to 10 feet in height, the region establishes the wall footing location based on the embedment criteria in the *Bridge Design Manual*, or places the bottom of the wall footing below any surficial loose soils. During this process, the region also evaluates other wall types that may be feasible for the site in question.

The *Standard Plans* provides design charts and details for standard reinforced concrete cantilever walls. The *Standard Plans* are used to size the walls and determine the factored bearing pressure to compare with the factored bearing resistance determined from the geotechnical investigation. The charts provide maximum soil pressure for the LRFD service, strength, and extreme event limit states. Factored bearing resistance for the LRFD service, strength, and extreme event limit states can be obtained from the Geotechnical Services Division for standard walls over 10 feet in height and from the region Materials Laboratory for standard walls less than or equal to 10 feet in height. The *Standard Plans* can be used for the wall design if the factored bearing resistance exceeds the maximum soil pressure shown in the *Standard Plans* for the respective LRFD limit states.

Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office if the factored bearing resistance provided by the geotechnical investigation does not exceed the maximum soil pressure shown in the *Standard Plans* for one or all of the LRFD limit states. The wall is considered a nonstandard wall design and the *Standard Plans* cannot be used.

If the standard wall must support surcharge loads from bridge or building foundations, other retaining walls, noise walls, or other types of surcharge loads, a special wall design is required. The wall is considered to be supporting the surcharge load and is treated as a nonstandard wall if the surcharge load is located within a 1H:1V slope projected up from the bottom of the back of the wall. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for assistance.

The *Standard Plans* provide eight types of reinforced concrete cantilever walls (which represent eight loading cases). Reinforced concrete retaining walls Types 5 through 8 are not designed to withstand western Washington earthquake forces and are not to be used in western Washington (west of the Cascade crest).

Once the geotechnical and architectural assessments have been completed, the region completes the PS&E for the standard wall option(s) selected, including a generalized wall profile and plan, a typical cross section as appropriate, and details for desired wall appurtenances, drainage details, and other details as needed.

Metal bin walls, Types 1 and 2, have been deleted from the *Standard Plans* and are therefore no longer standard walls. Metal bin walls are seldom used due to cost and undesirable aesthetics. If this type of wall is proposed, contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for plan details and toe bearing pressures. The applied toe bearing pressure will then have to be evaluated by the Geotechnical Services Division to determine whether the site soil conditions are appropriate for the applied load and anticipated settlement.

(b) **Preapproved Proprietary Walls**

Final approval of preapproved proprietary wall design, with the exception of geosynthetic walls, is the responsibility of the HQ Bridge and Structures Office. Final approval of the design of preapproved proprietary geosynthetic walls is the responsibility of the Geotechnical Services Division. It is the region's responsibility to coordinate the design effort for all preapproved wall systems.

The region Materials Laboratory performs the geotechnical investigation for preapproved proprietary walls 10 feet in height or less that are not bearing on soft or unstable soils. In all other cases, it is the responsibility of the Geotechnical Services Division to conduct, or review and approve, the geotechnical investigation for the wall. The region also coordinates with the State Bridge and Structures Architect to ensure that the wall options selected meet the aesthetic requirements for the site.

Once the geotechnical and architectural assessments have been completed and the desired wall alternatives selected, it is the responsibility of the region to contact the suppliers of the selected preapproved systems to confirm in writing the adequacy and availability of the systems for the proposed use.

Include a minimum of three different wall systems in the PS&E for any project with federal participation that includes a proprietary wall system unless specific justification is provided. Standard walls can be alternatives.

Once confirmation of adequacy and availability has been received, the region contacts the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for special provisions for the selected wall systems and proceeds to finalize the contract PS&E in accordance with the *Plans Preparation Manual*. Provide the allowable bearing capacity and foundation embedment criteria for the wall, as well as backfill and foundation soil properties, in the Special Provisions. In general, assume that gravel borrow or better-quality backfill material will be used for the walls when assessing soil parameters.

Complete wall plans and designs for the proprietary wall options will not be developed until after the contract is awarded, but will be developed by the proprietary wall supplier as shop drawings after the contract is awarded. Therefore, include a general wall plan; a profile showing neat line top and bottom of the wall; a final ground line in front of and in back of the wall; a typical cross-section; and the generic details for the desired appurtenances and drainage requirements in the contract PS&E for the proprietary walls. Estimate the ground line in back of the wall based on a nominal 1.5-foot facing thickness (and state this on the wall plan sheets). Include load or other design acceptance requirements for these appurtenances in the PS&E. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for assistance.

It is best to locate catch basins, grate inlets, signal foundations, and the like outside the reinforced backfill zone of MSE walls to avoid interference with the soil reinforcement. In those cases where conflict with these reinforcement obstructions cannot be avoided, indicate the location(s) and dimensions of the reinforcement obstruction(s) relative to the wall on the plans. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for preapproved wall details and designs for size and location of obstructions and to obtain the generic details that are to be provided in the plans. If the obstruction is too large or too close to the wall face, a special design may be required to accommodate the obstruction, and the wall is treated as a nonpreapproved proprietary wall.

A special design is required if the wall will support structure foundations, other retaining walls, noise walls, signs or sign bridges, luminaires, or other types of surcharge loads. The wall is considered to be supporting the surcharge load if the surcharge is located within a 1H:1V slope projected from the bottom of the back of the wall. For MSE walls, the back of the wall is considered to be the back of the soil reinforcement layers. If this situation occurs, the wall is treated as a nonpreapproved proprietary wall.

For those alternative wall systems that have the same face embedment criteria, the wall face quantities depicted in the plans for each alternative are to be identical. To provide an equal basis for competition, the region determines wall face quantities based on neat lines.

Once the detailed wall plans and designs are available as shop drawings after contract award, the HQ Bridge and Structures Office will review and approve the wall shop drawings and calculations, with the exception of geosynthetic walls. They are reviewed and approved by the Geotechnical Services Division.

(c) **Nonpreapproved Proprietary Walls**

Final approval authority for nonpreapproved proprietary wall design is the same as for preapproved proprietary walls. The region initiates the design effort for all nonpreapproved wall systems by submitting wall plan, profile, cross section, and other information for the proposed wall to the HQ Bridge and Structures Office, with copies to the Geotechnical Services Division and the State Bridge and Structures Architect. The HQ Bridge and Structures Office coordinates the wall design effort.

Once the geotechnical and architectural assessments have been completed and the desired wall types selected, the HQ Bridge and Structures Office contacts suppliers of the selected nonpreapproved wall systems to obtain and review detailed wall designs and plans to be included in the contract PS&E.

To ensure fair competition between all wall alternatives included in the PS&E, make the wall face quantities identical for those wall systems subject to the same face embedment requirements.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office develops the special provisions and cost estimates for the nonpreapproved proprietary walls and sends the wall PS&E to the region for inclusion in the final PS&E in accordance with the *Plans Preparation Manual*.

(d) **Nonstandard Nonproprietary Walls**

With the exception of rockeries over 5 feet high, nonproprietary geosynthetic walls and reinforced slopes, and soil nail walls, the HQ Bridge and Structures Office coordinates with the Geotechnical Services Division and the State Bridge and Structures Architect to carry out the design of all nonstandard, nonproprietary walls. The HQ Bridge and Structures Office develops the wall preliminary plan from site data provided by the region, completes the wall design, and develops the nonstandard nonproprietary wall PS&E package for inclusion in the contract.

For rockeries over 5 feet high, nonproprietary geosynthetic walls and reinforced slopes, and soil nail walls, the region develops wall/slope profiles, plans, and cross sections and submits them to the Geotechnical Services Division to complete a detailed wall/slope design.

For geosynthetic walls and slopes and for rockeries, the region provides overall coordination of the wall/slope design effort, including coordination with the State Bridge and Structures Architect regarding aesthetics and finishes, and the region or HQ Landscape Architect if the wall uses vegetation on the face.

The Geotechnical Services Division has overall approval authority for the wall design. Once the wall design has been completed, the Geotechnical Services Division, and in some cases the HQ Bridge and Structures Office, provides geotechnical and structural plan details to be included in the region plan sheets and special provisions for the PS&E. The region then completes the PS&E package.

For soil nail walls, once the Geotechnical Services Division has performed the geotechnical design, the HQ Bridge and Structures Office, in cooperation with the Geotechnical Services Division, coordinates the design effort and completes the PS&E package.

(3) Guidelines for Wall/Slope Data Submission for Design

(a) **Standard Walls, Proprietary Walls, Geosynthetic Walls/Slopes, and Soil Nail Walls**

Where Headquarters involvement in retaining wall/slope design is required (as it is for standard walls and preapproved proprietary walls over 10 feet in height, gabions over 6 feet in height, rockeries over 5 feet in height, all nonpreapproved proprietary walls, geosynthetic walls/slopes, and all soil nail walls), the region submits the following information to the Geotechnical Services Division or HQ Bridge and Structures Office as appropriate:

- Wall/slope plans.
- Profiles showing the existing and final grades in front of and behind the wall.
- Wall/slope cross sections (typically every 50 feet) or CAiCE files that define the existing and new ground line above and below the wall/slope and show stations and offsets.
- Location of right of way lines and other constraints to wall/slope construction.
- Location of adjacent existing and/or proposed structures, utilities, and obstructions.
- Desired aesthetics.
- Date design must be completed.
- Key region contacts for the project.

Note that for the purpose of defining the final wall geometry, it is best to base existing ground measurements on physical survey data rather than solely on photogrammetry. In addition, the region is to complete a Retaining Wall/Reinforced Slope Site Data Check List, DOT Form 351-009 EF, for each wall or group of walls submitted.

(b) **Nonstandard Walls, Except Geosynthetic Walls/Slopes and Soil Nail Walls**

In this case, the region is to submit site data in accordance with Chapter 710. Additionally, the region is to complete a Retaining Wall/Reinforced Slope Site Data Check List, DOT Form 351-009 EF, for each wall or group of walls.

730.07 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Specific Wall Type	Advantages	Disadvantages	Limitations
Steel soil reinforcement with full height precast concrete panels	Relatively low cost.	Can tolerate little settlement; generally requires high-quality backfill; wide base width required (70% of wall height).	Applicable primarily to fill situations; maximum feasible height is approximately 20 feet.
Steel soil reinforcement with modular precast concrete panels	Relatively low cost; flexible enough to handle significant settlement.	Generally requires high-quality backfill; wide base width required (70% of wall height).	Applicable primarily to fill situations; maximum height of 33 feet; heights over 33 feet require a special design.
Steel soil reinforcement with welded wire and cast-in-place concrete face	Can tolerate large short-term settlements.	Relatively high cost; cannot tolerate long-term settlement; generally requires high-quality wall backfill soil; wide base width required (70% of wall height); typically requires a settlement delay during construction.	Applicable primarily to fill situations; maximum height of 33 feet for routine designs; heights over 33 feet require a special design.
Steel soil reinforcement with welded wire face only	Can tolerate large short-term settlements; low cost.	Aesthetics, unless face plantings can be established; generally requires high-quality backfill; wide base width required (70% of wall height).	Applicable primarily to fill situations; maximum height of 33 feet for routine designs; heights over 33 feet require a special design.
Segmental masonry concrete block-faced walls, generally with geosynthetic soil reinforcement	Low cost; flexible enough to handle significant settlement.	Internal wall deformations may be greater for steel reinforced systems, but are acceptable for most applications; generally requires high-quality backfill; wide base required (70% of wall height).	Applicable primarily to fill situations; in general, limited to a wall height of 20 feet or less; greater wall heights may be feasible by special design in areas of low seismic activity and when geosynthetic products are used in which long-term product durability is well defined. (See *Qualified Products List*.)
Geosynthetic walls with a shotcrete or cast-in-place concrete face	Very low cost, especially with shotcrete face; can tolerate large short-term settlements.	Internal wall deformations may be greater than for steel reinforced systems, but are still acceptable for most applications; generally requires high-quality backfill; wide base width required (70% of wall height).	Applicable primarily to fill situations; in general, limited to wall height of 20 feet or less unless using geosynthetic products in which long-term product durability is well defined. (See *Qualified Products List*.) For qualified products, heights of 33 feet or more are possible.

Summary of Mechanically Stabilized Earth (MSE) Gravity Wall/Slope Options Available
Exhibit 730-1

Specific Wall Type	Advantages	Disadvantages	Limitations
Geosynthetic walls with a welded wire face	Very low cost; can tolerate large long-term settlements.	Internal wall deformations may be greater than for steel reinforced systems, but are still acceptable for most applications; generally requires high-quality wall backfill soil; wide base width required (70% of wall height).	Applicable primarily to fill situations; in general, limited to wall height of 20 feet or less unless using geosynthetic products in which long-term product durability is well defined. (See *Qualified Products List*.) For qualified products, heights of 33 feet or more are possible.
Geosynthetic walls with a geosynthetic face	Lowest cost of all wall options; can tolerate large long-term settlements.	Internal wall deformations may be greater than for steel reinforced systems, but are still acceptable for most applications; generally requires high-quality backfill; wide base width required (70% of wall height); durability of wall facing.	Applicable primarily to fill situations; use only for temporary applications due to durability of facing; can be designed for wall heights of 40 feet or more.
Soil nail walls	Relatively low cost; can be used in areas with restricted overhead or lateral clearance.	Allow adequate standup time for soil/rock to stand in a vertical cut approximately 6 feet high for at least 1 to 2 days; not feasible for bouldery soils; may require an easement for the nails.	Applicable to cut situations only; not recommended in clean or water-bearing sands and gravels, in bouldery soils that can interfere with nail installation, or in landslide deposits, especially where deep potential failure surfaces are present; maximum wall heights of 35 feet are feasible, though greater wall heights are possible in excellent soil/rock conditions. A special design is always required.

Summary of Mechanically Stabilized Earth (MSE) Gravity Wall/Slope Options Available

Exhibit 730-1 (continued)

Specific Wall Type	Advantages	Disadvantages	Limitations
Concrete crib walls	Relatively low cost; quantity of high-quality backfill required relatively small; relatively narrow base width, on the order of 50 to 60% of the wall height; can tolerate moderate settlements.	Aesthetics.	Applicable to cut and fill situations; reinforced concrete typically can be designed for heights of up to 33 feet and unreinforced concrete up to 16 feet; not used to support bridge or building foundations.
Metal crib walls	Quantity of high-quality backfill required relatively small; relatively narrow base width, on the order of 50 to 60% of the wall height; can tolerate moderate settlements.	Relatively high cost; aesthetics.	Applicable to cut and fill situations; can be designed routinely for heights up to 35 feet; not used to support bridge or building foundations.
Timber crib walls	Low cost; minimal high-quality backfill required; relatively narrow base width, on the order of 50 to 60% of the wall height; can tolerate moderate settlements.	Design life relatively short; aesthetics.	Applicable to cut and fill situations; can be designed for heights up to 16 feet; not used to support structure foundations.
Concrete bin walls	Relatively low cost; narrow base width, on the order of 50 to 60% of the wall height; can tolerate moderate settlements.	Aesthetics.	Applicable to cut and fill situations; can be designed routinely for heights up to 25 feet; not used to support bridge or building foundations.
Gabion walls	Relatively narrow base width, on the order of 50 to 60% of the wall height; can tolerate moderate settlements.	Relatively high cost, depending on proximity to source of high-quality angular rock to fill baskets.	Applicable to cut and fill situations; can be designed routinely for heights up to 15 feet, and by special design up to 21 feet; not used to support structure foundations.

Summary of Prefabricated Modular Gravity Wall Options Available
Exhibit 730-2

Specific Wall Type	Advantages	Disadvantages	Limitations
Mortar rubble masonry walls	Quantity of high-quality backfill required is relatively small.	High cost; relatively wide base width, on the order of 60 to 70% of the wall height; cannot tolerate settlement.	Applicable mainly to fill situations where foundation conditions consist of very dense soil or rock; due to expense, only used in areas where other mortar rubble masonry walls are present and it is desired to match aesthetics; typically can be designed for maximum heights of 25 feet.
Unreinforced concrete gravity walls	Quantity of high-quality backfill required is relatively small.	High cost; relatively wide base width, on the order of 60 to 70% of the wall height; cannot tolerate settlement.	Applicable mainly to fill situations where foundation conditions consist of very dense soil or rock; due to expense, only used in areas where other gravity walls are present and it is desired to match aesthetics; typically can be designed for maximum heights of 25 feet.
Reinforced concrete cantilever walls	Relatively narrow base width on the order of 50 to 60% of the wall height; can be used to support structure foundations by special design.	High cost; cannot tolerate much settlement; relatively deep embedment might be required on sloping ground due to toe in front of face wall.	Applicable to cut and fill situations; can be routinely designed for heights up to 35 feet.
Reinforced concrete counterfort walls	Relatively narrow base width on the order of 50 to 60% of the wall height; can be used to support structure foundations by special design.	High cost; cannot tolerate much settlement; relatively deep embedment might be required on sloping ground due to toe in front of wall face.	Applicable to cut and fill situations; can be routinely designed for heights up to 50 feet; proprietary versions are typically 33 feet maximum.

Summary of Rigid Gravity and Semigravity Wall Options Available
Exhibit 730-3

Specific Wall Type	Advantages	Disadvantages	Limitations
Soldier pile wall	Very narrow base width; deep embedment to get below potential failure surfaces; relatively easy to obtain.	Relatively high cost.	Applicable mainly to cut situations; maximum feasible exposed height is on the order of 10 feet; difficult to install in bouldery soil or soil with water-bearing sands.
Sheet pile wall	Low to moderate cost; very narrow base width.	Difficult to get embedment in dense or bouldery soils; difficult to protect against corrosion.	Applicable mainly to cut situations in soil; maximum feasible exposed height is on the order of 10 feet.
Cylinder pile wall	Relatively narrow base width; can produce stable wall even if deep potential failure surfaces present.	Very high cost.	Applicable mainly to cut situations; maximum feasible exposed height is on the order of 20 to 25 feet depending on the passive resistance available; can be installed in bouldery conditions, though cost will increase.
Slurry wall	Relatively narrow base width; can produce stable wall even if deep potential failure surfaces present.	Very high cost; difficult construction.	Applicable mainly to cut situations; maximum feasible exposed height is on the order of 20 to 25 feet, depending on passive resistance available.

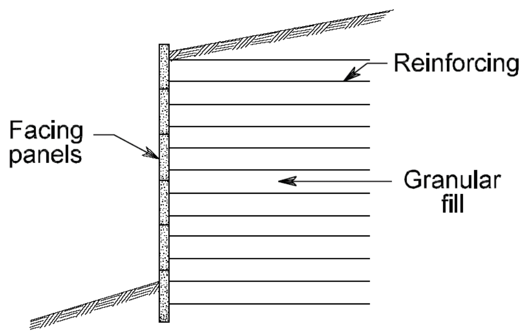
Summary of Nongravity Wall Options Available
Exhibit 730-4

Specific Wall Type	Advantages	Disadvantages	Limitations
All nongravity cantilever walls with tiebacks	Relatively narrow base width; can produce stable wall even if deep potential failure surfaces present.	Very high cost; difficult to install in areas where vertical or lateral clearance is limited; easements may be necessary; installation activities may impact adjacent traffic.	Applicable only to cut situations; can be designed for heights of 50 feet or more depending on the specifics of the structure of the wall.
All nongravity cantilever walls with deadman anchors	Relatively narrow base width; can produce stable wall even if deep potential failure surfaces present.	Moderate to high cost; access required behind wall to dig trench for deadman anchor; may impact traffic during deadman installation; easements may be necessary.	Applicable to partial cut/fill situations; can be designed for wall heights of approximately 16 feet.

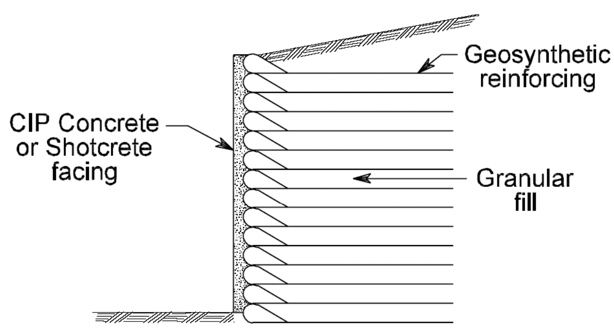
Summary of Anchored Wall Options Available
Exhibit 730-5

Wall/Slope Classification	Specific Wall Type	Advantages	Disadvantages	Limitations
Rockeries	Only variations are in rock sizes used and overall wall dimensions.	Low cost; narrow base width on the order of 30% of the wall height required.	Slope needs to be at least marginally stable without rockery present; cannot tolerate much settlement.	Applicable to both cut and fill situations; maximum feasible height in a cut, even for excellent soil conditions, is approx. 16 feet and 8 feet in fill situations.
Reinforced slopes	Only variations are in geosynthetic products used and in erosion-control techniques used on slope face.	Low cost; can tolerate large settlements; can adapt well to sloping ground conditions to minimize excavation required; high-quality fill is not a requirement.	Room required between the right of way line and the edge of the shoulder to install a 1H:1V slope.	Best suited to sloping fill situations; maximum height limited to 30 feet unless geosynthetic products are used in which long-term product durability is well defined. Certain products can be used in critical applications and for greater slope heights on the order of 60 feet or more, but consider need, landscaping maintenance, and the reach of available maintenance equipment.

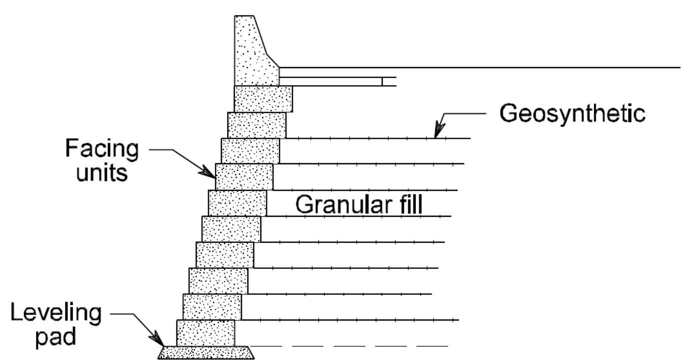
Other Wall/Slope Options Available
Exhibit 730-6



MSE Wall with Modular Precast Concrete Facing Panels

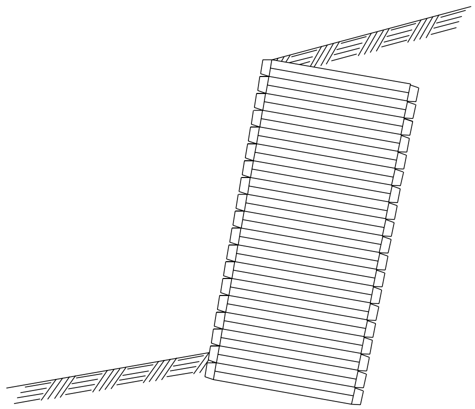


MSE Wall with Geosynthetic Reinforcement and CIP Concrete or Shotcrete Facing

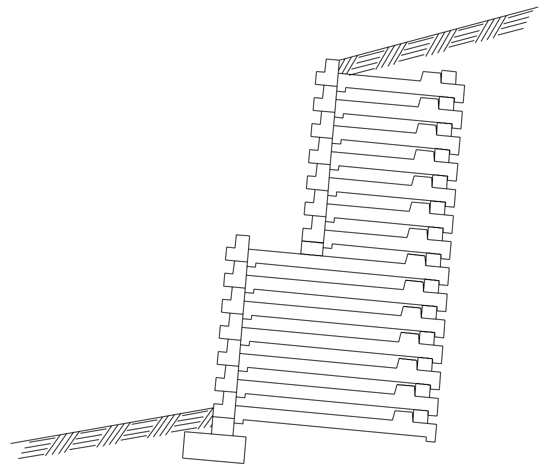


MSE Wall with Segmental Concrete Block Facing

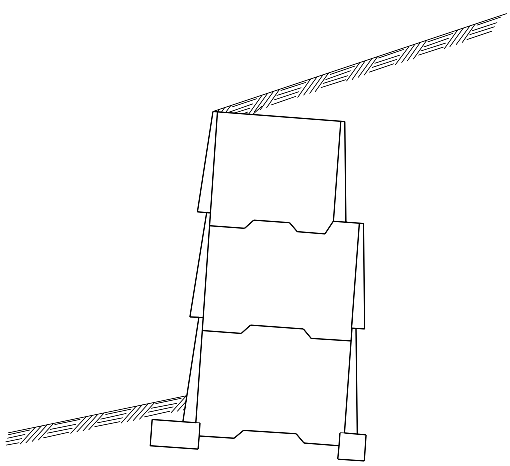
Typical Mechanically Stabilized Earth Gravity Walls
Exhibit 730-7



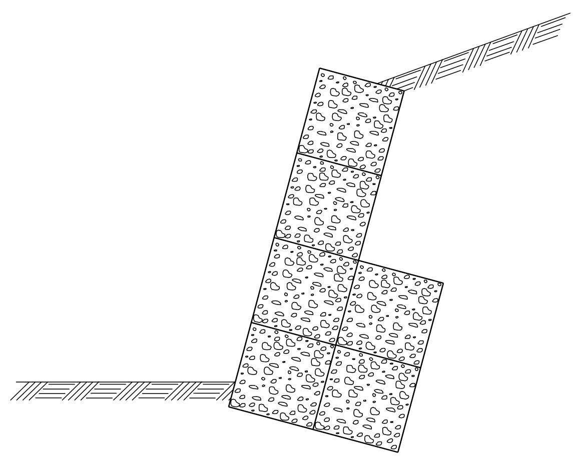
Metal Bin Wall



Precast Concrete Crib Wall

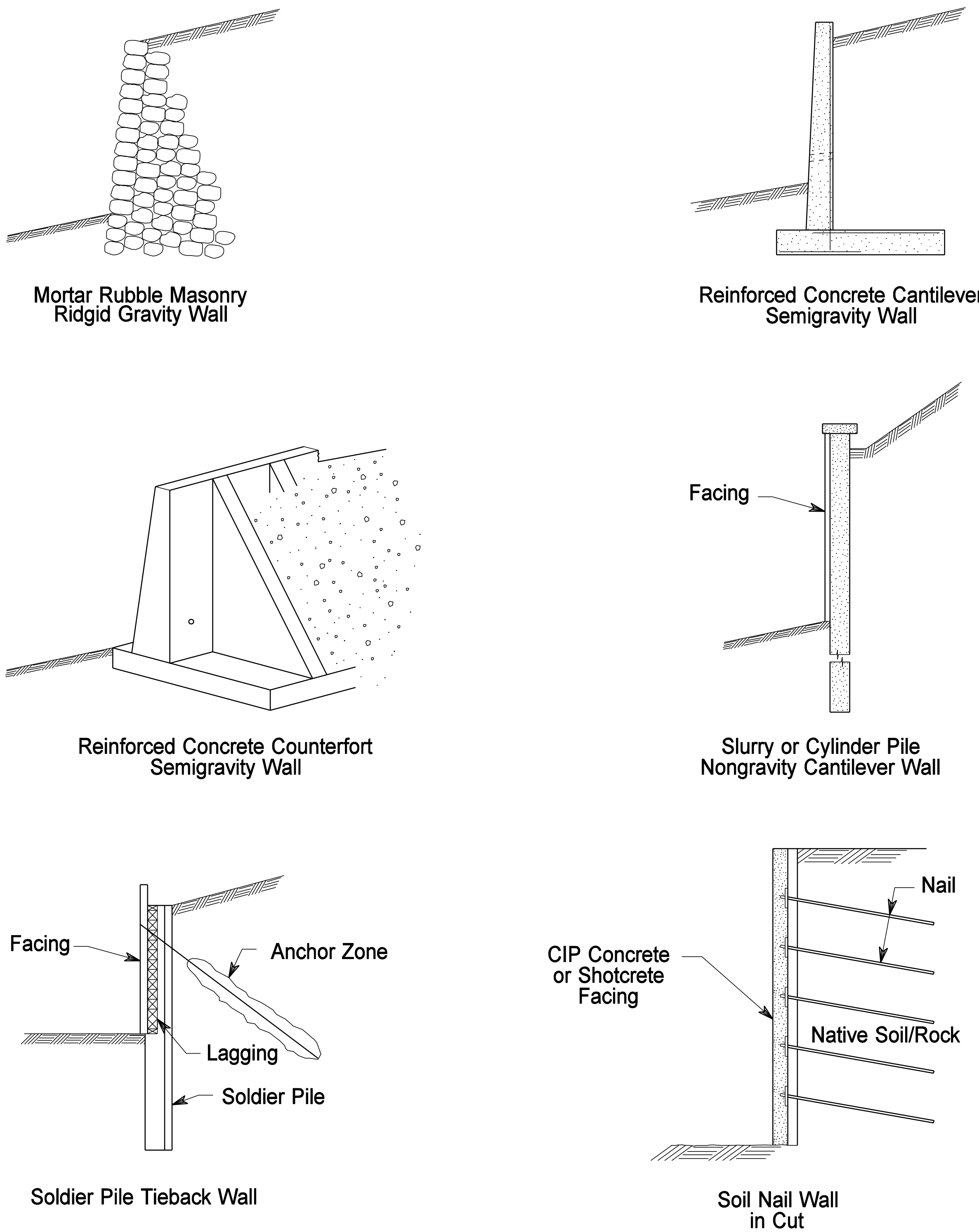


Precast Concrete Bin Wall

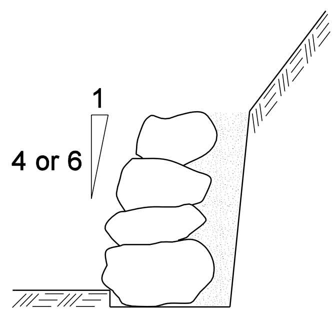


Gabion Wall

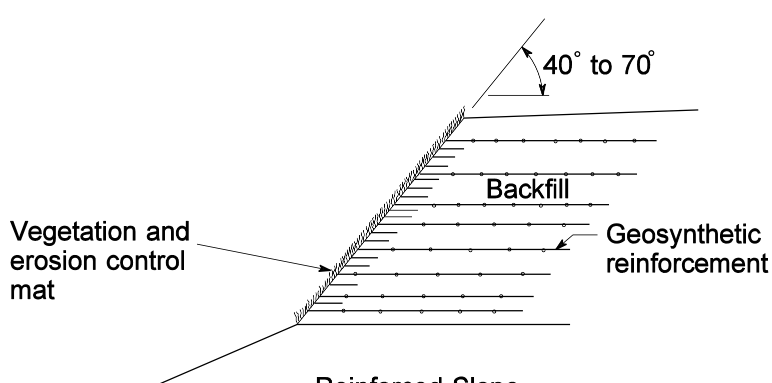
Typical Prefabricated Modular Gravity Walls
Exhibit 730-8



Typical Rigid Gravity, Semigravity Cantilever, Nongravity Cantilever, and Anchored Walls
Exhibit 730-9

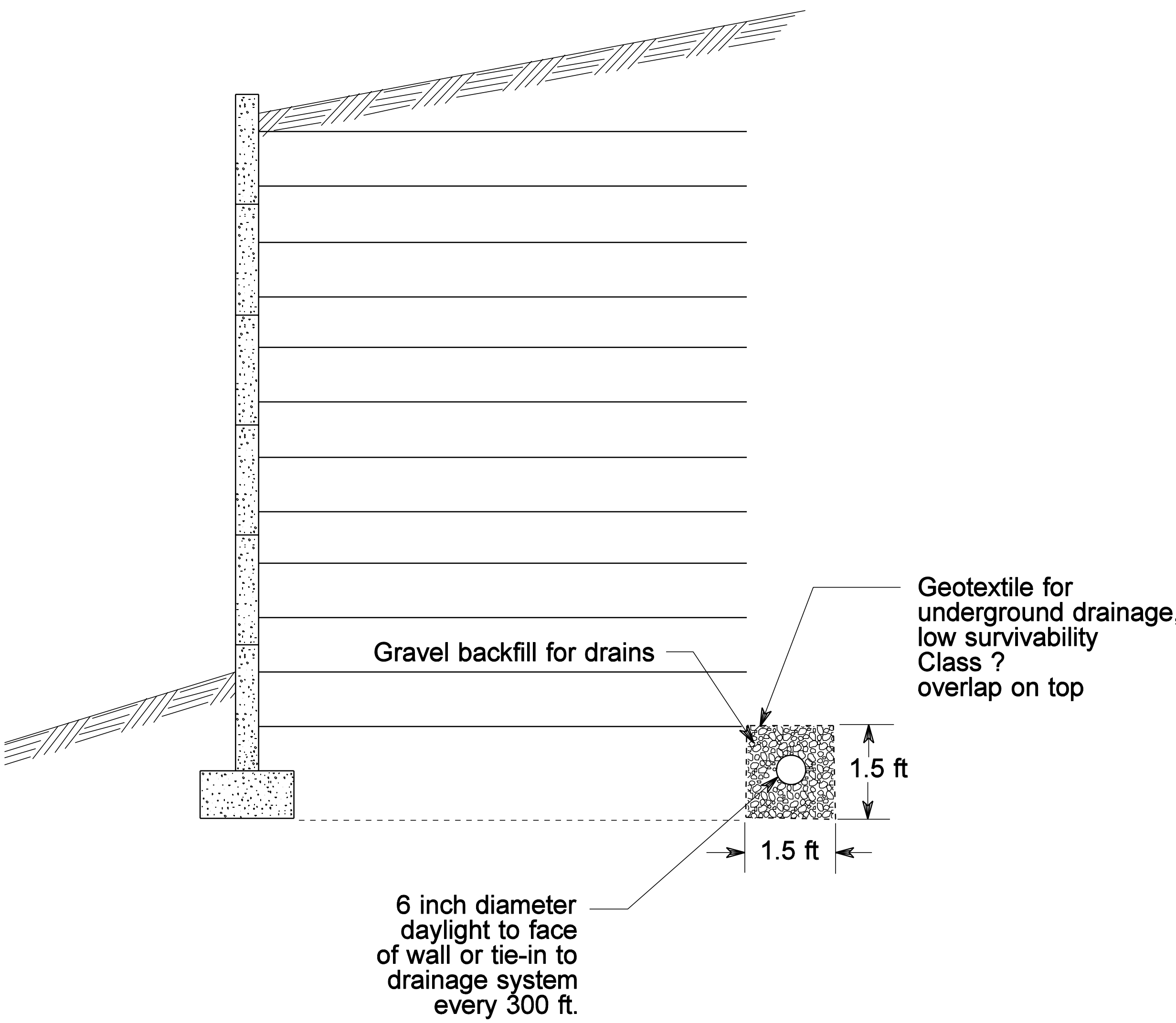


Rockery

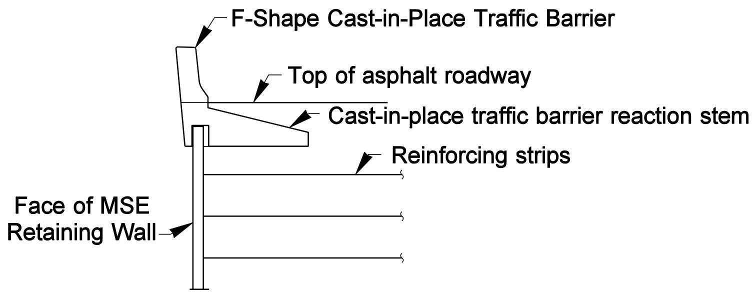


Reinforced Slope

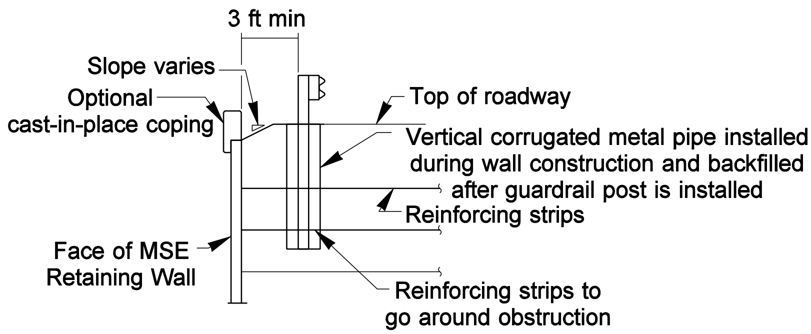
Typical Rockery and Reinforced Slopes
Exhibit 730-10



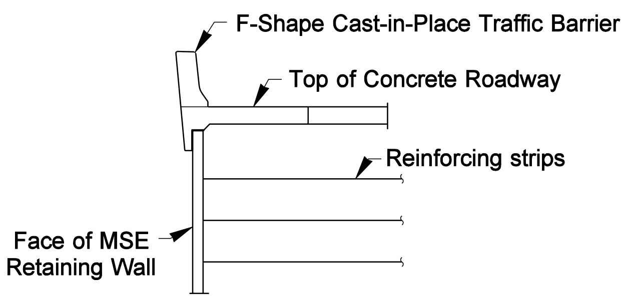
MSE Wall Drainage Detail
Exhibit 730-11



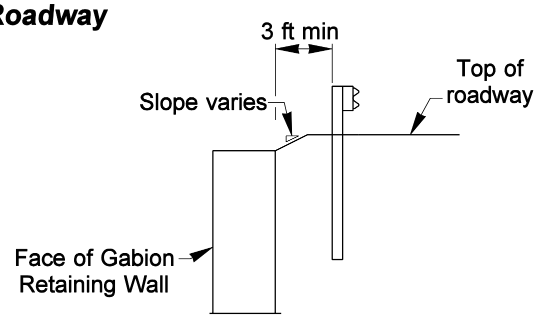
Concrete Traffic Barrier with Asphalt Roadway



Beam Guardrail on Top of MSE Retaining Wall

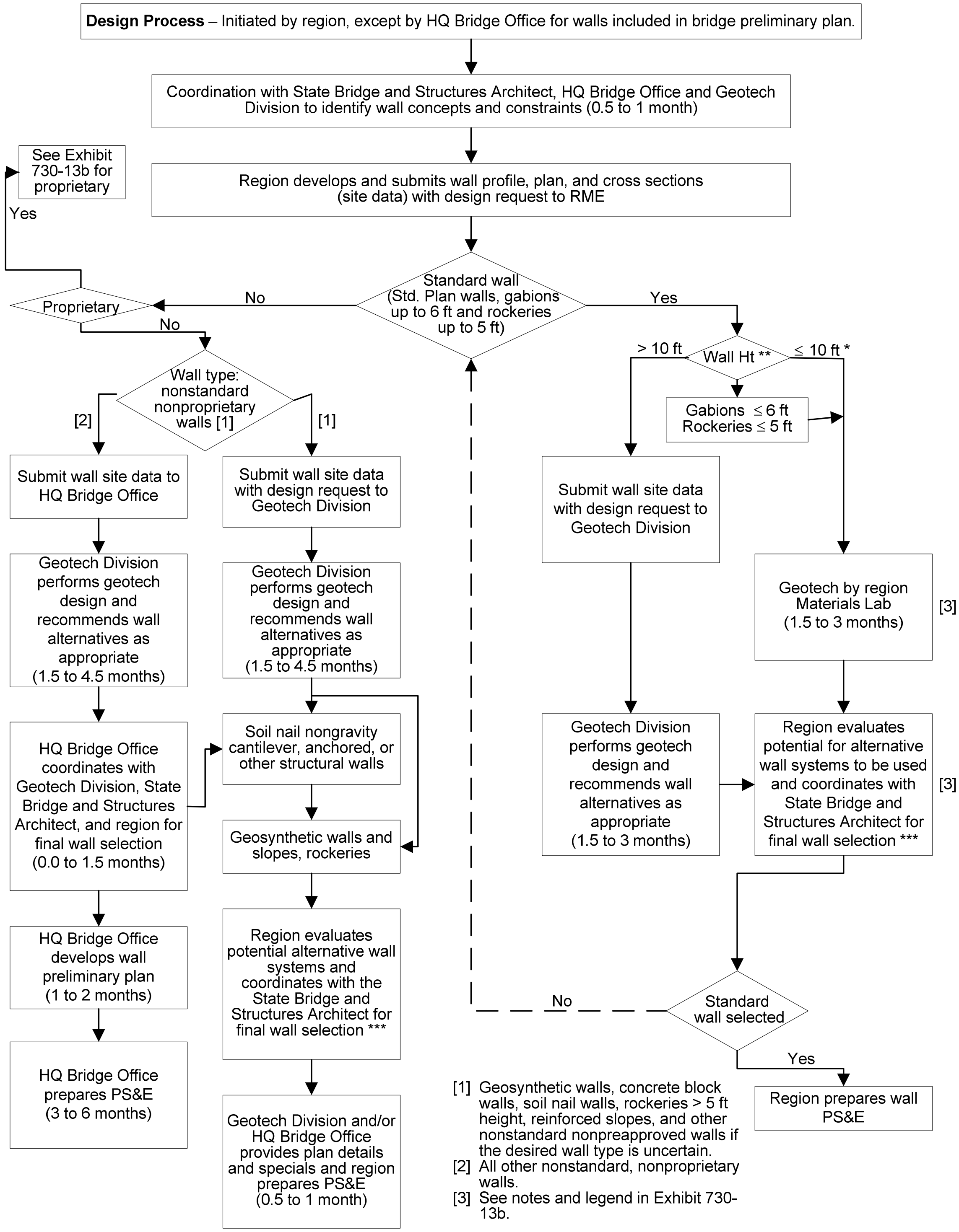


Concrete Traffic Barrier with Concrete Roadway



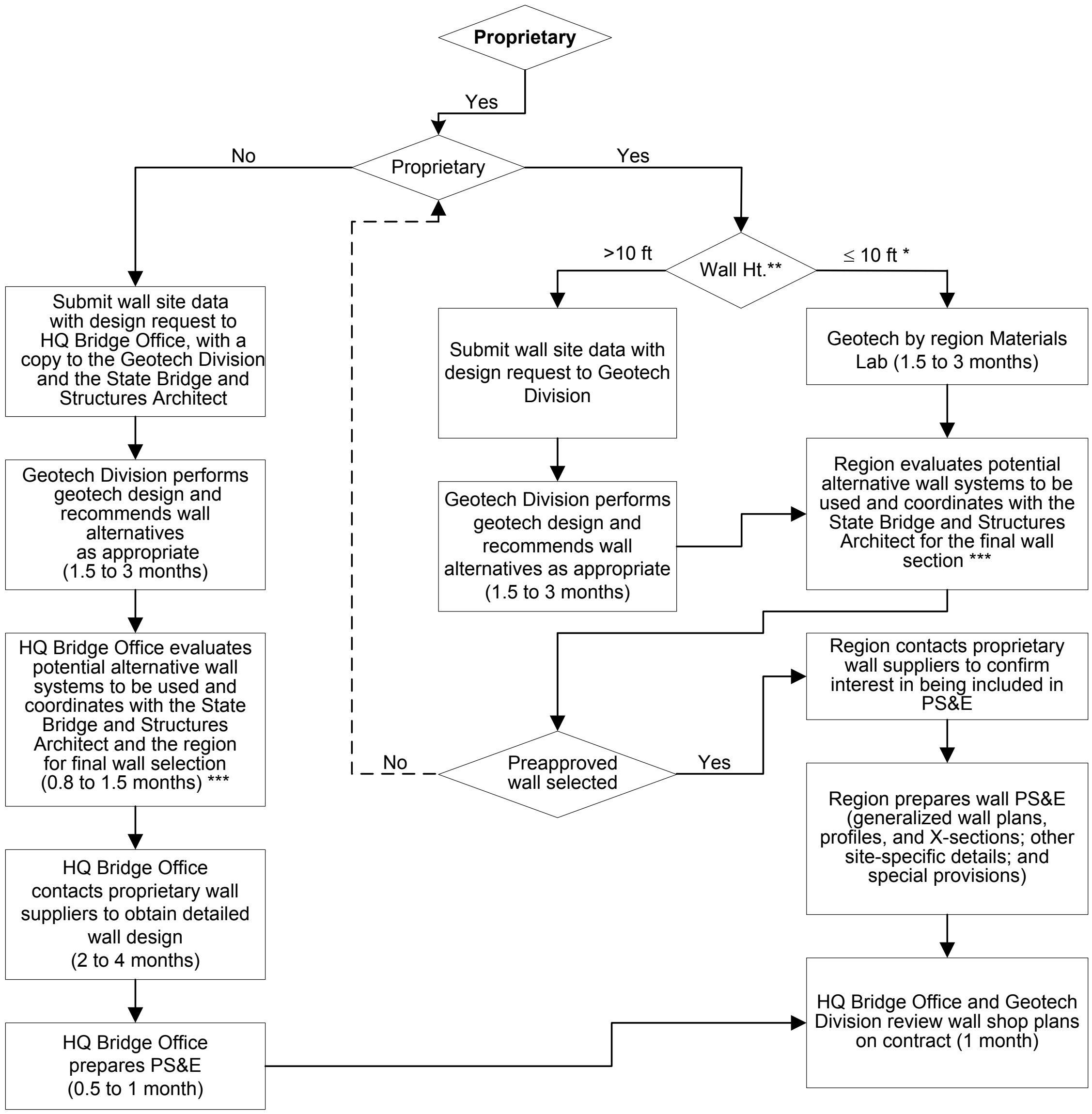
Beam Guardrail on Top of Gabion Wall

Retaining Walls With Traffic Barriers
Exhibit 730-12



[1] Geosynthetic walls, concrete block walls, soil nail walls, rockeries > 5 ft height, reinforced slopes, and other nonstandard nonpreapproved walls if the desired wall type is uncertain.
[2] All other nonstandard, nonproprietary walls.
[3] See notes and legend in Exhibit 730-13b.

Retaining Wall Design Process
Exhibit 730-13a



Notes:

“HQ Bridge Office” refers to the WSDOT HQ Bridge and Structures Office.

“Geotech Division” refers to the WSDOT Geotechnical Division at Headquarters.

“State Bridge and Structures Architect” refers to the Architecture Section, HQ Bridge and Structures Office.

Regarding time estimates:

- Assumes no major changes in the wall scope during design.
- Actual times may vary depending on complexity of project.
- Contact appropriate design offices for more accurate estimates of time.

Legend:

Region provides courtesy copy of geotechnical report to Geotechnical Services Division.

* Assumes soft or unstable soil not present and wall does not support other structures.

** The preapproved maximum wall height is generally 33 feet. Some proprietary walls might be less. (Check with the HQ Bridge and Structures Office.)

*** If the final wall selected is a different type than assumed, go back through the design process to ensure that all the steps have been taken.

Retaining Wall Design Process: Proprietary
Exhibit 730-13b

Chapter 740 Noise Barriers

740.01 General
740.02 References
740.03 Design
740.04 Procedures
740.05 Documentation

740.01 General

The function of a noise barrier is to reduce traffic noise levels in adjoining areas. The noise abatement decisions are made during the environmental stage of project development, which is a highly interactive process. Before a noise barrier is designed, the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) needs to be confident that there is significant need, a cost-effective and environmentally acceptable noise barrier, a source of funds, and acceptance by adjacent property owners, local governmental agencies, and the general public.

Preliminary design information that may be found in the noise report includes:

- Sources of noise.
- Noise receiver locations.
- Predicted level of noise reduction.
- Locations of existing and future noise impacts along the project corridor.
- Barrier location and height recommendations based on what is feasible and reasonable.

Design of a noise barrier project is the result of a team effort coordinated by the Project Engineer.

This chapter addresses the factors that are considered when designing a noise barrier and the associated procedures and documentation requirements.

740.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Guide Specifications for Structural Design of Sound Barriers, AASHTO, 2002

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

(2) Supporting Information

Environmental Procedures Manual, M 31-11, WSDOT

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT

740.03 Design

The two basic types of noise barriers are the earth berm and the noise wall. An earth berm can be constructed to the full height required for noise abatement or to partial height in conjunction with a noise wall to reach the required height. A noise wall can be made of concrete, masonry, metal, wood, or other approved innovative products, and can be supported by spread, pile, shaft, or trench footings.

Consideration of the noise report and the visual characteristics of adjacent land forms, vegetation, and structural elements (such as buildings, bridges, and retaining walls) will determine whether a proposed noise barrier might be berm, wall, or both.

An earth berm is the primary alternative if the visual and environmental quality of the corridor will be preserved or enhanced and materials and right of way widths are available. (See the *Roadside Manual* for criteria for determining whether a vegetated earth berm is appropriate.)

The region uses the noise report and other environmental documents (see the *Environmental Procedures Manual*) to help determine the location, exposure conditions, length, and height of the proposed noise barrier.

To design and locate a noise barrier of any kind, consider:

- Desired noise abatement.
- Future right of way needs.
- Cost and constructibility.
- Neighborhood character.
- Visual character and quality of the corridor.
- Future maintenance of the noise barrier and the whole right of way.
- Wind.
- Supporting soil.
- Earthquakes.
- Groundwater.
- Existing drainage systems and water courses.
- Exposure to vehicular impacts.
- Potential for vandalism.
- Existing vegetation and roadside restoration required.
- Access for maintenance equipment and enforcement, traffic service, and emergency vehicles.
- Access to fire hydrants from both sides.
- Pedestrian and bicycle access.
- Available and attainable width of right of way for berms.
- Aesthetic and structural characteristics of available wall designs.
- Visual compatibility of each wall design with other transportation structures within the corridor.
- Construction limits for footings.
- Locations of existing survey monuments.

- Access to and maintenance of right of way behind a wall, including drainage structures.
- Use of right of way and wall by adjacent property owners.
- Drainage and highway runoff.
- Drainage from adjacent land.
- Existing utilities and objects to relocate or remove.
- Water and electricity needs, sources, and access points.

Avoid objects such as bridge columns, light fixtures, or sign supports that protrude and may present a potential for snagging vehicles.

(1) Earth Berm

Berm slopes are a function of the material used, the attainable right of way width, and the desired visual quality. Slopes steeper than 2H:1V (3H:1V for mowing) are not recommended. Design the end of the berm with a lead-in slope of 10H:1V and curve it toward the right of way line.

Refer to the *Roadside Manual* for guidance regarding vegetation on berms.

(2) Noise Wall

When feasible, to encourage competitive bidding, include several alternate noise wall designs in the contract and permit the contractor to submit alternate designs under the value engineering specification.

There are noise wall designs in the *Standard Plans*. Additional designs are in various stages of development to become standard plans. The draft-standard design sheets and other preapproved plans are available from the Headquarters (HQ) Bridge and Structures Office. The HQ Bridge and Structures Office also works with the regions to facilitate the use of other designs as bidding options.

When a noise wall has ground elevations that are independent of the roadway elevations, a survey of ground breaks (or cross sections at 25-foot intervals) along the entire length of the wall is needed for evaluation of constructibility and to assure accurate determination of panel heights.

Size of openings (whether lapped, door, or gated) depends on the intended users. Agencies such as the local fire department can provide the necessary requirements. Unless an appropriate standard plan is available, such openings are designed and detailed for the project.

When a noise wall is inside the Design Clear Zone, design its horizontal and vertical (ground elevation) alignment as if it were a rigid concrete traffic barrier. (See Chapter 1610 for maximum flare rates.)

Provide a concrete traffic barrier shape at the base of a new noise wall constructed 12 feet or less from the edge of the nearest traffic lane. The traffic barrier shape is optional at the base of the new portion when an existing vertical-faced wall is being extended (or the existing wall may be retrofitted for continuity). Standard Concrete Barrier Type 4 is recommended for both new and existing walls except when the barrier face can be cast as an integral part of a new wall. Deviations may be considered, but they require approval as prescribed in Chapter 300. For deviations from the above, deviation approval is not required where sidewalk exists in front of the wall or in other situations where the wall face is otherwise inaccessible to traffic. For flare rates and approach slopes for concrete barriers, see Chapter 1610, Traffic Barriers.

To designate a standard noise wall, select the appropriate general special provisions (GSPs) and state the standard plan number, type, and foundation type.

Wall type is a function of exposure and wind speed (see Exhibit 740-1).

A geotechnical report identifying the angle of internal friction "f" and the allowable bearing pressure is needed for selection of a standard foundation. The standard spread footing designs require an allowable bearing pressure of 1 Tsf. The standard trench and shaft footing designs require an "f" of at least 32° for D1 and 38° for D2.

A special design of the substructure is required for noise walls on substandard soil, where winds exceed 90 mph, and for exposures other than B1 and B2 as defined in Exhibit 740-1.

For maintenance of the surface of a tall wall (10 feet or more), consider harness tie-offs for the fall protection required by the Department of Labor and Industries.

	Exposure				
	B1		**B2**		**C**
Wind Speed	80 mph	90 mph	80 mph	90 mph	
Wall Type	A	B	C	D	Special Design*

Wind speed is according to Figure 1-2.1.2.A of the (AASHTO) *Guide Specifications for Structural Design of Sound Barriers*. Assume the wind to be perpendicular to the wall on both sides and design for the most exposed side.

Exposure is determined by the nature of the immediately adjacent ground surface and the extension of a plane at the adjacent ground surface elevation for 1,500 ft to either side of the noise wall:

Exposure B1 = Urban and suburban areas with numerous closely spaced obstructions having the size of single-family or larger dwellings that prevail in the upwind direction from the noise barrier for a distance of at least 1,500 ft.

Exposure B2 = Urban and suburban areas with more open terrain not meeting the requirements of Exposure B1.

Exposure C = Open terrain with scattered obstructions that includes flat, open country, grasslands, and elevated terrain.

*For a noise wall with Exposure C, on a bridge or overpass or at the top of a slope, consult the HQ Bridge and Structures Office, as a special design will probably be necessary.

Standard Noise Wall Types
Exhibit 740-1

740.04 Procedures

The noise unit notifies the Project Engineer's Office when a noise barrier is recommended in the noise report.

The Project Engineer's Office is responsible for interdisciplinary teams, consultation, and coordination with the public, noise specialists, maintenance, construction, region Landscape Architecture Office (or the HQ Roadside and Site Development Section), right of way personnel, Materials Laboratory, State Bridge and Structures Architect, HQ Bridge and Structures Office, CAE Support Team, HQ Access and Hearings Engineer, consultants, and many others.

If a noise wall is contemplated, the region evaluates the soils (see Chapters 610 and 710) and obtains a list of acceptable wall design options. The list is obtained by sending information pertaining to soils and drainage conditions, alignment, and height of the proposed wall to the State Bridge and Structures Architect.

If a vegetated earth berm is considered, see the *Roadside Manual* for procedures.

The State Bridge and Structures Architect coordinates with the HQ Bridge and Structures Office, HQ Hydraulics Section, HQ Geotechnical Services Division, and the region to provide a list of acceptable standard, draft-standard, and preapproved proprietary noise wall designs, materials, and finishes that are compatible with existing visual elements of the corridor. Only wall designs from this list may be considered as alternatives. Limit design visualizations of the highway side of proposed walls (available from the CAE Support Team in Olympia) to options from this list. The visual elements of the private property side of a wall are the responsibility of the region unless addressed in the environmental documents.

After the noise report is completed, any changes to the dimensions or location of a noise barrier must be reviewed by the appropriate noise unit to determine the impacts of the changes on noise abatement.

On limited access highways, coordinate any opening in a wall or fence (for pedestrians or vehicles) with the HQ Access and Hearings Engineer and obtain approval from the State Design Engineer.

On nonlimited access highways, an access connection permit is required for any opening (approach) in a wall or fence.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office provides special substructure designs to the regions upon request; reviews contract design data related to standard, draft-standard, and preapproved designs; and reviews plans and calculations that have been prepared by others (see Chapter 710).

Approval by the State Bridge and Structures Architect is required for any attachment or modification to a noise wall and for the design, appearance, and finish of door and gate-type openings.

Approval by the State Bridge and Structures Architect is also required for the final selection of noise wall appearance, finish, materials, and configuration.

740.05 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Chapter 800 Hydraulic Design

800.01 General
800.02 References
800.03 Hydraulic Considerations
800.04 Safety Considerations
800.05 Design Responsibility
800.06 Documentation

800.01 General

Hydraulic design factors can significantly influence the corridor, horizontal alignment, grade, location of interchanges, and necessary appurtenances required to convey water across, along, away from, or to a highway or highway facility. An effective hydraulic design conveys water in the most economical, efficient, and practical manner to ensure reasonable public safety without incurring excessive maintenance costs or appreciably damaging the highway or highway facility, adjacent property, or the total environment.

This chapter is intended to serve as a guide to highway designers so they can identify and consider hydraulic-related factors that impact design. Detailed criteria and methods that govern highway hydraulic design are in the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) *Hydraulics Manual* and *Highway Runoff Manual*.

Some drainage, flood, and water quality problems can be easily recognized and resolved; others might require extensive investigation before a solution is developed. Specialists experienced in hydrology and hydraulics can contribute substantially to the planning and project definition phases of a highway project by recognizing potentially troublesome locations, making investigations, and recommending practical solutions. Regions may request that the Headquarters (HQ) Hydraulics Section provide assistance regarding hydraulic problems.

Since hydraulic factors can affect the design of a proposed highway or highway facility from its inception, consider these factors at the earliest possible time during the planning phase.

In the project definition phase, begin coordination with all state and local governments and Indian tribes that issue or approve permits for the project.

800.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Highway Runoff Manual, M 31-16, WSDOT

Hydraulics Manual, M 23-03, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), (Amendments and General Special Provisions), M 41-10, WSDOT

Utilities Manual, M 22-87, WSDOT

(2) Special Criteria

Special criteria for unique projects are available by request from the HQ Hydraulics Section.

800.03 Hydraulic Considerations

(1) The Flood Plain

Encroachment of a highway or highway facility into a flood plain might present significant problems. A thorough investigation considers the following:

- The effect of the design flood on the highway or highway facility and the required protective measures.
- The effect of the highway or highway facility on the upstream and downstream reaches of the stream and the adjacent property.
- Compliance with hydraulic-related environmental concerns and hydraulic aspects of permits from other governmental agencies per Chapters 220 and 230.

Studies and reports published by the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers are very useful for flood plain analyses. The HQ Hydraulics Section has access to all available reports and can provide any necessary information to the region.

(2) Stream Crossings

When rivers, streams, or surface waters (wetland) are crossed with bridges or culverts (including open-bottom arches and three-sided box culverts), consider:

- Locating the crossing where the stream is most stable.
- Effectively conveying the design flow(s) at the crossing.
- Providing for passage of material transported by the stream.
- The effects of backwater on adjacent property.
- Avoiding large skews at the crossing.
- The effects on the channel and embankment stability upstream and downstream from the crossing.
- Location of confluences with other streams or rivers.
- Fish and wildlife migration.
- Minimizing disturbance to the original streambed.
- Minimizing wetland impact.

For further design details, see the *Hydraulics Manual*.

(3) Channel Changes

It is generally desirable to minimize the use of channel changes because ongoing liability and negative environmental impacts might result. Channel changes are permissible when the designer determines that a reasonable, practicable alternative does not exist. Consult the HQ Hydraulics Section for the best guidance when channel changes are considered.

When channel changes are used, consider the following:

(a) Restoration of the original stream characteristics as nearly as practicable. This includes:

- Meandering the channel change to retain its sinuosity.
- Maintaining existing stream slope and geometry (including meanders) so stream velocity and aesthetics do not change in undisturbed areas.
- Excavation, selection, and placement of bed material to promote formation of a natural pattern and prevent bed erosion.
- Retention of streambank slopes.
- Retention or replacement of streamside vegetation.

(b) The ability to pass the design flood.

(c) The effects on adjacent property.

(d) The effects on the channel and embankment upstream and downstream from the channel change.

(e) Erosion protection for the channel change.

(f) Environmental requirements such as wetlands, fish migration, and vegetation reestablishment.

(g) The drainage pattern. Do not redirect flow from one drainage basin to another; follow the historical drainage pattern.

(4) Roadway Drainage

Effective collection and conveyance of stormwater is critical. Incorporate the most efficient collection and conveyance system considering initial highway costs, maintenance costs, and legal and environmental considerations.
Of particular concern are:

- Combinations of vertical grade and transverse roadway slopes that might inhibit drainage.
- Plugging of drains on bridges as the result of construction projects. This creates maintenance problems and might cause ponding on the structure. The use of drains on structures can be minimized by placing sag vertical curves and crossovers in superelevation outside the limits of the structure.

For discussion of the relationship of roadway profiles to drainage profiles, see Chapter 1220.

(5) Subsurface Drainage

Subsurface drainage installations control groundwater encountered at highway locations. Groundwater, as distinguished from capillary water, is free water occurring in a zone of saturation below the ground surface. The subsurface discharge depends on the effective hydraulic head and on the permeability, depth, slope, thickness, and extent of the aquifer.

The solution of subsurface drainage problems often calls for specialized knowledge of geology and the application of soil mechanics. The Region Materials Engineer evaluates the subsurface conditions and includes findings and recommendations for design in the geotechnical report.

Typical subdrain installations control seepage in cuts or hillsides, control base and shallow subgrade drainage, or lower the groundwater table (in swampy areas, for example).

Design a system that will keep the stormwater out of the subsurface system when stormwater and subsurface drainage systems are combined.

(6) Subsurface Discharge of Highway Drainage

Consider subsurface discharge of highway drainage when it is a requirement of the local government or when existing ground conditions are favorable for this type of discharge system. Criteria for the design of drywells or subsurface drainage pipe for this type of application are described in the *Hydraulics Manual*. The criteria for the design of infiltration ponds are described in the *Highway Runoff Manual*.

(7) Treatment of Runoff

On certain projects, effective quantity control of runoff rates and removal of pollutants from pavement are intended to address flooding and water quality impacts downstream. (See the *Highway Runoff Manual* for specific criteria on quantity and quality control of runoff.)

800.04 Safety Considerations

Locate culvert ends outside the Design Clear Zone when feasible. (See Chapter 1600 for culvert end treatments when this is infeasible.)

For detention ponds and wetland mitigation sites, see Chapter 560 regarding fencing.

800.05 Design Responsibility

The *Hydraulics Manual* describes the responsibilities of the regions and the HQ Hydraulics Section regarding hydraulic design issues.

800.06 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev

Chapter 900 Roadside Development

900.01 General
900.02 References
900.03 Legal Requirements
900.04 Roadside Classification Plan
900.05 Roadside Manual
900.06 Project Development
900.07 Documentation

900.01 General

It is Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) policy to employ roadside treatments for the protection and restoration of community and roadside character as designated in the *Roadside Classification Plan* (RCP) and described in the *Roadside Manual*. The roadside is the primary place used to blend transportation facilities into the context of the natural and built environment. WSDOT is committed to build highways in context with the environment, which is reflected in the Context Sensitive Solutions Executive Order (E 1028.00) and the Washington Transportation Plan (WTP).

The roadside provides many functions, including operational, environmental, visual, and auxiliary. The design should coordinate the many functions, such as visual elements (walls, lighting, signs, bridges, and so on), pedestrian movement, and stormwater treatment facilities, to work together to provide visual continuity in the highway corridor and fit into the context of the surrounding landscape.

Whenever a project disturbs or adds elements to the roadside, the policy requires that the project is responsible for restoring roadside functions. Tools to restore functions include architectural features (such as walls), contour grading, and vegetation. The extent of restoration is dependent upon the source of funding. Exhibit 900-1 summarizes the policy found in the *Roadside Classification Plan*.

Funding	Restore Roadside Functions Beginning to End of Project – R/W Line to R/W Line	Restore Only Roadside Functions Impacted by the Project
Mobility (I1) Economic Development (I3)	X	
Safety Improvement (I2) Environmental Retrofit (I4) Preservation (P)		X

Note:
For Mobility (I1) and Economic Development (I3) programs, the project is responsible for restoring the entire roadside from right of way line to right of way line and from beginning to end of project using the guidelines found in the RCP. For Preservation (P), Safety Improvement (I2), and Environmental Retrofit Program (I4) projects, the project is responsible for restoring roadside functions that are disturbed by the project using the guidelines found in the RCP.

Funding Source Determines Extent of Restoration
Exhibit 900-1

(1) Roadside and Roadside Functions

The *roadside* is the area outside the traveled way. This applies to all lands managed by WSDOT and may extend to elements outside the right of way boundaries. This includes unpaved median strips and auxiliary facilities such as rest areas; roadside parks, viewpoints, heritage markers, pedestrian and bicycle facilities, wetlands and their associated buffer areas; stormwater treatment facilities; park & ride lots; and quarries and pit sites.

The roadside is managed to fulfill operational, environmental, visual, and auxiliary functions. In reality, these functions are interrelated and inseparable. One element, such as vegetation, can provide multiple functions simultaneously. For example, vegetation provides erosion prevention, sediment control, and stormwater quality and quantity control, and it may provide distraction screening and screening of the road from the view of adjacent residents. Roadside functions are described in detail in the *Roadside Manual*.

The design of a roadside project incorporates site conditions, commitments, and the extent of need. Roadside development concepts covered elsewhere in the *Design Manual* include the following:

- Contour grading (see Chapter 910)
- Fencing (see Chapter 560)
- Irrigation (see Chapter 930)
- Jurisdiction (see Chapters 300, 1100, 1600)
- Noise barriers (see Chapter 740)
- Retaining walls (see Chapter 730)
- Roadside safety (see Chapter 1600)
- Safety rest areas, parks, viewpoints, and historical markers (see Chapter 1710)
- Signs (see Chapter 1020)
- Traffic barriers (see Chapter 1610)
- Vegetation (see Chapter 920)

Also see the *Utilities Manual* and the *Utilities Accommodation Policy* for utility-related roadside issues.

900.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

A Guide for Transportation Landscape and Environmental Design, AASHTO, 1991 (revision to be published 2009)

Maintenance Manual, M 51-01, WSDOT

Roadside Classification Plan, M 25-31, WSDOT

Roadside Design Guide, AASHTO, 2006

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT

Understanding Flexibility in Transportation Design – Washington, WSDOT, 2004

Utilities Accommodation Policy, M 22-86, WSDOT

Utilities Manual, M 22-87, WSDOT

900.03 Legal Requirements

(1) Partial List of Legal Requirements

Following is a partial list of legal requirements relating to roadside work. Further laws, regulations, and policies can be found in the *Roadside Manual.* The *Roadside Classification Plan* and the *Roadside Manual* provide policy and guidance for the manner in which WSDOT implements these laws, regulations, and policies.

(a) **Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) 23 Part 752**

The "Highway Beautification Act" furnishes guidelines and prescribes policies regarding landscaping and scenic enhancement programs, safety rest areas, scenic overlooks, and information centers. Policy statement (a) states "highway esthetics is a most important consideration in the Federal aid highway program. Highways must not only blend with our natural social and cultural environment, but also provide pleasure and satisfaction in their use."
http://www.access.gpo.gov/nara/cfr/waisidx_03/23cfr752_03.html

(b) **United States Code (USC) 23 319**

On federal-aid highways, the costs are authorized for landscaping and roadside development, including acquisition and development of rest areas and land necessary for the restoration, preservation, and enhancement of scenic beauty adjacent to such highways. http://vlex.com/source/1022

(c) **Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.40.010**

States that planting and cultivating of any shrubs, trees, hedges, or other domestic or native ornamental growth; the improvement of roadside facilities and viewpoints; and the correction of unsightly conditions upon the right of way of any state highway is declared to be a proper state highway purpose.
http://apps.leg.wa.gov/RCW/default.aspx?cite=47.40.010

(d) **RCW 47.40.020**

Authorizes the department to expend funds for the purposes stated in RCW 47.40.010. http://apps.leg.wa.gov/RCW/default.aspx?cite=47.40.020

(e) **RCW 47.40.040**

Requires screening or removal of junkyards, located outside a zoned industrial area and within 1000 feet of the nearest edge of right of way, so they are not visible from the traveled way. The department is authorized to acquire land for screening these junkyards.
http://apps.leg.wa.gov/RCW/default.aspx?cite=47.41.040

(f) **Section 404 of the Clean Water Act**

The Clean Water Act may apply to work in or near wetlands. The act requires a permit to discharge dredged or fill materials into most waters of the United States, including wetlands. The Section 404 permitting process requires advanced planning and coordination with the permitting agency, which is the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. Work with the region Environmental Office for guidance on the Section 404 permit. http://www.epa.gov/OWOW/wetlands/regs/sec404.html

(g) **Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 173-270-040**

Requires the department to establish and maintain stable plant communities that resist encroachment by undesirable plants, noxious weeds, and other pests. It also requires a vegetation management plan that includes operational, aesthetic, and environmental standards.
http://apps.leg.wa.gov/WAC/default.aspx?cite=173-270-040

(h) **WAC 468-34-340**

Requires utilities to repair or replace unnecessarily removed or disfigured trees and shrubs, and specifies vegetation management practices when utilities use highway right of way.
http://apps.leg.wa.gov/WAC/default.aspx?cite=468-34-340

900.04 Roadside Classification Plan

The *Roadside Classification Plan* coordinates and guides the management of Washington's highway roadsides within a framework of roadside character classifications. It provides policy and criteria for roadside restoration and advocates the use of native plants, integrated vegetation management (IVM), and a long-term management approach to achieve sustainable roadsides.

900.05 Roadside Manual

The *Roadside Manual* establishes a common basis for consistent roadside management decisions statewide. It shows the links and coordination necessary between all WSDOT partners responsible for roadside activities.

It also establishes a convenient and accessible reference for new and previously unpublished material related to roadside management, including planning, design, construction, and maintenance. In addition, the manual supplements statewide roadside criteria established in the *Roadside Classification Plan*.

A partial list of topics discussed in the *Roadside Manual* includes:

- Federal, state, and departmental roadside law and policy.
- Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990.
- Safety rest areas and scenic byways.
- Roadside treatments such as erosion control, landform grading, soil bioengineering, wetland mitigation, and vegetation restoration.

For more information on roadside issues, see the *Roadside Manual*.

900.06 Project Development

The region Landscape Architect designs, supervises, has approval authority over, and stamps roadside restoration and revegetation plans, and is responsible for coordinating the visual elements within highway corridors. The region Landscape Architect also designs and supervises other roadside work, such as site design for park & ride lots or safety rest areas, to ensure roadside restoration is designed and constructed to WSDOT guidelines. The Landscape Architect is also responsible for visual discipline reports for environmental documentation. The Headquarters (HQ) Roadside and Site Development Section will provide roadside design, visual impact assessment, and construction inspection work for the Project offices in regions without a Landscape Architect.

There are typically two types of roadside restoration projects pertaining to vegetation related to roadway construction projects: regulatory and restoration.

(a) **Regulatory**

The first type is work related to regulatory requirements. This work typically must occur at the time of impact to an identified resource in order to meet permit requirements. These aspects of the project will normally be a part of the roadway construction contract.

(b) **Restoration**

The second type of project is the restoration of construction impacts to roadside functions to meet WSDOT policy requirements as outlined in the *Roadside Classification Plan*. The roadside restoration work should be evaluated to determine whether it will be most efficient as part of the roadway construction contract or as a separate stage contract. A separate stage contract provides the following opportunities because it would be done when road construction is completed:

- All impacts can be identified that may be different than anticipated during the original project design.
- The prime contractor can be someone who specializes in roadside work.

Plant establishment periods are typically included as part of roadside restoration. Regulatory aspects of projects can have up to 10 years of plant establishment to ensure the standards of success outlined in the permit. Roadside restoration projects typically have 3 years of plant establishment.

The Landscape Architect typically administers the project development phase of the contract with funding from the project.

900.07 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Chapter 910 Contour Grading

910.01 General
910.02 References
910.03 Procedures
910.04 Recommendations
910.05 Documentation

910.01 General

For Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) projects, contour grading is an important element in achieving operational, environmental, and visual functions.

Contour grading plans are required when profiles and cross sections do not provide a complete picture. Examples include stream channel changes, interchanges, noise abatement berms, wetland mitigation sites, and detention/retention ponds. Contour grading plans show the subtle changes in grading that occur between cross sections and can allow for finer grading so the constructed earthform blends smoothly into the surrounding landscape. While engineered slopes define grades to meet engineering requirements, contours can be used to define a finished grade that will blend the facility into the surrounding landscape and meet the requirements of the *Roadside Classification Plan*.

A detention/retention pond can be designed and constructed to appear as if it were naturally formed. Contour grading plans facilitate this kind of earth sculpting. In addition, contour grading plans can be critical to wetland mitigation sites where inaccurate grading can leave a proposed mitigation site without access to a water source.

For more detailed information on grading for roadsides, see the *Roadside Manual*.

910.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Roadside Classification Plan, M 25-31, WSDOT

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

910.03 Procedures

For design approval levels, see Chapter 300.

When contour grading plans are needed, consult the region or Headquarters (HQ) Roadside and Site Development offices.

Submit plans for contour grading on structures (such as lids) to the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for approval.

910.04 Recommendations

Consider the following factors when developing a contour grading plan:

- Balance of cut and fill within project limits.
- Preservation of existing desirable vegetation.
- Preservation of existing topsoil.
- Vehicle recovery areas.
- Sight distance.
- Pedestrian safety and security.
- Impacts to groundwater and surface water both on and off the right of way, including wetlands.
- Slope angle and potential soil erosion.
- Slope rounding.
- Drainage, including detention/retention functions.
- Surrounding landscape.
- Visual elements that blend with the adjacent landforms.
- Grading construction cost.
- The difficulty of establishing and stabilizing vegetation on slopes steeper than 2:H to 1:V.
- Soil properties and angle of repose.
- Maintenance access to drainage and traffic operational features.
- Maintenance requirements for slopes (slopes steeper than 3H:1V cannot be mowed).
- Access along fence lines or noise walls, if needed.
- Maximum allowable cut/fill next to a structure: minimum cover over a footing, maximum fill behind a wall or next to a pier.

Use a known stationing point or baseline as a starting point in drawing contours. The recommended contour intervals are:

- 1 foot for highway plan drawings.
- 1 foot for noise wall berms, and pedestrian-related facilities.
- 0.5 foot for wetland mitigation sites, stream mitigation sites, and wetland bank sites. Include two or more cross sections done at a vertical exaggeration sufficient to communicate the design intent.

910.05 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Chapter 920 Vegetation

920.01 General
920.02 References
920.03 Discussion
920.04 Design Guidelines
920.05 Documentation

920.01 General

Roadside vegetation provides operational, environmental, and visual benefits to Washington's roadway users. Vegetation preservation and restoration is an integral part of roadside planning and design for the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT). When a project disturbs a roadside segment, the Project Engineer is responsible for meeting the requirements of the roadside classification for that road segment. This may include working outside the actual disturbed area for buffering and blending into the surrounding landscape.

Consult with the region Landscape Architect early in the process for all projects involving revegetation. For regions without a Landscape Architect, contact the Headquarters (HQ) Roadside and Site Development Section.

920.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Roadside Classification Plan, M 25-31, WSDOT

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

(2) Supporting Information

Integrated Vegetation Management for Roadsides, WSDOT
www.wsdot.wa.gov/maintenance/vegetation/

Washington State Highway System Plan (HSP)
www.wsdot.wa.gov/planning/

920.03 Discussion

(1) Operational, Environmental, and Visual Functions of Roadside Vegetation

Roadside vegetation is used to:

- Prevent soil erosion.
- Enhance water quality.
- Provide for water storage and slow runoff.
- Absorb water from soils.

- Stabilize slopes.
- Absorb and store CO_2.
- Protect or restore wetlands and sensitive areas.
- Preserve and provide habitat.
- Prevent noxious weed infestation.
- Provide positive driver cues for guidance and navigation.
- Provide for corridor continuity.
- Screen glare and distractions.
- Buffer view of neighboring properties from the roadway.
- Buffer view of roadway by neighboring property owners.
- Preserve scenic views.
- Reduce driver monotony.
- Provide a transition between the transportation facility and adjacent land uses.
- Provide for a pleasing roadside experience.

920.04 Design Guidelines

(1) General

The type and extent of vegetation will vary depending on the roadside character classification of the road segment, approved treatment level of the project, affected roadside management zone, and planting environment. Select and maintain vegetation so it is compatible with Design Clear Zone criteria and the sight distances of drivers to signs and other vehicles and at intersections and curves.

Apply the following guidelines when designing roadside revegetation projects:

- Meet the requirements of the *Roadside Classification Plan*.
- Review roadside master plans and the State Highway System Plan for future projects and corridor goals.
- Design revegetation plans, including wetland mitigation sites and detention/retention ponds, to be sustainable over time and to require a low level of maintenance.
- Design to reduce pesticide use.
- Select plants that are compatible with clear zone, sight distance, clear sight to signing, and headlight screening criteria.
- Evaluate the mature characteristics of plant species to be consistent with safety criteria. Consider size and extent of vegetation at maturity for sight distance, clear zone, and shading issues.
- Preserve existing desirable vegetation and topsoil to the maximum extent reasonable.
- Select plants that are adaptable to the site conditions. Choose native plants unless conditions warrant non-native species to be sustainable. (See the *Roadside Manual* for more information.)

- Consider stripping, stockpiling, and reapplying topsoil if construction will disturb topsoil. When this is not feasible, amend remaining soil to meet horticultural requirements, reduce compaction, and increase moisture retention.
- Consider design speeds in the selection and location of plants. For example, where traffic speeds are higher, include larger groupings of fewer species in the landscape. (In areas of increased speeds, a motorist's perception of detail along the roadside diminishes.)
- Accommodate existing and proposed utilities.
- When selecting vegetation, consider screening undesirable views, or consider allowing openings to reveal or maintain desirable views.
- Design roadsides, particularly areas under bridges, to reduce potential for homeless encampments. Keep clear lines of sight where this potential exists.

Roadway geometrics will also affect the type and extent of vegetation in specific locations. The maximum allowable diameter of trees within the Design Clear Zone is 4 inches, measured at 6 inches above the ground when the tree has matured. Consider limiting vegetation diameters on the outside of curves beyond the Design Clear Zone. (See the *Roadside Manual* for more information.)

(2) Existing Vegetation

Design and construct within the roadside to retain desirable existing vegetation, reduce impacts on desirable existing vegetation, and restore damaged desirable vegetation where impacts occur. Also:

- Protect desirable existing vegetation wherever possible.
- Delineate trees that are to remain within the construction zone, and provide adequate protection of the root zone (extending from the tree trunk to a minimum of 3 feet beyond the drip line).
- Encourage desirable vegetation by using revegetation techniques to prevent or preclude the establishment of undesirable vegetation. (For more information on vegetation management, see: www.wsdot.wa.gov/maintenance/vegetation/.)
- Limit clearing and grubbing (especially grubbing) to the least area possible.

Selectively remove vegetation to:

- Remove dead and diseased trees when they may be a risk (including those outside the clear zone).
- Maintain clear zone and sight distance.
- Increase solar exposure and reduce accident rates, if analysis shows that removing vegetation will improve safety.
- Open up desirable views.
- Encourage understory development.
- Encourage individual tree growth.
- Prevent plant encroachment on adjacent properties.
- Ensure long-term plant viability.

Refer to the *Roadside Manual* for more information.

(3) Plant Material Selection

Select plants that are not invasive (not having the potential to spread onto roadways, ditches, and adjacent lands).

Base plant material selection on the following:

- Functional needs of the roadside.
- Native species are first priority unless non-native species would be more sustainable (urban areas or sites) or better serve the intended function.
- Maintenance requirements.
- Site analysis and conditions expected after construction.
- Horticultural requirements.
- Plant availability.
- Plant success rates in the field.
- Plant cost.
- Traffic speed.

The *Roadside Manual* provides more detailed guidelines on plant selection, sizing, and location.

(4) Planting Area Preparation

The planting area should be appropriately prepared to achieve successful restoration of vegetation. Soils should be ripped or cultivated to eliminate compaction. Decompaction and the increase of organic content will improve air and water movement through the soil and improve growth and survival of restored plants.

Soil treatments (such as incorporation of soil amendments into the soil layer and surface mulching) will improve the success rate of revegetation after highway construction activities have removed or disturbed the original topsoil. Woody native plants will grow faster and require less weed control through the combined use of compost and bark mulch.

- Use soil amendments based on the soil analysis done for the project. Soil amendments will enhance the soil's moisture-holding capacity. Coordinate soil testing through the Horticulturist or Landscape Architect at the HQ Roadside and Site Development Section.
- Use surface mulches to conserve soil moisture and moderate soil temperatures. Mulches also help keep weeds from competing with desirable plants for water and nutrients, and they provide organic matter and nutrients to the soil.
- Use of inorganic fertilizers should be avoided. If organic fertilizers are used, check with the local Maintenance or Environmental Office or the local jurisdiction for any restrictions on fertilizer use, such as those in well-head protection areas or restricted watershed areas.

(5) Irrigation

Permanent irrigation systems are only to be used in urban or semiurban areas where vegetation is surrounded by paved surfaces or does not have available groundwater. Use temporary systems to establish vegetation when needed. If irrigation is required, see Chapter 930 for design guidelines and the *Roadside Manual* for more detail.

(6) Establishment of Vegetation

Most WSDOT projects have 1- to 3-year plant establishment periods. Wetland mitigation projects often include additional years of monitoring and plant establishment to ensure mitigation standards of success (defined in the permit conditions) are met. The goal of plant establishment is to promote a healthy, stable plant community and achieve reasonable aerial coverage prior to WSDOT Maintenance taking over the responsibility and associated costs.

Weed control is necessary for plant establishment success. Include funding for weed control in the project budget to cover the full plant establishment period. The duration of this period is dependent upon plant and permit requirements.

920.05 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

930.01 General
930.02 References
930.03 Design Considerations
930.04 Documentation

930.01 General

Irrigation provides additional moisture to plants during their establishment (the first 3–5 years) or, in special cases, on a continuing basis. Irrigation is a high-maintenance and high-cost item; use only when absolutely necessary. Permanent irrigation is only used in semiurban and urban character classifications in Treatment Levels 2 and 3. (See the *Roadside Classification Plan* for more information.) Contact the region Landscape Architect or the Headquarters (HQ) Roadside and Site Development Section for assistance with irrigation plans.

930.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Roadside Classification Plan, M 25-31, WSDOT

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT

930.03 Design Considerations

(1) Project Planning Phase

During the project planning phase, make the following determinations:

(a) Determine whether irrigation is necessary.

- Analyze soils.
- Determine local climate conditions and microclimates.
- Consult with the HQ Horticulturist or region Landscape Architect, or the HQ Roadside and Site Development Section for regions without landscape architectural expertise, for site, soil, and plant recommendations to reduce or eliminate the need for irrigation.
- Describe where irrigation is needed based on a functional design concept, such as "irrigation is needed to provide green lawn at a safety rest area."

(b) Determine the source of water and its availability, rate of flow and pressure, and connection fees.

Sources of water for irrigation use include municipal water systems and water pumped from a well, pond, or stream. When selecting a source of water, consider what permits and agreements may be needed as well as the cost and feasibility of bringing water from the source to the site.

(c) Determine applicable laws and regulations regarding water and backflow prevention.

(2) Design and Implementation Phases

During the design and implementation phases:

- Coordinate with the local water purveyor.
- Select durable, readily available, easy-to-operate, and vandal-resistant irrigation components.
- Justify any proprietary device selections.
- Determine power source and connection fees.
- Consider the need for winterization of the irrigation system to avoid freeze damage to system components.

Use this information to document design decisions for the Project File.

Show the location and type of water source on the irrigation plan.

For more detailed information on irrigation systems and irrigation documentation, see the *Roadside Manual*.

930.04 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/projectdev/

Chapter 940 Soil Bioengineering

940.01 General
940.02 References
940.03 Uses for Soil Bioengineering
940.04 Design Responsibilities and Considerations
940.05 Documentation

940.01 General

Soil bioengineering is a land stabilization technology applied to disturbed sites and on slope and streambank projects. A multidisciplinary partnership is used to implement soil bioengineering techniques. Project managers initiate and design bioengineering features by employing the expertise of Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) hydraulic engineers, geotechnical engineers, engineering geologists, landscape architects, horticulturists, biologists, water quality specialists, environmental planners, and others. Soil bioengineering for slope stabilization provides additional environmental benefits such as habitat enhancement and water quality improvement.

Include consideration of slope geometry, climate, water regime, soil properties, and surrounding vegetation in soil bioengineering proposals. Applications of soil bioengineering are divided into three general categories: erosion control, streambank or shoreline stabilization, and upland slope stabilization. Refer to the following manuals according to the related discipline.

940.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Environmental Procedures Manual, M 31-11, WSDOT (permits)

Highway Runoff Manual, M 31-16, WSDOT (stormwater site plans, temporary erosion and sediment control plans, and best management practices)

Hydraulics Manual, M 23-03, WSDOT (hydrology criteria)

Roadside Classification Plan, M 25-31, WSDOT (policy and guidelines for roadside treatment: contact the region Landscape Architect or the Headquarters (HQ) Roadside and Site Development Section)

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT (vegetation and site preparation criteria, plant selection, design configurations, and other related topics)

For more detailed information, see:

Chapter	Subject
900	Roadside development
610	Investigation of soils, rock, and surfacing materials
1230	Geometric cross section
730	Retaining walls
800	Hydraulics

(2) Supporting Information

Internet Bioengineering Drawings, WSDOT Homepage
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Roadside/SoilBioengineering.htm

Geotechnical Guidance (see the Geotechnical Report for slope/soil stability; if further assistance is needed, contact the Region Materials Engineer)

940.03 Uses for Soil Bioengineering

(1) General

Soil bioengineering combines the use of live plants or cuttings, dead plant material, and inert structural members to produce living, functioning land stabilization systems. This technique uses living plants to control and prevent soil erosion, sedimentation, and shallow slope instability. The bioengineered solution benefits from engineering techniques that use live plant material.

Soil bioengineering methods can be cost-effective and a useful mitigation solution for site-specific problems. Soil bioengineering is effective in erosion prevention, streambank stabilization, and some upland instabilities. Soil bioengineering, like other engineering techniques, is not applicable in all situations. Soil bioengineering techniques may not effectively mitigate severe bridge scour, severe roadway erosion conditions, or deep-seated slope instabilities. In such cases, soil bioengineering can be used in combination with other engineering techniques.

The use of native vegetation adapted to the conditions of the project site will increase the success of the application of soil bioengineering techniques. Over time, native vegetation will encourage the establishment of a diverse plant community and discourage undesirable and invasive plant species.

Other applications of soil bioengineering include:

- Wildlife and fisheries habitat enhancement.
- Reinforcement and steepening of cut and fill slopes to limit impacts to adjacent properties and sensitive areas.
- Vegetated buffer enhancement on steep slopes.
- Enhancement of stormwater treatment areas and stabilization of drainage ways by providing erosion prevention and sediment control.
- Site-specific mitigations using standard geotechnical solutions in combination with vegetative control.

(2) Erosion Prevention

Soil bioengineering techniques can provide erosion prevention in the top soil layers. Erosion is the detachment and transport of surficial soil particles through the action of water, wind, and ice. Plant shoots and foliage diminish rainfall erosion and remove excess moisture through transpiration. Roots reinforce the soil mantle, allowing the system to grow more stable with age. Vegetative material slows down runoff and traps soil, thereby reversing the effects of erosion. (See the *Roadside Manual* for more information.)

(3) Streambank Stabilization

Soil bioengineering techniques can be used to stabilize streambanks, enhance wildlife habitat, improve water quality by controlling sediments, and protect structures. Bioengineering in the riparian zone (banks of streams, wetlands, lakes, or tidewater) requires a hydraulic study of stream characteristics and changes in stream alignment. (See the *Hydraulics Manual* for more information.)

(4) Upland Slope Stabilization

Upland slope stabilization (generally less than 3 feet in depth) refers to the use of vegetation and plant materials to reduce or prevent soil erosion caused by wind or water on slopes not directly adjacent to riparian zones.

There are three classifications of unstable slopes:

- **Surface movement** refers to surface erosion caused by wind or water on slopes.
- **Shallow-seated instability** is defined as a failure surface less than 3 feet in depth.
- **Deep-seated instability** is defined as a failure surface greater than 3 feet in depth.

Soil bioengineering is used for slopes that are at risk of shallow landslides, slumps, sloughing, and surface erosion.

Soil bioengineering alone is not appropriate for deep-seated landslides, but can be used in conjunction with other engineering methods to treat associated shallow instabilities.

Soil bioengineering techniques can be used to stabilize the slopes of construction sites or to repair disturbed or damaged slopes. Soil bioengineering is applied to both cut and fill slopes.

(5) Strategies

When planning for site-specific soil bioengineering design, consider the factors, parameters, and design considerations/specifications in Exhibit 940-1.

940.04 Design Responsibilities and Considerations

Consider the possible applications for soil bioengineering during the project definition process. Address soil bioengineering applications during the design process as part of the recommendations in the Hydraulic Report (for streambank/shoreline), Stormwater Site Plan (SSP), Geotechnical Report (for slope stabilization), and in the environmental documents. These reports provide design criteria and guidelines.

Factors	Parameters	Design Considerations/ Specifications
Climate or Microclimate	• Growing season • Exposure/Aspect	• Select suitable plants, methods, and construction timing
Physical Properties of Soil	• Density and compaction • Permeability	• Modify soil structures during construction • Select suitable plants
Chemical Properties of Soil	• pH • Fertility • Cation Exchange Capacity	• Select suitable plants • Add soil amendments
Water	• Profile available water • Water sources	• Divert water during construction using drains, ditches, pipes, and so on • Amend soil
Erosion Risk	• Soil erodibility • Rainfall erosivity • Channel discharge • Slope (height and angle) • Wind, water, or ice	• Temporary or permanent covers • Select suitable plants • Reinforcement with geotextile
Geotechnical	• Shear strength • Slope • Factor of Safety	• Select suitable soil materials • Structures • Soil density and moisture • Reinforcement with geosynthetics (see Chapter 630)

Soil Bioengineering Design
Exhibit 940-1

940.05 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Chapter 950 Public Art

950.01 General
950.02 References
950.03 Definitions
950.04 Standard Architectural Design
950.05 Criteria for Public Art
950.06 Process and Project Delivery Timing
950.07 Approvals
950.08 Documentation

950.01 General

There has been a growing interest on the part of communities to use art within the transportation facilities of the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT). It can be used to provide visual interest along roadsides, make unique statements about community character, and create positive public response that will last over time.

Proponents for public art might be local agencies or engaged citizens' groups with interest in the outcome of a WSDOT project. The environmental and public involvement processes offer opportunities for community partnership on the visual and aesthetic qualities of a corridor.

The public art policy in this chapter is intended to provide guidance for managing public art on WSDOT projects; reinforce the existing policy in the *Roadside Classification Plan*; designate appropriate locations for the incorporation of public art features; and provide for the consistent use of statewide development, review, and approval processes on new and existing features. (Note that nothing in this chapter is to be construed to *require* public art on WSDOT projects.)

The appropriateness of public art is frequently dependent upon its location and composition. An art piece or feature chosen for the back side of a noise wall, at a safety rest area, or along a bike path may not be suitable at the end of a freeway ramp or along the main line of a highway. In addition to appropriate placement, WSDOT must balance the requests for proposed public art projects with the need to provide corridor continuity, improve the unity of highway elements, and provide roadsides that do not divert motorists' attention from driving.

While some local jurisdictions dedicate a percentage of their project budgets for art, WSDOT has no such dedicated funding. Section 40 of the State Constitution specifies that gas tax money must be used for a "highway purpose." Therefore, public art beyond WSDOT standard design is typically funded by other sources. The *Roadside Funding Matrix for WSDOT Capital Projects* was developed to provide guidance for funding various elements found within public works projects on which WSDOT is the lead agency.

When city or community entrance markers are proposed, this policy should be used in conjunction with the guidance contained in the *Traffic Manual*.

950.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.42, Highway advertising control act – Scenic vistas act

Washington State Constitution, Section 40
www.leg.wa.gov/LawsAndAgencyRules/constitution.htm

(2) Design Guidance

Bridge Design Manual, M 23-50, WSDOT

Roadside Classification Plan, M 25-31, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

A Guide for Achieving Flexibility in Highway Design, AASHTO, 2004

Flexibility in Highway Design, FHWA, 1997

Roadside Funding Matrix for WSDOT Capital Projects, located in Appendix B of *Understanding Flexibility in Transportation Design – Washington*, WSDOT
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Research/Reports/600/638.1.htm

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT

Traffic Manual, M 51-02, WSDOT

Understanding Flexibility in Transportation Design – Washington, WSDOT, 2005
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Research/Reports/600/638.1.htm

950.03 Definitions

context sensitive solutions (CSS) A collaborative, interdisciplinary approach that involves the community in the development of a project. (See Chapter 210 for further information.)

public art An enhancement to a functional element, feature, or place within a transportation facility to provide visual interest. The enhancement could be an addition to a functional element, integrated into a design, or for purely aesthetic purposes. An element is considered "public art" if it is beyond WSDOT standard practice for architectural treatment.

950.04 Standard Architectural Design

WSDOT's public art policy does not apply to the standard design of transportation architectural elements such as simple geometric patterns or standard concrete finishes like fractured fin, paving patterns, or colors.

To discuss the details of proposed public art projects, contact the State Bridge and Structures Architect and the region or Headquarters (HQ) Landscape Architect. They are key members of the Public Art Specialty Services Team (described in 950.06) and can answer questions and assist in determining an appropriate course of action.

950.05 Criteria for Public Art

Placement and composition of public art is unique and is to be evaluated on a case-by-case basis. Prior to approval of public art, a public art plan is to be developed in coordination with the Public Art Specialty Services Team. The team will review the concept, guide the local agency or design team through the process, and approve the plan in accordance with 950.07. The following criteria are to be addressed and documented in the public art plan:

- The public art proponent, the funding source, and those responsible for the installation and maintenance of the proposed art. Provide for safe maintenance access, and establish agreements with local agencies for maintenance where appropriate. If there is a potential for vandalism, address this issue in the associated maintenance agreement.
- Whether public art resulted from the specific recommendation(s) of a planning-level study.
- Subject of the recommended art.
- Visibility: Art visible from the main line must contribute to corridor continuity and the view from the road. Art visible to the community or adjacent to the neighborhood side of a structure may have more flexibility in design than that visible from the main line.
- Safety and security: Public art must not negatively impact safety nor create an attractive nuisance.
- Potential for traffic distraction: Proposed art must not distract motorists. It must be appropriate for the speed and angle at which it will be viewed.
- Scale and context compatible with the surrounding landscape and land use.
- Contribution of the art to community character.
- Impact of the proposed art on social, cultural, and environmental features. In general, WSDOT would not approve the addition of art on a historic structure or within an ecologically sensitive area.
- Compliance with applicable laws, such as the Scenic Vistas Act and 23 CFR 752, Landscape and Roadside Development.
- Demonstrated responsible use of tax dollars and enhanced public trust in WSDOT judgment.

For further information on these criteria, see the *Roadside Manual*.

(1) Acceptable Public Art Features

Public art must be in compliance with WSDOT corridor guidelines and existing policies such as the *Roadside Classification Plan* and the *Bridge Design Manual*. The following are examples of types and locations of acceptable public art features:

- Concrete surface treatments (beyond WSDOT standard).
- Colored paving/colored pavers/scoring patterns (beyond WSDOT standard).
- Specially designed benches, trash cans, planters, or other street furnishings.
- Soft lighting and lighting fixtures.
- Small-scale sculptures or art pieces (when not viewed from the main line).
- Attachments to decorative railings, light poles, or fences.
- Decorative bus shelters.

(2) Unacceptable Public Art Features

The following are examples of unacceptable public art features:

- Kinetic sculptures.
- Brightly lit or flashing art.
- Art that poses a safety risk or liability.
- Large sculptures (the size of a sculpture is relative to its context and location in the landscape).
- Art with highly reflective qualities or adverse colors.
- Art that is a distraction to drivers or out of context with the surroundings.
- Art with a topic/theme that could cause negative public reaction.
- Art that resembles a traffic control device.

950.06 Process and Project Delivery Timing

Begin the development and review of public art early in the WSDOT design process and conduct subsequent reviews during the course of its development. Do not include public art as a change order or addendum to a project without first having gone through the process described in this policy.

A public art plan is developed to incorporate public art into WSDOT projects. Include the review of the public art plan by the Specialty Services Team in project reviews.

(1) Public Art Plan

The public art plan is developed by the WSDOT Project Engineer's Office. The plan provides enough detail and description to convey the intent of the proposed art project. The plan documents how the proposed art meets the criteria listed in 950.05 and includes the following elements:

- Cover sheet with appropriate approval signatures (see 950.07).
- Project overview.
- Location of the proposed art.
- Scale drawings of the proposed art, including proposed materials and finishes.
- All criteria from 950.05, Criteria for Public Art, addressed and documented.
- Justification and recommendations for public art.

Include the public art plan in the Design Documentation Package (DDP) and consider including it in the Design Approval and Project Development Approval packages.

(2) Public Art Specialty Services Team

Include the Public Art Specialty Services Team in the development of public art and the public art plan.

The Public Art Specialty Teams include the following:

- WSDOT Project Engineer or designee(s)
- State Bridge and Structures Architect
- Region or HQ Landscape Architect
- Region Traffic representative

Consider team membership from the following functional areas when their expertise is applicable:

- Maintenance
- Planning
- Environmental
- Real Estate Services
- Highways and Local Programs

For projects requiring full FHWA oversight (New/Reconstruction projects on the Interstate), the following team members are also required:

- HQ Design (ASDE)
- Federal Highway Administration (Area Engineer)

950.07 Approvals

Involve the Public Art Specialty Services Team in the development of art during the earliest possible phase of project development, ensuring that approvals happen smoothly and that WSDOT and FHWA are aware of the public art as soon as possible. Phases include the following:

- Initial Art Concept review: input and approval.
- Selected Art Concept review: input and approval.
- Final Proposed Art review: input and approval.

(1) Approval Signatures

The public art plan cover letter includes the following appropriate approval signatures.

(a) Approval of public art for New/Reconstruction projects on the Interstate includes:

- Region/HQ Landscape Architect
- HQ Bridge and Structures Architect
- HQ Design (ASDE)
- FHWA Area Engineer

(b) Approval of public art for all other projects includes:

- Region/HQ Landscape Architect
- HQ Bridge and Structures Architect

950.08 Documentation

The public art plan, complete with approval signatures, is retained in the Design Documentation Package (DDP).

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the DDP and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Chapter 1010 Work Zone Safety and Mobility

1010.01 General
1010.02 References
1010.03 Definitions
1010.04 Work Zone Safety and Mobility
1010.05 Transportation Management Plans and Significant Projects
1010.06 Work Zone TMP Strategy Development
1010.07 Capacity Analysis
1010.08 Work Zone Design Standards
1010.09 Temporary Traffic Control Devices
1010.10 Other Traffic Control Devices or Features
1010.11 Traffic Control Plan Development and PS&E
1010.12 Training and Resources
1010.13 Documentation

1010.01 General

Addressing work zone impacts is an important component in the design of a project and needs to be given adequate consideration early in the design process. Most work zones create some level of traffic impacts and require additional safety features; therefore, all work areas and operations needed for construction are identified and addressed during the project design and environmental review. The cost to address work zone impacts can account for up to 30% of project costs. It is not acceptable to the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) to allow a project to move forward to advertisement without appropriately addressing these impacts. Planners, designers, construction engineers, maintenance personnel, and others all play a role in developing a comprehensive work zone design.

This chapter provides the designer with guidance to develop comprehensive work zone strategies and plans to address a project's safety, mobility, and constructibility issues, which must be accomplished before the contract is advertised. (See the WSDOT *Environmental Procedures Manual* for guidance on addressing work zone impacts in environmental documents.) Increased traffic volumes on the highways and the need for more work zones increases the need for a more comprehensive design of the work zone for highway workers and road users. A systematic process for addressing work zone impacts is required by state and federal law.

1010.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

23 CFR 630 Subpart J

Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (28 Code of Federal Regulations [CFR] Part 36, Appendix A, as revised July 1, 1994)

"Final Rule on Work Zone Safety and Mobility," Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), Effective Date October 12, 2007
www.ops.fhwa.dot.gov/wz/resources/final_rule.htm

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

(2) Design Guidance

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO

Accessible Rights-of-Way: A Design Guide, U.S. Access Board, Washington DC
www.access-board.gov/prowac/alterations/guide.htm

Americans with Disabilities Act and Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG), July 23, 2004, U.S. Access Board
www.wbdg.org/ccb/ASTAND/ada_aba.pdf

Executive Order E 1001, Work Zone Safety and Mobility
http://wwwi.wsdot.wa.gov/docs/OperatingRulesProcedures/1001.pdf

Executive Order E 1033, WSDOT Employee Safety
http://wwwi.wsdot.wa.gov/docs/OperatingRulesProcedures/1033.pdf

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-10, WSDOT

Traffic Manual, M 51-02, WSDOT

Work Zone Traffic Control Guidelines, M 54-44, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

Construction Manual, M 41-01, WSDOT

"Crashworthy Work Zone Traffic Control Devices," Report 553, NCHRP, 2006

Environmental Procedures Manual, M 31-11, WSDOT

Highway Capacity Manual, 2000, TRB

ITE Temporary Traffic Control Device Handbook, 2001

ITS in Work Zones
www.ops.fhwa.dot.gov/wz/its/

"Recommended Procedures for the Safety Evaluation of Highway Features," Report 350, NCHRP, 1993

Roadside Design Guide, AASHTO, 2006

Work Zone & Traffic Analysis, FHWA
www.ops.fhwa.dot.gov/wz/traffic_analysis.htm

Work Zone Operations Best Practices Guidebook, FHWA, 2000
www.ops.fhwa.dot.gov/wz/practices/practices.htm

Work Zone Safety and Mobility, FHWA
www.ops.fhwa.dot.gov/wz/index.asp

Work Zone Safety Web Page, WSDOT
www.wsdot.wa.gov/safety/workzones/

1010.03 Definitions

channelizing devices Traffic safety cones, drums, tubular markers, vertical panels, and barricades used to gradually guide traffic through a work zone of separate traffic from a work area.

Positive Protection Device A crashworthy device that, depending on vehicle dynamics, may prevent intrusion into or redirect a vehicle away from a work area.

traffic control devices Signs, signals, channelizing devices, pavement markings, and other devices placed on, over, or adjacent to a street or highway to regulate, warn, or guide traffic.

transportation management plan (TMP) A set of ,traffic control plans, public information strategies, and transportation operation plans for managing the work zone impacts of a project. A TMP is required for all projects to address work zone safety and mobility impacts.

work zone An area of a highway with construction, maintenance, or utility work activities. A work zone is identified by the placement of temporary traffic control devices that may include signs, channelizing devices, barriers, pavement markings, and/or work vehicles with warning lights. It extends from the first warning sign or high-intensity rotating, flashing, oscillating, or strobe lights on a vehicle to the END ROAD WORK sign or the last temporary traffic control device (MUTCD).

work zone impact Highway construction, maintenance, or utility work in the traveled way, adjacent to the traveled way, or within the highway's right of way that creates safety and mobility concerns.

work zone traffic control The planning, design, and preparation of contract documents for the modification of traffic patterns during construction.

traveling public Motorists, motorcyclists, bicyclists, pedestrians, and pedestrians with disabilities.

1010.04 Work Zone Safety and Mobility

In September 2004, the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) published updates to the work zone regulations in 23 CFR 630 Subpart J, Work Zone Safety and Mobility. The updated regulation is referred to as "the Final Rule" on work zone safety and mobility and applies to all state and local governments that receive federal-aid highway funding. At the heart of the Rule is a requirement for agencies to develop an agency-level work zone safety and mobility policy. The policy is intended to support systematic consideration and management of work zone impacts across all stages of project development. Also required by the Rule is the development of processes and procedures to sustain the policy and transportation management plans (TMPs) for project-level procedures to manage work zone impacts.

WSDOT policy and the guidance to carry out the policy are outlined in Executive Order E 1001, Work Zone Safety and Mobility. The policy states:

> *All WSDOT employees are directed to make the safety of workers and the traveling public our highest priority during roadway design, construction, maintenance, and related activities.*

Designers need to be familiar with this document. The policy defines how WSDOT programs address work zone safety and mobility issues during project planning, design, and construction, and during highway maintenance.

1010.05 Transportation Management Plans and Significant Projects

(1) Transportation Management Plan (TMP)

A transportation management plan is a set of strategies for managing the corridor-wide work zone impacts of a project. A TMP is required for all projects and is a key element in addressing all work zone safety and mobility impacts. The TMP development begins in the scoping phase of a project by gathering project information, traffic data, impacts assessments, strategies, and mitigation and design solutions.

The three major components of a TMP are described below.

(a) **Temporary Traffic Control (TTC)**

- Control Strategies: Could include staged construction, full road closures, lane shifts or closures, night work, or one-lane two-way operations (flagging and or pilot car).
- Traffic Control Devices: Temporary signing, channelizing devices (cones, drums), changeable message signs, arrow panels, temporary signals, and temporary pavement markings.
- Project Coordination, Contracting Strategies, and Innovative Construction Strategies: A+B bidding, incentives/disincentives, and precast members or rapid cure materials.

These strategies are to be included in the Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) as traffic control plans (TCPs) and contract provisions.

(b) **Transportation Operations (TO)**

- Demand Management Strategies: Transit service improvements, transit incentives, and park & ride promotion.
- Corridor/Network Management (traffic operations) Strategies: Signal timing/coordination improvements, temporary signals, bus pullouts, reversible lanes, and truck/heavy-vehicle restrictions.
- Work Zone Safety Management Strategies: Speed limit reductions, barrier and attenuators, and automated flagger assistance devices.
- Traffic/Incident Management and Enforcement Strategies: Work Zone Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS), Washington State Patrol, tow service, WSDOT Incident Management vehicle(s), and traffic screens.

Some of these strategies may be included in the PS&E, but could also be WSDOT-managed elements outside the contract.

(c) **Public Information (PI)**

- Public Awareness Strategies: Brochures or mailers, press releases, paid advertisements, and project website (consider providing information in other languages if appropriate).
- Motorist Information Strategies: Highway advisory radio (HAR), changeable message signs, and transportation management center (TMC).

Public awareness strategies may be developed and implemented by WSDOT through the region or Headquarters (HQ) Communications offices and implemented before and during construction. Motorist information strategies may be WSDOT-managed elements with state equipment outside the contract or identified on plans in the PS&E.

(2) Significant Projects

The FHWA definition of a "significant project" is as follows:

> *A significant project is one that, alone or in combination with other concurrent projects nearby, is anticipated to cause sustained work zone impacts that are greater than what is considered tolerable based on state policy and/or engineering judgment.*

All Interstate system projects within the boundaries of a designated Transportation Management Area (TMA) that occupy a location for more than three days with either intermittent or continuous lane closures shall be considered significant projects.

It is possible to request an exception from FHWA for Interstate projects if sufficient justification is present to demonstrate that a project will not have sustained work zone impacts.

Many projects can have significant work zone safety and mobility impacts, but are not necessarily a significant project as defined under the federal requirements stated above. Projects with significant work zone impacts that do not meet the federal definition of a significant project still need to be addressed using the same impacts assessment, strategy, and mitigation techniques. A full or formal TMP would not be required, but the same process would be followed to properly address the impacts as discussed below.

Project work zone-related impacts must be addressed and mitigated to an acceptable level. An acceptable level will be defined by the region based on an impact assessment and the adverse effects on safety and mobility. Examples of this may be:

- Traffic delay beyond a local accepted level—possibly in the range of 15 to 20 minutes, but could vary based on local expectations. (Traffic impacts that extend beyond the local/project area also need to be addressed.)
- Safety or access impacts to a school, hospital, emergency services, or community that exceed local expectations based on public input.
- Economic impacts due to traffic delay or restricted access beyond normal local expectations.
- Seasonal impacts that affect recreation or business due to work zone impacts.

The Final Project Definition document must include a Work Zone Strategy Statement and indicate whether the project is significant in regard to work zone impacts.

Significant projects often require a Value Engineering (VE) study (see Chapter 310) and a Cost Risk Assessment (CRA) or Cost Estimate Validation Process (CEVP) that could help define strategies or identify risks:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Projects/ProjectMgmt/RiskAssessment/

Note: Significant projects require a complete TMP to fully address safety and mobility impacts.

Significant TMP project components are:

- **Traffic Control Plans** (TCPs): Required (includes appropriate contract specifications)
- **Transportation Operations Plans** (TOPs): Required
- **Public Information Plans** (PIPs): Required

If a project is not identified as significant, the TMP requirement and level of development is determined by the project safety and mobility impacts assessment. While TCPs are always required for all projects, TO and PI strategies should be considered and developed as needed to address project impacts. Region construction web pages provide a basic level of PI for every project.

TO and PI components are often needed to fully implement the TCPs or contract provisions due to work zone safety and mobility impacts not otherwise resolved through design strategies incorporated in the contract plans.

Non-Significant Project Components are:

- TCPs: Required (includes appropriate contract specifications)
- TOPs: Recommended as needed to address impacts
- PIPs: Recommended as needed to address impacts

(3) TMP Process

It is very important to continue the development of the TMP throughout the project development process. Not all work zone impacts will be addressed within the specific work zone elements of the contract plans. This is why it is critical to consider work zone impacts during the ongoing design of the actual project features, materials selection, working day considerations, overbuilding, temporary widening, phasing, structures, and so on. Many work zone impacts will need to be addressed by design solutions that resolve the impacts within staging plans, structure plans, and various construction plans and details. Some work zone impacts, especially those that are related to time duration may be resolved through innovative bidding and contract administration. Ongoing communication with the designer(s) of project features that will have work zone impacts is critical to ensure design solutions and mitigation measures are included within the project and TMP.

Use the TMP Checklist in Exhibit 1010-3 to help identify issues and strategies for the above-three TMP components. Include the completed checklist in the Project File. For significant projects, develop this checklist and the supporting plans, data, impacts assessments, strategies, and endorsements into a formal TMP document that will become part of the project management plan. The project management plan becomes part of the Project File.

1010.06 Work Zone TMP Strategy Development

(1) Work Zone Key Considerations

The following list provides a quick review of the elements contained within or related to this chapter. These elements are part of WSDOT's work zone policy and are required or are key to the successful development of work zone design decisions. Federal and state regulations set the level of compliance for work zones. This list is intended to alert the designer that these items are not optional and must be addressed. The elements summarized below have more detailed information within this chapter or are contained within related manuals and documents such as the MUTCD, Revised Codes of Washington, and Washington Administrative Codes.

- Minimize, mitigate, and manage work zone impacts.
- Integrate work zone impacts strategies early, during planning, programming, and design.
- Develop an accurate scoping estimate based on the work zone strategies.
- Utilize the Work Zone TMP Checklist/TMP document required for significant projects.
- Hold a Work Zone Design Strategy Conference early in the design process.
- Emphasize flagger safety.
- Address work zone mobility through a capacity analysis.
- Determine work zone impacts through an impact assessment process.
- Integrate project constructibility into the work zone design strategy.
- Attend required work zone training.
- Address state of Washington traffic and safety regulations as provided for by state law.
- Use the legally adopted *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices* (MUTCD), with Washington State modifications as the minimum standard.
- Provide an appropriate level of traffic control plans (TCPs).
- Consider work zone ITS elements.
- Use established design criteria in work zone roadway and roadside design.
- Accommodate pedestrian (including ADA requirements) and bicycle traffic.
- Consider maintenance of existing transit stops.
- Consider school zone impacts.
- Consider risk management and tort liability exposure.
- Consider work efficiency and cost containment.
- Approach the work zone design from the road user's perspective.
- Incorporate worker and other roadway user needs in your work zone designs.
- Account for all needed work areas and operations.
- Address work vehicle ingress and egress to each work area.

(2) Impacts Assessment

One of the most important tasks in developing TMP strategies is assessing all project impacts to mobility and safety. Impacts that are not identified and addressed in the TMP during design will undoubtedly become issues during the construction phase of the project. Addressing these impacts later during construction can significantly affect a project's costs and schedule, as well as increase traffic delays and safety concerns. The construction project may be well underway by the time these un-identified impacts are discovered, and the options to address them may be limited. A complete impacts assessment allows the project designer to develop more effective TMPs that should only need minor modifications to address construction issues.

An impacts assessment allows you to:

- Manage identified impacts within the structure of the TMP, even though the project may not be identified as significant.
- Develop TTC, TO, and PI strategies to address identified impacts as needed to effectively manage the project.
- Resolve potential work zone impacts within the project design features as design decisions are made. Informed decisions that consider work zone impacts during bridge type selection, materials selection, advertisement dates, and more have the potential to resolve work zone impacts before they happen.
- Engage construction PEs at the design level for input and decisions on the management of impact issues. The TMP needs to reflect those decisions.
- Consider innovative mitigation strategies such as staged closures or ITS solutions to solve an otherwise difficult impact that would be hard to manage during construction.

Impacts assessment starts in the scoping phase of a project and is an ongoing process through construction completion. During the design process, design details can produce a need for traffic control strategy revisions. Changes in design, such as types of materials (HMA vs. PCCP) or bridge footings types (shafts vs. spread) can have a big effect on the traffic control strategy. A designer needs to possess a clear understanding of all the features and how they will be constructed to determine the impact. Work closely with the roadway and bridge designers and construction personnel when assessing the impacts.

Once the designer knows what will be constructed and how, including the required work methods, equipment, materials, and duration to complete the work, an accurate assessment can be made. With this information, work areas can be determined. The work area and the duration of time it will be needed define the impact. If the work area requires a lane closure during actual work operations only on a low-volume highway, the impacts are minor. The strategy may be a typical single-lane closure during nonpeak traffic hours to perform the work. If the work area requires a lane closure until the work is completed over several weeks on a high-volume highway, the impact can be significant. The strategy may be to reduce the lane widths to maintain the same number of lanes and provide barrier to protect the work area. If traffic will be shifted onto the shoulder, the pavement depth on the shoulder needs to be determined. This strategy is much more complex and requires project-specific traffic control plans with temporary channelization and possible pavement reconstruction. If a project has many work areas, consider combining the work areas, if possible, or constructing the project in stages.

Not all impacts need to be addressed with traffic restrictions, closures, or other traffic control methods. Design changes, materials selection, construction methods, or construction sequence may reduce or eliminate some impacts. This is why the traffic control designer needs to understand design and construction issues and work closely with project designers and the Construction Office to develop the best overall traffic control strategy.

Some impacts may be difficult to completely solve and may ultimately need a management decision to determine the level of mitigation or impact to accept. These types of impacts need to be clearly addressed in the TMP with documentation supporting and explaining the decision.

(a) **Impacts to Manage During Design**

The following impacts should be managed during the design of a project:

1. Bridge construction sequence or falsework openings need to match the TCP staging or temporary channelization plans. The bridge falsework opening detail shown in the plans must be consistent with how the traffic will be maintained through the opening. Coordination with the HQ Bridge and Structures Office is essential. Maintain the legal height of 16 feet 6 inches as the minimum falsework opening whenever possible; anything less than this must consider overheight vehicle impacts and possible additional signing needs. Refer to Chapter 720 for additional requirements.
2. Can the existing signals and lighting be maintained during the construction phases or do temporary connections need to be considered or temporary systems installed? Existing lighting at the exit and entrance ramps must be maintained at all times during construction and are often one of the first items of work that the contractor disables.
3. Permanent traffic loop installation (such as advance loops, turn pockets, and stop bars): Consider access to these locations and what types of traffic control will be needed.
4. Temporary traffic loops and signal detection: Consider the detection needs in relation to the work operation and duration (such as temporary loops, video, radar, and timed system).
5. Pavement marking installations (crosswalks, arrows, and so on).
6. Temporary pavement marking needs: What type of marking is most appropriate for the work operation and the pavement surface? When removed, how are existing markings going to impact the roadway surface? Consider how to best minimize for “ghost stripe” potential.
7. Utility relocation needs: How will existing utilities conflict with temporary needs?
8. Temporary impact attenuator installation needs: Determine the appropriate type for the location proposed and the specific needs or materials for the installation pad.
9. Lane shifts onto existing shoulders:
    - Is the depth of the existing shoulder adequate to carry the extra traffic?
    - Are there any existing catch basins or junction boxes located in the shoulder that cannot accept traffic loads over them? Are there existing shoulder rumble strips? Existing rumble strips must be addressed.
    - What is the existing sideslope rate? If steeper than 4H:1V, does it need mitigation? Are there existing roadside objects that, when the roadway is shifted, are now within the clear zone limits?

- Shifting of more than one lane in a direction is only allowed with temporary pavement markings. Shifting lanes by using channelizing devices is not allowed due to the high probability that devices used to separate the traffic will be displaced.
- Existing drainage features: Will they be adversely impacted by temporary lane shifts or by anticipated work operations?
- Signal head alignment: When the lane is shifted approaching the intersection, is the signal head alignment within appropriate limits?

10. Roundabout construction at an existing intersection requires site-specific staging plans. Roundabouts create many unique construction challenges and each roundabout usually has very specific design features. There are no established national standards or guidelines for the construction of roundabouts. Each roundabout must be approached individually for the location and the traffic operational movements that exist.

(3) Work Duration

The duration of work is a major factor in determining a strategy and the amount and types of devices to use in traffic control work zones. A project may have work operations with durations that meet several or all of the following conditions. Refer to the MUTCD for additional information regarding work duration.

(a) Long-Term Stationary Work Zone

This is work that occupies a location continuously for more than three days. There is ample time to install and realize benefits from the full range of traffic control procedures and devices. Construction signs should be post-mounted and larger; more stable channelizing devices should be used for increased visibility. Temporary barriers, pavement markings, illumination, and other considerations may be required for long-term stationary work. Staged construction or temporary alignment/channelization plans are required with this type of work.

(b) Intermediate-Term Stationary Work Zone

This is work that occupies a location for up to three days. Signs may still be post-mounted if in place continuously. Temporary pavement markings, in addition to channelization devices, may be required for lane shifts. Barrier and temporary illumination would normally not be used in this work zone duration.

(c) Short-Term Stationary Work Zone

This is work that occupies a location for more than one hour within a single day. At these locations, all devices are placed and removed during the single period.

(d) Short-Duration Work Zone

This is work that occupies a location for up to one hour. Because the work time is short, the impact to motorists is usually not significant. Simplified traffic control set-ups are allowed, to reduce worker exposure to traffic. The time it may take to set up a full complement of signs and devices could approach or exceed the amount of time required to perform the work. Short-duration work zones usually apply to maintenance work and are not used on construction projects. (See *Work Zone Traffic Control Guidelines* for more information.)

(e) **Mobile Work Zone**

This is work that moves intermittently or continuously. These operations often involve frequent stops for activities such as sweeping, paint striping, litter cleanup, pothole patching, or utility operations, and they are similar to short-duration work zones. Truck-mounted attenuators, warning signs, flashing vehicle lights, flags, and channelizing devices are used, and they move along with the work. When the operation moves along the road at low speeds without stopping, the advance warning devices are often attached to mobile units and move with the operation.

Pavement milling and paving activities are similar to mobile operations in that they can progress along a roadway several miles in a day. These operations, however, are not considered mobile work zones, and work zone traffic control consistent with construction operations is required.

(4) TMP Strategies

When the list of project impacts is complete, the designer can begin to develop strategies for addressing them. There are often several strategies that can be employed to manage traffic through a work zone. The designer will need to analyze the traffic capacity, consider the cost/benefit of the strategy, and consider constructibility issues. Constructibility is a key element in a successful work zone strategy. Safety and mobility are the main concerns, but if the proposed strategy has constructibility issues, the construction costs can escalate, and safety and mobility impacts may not be addressed. Selecting a strategy is often a compromise and involves many engineering and nonengineering factors. Continue to work closely with roadway and bridge designers and construction and maintenance personnel when selecting strategies. The selected strategies are developed into the traffic control PS&E or included in the TMP document to be performed outside the contract.

Do not assume that strategies chosen for past projects will adequately address the impacts for similar projects in the future. There may be similarities with the type of work, but each project is unique and is to be approached in that manner. Always look for other options or innovative approaches; many projects have unique features that can be turned to an advantage if carefully considered. Even a basic paving project on a rural two-lane highway may have opportunities for detours, shifting traffic, or other strategies.

For a list of work zone analysis tools, see:
http://ops.fhwa.dot.gov/wz/traffic_analysis/index.htm#tools

(5) Temporary Traffic Control (TTC) Strategies

(a) **Lane Closure**

One or more of the traffic lanes are closed in this work zone type. A capacity analysis is necessary to determine the extent of congestion that might result. This may require night work or peak hour restriction. Consider traffic safety drums and truck-mounted attenuators for freeway or expressway lane closures.

(b) **Shoulder Closure**

A shoulder closure is used for work areas at the edge of the paved shoulder or off the pavement edge. On high-volume freeways or expressways, they should not be in place during peak traffic hours.

(c) **Alternating One-Lane Two-Way Traffic**

This strategy involves using one lane for both directions of traffic. Flaggers are normally used to alternate the traffic movements. Do not include alternating traffic with flaggers as a traffic control strategy until all other reasonable means of traffic control have been considered. Options to remove flaggers during alternating traffic operations are temporary portable traffic signals or automated flagging assistance devices (AFAD).

If flaggers are used at an intersection, a flagger is required for each leg of the intersection. Only law enforcement personnel are allowed to flag from the center of an intersection. When multiple lanes are present at an intersection, close the lanes so only one lane of traffic approaches the flagger location. When an existing signal is present at the intersection, the signal is to either be turned off or set to flash mode when flagging.

Flagger safety is a high emphasis area. Flagging stations need to be illuminated at night. Flaggers need escape routes in case of errant vehicles. Provide a method of alerting them to vehicles approaching from behind. Two-way radios or cellular phones are required to allow flaggers to communicate with one another. The flagger's location, escape route, protection, signing, and any other safety-related issues all need to be incorporated into the traffic control plan for the flagging operation. Flaggers are not to be used on freeways or expressways. The WSDOT publication, *Work Zone Traffic Control Guidelines*, and the *Standard Specifications* have more information on flaggers, including the Washington State Department of Labor and Industries safety regulations for flaggers.

Using flaggers solely to instruct motorists to proceed slowly is ineffective and is an unacceptable practice. A spotter (not to be confused with a flagger) is used solely to alert workers of an errant vehicle. A spotter does not use a flagging paddle, but instead uses a warning device like an air horn. Intended spotter locations are to be shown on traffic control plans. Additional information on the use of spotters is available in the *Standard Specifications*.

Law enforcement personnel may be considered for some flagging operations and can be very effective where additional driver compliance is desired. The *Traffic Manual* contains information on the use of law enforcement personnel at work zones.

(d) **Rolling Slowdown**

Rolling slowdowns are commonly practiced by the Washington State Patrol (WSP) for emergency closures. They are a legitimate form of traffic control for contractors or utility and highway maintenance crews for *very specific* short-duration closures (to move large equipment across the highway, to pull power lines across the roadway, to switch traffic onto a new alignment, and so on). They are not to be used for routine work that can be addressed by lane closures or other formal traffic control strategies. Traffic control vehicles, during off-peak hours, form a moving blockade, which reduces traffic speeds and creates a large gap (or clear area) in traffic, allowing very short-term work to be accomplished without completely stopping the traffic.

Consider other forms of traffic control as the primary choice before the rolling slowdown. A project-specific traffic control plan (TCP) must be developed for this operation. The TCP or contact provisions should list the work operations in which a rolling slowdown is allowed. The gap required for the work and the location where the rolling slowdown begins needs to be addressed on the TCP. Use of the WSP is encouraged whenever possible. Refer to the *Standard Specifications* and *Work Zone Traffic Control Guidelines* for additional information on rolling slowdown operations.

(e) **Intermittent Closure**

This work zone type involves stopping all traffic in both directions for a relatively short time to allow the work to proceed. After a certain amount of time, based on traffic volume, the roadway is reopened. An example of this type of closure would be a girder-setting operation for a bridge project: typically, the closure would be limited to a ten-minute maximum and would occur in early morning hours when traffic volumes are at a minimum. A traffic control plan is required for this operation detailing the method that will be used to stop traffic. Typically, this will be done by closing the lanes of a multilane roadway to a single lane and using either a flagger or law enforcement at the point of closure. These closure points must be shown on a plan.

(f) **Temporary Bypass**

This strategy involves total closure of one or both directions of travel on the roadway. Traffic is routed to a temporary bypass usually constructed within the highway right of way. An example of this is the replacement of an existing bridge by building an adjacent temporary structure and shifting traffic onto the temporary structure. A temporary channelization plan is required to show pavement markings, barrier and attenuators, and sign and device placement.

(g) **Median Crossover**

This strategy involves placing all multilane highway traffic on one side of the median. Lanes are usually reduced in both directions and one direction is routed across the median. Median paving may be required to create crossover locations. For long-duration crossovers, temporary channelization plans are required, with barrier to separate the two directions of traffic and temporary illumination required at the crossover locations.

(h) **Lane Shift/Reduced Lane Width**

Traffic lanes may be shifted and/or width-reduced in order to accommodate a long-duration work area when it is not practicable, for capacity reasons, to reduce the number of available lanes. Shifting more than one lane of traffic requires the removal of conflicting pavement markings and the installation of temporary markings; the use of devices to separate traffic is not allowed. Use a warning sign to show the changed alignment when the lateral shifting distance is greater than one-half of a lane width.

Utilizing the existing shoulder may be necessary to accommodate the shifting movement. First, analyze the structural capacity of the shoulder to determine its ability to carry the proposed traffic. Remove and inlay existing shoulder rumble strips prior to routing any traffic onto the shoulder.

Temporary channelization plans are required when routing traffic onto the shoulder.

(i) **Total Closures**

Total closures may be for the project duration or for a critical work operation that has major constructibility or safety issues. The main requirement for total closures is the availability of a detour route and whether or not the route can accommodate the increased traffic volumes. For the traveling public, closing the road for a short time might be less of an inconvenience than driving through a work zone for an extended period of time (see the *Traffic Manual* and RCW 47.48). Advance notification of the closure is required, and a signed detour route may be required.

Consider the following road closure issues:

- Communication with all stakeholders, including road users, local businesses, local agencies, transit agencies, emergency services, schools, and others, is required when considering a total closure strategy. This helps determine the level of support for a closure and development of an acceptable closure duration.
- Analyze a closure strategy and compare it to other strategies, such as staged work zones, to determine which is overall more beneficial. This information helps stakeholders understand the impacts if a closure is not selected.
- A closure decision (other than short-term, minor-impact closures) will require stakeholder acceptance and management approval once impacts and benefits have been analyzed.
- Closures that reopen to a new, completed roadway or other noticeable improvements are generally more accepted by the public.
- Route-to-route connections and other strategic access points may have to be maintained or a reasonable alternative provided.
- Material selection, production rates, and work operation efficiencies have a direct tie to the feasibility of the closure strategy. A strong emphasis has been placed on this area and several successful strategies have been implemented, such as weekend-long closures or extended-duration single-shift closures. These strategies use specific materials such as quick-curing concrete, accelerated work schedules, prefabricated structure components, on-site mix plants, and so on, and are based on actual production rates. The WSDOT Materials Laboratory and the HQ Construction Office are good resources for more information on constructibility as a component of an effective work zone strategy.
- Short-duration closures of ramps or intersecting streets during off-peak hours do not require extensive approval if advance notice is provided and reasonable alternate routes are available.

- Detailed, project-specific traffic control plans, traffic operation plans, and public information plans are required.
- Document road closure decisions and agreements in the Project File.

(j) **Staged Construction**

Staged construction entails combining multiple work areas into a logical order to provide large protected work areas for long durations, which maximizes work operations and minimizes daily impacts to traffic. Temporary alignment and channelization plans must be designed to place traffic in these semipermanent locations. Minimum geometric design criteria are to be used when developing these plans. Design strategies such as overbuilding for future stages or the use of temporary structures are often part of staged construction on significant impact projects or mega projects. Develop detailed capacity analysis and traffic modeling for each stage.

Implementation of the staged temporary alignment and channelization or transitioning from one stage to the next can be a safety and mobility impact. Production rates for removing and replacing pavement markings, temporary barrier, or pavement work at the tie-in locations can create lane and duration impacts that need to be considered. Strategies and plans to implement or change stages must be considered.

(k) **Traffic Split or Island Work Zone**

This strategy separates lanes of traffic traveling in one direction around a work area. On higher-speed roadways, temporary barriers are provided to prevent errant vehicles from entering the work area. Some drivers have difficulty understanding "lane split" configurations, which sometimes results in poor driving decisions such as unnecessary or late lane changes. Braking and erratic lane changes decrease the traffic capacity through the work zone, which results in an unstable traffic flow approaching the lane split. Evaluate other strategies, such as overbuilding, to keep traffic on one side of the work area to avoid a traffic split if possible.

Consider the following guidance for traffic split operations:

- Define the work operation and develop the traffic control strategy around the specific operation.
- Limit the duration the traffic split can be in place. Consider incentives and disincentives to encourage the contractor to be as efficient as possible. A higher level of traffic impacts may be acceptable if offset with fewer impacted days.
- Advance warning signs advising drivers of the approaching roadway condition are required. Consider the use of Portable Changeable Message Signs (PCMS signs), portable Highway Advisory Radio (HAR), and other dynamic devices.
- Consider how the operation will impact truck traffic. If the truck volumes are high, additional consideration may be prudent to control in which lane the trucks drive. If the trucks are controlled, it eliminates much of the potential for truck/car conflicts and sorts out undesirable truck lane changes through the work zone. For questions concerning truck operations, contact the HQ Freight Systems Division.

- Consider the use of solid lane line markings to delineate the traffic split or island. There are two striping options to consider during the design of a traffic split: when lane changes are DISCOURAGED, a single solid lane line is used, and when lane changes are PROHIBITED, two solid lane lines are used. Refer to the MUTCD for additional details.
- Supplement the existing roadway lighting with additional temporary lighting to improve the visibility of the island work area.
- Consider the use of STAY IN LANE (black on white) signs, or set up a "no pass" zone approaching the lane split and coordinate with the Washington State Patrol (WSP).

(l) **A+B Bidding**

Use A+B bidding to reduce the contract time by requiring bidders to determine the working days as part of their bid. For more information, see:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Projects/delivery/alternative/ABBidding

(m) **Incentive/Disincentive Clauses**

These are contract provisions that place financial consequences, good or bad, to ensure high-impact work or projects are finished as soon as possible. These provisions could also include accelerated work schedules for high-impact work operations.

(n) **Innovative Design/Construction Methods**

- Overbuild beyond normal project needs to maintain additional traffic or facilitate staged construction.
- Replace bridges using new alignments so they can be built with minimal impacts.
- Design bridges using super girders, falsework restrictions, or temporary structures.
- Bring adjacent lifts of hot mix asphalt (HMA) to match the latest lifts (lag up), to minimize abrupt lane edges to improve motorist safety.
- Require a tapered wedge joint on HMA lifts to eliminate an abrupt drop-off.

(6) Transportation Operations (TO) Strategies

(a) **Demand Management**

- Provide transit service improvements and possible incentives to help reduce demand.
- For long-term freeway projects, consider ramp metering.
- Provide a shuttle service for pedestrians and bicyclists.
- Provide local road improvements (signals modifications, widening, and so on) to improve capacity for use as alternate routes.
- Provide traffic screens to reduce driver distraction.

(b) **Corridor/Network Management**

- Provide a temporary express lane with no access through the project.
- Consider signal timing or coordination modifications.

- Provide emergency pullouts for disabled vehicles on projects with narrow shoulders.
- Use heavy-vehicle restrictions and provide alternate routes or lane use restrictions.

(c) **Work Zone Safety Management**

- Provide temporary access road approaches for work zone access.
- Use positive protective devices (barrier) for long-term work zones to improve the environment for workers and motorists.
- Install intrusion alarms or vehicle arresting devices.
- Use speed limit reductions when temporary conditions create a need for motorist slow-downs.

(d) **Traffic/Incident Management and Enforcement**

- Provide law enforcement patrols to reduce speeding and aggressive drivers.
- Provide incident response patrols during construction to reduce delays due to collisions in the work zone.
- Include work zone ITS elements in the project or coordinate with TMC to use existing equipment.
- Provide a dedicated tow service to clear incidents.

(7) Public Information (PI) Strategies

(a) **Public Awareness**

One PI strategy is a public awareness campaign using the media, project websites, public meetings, e-mail updates, and mailed brochures. This gives regular road users advance notice of impacts they can expect and time to plan for alternate routes or other options to avoid project impacts. Involve the region or HQ Communications Office in developing and implementing these strategies.

(b) **Driver Information**

In addition to work zone signs, provide driver information using highway advisory radio (HAR) and changeable message signs (existing or portable). Provide additional work zone ITS features that could include traffic cameras or queue detection along with changeable message signs to provide drivers with real time information on delays and traffic incidents. Involve the region TMC in the development and implementation of these strategies. Coordinate freight travel information and restrictions through the Freight Systems Office. Additional information on work zone ITS can be found on the Work Zone Safety web page: www.wsdot.wa.gov/safety/workzones/

Work zone strategy development is a fluid process and may be ongoing as project information and design features are developed during the design process. There may be many factors involved with strategy development, and it is necessary to be well organized to make sure all the relative factors are identified and evaluated.

(c) **Pedestrian and Bicycle Information**

Include pedestrian and bicycle access information and alternate routes in the public awareness plans. Pedestrian and bicyclist information signing, including alternate route maps specifically for these road users, could be considered.

1010.07 Capacity Analysis

Work zone congestion and delay is a significant issue for many highway projects. High-volume locations with existing capacity problems will certainly be candidates for further capacity problems when a work zone is in place. Work zones can create many types of roadway restrictions, such as lane closures, shoulder closures, narrowed lanes, closures and detours, and diversions, which all reduce capacity. Even when the construction work does not affect adjacent traffic lanes, slowdowns in the traffic flow are common because these activities can distract a motorist.

All work zone restrictions need to be analyzed to determine the level of impacts. Short-term impacts may only require work hour restrictions; long-term impacts require a detailed capacity analysis of the proposed mitigation strategies to select the best method of maintaining mobility. Include the *Work Zone & Traffic Analysis* in the Project File.

Work zone mobility impacts can have the following effects:

- **Crashes.** Most work zone crashes are congestion-related, usually in the form of rear-end collisions due to traffic queues. Traffic queues beyond the advance warning signs increase the risk of crashes.
- **Driver Frustration:** Drivers expect to travel to their destinations in a timely manner. If delays occur, driver frustration can lead to aggressive or inappropriate driving actions.
- **Constructibility:** Constructing a project efficiently relies on the ability to pursue work operations while maintaining traffic flow. Delays in material delivery, work hour restrictions, and constant installation and removal of traffic control devices all detract from constructibility.
- **Local Road Impacts:** Projects with capacity deficiencies can sometimes cause traffic to divert to local roadways, which may impact the surrounding local roadway system and community. Local roads may have lower geometric criteria than state facilities. Placing additional and new types of traffic on a local road may create new safety concerns, especially when drivers are accustomed to the geometrics associated with state highways.
- **Public Credibility:** Work zone congestion and delay can create poor credibility for WSDOT with drivers and the surrounding community in general.
- **Restricted Access:** Severe congestion can effectively gridlock a road system, preventing access to important route connections, businesses, schools, hospitals, and so on.
- **User Cost Impacts:** Congestion and delay, as well as associated collisions and other impacts, can create significant economic impacts to road users and the surrounding community. Calculate user costs as part of a work zone capacity analysis; the costs may be used to justify liquidated damages.

WSDOT has a responsibility to maintain traffic mobility through and around its projects. The goal is to keep a project's work zone traffic capacity compatible with existing traffic demands. Maintaining the optimum carrying capacity of an existing facility during construction may not be possible, but an effort must be made to maintain existing traffic mobility through and/or around the work zone.

Maintaining mobility does not rule out innovative strategies such as roadway closures. Planned closures can accelerate work operations, reducing the duration of impacts to road users. These types of traffic control strategies must include a plan to notify road users and mitigate and manage the congestion as much as possible. Traffic capacity mitigation measures are important since many projects cannot effectively design out all the work zone impacts.

A capacity analysis helps determine whether a work zone strategy is feasible. Mitigation measures that provide the right combination of good public information, advance signing and notification, alternate routes, detours, and work hour restrictions, as well as innovations such as strategic closures, accelerated construction schedules, or parallel roadway system capacity improvements, can be very effective in reducing mobility impacts.

Some of the impact issues and mitigating measures commonly addressed by traffic analyses include:

- Work hour time restrictions
- Hourly liquidated damage assessment
- Use of staged construction
- Working day assessment
- Public information campaign
- User cost assessment
- Local roadway impacts
- Special event and holiday time restrictions
- Closure and detour options
- Mitigation cost justification
- Level of service
- Queue lengths
- Delay time
- Running speed
- Coordination with adjoining projects (internal and local agency)

Many projects will have several potential work zone strategies, while other projects may only have one obvious work zone strategy. It is possible that a significant mobility impact strategy may be the only option. TMP strategies still need to be considered. An analysis will help show the results of these mitigating measures.

There is no absolute answer for how much congestion and delay are acceptable on a project; it may ultimately become a management decision.

Reductions in traffic capacity are to be mitigated and managed as part of the TMP. The traffic analysis process helps shape the TMP as the work zone strategies are evaluated and refined into traffic control plans and specifications. Maintain analysis documents in the Project File.

(1) Collecting Traffic Volume Data

Current volume data in the project vicinity is required for accurate traffic analysis results. Seasonal adjustment factors may be needed depending on when the data was collected and when the proposed traffic restrictions may be in place. Assess existing data as early as possible to determine whether additional data collection may be required. The region Traffic Office and the HQ Transportation Data Office can assist with collecting traffic volume data. Coordination with local agencies may be needed to obtain data on affected local roads.

(2) Short-Term Lane Closure Work Zone Capacity

For short-term lane closures on multilane highways or alternating one-way traffic on two-lane highways, see Exhibit 1010-1, General Lane Closure Work Zone Capacity. It provides information for a quick analysis when compared to current hourly volumes on the highway. The basic traffic analysis programs QUEWZ 98 and QuickZone, along with hourly volume input, the number of lanes to be closed, the hours of closure, and other default information, will output queue length, delay time, user costs, and running speed.

Roadway Type	Work Zone Capacity
Multilane Freeways/Highways	1300 VPHPL*
Multilane Urban/Suburban	600 VPHPL*
Two-Lane Rural Highway	400 VPHPL/ 800 VPH total*

*These are average capacity values. The actual values would be dependent on several factors, which include the existing number of lanes, number of lanes closed, traffic speed, truck percentage, interchanges/intersections, type of work, type of traffic control, and seasonal factors (among others). For further information, consult the *Highway Capacity Manual*.

General Lane Closure Work Zone Capacity
Exhibit 1010-1

(3) Long-Term Work Zone Capacity

For complex strategies that change traffic patterns, a more detailed analysis is required using advanced traffic modeling software. These strategies could include reducing lane and shoulder widths for extended lengths, reducing the number of lanes for extended durations, moving all lanes of traffic onto a temporary alignment, changing access locations to and from the highway, or closures with detours (including public information and traffic operation plans with anticipated reduction in demand). Work with the region Traffic Office for assistance with this level of analysis.

The following resources are also available to assist with the actual analysis and mitigation strategy development upon request:

- HQ Transportation Data Office
- HQ Traffic Offices
- Region Work Zone Specialist
- Region Public Information Office

Training is also available to obtain further knowledge and expertise in traffic analysis (see 1010.12).

1010.08 Work Zone Design Standards

Work zone design must be consistent with permanent design. When temporary alignment and channelization plans are required, meet the minimum geometric design and roadside safety criteria found in Divisions 12 and 16. Other chapters also apply to work zone design. The following information provides some basic guidance and considerations for temporary channelization designs.

(1) Lane Widths

Maintain existing lane widths during work zone operations whenever possible. For projects that require lane shifts or narrowed lanes due to work area limits and staging, consider the following before determining the final lane width to be implemented:

- Overall roadway width available
- Posted speed limit
- Traffic volumes through the project limits
- Number of lanes
- Existing lane and shoulder widths
- Length of project
- Duration of lane width reduction (if in place)
- Roadway geometry (cross slope, vertical and horizontal curves)
- Truck percentage

Work zone geometric transitions should be minimized or avoided if possible. When necessary, such transitions should be made as smoothly as the space available allows. Maintain approach lane width, if possible, throughout the connection. Design lane width reductions prior to any lane shifts within the transition area. Do not reduce curve radii and lane widths simultaneously.

The minimum allowable lane width for low-speed low-volume roadways is 10 feet, with 1 foot of shy distance. However, this requires prior approval from the region Traffic Engineer before being accepted. For all other roadways, the minimum allowable striped lane width is 11 feet, with a 2-foot shy distance to a traffic control device or shoulder width. The maximum allowable lane width is 14 feet when the radius is greater than 500 feet. Follow existing lane widths when delineating temporary lanes with channelizing devices.

When determining lane widths, the objective is to use lane geometrics that will be clear to the driver and keep the vehicle in the intended lane. Lane lines and construction joints are treated to provide a smooth flow through the transition area. In order to maintain the minimum lane widths and shy distances, temporary widening may need to be considered.

(2) Buffer Space and Shy Distance

Buffer space is a lateral and/or longitudinal area that separates road user flow from the work space or other areas off limits to motorists, and it might provide some recovery space for an errant vehicle.

- Lateral buffer space provides space between the driver and the active work space, traffic control device, or a condition such as an abrupt lane edge or drop-off. As a minimum, a 2-foot lateral buffer space is recommended.
- Shy distance is the distance from the edge of the traveled way beyond which a roadside object will not be perceived as an immediate concern by the typical driver to the extent that the driver will change the vehicle's placement or speed.
- A longitudinal buffer is the space between the protective vehicle and the work activity.

Devices used to separate the driver from the work space should not encroach into adjacent lanes. If encroachment is necessary, it is recommended to close the adjacent lane to maintain the lateral buffer space. Refer to Chapter 1610 and the MUTCD to determine the appropriate buffer space and shy distance values.

In order to achieve the minimum lateral clearances, there may be instances where temporary pavement widening or a revision to a stage may be necessary. In the case of short-term lane closure operations, the adjacent lane may need to be closed or traffic may need to be temporarily shifted onto a shoulder to maintain a lateral buffer space. During the design of the traffic control plan, the lateral clearance needs to be identified on the plan to ensure additional width is available; use temporary roadway cross sections to show the space in relation to the traffic and work area.

(3) Work Zone Clear Zone

The contractor's operations present opportunities for errant vehicles to impact the clear area adjacent to the traveled way. A work zone clear zone (WZCZ) is established for each project to ensure the contractor's operations provide an appropriate clear area. The WZCZ addresses items such as storage of the contractor's equipment and employee's private vehicles and storage or stockpiling of project materials. The WZCZ applies during working and nonworking hours and applies only to roadside objects introduced by the contractor's operations. It is not intended to resolve preexisting deficiencies in the Design Clear Zone or clear zone values established at the completion of the project. Those work operations or objects that are actively in progress and delineated by approved traffic control measures are not subject to the WZCZ requirements.

Minimum WZCZ values are presented in Exhibit 1010-2. WZCZ values may be less than Design Clear Zone values due to the temporary nature of the construction and limitations on horizontal clearance. To establish an appropriate project-specific WZCZ, it may be necessary to exceed the minimum values. The following conditions warrant closer scrutiny of the WZCZ values, with consideration of wider clear zone:

- Outside of horizontal curves or other locations where the alignment presents an increased potential for vehicles to leave the traveled way.
- The lower portion of long downgrades or other locations where gradient presents an increased potential for vehicles to exceed the posted speed.
- Steep fill slopes and high traffic volumes. (Although it is not presented as absolute guidance, the Design Clear Zone exhibit in Chapter 1600 may be used as a tool to assess increases in WZCZ values.)

Posted Speed	Distance From Traveled Way (ft)
35 mph or less	10
40 mph	15
45 to 55 mph	20
60 mph or greater	30

Minimum Work Zone Clear Zone Distance
Exhibit 1010-2

(4) Abrupt Lane Edges and Drop-offs

Minimize, mitigate, or eliminate abrupt lane edges adjacent to the traveled lane whenever possible. There are work operations where drop-offs are unavoidable in order to perform the work, but in these instances, the drop-off can generally be anticipated and addressed in the work zone traffic control plan design. Contract provisions should be included limiting the duration of edges from planing and paving operations and requiring a step wedge on new pavement edges or a lag up requirement to minimize the instances of abrupt lane edges. Use the following guidance examples for drop-off protection measures. Note: These are general guidance examples only. Refer to Exhibit 1010-4, and for a complete discussion of abrupt lanes edges and drop-offs, see Standard Specification 1-07.23(1):
www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals/fulltext/M41-10/D1.pdf

- Drop-offs up to 0.20 foot may remain exposed with appropriate warning signs alerting motorists of the condition.
- Drop-offs more than 0.20 foot are not allowed in the traveled way or auxiliary lane unless protected with appropriate warning signs, channelization devices, or barrier.
- Drop-offs more than 0.20 foot, but no more than 0.50 foot, that will not be within the traveled way shall be protected with appropriate warning signs, a wedge of compacted stable material at a slope of 4:1 or flatter, channelization devices, or barrier.
- Drop-offs more than 0.50 foot, but less than 2 feet, not within the traveled way or auxiliary lane shall be protected with appropriate warning signs, wedge of compacted stable material at a slope of 4:1 or flatter, channelization devices, or barrier. This drop-off is allowed only if it is less than 1 mile in length, does not remain for more than three working days, and is only on one side of the roadway.

- Drop-offs more than 0.50 foot that will not be within the traveled way or auxiliary lane and are not otherwise covered by No. 4 above shall be protected with appropriate warning signs and wedge of compacted stable material at a slope of 4:1 or flatter and barrier.
- Open trenches within the traveled way or auxiliary lane shall have a steel-plate cover placed and anchored over them. A wedge of suitable material, if required, shall be placed for a smooth transition between the pavement and the steel plate. Warning signs shall be used to alert motorists of the presence of the steel plates.

Abrupt lane edges and drop-offs require additional warning and considerations for motorcyclists, bicyclists, and pedestrians, including pedestrians with disabilities. Adequate signing to warn the motorcycle rider of these conditions is required. (See RCW 47.36.200, WAC 468-95-305, and Work Zone Traffic Control (WZ) for signing details.)

(5) Vertical Clearance

In accordance with Chapter 720, the minimum vertical clearance over new highways is 16.5 feet. Anything less than the minimum must follow the reduced clearance criteria discussed in Chapter 720 and included in the temporary traffic control plans. Maintain legal height on temporary falsework for bridge construction projects. Anything less than this must consider overheight vehicle impacts and possible additional signing needs. Widening of existing structures can prove challenging when the existing height is at or less than legal height, so extra care is required in the consideration of overheight vehicles when temporary falsework is necessary. Coordination with the HQ Bridge and Structures Office is essential to ensure traffic needs have been accommodated. Vertical clearance requirements associated with local road networks may be different than what is shown in Chapter 720. Coordinate with the local agency.

(6) Temporary Median Crossover Requirements

When two-way traffic is placed on one side of a multilane divided highway, consider the following guidelines when designing the crossover:

- Separate opposing traffic with either temporary traffic barriers (on high-speed roadways) or with channelizing devices throughout the length of the two-way operation. Temporary pavement markings, removal of conflicting existing markings, and construction signs are also required.
- The crossover locations are to be paved, and temporary pavement markings are required. Temporary illumination is required to improve the visibility of the crossover location. Temporary drainage may be necessary under the median fill when applicable.
- Geometrics design for temporary crossovers needs to follow the same guidance as permanent construction and have horizontal curves calculated to fit the location.
- Design crossovers for operating speeds not less than 10 mph below the posted speed limit unless unusual site conditions require a lower design speed.
- Straight line crossover tapers work best for highways with narrow paved medians.

- Provide a buffer space between the lane closures and crossover locations.
- Design crossovers to accommodate all roadway traffic, including trucks, buses, motor homes, and bicycles.
- A good array of channelizing devices and properly placed pavement markings is essential in providing clear, positive guidance to drivers.
- Provide a clear roadside recovery area adjacent to the crossover. Consider how the roadway safety hardware (guardrail, crash cushions, and so on) may be impacted by the traffic using the crossover if the traffic is going against the normal traffic flow direction. Avoid or mitigate possible snagging potential.
- A site-specific traffic control plan is required.

(7) Temporary Alignment and Channelization

Temporary alignment and channelization plans may be necessary for some long-term work zones.

The following are guiding principles for the design of temporary alignment and channelization plans:

- Use site-specific base data.
- Use permanent geometric design criteria.
- Provide beginning and ending station ties and curve data.
- Include lane and shoulder widths.
- Provide temporary roadway sections.
- To avoid confusion, do not show existing conflicting or unnecessary details on the plan.
- Do not use straight line tapers through curves; use circular alignment.
- Be aware of existing crown points, lane/shoulder cross slope breaks, and superelevation transitions that may affect a driver's ability to maintain control of a vehicle through a work zone.
- If the project has multiple stages, from one stage to the next, show newly constructed features as existing elements. For example, if an edge line is removed in one stage, the following stage would show the change by indicating where the new edge line is located.
- Consider the time constraints for the removal of existing markings and the time required to install new markings, especially if the work is for multilane staged construction. In urban areas where work hour restrictions for lane closures are limited, special consideration may be necessary to allow for time to address pavement markings, or interim stages may be necessary. Reopened temporary traffic lanes are to be marked and in compliance with criteria established in this chapter.
- When showing a run of temporary concrete barrier and the temporary impact attenuator location on a channelization plan, the shoulder approaching the attenuator location also is to be closed using shoulder closure signing and a channelizing device taper consistent with the MUTCD. (See the MUTCD for example details.)
- Existing signing may need to be covered or revised, and additional construction warning signs may be needed for the new alignment.

(8) Reduced Speeds in Work Zones

As part of the design process for construction projects, speed reductions are an option requiring thorough traffic analysis prior to accepting this option. Traffic control design assumes that drivers will reduce their speed only if they clearly perceive a need to do so. Reduced speed limits are used only where roadway and roadside conditions or restrictive features are present, such as narrow, barrier-protected work areas with major shifts in roadway alignment and where a reduced speed is truly needed to address the appropriate speed limit of the roadway. Speed reductions are not applied as a means for selecting lower work zone design criteria (tapers, temporary alignment, device spacing, and so on). Avoid frequent changes in the speed limit.

Speed limit reductions are categorized as follows:

- Continuous Regulatory Speed Limit Reduction: A speed reduction in place 24 hours a day during the number of days that construction is present.
- Variable Regulatory Speed Limit Reduction: A speed reduction in place, usually during an active work shift.
- Advisory Speed Reduction: A specific signed warning message with an advised safe speed for that given work zone condition.

Proposed speed limit reductions of more than 10 mph on any route or less than 60 mph on freeways require HQ Traffic Office approval. The Regional Administrator is authorized to approve regulatory speed limit reductions in work zones as provided for in RCW 47.48. The region Traffic Engineer is responsible for recommending or denying a speed limit reduction request to the Regional Administrator. (See the *Traffic Manual* for additional guidance on speed limit reductions.) Include speed limit reduction approvals in the Project File.

Do not use the advisory speed plaque alone or in conjunction with any sign other than a warning sign. In combination with a warning sign, an advisory speed plaque may be used to indicate a recommended safe speed through a work zone. Refer to the MUTCD for additional guidance.

(9) Accommodation for Pedestrians and Bicyclists

Most public highways and streets accommodate pedestrians and bicyclists. In work zones, they must have adequate facilities to travel through or around the work zone. The construction of temporary pathways that route the pedestrian around a work zone needs to meet ADA standards. Covered walkways are to be provided where there is a potential for falling objects. In work areas where the speeds are low (25 to 30 mph), bicyclists can use the same route as motorized vehicles. For work zones on higher-speed facilities, bicyclists will need a minimum 4-foot shoulder or detour route to provide passage through or around a work zone. Bicyclists may be required to dismount and walk their bikes through a work zone on the route provided for pedestrians.

It may be possible to make other provisions to transport pedestrians and bicyclists through a work zone or with a walking escort around the active work area. Roadway surfaces are an important consideration for pedestrian and bicycle use. Loose gravel, uneven surfaces, milled pavement, and asphalt tack coats endanger the bicyclist and restrict access to pedestrians with disabilities.

Information can be gathered on bike issues by contacting local bike clubs. Coordination with local bike clubs goes a long way to ensuring their members are notified of work zone impacts, and it helps maintain good public relations. (See Chapter 1520 for more bicycle design requirements and Chapter 1510 and GSP 072302.GR1 for pedestrian work zone design requirements.)

(10) Motorcycles

The same road surfaces that are a concern for bicyclists are also a concern for motorcyclists. Stability at high speed is a far greater concern for motorcycles than cars on grooved pavement, milled asphalt, and transitions from existing pavement to milled surfaces. Contractors must provide adequate warning signs for these conditions to alert the motorcycle rider. The WSDOT publication, *Work Zone Traffic Control Guidelines* (www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals/fulltext/M54-44/Workzone.pdf) has more information on regulations for providing warnings to motorcyclists (RCW 47.26.200).

(11) Oversized Vehicles

The region Maintenance offices and the HQ Commercial Vehicle Services Office issue permits to allow vehicles that exceed the legal width, height, or weight limits to use certain routes. If a proposed work zone will reduce roadway width or vertical clearance, or have weight restrictions, adequate warning signs and notification to the HQ Commercial Vehicle Services Office and the appropriate region Maintenance Office is required as a minimum. Document communication with these offices and any other stakeholders in the Project File.

In the permit notification, identify the type of restriction (height, weight, or width) and specify the maximum size that can be accommodated. On some projects, it may be necessary to designate a detour route for oversized vehicles. An important safety issue associated with oversized loads is that they can sometimes be unexpected in work zones, even though warning and restriction or prohibition signs may be in place. Some oversized loads can overhang the temporary barrier or channelization devices and endanger workers. Consider the potential risk to those within the work zone. Routes with high volumes of oversized loads or routes that are already strategic oversized load routes may not be able to rely only on warning or prohibition signs. Protective features or active early warning devices may be needed. If the risk is so great that one oversized load could potentially cause significant damage or injury to workers, failsafe protection measures may be needed to protect structures and workers. The structure design, staging, and falsework openings may need to be reconsidered to safely accommodate oversized loads.

1010.09 Temporary Traffic Control Devices

FHWA regulations require that all roadside appurtenances such as portable sign stands, barricades, traffic barriers, barrier terminals, crash cushions, and work zone hardware be compliant with the National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP) 350 crash test requirements. For additional information on the NCHRP 350 requirements and for additional descriptions of devices, refer to the MUTCD. For additional information and use guidelines for the following work zone devices, refer to *Work Zone Traffic Control Guidelines*.

(1) Channelizing Devices

Channelizing devices are used to alert and guide road users through the work zone. They are a supplement to signing, pavement markings, and other work zone devices. Typical channelizing devices include the following:

(a) **Cones**

Traffic safety cones are the most commonly used devices for traffic control and are very effective in providing delineation to the work zone. Cones are orange in color and are constructed of a material that will not cause injury to the occupants of a vehicle when impacted. For daytime operations on lower-speed (40 mph or lower) roadways, 18-inch-high cones can be used. For nighttime operations and high-speed roadways, reflectorized 28-inch-high cones are necessary. Traffic cones are used to channelize traffic, divide opposing traffic lanes, and delineate short-duration work zones.

(b) **Traffic Safety Drums**

Drums are fluorescent orange in color, constructed of lightweight, flexible materials, and are a minimum of 3 feet in height and 18 inches in diameter. They are highly visible and appear to be formidable obstacles. They are also less likely to be displaced by the wind generated by moving traffic. For these reasons, drums are preferred on high-speed roadways. Type-C steady-burn warning lights may be installed atop drums to improve visibility.

(c) **Tall Channelizing Devices**

Tall channelizing devices are 42 inches tall, fluorescent orange in color, and are constructed of lightweight, flexible material that may be less likely to cause injury in an impact. Tall channelizing devices are used to channelize traffic, divide opposing traffic lanes, and delineate short-duration work zones. These devices provide a larger target value in terms of retroreflectivity than cones, but less than that of drums. They do have a smaller footprint than drums, so they are a good alternative in narrow shoulder conditions.

(d) **Tubular Markers**

Tubular markers are not a recommended device unless they are being used to separate traffic on low-volume low-speed roadways. For descriptions and restrictions on use, refer to the MUTCD and the Channelization Device Application Matrix in the *Work Zone Traffic Control Guidelines*.

(e) **Barricades**

The barricades used in work zone applications are portable devices. They are used to control traffic by closing, restricting, or delineating all or a portion of the roadway. There are four barricade types:

1. **Type 1 Barricade:** Used on lower-speed roads and streets to mark a specific object.
2. **Type 2 Barricade:** Used on higher-speed roadways; it has more reflective area for nighttime use to mark a specific object.

3. **Type 3 Barricade:** Used for lane and road closures.
4. **Directional Indicator Barricade:** A special-use device not commonly used. The device is used to define the route of travel on low-speed streets or in urban areas where tight turns are required. In lane reductions, the directional arrow on this barrier can be used in the transition taper to indicate the direction of the merge.

(f) **Longitudinal Channelizing Devices**

Longitudinal channelizing devices such as lightweight water-filled barriers are an improvement over the traffic cones and drums used to channelize traffic through a work zone. These types of barriers are **not intended** as a replacement for concrete barrier.

(g) **Barrier Drums**

Barrier drums are low-density polyethylene fabricated devices placed on and along temporary concrete barriers. They are fluorescent orange with retro-reflective bands and are designed to straddle a concrete barrier. They can be used in place of barrier reflectors for barrier delineation.

(2) Portable and Temporary Signing

Portable and temporary signs (Class B Construction Signs) are generally used in short-term work zones. They are set up and removed daily or frequently repositioned as the work moves along the highway. These signs are mounted on crashworthy, collapsible sign supports. They need to be placed such that they do not obstruct pedestrian facilities. Warning signs in place longer than three days at one location must be post-mounted.

(3) Fixed Signing

Fixed signing (Class A Construction Signs) are the signs mounted on conventional sign supports along or over the roadway. This signing is used for long-term stationary work zones. Ground-mounted sign supports are usually wood; details for their design are in Chapter 1020 and the *Standard Plans*. Sign messages, color, configuration, and usage are shown in the MUTCD and the *Sign Fabrication Manual.* Existing signs may need to be covered, removed, or modified during construction.

(4) Warning Lights

Warning lights are either flashing or steady burn (Types A, B, or C) and are mounted on channelizing devices, barriers, and signs. Secure warning lights to the channelizing device or sign so they will not come loose and become a flying object if impacted by a vehicle. (See the MUTCD for additional information.)

- **Type A:** Low-intensity flashing warning light used to warn road users during nighttime hours that they are approaching a work zone.
- **Type B:** High-intensity flashing warning light used to warn road users during both daytime and nighttime hours.
- **Type C and Type D 360 degree:** Steady-burn warning lights designed to operate 24 hours a day to delineate the edge of the roadway.

(5) Arrow Panel

The arrow panel (Sequential Arrow Sign) displays either an arrow or a chevron pointing in the direction of the intended route of travel. Arrow panel displays are required for lane closures on multilane roadways. When closing more than one lane, use an arrow panel display for each lane reduction. Place the arrow panel at the beginning of the transition taper and out of the traveled way. The caution display (four corner lights) is only used for shoulder work. Arrow panels are not used on two-lane two-way roadways. (See the MUTCD for additional information.)

(6) Portable Changeable Message Signs (PCMS)

PCMS displays have electronic displays that can be modified and programmed with specific messages, and they are supplemental to other warning signs. These signs are usually mounted on trailers and use solar power and batteries to energize the electronic displays. The maximum number of message panels is two per location. If additional information is necessary, consider using a second sign. Place the PCMS far enough in advance of the roadway condition to allow the approaching driver adequate time to read the sign's message twice. PCMS systems are typically used where:

- Traffic speed is expected to drop substantially.
- Significant queuing and delays are expected.
- There are extreme changes in alignment or surface conditions.
- Advance notice of ramp, lane, or roadway closures is necessary.
- Incident management teams are used.

(7) Truck-Mounted Attenuators

A truck-mounted attenuator (TMA) is a portable impact attenuator attached to the rear of a large truck. Ballast is added to the truck to minimize the roll-ahead distance when impacted by a vehicle. The TMA is used as a shield to prevent errant vehicles from entering the work zone. TMAs should be used on all high-speed roadways. If a TMA is not available, the use of a protective or shadow vehicle is still highly recommended.

(8) Portable Temporary Traffic Control Signals

Portable temporary traffic signals are trailer-mounted and used in work zones to control traffic. These versatile portable units allow for alternative power sources such as solar power, generators, and deep-cycle marine batteries, in addition to AC power. (See the MUTCD for additional information). Portable traffic signals are typically used on two-lane two-way highways where one lane is closed for an extended duration and alternating traffic movements need to be maintained. Contact the region Traffic Office and Signal Superintendent for specific guidance and advice on the use of these systems; a traffic control plan is required.

(9) Portable Highway Advisory Radio (HAR)

A HAR is a roadside radio system that provides traffic and travel-related information (typically affecting the roadway being traveled) via AM radio. The system may be a permanently located transmitter or a portable trailer-mounted system that can be moved from location to location as necessary. Contact the region Traffic Office for specific guidance and advice on the use of these systems.

(10) Automated Flagger Assistance Device (AFAD)

The AFAD is an automated flagging machine that is operated remotely by a flagger located off the roadway and away from traffic. The device is a safety enhancement for projects that use alternating traffic control by physically placing the human flagger off the roadway while maintaining control of the traffic movements approaching the work zone. Contact the region Traffic Office for specific guidance and advice on the use of these systems. A traffic control plan is required for use of the AFAD.

1010.10 Other Traffic Control Devices or Features

(1) Barriers (Positive Protection)

Barriers are used in work zones to separate traffic moving in opposing directions and to separate road users from the work area. Temporary concrete barrier is the most common type of positive protection. (See Chapter 1610 for guidance on barriers.)

Providing positive barrier protection may become the key component of the work zone strategy. Barrier use usually requires long-term stationary work zones and pavement marking revisions, and it can increase the traffic control costs. The safety benefit versus the cost of using barrier requires careful consideration, and cost should not be the only or primary factor determining the use of barrier.

Traditional lane closures using channelizing devices may not provide adequate worker and road user protection for some types of construction. Use barriers for the following conditions:

- To separate opposing high-speed traffic normally separated by a median or existing median barrier.
- Where existing traffic barriers or bridge railings are to be removed.
- For drop-off protection during widening or excavations.
- When temporary slopes change clear zone requirements.
- For bridge falsework protection.
- When equipment or materials must remain in the work zone clear zone.
- When newly constructed features in the clear zone will not have permanent protection until later in the project.
- Where temporary signs or light standards are not crashworthy.
- Where drums, cones, or barricades do not provide adequate protection for the motorist or worker.

(a) **Temporary Concrete Barriers**

These are the safety-shape barriers shown in the *Standard Plans*. Lateral displacement from impacts is usually in the range of 2 to 4 feet. When any barrier displacement is unacceptable, these barriers are anchored to the roadway or bridge deck. Anchoring systems are also shown in the *Standard Plans*.

(b) **Movable Barriers**

Movable barriers are specially designed segmental barriers that can be moved laterally one lane width or more as a unit with specialized equipment. This allows strategies with frequent or daily relocation of a barrier. The ends of the barrier must be located out of the clear zone or fitted with an impact attenuator. Storage sites at both ends of the barrier will be needed for the barrier-moving machine.

(c) **Portable Steel Barriers**

Portable steel barriers have a lightweight stackable design. They have options for gate-type openings and relocation without heavy equipment. Lateral displacement from impacts is in the range of 6 to 8 feet. Steel barriers can be anchored according to the manufacturer's specifications.

(d) **Water-Filled Barriers**

Water-filled barriers will deflect much more than concrete barrier. Therefore, they should only be considered when a work area will not be within the deflection area.

(2) Impact Attenuators

Within the Design Clear Zone, the approach ends of temporary concrete barriers are fitted with impact attenuators to reduce the potential for occupant injury during a vehicle collision with the barrier. Impact attenuators are addressed in Chapter 1620.

The selection and location of impact attenuators in work zones can present situations that do not exist on a fully operational highway. Consider all work zone and traffic protection needs. The information in Chapter 1620 provides all the needed impact attenuator performance information, but the actual work zone location may require careful consideration by the designer to ensure the correct application is used. Consider the dynamic nature of work operations where work zone ingress and egress, work area protection, worker protection, and traffic protection all factor into the final selection. Redirective and nonredirective devices can both be used as long as the aforementioned issues are resolved and the devices also meet the Chapter 1620 criteria when applied to a given work zone location. Also, impact attenuators used in work zones are much more likely to be impacted, which again requires careful consideration of those devices that are durable and easy to repair. Some common impact attenuator work zone issues are:

- Nonredirective device is improperly located. This is usually associated with an inadequate length of need calculation (see Chapter 1610) or protection issues not fully considered.
- Narrow temporary medians, narrow work zones, narrow or no shoulders, temporary median openings, and inadequate installation area (width, cross and approach slope, or base material).
- Temporary or short-term protection issues associated with the removal or relocation of existing or temporary barriers and impact attenuators.

Designers need to ensure the approved list of temporary impact attenuators is appropriate for the individual work zone plan locations. The designer may remove from the list those devices that are not appropriate for a given location.

(3) Delineation

Pavement markings provide motorists with clear guidance through the work zone and are necessary in all long-term work zones. Temporary pavement markings can be made using painted preformed tape or raised pavement markers. Existing contradictory pavement markings must be removed. Other delineation devices are guideposts, concrete barrier delineators, and lateral clearance markers. Show these features on the traffic control plans. These devices have retroreflective properties and are used as a supplement in delineating the traveled way during the nighttime. (See Chapter 1030 for delineation requirements.)

Removal of existing or temporary pavement markings can leave a scar, creating a “ghost stripe” effect on the pavement. Under certain conditions, this scar can appear as a valid marking, which could cause driver confusion. Destructive removal such as intensive grinding can actually leave a groove in the pavement that can hold rainwater and leave the appearance of a stripe, especially at night when headlight reflections intensify the effect.

Consider the types of removal for markings and their potential for ghost stripes and other distracting or conflicting leftover markings. Less destructive types of removal, such as hydroblasting and the use of removable temporary markings, can significantly improve pavement marking performance through the work zone. Continuous positive guidance through high-quality temporary pavement markings, alone or in combination with existing markings, is a substantial benefit to drivers in work zones. Contact the region or HQ Traffic Office for further information on this subject.

Lateral clearance markers are used at the angle points of barriers where they encroach on or otherwise restrict the adjacent shoulder. Concrete barrier delineation is necessary where the barrier is less than 4 feet from the edge of traveled way. This delineation can either be barrier reflectors attached to the face of the barrier or saddle drum delineators that sit on the barrier.

(4) Screening

Screening is used to block the motorist’s view of construction activities adjacent to the roadway. Construction activities can be a distraction, and motorist reactions might cause unsafe vehicle operation and undesirable speed reductions. Consider screening the work area when the traffic volume approaches the roadway’s capacity. Screening can either be vertically supported plywood/plastic panels or chain link fencing with vertical slats. These types of screening are positioned behind traffic barriers to prevent impacts by errant vehicles. The screening is anchored or braced to resist overturning when buffeted by wind. Commercially available screening or contractor-built screening can be used, provided the device meets crashworthy criteria and is approved by the Engineer prior to installation.

Glare screening is another type of screening used on concrete barriers separating two-way traffic to reduce headlight glare from oncoming traffic. Woven wire and vertical blade-type screens are commonly used in this installation. This screening also reduces the potential for motorist confusion at nighttime by shielding construction equipment and the headlights of other vehicles on adjacent roadways. Make sure that motorists’ sight distance is not impaired by these glare screens. Contact the HQ Design Office and refer to AASHTO’s *Roadside Design Guide* for additional information on screening.

(5) Illumination

Illumination might be justified if construction activities take place on the roadway at night for an extended period of time. Illumination might also be justified for long-term construction projects at the following locations:

- Road closures with detours or diversions.
- Median crossovers on freeways.
- Complex or temporary alignment or channelization.
- Haul road crossings (if operational at night).
- Temporary traffic signals.
- Temporary ramp connections.
- Where disruption of an existing illumination system is necessary.
- Projects with lane shifts and restricted geometrics.
- Projects with existing illumination that needs to be removed as part of the construction process.
- Traffic flow is split around or near an obstruction; illumination is required for this type of operation.

For information on light levels and other electrical design requirements, see Chapter 1040.

When flaggers are necessary for nighttime construction activities, supplemental lighting of the flagger stations by use of portable light plants or other approved methods is required.

(6) Signals

A permanent signal system can be modified for a temporary configuration such as temporary pole locations during intersection construction, span wire systems, and adjustment of signal heads and alternative detection systems to accommodate a construction stage (see Chapter 1330).

(7) Work Zone Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS)

Intelligent Transportation Systems apply advanced technologies to optimize the safety and efficiency of the existing transportation network. Many permanent systems already exist throughout Washington State and provide the opportunity to greatly enhance construction projects that fall within the limits of the ITS network. ITS applications in work zones can be used to provide traffic monitoring and management, data collection, and traveler information.

ITS can provide real-time work zone information and associated traffic conditions such as slowed or stopped traffic ahead, or they can advise of alternate routes. This gives motorists more information as they make decisions about travel plans.

Work zone ITS technology is an emerging area that can provide the means to better monitor and manage traffic flow through and around work zones. Equipment used in work zones, such as portable camera systems, highway advisory radios, variable speed limits, ramp metering systems, and queue detection sensors, helps ensure a more efficient traffic flow with a positive impact on safety, mobility, access, and productivity.

Identify work zone ITS elements early in the strategy development process and include them in the preliminary estimate so they can be designed along with the other traffic control elements. For large mobility projects that have existing freeway cameras already in place, temporary ITS features (such as temporary poles and portable systems) may be necessary to ensure the network can be maintained during construction, especially if existing camera locations are in conflict with construction activities. In locations that do not have existing camera locations, but have significant construction projects planned, work zone ITS may be a good opportunity to bring ITS technology to the route.

Refer to Chapter 1050 and the work zone safety web page for additional ITS information and guidance.

1010.11 Traffic Control Plan Development and PS&E

WSDOT is obligated to provide a proposal in the PS&E for controlling traffic that is consistent with the project construction requirements. Even though there may be more than one workable solution, a thorough analysis of all the variables will help produce a TMP that addresses all impacts and establishes the appropriate levels of safety, mobility, and constructibility.

The preparation of traffic control plans (TCPs) requires the designer to not only have a thorough knowledge of highway construction activities, but also traffic engineering knowledge and an understanding of the unique traffic flow patterns within the specific project. Road users have little or no understanding of the construction occurring in the work zone and require far greater guidance than the contractor or agency personnel who are familiar with the project.

Traffic control plans can generally be broken down into three specific categories: typical, project-specific, and site-specific. The work zone location, ramps, intersections, access, and other site information will determine the level of detail necessary. Consider these categories for each work zone when developing TCPs.

TCPs are designed from the perspective of drivers, pedestrians, and bicyclists to provide the necessary information to assist them in navigating a work zone. Unexpected roadway conditions, changes in alignment, and temporary roadside obstacles relating to the work activity should be defined adequately to eliminate users' uncertainty. Keep in mind the construction workers' exposure to traffic as the traffic control plans are being developed.

It is recommended that multiple work operations be combined under a single traffic control plan to minimize the impacts to traffic and encourage the efficiency of the contractor. The intention is not to direct the contractor in how to pursue or perform the work, but to provide the most efficient approach to protect the work area and to establish the level of safety and traffic control while maintaining traffic mobility. A constructible and biddable set of traffic control plans is the goal. The contractor has the option of adopting the contract plans or proposing an alternative method.

(1) Traffic Control Plan Types

"Typical" traffic control plans are generic in nature and are not intended to satisfy all conditions for all work zones. They are adaptable to many roadway conditions and work operations. Use this type of plan if it can be applied with little or no field modification. Typical plans may be included in every project. The majority of the time, they will be used to supplement project- or site-specific plans, especially for a complex project. For projects with routine day-to-day operations, such as paving projects on a two-lane roadway, typical plans work well. Even "routine" projects may have some unique work that needs more specific plan development. As a starting point, use the typical plans located at:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Standards/PlanSheet/WZ-1.htm

A "project-specific" traffic control plan can be a typical plan that has been modified to include project-specific details such as side roads, business approaches, horizontal curves, and so on. A project-specific plan may also be drawn using existing base data, but may not necessarily be a scaled drawing. Project-specific plans are a good compromise between a typical plan with no specific detail and a scaled base data-developed plan, especially when base data may not be available.

"Site-specific" traffic control plans are drawn using scaled base data with scaled traffic control device placements to provide the highest level of accuracy. They ensure that the proposed work operation will actually fit the location and that a workable method to maintain traffic flow can be achieved. If properly designed, site-specific plans need very little field modification. The use of site-specific plans is the best approach to satisfy the intent of a TMP by addressing impacts clearly and completely with detailed plans. For complex work zones, draw the traffic control plans with site-specific base data.

Do not place typical plan-type details on scaled site-specific plans. An example of this would be to use a scaled site-specific base plan and draw typical plan generic "L" distance to represent the lane closure taper distance, with the distance to come from a data box based on the highway speed. Another example is construction signs at specific locations on the scaled plan with a typical "X" distance dimension representing sign spacing. These examples misrepresent where the tapers begin or end and the actual locations where signs will be placed in the field. Inspectors or contractors then have to make field decisions and revisions to the plans that should have been addressed during the design.

The following are types of TCPs and details to consider in addressing TMP strategies in the PS&E.

(a) **Temporary Channelization Plans**

Temporary channelization plans are site-specific TCPs for long-term work zones or staged traffic control. They show the station limits for the beginning and ending locations of the temporary markings and taper rates when applicable. These plans also show the type of markings (such as lane line or edge line) on the plan with enough detail to assist the field inspector with field layout. When applicable, these plans also include temporary concrete barrier locations, flare rates, beginning and ending stations, and attenuator information (among others).

(b) **Temporary Median Crossovers**

These are another type of temporary channelization plan. Geometrics for the crossovers need to follow the same guidance as permanent alignments, and they have horizontal curves calculated to fit the location. Paved roadway surfaces and temporary pavement markings are required. Consider temporary illumination to improve the visibility of the operation. Temporary drainage may be necessary under the median fill, when applicable.

(c) **Temporary Roadway Cross Sections**

These plan details can be invaluable in providing additional details not easily visible when looking at the plan view of a TCP, especially when the roadway is in a temporary shift or configuration. This is also an excellent way to identify roadway drop-off conditions and vertical clearance issues.

(d) **Temporary Pavement Marking Details**

Detail sheets can be helpful in providing the specific details necessary to explain marking installation needs to supplement temporary pavement marking special provisions.

(e) **Temporary Portable Signal Plan**

For projects that include temporary portable signal systems, a traffic control plan is required. Example projects would be alternating one-lane traffic operations on a two-way facility (such as two-lane bridge widening), replacement projects, or emergency slide repair. The plan must include the entire advance signing for the system, temporary markings, location in relation to work operation, temporary lighting at stop bars, and so on. Use a portable signal unit only for projects where the length between signal heads is 1,500 feet maximum and no other accesses lie in between the temporary signals. There are specific temporary signal requirements that go into a project; therefore, for assistance, contact the region Traffic Office.

(f) **Detour and Alternate Route Plan**

For projects that anticipate the need for a detour or alternate route, ensure that sign placement will fit the locations shown along the route and that the signs will not conflict with existing signs, driveways, or pedestrian movements. Depending on the duration, the detour that will be in place, and the anticipated amount of traffic that will use the route, consider upgrades to the route (such as signal timing, intersection turning radius for large vehicle, structural pavement enhancements, or shoulder widening). Note: A signed detour agreement with the appropriate local agency is required for detour routes using local roadways and must be completed prior to project advertisement.

(g) **Pedestrian and Bike Detour Route**

When existing pedestrian and signed bike routes are disrupted due to construction activities, address detour routes with a traffic control plan. The plan must show enough detail and be specific enough to address the conflicts and ensure the temporary route is reasonably safe and adequate to meet the needs of the user. Also, consider the impacts to the transit stops for pedestrians: Will the bus stops be able to remain in use during construction or will adjustments be necessary? (See Chapter 1510 for pedestrian work zone design requirements.)

(h) **Advance Warning Sign Plan**

May be combined with the vicinity map or shown on a separate plan. Show Class A Construction Signs that will remain in place for the duration of the project. Locate the signs by either station or milepost. Verify the locations to avoid conflicts with existing signing or other roadway features. These locations may still be subject to movement in the field to fit specific conditions.

(i) **Construction Sign Specification Sheet**

Provide a Class A Construction Sign Specifications sheet on complex or staged projects. Include location, post information, and notes for *Standard Plans* or other specific sign information and sign details.

(j) **Quantity Tabulation Sheets**

Quantity Tabulation sheets are a good idea for barrier and attenuator items and temporary pavement markings on projects with large quantities of these items or for staged construction projects.

(k) **Traffic Control Plan Index**

An Index sheet is a useful tool for projects that contain a large quantity of traffic control plans and multiple work operations at various locations throughout the project. The Index sheet provides the contractor a quick referencing tool indicating the applicable traffic control plan for the specific work operation.

(2) Plans to Address TMP Strategies

The following are plans that often must be considered when addressing TMP strategies in the PS&E.

(a) **Construction Sequence Plans**

These plans are placed early in the plan set and are intended to show the proposed construction stages and the work required for each stage. They should refer to the corresponding TCPs for the traffic control details of each stage.

(b) **Temporary Signal Plan**

The temporary signal plan will follow conventions used to develop permanent signals (as described in Chapter 1330), but will be designed to accommodate temporary needs and work operations to ensure there will be no conflicts with construction operations. Ensure opposing left-turn clearances are maintained as described in Chapter 1310 if channelization has been temporarily revised, or adjust signal timing to accommodate. Some existing systems can be maintained using temporary span wires for signal heads and video, microwave actuation, or timed control.

(c) **Temporary Illumination Plan**

Full lighting is normally provided through traffic control areas where power is available. The temporary illumination plan will follow conventions used to develop permanent illumination (as described in Chapter 1040), but will be designed to accommodate temporary needs and work operations to ensure there will be no conflicts with construction operations.

(3) Contract Specifications

Work hour restrictions for lane closure operations are to be specifically identified for each project where traffic impacts are expected and liquidated damages need to be applied to the contract. Refer to the *Plans Preparation Manual* for additional information on writing traffic control specifications.

(4) Cost Estimating

Temporary traffic control devices and traffic control labor can be difficult to estimate. There is no way of knowing how many operations a contractor may implement at the same time. The best method is to follow the working day estimate schedule and the TCPs that will be used for each operation. Temporary signs and devices will be used on many plans, but the estimated quantity reflects the most used at any one time. To use the lump sum item to pay for all temporary traffic control, be certain how the contractor's work operations will progress and that the traffic control plans fully define the work zone expectations.

1010.12 Training and Resources

Work zone-related training is an important component in an effective work zone safety and mobility program. Federal regulations require that those involved with work zone design and implementation be trained at a level consistent with their responsibilities. It is valuable to know what training classes are available and how those classes relate to the project design and construction programs.

(1) Training Courses

There are many work zone-related courses available, and the HQ Staff Development Office and HQ Traffic Office's Traffic Training Program Manager can assist with the availability and scheduling of classes. Consider the following training courses to develop an overall proficiency in work zone safety and mobility design:

- **Work Zone Traffic Control Design Course:** This course, taught by the HQ Traffic Office, focuses on work zone safety and mobility through transportation management plan development and WZTC PS&E.
- **QuickZone Course:** This course, taught by McTrans, explores the QuickZone work zone traffic capacity analysis program. QuickZone is a useful tool for determining capacity needs, and it allows comparison of alternative strategies.
- **MUTCD Course:** This course, taught by Transpeed, focuses on the content and use of the MUTCD, including Part 6, Temporary Traffic Control.
- **Traffic Control Supervisor (TCS) Course:** This course, taught by the Evergreen Safety Council, NW Laborers Union, and ATSSA, is primarily for those students who intend to become a TCS or those who have TCS-related responsibilities. TCS training offers value to designers regarding how implementation issues interact with design issues. Designer attendance may be restricted to "space available" status.
- **Certified Flagger Training Course:** This course is directed at students who will become certified flaggers in Washington State and is not intended for designers. Designers may want to use the *Flagger Handbook* as a resource to learn about flagger-controlled traffic control and flagging techniques and issues. This class may be valuable for increasing the safety of designers anticipating extensive field surveying and data gathering work during the project development phase.

Other courses on work zone safety, mobility, and related subjects may be available on a limited basis. Some of these courses would fall into the categories of traffic analysis and traffic engineering and may be appropriate, depending on individual designer needs and responsibilities.

(2) Resources

The responsibility of the designer to fully address all work zone traffic control impacts is very important because the level of traffic safety and mobility will be directly affected by the effectiveness of the transportation management plan (TMP). The following resources are available to assist the designer with various aspects of the work zone design effort.

(a) **Region Work Zone Resources**

Each region has individuals and offices with various resources that provide work zone guidance and direction beyond what may be available at the project Design Office level. They include:

- Region Traffic Office
- Region Work Zone Specialist
- Region Construction and Design Offices

(b) **Headquarters (HQ) Work Zone Resources**

The HQ Traffic Office has a work zone team available to answer questions, provide information, or otherwise assist. The HQ Design and Construction offices may also be able to assist with some work zone issues. They include:

- State Work Zone Safety & Mobility Manager
- State Work Zone Engineer
- State Work Zone Training Specialist
- WSDOT Work Zone Web Page

(c) **FHWA Work Zone Resources**

The FHWA Washington Division Office and Headquarters (HQ) Office may be able to provide some additional information through the WSDOT HQ Traffic Office. The FHWA also has a work zone web page: www.ops.fhwa.dot.gov/wz/

1010.13 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

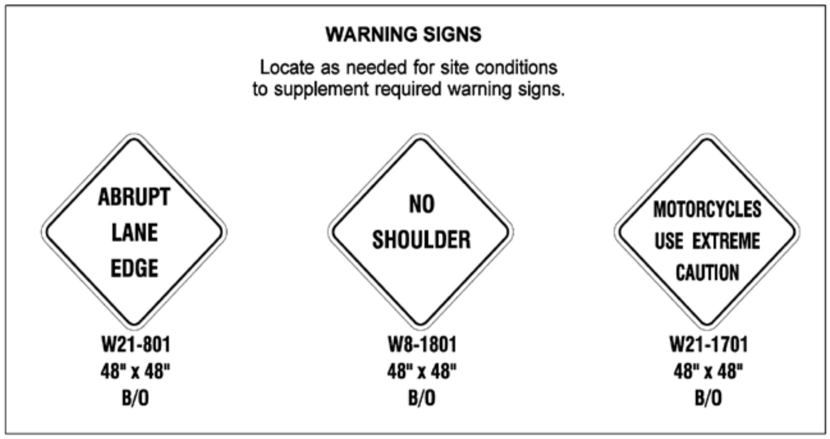
Use the following checklist to develop a formal TMP document on significant projects.

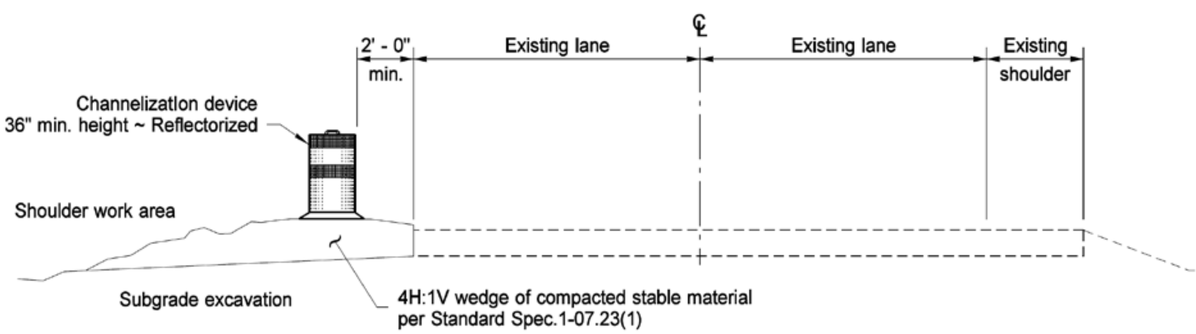
TMP Component	
1. Introductory Material	
Cover page	
Licensed Engineer stamp page (if necessary)	
Table of contents	
List of figures	
List of tables	
List of abbreviations and symbols	
Terminology	
2. Executive Summary	
3. TMP Roles and Responsibilities	
TMP manager	
Stakeholders/review committee	
Approval contact(s)	
TMP implementation task leaders (public information liaison, incident management coordinator)	
TMP monitors	
Emergency contacts	
4. Project Description	
Project background	
Project type	
Project area/corridor	
Project goals and constraints	
Proposed construction phasing/staging	
General schedule and timeline	
Adjacent projects	
5. Existing and Future Conditions	
Data collection and modeling approach	
Existing roadway characteristics (history, roadway classification, number of lanes, geometrics, urban/suburban/rural)	
Existing and historical traffic data (volumes, speed, capacity, volume-to-capacity ratio, percent trucks, queue length, peak traffic hours)	
Existing traffic operations (signal timing, traffic controls)	
Incident and crash data	
Local community and business concerns/issues	
Traffic growth rates (for future construction dates)	
Traffic predictions during construction (volume, delay, queue)	
6. Work Zone Impacts Assessment Report	
Qualitative summary of anticipated work zone impacts	
Impacts assessment of alternative project design and management strategies (in conjunction with each other)	
• Construction approach/phasing/staging strategies	
• Work zone impacts management strategies	

Transportation Management Plan Components Checklist
Exhibit 1010-3

Traffic analysis results (if applicable)	
• Traffic analysis strategies	
• Measures of effectiveness	
• Analysis tool selection methodology and justification	
• Analysis results	
Traffic (volume, capacity, delay, queue, noise)	
Safety	
Adequacy of detour routes	
Business/community impact	
Seasonal impacts	
Cost-effectiveness/evaluation of alternatives	
Selected alternative	
• Construction approach/phasing/staging strategy	
• Work zone impacts management strategies	
7. Selected Work Zone Impacts Management Strategies	
Temporary Traffic Control (TTC) strategies	
• Control strategies	
• Traffic control devices	
• Project coordination, contracting, and innovative construction strategies	
Public Information (PI)	
• Public awareness strategies	
• Motorist information strategies	
Transportation Operations (TO)	
• Demand management strategies	
• Corridor/network management strategies	
• Work zone safety management strategies	
• Traffic/incident management and enforcement strategies	
8. TMP Monitoring	
Monitoring requirements	
Evaluation report of successes and failures of TMP	
9. Contingency Plans	
Trigger points	
Decision tree	
Contractor's contingency plan	
Standby equipment or personnel	
10. TMP Implementation Costs	
Itemized costs	
Cost responsibilities/sharing opportunities	
Funding source(s)	
11. Special Considerations (as needed)	
12. Attachments (as needed)	

Transportation Management Plan Components Checklist
Exhibit 1010-3 (continued)





Abrupt Edge Pavement Drop-Off Protection

Exhibit 1010-4

Chapter 1020 Signing

1020.01 General
1020.02 References
1020.03 Design Components
1020.04 Overhead Installation
1020.05 State Highway Route Numbers
1020.06 Mileposts
1020.07 Guide Sign Plan
1020.08 Documentation

1020.01 General

The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) uses signing as the primary mechanism for regulating, warning, and guiding traffic. Signing must be in place when any section of highway is open to the motoring public. Each highway project has unique and specific signing requirements. For statewide signing uniformity and continuity, it is sometimes necessary to provide signing beyond the project limits. Design characteristics of the facility determine the size and legend for a sign. As the design speed increases, larger sign sizes are necessary to provide adequate message comprehension time. The MUTCD, the *Traffic Manual*, and the *Sign Fabrication Manual* contain standard sign dimensions, specific legends, and reflective sheeting types for all new signs.

Guide signing provides the motorist with directional information to destinations. This information is always presented in a consistent manner. In some cases, there are specific laws, regulations, and policies governing the content of the messages on these signs. All proposed guide signs for a project require the approval of the region Traffic Engineer. The use of nonstandard signs is strongly discouraged and their use requires the approval of the State Traffic Engineer.

The design matrices in Chapter 1100 identify the design levels for signing on all Preservation and Improvement projects. These levels are indicated in the column "Signing" for Interstate main line and the column "Signing, Delineation, and Illumination" for all other routes.

Review and update existing signing within the limits of all Preservation and Improvement projects as indicated in the matrices. Provide standard signing on projects with either a "B" (basic design level) or "EU" (evaluate upgrade) matrix designation. Apply the following criteria when determining whether to replace or modify existing signs:

- Lack of nighttime retroreflectivity
- Substantial damage, vandalism, or deterioration
- Age of signs (seven to ten years old)
- Change in sign use policy
- Improper location
- Message or destination changes necessary to satisfy commitments to public or local agencies
- Substandard mounting height
- Change in jurisdiction (for example, a county road becomes a state route)

Address sign support breakaway features when identified in the “Clear Zone” columns of the matrices. When the “F” (full design level) matrix designation is present, the preceding criteria are still applicable and all existing signing is required to conform to the current policy for reflective sign sheeting requirements. Remove or replace signing not conforming to this policy.

1020.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) 655, Traffic Operations

Directive D 32-20, “State Route Mileposts,” WSDOT

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.36, Traffic control devices

(2) Design Guidance

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways (MUTCD), 2003 Edition, FHWA, 2003, including the Washington State Modifications to the MUTCD, M 24-01, 2003

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Sign Fabrication Manual, M 55-05, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaires, and Traffic Signals, 4th Edition, Washington DC, AASHTO, 2001

Traffic Manual, M 51-02, WSDOT

1020.03 Design Components

(1) Location

The MUTCD contains the guidelines for positioning signs. Check sign locations to ensure the motorist’s view of the sign is not obscured by other roadside appurtenances. Also, determine whether the proposed sign will obstruct the view of other signs or limit the motorist’s sight distance of the roadway. Reposition existing signs, when necessary, to satisfy these visibility requirements. Where possible, locate signs behind existing traffic barriers, on grade separation structures, or where terrain features will minimize their exposure to errant vehicles.

(2) Longitudinal Placement

The MUTCD and the *Traffic Manual* provide guidelines for the longitudinal placement of signs that are dependent on the type of sign. Select a location to fit the existing conditions to provide for visibility and adequate response time. In most cases, signs can be shifted longitudinally to enhance safety without compromising their intended purpose.

(3) Lateral Clearance

The *Standard Plans* and the MUTCD contain minimum requirements for the lateral placement of signs. Where possible, position the signs at the maximum feasible lateral clearance for safety and reduced maintenance costs. Locate large guide signs and motorist information signs beyond the Design Clear Zone (see Chapter 1600) where limited right of way or other physical constraints are not a factor. On steep fill slopes, an errant vehicle is likely to be partially airborne from the slope break near the edge of shoulder to a point 12 feet down the slope. When signs are placed on fill slopes steeper than 6H:1V, locate the support at least 12 feet beyond the slope break.

Use breakaway sign support features, when required, for signs located within the Design Clear Zone and for signs located beyond this zone where there is a possibility they might be struck by an errant vehicle. Breakaway features are not necessary on signposts located behind traffic barriers. Install longitudinal barriers to shield signs without breakaway features within the Design Clear Zone when no other options are available.

Sign bridges and cantilever sign structures have limited span lengths. Locate the vertical components of these structures as far from the traveled way as possible and, where appropriate, install traffic barriers (see Chapter 1610).

Do not locate signposts in the bottom of a ditch or where the posts will straddle the ditch. The preferred location is beyond the ditch or on the ditch backslope (see the *Standard Plans*). In high-fill areas where conditions require placement of a sign behind a traffic barrier, consider adding embankment material to reduce the length of the sign supports.

(4) Sign Heights

For ground-mounted signs installed at the side of the road, provide a mounting height of at least 7 feet, measured from the bottom of the sign to the edge of traveled way. Supplemental plaques, when used, are mounted directly below the primary sign. At these locations, the minimum mounting height of the plaque is 5 feet.

Do not attach supplemental guide signs to the posts below the hinge mechanism or the saw cut notch on multiple-post installations. The location of these hinges or saw cuts on the sign supports are shown in the *Standard Plans*.

A minimum 7-foot vertical height from the bottom of the sign to the ground directly below the sign is necessary for the breakaway features of the sign support to function properly when struck by a vehicle. The minimum mounting height for new signs located behind longitudinal barriers is 7 feet, measured from the bottom of the sign to the edge of traveled way. A lower mounting height of 5 feet may be used when replacing a sign panel on an existing sign assembly located behind the longitudinal barrier. The *Standard Plans* shows typical sign installations.

For ground-mounted signs installed on multiple posts that are a minimum of 12 feet from the edge of traveled way in cut sections, the minimum height clearance between the sign and the ground for the post farther from the edge of traveled way is as follows:

- For slopes 2H:1V and steeper, the minimum height clearance is 2 feet.
- For slopes 3H:1V or flatter, the minimum height clearance is 7 feet.

Signs used to reserve parking for people with disabilities are installed at each designated parking stall and are mounted 7 feet above the surface at the sign location.

(5) Foundations

Foundation details for timber and steel ground-mounted sign supports are shown in the *Standard Plans*, which also contains foundation designs for truss-type sign bridges and cantilever sign structures. Three designs, Types 1, 2, and 3, are shown for each structure.

An investigation of the foundation material is necessary to determine the appropriate foundation design. Use the data obtained from the geotechnical report to select the foundation type.

- The **Type 1** foundation design uses a large concrete shaft and is the preferred installation when the lateral bearing pressure of the soil is 2,500 psf or greater.
- The **Type 2** foundation design has a large rectangular footing design and is an alternative to the Type 1 foundation when the concrete shaft is not suitable.
- The **Type 3** foundation design is used in poorer soil conditions where the lateral bearing pressure of the soil is between 1,500 psf and 2,500 psf.

If a nonstandard foundation or monotube structure design is planned, forward the report to the Headquarters (HQ) Bridge and Structures Office for use in developing a suitable foundation design (see Chapter 610).

(6) Signposts

Ground-mounted signs are installed on either timber posts, laminated wood box posts, or steel posts. The size and number of posts required for a sign installation are based on the height and surface area of the sign, or signs, being supported. Use the information in Exhibits 1020-2, 1020-3, and 1020-4 and the *Standard Plans* to determine the posts required for each installation. Coordinate with the region Maintenance Office concerning signpost installation.

Use steel posts with breakaway supports that are multidirectional if the support is likely to be hit from more than one direction. For any wide flange multiple-steel post installations located within the Design Clear Zone, the total weight of all the posts in a 7-foot-wide path is not to exceed a combined post weight of 34 lbs/foot. Use the Wide Flange Beam Weights table in Exhibit 1020-3 to determine wide flange steel post weights. If the proposed sign configuration does not meet the weight criterion, relocate, resize, or provide barrier protection for the proposed installation.

All signposts are to be designed to 90 mph wind loads. Design features of breakaway supports are shown in the *Standard Plans*. Steel signposts commonly used are: Perforated Square Steel Tube (PSST); Square Steel Tube (SST); Round Pipe (RP); and Wide Flange “H-Beam.” Steel posts with Type TP-A, TP-B, PL, PL-T, PL-U, AS, AP, SB-1, and SB-2 bases have multidirectional breakaway features.

1020.04 Overhead Installation

Conditions justifying the use of overhead sign installations are noted in the MUTCD. Where possible, mount overhead signs on grade separation structures rather than sign bridges or cantilever supports.

Details for the construction of truss-type sign bridges and cantilever sign supports are shown in the *Standard Plans*.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office designs structure-mounted sign mountings, monotube sign bridges, and monotube cantilever sign supports. For overhead sign installation designs, provide sign dimensions, horizontal location in relation to the roadway, and location of the lighting fixtures to facilitate design of the mounting components by the HQ Bridge and Structures Office.

(1) Illumination

The retroreflectivity of currently approved sign sheeting removes the need to provide illumination for most sign installations. Ground-mounted signing, regardless of sign type or message content, does not require sign lighting for nighttime legibility. Only overhead-mounted signs with "EXIT ONLY" panels in noncontinuous illumination areas or overhead-mounted guide signs for left side exits in all areas are illuminated.

The sign lights for existing illuminated overhead and ground-mounted signs can only be de-energized and removed if the retroreflective sheeting is adequate for nighttime legibility. A nighttime assessment of all nonilluminated overhead signs within the project limits is required. Replace all signs that have inadequate retroreflectivity (contact the region Traffic Office). In situations where a nonhighway light source interferes with a sign's legibility, consider relocating the sign or providing sign lights.

Flashing beacon signs are used to alert motorists of unusual or unexpected driving conditions ahead. Sign lights are unnecessary on flashing beacon signs when appropriate sign sheeting, full circle or tunnel signal head visors, and automatic dimmer devices are used.

Overhead Sign Type	Continuous or Noncontinuous Illumination	Sign Lighting Required	Sheeting Type (Background)	Sheeting Type (Legend & Border)
EXIT ONLY guide sign	Continuous	No	IV*	VIII or IX
EXIT ONLY guide sign	Noncontinuous	Yes	II	III or IV
Guide signs for left side exits	Both	Yes	II	III or IV
Other guide signs	Both	No	III or IV	VIII or IX
Regulatory signs	Both	No	IV	n/a
Warning signs	Both	No	VIII or IX	n/a

*For Yellow Background Sheeting, use Type VIII or IX Fluorescent Sheeting.

Note:
Continuous (Full) Illumination is when light standards (luminaires) exist between interchanges.

Reflective Sheeting Requirements for Overhead Signs
Exhibit 1020-1

All other overhead signs are illuminated only when one of the following conditions is present:

- Sign visibility is less than 800 feet due to intervening sight obstructions such as highway structures or roadside features.
- Signs directly adjacent to other overhead signs have sign lights.

(2) Vertical Clearance

The minimum vertical clearance from the roadway surface to the lowest point of an overhead sign assembly is 17 feet 6 inches. The minimum vertical clearance from the roadway surface to the lowest point of an overhead sign assembly without sign light(s) is 19 feet 6 inches. The maximum clearance is 21 feet. Contact the HQ Traffic Office regarding signs under bridges and in tunnels.

(3) Horizontal Placement

Consider roadway geometrics and anticipated traffic characteristics when locating signs above the lane(s) to which they apply. Install advance guide signs and exit direction signs that require an EXIT ONLY and "down arrow" panel directly above the drop lanes. To reduce driver confusion about which lane is being dropped, avoid locating a sign with an EXIT ONLY panel on a horizontal curve.

(4) Service Walkways

Walkways are provided on structure-mounted signs, truss-type sign bridges, and truss-type cantilever sign supports where roadway and traffic conditions prohibit normal sign maintenance activities. Monotube sign bridges and cantilever sign supports normally do not have service walkways.

Vandalism of signs, particularly in the form of graffiti, can be a major problem in some areas. Vandals sometimes use the service walkways and vandalize the signs. Maintenance costs for cleaning or replacing the vandalized signs at these locations can exceed the benefit of providing the service walkway.

1020.05 State Highway Route Numbers

For state routes, RCW 47.36.095 authorizes WSDOT to sign state highways using a system of state route numbers assigned to eliminate duplication of numbers. This numbering system follows the system employed by the federal government in the assignment of Interstate and U.S. routes: odd numbers indicate general north-south routes and even numbers indicate general east-west routes.

1020.06 Mileposts

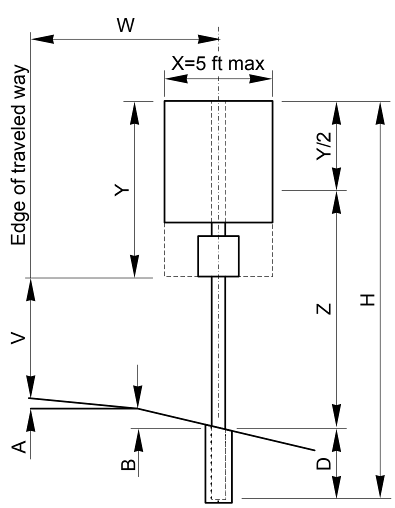
Milepost markers are a part of a statewide system for all state highways and are installed in accordance with Directive D 32-20, "State Route Mileposts."

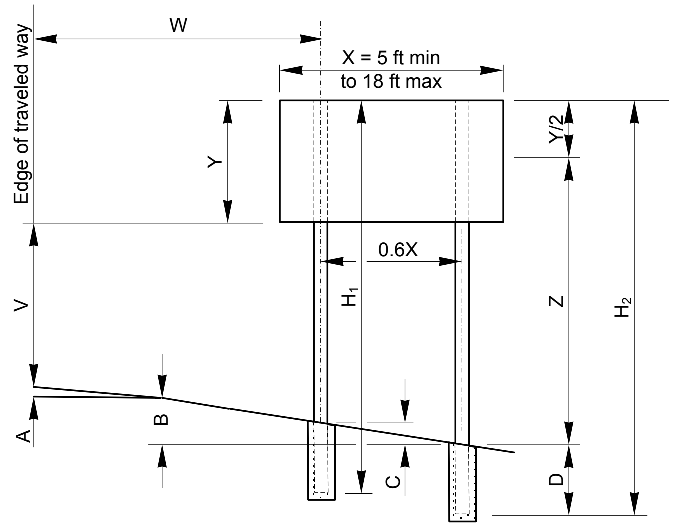
1020.07 Guide Sign Plan

A preliminary guide sign plan is developed to identify existing and proposed guide signing on state highways and is reviewed by the region Traffic Engineer. Preliminary guide signs for Interstate routes are to be furnished to the HQ Traffic Office for review and concurrence. The plan provides an easily understood graphic representation of the signing and its continuity to motorist destinations, activities, and services. It is also used to identify deficiencies or poorly defined routes of travel. A guide sign plan for safety and mobility Improvement projects is desirable. When proposed highway work affects signing to a city or town, the guide sign plan can be furnished to the official governing body for review and consideration. The guide sign plan is reviewed and approved by the region Traffic Engineer.

1020.08 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Projectdev/





Notes:

The following designs are *not permitted* when a sign is to be located in or outside the Design Clear Zone in an area where it is likely to be struck by an errant vehicle:

1. A sign with any post larger than 6x8 inches.
2. A 2-post, 3-post, or 4-post sign that uses 6x6-inch or larger posts and has two posts spaced less than 7 ft apart on center.

Table 1 Timber Post Selection

Post Size (in)	(X)(Y)(Z) (ft^3) Number of Posts				D (ft)
	1	2	3	4	
4 x 4	60	115	175	235	3
4 x 6	125	335	500	675	4
6 x 6	200	415	620	815	4
6 x 8	330	695	1150	1515	5
6 x 10	670	1355	2030	2700	6
8 x 10	835	1685	2515	3360	6
6 x 12	985	2005	2965	3945	7

Values shown are the maximum permitted.

For timber grade requirements, see the *Standard Specifications*.

Foundation depths are based on allowable lateral bearing pressure in excess of 2500 psf.

If the value (X)(Y)(Z) amount exceeds the limit for 6x12 post(s), use steel post(s) for sign installation.

A = Vertical distance from edge of traveled way to edge of shoulder
B = Vertical distance from slope catch point to centerline of longest post
C = Vertical distance between adjacent posts
X & Y = Single sign or back-to-back signs: Overall dimensions of the sign
Multiple signs: Dimensions of the area within the perimeter of a rectangle enclosing the extremities of the sign
Z = Height from ground line to midheight of sign at the centerline of the longest post
D = Embedment depth
H = Total post height
V = Vertical clearance from edge of traveled way
W = Distance from edge of traveled way to the centerline of the post nearest the roadway

Design Example – Single Post

Given:

Sign 3 ft wide, 3.5 ft high; a secondary sign 1.5 ft wide, 2 ft high, mounted 3 inches (0.25 ft) below;
8-ft shoulder with 2% slope; 6H:1V embankment;
W = 15 ft; V = 5 ft

Solution:

X = 3 ft
Y = 3.5 + 2 + 0.25 = 5.75 ft
A = (0.02)(8) = 0.16
B = (W-8)/6 = (15-8)/6 = 1.17
Z = Y/2 + V + A + B
= (5.75/2) + 5 + 0.16 + 1.17 = 9.2 ft
(X)(Y)(Z) = (3)(5.75)(9.2) = 158.7 ft^3

Since 159 ft^3< 200 ft^3, from Table 1, select 6x6 post

H = 9.2 + (5.75/2) + 4 = 16.1 ft

Design Example – Double Post

Given:

Sign 12 ft wide, 4 ft high; 10-ft shoulder with 2% slope; 6H:1V embankment; W = 25 ft; V = 7 ft

Solution:

X = 12 ft; Y = 4 ft
A = (0.02)(10) = 0.2
B = [(W-10) + (0.6X)]/6 = [(25-10) + (0.6)(12)]/6 = 3.7
C = (0.6)(12)/6 = 1.2
Z = Y/2 + V + A + B = 4/2+7 + 0.2 + 3.7 = 12.9 ft
(X)(Y)(Z) = (12)(4)(12.9) = 619 ft^3

Since 619 ft^3 < 695 ft^3, select two 6x8 posts.

H_2 = Y/2 + Z + D = 4/2 + 12.9 + 5 = 19.9 ft
H_1 = H_2-C = 19.9-1.2 = 18.7 ft

Note: 6x6 and larger posts require 7-ft spacing. Sign may be installed within the Design Clear Zone.

Timber Posts
Exhibit 1020-2

X & Y = Single sign or back-to-back signs: Overall dimensions of the sign
Multiple signs: Dimensions of the area within the perimeter of a rectangle enclosing the extremities of the signs

Z = Height from the base connection (2½ inches above the post foundation for wide flange beams) to the midheight of the sign at the centerline of the longest post

H = Post length

V = Vertical clearance from the edge of traveled way

W = Distance from the edge of traveled way to the centerline of the longest post nearest the roadway

Design Example – Steel Post Selection

Given:

Sign 22 ft wide, 12 ft high; 10 ft shoulder with 2% slope; 3H:1V embankment; W = 32 ft; V = 7ft.

Solution:

X = 22
Y = 12
A = (0.02)(10) = 0.2
B = [(W-10) + (0.7)(X/3)] = [(32-10) + (0.7x22)]/3 = 12.5
C = (0.35)(22)/3 = 2.6
Z = Y/2 + V + A + B-0.21
= 12/2 + 7 + 0.2 + 12.5-0.21 = 25.5 ft

(X)(Y)(Z) = (22)(12)(25.5) = 6729 ft^3

Since 6729 ft^3 < 9480 ft^3, select three W10x26 (ASTM A36) or W10x22 (ASTM A992) (see the *Standard Plans*)

H_3 = 12/2 + 25.5 = 31.5 ft
H_2 = H_3-C = 31.5-2.6 = 28.9 ft
H_1 = H_2-C = 28.9-2.6 = 26.3 ft

Table 1 Wide Flange Steel Post Selection

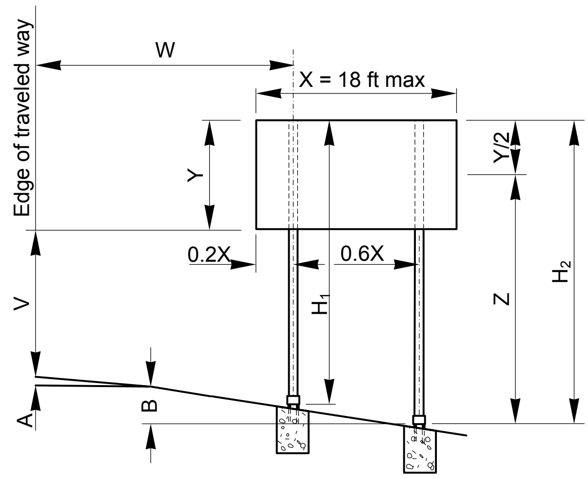
Wide Flange Beam			
Post Size		(X)(Y)(Z) (ft^3)	
		Number of Posts	
ASTM A992	ASTM A36	2	3
W6x9	W6x12	1570	2355
W6x12	W6x16	2340	3510
W8x18	W8x21	4120	6180
W10x22	W10x26	6320	9480
W12x26	W12x30	8700	- - -

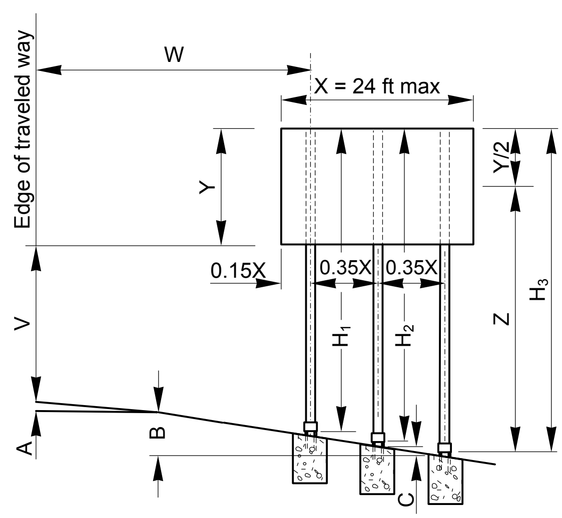
Table 2 Wide Flange Beam Weights

Beam Size	Weight lbs/ft	Beam Size	Weight lbs/ft
W6x9	9	W8x21	21
W6x12	12	W10x22	22
W6x16	16	W10x26	26
W8x18	18	W12x26	26
		W10x30	30

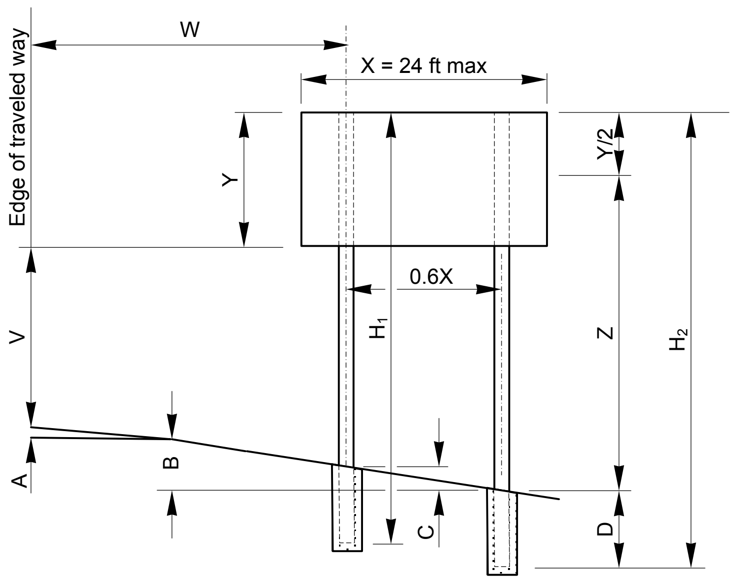
Notes:

- Values shown in Table 1 are the maximum permitted.
- A single-wide flange post installation is not allowed.
- Consider using one of the following: perforated square steel tube posts, solid steel tube posts, or round steel posts.
- For post selection for other than wide flange beam supports and a single-post assembly, see the *Standard Plans*. To determine post sizes for these types of posts, use the wind load charts at: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/traffic/signing (See the *Standard Plans* for additional information.)





Wide Flange Steel Posts
Exhibit 1020-3



X & Y = Single sign or back-to-back signs:
Overall dimensions of the sign
Multiple signs: Dimensions of the area within the perimeter of a rectangle enclosing the extremities of the signs

Z = Height from ground line to the midheight of the sign at the centerline of the longest post

D = Embedment depth

H = Post length

V = Vertical clearance from edge of traveled way

W = Distance from edge of traveled way to the centerline of the post nearest the roadway (see the *Standard Plans*)

Design Example – M Post Selection

Given:

Two-post assembly sign 16 ft wide, 6 ft high; 10 ft shoulder with 2% slope; 6H:1V embankment; W = 25 ft; V = 7 ft

Solution:

X = 16
Y = 6
A = (0.02)(10) = 0.2
B = [(W-10) + 0.6X]/6
= [(25-10) + (0.6)(16)]/6 = 4.1
C = (0.6X)/6 = (0.6)(16)/6 = 1.6
Z = Y/2 + V + A + B = 6/2 + 7 + 0.2+4.1 = 14.3 ft
(X)(Y)(Z) = (16)(6)(14.3) = 1373 ft^3

Since 1373 ft^3 < 1661 ft^3, select a post type M from Table 1.

H_2 = Y/2 + Z + D = 6/2 + 14.3 + 6 = 23.3 ft
H_1 = H_2-C = 23.3-1.6 = 21.7 ft

Table 1 Laminated Wood Box Post Selection

Post Type	Size (in)	Z (ft)	(X)(Y)(Z) ft^3
M	7⅞ x 7⅞	15 < Z ≤ 26	1329
M	7⅞ x 7⅞	Z ≤ 15	1661
L	7⅞ x 14⅞	15 < Z ≤ 26	3502
L	7⅞ x 14⅞	Z ≤ 15	4378

Table 2 Embedment Depth (D)

Z (ft)	Sign Area ft^2					
	Up to 50	51 to 100	101 to 150	151 to 200	201 to 250	251 to 290
9 to 12	6	6	7	8	9	10
13 to 15	6	6	7.5	9	10	
16 to 18	7	7.5	9			
19 to 22	7	8	10			
23 to 26	7.5	8.5				

Design Example – L Post Selection

Given:

Two-post assembly sign 18 ft wide, 8 ft high;10 ft shoulder with 2% slope; 6H:1V embankment W = 25 ft; V = 7 ft

Solution:

X = 18
Y = 8
A = (0.02)(10) = 0.2
B = [(W-10) + (0.6X)]/6 = [(25-10) + (0.6)(18)]/6 = 4.3
C = 0.6X/6 = (0.618)/6 = 1.8
Z = Y/2 + V + A + B = 8/2 + 7 + 0.2 + 4.3 = 15.5 ft
(X)(Y)(Z) = (18)(8)(15.5) = 2232 ft^3

Since 2232 ft^3 < 3502 ft^3, select a post type L from Table 1.

H_2 = Y/2 + Z + D = 8/2 + 15.5 + 9 = 28.5 ft
H_1 = H_2-C = 28.5 – 1.8 = 26.7 ft

Laminated Wood Box Posts
Exhibit 1020-4

Chapter 1030 Delineation

1030.01 General
1030.02 References
1030.03 Definitions
1030.04 Pavement Markings
1030.05 Guideposts
1030.06 Barrier Delineation
1030.07 Object Markers
1030.08 Wildlife Warning Reflectors
1030.09 Documentation

1030.01 General

The primary function of delineation is to provide the visual information needed by a driver to operate a vehicle in a variety of situations. Delineation includes the marking of highways with painted or more durable pavement marking lines and symbols, guideposts, and other devices such as curbs (see Chapter 1140). These devices use retroreflectance, which is the reflecting of light from a vehicle's headlights back to the driver, to enhance an object's visibility at nighttime. It is important to maintain an adequate level of retroreflectivity for both traffic signs and traffic markings for motorists during hours of darkness and during adverse weather conditions.

Delineation is a required safety item of work and is addressed on all projects. A decision to omit delineation work can only be justified if the existing delineation is unaffected by construction and an evaluation of accident rates clearly shows that delineation is not a contributing factor. The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) uses the latest edition of the MUTCD as a guide for the design, location, and application of delineation.

Consult with the region Traffic Office early in the design process to ensure the proposed delineation is compatible with WSDOT policy and region preference. These policies and preferences address both the type of markings and the material selection.

1030.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD).

(2) Design Guidance

Roadway Delineation Practices Handbook, FHWA report, Washington, DC, 1994

Sign Fabrication Manual, M 55-05, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

Long-Term Pavement Practices, NCHRP Synthesis 306, Transportation Research Board

1030.03 Definitions

coefficient of retroreflection (R_L) A measure of retroreflection.

delineation Any method of defining the roadway operating area for the driver.

durability A measure of a traffic line's resistance to the wear and deterioration associated with abrasion and chipping.

extrude A procedure for applying marking material to a surface by forcing the material through a die to give it a certain shape.

glass beads Small glass spheres used in highway pavement markings to provide the necessary retroreflectivity.

mcd/m²/lux Pavement marking retroreflectivity is represented by the coefficient of retroreflected luminance (R_L) measured in millicandelas per square meter.

mil Unit of measurement equivalent to 0.001 inches.

MUTCD *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices.*

pavement marking A colored marking applied to the pavement to provide drivers with guidance and other information.

retroreflection The phenomenon of light rays striking a surface and being returned directly back to the source of light.

retroreflectometer An instrument used to measure retroreflectivity.

spraying A procedure for applying marking material to a surface as a jet of fine liquid particles.

service life The service life of a pavement marking is the time or number of traffic passages required for its retroreflectivity to decrease from its initial value to a minimum threshold value indicating that the marking needs to be refurbished or replaced.

traffic paint A pavement marking material that consists mainly of a binder and a solvent. The material is kept in liquid form by the solvent, which evaporates upon application to the pavement, leaving the binder to form a hard film.

wet film thickness Thickness of a pavement marking at the time of application without glass beads.

1030.04 Pavement Markings

(1) Pavement Marking Types

Pavement markings have specific functions: they guide the movement of traffic and they promote safety on the highway. In some cases, they are used to supplement the messages of other traffic control devices. In other cases, markings are the only way to convey a message without distracting the driver. Pavement markings are installed and maintained to provide adequate performance year round. Adequate performance is defined as meaning the marking meets or exceeds the standards of both daytime and nighttime visibility.

Pavement markings are classified as either *longitudinal* or *transverse*. Centerlines, lane lines (where applicable), and edge lines (except as noted) are required on all paved state highways unless an exception is granted, with justification, by the State Traffic Engineer. Guidelines for the application of various pavement markings are provided in the *Standard Plans* and the MUTCD.

(a) **Longitudinal Pavement Markings**

Longitudinal pavement markings define the boundary between opposing traffic flows, and they identify the edges of traveled way, multiple traffic lanes, turn lanes, and special-use lanes. The *Standard Plans* shows the dimensions of longitudinal pavement markings. Longitudinal pavement markings are as follows:

barrier centerline A very wide—18 inches minimum, usually 20 inches: five 4-inch lines—solid yellow line or a combination of two single 4-inch solid yellow lines with yellow crosshatching between the lines, with a total width not less than 18 inches, used to separate opposing traffic movements where all movements over the line are prohibited. Barrier centerline locations require the approval of the region Traffic Engineer and Access Engineer.

centerline A broken yellow line used to separate lanes of traffic moving in opposite directions, where passing in the opposing lane is allowed.

dotted extension line A broken white or yellow line that is an extension of an edge line or centerline used at exit ramps, intersections on horizontal curves, multiple turn lanes, and other locations where the direction of travel for through traffic is unclear.

double centerline Two parallel solid yellow lines used to separate lanes of traffic moving in opposite directions where passing in the opposing lane is prohibited.

double lane line Two solid white lines used to separate lanes of traffic moving in the same direction where crossing the lane line marking is prohibited.

double wide lane line Two solid wide white lines used to separate a concurrent preferential lane of traffic where crossing is prohibited.

drop lane line A wide broken white line used in advance of a wide line to delineate a lane that ends at an off-ramp or intersection.

edge line A solid white or yellow line used to define the outer edges of the traveled way. Edge lines are not required where curbs or sidewalks are 4 feet or less from the traveled way.

lane line A broken white line used to separate lanes of traffic moving in the same direction.

no-pass line A solid yellow line used in conjunction with a centerline where passing in the opposing lane is prohibited.

reversible lane line Two broken yellow lines used to delineate a lane where traffic direction is periodically reversed.

solid lane line A solid white line used to separate lanes of traffic moving in the same direction where crossing the lane line marking is discouraged. Note: While this marking is in the MUTCD, it may not be in wide use by WSDOT as it is the same as the edge line.

two-way left-turn centerline Two yellow lines, one solid and one broken, used to delineate each side of a two-way left-turn lane.

wide broken lane line A wide broken white line used to designate a portion of a high-occupancy vehicle (HOV) lane located on a divided highway where general-purpose vehicles may enter to make an exit.

wide dotted lane line A wide broken white line used to designate a portion of a high-occupancy vehicle (HOV), or business access and transit (BAT) lane located on an arterial highway where general-purpose vehicles may enter to make a turn at an intersection.

wide lane line A wide solid white line used to separate lanes of traffic moving in the same direction, at ramp connections, storage lanes at intersections, and high-occupancy vehicle (HOV) lanes, or at business access and transit (BAT) lanes, bike lanes, and other preferential lanes where crossing is discouraged.

(b) **Transverse Pavement Markings**

Transverse pavement markings define pedestrian crossings and vehicle stopping points at intersections. They are also used to warn motorists of approaching conditions, required vehicular maneuvers, or lane usage. Typical transverse pavement markings are as follows:

access parking space symbol A white marking used to designate parking stalls provided for motorists with disabilities. The marking may have an optional blue background and white border.

aerial surveillance marker White markings used at one-mile and one-half-mile intervals on sections of highways where the State Patrol uses airplanes to enforce speed limits.

bicycle lane symbol A white marking consisting of a symbol of a bicyclist and an arrow used in a marked bike lane. (See the *Standard Plans* for an example of the bicycle lane symbol.) The bicycle lane symbol is to be placed immediately after an intersection and at other locations as needed (see the MUTCD). Typical spacing is 500 feet, with a maximum distance of 1,500 feet.

crosswalk line A series of parallel solid white lines used to define a pedestrian crossing.

drainage marking A white line used to denote the location of a catch basin, grate inlet, or other drainage feature in the shoulder of a roadway.

HOV symbol A white diamond marking used for high-occupancy vehicle lanes. The spacing of the markings is an engineering judgment based on the conditions of use. Typical spacing is 1000 feet for divided highways and 500 feet for arterial highways.

railroad crossing symbol A white marking used in advance of a railroad crossing where grade crossing signals or gates are located or where the posted speed of the highway is 40 mph or higher.

stop line A solid white line used to indicate the stopping point at an intersection or railroad crossing.

traffic arrow A white marking used in storage lanes and two-way left-turn lanes to denote the direction of turning movement. Arrows are also used at ramp terminals and intersections on divided highways to discourage wrong-way movements.

traffic letters White markings forming word messages, such as “ONLY,” used in conjunction with a traffic arrow at drop-lane situations. Traffic letters are not required for left- and right-turn storage lanes where the intended use of the lane is obvious.

wide line A wide solid line used for traffic islands, hash marks, chevrons, and other applications. A wide line used in conjunction with a centerline marking shall be yellow. A wide line used in conjunction with a lane line or right edge line marking shall be white.

(2) Pavement Marking Materials

Pavement markings are applied using various materials. These materials are divided into two categories: paint and plastic. When selecting the pavement marking material to use in a project, consider the initial cost of the material and its service life; the location; the traffic conditions; the snow and ice removal practices of the particular maintenance area; and the region’s ability to maintain the markings.

Both painted and plastic pavement markings can accomplish the goal of providing a visible (daytime) and retroreflective (nighttime) pavement marking at the completion of a contract. The difference between the two marking materials is the projected service life of the markings. Paint used on sections of highway subjected to high traffic volumes and/or snow-removal operations might have a service life of only two to three months. Maintenance crews cannot restripe a highway during winter months; therefore, if a painted marking wears out prematurely, the highway will not have a stripe until maintenance crews can restripe in April or May. When these conditions are encountered in a highway project, it is strongly recommended that the designer specify one of the more durable plastic marking materials and application types that will provide an adequate service life for the marking.

For the recommended pavement marking material for different highway types and snow-removal practices, see Exhibit 1030-1. Consult with the region’s Traffic and Maintenance offices to select the best material for the project.

(a) **Paint**

Paint is the most common pavement marking material. It is relatively easy to apply and dries quickly (30–90 seconds in warm, dry weather) after application. This allows the application to be a moving operation, which minimizes traffic control costs and delays to the roadway users. On construction contracts, paint is applied with two coats: the first coat is 10 mils thick, followed by a second coat 15 mils thick. The disadvantage of using paint as a pavement marking material is its short service life when subjected to traffic abrasion, sanding, or snow-removal activities. Specify paint only where it will have a service life that will provide a retroreflective stripe until maintenance crews can repaint the line and extend its service life until the next repainting.

Paint is one of two material types dependent upon the solids carrier: solvent or waterborne. The designer is encouraged to specify waterborne paint, which has proven to be more durable than solvent paints. Solvent paint is also subject to a monetary penalty because it contains a high level of volatile organic compounds (VOCs). There is an Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Clean Air Act penalty assessed on solvent paint that is passed on to those who purchase solvent paint in quantity.

Durable waterborne paint or high-build waterborne paint is a paint technology developed in 1999. This paint is formulated to allow application thicknesses of 20 to 30 mils. It is more durable than standard waterborne paint and, applied at these thicknesses, provides additional service life. The additional thickness permits the use of larger glass beads that enhance wet night retroreflectivity. This paint has been tested on two WSDOT contracts and is available for the WSDOT Striping Maintenance Crews. It will be available for use on contracts in the near future.

Low-temperature waterborne paint is another recent development (2006) in paint technology. This paint is intended to extend the paint season later into the fall, although it may also be used earlier in the spring. The paint is formulated for application temperatures of 35° Fahrenheit and rising. This paint is available for WSDOT Striping Maintenance Crews. It will be available for use on contracts in the near future.

(b) **Plastic**

Plastic markings have a higher installation cost than paint. They can, however, be a more cost-effective measure than paint because of their longer service life. Plastic marking materials may provide a year-round retroreflective pavement marking, while paint may not last until the next restriping. Plastic marking materials currently listed in the *Standard Specifications* include the following:

1. **Type A: Liquid Hot Applied Thermoplastic**

   Thermoplastic material consists of resins and filler materials in solid form at room temperature. The material is heated to a semiliquid, molten state (400º Fahrenheit) and is then applied to the roadway by spray or extrusion methods. This material can be used for both transverse and longitudinal line applications. Special equipment is required for both the initial application and subsequent maintenance renewal. Sprayed material can be applied at a thickness of 30 mils and dries in 30 to 60 seconds. The service life of material applied in this manner is slightly longer than that of paint. Extruded material is applied at a thickness of 125 mils and has a drying time of 15 minutes. This material can be applied as a flat line or applied with ridges or profiles (bumps) that enhance wet night visibility. These profiles produce a rumble effect similar to raised pavement markers when a vehicle crosses over the marking. (Profiles come in the shape of a raised bar at set intervals along and formed simultaneously with the extruded baseline.)

2. **Type B: Preformed Fused Thermoplastic**

   This material consists of a mixture of pigment, fillers, resins, and glass beads that is factory produced in sheet form 125 mils thick. The material is applied by heating (drying) the pavement and top heating the material. The heating process fuses the preformed thermoplastic material to the pavement surface. These materials, which are used for transverse markings, are available in white, red, blue, and other colors.

3. **Type C: Cold Applied Preformed Tape**

   Preformed tape is composed of thermoplastic or other materials that are fabricated under factory conditions. After curing, the material is cut to size and shipped to the work site in rolls or in flat pieces. The material is then applied to the roadway with an adhesive on the underside of the tape. Preformed tape is available in a thickness of 60 mils, 90 mils, or 125 mils. (WSDOT does not currently specify 125 mil tape.) The most durable application of preformed tape is achieved when the tape is either inlaid (rolled) into hot asphalt and the top of the tape is flush with the surface of the pavement, or it is placed in a groove cut into the pavement surface and the top of the tape is slightly below the surface of the pavement.

   ASTM has classified preformed tape into two categories: Type 1 and Type 2. Type 1 tape has a profiled surface and a requirement to have a retroreflectivity of over 500 mcd/m^2/lux. Type 1 tape has proven to be very durable. It is used on high-volume, high-speed highways. Type 2 tape has a flat surface and a requirement to have a retroreflectivity of over 250 mcd/m^2/lux. Field tests show that Type 2 tape has a shorter service life than Type 1 tape.

4. **Type D: Liquid Cold Applied Methyl Methacrylate (MMA)**

   Methyl methacrylate can be applied by either spraying or extrusion. Sprayed applications can be one or two coats, 30 to 45 mils thick. Extruded applications are 90 mils thick for dense asphalt or PCC pavement, or 120 mils thick for open-graded asphalt pavement. MMA can also be extruded using specialized equipment to produce a textured line 150 mils thick. The material is not heated and can be applied within an approximate temperature range of 40º to 105º Fahrenheit, provided the pavement surface is dry. The material can be used for both transverse and longitudinal applications. The material can also be applied with profiles (bumps) that slightly enhance wet night retroreflectivity. The profiles also produce a rumble effect similar to raised pavement markers.

5. **Type E: Plural Component Pavement Marking Materials**

   Type E marking materials are two-part materials that can be Type E1: Hybrid/Modified Epoxy (Modified Urethane), Type E2: Polyurea, or Type E3: Liquid Cold Applied Methyl Methacrylate, which require a mix of materials to achieve a chemical reaction for formulation and bond. Type E marking materials are applied by spray with a top dressing of glass beads.

   Type E marking materials should provide a service life of four to six years. If installed on mountain passes and heavy traffic areas, the service life may be reduced to one to three years. White shall have a minimum R_L, of 330 mcd m^{-2} lx^{-1} and yellow shall have a minimum R_L, of 200 mcd m^{-2} lx^{-1}. Type E marking materials may be used on all roadway classes. They may be renewed following a surface preparation to remove 90% of the existing marking material. The setting time for Type E material is usually very short and can reduce the traffic control concerns.

   Type E marking materials have been successfully tested by WSDOT and are used by many other states. They are not currently in the *Standard Specifications* and must be included in contracts as a special provision at this time; they are intended to be a general special provision (GSP) in the near future. The specification includes compliance adjustment factors for material thickness and retroreflectivity.

(c) **Glass Beads**

Glass beads are small glass spheres used in highway markings to provide the necessary retroreflectivity. The beads are dropped onto the wet marking material immediately after it is applied (drop-on beads), or premixed into the wet marking material and dropped onto the wet marking material immediately after it is applied.

Proper installation of glass beads is critical to achieving good pavement marking retroreflectivity. Each glass bead works like a light-focusing lens, reflecting light back to the driver. Glass beads are embedded into the pavement marking material; for optimum performance, the bead is embedded between 55% and 60% of its diameter.

Large glass beads are effective when roads are wet. Large glass beads are not appropriate for paint as the paint is too thin to properly embed the large glass beads; therefore, WSDOT specifies small glass beads for paint applications. The use of large glass beads is limited to high-build waterborne paint and other materials with a thickness of at least 22 mils.

(3) Pavement Marking Application Types

There are five application types used for pavement markings. Most pavement marking applications are applied directly to the pavement surface. In steel bit snow plowing areas, the pavement markings may be inlaid or grooved to protect the markings.

Because they are higher than the surrounding pavement surface, pavement markings are subject to rapid wear caused by traffic and snowplows. As they wear, they lose visibility and retroreflectivity, particularly in wet weather. Wear on the stripes can be greatly reduced and their service life considerably increased by placing them in a shallow groove in the surface of the pavement.

(a) **Application Types**

The five application types for pavement markings are:

1. **Flat Lines**

   Flat lines are pavement marking lines with a flat surface.

2. **Profiled Marking**

   A profiled pavement marking consists of a baseline thickness and a profiled thickness, which is a portion of the pavement marking line that is applied at a greater thickness than the baseline thickness. Profiles are applied using the extruded method in the same application as the baseline. The profiles may be slightly rounded if the minimum profile thickness is provided for the entire length of the profile. (See the *Standard Plans* for the construction details.)

3. **Embossed Plastic Line**

   Embossed plastic lines consist of a flat line with transverse grooves. An embossed plastic line may also have profiles. (See the *Standard Plans* for the construction details.)

4. **Inlaid Plastic Line**

   Inlaid plastic line is constructed by rolling Type C tape into hot mix asphalt (HMA) with the finish roller. This application is used infrequently by WSDOT and is not in the *Standard Specifications*.

5. **Grooved Plastic Line**

   Grooved plastic line is constructed by cutting a groove into the pavement surface and spraying, extruding, or gluing pavement marking material into the groove. The groove depth is dependent upon the material used, the pavement surface, and the location. The groove is typically in the range of 20 to 250 mils deep and 4 inches wide. Coordinate with the region Traffic Office on the use and dimensions of grooved plastic line marking.

(4) Raised Pavement Markers

Raised pavement markers (RPMs) are installed as positioning guides with long line pavement markings. They can also be installed as a complete substitution for certain long line markings. RPMs have a service life of two years, and they provide good wet night visibility and a rumble effect. RPMs are made from plastic materials and are available in three different types:

- **Type 1** markers are 4 inches in diameter, ¾ inch high, and nonreflectorized.
- **Type 2** markers are 4 inches wide, 2½ to 4 inches long, ¾ inch high, and reflectorized.
- **Type 3** markers are 6, 8, 10, or 12 inches wide, 4 inches long, ¾ inch high, and nonreflectorized.

Type 2 RPMs are not used as a substitute for right edge lines. They can only be used to supplement the right edge line markings at lane reductions, at sections with reduced lane widths such as narrow structures, and at the gore of exit ramps. All other applications supplementing right edge line markings require the approval of the region Traffic Engineer. Type 3 RPMs are used in locations where additional emphasis is desired, including vehicle separations and islands. Approval by the region Traffic Engineer is required for all installations of Type 3 RPMs.

Reflectorized RPMs are not required for centerline and lane line applications in continuously illuminated sections of highway. However, if reflectorized RPMs are used at an intersection within an illuminated section, they are also provided throughout that section.

For raised pavement marker application details, see the *Standard Plans*.

(5) Recessed Raised Pavement Markers

Recessed raised pavement markers (RRPMs) are raised pavement markers (RPMs) installed in a groove ground into the pavement in accordance with the *Standard Plans*. RRPMs provide guidance similar to RPMs in ice chisel and steel blade snow-removal areas. RRPMs can also be used in rubber blade snow-removal areas in accordance with region policy.

Designer should be aware that the performance of RRPMs can be compromised, especially on curves, because the groove can block motorists' view of the markers. Also, the groove for RRPMs installed on flat grades can fill with water during rainstorms and cause the RRPM to be nonreflective.

RRPMs, when specified, are installed at the locations shown in the *Standard Plans* for Type 2W RPMs on multilane one-way roadways and Type 2YY RPMs on two-lane two-way roadways.

For recessed pavement marker application details, see the *Standard Plans*.

1030.05 Guideposts

(1) General

Guideposts are retroreflective devices mounted to a support post installed at the side of the roadway to indicate alignment. They are considered to be guidance devices rather than warning devices. Guideposts are used as an aid to nighttime driving primarily on horizontal curves; multilane divided highways; ramps; tangent sections where they can be justified due to snow, fog, or other reduced-visibility conditions; and at intersections without illumination.

(a) **Types of Guideposts**

The retroreflective device may be mounted on either a white or brown post. The types of guideposts and their application are as follows:

1. **Type W**

   Type W guideposts have silver-white reflective sheeting, are facing traffic, and are used on the right side of divided highways, ramps, right-hand acceleration and deceleration lanes, intersections, and ramp terminals.

2. **Type WW**

   Type WW guideposts have silver-white reflective sheeting on both sides and are used on the outside of horizontal curves on two-way undivided highways.

3. **Type Y**

   Type Y guideposts have yellow reflective sheeting, are facing traffic, and are used on the left side of ramps, left-hand acceleration and deceleration lanes, ramp terminals, intersections on divided highways, median crossovers, and horizontal curves on divided highways.

4. **Type YY**

   Type YY guideposts have yellow reflective sheeting on both sides and are used in the median on divided highways.

5. **Type G1**

   Type G1 guideposts have silver-white reflective sheeting on both sides and green reflective sheeting below the silver-white sheeting on the side facing traffic. They are used at intersections of undivided highways without illumination.

6. **Type G2**

   Type G2 guideposts have silver-white reflective sheeting on both sides and green reflective sheeting below the silver-white reflective sheeting on the back side. They are used at intersections of undivided highways without illumination.

(2) Placement and Spacing

Guideposts are placed not less than 2 feet and not more than 8 feet outside the outer edge of the shoulder. Place guideposts at a constant distance from the edge of the roadway. When an obstruction intrudes into this space, position the guideposts to smoothly transition to the inside of the obstruction. Guideposts are not required along continuously illuminated divided or undivided highways. (See Exhibit 1030-2 for guidepost placement requirements and the *Standard Plans* for information on the different types and placement of guideposts.)

1030.06 Barrier Delineation

Traffic barriers are delineated where guideposts are required, such as bridge approaches, ramps, and other locations on unilluminated roadways (see Exhibit 1030-2). At these locations, the barrier delineation has the same spacing as that of guideposts. Barrier delineation is also required when the traffic barrier is 4 feet or less from the traveled way. Use a delineator spacing of no more than 40 feet at these locations.

Beam guardrail is delineated by either mounting flexible guideposts behind the rail or by attaching shorter flexible guideposts to the wood guardrail posts.

Concrete barrier is delineated by placing retroreflective devices on the face of the barrier about 6 inches down from the top. Consider mounting these devices on the top of the barrier at locations where mud or snow accumulates against the face of the barrier.

1030.07 Object Markers

Object markers are used to mark obstructions within or adjacent to the roadway. The MUTCD details three types of object markers. The Type 3 object marker with yellow and black sloping stripes is the most commonly used object marker.

The MUTCD contains criteria for the use of object markers to mark objects in the roadway and adjacent to the roadway. These criteria are to be followed in project design.

The terminal ends of impact attenuators are delineated with modified Type 3 object markers. These are the impact attenuator markers in the *Sign Fabrication Manual*. When the impact attenuator is used in a roadside condition, the marker with diagonal stripes pointing downward toward the roadway is used. When the attenuator is used in a gore where traffic will pass on either side, the marker with chevron stripes is used.

End of Roadway markers are similar to Type 1 object markers and are detailed in the MUTCD. They are used to alert users about the end of the roadway. The MUTCD criteria are to be followed in project design.

1030.08 Wildlife Warning Reflectors

Studies show that wildlife warning reflectors are ineffective at reducing the accident potential for motor vehicle/wildlife collisions. WSDOT policy is to no longer design, place, or maintain wildlife warning reflectors.

1030.09 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Roadway Classification	Marking Type[3]				
	Centerlines[5]	Lane Lines[5]	Edge Lines	Wide Lines	Transverse Markings
Ice Chisel Snow Removal Areas					
Interstate	N.A.	Grooved Plastic[1]	Paint	Paint	Paint
Major Arterial	Paint & RRPMs[4] or Plastic[2] & RRPMs[4]	Paint	Paint	Paint	Paint
Minor Arterial	Paint	Paint	Paint	Paint	Paint
Collector	Paint	Paint	Paint	Paint	Paint
Steel Blade Snow Removal Areas					
Interstate-Urban	N.A.	Plastic[2]	Paint or Plastic[2]	Paint or Plastic[2]	Paint or Plastic[2]
Interstate-Rural	N.A.	Paint	Paint or Plastic[2]	Paint or Plastic[2]	Paint or Plastic[2]
Major Arterial	Paint & RRPMs[4] or Plastic[2] & RRPMs[4]	Paint	Paint or Plastic[2]	Paint or Plastic[2]	Paint or Plastic[2]
Minor Arterial	Paint	Paint	Paint	Paint or Plastic[2]	Paint or Plastic[2]
Collector	Paint	Paint	Paint	Paint or Plastic[2]	Paint or Plastic[2]
Rubber Blade Snow Removal Areas					
Interstate-Urban	N/A	PMMA[6] only or PMMA & RPMs	Paint or Plastic[2]	Plastic[7]	FMMA[8]
Interstate-Rural	N/A	PMMA[6] only or PMMA & RPMs	Paint	Plastic[2][7]	FMMA[8]
Major Arterial	Paint & RPMs or Plastic[2] & RPMs	[7]	Paint	Plastic[2][7]	Plastic[2][7]
Minor Arterial	Paint & RPMs	Paint & RPMs	Paint	Plastic[2]	Plastic[2]
Collector	Paint & RPMs	Paint	Paint	Plastic[2]	Plastic[2]

Notes:

[1] Grooved Plastic is a line constructed by cutting a groove into the pavement surface and spraying, extruding, or gluing pavement marking material into the groove.

[2] Plastic refers to methyl methacrylate (MMA), thermoplastic, or preformed tape.

[3] For RPM substitute applications and RPM applications supplementing paint or plastic, see the *Standard Plans*, Section M.

[4] RRPMs refer to RPMs installed in a groove ground into the pavement. RRPMs are identified as "Recessed Pavement Markers" in the *Standard Specifications* and the *Standard Plans*.

[5] Type 2 RPMs are not required with painted or plastic centerline or lane line in illuminated sections.

[6] PMMA refers to profiled methyl methacrylate.

[7] Consult region striping policy.

[8] FMMA refers to flat methyl methacrylate.

Pavement Marking Material Guide
Exhibit 1030-1

Location	Guideposts on Tangents[1][3]	Guideposts on Horizontal Curves[1][3]
Divided Highways With Continuous Illumination		
Main Line	None	None
Bridge Approaches	None	None
Intersections	None	None
Lane Reductions	*Standard Plans*, Section M	*Standard Plans*, Section M
Median Crossovers	None	None
Ramps	*Standard Plans*, Section M	*Standard Plans*, Section M
Divided Highways Without Continuous Illumination		
Main Line with RPMs	None	*Standard Plans*, Section M
Main Line without RPMs	Right Side Only (0.10 mile spacing)	*Standard Plans*, Section M
Bridge Approaches	*Standard Plans*, Section M	*Standard Plans*, Section M
Intersections	*Standard Plans*, Section M	*Standard Plans*, Section M
Lane Reductions	*Standard Plans*, Section M	*Standard Plans*, Section M
Median Crossovers	*Standard Plans*, Section M	*Standard Plans*, Section M
Ramps	*Standard Plans*, Section M	*Standard Plans*, Section M
Undivided Highways With Continuous Illumination		
Main Line	None	None
Bridge Approaches	None	None
Intersections	None	None
Lane Reductions	*Standard Plans*, Section M	*Standard Plans*, Section M
Undivided Highways Without Continuous Illumination		
Main Line	[2]	*Standard Plans*, Section M[2]
Bridge Approaches	*Standard Plans*, Section M	*Standard Plans*, Section M
Intersections with Illumination	None	None
Intersections without Illumination	*Standard Plans*, Section M	*Standard Plans*, Section M
Lane Reductions	*Standard Plans*, Section M	*Standard Plans*, Section M

Notes:

[1] For lateral placement of guideposts, see the *Standard Plans*, Section M.

[2] Installation of guideposts on tangents and on the inside of horizontal curves is allowed at locations approved by the region Traffic Engineer.

[3] Barrier delineation is required when the traffic barrier is 4 feet or less from the roadway. Use delineator spacing of 40 feet or less.

Guidepost Placement
Exhibit 1030-2

Chapter 1040 Illumination

1040.01 General
1040.02 References
1040.03 Definitions
1040.04 Design Considerations
1040.05 Required Illumination
1040.06 Additional Illumination
1040.07 Design Criteria
1040.08 Documentation

1040.01 General

Illumination is provided along highways, in parking lots, and at other facilities to enhance the visual perception of conditions or features that require additional motorist, cyclist, or pedestrian alertness during the hours of darkness.

The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) is responsible for illumination on state highways and crossroads (WAC 468-18-040 and WAC 468-18-050) with partial limited access control, modified limited access control, or full limited access control, regardless of the location. WSDOT is responsible (WAC 468-18-050) for illumination on state highways and crossroads with managed access control that are located outside the corporate limits of cities. Cities are responsible for illumination on managed access state highways within their corporate limits.

For the definitions of limited access control and managed access control, see Chapter 520. For a listing (by milepost) of the limited access or managed access status of all state highways, refer to the Access Control Tracking System Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan, under the “More Information” heading: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/AccessAndHearings. For further information, refer to the WSDOT/Association of Washington Cities agreement “City Streets as Part of State Highways”: www.wsdot.wa.gov/LocalPrograms/LAG/Construction.htm

1040.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

National Electrical Code (NEC), NFPA, Quincy, MA

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.24.020, Jurisdiction, control

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 296-24-960, Working on or near exposed energized parts

WAC 468-18-040, Design standards for rearranged county roads, frontage roads, access roads, intersections, ramps and crossings

WAC 468-18-050, Policy on the construction, improvement and maintenance of intersections of state highways and city streets

(2) Design Guidance

American National Standard Practice for Roadway Lighting, IES RP-8-00, New York, NY 2000

Directive D 22-21, “Truck Weigh Stations and Vehicle Inspection Facilities on State Highways”

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC “Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways” (MUTCD)

NFPA 502: Standard for Road Tunnels, Bridges, and Other Limited Access Highways, NFPA, Quincy, MA 2008

Roadway Lighting Design Guide, AASHTO, October 2005

Roadway Lighting Handbook, Addendum to Chapter Six: Designing the Lighting System Using Pavement Luminance, Federal Highway Administration, Addendum to Implementation Package 78-15, Washington, DC 1983

Roadway Lighting Handbook, Federal Highway Administration, Implementation Package 78-15, Washington, DC 1978 (Reprinted April 1984)

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

An Informational Guide for Roadway Lighting, AASHTO, Washington, DC 1984

City Streets as a Part of State Highways, Final Report, WSDOT, 1997

Light Trespass: Research Results and Recommendations, IES TM-11-00, New York, NY 2000

Recommended Practice for Tunnel Lighting, IESNA RP-22-05, New York, NY 2005

1040.03 Definitions

average light level The average of all light intensities within the design area.

complex ramp alignment and grade The exit advisory speed is 35 mph or lower than the posted main line speed, or there is a 6% or greater change in grade from existing main line grade to the ramp grade.

continuous load The electrical load on a circuit that lasts for a duration of three or more hours on any day.

footcandle (fc) The illumination of a surface one square foot in area on which a flux of one lumen is uniformly distributed. One footcandle equals one lumen per square foot.

lamp lumens The total light output from a lamp, measured in lumens.

lumen The unit used to measure luminous flux.

luminaire A complete lighting unit comprised of a light bulb, wiring, and a housing unit.

luminance The quotient of the luminous flux at an element of the surface surrounding the point and propagated in directions defined by an elementary cone containing the given direction, by the product of the solid angle of the cone and area of the orthogonal projection of the element of the surface on a plane perpendicular to the given direction. The luminous flux may be leaving, passing through, and/or arriving at the surface.

luminous flux The time rate of the flow of light.

maximum uniformity ratio The average light level within the design area divided by the minimum light level within the design area (see Exhibit 1040-25).

maximum veiling luminance ratio The maximum veiling luminance divided by the average luminance over a given design area for an observer traveling parallel to the roadway centerline (see Exhibit 1040-25).

minimum average light level The average of all light intensities within the design area, measured just prior to relamping the system (see Exhibit 1040-25, Note 1).

minimum light level The minimum light intensity of illumination at any single point within the design area measured just prior to relamping the system (see Exhibit 1040-25, Note 1).

mounting height – luminaire The vertical distance between the surface of the design area and the center of the light source of the luminaire. Note: This is not to be confused with pole height (H1), but is the actual distance that the luminaire is located above the roadway edge line.

multimodal connection The point where multiple types of transportation activities occur; for example, where transit buses and van pools drop off or pick up passengers (including passengers with bicycles).

nighttime The period of time from one-half hour after sunset to one-half hour before sunrise and any other time when persons or objects may not be clearly discernable at a distance of 500 feet (RCW 46.04.200).

pedestrian crossing For the purpose of lighting design, the number of pedestrian movements that cross through the design area.

pole height (H1) The vertical distance from the light source to the pole base. This distance is specified in contracts and used by the pole manufacturers to fabricate the light standard.

roadway luminance The light projected from a luminaire that travels toward a given area, represented by a point on the pavement surface, and then back toward the observer, opposite to the direction of travel. The units of roadway luminance are footcandles.

security lighting A minimal amount of lighting used to illuminate areas for public safety or theft reduction. Security lighting for walkways is the lighting of areas where shadows and horizontal and vertical geometry obstruct a pedestrian's view.

SIgnal Maintenance Management System (SIMMS) A database used for traffic signals, illumination, and Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS). SIMMS is used to establish an inventory base, enter work reports, print timesheets, and store maintenance records for electrical/electronics systems within WSDOT right of way.

slip base A mechanical base designed to allow the light standard to break away from the fixed foundation when hit by a vehicle traveling at the design speed.

spacing The distance in feet measured on centerline between adjacent luminaires.

transit flyer stop A multimodal connection located within the boundaries of a limited access facility.

transit stop A connection on the highway where the transit bus stops to pick up or drop off passengers.

uniformity ratio The ratio of the minimum average light level on the design area to the minimum light level of the same area (see Exhibit 1040-25).

veiling luminance The stray light produced within the eye by light sources produces a veiling luminance that is superimposed on the retinal image of the objects being observed. This stray light alters the apparent brightness of an object within the visual field and the background against which it is viewed, thereby impairing the ability of the driver to perform visual tasks. Conceptually, veiling luminance is the light that travels directly from the luminaire to the observer’s eye.

1040.04 Design Considerations

An illumination system is built from many separate components. The simplest illumination system contains the following:

- A power feed from the local utility company.
- An electrical service cabinet containing a photocell and circuit breaker for each illumination circuit.
- Runs of conduit with associated junction boxes leading to each luminaire.
- Conductors routed from the service cabinet breaker to each luminaire.
- A concrete light standard foundation.
- A light standard with a slip base or a fixed base.
- A luminaire (light) over or near the roadway edge line.

There are design considerations that need to be addressed when performing even the most minimal work on an existing illumination system. An existing electrical system is acceptable for use under the design requirements and National Electric Code (NEC) rules that were in effect at the time of installation. When modifying an existing electrical system, the designer is responsible for bringing the whole system up to current NEC design standards. Retrofitting an existing fixed base light standard with a slip base feature requires the installation of quick disconnect fittings and fuses in the circuit, at the luminaire. The existing conductor configuration for a fixed base luminaire is not acceptable for use on a breakaway (slip base) installation. Existing conductors and components that no longer meet current NEC requirements are to be replaced and the whole circuit is to be designed to current standards. This may mean replacing the whole circuit back to the nearest overcurrent protection device (circuit breaker). Design considerations to be addressed when modifying an existing illumination system including:

- Whether the existing circuit is in compliance with current NEC standards (deficient electrical component).
- Whether existing luminaire system components, such as conductors, conduit, junction boxes, foundation, and pole comply with current standards.
- Whether conductors meet NEC requirements for temperature rating (deficient electrical component).
- Conductor material: aluminum conductors or copper conductors (deficient electrical component).
- The condition and adequacy of the existing conduit running between the luminaire and the nearest junction box (deficient electrical component).
- The condition of the junction box next to the luminaire (deficient electrical component).
- The suitability of the existing foundation to meet current design requirements.
- The suitability of the location to meet current design standards for illumination.
- The location and bolt pattern of the existing foundation to meet current design standards.
- The design life remaining for the existing light standard (deficient electrical component).
- The condition of the existing light standard (deficient electrical component).
- Maintenance personnel assessment of the electrical safety of the installation.

Involve appropriate Headquarters (HQ) and region Traffic Office design personnel early in the process. Ensure potential system deficiencies are reflected in the estimate of work.

Another consideration is the need to maintain illumination during construction. Site preparation, widening, drainage, guardrail installation, or other work can easily impact existing conduit runs or luminaire locations. Also, changed conditions such as merging, weaving, or unusual alignment due to traffic control often require additional temporary illumination. Note: The same lighting requirements apply whether a condition is temporary or permanent.

1040.05 Required Illumination

The design matrices identify the following design levels for illumination on all Preservation and Improvement projects (see Chapter 1100):

- **Basic Design Level:** At the basic design level for minor safety or preservation work, provide slip base features on existing light standards (when in the Design Clear Zone or recovery area) and bring electrical components to current standards. Consider other minor safety work as necessary. Providing additional lighting or relocating light standards on Preservation projects may be considered spot safety enhancements. When the Illumination column has an EU (evaluate upgrade to full design level), consider providing illumination if it would be beneficial to the specific project, and document accordingly.

  For Minor Operational Enhancement projects using the design matrices in Chapter 1110, illumination is not required.

- **Evaluate Upgrade:** Review the age of the equipment as listed in SIMMS and consider replacing components that have reached their design life. Where items will not be upgraded, document why it will not be done. Locate components such that they can be safely accessed from the right of way. Replace poles, foundations, heads, and so on, that have reached their design life. Slip base features should be in accordance with current design standards. Evaluate uniformity in the design areas (see 1040.07(2)). Locations that are illuminated per this section should be brought to full standards or documented regarding why they are not (for example, deferred to another project). Consider additional illumination in accordance with 1040.06, if warranted, or design additional illumination if it is called for in the Project Definition.

  When it is necessary to relocate existing light standard foundations, evaluate the entire conduit run serving those light standards and replace deficient components to current (NEC) standards.
- **Full Standards:** For full design level, the illumination specified in this chapter is required when constructing a new system and/or bringing the entire existing system to full standards (such as slip base features, replacement of standard duty junction boxes that are located in paved areas with heavy-duty junction boxes, grounding, conduit, light levels, and uniformity). On existing systems, this includes all components not otherwise affected by the project. Review all conduit runs, not just the one affected by relocating light standards on that run.

Exhibits 1040-1 through 1040-24 show examples of illumination for roadway, transit flyer stops, parking lots, truck weigh stations, tunnels, bridges, work zones, and detour applications. Illumination is required in Exhibits 1040-1 through 1040-10 and 1040-12 through 1040-23, which are further discussed in the remainder of this section.

A minimum of two light standards of standard pole height are required at all design areas, with the exception of ramp terminals and entrance/exit points at minor parking lots.

(1) Freeway Off-Ramps and On-Ramps

Provide the necessary illumination for the design area of all freeway off-ramp gore areas and on-ramp acceleration tapers (see 1040.07(2) and Exhibits 1040-1a, 1b, and 1c).

(2) Freeway Ramp Terminals

Provide the necessary illumination for the design area (see Exhibit 1040-2). Additional illumination is required if the intersection has left-turn channelization or a traffic signal.

(3) Freeway On-Ramps With Ramp Meter Signals

Provide the necessary number of light standards to illuminate freeway on-ramps with ramp meters, from the beginning of the on-ramp to the ramp meter stop bar. When there is an HOV bypass lane or a two-lane merge beyond the ramp meter, then provide illumination for the entire ramp from the beginning of the on-ramp to the ramp merge point with the main line (see Exhibit 1040-3).

(4) Freeway-to-Freeway Ramp Connections

Provide the necessary number of light standards to illuminate freeway-to-freeway ramps that connect full limited access freeway systems from the exit ramp gore area to the main line merge area (see Exhibit 1040-4).

(5) HOT (High-Occupancy Toll) Lane Enter/Exit Zones

Provide the necessary number of luminaires to illuminate the design area of the enter/exit zones of the HOT lane (see Exhibit 1040-5).

(6) Lane Reduction

Provide the necessary number of light standards to illuminate the design area of all highway lane reduction areas within the urban boundary (see Exhibit 1040-6). This requirement does not apply to:

- The end of slow-moving vehicle turnouts.
- The end of the area where driving on shoulders is allowed.

(7) Add Lane Channelization

Provide the necessary number of light standards to illuminate the design area of highway add lanes on high-volume roadways within the urban boundary (see Exhibit 1040-7). This requirement does not apply to:

- The beginning of an add lane on a low-volume roadway in a rural area beyond the urban boundary.
- The beginning of a slow-moving vehicle turnout.
- The beginning of an area where driving on shoulders is allowed.

(8) Intersections With Left-Turn Lane Channelization

Illumination of the intersection area and the left-turn storage area is required for intersections with painted or other low-profile pavement markings such as raised pavement markings. When the channelization is delineated with curbs, raised medians, or islands, illuminate the raised channelization from the beginning of the left-turn approach taper (see Exhibits 1040-8a and 8b). Illumination of the secondary road intersecting the state highway can be beneficial to the motoring public. Funding and design, however, are the local agency's responsibility. Contact that agency to see whether it is interested in participating.

(9) Intersection With Drop Lane/Right-Turn Lane Channelization

Illumination of the intersection area and the right-turn storage area is required for intersections with painted or other low-profile pavement markings such as raised pavement markings. Illuminate raised channelization (such as curbs, raised medians, and islands) from the beginning of the right-turn taper. For concurrent left-turn and right-turn channelization, where the left-turn lane and the left-turn taper are longer than the right-turn lane and taper, illuminate the roadway as described in 1040.05(8), and include the right-turn lane area in the design area (see Exhibit 1040-9). Illumination of the secondary road intersecting the state highway can be beneficial to the motoring public. Funding and design, however, are the local agency's responsibility. Contact that agency to see whether it is interested in participating.

(10) Intersections With Traffic Signals

Illuminate all intersections with traffic signals on state highways (see Exhibit 1040-10). Illumination of the crossroad is beneficial and the participation of the local agency is desirable. In cities with a population under 25,000, the state may assume responsibility for illumination installed on signal standards.

(11) Roundabouts

Provide the necessary number of light standards to illuminate the design area of roundabouts (see Chapter 1320 and Exhibit 1040-12).

(12) Railroad Crossings With Gates or Signals

Railroad crossings with automated gates or signals on state highways are illuminated if there is nighttime train traffic. Within the corporate limits of a city, and outside limited access control, illumination is the responsibility of the city. Install luminaires beyond the railroad crossing, on the side of the roadway opposite the approaching traffic, to backlight the train (see Exhibit 1040-13).

(13) Midblock Pedestrian Crossings

Illuminate the entire midblock pedestrian crossing, including the crosswalks, the refuge area in the roadway, and the sidewalks or shoulders adjacent to the crosswalk. When a raised median pedestrian refuge design is used, illuminate the raised channelization (see Exhibit 1040-14).

(14) Transit Flyer Stops

Illuminate the pedestrian-loading areas of transit flyer stops located within the limited access boundaries (see Exhibit 1040-15).

(15) Major Parking Lots

All parking lots with usage exceeding 50 vehicles during the nighttime peak hour are considered major parking lots. Provide an illumination design that will produce the light levels shown in Exhibit 1040-25. (See Exhibit 1040-16 for the parking design area and bus loading zone design area.) During periods of low usage at night, security lighting is required only in the parking area and bus loading zone. Provide an electrical circuitry design that allows the illumination system to be reduced to approximately 25% of the required light level.

(16) Minor Parking Lots

Minor parking lots have a nighttime peak hour usage of 50 or fewer vehicles. Provide security-level lighting for those lots owned and maintained by the state. Security lighting for a minor parking lot consists of lighting the entrance and exit to the lot (see Exhibit 1040-17).

(17) Truck Weigh Sites

Provide illumination of the roadway diverge and merge sections, scale platforms, parking areas, and inspection areas of weigh sites (see Exhibit 1040-18).

(18) Safety Rest Areas

Provide illumination within rest areas at the roadway diverge and merge sections, the walkways between parking areas and rest room buildings, and the parking areas the same as for a major parking lot (see Exhibit 1040-19).

(19) Chain-Up/Chain-Off Parking Areas

Provide the necessary number of luminaires to illuminate the design area of the chain-up/chain-off parking area (see Exhibit 1040-20).

(20) Tunnels

Long tunnels have a portal-to-portal length greater than the stopping sight distance. Provide both nighttime and daytime illumination for long tunnels. Consider illumination for short tunnels if the horizontal-to-vertical ratio is ≥ 10:1 (see Chapter 1260 and Exhibit 1040-21). Provide daytime security lighting in pedestrian tunnels.

(21) Bridge Inspection Lighting

Provide the necessary number of light fixtures to illuminate the interior inspection areas of floating bridges and steel box girder bridges (see Exhibit 1040-22). Coordinate bridge illumination requirements with the HQ Bridge and Structures Office.

(22) Same Direction Traffic Split Around an Obstruction

Provide the necessary number of light standards to illuminate the design area where traffic is split around an obstruction. This requirement applies to permanent and temporary same-direction split channelization. For temporary work zones, illuminate the obstruction for the duration of the traffic split (see Exhibit 1040-23).

(23) Overhead Sign Illumination

Provide sign lighting on overhead signs as discussed in Chapter 1020. Sign illumination is provided with sign lighting fixtures mounted directly below the sign. The light source of the fixture is an 85 watt induction lamp. Provide one sign with a width of 16 feet or less. For wider signs, provide two or more sign lights with a spacing not exceeding 16 feet. If two or more closely spaced signs are in the same vertical plane on the structure, consider the signs as one unit and use a uniform light fixture spacing for the entire width. Voltage drops can be significant when the electrical service is not nearby. In areas where an electrical power source is more than ½ mile away, utility company installation costs can be prohibitive. With justification, overhead sign illumination is not required where the power source is more than ½ mile away.

1040.06 Additional Illumination

At certain locations, additional illumination is desirable to provide better definition of nighttime driving conditions or to provide consistency with local agency goals and enhancement projects. For Improvement projects on state highways, additional illumination is considered under certain circumstances, which are listed in this section. Justify the additional illumination in the Design Documentation Package (DDP).

(1) Conditions for Additional Illumination

Following are some conditions used in making the decision to provide additional illumination:

(a) **Diminished Level of Service**

Diminished level of service is a mobility condition where the nighttime peak hour level of service is D or lower. To determine the level of service, use traffic volume counts taken during the evening peak hour. Peaking characteristics in urban areas are related to the time of day. Traffic counts taken in the summer between 4:30 p.m. and 7:30 a.m. may be used as nighttime volumes if adjustment factors for differences in seasonal traffic volumes are applied for November, December, and January.

(b) **Nighttime Collision Frequency**

This is when the number of nighttime collisions equals or exceeds the number of daytime collisions. An engineering study indicating that illumination will result in a reduction in nighttime collisions is required as justification. Consider the seasonal variations in lighting conditions when reviewing reported collisions. Collision reporting forms, using a specific time period to distinguish between “day” and “night,” might not indicate the actual lighting conditions at the time of a collision. Consider the time of year when determining whether a collision occurred at nighttime. A collision occurring at 5:00 p.m. in July would be a daytime collision, but a collision occurring at the same time in December would be during the hours of darkness.

(c) **Nighttime Pedestrian Accident Locations (PALs)**

The mitigation of nighttime PALs requires different lighting strategies than vehicular accident locations. Provide light levels to emphasize crosswalks and adjacent sidewalks. Multilane highways with two-way left-turn lanes, in areas transitioning from rural land use to urban land use, or areas experiencing commercial growth or commercial redevelopment, are typically high-speed facilities with numerous road approaches and driveways. These approaches allow numerous vehicle entry and exit points and provide few crossing opportunities for pedestrians; consider additional illumination.

(2) Highways

Proposals to provide full (continuous) illumination require the approval of the State Traffic Engineer. Regions may choose to develop (regional or corridor-specific) system plans for providing full (continuous) illumination. The State Traffic Engineer’s approval of a system plan will eliminate the need for a project-specific approval from the State Traffic Engineer.

The decision whether to provide full (continuous) illumination is to be made during the scoping stage and communicated to the designers as soon as possible.

(a) On the main line of full limited access highways, consider full (continuous) illumination if a diminished level of service exists and any two of the following conditions are satisfied:

- There are three or more successive interchanges with an average spacing of 1½ miles or less, measured from the center of each interchange or a common point such as a major crossroad.
- The segment is in an urban area.
- A nighttime collision frequency condition exists.
- A benefit/cost analysis between the required and full (continuous) illumination indicates a value-added condition with the addition of continuous illumination .

(b) On the main line of highways without full limited access control, consider full (continuous) illumination if the segment of highway is in a commercial area and either a diminished level of service exists or a nighttime collision frequency exists and an engineering study indicates that nighttime driving conditions will be improved.

(3) Ramps

At ramps, consider additional illumination when a diminished level of service exists for the ramps and any of the following conditions is present:

- The ramp alignment and grade are complex.
- There are routine queues of five or more vehicles per lane at the ramp terminal during the nighttime peak hour due to traffic control features.
- A nighttime collision frequency condition exists.
- The criteria for continuous main line illumination have been satisfied.

(4) Highway-to-Highway Ramp Connections

Provide the necessary number of light standards to illuminate highway-to-highway ramps that connect partial or modified limited access freeway systems or managed access highway systems, from the exit ramp gore area to the main line merge area. For an example of the ramp connection, see Exhibit 1040-4.

(5) Crossroads

At crossroads, consider additional illumination when a diminished level of service exists and a nighttime collision frequency exists. Also, consider additional illumination if the crossroad is in a short tunnel, an underpass, or a lid.

(6) Intersections Without Turn-Lane Channelization

Consider illumination of intersections without turn-lane channelization if a nighttime collision frequency requirement is satisfied or the intersection meets warrants for left-turn channelization (see Exhibit 1040-12).

(7) Short Tunnels, Underpasses, or Lids

Consider illumination of short tunnels, underpasses, or lids if portal conditions result in brightness that is less than the measured daytime brightness of the approach roadway divided by 15 and the length to vertical clearance ratio is 10:1 or greater.

(8) Work Zones and Detours

Consider temporary illumination of the highway through work zones and detours when changes to the highway alignment or grade remain in place during nighttime hours and when the following conditions may be present (see Exhibit 1040-24):

- Nonstandard roadway features such as narrow lanes, narrow shoulders, or substandard shy distance to barriers or structures.
- The temporary alignment includes abrupt changes in highway direction or lane shifts with substandard lane shift tapers.
- Other unusual highway features such as abrupt lane edge drop-offs, sudden changes in pavement conditions, or temporary excavation or trenching covers.
- There is an anticipation of heavy construction truck traffic, possibly requiring flaggers, entering and exiting the highway during nighttime hours.

For further information on work zones, see Chapter 1010.

(9) Transit Stops

The responsibility for lighting at transit stops is shared with the transit agency. Consider illuminating transit stops with shelters as they usually indicate greater passenger usage. Negotiation with the transit agencies is required for the funding and maintenance of this illumination. Negotiating a memorandum of understanding (MOU) with each transit agency is preferred over spot negotiations. If the transit agency is unable or unwilling to participate in the funding and maintenance of the illumination, consider a single light standard positioned to illuminate both the transit pullout area and the loading area.

(10) Bridges

Justification for illuminating the roadway/sidewalk portion of bridges is the same as that for highways on either end of the bridge with or without full limited access control, as applicable. Justification for illuminating the architectural features of a bridge structure requires the approval of the State Traffic Engineer. For justification for illuminating pedestrian walkways or bicycle trails under a bridge, see 1040.06(12).

(11) Railroad Crossing Without Gates or Signals

Consider the illumination of railroad crossings without gates or signals when:

- The collision history indicates that motorists experience difficulty in seeing trains or control devices.
- There are a substantial number of rail operations conducted during nighttime hours.
- The crossing is blocked for long periods due to low train speeds.
- The crossing is blocked for long periods during the nighttime.

For further information, see the MUTCD.

(12) Walkways and Bicycle Trails

Consider illumination of a pedestrian walkway if the walkway is a connection between two highway facilities. This could be between parking areas and rest room buildings at rest areas; between drop-off/pick-up points and bus loading areas at flyer stops; or between parking areas and bus loading areas or ferry loading zones. Consider illuminating existing walkways and bicycle trails if security problems have been reported. Also, consider illumination if security problems are anticipated. Under these conditions, the walkways and bicycle trails are illuminated to the level shown in Exhibit 1040-25.

1040.07 Design Criteria

(1) Light Levels

Light levels vary with the functional classification of the highway, the development of the adjacent area, and the level of nighttime activity. Light level requirements for highways and other facilities are shown in Exhibit 1040-25. These levels are the minimum average light levels required for a design area at the end of rated lamp life for applications requiring a spacing calculation. Light level requirements *are not* applicable for single light standards or security lighting installations where:

- The light level is reduced to approximately 25% of the required light level in parking lots and parking lot loading areas during periods of low usage at night.
- Walkway or path illumination is installed only at areas where shadows and horizontal and vertical geometry obstruct a pedestrian's view.

Light level requirements *are* applicable when:

- The complete walkway or path is to be illuminated for public safety.

For design-level classifications of highways, see Chapters 1100, 1120, 1130, and 1140.

(a) **Activity Areas**

The types of activity areas (shown below) are related to the number of pedestrian crossings through the design area. These crossings need not occur within a single crosswalk and can be at several locations along the roadway in an area with pedestrian generators. Land use and activity classifications are as follows:

1. **High Activity**

   Areas with over 100 pedestrian crossings during nighttime peak hour pedestrian usage. Examples include downtown retail areas; near outdoor stage theaters, concert halls, stadiums, and transit terminals; and parking areas adjacent to these facilities.

2. **Medium Activity**

   Areas with pedestrian crossings that number between 11 and 100 during nighttime peak hour pedestrian usage. Examples include downtown office areas; blocks with libraries, movie theaters, apartments, neighborhood shopping, industrial buildings, and older city areas; and streets with transit lines.

3. **Low Activity**

   Areas with pedestrian crossings that number less than 11 during the nighttime peak hour pedestrian usage. Examples include suburban single-family areas, low-density residential developments, and rural or semirural areas.

(2) Design Areas

The design area is that portion of the roadway, parking lot, or other facility subject to the minimum light level, minimum average light level, uniformity ratio, and maximum veiling luminance ratio design requirements. This encompasses the area between the edges of the traveled way along the roadway; the outer edges of the stopping points at intersections; and, when present, a bike lane adjacent to the traveled way. When the roadway has adjacent sidewalks, the design area includes these features; however, sidewalks adjacent to the traveled way are exempt from maximum veiling luminance ratio requirements. The access areas used for interior inspection of a floating bridge or steel box girder bridge are exempt from lighting level and lighting ratio design requirements.

(a) **Design Area Requirements**

Design area requirements for various applications are shown in Exhibits 1040-1 through 1040-24 and are described in the following:

1. **Single-Lane Off-Ramp**

   Two main line through lanes and the ramp lane, including gore area, from the gore point (beginning of wide line) to a point 200 feet (minimum) downstream of the gore point. A 100-foot longitudinal tolerance either way from the gore point is allowed.

2. **Two-Lane Off-Ramp**

   Two main line through lanes and both ramp lanes, including gore area, from a point 200 feet upstream of the gore point (beginning of wide line) to a point 200 feet downstream of the gore point. A 100-foot longitudinal tolerance either way from the gore point is allowed.

3. **Single-Lane On-Ramp**

   Two main line through lanes and the ramp lane, from a point where the ramp lane is 10 feet wide to a point 200 feet downstream. A 100-foot longitudinal tolerance either way is allowed; this includes auxiliary lane on-connections and lane reductions.

4. **Two-Lane On-Ramp**

   Two main line through lanes and the ramp lanes from a point where the ramp width is 22 feet wide to a point 200 feet upstream and 200 feet downstream. A 100-foot longitudinal tolerance either way is allowed.

5. **Intersections Channelized With Pavement Markings**

   The design area has two components: the intersection area and the approach areas. The intersection area is the area between the stopping points on both the main road and the minor road, including marked or unmarked crosswalks. The approach areas are the areas on the main roadway between the stopping point and where the left-turn lane is full width.

6. **Intersections With Raised Channelization**

   The design area has two components: the intersection area and the approach areas. The intersection area is the area between the stopping points on both the main road and the minor road, including marked or unmarked crosswalks. The approach areas are the areas on the main roadway between the stopping point and where the left-turn taper begins.

7. **Unchannelized Intersection**

   The area between the stopping points on both the main road and the minor road, including marked or unmarked crosswalks.

8. **Railroad Crossing**

   The roadway width from a point 50 feet on either side of the track (the approach side only for one-way roadways).

9. **Transit Loading Area**

   The lane width and length designated for loading.

10. **Major Parking Lot**

    The entire area designated for parking, including internal access lanes.

11. **Scale Platform at Weigh Site**

    The approach width from the beginning of the scale platform to the end of the platform.

12. **Inspection Area at Weigh Site**

    The area dedicated to inspection as agreed upon with the Washington State Patrol.

13. **Bridge Inspection Lighting System**

    Fixtures are to be ceiling mounted with a maximum spacing of 25 feet. Illumination is to consists of a 100 watt incandescent (or fluorescent equivalent) fixture. Each fixture is to be designed with a 20 amp rated ground fault circuit interrupt (GFCI) receptacle. A light switch is needed at each entrance to any common inspection area. For inspection areas with two or more entrances, three-way or four-way switches are required.

(3) Daytime Light Levels for Tunnels and Underpasses

It is important to provide sufficient illumination inside a tunnel. When driving into and through a tunnel during the day, a driver’s eyes have to adjust from a high light level (daylight) to a lower lighting level inside the tunnel. Motorists require sufficient time for their eyes to adapt to the lower light level of the tunnel itself. When sufficient lighting is not provided in the threshold, transition, or interior zones of a tunnel, a motorist’s eyes may not have enough time to adapt and may experience a “black hole” or “blackout” effect. This “black hole” effect may cause a motorist to slow down, reducing the efficiency of the roadway. When leaving the tunnel, the driver’s eyes have to adjust from a low lighting level back to daytime conditions. The full design considerations for tunnel lighting are covered in 1040.02 in the Supporting Information section. All designs for illuminating tunnels are to be reviewed and approved by the State Traffic Engineer.

- Long tunnels are divided into zones for the determination of daytime light levels. Each zone is equal in length to the pavement stopping sight distance. The entrance zone beginning point is a point outside the portal where the motorist’s view is confined to the predominance of the darkened tunnel structure.
- The daytime entrance zone light level is dependent upon the brightness of the features within the motorists’ view on the portal approach. The brightness level is defined as the average brightness measured over a 20° cone at a point 500 feet in advance of the portal. The entrance zone light level produced within the tunnel must be sufficient to provide a brightness level of approximately 5% of the measured portal brightness, after adjustment for the reflectivity of the roadway, walls, and ceiling. Design successive zones for a daytime light level of 5% of the previous zone light level to a minimum value of five footcandles. Requirements for nighttime light levels for long tunnels on continuously illuminated roadways are the same as the light level required on a roadway outside the tunnel. Provide illumination of fire protection equipment, alarm pull boxes, phones, and emergency exits in long tunnels. (See NFPA 502 for additional information.)
- A short tunnel or underpass has a length-to-vertical clearance ratio of 10:1 or less. Short tunnels and underpasses in rural areas or with low pedestrian usage normally do not have daytime illumination. Short tunnels and underpasses in urban areas with high pedestrian usage may require daytime and nighttime illumination. Consultation with the affected local agency is recommended. Short tunnels and underpasses with length-to-vertical clearance ratios greater than 10:1 are treated the same as an entrance zone on a long tunnel to establish daytime light levels. Short tunnels and underpasses where the exit portal is not visible from the entrance portal due to curvature of the roadway are to be considered long tunnels. Nighttime light level requirements for short tunnels on continuously illuminated roadways are the same as the light level required on the roadway outside the tunnel.

(4) Light Standards

(a) **Light Standards on State Highway Facilities**

Light standards are the most common supports used to provide illumination for highway facilities. The 40-foot and 50-foot light standards with slip bases and Type 1 mast arms are predominantly used on state highways. The angular Type 2 mast arms are allowed only to match existing systems. Use Type 1 mast arms on all new systems. Cities and counties may elect to use different mounting heights to address factors unique to their environments. On state highways, alternative light standards may be considered if requested by the city or county, provided they agree to pay any additional costs associated with this change.

The typical location for a light standard is on the right shoulder. When considering designs for light standards mounted on concrete barrier in the median, consider the total life cycle cost of the system, including the user costs resulting from lane closures required for relamping and repair operations. Light standards located in the vicinity of overhead power lines require a minimum 10-foot circumferential clearance from the power line (including the neutral conductor) to any portion of the light standard or luminaire. Depending on the line voltage, a distance greater than 10 feet may be required (WAC 296-24-960). Consult the HQ Bridge and Structures Office when mounting light standards on structures such as retaining walls and bridge railings.

It is preferable to locate a light standard as far from the traveled way as possible to reduce the potential for impacts from errant vehicles. The preferred position for the luminaire is directly over the edge line. However, some flexibility is acceptable with the luminaire position to allow for placement of the light standard. On Type III signal standards, luminaires may be placed more than 4 feet from the edge line.

Standard mast arm lengths are available in 2-foot increments between 6 and 16 feet. The preferred design for a single-arm light standard is a 16-foot mast arm installed on a 40-foot or 50-foot standard. The maximum allowable mast arm length for a single-arm light standard is 16 feet. The preferred design for a double mast arm light standard has mast arms between 6 feet and 12 feet in length, installed on a 40-foot or 50-foot standard. The maximum allowable mast arm length for a double luminaire light standard is 12 feet.

When light standards are located within the Design Clear Zone, breakaway and slip base features are used to reduce the severity of an impact. (See Chapter 1600 for additional guidance on clear zone issues.)

In curb and sidewalk sections, locate the light standard behind the sidewalk. Slip bases on light standards are a safety requirement for roadways where the posted speed is 35 mph or higher. They are not always desirable at other locations. Fixed bases are installed in the following locations:

- Parking lots.
- Medians where the light standard is mounted on median barrier.
- Behind traffic barrier, beyond the barrier's deflection design value (see Chapter 1610).
- Along pedestrian walkways, bike paths, and shared-use paths.

(b) **Light Standard Heights**

Standard pole heights (20-foot, 30-foot, 40-foot, or 50-foot) are readily available from local distributors and manufacturers. Light standards can also be supplied with other lengths. However, WSDOT Maintenance offices cannot stock poles with nonstandard lengths for use as replacements in the event of a knockdown. Nonstandard lengths in 5-foot increments (25-foot, 35-foot, or 45-foot) will require a longer delivery time. Other nonstandard lengths (for example, 27-foot, 33-foot, 43-foot, or 47-foot) will not only require a longer delivery time, they will also be more expensive.

In almost all cases, use standard pole heights of 40 feet and 50 feet for roadway illumination. Structure-mounted light standards may need to be shorter than the standard 40-foot or 50-foot grade-mounted pole. It is acceptable to use 20-foot or 30-foot light standards on bridges, retaining walls, or other structures to compensate for top-of-structure elevation above the roadway surface. Use of these standard pole heights will result in variable mounting heights for the luminaires. Luminaire mounting height is defined as the actual distance from the roadway surface directly under the luminaire to the luminaire itself. Use the actual mounting height at each location when calculating light standard spacing. High mast light supports may be considered for complex interchanges where continuous lighting is justified. High mast lighting may be considered for temporary illumination areas during construction. Initial construction costs, long-term maintenance, clear zone mitigation, spillover light onto adjacent properties, and negative visual impacts are important factors when considering high mast illumination. Shorter light standards of 30 feet or less may be used for minor parking lots, trails, pedestrian walkways, and locations with restricted vertical clearance.

(c) **Standard Luminaire**

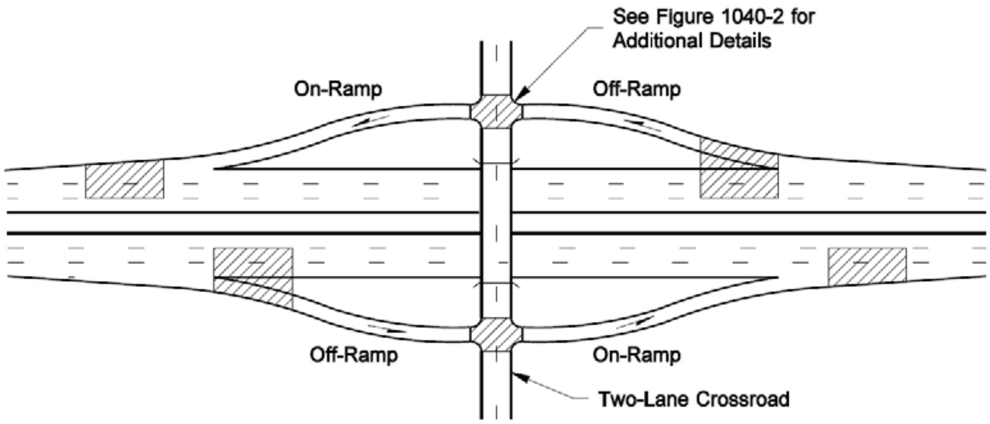
The cobra head-style, high-pressure sodium vapor luminaire with Type III, medium cut-off light distribution is the normal light source used for state highway lighting. A Type III distribution projects an oval pattern of light on the roadway, and a Type V distribution projects a circular pattern. Post top-mounted luminaires and other decorative light fixtures with Type V patterns are more effective for area lighting in parking lots and other locations where more symmetrical light distribution patterns are used.

(d) **Electrical Design**

For an example of circuit layout, conductor sizing, conduit sizing, overcurrent protection device sizing, and other electrical design calculations, see the *Traffic Manual*, Chapter 4.

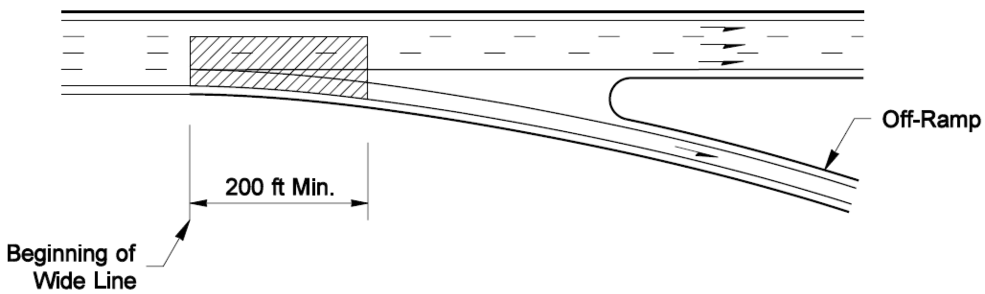
1040.08 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



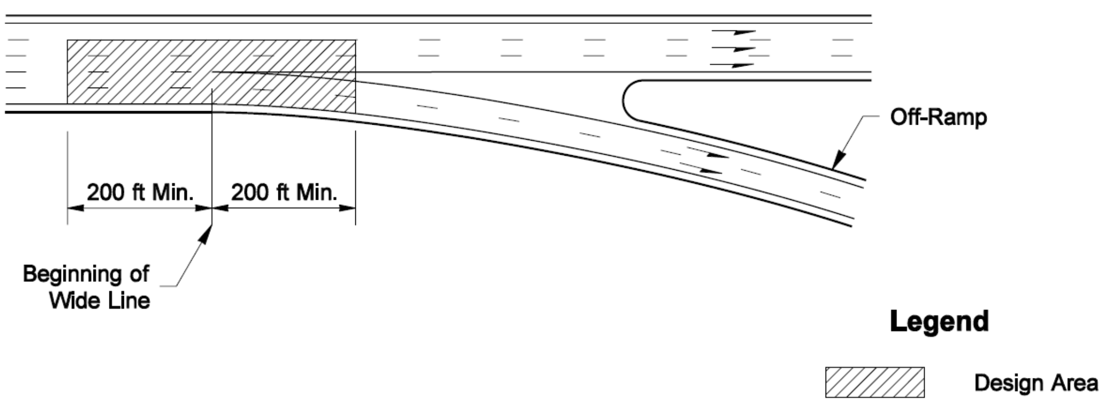
Required Illumination for a Typical Diamond Interchange

Shown for single-lane ramp connection and a two-lane crossroad without channelization.



Single-Lane Off-Connection

The design area may be shifted up to 100 ft from the beginning of the wide line; a minimum of two light standards of standard pole height required for design area.

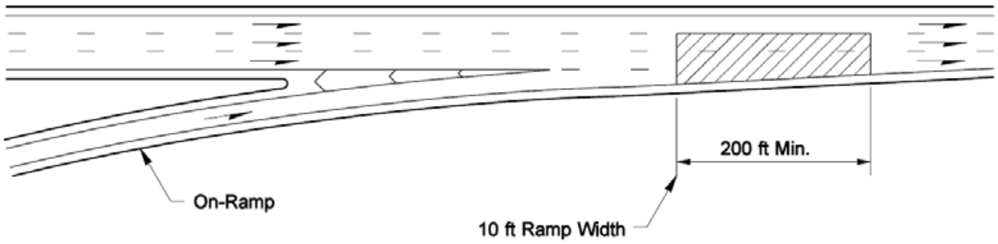


Two-Lane Off-Connection

The design area may be shifted up to 100 ft from the beginning of the wide line; a minimum of three light standards of standard pole height required for design area.

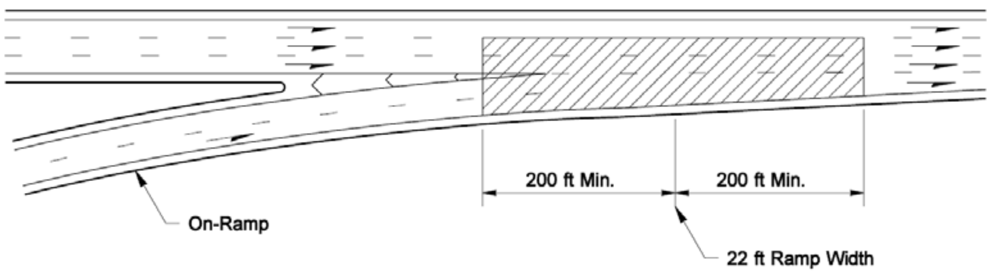
Freeway Lighting Applications

Exhibit 1040-1a



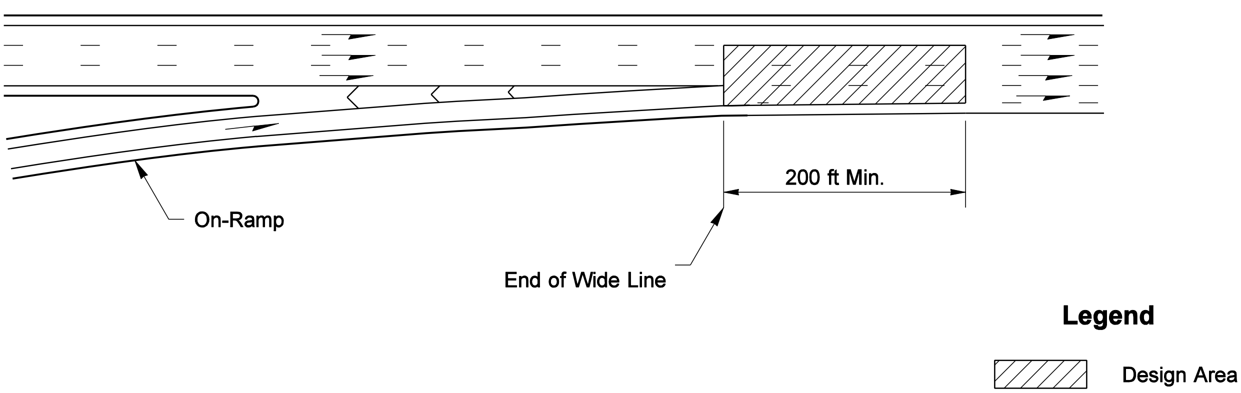
Single-Lane On-Connection

The design area may be shifted up to 100 ft from the 10-ft-wide ramp point; a minimum of two light standards of standard pole height required for design area.



Two-Lane On-Connection

The design area may be shifted up to 100 ft from the 22-ft-wide ramp point; a minimum of three light standards of standard pole height required for design area.

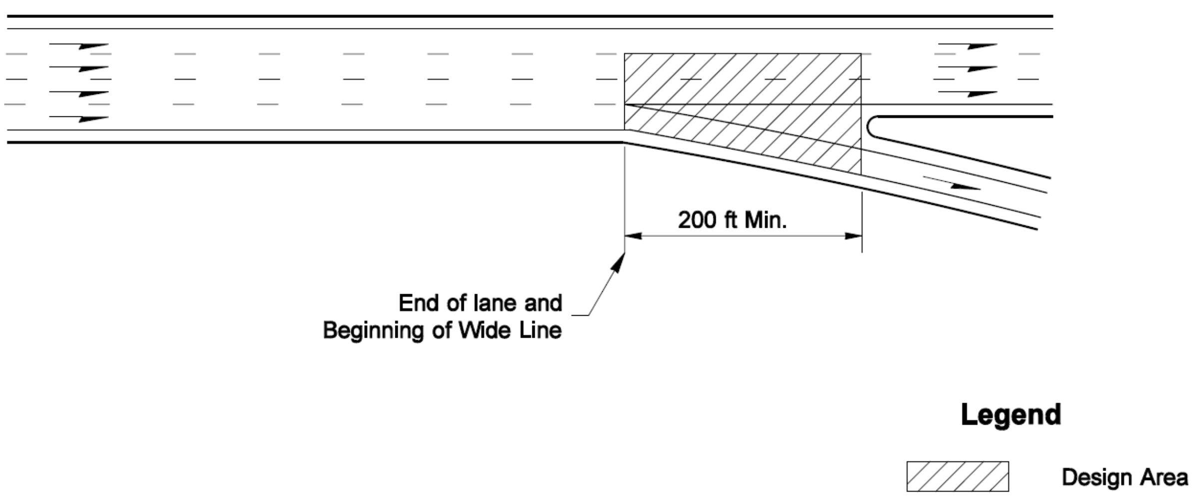


Auxiliary-Lane at On-Connection

The design area may be shifted up to 100 ft from the 10-ft-wide ramp point; a minimum of two light standards of standard pole height required for design area.

Freeway Lighting Applications

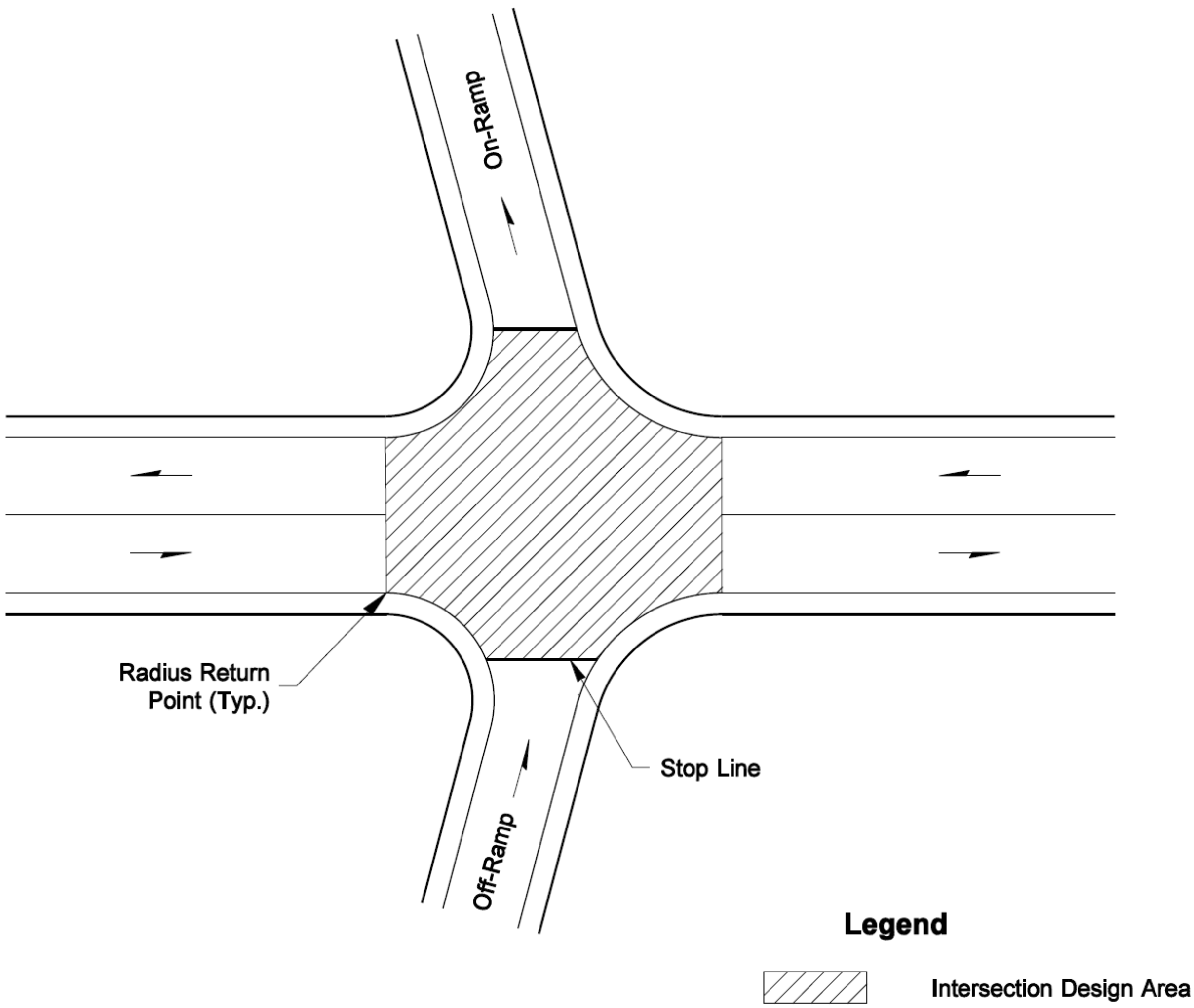
Exhibit 1040-1b



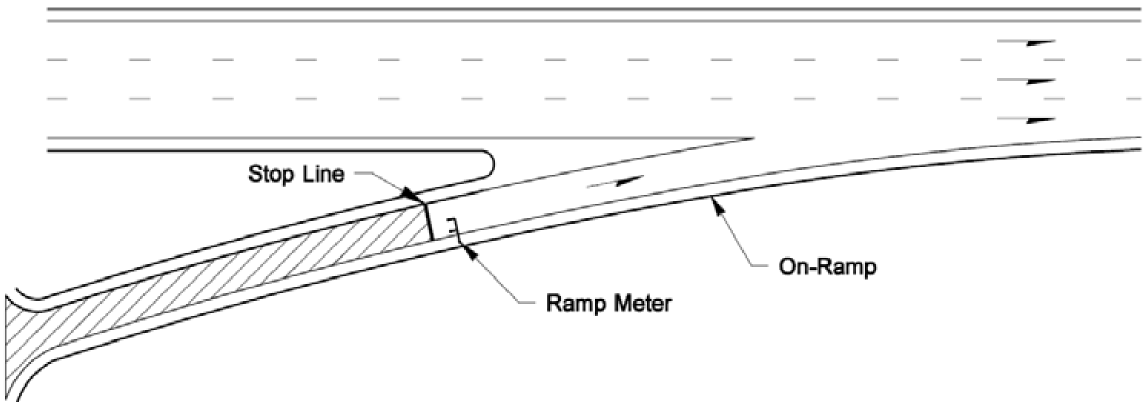
Exit-Only Lane

The design area may be shifted up to 100 ft from the end of lane and the beginning of wide line; a minimum of two light standards of standard pole height required for design area.

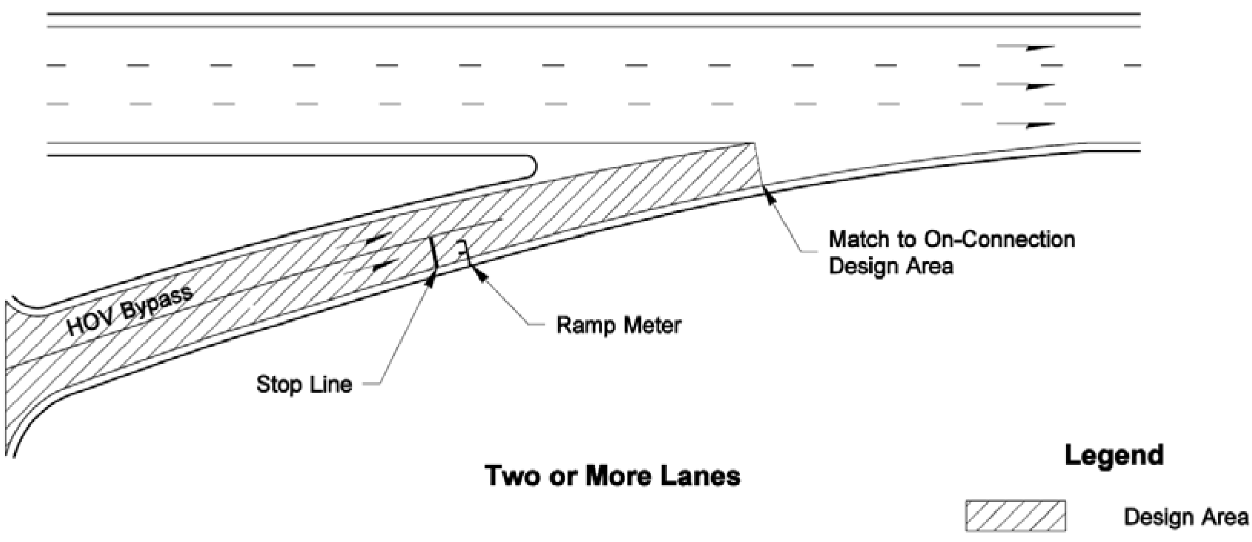
Freeway Lighting Applications
Exhibit 1040-1c



Freeway Ramp Terminals
Exhibit 1040-2

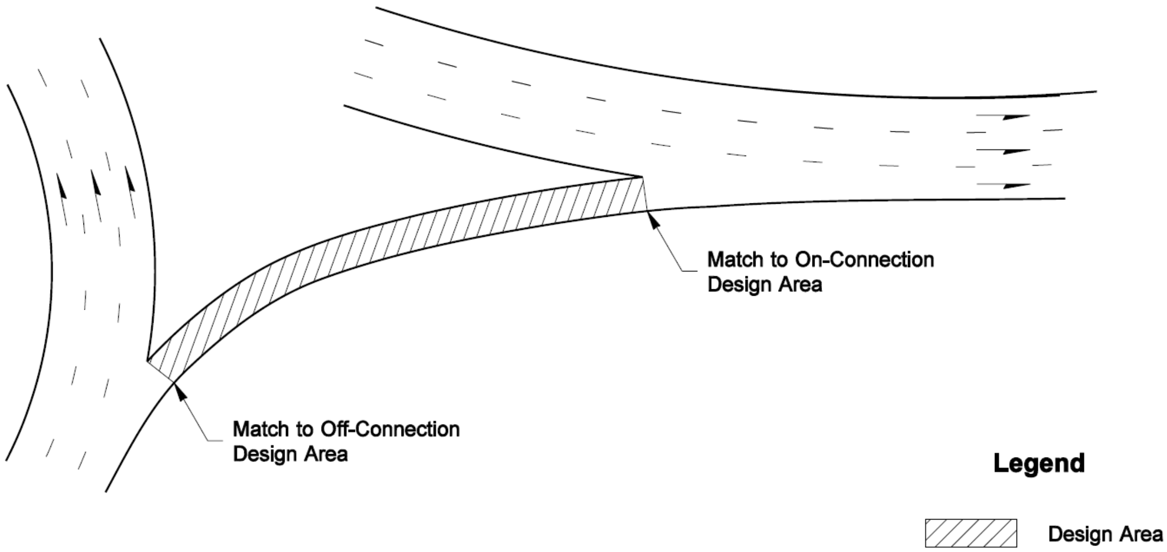


Single-Lane On-Ramp

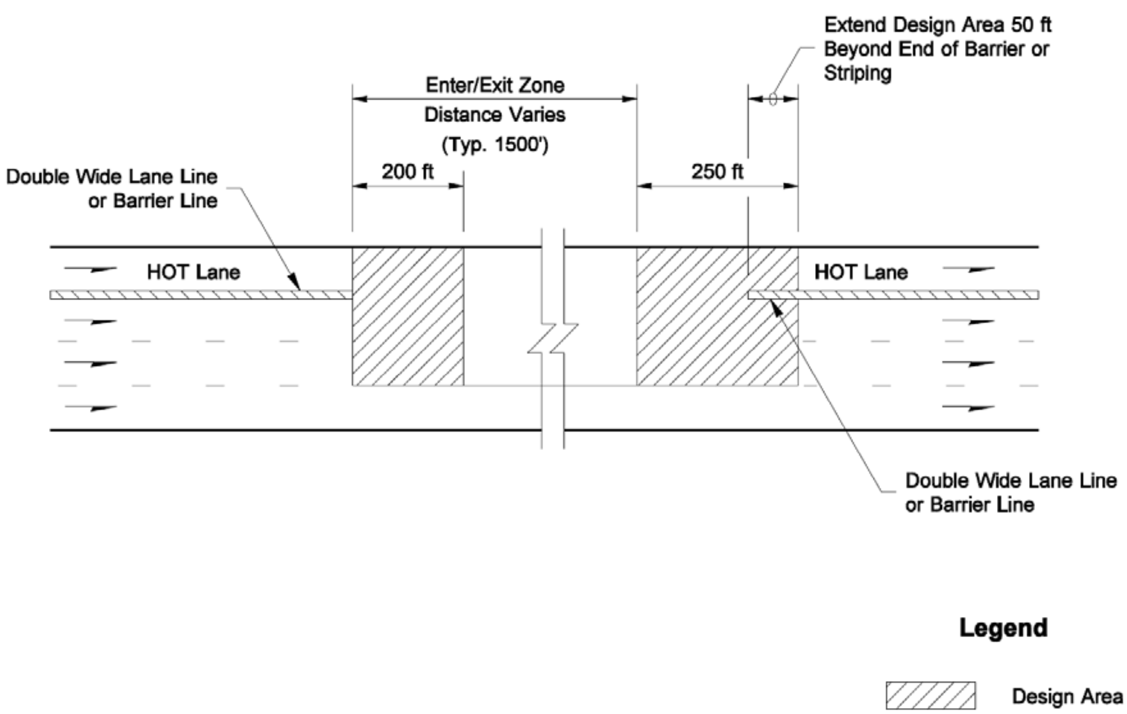


Two or More Lanes

Ramp With Meter
Exhibit 1040-3

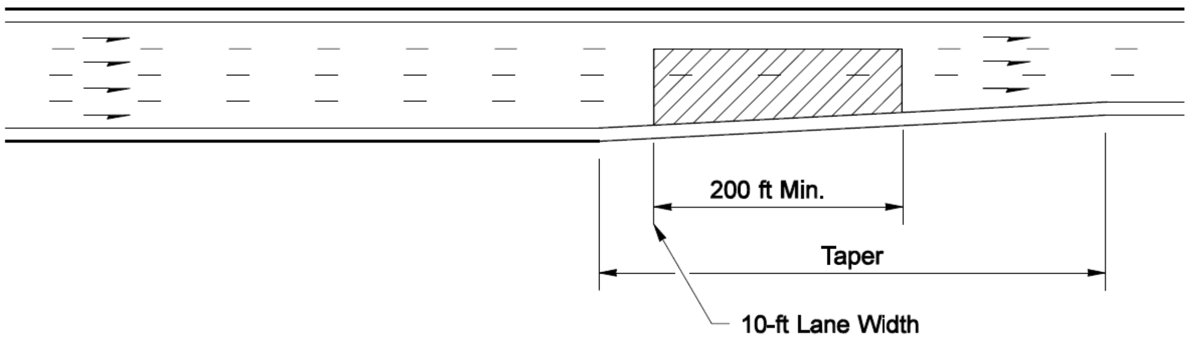


Freeway-to-Freeway Connection
Exhibit 1040-4



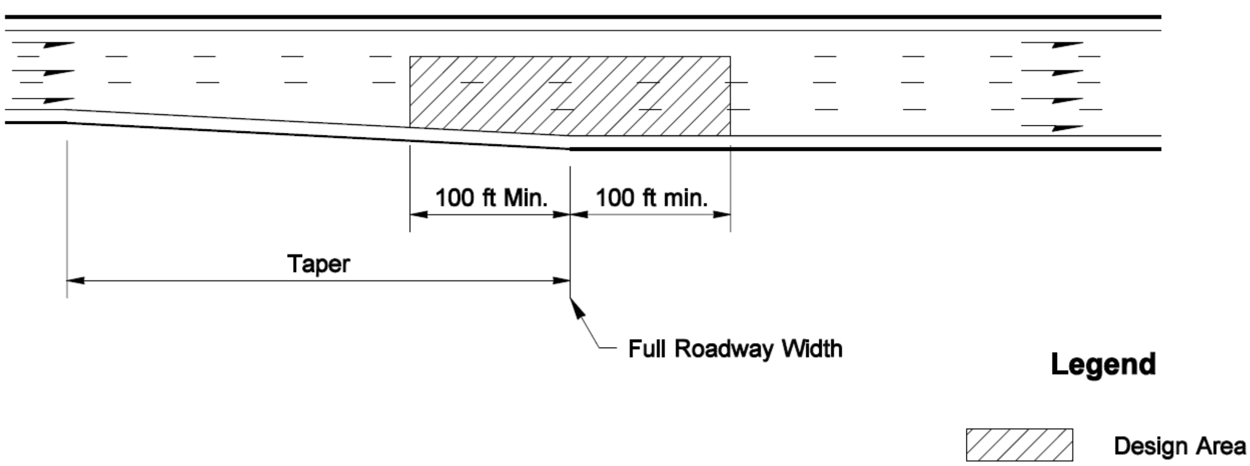
A minimum of two light standards of standard pole height required for each design area.

HOT (High-Occupancy Toll) Lane Enter/Exit Zone
Exhibit 1040-5



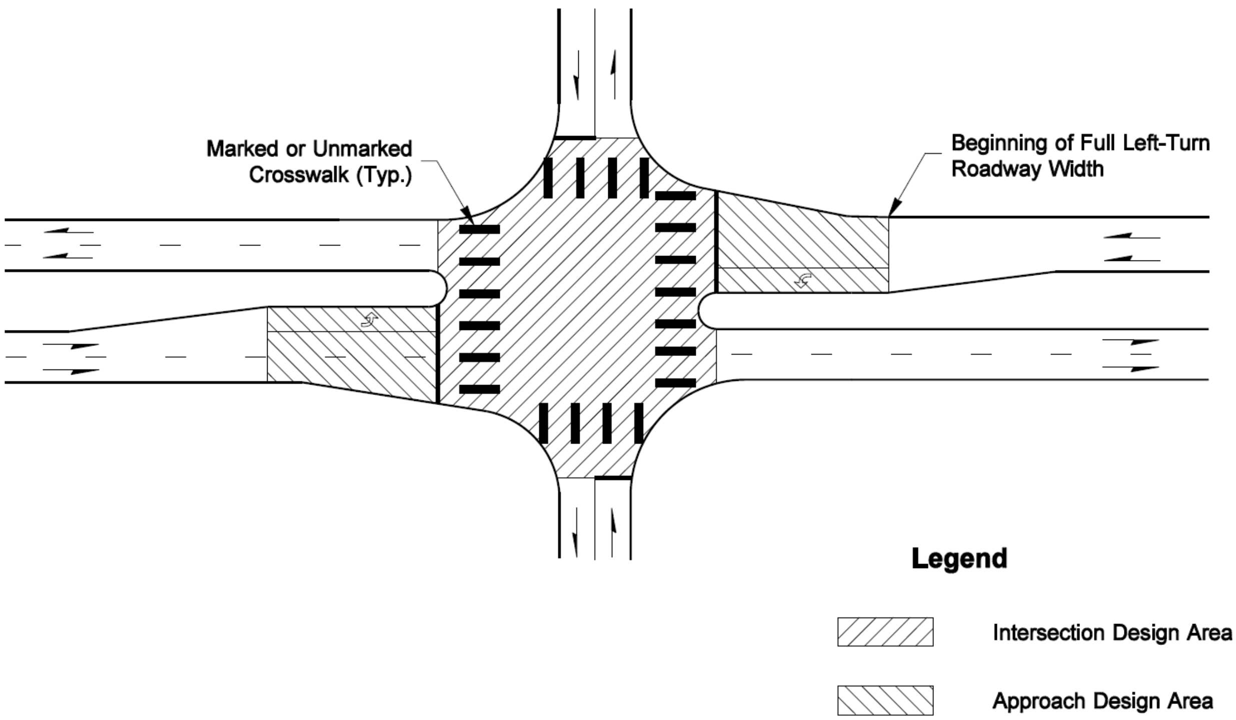
A minimum of two light standards of standard pole height required for design area; design area may be shifted 100 ft.

Lane Reduction
Exhibit 1040-6

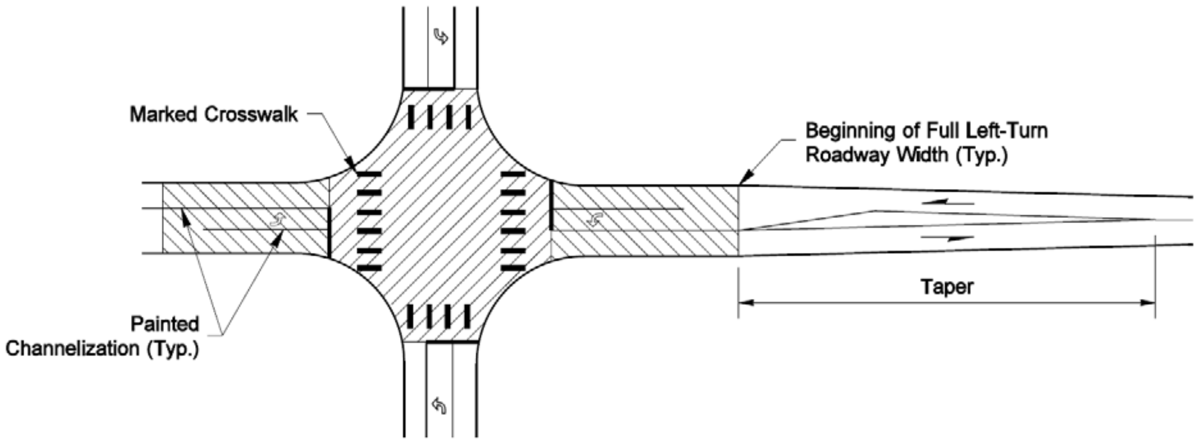


A minimum of two light standards of standard pole height required for design area.

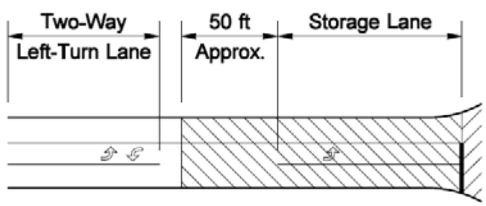
Add Lane
Exhibit 1040-7



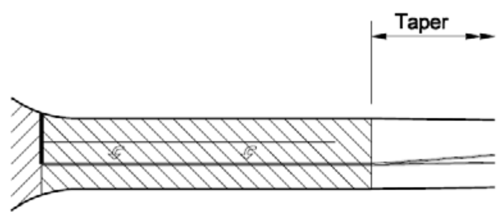
Intersection With Left-Turn Channelization: Divided Highway
Exhibit 1040-8a



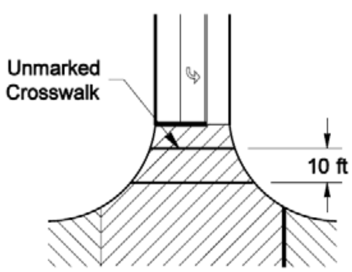
Intersection With Left-Turn Lane Channelization



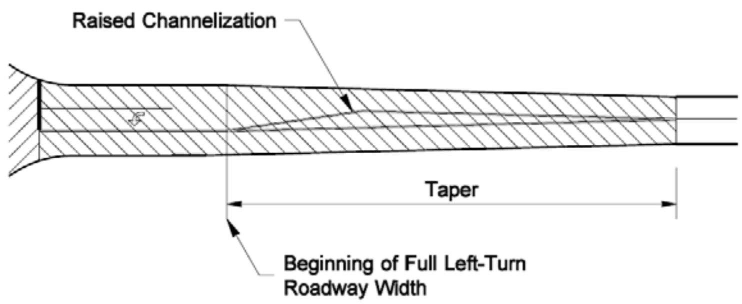
Alternate for Transitions to Two-Way Left-Turn Lanes



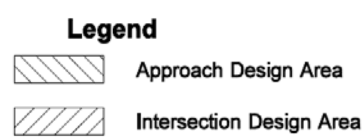
Alternate for Long Storage Lanes



Unmarked Crosswalk Detail

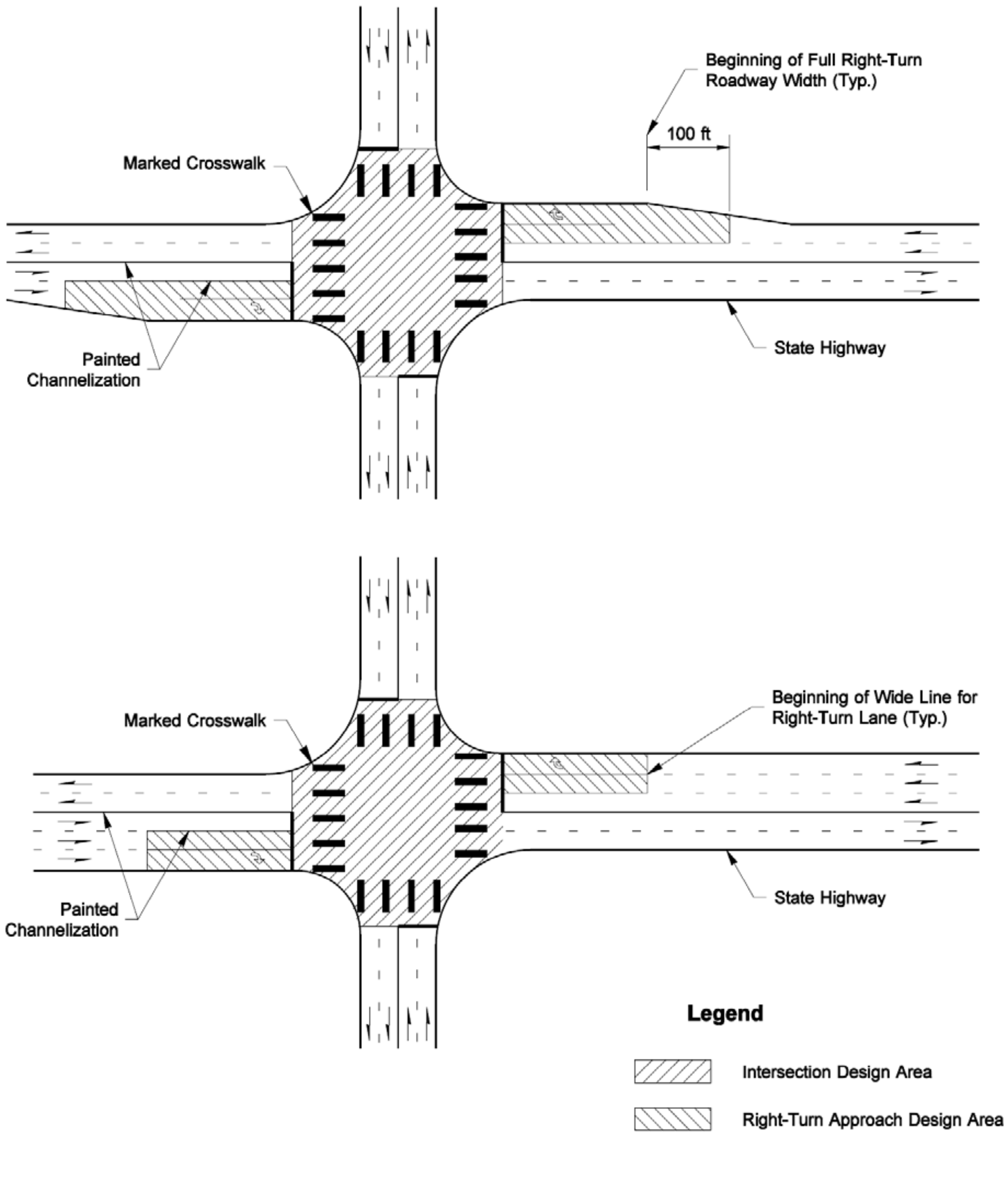


Alternate for Raised Channelization

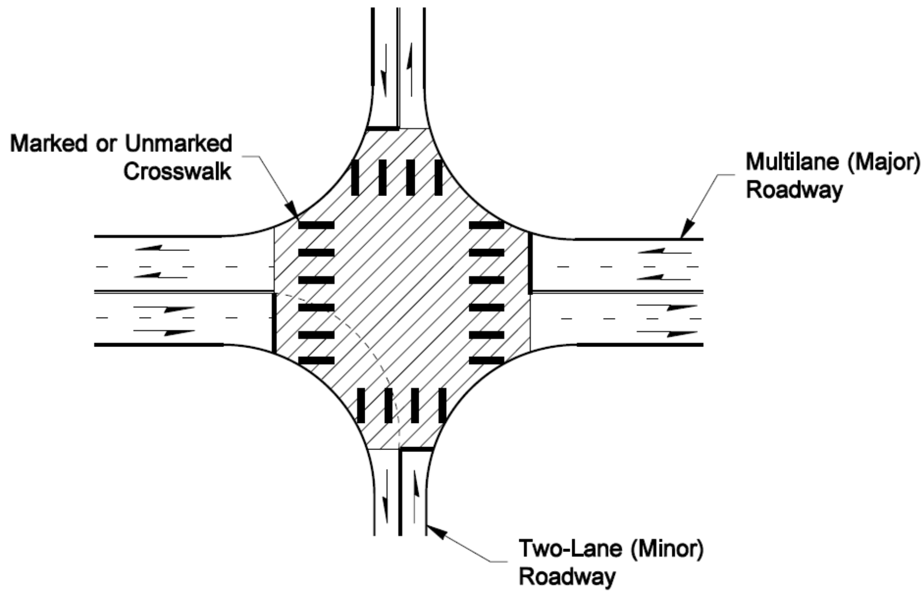


Intersections With Left-Turn Channelization

Exhibit 1040-8b

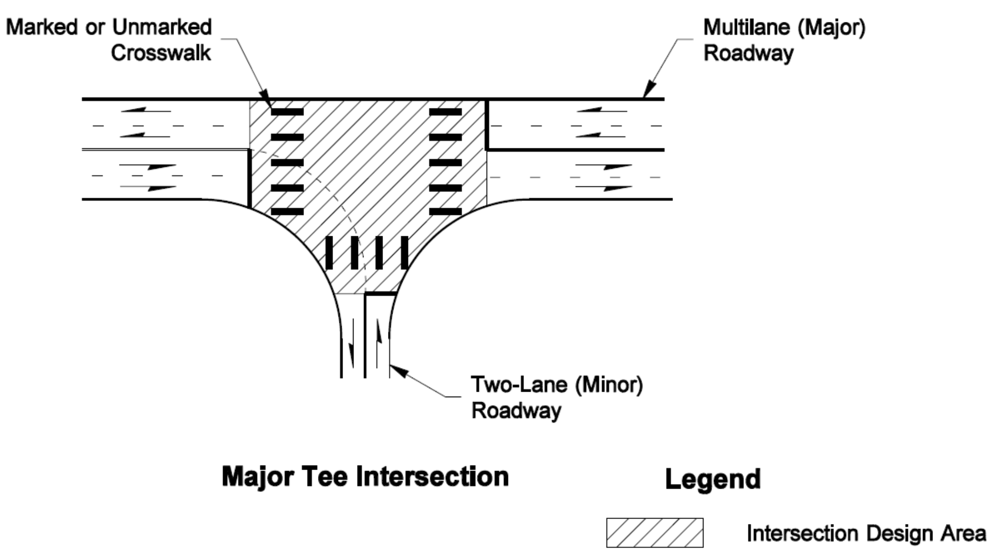


Intersections With Drop Lane/Right-Turn Lane Channelization
Exhibit 1040-9



Four-Way Intersection

Without left-turn channelization; a minimum of two light standards of standard pole height required for design area.

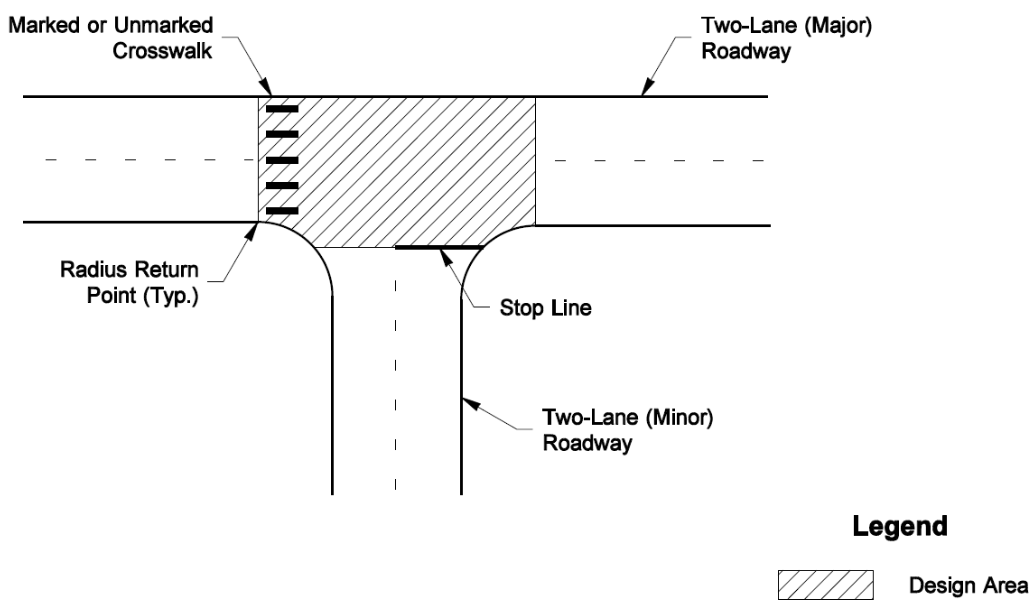


Major Tee Intersection

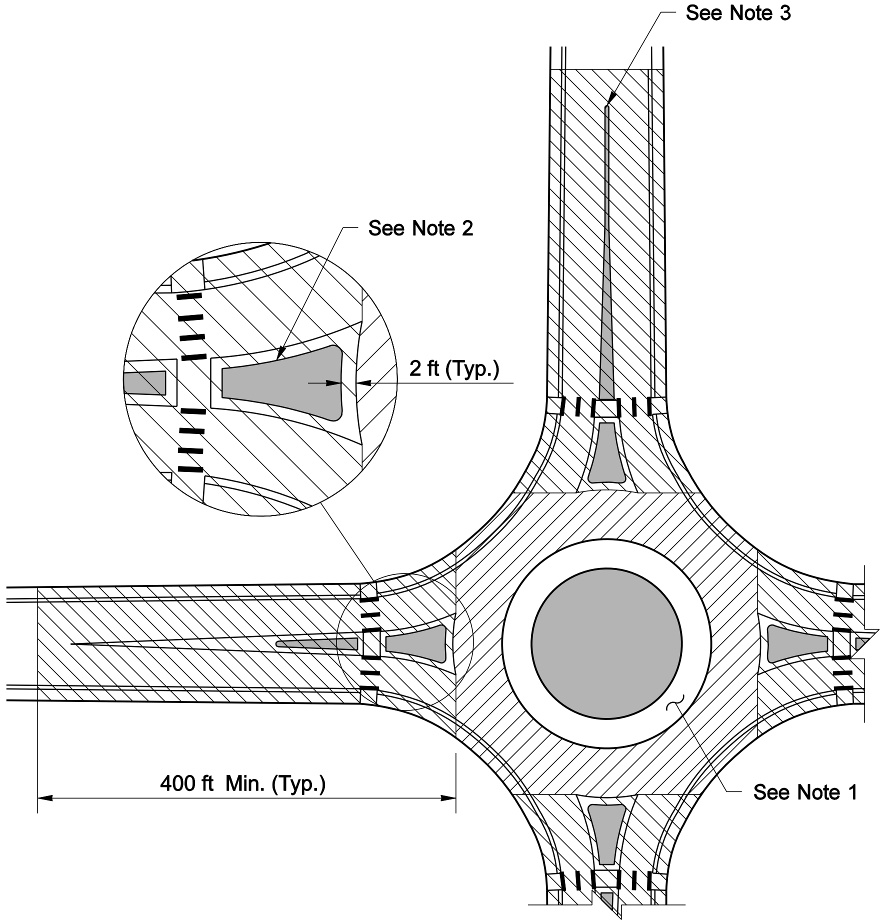
Without left-turn channelization; a minimum of two light standards of standard pole height required for design area.

Intersections With Traffic Signals

Exhibit 1040-10

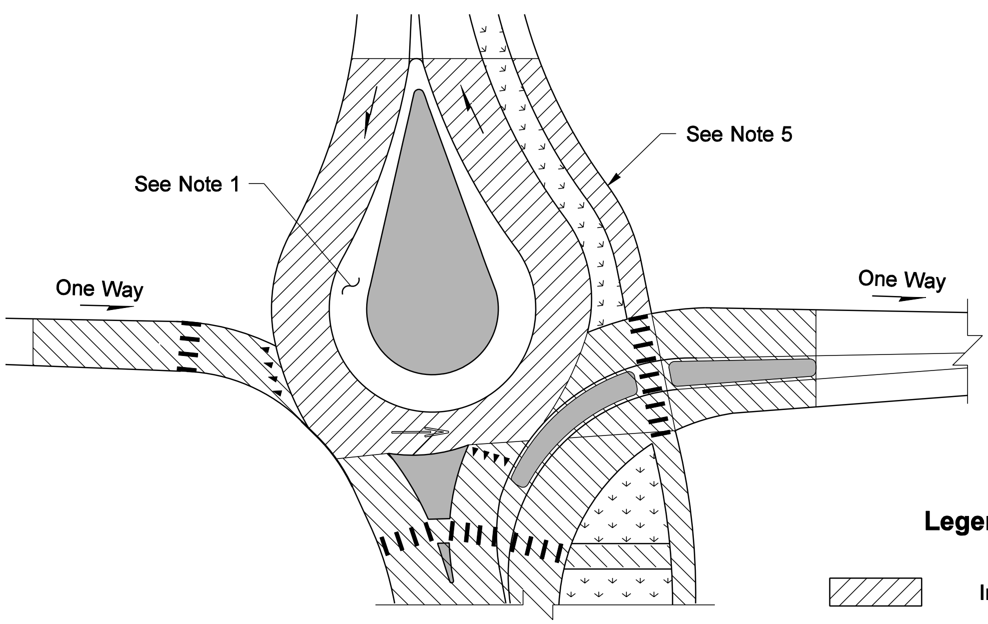


Intersection Without Channelization
Exhibit 1040-11



Notes:

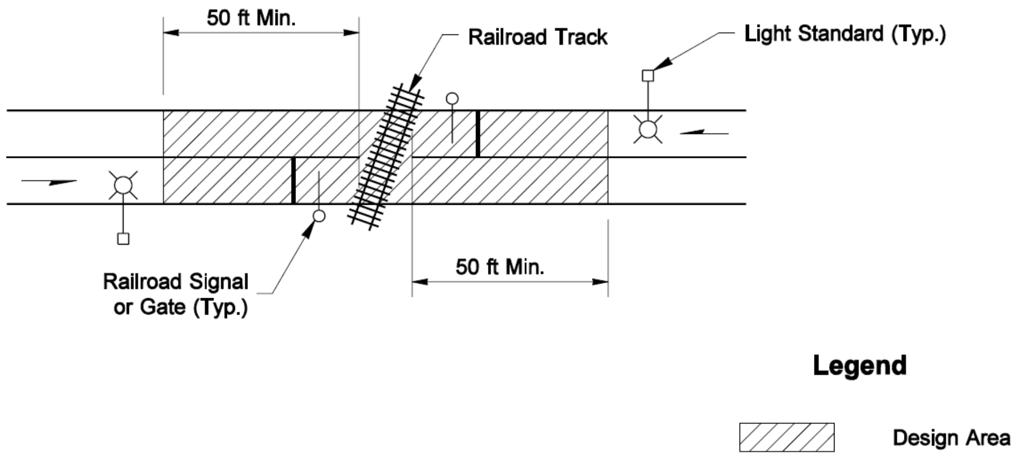
1. Exclude Truck Apron from lighting calculation.
2. Exclude the portion inside the 2-ft offset areas of the raised channelization islands from lighting calculation.
3. All channelization 2-ft wide or less is included in Approach Design Area calculation.
4. When a leg of the roundabout is a one-way roadway, the Approach Design Area starts at the beginning of the raised channelization, or 50 ft from the outside edge of the circulating roadway, or 50 ft beyond a sidewalk, whichever is farther.
5. A sidewalk is included in the Intersection Design Area calculation when a planting strip is less than 15 ft wide.



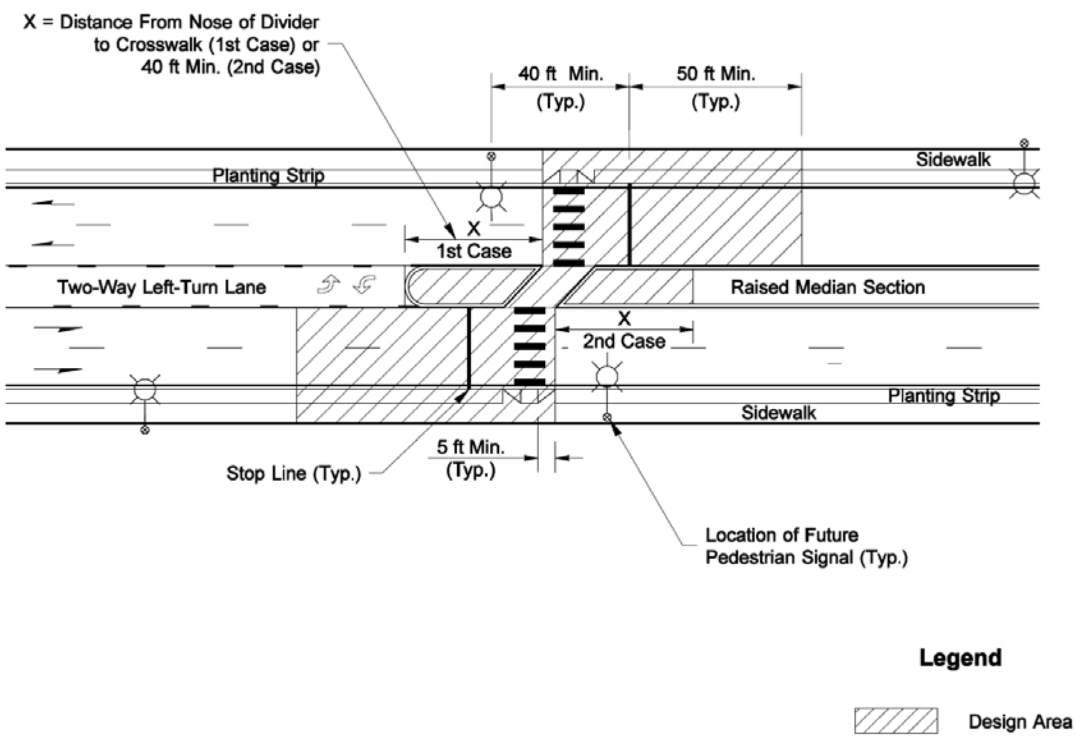
Legend

- Intersection Design Area
- Approach Design Area

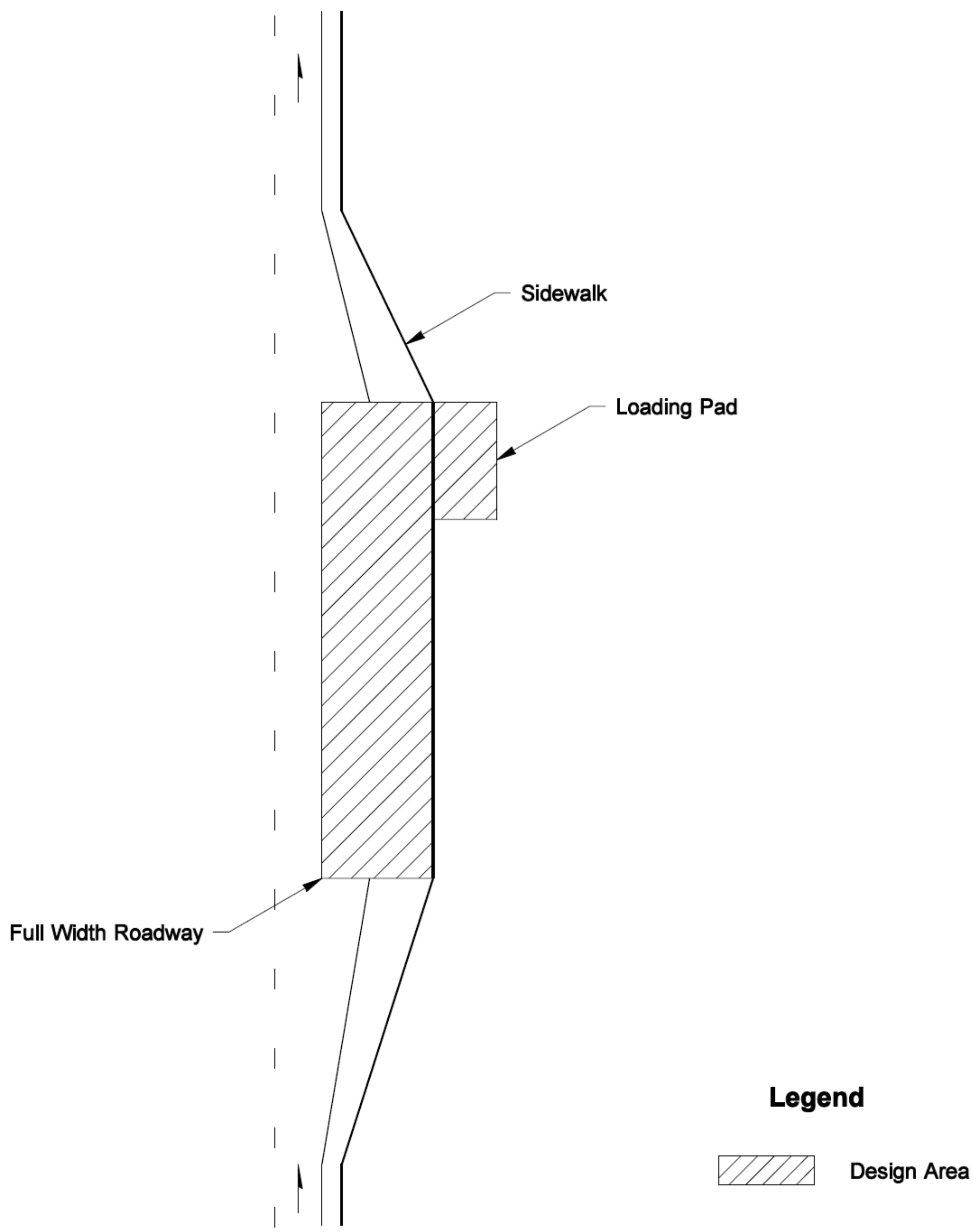
Roundabout
Exhibit 1040-12



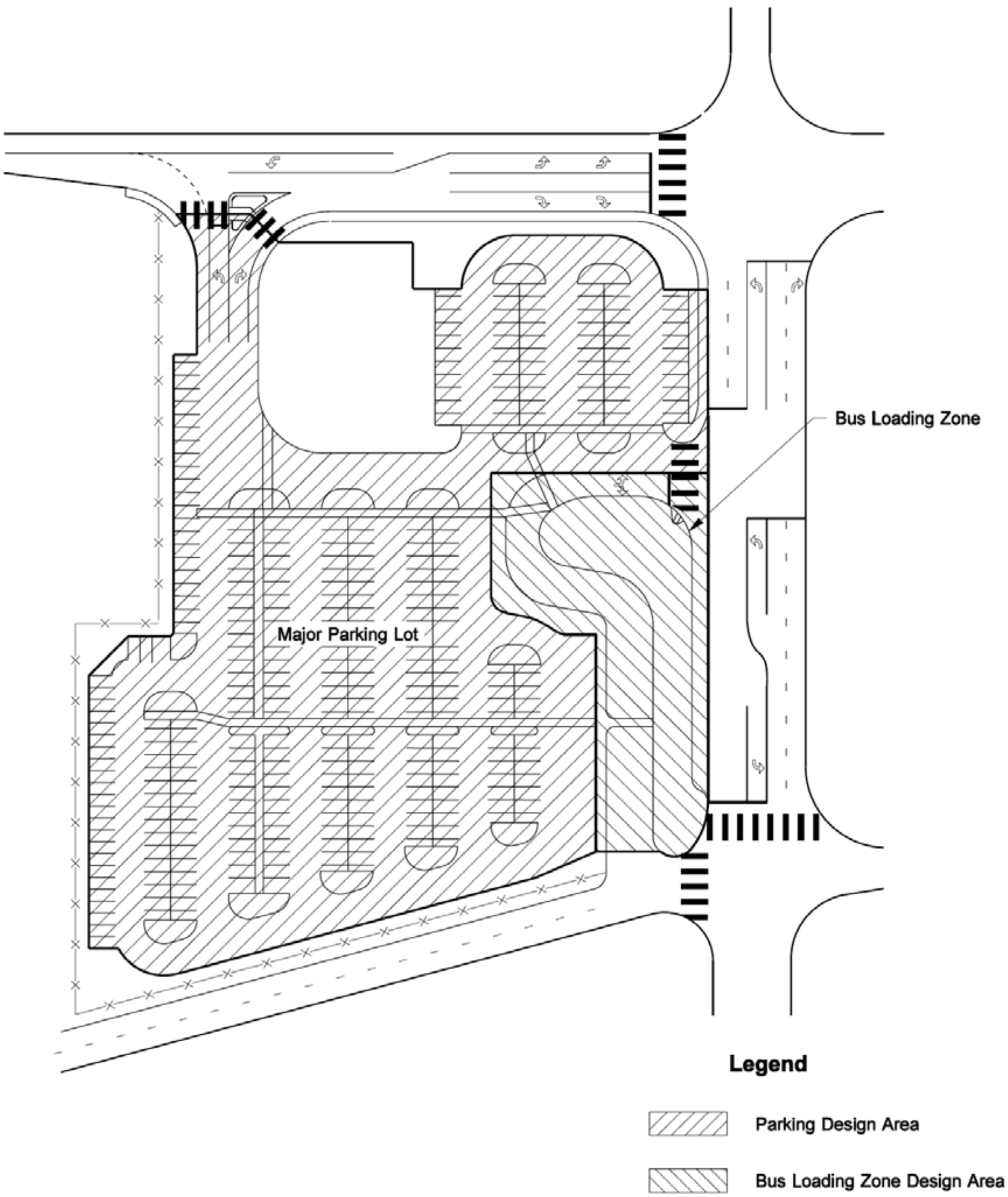
Railroad Crossing With Gates or Signals
Exhibit 1040-13



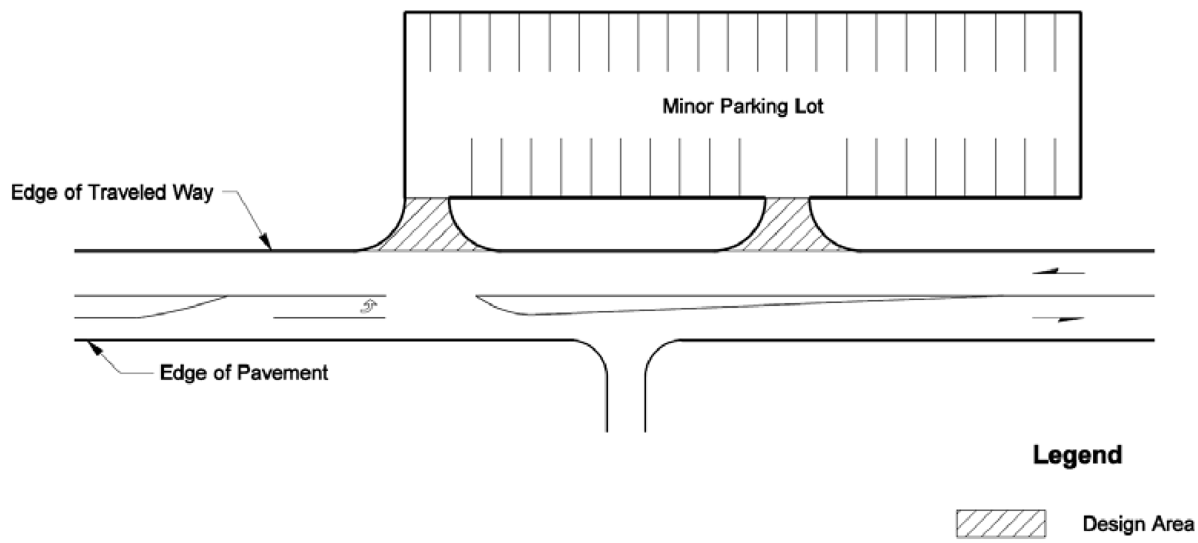
Midblock Pedestrian Crossing
Exhibit 1040-14



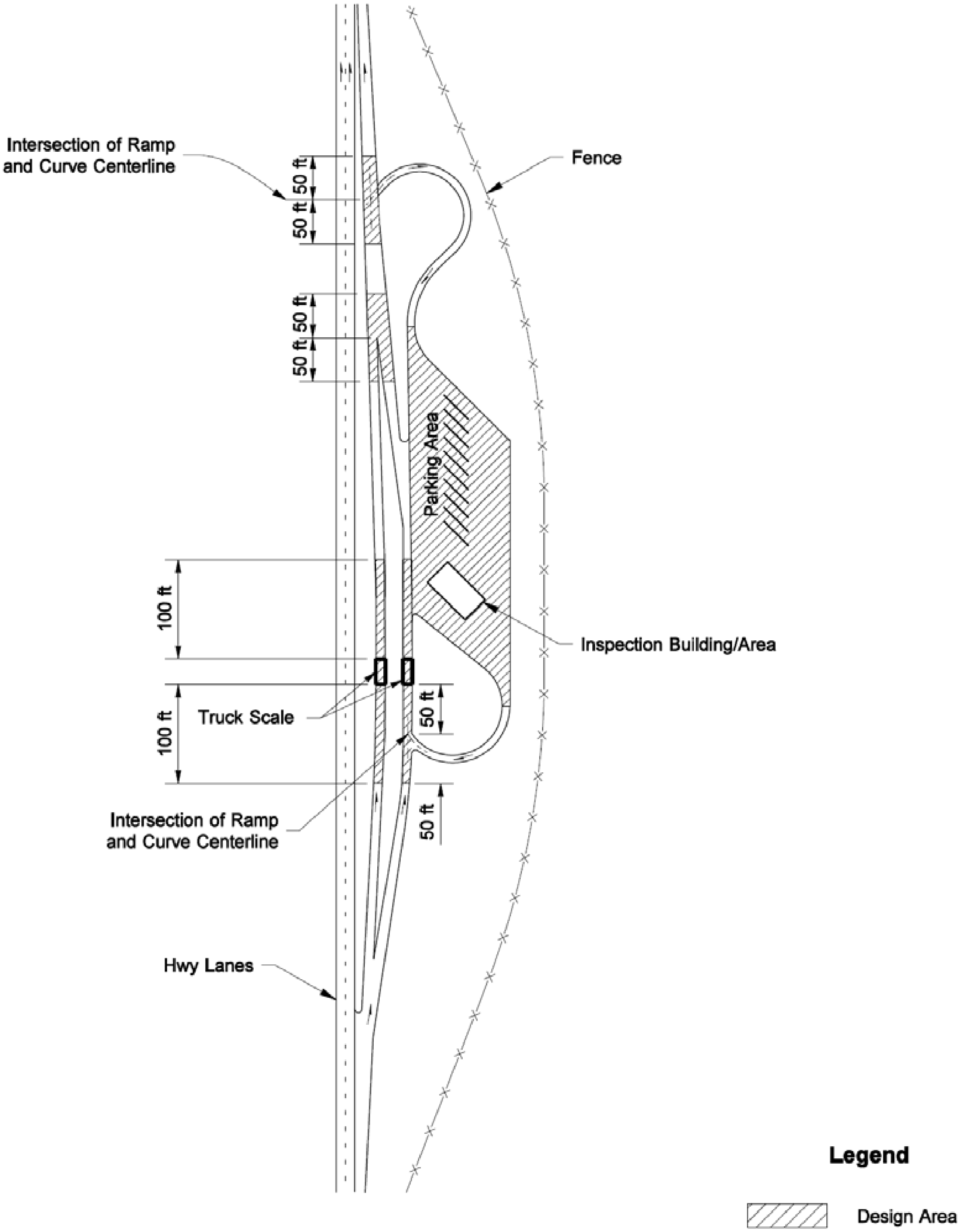
Transit Flyer Stop
Exhibit 1040-15



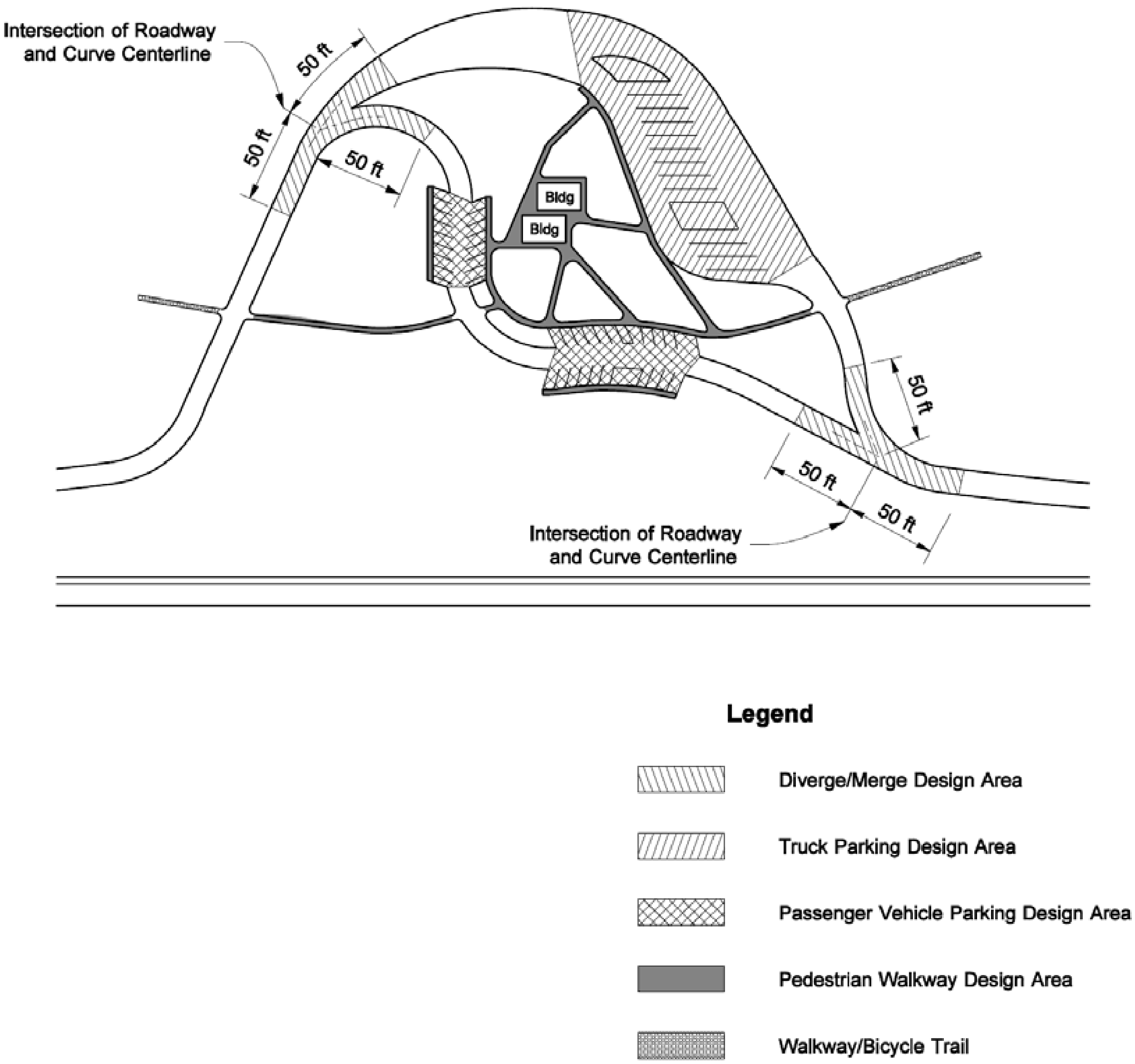
Major Parking Lot
Exhibit 1040-16



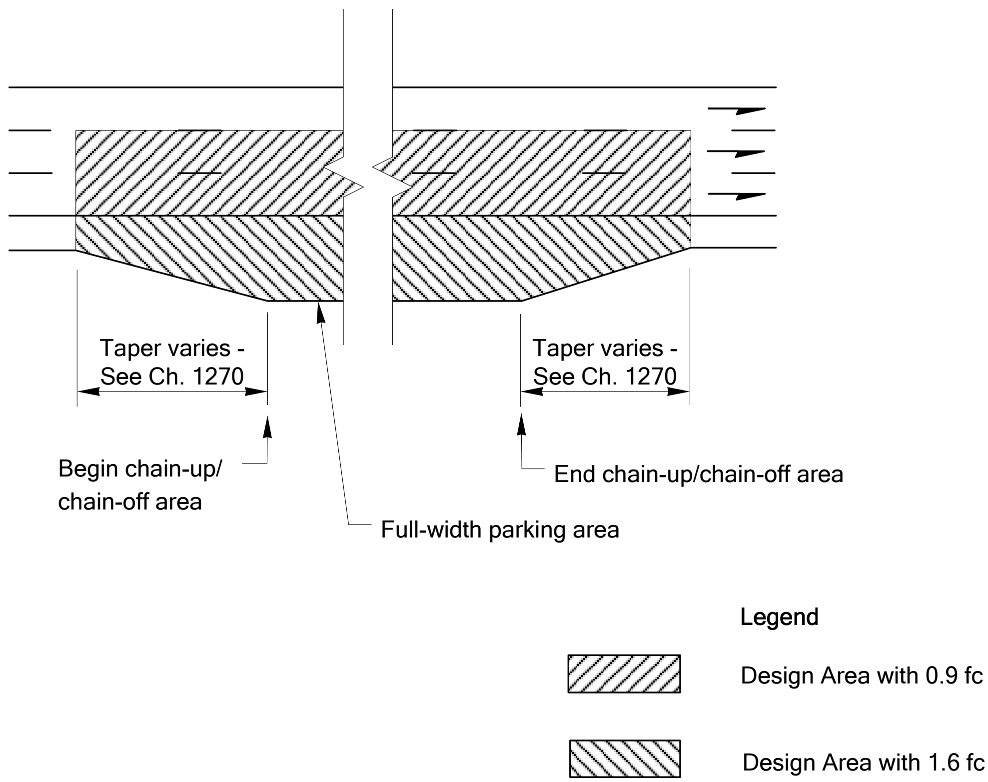
Minor Parking Lot
Exhibit 1040-17



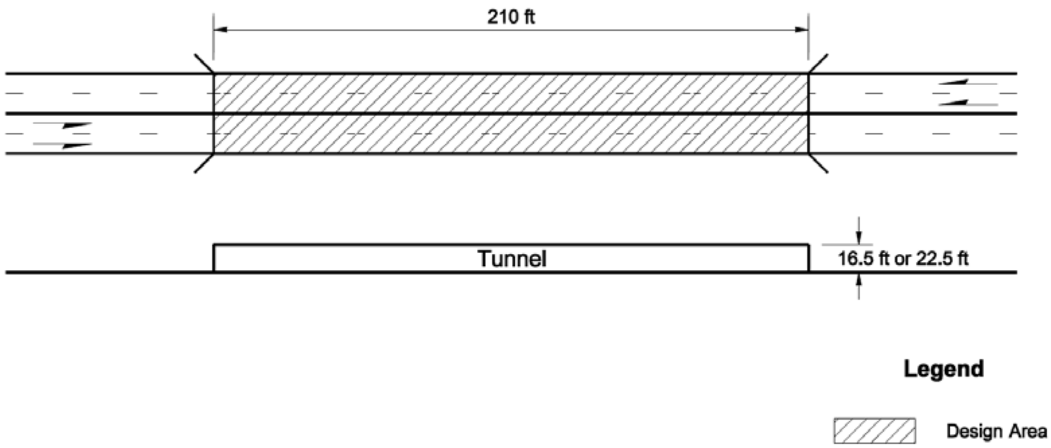
Truck Weigh Site
Exhibit 1040-18



Safety Rest Area
Exhibit 1040-19



Chain-Up/Chain-Off Parking Area
Exhibit 1040-20



If tunnel length exceeds stopping sight distance, then it is classified as a long tunnel.

Example #1

- The stopping sight distance for a 30 mph roadway is 196.7’
- The tunnel length is 210’

196.7’ < 210’ – This would be a long tunnel.

Example #2

- The stopping sight distance for a 40 mph roadway is 300.6’
- The tunnel length is 210’

300.6’ > 210’ – This would be a short tunnel.

Determining whether a short tunnel needs illumination.

Example #1

- Vertical clearance is 16.5’
- Tunnel length is 210’

If horizontal-to-vertical ratio is 10:1 or greater, then illuminate.

210’ divided by 16.5’ = 12.7:1 ratio – This ratio exceeds the short tunnel horizontal-to-vertical ratio of 10:1, so this tunnel would need illumination—OR—How long can the tunnel be at a given height before it needs to be illuminated?

Tunnel height x maximum ratio factor of short tunnel (10:1 or less).

16.5’ x 10 = 165’

165’ < 210’ – This tunnel would need illumination.

Example #2

- Vertical clearance is 22.5’
- Tunnel length is 210’

If horizontal-to-vertical ratio is 10:1 or greater, then illuminate.

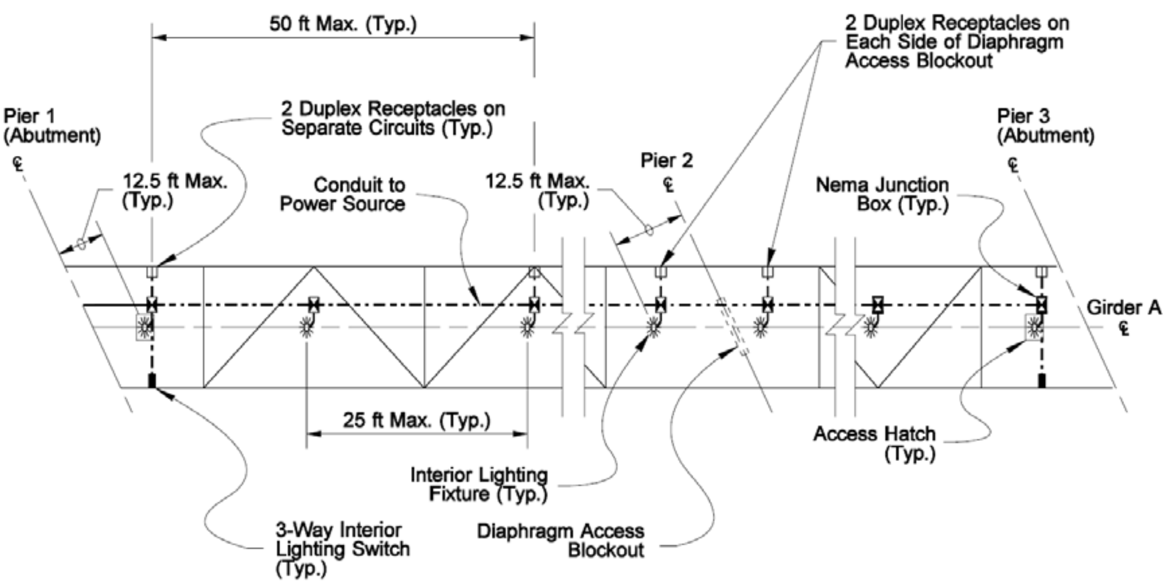
210’ divided by 22.5’ = 9.3:1 ratio – This ratio is less than the short tunnel horizontal-to-vertical ratio of 10:1, so this tunnel would not need illumination—OR—How long can the tunnel be at a given height before it needs to be illuminated?

Tunnel height x maximum ratio factor of short tunnel (10:1 or less).

22.5’ x 10 = 225’

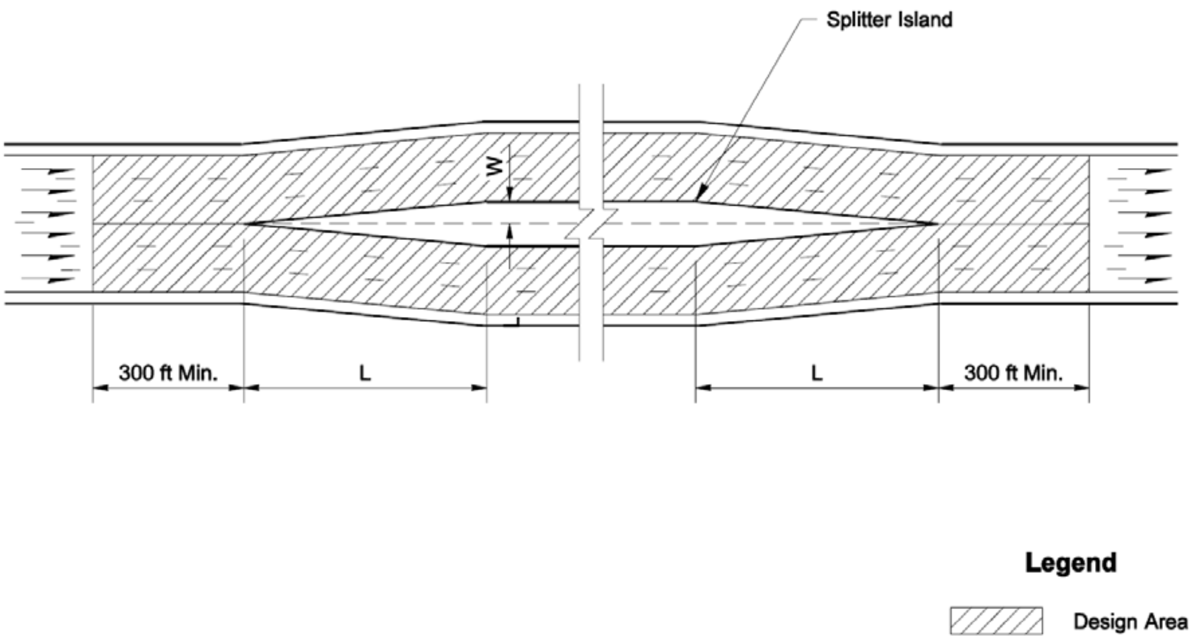
225’ > 210’ – This tunnel would not need illumination.

Tunnel
Exhibit 1040-21



Bridge Inspection Lighting System

Exhibit 1040-22



For speeds 45 mph or more: L = WS

For speeds less than 45 mph: L = WS/60

L = Taper in feet

W = Width of offset in feet

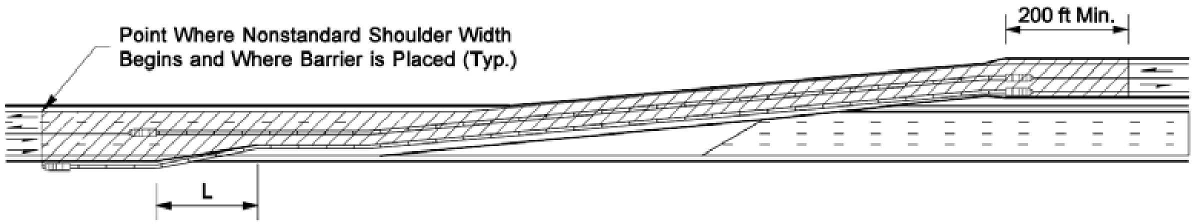
S = Posted speed

Note:

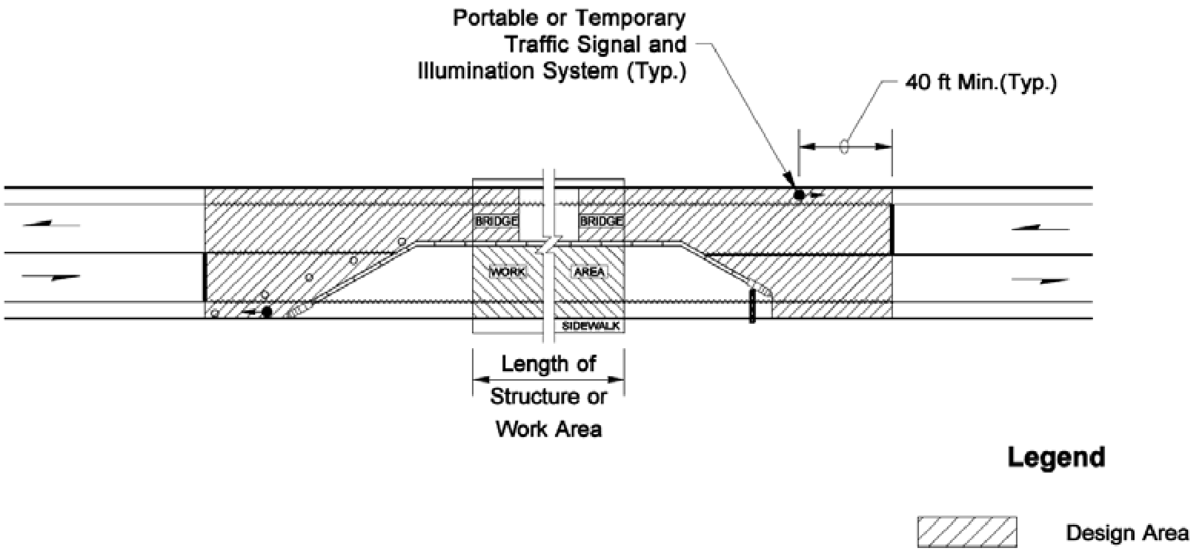
For temporary work zone plan applications, a site-specific traffic control plan is required. Refer to Chapters 1610 and 1620 for traffic barrier and attenuator information, Chapter 1010 for work zone information, and Chapter 1020 for signing information.

Traffic Split Around an Obstruction

Exhibit 1040-23



Detour Traffic



Lane Closure With Barrier and Signals Without Flaggers or Spotters

One-direction closure shown/other direction closure typical.

Note:

For temporary work zone plan applications, a site-specific traffic control plan is required. Refer to Chapters 1610 and 1620 for traffic barrier and attenuator information, Chapter 1010 for work zone information, and Chapter 1020 for signing information. Refer to the MUTCD Typical Application 12 for additional details.

Construction Work Zone and Detour

Exhibit 1040-24

Light Level and Uniformity Ratio Chart					
Highway Design Class	Minimum Average Maintained Horizontal Light Level[2]			Maximum Uniformity Ratio[6]	Maximum Veiling Luminance[7]
	Pedestrian/Area Classification				
	High (footcandles)	Medium (footcandles)	Low (footcandles)		
Highways With Full Access Control[1]					
Main Line	0.6	0.6	0.6	4:1	0.3:1
Ramps	0.6	0.6	0.6	4:1	0.3:1
Crossroads	0.6	0.6	0.6	3:1	0.3:1
Ramp Intersections	0.9	0.9	0.9	3:1	0.3:1
Principal Arterials[3]					
Main Line	1.6	1.2	0.6	3:1	0.3:1
Intersections	1.6	1.2	0.9	3:1	0.3:1
Minor Arterials					
Main Line	1.2	0.9	0.6	4:1	0.3:1
Intersections	1.2	0.9	0.9	4:1	0.3:1
Collectors					
Main Line	1.1	0.8	0.6	4:1	0.3:1
Intersections	1.1	1.0	0.9	4:1	0.3:1
Other Illuminated Features					
Construction Lanes and Detours	1.0	1.0	1.0	3:1	0.3:1
Major Parking Lots/Rest Areas[5]	0.8	0.8	0.8	3:1	0.3:1
Vehicle Inspection Areas	2.0	2.0	2.0	3:1	0.3:1
Walkways & Bicycle Trails	0.8	0.8	0.8	3:1	0.3:1
Weigh Scales	0.8	0.8	0.8	3:1	0.3:1
Transit Stops[4]	2.0	2.0	2.0	NA[8]	0.3:1
Midblock Ped X-ing	2.0	2.0	2.0	3:1	0.3:1

Notes:

[1] The minimum light level is 0.2 footcandle (fc) for any application with a minimum average maintained horizontal light level of 0.6 fc. The minimum light levels for all other applications are controlled by the uniformity ratio.

[2] Light level and uniformity ratio apply only when installation of more than one light standard is justified.

[3] Light levels shown also apply to modified and partial limited access control.

[4] For single light standard installations, provide the light level at the location where the bus stops for riders (see 1040.06(6)).

[5] Includes illumination at ramp on- and off-connections.

[6] Minimum Average Maintained Light Level/Minimum Light Level = Maximum Uniformity Ratio.

[7] Maximum Veiling Luminance/Average Luminance = Maximum Veiling Luminance Ratio.

[8] The Maximum Uniformity Ratio is 3:1 when more than one light standard is justified.

Light Levels and Uniformity Ratios
Exhibit 1040-25

Chapter 1050 Intelligent Transportation Systems

1050.01 General
1050.02 References
1050.03 Traffic Data Collection
1050.04 Traffic Flow Control
1050.05 Motorist Information
1050.06 Systems Engineering
1050.07 Documentation

1050.01 General

Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS) apply advanced technologies in communications and computer science to optimize the safety and efficiency of the existing surface transportation network. In Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) highway design, this goal is achieved by collecting and using traffic data to develop predictive models, regulating access to the freeway system, and providing timely information on traffic conditions to motorists. Previously, this technology was called Surveillance, Control, and Driver Information (SC&DI). In the context of highway design, ITS and SC&DI are synonymous.

The Transportation Equity Act (TEA-21) requires ITS projects to comply with the standards being developed in association with the federal government and private industry. They will be known as the National ITS Architecture. These standards are intended to ensure interoperability and efficiency to the maximum extent practicable for the many different types of ITS devices under development. The National ITS Architecture organizes a "system of subsystems" and makes managing ITS deployment easier. The Architecture helps agencies communicate complex ideas by providing a common language and definitions. One benefit of using the National ITS Architecture is that it helps identify all agencies and jurisdictions that should be included in ITS projects.

The ITS program in Washington State is known as "Venture Washington." It focuses on the following five areas within Washington State. These areas were chosen because they each have unique characteristics and problems associated with traffic.

- Greater Puget Sound Region
- Spokane Area
- Vancouver Area
- Other Statewide Urban Areas
- Rural Areas and Intercity Corridors

An intelligent transportation system can be implemented in stages, starting with a small project for immediate benefit and then expanding the system as needed. Consider installing an ITS at any of the following locations:

- Where congestion frequently causes accidents.
- At freeway on-ramps where merging problems routinely occur.
- Where heavy traffic volumes occur between closely spaced on-ramps.
- Where the motorist would benefit from information on traffic conditions or alternative routes.

The initial stage of an intelligent transportation system can be as simple as installing a dynamic message sign that warns motorists of unusual driving conditions. Appropriate messages can be displayed on the sign using information obtained by direct observation of road conditions or by reports from law enforcement agencies.

Automated systems incorporate a traffic data collection system. The data collection system provides basic data to determine traffic volumes, vehicular speeds, and levels of congestion. The traffic data can be analyzed and used to verify the locations of traffic problems. This data can also be used in freeway computer models to predict the impacts of proposed improvements.

Design each stage of the system so that the associated technology can be used in subsequent, more sophisticated stages. For example, the stage following data collection could be the installation of closed-circuit television cameras (CCTV) to monitor freeway locations where congestion is commonplace. The CCTV monitoring is used to detect or confirm incidents noted by other forms of data collection. The installation of motorist information devices such as dynamic message signs or highway advisory radio provides a means of transmitting this information to the motorist. Eventually, as traffic congestion increases, ramp meters are installed to control the traffic flow entering the facility.

When planning a staged system, attempt to determine the ultimate communication system to the degree that underground conduit size and quantity are known and can be installed in the initial construction. Consider long-term maintenance issues and component standardization.

The Northwest Region Traffic Systems Management Center (TSMC) is an example of a traffic operations center (TOC). Because a TOC usually works best with existing radio communication, it is located adjacent to or as part of a radio communication office. In addition to the location of a TOC, consider the work force and equipment costs required to operate and maintain the entire system. The size of a TOC is dependent on the complexity of the system and can vary from a single person at a desk to a large room with advanced equipment requiring continuous staffing.

1050.02 References

23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Part 940

Application of Advanced Transportation Technology Within Washington State: Discussion and Policy Recommendations, Advanced Technology Branch, WSDOT

Building Quality Intelligent Transportation Systems Through Systems Engineering, USDOT, FHWA-OP-02-046, April 2002:
www.itsdocs.fhwa.dot.gov/JPODOCS/REPTS_TE/13620.html

I-5 Seattle to Vancouver, BC, ITS Corridor Study, Advanced Technology Branch, WSDOT

I-90 Seattle to Spokane, ITS Corridor Study, Advanced Technology Branch, WSDOT

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Portland/Vancouver to Boise, ITS Corridor Study Plan, Advanced Technology Branch, WSDOT

SC&DI Design Guide, WSDOT Northwest Region

SC&DI Operations Guide, WSDOT Northwest Region

Seattle to Portland Inter-City ITS Corridor Study and Communications Plan, Advanced Technology Branch, WSDOT

State-Wide Communications Strategic Plan, Advanced Technology Branch, WSDOT

Transportation Equity Act (TEA-21) of 1998

Venture Washington, Advanced Technology Branch, WSDOT

1050.03 Traffic Data Collection

Loop detectors (loops), which are placed in traffic lanes, are the most common devices used to collect traffic data. In general, data stations are spaced at ½-mile intervals between interchanges. Alternative methods of detection include video detection cameras, microwave detectors, and other newer technologies. This information can be augmented with cellular phone calls from motorists, Washington State Patrol (WSP) reports, and commercial traffic reporters.

The loops sense the amount of time a vehicle is over them. This is called *occupancy* and is recorded by a data station in a nearby roadside cabinet. The data station periodically transmits the data to a central computer. The information from the detection system is transmitted over leased phone lines, WSDOT phone lines, fiber optic lines, microwave transmitters, or a spread spectrum radio to a traffic operations center. The central computer translates these data into an indication of traffic congestion for incident detection and traffic flow information.

A single loop provides traffic volumes and lane occupancy from which, given some basic assumptions, speeds can be computed. Two loops spaced a known distance apart, longitudinally, provide better determinations of traffic speeds.

Closed-circuit television (CCTV) is used by the department to manage the freeway system. It is not normally used as a traffic law enforcement tool. The primary function of CCTV is to confirm or detect incidents. As a secondary function, this information can be provided to the WSP, incident response teams, maintenance forces, and the local media.

1050.04 Traffic Flow Control

During peak traffic volume periods, freeway on-ramps are metered with either roadside or overhead traffic signals. These ramp meters control or regulate the flow of traffic entering the freeway. The metering prevents the entering traffic from exceeding freeway capacity by limiting the number of vehicles that enter within a specific time period. The meters also keep long platoons of cars from merging onto the freeway. This process makes on-ramp merges safer and allows freeway traffic to move at a more efficient speed.

Ramp meters are traffic control signals and an approved traffic signal permit is required. The approval procedures for traffic signal permits are noted in Chapter 1330.

(1) Alternate Storage Methods

Consider the available area for vehicle storage on the ramp when locating a ramp meter. If the arrival rate of the entering traffic exceeds the metered flow rate, traffic queues will develop. A common concern is that this queue might extend onto the crossroads and interfere with local traffic. Chapter 1410 provides guidance on the placement of the ramp meter. This guidance, however, only addresses the required acceleration needed to merge onto the freeway. The storage area needed at the meter varies at each location and is determined separately. If it is not possible to provide an adequate storage length on the ramp, consider the following alternate methods of addressing the problem:

- Adjust the ramp metering rate to temporarily increase the rate.
- Allow two vehicles to pass the meter at a time.
- Widen to two metered lanes.
- Provide storage lanes on the crossroad.
- Provide alternate routes for local traffic.
- Provide HOV bypass lanes.

(a) **Adjust the Rate**

Ramp metering uses information from the detection loops to determine freeway congestion adjacent to and downstream from the ramps. Data from the loops are sent to a central computer or a local computer that adjusts the metering rate for the traffic congestion and transmits this rate to the ramp meter controllers. The ramp controllers implement the metering rate and control the signal. A ramp metering rate can be determined in two ways: remote metering and standby metering.

For remote metering, the metering rates of all ramp meter locations are determined by the local controller and adjusted by the central computer at the TOC. This is the normal mode of operation for the Seattle system. The central computer is capable of adjusting upstream metering rates on the basis of downstream conditions. A metering rate at an upstream location is decreased if traffic congestion develops downstream. Metering start and end times, as well as metering rates, can be remotely adjusted from the TOC with an override function.

Standby metering, also called local control, is used when communications with the central computer are interrupted or when that computer is not in service. In these cases, each ramp meter determines a metering rate for its on-ramp according to local traffic conditions or by a predetermined rate based on a time of day table. These time of day tables are developed to predict averages of the actual traffic volume peaking characteristics of the on-ramp. In standby metering, each ramp meter operates independently without coordinating with other controllers.

Single-lane metering rates normally vary between 4 and 15 vehicles per minute (240 and 900 vehicles per hour). If a ramp has heavier traffic volumes and queue storage is not adequate, several of the alternate methods can be considered.

(b) **Allow Two Vehicles**

The metering capacity can be increased by allowing two vehicles to enter during each green cycle. This can increase a single-lane ramp meter maximum capacity to about 1100 vehicles per hour. This procedure is a temporary, operational solution and is not a recommended design practice.

(c) **Widen the Ramp**

The metering capacity can be increased by widening the ramp to install additional lanes. Widening a single-lane on-ramp to create two lanes can double the metered traffic volume to 1800 vehicles per hour, provided no downstream traffic congestion develops. Changes in ramp access to the freeway might require an interchange justification report (see Chapter 550).

(d) **Use Storage as Turn Lanes**

If adequate storage length cannot be provided on the ramp, it might be possible to provide storage as turn lanes on the crossroad and adjust the ramp terminal traffic signal timing to limit freeway access movements.

(e) **Divert Ramp Traffic**

Diversion of some ramp traffic to local arterial streets might can be desirable, assuming a suitable alternate route is available. When diversion occurs, modification of traffic signal timing and coordination plans on the alternative routes might be necessary. Coordinate efforts with the local agency and, if appropriate, initiate public meetings to identify needs and impacts.

(f) **Provide HOV Bypass Lanes**

Wherever possible, provide bypass lanes for high-occupancy vehicles (HOV) around the traffic queue at the ramp meter. The HOV bypass allows transit vehicles to maintain schedules and indirectly provides an incentive for carpooling (see Chapter 1410).

1050.05 Motorist Information

Motorist information includes dynamic message signs, highway advisory radio, telephone traffic information lines, commercial radio and television messages, and Internet access for personal computers. These are all used to transmit traffic conditions to freeway users. The motorist information system is also used to alert drivers to short-term construction and maintenance activities that might affect normal travel patterns. It can also be used to suggest alternative travel routes.

(1) Dynamic Message Signs

Dynamic message signs (DMS) are used to provide motorists with current road and traffic conditions. Accidents, incidents, construction and maintenance activities, reversible lane status, traffic congestion, and traction device requirements are examples of this information. Because motorists receive many distractions while driving, consider the location of the DMS. The best location for a DMS is on a tangent section of roadway with few roadside distractions. Overhead installations have more visual impact. When possible, use sign bridges, cantilever sign structures, or bridge mounts on existing overcrossings for DMS. Use the message displays and sign location requirements contained in the *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices* and Chapter 1020.

(2) Highway Advisory Radio

The highway advisory radio (HAR) system uses car radios to provide information to motorists. Warning signs, usually with flashing beacons, direct motorists to select a specific AM radio station for information. HAR has an advantage over DMS because longer messages with more detailed information can be relayed to the motorist. The major disadvantages are that not all vehicles have radios that can receive HAR frequencies, and some motorists might not use the radio for this information. HAR works best when used in conjunction with DMS.

HAR locations and assigned radio frequencies are restricted to prevent interference with other frequencies in use. HAR message content is restricted by federal regulations, and WSDOT restricts HAR messages to noncommercial voice information pertaining to roadway and mountain pass conditions, major traffic incidents, and travel advisories.

(3) Additional Public Information Components

A telephone number can be provided to give the same prerecorded messages as the HAR and can also include transit and carpool information. A computer-generated flow map can be developed, using the data collection system, to graphically depict actual traffic flows within a geographical area. The flow map can be made accessible to the public by providing links to a WSDOT website.

1050.06 Systems Engineering

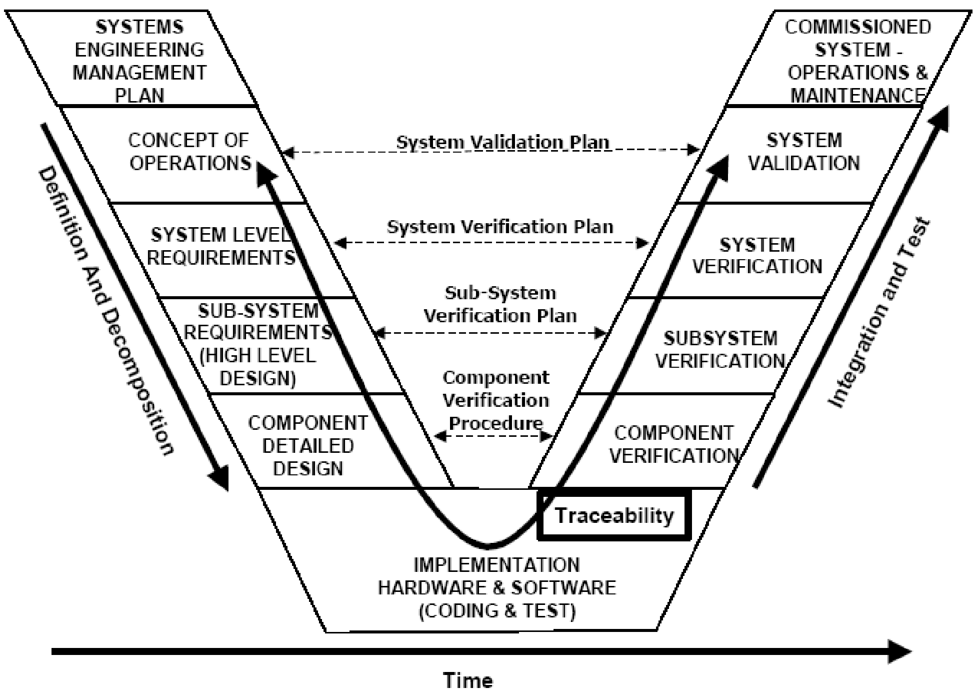
Conduct a systems engineering analysis on a scale commensurate with the project scope. As a minimum, include the following in the systems engineering process:

- Identify portions of the regional ITS architecture being implemented. Refer to the ITS architecture or regional planning document.
- Identify the roles and responsibilities of participating agencies.
- Define requirements.
- Provide an analysis of alternative system configurations and technology options to meet requirements.
- Identify procurement options.
- Identify applicable ITS standards and testing procedures.
- Delineate procedures and resources necessary for operations and management of the system.

For additional information, refer to USDOT's *Building Quality Intelligent Transportation Systems Through Systems Engineering*:
www.itsdocs.fhwa.dot.gov/JPODOCS/REPTS_TE/13620.html

Systems engineering is a structured process for arriving at a final design of a system. The "V" diagram in Exhibit 1050-1 provides a pictorial description of systems engineering.

An ITS project begins in the upper left side of the "V" diagram and progresses down the "V" and up the right side. Upon reaching the upper right corner, reverse the process to ensure a project is being completed that meets the initial requirements.



Systems Engineering "V" Diagram
Exhibit 1050-1

During the "Component Level Design," specific subsystems and/or components (such as wireless communications, VMS, ESS, cameras, or software) should be identified as requiring specialized knowledge and skills. These issues should be coordinated between the Project Engineer and the region Traffic Engineer.

Construction oversight and approvals are taken care of in the systems engineering process as you validate/verify the right side of the "V" diagram with the left side. The key to successful construction oversight is traceability. Trace each step on the right side of the "V" diagram back to a requirement on the left side.

Systems engineering costs are to be estimated and incorporated in the construction engineering (CE) and project engineering (PE) portions of the construction estimate. It is estimated that the total cost to conduct systems engineering is 15% of the ITS construction estimate.

1050.07 Documentation

The entire systems engineering process is to be documented in the Project File. If the project is a stand-alone ITS project, the systems engineering documentation is to be filed with the ITS Design File. If the ITS project is part of a larger project, the systems engineering documentation is to be filed with the Design Documentation Package for the project: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Completion of the "ITS Project Systems Engineering Review Form," Exhibit 1050-2a, meets the FHWA requirement for systems engineering documentation. Exhibit 1050-2b provides instructions for completing the form.

Systems engineering documentation is to be approved by the region Traffic Engineer or authorized representative. Completion of each phase of the systems engineering is to be reported to the region Traffic Engineer.

This form, or a reasonable facsimile, must be completed for all ITS projects.

It is to be submitted to FHWA with the construction authorization request for all federal oversight projects that include ITS. Otherwise, it is to become part of the project record and maintained by the project sponsor.

Name of Project:

Regional ITS Architecture:

1. **Identify the portions of the Regional ITS Architecture being implemented:**
   Is the project consistent with the architecture? Are revisions to the architecture required?

2. **Identify the participating agencies and their roles and responsibilities:**

3. **Definition of Requirements:**

4. **Analysis of alternative system configurations and technology options to meet requirements:**

5. **Procurement options:**

6. **Identification of applicable ITS standards and testing procedures:**

7. **Procedures and resources necessary for operations and management of the system:**

ITS Project Systems Engineering Review Form
Exhibit 1050-2a

1. **Identify the portions of the Regional ITS Architecture being implemented:**

   Identify which user services; physical subsystems, information flows, and market packages are being completed as part of the project and how these pieces are part of the regional architecture.

2. **Identify the participating agencies, their roles and responsibilities, and concept of operations:**

   For the user services to be implemented, define the high-level operations of the system, including where the system will be used, functions of the system capabilities, performance parameters, the life cycle of the system, and who will operate and maintain the system. Establish requirements or agreements on information sharing and traffic device control responsibilities. The regional architecture operational concept is a good starting point for discussion.

3. **Requirements definitions:**

   Based on the above concept of operations, define the "what" and not the "how" of the system. During early stages of the systems engineering process, they will be broken down into detailed requirements for eventual detailed design. The applicable high-level functional requirements from the regional architecture are a good starting point for discussion. A review of the requirements by the project stakeholders is recommended.

4. **Analysis of alternative system configurations and technology options to meet requirements:**

   The analysis of system alternatives should outline the strengths and weaknesses, technical feasibility, institutional compatibility, and life cycle costs of each alternative. The project stakeholders should have input in choosing the preferred solution.

5. **Procurement options:**

   Some procurement (contracting) options to consider include: consultant design/low bid contractor, systems manager, systems integrator, task order, and design/build. The decision regarding the best procurement option should consider the level of agency participation, compatibility with existing procurement methods, role of system integrator, and life cycle costs.

   There are different procurement methods for different types of projects. If the project significantly meets the definition of construction, then construction by low-bid contract would be used. If the project significantly meets the definition of software development/hardware acquisition, in other words an information technology project, then follow the acquisition processes outlined in the WSDOT *Purchasing Manual*. This option includes services for systems integration, systems management, and design.

   Contact the WSDOT HQ Traffic Operations Division for additional guidance and procurement options.

6. **Identification of applicable ITS standards and testing procedures:**

   Include documentation on which standards will be incorporated into the system design and justification for any applicable standards not incorporated. The standards report from the regional architecture is a good starting point for discussion.

7. **Procedures and resources necessary for operations and management of the system:**

   In addition to the above concept of operations, document any internal policies or procedures necessary to recognize and incorporate the new system into the current operations and decision-making processes. Resources necessary to support continued operations, including staffing and training must also be recognized early and be provided for. Such resources must also be provided to support necessary maintenance and upkeep to ensure continued system viability.

ITS Project Systems Engineering Review Form Instructions
Exhibit 1050-2b

Washington State
Department of Transportation

TECHNICAL MANUAL

Design Manual

Volume 2 – Design Criteria

M 22-01.06

December 2009

Division 11 – Project Design Criteria
Division 12 – Geometrics
Division 13 – Intersections and Interchanges
Division 14 – HOV and Transit
Division 15 – Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities
Division 16 – Roadside Safety Elements
Division 17 – Roadside Facilities

Environmental and Engineering Programs
Design Office

Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Information

Materials can be provided in alternative formats for persons with disabilities by contacting the ADA Compliance Officer via telephone at 360-705-7097 or by e-mail to Shawn Murinko at murinks@wsdot.wa.gov.

Title VI Notice to Public

It is Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) policy to ensure no person shall, on the grounds of race, color, national origin, or sex, as provided by Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be otherwise discriminated against under any of its federally funded programs and activities. Any person who believes his/her Title VI protection has been violated may file a complaint with WSDOT's Office of Equal Opportunity (OEO). For Title VI complaint forms and advice, please contact OEO's Title VI Coordinator at 360-705-7098.

To get the latest information on WSDOT administrative and engineering manuals, sign up for e-mail updates for individual manuals at:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals/

Washington State Department of Transportation
Administrative and Engineering Publications
PO Box 47304
Olympia, WA 98504-7304

Phone: 360-705-7430
Fax: 360-705-6861
E-mail: engrpubs@wsdot.wa.gov
Internet: www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals/

Division 1 – General Information

Chapter 100 Manual Description
100.01 Purpose
100.02 Presentation and Revisions
100.03 Manual Applications
100.04 Manual Use
100.05 Manual Organization

Chapter 110 Design-Build Projects
110.01 General
110.02 References
110.03 Terminology and Language Used
110.04 Design and Documentation Responsibility

Chapter 120 Planning
120.01 General
120.02 References
120.03 Acronyms and Definitions
120.04 Legislation and Policy Development
120.05 Planning at WSDOT
120.06 Linking Transportation Plans
120.07 Linking WSDOT Planning to Programming

Chapter 130 Project Development Sequence
130.01 General
130.02 References
130.03 Definitions
130.04 Project Development Sequence

Division 2 – Hearings, Environmental, and Permits

Chapter 210 Public Involvement and Hearings
210.01 General
210.02 References
210.03 Definitions
210.04 Public Involvement
210.05 Public Hearings
210.06 Environmental Hearing
210.07 Corridor Hearing
210.08 Design Hearing
210.09 Limited Access Hearing
210.10 Combined Hearings
210.11 Administrative Appeal Hearing
210.12 Follow-Up Hearing
210.13 Documentation

Chapter 220 Project Environmental Documentation
220.01 General
220.02 References
220.03 Definitions/Acronyms
220.04 Determining the Environmental Documentation
220.05 Identifying the Project Classification
220.06 Environmental Impact Statements: Class I Projects
220.07 Categorical Exclusions: Class II Projects
220.08 Environmental Assessments: Class III Projects
220.09 Reevaluations
220.10 Commitment File
220.11 Documentation

Chapter 230 Environmental Permits and Approvals
230.01 General
230.02 Permits and Approvals
230.03 Project Types and Permits
230.04 Design Process and Permit Interaction

Division 3 – Project Documentation

Chapter 300 Design Documentation, Approval, and Process Review
300.01 General
300.02 References
300.03 Definitions
300.04 Design Documentation
300.05 Project Development
300.06 FHWA Approval
300.07 Design Approval
300.08 Project Development Approval
300.09 Process Review

Chapter 310 Value Engineering
310.01 General
310.02 References
310.03 Definitions
310.04 Procedure
310.05 Documentation

Chapter 320 Traffic Analysis
320.01 General
320.02 References
320.03 Design Year
320.04 Definitions
320.05 Travel Forecasting (Transportation Modeling)
320.06 Traffic Analysis
320.07 Scope of Traffic Impact Analysis
320.08 Traffic Data
320.09 Traffic Impact Analysis Methodologies
320.10 Traffic Analysis Software
320.11 Mitigation Measures
320.12 Traffic Impact Analysis Report

Division 4 – Surveying

Chapter 400 Surveying and Mapping
400.01 General
400.02 References
400.03 Procedures
400.04 Datums
400.05 Global Positioning System
400.06 WSDOT Survey Monument Database
400.07 Geographic Information System
400.08 Photogrammetric Surveys
400.09 Documentation

Chapter 410 Monumentation
410.01 General
410.02 References
410.03 Definitions
410.04 Control Monuments
410.05 Alignment Monuments
410.06 Property Corners
410.07 Other Monuments
410.08 Filing Requirements
410.09 Documentation

Division 5 – Right of Way and Access Control

Chapter 510 Right of Way Considerations
510.01 General
510.02 References
510.03 Special Features
510.04 Easements and Permits
510.05 Programming for Funds
510.06 Appraisal and Acquisition
510.07 Transactions
510.08 Documentation

Chapter 520 Access Control
520.01 General
520.02 References
520.03 Definitions
520.04 Vocabulary

Chapter 530 Limited Access Control
530.01 General
530.02 Achieving Limited Access
530.03 Full Control (Most Restrictive)
530.04 Partial Control
530.05 Modified Control (Least Restrictive)
530.06 Access Approaches
530.07 Frontage Roads
530.08 Turnbacks
530.09 Adjacent Railroads
530.10 Modifications to Limited Access Highways
530.11 Documentation

Chapter 540 Managed Access Control
540.01 General
540.02 References
540.03 Definitions
540.04 Design Considerations
540.05 Managed Access Highway Classes
540.06 Corner Clearance Criteria
540.07 Access Connection Categories
540.08 Access Connection Permit
540.09 Permitting and Design Documentation
540.10 Other Considerations
540.11 Preconstruction Conference
540.12 Adjudicative Proceedings
540.13 Documentation

Chapter 550 Interchange Justification Report
550.01 General
550.02 References
550.03 Definitions
550.04 Procedures
550.05 Interchange Justification Report and Supporting Analyses
550.06 Report Organization and Appendices
550.07 Updating an IJR
550.08 Documentation

Chapter 560 Fencing
560.01 General
560.02 References
560.03 Design Criteria
560.04 Fencing Types
560.05 Gates
560.06 Procedure
560.07 Documentation

Division 6 – Soils and Paving

Chapter 610 Investigation of Soils, Rock, and Surfacing Materials
610.01 General
610.02 References
610.03 Materials Sources
610.04 Geotechnical Investigation, Design, and Reporting
610.05 Use of Geotechnical Consultants
610.06 Geotechnical Work by Others
610.07 Surfacing Report
610.08 Documentation

Chapter 620 Design of Pavement Structure
620.01 General
620.02 Estimating Tables

Chapter 630 Geosynthetics
630.01 General
630.02 References
630.03 Geosynthetic Types and Characteristics
630.04 Geosynthetic Function Definitions and Applications
630.05 Design Approach for Geosynthetics
630.06 Design Responsibility
630.07 Documentation

Division 7 – Structures

Chapter 700 Project Development Roles and Responsibilities for Projects With Structures
700.01 General
700.02 Procedures

Chapter 710 Site Data for Structures
710.01 General
710.02 References
710.03 Required Data for All Structures
710.04 Additional Data for Waterway Crossings
710.05 Additional Data for Grade Separations
710.06 Additional Data for Widenings
710.07 Documentation

Chapter 720 Bridges
720.01 General
720.02 References
720.03 Bridge Locations
720.04 Bridge Site Design Elements
720.05 Documentation

Chapter 730 Retaining Walls and Steep Reinforced Slopes
730.01 General
730.02 References
730.03 Design Principles
730.04 Design Requirements
730.05 Guidelines for Wall/Slope Selection
730.06 Design Responsibility and Process
730.07 Documentation

Chapter 740 Noise Barriers
740.01 General
740.02 References
740.03 Design
740.04 Procedures
740.05 Documentation

Division 8 – Hydraulics

Chapter 800 Hydraulic Design
800.01 General
800.02 References
800.03 Hydraulic Considerations
800.04 Safety Considerations
800.05 Design Responsibility
800.06 Documentation

Division 9 – Roadside Development

Chapter 900 Roadside Development
900.01 General
900.02 References
900.03 Legal Requirements
900.04 Roadside Classification Plan
900.05 Roadside Manual
900.06 Project Development
900.07 Documentation

Chapter 910 Contour Grading
910.01 General
910.02 References
910.03 Procedures
910.04 Recommendations
910.05 Documentation

Chapter 920 Vegetation
920.01 General
920.02 References
920.03 Discussion
920.04 Design Guidelines
920.05 Documentation

Chapter 930 Irrigation
930.01 General
930.02 References
930.03 Design Considerations
930.04 Documentation

Chapter 940 Soil Bioengineering
940.01 General
940.02 References
940.03 Uses for Soil Bioengineering
940.04 Design Responsibilities and Considerations
940.05 Documentation

Chapter 950 Public Art
950.01 General
950.02 References
950.03 Definitions
950.04 Standard Architectural Design
950.05 Criteria for Public Art
950.06 Process and Project Delivery Timing
950.07 Approvals
950.08 Documentation

Division 10 – Traffic Safety Elements

Chapter 1010 Work Zone Safety and Mobility
1010.01 General
1010.02 References
1010.03 Definitions
1010.04 Work Zone Safety and Mobility
1010.05 Transportation Management Plans and Significant Projects
1010.06 Work Zone TMP Strategy Development
1010.07 Capacity Analysis
1010.08 Work Zone Design Standards
1010.09 Temporary Traffic Control Devices
1010.10 Other Traffic Control Devices or Features
1010.11 Traffic Control Plan Development and PS&E
1010.12 Training and Resources
1010.13 Documentation

Chapter 1020 Signing
1020.01 General
1020.02 References
1020.03 Design Components
1020.04 Overhead Installation
1020.05 State Highway Route Numbers
1020.06 Mileposts
1020.07 Guide Sign Plan
1020.08 Documentation

Chapter 1030 Delineation
1030.01 General
1030.02 References
1030.03 Definitions
1030.04 Pavement Markings
1030.05 Guideposts
1030.06 Barrier Delineation
1030.07 Object Markers
1030.08 Wildlife Warning Reflectors
1030.09 Documentation

Chapter 1040 Illumination
1040.01 General
1040.02 References
1040.03 Definitions
1040.04 Design Considerations
1040.05 Required Illumination
1040.06 Additional Illumination
1040.07 Design Criteria
1040.08 Documentation

Chapter 1050 Intelligent Transportation Systems
1050.01 General
1050.02 References
1050.03 Traffic Data Collection
1050.04 Traffic Flow Control
1050.05 Motorist Information
1050.06 Systems Engineering
1050.07 Documentation

Division 11 – Project Design Criteria

Chapter 1100 Design Matrix Procedures
1100.01 General
1100.02 Selecting a Design Matrix
1100.03 Using a Design Matrix

Chapter 1110 Minor Operational Enhancement Projects
1110.01 General
1110.02 References
1110.03 Definitions
1110.04 Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix Procedures
1110.05 Selecting a Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix
1110.06 Project Type
1110.07 Using a Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix
1110.08 Project Approval
1110.09 Documentation

Chapter 1120 Basic Design Level
1120.01 General
1120.02 Basic Safety
1120.03 Minor Safety and Minor Preservation Work
1120.04 Documentation

Chapter 1130 Modified Design Level
1130.01 General
1130.02 Design Speed
1130.03 Alignment
1130.04 Roadway Widths
1130.05 Cross Slopes
1130.06 Sideslopes
1130.07 Bike and Pedestrian
1130.08 Bridges
1130.09 Intersections
1130.10 Documentation

Chapter 1140 Full Design Level
1140.01 General
1140.02 References
1140.03 Definitions
1140.04 Functional Classification
1140.05 Terrain Classification
1140.06 Geometric Design Data
1140.07 Design Speed
1140.08 Traffic Lanes
1140.09 Shoulders
1140.10 Medians
1140.11 Curbs
1140.12 Parking
1140.13 Pavement Type
1140.14 Structure Width
1140.15 Right of Way Width

1140.16 Grades
1140.17 Fencing
1140.18 Documentation

Division 12 – Geometrics

Chapter 1210 Geometric Plan Elements
1210.01 General
1210.02 References
1210.03 Definitions
1210.04 Horizontal Alignment
1210.05 Distribution Facilities
1210.06 Number of Lanes and Arrangement
1210.07 Pavement Transitions
1210.08 Procedures
1210.09 Documentation

Chapter 1220 Geometric Profile Elements
1220.01 General
1220.02 References
1220.03 Vertical Alignment
1220.04 Coordination of Vertical and Horizontal Alignments
1220.05 Airport Clearance
1220.06 Railroad Crossings
1220.07 Procedures
1220.08 Documentation

Chapter 1230 Geometric Cross Section
1230.01 General
1230.02 References
1230.03 Definitions
1230.04 Roadways
1230.05 Medians and Outer Separations
1230.06 Roadsides
1230.07 Roadway Sections
1230.08 Documentation

Chapter 1240 Turning Roadways
1240.01 General
1240.02 References
1240.03 Definitions
1240.04 Turning Roadway Widths
1240.05 Documentation

Chapter 1250 Superelevation
1250.01 General
1250.02 References
1250.03 Definitions
1250.04 Superelevation Rate Selection
1250.05 Existing Curves
1250.06 Turning Movements at Intersections
1250.07 Runoff for Highway Curves
1250.08 Runoff for Ramp Curves
1250.09 Documentation

Chapter 1260 Sight Distance
1260.01 General
1260.02 References
1260.03 Definitions
1260.04 Stopping Sight Distance
1260.05 Passing Sight Distance
1260.06 Decision Sight Distance
1260.07 Documentation

Chapter 1270 Auxiliary Lanes
1270.01 General
1270.02 References
1270.03 Definitions
1270.04 Climbing Lanes
1270.05 Passing Lanes
1270.06 Slow-Moving Vehicle Turnouts
1270.07 Shoulder Driving for Slow Vehicles
1270.08 Emergency Escape Ramps
1270.09 Chain-Up and Chain-Off Areas
1270.10 Documentation

Division 13 – Intersections and Interchanges

Chapter 1310 Intersections at Grade
1310.01 General
1310.02 References
1310.03 Definitions
1310.04 Intersection Configurations
1310.05 Design Considerations
1310.06 Design Vehicle Selection
1310.07 Design Elements
1310.08 U-Turns
1310.09 Intersection Sight Distance
1310.10 Traffic Control at Intersections
1310.11 Signing and Pavement Marking
1310.12 Procedures
1310.13 Documentation

Chapter 1320 Roundabouts
1320.01 General
1320.02 References
1320.03 Definitions
1320.04 Roundabout Types
1320.05 Capacity Analysis
1320.06 Geometric Design
1320.07 Pedestrians
1320.08 Bicycles
1320.09 Signing and Pavement Marking
1320.10 Illumination
1320.11 Access, Parking, and Transit Facilities
1320.12 Design Procedures
1320.13 Documentation

Chapter 1330 Traffic Control Signals
1330.01 General
1330.02 References
1330.03 Definitions
1330.04 Procedures
1330.05 Signal Warrants
1330.06 Conventional Traffic Signal Design
1330.07 Documentation

Chapter 1340 Road Approaches
1340.01 General
1340.02 References
1340.03 Definitions
1340.04 Design Considerations
1340.05 Road Approach Design Template
1340.06 Sight Distance
1340.07 Road Approach Location
1340.08 Drainage
1340.09 Procedures
1340.10 Documentation

Chapter 1350 Railroad Grade Crossings
1350.01 General
1350.02 References
1350.03 Plans
1350.04 Traffic Control Systems
1350.05 Pullout Lanes
1350.06 Crossing Surfaces
1350.07 Crossing Closure
1350.08 Traffic Control During Construction and Maintenance
1350.09 Railroad Grade Crossing Petitions and WUTC Orders
1350.10 Grade Crossing Improvement Projects
1350.11 Light Rail
1350.12 Documentation

Chapter 1360 Interchanges
1360.01 General
1360.02 References
1360.03 Definitions
1360.04 Interchange Design
1360.05 Ramps
1360.06 Interchange Connections
1360.07 Ramp Terminal Intersections at Crossroads
1360.08 Interchanges on Two-Lane Highways
1360.09 Interchange Plans for Approval
1360.10 Documentation

Chapter 1370 Median Crossovers
1370.01 General
1370.02 Analysis
1370.03 Design
1370.04 Approval
1370.05 Documentation

Division 14 – HOV and Transit

Chapter 1410 High-Occupancy Vehicle Facilities
1410.01 General
1410.02 References
1410.03 Definitions
1410.04 Preliminary Design and Planning
1410.05 Operations
1410.06 Design Criteria
1410.07 Documentation

Chapter 1420 HOV Direct Access
1420.01 General
1420.02 References
1420.03 Definitions
1420.04 HOV Access Types and Locations
1420.05 Direct Access Geometrics
1420.06 Passenger Access
1420.07 Traffic Design Elements
1420.08 Documentation

Chapter 1430 Transit Facilities
1430.01 General
1430.02 References
1430.03 Definitions
1430.04 Park & Ride Lots
1430.05 Transfer/Transit Centers
1430.06 Bus Stops and Pullouts
1430.07 Passenger Amenities
1430.08 Roadway Design and Design Vehicle Characteristics
1430.09 Intersection Radii
1430.10 Universal Access
1430.11 Documentation

Division 15 – Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities

Chapter 1510 Pedestrian Facilities
1510.01 General
1510.02 References
1510.03 Definitions
1510.04 Policy
1510.05 Pedestrian Facility Design
1510.06 Pedestrian Facility Design: Structures
1510.07 Other Pedestrian Facilities
1510.08 Illumination and Signing
1510.09 Work Zone Pedestrian Considerations
1510.10 Documentation

Chapter 1520 Bicycle Facilities
1520.01 General
1520.02 References
1520.03 Definitions
1520.04 Facility Selection
1520.05 Project Requirements
1520.06 Shared-Use Path Design
1520.07 Bike Lane Design

1520.08 Shared Roadway Design
1520.09 Signed Shared Roadway
1520.10 Documentation

Division 16 – Roadside Safety Elements

Chapter 1600 Roadside Safety
1600.01 General
1600.02 References
1600.03 Definitions
1600.04 Clear Zone
1600.05 Features to Be Considered for Mitigation
1600.06 Median Considerations
1600.07 Other Roadside Safety Features
1600.08 Documentation

Chapter 1610 Traffic Barriers
1610.01 General
1610.02 References
1610.03 Definitions
1610.04 Project Criteria
1610.05 Barrier Design
1610.06 Beam Guardrail
1610.07 Cable Barrier
1610.08 Concrete Barrier
1610.09 Special-Use Barriers
1610.10 Bridge Traffic Barriers
1610.11 Other Barriers
1610.12 Documentation

Chapter 1620 Impact Attenuator Systems
1620.01 General
1620.02 Design Criteria
1620.03 Selection
1620.04 Documentation

Division 17 – Roadside Facilities

Chapter 1710 Safety Rest Areas and Traveler Services
1710.01 General
1710.02 References
1710.03 Documentation

Chapter 1720 Weigh Sites
1720.01 General
1720.02 Definitions
1720.03 Planning, Development, and Responsibilities
1720.04 Permanent Facilities
1720.05 Portable Facilities
1720.06 Shoulder Sites
1720.07 Federal Participation
1720.08 Procedures
1720.09 Documentation

Exhibit 110-1	Design Documentation Sequence for a Typical Design-Build Project
Exhibit 120-1	Relationship Between Transportation Plans and Planning Organizations
Exhibit 120-2	Transportation Improvement Programs
Exhibit 120-3	Linking Planning and Programming
Exhibit 130-1	Program Elements: Highway Preservation
Exhibit 130-2	Program Elements: Highway Improvement
Exhibit 130-3	Highway System Plan Implementation
Exhibit 210-1	Types of Public Hearings
Exhibit 210-2	Public Hearing Formats
Exhibit 210-3	Prehearing Packet Checklist
Exhibit 210-4	Sequence for Corridor, Design, and Environmental Hearings
Exhibit 210-5	Sequence for Limited Access Hearing
Exhibit 210-6	Hearing Summary Approvals
Exhibit 230-1	Project Environmental Matrix 1: Permit Probabilities for Interstate Routes (Main Line)
Exhibit 230-2	Project Environmental Matrix 2: Permit Probabilities for Interstate Interchange Areas
Exhibit 230-3	Project Environmental Matrix 3: Permit Probabilities for NHS Routes, Non-Interstate (Main Line)
Exhibit 230-4	Project Environmental Matrix 4: Permit Probabilities for Interchange Areas, NHS (Except Interstate), and Non-NHS
Exhibit 230-5	Project Environmental Matrix 5: Non-NHS Routes (Main Line)
Exhibit 230-6	Endnotes for Project Environmental Matrices
Exhibit 230-7	Environmental Interrelationship: HMA/PCCP/BST Main Line Overlay
Exhibit 230-8	Environmental Interrelationship: Safety Corridor Channelization Main Line
Exhibit 300-1	Design Matrix Documentation Requirements
Exhibit 300-2	Design Approval Level
Exhibit 300-3	Approvals
Exhibit 300-4	PS&E Process Approvals
Exhibit 300-5	Common Components of Design Documentation Package
Exhibit 300-6	Evaluate Upgrade (EU) Documentation Contents List
Exhibit 300-7	Deviation Request and Project Analysis Contents List
Exhibit 300-8	Design to Construction Transition Project Turnover Checklist Example
Exhibit 310-1	Seven-Phase Job Plan for VE Studies
Exhibit 310-2	VE Study Team Tools
Exhibit 320-1	Measures of Effectiveness by Facility Type
Exhibit 400-1	Interagency Agreement
Exhibit 400-2	Report of Survey Mark Example
Exhibit 410-1	Monument Documentation Summary

Exhibit 410-2	DNR Permit Application
Exhibit 410-3	DNR Completion Report Form
Exhibit 410-4	Land Corner Record
Exhibit 510-1	Appraisal and Acquisition
Exhibit 520-1	Access Control Vocabulary
Exhibit 530-1a	Full Access Control Limits: Interchange
Exhibit 530-1b	Full Access Control Limits: Interchange
Exhibit 530-1c	Full Access Control Limits: Interchange With Roundabouts
Exhibit 530-1d	Full Access Control Limits: Ramp Terminal With Transition Taper
Exhibit 530-1e	Full Access Control Limits: Single Point Urban Interchange
Exhibit 530-2a	Partial Access Control Limits: At-Grade Intersections
Exhibit 530-2b	Partial Access Control Limits: Roundabout Intersections
Exhibit 530-3a	Modified Access Control Limits: Roundabout Intersections
Exhibit 530-3b	Modified Access Control Limits: Intersections
Exhibit 540-1	Minimum Corner Clearance: Distance From Access Connection to Public Road or Street
Exhibit 540-2	Managed Access Highway Class Description
Exhibit 550-1	Interstate Routes: Interchange Justification Report Content and Review Levels
Exhibit 550-2	Non-Interstate Routes: IJR Content and Review Levels
Exhibit 550-3	Interstate IJR: Process Flow Chart
Exhibit 550-4	Non-Interstate IJR: Process Flow Chart
Exhibit 550-5	IJR: Stamped Cover Sheet Example
Exhibit 610-1	Materials Source Development
Exhibit 620-1	Estimating: Miscellaneous Tables
Exhibit 620-2a	Estimating: Hot Mix Asphalt Pavement and Asphalt Distribution Tables
Exhibit 620-2b	Estimating: Asphalt Distribution Tables
Exhibit 620-3	Estimating: Bituminous Surface Treatment
Exhibit 620-4	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Typical Section Formulae and Example
Exhibit 620-5a	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5b	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5c	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5d	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5e	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5f	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5g	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 620-5h	Estimating: Base and Surfacing Quantities
Exhibit 630-1	Selection Criteria for Geotextile Class
Exhibit 630-2	Maximum Sheet Flow Lengths for Silt Fences
Exhibit 630-3	Maximum Contributing Area for Ditch and Swale Applications
Exhibit 630-4	Design Process for Drainage and Erosion Control: Geotextiles and Nonstandard Applications
Exhibit 630-5	Design Process for Separation, Soil Stabilization, and Silt Fence
Exhibit 630-6	Examples of Various Geosynthetics

Exhibit 630-7	Geotextile Application Examples
Exhibit 630-8	Definition of Slope Length
Exhibit 630-9	Definition of Ditch or Swale Storage Length and Width
Exhibit 630-10	Silt Fences for Large Contributing Area
Exhibit 630-11	Silt Fence End Treatment
Exhibit 630-12	Gravel Check Dams for Silt Fences
Exhibit 700-1	Determination of the Roles and Responsibilities for Projects With Structures: Project Development Phase
Exhibit 710-1	Bridge Site Plan Scales
Exhibit 710-2	Bridge Site Data Checklist
Exhibit 720-1	Bridge Vertical Clearances
Exhibit 720-2	Highway Structure Over Railroad
Exhibit 720-3	Embankment Slope at Bridge Ends
Exhibit 730-1	Summary of Mechanically Stabilized Earth (MSE) Gravity Wall/Slope Options Available
Exhibit 730-2	Summary of Prefabricated Modular Gravity Wall Options Available
Exhibit 730-3	Summary of Rigid Gravity and Semigravity Wall Options Available
Exhibit 730-4	Summary of Nongravity Wall Options Available
Exhibit 730-5	Summary of Anchored Wall Options Available
Exhibit 730-6	Other Wall/Slope Options Available
Exhibit 730-7	Typical Mechanically Stabilized Earth Gravity Walls
Exhibit 730-8	Typical Prefabricated Modular Gravity Walls
Exhibit 730-9	Typical Rigid Gravity, Semigravity Cantilever, Nongravity Cantilever, and Anchored Walls
Exhibit 730-10	Typical Rockery and Reinforced Slopes
Exhibit 730-11	MSE Wall Drainage Detail
Exhibit 730-12	Retaining Walls With Traffic Barriers
Exhibit 730-13a	Retaining Wall Design Process
Exhibit 730-13b	Retaining Wall Design Process: Proprietary
Exhibit 740-1	Standard Noise Wall Types
Exhibit 900-1	Funding Source Determines Extent of Restoration
Exhibit 940-1	Soil Bioengineering Design
Exhibit 1010-1	General Lane Closure Work Zone Capacity
Exhibit 1010-2	Minimum Work Zone Clear Zone Distance
Exhibit 1010-3	Transportation Management Plan Components Checklist
Exhibit 1010-4	Abrupt Edge Pavement Drop-Off Protection
Exhibit 1020-1	Reflective Sheeting Requirements for Overhead Signs
Exhibit 1020-2	Timber Posts
Exhibit 1020-3	Wide Flange Steel Posts
Exhibit 1020-4	Laminated Wood Box Posts
Exhibit 1030-1	Pavement Marking Material Guide
Exhibit 1030-2	Guidepost Placement
Exhibit 1040-1a	Freeway Lighting Applications

Exhibit 1040-1b	Freeway Lighting Applications
Exhibit 1040-1c	Freeway Lighting Applications
Exhibit 1040-2	Freeway Ramp Terminals
Exhibit 1040-3	Ramp With Meter
Exhibit 1040-4	Freeway-to-Freeway Connection
Exhibit 1040-5	HOT (High-Occupancy Toll) Lane Enter/Exit Zone
Exhibit 1040-6	Lane Reduction
Exhibit 1040-7	Add Lane
Exhibit 1040-8a	Intersection With Left-Turn Channelization: Divided Highway
Exhibit 1040-8b	Intersections With Left-Turn Channelization
Exhibit 1040-9	Intersections With Drop Lane/Right-Turn Lane Channelization
Exhibit 1040-10	Intersections With Traffic Signals
Exhibit 1040-11	Intersection Without Channelization
Exhibit 1040-12	Roundabout
Exhibit 1040-13	Railroad Crossing With Gates or Signals
Exhibit 1040-14	Midblock Pedestrian Crossing
Exhibit 1040-15	Transit Flyer Stop
Exhibit 1040-16	Major Parking Lot
Exhibit 1040-17	Minor Parking Lot
Exhibit 1040-18	Truck Weigh Site
Exhibit 1040-19	Safety Rest Area
Exhibit 1040-20	Chain-Up/Chain-Off Parking Area
Exhibit 1040-21	Tunnel
Exhibit 1040-22	Bridge Inspection Lighting System
Exhibit 1040-23	Traffic Split Around an Obstruction
Exhibit 1040-24	Construction Work Zone and Detour
Exhibit 1040-25	Light Levels and Uniformity Ratios
Exhibit 1050-1	Systems Engineering "V" Diagram
Exhibit 1050-2a	ITS Project Systems Engineering Review Form
Exhibit 1050-2b	ITS Project Systems Engineering Review Form Instructions

Exhibit 1100-1	Design Matrix Selection Guide
Exhibit 1100-2	Sites With Potential for Improvement
Exhibit 1100-3	NHS Highways in Washington
Exhibit 1100-4	Design Matrix 1: Interstate Routes (Main Line)
Exhibit 1100-5	Design Matrix 2: Interstate Interchange Areas
Exhibit 1100-6	Design Matrix 3: Main Line NHS Routes (Except Interstate)
Exhibit 1100-7	Design Matrix 4: Interchange Areas, NHS (Except Interstate), and Non-NHS
Exhibit 1100-8	Design Matrix 5: Main Line Non-NHS Routes
Exhibit 1110-1	Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix Selection Guide
Exhibit 1110-2	Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix 1: Interstate and NHS Freeway Routes
Exhibit 1110-3	Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix 2: NHS Nonfreeway Routes
Exhibit 1110-4	Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix 3: Non-NHS Routes
Exhibit 1110-5	Q Project Design Summary/Approval Template
Exhibit 1110-6	Refuge Lane for T-Intersections on Two-Lane Highways
Exhibit 1130-1	Desirable Design Speed
Exhibit 1130-2	Stopping Sight Distance: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-3	Minimum Crest Vertical Curve Length: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-4	Minimum Superelevation: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-5	Side Friction Factor
Exhibit 1130-6	One-Way Roadway and Ramp Turning Roadway Widths: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-7	Design Vehicles: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-8	Evaluation for Stopping Sight Distance for Crest Vertical Curves: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-9a	Evaluation for Stopping Sight Distance for Horizontal Curves: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-9b	Evaluation for Stopping Sight Distance Obstruction for Horizontal Curves: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-10	Multilane Highways and Bridges: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-11	Two-Lane Highways and Bridges: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-12a	Minimum Total Roadway Widths for Two-Lane Two-Way Highway Curves: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-12b	Minimum Total Roadway Widths for Two-Lane Two-Way Highway Curves: Modified Design Level, Based on the Delta Angle
Exhibit 1130-13	Main Line Roadway Sections: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-14	Ramp Roadway Sections: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1140-1	Desirable Design Speed
Exhibit 1140-2	Minimum Shoulder Width
Exhibit 1140-3	Shoulder Width for Curbed Sections in Urban Areas
Exhibit 1140-4	Median Width

Exhibit 1140-5	Geometric Design Data: Interstate
Exhibit 1140-6	Geometric Design Data: Principal Arterial
Exhibit 1140-7	Geometric Design Data: Minor Arterial
Exhibit 1140-8	Geometric Design Data: Collector
Exhibit 1140-9	Geometric Design Data: Urban Managed Access Highways
Exhibit 1210-1	Maximum Angle Without Curve
Exhibit 1210-2a	Alignment Examples
Exhibit 1210-2b	Alignment Examples
Exhibit 1210-2c	Alignment Examples
Exhibit 1220-1	Grade Length
Exhibit 1220-2a	Coordination of Horizontal and Vertical Alignments
Exhibit 1220-2b	Coordination of Horizontal and Vertical Alignments
Exhibit 1220-2c	Coordination of Horizontal and Vertical Alignments
Exhibit 1220-3	Grading at Railroad Crossings
Exhibit 1230-1	Divided Highway Roadway Sections
Exhibit 1230-2	Undivided Multilane Highway Roadway Sections
Exhibit 1230-3	Two-Lane Highway Roadway Sections
Exhibit 1230-4a	Ramp Roadway Sections
Exhibit 1230-4b	Ramp Roadway Sections
Exhibit 1230-5a	Shoulder Details
Exhibit 1230-5b	Shoulder Details
Exhibit 1230-6a	Divided Highway Median Sections
Exhibit 1230-6b	Divided Highway Median Sections
Exhibit 1230-6c	Divided Highway Median Sections
Exhibit 1230-7a	Roadway Sections in Rock Cuts: Design A
Exhibit 1230-7b	Roadway Sections in Rock Cuts: Design B
Exhibit 1230-8	Roadway Sections With Stepped Slopes
Exhibit 1230-9a	Bridge End Slopes
Exhibit 1230-9b	Bridge End Slopes
Exhibit 1240-1a	Traveled Way Width for Two-Lane Two-Way Turning Roadways
Exhibit 1240-1b	Traveled Way Width for Two-Lane Two-Way Turning Roadways: Based on the Delta Angle
Exhibit 1240-2a	Traveled Way Width for Two-Lane One-Way Turning Roadways
Exhibit 1240-2b	Traveled Way Width for Two-Lane One-Way Turning Roadways: Based on the Delta Angle
Exhibit 1240-3a	Traveled Way Width for One-Lane Turning Roadways
Exhibit 1240-3b	Traveled Way Width for One-Lane Turning Roadways: Based on the Delta Angle, Radius on Outside Edge of Traveled Way
Exhibit 1240-3c	Traveled Way Width for One-Lane Turning Roadways: Based on the Delta Angle, Radius on Inside Edge of Traveled Way
Exhibit 1250-1	Minimum Radius for Normal Crown Section
Exhibit 1250-2	Minimum Radius for Existing Curves
Exhibit 1250-3	Side Friction Factor

Exhibit 1250-4a	Superelevation Rates (10% Max)
Exhibit 1250-4b	Superelevation Rates (8% Max)
Exhibit 1250-4c	Superelevation Rates (6% Max)
Exhibit 1250-5	Superelevation Rates for Intersections and Low-Speed Urban Roadways
Exhibit 1250-6a	Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-6b	Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-6c	Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-6d	Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-6e	Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-7a	Superelevation Transitions for Ramp Curves
Exhibit 1250-7b	Superelevation Transitions for Ramp Curves
Exhibit 1260-1	Design Stopping Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-2	Stopping Sight Distance: Design Criteria Selection
Exhibit 1260-3	Design Stopping Sight Distance on Grades
Exhibit 1260-4	Stopping Sight Distance on Grades
Exhibit 1260-5	Stopping Sight Distance: Crest Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1260-6	Sight Distance: Crest Vertical Curve
Exhibit 1260-7	Stopping Sight: Distance for Sag Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1260-8	Sight Distance: Sag Vertical Curve
Exhibit 1260-9	Sight Distance Area on Horizontal Curves
Exhibit 1260-10	Horizontal Stopping Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-11	Sight Distance: Horizontal Curves
Exhibit 1260-12	Stopping Sight Distance: Overlapping Horizontal and Crest Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1260-13	Existing Stopping Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-14	Passing Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-15	Passing Sight Distance: Crest Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1260-16	Decision Sight Distance
Exhibit 1270-1	Climbing Lane Example
Exhibit 1270-2a	Speed Reduction Warrant: Performance for Trucks
Exhibit 1270-2b	Speed Reduction Warrant Example
Exhibit 1270-3	Auxiliary Climbing Lane
Exhibit 1270-4	Passing Lane Example
Exhibit 1270-5	Length of Passing Lanes
Exhibit 1270-6	Passing Lane Configurations
Exhibit 1270-7	Buffer Between Opposing Passing Lanes
Exhibit 1270-8	Auxiliary Passing Lane
Exhibit 1270-9	Slow-Moving Vehicle Turnout
Exhibit 1270-10	Emergency Escape Ramp Example
Exhibit 1270-11	Emergency Escape Ramp Length
Exhibit 1270-12	Rolling Resistance (R)
Exhibit 1270-13	Typical Emergency Escape Ramp
Exhibit 1270-14	Chain Up/Chain Off Area

Exhibit 1310-1	Intersection Area
Exhibit 1310-2a	Indirect Left Turns: Signalized Intersections
Exhibit 1310-2b	Indirect Left Turns: Unsignalized Intersections
Exhibit 1310-3	Split Tee Intersections
Exhibit 1310-4	Split Intersections
Exhibit 1310-5	Design Vehicle Types
Exhibit 1310-6	Minimum Intersection Design Vehicle
Exhibit 1310-7	Left-Turn Storage With Trucks (ft)
Exhibit 1310-8	U-Turn Spacing
Exhibit 1310-9	U-Turn Roadway
Exhibit 1310-10	Interchange Ramp Terminal Details
Exhibit 1310-11	Right-Turn Corner
Exhibit 1310-12a	Left-Turn Storage Guidelines: Two-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-12b	Left-Turn Storage Guidelines: Four-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-13a	Left-Turn Storage Length: Two-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-13b	Left-Turn Storage Length: Two-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-13c	Left-Turn Storage Length: Two-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-14a	Median Channelization: Widening
Exhibit 1310-14b	Median Channelization: Median Width 11 ft or More
Exhibit 1310-14c	Median Channelization: Median Width 23 ft to 26 ft
Exhibit 1310-14d	Median Channelization: Median Width of More Than 26 ft
Exhibit 1310-14e	Median Channelization: Minimum Protected Storage
Exhibit 1310-14f	Median Channelization: Two-Way Left-Turn Lane
Exhibit 1310-15	Right-Turn Lane Guidelines
Exhibit 1310-16	Right-Turn Pocket and Right-Turn Taper
Exhibit 1310-17	Right-Turn Lane
Exhibit 1310-18	Acceleration Lane
Exhibit 1310-19a	Traffic Island Designs
Exhibit 1310-19b	Traffic Island Designs: Compound Curve
Exhibit 1310-19c	Traffic Island Designs
Exhibit 1310-20a	Turning Path Template
Exhibit 1310-20b	Turning Path Template
Exhibit 1310-20c	Turning Path Template
Exhibit 1310-21	U-Turn Median Openings
Exhibit 1310-22a	Sight Distance at Intersections
Exhibit 1310-22b	Sight Distance at Intersections
Exhibit 1320-1	Roundabout Elements
Exhibit 1320-2	Entry Angle
Exhibit 1320-3	Turning Radius (R)
Exhibit 1320-4	Mini Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-5	Single-Lane Roundabout

Exhibit 1320-6a	Multilane Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-6b	Multilane Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-6c	Multilane Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-7a	Teardrop Roundabout at Ramp Terminals
Exhibit 1320-7b	Double Teardrop
Exhibit 1320-7c	Teardrop Roundabout With Ramps
Exhibit 1320-8	Initial Ranges
Exhibit 1320-9	Speed vs. Radius
Exhibit 1320-10	Approach Leg Alignment
Exhibit 1320-11	Circulating Roadway Slope
Exhibit 1320-12	Speed vs. Intersection Sight Distance
Exhibit 1320-13a	Design Iteration Steps
Exhibit 1320-13b	Design Iteration Steps
Exhibit 1320-14a	Truck Turning Paths
Exhibit 1320-14b	Truck Turning Paths
Exhibit 1320-15a	Fastest Path Radii
Exhibit 1320-15b	Fastest Path Radii
Exhibit 1320-15c	Fastest Path Radii
Exhibit 1320-16	Consecutive Radii
Exhibit 1320-17	Coinciding Radii and Conflict Points
Exhibit 1320-18	Entry Design Path
Exhibit 1320-19	Entry and Exit Curves
Exhibit 1320-20	Central Island and Cross Section
Exhibit 1320-21	Approach Stopping Sight Distance to Crosswalk
Exhibit 1320-22	Stopping Sight Distance on Circulatory Roadway
Exhibit 1320-23	Exit Stopping Sight Distance to Crosswalk
Exhibit 1320-24	Intersection Sight Distance
Exhibit 1320-25	Landscaping Height Restrictions for Intersection Sight Distance
Exhibit 1320-26	Right-Turn Slip Lane Termination
Exhibit 1320-27	Add and Drop Lanes
Exhibit 1320-28	Railroad Gate Configuration
Exhibit 1320-29	Bicycle Lanes
Exhibit 1320-30	Roundabout Signing
Exhibit 1320-31	Roundabout Striping and Pavement Marking
Exhibit 1320-32	Roundabout Illumination
Exhibit 1320-33a	Multiple Access Circulation
Exhibit 1320-33b	Multiple Access Circulation
Exhibit 1330-1	Responsibility for Facilities
Exhibit 1330-2	Standard Intersection Movements and Head Numbers
Exhibit 1330-3	Phase Diagrams: Four-Way Intersections
Exhibit 1330-4	Left-Turn Lane Configuration Examples
Exhibit 1330-5	Examples of Acceptable Barriers Closing Pedestrian Crossings

Exhibit 1330-6a	Pedestrian Push Button Locations
Exhibit 1330-6b	Pedestrian Push Button Locations
Exhibit 1330-7	Decision Zone Loop Placement
Exhibit 1330-8	Loop Numbering Layout
Exhibit 1330-9	Signal Display Maximum Heights
Exhibit 1330-10	Signal Display Areas
Exhibit 1330-11a	Strain Pole and Foundation Selection Procedure
Exhibit 1330-11b	Strain Pole and Foundation Selection Procedure
Exhibit 1330-12	Strain Pole and Foundation Selection Example
Exhibit 1330-13	Conduit and Conductor Sizes
Exhibit 1330-14a	Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14b	Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14c	Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14d	Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14e	Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14f	Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-15	Strain Pole and Foundation Selection Example
Exhibit 1330-16	Conduit and Conductor Sizes
Exhibit 1340-1	Road Approach Design Templates
Exhibit 1340-2	Road Approach Access Category
Exhibit 1340-3	Road Approach Design Template A1
Exhibit 1340-4	Road Approach Design Templates B1 and C1
Exhibit 1340-5	Road Approach Design Template D1
Exhibit 1340-6	Road Approach Sight Distance
Exhibit 1350-1	Sight Distance at Railroad Crossing
Exhibit 1350-2	Typical Pullout Lane at Railroad Crossing
Exhibit 1360-1	Basic Interchange Patterns
Exhibit 1360-2	Interchange Spacing
Exhibit 1360-3	Minimum Ramp Connection Spacing
Exhibit 1360-4	Ramp Design Speed
Exhibit 1360-5	Maximum Ramp Grade
Exhibit 1360-6	Ramp Widths
Exhibit 1360-7a	Lane Balance
Exhibit 1360-7b	Lane Balance
Exhibit 1360-8	Main Line Lane Reduction Alternatives
Exhibit 1360-9	Acceleration Lane Length
Exhibit 1360-10	Deceleration Lane Length
Exhibit 1360-11a	Gore Area Characteristics
Exhibit 1360-11b	Gore Area Characteristics
Exhibit 1360-12	Length of Weaving Sections
Exhibit 1360-13a	On-Connection: Single-Lane, Tapered
Exhibit 1360-13b	On-Connection: Single-Lane, Parallel

Exhibit 1360-13c	On-Connection: Two-Lane, Parallel
Exhibit 1360-13d	On-Connection: Two-Lane, Tapered
Exhibit 1360-14a	Off-Connection: Single-Lane, Tapered
Exhibit 1360-14b	Off-Connection: Single-Lane, Parallel
Exhibit 1360-14c	Off-Connection: Single-Lane, One-Lane Reduction
Exhibit 1360-14d	Off-Connection: Two-Lane, Tapered
Exhibit 1360-14e	Off-Connection: Two-Lane, Parallel
Exhibit 1360-15a	Collector-Distributor: Outer Separations
Exhibit 1360-15b	Collector Distributor: Off-Connections
Exhibit 1360-15c	Collector Distributor: On-Connections
Exhibit 1360-16	Loop Ramp Connections
Exhibit 1360-17	Temporary Ramps
Exhibit 1360-18	Interchange Plan
Exhibit 1410-1	Minimum Traveled Way Widths for Articulated Buses
Exhibit 1410-2	Typical HOV Lane Sections
Exhibit 1410-3	Roadway Widths for Two-Lane Ramps With an HOV Lane
Exhibit 1410-4a	Single-Lane Ramp Meter With HOV Bypass
Exhibit 1410-4b	Two-Lane Ramp Meter With HOV Bypass
Exhibit 1410-5a	Enforcement Area: One Direction Only
Exhibit 1410-5b	Enforcement Area: Median
Exhibit 1420-1	Minimum Ramp Widths for Articulated Buses
Exhibit 1420-2	Gap Acceptance Length for Parallel On Connections
Exhibit 1420-3	Drop Ramp
Exhibit 1420-4	T Ramp
Exhibit 1420-5	Flyover Ramp
Exhibit 1420-6	Side Platform Flyer Stop
Exhibit 1420-7	At-Grade Crossing Flyer Stop
Exhibit 1420-8	Transit Stops at Ramps
Exhibit 1420-9	Other Transit Stops
Exhibit 1420-10	Single-Lane Parallel On Connection
Exhibit 1420-11	HOV Direct Access Acceleration Lane Length
Exhibit 1420-12	Single-Lane Parallel Off Connection
Exhibit 1420-13	Drop Ramp Gore Area Characteristics
Exhibit 1420-14	Deceleration Lane Length for Buses
Exhibit 1420-15	T Ramp Design
Exhibit 1420-16	Flyer Stop Signing
Exhibit 1420-17	HOV Direct Access Signing: Main Line
Exhibit 1420-18	HOV Direct Access Signing: Local Street and Ramp Terminal
Exhibit 1420-19	HOV Direct Access Overhead Signs
Exhibit 1420-20	HOV Direct Access Shoulder-Mounted Signs
Exhibit 1430-1	Bus Berth Designs
Exhibit 1430-2	Transit Center Sawtooth Bus Berth

Exhibit 1430-3	Bus Turnout Transfer Center
Exhibit 1430-4	Off-Street Transfer Center
Exhibit 1430-5	Minimum Bus Zone Dimensions
Exhibit 1430-6	Bus Stop Pullouts: Arterial Streets
Exhibit 1430-7	Minimum Bus Zone and Pullout After Right-Turn Dimensions
Exhibit 1430-8	Shelter Siting
Exhibit 1430-9	Typical Bus Shelter Design
Exhibit 1430-10	Turning Template for a 40-Foot Bus
Exhibit 1430-11	Turning Template for an Articulated Bus
Exhibit 1430-12	Intersection Design
Exhibit 1430-13	Cross-Street Width Occupied by Turning Vehicle for Various Angles of Intersection and Curb Radii
Exhibit 1430-14	Passenger Loading Pad
Exhibit 1510-1	Pedestrian Route Geometrics
Exhibit 1510-2	Shared-Use Path
Exhibit 1510-3	Sidewalk With Buffer
Exhibit 1510-4	Driveway/Sidewalk Crossings
Exhibit 1510-5	Curb Ramps
Exhibit 1510-6	Curb Ramp Common Elements
Exhibit 1510-7	Examples of Acceptable Barriers Closing Pedestrian Crossings
Exhibit 1510-8	Counter Slope Alternative
Exhibit 1510-9	Curb Ramp Drainage
Exhibit 1510-10	Pedestrian Push Button Locations
Exhibit 1510-11	Obstructed Line of Sight at Intersection
Exhibit 1510-12	Midblock Pedestrian Crossing
Exhibit 1510-13	Midblock Crossing With Beacon
Exhibit 1510-14	Raised Island With Pedestrian Pass-Through
Exhibit 1510-15	Improved Line of Sight at Intersection
Exhibit 1510-16	Curb Extension Examples
Exhibit 1510-17	Pedestrian Railroad Warning Device
Exhibit 1510-18	Pedestrian Railroad Crossings
Exhibit 1510-19	Pedestrian Bridges
Exhibit 1510-20	Pedestrian Tunnel
Exhibit 1510-21	Pedestrian Access Ramp
Exhibit 1510-22	Work Zones and Pedestrian Facilities
Exhibit 1510-23	Pedestrian Access Route
Exhibit 1510-24	Sidewalk Recommendations
Exhibit 1510-25	Crosswalk Guidelines
Exhibit 1510-26	Crosswalks and Pedestrian Access Route Cross Slope
Exhibit 1510-27	U.S. Access Board Accessibility Requirements for Pedestrian Facility Design
Exhibit 1520-1	Bike Facility Selection
Exhibit 1520-2	Shared-Use Path

Exhibit 1520-3	Typical Redesign of a Diagonal Midblock Crossing
Exhibit 1520-4	Adjacent Shared-Use Path Intersection
Exhibit 1520-5	Bicycle Design Speeds
Exhibit 1520-6	Bikeway Curve Widening
Exhibit 1520-7	R Values and Subsurfacing Needs
Exhibit 1520-8	Bike Lane
Exhibit 1520-9	Shared Roadway
Exhibit 1520-10	Signed Shared Roadway: Designated Bike Route
Exhibit 1520-11a	Two-Way Shared-Use Path: Independent Alignment
Exhibit 1520-11b	Two-Way Shared-Use Path: Adjacent to Roadway
Exhibit 1520-12	Refuge Area
Exhibit 1520-13	At-Grade Railroad Crossings
Exhibit 1520-14a	Barrier Adjacent to Bicycle Facilities
Exhibit 1520-14b	Barrier Adjacent to Bicycle Facilities
Exhibit 1520-15	Stopping Sight Distance
Exhibit 1520-16	Sight Distances for Crest Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1520-17	Lateral Clearance on Horizontal Curves
Exhibit 1520-18	Typical Bike Lane Cross Sections
Exhibit 1520-19	Typical Bicycle/Auto Movements at Intersection of Multilane Streets
Exhibit 1520-20a	Bicycle Crossing of Interchange Ramp
Exhibit 1520-20b	Bicycle Crossing of Interchange Ramp
Exhibit 1520-21	Bike Lanes Approaching Motorists' Right-Turn-Only Lanes
Exhibit 1600-1	Design Clear Zone Distance Table
Exhibit 1600-2	Design Clear Zone Inventory Form
Exhibit 1600-3	Recovery Area
Exhibit 1600-4	Design Clear Zone for Ditch Sections
Exhibit 1600-5	Guidelines for Embankment Barrier
Exhibit 1600-6	Mailbox Location and Turnout Design
Exhibit 1600-7	Glare Screens
Exhibit 1610-1	Type 7 Bridge Rail Upgrade Criteria
Exhibit 1610-2	Longitudinal Barrier Deflection
Exhibit 1610-3	Longitudinal Barrier Flare Rates
Exhibit 1610-4	Traffic Barrier Locations on Slopes
Exhibit 1610-5	Old Type 3 Anchor
Exhibit 1610-6	Guardrail Connections
Exhibit 1610-7	Concrete Barrier Shapes
Exhibit 1610-8	Concrete Barrier Placement Guidance: Assessing Impacts to Wildlife
Exhibit 1610-9	Transitions and Connections
Exhibit 1610-10a	Barrier Length of Need on Tangent Sections
Exhibit 1610-10b	Barrier Length of Need
Exhibit 1610-10c	Barrier Length of Need on Curves
Exhibit 1610-10d	W-Beam Guardrail Trailing End Placement for Divided Highways

Exhibit 1610-11	Beam Guardrail Post Installation
Exhibit 1610-12a	Beam Guardrail Terminals
Exhibit 1610-12b	Beam Guardrail Terminals
Exhibit 1610-13a	Cable Barrier Locations on Median Slopes
Exhibit 1610-13b	Cable Barrier Locations on Shoulder Slopes
Exhibit 1610-14	Thrie Beam Rail Retrofit Criteria
Exhibit 1620-1	Impact Attenuator Sizes
Exhibit 1620-2a	Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-2b	Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-2c	Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-2d	Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-2e	Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-3a	Impact Attenuator Systems: Work Zone Installations
Exhibit 1620-3b	Impact Attenuator Systems: Work Zone Installations
Exhibit 1620-4a	Impact Attenuator Systems: Older Systems
Exhibit 1620-4b	Impact Attenuator Systems: Older Systems
Exhibit 1620-5	Impact Attenuator System Comparison
Exhibit 1620-6	Impact Attenuator Distance Beyond Length of Need
Exhibit 1710-1	Typical Truck Storage
Exhibit 1710-2	Typical Single RV Dump Station Layout
Exhibit 1710-3	Typical Two RV Dump Station Layout
Exhibit 1720-1	Truck Weigh Site: Multilane Highways
Exhibit 1720-2	Truck Weigh Site: Two-Lane Highways
Exhibit 1720-3	Vehicle Inspection Installation
Exhibit 1720-4	Minor Portable Scale Site
Exhibit 1720-5	Major Portable Scale Site
Exhibit 1720-6	Small Shoulder Site
Exhibit 1720-7	Large Shoulder Site
Exhibit 1720-8	MOU Related to Vehicle Weighing and Equipment: Inspection Facilities on State Highways

Chapter 1100 Design Matrix Procedures

1100.01 General
1100.02 Selecting a Design Matrix
1100.03 Using a Design Matrix

1100.01 General

The *Design Manual* provides guidance for three levels of design for highway projects: basic, modified, and full design levels. The design matrices in this chapter are used to identify the design level(s) for a project and the associated processes for allowing design variances. The matrices address the majority of Preservation and Improvement projects and focus on those design elements that are of greatest concern in project development.

The design matrices are five tables that are identified by route type. Two of the matrices apply to Interstate highways; the other three apply to non-Interstate highways and address Preservation and Improvement projects.

A design matrix is used to determine the design level for the design elements of a project. Apply the appropriate design levels and document the design decisions as required by this chapter and Chapter 300.

1100.02 Selecting a Design Matrix

Selection of a design matrix (see Exhibit 1100-1) is based on highway system (Interstate, NHS excluding Interstate, and non-NHS) and location (main line and interchange).

Highway System	Location	
	Main Line	Interchange Area
Interstate	Matrix 1	Matrix 2
NHS*	Matrix 3	Matrix 4
Non-NHS	Matrix 5	Matrix 4
* Except Interstate.		

Design Matrix Selection Guide
Exhibit 1100-1

(1) Interstate System

The Interstate System (Matrices 1 and 2) is a network of routes selected by the state and the FHWA under terms of the federal-aid acts. These routes are the principal arterials that are the most important to the economic welfare and defense of the United States. They connect, as directly as practicable, the following:

- Principal metropolitan areas and cities
- Industrial centers
- International border crossings

The Interstate System includes important routes into, through, and around urban areas; serves the national defense; and (where possible) connects with routes of continental importance. It also serves international and interstate travel and military movements.

The Interstate System is represented on the list of NHS highways (see Exhibit 1100-3) with the letter "I" before the route number.

(2) National Highway System (NHS)

The National Highway System (Matrices 3 and 4) is an interconnected system of principal arterial routes and highways, including toll facilities, that serves the following:

- Major population centers
- International border crossings
- Industrial centers
- Ports
- Airports
- Public transportation facilities
- Other intermodal transportation facilities
- Other major travel destinations

The NHS includes the Interstate System and the Strategic Highway Corridor Network (STRAHNET) and its highway connectors to major military installations (Interstate and non-Interstate).

The NHS meets national defense requirements and serves international, interstate, and interregional travel (see Exhibit 1100-3).

(3) Non-NHS Highways

The Non-NHS highways (Matrices 4 and 5) are state routes that form a highway network that supplements the NHS system by providing for freight mobility and regional and interregional travel. Non-NHS highways are not shown on Exhibit 1100-3. They are shown on the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) Official State Highway Map.

1100.03 Using a Design Matrix

The design matrices are shown in Exhibits 1100-4 through 1100-8. Follow *Design Manual* guidance for all projects except as noted in the design matrices (and elsewhere as applicable). The definitions presented in this chapter are meant to provide clarification of terminology used in the *Design Manual*. There is no assurance that these terms are used consistently in references outside the *Design Manual*.

(1) Project Type

For project types (such as unstable slopes) not listed in the design matrices, consult the Headquarters (HQ) Design Office for guidance.

In the design matrices, row selection is based on Project Type. The Project Summary (see Chapter 300) defines the purpose and needs for the project and describes the project. For NHS and non-NHS routes (Matrices 3, 4, and 5), the project's program/

subprogram might provide sufficient information to identify the Project Type. (See the *Programming Manual* for details about budget programs and subprograms.)

The various sources of funds for these subprograms carry eligibility requirements that the designers and project developers must identify and monitor throughout project development. This is especially important to ensure accuracy when writing agreements and to avoid delaying advertisement for bids if the Project Type changes.

Some projects involve work from several subprograms. In such cases, identify the various limits of the project that apply to each subprogram. Where the project limits overlap, apply the higher design level to the overlapping portion.

Project Types (in alphabetical order) are:

At Grade: Safety Improvement projects on NHS highways (45 mph or higher) to build grade-separation facilities that replace the existing intersections.

Bike Routes (Shldrs): Main line economic development Improvement projects to provide a statewide network of rural bicycle touring routes with shoulders a minimum of 4 feet wide.

Bike/Ped. **Connectivity:** Improvement projects to provide bicycle/pedestrian connections, along or across state highways within urban growth areas, to complete local networks.

Bridge Deck Rehab: Structures Preservation projects that repair delaminated bridge decks and add protective overlays to provide a sound, smooth surface, prevent further corrosion of the reinforcing steel, and preserve operational and structural integrity.

Bridge Rail Upgrades: Safety Improvement projects to update older bridge rails to improve strength and redirectional capabilities.

Bridge Repl. (Multilane): Non-NHS main line structures Preservation projects that replace bridges on multilane highways to improve operational and structural capacity.

Bridge Replacement: NHS and two-lane non-NHS (main line and interchange) structures Preservation projects that replace bridges to improve operational and structural capacity.

Bridge Restrictions: Main line economic development Improvement projects that remove vertical or load capacity restrictions to benefit the movement of commerce.

BST: Non-NHS roadway Preservation projects to do bituminous surface treatment (BST) work only, to protect the public investment.

BST Routes/Basic Safety: Non-NHS roadway Preservation projects that resurface highways at regular intervals and restore existing safety features, to protect the public investment.

Collision Analysis Locations (CALs): Sites identified through a system-wide analysis that have a high-severity collision history. These sites are created with the intent to modify, where appropriate, specific highway elements that have a greater potential to reduce the identified high-severity collisions.

Corridor: Main line Improvement projects to reduce and prevent vehicular, nonmotorized, and pedestrian collisions (within available resources).

Diamond Grinding: Grinding a concrete pavement, using gang-mounted diamond saw blades, to remove surface wear or joint faulting.

Dowel Bar Retrofit: Reestablishing the load transfer efficiencies of the existing concrete joints and transverse cracks by cutting slots, placing epoxy-coated dowel bars, and placing high-early strength nonshrink concrete.

Four-Lane Trunk System: NHS economic development Improvement projects to complete contiguous four-lane limited access facilities on a trunk system consisting of all Freight and Goods Transportation Routes (FGTS) with a classification of 10,000,000 tons/year.

Freight & Goods (Frost Free): Main line economic development Improvement projects to reduce delay from weather-related closures on high-priority freight and goods highways.

Guardrail Upgrades: Safety Improvement projects limited to the specified roadside design elements. These projects focus on W-beam with 12-foot-6-inch spacing and on guardrail systems with concrete posts. The length of need is examined and minor adjustments are made. Removal is an option if guardrail is no longer needed. For Interstate main line, address length of need as specified in Chapter 1610. For non-Interstate routes, additional length of more than 5% of the existing length is beyond the intent of this program. In these instances, consider funding in accordance with priority programming instructions and, if the length of need is not met, document to the Design Documentation Package (DDP) that the length of need is not addressed because it is beyond the intent of this program.

HMA/PCCP: Non-NHS roadway Preservation projects to resurface highways at regular intervals and restore existing safety features to protect the public investment.

HMA/PCCP/BST Overlays: NHS main line roadway Preservation projects that resurface the existing surfaces at regular intervals to protect the public investment.

HMA/PCCP/BST Overlays Ramps: NHS and non-NHS ramp roadway Preservation projects that resurface the existing surfaces at regular intervals and restore existing safety features to protect the public investment.

HMA Structural Overlays: Hot mix asphalt overlays that are placed to increase the load-carrying ability of the pavement structure. Structural overlay thickness is greater than 0.15 foot.

HOV: Main line mobility Improvement projects completing the freeway Core HOV lane system in the Puget Sound region and providing level of service C on HOV lanes (including business access transit lanes) within congested highway corridors.

HOV Bypass: NHS and non-NHS ramp mobility Improvement projects to improve mobility within congested highway corridors by providing HOV bypass lanes on freeway ramps. Congested highway corridors have high congestion index values as described in the Highway System Plan (footnote in text for Improvement/Mobility).

Intersection: Safety Improvement projects to reduce and prevent collisions, increase the safety of highways, and improve pedestrian safety (within available resources).

Median Barrier: Limited safety Improvement projects: mainly new median barrier, with a focus on cable barrier, to reduce median crossover accidents.

Milling with HMA Inlays: Removing a specified thickness of the existing HMA pavement, typically from the traveled lanes, and then overlaying with HMA at the same specified thickness.

New/Reconstruction projects include the following types of work:

- Capacity changes: add a through lane, convert a general-purpose (GP) lane to a special-purpose lane (such as an HOV lane), or convert a high-occupancy vehicle (HOV) lane to GP.
- Other lane changes: add or eliminate a collector-distributor or auxiliary lane (a rural truck-climbing lane that, for its entire length, meets the warrants in Chapter 1270 is not considered new/reconstruction).
- Pavement reconstruction: full depth PCCP or HMA replacement.
- New interchange.
- Changes in interchange type such as diamond to directional or adding a ramp.
- New or replacement bridge (on or over, main line or interchange ramp).

Non-Interstate Freeway (mobility): On non-NHS and NHS interchanges and on NHS main line, these are mobility Improvement projects on multilane divided highways with limited access control within congested highway corridors.

Non-Interstate Freeway (roadway preservation): Roadway Preservation projects on non-NHS and NHS interchanges and on NHS main line, to overlay or inlay with HMA/PCCP/BST on multilane divided highways with limited access control to minimize long-term costs and restore existing safety features.

Non-Interstate Freeway (safety): NHS and non-NHS (main line and interchanges) safety Improvement projects on multilane divided highways with limited access control to increase the safety within available resources.

Nonstructural Overlay: An HMA pavement overlay that is placed to minimize the aging effects and minor surface irregularities of the existing HMA pavement structure. The existing HMA pavement structure is not showing extensive signs of fatigue (longitudinal or alligator cracking in the wheel paths). Nonstructural overlays are less than or equal to 0.15-foot thick and frequently less than 0.12-foot thick.

PCCP Overlays: Portland cement concrete pavement overlays of existing PCCP or HMA surfaces.

Preventive Maintenance: Includes roadway work such as pavement patching, restoration of drainage system, panel replacement, and joint and shoulder repair, and bridge work such as crack sealing, joint repair, slope stabilization, seismic retrofit, scour countermeasures, and painting. Preventive maintenance projects must not degrade any existing safety or geometric aspects of the facility. Any elements that will be reconstructed as part of a preventive maintenance project are to be addressed in accordance with full design level.

Replace HMA w/PCCP at I/S (intersections): NHS and non-NHS main line roadway Preservation projects that restore existing safety features and replace existing HMA intersection pavement that has reached the point of lowest life cycle cost (11–15 years old) with PCCP that has about a 40-year life cycle.

Rest Areas (New): NHS and non-NHS main line economic development and safety Improvement projects to provide rest areas every 60 miles and some RV dump stations.

Risk: Realignment: Improvement projects intended to improve alignment at specific locations where the Risk program has identified a high probability of collisions/accidents.

Risk: Roadside: Improvement projects intended to mitigate roadside conditions at specific locations where the Risk program has identified a high probability of vehicular encroachment.

Risk: Roadway Width: Improvement projects intended to adjust the roadway width at specific locations where the Risk program has identified a high probability of a vehicle leaving its lane of travel.

Risk: Sight Distance: Improvement projects intended to improve sight distance at specific locations where the Risk program has identified a high probability of collisions/accidents.

Rural: Mobility Improvement projects providing uncongested level of service on rural highways within congested highway corridors. (See HOV Bypass for cross reference regarding "congested.")

Urban: NHS and two-lane non-NHS (main line and interchange) mobility Improvement projects within congested urban highway corridors. (See HOV Bypass for cross reference regarding "congested.")

Urban (multilane): Non-NHS mobility Improvement projects within congested urban multilane highway corridors. (See HOV Bypass for cross reference regarding "congested.")

(2) Design Elements

The column headings on a design matrix are **Design Elements**. Not all potential design elements have been included in the matrices.

The design elements that are included are based on the following thirteen Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) controlling design criteria: design speed, lane width, shoulder width, bridge width, structural capacity, horizontal alignment, vertical alignment, grade, stopping sight distance, cross slope, superelevation, vertical clearance, and horizontal clearance. For the column headings, some of these controlling criteria have been combined (for example, design speed is part of horizontal and vertical alignment).

If using a design element that is not on the assigned matrix, use full design level as found elsewhere in this manual.

If using a design element that is not covered in this manual, use an approved manual or guidance on the subject and document the decision and the basis for the decision.

The following elements are shown on the design matrices. If the full design level applies, see the chapters listed below. (If the basic design level applies, see Chapter 1120, and if the modified design level applies, see Chapter 1130.)

Horizontal Alignment: The horizontal attributes of the roadway, including horizontal curvature, superelevation, and stopping sight distance: all based on design speed. (See Chapter 1210 for horizontal alignment, Chapter 1250 for superelevation, Chapter 1260 for stopping sight distance, and Chapters 1140 or 1360 for design speed.)

Vertical Alignment: The vertical attributes of the roadway, including vertical curvature, profile grades, and stopping sight distance: all based on design speed. (See Chapter 630 for vertical alignment, Chapters 1130, 1140, 1220, and 1360 for grades, Chapters 1130 and 1260 for stopping sight distance, and Chapters 1130, 1140, or 1360 for design speed.)

Lane Width: Defined in Chapter 1140 (also see Chapters 1130, 1230, 1240, and 1360).

Shoulder Width: Defined in Chapter 1140 (also see Chapters 1130, 1230, and 1360). For shy distance requirements when barrier is present, see Chapter 1610.

Lane Transitions (pavement transitions): The rate and length of transition of changes in width of lanes (see Chapter 1210).

On/Off Connection: The widened portion of pavement at the end of a ramp connecting to a main lane of a freeway (see Chapter 1360).

Median Width: The distance between inside edge lines (see Chapters 1140 and 1230).

Cross Slope: Lane: The rate of elevation change across a lane. This element includes the algebraic difference in cross slope between adjacent lanes (see Chapters 1130 and 1230).

Cross Slope: Shoulder: The rate of elevation change across a shoulder (see Chapters 1130 and 1230).

Fill/Ditch Slopes: The downward slope from edge of shoulder to bottom of ditch or catch (see Chapters 1130 and 1230).

Access: The means of entering or leaving a public road, street, or highway with respect to abutting private property or another public road, street, or highway (see Chapter 520).

Clear Zone: The total roadside border area, starting at the edge of the traveled way, available for use by errant vehicles. This area may consist of a shoulder, a recoverable slope, a nonrecoverable slope, and/or a clear run-out area. The median is part of a clear zone (see Chapter 1600).

Signing, Delineation, Illumination: Signs, guideposts, pavement markings, and lighting. (See Chapters 720 for bridge signs and 1020 for signing, Chapter 1030 for delineation, and Chapter 1040 for illumination.)

Vertical Clearance: Defined in Chapter 720.

Basic Safety: The list of safety items is in Chapter 1120.

Bicycle and Pedestrian: Defined in Chapter 1510, Pedestrian Design Considerations, and Chapter 1520, Bicycle Facilities.

Bridges: Lane Width: The width of a lane on a structure (see Chapters 720, 1130, 1140, 1230, 1240, and 1360).

Bridges: Shoulder Width: The distance between the edge of traveled way and the face of curb or barrier, whichever is less (see Chapters 720, 1130, 1140, 1230, and 1360; also see Chapter 1610 for shy distance requirements).

Bridges/Roadway: Vertical Clearance: The minimum height between the roadway, including shoulder, and an overhead obstruction (see Chapter 720).

Bridges: Structural Capacity: The load-bearing ability of a structure (see Chapter 720).

Intersections/Ramp Terminals: Turn Radii: Defined in Chapter 1310.

Intersections/Ramp Terminals: Angle: Defined in Chapter 1310.

Intersections/Ramp Terminals: Intersection Sight Distance: Defined in Chapter 1310, Intersections at Grade, and Chapter 1360, Interchanges.

Barriers: Terminals and Transition Sections:

- Terminals: Crashworthy end treatments for longitudinal barriers that are designed to reduce the potential for spearing, vaulting, rolling, or excessive deceleration of impacting vehicles from either direction of travel. Impact attenuators are considered terminals. Beam guardrail terminals include anchorage.
- Transition Sections: Sections of barriers used to produce a gradual stiffening of a flexible or semirigid barrier as it connects to a more rigid barrier or fixed object (see Chapters 1600, 1610, and 1620).

Barriers: Standard Run: Guardrail and other barriers as shown in the *Standard Plans for Road Bridge and Municipal Construction,* excluding terminals, transitions, attenuators, and bridge rails (see Chapter 1610).

Barriers: Bridge Rail: Barrier on a bridge, excluding transitions (see Chapter 1610).

(3) Design Level

In the non-Interstate matrices, design levels are noted in the cells by B, M, F, and sometimes with a number corresponding to a footnote on the matrix. For Improvement projects, full design level applies to all design elements except as noted in the design matrices and in other chapters as applicable. In the Interstate matrices, only full design level applies.

The design levels of basic, modified, and full (B, M, and F) were used to develop the design matrices. Each design level is based on the investment intended for the highway system and Project Type. (For example, the investment is greater for an Interstate overlay than for an overlay on a non-NHS route.)

(a) Blank Cell

A blank cell in a design matrix row signifies that the design element will not be addressed because it is beyond the scope of the typical project. In rare instances, a design element with a blank cell may be included if that element is linked to the original need that generated the project and is identified in the Project Summary or a Project Change Request Form.

(b) Basic Design Level (B)

Basic design level preserves pavement structures, extends pavement service life, and maintains safe highway operations. (See Chapter 1120 for design guidance.)

(c) Modified Design Level (M)

Modified design level preserves and improves existing roadway geometrics, safety, and operational elements. (See Chapter 1130 for design guidance.) Use full design level for design elements or portions of design elements that are not covered in Chapter 1130.

(d) Full Design Level (F)

Full design level improves roadway geometrics, safety, and operational elements. (See Chapter 1140 and other applicable *Design Manual* chapters for design guidance.)

(4) Scoping Safety Improvement Projects

In an effort to provide the greatest safety benefit with limited funding, it is WSDOT policy to focus highway safety project modifications on improvements that have the greatest potential to reduce severe or fatal injuries. The intent of this policy is to:

- Address the elements that are associated with severe-injury crashes.
- Consider a range of solutions that include minor operational modifications, lower-cost improvements such as channelization, and higher-cost improvements such as signalization and widening.
- Recognize the substantial tradeoffs that must be made with the numerous competing needs and costs a highway designer faces in project development.

Because these projects are developed on a "need" basis, a matrix approach is not the most efficient method of scoping them. Conduct a project analysis to determine and document those design elements and levels to be included in the project. This project analysis will:

- Include an analysis of the crash history.
- Identify operational, low-cost, and high-cost solutions.
- Propose the appropriate solution based on a benefit/cost analysis as part of the project analysis.

(a) **Sites With Potential for Improvement (SWPIs)**

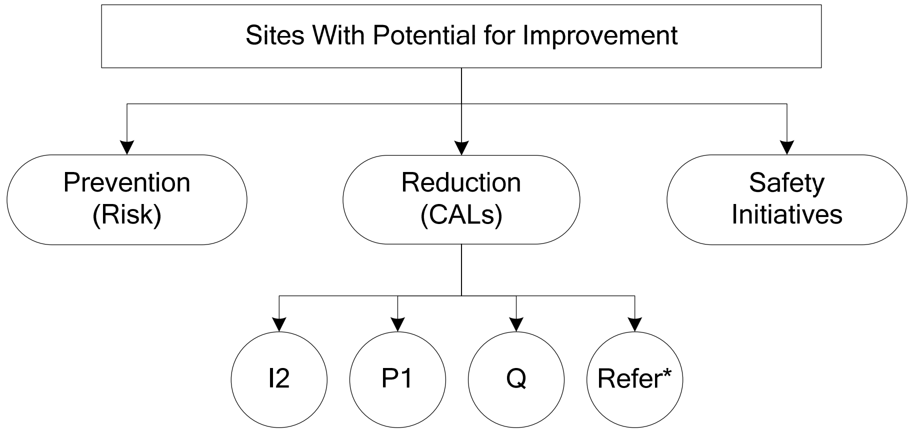
Sites With Potential for Improvement are developed for the purpose of identifying potential project locations. These sites are identified through a system-wide analysis. Only the sites with correctible contributing factors, traffic movements, or locations will be addressed. The SWPIs that may benefit from a safety-focused highway modification include the following:

- Collision Prevention
- Collision Reduction (including Collision Analysis Locations [CAL])
- System Improvements (such as safety initiatives)

All SWPIs are analyzed incorporating additional collision and risk data to determine contributing factors. Proposed countermeasures are developed to specifically address those contributing factors and locations.

Analyze the SWPIs and proposed countermeasures using the project analysis early in the scoping process. Ensure there is enough detail for a reasonable cost estimate, and have scoping reviewed by the responsible approval authorities for the Design or Traffic offices. Those projects identified through the process above will fall under several categories, as shown in Exhibit 1100-2:

- For I2-funded projects, see the Design Matrices.
- For spot improvements in P1, see Chapter 1120.
- For Q projects, see Chapter 1110.



* Some locations without a highway improvement solution will be referred to Enforcement and Education agencies for consideration.

Sites With Potential for Improvement
Exhibit 1100-2

(5) Design Variances

Types of design variances are design exceptions, evaluate upgrades, and deviations. (See Chapter 300 regarding the Design Variance Inventory System (DVIS).)

(a) **Design Exception (DE)**

A design exception in a matrix cell indicates that WSDOT has determined the design element is usually outside the scope of the Project Type. Therefore, an existing condition that does not meet or exceed the design level specified in the matrix may remain in place unless a need has been identified in the Highway System Plan and prioritized in accordance with the programming process. (See Chapter 300 regarding documentation.)

(b) **Evaluate Upgrade (EU)**

An evaluate upgrade in a matrix cell indicates that WSDOT has determined the design element is an item of work that is to be considered for inclusion in the project. For an existing element that does not meet or exceed the specified design level, an analysis is required to determine the impacts and cost-effectiveness of including the element in the project. The EU analysis must support the decision regarding whether or not to upgrade that element. (See Chapter 300 regarding documentation.)

(c) **Deviation**

A deviation is required when an existing or proposed design element differs from the specified design level for the project and neither DE nor EU processing is indicated. (See Chapter 300 regarding documentation.)

(d) **DE or EU with /F or /M**

DE or EU with /F or /M in a cell means that the design element is to be analyzed with respect to the specified design level. For instance, a DE/F is analyzed with respect to full design level and might be recorded as having an existing design element that does not meet or exceed current full design level. An EU/M is analyzed to decide whether or not to upgrade any existing design element that does not meet or exceed the current modified design level.

(6) Terminology in Notes

F/M Full for freeways/Modified for nonfreeway uses the word **freeway** to mean a divided highway facility that has a minimum of two lanes in each direction, for the exclusive use of traffic and with full control of access. For matrix cells with an F/M designation, analyze freeway routes at full design level and nonfreeway routes at modified design level.

The **Access Control Tracking System** mentioned in note [3] in Design Matrices 3, 4, and 5 is a database list related to highway route numbers and mileposts. The database is available at: www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/accessandhearings. (See Chapter 520 for access control basics and Chapters 530 and 540 for limited and managed access, respectively.)

The **corridor or project analysis** mentioned in notes [2] and [4] in Design Matrices 3, 4, and 5 is the documentation needed to support a change in design level from the indicated design level and to support decisions to include, exclude, or modify design elements. The first step is to check for recommendations for future improvements in an approved route development plan or other approved study. If no approved plans or studies are available, an analysis can be based on route continuity and other existing features. (See Chapter 300 regarding documentation.) A project analysis is also used for multiple related design variances. Check with the HQ Design Office before using this approach. A corridor analysis is also used to establish design speed, as discussed in Chapters 1130 and 1140.

Note [21] **Analyses required** appears only on Design Elements for Risk projects on Design Matrices 3, 4, and 5. These design elements are to be evaluated using benefit/cost (B/C) to compare and rank each occurrence of the design element. The B/C evaluation supports engineering decisions regarding which proposed solutions are included in a Risk project.

Most components of a Risk project will have a B/C of 1.0 or greater. Proposed solutions with a B/C ratio less than 1.0 may be included in the project based on engineering judgment of their significant contribution to corridor continuity. Risk program size, purpose and need, or project prioritization may lead to instances where design elements with a ratio greater than 1.0 are excluded from a project. The analysis, design decisions, and program funding decisions are to be documented in the Design Documentation Package. Decisions regarding which design elements to include in a project are authorized at the WSDOT region level.

State Route	NHS Route Description	Begin SR MP	Begin ARM	End SR MP	End ARM
US 2	I-5 to Idaho State Line	0.00B	0.00	334.51	326.64
US 2 Couplet	Brown Street Couplet	287.45	0.00	288.08	0.63
US 2 Couplet	Division Street Couplet	289.19	0.00	290.72	1.53
SR 3	US 101 to SR 104	0.00	0.00	60.02	59.81
SR 4	US 101 to I-5	0.00	0.00	62.28	62.27
I-5	Oregon State Line to Canadian Border	0.00	0.00	276.56	276.62
SR 8	US 12 to US 101	0.00	0.00	20.67	20.67
SR 9	SR 546 to Canadian Border	93.61	93.52	98.17	98.08
SR 9 Spur	Sumas Spur	98.00	0.00	98.25	0.24
SR 11	I-5 to Alaskan Ferry Terminal	19.93	19.93	21.28	21.28
US 12	US 101 to Idaho State Line	0.00	0.00	434.19	430.76
US 12 Couplet	Aberdeen Couplet	0.33	0.00	0.68	0.35
SR 14	I-5 to US 97	0.00	0.00	101.02	100.93
SR 14 Spur	Maryhill Spur	100.66	0.00	101.05	0.39
SR 16	I-5 to SR 3	0.00	0.00	29.19	27.01
SR 16 Spur	SR 16 to SR 3	28.74	0.00	29.13	0.39
SR 17	US 395 to I-90	7.43	0.00	50.89	43.40
SR 18	SR 99 to I-5	2.20B	0.00	0.00	0.53
SR 18	I-5 to I-90	0.00	0.53	27.91	28.41
SR 20	US 101 to I-5	0.00	0.00	59.54	59.49
SR 20 Spur	SR 20 to San Juan Ferry	47.89	0.00	55.67	7.78
SR 22	US 97 to I-82	0.70	0.00	4.00	3.31
SR 26	I-90 to US 195	0.00	0.00	133.53	133.61
SR 26 Spur	SR 26 to US 195	133.44	0.00	133.51	0.07
SR 28	US 2 to SR 281	0.00B	0.00	29.77	33.91
I-82	I-90 to Oregon State Line	0.00	0.00	132.60	132.57
I-90	I-5 to Idaho State Line	1.94	0.00	299.82	297.52
I-90 Reverse Lane	Reversible lane	1.99	0.00	9.44	7.45
SR 96	I-5 to McCollum Park and Ride	0.00	0.00	0.52	0.52
US 97	Oregon State Line to SR 22	0.00B	0.00	61.44	61.30
US 97	I-90 to Canadian Border	133.90	118.80	336.48	321.62
US 97 Couplet	Maryhill Couplet	2.59	0.00	2.68	0.09
US 97 Spur	US 97 to US 2 (Orondo)	213.36	0.00	213.62	0.26
SR 99	188th to SeaTac Airport	18.35	14.70	18.77	15.12
SR 99	SR 509 to SR 104	26.04	22.40	43.60	39.84
US 101	Oregon State Line to SR 401	0.00	0.00	0.46	0.46
US 101	SR 4 to I-5	28.89	28.89	367.41	365.78
US 101 Couplet	Aberdeen Couplet	87.49	0.00	91.66	4.17
US 101 Couplet	Port Angeles Couplet	249.65	0.00	251.32	1.67
SR 104	US 101 to I-5	0.20	0.00	29.67	29.14
SR 109	Pacific Beach Access	0.00	0.00	30.25	30.29
SR 125	Oregon State Line to SR 125 Spur	0.00	0.00	6.09	6.08
SR 125 Spur	SR 125 to US 12	6.09	0.00	6.76	0.67
SR 127	US 12 to SR 26	0.03	0.00	27.05	27.05
SR 128	US 12 to Idaho State Line	0.00	0.00	2.30	2.30
SR 166	SR 16 to Bay St	0.02	0.00	3.40	3.38

NHS Highways in Washington
Exhibit 1100-3

State Route	NHS Route Description	Begin SR MP	Begin ARM	End SR MP	End ARM
SR 166	SR 16 to Bay St	0.02	0.00	3.40	3.38
SR 167	I-5 to SR 900 / S 2nd St	0.00	0.00	27.28	28.60
I-182	I-82 to US 395	0.00	0.00	15.19	15.19
US 195	Idaho State Line to I-90	0.00B	0.00	95.99	93.37
US 195 Spur	US 195 to Idaho State Line	0.06	0.00	0.60	0.54
I-205	Oregon State Line to I-5	26.59	0.00	37.16	10.57
SR 240	I-182 to Coast St / Bypass Hwy – Hanford Access	30.63	28.86	34.87	33.10
SR 270	US 195 to Idaho State Line	0.00	0.00	9.89	9.89
SR 270	Pullman Couplet	2.67	0.00	2.90	0.23
SR 281	I-90 to SR 28	0.00	0.00	10.55	10.55
SR 281 Spur	SR 281 to I-90	2.65	0.00	4.34	1.69
SR 303	SR 304 to SR 3	0.00B	0.00	9.16	9.32
SR 304	SR 3 to Bremerton Ferry	0.00	0.00	3.51	3.24
SR 305	Winslow Ferry to SR 3	0.02	0.00	13.52	13.50
SR 307	SR 305 to SR 104	0.00	0.00	5.25	5.25
SR 310	SR 3 to SR 304	0.00	0.00	1.84	1.84
US 395	Congressional High-Priority Route / I-82 to Canadian Border	13.05	19.81	270.26	275.09
SR 401	US 101 to SR 4	0.00	0.00	12.13	12.13
I-405	I-5 to I-5	0.00	0.00	30.32	30.30
SR 432	SR 4 to I-5	0.00	0.00	10.33	10.32
SR 433	Oregon State Line to SR 432	0.00	0.00	0.94	0.94
SR 500	I-5 to SR 503	0.00	0.00	5.96	5.96
SR 501	I-5 to Port of Vancouver	0.00	0.00	3.83	3.42
SR 502	I-5 to SR 503	0.00B	0.00	7.56	7.58
SR 503	SR 500 to SR 502	0.00	0.00	8.09	8.09
SR 509	12th Place S to SR 99	24.35B	26.13	29.83	33.11
SR 509	Pacific Ave to Marine View Drive	0.22	1.44	3.20	4.42
SR 512	I-5 to SR 167	0.00	0.00	12.06	12.06
SR 513	Sandpoint Naval Air Station	0.00	0.00	3.35	3.35
SR 516	I-5 to SR 167	2.03	2.02	4.72	4.99
SR 518	I-5 to SR 509	0.00	0.00	3.81	3.42
SR 519	I-90 to Seattle Ferry Terminal	0.00	0.00	1.14	1.14
SR 520	I-5 to SR 202	0.00	0.00	12.83	12.82
SR 522	I-5 to US 2	0.00	0.00	24.68	24.68
SR 524	Cedar Way Spur to I-5	4.64	4.76	5.32	5.44
SR 524 Spur	Cedar Way Spur – Lynnwood Park & Ride to SR 524	4.64	0.00	5.14	0.50
SR 525	I-5 to SR 20	0.00	0.00	30.49	30.72
SR 526	SR 525 to I-5	0.00	0.00	4.52	4.52
SR 529	I-5 to Everett Homeport	0.00	0.00	2.72	2.72
SR 539	I-5 to Canadian Border	0.00	0.00	15.16	15.16
SR 543	I-5 to Canadian Border	0.00	0.00	1.09	1.09
SR 546	SR 539 to SR 9	0.00	0.00	8.02	8.02
I-705	I-5 to Schuster Parkway	0.00	0.00	1.50	1.50
SR 970	I-90 to US 97	0.00	0.00	10.31	10.31

NHS Highways in Washington
Exhibit 1100-3 (continued)

See the following pages for Design Matrices 1–5

.

⇩ Project Type	Main Line															Bridges			Barriers		
Design Elements ⇨	Horizontal Alignment	Vertical Alignment	Lane Width	Shoulder Width [13]	On / Off Connection	Median Width	Cross Slope Lane	Cross Slope Shoulder	Fill / Ditch Slopes	Clear Zone	Signing [10]	Delineation [9]	Illumination	Vertical Clear. [11]	Bike and Pedestrian	Lane Width	Shoulder Width	Structural Capacity	Term. & Trans. Section [12]	Standard Run	Bridge Rail [14] [19]
(1-1) Preventative Maintenance																					
Pavement Restoration																					
(1-2) Diamond Grinding										EU	EU	F		DE					F	EU	F
(1-3) Milling with HMA Inlays									EU	F	EU	F		DE					F	EU	F
(1-4) Nonstructural Overlay				DE			EU	EU	EU	F	EU	F		EU					F	F	F
Pavement Rehab. / Resurf.																					
(1-5) HMA Structural Overlays	EU	DE	F	F	F[17]	DE	F	EU	F	F	EU	F	F	F		F	DE		F	F	F
(1-6) PCCP Overlays	EU	DE	F	F	F[17]	DE	F	EU	F	F	EU	F	F	F		F	DE		F	F	F
(1-7) Dowel Bar Retrofit	EU	DE	F	F	F[17]	DE	DE		F	F	EU	F	F	DE			DE		F	F	F
Bridge Rehabilitation																					
(1-8) Bridge Deck Rehabilitation												F		F		F	DE	[11]	F[6]	F[22]	F
Safety																					
(1-9) Median Barrier				DE															F[20]	F[20]	
(1-10) Guardrail Upgrades				DE						F									F	F[23]	
(1-11) Bridge Rail Upgrades																			F	F[22]	F
(1-12) Collision Analysis Locations	Design Elements determined based on a project analysis[27]																				
Reconstruction[16]																					
(1-13) New / Reconstruction	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F

Design Matrix 1: Interstate Routes (Main Line)
Exhibit 1100-4

⇩ Project Type / Design Elements ⇨	Ramps and Collector Distributors																			
															Ramp Terminals			Barriers		
	Horizontal Alignment	Vertical Alignment	Lane Width	Shoulder Width	Lane Transition	On / Off Connection	Cross Slope Lane	Cross Slope Shoulder	Fill / Ditch Slopes	Limited Access	Clear Zone	Sign., Delin., Illum. [9] [10]	Vertical Clear. [11]	Bike and Pedestrian	Turn Radii	Angle	I/S Sight Distance	Term. & Trans. Section [12]	Standard Run	Bridge Rail [14] [19]
(2-1) Preventative Maintenance																				
Pavement Restoration																				
(2-2) Diamond Grinding											EU	F[15]						F	EU	F
(2-3) Milling With HMA Inlays									EU		F	F[15]	F	M				F	F	F
(2-4) Nonstructural Overlay							EU	EU	EU		F	F[15]	F	M				F	F	F
Pavement Rehab. / Resurf.																				
(2-5) HMA Structural Overlays	EU	DE	F	F	F	F[17]	F	EU	F	F	F	F[15]	F	M	F	F	F	F	F	F
(2-6) PCCP Overlays	EU	DE	F	F	F	F[17]	F	EU	F	F	F	F[15]	F	M	F	F	F	F	F	F
(2-7) Dowel Bar Retrofit	DE		DE	DE	F	F[17]	DE		F	F	F	F[15]	DE		F	F	F	F	F	F
Bridge Rehabilitation																				
(2-8) Bridge Deck Rehabilitation													F	M				F[6]	F[22]	F
Safety																				
(2-9) Intersection			F	F	F				F	F	F	F		M	F	F	F	F	F	F
(2-10) Guardrail Upgrades				DE							F							F	F[23]	
(2-11) Bridge Rail Upgrades																		F	F[22]	F
(2-12) Collision Analysis Locations	Design Elements determined based on a Project Analysis[27]																			
Reconstruction[16]																				
(2-13) New / Reconstruction	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F

⇩ Project Type / Design Elements ⇨	Crossroad										
									Barriers		
	Lane Width	Shoulder Width	Fill / Ditch Slopes	Limited Access	Clear Zone	Sign., Delin., Illum. [10]	Vertical Clear. [11]	Bike and Pedestrian	Term. & Trans. Section [12]	Standard Run	Bridge Rail [14] [19]
(2-1) Preventative Maintenance											
Pavement Restoration											
(2-2) Diamond Grinding					EU	F[15]			F	EU	F
(2-3) Milling With HMA Inlays			EU		F	F[15]		M	F	F	F
(2-4) Nonstructural Overlay			EU		F	F[15]		M	F	F	F
Pavement Rehab. / Resurf.											
(2-5) HMA Structural Overlays	DE	DE	DE	F	F	F[15]	F	M	F	F	F
(2-6) PCCP Overlays	DE	DE	DE	F	F	F[15]	F	M	F	F	F
(2-7) Dowel Bar Retrofit				F		F[15]			F	F	F
Bridge Rehabilitation											
(2-8) Bridge Deck Rehabilitation							F	M	F[6]	F[22]	F
Safety											
(2-9) Intersection			F	F	F	F	F	M	F	F	F
(2-10) Guardrail Upgrades									F	F[23]	
(2-11) Bridge Rail Upgrades									F	F[22]	F
(2-12) Collision Analysis Locations	Design Elements determined based on a Project Analysis[27]										
Reconstruction[16]											
(2-13) New / Reconstruction	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F

Design Matrix 2: Interstate Interchange Areas
Exhibit 1100-5

⇩ Project Type		Main Line															Bridges[11]				Intersections			Barriers		
Design Elements ⇨		Horizontal Alignment	Vertical Alignment	Lane Width	Shoulder Width	Lane Transition	On / Off Connection	Median Width	Cross Slope Lane	Cross Slope Shoulder	Fill / Ditch Slopes	Access [3]	Clear Zone [18]	Sign., Del., Illum.	Basic Safety	Bike & Ped.	Lane Width	Shoulder Width	Vertical Clearance	Structural Capacity	Turn Radii	Angle	I/S Sight Distance	Term. & Trans. Section [12]	Standard Run	Bridge Rail [14] [19]
Preservation																										
Roadway																										
(3-1)	Non-Interstate Freeway	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F		B	B		DE/F	DE/F	F					F	B	F
(3-2)	HMA/PCCP/BST Overlays	DE/M	DE/M	DE/M	DE/M	DE/F	DE/F	DE/M	DE/M	DE/M	DE/M			B	B	M	DE/M	DE/M	F				B	F	B	F
(3-3)	Replace HMA w/PCCP at I/S	DE/M	DE/M	EU/M	EU/M	DE/F		DE/M	EU/M	DE/M	DE/M			B	B	M	DE/M	DE/M	F				B	F	B	F
Structures																										
(3-4)	Bridge Replacement	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]		F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F	F
(3-5)	Bridge Deck Rehab.													B	B	M			F					F[6]	F[22]	F
Improvements[16]																										
Mobility																										
(3-6)	Non-Interstate Freeway	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F		F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F
(3-7)	Urban	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F	F
(3-8)	Rural	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F	F
(3-9)	HOV	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F	F
(3-10)	Bike/Ped. Connectivity	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]			[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]		F	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]
Safety																										
(3-11)	Non-Interstate Freeway	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F		F	F	F	F		F	F	F	F	F	F
(3-12)	Intersection[1]			F[2]	F[2]	F					F[2]	F	F	F		M					F	F	F	F	F	F
(3-13)	Corridor[1][24]	M[4]	M[4]	M[4]	M[4]	F	F[17]	M[4]	M[4]	M[4]	M[4]	F	F	F		F	M[4]	M[4]	F		M[4]	M[4]	F	F	F	F
(3-14)	Median Barrier				DE/F																			F[20]	F[20]	
(3-15)	Guardrail Upgrades				DE/F																			F	F[23]	
(3-16)	Bridge Rail Upgrades																							F	F[22]	F
(3-17)	Risk: Roadside										F	EU/F	F	F										F	F	F
(3-18)	Risk: Sight Distance	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]						F/M[21]	F[21]	F[21]	F		F	F[21]	F[21]	F[21]		F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F[21]	F	F	F
(3-19)	Risk: Roadway Width			F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F[21]	F[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F	F	F		F	F[21]	F[21]	F[21]		F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F[21]	F	F	F
(3-20)	Risk: Realignment	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F		F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F
(3-21)	Collision Analysis Locations	Design Elements determined based on a Project Analysis[27]																								
Economic Development																										
(3-22)	Freight & Goods (Frost Free)[8]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	EU/F	F	B		EU/F[26]	DE/F	DE/F	F	F	EU/F	EU/F	EU/F	F	F	F
(3-23)	Four-Lane Trunk System	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F		F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F
(3-24)	Rest Areas (New)	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F		F	F	F	F		F	F	F	F	F	F
(3-25)	Bridge Restrictions	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]		F	F		EU/F[26]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F	F
(3-26)	Bike Routes (Shldrs)			EU/M	[7]	EU/F				EU/M	EU/M			B	B	F	EU/M	EU/M	F				B	F	B	EU/F

Design Matrix 3: Main Line NHS Routes (Except Interstate)
Exhibit 1100-6

⇩ Project Type	Ramps and Collector-Distributors														Ramp Terminals			Barriers			Crossroad									Barriers		
Design Elements ⇨	Horizontal Alignment	Vertical Alignment	Lane Width	Shoulder Width	Lane Transition	On / Off Connection	Cross Slope Lane	Cross Slope Shoulder	Fill / Ditch Slopes	Access [3]	Clear Zone	Sign., Del., Illum.	Basic Safety	Bike & Ped	Turn Radii	Angle	I/S Sight Distance	Term. & Trans. Section [12]	Standard Run	Bridge Rail [14] [19]	Lane Width	Shoulder Width	Fill / Ditch Slopes	Access [3]	Clear Zone	Sign., Del., Illum.	Basic Safety	Vertical Clearance [11]	Ped. & Bike	Term. & Trans. Section [12]	Standard Run	Bridge Rail [14] [19]
Preservation																																
Roadway																																
(4-1) Non-Interstate Freeway	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F		B	B	M	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F	F	B	F	DE/F	DE/F	DE/F			B	B	F	M	F	B	F
(4-2) HMA/PCCP/BST Overlay Ramps												B	B	M			B	F	B	F						B	B	F	M	F	B	F
Structures																																
(4-3) Bridge Replacement	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F	F	F	F
(4-4) Bridge Deck Rehab.												B	B	M				F[6]	F[22]	F						B	B	F	M	F[6]	F[22]	F
Improvements[16]																																
Mobility																																
(4-5) Non-Interstate Freeway	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F		F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F		F	F	F	F	F
(4-6) Urban	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F	F	F	F
(4-7) Rural	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F	F	F	F
(4-8) HOV Bypass	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F	F	F	F
(4-9) Bike/Ped. Connectivity	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]		[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]		F	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]			[5]		[5]	F	[5]	[5]	[5]
Safety																																
(4-10) Non-Interstate Freeway	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F		M	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F		F	M	F	F	F
(4-11) At Grade[1][25]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F	F	F	F
(4-12) Intersection[1]			F[2]	F[2]	F				F[2]	F	F	F		M	F	F	F	F	F]	F			F[2]	F	F	F		F	M	F	F	F
(4-13) Guardrail Upgrades				DE/F														F	F[23]											F	F[23]	
(4-14) Bridge Rail Upgrades																														F	F[22]	F
(4-15) Risk: Roadside									F	EU/F	F	F											F	EU/F	F	F				F	F	F
(4-16) Risk: Sight Distance	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]					F/M[21]	F[21]	F[21]	F		F	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F	F	F	F			F/M[21]	F[21]	F[21]			F[21]	F			
(4-17) Risk: Roadway Width			F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F	F[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F	F	F		F	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F	F	F	F	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F	F			F[21]	F	F	F	F
(4-18) Risk: Realignment	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F	F	F	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F			F[21]	F	F	F	F
(4-19) Collision Analysis Locations	Design Elements determined based on a Project Analysis[27]																															
Economic Development																																
(4-20) Four-Lane Trunk System	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F			F		F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F		F		F	F	F

Design Matrix 4: Interchange Areas, NHS (Except Interstate), and Non-NHS
Exhibit 1100-7

⇩ Project Type	Main Line														Bridges[11]				Intersections			Barriers		
Design Elements ⇨	Horizontal Alignment	Vertical Alignment	Lane Width	Shoulder Width	Lane Transition	Median Width	Cross Slope Lane	Cross Slope Shoulder	Fill / Ditch Slopes	Access [3]	Clear Zone [18]	Sign., Del., Illum.	Basic Safety	Bike & Ped.	Lane Width	Shoulder Width	Vertical Clearance	Structural Capacity	Turn Radii	Angle	I/S Sight Distance	Term. & Trans. Section [12]	Standard Run	Bridge Rail [19]
Preservation																								
Roadway																								
(5-1) HMA/PCCP												B	B	M			F				B	F	B	F
(5-2) BST																								
(5-3) BST Routes/Basic Safety												B	B								B	F	B	F
(5-4) Replace HMA w/PCCP at I/S			EU/M	EU/M		DE/M	EU/M					B	B	M			F					F	B	F
Structures																								
(5-5) Bridge Replacement	M	F	M	M	F		M	M	M		F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	M	M	F	F	F	F
(5-6) Bridge Repl. (Multilane)	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]		F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F	F
(5-7) Bridge Deck Rehab.												B	B	M								F[6]	F[22]	F
Improvements[16]																								
Mobility																								
(5-8) Urban (Multilane)	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	EU/F	EU/F	F	F	F	F
(5-9) Urban	M	M	M	M	F		M	M	M	F	F	F		F	M	M	F	F	EU/M	EU/M	F	F	F	F
(5-10) Rural	M	M	M	M	F	M	M	M	M	F	F	F		F	M	M	F	F	EU/M	EU/M	F	F	F	F
(5-11) HOV	M	M	M	M	F	M	M	M	M	F	F	F		F	M	M	F	F	EU/M	EU/M	F	F	F	F
(5-12) Bike/Ped. Connectivity	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]		F	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]	[5]
Safety																								
(5-13) Non-Interstate Freeway	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F		F	F[2]	F[2]	F		F[2]	F[2]	F	F	F	F
(5-14) Intersection[1]			M[4]	M[4]	F				M[4]	F	F	F		M					M[4]	M[4]	F	F	F	F
(5-15) Corridor[1][24]	M[4]	M[4]	M[4]	M[4]	F	M[4]	M[4]	M[4]	M[4]	F	F	F		M	M[4]	M[4]	F		M[4]	M[4]	F	F	F	F
(5-16) Median Barrier				DE/F																		F[20]	F[20]	
(5-17) Guardrail Upgrades				DE/F																		F	F[23]	
(5-18) Bridge Rail Upgrades																						F	F[22]	F
(5-19) Risk: Roadside									M[4]	EU/F	F	F										F	F	F
(5-20) Risk: Sight Distance	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]					F/M[21]	F[21]	F[21]	F		F	F[21]	F[21]	F[21]		F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F[21]	F	F	F
(5-21) Risk: Roadway Width			F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F	F	F		F	F[21]	F[21]	F[21]		F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F[21]	F	F	F
(5-22) Risk: Realignment	F/M	F/M	F/M	F/M	F	F/M	F[2]	F[2]	F/M	F	F	F		F	F[21]	F[21]	F[21]		F/M[21]	F/M[21]	F[21]	F	F	F
(5-23) Collision Analysis Locations	Design Elements determined based on a Project Analysis[27]																							
Economic Development																								
(5-24) Freight & Goods (Frost Free)[8]	EU/M	EU/M	EU/M	EU/M	EU/M	EU/M	M	M	EU/M		F	B	B	EU/F[26]	DE/M	DE/M	F		EU/M	EU/M	EU/F	F	B	F
(5-25) Rest Areas (New)	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F	F		F	F	F			F	F	F	F	F	F
(5-26) Bridge Restrictions	M	F	M	M	F	M	M	M	M		F	F		EU/F[26]	M	M	F	F	M	M	F	F	F	F
(5-27) Bike Routes (Shldrs)			EU/M	[7]	EU/F			EU/M	EU/M			B	B	F	EU/M	EU/M					B	F	B	EU/F

Design Matrix 5: Main Line Non-NHS Routes
Exhibit 1100-8

Design Matrix Notes:

☐ A blank cell indicates that the element is not applicable.
F Full design level (see Chapter 1140).
M Modified design level (see Chapter 1130).
DE Design Exception to full design level.
EU Evaluate Upgrade to full design level.

[1] Collision Reduction or Collision Prevention (At-Grade Removal, Signalization & Channelization). Specific deficiencies that created the project must be upgraded to design level as stated in the matrix.

[2] Modified design level may apply based on a corridor or project analysis (see 1100.03(6)).

[3] If designated as L/A acquired in the Access Control Tracking System, limited access requirements apply. If not, managed access applies (see 1100.03(6)).

[4] Full design level may apply based on a corridor or project analysis (see 1100.03(6)).

[5] For bike/pedestrian design, see Chapters 1520 and 1510.

[6] Applies only to bridge end terminals and transition sections.

[7] 4-ft minimum shoulders.

[8] If all-weather structure can be achieved with spot digouts and overlay, modified design level applies to NHS highways and basic design level applies to non-NHS highways.

[9] Continuous shoulder rumble strips required in rural areas (see Chapter 1600).

[10] See Chapter 1020.

[11] See Chapter 720.

[12] Impact attenuators are considered as terminals.

[13] See Chapters 1140 and 1230.

[14] Includes crossroad bridge rail (see Chapter 1610).

[15] EU for signing and illumination.

[16] For design elements not in the matrix headings, apply full design level as found in the applicable chapters and see 1100.03(2).

[17] DE for existing acceleration/deceleration lanes when length meets posted freeway speed and no significant crash history (see Chapter 1360).

[18] On managed access highways within the limits of incorporated cities and towns, city and county design standards apply to areas outside the curb or outside the paved shoulder where no curb exists.

[19] The funding sources for bridge rail are a function of the length of the bridge. Consult programming personnel.

[20] Applies to median elements only.

[21] Analyses required (see 1100.03(6) for details).

[22] Upgrade barrier, if necessary, within 200 ft of the end of the bridge.

[23] See description of Guardrail Upgrades Project Type, 1100.03(1), regarding length of need.

[24] Apply full design level to projects that realign or reconstruct significant portions of the alignment.

[25] For main line, use the Project Type row for Safety, Non-Interstate Freeway on Matrix 3 for NHS and on Matrix 5 for non-NHS.

[26] Sidewalk ramps must be addressed for ADA compliance (see Chapter 1510).

[27] Collision Analysis Locations (CALs) require a project analysis to document the needs at a location and determine the appropriate design elements to address.

Design Matrix Notes

Exhibit 1100-9

Chapter 1110 Minor Operational Enhancement Projects

1110.01 General
1110.02 References
1110.03 Definitions
1110.04 Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix Procedures
1110.05 Selecting a Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix
1110.06 Project Type
1110.07 Using a Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix
1110.08 Project Approval
1110.09 Documentation

1110.01 General

This chapter complements Chapter 1100 by providing guidance for development of minor operational enhancement projects. Do not use this chapter to develop Preservation or Improvement projects. Refer to Chapter 1100 for guidance in development of Preservation and Improvement projects and also for projects initiated by local agencies or developers. The minor operational enhancement matrices contained in this chapter identify the design level(s) for a project, the associated approval level, and the documentation requirements for the most common minor operational enhancement projects. The matrices focus on the various elements of greatest concern during project development.

Minor enhancement projects are categorized as low-cost enhancements to improve the operational safety and efficiency of the highway system. These enhancements are most often installed by state forces through work orders, but may be accomplished through a stand-alone state contract funded entirely through the Q Program; a Q Program-funded bid item within a larger Improvement project; a change order to an existing state contract; or agreements with local agencies. An important characteristic of these projects is the ability to quickly develop and implement them without a cumbersome approval process. Balanced with this is a need to apply consistency in design policies and guidelines in the development and approval processes. Therefore, the intent of this chapter is to clarify the design guidelines and documentation requirements for minor operational enhancement projects without unduly impeding the process.

The objective of the Q Program is to maximize highway transportation system safety and efficiency through a statewide program focused on the WSDOT business function for "Traffic Operations." It is the smallest of the four major highway programs that comprise the Highway System Plan (Improvement, Maintenance, Preservation, and Traffic Operations). Elements within the Q Program include:

- Q1 – Traffic Operations Program Management
- Q2 – Traffic Operations Program Operations
- Q3 – Special Advanced Technology Projects

This chapter is intended to guide the development of projects in the Low-Cost Enhancements subcategory within the Q2 program. Large capital Improvement projects developed for the Q3 subprogram are beyond the scope and intent of this chapter. Normally, these projects are developed using *Design Manual* guidelines for Preservation and Improvement projects. Consult the Headquarters (HQ) Traffic Office for guidance when designing Q3 subprogram projects.

The minor operational enhancement matrices consist of three tables and are identified by route type. One of the matrices applies to Interstate and NHS freeways, one applies to NHS nonfreeway routes, and the third matrix applies to non-NHS routes.

1110.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.28.030, Contracts – State forces – Monetary limits – Small businesses, minority, and women contractors – Rules

(2) Supporting Information

Chart of Accounts, M 13-02, WSDOT

1110.03 Definitions

National Highway System (NHS) For the definition and a list of specific routes on the NHS, see Chapter 1100.

freeway Applies to multilane divided highways with full access control.

minor operational enhancement projects These projects usually originate from the Q2 component of the Q Program and are quick responses to implement low-cost improvements. They are typically narrow in scope and focus on improvements to traffic operations and modifications to traffic control devices. Guidance on the type of work included in the Q subprograms is in the *Chart of Accounts*.

(1) Project Types

Minor operational and enhancement project types include the following:

(a) **Regulatory Projects**

Regulatory projects include actions undertaken to manage or regulate traffic conflict, movement, and use of the roadway. Potential projects in this category include revisions to speed limits, parking restrictions, turn restrictions, truck restrictions, signal operations, unsignalized intersection control, intersection lane-use control, ramp meters, no-passing zones, crosswalks, special traffic control schemes, and lane use restrictions.

(b) **Driver Guidance Projects**

Driver guidance projects are actions to improve driver guidance, clarify options, or reduce hazards in the roadway setting. Potential projects include informational signs, warning signs, lighting and supplemental illumination, supplemental delineation, glare screen, signals, roadside guidance, and Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS).

(c) **Pavement Widening Projects**

Pavement widening projects involve expansion of the roadway surface for vehicular use and may include earthwork, drainage, and paving elements. Consult with the region bicycle/pedestrian coordinator to ensure the concerns of bicyclists and pedestrians are given adequate consideration. These projects are considered alterations of the roadway and must address Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) accessibility for pedestrians. (See Chapter 1510 for guidance on pedestrian facilities.) Potential projects are:

Turn Lane: The addition of a new channelized turn bay at an intersection.

Pullout: Pavement widening to provide auxiliary highway uses, including transit stops, Washington State Patrol (WSP) enforcement pullouts, snow chain-up areas, and maintenance vehicle turnouts.

Expansion: Widen at intersection corners, lengthen existing channelized turn bays, widen shoulders, and flatten approach tapers. This type of work is not anticipated for main line sections on Interstate freeways.

Median Crossover: Restricted-use median crossover on separated highways for emergency or maintenance use. (See Chapter 1370 for design of median crossovers.)

(d) **Rechannelize Existing Pavement Projects**

Projects that rechannelize existing pavement alter the use of the roadway without additional widening. These projects may add, delete, or modify channelization features and may include reduction of existing shoulder or lane widths. Consult with the region bicycle/pedestrian coordinator to ensure the concerns of bicyclists and pedestrians are given adequate consideration. Projects that change the traffic configuration by reducing shoulders to add turn lanes are considered an alteration of the existing roadway and have the same requirements as Preservation projects for ADA accessibility. (See Chapter 1510 for guidance on pedestrian facilities.) Potential projects are:

Pavement Markings: Develop added storage, additional lanes, or altered lane alignment. This work may modify tapers, radii, or painted islands, or channelize bicycle lanes, preferential-use lanes, or shoulders.

Raised Channelization: New or altered raised curbing to channelization islands to enhance guidance, curtail violation or misuse, or introduce access control.

Left-Turn Channelization (two-lane highways): Restriping two-lane highways with a minimum pavement width of 39 feet to provide left-turn channelization at existing intersections. Restripe to provide a minimum of 11-foot lanes and 3-foot shoulders. Ensure the pavement is structurally adequate for the anticipated traffic loads. Within this configuration at “T” intersections, a reduced length refuge lane may be provided for traffic entering the main line from the intersecting roadway. (See Exhibit 1110-6 for minimum dimensional characteristics of the refuge lane.)

(e) **Nonmotorized Facilities Projects**

Nonmotorized facilities projects add adjacent roadside features for bicycle or pedestrian use. Involve the region bicycle/pedestrian coordinator in the project development process. Potential projects are:

Sidewalk: Installation of sidewalks, which might involve preserving the existing shoulder or converting some portion of the existing shoulder for use as a new sidewalk.

Walkway: Adds to the existing roadway's overall width to provide a wider walkable shoulder.

Separated Trails: Separated bike lane or pedestrian paths on independent alignment or parallel to the highway.

Spot Improvement: Installation of ADA sidewalk curb cuts, new pedestrian landings, sidewalk bulbouts at intersections, or new/revised trailhead features.

(f) **Roadside Projects**

Roadside projects are modifications to roadside features for safety purposes. Potential projects are:

Cross Section: Altering roadway cross sections to address clear zone hazard or sight distance concerns such as slope flattening, recontouring a ditch, closing a ditch with culvert, or removing a hazard.

Protection: Installation of hazard protection for clear zone mitigation, including guardrail, barrier, and impact attenuator.

New Object: Placement within clear zone of new hardware or fixed object unable to meet breakaway criteria.

(2) Design Elements

The following elements are shown in the minor operational enhancement matrices. If full design level applies, see the chapters listed below. (If modified design level applies, see Chapter 1130.)

(a) **Main Line**

Sight Distance: Any combination of horizontal and vertical stopping sight distance, decision sight distance, passing sight distance, and intersection sight distance. (See Chapters 1260 and 1310 for definitions and guidance.)

Lane Width: Definition is in Chapter 1100.

Lane Transition: Definition is in Chapter 1100.

Shoulder Width: Definition is in Chapter 1100.

Fill/Ditch Slope: Definition is in Chapter 1100.

Clear Zone: Definition is in Chapter 1100.

(b) **Ramps**

Sight Distance: Any combination of horizontal and vertical stopping sight distance, decision sight distance, and intersection sight distance. (See Chapters 1260 and 1310 for definitions and guidance.)

Lane Width: The lane width for ramp alignments. (See Lane Width definition in Chapter 1100.)

Lane Transition: The lane transition applied to a ramp alignment. (See definition for Lane Transitions in Chapter 1100; also see Chapter 1360.)

Shoulder Width: The shoulder width for a ramp alignment. (See Shoulder Width definition in Chapter 1100.)

Fill/Ditch Slopes: The fill/ditch slope along a ramp alignment. (See Fill/Ditch Slope definition in Chapter 1100.)

Clear Zone: The clear zone along a ramp alignment. (See Clear Zone definition in Chapter 1100.)

(c) **Ramp Terminals or Intersections**

Turn Radii: Definition is in Chapter 1310.

Angle: Definition is in Chapter 1310.

Sight Distance: Definition is in Chapter 1310.

(d) **Crossroads at Ramps**

Lane Width: The lane width on a crossing alignment intersected by a ramp. (See Lane Width definition in Chapter 1100.)

Shoulder Width: The shoulder width on a crossing alignment intersected by a ramp. (See Shoulder Width definition in Chapters 1100 and 1140.)

Pedestrian and Bike: The facilities on a crossing alignment intersected by a ramp for accommodation of pedestrians and/or bicycles. (See Chapter 1510 for pedestrian design and Chapter 1520 for bicycles.)

Fill/Ditch Slopes: The fill/ditch slope along a crossroad intersected by a ramp. (See Fill/Ditch Slope definition in Chapter 1100.)

Clear Zone: The clear zone along a crossroad intersected by a ramp. (See Clear Zone definition in Chapter 1100.)

(e) **Barriers All**

Terminals and Transition Sections: Definition is in Chapter 1100.

Standard Run: Definition is in Chapter 1100.

(f) **Ped & Bike**

Pedestrian and Bike: The facilities along a route for accommodation of pedestrians and bicycles. (See Chapter 1510 for pedestrian design and Chapter 1520 for bicycles.)

1110.04 Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix Procedures

During Project Definition and design, the following steps are used to select and apply the appropriate *minor operational enhancement matrix*. Each step is further explained in this chapter.

- Select a *minor operational enhancement matrix* by identifying the route: Interstate/NHS Freeway, NHS Nonfreeway, or Non-NHS.
- Within the minor operational enhancement matrix, select the *row* by the type of work.
- Use the minor operational enhancement matrix to determine the *documentation and approval levels for the various design elements* in the project. Apply the appropriate design levels, and document the design decisions as required by this chapter and Chapter 300.

1110.05 Selecting a Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix

Selection of a minor operational enhancement matrix is based on the highway system: Interstate/NHS Freeway, NHS Nonfreeway, Non-NHS (see Exhibit 1110-1). Exhibit 1100-3 provides a list of the NHS and Interstate routes in Washington. The minor operational enhancement matrices are shown in Exhibits 1110-2 through 1110-4. Follow *Design Manual* guidance for all projects except as noted in the minor operational enhancement matrices.

Route	Project	
	Freeway	Nonfreeway
Interstate	Matrix 1	
NHS	Matrix 1	Matrix 2
Non-NHS	Matrix 1	Matrix 3

Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix Selection Guide
Exhibit 1110-1

1110.06 Project Type

Row selection in the design matrices is based on project type or type of work (see 1110.03(1)). For projects not listed in the matrices, consult the HQ Traffic Office and the HQ Design Office.

Some projects might include work from several project types. In such cases, identify the design and approval level for each project element. In all cases, select the higher design level and approval level where overlaps are found.

1110.07 Using a Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix

The column headings on a minor operational enhancement matrix are design elements. They are based on the following 13 Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) controlling design criteria: design speed, lane width, shoulder width, bridge width, structural capacity, horizontal alignment, vertical alignment, grade, stopping sight distance, cross slope, superelevation, vertical clearance, and horizontal clearance. For the column headings, some of the controlling criteria are combined (for example, design speed is part of horizontal and vertical alignment).

Unlike the design matrices described in Chapter 1100, designers using a minor operational enhancement matrix are not required to inventory deficiencies for elements not improved by the minor enhancement project. Similarly, they are not required to justify existing deficiencies not addressed by minor enhancement projects. In the case where improvements to existing features surpass the existing condition, but do not meet the design guidelines, Basic Documentation plus Supplemental Coordination (BD+) is required (see 1110.09(1)).

A **blank cell** on a minor operational enhancement matrix signifies that the design element is beyond the scope of the project and need not be addressed.

For work on ramps on Interstate or NHS freeway routes, there is a requirement to provide assurance of no adverse effect to main line flow. Forward to FHWA a copy of the documentation providing assurance, or process a deviation through FHWA if there is an adverse effect.

(1) Design Level

The minor operational enhancement matrices specify the appropriate design level for the various project elements. The design levels specified are *full* and *modified*.

- **Full design level (F)** improves roadway geometrics, safety, and operational elements. (See Chapter 1140 and other applicable chapters for design guidance.) Use the current traffic volume with Chapter 1140 to evaluate design class for Q Program projects.
- **Modified design level (M)** preserves and improves existing roadway geometrics, safety, and operational elements (see Chapter 1130).

Design levels specified in a matrix cell are supplemented with notations for design variances.

(2) Design Variances

Design variances are information packages that justify the introduction of features that are not in accordance with design guidelines. Variances specified in minor operational enhancement project cells include Design Justification: Level 2, Level 3, or Level 4. (See 1110.09 for details on documentation requirements.)

1110.08 Project Approval

Project approval for minor operational enhancement projects authorizes expenditures for the project. The State and/or region Traffic Engineers have the responsibility and authority to authorize all expenditures for Q2 Low-Cost Enhancements. Delegation of design and/or expenditure approval authority for Q Program-funded projects must be identified in writing from the appropriate Traffic Engineer to the person receiving the delegated authority. Such written delegation must identify the specific conditions for which approval authority has been delegated. Note: Design Approval authority for Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) contracts cannot be delegated.

Mechanisms for project expenditure approval vary with the types of projects and the costs involved.

- **Minor-cost projects** are projects normally implemented by state forces directed through maintenance task orders within the monetary limits established in RCW 47.28.030. Expenditure authority is granted by initialing the work order.

- **Midrange projects** include all contract change orders, local agency agreements, or Q Program bid items included in an Improvement or Preservation project, regardless of cost. Maintenance task orders exceeding the monetary limits established in RCW 47.28.030 are included in this category. Expenditure authority is granted by initialing the task order, change order, or agreement memo.
- **PS&E contracts** are stand-alone contracts funded through the Q Program for minor operational enhancement projects. A Design Summary/Approval memorandum must be prepared and signed by the region Traffic Engineer to approve a project in this category. Exhibit 1110-5 provides a template for the approval memo.

Project development decisions and approvals for “regulatory” and for “driver guidance” projects reside within region or HQ Traffic offices. Projects impacting roadway geometric features in the “Pavement Widening,” “Rechannelizing Existing Pavement,” “Nonmotorized Facilities” or “Roadside” categories are developed jointly by region Traffic and Project Development offices. Depending on the route type, the approval authority may involve the Assistant State Design Engineer and the FHWA.

1110.09 Documentation

The minor operational enhancement matrices include a column that specifies the documentation levels for each project type listed. The documentation levels are categorized as Basic Documentation (BD) and Basic Documentation plus Supplemental Coordination (BD+).

In all cases, the documentation must outline the rationale for the project and include backup information sufficient to support the design decisions. Document the roadway configuration prior to implementing a minor operational enhancement project. Retain the documentation in a permanent retrievable file at a central location in each region.

(1) Projects

The documentation levels for each project type in the matrices are:

(a) Basic Documentation (BD)

The Basic Documentation level applies to regulatory or driver guidance projects. Documentation consists of an unstructured compilation of materials sufficient to validate the designer’s decisions. Materials may include meeting notes, printed e-mails, records of phone conversations, copies of memos, correspondence, and backup data such as level of service modeling, accident data, and design drawings.

A single narrative outlining the decision-making process from start to finish is not required, provided that the materials retained in the file can be traced to a decision consistent with the project design. This level of documentation includes a requirement for inputting the project information into the TRaffic ACtion Tracking System (TRACTS) database at the conclusion of the project.

(b) **Basic Documentation plus Supplemental Coordination (BD+)**

The Basic Documentation plus Supplemental Coordination level applies to all projects except regulatory or driver guidance projects.

A more comprehensive evaluation of options and constraints is required for this documentation level. Documentation includes basic documentation with additional information describing coordination efforts with other WSDOT groups having a stake in the project. Document the coordination efforts with the following disciplines: Environmental, Hydraulics, Local Agencies and WSDOT Local Programs, Maintenance, Materials, Program Management, Real Estate Services, Urban Corridors, Utilities, and the general public. This level of documentation also includes a requirement for inputting the project information into the TRACTS database at the conclusion of the project.

(2) Design Deviations

(a) **Design Justification (DJ)**

A Design Justification is a written narrative summarizing the rationale for introduction of a feature that varies from the applicable *Design Manual* guidelines. Include in the narrative sufficient information to describe the problem, the constraints, and the trade-offs at a level of detail that provides a defendable professional judgment. DJs are not intended to have the same level of formality as Level 2, 3, and 4 deviations. DJs may use written memos, e-mails, or documented discussions with the approving traffic authority. The region Traffic Engineer has responsibility for approving Design Justifications, and the DJ documentation must include the name and date of the approving authority. At the time the work order is approved, the region Project Development Engineer and the Assistant State Design Engineer are to be sent informational copies of the Design Justification to provide them an opportunity to communicate their concerns. Comment on the informational copy is not mandatory, and progress toward project implementation does not wait on a response.

(b) **Level 2**

Level 2 documentation serves to justify a deviation to the specified design guidance. Within the document, summarize the project, the design guidelines, the proposed elements that vary from design guidelines, alternatives analyzed, constraints and impacts of each alternative, and the recommended alternative. Level 2 documentation requires the joint approval of the region Traffic Engineer and the region Project Development Engineer. At the time the work order is approved, the Assistant State Design Engineer is to be sent an informational copy of the Level 2 documentation to provide an opportunity to communicate concerns. Comment on the informational copy is not mandatory, and progress toward project implementation does not wait on a response.

(c) **Level 3**

Level 3 documentation requirements include the Level 2 requirements; however, the approval process is through the region Traffic Engineer and region Project Development Engineer, with final approval from the Assistant State Design Engineer.

(d) **Level 4**

Level 4 documentation requirements include the Level 3 requirements; however, the approval process is through the region Traffic Engineer, the region Project Development Engineer, and the Assistant State Design Engineer, with final approval from the Federal Highway Administration on Interstate routes.

Level 2, 3, and 4 design deviation requests are intended to be stand-alone documentation describing the project, design criteria, proposed element(s), why the desired design level was not or cannot be used, alternatives evaluated, and a request for approval. Include funding source(s), type of route, project limits, design classification, posted speed, current ADT, and percent truck traffic in the project description. Justification for the design deviation can include project costs, but is to be supported by at least two of the following:

- Accident history or potential
- Engineering judgment
- Environmental issues
- Route continuity (consistency with adjoining route sections)
- Project is an interim solution (covering a 4- to 6-year time horizon)

⇩ Project Type	Main Line						Ramps [1]						Ramp Terminals or Intersections			Crossroads at Ramps					Barriers All		Doc. Level
Design Elements ⇨	Sight Dist.	Lane Width	Lane Tran-sition	Shldr Width	Fill/ Ditch Slopes	Clear Zone	Sight Dist.	Lane Width	Lane Tran-sition	Shldr Width	Fill/ Ditch Slopes	Clear Zone	Turn Radii	Angle	Sight Dist.	Lane Width	Shldr Width	Ped & Bike	Fill/ Ditch Slopes	Clear Zone	Term. & Trans. Section	Std Run[2]	
Regulatory (Traffic Office Authority)																							**BD**
Driver Guidance (Traffic Office Authority)																							**BD**
Pavement Widening																							
(1-1Q) Turn Lane								**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**			**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(1-2Q) Pullout							**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**		**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(1-3Q) Expansion	**F/3**	**F/4**	**F/3**	**F/4**	**F/3**	**F/3**		**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**		**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(1-4Q) Median Crossover	**F/3**	**F/4**	**F/3**	**F/4**	**F/3**	**F/3**															**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
Rechannelize Existing Pavement																							
(1-5Q) Pavement Markings	**F/3**	**F/4**	**F/3**	**F/4**		**F/3**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**		**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**		**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(1-6Q) Raised Channelization							**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**		**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**		**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(1-7Q) Left-Turn Channelization 2-Lane Hwys[3]																**DJ**	**DJ**	**M**					
Nonmotorized Facilities																							
(1-8Q) Sidewalk/Walkway													**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(1-9Q) Separated Trails																		**F/DJ**			**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(1-10Q) Spot Improvement													**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**		**F/DJ**			**BD+**
Roadside																							
(1-11Q) Cross Section	**F/3**				**F/3**	**F/3**	**F/DJ**				**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**			**F/DJ**				**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(1-12Q) Protection	**F/3**			**F/4**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**F/DJ**			**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**			**F/DJ**		**M/DJ**		**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(1-13Q) New Object	**F/3**					**F/3**	**F/DJ**					**F/DJ**			**F/DJ**					**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**

☐ A blank cell indicates that the element is not applicable.

F Full design level.

M Modified design level (see Chapter 1130).

DJ Design Justification required and Project Approval by region Traffic, with notification to the HQ Design Office.

2 Deviation approval through the region Traffic and Project Development Engineers, with notification to the HQ Design Office.

3 Deviation approval through Level 2 and the Assistant State Design Engineer.

4 Deviation approval through Level 3, and FHWA on Interstate routes.

BD Basic Documentation required.

BD+ Basic Documentation plus supplemental coordination required.

Notes:

[1] Documentation must provide assurance of no adverse effect to main line flow. Otherwise process a deviation through Level 4.

[2] If existing shoulder width is decreased below minimum values, when placing new guardrail or concrete barrier, a deviation request justifying the proposal is required.

[3] Where existing pavement width is 39 feet or greater.

General:

- If a project impacts any design element, the impacted elements are addressed.
- Elements not impacted, are not addressed.
- For items not meeting the design level provided in the matrix, justification or deviation is required and is processed through the designated approval level, DJ, 2, 3, or 4.
- For at-grade intersections on NHS routes, apply Matrix 2.

Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix 1: Interstate and NHS Freeway Routes

Exhibit 1110-2

⇩ Project Type	Main Line						Intersections			Ped & Bike	Barriers All		Doc. Level
Design Elements ⇨	Sight Dist.	Lane Width	Lane Transition	Shldr Width	Fill/ Ditch Slopes	Clear Zone	Turn Radii	Angle	Sight Dist.	Ped & Bike	Term. & Trans. Section	Std Run[2]	
Regulatory (Traffic Office Authority)													**BD**
Driver Guidance (Traffic Office Authority)													**BD**
Pavement Widening													
(2-1Q) Turn Lane	**M/2**	**M/3**	**F/2**	**M/3**	**M/2**	**F/2**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(2-2Q) Pullout	**M/2**	**M/3**	**F/2**	**M/3**	**M/2**	**F/2**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(2-3Q) Expansion	**M/2**	**M/3**	**F/2**	**M/3**	**M/2**	**F/2**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
Rechannelize Existing Pavement													
(2-4Q) Pavement Markings	**M/2**	**M/3**	**F/2**	**M/3**		**F/2**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(2-5Q) Raised Channelization	**M/2**	**M/3**	**F/2**	**M/3**		**F/2**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(2-6Q) Left-Turn Channelization 2-Lane Hwys[3]		**DJ**		**DJ**						**M**			
Nonmotorized Facilities													
(2-7Q) Sidewalk/Walkway	**M/2**	**M/3**	**F/2**	**M/3**	**M/2**	**F/2**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(2-8Q) Separated Trails	**M/2**				**M/2**	**F/2**				**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(2-9Q) Spot Improvement	**M/2**	**M/3**	**F/2**	**M/3**	**M/2**	**F/2**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
Roadside													
(2-10Q) Cross Section	**M/2**				**M/2**	**F/2**			**F/DJ**		**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(2-11Q) Protection	**M/2**				**M/2**	**F/2**			**F/DJ**		**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**
(2-12Q) New Object	**M/2**				**M/2**	**F/2**			**F/DJ**		**F/3**	**F/3**	**BD+**

☐ A blank cell indicates that the element is not applicable.

F Full design level.

M Modified design level (see Chapter 1130).

DJ Design Justification required and Project Approval by region Traffic, with notification to the HQ Design Office.

2 Deviation approval through the region's Traffic and Project Development Engineers, with notification to the HQ Design Office.

3 Deviation approval through Level 2 and the Assistant State Design Engineer.

BD Basic Documentation required.

BD+ Basic Documentation plus supplemental coordination required.

Notes:

[2] If existing shoulder width is decreased below minimum values, when placing new guardrail or concrete barrier, a deviation request justifying the proposal is required.

[3] Where existing pavement width is 39 feet or greater.

General:

- If a project impacts any design element, the impacted elements are addressed.
- Elements not impacted, are not addressed.
- For items not meeting the design level provided in the matrix, justification or deviation is required and is processed through the designated approval level, DJ, 2 or 3.
- For interchange features, apply Matrix 1.

Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix 2: NHS Nonfreeway Routes

Exhibit 1110-3

⇩ Project Type	Main Line						Intersections			Ped & Bike	Barriers All		Doc. Level
Design Elements ⇨	Sight Dist.	Lane Width	Lane Transition	Shldr Width	Fill/ Ditch Slopes	Clear Zone	Turn Radii	Angle	Sight Dist.	Ped & Bike	Term. & Trans. Section	Std Run[2]	
Regulatory (Traffic Office Authority													**BD**
Driver Guidance (Traffic Office Authority)													**B**
Pavement Widening													
(3-1Q) Turn Lane	**M/DJ**	**M/2**	**F/DJ**	**M/2**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/2**	**F/2**	**BD+**
(3-2Q) Pullout	**M/DJ**	**M/2**	**F/DJ**	**M/2**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/2**	**F/2**	**BD+**
(3-3Q) Expansion	**M/DJ**	**M/2**	**F/DJ**	**M/2**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/2**	**F/2**	**BD+**
Rechannelize Existing Pavement													
(3-4Q) Pavement Markings	**M/DJ**	**M/2**	**F/DJ**	**M/2**		**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/2**	**F/2**	**BD+**
(3-5Q) Raised Channelization	**M/DJ**	**M/2**	**F/DJ**	**M/2**		**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/2**	**F/2**	**BD+**
(3-6Q) Left-Turn Channelization 2-Lane Hwys [3]		**DJ**		**DJ**						**M**			
Nonmotorized Facilities													
(3-7Q) Sidewalk/Walkway	**M/DJ**	**M/2**	**F/DJ**	**M/2**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/2**	**F/2**	**BD+**
(3-8Q) Separated Trails	**M/DJ**				**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**				**F/DJ**	**F/2**	**F/2**	**BD+**
(3-9Q) Spot Improvement	**M/DJ**	**M/2**	**F/DJ**	**M/2**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/DJ**	**F/2**	**F/2**	**BD+**
Roadside													
(3-10Q) Cross Section	**M/DJ**				**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**			**F/DJ**		**F/2**	**F/2**	**BD+**
(3-11Q) Protection	**M/DJ**				**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**			**F/DJ**		**F/2**	**F/2**	**BD+**
(3-12Q) New Object	**M/DJ**				**M/DJ**	**F/DJ**			**F/DJ**		**F/2**	**F/2**	**BD+**

☐ A blank cell indicates that the element is not applicable.

F Full design level.

M Modified design level (see Chapter 1130).

DJ Design Justification required and Project Approval by region Traffic, with notification to the HQ Design Office.

2 Deviation approval through the region's Traffic and Project Development Engineers, with notification to the HQ Design Office.

3 Deviation approval through Level 2 and the Assistant State Design Engineer.

BD Basic Documentation required.

BD+ Basic Documentation plus supplemental coordination required.

Notes:

[2] If existing shoulder width is decreased below minimum values, when placing new guardrail or concrete barrier, a deviation request justifying the proposal is required.

[3] Where existing pavement width is 39 feet or greater.

General:

- If a project impacts any design element, the impacted elements are addressed.
- Elements not impacted, are not addressed.
- For items not meeting the design level provided in the matrix, justification or deviations required and is processed through the designated approval level, DJ, 2, or 3.
- For interchange features, apply Matrix 1.

Minor Operational Enhancement Matrix 3: Non-NHS Routes

Exhibit 1110-4

Washington State Department of Transportation
Paula J. Hammond, P.E.
Secretary of Transportation

Transportation Building
310 Maple Park Avenue S.E.
P.O. Box 47300
Olympia, WA 98504-7300
360-705-7000
TTY: 1-800-833-6388
www.wsdot.wa.gov

Date Placeholder

TO: (Specify) Region Traffic Engineer[1]

THROUGH:

FROM:

SUBJECT:

Design Approved By:

(Specify) Region Traffic Engineer[1]

General Information

SR is a (*NHS or Non-NHS*) route, and classified as a (*Urban or Rural*) (*Interstate, Principal Arterial, Minor Arterial, Collector or Urban Managed Access Roadway*) in _________________ County. The posted speed limit is _________________ mph. The ADT is _________________ with _________________ percent trucks. The project is within a (*full, partial, or modified limited access control, or Class 1 - 5 managed access controlled*) area.

Project Initiation

How did the project get started? Accident history, constituent call, e-mail, or letter?

Existing Geometrics

What is out there today? Lane, shoulder, sidewalk widths? Turn pockets, etc.?

Project Description

How did you come to the design decision being proposed? What does it resolve for the situation at hand? What options have you looked at? Why were other options not selected?

Proposed Geometrics

What will be out there when you are through? Lane, shoulder, sidewalk widths? Turn pockets, etc.?

[1] For example "Eastern Region Traffic Engineer"

Q Project Design Summary/Approval Template
Exhibit 1110-5

Resurfacing

If pavement is involved what does the resurfacing report say to use?

Pavement Marking/Traffic Control Devices

What happens with the pavement markings? Signing? Illumination? Signals? Etc.?

Environmental Approval

Did you check with the Environmental Services Office? Are there any issues or permits that need to be addressed? Hydraulics?

Deviations

Are there any deviations? Describe briefly what features are deviated and the date of approval.

Permits

Are there any permits or easements needed? Construction permits? Noise variances? Utility relocations? Detours? Signal? Others?

Project Cost and Schedule

How much do you anticipate spending? When is the project scheduled for advertisement? When do you anticipate the project will be completed?

Sole Source Justification

Some traffic items are sole source and require justification. Have you completed the process?

Work Zone Traffic Control

What happens to traffic, pedestrians, and bicyclists during construction? Is a lane taken or reduced in width? Night work? Shoulder work? Duration? Does Washington State Patrol (WSP) need to be involved?

Local Agency Coordination

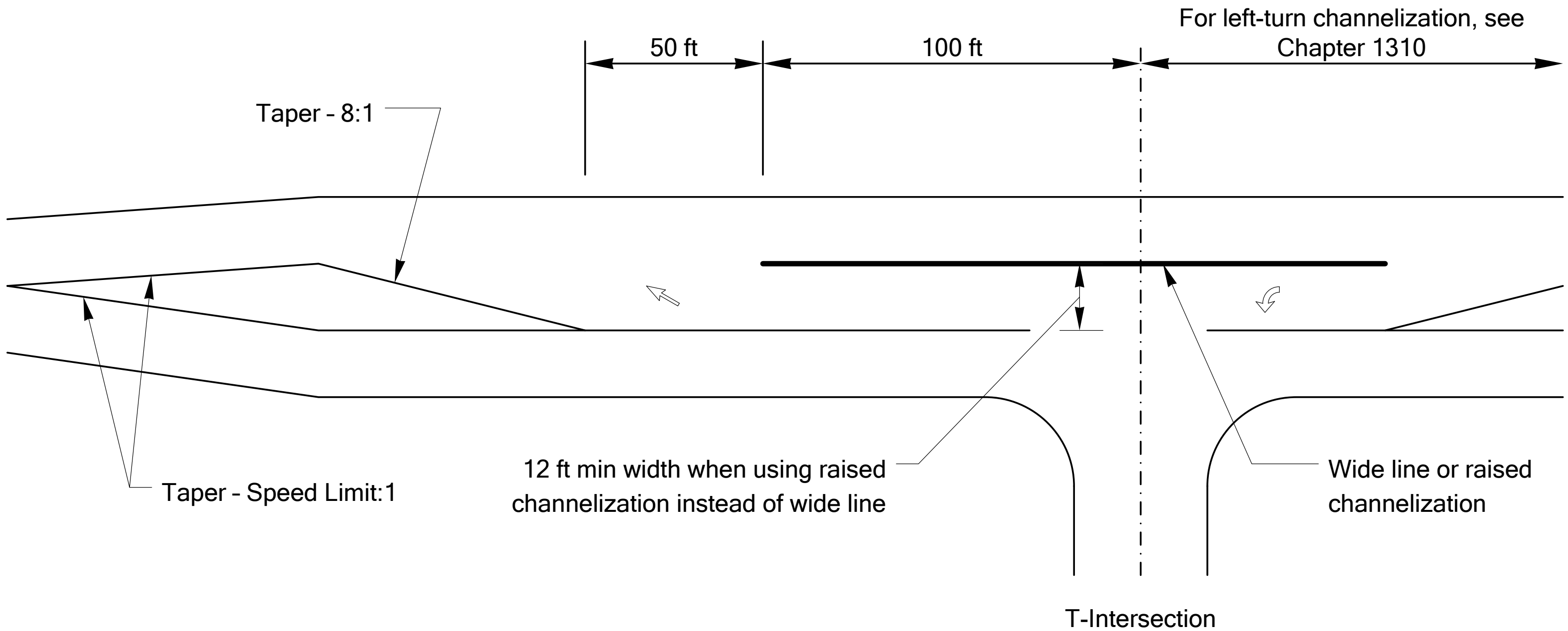
Do we need to coordinate with or notify the city or county? WSP?

We are requesting approval for the Subject project. This project was designed in accordance with Q Program guidelines for Minor Operational Enhancements, Matrix ___________ *note matrix title and project type line.*

Typist's Initials Placeholder

Attachments: Channelization Plan? Permits? Deviations?
cc: Headquarters Design 47329

Q Project Design Summary/Approval Template
Exhibit 1110-5 (continued)



Refuge Lane for T-Intersections on Two-Lane Highways
Exhibit 1110-6

Chapter 1120 Basic Design Level

1120.01 General
1120.02 Basic Safety
1120.03 Minor Safety and Minor Preservation Work
1120.04 Documentation

1120.01 General

Basic design level (B) preserves pavement structures, extends pavement service life, and restores the roadway for reasonably safe operations, which may include safety enhancements. Flexibility is provided so that other enhancements may be made while remaining within the scope of pavement preservation work.

The basic safety items of work listed below may be programmed under a separate project from the paving project as long as:

- There is some benefit to the delay.
- The safety features remain functional.
- The work is completed within two years after the completion of the paving project.

If some of the items are separated from the paving project, maintain a separate documentation file that addresses the separation of work during the two-year time period.

For bituminous surface treatment projects on non-NHS routes, the separation of basic safety is not limited to the two-year time period. The basic safety work can be accomplished separately using a corridor-by-corridor approach.

1120.02 Basic Safety

For basic design level, include the following items of work:

- Install and replace delineation in accordance with Chapter 1030.
- Install and replace rumble strips in accordance with the design matrices (see Chapters 1100 and 1600).
- Adjust existing features (such as monuments, catch basins, and access covers) that are affected by resurfacing.
- Adjust guardrail height in accordance with Chapter 1610.
- Replace signing as needed; this does not include replacement of sign bridges or cantilever supports.
- Relocate, protect, or provide breakaway features for sign supports, luminaires, and WSDOT electrical service poles inside the Design Clear Zone.
- Restore sight distance at public road intersections and the inside of curves through low-cost measures (when available) such as removal or relocation of signs and other obstructions or cutting of vegetative matter.
- Upgrade bridge rail in accordance with the matrices and Chapter 1610.
- Upgrade barrier terminals and bridge end protection, including transitions, in accordance with Chapter 1610.

- Restore the cross slope to 1.5% when the existing cross slope is flatter than 1.5% and the steeper slope is needed to provide adequate highway runoff in areas of intense rainfall.
- Remove the rigid top rail and brace rails from Type 1 and Type 6 chain link fence and retrofit with a tension wire design (see Chapter 560).

1120.03 Minor Safety and Minor Preservation Work

Consider the following items, where appropriate, within the limits of a pavement Preservation project:

- Spot safety enhancements, which are modifications to isolated roadway or roadside features that, in the engineer's judgment, reduce potential accident frequency or severity.
- When recommended by the region Traffic Engineer, additional or improved channelization to address intersection-related accident concerns, where sufficient pavement width and structural adequacy exist or can be obtained. With justification, which considers the impacts to all roadway users, channelization improvements may be implemented, with lane and shoulder widths no less than the design criteria specified in the "Rechannelize Existing Pavement projects" section in Chapter 1110. Consider illumination of these improvements. Document decisions when full illumination is not provided, including an analysis of the frequency and severity of nighttime accidents.
- Roadside safety hardware (such as guardrail, signposts, and impact attenuators).
- Addressing Location 1 Utility Objects in accordance with the *Utilities Accommodation Policy*.

To maintain the intended function of existing systems, consider the following:

- Right of way fencing (see Chapter 560)
- Drainage (see Chapter 800)
- Illumination (see Chapter 1040)
- Electrical
- Pedestrian use (see Chapter 1510)
- Bicycle use (see Chapter 1520)

Examples of the above include, but are not limited to:

- Installing short sections of fence needed to control access.
- Replacing grates that are not bicycle-safe (see Chapter 1520).
- Upgrading electrical system components that require excessive maintenance.
- Beveling culverts.

1120.04 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Chapter 1130 Modified Design Level

1130.01 General
1130.02 Design Speed
1130.03 Alignment
1130.04 Roadway Widths
1130.05 Cross Slopes
1130.06 Sideslopes
1130.07 Bike and Pedestrian
1130.08 Bridges
1130.09 Intersections
1130.10 Documentation

1130.01 General

Modified design level (M) preserves and improves existing roadway geometrics, safety, and operational elements. This chapter provides the design criteria that are unique to the modified design level.

Modified design level criteria have been developed to apply to all applicable functional classes. As a result, for the lower volumes and urban highways, modified design level criteria might exceed full design level criteria. In these cases, full design level criteria may be used.

For projects developed to correct a deficiency, address all design elements contributing to that deficiency, even when those elements meet modified design level criteria.

Design elements that do not have modified design level guidance include:

- Lane transitions (see Chapter 1210)
- On- and off-connections (see Chapter 1360)
- Access control (see Chapter 520)
- Clear zone (see Chapter 1600)
- Signing, delineation, and illumination (see Chapters 1020, 1030, and 1040)
- Basic safety (see Chapter 1120)
- Structural capacity (see Chapter 720)
- Vertical clearance (see Chapter 720)
- Intersection sight distance (see Chapter 1310)
- Traffic barriers (see Chapter 1610)

1130.02 Design Speed

When applying modified design level to a project, select a design speed for use in the design process that reflects the character of the terrain and the type of highway. The desirable design speed for modified design level is given in Exhibit 1130-1. The minimum design speed is not less than the posted speed or the proposed posted speed. Document the speed used, including any supporting studies and data. (See Chapter 1140 for additional information on design speed.)

Route Type	Posted Speed	Desirable Design Speed
Freeways	All	10 mph over the posted speed
Nonfreeways	45 mph or less	Not less than the posted speed
	Over 45 mph	5 mph over posted speed

Desirable Design Speed
Exhibit 1130-1

When the posted speed exceeds the design speed for existing geometric features that are to remain in place (curve radius, superelevation, sight distance, or other elements that the design speed controls), make one of the following two choices:

- When appropriate, work with the region Traffic Office to lower the posted speed to be consistent with the existing design speeds for the geometric features on the facility.
- Complete a corridor analysis in order to leave the posted speed unchanged and identify design elements that do not meet the criteria for the existing posted speed. Identify each appropriate location for cautionary signing, including road approach sight distance, and work with the region Traffic Office to install the cautionary signing as provided for in the MUTCD, either by contract or region sign personnel. Consult with and obtain guidance from region project development leadership prior to progressing with the corridor analysis and the design.

1130.03 Alignment

(1) *Horizontal Alignment*

Consideration of horizontal alignment for modified design level is normally limited to curves. Curve design is controlled by the design speed (see 1130.02), superelevation (see 1130.03(4)), and stopping sight distance (see 1130.03(3)).

Identify major modifications to horizontal alignment in the Project Summary. (Examples of major modifications are total removal of pavement and reconstruction of the subgrade.)

(2) *Vertical Alignment*

Vertical alignment consists of a series of profile grades connected by vertical curves.

(a) **Vertical Curves**

Stopping sight distance controls crest vertical curves. Exhibit 1130-8 gives the minimum curve length for crest vertical curves to remain in place for modified design level stopping sight distance. (See 1130.03(3) for additional information on modified design level stopping sight distance.)

When modified design level criteria are being applied, existing sag vertical curves are not normally addressed.

When either a crest or a sag vertical curve is to be reconstructed, use full design level criteria (see Chapters 1220 and 1260).

(b) **Profile Grades**

When applying modified design level, profile grades generally are not revised. However, realignment may be justified for combinations of steep grades and restricted horizontal or vertical curvature. Identify major modifications to vertical alignment in the Project Summary. (Examples of major modifications are total removal of pavement and reconstruction of the subgrade.) When changing the profile grade, see Chapter 1140 for the maximum grade for the functional class of the route.

(3) Stopping Sight Distance

Stopping sight distance is a controlling factor for both vertical and horizontal alignment. A 2-foot object height is used for modified design level stopping sight distance evaluation. Exhibit 1130-2 gives the minimum stopping sight distances allowed to remain in place.

Design Speed (mph)	Design Stopping Sight Distance (ft)
40 or less	155
45	200
50	250
55	305
60	360
65	425
70	495
75	570
80	645

Stopping Sight Distance: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-2

(a) **Stopping Sight Distance for Horizontal Curves**

For modified design level, use the existing lateral clearance to the sight obstruction and the curve radius to compare the existing condition to Exhibit 1130-9a. When reconstructing a horizontal curve, apply full design level criteria for sight distance (see Chapter 1260).

For Exhibit 1130-9a, an obstruction is any object with a height of greater than 2.75 feet above the roadway surface on the inside of a curve. Examples of possible obstructions are median barrier, guardrail, bridges, walls, cut slopes, wooded areas, and buildings. Objects between 2.75 feet and 2.00 feet above the roadway surface within the M distance might be a sight obstruction (see Exhibit 1130-9b for guidance) depending on the distance from the roadway.

(b) **Stopping Sight Distance for Vertical Curves**

For existing crest vertical curves, use the algebraic difference in grades and the length of curve to compare the existing condition to the modified design level stopping sight distances from Exhibit 1130-2. Use the equations in Exhibit 1130-3 or use Exhibit 1130-8 to evaluate the existing curve.

When a crest vertical curve is lengthened, the minimum sight distance is increased; however, the length of the roadway that has the minimum sight distance is also increased. This results in a questionable benefit when the new sight distance is less than for full design level. Therefore, when the existing roadway is reconstructed to improve stopping sight distance, apply full design level criteria (see Chapter 1260).

When $s < L$: $$L = \frac{As^2}{2158}$$
When $s > L$: $$L = 2s - \frac{2158}{A}$$
Where: L = Length of vertical curve (ft) s = Sight distance from Exhibit 1130-2 (ft) A = Absolute value of the algebraic difference in grades (%)

Minimum Crest Vertical Curve Length:
Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-3

(4) Superelevation

Evaluate existing superelevation using the equation in Exhibit 1130-4 with the friction factors from Exhibit 1130-5 or with a ball banking analysis. When the existing superelevation equals or exceeds the value from the equation or when the maximum speed determined by a ball banking analysis equals or exceeds the design speed, the modified design level criteria are met.

When modifying the superelevation of an existing curve where the existing pavement is to remain in place, the equation in Exhibit 1130-4 may be used to determine the superelevation.

For curves on realigned roadways or where the roadway is to be rebuilt, provide full design level superelevation (see Chapter 1250).

The “minimum radius for normal 2% crown” values from Exhibit 1130-5 are the radii that, with the design speed and side friction factor, result in a 2% adverse crown (e=-2%) (see the equation in Exhibit 1130-4). The modified design level criteria are met when a roadway has not more than 2% crown in both directions and a radius equal to or greater than the minimum radius for normal 2% crown.

$$e = \left(\frac{6.69V^2}{R}\right) - f$$

Where:

R = Existing curve radius (ft)
V = Design speed from 1130.02 (mph)
e = Superelevation rate (%)
f = Side friction factor from Exhibit 1130-5

Minimum Superelevation:
Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-4

Design Speed (mph)	Side Friction Factor (f)	Minimum Radius for Normal 2% Crown (ft)
15	32	51
20	27	107
25	23	199
30	20	335
35	18	512
40	16	764
45	15	1041
50	14	1392
55	13	1838
60	12	2405
65	11	3137
70	10	4092
75	9	5369
80	8	7126

Side Friction Factor
Exhibit 1130-5

1130.04 Roadway Widths

Review route continuity and roadway widths. Select widths on the tangents to be consistent throughout a given section of the route. Make any changes where the route characteristics change. Do not provide a design that decreases the existing roadway width.

(1) Lane and Shoulder Width

Lane and shoulder widths are shown in Exhibits 1130-10 and 1130-11. Consider joint use with other modes of transportation in shoulder design.

Minimum ramp lane and shoulder widths are shown in Exhibit 1130-14. Use full design level lane and shoulder widths (see Chapter 1360) for new and rebuilt ramps.

(2) Turning Roadway Widths

The roadway might need to be widened on curves to accommodate large vehicles. The minimum roadway width for a curve is not less than that of the adjacent tangent sections.

Widening of the total roadway width of a curve by less than 2 feet may be omitted for existing two-lane roadways that are to remain in place.

(a) **Two-Lane Two-Way Roadway**

The width of a curve may not be less than that shown in Exhibit 1130-12a or, if the internal angle (delta) is less than 90°, Exhibit 1130-12b. The minimum total roadway width from Exhibit 1130-12a or 1130-12b may include the shoulder. When the shoulder is included, provide full-depth pavement.

(b) **One-Way Roadway and Ramp**

Widths on a curve are shown in Exhibit 1130-6 for existing roadways that are to remain in place. Use full design level width (see Chapters 1240 and 1360) for new and rebuilt ramps.

(3) Median Width

Minimum median widths are given in Exhibit 1130-10.

Curve Radius (ft)	One-Lane[1]	Two-Lane[2]
Tangent to 1001	20	24
500	21	25
400	21	25
300	22	25
200	22	26
150	23	26
100	25	28
75	27	29
50	30	31

Notes:

[1] Includes the shoulder width.

[2] Add shoulder widths from Exhibit 1130-10 for highways and 10 ft for ramps.

One-Way Roadway and Ramp Turning Roadway Widths: Modified Design Level

Exhibit 1130-6

1130.05 Cross Slopes

On tangent sections, the normal cross slopes of the traveled way are 2%.

If a longitudinal contiguous section of pavement is to be removed or is on a reconstructed alignment, or if a top course is to be placed over existing pavement, design the restored pavement cross slope to full design level criteria (see Chapter 1230).

The algebraic difference in cross slopes is an operational factor during a passing maneuver on a two-lane two-way roadway. Its influence increases when increased traffic volumes decrease the number and size of available passing opportunities.

A somewhat steeper cross slope may be desirable to facilitate pavement drainage in areas of intense rainfall, even though this might be less desirable from the operational point of view. In such areas, the design cross slopes may be increased to 2.5% with an algebraic difference of 5%.

For existing pavements, cross slopes within a range of 1% to 3% may remain if there are no operational or drainage concerns and, on a two-lane two-way roadway, the following conditions are met:

- The algebraic difference is not greater than 4% where the ADT is greater than 2000.
- The algebraic difference is not greater than 5% where the ADT is 2000 or less.
- The algebraic difference is not greater than 6% and the road is striped or signed for no passing.

For a two-lane two-way roadway, provide an algebraic difference to meet the appropriate conditions stated above except when facilitating drainage in areas of intense rainfall. When applying modified design level to a road with bituminous surface treatment (BST), the existing cross slope algebraic differences may remain.

To maintain or restore curb height, consider lowering the existing pavement level and improving cross slope by grinding before an asphalt overlay. The cross slope of the shoulder may be steepened to maximize curb height and minimize other related impacts. The shoulder may be up to 6% with a rollover between the traveled way and the shoulder of no more than 8% (see Chapter 1230).

1130.06 Sideslopes

(1) Fill/Ditch Slopes

Foreslopes (fill slopes and ditch inslopes) and cut slopes are designed as shown in the Fill and Ditch Slope Selection Table in Exhibit 1130-13 for modified design level main line roadway sections. After the foreslope has been determined, use the guidance in Chapter 1600 to determine the need for a traffic barrier.

Where a crossroad or road approach has steep foreslopes, there is the possibility that an errant vehicle could become airborne. Therefore, flatten crossroad and road approach foreslopes to 6H:1V where feasible and at least to 4H:1V. Provide smooth transitions between the main line foreslopes and the crossroad or road approach foreslopes. Where possible, move the crossroad or road approach drainage away from the main line. This can locate the pipe outside the Design Clear Zone and reduce the length of pipe.

(2) Cut Slopes

Existing stable backslopes (cut slopes) are to remain undisturbed unless disturbed by other work. When changes are planned to a cut slope, design them as shown in the Cut Slope Selection Table in Exhibit 1130-13.

1130.07 Bike and Pedestrian

The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) requires all pedestrian facilities located within public rights of way to be ADA-compliant. The Design Matrices in Chapter 1100 identify that the modified design level applies to bike and pedestrian design elements on specific project types. For those projects, the following guidance applies to pedestrian facilities:

- Evaluate pedestrian facilities within the project limits for compliance with the ADA.
- Address pedestrian facilities that are altered in any way by the project.
- Evaluate and make ADA-compliant the curb ramps and crosswalks on projects that use hot mix asphalt or Portland cement concrete pavement overlays or inlays.
- Evaluate and make ADA-compliant the curb ramps and crosswalks on projects that alter pavement markings. Note: Lane restriping that does not involve modal changes (such as changing a shoulder to a bikeway) or lane configuration changes are not considered alterations.

For pedestrian facility design guidance, including jurisdictional responsibilities when city streets form part of the state highway system, and for the definition of alterations, see Chapter 1510.

Bicycle elements are design exceptions on HMA or PCCP overlays or inlays on Interstate ramps or crossroads.

1130.08 Bridges

Design new and replacement bridges to full design level (see Chapter 1140) unless a corridor or project analysis justifies the use of modified design level lane and shoulder widths. Evaluate bridges to remain in place using Exhibits 1130-10 and 1130-11. Whenever possible, continue the roadway lane widths across the bridge and adjust the shoulder widths.

Consider joint use with other modes of transportation in lane and shoulder design (see Chapters 1410, 1430, 1510, and 1520).

1130.09 Intersections

Except as provided below, design intersections to meet the guidance in Chapter 1310.

(1) Turn Radii

The intersection turn radii (or right-turn corners) are controlled by the design vehicle. Exhibit 1130-7 is a guide for determining the design vehicle for modified design level. Perform a field review to determine intersection type, types of vehicles that use the intersection, and adequacy of the existing geometrics. Where the crossroad is a city street or county road, consider the city or county design criteria when selecting a design vehicle.

Design right-turn corners to meet the guidance of Chapter 1310 using the design vehicle selected from Exhibit 1130-7 or from the field review.

(2) Angle

The allowable angle between any two respective legs is between 60° and 120°. When realignment is planned to meet this angle criteria, consider realigning to an angle between 75° and 105°.

Intersection Type	Design Vehicle
Junction of Major Truck Routes	WB-67
Junction of State Routes	WB-40
Ramp Terminals	WB-40
Other Rural	SU[1]
Urban Industrial	SU[1]
Urban Commercial	P[1]
Residential	P[1]

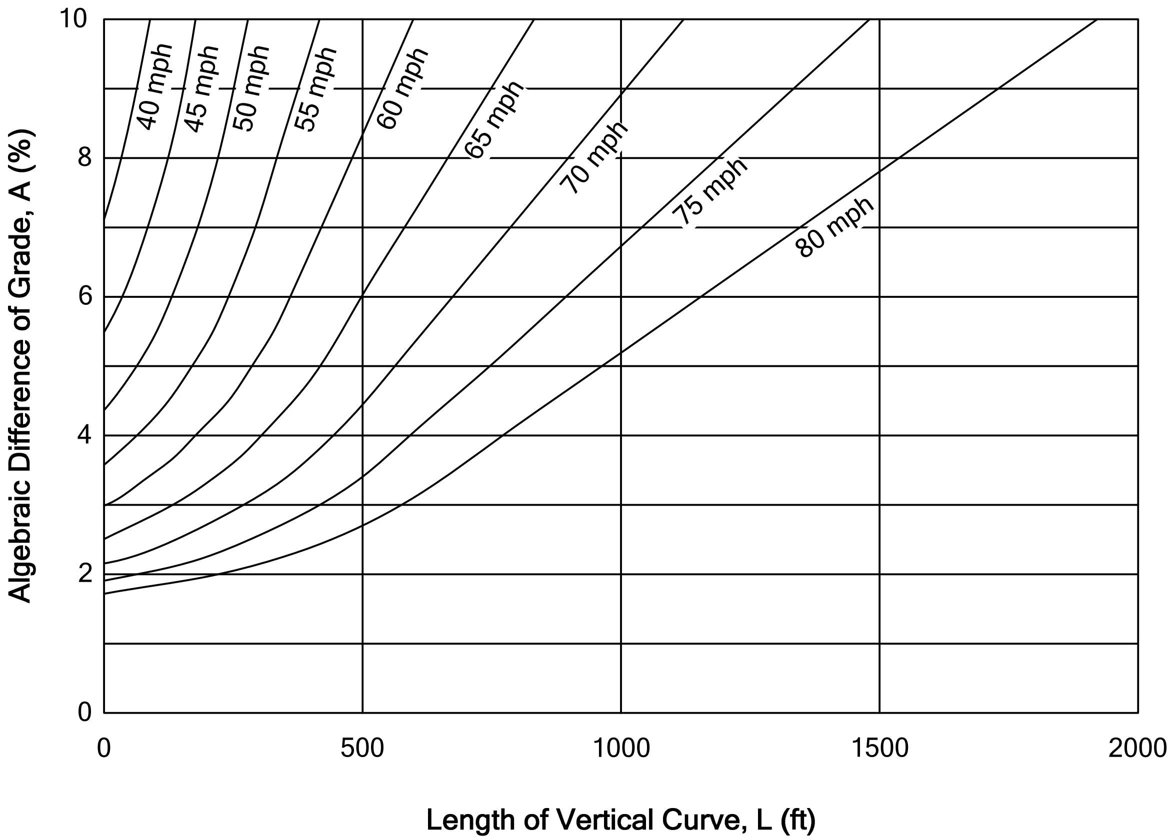
Note:

[1] Where the intersection is on a transit or school bus route, use the BUS design vehicle. (See Chapter 1430 for additional guidance on transit facilities and for the BUS turning path templates.)

Design Vehicles: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-7

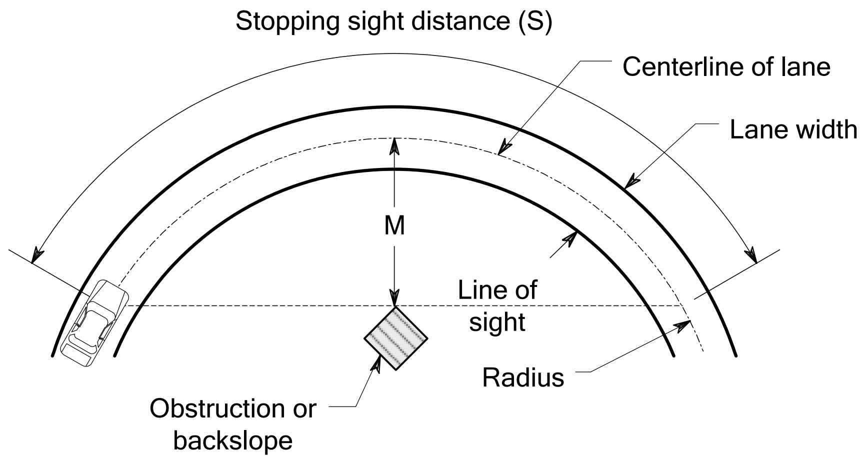
1130.10 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

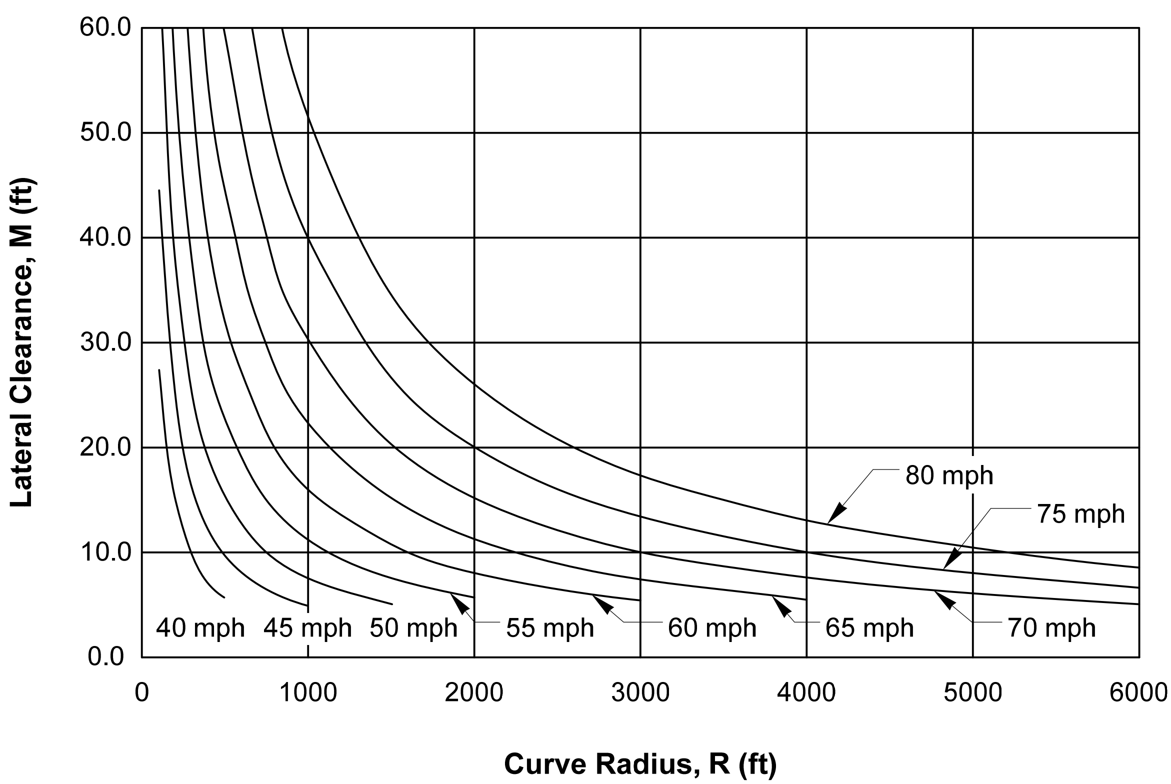


Note:
When the intersection of the algebraic difference of grade (A) with the length of vertical curve (L) is below the selected design speed line, modified design level criteria are met.

Evaluation for Stopping Sight Distance for Crest Vertical Curves: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-8

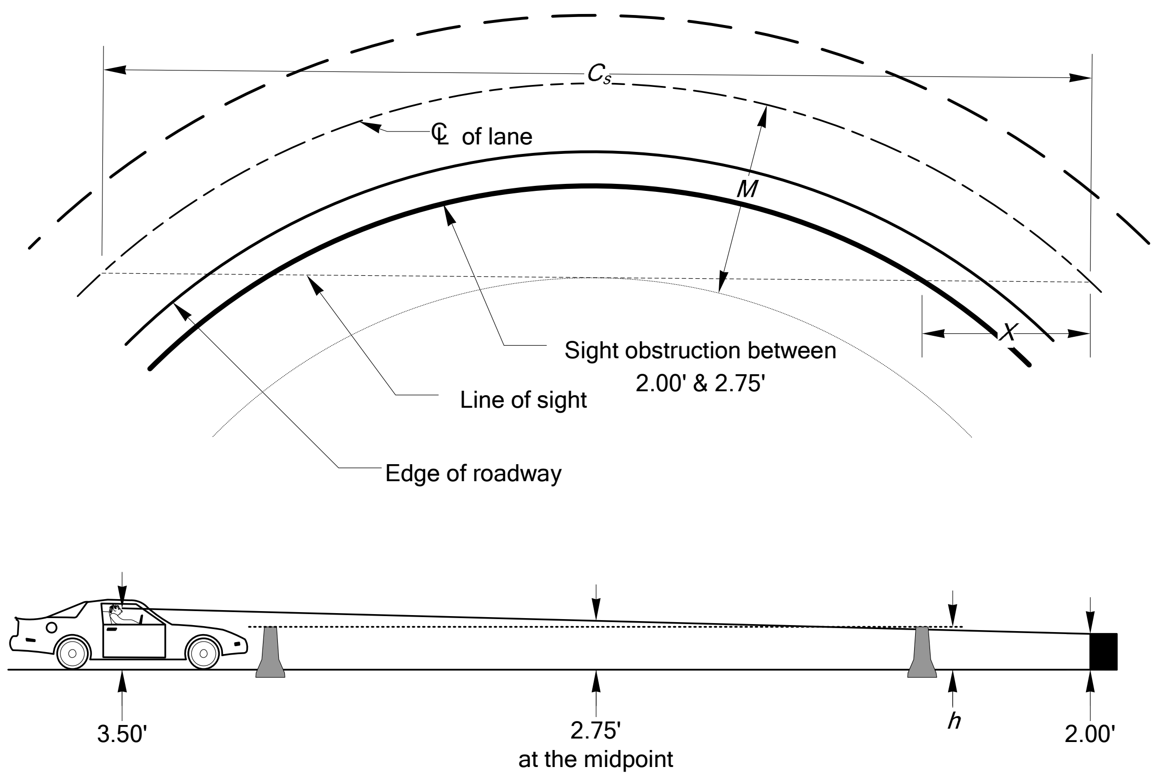


M is the distance in ft from the centerline of the inside lane to the obstruction. The obstruction is a cut slope or other object 2.75 ft or more above the inside lane. Objects between 2.75 ft and 2.00 ft above the roadway surface within the M distance might be a sight obstruction, depending on the distance from the roadway (see Exhibit 1130-9b).



Note:
When the intersection of the lateral clearance (M) with the curve radius (R) falls above the curve for the selected design speed, modified design level criteria are met.

Evaluation for Stopping Sight Distance for Horizontal Curves: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-9a



When:

$$h \leq \left(2 + \frac{1.5X}{C_s}\right)$$

modified design level criteria are met.

Where:

M = Lateral clearance for sight distance (ft) (see Exhibit 1130-9a)
Cs = Stopping sight distance chord (ft)
X = Distance from sight obstruction to end of sight distance chord (ft)
h = Height of sight obstruction above the inside lane

Evaluation for Stopping Sight Distance Obstruction for Horizontal Curves: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-9b

	Multilane Divided				Multilane Undivided			
	Trucks Under 10%		Trucks 10% and Over		Trucks Under 10%		Trucks 10% and Over	
Design Class	**MDL-1**	**MDL-2**	**MDL-3**	**MDL-4**	**MDL-5**	**MDL-6**	**MDL-7**	**MDL-8**
Current ADT[1]	Under 4000	Over 4000	Under 4000	Over 4000	Under 4000	Over 4000	Under 4000	Over 4000
Design Speed	See Exhibit 1130-1							
Traffic Lanes Number Width	 4 or more 11 ft	 4 or more 11 ft	 4 or more 11 ft`	 4 or more 12 ft	 4 or more 11 ft	 4 or more 11 ft	 4 or more 11 ft	 4 or more 12 ft
Shoulder Width Right[3] Left[4]	 4 ft 2 ft	 6 ft 2 ft	 4 ft 2 ft	 6 ft 2 ft	4 ft	6 ft[5]	4 ft	6 ft[5]
Parking Lanes Urban	None	None	None	None	8 ft	8 ft[2]	8 ft	8 ft[2]
Median Width[15] Rural Urban	 Existing Existing	 Existing Existing	 Existing Existing	 Existing Existing	 2 ft 2 ft	 4 ft 2 ft	 4 ft 2 ft	 4 ft 2 ft
Minimum Width for Bridges to Remain in Place[6][7][8]	24 ft[9]	26 ft[9]	24 ft[9]	26 ft[10]	48 ft[9]	50 ft[9][11]	50 ft[9][11]	54 ft[10][11]
Minimum Width for Rehabilitation of Bridges to Remain in Place[6][8][12]	28 ft[9]	30 ft[9]	28 ft[9]	32 ft[10]	54 ft[9]	60 ft[9][11][13]	56 ft[9][11]	64 ft[10][11][13]
Minimum Width for Replacement Bridges	Full Design Level Applies[14]							
Access Control	For limited access highways, see Chapters 530 and 540 and the Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan, or WAC 468-52 and the region's Highway Management Classification Report.							

Notes:

[1] If current ADT is approaching a borderline condition, consider designing for the higher classification.

[2] Parking restricted when ADT is over 15,000.

[3] When a curb section is used, the minimum shoulder width from the edge of traveled way to the face of curb is 4 ft. In urban areas, see Chapter 1140. On a route identified as a local, state, or regional significant bicycle route, the minimum shoulder width is 4 ft (see Chapter 1520).

[4] When a curb section is used, the minimum shoulder width from the edge of traveled way to the face of curb is 1 ft on the left.

[5] May be reduced by 2 ft under urban conditions.

[6] Width is the clear distance between curbs or rails, whichever is less.

[7] Use these widths for bridge deck treatment or thrie beam retrofit only.

[8] For median widths 25 ft or less, see Chapter 720.

[9] Add 11 ft for each additional lane.

[10] Add 12 ft for each additional lane.

[11] Includes a 4-ft median, which may be reduced by 2 ft under urban conditions.

[12] Use these widths for any bridge work beyond the treatment of the deck, such as bridge rail replacement, deck replacement, or widening.

[13] Includes 6-ft shoulders; may be reduced by 2 ft on each side under urban conditions.

[14] Modified design level lane and shoulder widths may be used, when justified, with a corridor or project analysis.

[15] When guardrail is installed along existing shoulders with a width greater than 4 ft, the shoulder width may be reduced by up to 4 inches.

Multilane Highways and Bridges: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-10

	Two-Lane Highways					
	Trucks Under 10%			Trucks 10% and Over		
Design Class	**MDL-9**	**MDL-10**	**MDL-11**	**MDL-12**	**MDL-13**	**MDL-14**
Current ADT[1]	Under 1000	1000-4000	Over 4000	Under 1000	1000-4000	Over 4000
Design Speed	See Exhibit 1130-1					
Traffic Lane Width[2]	11 ft	11 ft	11 ft	11 ft	11 ft	12 ft
Shoulder Width[4]	2 ft	3 ft[5]	4 ft	2 ft	3 ft[5]	4 ft
Parking Lanes Urban	8 ft	8 ft	8 ft[3]	8 ft	8 ft	8 ft[3]
Minimum Width for Bridges to Remain in Place[6][7]	22 ft[8]	24 ft	28 ft	22 ft[8]	24 ft	28 ft
Minimum Width for Rehabilitation of Bridges to Remain in Place[7][9]	28 ft[10]	32 ft	32 ft	28 ft[10]	32 ft	32 ft
Minimum Width for Replacement Bridges	Full Design Level Applies[11]					
Access Control	For limited access highways, see Chapters 530 and 540 and the Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan, or WAC 468-52 and the region's Highway Management Classification Report.					

Notes:

[1] If current ADT is approaching a borderline condition, consider designing for the higher classification.

[2] For turning roadways, see Exhibits 1130-12a and 1130-12b.

[3] Parking restrictions are desirable when ADT exceeds 7500.

[4] When a curb section is used, the minimum shoulder width from the edge of traveled way to the face of curb is 4 ft. In urban areas, see Chapter 1140. On a route identified as a local, state, or regional significant bicycle route, the minimum shoulder width is 4 ft (see Chapter 1520).

[5] For design speeds of 50 mph or less on roads of 2000 ADT or less, width may be reduced by 1 ft, with justification.

[6] Use these widths for bridge deck treatment or thrie beam retrofit only.

[7] Width is the clear distance between curbs or rails, whichever is less.

[8] 20 ft when ADT is 250 or less.

[9] Use these widths when a for any bridge work beyond the treatment of the deck, such as bridge rail replacement, deck replacement, or widening.

[10] 26 ft when ADT is 250 or less.

[11] Modified design level lane and shoulder widths may be used, when justified, with a corridor or project analysis.

Two-Lane Highways and Bridges: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-11

Radius of Centerline, R (ft)	Minimum Total Roadway Width[1], W (ft)	Minimum Lane Width, L (ft)
Tangent	26	11
900	26	11
800	27	12
700	27	12
600	28	12
500	28	12
400	29	12
350	30	12
300	31	12
250	33	13
200	35	13
150	39	13

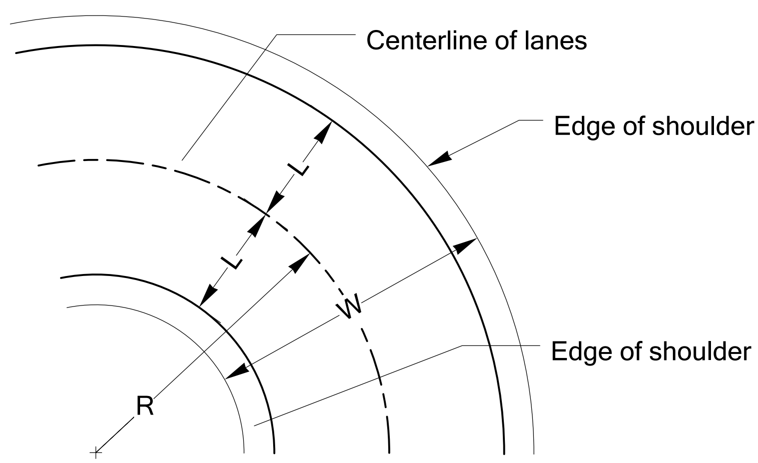
Notes:

Also see minimums from Exhibit 1130-11. If the minimum total roadway width is greater than the sum of the shoulders and lane widths, apply the extra width to the inside of the curve.

[1] Total width may include the shoulders.

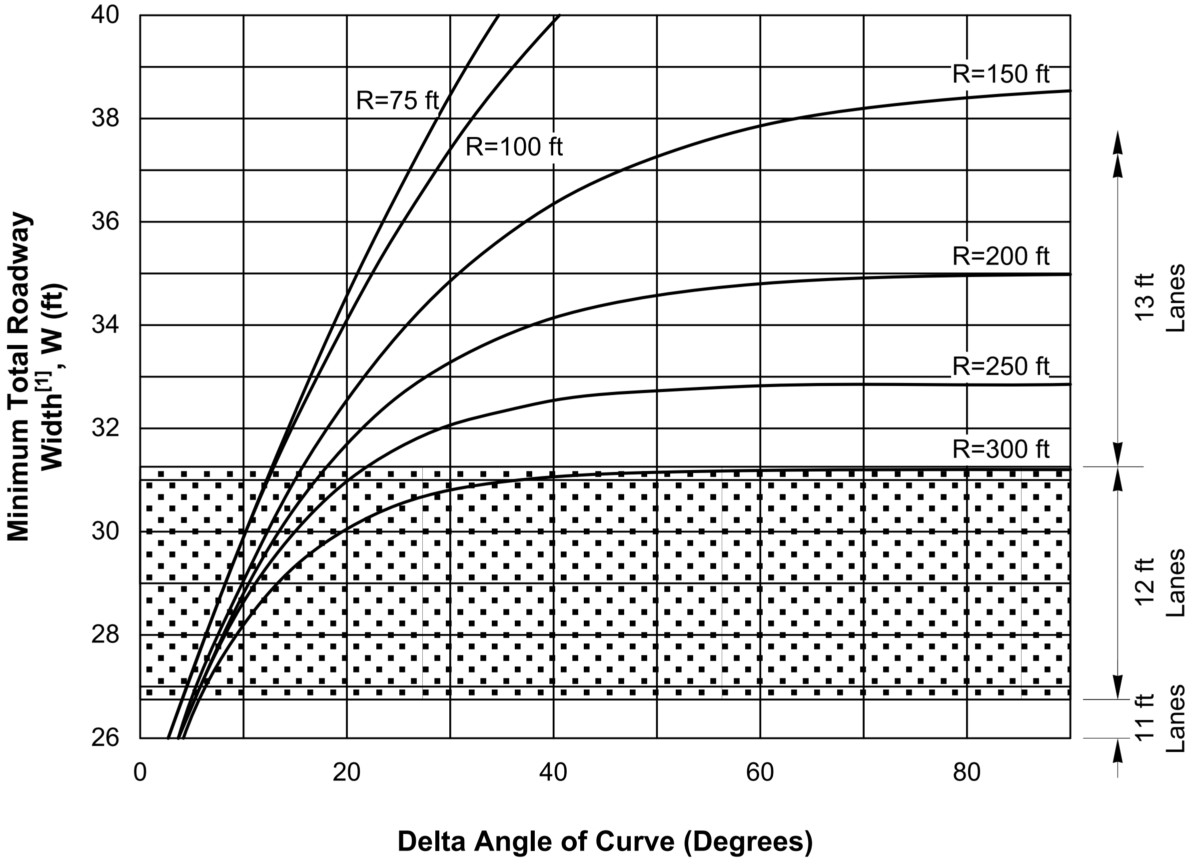
Roadway width is based on:

- WB-63 design vehicle (the WB-63 was used as the design vehicle with 48-ft trailer adopted in the 1982 Surface Transportation Assistance Act).
- 2.5-ft clearance per lane.



Minimum Total Roadway Widths for Two-Lane Two-Way Highway Curves: Modified Design Level

Exhibit 1130-12a



Notes:

May be used when the internal angle (delta) is less than 90°.

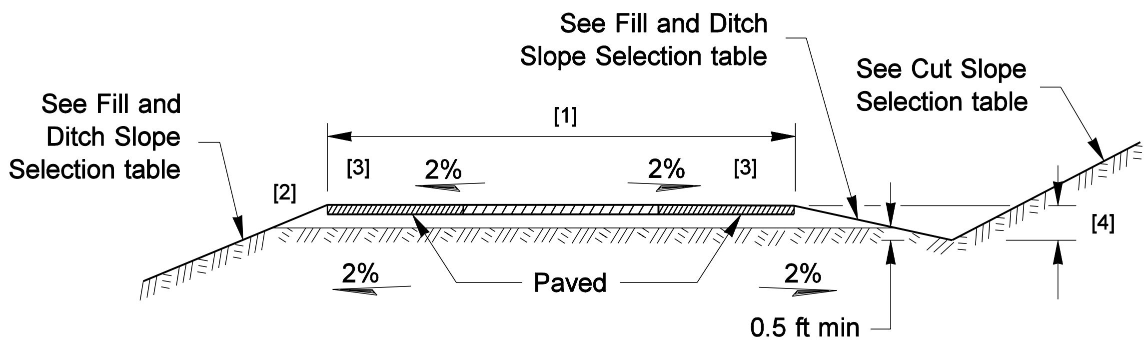
If result is less than the total roadway width from Exhibit 1130-11, use the greater.

[1] Total width may include the shoulders.

Roadway width is based on:

- WB-63 design vehicle (the WB-63 was used as the design vehicle with 48-ft trailer adopted in the 1982 Surface Transportation Assistance Act).
- 2.5-ft clearance per lane.

Minimum Total Roadway Widths for Two-Lane Two-Way Highway Curves: Modified Design Level, Based on the Delta Angle
Exhibit 1130-12b



Height of Cut (ft)	Slope Not Steeper Than[5]
0 – 5	4H:1V
5 – 20	3H:1V
over 20	2H:1V

Cut Slope Selection Table

Height of Fill/Depth of Ditch (ft)	Slope Not Steeper Than
0 – 20	4H:1V
20 – 30	3H:1V
over 30	2H:1V[6][7]

Fill and Ditch Slope Selection Table

Notes:

[1] For minimum roadway widths, see Exhibits 1130-10 and 1130-11. For turning roadway widths, see Exhibits 1130-12a and 1130-12b.

[2] Widen and round embankments steeper than 4H:1V.

[3] For shoulder slopes, see Chapter 1230.

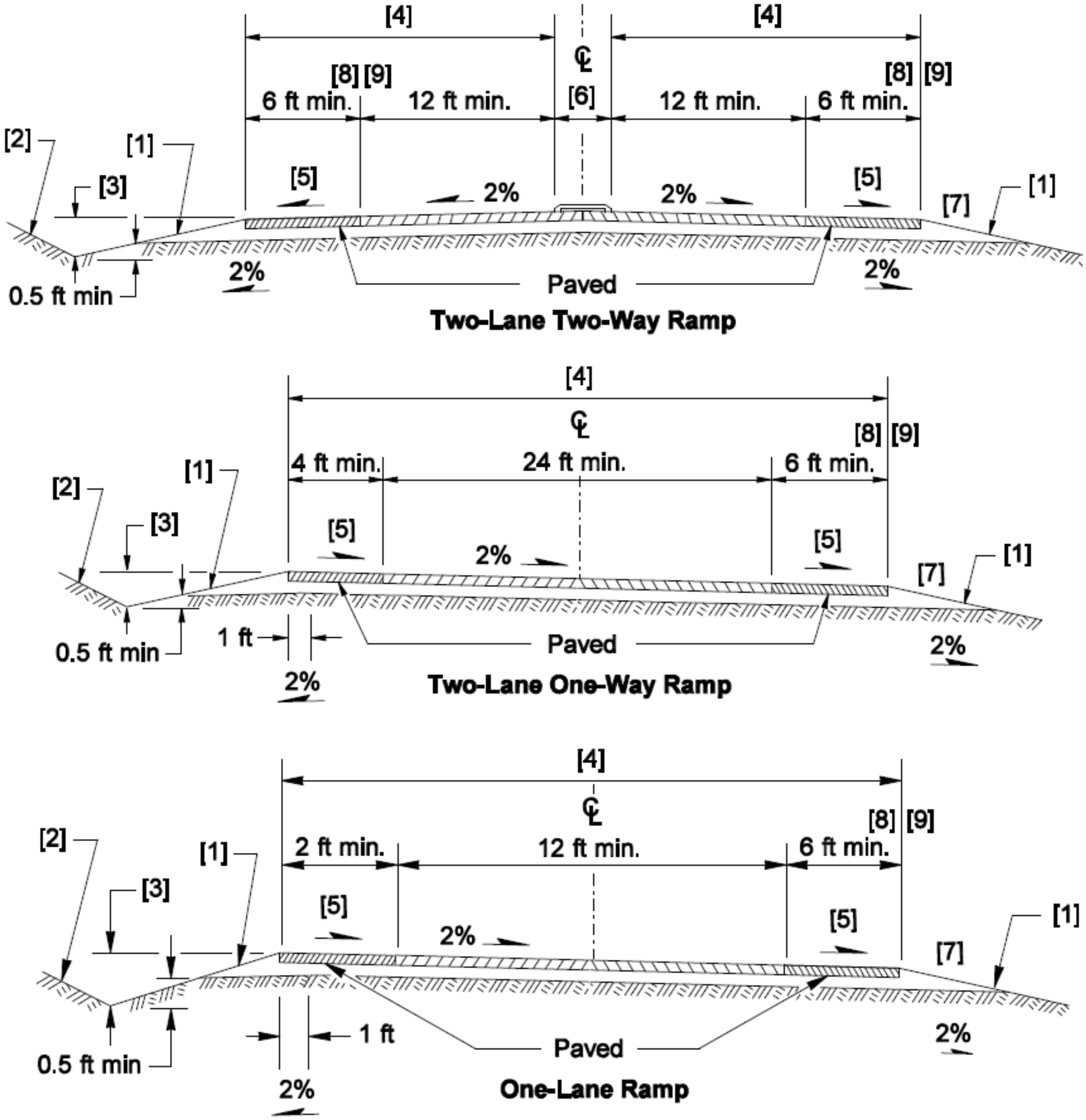
[4] Minimum ditch depth is 2 ft for design speeds over 40 mph and 1.5 ft for design speeds 40 mph or less.

[5] Or as recommended by the soils or geotechnical report. (See Chapter 1600 for clear zone and barrier guidance.)

[6] Where feasible, provide flatter slopes for the greater fill heights and ditch depths.

[7] Fill slopes up to 1½H:1V may be used where favorable soil conditions exist. (See Chapter 1230 for additional details and Chapter 1600 for clear zone and barrier guidance.)

Main Line Roadway Sections: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-13



Notes:

[1] See Fill and Ditch Slope Selection Table in Exhibit 1130-13.

[2] See Cut Slope Selection Table in Exhibit 1130-13.

[3] Minimum ditch depth is 2 ft for design speeds over 40 mph and 1.5 ft for design speeds at and under 40 mph.

[4] For minimum ramp width, see 1130.04(2)(b) and Exhibit 1130-6.

[5] For shoulder slopes, see Chapter 1230.

[6] Provide the median width of a two-lane two-way ramp not less than for traffic control devices and their shy distances.

[7] Widen and round embankments steeper than 4H:1V.

[8] Existing 6 ft may remain. When the roadway is to be widened, 8 ft is desirable.

[9] When guardrail is installed along existing shoulders with a width greater than 4 ft, the shoulder width may be reduced by up to 4 inches.

Ramp Roadway Sections: Modified Design Level
Exhibit 1130-14

Chapter 1140 Full Design Level

1140.01 General
1140.02 References
1140.03 Definitions
1140.04 Functional Classification
1140.05 Terrain Classification
1140.06 Geometric Design Data
1140.07 Design Speed
1140.08 Traffic Lanes
1140.09 Shoulders
1140.10 Medians
1140.11 Curbs
1140.12 Parking
1140.13 Pavement Type
1140.14 Structure Width
1140.15 Right of Way Width
1140.16 Grades
1140.17 Fencing
1140.18 Documentation

1140.01 General

Full design level is the highest level of design and is used on new and reconstructed highways. These projects are designed to provide optimum mobility, safety, and efficiency of traffic movement. The overall objective is to move the greatest number of vehicles, at the highest allowable speed, and at optimum safety. Major design controls are: functional classification; terrain classification; urban or rural surroundings; traffic volume; traffic character and composition; design speed; and access control.

1140.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 46.61.575, Additional parking regulations

RCW 47.05.021, Functional classification of highways

RCW 47.24, City streets as part of state highways

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-18-040, Design standards for rearranged county roads, frontage roads, access roads, intersections, ramps and crossings

(2) Design Guidance

Local Agency Guidelines (LAG), M 36-63, WSDOT

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Design Standards – Interstate System, AASHTO, 2005

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

1140.03 Definitions

collector system Routes that primarily serve the more important intercounty, intracounty, and intraurban travel corridors; collect traffic from the system of local access roads and convey it to the arterial system; and on which, regardless of traffic volume, the predominant travel distances are shorter than on arterial routes (RCW 47.05.021).

design speed The speed used to determine the various geometric design features of the roadway.

divided multilane A roadway with two or more through lanes in each direction and a median that physically or legally prohibits left turns, except at designated locations.

expressway A divided highway that has a minimum of two lanes in each direction for the exclusive use of traffic and that may or may not have grade separations at intersections.

freeway A divided highway that has a minimum of two lanes in each direction for the exclusive use of traffic and with full control of access.

frontage road A road that is a local road or street located parallel to a highway for service to abutting property and adjacent areas and for control of access.

functional classification The grouping of streets and highways according to the character of the service they are intended to provide.

high pavement type Portland cement concrete pavement or hot mix asphalt (HMA) pavement on a treated base.

highway A general term denoting a street, road, or public way for the purpose of vehicular travel, including the entire area within the right of way.

incorporated city or town A city or town operating under RCW 35 or 35A.

intermediate pavement type Hot mix asphalt pavement on an untreated base.

Interstate System A network of routes designated by the state and the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) under terms of the federal-aid acts as being the most important to the development of a national system. The Interstate System is part of the principal arterial system.

lane A strip of roadway used for a single line of vehicles.

lane width The lateral design width for a single lane, striped as shown in the *Standard Plans* and the *Standard Specifications*. The width of an existing lane is measured from the edge of traveled way to the center of the lane line or between the centers of adjacent lane lines.

limited access highway Highways where the rights of direct access to or from abutting lands have been acquired from the abutting landowners.

low pavement type Bituminous surface treatment (BST).

managed access highway Highways where the rights of direct access to or from abutting lands have not been acquired from the abutting landowners.

median The portion of a highway separating the traveled ways for traffic in opposite directions.

minor arterial system A rural network of arterial routes linking cities and other activity centers that generate long distance travel and, with appropriate extensions into and through urban areas, form an integrated network providing interstate and interregional service (RCW 47.05.021).

National Highway System (NHS) An interconnected system of principal arterial routes that serves interstate and interregional travel; meets national defense requirements; and serves major population centers, international border crossings, ports, airports, public transportation facilities, other intermodal transportation facilities, and other major travel destinations. The Interstate System is a part of the NHS.

operating speed The speed at which drivers are observed operating their vehicles during free-flow conditions. The 85^{th} percentile of the distribution of observed speeds is most frequently used.

outer separation The area between the outside edge of traveled way for through traffic and the nearest edge of traveled way of a frontage road or collector-distributor (C-D) road.

posted speed The maximum legal speed as posted on a section of highway using regulatory signs.

principal arterial system A connected network of rural arterial routes with appropriate extensions into and through urban areas, including routes designated as part of the Interstate System, that serves corridor movements with travel characteristics indicative of substantial statewide and interstate travel (RCW 47.05.021).

roadway The portion of a highway, including shoulders, for vehicular use.

rural design area An area that meets none of the conditions to be an urban design area.

shoulder The portion of the roadway contiguous with the traveled way, primarily for accommodation of stopped vehicles, emergency use, lateral support of the traveled way, and use by pedestrians and bicycles.

shoulder width The lateral width of the shoulder, measured from the edge of traveled way to the edge of roadway or the face of curb.

suburban area A term for the area at the boundary of an urban design area. Suburban settings may combine higher speeds common in rural design areas with activities that are more common to urban settings.

traveled way The portion of the roadway intended for the movement of vehicles, exclusive of shoulders and lanes for parking, turning, and storage for turning.

two-way left-turn lane (TWLTL) A lane, located between opposing lanes of traffic, to be used by vehicles making left turns from either direction, from or onto the roadway.

undivided multilane A roadway with two or more through lanes in each direction on which left turns are not controlled.

urban area An area designated by the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) in cooperation with the Transportation Improvement Board and Region Transportation Planning Organizations, subject to the approval of the FHWA.

urban design area An area where urban design criteria are appropriate, that is defined by one or more of the following:

- An urban area.
- An area within the limits of an incorporated city or town.
- An area characterized by intensive use of the land for the location of structures, that receives urban services such as sewer, water, and other public utilities, as well as services normally associated with an incorporated city or town. This may include an urban growth area defined under the Growth Management Act (see RCW 36.70A, Growth management – Planning by selected counties and cities), but outside the city limits.
- An area with not more than 25% undeveloped land.

urbanized area An urban area with a population of 50,000 or more.

usable shoulder The width of the shoulder that can be used by a vehicle for stopping.

1140.04 Functional Classification

The state highway system is divided and classified according to the character and volume of traffic carried by the routes and distinguished by specific geometric design criteria (RCW 47.05.021). The functional classifications (from highest to lowest) used on highways are: Interstate, principal arterial, minor arterial, and collector. The higher functional classes give more priority to through traffic and less to local access. NHS routes are usually designed to a higher level of design than non-NHS routes.

For functional classification maps and criteria see:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/mapsdata/tdo/functionalclass.htm

1140.05 Terrain Classification

To provide a general basis of reference between terrain and geometric design, three classifications of terrain have been established:

- **Level:** Level to moderately rolling, this terrain offers few or no obstacles to the construction of a highway having continuously unrestricted horizontal and vertical alignment.
- **Rolling:** Hills and foothills, with slopes that rise and fall gently; however, occasional steep slopes might offer some restriction to horizontal and vertical alignment.
- **Mountainous:** Rugged foothills; high, steep drainage divides; and mountain ranges.

Terrain classification pertains to the general character of the specific route corridor. Roads in valleys or passes of mountainous areas might have the characteristics of roads traversing level or rolling terrain and are usually classified as level or rolling, rather than mountainous.

1140.06 Geometric Design Data

(1) State Highway System

For projects on all highways in rural design areas and on limited access highways in urban design areas, the geometric design data is controlled by the functional class and traffic volume (see Exhibits 1140-5 through 1140-8). The urban managed access highway design class, based on traffic volume and design speed (see Exhibit 1140-9), may be used on managed access highways in urban design areas, regardless of the functional class.

(2) City Streets as State Highways

For a state highway within an incorporated city or town that is a portion of a city street, develop the design features in cooperation with the local agency. For facilities on the NHS, use *Design Manual* criteria as the minimum for the functional class of the route. For facilities not on the NHS, the *Local Agency Guidelines* may be used as the minimum design criteria; however, the use of *Design Manual* criteria is encouraged whenever feasible. On managed access highways within the limits of incorporated cities and towns, the cities or towns have full responsibility for design elements, including access, outside of curb, or outside the paved shoulder where no curb exists, using the *Local Agency Guidelines.*

(3) City Streets and County Roads

Plan and design facilities that cities or counties will be requested to accept as city streets or county roads according to the applicable design criteria shown in:

- WAC 468-18-040.
- *Local Agency Guidelines*.
- The design criteria of the local agency that will be requested to accept the facility.

1140.07 Design Speed

Vertical and horizontal alignment, sight distance, and superelevation vary with design speed. Such features as traveled way width, shoulder width, and lateral clearances are usually not affected. For the relationships between design speed, geometric plan elements, geometric profile elements, superelevation, and sight distance, see Chapters 1210, 1220, 1250, 1260, 1310, and 1360.

The choice of a design speed is primarily influenced by functional classification, posted speed, operating speed, terrain classification, traffic volumes, accident history, access control, and economic factors. A geometric design that adequately allows for future improvements is also a major criterion. Categorizing a highway by a terrain classification often results in arbitrary reductions of the design speed, when, in fact, the terrain would allow a higher design speed without materially affecting the cost of construction. Savings in vehicle operation and other costs alone might be sufficient to offset the increased cost of right of way and construction.

It is important to consider the geometric conditions of adjacent sections. Maintain a uniform design speed for a significant segment of highway.

For projects on all rural highways and limited access highways in urban design areas on new or reconstructed alignment (vertical or horizontal) or full width pavement reconstruction, the design speed for each design class is given in Exhibits 1140-5 through 1140-8.

For other projects, the desirable design speed is not less than that given in Exhibit 1140-1. Do not select a design speed less than the posted speed.

When terrain or existing development limits the ability to achieve the design speed for the design class, use a corridor analysis to determine the appropriate design speed.

On urban managed access highways, the design speed is less critical to the operation of the facility. Closely spaced intersections and other operational constraints usually limit vehicular speeds more than the design speed.

For managed access facilities in urban design areas, select a design speed based on Exhibit 1140-1. In cases where the Exhibit 1140-1 design speed does not fit the conditions, use a corridor analysis to select a design speed. Select a design speed not less than the posted speed that is logical with respect to topography, operating speed (or anticipated operating speed for new alignment), adjacent land use, design traffic volume, accident history, access control, and the functional classification. Consider both year of construction and design year. Maintain continuity throughout the corridor, with changes (such as a change in roadside development) at logical points.

Route Type	Posted Speed	Desirable Design Speed
Freeways	All	10 mph over the posted speed
Nonfreeways	45 mph or below	Not lower than the posted speed
	Over 45 mph	5 mph over the posted speed

Desirable Design Speed
Exhibit 1140-1

1140.08 Traffic Lanes

The minimum lane width is based on the highway design class, terrain type, and whether it is in a rural or urban design area. Lanes 12 feet wide provide desirable clearance between large vehicles where traffic volumes are high and sizable numbers of large vehicles are expected. The added cost for 12-foot lanes is offset, to some extent, by the reduction in shoulder maintenance costs due to the lessening of wheel load concentrations at the edge of the lane.

Highway capacity is also affected by the width of the lanes. With narrow lanes, drivers operate their vehicles closer (laterally) to each other than they normally desire. To compensate, drivers increase the headway, which results in reduced capacity.

Exhibits 1140-5 through 1140-8 give the minimum lane widths for the various design classes for use on all rural highways and limited access highways in urban design areas. Exhibit 1140-9 gives the minimum lane widths for urban managed access highways.

The roadway on a curve may need to be widened to make the operating conditions comparable to those on tangents. For guidance on turning roadway width, see Chapter 1240.

1140.09 Shoulders

Shoulder width is controlled by the functional classification of the roadway, the traffic volume, and the shoulder function.

The more important shoulder functions and the associated minimum widths are given in Exhibit 1140-2. In addition to the functions in Exhibit 1140-2, shoulders also:

- Provide space to escape potential accidents or reduce their severity.
- Provide a sense of openness, contributing to driver ease and freedom from strain.
- Reduce seepage adjacent to the traveled way by discharging stormwater farther away.

Shoulder Function	Minimum Shoulder Width
Stopping out of the traffic lanes	8 ft[1]
Minimum lateral clearance	2 ft[2]
Pedestrian or bicycle use	4 ft[3]
Large-vehicle off-tracking on curves	See Chapters 1130, 1240 & 1310
Maintenance operations	Varies[4]
Law enforcement	8 ft[5]
Bus stops	See Chapter 1430
Slow-vehicle turnouts and shoulder driving	See Chapter 1270
Ferry holding	8 ft[6]
For use as a lane during reconstruction of the through lanes	8 ft[6]
Structural support of pavement	2 ft
Improve sight distance in cut sections	See Chapter 1260
Improve capacity	See Chapter 320

Notes:

[1] 10-ft minimum for trucks; 12-ft preferred.

[2] See Chapters 1600 and 1610.

[3] Minimum usable shoulder width for bicycles. For guidance, see Chapter 1520 for accommodating bicycles and Chapter 1510 for accommodating pedestrians.

[4] 10-ft usable width to park a maintenance truck out of the through lane; 12-ft clearance (14-ft preferred) for equipment with outriggers to work out of traffic.

[5] For additional information, see Chapters 1410 and 1720.

[6] Minimum usable shoulder width (10-ft preferred).

Minimum Shoulder Width
Exhibit 1140-2

Contact the region Maintenance Office to determine the shoulder width for maintenance operations. When shoulder widths wider than called for in Exhibits 1140-5 through 1140-9 are requested, compare the added cost of the wider shoulders to the added benefits to maintenance operations as well as other benefits that may be derived. When the region Maintenance Office requests a shoulder width different than the design class, provide justification for the width selected.

Minimum shoulder widths for use on all rural highways and limited access highways in urban design areas are based on functional classification and traffic volume (see Exhibits 1140-5 through 1140-8). Exhibit 1140-9 gives the minimum shoulder widths for urban managed access highways without curb. (See Chapter 1310 for guidance on shoulder widths at intersections.)

When curb with a height less than 24 inches is present on urban managed access highways, provide the minimum shoulder widths shown in Exhibit 1140-3. For information on curbs, see 1140.11.

When traffic barrier with a height of 2 feet or greater is used adjacent to the roadway, the minimum shoulder width from the edge of traveled way to the face of the traffic barrier is 4 feet. Additional width for traffic barrier shy distance (see Chapter 1610) is normally not provided on urban managed access highways.

Where there are no sidewalks, the minimum shoulder width is 4 feet. Shoulder widths less than 4 feet will require that wheelchairs using the roadway encroach on the through lane. For additional information and guidance regarding pedestrians and accessible routes, see Chapter 1510.

Lane Width	Posted Speed			
	>45 mph	≤45 mph	>45 mph	≤45 mph
	On Left		On Right[3]	
12 ft or wider	4 ft	[1][2]	4 ft	2 ft
11 ft	4 ft	[1][2]	4 ft	3 ft[4]

Notes:

[1] When mountable curb is used on routes with a posted speed of 35 mph or lower, shoulder width is desirable; however, with justification, curb may be placed at the edge of traveled way.

[2] 1 ft for curbs with a height of 8 inches or less. 2 ft for curbs or barriers with a height between 8 and 24 inches.

[3] When the route has been identified as a local, state, or regional significant bike route, the minimum shoulder width is 4 ft. Where signed bike lanes are present, see Chapter 1520 for guidance.

[4] When bikes are not a consideration, width may be reduced to 2 ft with justification.

[5] Measured from the edge of traveled way to the face of curb.

Shoulder Width for Curbed Sections[5] in Urban Areas
Exhibit 1140-3

The usable shoulder width is less than the constructed shoulder width when vertical features (such as traffic barrier or walls) are at the edge of the shoulder. This is because drivers tend to shy away from the vertical feature. For traffic barrier shy distance widening, see Chapter 1610.

Shoulders on the left between 4 feet and 8 feet wide are less desirable. A shoulder in this width range might appear to a driver to be wide enough to stop out of the through traffic, when it is not. To reduce the occurrence of this situation, when the shoulder width and any added clearance result in a width in this range, consider increasing the width to 8 feet.

Provide a minimum clearance to roadside objects to prevent shoulder narrowing. At existing bridge piers and abutments, a shoulder less than full width to a minimum of 2 feet is a design exception. For Design Clear Zone and safety treatment guidance, see Chapter 1600.

For routes identified as local, state, or regional significant bicycle routes, provide a minimum 4-foot shoulder. Maintain system continuity for the bicycle route, regardless of jurisdiction and functional class. For additional information on bicycle facilities, see Chapter 1520.

Shoulder widths greater than 10 feet may encourage use as a travel lane. Therefore, use shoulders wider than this only to meet one of the listed functions (see Exhibit 1140-2).

When walls are placed adjacent to shoulders, see Chapter 730 for barrier guidance.

1140.10 Medians

Medians are either restrictive or nonrestrictive. Restrictive medians limit left turns, physically or legally, to defined locations. Nonrestrictive medians allow left turns at any point along the route. Consider restrictive medians on multilane limited access highways and multilane managed access highways when the design hourly volume (DHV) is over 2000.

The primary functions of a median are to:

- Separate opposing traffic.
- Provide for recovery of out-of-control vehicles.
- Reduce head-on accidents.
- Provide an area for emergency parking.
- Allow space for left-turn lanes.
- Minimize headlight glare.
- Allow for future widening.
- Control access.

Medians may be depressed, raised, or flush with the through lanes. For maximum efficiency, make medians highly visible both night and day.

The width of a median is measured from edge of traveled way to edge of traveled way and includes the shoulders. The desirable median width is given in Exhibit 1140-4. The minimum width is the width required for shoulders and barrier (including shy distance) or ditch.

When selecting a median width, consider future needs such as wider left shoulders when widening from four to six lanes. A median width of 22 feet is desirable on a four-lane highway when additional lanes are anticipated. The minimum width to provide additional lanes in the median, without widening to the outside, is 46 feet. On freeways or expressways requiring less than eight lanes within the 20-year design period, provide sufficient median or lateral clearance and right of way to permit the addition of a lane in each direction.

A two-way left-turn lane (TWLTL) may be used as a nonrestrictive median for an undivided managed access highway (see Exhibit 1140-9). The desirable width of a TWLTL is 13 feet, with a minimum width of 11 feet. For more information on traffic volume limits for TWLTLs on managed access highways, see Chapter 540. For additional information on TWLTL design, see Chapter 1310.

A common form of restrictive median on urban managed access highways is the raised median. The width of a raised median can be minimized by using a dual-faced cement concrete traffic curb, a precast traffic curb, or an extruded curb. For more information on traffic volume limits for restrictive medians on managed access highways, see Chapter 540.

Median Usage	Desirable Width (ft)[1]
Separate opposing traffic on freeways and expressways	
Rural	60[2]
Urban – 4-lane	18
Urban – 6 or more lanes	22
Allow for future widening	46[4]
Left-turn lanes[3]	13[2]
Control access on divided multilane urban managed access highways	
Design speed 45 mph or lower with raised medians	3[5][6]
Design speed greater than 45 mph or barrier separated	10[6]

Notes:

[1] The minimum width is the width required for shoulders and barrier (including shy distance) or ditch. For barrier requirements, see Chapter 1610.

[2] Provide additional width at rural expressway intersections for storage of vehicles crossing expressway or entering expressway with a left turn.

[3] For additional information, see Chapter 1310.

[4] Narrower width will require widening to the outside for future lanes.

[5] Using a Dual-Faced Cement Concrete Traffic Curb 1 ft face of curb to face of curb.

[6] 12 ft desirable to allow for left-turn lanes.

Median Width
Exhibit 1140-4

At locations where the median will be used to allow vehicles to make a U-turn, consider increasing the width to meet the needs of the vehicles making the U-turn. For information on U-turn locations, see Chapter 1310.

Widen medians at intersections on rural divided multilane highways. Provide sufficient width to store vehicles crossing the expressway or entering the expressway with a left turn.

For undivided multilane highways, desirable median width is 4 feet in rural design areas and 2 feet in urban design areas. When signing is to be placed in the median of six-lane undivided multilane highways, the minimum width is 6 feet. If barrier is to be installed at a future date, median widths for the ultimate divided highway are desirable.

When the median is to be landscaped or where rigid objects are to be placed in the median, see Chapter 1600 for traffic barrier and clear zone guidance. When the median will include a left-turn lane, see Chapter 1310 for left-turn lane design.

1140.11 Curbs

(1) General

Curbs are designated as either *vertical* or *sloped*. Vertical curbs have a face batter not flatter than 1H:3V. Sloped curbs have a sloping face that is more readily traversed.

Curbs can also be classified as *mountable*. Mountable curbs are sloped curb with a height of 6 inches or less; 4 inches or less is desirable. When the face slope is steeper than 1H:1V, the height of a mountable curb is limited to 4 inches or less.

Where curbing is to be provided, provide a design that collects the surface water at the curb and drains it without ponding or flowing across the roadway.

For existing curb, evaluate the continued need for the curb. Remove curbing that is no longer needed.

When an overlay will reduce the height of a vertical curb, evaluate grinding (or replacing the curb) to maintain curb height versus the need to maintain the height of the curb.

Curbs can hamper snow-removal operations. In areas of heavy snowfall, get the area Maintenance Superintendent's review and approval for the use of curbing

For curbs at traffic islands, see Chapter 1310.

(2) Curb Usage

Curbing is used to:

- Control drainage.
- Delineate the roadway edge.
- Delineate pedestrian walkways.
- Delineate islands.
- Reduce right of way.
- Assist in access control.
- Inhibit midblock left turns.

Avoid using curbs if the same objective can be attained with pavement markings.

In general, curbs are not used on facilities with a posted speed greater than 45 mph. The exceptions are for urban design areas where sidewalks are provided or where traffic movements are to be restricted. Provide justification for the use of curb when the posted speed is greater than 45 mph.

Do not use vertical curbs along freeways or other facilities with a posted speed greater than 45 mph. When curb is needed, use mountable curb with the height limited to 4 inches and located no closer to the traveled way than the outer edge of the shoulder. Provide sloping end treatments where the curb is introduced and terminated.

(a) Use vertical curbs with a height of 6 inches or more:
  - To inhibit or at least discourage vehicles from leaving the roadway.
  - For walkway and pedestrian refuge separations.
  - For raised islands on which a traffic signal or traffic signal hardware is located.

(b) Consider vertical curbs with a height of 6 inches or more:
  - To inhibit midblock left turns.
  - For divisional and channelizing islands.
  - For landscaped islands.

(c) Provide mountable curbs where a curb is needed but higher vertical curb is not justified.

1140.12 Parking

In urban design areas and rural communities, land use might make parking along the highway desirable. In general, on-street parking decreases capacity, increases accidents, and impedes traffic flow; therefore, it is desirable to prohibit parking.

Although design data for parking lanes are included in Exhibits 1140-6 through 1140-9, consider them only in cooperation with the municipality involved. The lane widths given are the minimum for parking; provide wider widths when feasible.

Angle parking is not permitted on any state route without WSDOT approval (RCW 46.61.575). This approval is delegated to the State Traffic Engineer. Angle parking approval is to be requested through the Headquarters (HQ) Design Office. Provide an engineering study, approved by the region Traffic Engineer, with the request documenting that the parking will not unduly reduce safety and that the roadway is of sufficient width that parking will not interfere with the normal movement of traffic.

1140.13 Pavement Type

The pavement types given in Exhibits 1140-5 through 1140-8 are those recommended for each design class. (See Chapter 620 for information on pavement type selection.) When a roadway is to be widened and the existing pavement will remain, the new pavement type may be the same as the existing without a pavement type determination.

1140.14 Structure Width

Provide a clear width between curbs or barrier on a structure not less than the approach roadway width (lanes plus shoulders). The structure widths given in Exhibits 1140-5 through 1140-9 are the minimum structure widths for each design class.

Additional width for shy to barriers is not normally added to the roadway width on structures. When a structure is in a run of roadside barrier with the added width, consider adding the width on shorter structures to keep a constant roadway width.

1140.15 Right of Way Width

Provide right of way width sufficient to accommodate roadway elements and appurtenances for the current design and known future improvements. To allow for construction and maintenance activities, provide 10 feet desirable, 5 feet minimum, wider than the slope stake for fill and slope treatment for cut. For slope treatment information, see Chapter 1230 and the *Standard Plans*.

The right of way widths given in Exhibits 1140-5 through 1140-8 are desirable minimums for new alignment requiring purchase of new right of way. For additional information on right of way acquisition, see Chapter 510.

1140.16 Grades

Grades can have a pronounced effect on the operating characteristics of the vehicles negotiating them. Generally, passenger cars can readily negotiate grades as steep as 5% without appreciable loss of speed from that maintained on level highways. Trucks, however, travel at the average speed of passenger cars on the level roadway, but they display up to a 5% increase in speed on downgrades and a 7% or greater decrease in speed on upgrades (depending on length and steepness of grade as well as weight-to-horsepower ratio).

The maximum grades for the various functional classes and terrain conditions are shown in Exhibits 1140-5 through 1140-8. For the effects of these grades on the design of a roadway, see Chapters 1220, 1260, 1270, 1310, and 1360.

1140.17 Fencing

Remove rigid top rails and brace rails from existing fencing and retrofit with a tension wire design. For information on fencing, see Chapter 560.

1140.18 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Divided Multilane		
Design Class	I-1	
Design Year	[1]	
Access Control[2]	Full	
Separate Cross Traffic		
Highways	All	
Railroads	All	
Design Speed (mph)[3]		
Rural	80[4]	
Urbanized	70[5]	
Traffic Lanes		
Number	4 or more divided	
Width (ft)	12	
Median Width (ft)[6]	Minimum width is as required for shoulders and barrier (including shy distance) or ditch (see 1140.10).	
Shoulder Width (ft)[7]	4 lanes	6 or more lanes
Right of Traffic	10[8]	10[8]
Left of Traffic	4	10[8][9]
Pavement Type[10]	High	
Right of Way Width (ft)[11]		
Rural	63 from edge of traveled way	
Urban	As required[12]	
Structures Width (ft)[13]	Full roadway width each direction[14]	

Type of Terrain	Design Speed (mph)						
	50	55	60	65	70	75	80
Level	4	4	3	3	3	3	3
Rolling	5	5	4	4	4	4	4
Mountainous	6	6	6	6	5	5	5

Grades (%)[15]

Interstate Notes:

[1] The design year is 20 years after the year the construction is scheduled to begin.

[2] For access control, see Chapter 530.

[3] For existing roadways, see 1140.07.

[4] 80 mph is the desirable design speed; with a corridor analysis, the design speed may be reduced to 60 mph in mountainous terrain and 70 mph in rolling terrain. Do not select a design speed that is less than the posted speed.

[5] 70 mph is the desirable design speed; with a corridor analysis, the design speed may be reduced to 50 mph. Do not select a design speed that is less than the posted speed.

[6] Independent alignment and grade are desirable in rural areas and where terrain and development permit in urban areas.

[7] When guardrail is installed along existing shoulders with a width greater than 4 ft, the shoulder width may be reduced by up to 4 inches.

[8] 12-ft shoulders are desirable when the truck DDHV is 250 or greater.

[9] For existing 6-lane roadways, an existing 6-ft left shoulder is a design exception when the shoulder is not being reconstructed and no other widening will be provided.

[10] For pavement type determination, see Chapter 620.

[11] Desirable width. Provide right of way width 10 ft desirable, 5 ft minimum, wider than the slope stake for fill and slope treatment for cut (see 1140.15).

[12] In urban areas, make right of way widths not less than those for cross section elements.

[13] For minimum vertical clearance, see Chapter 720.

[14] For median widths 26 ft or less, address bridge(s) in accordance with Chapter 720.

[15] Grades 1% steeper may be provided in urban areas and mountainous terrain with critical right of way controls.

Geometric Design Data: Interstate
Exhibit 1140-5

Design Class	Divided Multilane				Two-Lane						Undivided Multilane	
	P-1		P-2		P-3		P-4		P-5		P-6[1]	
	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban
DHV in Design Year[2] NHS Non-NHS	Over 1,500		Over 700[3]		Over 201[4] Over 301		61–200 101–300		60 and Under 100 and Under		Over 700[3]	
Access Control[5]	Full		Partial[6]									
Separate Cross Traffic Highways Railroads[7]	All All		Where Justified All		Where Justified All[8]		Where Justified Where Justified[9]		Where Justified Where Justified[9]		Where Justified Where Justified[9]	
Design Speed (mph)[10] Desirable[11] Minimum[12]	80 60[13]		70 50[14]		70 50	60 40[14]	70 50	60 40[14]	60 40	60 30[14]	70 40	60 30[14]
Traffic Lanes Number Width (ft)	4 or more divided 12		4 or 6 divided 12		2 12		2 12		2 12		4 12	4 or 6 11[15]
Shoulder Width (ft)[16] Right of Traffic Left of Traffic	10[17] Variable[19][20]		10 Variable[19][20]		8[31]		6		4		8[32]	8[18]
Median Width (ft)	Minimum width is as required for shoulders and barrier (including shy distance) or ditch (see 1140.10)										(See 1140.10)	
Parking Lanes Width (ft) – Minimum	None		None		None		None	10	None	10	None	10[21]
Pavement Type[22]	High				High or Intermediate							
Right of Way Width (ft)[23]	[24]	[25]	[24]	[25]	120	80	120	80	100	80	150	80
Structures Width (ft)[26]	Full Roadway Width[27]				40		36[33]		32		Full Rdwy Width	
Other Design Considerations–Urban					[28]		[28]		[28]		[28]	

Type of Terrain	Rural Design Speed (mph)									Urban Design Speed (mph)						
	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	30	35	40	45	50	55	60[29]
Level	5	5	4	4	3	3	3	3	3	8	7	7	6	6	5	5
Rolling	6	6	5	5	4	4	4	4	4	9	8	8	7	7	6	6
Mountainous	8	7	7	6	6	5	5	5	5	11	10	10	9	9	8	8

Grades (%)[30]

Geometric Design Data: Principal Arterial

Exhibit 1140-6

Principal Arterial Notes:

[1] Justify the selection of a P-6 design class on limited access highways.

[2] The design year is 20 years after the year the construction is scheduled to begin.

[3] When considering a multilane highway, perform an investigation to determine whether a truck-climbing lane or passing lane will satisfy the need (see Chapter 1270).

[4] Where DHV exceeds 700, consider 4 lanes. When the volume/capacity ratio is equal to or exceeds 0.75, consider the needs for a future 4-lane facility. When considering truck-climbing lanes on a P-3 design class highway, perform an investigation to determine whether a P-2 design class highway is justified.

[5] For access control, see Chapters 530 and 540 and the Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan. Contact the HQ Design Office Access & Hearings Unit for additional information.

[6] Full or modified access control may also be used.

[7] Contact the Rail Office of the Public Transportation and Rail Division for input on railroad needs.

[8] Separate main line and major spur railroad tracks. Consider allowing at-grade crossings at minor spur railroad tracks.

[9] Criteria for railroad grade separations are not clearly definable. Evaluate each site regarding the risk. Provide justification for railroad grade separations.

[10] For existing roadways, see 1140.07.

[11] These are the design speeds for level and rolling terrain in rural design areas. They are the desirable design speeds for mountainous terrain and urban design areas. Higher design speeds may be selected, with justification.

[12] These design speeds may be selected in mountainous terrain, with a corridor analysis. Do not select a design speed that is less than the posted speed.

[13] In urbanized areas, with a corridor analysis, 50 mph may be used as the minimum design speed. Do not select a design speed that is less than the posted speed.

[14] In urban design areas, with a corridor analysis, these values may be used as the minimum design speed. Do not select a design speed that is less than the posted speed.

[15] Provide 12-ft lanes when the truck DDHV is 150 or greater.

[16] When guardrail is installed along existing shoulders with a width greater than 4 ft, the shoulder width may be reduced by 4 inches.

[17] 12-ft shoulders are desirable when the truck DDHV is 250 or greater.

[18] When curb section is used, the minimum shoulder width from the edge of traveled way to the face of curb is 4 ft.

[19] Minimum left shoulder width is to be as follows: 4 lanes – 4 ft; 6 or more lanes – 10 ft. Consider 12-ft shoulders on facilities with 6 or more lanes and a truck DDHV of 250 or greater.

[20] For existing 6-lane roadways, an existing 6-ft left shoulder is a design exception when the shoulder is not being reconstructed and no other widening will be provided.

[21] Restrict parking when DHV is over 1500.

[22] For pavement type determination, see Chapter 620.

[23] Desirable width. Provide right of way width 10 ft desirable, 5 ft minimum, wider than the slope stake for fill and slope treatment for cut (see 1140.15).

[24] 63 ft from edge of traveled way.

[25] Make right of way widths not less than those for cross section elements.

[26] For the minimum vertical clearance, see Chapter 720.

[27] For median widths 26 ft or less, address bridges in accordance with Chapter 720.

[28] For bicycle guidelines, see Chapter 1510. For pedestrian and sidewalk guidelines, see Chapter 1520. Curb guidelines are in 1140.11. Lateral clearances from the face of curb to obstruction are in Chapter 1600.

[29] For grades at design speeds greater than 60 mph in urban design areas, use rural criteria.

[30] Grades 1% steeper may be used in urban design areas and mountainous terrain with critical right of way controls.

[31] Consider 10-ft shoulders when truck DHV is 250 or greater.

[32] Consider 10-ft shoulders when truck DDHV is 250 or greater.

[33] Consider 40 ft for shorter structures.

Geometric Design Data: Principal Arterial
Exhibit 1140-6 (continued)

Design Class	Divided Multilane		Two-Lane						Undivided Multilane	
	M-1		M-2		M-3		M-4		M-5[1]	
	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban
DHV in Design Year[2] NHS	Over 700[3]		Over 201[4]		61–200		60 and Under		Over 700[3]	
Non-NHS			Over 401		201–400		200 and Under			
Access Control[5]	Partial[6]									
Separate Cross Traffic										
Highways	Where Justified		Where Justified		Where Justified		Where Justified		Where Justified	
Railroads[7]	All		All[8]		Where Justified[9]		Where Justified[9]		Where Justified[9]	
Design Speed (mph)[10]										
Desirable[11]	70		70	60	70	60	60	60	70	60
Minimum[12][13]	50		50	40	50	40	40	30	40	30
Traffic Lanes										
Number	4 or 6 divided		2		2		2		4	4 or 6
Width (ft)	12		12		12		12		12	11[14]
Shoulder Width (ft)[15]										
Right of Traffic	10		8[30]		6		4		8[31]	8[16]
Left of Traffic	Variable[17][18]									
Median Width (ft)	[19]								[19]	
Parking Lanes Width (ft) – Minimum	None		None		None	10	None	10	None	10[20]
Pavement Type[21]	High								High or Intermediate	
Right of Way Width (ft)[22]	[23]	[24]	120	80	120	80	100	80	150	80
Structures Width (ft)[25]	Full Rdwy Width[26]		40		36[32]		32		Full Rdwy Width	
Other Design Considerations–Urban			[27]		[27]		[27]		[27]	

Type of Terrain	Rural Design Speed (mph)									Urban Design Speed (mph)						
	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80	30	35	40	45	50	55	60[28]
Level	5	5	4	4	3	3	3	3	3	8	7	7	6	6	5	5
Rolling	6	6	5	5	4	4	4	4	4	9	8	8	7	7	6	6
Mountainous	8	7	7	6	6	5	5	5	5	11	10	10	9	9	8	8

Grades (%)[29]

Geometric Design Data: Minor Arterial

Exhibit 1140-7

Minor Arterial Notes:

[1] Justify the selection of an M-5 design class on limited access highways.

[2] The design year is 20 years after the year the construction is scheduled to begin.

[3] When considering a multilane highway, perform an investigation to determine whether a truck-climbing lane or passing lane will satisfy the need (see Chapter 1270).

[4] Where DHV exceeds 700, consider 4 lanes. When the volume/capacity ratio is equal to or exceeds 0.75, consider the needs for a future 4-lane facility. When considering truck-climbing lanes on an M-2 design class highway, perform an investigation to determine whether an M-1 design class highway is justified.

[5] For access control, see Chapters 530 and 540 and the Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan. Contact the Access & Hearings Section of the HQ Design Office for additional information.

[6] Full or modified access control may also be used.

[7] Contact the Rail Office of the Public Transportation and Rail Division for input on railroad needs.

[8] Separate main line and major spur railroad tracks. Consider allowing at-grade crossings at minor spur railroad tracks.

[9] Criteria for railroad grade separations are not clearly definable. Evaluate each site regarding the risk. Provide justification for railroad grade separations.

[10] For existing roadways, see 1140.07.

[11] These are the design speeds for level and rolling terrain in rural design areas. They are the desirable design speeds for mountainous terrain and urban design areas. Higher design speeds may be selected, with justification.

[12] In urban design areas, with a corridor analysis, these values may be used as the minimum design speed. Do not select a design speed that is less than the posted speed.

[13] These design speeds may be selected in mountainous terrain, with a corridor analysis. Do not select a design speed that is less than the posted speed.

[14] When the truck DDHV is 150 or greater, consider 12-ft lanes.

[15] When guardrail is installed along existing shoulders with a width greater than 4 ft, the shoulder width may be reduced by 4 inches.

[16] When curb section is used, the minimum shoulder width from the edge of traveled way to the face of curb is 4 ft.

[17] The minimum left shoulder width is 4 ft for 4 lanes and 10 ft for 6 or more lanes.

[18] For existing 6-lane roadways, an existing 6-ft left shoulder is a design exception when the shoulder is not being reconstructed and no other widening will be provided.

[19] Minimum median width is as required for shoulders and barrier (including shy distance) or ditch (see 1140.10).

[20] Restrict parking when DHV is over 1500.

[21] For pavement type determination, see Chapter 620.

[22] Desirable width. Provide right of way width 10 ft desirable, 5 ft minimum, wider than the slope stake for fill and slope treatment for cut (see 1140.15).

[23] 63 ft from edge of traveled way.

[24] Make right of way widths not less than those for cross section elements.

[25] For the minimum vertical clearance, see Chapter 720.

[26] For median widths 26 ft or less, address bridges in accordance with Chapter 720.

[27] For bicycle guidelines, see Chapter 1520. For pedestrian and sidewalk guidelines, see Chapter 1510. Curb guidelines are in 1140.11. Lateral clearances from the face of curb to obstruction are in Chapter 1600.

[28] For grades at design speeds greater than 60 mph in urban design areas, use rural criteria.

[29] Grades 1% steeper may be used in urban design areas and mountainous terrain with critical right of way controls.

<u>[30] Consider 10-ft shoulders when truck DHV is 250 or greater.</u>

<u>[31] Consider 10-ft shoulders when truck DDHV is 250 or greater.</u>

<u>[32] Consider 40 ft for shorter structures.</u>

Geometric Design Data: Minor Arterial
Exhibit 1140-7 (continued)

Design Class	Undivided Multilane		Two-Lane					
	C-1		C-2		C-3		C-4	
	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban	Rural	Urban
DHV in Design Year[1] NHS	Over 900[2]		Over 301[3]		201–300		200 and Under	
Non-NHS			Over 501		301–500		300 and Under	
Access Control	[4]		[4]		[4]		[4]	
Separate Cross Traffic								
Highways	Where Justified		Where Justified		Where Justified		Where Justified	
Railroads[5]	Where Justified[6]		All[6]		Where Justified[6]		Where Justified[6]	
Design Speed (mph)[7]								
Desirable[8]	70	60	70	60	70	60	60	60
Minimum[9][10]	40	30	50	40	50	40	40	30
Traffic Lanes								
Number	4	4 or 6	2		2		2	
Width (ft)	12	11[11]	12		12		12	
Shoulder Width (ft)[12]	8[21]	8[13]	8[22]		6		4	
Median Width (ft)	[14]							
Parking Lane Width (ft) – Minimum	None	10	None		None	10	None	10
Pavement Type[15]	High or Intermediate							
Right of Way (ft)[16]	150	80	120	80	120	80	100	80
Structures Width (ft)[17]	Full Roadway Width		40		36[23]		32	
Other Design Considerations – Urban	[18]		[18]		[18]		[18]	

Type of Terrain	Rural Design Speed (mph)										Urban Design Speed (mph)								
	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60[19]
Level	7	7	7	7	7	6	6	5	5	4	9	9	9	9	9	8	7	7	6
Rolling	10	9	9	8	8	7	7	6	6	5	12	12	11	10	10	9	8	8	7
Mountainous	11	10	10	10	10	9	9	8	8	6	14	13	12	12	12	11	10	10	9

Grades (%)[20]

Geometric Design Data: Collector

Exhibit 1140-8

Collector Notes:

[1] The design year is 20 years after the year the construction is scheduled to begin.

[2] When considering a multilane highway, perform an investigation to determine whether a truck-climbing lane or passing lane will satisfy the need (see Chapter 1270).

[3] Where DHV exceeds 900, consider 4 lanes. When the volume/capacity ratio is equal to or exceeds 0.85, consider the needs for a future 4-lane facility. When considering truck-climbing lanes on a C-2 design class highway, perform an investigation to determine whether a C-1 design class highway is justified.

[4] For access control, see Chapters 530 and 540 and the Limited Access and Managed Access Master Plan. Contact the Access & Hearings Section in the HQ Design Office for additional information.

[5] Contact the Rail Office of the Public Transportation and Rail Division for input on railroad needs.

[6] Criteria for railroad grade separations are not clearly definable. Evaluate each site regarding the risk. Provide justification for railroad grade separations.

[7] For existing roadways, see 1140.07.

[8] These are the design speeds for level and rolling terrain in rural design areas. They are the desirable design speeds for mountainous terrain and urban design areas. Higher design speeds may be selected, with justification. Do not select a design speed that is less than the posted speed.

[9] In urban design areas, with a corridor analysis, these values may be used as the minimum design speed. Do not select a design speed that is less than the posted speed.

[10] These design speeds may be selected in mountainous terrain, with a corridor analysis. Do not select a design speed that is less than the posted speed.

[11] Consider 12-ft lanes when the truck DDHV is 200 or greater.

[12] When guardrail is installed along existing shoulders with a width greater than 4 ft, the shoulder width may be reduced by 4 inches.

[13] When curb section is used, the minimum shoulder width from the edge of traveled way to the face of curb is 4 ft.

[14] Minimum median width is as required for shoulders and barrier (including shy distance) or ditch (see 1140.10).

[15] For pavement type determination, see Chapter 620.

[16] Desirable width. Provide right of way width 10 ft desirable, 5 ft minimum, wider than the slope stake for fill and slope treatment for cut (see 1140.15).

[17] For the minimum vertical clearance, see Chapter 720.

[18] For bicycle guidelines, see Chapter 1520. For pedestrian and sidewalk guidelines, see Chapter 1510. Curb guidelines are in 1140.11. Lateral clearances from the face of curb to obstruction are in Chapter 1600.

[19] For grades at design speeds greater than 60 mph in urban design areas, use rural criteria.

[20] Grades 1% steeper may be used in urban design areas and mountainous terrain with critical right of way controls.

[21] Consider 10-ft shoulders when truck DDHV is 250 or greater.

[22] Consider 10-ft shoulders when truck DHV is 250 or greater.

[23] Consider 40 ft for shorter structures.

Geometric Design Data: Collector
Exhibit 1140-8 (continued)

Design Class	Divided Multilane		Undivided Multilane		Two-Lane	
	$U_{M/A}$-1	$U_{M/A}$-2	$U_{M/A}$-3	$U_{M/A}$-4	$U_{M/A}$-5	$U_{M/A}$-6
DHV in Design Year[1]	Over 700	Over 700	700–2,500	Over 700	All	All
Design Speed (mph)	Greater than 45	45 or less	35 to 45	30 or less	Greater than 45	45 or less
Access	[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]	[2]
Traffic Lanes						
Number	4 or more	4 or more	4 or more	4 or more	2	2
Width (ft) NHS	12[4]	12[3]	12[3]	12[3]	12[6]	12[3]
Width (ft) Non-NHS	12[4]	11[5]	11[5]	11[5]	12[6]	11[7]
Shoulder Width (ft)[8]						
Right of Traffic[9]	10	10	8	8	8[10]	4
Left of Traffic	4	4				
Median Width (ft)[11]			[12]	[12]		
Parking Lane Width (ft)	None	10[13]	10[13]	8[14]	10[15]	8[14]
Structures Width (ft)[16]	Full Roadway Width[17]		Full Roadway Width		32	30
Other Design Considerations	[18]	[18]	[18]	[18]	[18]	[18]

Urban Managed Access Highways Notes:

[1] The design year is 20 years after the year the construction is scheduled to begin.

[2] The urban managed access highway design is used on managed access highways (see Chapter 540).

[3] May be reduced to 11 ft, with justification.

[4] May be reduced to 11 ft, with justification, when truck DDHV is less than 200.

[5] Consider 12-ft lanes when truck DDHV is 200 or greater.

[6] May be reduced to 11 ft, with justification, when truck DHV is less than 100.

[7] Consider 12-ft lanes when truck DHV is 100 or greater.

[8] When curb section is used, see Exhibit 1140-3.

[9] When guardrail is installed along existing shoulders with a width greater than 4 ft, the shoulder width may be reduced by 4 inches.

[10] When DHV is 200 or less, may be reduced to 4 ft.

[11] Minimum width is as required for shoulders and barrier or ditch (see 1140.10).

[12] 2 ft desirable. When a TWLTL is present, 13 ft is desirable, 11 ft is minimum.

[13] Prohibit parking when DHV is over 1500.

[14] 10 ft is desirable.

[15] Prohibit parking when DHV is over 500.

[16] For minimum vertical clearance, see Chapter 720.

[17] For median guidelines, see Chapter 720.

[18] For bicycle guidelines, see Chapter 1520. For pedestrian and sidewalk guidelines, see Chapter 1510. Lateral clearances from face of curb to obstruction are in Chapter 1600. For railroad and other roadway grade separation, maximum grade, and pavement type for the functional class, see Exhibits 1140-6 through 1140-8. Make right of way widths not less than for cross section elements.

Geometric Design Data: Urban Managed Access Highways
Exhibit 1140-9

Chapter 1210 Geometric Plan Elements

1210.01 General
1210.02 References
1210.03 Definitions
1210.04 Horizontal Alignment
1210.05 Distribution Facilities
1210.06 Number of Lanes and Arrangement
1210.07 Pavement Transitions
1210.08 Procedures
1210.09 Documentation

1210.01 General

This chapter provides guidance on the design of horizontal alignment, frontage roads, number of lanes, arrangement of lanes, and pavement transitions. For additional information, see the following chapters:

Chapter	Subject
1130	All roadway widths for modified design level
1140	Lane and shoulder widths for full design level
1140	Shoulder width at curbs
1240	Lane widths on turning roadways for full design level
1250	Superelevation rate and transitions
1260	Sight distance
1310	Guidelines for islands
1360	Ramp lane and shoulder guidelines

1210.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-18-040, Design standards for rearranged county roads, frontage roads, access roads, intersections, ramps and crossings

(2) Design Guidance

Local Agency Guidelines (LAG), M 36-63, WSDOT

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Right of Way Manual M 26-01, WSDOT

Utilities Manual, M 22-87, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

1210.03 Definitions

auxiliary lane The portion of the roadway adjoining the traveled way for parking, speed change, turning, storage for turning, weaving, truck climbing, passing, and other purposes supplementary to through-traffic movement.

basic number of lanes The minimum number of general purpose lanes designated and maintained over a significant length of highway.

frontage road An auxiliary road that is a local road or street located on the side of a highway for service to abutting property and adjacent areas and for control of access.

outer separation The area between the outside edge of traveled way for through traffic and the nearest edge of traveled way of a frontage road or collector/distributor road.

turning roadway A curve on an open highway, a curve on a ramp, or a connecting roadway between two intersecting legs of an intersection.

1210.04 Horizontal Alignment

(1) General

Horizontal and vertical alignments (see Chapter 1220) are the primary controlling elements for highway design. It is important to coordinate these two elements with design speed, drainage, intersection design, and aesthetic principles in the early stages of design.

Exhibits 1210-2a through 1210-2c show desirable and undesirable alignment examples for use with the following considerations:

(a) Make the highway alignment as direct as practicable and still blend with the topography while considering developed and undeveloped properties, community boundaries, and environmental concerns.

(b) Make highway alignment consistent by:
- Using gentle curves at the end of long tangents.
- Using a transition area of moderate curvature between the large radius curves of rural areas and the small radius curves of populated areas.
- Making horizontal curves visible to approaching traffic.

(c) Avoid minimum radii and short curves unless:
- Restrictive conditions are present and alternatives are not readily or economically avoidable.
- On two-lane highways, minimum radii result in tangent sections long enough for needed passing.

(d) Avoid any abrupt change in alignment. Design reverse curves with an intervening tangent long enough for complete superelevation transition for both curves. (See Chapter 1250 for more information on superelevation transitions.)

(e) Avoid the use of curves in the same direction connected by short tangents (broken back curves); substitute a single larger curve.

(f) Avoid compound curves on open highway alignment if a simple curve can be obtained. When compound curves are used, make the shorter radius at least two-thirds the longer radius. Make the total arc length of a compound curve not less than 500 feet.

(g) On divided multilane highways, take advantage of independent alignment to produce a flowing alignment along natural terrain.

(h) The desirable locations for bridges, interchanges, intersections, and temporary connections are on tangent sections in clear view of drivers.

(i) On two-lane two-way highways, strive for as much passing sight distance as possible (see Chapter 1260).

(2) Horizontal Curve Radii

Design speed is the governing element of horizontal curves. For guidance regarding design speed selection, see Chapter 1140 for full design level, Chapter 1130 for modified design level, and Chapter 1360 for ramps.

Use the following factors to determine the radius for a curve:

- Stopping sight distance where sight obstructions are on the inside of a curve. Median barriers, bridges, walls, cut slopes, wooded areas, buildings, and guardrails are examples of sight obstructions. (See Chapter 1260 to check for stopping sight distance for the selected design speed.)
- Superelevation is the rotation or banking of the roadway cross section to overcome part of the centrifugal force that acts on a vehicle traversing a curve. Design information on the relationship between design speed, radius of curve, and superelevation is in Chapter 1250.
- Coordinate vertical and horizontal alignment (see Chapter 1220).

Spiral curves, although no longer used on new highway construction or major realignment, still exist on Washington's highways. Spirals were used to transition between tangents and circular curves with the horizontal curvature rate increasing from tangent to the central curve and decreasing from curve to tangent. Spirals do not pose an operational concern and may remain in place. (See *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets* for information on spirals.)

(3) Horizontal Curve Length

A curve is not required for small deflection angles. Exhibit 1210-1 gives the maximum allowable angle without a curve. (See Chapter 1310 for guidance on angle points or short radii curves in the vicinity of intersections at grade.)

To avoid the appearance of a kink in the road, the desirable length of curve for deflection angles larger than given in Exhibit 1210-1 is at least 500 feet.

Design Speed (mph)	Maximum Angle Without Curve
25	2º17’
30	1º55’
35	1º38’
40	1º26’
45	1º16’
50	1º09’
55	1º03’
60	0º57’
65	0º53’
70	0º49’
75	0º46’
80	0º43’

Maximum Angle Without Curve
Exhibit 1210-1

1210.05 Distribution Facilities

(1) General

In addition to the main highway under consideration, other facilities can be used to distribute traffic to and from the highway and to provide access. Highway flexibility can be augmented by:

- Frontage roads.
- Collector-distributor roads.
- On and off connections.
- Parallel arterial routes with connections between them and the main highway.
- Loop highways around large metropolitan areas.

A city or county may be asked to accept a proposed distribution facility as a city street or county road. Plan and design these facilities according to the applicable design values as city streets or county roads (see Chapter 1140).

(2) Frontage Roads

Frontage roads constructed as part of highway development may serve to:

- Reestablish continuity of an existing road severed by the highway.
- Provide service connections to adjacent property that would otherwise be isolated as a result of construction of the highway.
- Control access to the highway.
- Maintain circulation of traffic on each side of the highway.
- Segregate local traffic from the higher speed through traffic and intercept driveways of residences and commercial establishments along the highway.
- Relieve congestion on the arterial highway during periods of high use or in emergency situations.

Frontage roads are generally not permanent state facilities. They are usually turned back to the local jurisdiction. Plan and design frontage roads as city streets or county roads (see Chapter 1140). Initiate coordination with the local agency that will be the recipient of the facility early in the planning process, and continue through design and construction. (See Chapter 530 for additional guidance on frontage roads and turnbacks.)

Outer separations function as buffers between the through traffic on the highway and the local traffic on the frontage road. The width is governed by requirements for grading, signing, barriers, aesthetics, headlight glare, and ramps. Where possible, make the separation wide enough to allow for development on both sides of the frontage road. Wider separations also move the intersection with the frontage road and a crossroad farther from the intersection with the through roadway, and they can reduce the amount of limited access control rights to be acquired (see Chapter 530).

Where two-way frontage roads are provided, make the outer separation wide enough to minimize the effects of approaching traffic on the right, particularly the headlight glare. (See Chapter 1600 for information on headlight glare considerations.) With one-way same-direction frontage roads, the outer separation need not be as wide as with two-way frontage roads.

Wide separations lend themselves to landscape treatment and can enhance the appearance of both the highway and the adjoining property.

A substantial width of outer separation is particularly advantageous at intersections with cross streets. The wider separation reduces conflicts with pedestrians and bicycles.

Where ramp connections are provided between the through roadway and the frontage road, the minimum outer separation width depends on design of the ramp termini.

1210.06 Number of Lanes and Arrangement

(1) General

The basic number of lanes is designated and maintained over a length of highway. The total number of lanes is the basic number of lanes plus any auxiliary lanes provided to meet:

- Level of service (volume-capacity).
- Lane balance.
- Flexibility of operation.

(2) Basic Number of Lanes

Keep the basic number of lanes constant over a highway route, or a significant portion thereof, regardless of changes in traffic volume. (See Chapter 1140 for the minimum number of lanes for each functional class of highway.)

Change the basic number of lanes for general changes in traffic volume over a substantial length of the route. The desirable location for a reduction in the basic number of lanes is on a tangent section between interchanges or intersections.

To accommodate high traffic volumes for short distances, such as between adjacent interchanges, use auxiliary lanes. When auxiliary lanes are provided on consecutive sections between interchanges, consider increasing the basic number of lanes through the entire length.

(3) Auxiliary Lanes

Auxiliary lanes are added to the basic number of lanes to allow additional traffic movements on short segments. These added lanes are based primarily on volume-to-capacity relationships (see Chapter 320). For efficient operation of auxiliary lanes, see the following:

Chapter	Subject
1270	Truck climbing and passing lanes
1310	Left- and right-turn lanes and storage for turning
1360	Weaving and auxiliary lanes associated with interchanges

1210.07 Pavement Transitions

(1) Lane Transitions

(a) **Change Lane Width**

For lane width changes that create an angle point in an adjacent lane, the maximum angle is given in Exhibit 1210-1. When a lane width change does not create an angle point in an adjacent lane, a 25:1 taper is sufficient.

(b) **Reduce Number of Lanes**

To reduce the number of lanes, provide a transition with the following guidelines:

- Locate transitions where decision sight distance exists, desirably on a tangent section and on the approach side of any crest vertical curve, except the end of climbing lanes which are transitioned in accordance with Chapter 1270.
- Supplement the transition with traffic control devices.
- Reduce the number of lanes by dropping only one at a time from the right side in the direction of travel. (See the MUTCD when dropping more than one lane in a single direction.)
- Use the following formula to determine the minimum length of the lane transition for high-speed conditions (45 mph or more):

$$L = VT$$

Where:

L = Length of transition (ft)
V = Design speed (mph)
T = Tangential offset width (ft)

- Use the following formula to determine the minimum length of the lane transition for low-speed conditions (less than 45 mph):

$$L = \frac{TV^2}{60}$$

Where:

L = Length of transition (ft)
V = Design speed (mph)
T = Tangential offset width (ft)

(c) **Increase Number of Lanes**

To increase the number of lanes, a tangential rate of change in the range of 1:4 to 1:15 is sufficient. Aesthetics are the main consideration.

(d) **Turning Roadway**

For turning roadway widening width transitions, see Chapter 1240.

(2) Median Width Transitions

Whenever two abutting sections have different median widths, use long, smooth transitions ($L = VT$ or flatter). When horizontal curves are present, this can be accomplished by providing the transition throughout the length of the curve. For transitions on tangent sections, the transitions may be applied symmetrically about the centerline or on only one side of the median based on whether or not the abutting existing section is programmed for the wider median in the future. For aesthetics, make the transition length as long as feasible.

1210.08 Procedures

When the project realigns the roadway, develop horizontal alignment plans for inclusion in the PS&E. Show the following as needed to maintain clarity and provide necessary information:

- Horizontal alignment details (tangent bearing, curve radius, and superelevation rate).
- Stationing.
- Number of lanes.
- Intersections, road approaches, railroad crossings, and interchanges (see Chapters 1310, 1340, 1350, and 1360).
- Existing roadways and features affecting or affected by the project.

For additional plan guidance, see the *Plans Preparation Manual*.

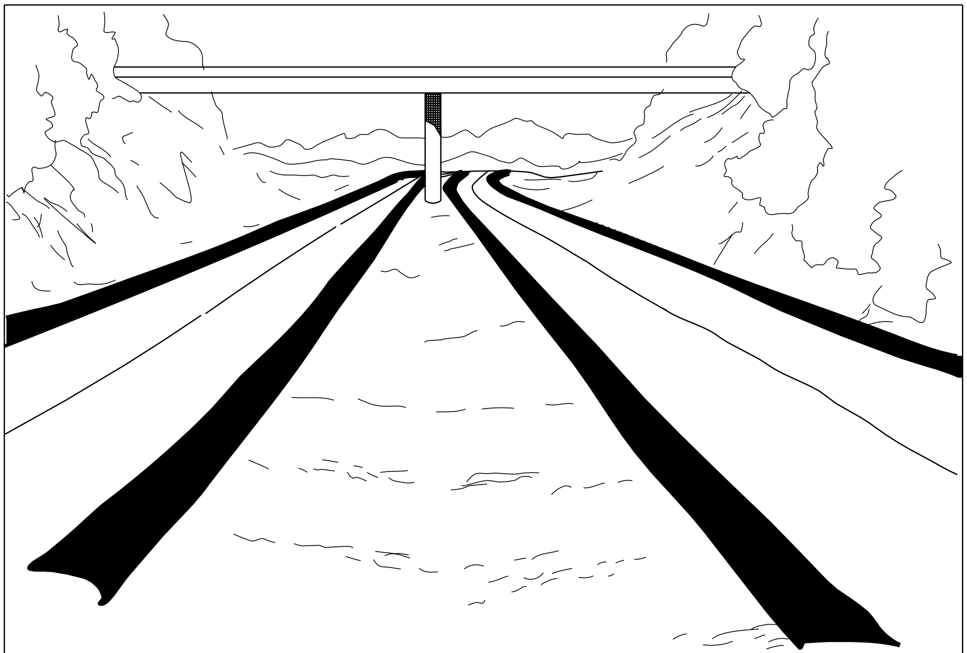
Justify any realignment of the roadway. Include the reasons for the realignment, profile considerations, alternatives considered, and the reasons the selected alignment was chosen.

When the project changes the number of lanes, include a capacity analysis supporting the number selected (see Chapter 320) with the justification for the number of lanes.

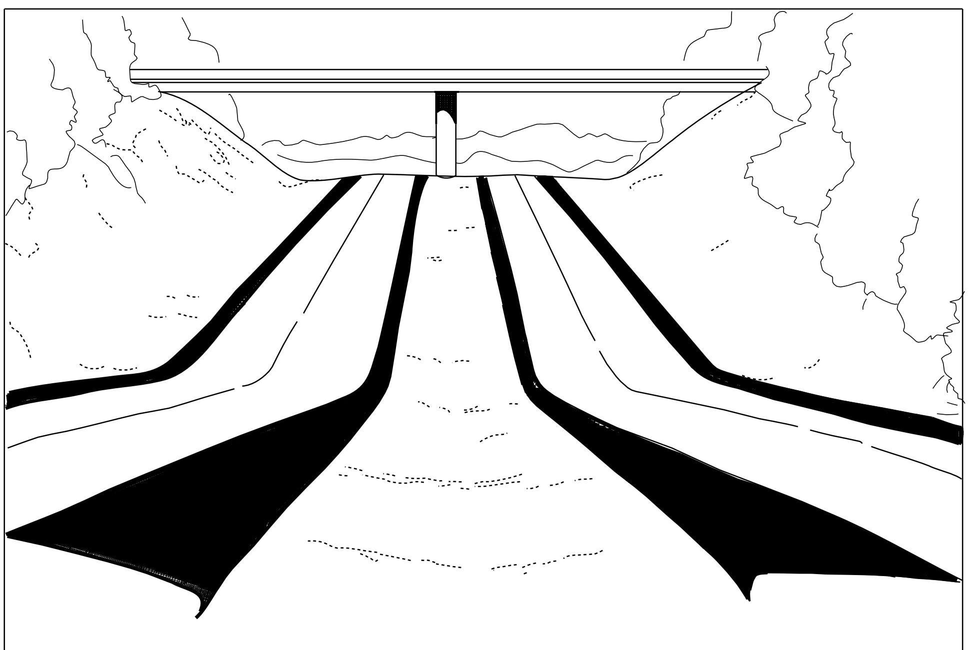
Include with the justification for a frontage road any traffic analyses performed, the social, environmental, and economic considerations, the options considered, and the reasons for the final decision.

1210.09 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

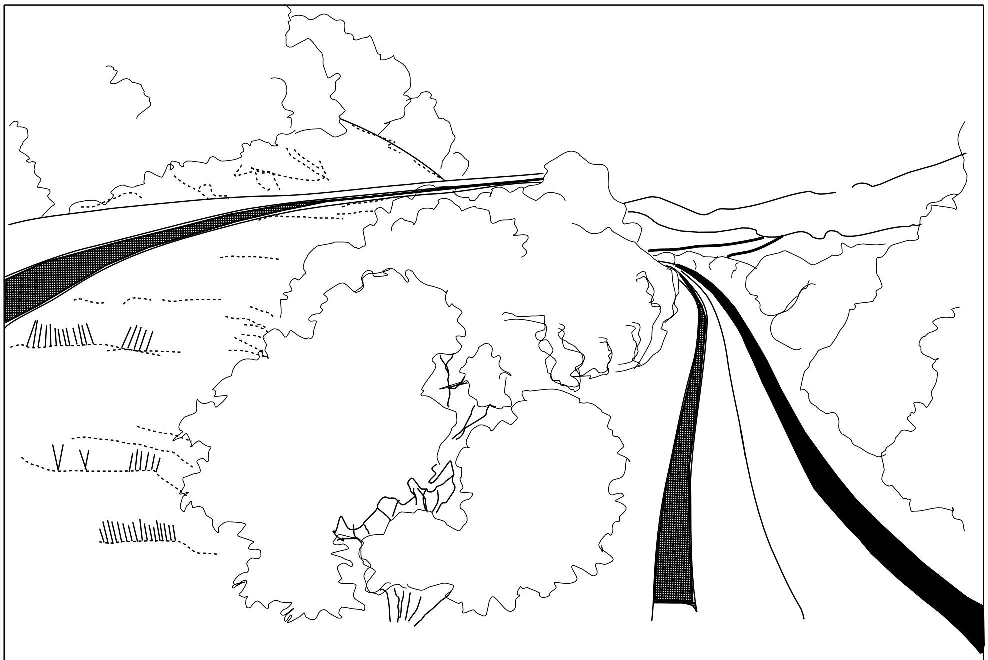


Desirable - Vertical Curves Lengthened

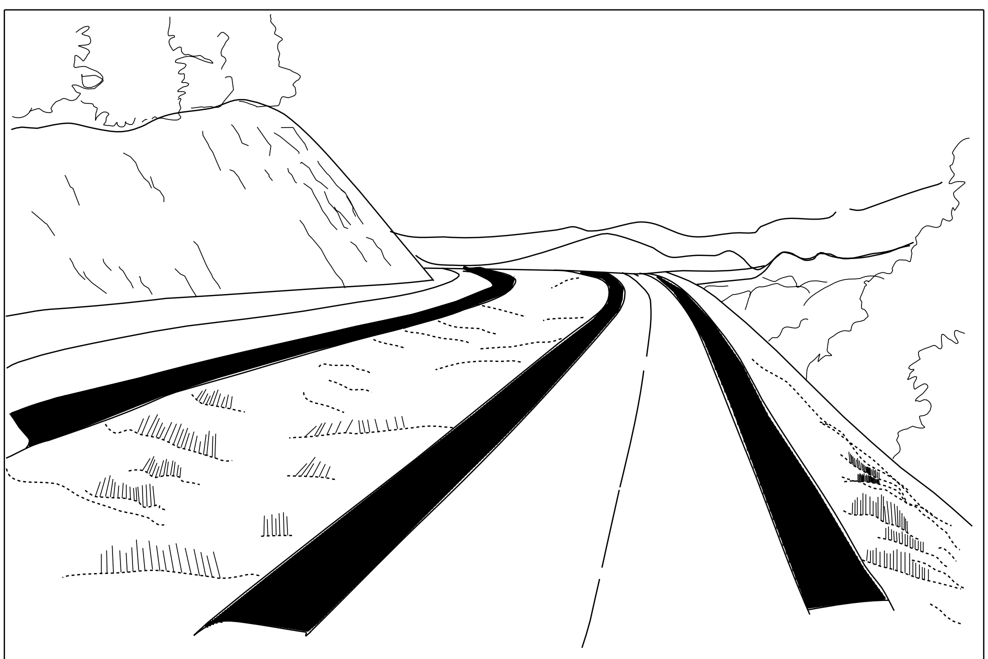


Undesirable - Minimum Vertical Curves Used

Alignment Examples
Exhibit 1210-2a

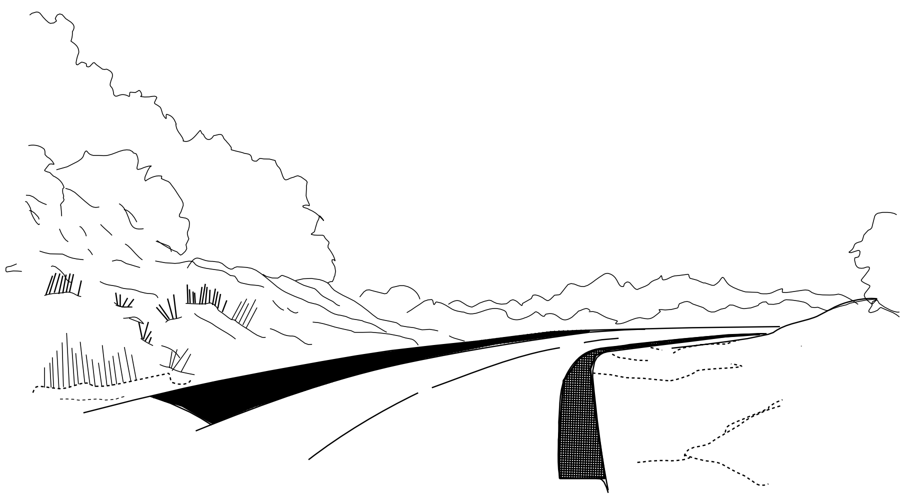


Desirable - Consistency with Topography

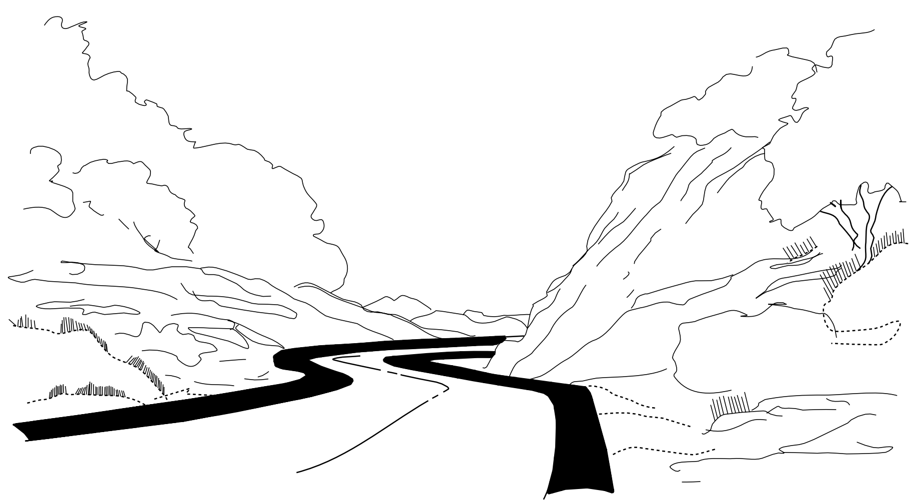


Undersirable - Heavy Cuts and Fills

Alignment Examples
Exhibit 1210-2b



Desirable - Daylighting and a Simple Curve



Undesirable - Short Curve Reversals

Alignment Examples

Exhibit 1210-2c

Chapter 1220 Geometric Profile Elements

1220.01 General
1220.02 References
1220.03 Vertical Alignment
1220.04 Coordination of Vertical and Horizontal Alignments
1220.05 Airport Clearance
1220.06 Railroad Crossings
1220.07 Procedures
1220.08 Documentation

1220.01 General

Vertical alignment (roadway profile) consists of a series of gradients connected by vertical curves. It is mainly controlled by the following:

- Topography
- Class of highway
- Horizontal alignment
- Safety
- Sight distance
- Construction costs
- Drainage
- Adjacent land use
- Vehicular characteristics
- Aesthetics

This chapter provides guidance for the design of vertical alignment. For additional information, see the following chapters:

Chapter	Subject
1140	Maximum grade for each functional class
1210	Horizontal alignment
1260	Sight distance
1310	Grades at intersections
1360	Maximum grade for ramps

1220.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-18-040, Design standards for rearranged county roads, frontage roads, access roads, intersections, ramps and crossings

(2) Design Guidance

Local Agency Guidelines (LAG), M 36-63, WSDOT

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

1220.03 Vertical Alignment

(1) Design Controls

The following are general controls for developing vertical alignment (also see Exhibits 1220-2a through 2c):

- Use a smooth grade line with gradual changes, consistent with the class of highway and character of terrain. Avoid numerous breaks and short grades.
- Avoid "roller coaster" or "hidden dip" profiles by use of gradual grades made possible by heavier cuts and fills or by introducing some horizontal curvature in conjunction with the vertical curvature.
- Avoid grades that affect truck speeds and, therefore, traffic operations.
- Avoid broken back grade lines with short tangents between two vertical curves.
- Use long vertical curves to flatten grades near the top of long steep grades.
- Where at-grade intersections occur on roadways with moderate to steep grades, it is desirable to flatten or reduce the grade through the intersection.
- Establish the subgrade at least 1 foot above the high water table (real or potential) or as recommended by the Region Materials Engineer. Consider the low side of superelevated roadways.
- When a vertical curve takes place partly or wholly in a horizontal curve, coordinate the two as discussed in 1220.04.

(2) Minimum Length of Vertical Curves

The minimum length of a vertical curve is controlled by design speed, stopping sight distance, and the change in grade. Make the length of a vertical curve, in feet, not less than three times the design speed, in miles per hour. (See Chapter 1260 to design vertical curves to meet stopping sight distance criteria.) For aesthetics, the desirable length of a vertical curve is two to three times the length to provide stopping sight distance.

Sag vertical curves may have a length less than required for stopping sight distance when all three of the following are provided:

- An evaluate upgrade to justify the length reduction.
- Continuous illumination.
- Design for the comfort of the vehicle occupants. For comfort, use:

$$L = \frac{AV^2}{46.5}$$

Where:
L = Curve length (ft)
A = Change in grade (%)
V = Design speed (mph)

The sag vertical curve lengths designed for comfort are about 50% of those for sight distance.

(3) Maximum Grades

Analyze grades for their effect on traffic operation because they may result in undesirable truck speeds. Maximum grades are controlled by functional class of the highway, terrain type, and design speed (see Chapters 1140 and 1360).

(4) Minimum Grades

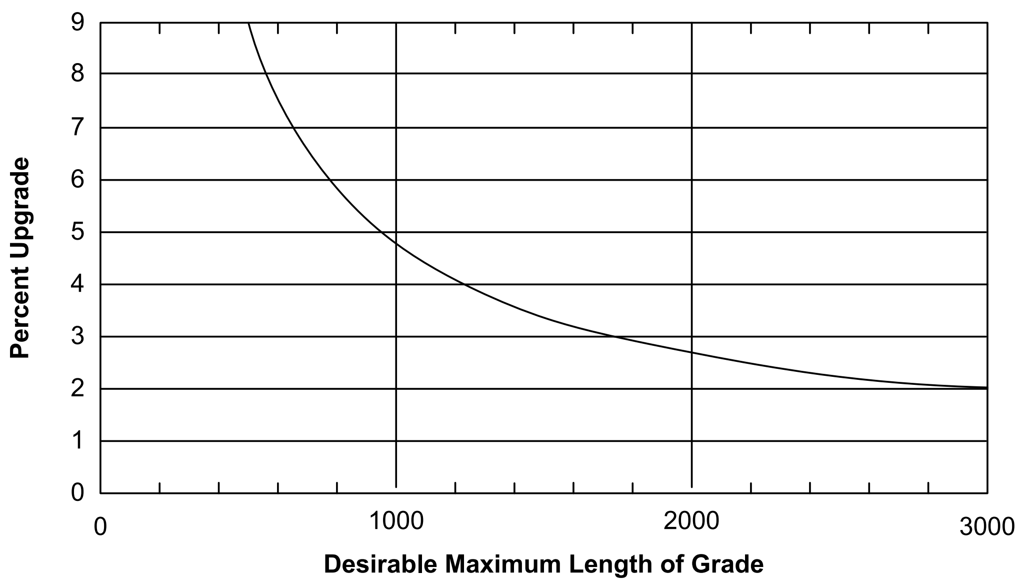
Minimum grades are used to meet drainage requirements. Avoid selecting a “roller coaster” or “hidden dip” profile merely to accommodate drainage.

Minimum ditch gradients of 0.3% on paved materials and 0.5% on earth can be obtained independently of roadway grade. Medians, long sag vertical curves, and relatively flat terrain are examples of areas where independent ditch design may be justified. A closed drainage system may be needed as part of an independent ditch design.

(5) Length of Grade

The desirable maximum length of grade is the maximum length on an upgrade at which a loaded truck will operate without a 10 mph reduction. Exhibit 1220-1 gives the desirable maximum length for a given percent of grade. When grades longer than the desirable maximum are unavoidable, consider an auxiliary climbing lane (see Chapter 1270). For grades that are not at a constant percent, use the average.

When long, steep downgrades are unavoidable, consider an emergency escape ramp (see Chapter 1270).



For grades longer than indicated, consider an auxiliary climbing lane (see Chapter 1270).

Grade Length
Exhibit 1220-1

(6) Alignment on Structures

Where practicable, avoid high skew, vertical curvature, horizontal curvature, and superelevation on structures, but do not sacrifice safe roadway alignment to achieve this.

1220.04 Coordination of Vertical and Horizontal Alignments

Do not design horizontal and vertical alignment independently. Coordinate them to obtain uniform speed, pleasing appearance, and efficient traffic operation. Coordination can be achieved by plotting the location of the horizontal curves on the working profile to help visualize the highway in three dimensions. Perspective plots will also give a view of the proposed alignment. Exhibits 1220-2a and 2b show sketches of desirable and undesirable coordination of horizontal and vertical alignment.

Guides for the coordination of the vertical and horizontal alignment are as follows:

- Balance curvature and grades. Using steep grades to achieve long tangents and flat curves or excessive curvature to achieve flat grades are both poor designs.
- Vertical curvature superimposed on horizontal curvature generally results in a more pleasing facility. Successive changes in profile not in combination with horizontal curvature may result in a series of dips not visible to the driver.
- Do not begin or end a horizontal curve at or near the top of a crest vertical curve. A driver may not recognize the beginning or ending of the horizontal curve, especially at night. An alignment where the horizontal curve leads the vertical curve and is longer than the vertical curve in both directions is desirable.
- To maintain drainage, design vertical and horizontal curves so that the flat profile of a vertical curve is not be located near the flat cross slope of the superelevation transition.
- Do not introduce a sharp horizontal curve at or near the low point of a pronounced sag vertical curve. The road ahead is foreshortened and any horizontal curve that is not flat assumes an undesirably distorted appearance. Further, vehicular speeds, particularly of trucks, often are high at the bottom of grades and erratic operation may result, especially at night.
- On two-lane roads, the need for passing sections (at frequent intervals and for an appreciable percentage of the length of the roadway) often supersedes the general desirability for the combination of horizontal and vertical alignment. Work toward long tangent sections to secure sufficient passing sight distance.
- On divided highways, consider variation in the width of medians and the use of independent alignments to derive the design and operational advantages of one-way roadways.
- Make the horizontal curvature and profile as flat as practicable at intersections where sight distance along both roads is important and vehicles may have to slow or stop.
- In residential areas, design the alignment to minimize nuisance factors to the neighborhood. Generally, a depressed facility makes a highway less visible and less noisy to adjacent residents. Minor horizontal adjustments can sometimes be made to increase the buffer zone between the highway and clusters of homes.
- Design the alignment to enhance attractive scenic views of the natural and constructed environment, such as rivers, rock formations, parks, and outstanding buildings.

When superelevation transitions fall within the limits of a vertical curve, plot profiles of the edges of pavement and check for smooth transitions.

1220.05 Airport Clearance

Contact the airport authorities early for proposed highway construction or alteration in the vicinity of a public or military airport, so that advance planning and design work can proceed within the required Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) regulations (see Chapter 230).

1220.06 Railroad Crossings

When a highway crosses a railroad at grade, design the highway grade to prevent low-hung vehicles from damaging the rails or getting hung up on the tracks. Exhibit 1220-3 gives guidance on designing highway grades at railroad crossings. For more information on railroad-highway crossings, see Chapter 1350.

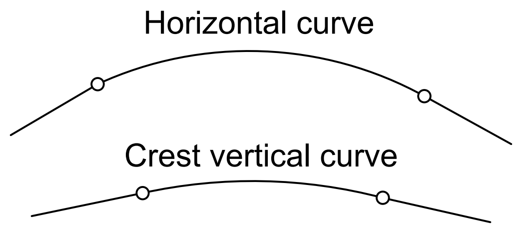
1220.07 Procedures

When the project modifies the vertical alignment, develop vertical alignment plans for inclusion in the Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) to a scale suitable for showing vertical alignment for all proposed roadways, including ground line, grades, vertical curves, and superelevation. (See the *Plans Preparation Manual* for guidance.)

When justifying any modification to the vertical alignment, include the reasons for the change, alternatives considered (if any) and why the selected alternative was chosen. When the profile is a result of new horizontal alignment, consider vertical and horizontal alignments together, and document the profile with the horizontal alignment justification.

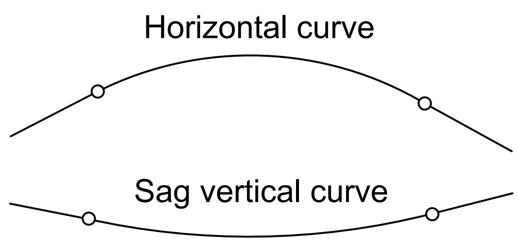
1220.08 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



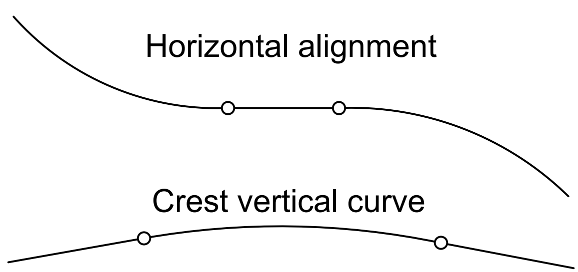
Coinciding Horizontal and Crest Vertical Curves

When horizontal and crest vertical curves coincide, a satisfactory appearance results.



Coinciding Horizontal and Sag Vertical Curves

When horizontal and sag vertical curves coincide, a satisfactory appearance results.

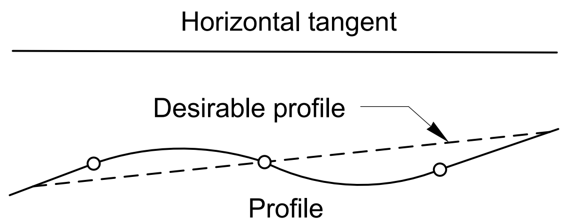


Short Tangent on a Crest Between Two Horizontal Curves

This combination is deficient for several reasons:

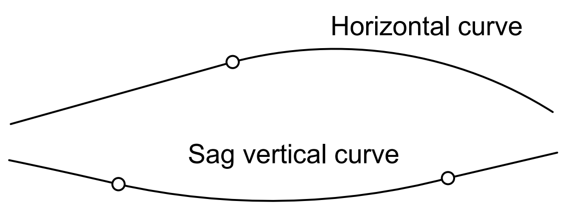
- The curve reversal is on a crest, making the second curve less visible.
- The tangent is too short for the superelevation transition.
- The flat area of the superelevation transition will be near the flat grade in the crest.

Coordination of Horizontal and Vertical Alignments
Exhibit 1220-2a



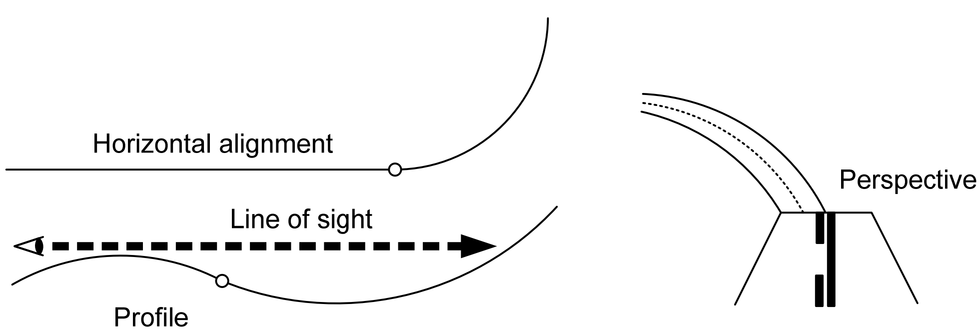
Profile With Tangent Alignment

Avoid designing dips on an otherwise long uniform grade.



Sharp Angle Appearance

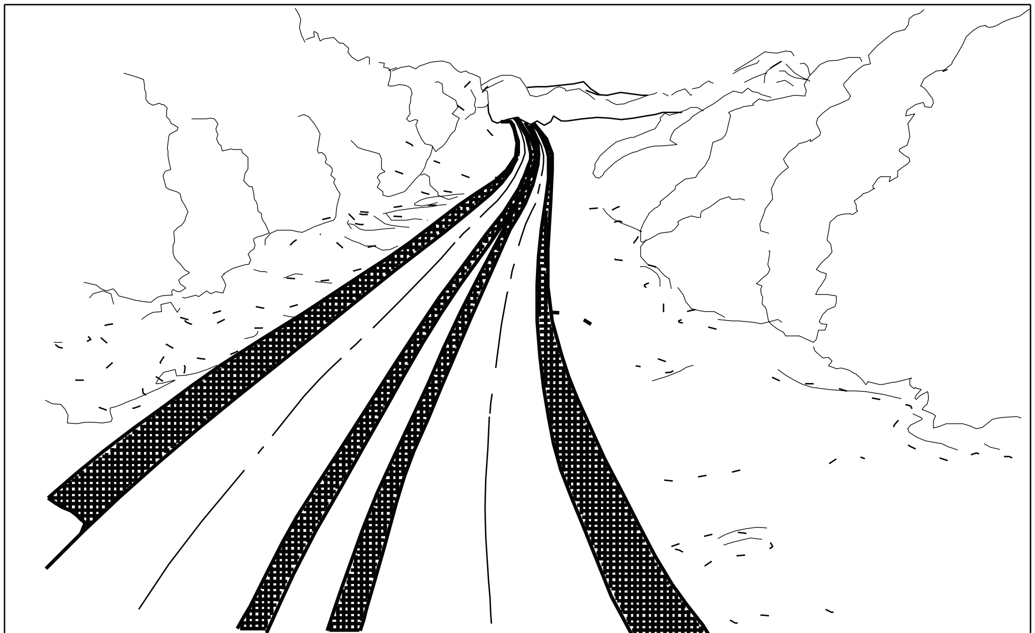
This combination presents a poor appearance. The horizontal curve looks like a sharp angle.



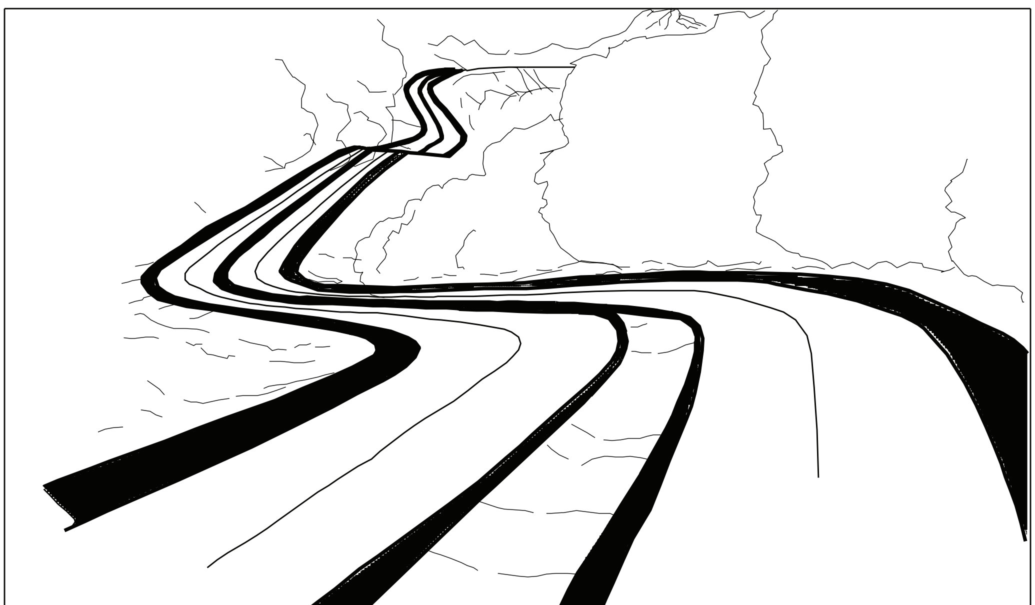
Disjointed Effect

A disjointed effect occurs when the beginning of a horizontal curve is hidden by an intervening crest while the continuation of the curve is visible in the distance beyond the intervening crest.

Coordination of Horizontal and Vertical Alignments
Exhibit 1220-2b

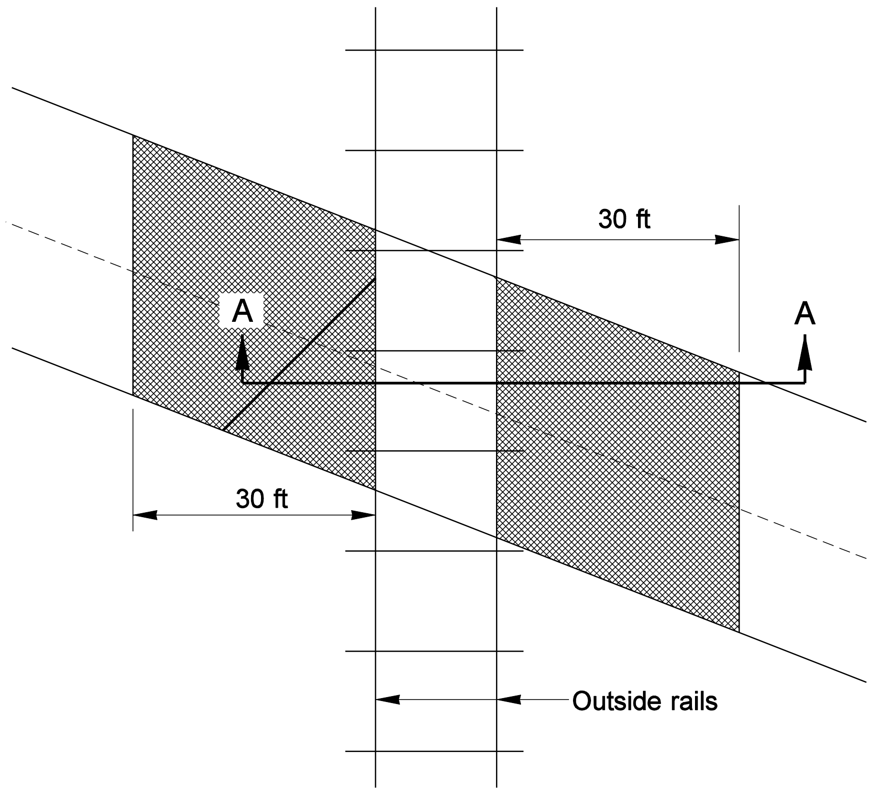


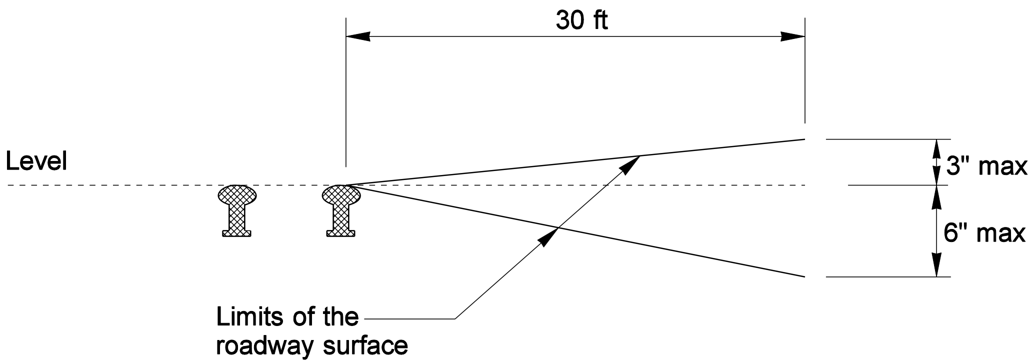
Desirable Coordination of Vertical and Horizontal
Curves and the Use of Flowing Alignment



Undesirable - Vertical and Horizontal Curves
Not Coordinated and Using Minimums

Coordination of Horizontal and Vertical Alignments
Exhibit 1220-2c





Detail A-A

Grading at Railroad Crossings
Exhibit 1220-3

Chapter 1230 Geometric Cross Section

1230.01 General
1230.02 References
1230.03 Definitions
1230.04 Roadways
1230.05 Medians and Outer Separations
1230.06 Roadsides
1230.07 Roadway Sections
1230.08 Documentation

1230.01 General

Geometric cross sections for state highways are governed by functional classification criteria, traffic volume, and whether the highway is in a rural or an urban area. (See Chapter 1140 for information on functional class.)

Consider High-Occupancy Vehicle (HOV) lanes when continuous through lanes are to be added within the limits of an urban area with a population over 200,000 (see Chapter 1410).

When a state highway within an incorporated city or town is a portion of a city street, develop the design features in cooperation with the local agency. (See Chapter 1140 for guidance on geometric design data when a state highway within an incorporated city or town is a portion of a city street.)

For additional information, see the following chapters:

Chapter	Subject
610	Geotechnical investigation
620	Pavement type
1130	Roadway widths and cross slopes for modified design level
1140	Minimum lane and shoulder widths for full design level
1140	Shoulder widths at curbs
1240	Turning roadway width
1250	Superelevation
1310	Guidelines for islands
1360	Lane and shoulder widths for ramps
1370	Median crossovers

1230.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Highway Runoff Manual, M 31-16, WSDOT

Local Agency Guidelines (LAG), M 36-63, WSDOT

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

(2) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

1230.03 Definitions

auxiliary lane The portion of the roadway adjoining the through lanes for parking, speed change, turning, storage for turning, weaving, truck climbing, and other purposes supplementary to through-traffic movement.

divided multilane A roadway with two or more through lanes in each direction and a median that physically or legally prohibits left turns except at designated locations.

freeway A divided highway that has a minimum of two lanes in each direction, for the exclusive use of traffic, and with full control of access.

high pavement type Portland cement concrete pavement or hot mix asphalt (HMA) pavement on a treated base.

intermediate pavement type Hot mix asphalt pavement on an untreated base.

lane A strip of roadway used for a single line of vehicles.

lane width The lateral design width for a single lane, striped as shown in the *Standard Plans* and the *Standard Specifications*.

low pavement type Bituminous surface treatment (BST).

median The portion of a highway separating the traveled ways for traffic in opposite directions.

outer separation The area between the outside edge of the traveled way for through traffic and the nearest edge of the traveled way of a frontage road or a collector-distributor road.

roadway The portion of a highway, including shoulders, for vehicular use.

rural design area An area that meets none of the conditions to be an urban design area.

shoulder The portion of the roadway contiguous with the traveled way, primarily for accommodation of stopped vehicles, emergency use, lateral support of the traveled way, and use by pedestrians.

shoulder width The lateral width of the shoulder, measured from the outside edge of the outside lane to the edge of the roadway.

superelevation The rotation of the roadway cross section in such a manner as to overcome part of the centrifugal force that acts on a vehicle traversing a curve.

traveled way The portion of the roadway intended for the movement of vehicles, exclusive of shoulders and lanes for parking, turning, and storage for turning.

turning roadway A curve on an open highway, a ramp, or the connecting portion of the roadway between two intersecting legs of an intersection.

undivided multilane A roadway with two or more through lanes in each direction on which left turns are not controlled.

urban area An area designated by the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) in cooperation with the Transportation Improvement Board and Regional Transportation Planning Organizations, subject to the approval of the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA).

urban design area An area where urban design criteria are appropriate, that is defined by one or more of the following:

- An urban area.
- An area within the limits of an incorporated city or town.
- An area characterized by intensive use of the land for the location of structures, that receives such urban services as sewer, water, and other public utilities, as well as services normally associated with an incorporated city or town. This may include an urban growth area defined under the Growth Management Act (see Chapter 36.70A RCW, Growth management – planning by selected counties and cities), but outside the city limits.
- An area with not more than 25% undeveloped land.

1230.04 Roadways

The cross sections shown in Exhibits 1230-1, 2, 3, 4a, and 4b represent minimum values for full design level. (See Chapter 1140 for additional design information for full design level and Chapter 1130 for cross sections and design information for modified design level.)

(1) Traveled Way Cross Slope

The cross slope on tangents and curves is a main element in roadway design. The cross slope or crown on tangent sections and large radius curves is complicated by the following two contradicting controls:

- Reasonably steep cross slopes aid in water runoff and minimize ponding as a result of pavement imperfections and unequal settlement.
- Steeper cross slopes are noticeable in steering, increase the tendency for vehicles to drift to the low side of the roadway, and increase the susceptibility of vehicles to slide to the side on icy or wet pavements.

A 2% cross slope is normally used for tangents and large radius curves on high and intermediate pavement types. With justification, cross slopes may vary by ± 0.5% from the target 2% cross slope. Do not design cross slopes flatter than 1.5%.

On low pavement types, the cross slope may be increased to 3% to allow for reduced construction control and greater settlement.

Superelevation on curves is a function of the design speed and the radius of the curve. (See Chapter 1250 for guidance on superelevation design.)

(2) Turning Roadways

The roadway on a curve may need to be widened to make the operating conditions comparable to those on tangents. There are two main reasons to do this. One is the offtracking of vehicles such as trucks and buses. The other is the increased difficulty drivers have in keeping their vehicles in the center of the lane. (See Chapter 1240 for width guidelines on turning roadways.)

To maintain the design speed, highway and ramp curves are usually superelevated to overcome part of the centrifugal force that acts on a vehicle. (See Chapter 1250 for superelevation guidelines.)

(3) Shoulders

Pave the shoulders of all highways where high or intermediate pavement types are used. Where low pavement type is used, treat the roadway as full width.

Shoulder cross slopes are normally the same as the cross slopes for adjacent lanes. With justification, shoulder slopes may be increased to 6%. On the high side of a roadway with a plane section, such as a turning roadway in superelevation, the shoulder may slope in the opposite direction from the adjacent lane. The maximum difference in slopes between the lane and the shoulder is 8%. Locations where it may be desirable to have a shoulder slope different than the adjacent lane are:

- Where curbing is used.
- Where shoulder surface is bituminous, gravel, or crushed rock.
- Where overlays are planned and it is desirable to maintain the grade at the edge of the shoulder.
- On divided highways with depressed medians where it is desirable to drain the runoff into the median.
- On the high side of the superelevation on curves where it is desirable to drain stormwater or meltwater away from the roadway.

Where extruded curb is used, see the *Standard Plans* for widening. Widening is normally provided where traffic barrier is installed (see Chapter 1610).

It is preferred that curb not be used on high-speed facilities (design speed above 45 mph). In some areas, curb may be needed to control runoff water until ground cover is attained to control erosion. Plan for the removal of the curb when the ground cover becomes adequate. Arrange for curb removal with region maintenance staff as part of the future maintenance plans. When curb is used in conjunction with guardrail, see Chapter 1610 for guidance.

Exhibits 1230-5a and 5b present shoulder details and guidelines.

1230.05 Medians and Outer Separations

(1) Purpose

The main function of a median is to separate opposing traffic lanes. The main function of an outer separation is to separate the main roadway from a frontage road. Medians and outer separations also provide space for:

- Drainage facilities.
- Undercrossing bridge piers.
- Vehicle storage space for crossing and left-turn movements at intersections.
- Headlight glare screens, including planted or natural foliage.
- Visual separation of opposing traffic.
- Refuge areas for errant or disabled vehicles.
- Storage space for snow and water from traffic lanes.
- Increased safety, comfort, and ease of operations.
- Access control.
- Enforcement.

(2) Design

Exhibits 1230-6a through 6c give minimum design criteria for medians. (See Chapters 1130 and 1140 for minimum median widths.) Median widths in excess of the minimums are highly desirable. When the horizontal and vertical alignments of the two roadways of a divided highway are independent of one another, determine median side slopes in conformance with Exhibit 1230-1. Independent horizontal and vertical alignment, rather than parallel alignment, is desirable.

Considerable latitude in grading treatment is intended on wide, variable-width medians, provided the minimum geometrics, safety, and aesthetics are met or exceeded. Unnecessary clearing, grubbing, and grading are undesirable within wide medians. Use selective thinning and limited reshaping of the natural ground when feasible. For median clear zone criteria, see Chapter 1600, and for slopes between the face of traffic barriers and the traveled way, see Chapter 1610.

In areas where land is expensive, make an economic comparison of wide medians to narrow medians with barrier. Consider right of way, construction, maintenance, and accident costs. The widths of medians need not be uniform. Make the transition between median widths as long as practicable. (See Chapter 1210 for minimum taper lengths.)

When using concrete barriers in depressed medians or on curves, provide for surface drainage on both sides of the barrier. The transverse notches in the base of precast concrete barrier are not intended to be used as a drainage feature, but rather as pick-up points when placing the sections.

1230.06 Roadsides

(1) Side Slopes

When designing side slopes, fit the slope selected for any cut or fill into the existing terrain to give a smooth transitional blend from the construction to the existing landscape. Flatter slopes are desirable, especially within the Design Clear Zone. Slopes not steeper than 4H:1V, with smooth transitions where the slope changes, will provide a reasonable opportunity to recover control of an errant vehicle. Where mowing is contemplated, provide slopes not steeper than 3H:1V to allow for mowing. If there will be continuous traffic barrier on a fill slope, and mowing is not contemplated, the slope may be steeper than 3H:1V.

Where unusual geological features or soil conditions exist, treatment of the slopes depends upon results of a review of the location by the Region Materials Engineer.

With justification, fill slopes steeper than shown in the Fill and Ditch Slope Selection tables in Exhibits 1230-1, 2, 3, and 4b may be used when traffic barrier is installed. Do not install traffic barrier unless an object or condition is present that calls for mitigation in accordance with Chapter 1600 criteria. The steepest slope is determined by the soil conditions. Where favorable soil conditions exist, higher fill slopes may be as steep as 1½H:1V. (See Chapter 1600 for clear zone and barrier criteria.)

The values in the Cut Slope Selection tables in Exhibits 1230-1, 2, 3, and 4b are desirable. Provide justification for the use of steeper slopes unless the geotechnical report identifies a specific need and recommends them. Do not disturb existing stable cut slopes just to meet the slope guidelines given in the Cut Slope Selection tables. When an existing slope is to be revised, document the reason for the change.

If borrow is necessary, consider obtaining it by flattening cut slopes uniformly on one or both sides of the highway. Where considering wasting excess material on an existing embankment slope, consult the Region Materials Engineer to verify that the foundation soil will support the additional material.

Provide for drainage from the roadway surface and drainage in ditches (see Chapter 800). For drainage ditches in embankment areas, see 1230.06(4).

At locations where vegetated filter areas or detention facilities will be established to improve highway runoff water quality, provide appropriate slope, space, and soil conditions for that purpose. (See the *Highway Runoff Manual* for design criteria and additional guidance.)

Except under guardrail installations, it is desirable to plant and establish low-growing vegetation on nonpaved roadsides. This type of treatment relies on the placement of a lift of compost or topsoil over base course material in the roadway cross section. Consult with the area Maintenance Superintendent and the region Landscape Architect to determine the appropriate configuration of the roadway cross section and soil and plant specifications.

Provide slope treatment as shown in the *Standard Plans* at the top of roadway cut slopes except for cuts in solid rock. Unless Class B slope treatment is called for, Class A slope treatment is used. Call for Class B slope treatment where space is limited, such as where right of way is restricted.

(2) Roadway Sections in Rock Cuts

Typical sections for rock cuts, illustrated in Exhibits 1230-7a and 7b, are guides for the design and construction of roadways through rock cuts. Changes in slope or fallout area are recommended when justified. Base the selection of the appropriate sections on an engineering study and the recommendations of the Region Materials Engineer (RME) and region Landscape Architect. Obtain concurrence from the Headquarters (HQ) Materials Lab.

There are two basic design treatments applicable to rock excavation (see Exhibits 1230-7a and 7b). Design A applies to most rock cuts. Design B is a talus slope treatment.

(a) Design A

This design is shown in stage development to aid the designer in selecting an appropriate section for site conditions in regard to backslope, probable rockfall, hardness of rock, and so on.

The following guidelines apply to the various stages shown in Exhibit 1230-7a:

- **Stage 1** is used where the anticipated quantity of rockfall is small, adequate fallout width can be provided, and the rock slope is ½H:1V or steeper. Controlled blasting is recommended in conjunction with Stage 1 construction.
- **Stage 2** is used when a “rocks in the road” problem exists or is anticipated. Consider it on flat slopes where rocks are apt to roll rather than fall.
- **Stage 3** represents the full implementation of all protection and safety measures applicable to rock control. Use it when extreme rockfall conditions exist.

Show Stage 3 as the ultimate stage for future construction on the Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) if there is any possibility that it will be needed.

The use of Stage 2 or Stage 3 alternatives (concrete barrier) is based on the designer’s analysis of the particular site. Considerations include maintenance; size and amount of rockfall; probable velocities; availability of materials; ditch capacity; adjacent traffic volumes; distance from traveled lane; and impact severity. Incorporate removable sections in the barrier at approximately 200-foot intervals. Provide appropriate terminal treatment (see Chapter 1610).

Occasionally, the existing ground above the top of the cut is on a slope approximating the design cut slope. The height (H) is to include the existing slope or that portion that can logically be considered part of the cut. Select cut slopes for a project that provide stability for the existing material.

Benches may be used to increase slope stability; however, the use of benches may alter the design given in Exhibit 1230-7a.

The necessity for benches, as well as their width and vertical spacing, is established after an evaluation of slope stability. Make benches at least 20 feet wide. Provide access for maintenance equipment to the lowest bench and to the higher benches if feasible. Greater traffic benefits in the form of added safety, increased horizontal sight distance on curves, and other desirable attributes may be realized from widening a cut rather than benching.

(b) **Design B**

A talus slope treatment is shown in Exhibit 1230-7b. The rock protection fence is placed at any one of the three positions shown, but not in more than one position at a particular location. Consult with the Region Materials Engineer for the placement of the rock protection fence in talus slope areas.

- **Fence position a** is used when the cliff generates boulders less than 0.25 yd^3 in size and the length of the slope is greater than 350 feet.
- **Fence position b** is the preferred location for most applications.
- **Fence position c** is used when the cliff generates boulders greater than 0.25 yd^3 in size regardless of the length of the slope. On short slopes, this may require placing the fence less than 100 feet from the base of the cliff.
- Use of gabions may be considered instead of the rock protection shown in fence position a. Because gabion treatment is considered similar to a wall, provide appropriate face and end protection (see Chapters 730 and 1610).

Use of the alternate shoulder barrier is based on the designer's analysis of the particular site. Considerations similar to those given for Design A alternatives apply.

Evaluate the need for rock protection treatments other than those described above for cut slopes that have relatively uniform spalling surfaces (consult with the Region Materials Engineer).

(3) Stepped Slopes

Stepped slopes are a construction method intended to promote early establishment of vegetative cover on the slopes. They consist of a series of small horizontal steps or terraces on the face of the cut slope. Soil conditions dictate the feasibility and necessity of stepped slopes. They are to be considered on the recommendation of the Region Materials Engineer (see Chapter 610). Consult the region landscape personnel for appropriate design and vegetative materials to be used. (See Exhibit 1230-8 for stepped slope design details.)

(4) Drainage Ditches in Embankment Areas

Where a drainage ditch is located adjacent to the toe of a roadway embankment, consider the stability of the embankment. A drainage ditch placed immediately adjacent to the toe of an embankment slope has the effect of increasing the height of the embankment by the depth of the ditch. In cases where the foundation soil is weak, the extra height could result in an embankment failure. As a general rule, the weaker the foundation and the higher the embankment, the farther the ditch should be from the embankment. Consult the Region Materials Engineer for the proper ditch location.

When topographic restrictions exist, consider an enclosed drainage system with appropriate inlets and outlets. Do not steepen slopes to provide lateral clearance from toe of slope to ditch location, thereby necessitating traffic barriers or other protective devices.

Maintenance operations are also facilitated by adequate width between the toe of the slope and an adjacent drainage ditch. Where this type of facility is anticipated, provide sufficient right of way for access to the facility and place the drainage ditch near the right of way line.

Provide for disposition of the drainage collected by ditches in regard to siltation of adjacent property, embankment erosion, and other undesirable effects. This may also apply to top of cut slope ditches.

(5) Bridge End Slopes

Bridge end slopes are determined by several factors, including location, fill height, depth of cut, soil stability, and horizontal and vertical alignment. Coordinate bridge end slope treatment with the HQ Bridge and Structures Office (see Chapter 720).

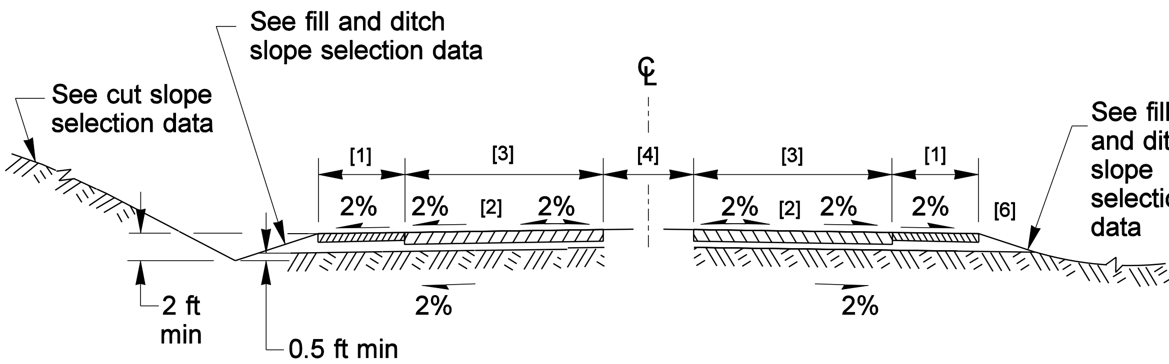
Early in the bridge plan development, determine preliminary bridge geometrics, end slope rates, and toe of slope treatments. Exhibit 1230-9a provides guidelines for use of slope rates and toe of slope treatments for overcrossings. Exhibit 1230-9b shows toe of slope treatments to be used on the various toe conditions.

1230.07 Roadway Sections

Provide a typical roadway section for inclusion in the PS&E for each general type used on the main roadway, ramps, detours, and frontage or other roads (see the *Plans Preparation Manual*).

1230.08 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



Design Class I-1, P-1, P-2, M-1, $U_{M/A}$-1, $U_{M/A}$-2

Height of fill/depth of ditch (ft)	Slope not steeper than[5]
10	6H:1V
10 – 20	4H:1V
20 – 30	3H:1V[6]
over 30	2H:1V[6][8]

Fill and Ditch Slope Selection

Height of cut (ft)*	Slope not steeper than
0 – 5	6H:1V
5 – 20	3H:1V
over 20	2H:1V[7]
* From bottom of ditch	

Cut Slope Selection[9]

Notes:

[1] For shoulder details, see Exhibits 1230-5a and 5b. For minimum shoulder width, see Chapters 1130 and 1140.

[2] Generally, provide the crown slope as follows:
- Four-lane highway: Slope all lanes away from the median (plane section).
- Six-lane highway: Slope all lanes away from the median unless high rainfall intensities would indicate otherwise.
- Eight-lane highway: Slope two of the four directional lanes to the right and two to the left unless low rainfall intensities indicate that all four lanes could be sloped away from the median.

[3] For minimum number and width of lanes, see Chapters 1130 and 1140. For turning roadway width, see Chapter 1240.

[4] For median details, see Exhibits 1230-6a through 6c. For minimum median width, see Chapters 1130 and 1140.

[5] Where practicable, consider flatter slopes for the greater fill heights and ditch depths.

[6] Widen and round foreslopes steeper than 4H:1V, as shown in Exhibit 1230-5b.

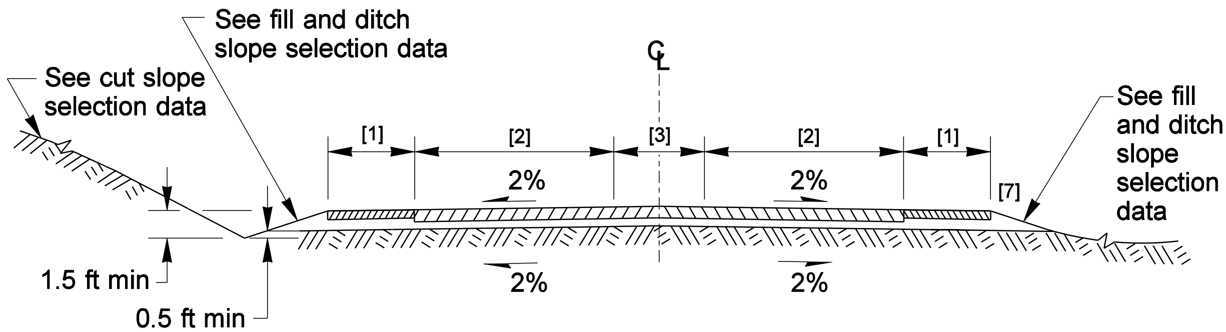
[7] Cut slopes steeper than 2H:1V may be used where favorable soil conditions exist or stepped construction is used. (See Chapter 1600 for clear zone and barrier guidelines.)

[8] Fill slopes as steep as 1½H:1V may be used where favorable soil conditions exist. (See Chapter 1600 for clear zone and barrier guidelines.)

[9] The values in the Cut Slope Selection table are desirable. Provide justification for the use of steeper slopes unless the geotechnical report identifies a specific need and recommends them. Do not disturb existing stable slopes just to meet the slope guidelines given in this table.

Divided Highway Roadway Sections

Exhibit 1230-1



Design Class P-6, M-5, C-1, $U_{M/A}$-3, $U_{M/A}$-4

Height of fill/depth of ditch (ft)	Slope not steeper than[4]
0 – 5	6H:1V
5 – 20	4H:1V
20 – 30	3H:1V[7]
over 30	2H:1V[6][7]

Fill and Ditch Slope Selection

Height of cut (ft)*	Slope not steeper than
0 – 5	4H:1V
over 5	2H:1V[5]
* From bottom of ditch	

Cut Slope Selection[8]

Notes:

[1] For shoulder details, see Exhibits 1230-5a and 5b. For minimum shoulder width, see Chapters 1130 and 1140.

[2] For minimum number and width of lanes, see Chapters 1130 and 1140. For turning roadway width, see Chapter 1240.

[3] For minimum median width, see Chapters 1130 and 1140. For width when median is a two-way left-turn lane, see Chapter 1310.

[4] Where practicable, consider flatter slopes for the greater fill heights and ditch depths.

[5] Cut slopes steeper than 2H:1V may be used where favorable soil conditions exist or stepped construction is used. (See Chapter 1600 for clear zone and barrier guidelines.)

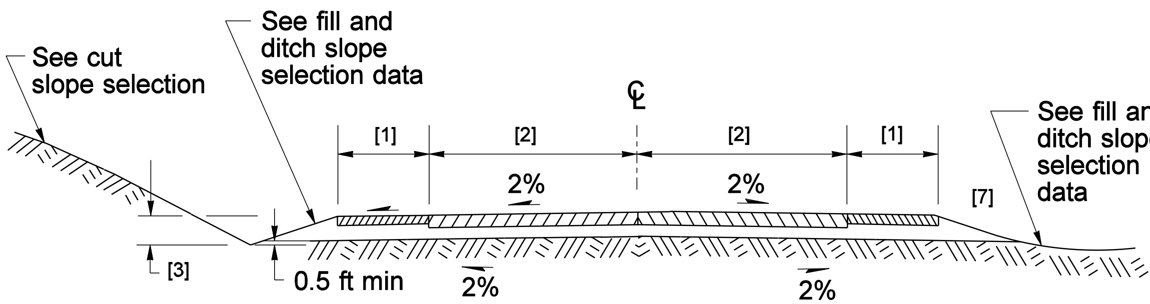
[6] Fill slopes up to 1½H:1V may be used where favorable soil conditions exist. (See Chapter 1600 for clear zone and barrier guidelines.)

[7] Widen and round foreslopes steeper than 4H:1V, as shown in Exhibit 1230-5b.

[8] The values in the Cut Slope Selection table are desirable. Provide justification for the use of steeper slopes unless the geotechnical report identifies a specific need and recommends them. Do not disturb existing stable slopes just to meet the slope guidelines given in this table.

Undivided Multilane Highway Roadway Sections

Exhibit 1230-2



Design Class P-3, P-4, P-5. M-2, M-3, M-4, C-2, C-3, C-4, $U_{M/A}$-5, $U_{M/A}$-6

Design class of highway	P-3, P-4, M-2, C-2, $U_{M/A}$-5	P-5, M-3, M-4, C-3, C-4, $U_{M/A}$-6
Height of fill/ depth of ditch (ft)	Slope not steeper than[4]	
0 – 10	6H:1V	4H:1V
10 – 20	4H:1V	4H:1V
20 – 30	3H:1V[7]	3H:1V[7]
over 30	2H:1V[5][7]	2H:1V[5][7]

Fill and Ditch Slope Selection

Design class of highway	P-3, P-4, M-2, C-2, $U_{M/A}$-5	P-5, M-3, M-4, C-3, C-4, $U_{M/A}$-6
Height of cut (ft)*	Slope not steeper than	
0 – 5	6H:1V	4H:1V
5 – 20	3H:1V	2H:1V[6]
over 20	2H:1V[6]	2H:1V[6]
* From bottom of ditch		

Cut Slope Selection[8]

Notes:

[1] For shoulder details, see Exhibits 1230-5a and 5b. For minimum shoulder width, see Chapters 1130 and 1140.

[2] For minimum width of lanes, see Chapters 1130 and 1140. For turning roadway width, see Chapter 1240.

[3] The minimum ditch depth is 2 feet for Design Class P3 and 1.5 feet for Design Classes P-4, P-5, M-2, M-3, M-4, C-2, C-3, C-4, $U_{M/A}$-5, and $U_{M/A}$-6.

[4] Where practicable, consider flatter slopes for the greater fill heights.

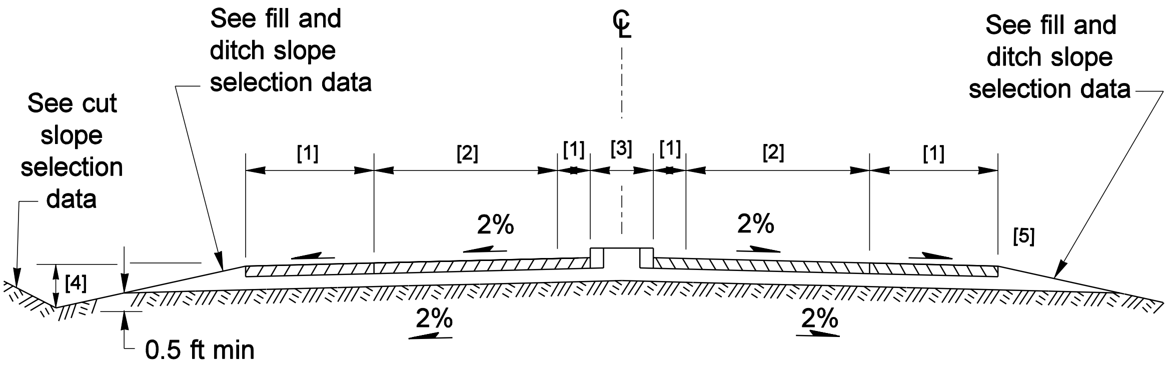
[5] Fill slopes up to 1½H:1V may be used where favorable soil conditions exist. (See Chapter 1600 for clear zone and barrier guidelines.)

[6] Cut slopes steeper than 2H:1V may be used where favorable soil conditions exist or stepped construction is used. (See Chapter 1600 for clear zone and barrier guidelines.)

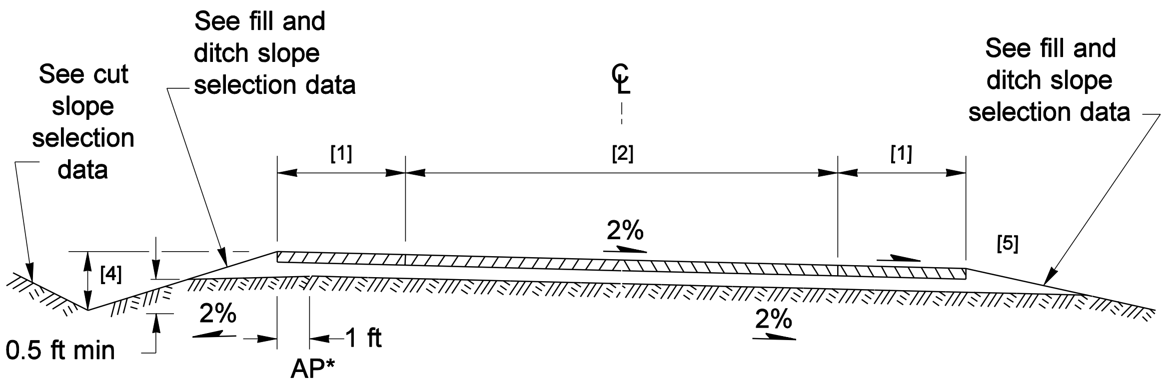
[7] Widen and round foreslopes steeper than 4H:1V, as shown in Exhibit 1230-5b.

[8] The values in the Cut Slope Selection table are desirable. Provide justification for the use of steeper slopes unless the geotechnical report identifies a specific need and recommends them. Do not disturb existing stable slopes just to meet the slope guidelines given in this table.

Two-Lane Highway Roadway Sections
Exhibit 1230-3



Two-Lane Two-Way Ramp



One-Way Ramp

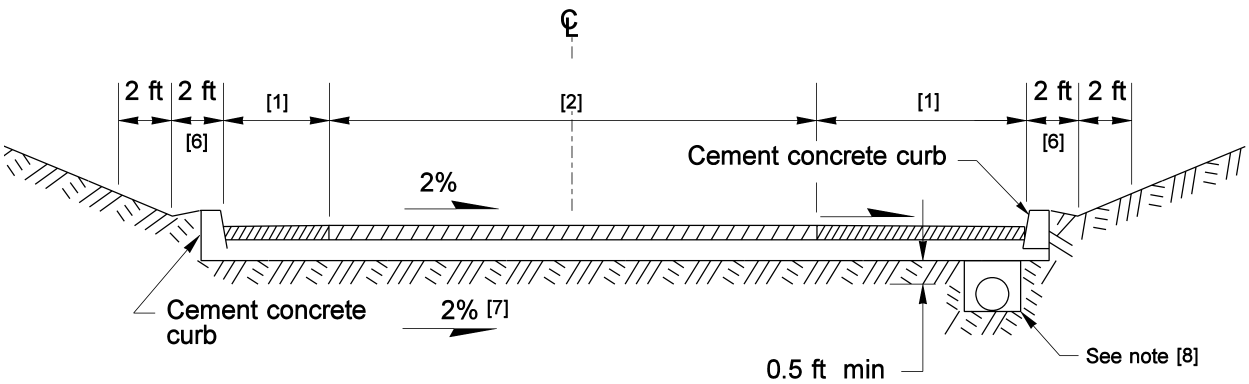
*AP = Angle point in the subgrade

Note:

For applicable notes, dimensions, and slope selection tables, see Exhibit 1230-4b.

Ramp Roadway Sections

Exhibit 1230-4a



Special Design

This special design section may be used when restrictions (high right of way costs or physical features) make construction difficult or costly.

Height of fill/depth of ditch (ft)	Slope not steeper than[9]
0 – 10	6H:1V
10 – 20	4H:1V
20 – 30	3H:1V[5]
over 30	2H:1V[5][11]

Fill and Ditch Slope Selection

Height of cut (ft)*	Slope not steeper than
0 – 5	6H:1V
5 – 20	3H:1V
over 20	2H:1V[10]
* From bottom of ditch	

Cut Slope Selection[12]

Notes:

[1] For shoulder details, see Exhibits 1230-5a and 5b. For minimum shoulder widths, see Chapter 1360.

[2] For minimum ramp lane widths, see Chapter 1360. For turning roadway width, see Chapter 1240. For two-way ramps, treat each direction as a separate one-way roadway.

[3] The minimum median width of a two-lane two-way ramp is not less than that required for traffic control devices and their respective clearances.

[4] Minimum ditch depth is 2 feet for design speeds over 40 mph and 1.5 feet for design speeds of 40 mph or less. Rounding may be varied to fit drainage requirements when minimum ditch depth is 2 feet.

[5] Widen and round foreslopes steeper than 4H:1V, as shown in Exhibit 1230-5b.

[6] 2-foot widening and rounding may be omitted when slopes are 4H:1V or flatter.

[7] Subgrade may slope to the left if the left edge is in embankment.

[8] Provide drainage unless one edge of the roadway is in embankment or subject material is free draining. Method of drainage pickup is to be determined by the designer.

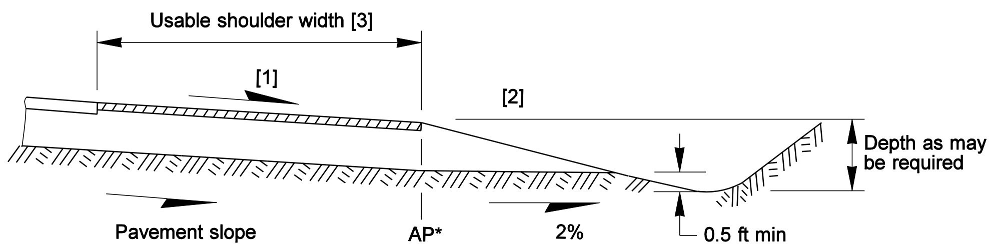
[9] Where practicable, consider flatter slopes for the greater fill heights and ditch depths.

[10] Cut slopes steeper than 2H:1V may be used where favorable soil conditions exist or stepped construction is used. (See Chapter 1600 for clear zone and barrier guidelines.)

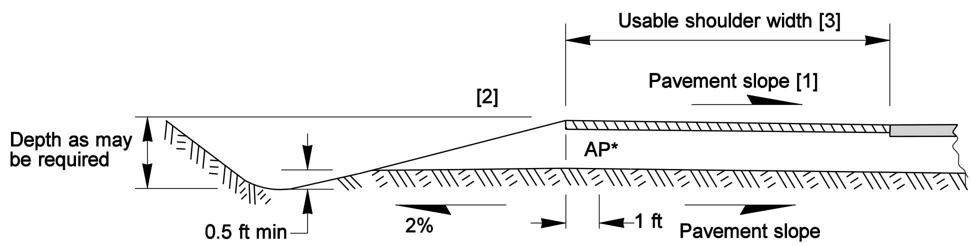
[11] Fill slopes as steep as 1½H:1V may be used where favorable soil conditions exist. (See Chapter 1600 for clear zone and barrier guidelines.)

[12] The values in the Cut Slope Selection table are desirable. Provide justification for the use of steeper slopes unless the geotechnical report identifies a specific need and recommends them. Do not disturb existing stable slopes just to meet the slope guidelines given in this table.

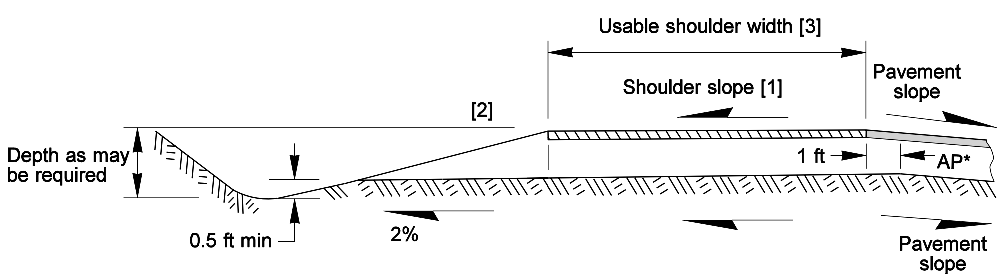
Ramp Roadway Sections
Exhibit 1230-4b



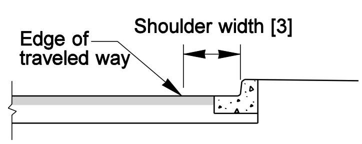
Shoulder Design on the Low Side of the Roadway for Cross Slopes Greater Than 2%



Shoulder Design on the High Side of the Roadway on Curves and Divided Roadways Shoulder Slopes With Roadway



Shoulder Design on the High Side of the Roadway on Curves and Divided Roadways Shoulder Slopes Away From Roadway

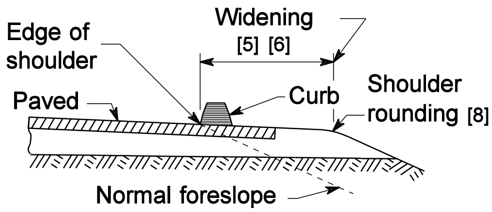


Shoulder Design with Curb [4] [5]

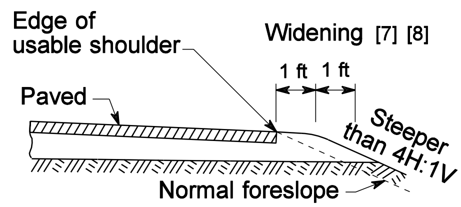
*AP = Angle point in the subgrade

Note:
For applicable notes, see Exhibit 1230-5b.

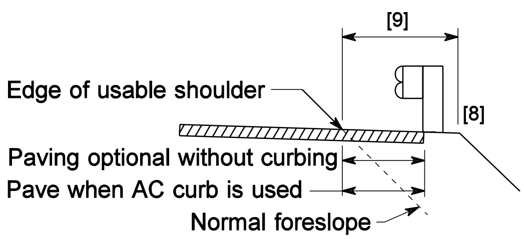
Shoulder Details
Exhibit 1230-5a



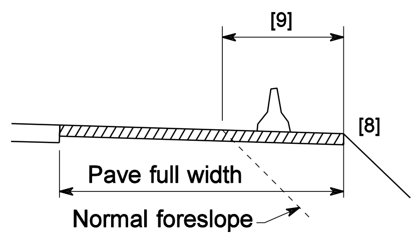
Asphalt Concrete Curb Placement



Shoulder Rounding [2]



Shoulder Widening for Guardrail



Shoulder Widening for Barrier

Notes:

[1] Shoulder cross slopes are normally the same as the cross slopes for adjacent lanes. (For examples and additional information for locations where it may be desirable to have a shoulder cross slope different than the adjacent lane, see 1230.04(3).)

[2] Provide widening and slope rounding outside the usable shoulder when foreslope is steeper than 4H:1V.

[3] For minimum shoulder width, see Chapters 1130, 1140, and 1360.

[4] For additional requirements for sidewalks, see Chapter 1510.

[5] It is desirable that curb not be used on high-speed facilities (posted speed >40 mph).

[6] Provide paved shoulders wherever extruded curb is placed. Use curb only to control drainage from roadway runoff. (See the *Standard Plans* for additional details and dimensions.)

[7] When rounding is provided, use it uniformly on all ramps and crossroads, as well as the main roadway. End rounding on the crossroad just beyond the ramp terminals and at a similar location where only a grade separation is involved.

[8] When widening beyond the edge of usable shoulder for curb, barrier, or other purposes, additional widening for slope rounding may be omitted.

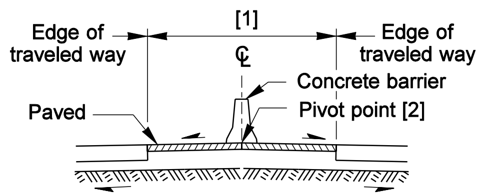
[9] For widening guidelines for guardrail and concrete barrier, see Chapter 1610.

General:

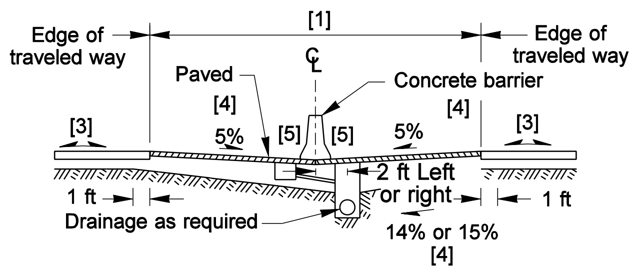
On divided multilane highways, see Exhibits 1230-6a through 6c for additional details for median shoulders.

Shoulder Details

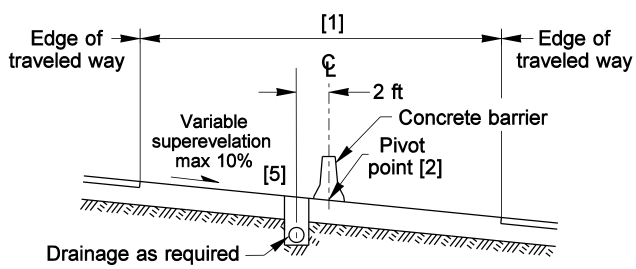
Exhibit 1230-5b



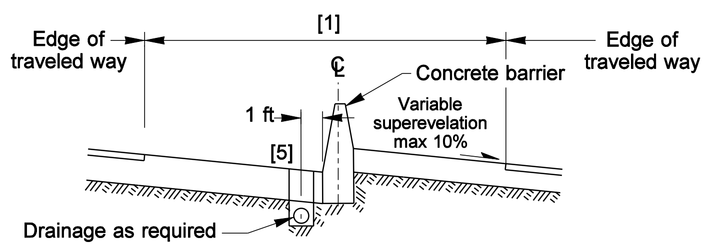
Design A: Crowned Median



Design: B Depressed Median



Alternate Design 1: Treatment on Curves



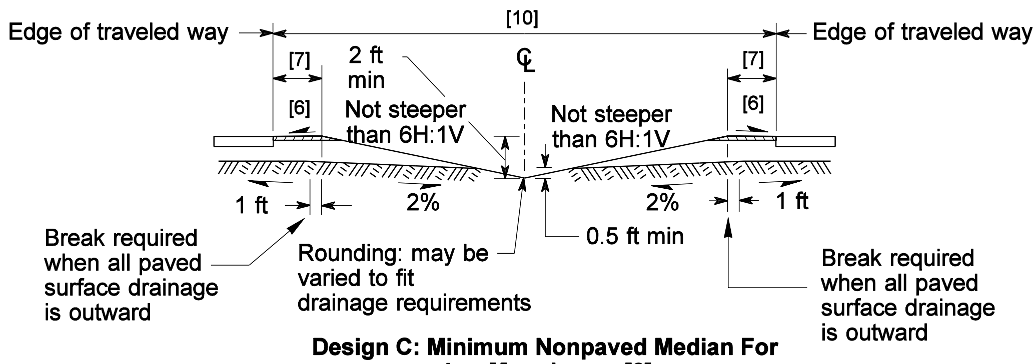
Alternate Design 2: No Fixed Pivot Point [2]

Note:

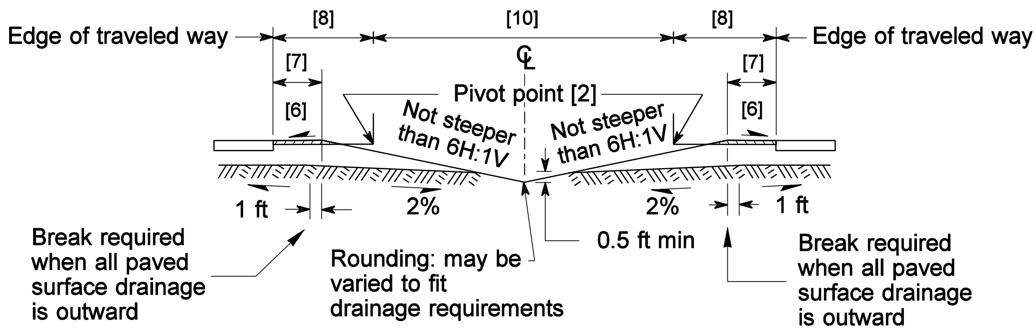
For applicable notes, see Exhibit 1230-6c.

Divided Highway Median Sections

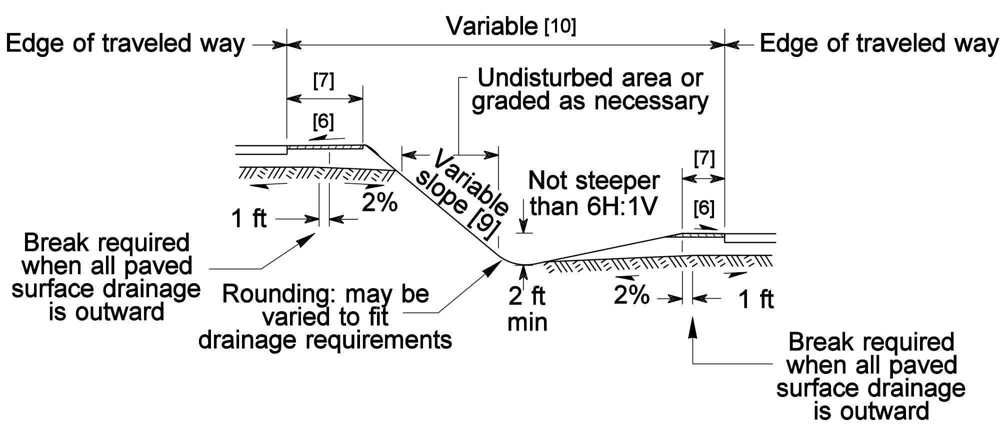
Exhibit 1230-6a



Design C: Minimum Nonpaved Median For 4 or More Lanes [2]



Design D: Minimum for 4 or More Lanes With Future Lanes in Median



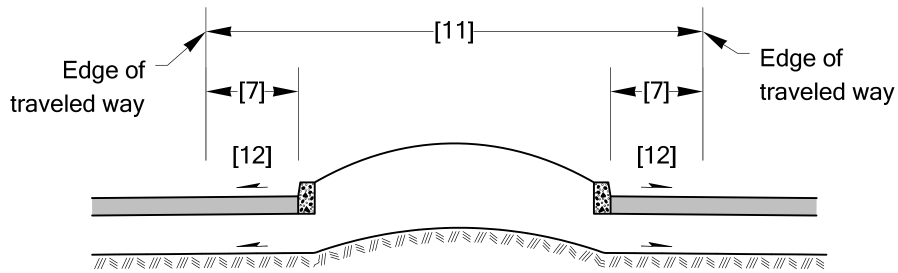
Design E: Minimum for 4 or More Lanes With Independent Alignment

Note:

For applicable notes, see Exhibit 1230-6c.

Divided Highway Median Sections

Exhibit 1230-6b



Design F: Raised Median[13]

Notes:

[1] For minimum median width, see Chapters 1130 and 1140.

[2] Consider vertical clearances, drainage, and aesthetics when locating the pivot point.

[3] Generally, slope pavement away from the median. A crowned roadway section may be used in conjunction with the depressed median where conditions justify. (See Exhibit 1230-1 for additional crown information.)

[4] Design B may be used uniformly on both tangents and horizontal curves. Use Alternate Design 1 or Alternate Design 2 when the “rollover” between the shoulder and the inside lane on the high side of a superelevated curve exceeds 8%. Provide suitable transitions at each end of the curve for the various conditions encountered in applying the alternate to the basic median design.

[5] Method of drainage pickup to be determined by the designer.

[6] Median shoulders normally slope in the same direction and rate as the adjacent through lane. (See 1230.04(3) for examples and additional information for locations where it may be desirable to have a shoulder cross slope different than the adjacent lane.)

[7] For minimum shoulder width, see Chapters 1130 and 1140.

[8] Future lane. (See Chapter 1140 for minimum width.)

[9] Widen and round foreslopes steeper than 4H:1V, as shown in Exhibit 1230-5b.

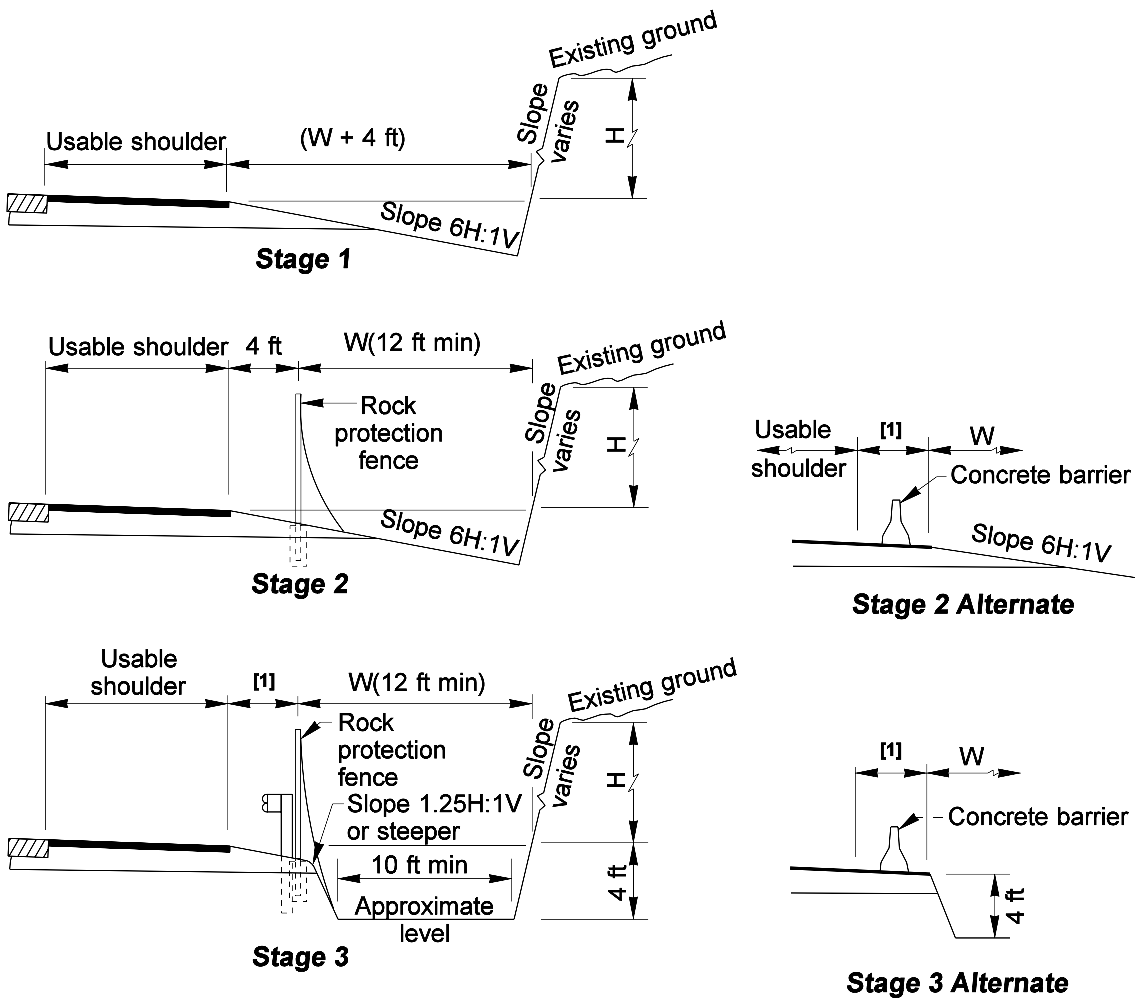
[10] Designs C, D, and E are rural median designs. (See Chapter 1140 for minimum rural median widths.) Rural median designs may be used in urban areas when minimum rural median widths can be achieved.

[11] For minimum median width, see Chapter 1140. Raised medians may be paved or landscaped. For clear zone and barrier guidelines when fixed objects or trees are in the median, see Chapter 1600.

[12] Lane and shoulders normally slope away from raised medians. When they slope toward the median, provide for drainage.

[13] The desirable maximum design speed for a raised median is 45 mph. When the design speed is above 45 mph, Design A or Design B is desirable.

Divided Highway Median Sections
Exhibit 1230-6c



Rock Slope	H (ft)	W (ft)
Near Vertical	20 – 30	12
	30 – 60	15
	> 60	20
0.25H:1V through 0.50H:1V	20 – 30	12
	30 – 60	15
	60 – 100	20
	>100	25

Notes:

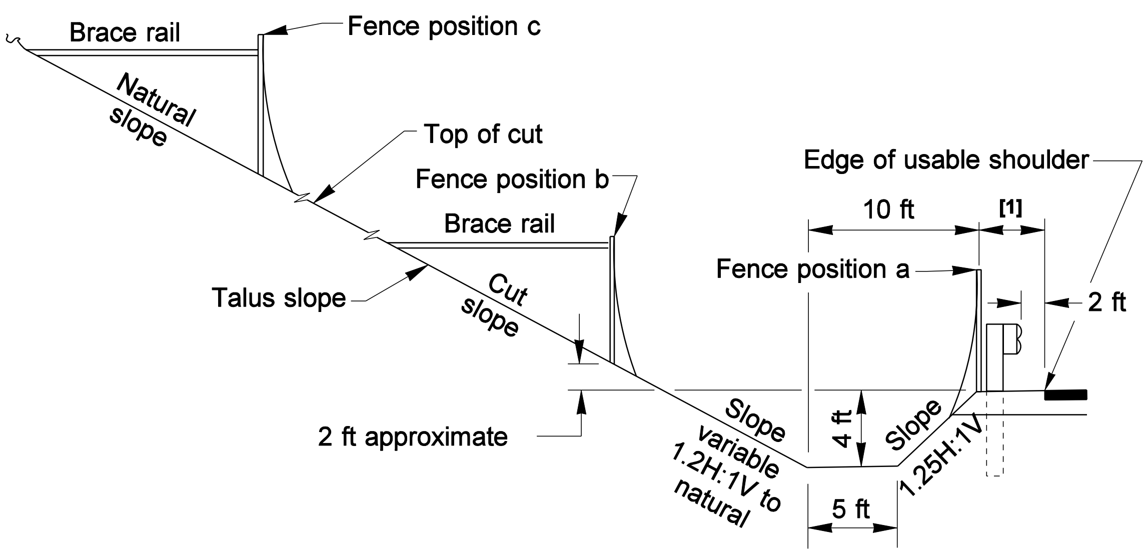
[1] For widening for guardrail and concrete barrier, see Chapter 1610.

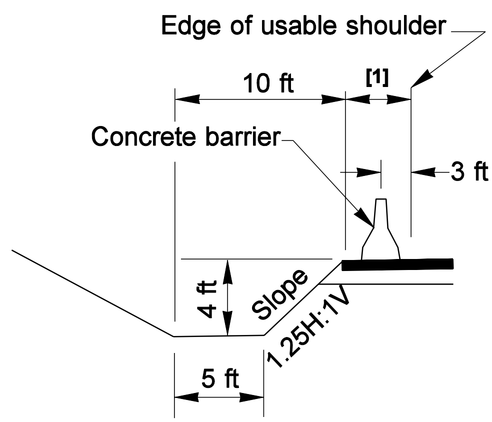
General:

- Treat cut heights less than 20 feet as a normal roadway unless otherwise determined by the Region Materials Engineer.
- Stage 2 and Stage 3 Alternates may be used when site conditions dictate.
- Fence may be used in conjunction with the Stage 3 Alternate. (See Chapter 1600 for clear zone guidelines.)

Roadway Sections in Rock Cuts: Design A

Exhibit 1230-7a





Shoulder Barrier Alternate

Note:

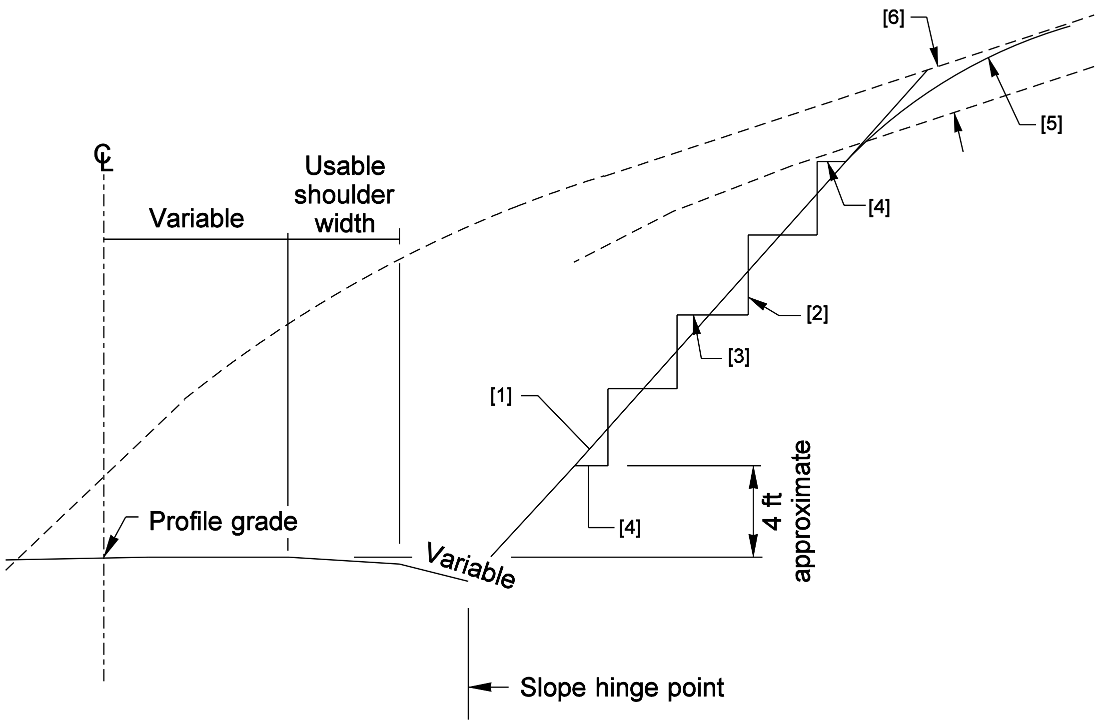
[1] For widening for guardrail and concrete barrier, see Chapter 1610.

General:

- Ordinarily, place fence within a zone of 100 feet to 200 feet maximum from base of cliff, measured along the slope.
- Rock protection fence may be used in conjunction with the Shoulder Barrier Alternate when site conditions dictate.

Roadway Sections in Rock Cuts: Design B

Exhibit 1230-7b



Notes:

[1] Staked slope line: Maximum slope 1H:1V.

[2] Step rise: Height variable 1 foot to 2 feet.

[3] Step tread: Width = staked slope ratio x step rise.

[4] Step termini: Width ½-step tread width.

[5] Slope rounding.

[6] Overburden area: Variable slope ratio.

Roadway Sections With Stepped Slopes
Exhibit 1230-8

Bridge End Condition	Toe of Slope End Slope Rate		Lower Roadway Treatment[1]		Slope Rate
End Piers on Fill	Height	Rate	Posted speed of lower roadway	Treatment	
	≤ 35 ft	1¾H:1V	> 50 mph	Rounding	
	> 35 ft	2H:1V[2]	≤ 50 mph	No rounding	
End Piers in Cut	Match lower roadway slope.[3]		No rounding, toe at centerline of the lower roadway ditch.		[4]
Lower Roadway in Cut	Match lower roadway slope.[3]		No rounding, toe at centerline of the lower roadway ditch.		[4]
Ends in Partial Cut and Fill	When the cut depth is > 5 ft and length is > 100 ft, match cut slope of the lower roadway.		When the cut depth is > 5 ft and length is > 100 ft, no rounding, toe at centerline of the lower roadway ditch.		[4]
	When the cut depth is ≤ 5 ft or the length is ≤ 100 ft, it is designer's choice.		When the cut depth is ≤ 5 ft or the length is ≤ 100 ft, it is designer's choice.		[4]

Notes:

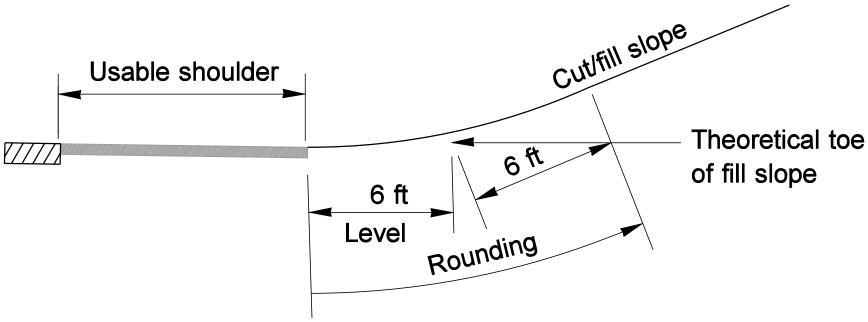
[1] See Exhibit 1230-9b.

[2] Slope may be 1¾H:1V in special cases.

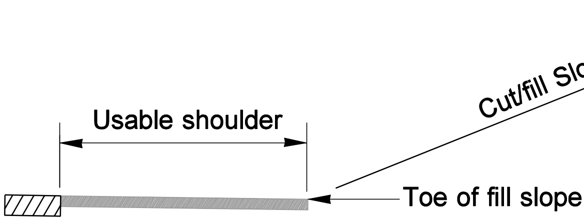
[3] In interchange areas, continuity may require variations.

[4] See 1230.06.

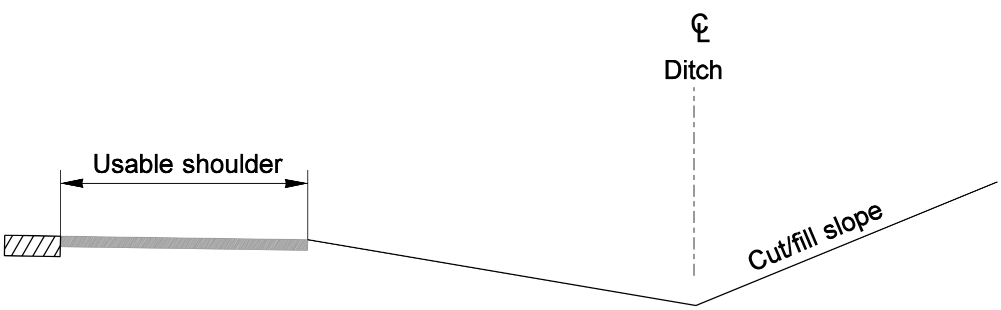
Bridge End Slopes
Exhibit 1230-9a



Rounding



No Rounding



Toe at ℄ of Roadway Ditch

Bridge End Slopes
Exhibit 1230-9b

Chapter 1240 Turning Roadways

1240.01 General
1240.02 References
1240.03 Definitions
1240.04 Turning Roadway Widths
1240.05 Documentation

1240.01 General

The roadway on a curve may need to be widened to make the operating conditions comparable to those on tangents. There are two main reasons to do this. One is the offtracking of vehicles such as trucks and buses. The other is the increased difficulty drivers have in keeping their vehicles in the center of the lane.

For additional information, see the following chapters:

Chapter	Subject
1130	Roadway widths and cross slopes for modified design level
1140	Minimum lane and shoulder widths for full design level
1250	Superelevation
1360	Lane and shoulder widths for ramps

1240.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

(2) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

1240.03 Definitions

divided multilane A roadway with two or more through lanes in each direction and a median that physically or legally prohibits left turns except at designated locations.

lane A strip of roadway used for a single line of vehicles.

lane width The lateral design width for a single lane, striped as shown in the *Standard Plans* and the *Standard Specifications*.

roadway The portion of a highway, including shoulders, for vehicular use.

shoulder The portion of the roadway contiguous with the traveled way, primarily for accommodation of stopped vehicles, emergency use, lateral support of the traveled way, and use by pedestrians.

shoulder width The lateral width of the shoulder, measured from the outside edge of the outside lane to the edge of the roadway.

traveled way The portion of the roadway intended for the movement of vehicles, exclusive of shoulders and lanes for parking, turning, and storage for turning.

turning roadway A curve on an open highway, a ramp, or the connecting portion of the roadway between two intersecting legs of an intersection.

undivided multilane A roadway with two or more through lanes in each direction on which left turns are not controlled.

1240.04 Turning Roadway Widths

(1) Two-Lane Two-Way Roadways

Exhibit 1240-1a shows the traveled way width (W) for two-lane two-way roadways. For values of R between those given, interpolate W and round up to the next foot.

Minimum traveled way width W, based on the delta angle of the curve shown in Exhibit 1240-1b, may be used. Document the reasons for using the minimum width. Round W to the nearest foot.

Widths given in Exhibits 1240-1a and 1b are for facilities with 12-foot lanes. When 11-foot lanes are called for, width (W) may be reduced by 2 feet.

(2) Two-Lane One-Way Roadways

Exhibit 1240-2a shows the traveled way width (W) for two-lane one-way turning roadways, including two lane ramps and four-lane highways. For values of R between those given, interpolate W and round up to the next foot. Treat each direction of travel on four-lane facilities as a one-way roadway.

Minimum traveled way width (W), based on the delta angle of the curve (shown in Exhibit 1240-2b), may be used. Document the reasons for using the minimum width. Round W to the nearest foot.

Widths given in Exhibits 1240-2a and 2b are for facilities with 12-foot lanes. When 11-foot lanes are called for, width (W) may be reduced by 2 feet.

To keep widths to a minimum, the traveled way widths for Exhibits 1240-2a and 2b were calculated using the WB-40 design vehicle. When volumes are high for trucks larger than the WB-40 and other traffic, consider using the widths from Exhibits 1240-1a and 1b.

(3) One-Lane Roadways

Exhibit 1240-3a shows the traveled way width (W) for one-lane turning roadways, including one-lane ramps. For values of R between those given, interpolate W and round up to the next foot.

Minimum width (W), based on the delta angle of the curve for one-lane roadways, may be used. Exhibit 1240-3b gives W using the radius to the outer edge of the traveled way. Exhibit 1240-3c gives W using the radius on the inner edge of the traveled way. Document the reasons for using the minimum width. Round W to the nearest foot.

Build shoulder pavements at full depth for one-lane roadways. To keep widths to a minimum, traveled way widths were calculated using the WB-40 design vehicle, which may force larger vehicles to encroach on the shoulders. This also helps to maintain the integrity of the roadway structure during partial roadway closures.

(4) Other Roadways

For roadways where the traveled way is more than two lanes in any direction, for each lane in addition to two, add the lane width for the highway functional class from Chapter 1140 to the width from 1240.04(2).

For three-lane ramps with HOV lanes, see Chapter 1410.

(5) Total Roadway Width

Full design shoulder widths for the highway functional class or ramp are added to the traveled way width to determine the total roadway width.

Small amounts of widening add to the cost with little added benefit. When the traveled way width for turning roadways results in widening less than 0.5 foot per lane or a total widening of less than 2 feet on existing roadways that are to remain in place, it may be disregarded.

When widening the traveled way:

- Widening may be constructed on the inside of the traveled way or divided equally between the inside and outside. Do not construct widening only on the outside of a curve.
- Place final marked lane lines, and any longitudinal joints, at equal spacing between the edges of the widened traveled way.
- Provide widening throughout the curve length.
- For widening on the inside, make transitions on a tangent where possible.
- For widening on the outside, develop the widening by extending the tangent. This avoids the appearance of a reverse curve that a taper would create.
- For widening of 6 feet or less, use a 1:25 taper. For widths greater than 6 feet, use a 1:15 taper.

1240.05 Documentation

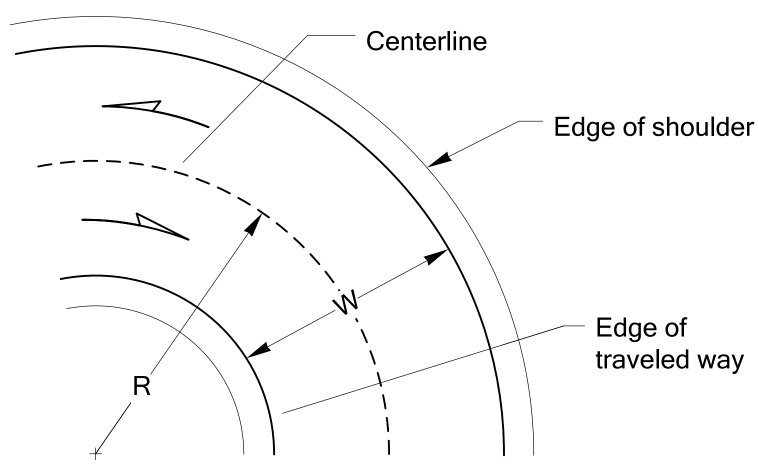
For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Radius on Centerline of Traveled Way, R (ft)	Design Traveled Way Width, W (ft)[1]
3,000 to tangent	24
2,999	25
2,000	26
1,000	27
800	28
600	29
500	30
400	31
350	32
300	33
250	35
200	37
150	41

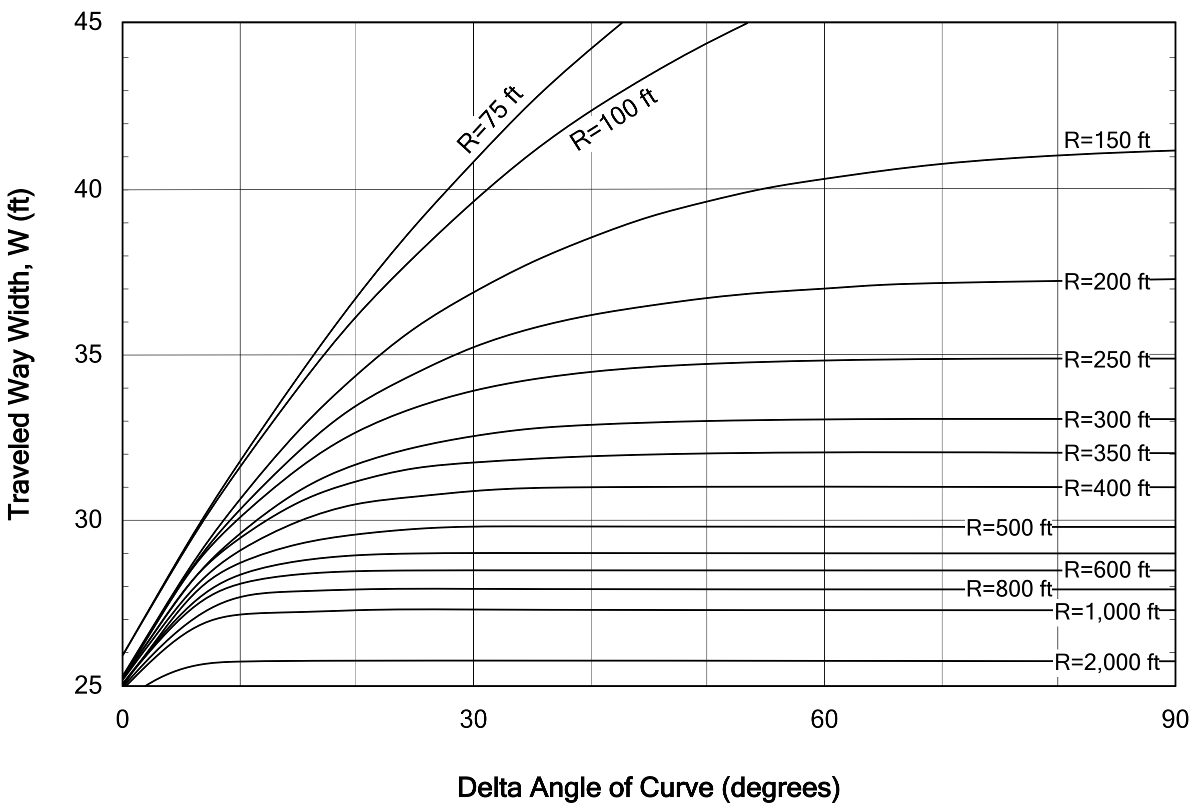
Note:

[1] Width (W) is based on:
- WB-67 design vehicle.
- 3-ft clearance per lane (12-ft lanes).

When 11-ft lanes are called for, width may be reduced by 2 ft.



Traveled Way Width for Two-Lane Two-Way Turning Roadways
Exhibit 1240-1a



Note:

Width (W) is based on:

- WB-67 design vehicle.
- 3-ft clearance per lane (12-ft lanes).

When 11-ft lanes are called for, width may be reduced by 2 ft.

Traveled Way Width for Two-Lane Two-Way Turning Roadways: Based on the Delta Angle

Exhibit 1240-1b

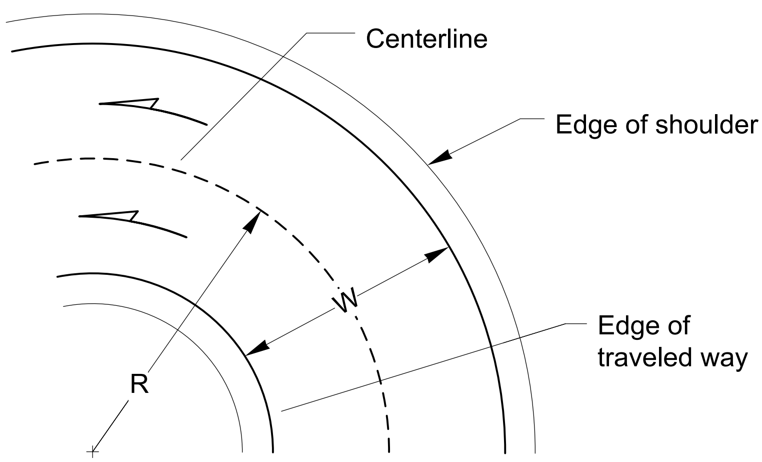
Radius on Centerline of Traveled Way, R (ft)	Design Traveled Way Width, W (ft)[1]
3,000 to tangent	24
1,000 to 2,999	25
999	26
600	26
500	27
400	27
300	28
250	29
200	29
150	31
100	34

Note:

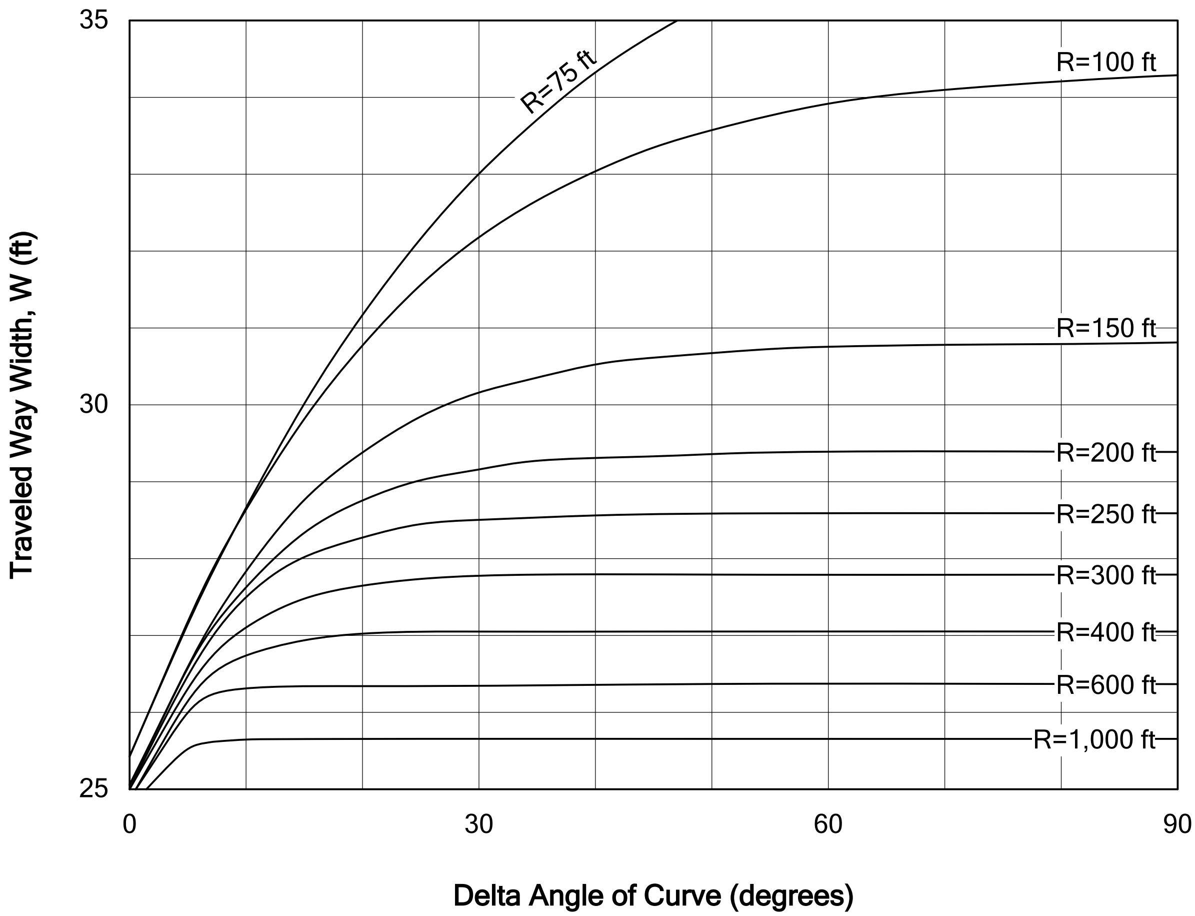
[1] Width (W) is based on:

- WB-40 design vehicle.
- 3-ft clearance per lane (12-ft lanes).

When 11-ft lanes are called for, width may be reduced by 2 ft.



Traveled Way Width for Two-Lane One-Way Turning Roadways
Exhibit 1240-2a



Note:

Width (W) is based on:

- WB-40 design vehicle.
- 3-ft clearance per lane (12-ft lanes).

When 11-ft lanes are called for, width may be reduced by 2 ft.

Traveled Way Width for Two-Lane One-Way Turning Roadways: Based on the Delta Angle
Exhibit 1240-2b

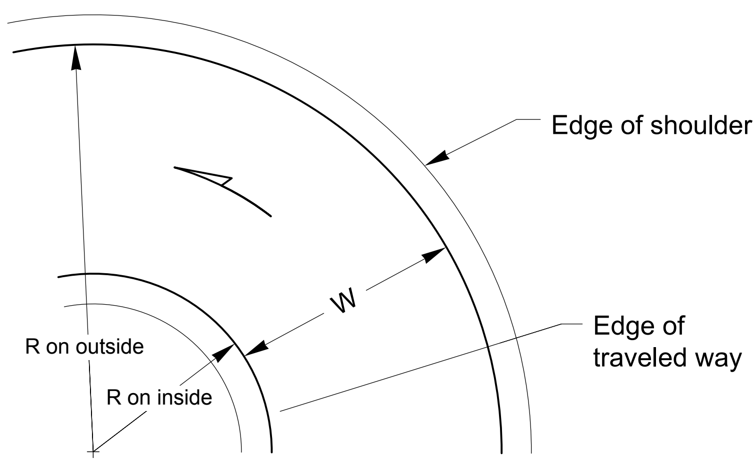
Radius, R (ft)	Design Traveled Way Width, W (ft)	
	Radius on Outside Edge of Traveled Way	Radius on Inside Edge of Traveled Way
7,500 to tangent	13[1]	13[1]
1,600	14	14
300	15	15
250	16	16
200	17	17
150	17	17
100	19	18
75	21	19
50	26	22

Note:

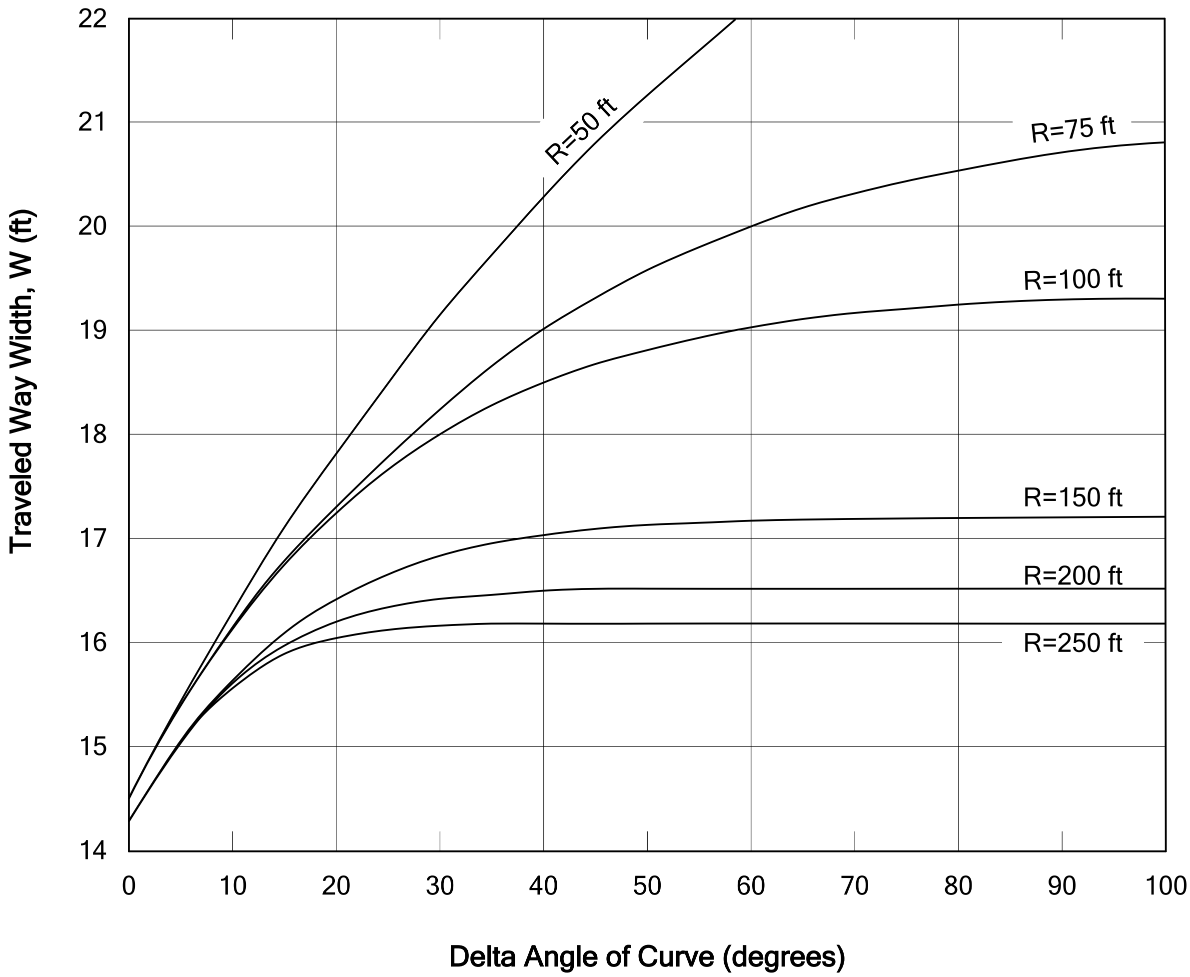
[1] On tangents, the minimum lane width may be reduced to 12 ft.

Width (W) is based on:

- WB-40 design vehicle.
- 4-ft clearance.



Traveled Way Width for One-Lane Turning Roadways
Exhibit 1240-3a



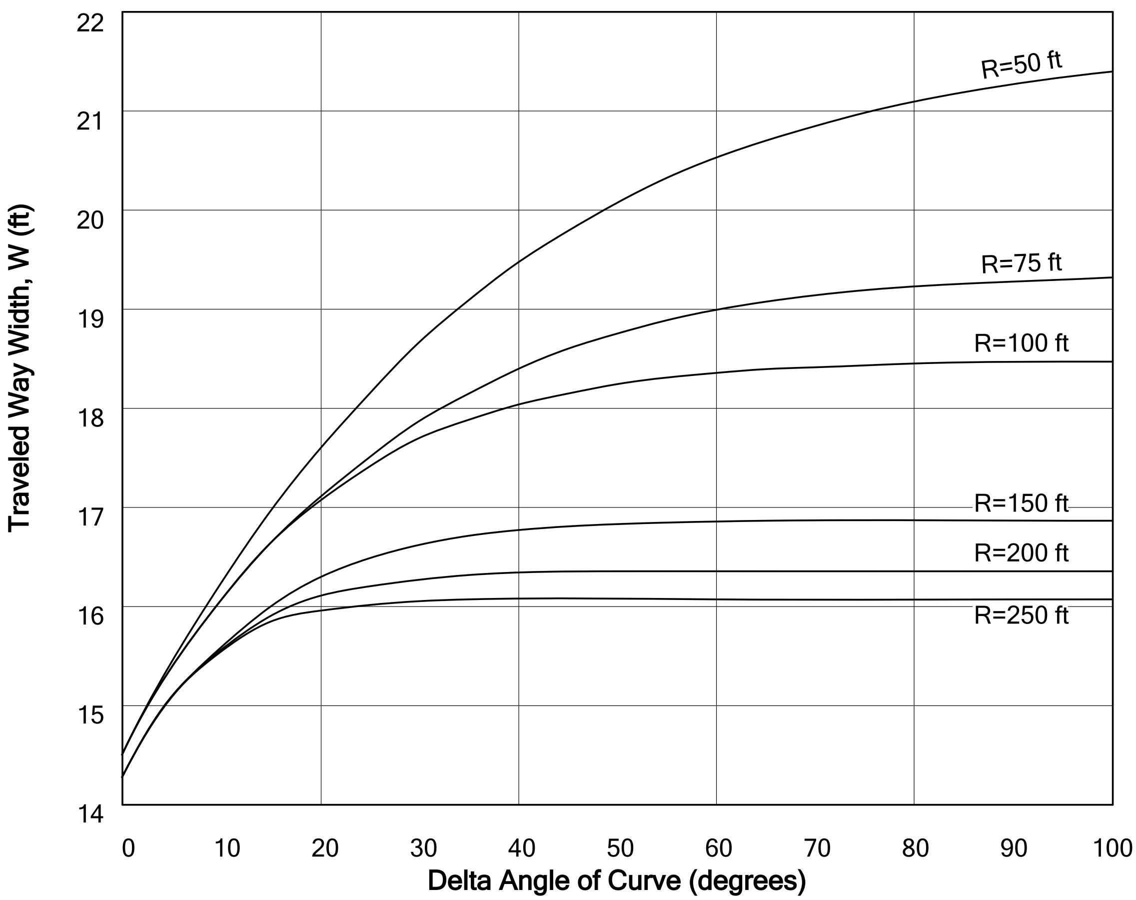
Note:

All radii are to the outside edge of traveled way.

Width (W) is based on:

- WB-40 design vehicle.
- 4-ft clearance.

Traveled Way Width for One-Lane Turning Roadways:
Based on the Delta Angle, Radius on Outside Edge of Traveled Way
Exhibit 1240-3b



Note:

All radii are to the inside edge of traveled way.

Width (W) is based on:

- WB-40 design vehicle.
- 4-ft clearance.

Traveled Way Width for One-Lane Turning Roadways:
Based on the Delta Angle, Radius on Inside Edge of Traveled Way
Exhibit 1240-3c

Chapter 1250 Superelevation

1250.01 General
1250.02 References
1250.03 Definitions
1250.04 Superelevation Rate Selection
1250.05 Existing Curves
1250.06 Turning Movements at Intersections
1250.07 Runoff for Highway Curves
1250.08 Runoff for Ramp Curves
1250.09 Documentation

1250.01 General

To maintain the design speed, highway and ramp curves are usually superelevated to overcome part of the centrifugal force that acts on a vehicle.

For additional information, see the following chapters:

Chapter	Subject
1130	Roadway widths and cross slopes for modified design level
1140	Minimum lane and shoulder widths for full design level
1360	Lane and shoulder widths for ramps

1250.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

(2) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

1250.03 Definitions

lane A strip of roadway used for a single line of vehicles.

lane width The lateral design width for a single lane, striped as shown in the *Standard Plans* and the *Standard Specifications*.

median The portion of a highway separating the traveled ways for traffic in opposite directions.

roadway The portion of a highway, including shoulders, for vehicular use.

superelevation (super) The rotation of the roadway cross section in such a manner as to overcome part of the centrifugal force that acts on a vehicle traversing a curve.

superelevation runoff The length of highway needed to accomplish the change in cross slope from a section with adverse crown removed (level) to a fully superelevated section, or vice versa.

superelevation transition length The length of highway needed to change the cross slope from normal crown or normal pavement slope to full superelevation.

tangent runout The length of highway needed to change the cross slope from normal crown to a section with adverse crown removed (level).

traveled way The portion of the roadway intended for the movement of vehicles, exclusive of shoulders and lanes for parking, turning, and storage for turning.

turning roadway A curve on an open highway, a ramp, or the connecting portion of roadway between two intersecting legs of an intersection.

1250.04 Superelevation Rate Selection

The maximum superelevation rate allowed is 10%.

Depending on design speed, construct large-radius curves with a normal crown section. The minimum radii for normal crown sections are shown in Exhibit 1250-1. Superelevate curves with smaller radii as follows:

- Exhibit 1250-4a (e_{max}=10%) is desirable for all open highways, ramps, and long-term detours, especially when associated with a main line detour.
- Exhibit 1250-4b (e_{max}=8%) may be used for freeways in urban design areas and areas where the e_{max}=6% rate is allowed but e_{max}=8% is preferred.
- Exhibit 1250-4c (e_{max}=6%) may be used, with justification, for nonfreeways in urban design areas, in mountainous areas, and for short-term detours, which are generally implemented and removed in one construction season.
- Exhibit 1250-5 may be used for turning roadways at intersections, for urban managed access highways with a design speed of 40 mph or less, and—with justification—for ramps in urban areas with a design speed of 40 mph or less.

When selecting superelevation for a curve, consider the existing curves on the corridor. To maintain route continuity and driver expectance on open highways, select the chart (see Exhibits 1250-4a, 4b, or 4c) that best matches the superelevation on the existing curves.

In locations that experience regular accumulations of snow and ice, limit superelevation from the selected chart to 6% or less. In these areas, provide justification for superelevation rates greater than 6%. Vehicles moving at slow speeds or stopped on curves with supers greater than 6% tend to slide inward on the radius (downslope).

Round the selected superelevation rate to the nearest full percent.

Design Speed (mph)	Minimum Radius for Normal Crown Section (ft)
15	945
20	1,680
25	2,430
30	3,325
35	4,360
40	5,545
45	6,860
50	8,315
55	9,920
60	11,675
65	13,130
70	14,675
75	16,325
80	18,065

Minimum Radius for Normal Crown Section
Exhibit 1250-1

1250.05 Existing Curves

Evaluate the superelevation on an existing curve to determine its adequacy. Use the equation in Exhibit 1250-2 to determine the minimum radius for a given superelevation and design speed.

$$R = \frac{6.68V^2}{e + f}$$

Where:

R	=	The minimum allowable radius of the curve (ft)
V	=	Design speed (mph)
e	=	Superelevation rate (%)
f	=	Side friction factor from Exhibit 1250-3

Minimum Radius for Existing Curves
Exhibit 1250-2

For Preservation projects where the existing pavement is to remain in place, the superelevation on existing curves may be evaluated with a ball banking analysis.

Address superelevation when the existing radius is less than the minimum radius calculated using the equation or when the maximum speed determined by a ball banking analysis is less than the design speed. When modifying the superelevation of an existing curve, provide superelevation as given in 1250.04.

Design Speed (mph)	Side Friction Factor (f)
15	32
20	27
25	23
30	20
35	18
40	16
45	15
50	14
55	13
60	12
65	11
70	10
75	9
80	8

Side Friction Factor
Exhibit 1250-3

1250.06 Turning Movements at Intersections

Curves associated with the turning movements at intersections are superelevated using the rates for low-speed urban roadway curves. Use superelevation rates as high as practicable, consistent with curve length and climatic conditions. Exhibit 1250-5 shows the minimum superelevation for the given design speed and radius. When using high superelevation rates on short curves, provide smooth transitions with merging ramps or roadways.

1250.07 Runoff for Highway Curves

Provide transitions for all superelevated highway curves as specified in Exhibits 1250-6a through 6e. Which transition to use depends on the location of the pivot point, the direction of the curve, and the roadway cross slope. The length of the runoff is based on a maximum allowable difference between the grade at the pivot point and the grade at the outer edge of traveled way for one 12-foot lane.

Pay close attention to the profile of the edge of traveled way created by the superelevation runoff; do not let it appear distorted. The combination of superelevation transition and grade may result in a hump and/or dip in the profile of the edge of traveled way. When this happens, the transition may be lengthened to eliminate the hump and/or dip. If the hump and/or dip cannot be eliminated this way, pay special attention to drainage in the low areas to prevent ponding. Locate the pivot point at the centerline of the roadway to help minimize humps and dips at the edge of the traveled lane and reduce the superelevation runoff length.

When reverse curves are necessary, provide sufficient tangent length for complete superelevation runoff for both curves (that is, from full superelevation of the first curve to level to full superelevation of the second curve). If tangent length is longer than this but not sufficient to provide full super transitions (that is, from full superelevation of the first curve to normal crown to full superelevation of the second curve), increase the superelevation runoff lengths until they abut. This provides one continuous transition, without a normal crown section, similar to Designs C^2 and D^2 in Exhibits 1250-6c and 6d, except that full super will be attained rather than the normal pavement slope as shown.

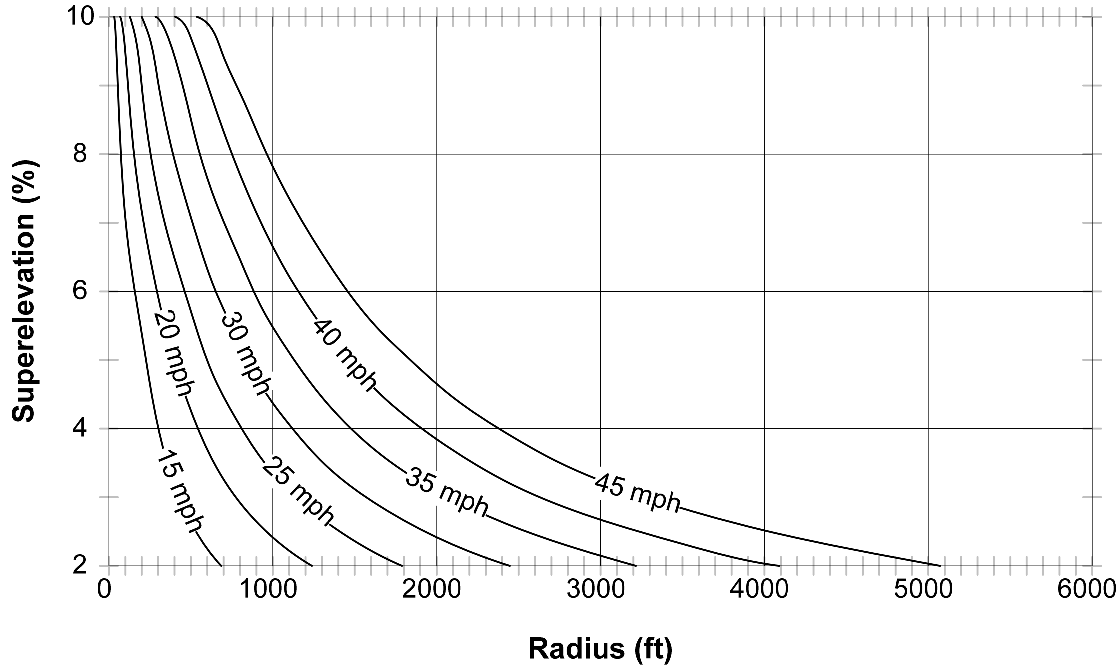
Superelevation runoff on structures is permissible but not desirable. Whenever practicable, strive for full super or normal crown slopes on structures.

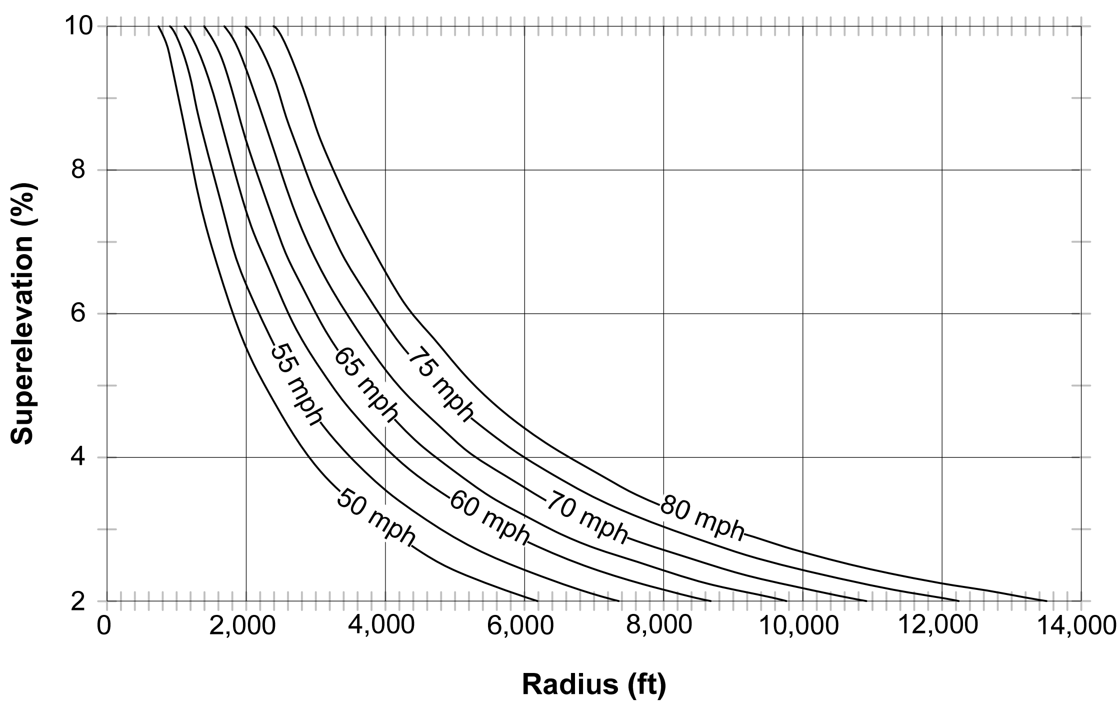
1250.08 Runoff for Ramp Curves

Superelevation runoff for ramps use the same maximum relative slopes as the specific design speeds used for highway curves. Multilane ramps have a width similar to the width for highway lanes; therefore, Exhibits 1250-6a through 6e are used to determine the superelevation runoff for ramps. Single-lane ramps have a lane width of 15 feet in curves, requiring the runoff length to be adjusted. Superelevation transition lengths (L_T) for single-lane ramps are given in Exhibits 1250-7a and 7b. Additional runoff length for turning roadway widening is not required.

1250.09 Documentation

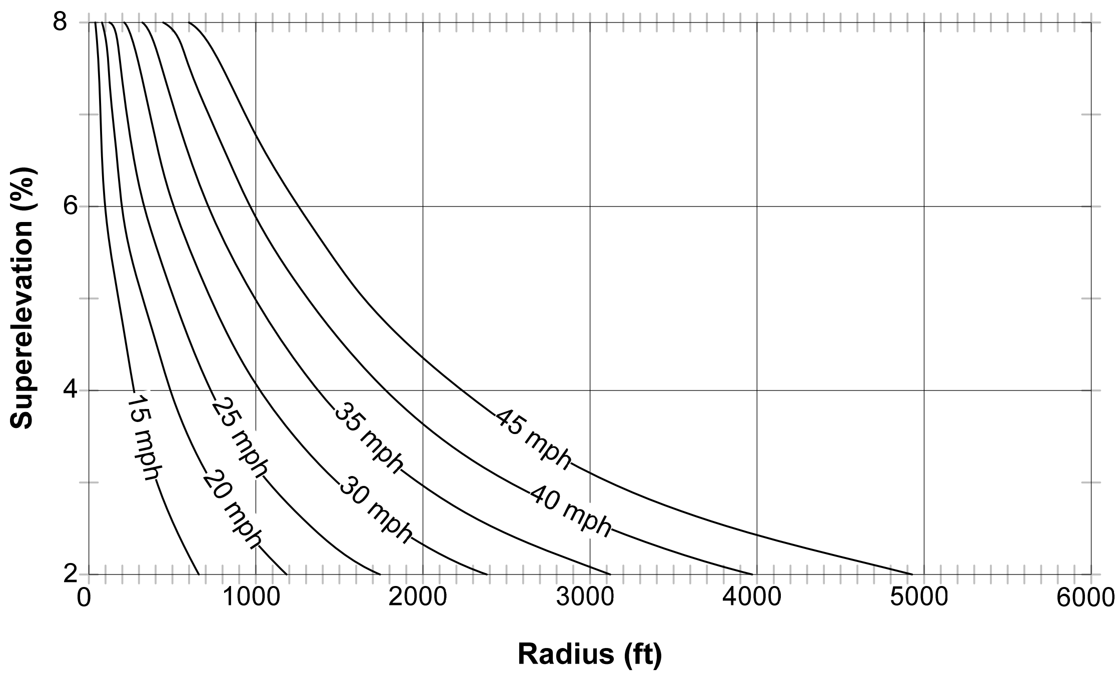
For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

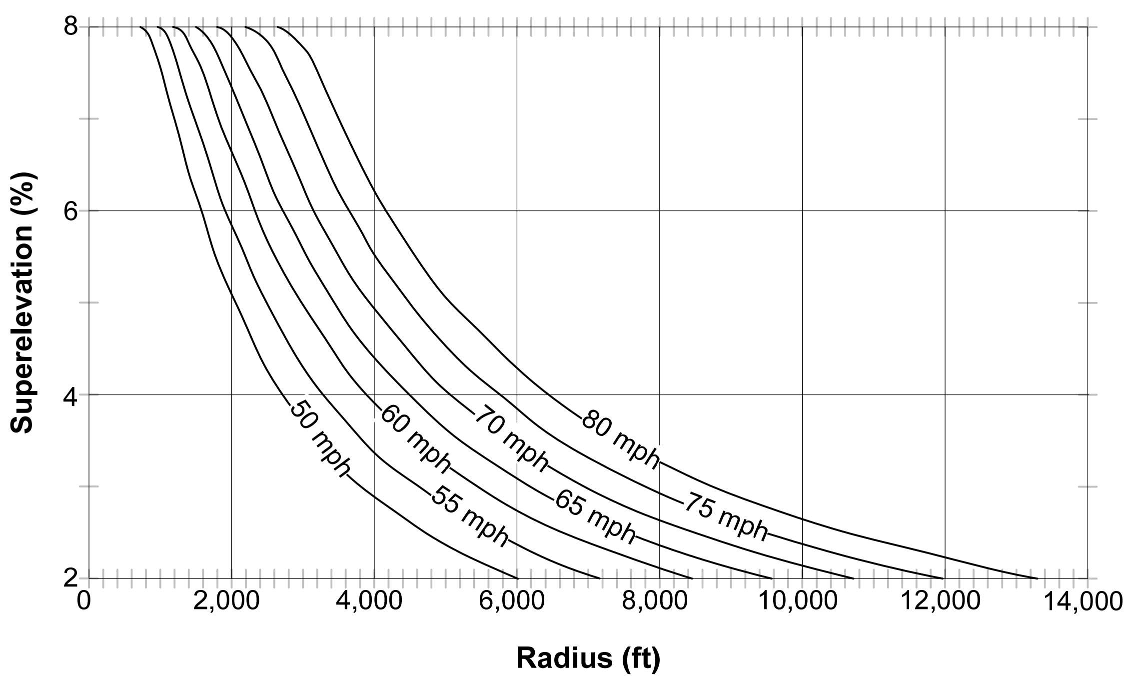




Design Speed (mph)	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80
Minimum Radius (ft)	40	75	130	205	295	415	545	700	880	1095	1345	1640	1980	2380

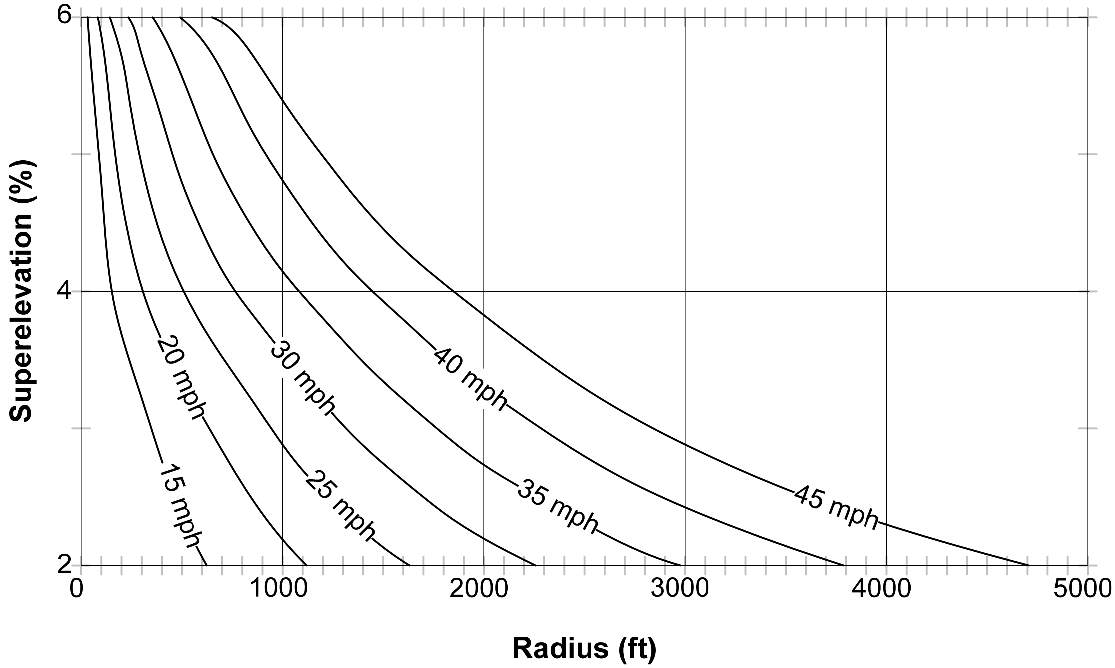
Superelevation Rates (10% Max)
Exhibit 1250-4a

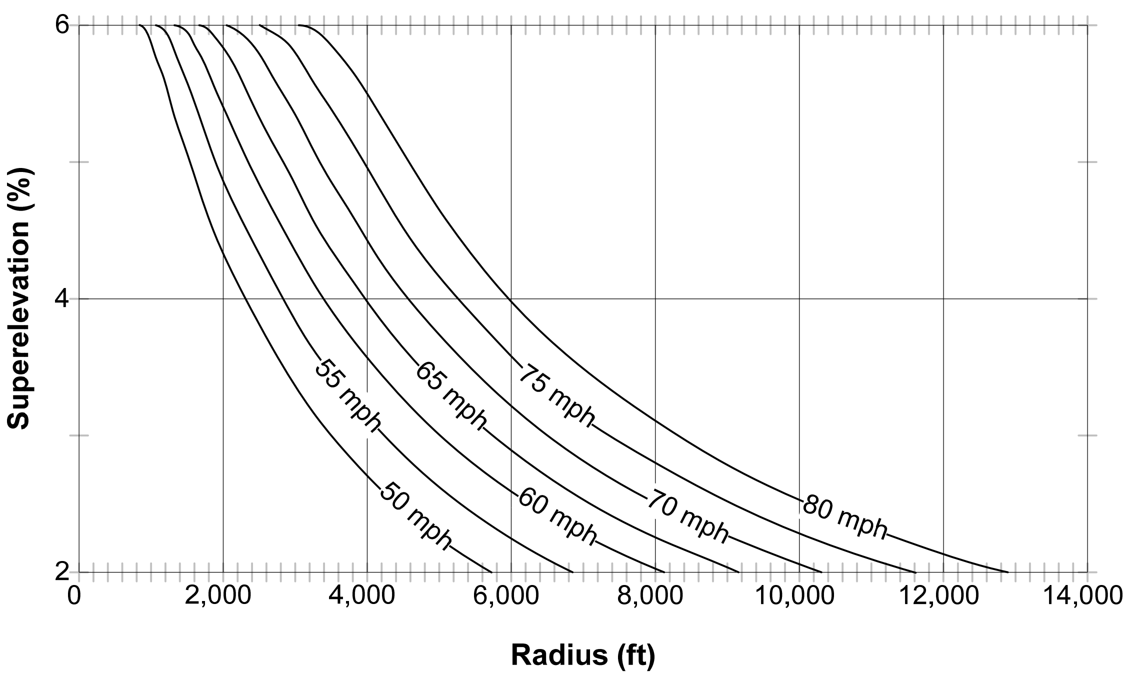




Design Speed (mph)	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80
Minimum Radius (ft)	40	80	135	215	315	450	590	760	965	1205	1490	1820	2215	2675

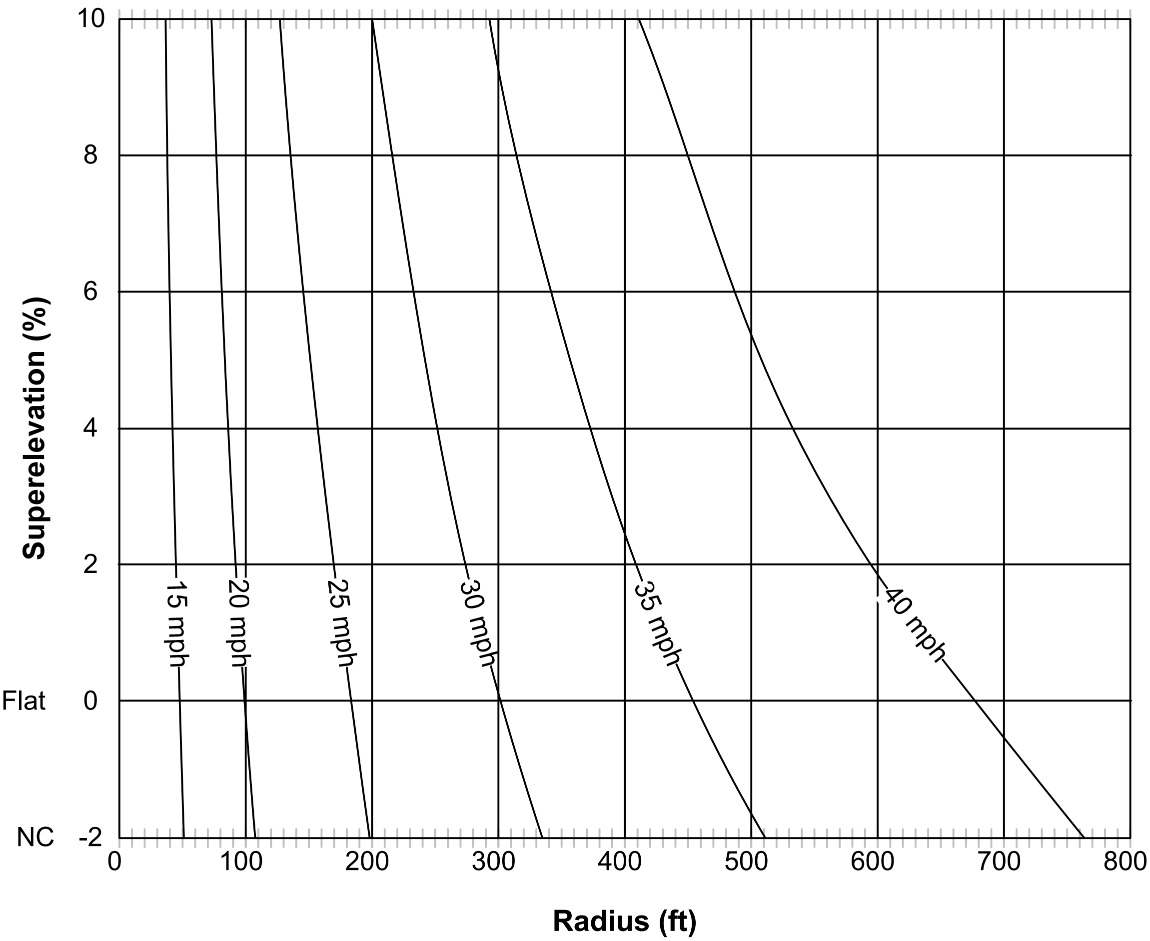
Superelevation Rates (8% Max)
Exhibit 1250-4b





Design Speed (mph)	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75	80
Minimum Radius (ft)	40	85	145	235	345	490	645	840	1065	1340	1665	2050	2510	3055

Superelevation Rates (6% Max)
Exhibit 1250-4c



NC = Normal crown

Superelevation Rates for Intersections and Low-Speed Urban Roadways
Exhibit 1250-5

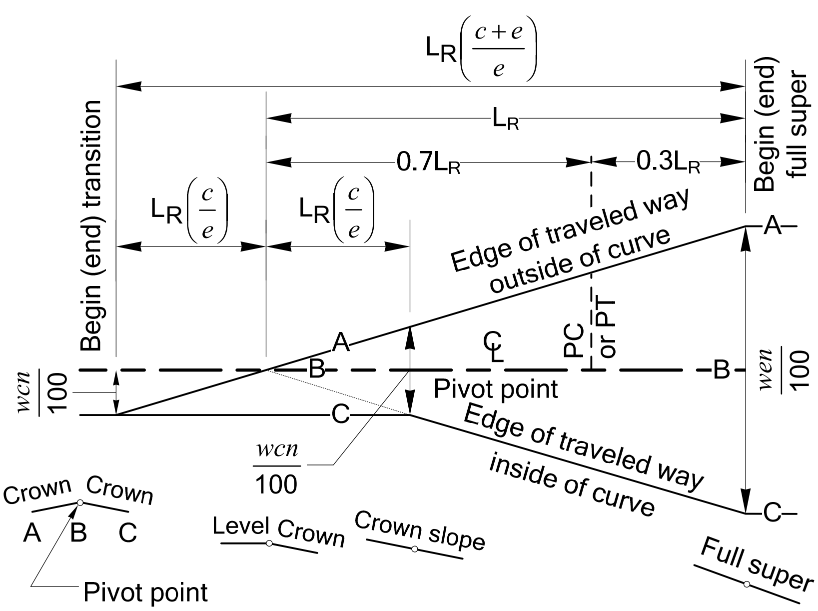
e (%)	L_B=Basic Runoff in Feet for Design Speed*													
	15 mph	20 mph	25 mph	30 mph	35 mph	40 mph	45 mph	50 mph	55 mph	60 mph	65 mph	70 mph	75 mph	80 mph
2	30	30	35	35	40	40	45	50	50	55	55	60	65	70
3	45	50	50	55	60	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95	105
4	60	65	70	75	75	85	90	95	100	105	110	120	125	135
5	75	80	85	90	95	105	110	120	130	135	140	150	160	170
6	90	95	105	110	115	125	135	145	155	160	170	180	190	205
7	110	115	120	130	135	145	155	170	180	185	195	210	220	240
8	125	130	135	145	155	165	180	190	205	215	225	240	250	275
9	140	145	155	165	175	185	200	215	230	240	250	270	285	310
10	155	160	170	180	195	205	220	240	255	265	280	300	315	345

* Based on one 12-ft lane between the pivot point and the edge of traveled way. When the distance exceeds 12 ft, use the following equation to obtain L_R:

$$L_R = L_B(1+0.04167X)$$

Where:

X = The distance in excess of 12 ft between the pivot point and the farthest edge of traveled way, in ft.

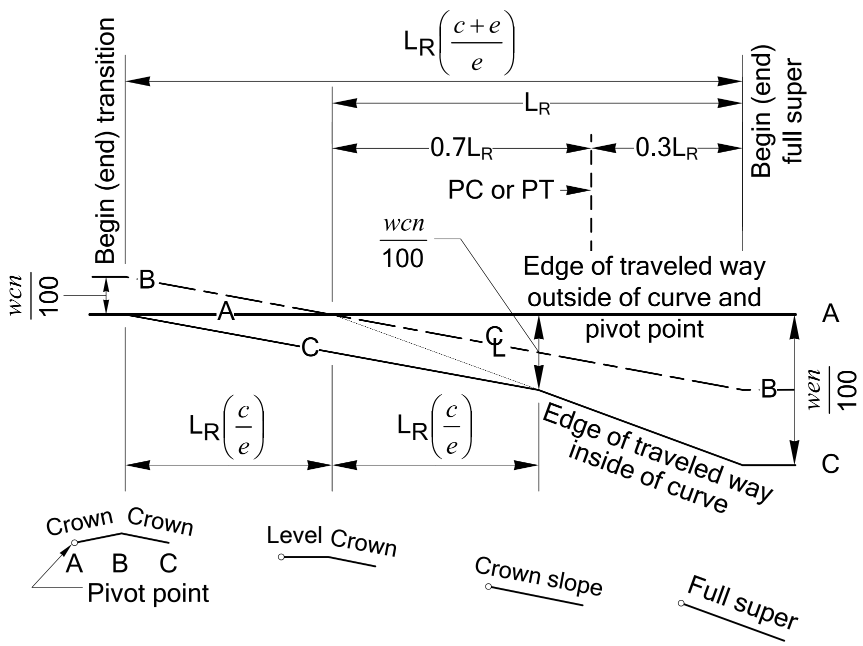


Design A – Pivot Point on Centerline Crown Section

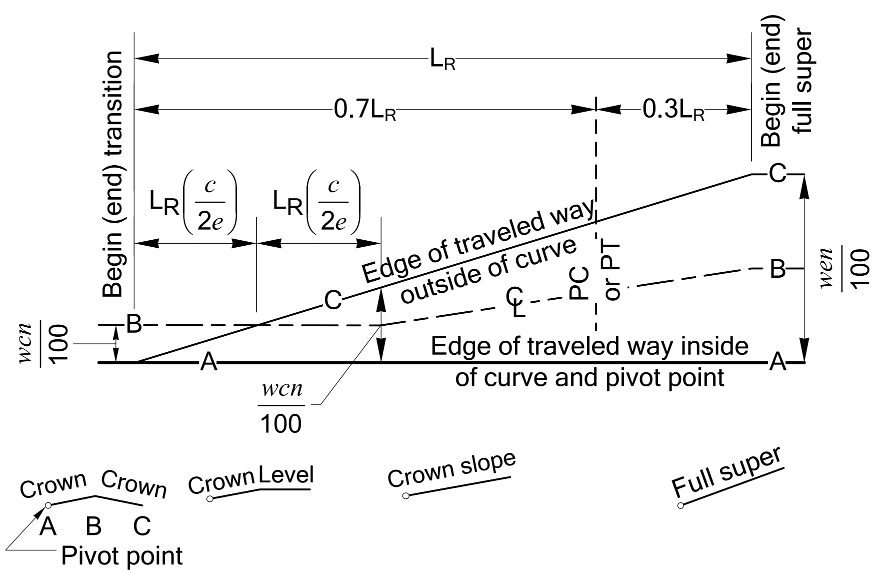
c = Normal crown (%)
e = Superelevation rate (%)
n = Number of lanes between points
w = Width of lane

Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves

Exhibit 1250-6a



Design B[1] – Pivot Point on Edge of Traveled Way: Outside of Curve Crowned Section

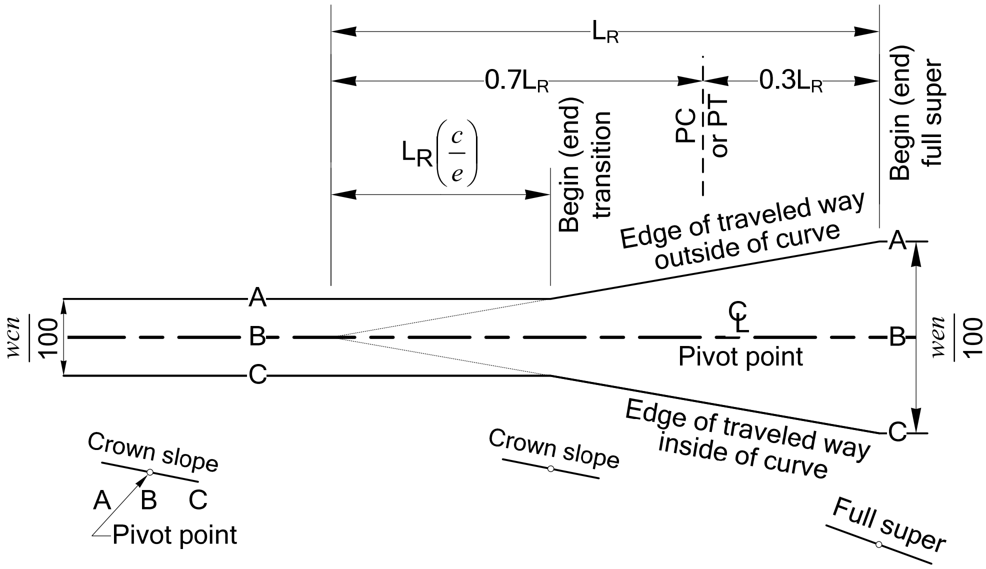


Design B[2] – Pivot Point on Edge of Traveled Way: Inside of Curve Crowned Section

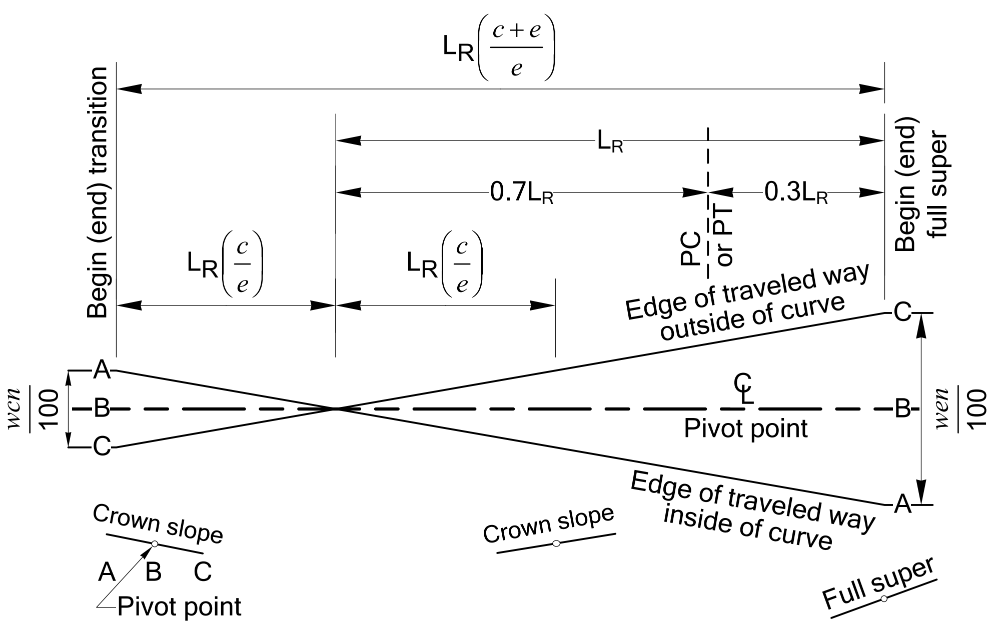
c = Normal crown (%)
e = Superelevation rate (%)
n = Number of lanes between points
w = Width of lane

Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves

Exhibit 1250-6b



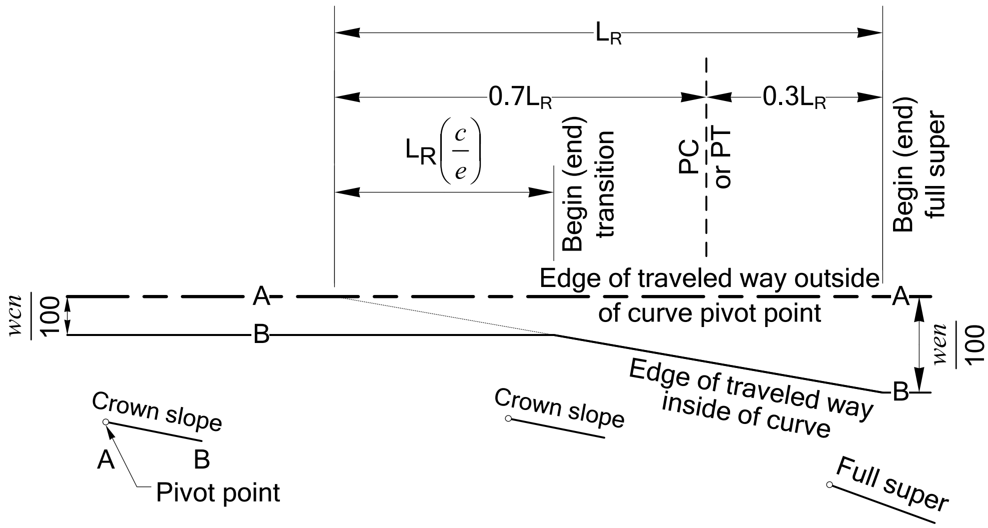
Design C[1] – Pivot Point on Centerline Curve in Direction of Normal Pavement Slope: Plane Section



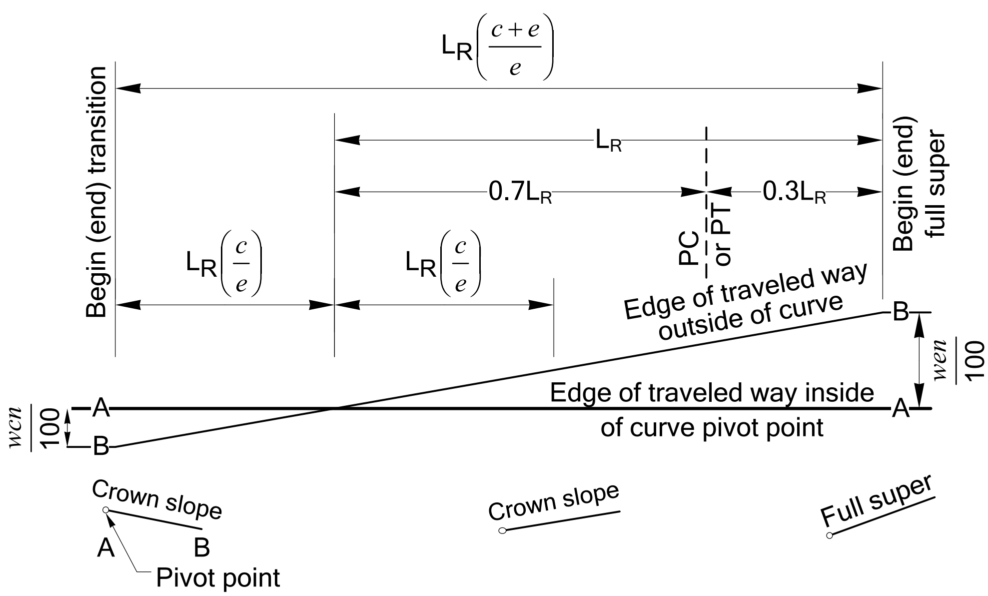
Design C[2] – Pivot Point on Centerline Curve Opposite to Normal Pavement Slope: Plane Section

c = Normal crown (%)
e = Superelevation rate (%)
n = Number of lanes between points
w = Width of lane

Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-6c



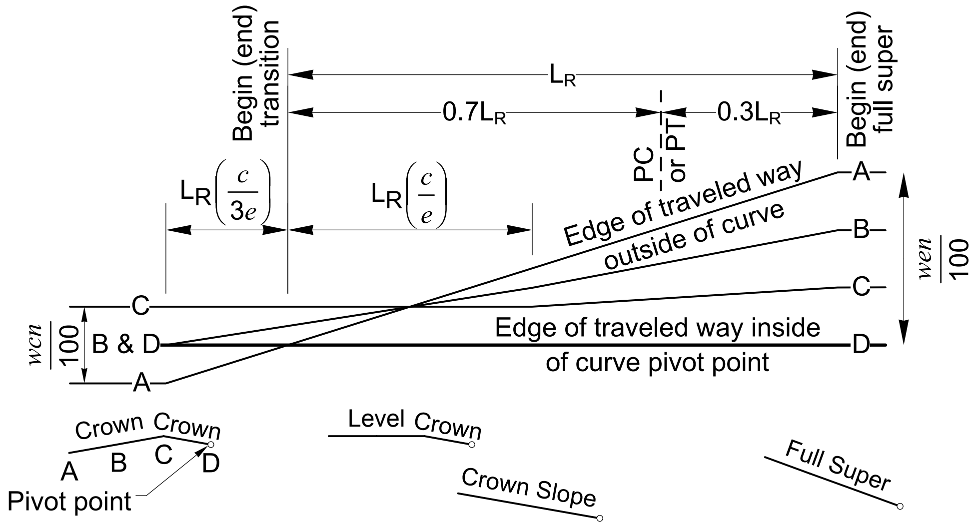
Design D[1] – Pivot Point on Edge of Traveled Way Curve in Direction of Normal Pavement Slope: Plane Section



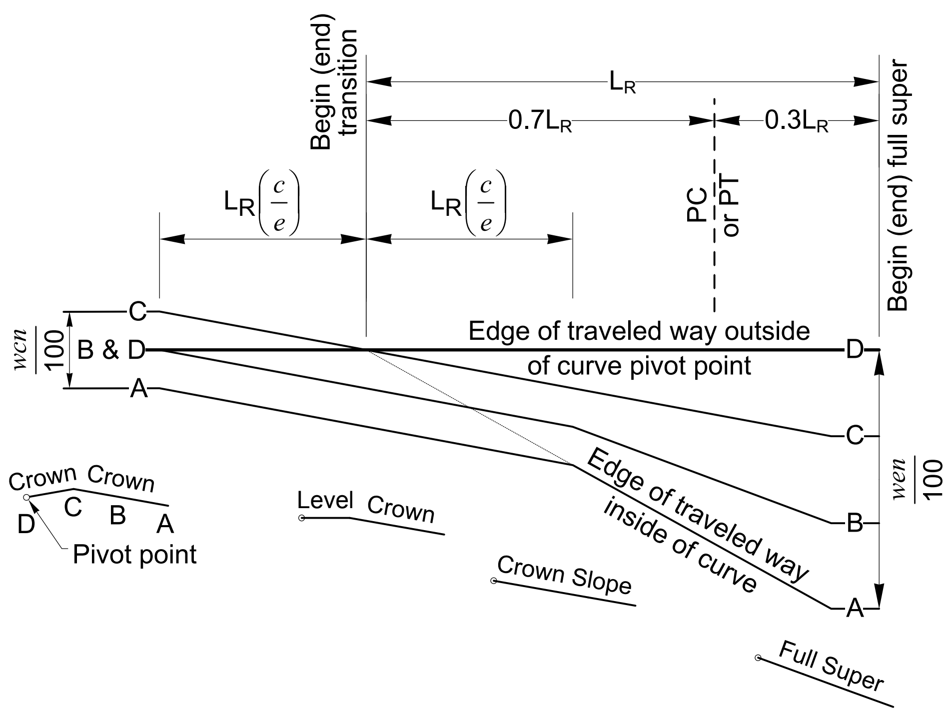
Design D[2] – Pivot Point on Edge of Traveled Way Curve Opposite to Normal Pavement Slope: Plane Section

c = Normal crown (%)
e = Superelevation rate (%)
n = Number of lanes between points
w = Width of lane

Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-6d



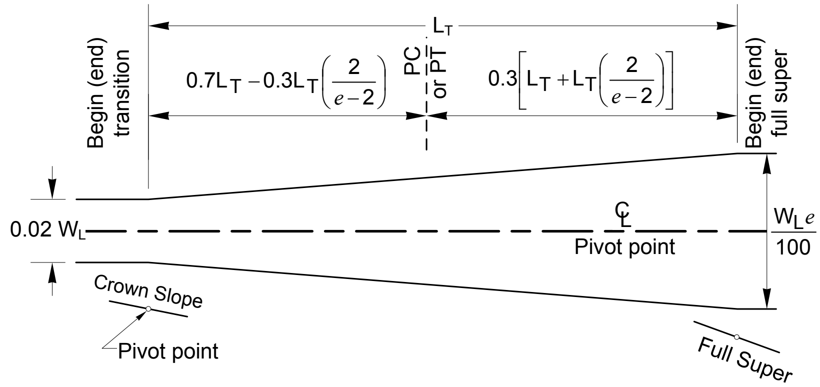
Design E[1] – Six-Lane With Median, Pivot Point on Edge of Traveled Way: Inside of Curve Crown Section



Design E[2] – Six-Lane With Median, Pivot Point on Edge of Traveled Way: Outside of Curve Crown Section

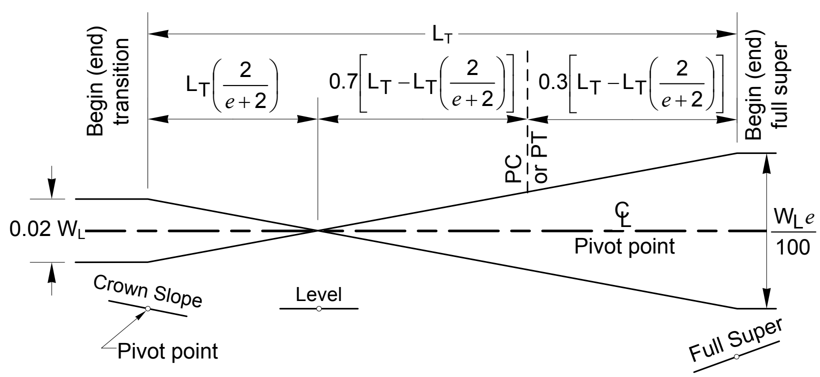
c = Normal crown (%)
e = Superelevation rate (%)
n = Number of lanes between points
w = Width of lane

Superelevation Transitions for Highway Curves
Exhibit 1250-6e



e (%)	Length of Transition in Feet for Design Speed							
	20 mph	25 mph	30 mph	35 mph	40 mph	45 mph	50 mph	55 mph
	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T
3	10	15	15	15	15	15	15	15
4	20	25	25	25	25	30	30	35
5	30	35	35	35	40	45	45	50
6	40	45	45	50	55	55	60	65
7	50	55	55	60	65	70	75	80
8	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95
9	70	75	80	85	95	100	105	110
10	80	85	90	100	105	115	120	130

Table 1 Pivot Point on Centerline: Curve in Direction of Normal Pavement Slope



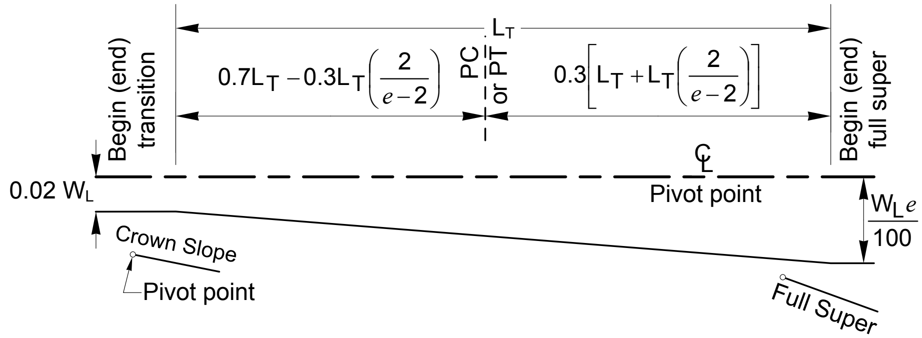
e (%)	Length of Transition in Feet for Design Speed							
	20 mph	25 mph	30 mph	35 mph	40 mph	45 mph	50 mph	55 mph
	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T
2	40	40	45	50	55	55	60	65
3	50	55	55	60	65	70	75	80
4	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95
5	70	75	80	85	90	100	105	110
6	80	85	90	95	105	115	120	130
7	90	95	100	110	120	125	135	145
8	100	105	115	120	130	140	150	160
9	110	120	125	135	145	155	165	175
10	120	130	135	145	160	170	180	190

Table 2 Pivot Point on Centerline: Curve in Direction Opposite to Normal Pavement Slope

W_L = Width of ramp lane

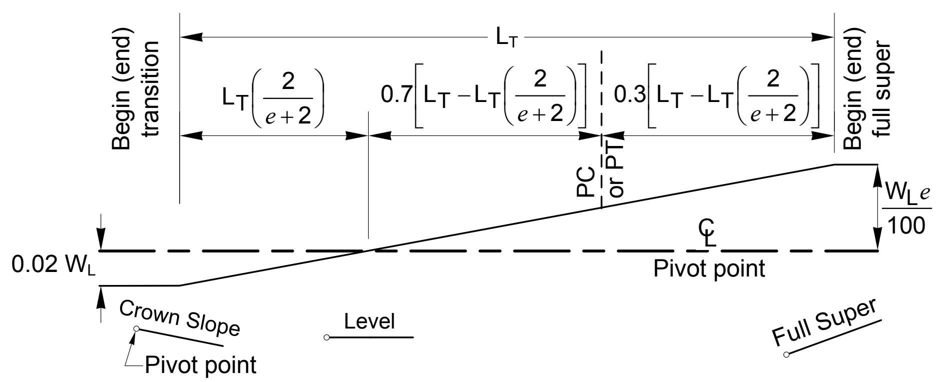
Superelevation Transitions for Ramp Curves

Exhibit 1250-7a



e (%)	Length of Transition in Feet for Design Speed							
	20 mph	25 mph	30 mph	35 mph	40 mph	45 mph	50 mph	55 mph
	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T
3	20	25	25	25	25	30	30	35
4	40	45	45	50	55	55	60	65
5	60	65	70	75	80	85	90	95
6	80	85	90	100	105	115	120	130
7	100	105	115	120	130	140	150	160
8	120	130	135	145	160	170	180	190
9	140	150	160	170	185	195	210	225
10	160	170	180	195	210	225	240	255

Table 3 Pivot Point on Edge of Traveled Way: Curve in Direction of Normal Pavement Slope



e (%)	Length of Transition in Feet for Design Speed							
	20 mph	25 mph	30 mph	35 mph	40 mph	45 mph	50 mph	55 mph
	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T	L_T
2	80	85	90	100	105	115	120	130
3	100	105	115	120	130	140	150	160
4	120	130	135	145	160	170	180	190
5	140	150	160	170	185	195	210	225
6	160	170	180	195	210	225	240	255
7	180	190	205	220	235	255	270	290
8	200	210	225	245	265	280	300	320
9	220	235	250	265	290	310	330	350
10	240	255	270	290	315	340	360	385

Table 4 Pivot Point on Edge of Traveled Way: Curve in Direction Opposite to Normal Pavement Slope

W_L = Width of ramp lane

Superelevation Transitions for Ramp Curves

Exhibit 1250-7b

1260.01 General
1260.02 References
1260.03 Definitions
1260.04 Stopping Sight Distance
1260.05 Passing Sight Distance
1260.06 Decision Sight Distance
1260.07 Documentation

1260.01 General

The driver of a vehicle needs to see far enough ahead to assess developing situations and take actions appropriate for the conditions. For the purposes of design, sight distance is considered in terms of stopping sight distance, passing sight distance, and decision sight distance.

For additional information, see the following chapters:

Chapter	Subject
1310	Sight distance at intersections at grade
1320	Sight distance at roundabouts
1340	Sight distance at road approaches
1250	Sight distance at railroad crossings
1520	Sight distance for paths and trails

1260.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

(2) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

1260.03 Definitions

Note: For definitions of ***design speed***, ***roadway***, ***rural design area***, ***suburban area***, and ***urban design area***, see Chapter 1140.

decision sight distance The distance needed for a driver to detect an unexpected or difficult-to-perceive condition, recognize the condition, select an appropriate maneuver, and complete the maneuver based on design conditions and design speed.

passing sight distance The distance (on a two-lane highway) needed for a vehicle driver to execute a normal passing maneuver based on design conditions and design speed.

sight distance The length of highway visible to a driver.

stopping sight distance The distance needed for a driver to stop a vehicle traveling at design speed based on design conditions.

1260.04 Stopping Sight Distance

(1) Design Criteria

Stopping sight distance is provided when the sight distance available to a driver equals or exceeds the stopping distance for a passenger car traveling at the design speed. Stopping distance for design is conservatively calculated, with lower deceleration and slower perception reaction time than normally expected. Note: Provide design stopping sight distance at all points on all highways and on all intersecting roadways.

(a) **Stopping Distance**

Stopping distance is the sum of two distances: the distance traveled during perception and reaction time and the distance to stop the vehicle. The perception and reaction distance used in design is the distance traveled in 2.5 seconds at the design speed. The design stopping distance is calculated using the design speed and a constant deceleration rate of 11.2 feet/second^2. (For stopping distances on grades less than 3%, see Exhibit 1260-1; for grades 3% or greater, see Exhibit 1260-3.)

(b) **Sight Distance**

Sight distance for stopping is calculated for a passenger car using an eye height (h_1) of 3.50 feet and an object height (h_2) of 0.50 foot. The object height is the height of the largest object invisible to the driver at the stopping distance. In urban design areas, with justification, the object height (h_2) may be increased to 2.00 feet. Also, the 2.00-foot object height (h_2) is used when the sightline obstruction is barrier.

(c) **Design Stopping Sight Distance**

Exhibit 1260-1 gives the design stopping sight distances for grades less than 3%, the minimum curve length for a 1% grade change to provide the sight distance (using h_2=0.50 feet) for a crest (K_c) and sag (K_s) vertical curve, and the minimum length of vertical curve for the design speed (VCL_m). For sight distances when the grade is 3% or greater, see 1260.04(2).

Design Speed (mph)	Design Stopping Sight Distance (ft)	K_c	K_s	VCL_m (ft)
25	155	18	25	75
30	200	30	36	90
35	250	47	49	105
40	305	70	63	120
45	360	98	78	135
50	425	136	96	150
55	495	184	115	165
60	570	244	136	180
65	645	313	157	195
70	730	401	180	210
75	820	506	206	225
80	910	623	231	240

Design Stopping Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-1

(d) Existing Stopping Sight Distance

The costs, environmental impacts, and traffic impacts to increase sight distance on existing roadways are often higher than to provide that sight distance when building a new roadway. The existing roadway can be analyzed to determine whether there is a correctable collision trend. The less conservative existing stopping sight distance criteria may be used when the vertical and horizontal alignments are unchanged, the sightline obstruction is existing, the sight distance will not be reduced, and there is no identified correctable collision trend. The stopping distance for existing criteria is based on a travel speed less than the design speed. Also, the 2.00-foot object height (h_2) is used for existing criteria. For additional information, see 1260.04(7).

(e) Stopping Sight Distance Design Criteria Selection

Exhibit 1260-2 gives guidance for the selection of stopping sight distance design criteria.

Type	Stopping Sight Distance	Object Height
Rural	Exhibits 1260-1 & 1260-3	0.50 ft
Urban Desirable	Exhibits 1260-1 & 1260-3	0.50 ft
Urban[1]	Exhibit 1260-1	2.00 ft
Traffic Barrier	Exhibits 1260-1 & 1260-3	2.00 ft
Existing[2]	Exhibit 1260-13	2.00 ft

Notes:
[1] Provide justification.
[2] See 1260.04(1)(d).

Stopping Sight Distance: Design Criteria Selection
Exhibit 1260-2

(2) Effects of Grade

The grade of the highway has an effect on the vehicle's stopping sight distance. The stopping distance is increased on downgrades and decreased on upgrades. Exhibit 1260-3 gives the stopping sight distances for grades of 3% and steeper. When evaluating sight distance with a changing grade, use the grade for which the longest sight distance is needed.

Design Speed (mph)	Stopping Sight Distance (ft)					
	Downgrade			Upgrade		
	-3%	-6%	-9%	3%	6%	9%
25	158	165	173	147	143	140
30	205	215	227	190	184	179
35	258	271	288	237	229	222
40	315	333	354	289	278	269
45	378	401	428	345	331	320
50	447	474	508	405	389	375
55	520	553	594	470	450	433
60	599	638	687	539	515	495
65	683	729	786	612	585	561
70	772	826	892	690	658	631
75	867	928	1004	773	736	705
80	966	1037	1123	860	818	782

Design Stopping Sight Distance on Grades
Exhibit 1260-3

For stopping sight distances on grades between those listed, interpolate between the values given or use the equation in Exhibit 1260-4.

$$S = 1.47Vt + \frac{V^2}{30\left[\left(\frac{a}{32.2}\right) \pm \frac{G}{100}\right]}$$

Where:

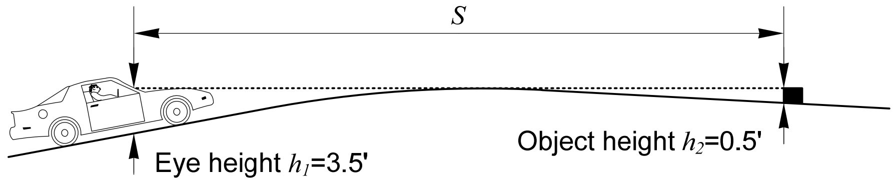
S = Stopping sight distance on grade (ft)
V = Design speed (mph)
t = Perception/reaction time (2.5 sec)
a = Deceleration rate (11.2 ft/sec^2)
G = Grade (%)

Stopping Sight Distance on Grades
Exhibit 1260-4

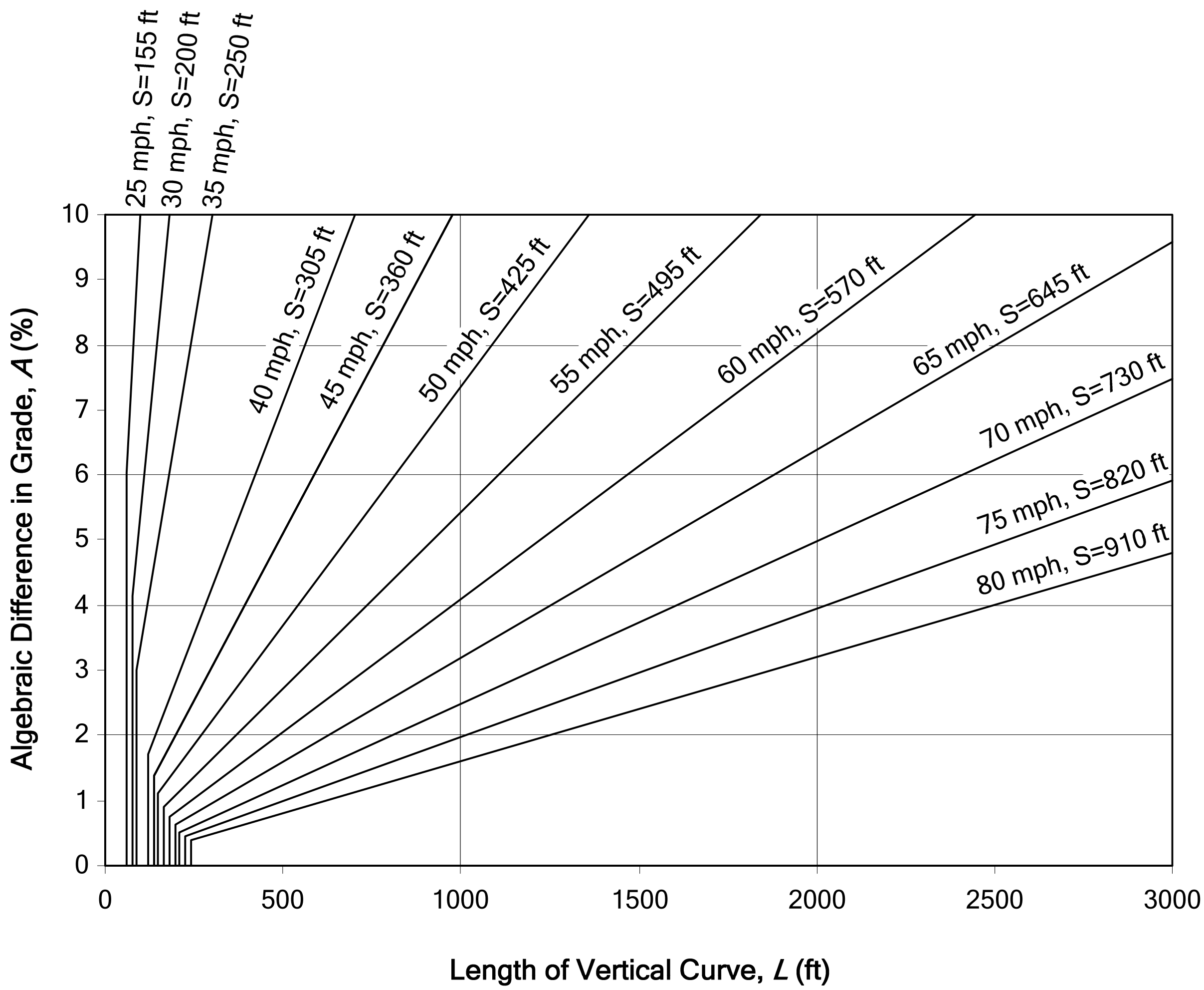
(3) Crest Vertical Curves

Use Exhibit 1260-5 or the equations in Exhibit 1260-6 to find the minimum crest vertical curve length to provide stopping sight distance when given the algebraic difference in grades. When using the equations in Exhibit 1260-6, use h_1=3.50 feet and h_2=0.50 foot. Exhibit 1260-5 does not use the sight distance greater than the length of curve equation. When the sight distance is greater than the length of curve and the length of curve is critical, the $S>L$ equation given in Exhibit 1260-6 may be used to find the minimum curve length.

When a new crest vertical curve is built or an existing one is rebuilt with grades less than 3%, provide design stopping sight distance from Exhibit 1260-1. For grades 3% or greater, provide stopping sight distance from 1260.04(2).



The minimum length can also be determined by multiplying the algebraic difference in grades by the K_C value from Exhibit 1260-1 ($L=K_C*A$). Both the exhibit and the equation give approximately the same length of curve. Neither use the $S>L$ equation.



This chart is based on a 0.50-foot object height. When a higher object height is allowed (see 1260.04(3) for guidance), use the equations in Exhibit 1260-6.

Stopping Sight Distance: Crest Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1260-5

In urban design areas, with justification, an object height (h_2) of 2.00 feet may be used with the equations in Exhibit 1260-6.

When evaluating an existing roadway, see 1260.04(7).

When $S>L$

$$L = 2S - \frac{200\left(\sqrt{h_1}+\sqrt{h_2}\right)^2}{A} \qquad S = \frac{L}{2} + \frac{100\left(\sqrt{h_1}+\sqrt{h_2}\right)^2}{A}$$

When $S<L$

$$L = \frac{AS^2}{200\left(\sqrt{h_1}+\sqrt{h_2}\right)^2} \qquad S = \sqrt{\frac{200L\left(\sqrt{h_1}+\sqrt{h_2}\right)^2}{A}}$$

Where:

L = Length of vertical curve (ft)
S = Sight distance (ft)
A = Algebraic difference in grades (%)
h_1 = Eye height (3.50 ft)
h_2 = Object height—*see text* (ft)

Sight Distance: Crest Vertical Curve
Exhibit 1260-6

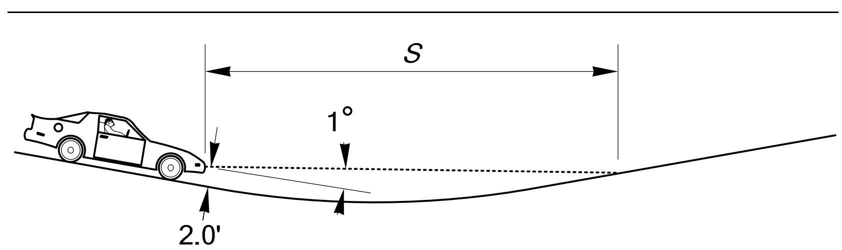
(4) Sag Vertical Curves

Sight distance is not restricted by sag vertical curves during the hours of daylight. Therefore, headlight sight distance is used for the sight distance design criteria at sag vertical curves. In some cases, a lesser length may be allowed. For guidance, see Chapter 1220.

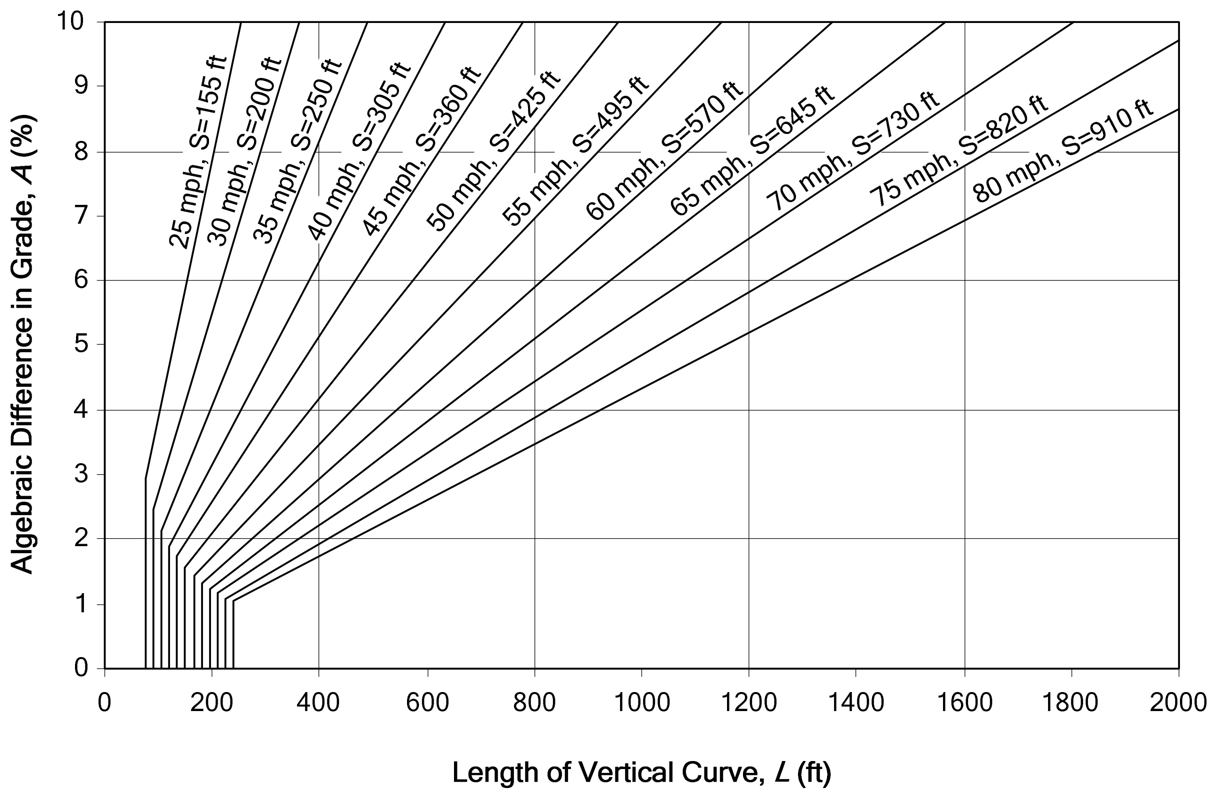
Use Exhibit 1260-7 or the equations in Exhibit 1260-8 to find the minimum length for a sag vertical curve to provide the headlight stopping sight distance when given the algebraic difference in grades. The sight distance greater than the length of curve equation is not used in Exhibit 1260-7. When the sight distance is greater than the length of curve and the length of curve is critical, the $S>L$ equation given in Exhibit 1260-8 may be used to find the minimum length of curve.

When a new sag vertical curve is built or an existing one is rebuilt with grades less than 3%, provide design stopping sight distance from Exhibit 1260-1. For grades 3% or greater, provide stopping sight distance from 1260.04(2).

When evaluating an existing roadway, see 1260.04(7).



The minimum length can also be determined by multiplying the algebraic difference in grades by the K_S value from Exhibit 1260-1 ($L=K_S*A$). Both the exhibit and equation give approximately the same length of curve. Neither use the $S>L$ equation.



Stopping Sight Distance for Sag Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1260-7

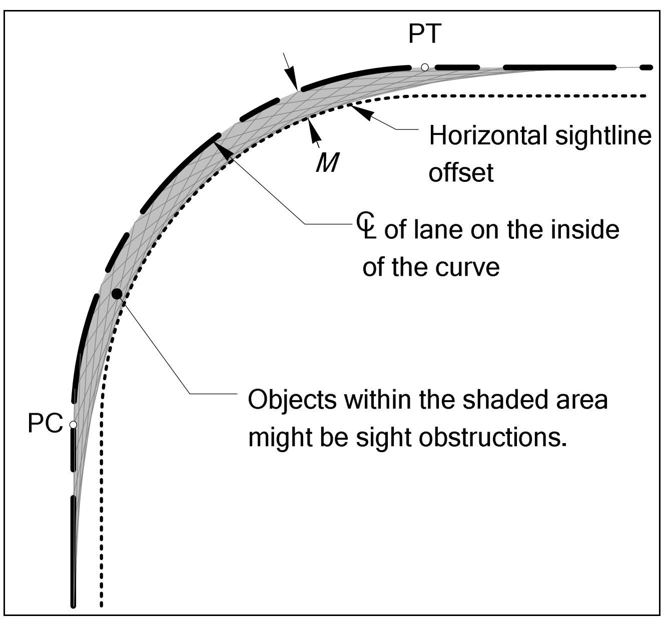
When $S>L$	
$L = 2S - \frac{400+3.5S}{A}$	$S = \frac{LA+400}{2A-3.5}$
When $S<L$	
$L = \frac{AS^2}{400+3.5S}$	$S = \frac{3.5L \pm \sqrt{(3.5L)^2 + 1600AL}}{2A}$

Where:
L = Curve length (ft)
A = Algebraic grade difference (%)
S = Sight distance (ft)

Sight Distance: Sag Vertical Curve
Exhibit 1260-8

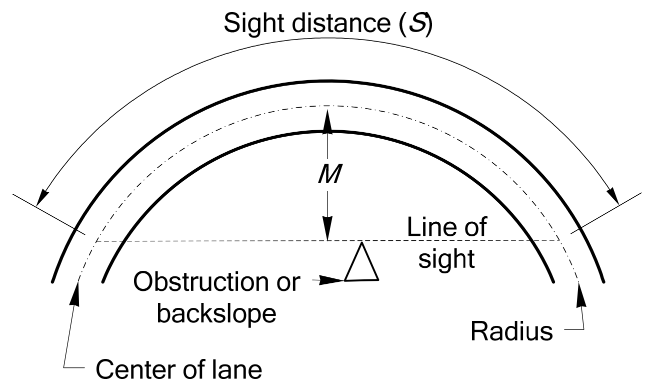
(5) Horizontal Curves

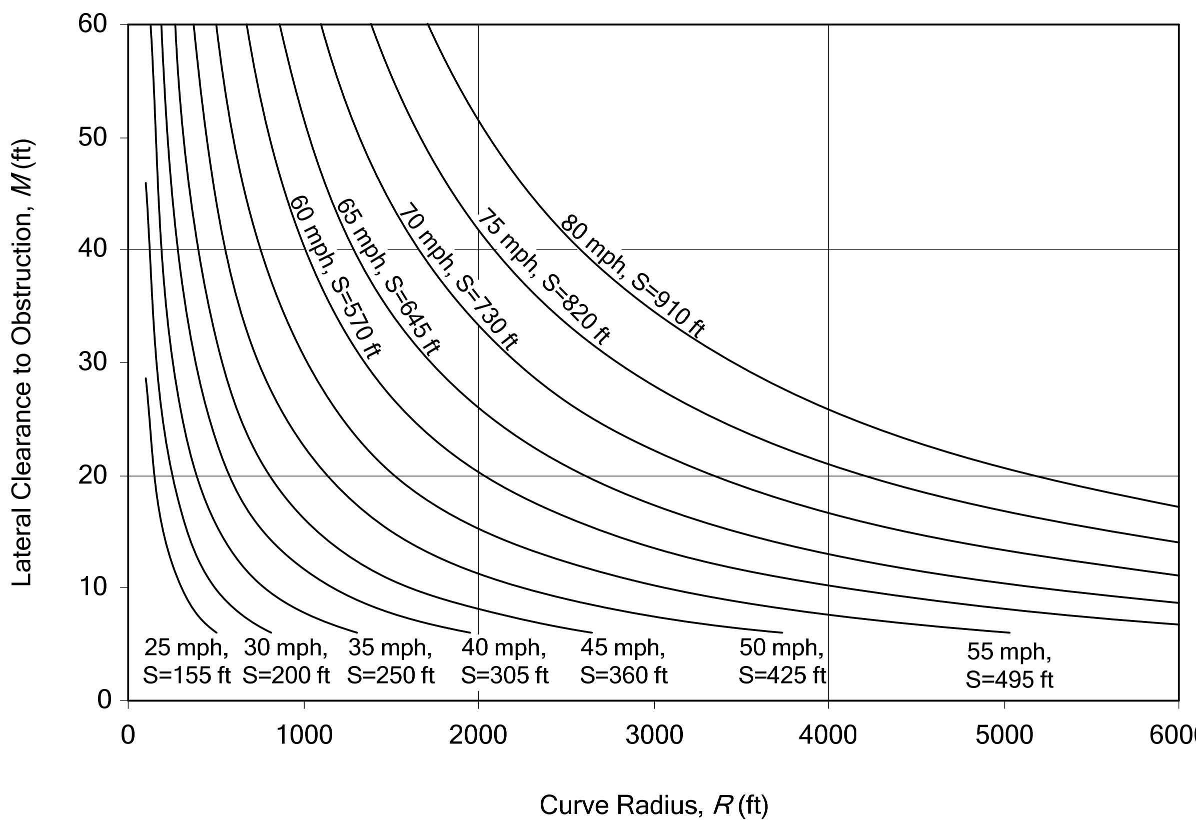
Use Exhibit 1260-10 or the equation in Exhibit 1260-11 to check for adequate stopping sight distance where sightline obstructions are on the inside of a curve. A stopping sight distance sightline obstruction is any roadside object within the horizontal sightline offset (M) distance (such as median barrier, guardrail, bridges, walls, cut slopes, wooded areas, and buildings), 2 feet or greater above the roadway surface at the centerline of the lane on the inside of the curve (h_0). Exhibit 1260-10 and the equation in Exhibit 1260-11 are for use when the length of curve is greater than the sight distance and the sight restriction is more than half the sight distance from the end of the curve. Where the length of curve is less than the stopping sight distance or the sight restriction is near either end of the curve, the desired sight distance may be available with a lesser M distance (see Exhibit 1260-9). When this occurs, the sight distance can be checked graphically.



Sight Distance Area on Horizontal Curves
Exhibit 1260-9

A sightline obstruction is any roadside object within the horizontal sightline offset (M) distance, 2 feet or greater above the roadway surface at the centerline of the lane on the inside of the curve. For additional information, see 1260.04(5).





Horizontal Stopping Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-10

When the road grade is less than 3%, provide design stopping sight distance from Exhibit 1260-1. When the grade is 3% or greater, provide stopping sight distance from 1260.04(2).

In urban design areas, with justification, or when the sightline obstruction is a traffic barrier, a 2.00-foot object height (h_2) may be used. When h_2=2.00 feet, roadside objects with a height (h_0) between 2.00 feet and 2.75 feet might not be a stopping sight distance sightline obstruction. When h_2=2.00 feet, objects with an h_0 between 2.00 feet and 2.75 feet can be checked graphically to determine whether they are stopping sight distance sightline obstructions.

Where a sightline obstruction exists and site characteristics preclude design modifications to meet criteria, consult with the region Traffic Engineer and Assistant State Design Engineer for a determination of appropriate action.

When evaluating an existing roadway, see 1260.04(7).

$$M = R\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{28.65S}{R}\right)\right] \qquad S = \frac{R}{28.65}\left[\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{R-M}{R}\right)\right]$$

Where:

M = Horizontal sightline offset measured from the centerline of the inside lane of the curve to the sightline obstruction (ft)

R = Radius of the curve (ft)

S = Sight distance (ft)

Sight Distance: Horizontal Curves
Exhibit 1260-11

(6) Overlapping Horizontal and Vertical Curves

Vertical curves on a horizontal curve have an effect on which roadside objects are sightline obstructions. Crest vertical curves make roadside objects *more* likely to become sightline obstructions. Sag vertical curves make roadside objects *less* likely to be sightline obstructions.

Exhibit 1260-12 can be used to determine the sight distance for crest vertical curves on horizontal curves with:

- Sightline obstructions inside the M distance.
- Sightline obstruction height (h_0) of 2.00 feet or less.
- Object height (h_2) of 2.00 feet.

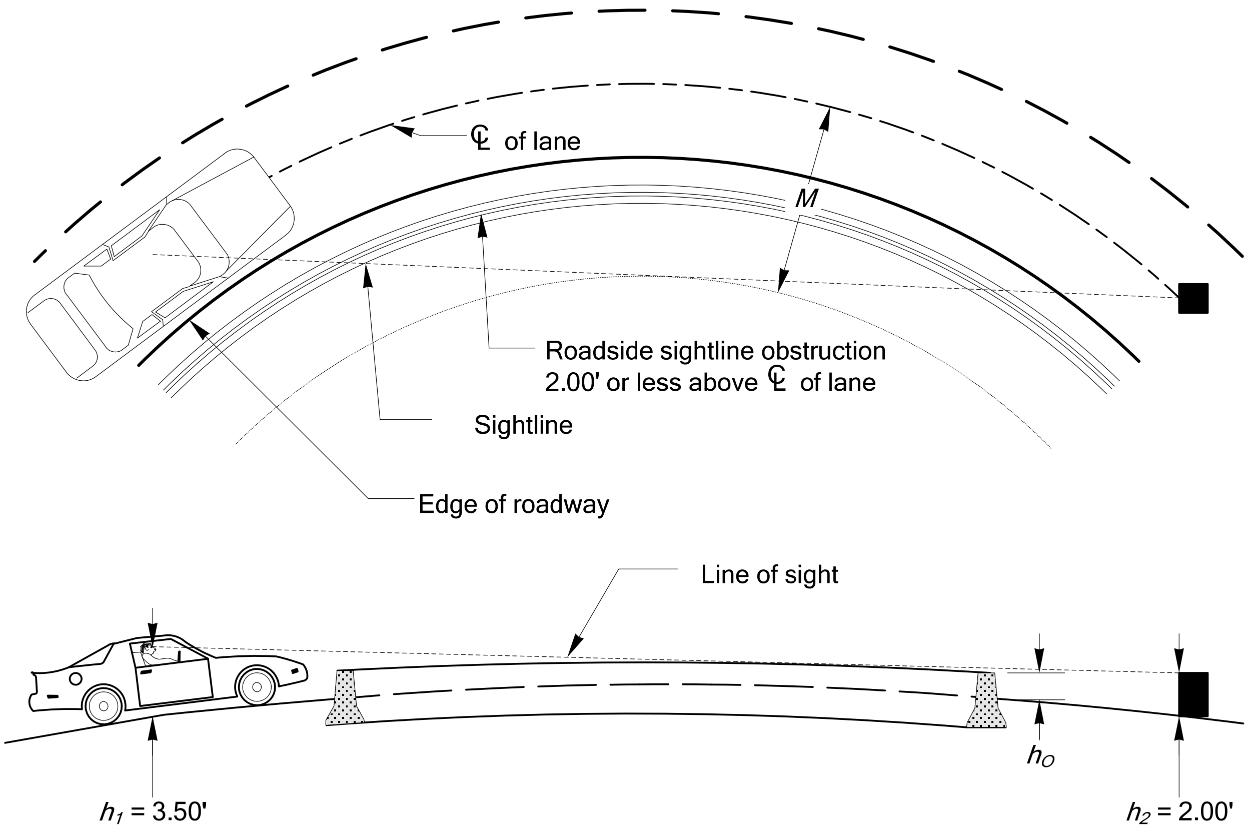
For other locations, the sight distance can be checked graphically.

(7) Existing Stopping Sight Distance

Exhibit 1260-13 gives the values for existing stopping sight distance and the associated K_C and K_S values. Use an object height (h_2) of 2.00 feet with existing stopping sight distance criteria.

(a) **For Crest Vertical Curves**

Where there is no identified collision trend, the existing vertical alignment is retained, and the existing roadway pavement is not reconstructed, existing stopping sight distance values in Exhibit 1260-13 may be used. The minimum length of an existing crest vertical curve may be found using the equations in Exhibit 1260-6 and h_2=2.00 feet, or using the K_C values from Exhibit 1260-13.



The following equation may be used to determine the sight distance for roadside sightline obstructions inside the horizontal sightline offset (M) distance (see Exhibit 1260-11) with a height of 2.00 feet or less above the centerline of the lane on the inside of the curve on overlapping horizontal and crest vertical curves.

$$S = \sqrt{\frac{100L\left[\sqrt{2(h_1 - h_0)} + \sqrt{2(h_2 - h_0)}\right]^2}{A}}$$

Where:

L = Length of vertical curve (ft)

S = Sight distance (ft)

A = Algebraic difference in grades (%)

h_1 = Eye height (3.50 ft)

h_2 = Object height (0.50 ft or 2.00 ft) (see 1260.04(1))

h_0 = Height of roadside sightline obstructions above the centerline of the inside curve lane (ft)

Note:

The above equation cannot be used for sightline obstruction height (h_0) more than 2 feet above the centerline of the lane on the inside of the curve. The available sight distance must be checked graphically for these sightline obstructions.

Stopping Sight Distance: Overlapping Horizontal and Crest Vertical Curves

Exhibit 1260-12

(b) **For Sag Vertical Curves**

Where there is no identified collision trend, the existing vertical alignment is retained, and the existing roadway pavement is not reconstructed, existing stopping sight distance values in Exhibit 1260-13 may be used. The minimum length of an existing sag vertical curve may be found using the equations in Exhibit 1260-8 or using the K_S values from Exhibit 1260-13. In some cases, when continuous illumination is provided, a lesser length may be allowed. For guidance, see Chapter 1220.

(c) **For Horizontal Curves**

Existing stopping sight distance values from Exhibit 1260-13 may be used at locations where all of the following are met at the curve:

- There is no identified collision trend.
- The existing vertical and horizontal alignment is retained.
- The existing roadway pavement is not reconstructed.
- The roadway will not be widened, except for minor shoulder widening requiring no work past the bottom of the ditch.
- The sightline obstruction is existing.
- Roadside improvements to sight distance are within existing right of way.

A sightline obstruction is any roadside object within the horizontal sightline offset (M) distance from the equation in Exhibit 1260-11 with a height (h_0) of 2.00 feet or more above the centerline of the inside lane. Roadside objects with an h_0 between 2.00 feet and 2.75 feet might not be a sightline obstruction. Objects with an h_0 between 2.00 feet and 2.75 feet can be checked graphically to determine whether they are sightline obstructions.

Design Speed (mph)	Existing Stopping Sight Distance (ft)	K_C	K_S
20	115	6	16
25	145	10	23
30	180	15	31
35	220	22	41
40	260	31	52
45	305	43	63
50	350	57	75
55	400	74	89
60	455	96	104
65	495	114	115
70	540	135	127
75	585	159	140
80	630	184	152

Existing Stopping Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-13

1260.05 Passing Sight Distance

(1) Design Criteria

Passing sight distance is the sum of the following four distances:

- The distance traveled by the passing vehicle during perception and reaction time and initial acceleration to the point of encroachment on the opposing lane.
- The distance the passing vehicle travels in the opposing lane.
- The distance an opposing vehicle travels during two-thirds of the time the passing vehicle is in the opposing lane.
- A clearance distance between the passing vehicle and the opposing vehicle at the end of the passing maneuver.

Sight distance for passing is calculated for a passenger car using an eye height (h_1) of 3.50 feet and an object height (h_2) of 3.50 feet. Exhibit 1260-14 gives the passing sight distances for various design speeds.

Design Speed (mph)	Passing Sight Distance (ft)
20	710
25	900
30	1090
35	1280
40	1470
45	1625
50	1835
55	1985
60	2135
65	2285
70	2480
75	2580
80	2680

Passing Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-14

On two-lane two-way highways, provide passing opportunities to meet traffic volume demands. This can be accomplished with roadway sections that provide passing sight distance or by adding passing lanes at locations that would provide the greatest benefit to passing (see Chapter 1270).

In the design stage, passing sight distance can be provided by adjusting the alignment either vertically or horizontally to increase passing opportunities.

These considerations also apply to multilane highways where staged construction includes a two-lane two-way operation as an initial stage. Whether auxiliary lanes are provided, however, depends on the time lag proposed between the initial stage and the final stage of construction.

(2) Vertical Curves

Exhibit 1260-15 gives the length of crest vertical curve needed to provide passing sight distance for two lane highways. The distance from Exhibit 1260-14 and the equations in Exhibit 1260-6, using 3.50 feet for both eye height (h_1) and object height (h_2), may also be used to determine the minimum length of vertical curve to meet the passing sight distance criteria.

Sag vertical curves are not a restriction to passing sight distance.

(3) Horizontal Curves

Passing sight distance can be restricted on the inside of a horizontal curve by sightline obstructions that are 3.50 feet or more above the roadway surface. Use the distance from Exhibit 1260-14 and the equation in Exhibit 1260-11 to determine whether the object is close enough to the roadway to be a restriction to passing sight distance. The equation assumes that the curve length is greater than the sight distance. Where the curve length is less than the sight distance, the desired sight distance may be available with a lesser sightline offset (M) distance.

(4) No-Passing Zone Markings

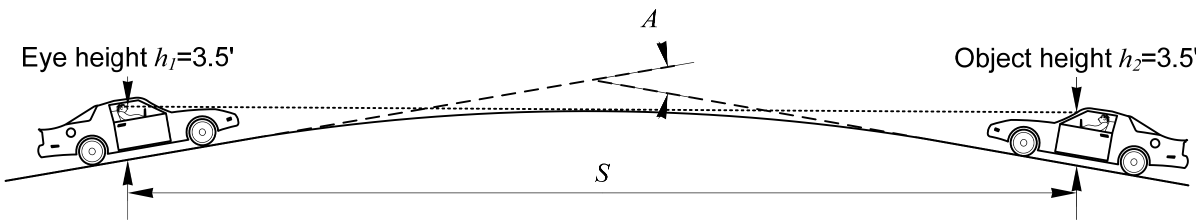
Knowledge of the practices used for marking no passing zones on two lane roads is helpful in designing a highway. The values in Exhibit 1260-14 are the passing sight distances starting where the passing maneuver begins. The values in the MUTCD are regulatory for no-passing zone marking limits and start where passing must be completed. The values in the MUTCD are lower than the Exhibit 1260-14 values.

1260.06 Decision Sight Distance

Decision sight distance values are greater than stopping sight distance values because they give the driver an additional margin for error and afford sufficient length to maneuver at the same or reduced speed rather than to just stop.

Provide decision sight distance at locations where there is high likelihood for driver error in information reception, decision making, or control actions. Examples include interchanges, intersections, major changes in cross section (such as toll plazas and drop lanes), and areas of concentrated demand where sources of information compete (such as roadway elements, traffic, traffic control devices, and advertising signs). If site characteristics allow, locate these highway features where decision sight distance can be provided. If this is not practicable, use suitable traffic control devices and positive guidance to give advanced warning of the conditions.

Use the decision sight distances in Exhibit 1260-16 at locations with complex driving decisions.



When $S>L$

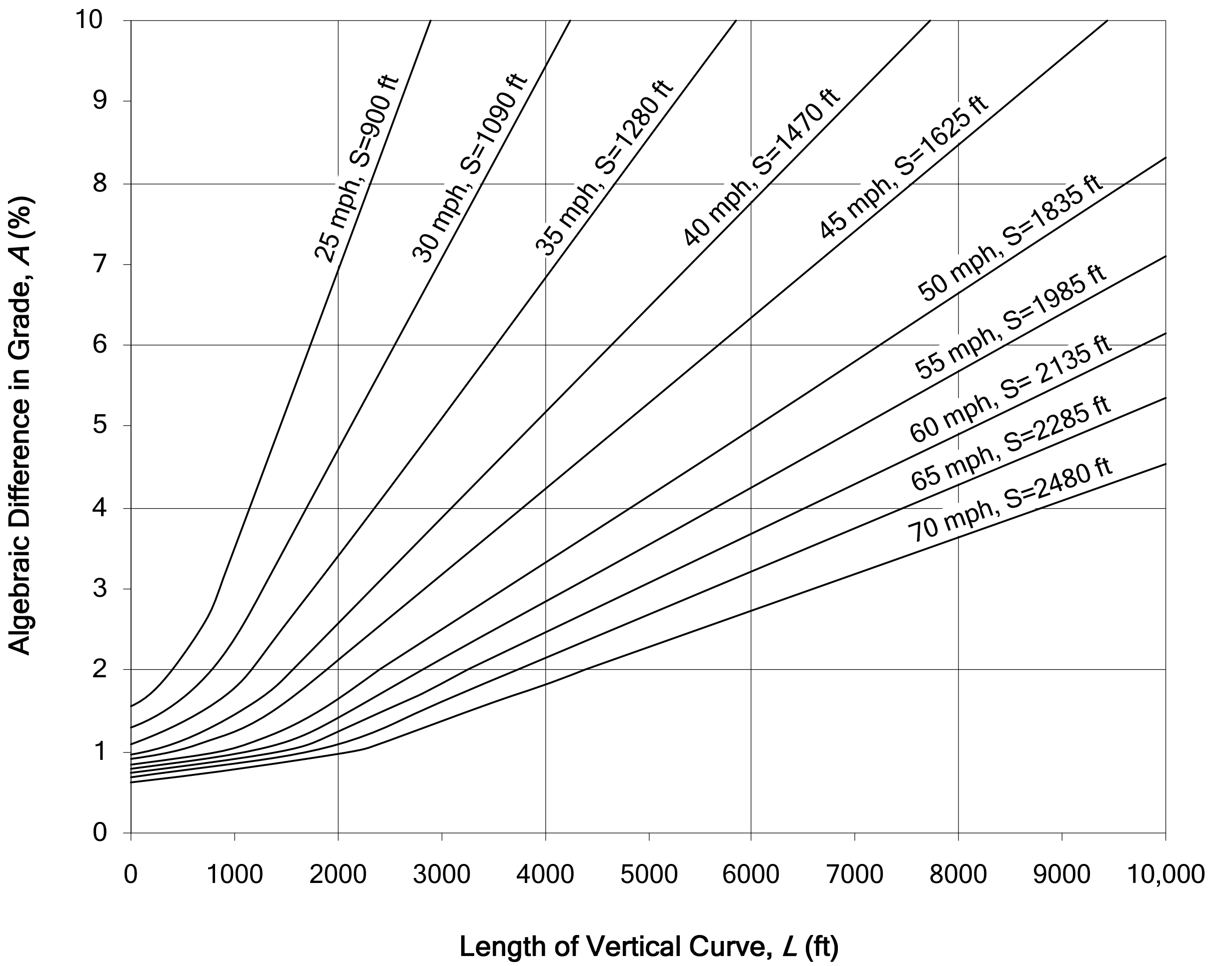
$$L = 2S - \frac{2800}{A} \qquad S = \frac{L}{2} + \frac{1400}{A}$$

When $S<L$

$$L = \frac{AS^2}{2800} \qquad S = \sqrt{\frac{2800L}{A}}$$

Where:

L = Length of vertical curve (ft)
A = Algebraic grade difference (%)
S = Sight distance (ft)



Passing Sight Distance: Crest Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1260-15

Design Speed (mph)	Decision Sight Distance for Maneuvers (ft)				
	A	B	C	D	E
30	220	490	450	535	620
35	275	590	525	625	720
40	330	690	600	715	825
45	395	800	675	800	930
50	465	910	750	890	1030
55	535	1030	865	980	1135
60	610	1150	990	1125	1280
65	695	1275	1050	1220	1365
70	780	1410	1105	1275	1445
75	875	1545	1180	1365	1545
80	970	1685	1260	1455	1650

Decision Sight Distance
Exhibit 1260-16

The maneuvers in Exhibit 1260-16 are as follows:

A = Rural stop

B = Urban stop

C = Rural speed/path/direction change

D = Suburban speed/path/direction change

E = Urban speed/path/direction change

Decision sight distance is calculated using the same criteria as stopping sight distance: h_1=3.50 feet and h_2=0.50 foot. Use the equations in Exhibits 1260-6, 1260-8, and 1260-11 to determine the decision sight distance for crest vertical curves, sag vertical curves, and horizontal curves.

1260.07 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Chapter 1270 Auxiliary Lanes

1270.01 General
1270.02 References
1270.03 Definitions
1270.04 Climbing Lanes
1270.05 Passing Lanes
1270.06 Slow-Moving Vehicle Turnouts
1270.07 Shoulder Driving for Slow Vehicles
1270.08 Emergency Escape Ramps
1270.09 Chain-Up and Chain-Off Areas
1270.10 Documentation

1270.01 General

Auxiliary lanes are used to comply with capacity demand; maintain lane balance; accommodate speed change, weaving, and maneuvering for entering and exiting traffic; and encourage carpools, vanpools, and the use of transit.

For signing and delineation of auxiliary lanes, see the *Standard Plans*, the *Traffic Manual*, and the MUTCD. Contact the region Traffic Engineer for guidance.

Although slow-vehicle turnouts, shoulder driving for slow vehicles, and chain-up areas are not auxiliary lanes, they are covered in this chapter because they perform a similar function.

For additional information, see the following chapters:

Chapter	Subject
1310	Turn lanes
1310	Speed change lanes at intersections
1360	Speed change lanes at interchanges
1360	Collector-distributor roads
1360	Weaving lanes
1410	High-occupancy vehicle lanes

1270.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 46.61, Rules of the road

(2) Design Guidance

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Traffic Manual, M 51-02, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

Emergency Escape Ramps for Runaway Heavy Vehicles, FHWA-T5-79-201, March 1978

Highway Capacity Manual, Special Report 209, Transportation Research Board

Truck Escape Ramps, NCHRP Synthesis 178, Transportation Research Board

1270.03 Definitions

Note: For definitions of ***design speed***, ***lane***, ***operating speed***, ***posted speed***, ***roadway***, ***shoulder***, and ***traveled way,*** see Chapter 1140.

auxiliary lane The portion of the roadway adjoining the through lanes for parking, speed change, turning, storage for turning, weaving, truck climbing, passing, and other purposes supplementary to through-traffic movement.

climbing lane An auxiliary lane used for the diversion of slow traffic from the through lane.

emergency escape ramp A roadway leaving the main roadway designed for the purpose of slowing and stopping out-of-control vehicles away from the main traffic stream.

lateral clearance The distance from the edge of traveled way to a roadside object.

passing lane An auxiliary lane on a two-lane highway used to provide the desired frequency of passing zones.

slow-moving vehicle turnout A shoulder area widened to provide room for a slow-moving vehicle to pull out of the through traffic, allow vehicles to pass, and then return to the through lane.

warrant A minimum condition for which an action is authorized. Meeting a warrant does not attest to the existence of an unsafe or undesirable condition. Further justification is required.

1270.04 Climbing Lanes

Climbing Lane Example
Exhibit 1270-1

(1) General

Climbing lanes (see Exhibit 1270-1) are normally associated with truck traffic, but they may also be considered in recreational or other areas that are subject to slow-moving traffic. Climbing lanes are designed independently for each direction of travel.

(2) Climbing Lane Warrants

Generally, climbing lanes are provided when two warrants—speed reduction and level of service—are exceeded. Either warrant may be waived if, for example, slow-moving traffic is causing an identified collision trend or congestion that could be corrected by the addition of a climbing lane. However, under most conditions, climbing lanes are built when both warrants are satisfied.

(a) **Warrant No. 1: Speed Reduction**

Exhibit 1270-2a shows how the percent and length of grade affect vehicle speeds. The data are based on a typical truck.

The maximum entrance speed, shown in the graphs, is 60 mph. This is the maximum value regardless of the posted speed of the highway. When the posted speed is above 60 mph, use 60 mph in place of the posted speed. Examine the profile at least ¼ mile preceding the grade to obtain a reasonable approach speed.

If a vertical curve makes up part of the length of grade, approximate the equivalent uniform grade length.

Whenever the gradient causes a 10 mph speed reduction below the posted speed limit for a typical truck for either two-lane or multilane highways, the speed reduction warrant is satisfied (see Exhibit 1270-2b).

(b) **Warrant No. 2: Level of Service (LOS)**

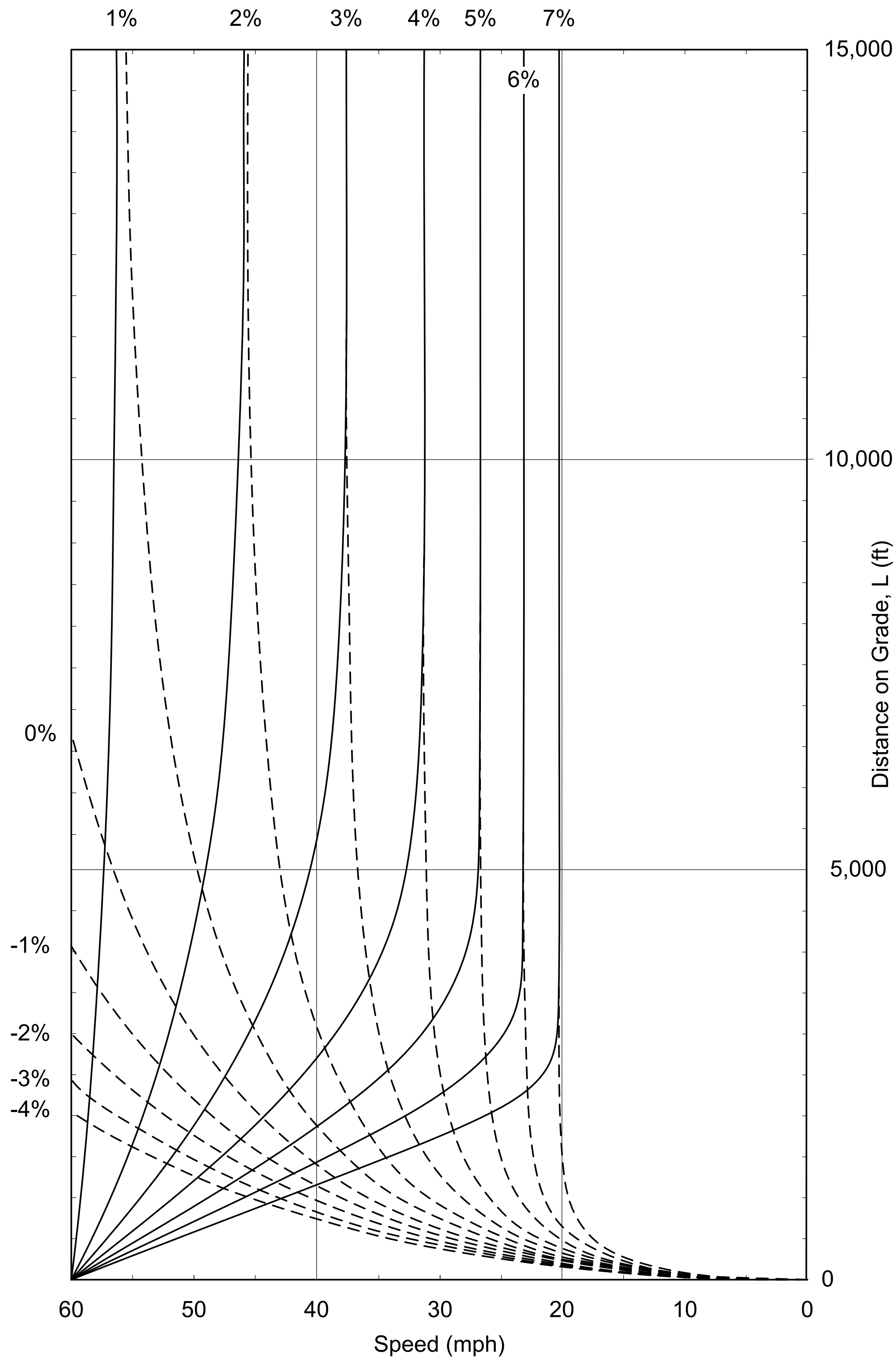
The level of service warrant for two-lane highways is fulfilled when the upgrade traffic volume exceeds 200 vehicles per hour and the upgrade truck volume exceeds 20 vehicles per hour. On multilane highways, a climbing lane is warranted when a capacity analysis shows the need for more lanes on an upgrade than on a downgrade carrying the same traffic volume.

(3) Climbing Lane Design

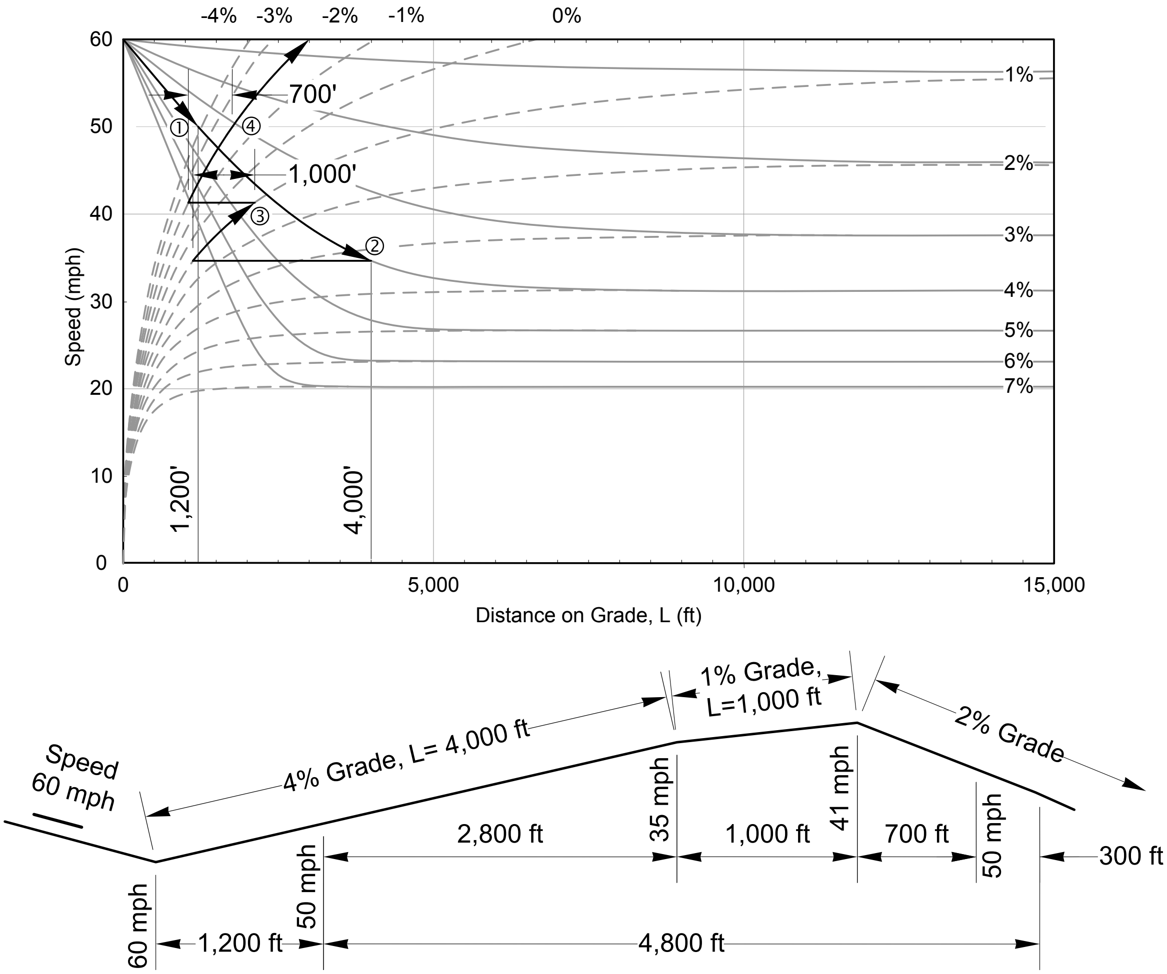
When a climbing lane is justified, design it in accordance with Exhibit 1270-3. Provide signing and delineation to identify the presence of the auxiliary lane. Begin climbing lanes at the point where the speed reduction warrant is met and end them where the warrant ends for multilane highways and 300 feet beyond for two-lane highways. Consider extending the auxiliary lane over the crest to improve vehicle acceleration and sight distance.

Design climbing lane width equal to that of the adjoining through lane and at the same cross slope as the adjoining lanes. Whenever possible, maintain the shoulder width for the class of highway. However, on two-way two-lane highways, the shoulder may be reduced to 4 feet, with justification.

For signing of climbing lanes, see the *Standard Plans*, the *Traffic Manual,* and the MUTCD.



Speed Reduction Warrant: Performance for Trucks
Exhibit 1270-2a



Given:

A two-lane highway meeting the level of service warrant, with the above profile, and a 60 mph posted speed.

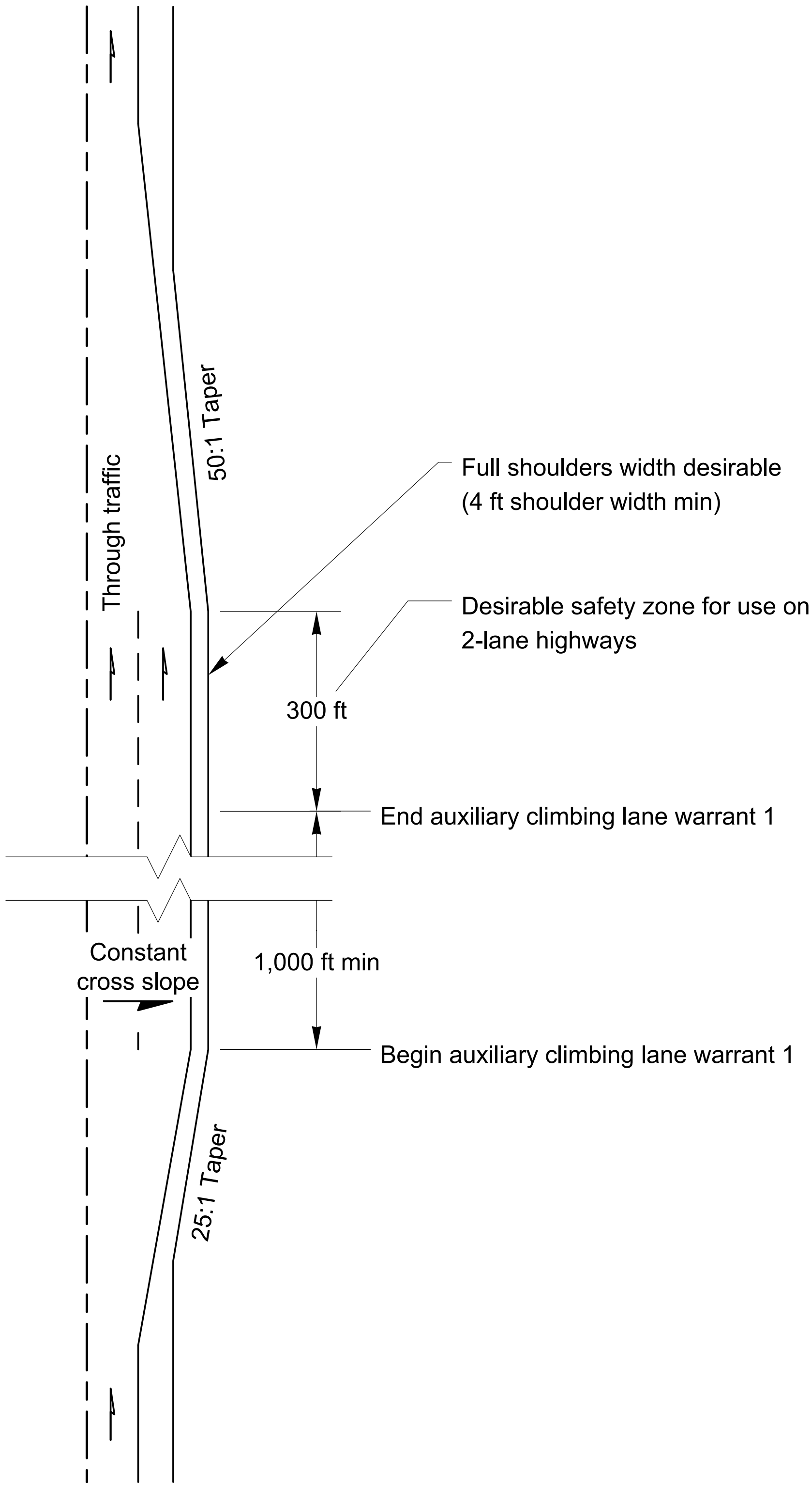
Determine:

Is the climbing lane warranted? If so, what is its length?

Solution:

1. Follow the 4% grade deceleration curve from a speed of 60 mph to a speed of 50 mph at 1,200 ft. The speed reduction warrant is met and a climbing lane is needed.
2. Continue on the 4% grade deceleration curve to 4,000 ft. Note that the speed at the end of the 4% grade is 35 mph.
3. Follow the 1% grade acceleration curve from a speed of 35 mph for 1,000 ft. Note that the speed at the end of the 1% grade is 41 mph.
4. Follow the -2% grade acceleration curve from a speed of 41 mph to a speed of 50 mph, ending the speed reduction warrant. Note that the distance is 700 ft.
5. The total auxiliary lane length is (4,000-1,200)+1,000+700+300=4,800 feet. 300 ft is added to the speed reduction warrant for a two-lane highway (see 1270.04(3) and Exhibit 1270-3).

Speed Reduction Warrant Example
Exhibit 1270-2b



Auxiliary Climbing Lane
Exhibit 1270-3

1270.05 Passing Lanes

Passing Lane Example
Exhibit 1270-4

(1) Passing Lane Benefits

A passing lane (see Exhibit 1270-4) is an auxiliary lane provided in one or both directions of travel on a two-lane highway to improve passing opportunities. They may be intermittent or continuous passing lanes in level or rolling terrain and short four-lane sections. The objectives of passing lanes are to:

- Improve overall traffic operations on two-lane highways by breaking up traffic platoons and reducing delays caused by inadequate passing opportunities over substantial lengths of highway.

  Passing lanes have been found to increase average travel speed within the passing lane itself, and the speed benefits of passing lanes continue downstream of the lane. Passing lanes typically reduce the percent time spent following within the passing lane itself. These "percent time spent following" benefits can continue for some distance downstream of the passing lane.

- Improve safety by providing assured passing opportunities without the need for the passing driver to use the opposing traffic lane. Safety evaluations have shown that passing lanes and short four-lane sections reduce collision rates and severity.

(2) Passing Lane Length

Design passing lanes long enough to provide a reduction in traffic platooning. To maximize the traffic operational efficiency of a passing lane in level or rolling terrain, its length can vary from 0.5 mile to a desirable 2.0 miles depending on the directional flow rate, as shown in Exhibit 1270-5. Passing lanes longer than 2 miles can cause the driver to lose the sense that the highway is a two-lane facility. However, these lengths may vary for other reasons such as addressing safety-related issues. Passing lanes longer than 2.0 miles or shorter than 0.5 miles in length may be used with justification. Lengths shown do not include passing lane tapers at the beginning or end of the passing lane.

Directional Flow Rate (pc/h)	Passing Lane Length (mi)
100	≤0.50
200	>0.50-0.75
400	>0.75-1.00
≥700	>1.00-2.00
Source: Transportation Research Board, *Highway Capacity Manual*, 2000	

Length of Passing Lanes
Exhibit 1270-5

For assistance in developing a passing lane length, see the following website for an example of a self-modeling spreadsheet. This spreadsheet develops passing lane lengths based primarily on vehicle speed differentials and is to be used in conjunction with traffic modeling efforts. Contact the Headquarters (HQ) Design Office for assistance (www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Policy/default.htm).

(3) Passing Lane Location

A number of factors are considered when selecting an appropriate location for a passing lane, including the following:

- Locate passing lanes where decision sight distance (see Chapter 1260) at the approach to lane increase and lane decrease tapers can be provided.
- Avoid locating passing lanes near high-volume intersections, existing structures, railroad crossings, areas of dense development, and two-way left-turn lanes.
- Locate passing lanes where they appear logical to the driver.
- Carefully consider highway sections with low-speed curves (curves with superelevation less than required for the design speed) before installing a passing lane, since they may not be suitable for passing. For information on superelevation, see Chapter 1250.
- Avoid other physical constraints, such as bridges and culverts, if they restrict the provision of a continuous shoulder.
- Consider the number, type, and location of intersections and road approaches.

- Consider grades when choosing the side on which to install the passing lane. Uphill grades are preferred but not mandatory.
- Preference for passing is normally given to the traffic departing a developed area such as a small town.

(a) **Traffic Operational Considerations**

When passing lanes are provided at an isolated location, their objective is typically to reduce delays at a specific bottleneck; for example, climbing lanes (see 1270.04). The location of the passing lane is dictated by the needs of the specific traffic operational problem encountered.

When passing lanes are provided to improve traffic operations over a length of road, there is flexibility in the choice of passing lane locations to maximize their operational effectiveness and minimize construction costs.

If delay problems on an upgrade are severe, the upgrade will usually be the preferred location for a passing lane.

Passing lanes at upgrades begin before speeds are reduced to unacceptable levels and, where possible, continue over the crest of the grade so that slower vehicles can regain some speed before merging.

(b) **Construction Cost Considerations**

The cost of constructing a passing lane can vary substantially, depending on terrain, highway structures, shoulders, and adjacent development. Thus, the choice of a suitable location for a passing lane may be critical to its cost-effectiveness.

Generally, passing lanes in level and rolling terrain can be placed where they are least expensive to construct, avoiding locations with high cuts and fills and existing structures that would be expensive to widen.

(c) **Intersection-Related Considerations**

Consider a corridor evaluation of potential passing lane locations for each direction, avoiding placement of passing lanes near intersections. Avoid or minimize turning movements on a road section where passing is encouraged.

Low-volume intersections and driveways are allowed within passing lanes, but not within the taper transition areas.

Where the presence of higher-volume intersections and driveways cannot be avoided, consider including provisions for turning vehicles, such as left-turn lanes.

Provide right- and left-turn lanes in passing lane sections where they would be provided on a conventional two-lane highway.

Left turns within the first 1,000 feet of a passing lane are undesirable. Strategies to address the turning movement could include left-turn lanes, right-in/right-out access, beginning the passing lane after the entrance, and so on.

(4) Passing Lane Design

Where a passing lane is planned, evaluate several possible configurations (see 1270.05(4)(a)) that are consistent with the corridor and fit within the constraints of the specific location.

The recommended minimum transition distance between passing lanes in opposing directions is 500 feet for "tail-to-tail" and 1,500 feet for "head-to-head" (see Exhibit 1270-7).

Lane and shoulder widths for passing lanes are to be consistent with adjacent sections of two-lane highway unless reduced widths are justified. For projects on new or reconstructed alignment (vertical or horizontal) or full width pavement reconstruction, provide the lane and shoulder widths for the design class of the facility (see Chapters 1130 and 1140).

Some separation between lanes in opposite directions of travel is desirable; however, passing lanes can operate effectively with no separation. In either situation, address pavement markings and centerline rumble strips as appropriate.

It is desirable to channelize the beginning of a passing lane to move traffic to the right lane in order to promote prompt usage of the right lane by platoon leaders and maximize passing lane efficiency.

For signing and striping of passing lanes, contact the region Traffic Engineer.

Widening symmetrically to maintain the roadway crown at the centerline is preferred, including in continuous passing lane configurations. However, the roadway crown may be placed in other locations as deemed appropriate.

(a) Alternative Configurations

Where a passing lane will be provided, evaluate the configurations shown in Exhibit 1270-6. General passing lane configurations and their typical applications are described in the following:

1. **Isolated Passing Lane – Exhibit 1270-6 (a)**
   - Two-lane highway with passing lane provided at a spot location to dissipate queues.
   - For isolated grades, consider climbing lanes (see 1270.04).
2. **Intermittent Passing Lanes, Separated – Exhibit 1270-6 (b)**
   - Often pairs are used at regular intervals along a two-lane highway.
   - Frequency of passing lanes depends on desired level of service.
   - The spacing between passing lanes and between pairs may be adjusted to fit the conditions along the route (see 1270.05(3)).
3. **Continuous Passing Lanes – Exhibit 1270-6 (c)**
   - Use only when constraints do not allow for the use of other configurations. The use of this configuration requires justification. (See Exhibit 1270-7 for additional information regarding buffer areas.)

- Appropriate for two-lane roadways carrying relatively high traffic volumes where nearly continuous passing lanes are needed to achieve the desired level of service.
- Particularly appropriate over an extended section of roadway where a wide pavement is already available.
- May be used as an interim stage for an ultimate four-lane highway.

4. **Short Four-Lane Section – Exhibit 1270-6 (d)**
   - Sufficient length for adjoining passing lanes is not available.
   - Particularly appropriate where the ultimate design for the highway is four lanes.

5. **Intermittent Three-Lane Passing Lanes – Exhibit 1270-6 (e)**
   - Does not require the slow vehicle to change lanes to allow passing.
   - Requires the widening to transition from one side of the existing roadway to the other.
   - Eliminates the head-to-head tapers.

(b) **Geometric Aspects**

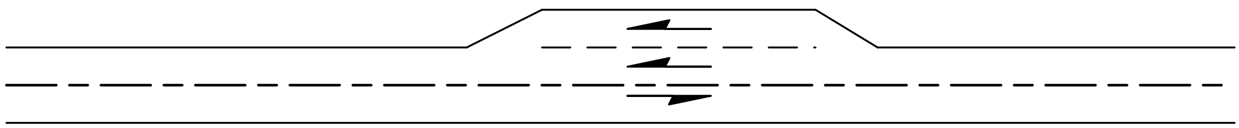
Carefully design transitions between passing lanes in opposing directions. Intersections, bridges, other structures, two-way left-turn lanes, painted medians, or similar elements can be used to provide a buffer area between opposing passing lanes. The length of the buffer area between adjoining passing lanes depends on the configuration (see Exhibit 1270-7).

Exhibit 1270-6 (c) illustrates a continuous three-lane section with alternating passing lanes. Consider a four-lane cross section when volume demand exceeds the capacity of a continuous three-lane roadway.

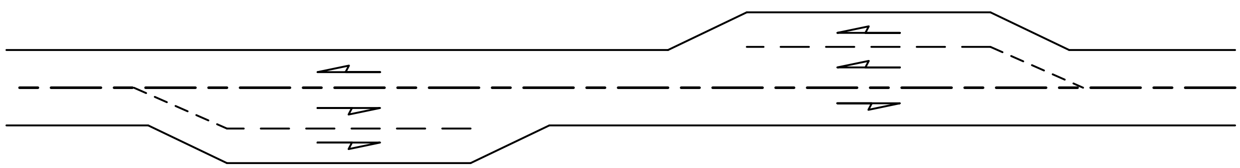
Provide shoulder width in a passing lane section equal to the shoulder width on the adjacent sections of a two-lane highway. However, with justification, the shoulder may be reduced to 4 feet, or 6 feet when shoulder rumble strips are present. Lane widths of 12 feet are preferable throughout the length of the passing lane. The minimum lane width is to be the same as the lane width on the adjacent sections of two-lane highway.

Provide a 25:1 or flatter taper rate to increase the width for a passing lane. When all traffic is directed to the right lane at the beginning of the passing lane, provide a taper rate of the posted speed:1. Provide a posted speed:1 taper rate for the merging taper at the end of a passing lane. (Refer to lane transitions in Chapter 1210 for additional information on taper rates.) A wide shoulder is desirable at the lane drop taper to provide a recovery area for drivers who encounter a merging conflict. Provide decision sight distance (see Chapter 1260) at the approach to lane increase and lane decrease tapers.

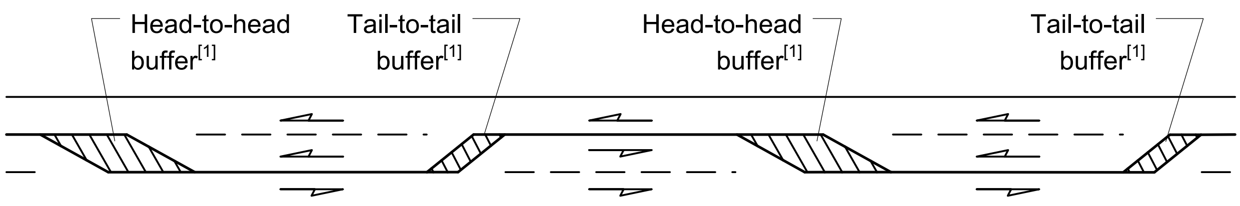
Provide signing and delineation to identify the presence of an auxiliary passing lane. Refer to the *Standard Plans*, the *Traffic Manual,* and the MUTCD for passing lane signing and marking guidance.



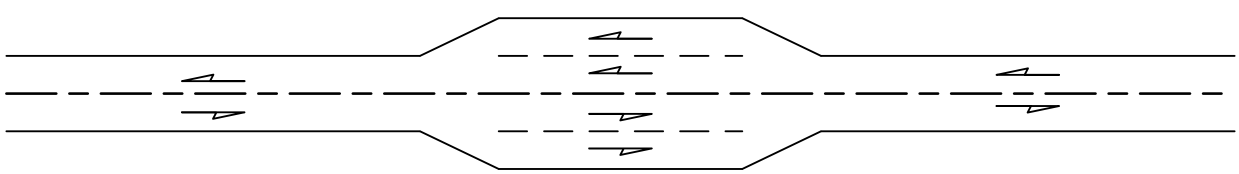
(a) Isolated Passing Lane



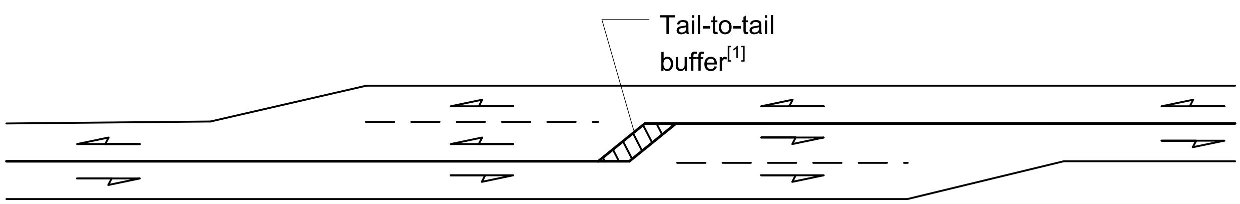
(b) Intermittent Passing Lane



(c) Continuous Three-Lane Section



(d) Short Four-Lane Section

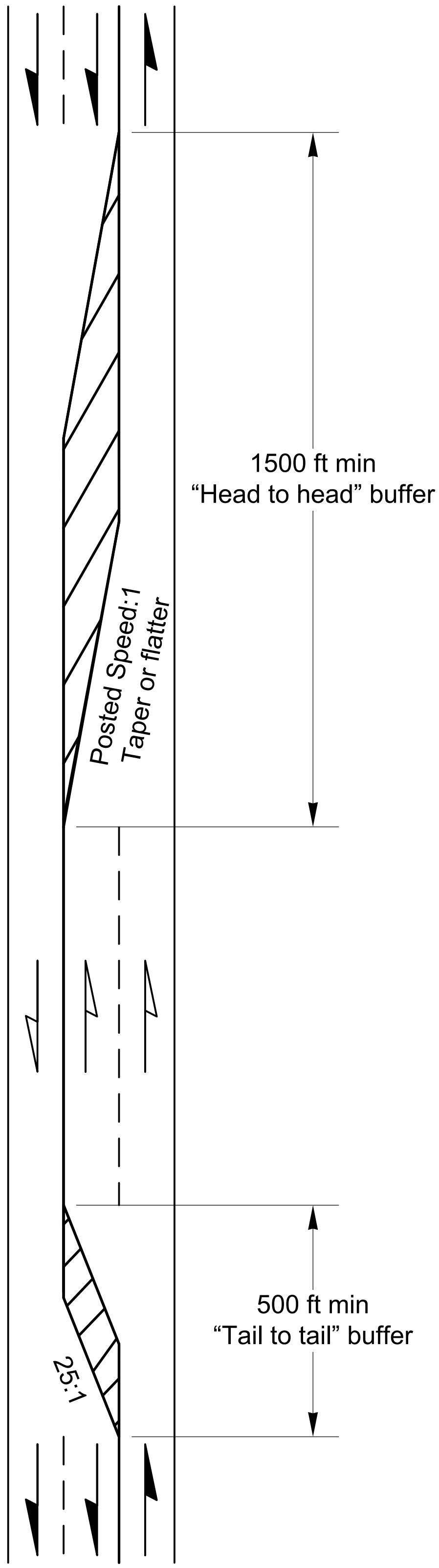


(e) Intermittent Three-Lane Passing Lanes

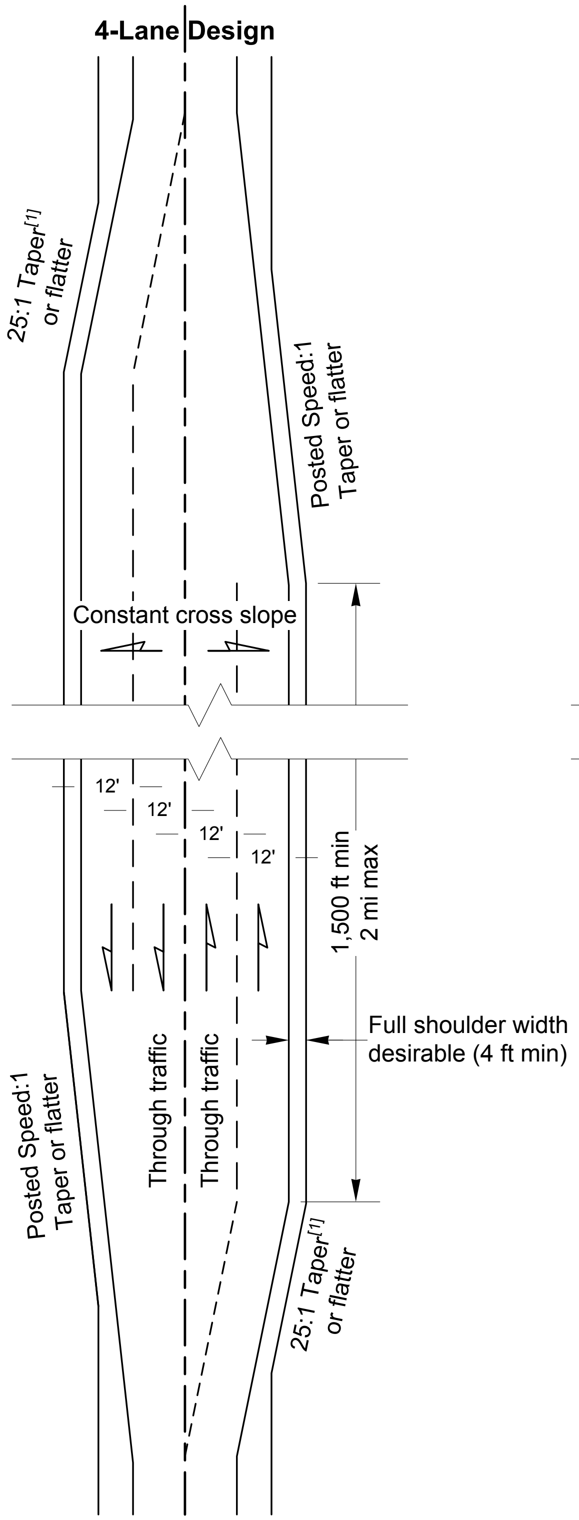
Notes:

[1] See Exhibit 1270-7 for buffer design.

Passing Lane Configurations
Exhibit 1270-6



Buffer Between Opposing Passing Lanes
Exhibit 1270-7



Note:

[1] Provide a posted speed:1 taper when all traffic is directed to the right lane at the beginning of the passing lane.

Auxiliary Passing Lane
Exhibit 1270-8

1270.06 Slow-Moving Vehicle Turnouts

(1) General

RCW 46.61.427 states:

> *On a two-lane highway where passing is unsafe … a slow-moving vehicle, behind which five or more vehicles are formed in a line, shall turn off the roadway wherever sufficient area for a safe turn-out exists, in order to permit the vehicles following to proceed…*

A slow-moving vehicle turnout is not an auxiliary lane. Its purpose is to provide sufficient room for a slow-moving vehicle to pull out of through traffic and stop if necessary, allow vehicles to pass, and then return to the through lane. Generally, a slow-moving vehicle turnout is provided on existing roadways where passing opportunities are limited, where slow-moving vehicles such as trucks and recreational vehicles are predominant, and where the cost to provide a full auxiliary lane would be prohibitive.

(2) Design

Base the design of a slow-moving vehicle turnout primarily on sound engineering judgment and Exhibit 1270-9. Designs may vary from one location to another. Provide a *minimum* length of 100 feet. The *maximum* length is ¼ mile, including tapers. Surface turnouts with a stable, unyielding material (such as BST or HMA) with adequate structural strength to support the heavier traffic.

To improve the ability of a vehicle to safely reenter through traffic, locate slow-moving vehicle turnouts where decision sight distance (see Chapter 1260) is available. With justification, slow-vehicle turnouts may be located where at least design stopping sight distance is available.

Sign slow-moving vehicle turnouts to identify their presence. For guidance, see the *Standard Plans*, the *Traffic Manual*, and the MUTCD.

When a slow-moving vehicle turnout is to be built, document the need for the turnout, the location of the turnout, and why it was selected over a passing or climbing lane.

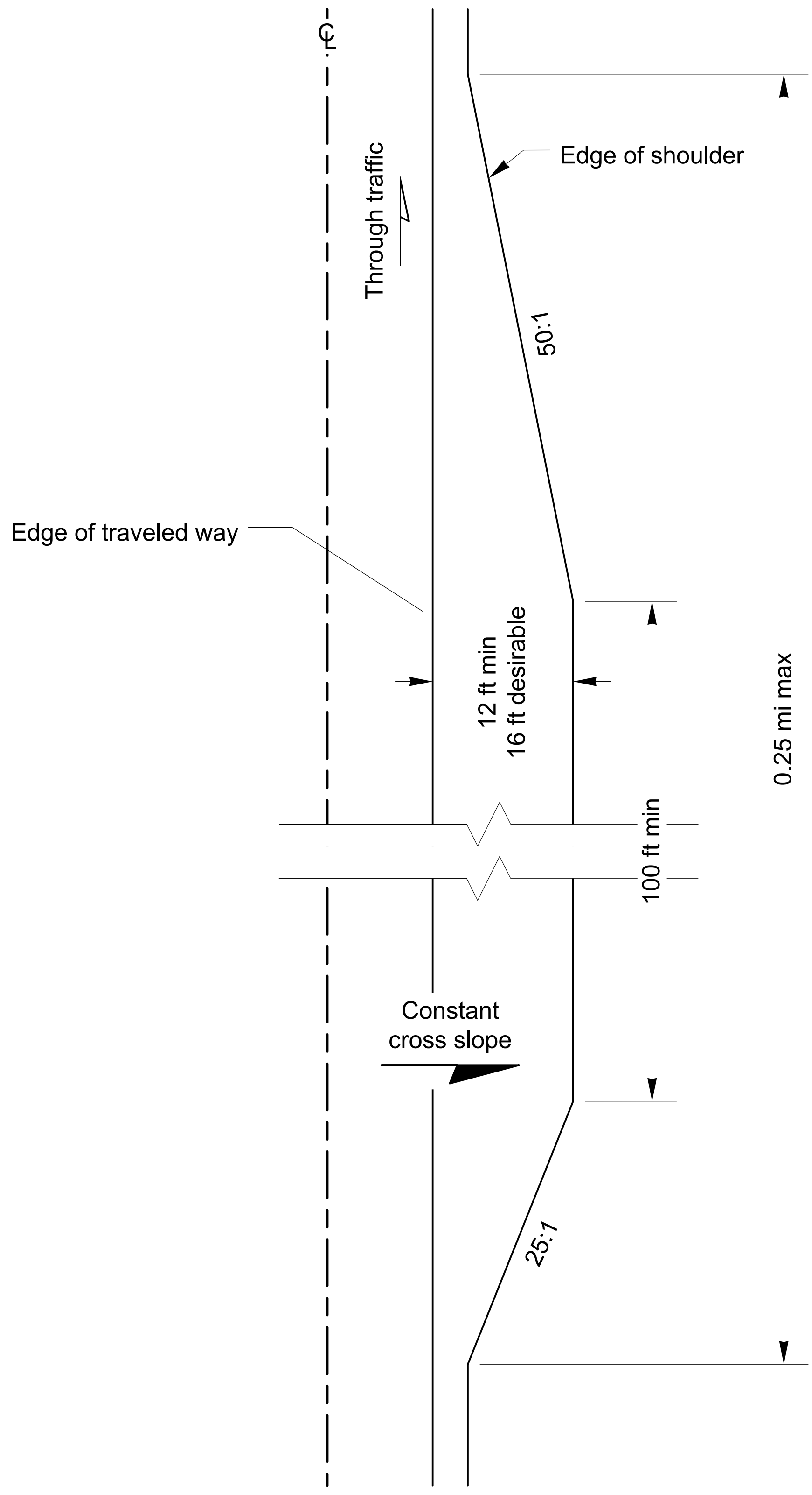
1270.07 Shoulder Driving for Slow Vehicles

(1) General

For projects where climbing or passing lanes are justified, but are not within the scope of the project, or where meeting the warrants for these lanes is borderline, the use of a shoulder driving section is an alternative.

Review the following when considering a shoulder driving section:

- Horizontal and vertical alignment
- Character of traffic
- Presence of bicycles
- Road approaches and intersections
- Clear zone (see Chapter 1600)



Slow-Moving Vehicle Turnout
Exhibit 1270-9

(2) Design

When designing a shoulder for shoulder driving, locate where full design stopping sight distance (speed/path/direction decision sight distance is desirable) and a minimum length of 600 feet are available. Where practicable, avoid sharp horizontal curves. When barriers or other roadside objects are present, the minimum width is 12 feet. The shoulder width depends on the vehicles that will be using the shoulder. Where trucks will be the primary vehicle using the shoulder, use a 12-foot width; when passenger cars are the primary vehicle, a 10-foot width may be used.

Shoulder driving and bicycles are not compatible. When the route has been identified as a local, state, or regional significant bike route, shoulder driving for slow vehicles is undesirable. Reconstruct the shoulders to provide adequate structural strength for the anticipated traffic. Select locations where the sideslope meets the criteria of Chapter 1230 for new construction and Chapter 1130 for existing roadways. When providing a transition at the end of a shoulder driving section, use a 50:1 taper.

Signing for shoulder driving is required (see the *Standard Plans*, the *Traffic Manual*, and the MUTCD). Install guideposts when shoulder driving is to be permitted at night.

Document the need for shoulder driving and why a lane is not being built.

1270.08 Emergency Escape Ramps

Emergency Escape Ramp Example
Exhibit 1270-10

(1) General

Consider an emergency escape ramp (see Exhibit 1270-10) whenever a long, steep downgrade is encountered. In this situation, the possibility exists of a truck losing its brakes and going out of control at a high speed. Consult local maintenance personnel and check traffic accident records to determine whether or not an escape ramp is justified.

(2) Design

(a) Types

Escape ramps include the following types:

- Gravity escape ramps are ascending grade ramps paralleling the traveled way. They are commonly built on old roadways. Their long length and steep grade can present the driver with control problems, not only in stopping, but with rollback after stopping. Gravity escape ramps are the *least* desirable design.
- Sand pile escape ramps are piles of loose, dry sand dumped at the ramp site, usually not more than 400 feet in length. The deceleration is usually high and the sand can be affected by weather conditions; therefore, they are *less* desirable than arrester beds. However, where space is limited, they may be suitable.
- Arrester beds are parallel ramps filled with smooth, free-draining gravel. They stop the out-of-control vehicle by increasing the rolling resistance and are the *most* desirable design. Arrester beds are commonly built on an upgrade to add the benefit of gravity to the rolling resistance. However, successful arrester beds have been built on a level or descending grade.
- The Dragnet Vehicle Arresting Barrier. (See Chapter 1610 for additional information.)

(b) Locations

The location of an escape ramp depends on terrain, length of grade, and roadway geometrics. Desirable locations include before a critical curve, near the bottom of a grade, or before a stop. It is desirable that the ramp leave the roadway on a tangent at least 3 miles from the beginning of the downgrade.

(c) Lengths

The length of an escape ramp depends on speed, grade, and type of design used. The minimum length is 200 feet. Calculate the stopping length using the equation in Exhibit 1270-11.

$$L = \frac{V^2}{0.3(R \pm G)}$$

Where:

L = Stopping distance (ft)
V = Entering speed (mph)
R = Rolling resistance (see Exhibit 1270-12)
G = Grade of the escape ramp (%)

Emergency Escape Ramp Length
Exhibit 1270-11

Speeds of out-of-control trucks rarely exceed 90 mph; therefore, the desirable entering speed is 90 mph. Other entry speeds may be used when justification and the method used to determine the speed are documented.

Material	*R*
Roadway	1
Loose crushed aggregate	5
Loose noncrushed gravel	10
Sand	15
Pea gravel	25

Rolling Resistance *(R)*
Exhibit 1270-12

(d) **Widths**

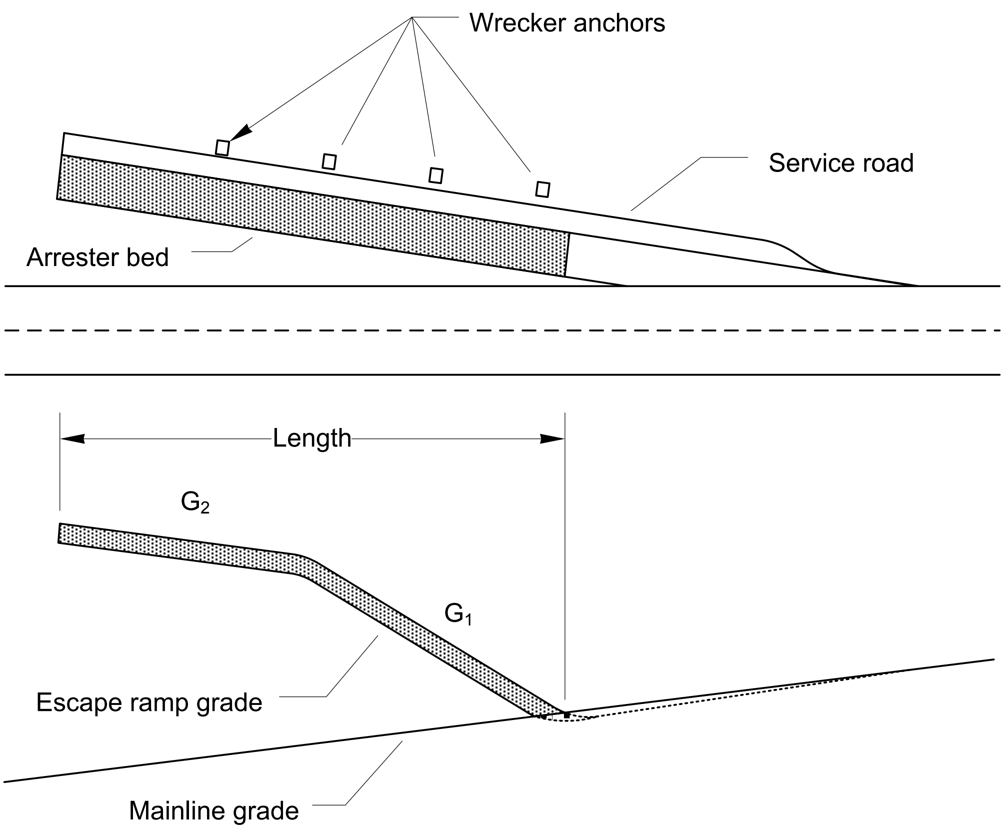
The width of each escape ramp depends on the needs of the individual situation. It is desirable for the ramp to be wide enough to accommodate more than one vehicle. The *desirable* width of an escape ramp to accommodate two out-of-control vehicles is 40 feet and the *minimum* width is 26 feet.

The following items are additional considerations in the design of emergency escape ramps:

- If possible, at or near the summit, provide a pull-off brake-check area. Also, include in this area informative signing about the upcoming escape ramp.
- Free-draining, smooth, noncrushed gravel is desirable for an arrester bed. To assist in smooth deceleration of the vehicle, taper the depth of the bed from 3 inches at the entry to a full depth of 18 to 30 inches in not less than 100 feet.
- Mark and sign in advance of the ramp. Discourage normal traffic from using or parking in the ramp. Sign escape ramps in accordance with the guidance contained in the MUTCD for runaway truck ramps.
- Provide drainage adequate to prevent the bed from freezing or compacting.
- Consider including an impact attenuator at the end of the ramp if space is limited.
- A surfaced service road adjacent to the arrester bed is needed for wreckers and maintenance vehicles to remove vehicles and make repairs to the arrester bed. Anchors are desirable at 300-foot intervals to secure the wrecker when removing vehicles from the bed.

Typical examples of arrester beds are shown in Exhibits 1270-10 and 1270-13.

Include justification, all calculations, and any other design considerations in the emergency escape ramp documentation.



Typical Emergency Escape Ramp
Exhibit 1270-13

1270.09 Chain-Up and Chain-Off Areas

Provide chain-up areas to allow chains to be put on vehicles out of the through lanes at locations where traffic enters chain enforcement areas. Provide chain-off areas to remove chains out of the through lanes for traffic leaving chain enforcement areas.

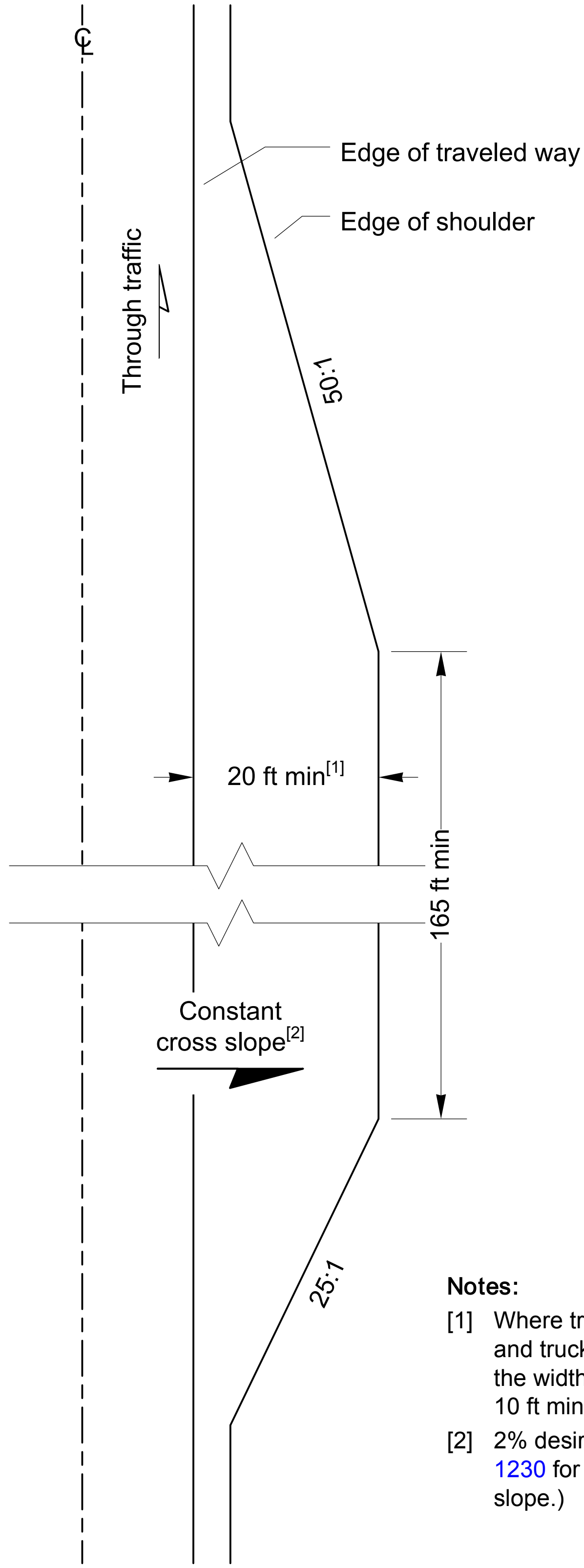
Chain-up or chain-off areas are widened shoulders, designed as shown in Exhibit 1270-14. Locate chain-up and chain-off areas where the grade is 6% or less and desirably on a tangent section.

Consider illumination for chain-up and chain-off areas on multilane highways. When deciding whether or not to install illumination, consider traffic volumes during the hours of darkness and the availability of power.

The wide shoulders at chain-up and chain-off areas may encourage parking. When parking is undesirable, consider parking restrictions.

1270.10 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



Notes:

[1] Where traffic volumes are low and trucks are not a concern, the width may be reduced to 10 ft min, with 15 ft desirable.

[2] 2% desirable. (See Chapter 1230 for traveled way cross slope.)

Chain Up/Chain Off Area
Exhibit 1270-14

1310.01 General
1310.02 References
1310.03 Definitions
1310.04 Intersection Configurations
1310.05 Design Considerations
1310.06 Design Vehicle Selection
1310.07 Design Elements
1310.08 U-Turns
1310.09 Intersection Sight Distance
1310.10 Traffic Control at Intersections
1310.11 Signing and Pavement Marking
1310.12 Procedures
1310.13 Documentation

1310.01 General

Intersections are a critical part of Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) highway design because of increased conflict potential. Traffic and driver characteristics, bicycle and pedestrian needs, physical features, and economics are considered during the design stage to develop channelization and traffic control to provide multimodal traffic flow through intersections.

This chapter provides guidance for designing intersections at grade, including at-grade ramp terminals. Refer to the following chapters for additional information:

Chapter	Subject
1320	Roundabouts
1330	Traffic signals
1340	Road approaches
1360	Interchanges
1510	Pedestrian design considerations

If an intersection design situation is not covered in this chapter, contact the Headquarters (HQ) Design Office for assistance.

1310.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (23 CFR Part 36, Appendix A)

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 35.68.075, Curb ramps for persons with disabilities – Required – Standards and requirements

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-18-040, Design standards for rearranged county roads, frontage roads, access roads, intersections, ramps and crossings

WAC 468-52, Highway access management – Access control classification system and standards

(2) Design Guidance

Local Agency Guidelines (LAG), M 36-63, WSDOT

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

Aspects of Traffic Control Devices, Highway Research Record No. 211, pp 1-18, "Volume Warrants for Left-Turn Storage Lanes at Unsignalized Grade Intersections," Harmelink, M.D.

Guidelines and Recommendations to Accommodate Older Drivers and Pedestrians, FHWA-RD-01-051, USDOT, FHWA, May 2001

Highway Capacity Manual (HCM), Special Report 209, Transportation Research Board, National Research Council

Intersection Channelization Design Guide, NCHRP 279

Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, FHWA-RD-00-067, USDOT, FHWA

1310.03 Definitions

Note: For definitions of ***design speed***, ***divided multilane***, ***expressway***, ***highway***, ***roadway***, ***rural design area***, ***suburban area***, ***traveled way***, ***undivided multilane***, and ***urban design area***, see Chapter 1140; for ***lane***, ***median***, and ***shoulder***, see Chapter 1230; and for ***decision sight distance***, ***sight distance***, and ***stopping sight distance***, see Chapter 1260.

conflict An event involving two or more road users in which the action of one user causes the other user to make an evasive maneuver to avoid a collision.

conflict point A point where traffic paths cross, merge, or diverge.

crossroad The minor roadway at an intersection. At a stop-controlled intersection, the crossroad has the stop.

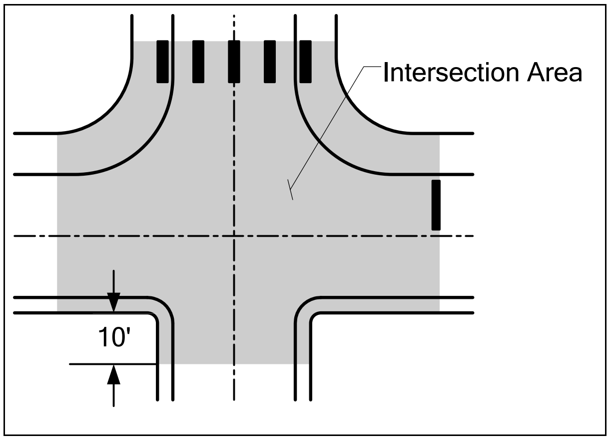
curb extensions A curb and sidewalk bulge or extension into the parking lane or shoulder to decrease the length of a pedestrian crossing (see Chapter 1510).

curb section A roadway cross section with curb and sidewalk.

design vehicle A vehicle, the dimensions and operating characteristics of which are used to establish the intersection geometry.

intersection angle The angle between any two intersecting legs at the point the centerlines intersect.

intersection area The area of the intersecting roadways bounded by the edge of traveled ways and the area of the adjacent roadways for the farther distance to the end of the corner radii; through any marked crosswalks adjacent to the intersection; to the stop bar; or 10 feet from the edge of shoulder of the intersecting roadway (see Exhibit 1310-1).



Intersection Area
Exhibit 1310-1

intersection at grade The general area where a roadway or ramp terminal is met or crossed at a common grade or elevation by another roadway.

four-leg intersection An intersection formed by two crossing roadways.

split tee A four-leg intersection with the crossroad intersecting the through roadway at two tee intersections offset by at least the width of the roadway.

tee (T) intersection An intersection formed by two roadways where one roadway terminates at the point it meets a through roadway.

wye (Y) intersection An intersection formed by three legs in the general form of a “Y” where the angle between two legs is less than 60°.

intersection leg Any one of the roadways radiating from and forming part of an intersection.

entrance leg The lanes of an intersection leg for traffic entering the intersection.

exit leg The lanes of an intersection leg for traffic leaving the intersection.

Note: Whether an intersection leg is an entrance leg or an exit leg depends on which movement is being analyzed. For two-way roadways, each leg is an entrance leg for some movements and an exit leg for other movements.

intersection sight distance The length of roadway visible to the driver of a vehicle entering an intersection.

island A defined area within an intersection, between traffic lanes, for the separation of vehicle movements or for pedestrian refuge.

channelization island An island that separates traffic movements into definite paths of travel and guides traffic into the intended route.

divisional island An island introduced at an intersection on an undivided roadway to warn drivers of the crossroad ahead and regulate traffic through the intersection.

refuge island An island at or near a crosswalk or bicycle path to aid and protect pedestrians and bicyclists crossing the roadway.

roundabout A circular intersection at grade (see Chapter 1320).

rural intersection An intersection in a rural design area (see Chapter 1140).

slip ramp A connection between legs of an intersection that allows right-turning vehicles to bypass the intersection or a connection between an expressway and a parallel frontage road.

two-way left-turn lane (TWLTL) A lane located between opposing lanes of traffic to be used by vehicles making left turns from either direction, from or onto the roadway.

urban intersection An intersection in an urban design area (see Chapter 1140).

1310.04 Intersection Configurations

At-grade intersection configurations in their simplest forms are three-leg, four-leg, and multileg. More complex designs are variations or combinations selected to accommodate the constraints and traffic presented by the location. Intersection configurations are determined by the number of intersecting legs; the topography; the character of the intersecting roadways; the traffic volumes, patterns, and speeds; and the desired type of operation.

(1) Roundabouts

Modern roundabouts are circular intersections. When well designed, they are an efficient form of intersection control. They have fewer conflict points, lower speeds, easier decision making, and need less maintenance.

When properly designed and located, roundabouts have been found to reduce injury accidents, traffic delays, fuel consumption, and air pollution. They also permit U-turns.

Include roundabouts as an alternative at intersections where:

- Stop signs result in unacceptable delays for the crossroad traffic.
- There is a high left-turn percentage.
- There are more than four legs.
- A disproportionately high number of accidents involve crossing or turning traffic.
- The major traffic movement makes a turn.
- Traffic growth is expected to be high and future traffic patterns are uncertain.
- It is not desirable to give priority to either roadway.

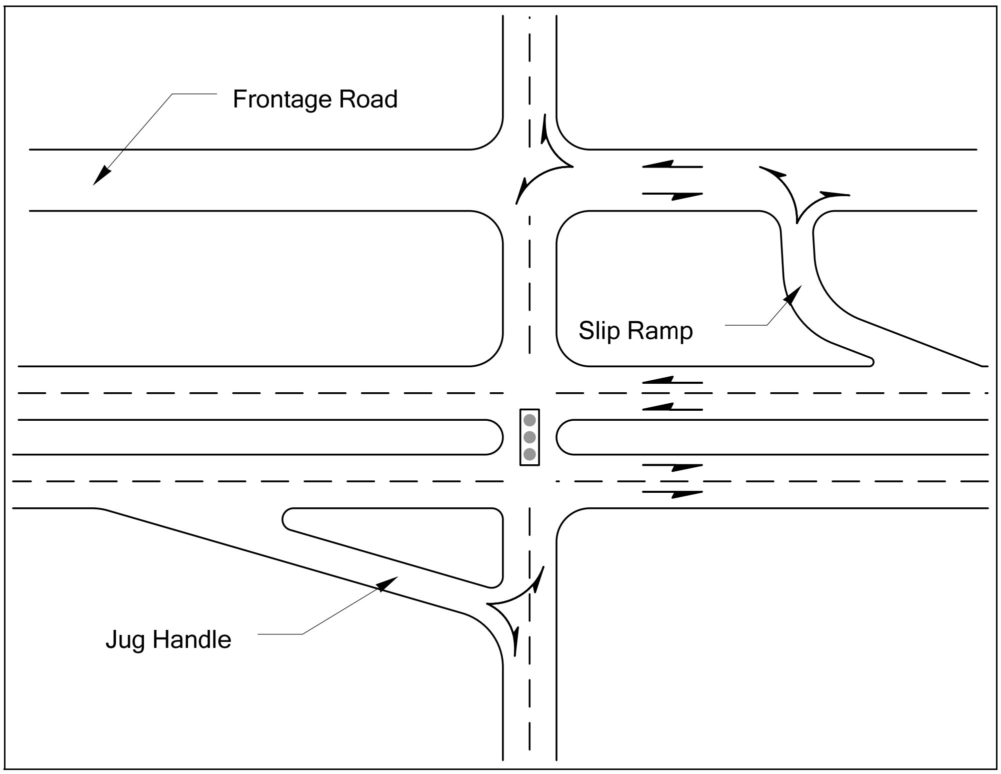
Other tradeoffs with roundabouts include:

- Roundabouts give equal priority to all legs.
- The design forces traffic entering a roundabout to reduce speed.

Refer to Chapter 1320 for information and criteria for the design and documentation of roundabouts.

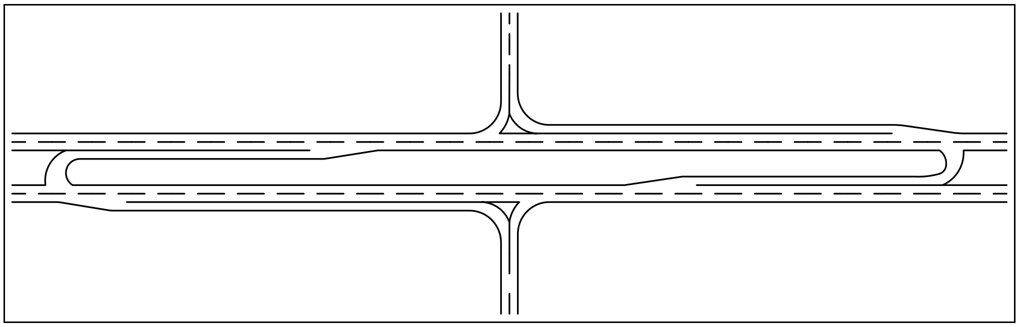
(2) Indirect Left Turns

At signalized intersections, indirect left-turn intersections reduce conflict points and delays to the major route by eliminating the left-turn phase (see Exhibit 1310-2a for an example).



Indirect Left Turns: Signalized Intersections
Exhibit 1310-2a

At unsignalized intersections, indirect left-turn intersections help mitigate entering-at-angle collisions. Left-turning and through traffic on the crossroad must turn right and then make a U-turn at a median crossover or a nearby intersection (see Exhibit 1310-2b for an example). Provide for weaving movements when selecting the distance between right turns and U-turns on major routes and the storage (if needed) for U-turning vehicles. This treatment eliminates conflict points while minimizing delays to the major route. (See 1310.08 for guidance on the design of U-turn locations.)

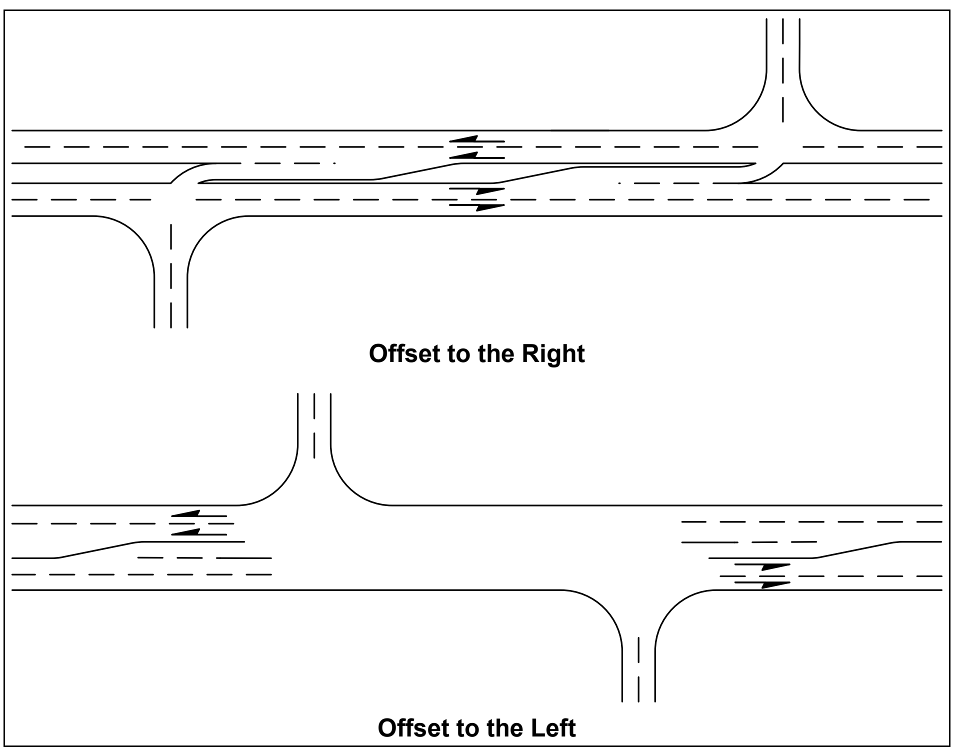


Indirect Left Turns: Unsignalized Intersections
Exhibit 1310-2b

(3) Split Tee

Avoid split tee intersections where there is less than the design intersection spacing (see 1310.05(4)). Split tee intersections with an offset distance to the left greater than the width of the roadway, but less than the intersection spacing, may be designed, with justification. Evaluate the anticipated benefits against the increased difficulty for cross traffic in driving through the intersection and a more complicated traffic signal design.

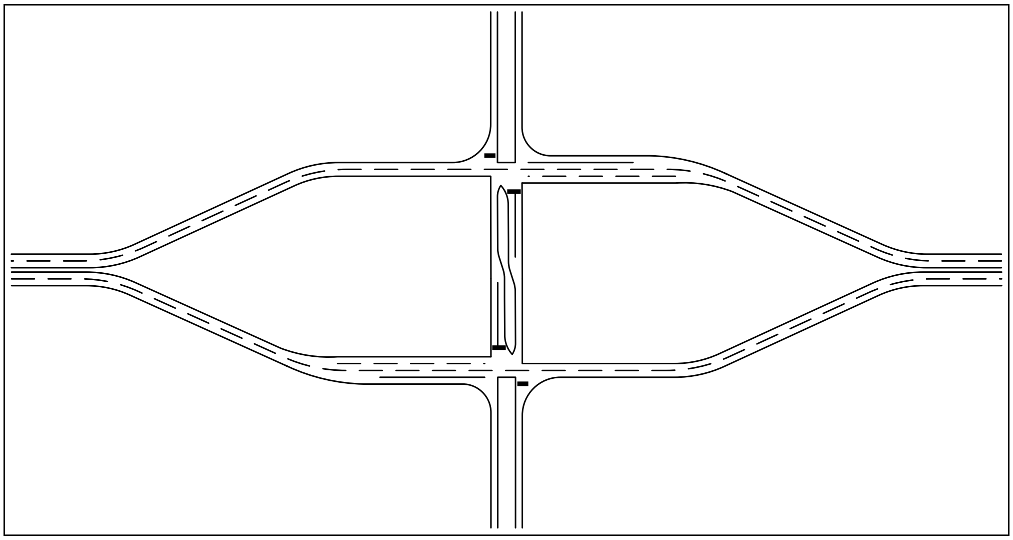
Split tee intersections with the offset to the right (see Exhibit 1310-3) have the additional disadvantages of overlapping main line left-turn lanes, the increased possibility of wrong way movements, and a more complicated traffic signal design. Do not design a split tee intersection with an offset to the right less than the design intersection spacing (see 1310.05(4)) unless traffic is restricted to right-in/right-out only.



Split Tee Intersections
Exhibit 1310-3

(4) Split Intersections

Split intersections provide wide medians on divided multilane highways, which separate the traveled ways of the through roadway to allow storage of left-turning and crossing traffic (see Exhibit 1310-4). Traffic on the crossroad makes the through and left-turn movements in two stages, reducing the needed sight distance and the probability of the driver misjudging the gap. To avoid potential conflicts with through traffic, provide a median width sufficient to store the anticipated queue for crossing and left-turning vehicles. The minimum median width is 100 feet, with 200 to 300 feet being desirable.



Split Intersections
Exhibit 1310-4

(5) Nonstandard Configurations

Low average daily traffic (ADT) can hide operational problems. Do not design intersections with the following configurations:

- Intersections with offset legs, except for split tee intersections (see 1310.04(3)).
- Intersections with more than four legs.
- Tee intersections with the major traffic movement making a turn.
- Wye intersections that are not a one-way merge or diverge.

A roundabout might be an alternative to these configurations (see 1310.04(1) and Chapter 1320).

With justification and approval from the region Traffic Engineer, existing intersections with nonstandard configurations may remain in place when an analysis shows no collision history related to the configuration.

1310.05 Design Considerations

Consider all potential users of the facility in the design of an intersection. This involves addressing the needs of a diverse mix of user groups, including passenger cars, heavy vehicles of varying classifications, bicycles, and pedestrians. Often, meeting the needs of one user group results in a compromise in service to others. Intersection design balances these competing needs, resulting in appropriate levels of operation for all users.

In addition to reducing the number of conflicts, minimize the conflict area as much as possible while still providing for the design vehicle (see 1310.06). This is done to control the speed of turning vehicles and reduce vehicle, bicyclist, and pedestrian exposure.

(1) Nongeometric Considerations

Geometric design considerations, such as sight distance and intersection angle, are important. Equally important are perception, contrast, and a driver's age. Perception is a factor in the majority of collisions. Regardless of the type of intersection, the function depends on the driver's ability to perceive what is happening with respect to the surroundings and other vehicles. When choosing an acceptable gap, the driver first identifies the approaching vehicle and then determines its speed. The driver uses visual clues provided by the immediate surroundings in making these decisions. Thus, given equal sight distance, it may be easier for the driver to judge a vehicle's oncoming speed when there are more objects to pass by in the driver's line of sight. Contrast allows us to discern one object from another. Contrast sensitivity is affected by available light and the weather.

(2) Intersection Angle

An important intersection design characteristic is the intersection angle. The desirable intersection angle is 90°, with 75° to 105° allowed for new, reconstructed, or realigned intersections.

Existing intersections with an intersection angle between 60° and 120° may remain. Intersection angles outside this range tend to restrict visibility; increase the area required for turning; increase the difficulty of making a turn; increase the crossing distance and time for vehicles and pedestrians; and make traffic signal arms difficult or impossible to design.

(3) Lane Alignment

Design intersections with entrance lanes aligned with the exit lanes. Do not put angle points on the roadway alignments within intersection areas or on the through roadway alignment within 100 feet of the edge of traveled way of a crossroad. This includes short radius curves where both the PC and PT are within the intersection area. However, angle points within the intersection are allowed at intersections with a minor through movement, such as at a ramp terminal (see Exhibit 1310-10).

When feasible, locate intersections such that curves do not begin or end within the intersection area. It is desirable to locate the PC and PT at least 250 feet from the intersection so that a driver can settle into the curve before the gap in the striping for the intersection area.

(4) Intersection Spacing

Provide intersection spacing for efficient operation of the highway. The minimum design intersection spacing for highways with limited access control is covered in Chapter 530. For other highways, the minimum design intersection spacing is dependent on the managed access highway class. (See Chapter 540 for minimum intersection spacing on managed access highways.)

As a minimum, provide enough space between intersections for left-turn lanes and storage length. Space signalized intersections and intersections expected to be signalized to maintain efficient signal operation. Space intersections so that queues will not block an adjacent intersection.

Evaluate existing intersections that are spaced less than shown in Chapters 530 and 540. Evaluate closing or restricting movements at intersections with operational issues. Document the spacing of existing intersections that will remain in place and their effects on operation, capacity, and circulation.

(5) Design Vehicle

There are competing design objectives when considering the turning needs of larger vehicles and the crossing needs of pedestrians. To reduce the operational impacts of large design vehicles, larger turn radii are used. This results in increased pavement areas, longer pedestrian crossing distances, and longer traffic signal arms.

To reduce the intersection area, a smaller design vehicle is used or encroachment is allowed. This reduces the potential for vehicle/pedestrian conflicts, decreases pedestrian crossing distance, and controls the speeds of turning vehicles.

If the selected design vehicle is too small, a capacity reduction and greater speed differences between turning vehicles and through vehicles might result. If the vehicle is larger than needed, the pavement areas, pedestrian crossing distances, and traffic signal arms will also be larger than needed. (See 1310.06 for information on selecting a design vehicle and acceptable encroachments.)

(6) Sight Distance

For traffic to move through intersections, drivers need to be able to see stop signs, traffic signals, and oncoming traffic in time to react accordingly.

Provide decision sight distance in advance of stop signs, traffic signals, and roundabouts. Where decision sight distance is not feasible, stopping sight distance may be provided. (See Chapter 1260 for guidance.)

Drivers approaching an intersection on the through roadway need to be able to see the intersection far enough in advance to assess developing situations and take appropriate action. Locate new intersections where decision sight distance is available for through traffic. At crosswalks, provide decision sight distance to an area the width of the crosswalk and 6 feet from the edge of traveled way. Where decision sight distance is not feasible, stopping sight distance may be provided. (See Chapter 1260 for guidance on decision and stopping sight distances.)

The driver of a vehicle that is stopped and waiting to cross or enter a through roadway needs obstruction-free sight triangles in order to see enough of the through roadway to complete all legal maneuvers before an approaching vehicle on the through roadway can reach the intersection. (See 1310.09 for guidance on intersection sight distance sight triangles.)

(7) Crossroads

When the crossroad is a city street or county road, design the crossroad beyond the intersection area according to the applicable design criteria given in Chapter 1140.

When the crossroad is a state facility, design the crossroad according to the applicable design level and functional class (see Chapters 100, 1130, and 1140). Continue the cross slope of the through roadway shoulder as the grade for the crossroad. Use a vertical curve that is at least 60 feet long to connect to the grade of the crossroad.

Evaluate the profile of the crossroad in the intersection area. The crown slope of the main line might need to be adjusted in the intersection area to improve the profile for the cross traffic.

Design the grade for stop-controlled legs so that the cross slope for the crosswalk is not greater than 2%. For all other legs, adjust the grade so the maximum crosswalk cross slope is 5%. (See Chapter 1510 for additional crosswalk information.)

In areas that experience accumulations of snow and ice for all legs that require traffic to stop, design a maximum grade of ±4% for a length equal to the anticipated queue length for stopped vehicles.

(8) Rural Expressway At-Grade Intersections

At-grade intersections on high-speed rural expressways can result in higher collision rates, mainly right-angle, far-side collisions for crossroad traffic making a left-turn or crossing maneuver. Evaluate grade separations at all intersections on rural expressways.

Design high-speed at-grade intersections on rural expressways as indirect left turns, split intersections, or roundabouts.

The State Traffic Engineer's approval is required for any new intersection or signal on a rural expressway.

(9) Interchange Ramp Terminals

When stop control or traffic signal control is selected, the design to be used or modified is shown in Exhibit 1310-10. Higher-volume intersections with multiple ramp lanes are designed individually.

In urban and suburban areas, match the design speed at the ramp terminal to the speed of the crossroad.

Where stop control or signal control is implemented, the intersection configuration criteria for ramp terminals are normally the same as for other intersections. One exception to this is that an angle point is allowed between an off-ramp and an on-ramp. This is because the through movement of traffic getting off the freeway, going through the intersection, and back on the freeway is minor.

Another exception is at ramp terminals where the through movement is eliminated (for example, at a single-point interchange). For ramp terminals that have two wye connections, one for right turns and the other for left turns, and no through movement, the intersection angle has little meaning and does not need to be considered.

Due to the probable development of large traffic generators adjacent to an interchange, width for a median on the local road is desirable whenever such development is believed to be imminent. This allows for future left-turn channelization. Use median channelization when justified by capacity determination and analysis or by the need to provide a smooth traffic flow.

Adjust the alignment of the intersection legs to fit the traffic movements and to discourage wrong-way movements. Use the allowed intersecting angles of 75° to 105° (60° to 120° for modified design level) to avoid broken back or reverse curves in the ramp alignment.

1310.06 Design Vehicle Selection

When selecting a design vehicle for an intersection, consider the needs of all users and the costs. The primary use of the design vehicle is to determine radii for each leg of the intersection. It is possible for each leg to have a different design vehicle. Exhibit 1310-5 shows commonly used design vehicle types.

Evaluate the existing and anticipated future traffic to select a design vehicle that is the largest vehicle that normally uses the intersection. Exhibit 1310-6 shows the minimum design vehicles. Provide justification to use a smaller vehicle; include a traffic analysis showing that the proposed vehicle is appropriate.

To minimize the disruption to other traffic, design the intersection to allow the design vehicles to make each turning movement without encroaching on curbs, opposing lanes, or same-direction lanes at the entrance leg. Use turning path templates (Exhibits 1310-20a through 20c, other published templates, or computer-generated templates) to verify that the design vehicle can make the turning movements.

Encroachment on the same-direction lanes of the exit leg and the shoulder might be necessary to minimize crosswalk distances; however, this might negatively impact vehicular operations. Document and justify the operational tradeoffs associated with this encroachment. When encroachment on the shoulder is required, increase the pavement structure to support the anticipated traffic.

Vehicle Type	Design Symbol
Passenger car, including light delivery trucks	P
Single-unit bus	BUS
Articulated bus	A-BUS
Single-unit truck	SU
Semitrailer truck, overall wheelbase of 40 ft	WB-40
Semitrailer truck, overall wheelbase of 50 ft	WB-50
Semitrailer truck, overall wheelbase of 67 ft	WB-67
Motor home	MH
Passenger car pulling a camper trailer	P/T
Motor home pulling a boat trailer	MH/B

Design Vehicle Types
Exhibit 1310-5

Intersection Type	Minimum Design Vehicle
Junction of Major Truck Routes	WB-67
Junction of State Routes	WB-50[1]
Ramp Terminals	WB-50[1]
Other Rural	WB-50
Industrial	WB-40
Commercial	SU[2][3]
Residential	SU[2][3]

Notes:

[1] WB-67 is desirable.

[2] To accommodate pedestrians, the P vehicle may be used as the design vehicle if justification, with a traffic analysis, is documented.

[3] When the intersection is on a transit or school bus route, use the BUS design vehicle as a minimum. (See Chapter 1430 for additional guidance on transit facilities.)

Minimum Intersection Design Vehicle
Exhibit 1310-6

In addition to the design vehicle, design intersections to accommodate the occasional larger vehicle. When vehicles larger than the design vehicle are allowed and are anticipated to occasionally use the intersection, make certain they can make the turn without leaving the paved shoulders or encroaching on a sidewalk. The amount of encroachment allowed is dependent on the frequency of vehicle usage and the resulting disruption to other traffic. Use the WB-67 as the largest vehicle at state route-to-state route junctions. Document and justify any required encroachment into other lanes and any degradation of intersection operation.

1310.07 Design Elements

When designing an intersection, identify and address the needs of all intersection users.

When pedestrian issues are a primary concern, the design objective becomes one of reducing the potential for vehicle/pedestrian conflicts. This is done by minimizing pedestrian crossing distances and controlling the speeds of turning vehicles. This normally leads to right-corner designs with smaller turning radii. The negative impacts include possible capacity reductions and greater speed differences between turning vehicles and through vehicles.

Pedestrian refuge islands can also improve pedestrian safety. Pedestrian refuge islands minimize the crossing distance, reduce the conflict area, and minimize the impacts on vehicular traffic. When designing islands, speeds can be reduced by designing the turning roadway with a taper or large radius curve at the beginning of the turn and a small radius curve at the end. This allows larger islands while forcing the turning traffic to slow down.

Channelization, the separation or regulation of traffic movements into delineated paths of travel, can facilitate the orderly movement of vehicles, bicycles, and pedestrians. Channelization includes left-turn lanes, right-turn lanes, speed change lanes (both acceleration and deceleration lanes), and islands.

(1) Right-Turn Corners

Exhibit 1310-11 shows right-turn corner designs for the design vehicles. These are considered the minimum pavement area to accommodate the design vehicles without encroachment on the adjacent lane at either leg of the curve.

With an evaluate upgrade, the right-turn corner designs given in Exhibit 1310-11 may be modified. Document the benefits and impacts of the modified design, including changes to vehicle-pedestrian conflicts; vehicle encroachment on the shoulder or adjacent same-direction lane at the exit leg; capacity restrictions for right-turning vehicles or other degradation of intersection operations; and the effects on other traffic movements. To verify that the design vehicle can make the turn, include a plot of the design showing the design vehicle turning path template.

(2) Left-Turn Lanes and Turn Radii

Left-turn lanes provide storage, separate from the through lanes, for left-turning vehicles waiting for a signal to change or for a gap in opposing traffic. (See 1310.07(4) for a discussion on speed change lanes.)

Design left-turn channelization to provide sufficient operational flexibility to function under peak loads and adverse conditions.

(a) One-Way Left-Turn Lanes

One-way left-turn lanes are separate storage lanes for vehicles turning left from one roadway onto another. One-way left-turn lanes may be an economical way to lessen delays and crash potential involving left-turning vehicles. In addition, they can allow deceleration clear of the through traffic lanes. Provide a minimum storage length of 100 feet for one-way left-turn lanes. When evaluating left-turn lanes, include impacts to all intersection movements and users.

At signalized intersections, use a traffic signal analysis to determine whether a left-turn lane is needed and the storage length greater than the 100-foot minimum (see Chapter 1330).

At unsignalized intersections, use the following as a guide to determine whether or not to provide one-way left-turn lanes:

- A traffic analysis indicates congestion reduction with a left-turn lane. On two-lane highways, use Exhibit 1310-12a, based on total traffic volume (DHV) for both directions and percent left-turn traffic, to determine whether further investigation is needed. On four-lane highways, use Exhibit 1310-12b to determine whether a left-turn lane is recommended.
- A study indicates crash reduction with a left-turn lane.
- Restrictive geometrics require left-turning vehicles to slow greatly below the speed of the through traffic.
- There is less than decision sight distance for the traffic approach a stopped left-turning vehicle at the intersection.

A traffic analysis based on the *Highway Capacity Manual* (HCM) may also be used to determine whether left-turn lanes are needed to maintain the desired level of service.

Determine the storage length on two-lane highways by using Exhibits 1310-13a through 13c. On four-lane highways, use Exhibit 1310-12b. These lengths do not consider trucks. Use Exhibit 1310-7 for storage length when trucks are present.

Storage Length* (ft)	% Trucks in Left-Turn Movement				
	10	20	30	40	50
100	125	125	150	150	150
150	175	200	200	200	200
200	225	250	275	300	300
250	275	300	325	350	375
300	350	375	400	400	400
*Length from Exhibits 1310-12b and 1310-13a, 13b, or 13c.					

Left-Turn Storage With Trucks (ft)
Exhibit 1310-7

Use turning templates to verify that left-turn movements for the design vehicle(s) do not have conflicts. Design opposing left-turn design vehicle paths with a minimum 4-foot (12-foot desirable) clearance between opposing turning paths.

Where one-way left-turn channelization with curbing is to be provided, evaluate surface water runoff and design additional drainage facilities if needed to control the runoff.

Provide illumination at left-turn lanes in accordance with the guidelines in Chapter 1040.

At signalized intersections with high left-turn volumes, double (or triple) left-turn lanes may be needed to maintain the desired level of service. For a double left-turn, a throat width of 30 to 36 feet is desirable on the exit leg of the turn to offset vehicle offtracking and the difficulty of two vehicles turning abreast. Use turning path templates to verify that the design vehicle can complete the turn. Where the design vehicle is a WB-40 or larger, it is desirable to provide for the design vehicle in the outside lane and an SU vehicle turning abreast rather than two design vehicles turning abreast.

Exhibits 1310-14a through 14f show left-turn lane geometrics, which are described as follows:

1. **Widening**

   It is desirable that offsets and pavement widening (see Exhibit 1310-14a) be symmetrical about the centerline or baseline. Where right of way or topographic restrictions, crossroad alignments, or other circumstances preclude symmetrical widening, pavement widening may be on one side only.

2. **Divided Highways**

   Widening is not needed for left-turn lane channelization where medians are 11 feet wide or wider (see Exhibits 1310-14b through 14d). For medians between 13 feet and 23 feet or where the acceleration lane is not provided, it is desirable to design the left-turn lane adjacent to the opposing lane (see Exhibit 1310-14b) to improve sight distance and increase opposing left-turn clearances.

A median acceleration lane (see Exhibits 1310-14c and 14d) may be provided where the median is 23 feet or wider. The median acceleration lane might not be needed at a signalized intersection. When a median acceleration lane is to be used, design it in accordance with 1310.07(4), Speed Change Lanes. Where medians have sufficient width, provide a 2-foot shoulder adjacent to a left-turn lane.

3. **Minimum Protected Left Turn With a Median**

At intersections on divided highways where channelized left-turn lanes are not provided, provide the minimum protected storage area (see Exhibit 1310-14e).

4. **Modifications to Left-Turn Designs**

With an evaluate upgrade, the left-turn lane designs discussed above and given in Exhibits 1310-14a through 14e may be modified. Document the benefits and impacts of the modified design, including changes to vehicle-pedestrian conflicts; vehicle encroachment; deceleration length; capacity restrictions for turning vehicles or other degradation of intersection operations; and the effects on other traffic movements. Provide a modified design that is able to accommodate the design vehicle, and provide for the striping (see the *Standard Plans* and the MUTCD). To verify that the design vehicle can make the turn, include a plot of the design showing the design vehicle turning path template.

(b) **Two-Way Left-Turn Lanes (TWLTL)**

Two-way left-turn lanes are located between opposing lanes of traffic. They are used by vehicles making left turns from either direction, from or onto the roadway.

Use TWLTLs only on managed access highways where there are no more than two through lanes in each direction. Evaluate installation of TWLTLs where:

- An accident study indicates reduced crashes with a TWLTL.
- There are existing closely spaced access points or minor street intersections.
- There are unacceptable through traffic delays or capacity reductions because of left-turning vehicles.

A TWLTL can reduce delays to through traffic, reduce rear-end accidents, and provide separation between opposing lanes of traffic. However, they do not provide a safe refuge for pedestrians and can encourage strip development with additional closely spaced access points. Evaluate other alternatives (such as prohibiting midblock left turns and providing for U-turns) before using a TWLTL. (See Chapters 1140 and 540 for additional restrictions on the use of TWLTLs.)

The basic design for a TWLTL is illustrated in Exhibit 1310-14f. Additional criteria are as follows:

- The desirable length of a TWLTL is not less than 250 feet.
- Provide illumination in accordance with the guidelines in Chapter 1040.
- Pavement markings, signs, and other traffic control devices must be in accordance with the MUTCD and the *Standard Plans*.
- Provide clear channelization when changing from TWLTLs to one-way left-turn lanes at an intersection.

(3) Right-Turn Lanes

Right-turn movements influence intersection capacity even though there is no conflict between right-turning vehicles and opposing traffic. Right-turn lanes might be needed to maintain efficient intersection operation. Use the following guidelines to determine when to provide right-turn lanes at unsignalized intersections:

- The recommendation from Exhibit 1310-15 for multilane roadways with a posted speed 45 mph or above and for all two-lane roadways.
- An accident study indicates an overall accident reduction with a right-turn lane.
- The presence of pedestrians who require right-turning vehicles to stop.
- Restrictive geometrics that require right-turning vehicles to slow greatly below the speed of the through traffic.
- Less than decision sight distance at the approach to the intersection.

For unsignalized intersections, see 1310.07(4) for guidance on right-turn lane lengths. For signalized intersections, use a traffic signal analysis to determine whether a right-turn lane is needed and the needed length (see Chapter 1330).

A capacity analysis may be used to determine whether right-turn lanes are needed to maintain the desired level of service.

Where adequate right of way exists, providing right-turn lanes is relatively inexpensive and can provide increased operational efficiency.

The right-turn pocket or the right-turn taper (see Exhibit 1310-16) may be used at any minor intersection where a right-turn lane is not provided. These designs reduce interference and delay to the through movement by offering an earlier exit to right-turning vehicles.

If the right-turn pocket is used, Exhibit 1310-16 shows taper lengths for various posted speeds.

(4) Speed Change Lanes

A speed change lane is an auxiliary lane primarily for the acceleration or deceleration of vehicles entering or leaving the through traveled way. Speed change lanes are normally provided for at-grade intersections on multilane divided highways with access control. Where roadside conditions and right of way allow, speed change lanes may be provided on other through roadways. Justification for a speed change lane depends on many factors, including speed, traffic volumes, capacity, type of highway, design and frequency of intersections, and accident history.

A dedicated deceleration lane (see Exhibit 1310-17) is advantageous because it removes slowing vehicles from the through lane.

An acceleration lane (see Exhibit 1310-18) is not as advantageous because entering drivers can wait for an opportunity to merge without disrupting through traffic. However, acceleration lanes for left-turning vehicles provide a benefit by allowing the turn to be made in two movements.

When either deceleration or acceleration lanes are to be used, design them in accordance with Exhibits 1310-17 and 1310-18. When the design speed of the turning traffic is greater than 20 mph, design the speed change lane as a ramp in accordance with Chapter 1360. When a deceleration lane is used with a left-turn lane, add the deceleration length to the storage length.

(5) Drop Lanes

A lane may be dropped at an intersection with a turn-only lane or beyond the intersection. Do not allow a lane-reduction taper to cross an intersection or end less than 100 feet before an intersection. (See Chapter 1210 for lane reduction pavement transitions.)

When a lane is dropped beyond signalized intersections, provide a lane of sufficient length to allow smooth merging. For facilities with a posted speed of 45 mph or higher, use a minimum length of 1,500 feet. For facilities with a posted speed lower than 45 mph, provide a lane of sufficient length so that the advanced lane reduction warning sign can be placed not less than 100 feet beyond the intersection area.

When a lane is dropped beyond unsignalized intersections, provide a lane beyond the intersection not less than the acceleration lane length from Exhibit 1310-18.

(6) Shoulders

With justification, shoulder widths may be reduced within areas channelized for intersection turning lanes or speed change lanes. Apply left shoulder width criteria to the median shoulder of divided highways. On one-way couplets, apply the width criteria for the right shoulder to both the right and left shoulders.

For roadways without curb sections, the shoulder adjacent to turn lanes and speed change lanes may be reduced to 2 feet on the left and 4 feet on the right. When a curb and sidewalk section is used with a turn lane or speed change lane 400 feet or less in length, the shoulder abutting the turn lane may be eliminated. In instances where curb is used without sidewalk, provide a minimum of 4-foot-wide shoulders on the right. Where curbing is used adjacent to left-turn lanes, the shoulder may be eliminated. Adjust the design of the intersection as needed to allow for vehicle tracking.

Reducing the shoulder width at intersections facilitates the installation of turn lanes without unduly affecting the overall width of the roadway. A narrower roadway also reduces pedestrian exposure in crosswalks and discourages motorists from using the shoulder to bypass other turning traffic.

On routes where provisions are made for bicycles, continue the bicycle facility between the turn lane and the through lane. (See Chapter 1520 for information on bicycle facilities.)

(7) Islands

An island is a defined area within an intersection between traffic lanes for the separation of vehicle movements or for pedestrian refuge. Within an intersection, a median is considered an island. Design islands to clearly delineate the traffic channels to drivers and pedestrians.

Traffic islands perform the following functions:

- Channelization islands control and direct traffic movements.
- Divisional islands separate traffic movements
- Refuge islands provide refuge for pedestrians.
- Islands can provide for the placement of traffic control devices and luminaires.
- Islands can provide areas within the roadway for landscaping.

(a) **Size and Shape**

Divisional and refuge islands are normally elongated and at least 4 feet wide and 20 feet long.

Channelization islands are normally triangular. In rural areas, 75 ft^2 is the minimum island area and 100 ft^2 is desirable. In urban areas where posted speeds are 25 mph or below, smaller islands are acceptable. Use islands with at least 200 ft^2 if pedestrians will be crossing or traffic control devices or luminaires will be installed.

Design triangular-shaped islands as shown in Exhibits 1310-19a through 19c. The shoulder and offset widths illustrated are for islands with vertical curbs 6 inches or higher. Where painted islands are used, such as in rural areas, these widths are desirable but may be omitted. (See Chapter 1240 for desirable turning roadway widths.)

Island markings may be supplemented with reflective raised pavement markers.

Provide barrier-free access at crosswalk locations where raised islands are used (see Chapter 1510).

(b) **Location**

Design the approach ends of islands to provide visibility to alert motorists to their presence. Position the island so that a smooth transition in vehicle speed and direction is attained. Begin transverse lane shifts far enough in advance of the intersection to allow gradual transitions. Avoid introducing islands on a horizontal or vertical curve. If the use of an island on a curve cannot be avoided, provide sight distance, illumination, or extension of the island.

(c) **Compound Right-Turn Lane**

To design large islands, the common method is to use a large-radius curve for the turning traffic. While this does provide a larger island, it also encourages higher turning speeds. Where pedestrians are a concern, higher turning speeds are undesirable. An alternative is a compound curve with a large radius followed by a small radius (see Exhibit 1310-19b). This design forces the turning traffic to slow down.

(d) **Curbing**

Provide vertical curb 6 inches or higher for:

- Islands with luminaires, signals, or other traffic control devices.
- Pedestrian refuge islands.

Also consider curbing for:

- Divisional and channelizing islands.
- Landscaped islands.

In general, except to meet one of the uses listed above, it is desirable not to use curbs on facilities with a posted speed of 45 mph or above.

Avoid using curbs if the same objective can be attained with pavement markings.

Refer to Chapter 1140 for additional information and design criteria on the use of curbs.

1310.08 U-Turns

For divided multilane highways without full access control that have access points where the median prevents left turns, evaluate the demand for locations that allow U-turns. Normally, U-turn opportunities are provided at intersections. However, where intersections are spaced far apart, U-turn median openings may be provided between intersections to accommodate U-turns. Use the desirable U-turn spacing (see Exhibit 1310-8) as a guide to determine when to provide U-turn median openings between intersections. Where the U-turning volumes are low, longer spacing may be used.

Locate U-turn median openings where intersection sight distance can be provided.

Urban/Rural	Desirable	Minimum
Urban[1]	1,000 ft	[2]
Suburban	½ mi	¼ mi[3]
Rural	1 mi	½ mi

Notes:

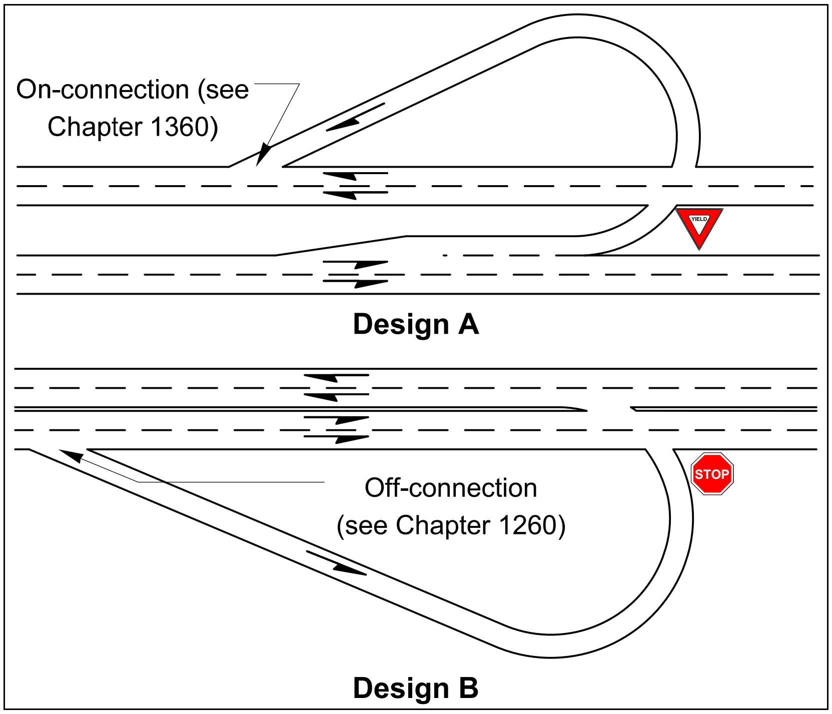
[1] For design speeds higher than 45 mph, use suburban spacing.

[2] The minimum spacing is the acceleration lane length from a stop (see Exhibit 1310-18) plus 300 ft.

[3] For design speeds 60 mph or higher, the minimum spacing is the acceleration lane length from a stop (see Exhibit 1310-18) plus 300 ft.

U-Turn Spacing
Exhibit 1310-8

When designing U-turn median openings, use Exhibit 1310-21 as a guide. Where the median is less than 40 feet wide with a large design vehicle, provide a U-turn roadway (see Exhibit 1310-9). Design A, with the U-turn roadway after the left-turn, is desirable. Use Design A when the median can accommodate a left-turn lane. Use Design B only with narrow medians where left-turn channelization cannot be built in the median.



U-Turn Roadway
Exhibit 1310-9

Document the need for U-turn locations and the spacing used, and justify the selected design vehicle. If the design vehicle is smaller than the largest vehicle using the facility, provide an alternate route.

U-turns at signal-controlled intersections do not need the acceleration lanes shown in Exhibit 1310-21. For new U-turn locations at signal-controlled intersections, evaluate conflicts between right-turning vehicles from side streets and U-turning vehicles. Warning signs on the cross street might be appropriate.

1310.09 Intersection Sight Distance

For traffic to move through intersections, drivers need to be able to see stop signs, traffic signals, and oncoming traffic in time to react accordingly.

Provide decision sight distance, where feasible, in advance of stop signs, traffic signals, and roundabouts. (See Chapter 1260 for guidance.)

The driver of a vehicle that is stopped and waiting to cross or enter a through roadway needs obstruction-free sight triangles in order to see enough of the through roadway to complete all legal maneuvers before an approaching vehicle on the through roadway can reach the intersection. Use Exhibit 1310-22a to determine minimum sight distance along the through roadway.

The sight triangle is determined as shown in Exhibit 1310-22b. Within the sight triangle, lay back the cut slopes and remove, lower, or move hedges, trees, signs, utility poles, signal poles, and anything else large enough to be a sight obstruction. Eliminate parking to remove obstructions to sight distance. In order to maintain the sight distance, the sight triangle must be within the right of way or a state maintenance easement (see Chapter 510).

The minimum setback distance for the sight triangle is 18 feet from the edge of traveled way. This is for a vehicle stopped 10 feet from the edge of traveled way. The driver is almost always 8 feet or less from the front of the vehicle; therefore, 8 feet are added to the setback. When the stop bar is placed more than 10 feet from the edge of traveled way, providing the sight triangle to a point 8 feet back of the stop bar is desirable.

Provide a clear sight triangle for a P vehicle at all intersections. In addition, provide a clear sight triangle for the SU vehicle for rural highway conditions. If there is significant combination truck traffic, use the WB-50 or WB-67 rather than the SU. In areas where SU or WB vehicles are minimal and right of way restrictions limit sight triangle clearing, only the P vehicle sight distance needs to be provided.

At existing intersections, when sight obstructions within the sight triangle cannot be removed due to limited right of way, the intersection sight distance may be modified. Drivers who do not have the desired sight distance creep out until the sight distance is available; therefore, the setback may be reduced to 10 feet. Document the right of way width and provide a brief analysis of the intersection sight distance clarifying the reasons for reduction. Verify and document that there is no identified collision trend at the intersection. Document the intersection location and the available sight distance in the Design Variance Inventory (see Chapter 300) as a design exception.

If the intersection sight distance cannot be provided using the reductions in the preceding paragraph, where stopping sight distance is provided for the major roadway, the intersection sight distance, at the 10-foot setback point, may be reduced to the stopping sight distance for the major roadway, with an evaluate upgrade and HQ Design Office review and concurrence. (See Chapter 1260 for required stopping sight distance.) Document the right of way width and provide a brief analysis of the intersection sight distance clarifying the reasons for reduction. Verify and document that there is no identified collision trend at the intersection. Document the intersection location and the available sight distance in the Design Variance Inventory (see Chapter 300) as an evaluate upgrade.

In some instances, intersection sight distance is provided at the time of construction, but subsequent vegetative growth has degraded the sight distance available. The growth may be seasonal or occur over time. In these instances, intersection sight distance can be restored through the periodically scheduled maintenance of vegetation in the sight triangle within the WSDOT right of way or state maintenance easement.

At intersections controlled by traffic signals, provide sight distance for right-turning vehicles.

Designs for movements that cross divided highways are influenced by median widths. If the median is wide enough to store the design vehicle, with a 3-foot clearance at both ends of the vehicle, sight distances are determined in two steps. The first step is for crossing from a stopped position to the median storage. The second step is for the movement, either across or left into the through roadway.

Design sight distance for ramp terminals as at-grade intersections with only left- and right-turning movements. An added element at ramp terminals is the grade separation structure. Exhibit 1310-22b gives the sight distance guidance in the vicinity of a structure. In addition, when the crossroad is an undercrossing, check the sight distance under the structure graphically using a truck eye height of 6 feet and an object height of 1.5 feet.

Document a brief description of the intersection area, sight distance restrictions, and traffic characteristics to support the design vehicle and sight distances chosen.

1310.10 Traffic Control at Intersections

Intersection traffic control is the process of moving traffic through areas of potential conflict where two or more roadways meet. Signs, signals, channelization, and physical layout are the major tools used to establish intersection control.

(1) Intersection Traffic Control Objectives

There are three objectives to intersection traffic control that can greatly improve intersection operations.

(a) **Maximize Intersection Capacity**

Since two or more traffic streams cross, converge, or diverge at intersections, the capacity of an intersection is normally less than the roadway between intersections. It is usually necessary to assign right of way through the use of traffic control devices to maximize capacity for all users of the intersection. Turn prohibitions may be used to increase intersection capacity.

(b) **Reduce Conflict Points**

The crossing, converging, and diverging of traffic creates conflicts that increase the potential for accidents. Establishing appropriate controls can reduce the possibility of two cars attempting to occupy the same space at the same time. Pedestrian accident potential can also be reduced by appropriate controls.

(c) **Prioritize Major Street Traffic**

Traffic on major routes is normally given the right of way over traffic on minor streets to increase intersection operational efficiency.

If a signal is being considered or exists at an intersection that is to be modified, provide a preliminary signal plan (see Chapter 1330). If a new signal permit is required, obtain approval before the design is approved.

(2) Analysis of Alternatives

Provide an analysis of alternatives for a proposal to install a traffic signal or a roundabout on a state route, either NHS or Non-NHS, with a posted speed limit of 45 mph or higher, approved by the region Traffic Engineer, with review and comment by the HQ Design Office, prior to proceeding with the design. Include the following alternatives in the analysis:

- Channelization: deceleration lanes, storage, and acceleration lanes for left- and right-turning traffic.
- Right-off/right-on with U-turn opportunities.
- Grade separation.
- Roundabouts.
- Traffic control signals.

Include a copy of the analysis with the preliminary signal plan or roundabout justification.

1310.11 Signing and Pavement Marking

Use the MUTCD and the *Standard Plans* for signing and pavement marking criteria. Provide a route confirmation sign on all state routes shortly after major intersections. (See Chapter 1020 for additional information on signing.)

Painted or plastic pavement markings are normally used to delineate travel paths. For pavement marking details, see the MUTCD, Chapter 1030, and the *Standard Plans*.

Contact the region or HQ Traffic Office for additional information when designing signing and pavement markings.

1310.12 Procedures

Document design decisions and conclusions in accordance with Chapter 300. For highways with limited access control, see Chapter 530.

(1) Approval

An intersection is approved in accordance with Chapter 300. Complete the following items, as needed, before intersection approval:

- Traffic analysis
- Deviations approved in accordance with Chapter 300
- Approved Traffic Signal Permit (DOT Form 242-014 EF) (see Chapter 1330)

(2) Intersection Plans

Provide intersection plans for any increases in capacity (turn lanes) at an intersection, modification of channelization, or change of intersection geometrics. Support the need for intersection or channelization modifications with history; school bus and mail route studies; hazardous materials route studies; pedestrian use; public meeting comments; and so forth.

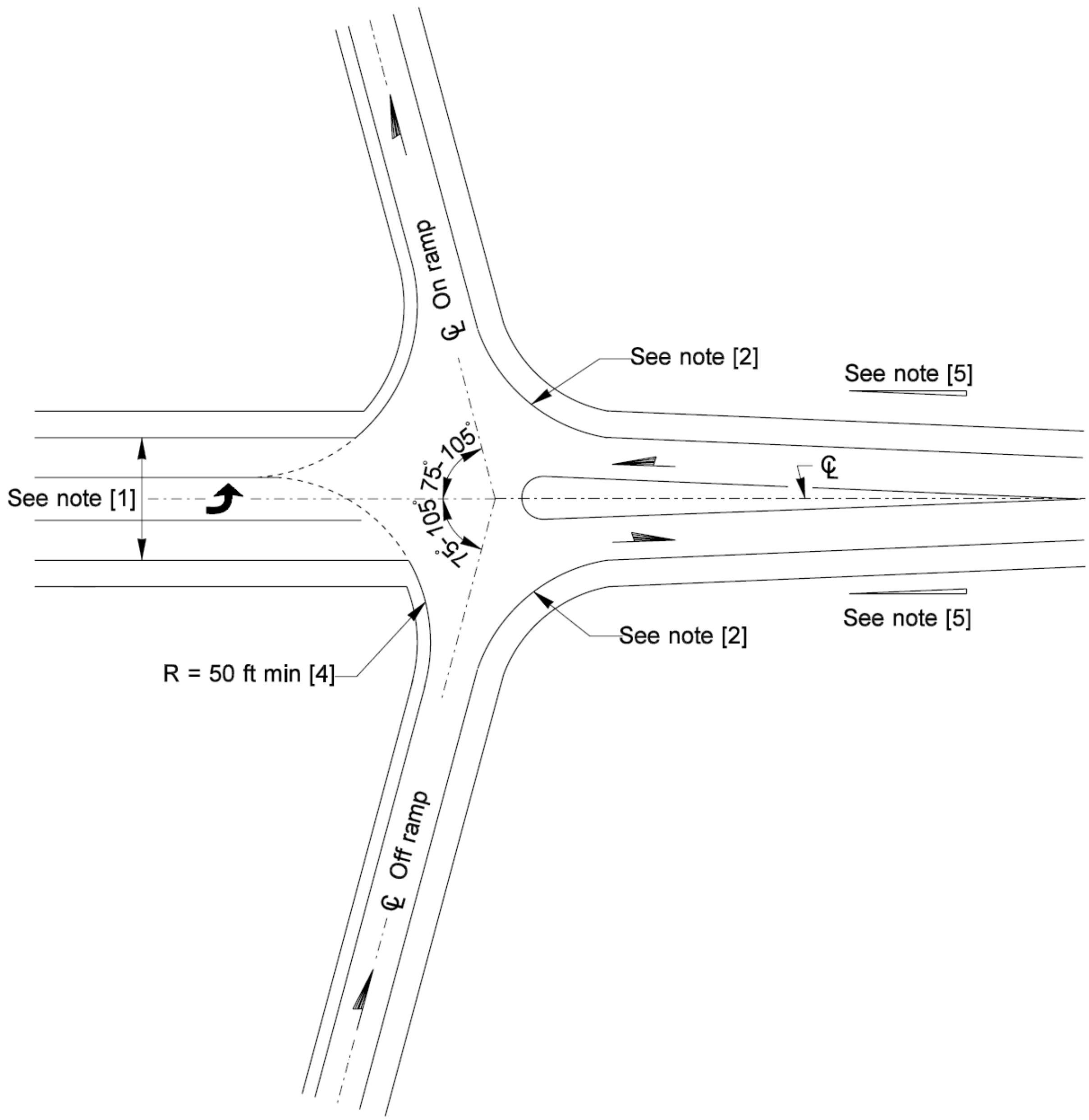
For information to be included on the intersection plan for approval, see the Intersection/Channelization Plan for Approval Checklist on the following website:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

(3) Local Agency or Developer-Initiated Intersections

There is a separate procedure for local agency or developer-initiated projects at intersections with state routes. The project initiator submits an intersection plan and the documentation of design decisions that led to the plan to the region for approval. For those plans requiring a design variance, the deviation or evaluate upgrade must be approved in accordance with Chapter 300 prior to approval of the plan. After the plan approval, the region prepares a construction agreement with the project initiator (see the *Utilities Manual*).

1310.13 Documentation

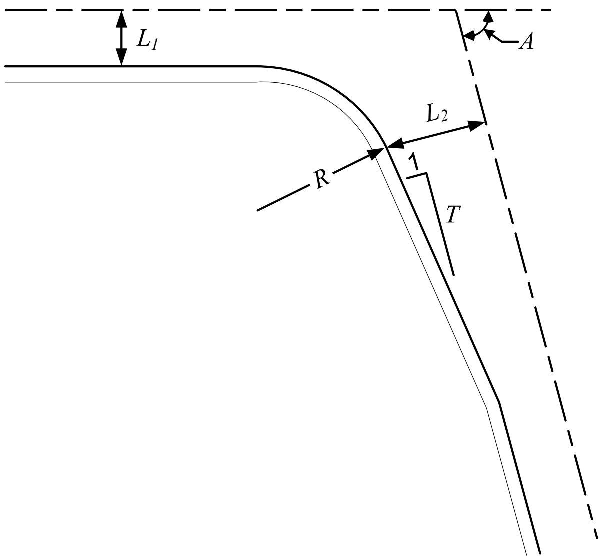
For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



Notes:

[1] 12-ft through lanes and 13-ft left-turn lane desirable.
[2] For right-turn corner design, see Exhibit 1310-11.
[3] Intersections may be designed individually.
[4] Use templates to verify that the design vehicle can make the turn.
[5] For taper rates, see Exhibit 1310-14a, Table 1.

Interchange Ramp Terminal Details
Exhibit 1310-10



L_1 = Minimum available roadway width[2] that the vehicle is turning from

L_2 = Available roadway width[2] for the vehicle leaving the intersection

R = Radius to the edge of traveled way

T = Taper rate (length per unit of width of widening)

A = Delta angle of the turning vehicle

Vehicle	A	R	L_1[1]	L_2[2]	T	Vehicle	A	R	L_1[1]	L_2[2]	T
WB-67	60	85	11	22	7	WB-40	60	55	11	15	7.5
	75	75	11	21	8		75	55	11	15	7.5
	90	70	11	21	8		90	55	11	14	7.5
	105	55	11	24	7		105	45	11	16	7.5
	120	50	11	24	7		120	45	11	15	7.5
WB-50	60	55	11	19	6	SU & BUS	All	50	11	11	25
	75	55	11	18	6	P	All	35	11	11	25
	90	55	11	17	6						
	105	50	11	17	6						
	120	45	11	18	6						

Notes:

[1] When available roadway width is less than 11 ft, widen at 25:1.

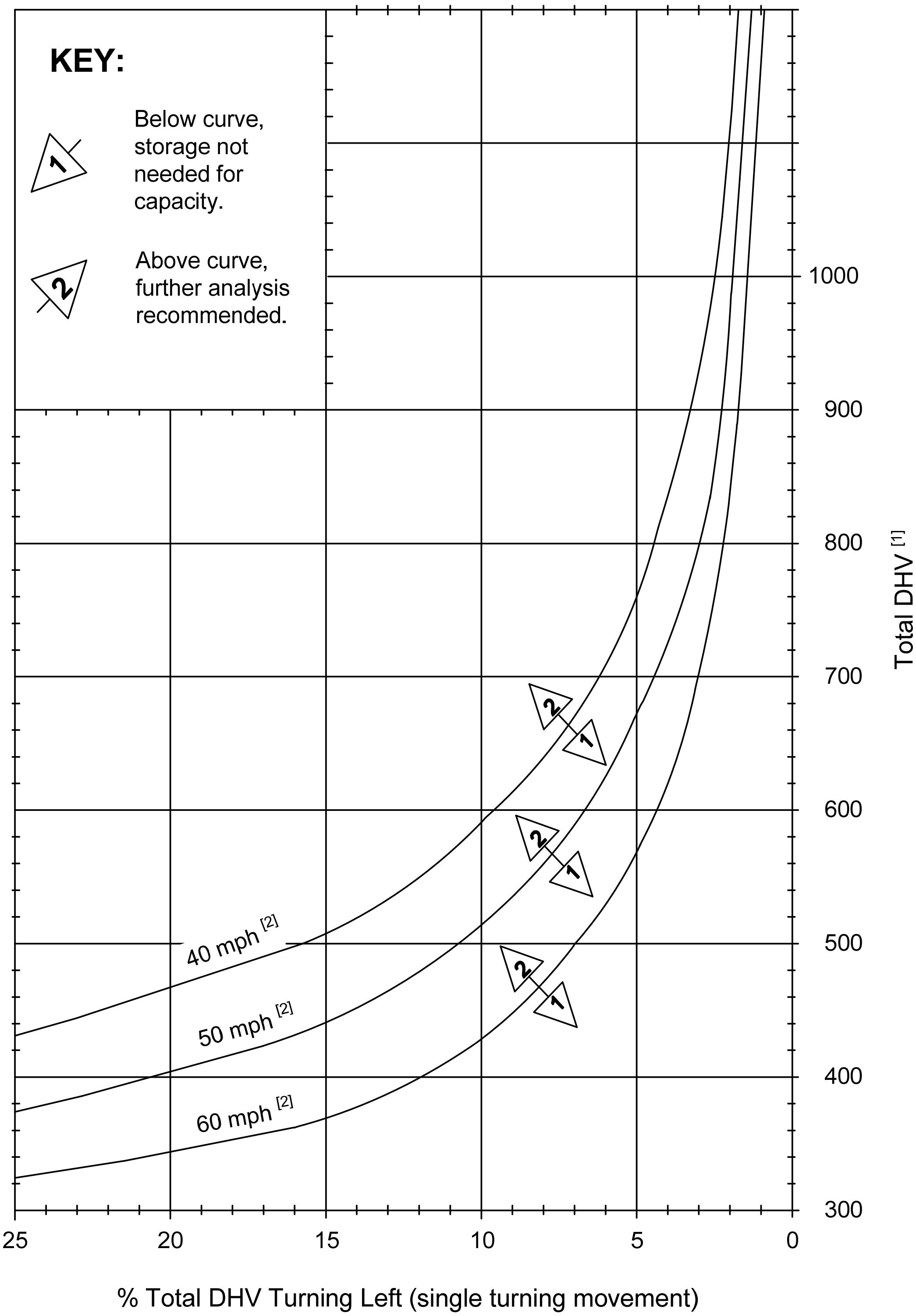
[2] Available roadway width includes the shoulder, less a 2-ft clearance to a curb, and all the same-direction lanes of the exit leg at signalized intersections.

General:

All distances given in feet and angles in degrees.

Right-Turn Corner

Exhibit 1310-11

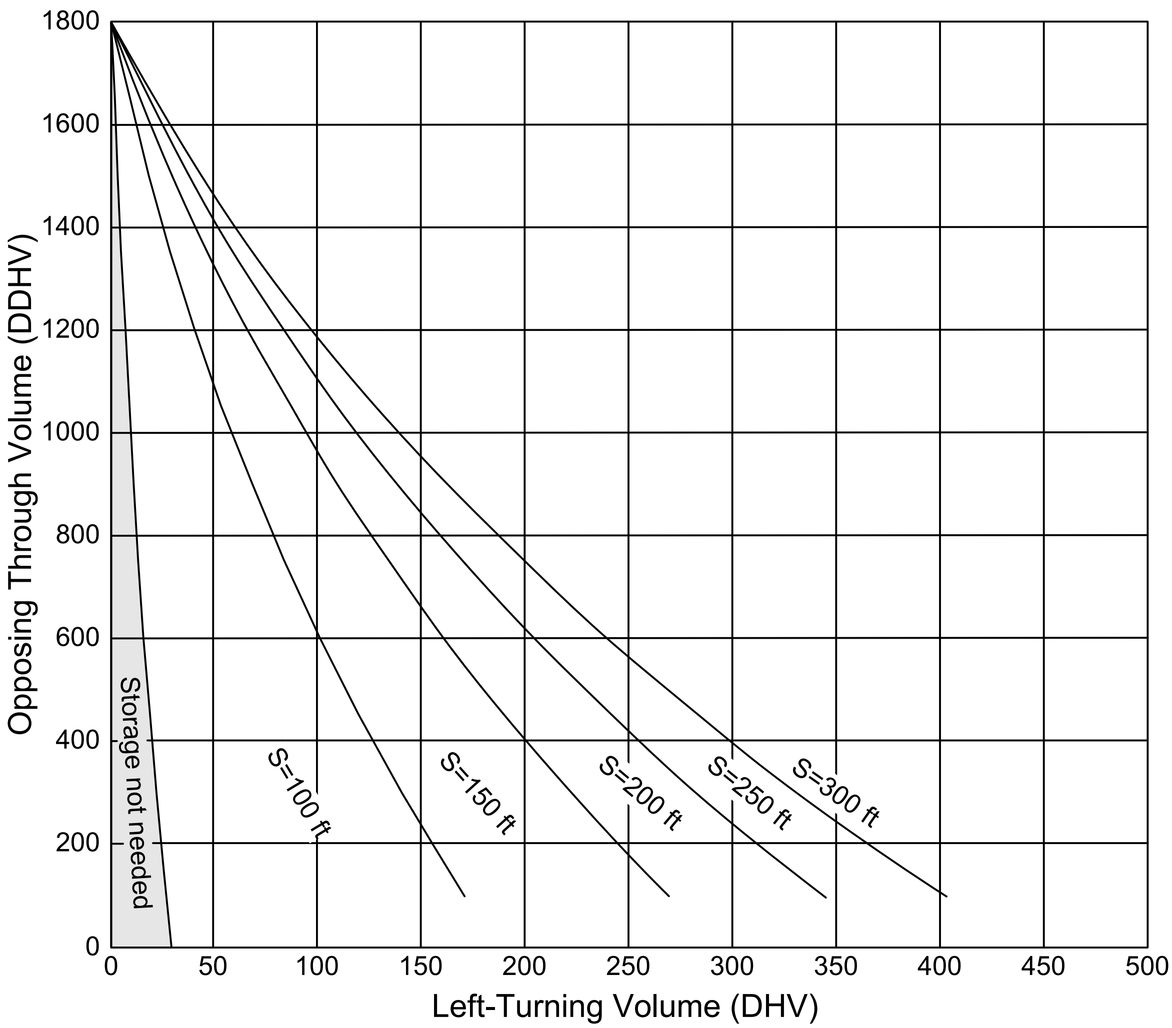


Notes:

[1] DHV is total volume from both directions.

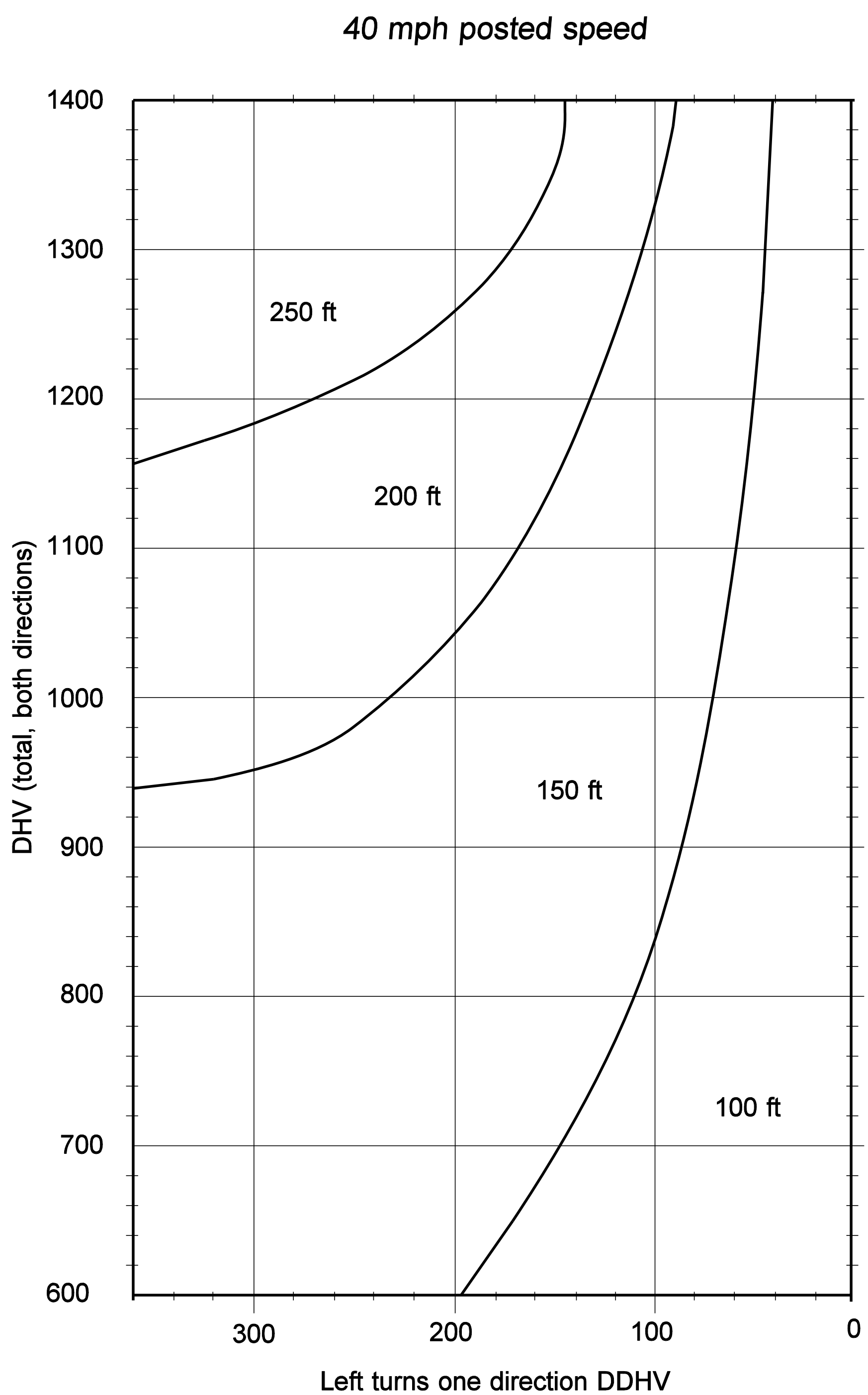
[2] Speeds are posted speeds.

Left-Turn Storage Guidelines: Two-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-12a

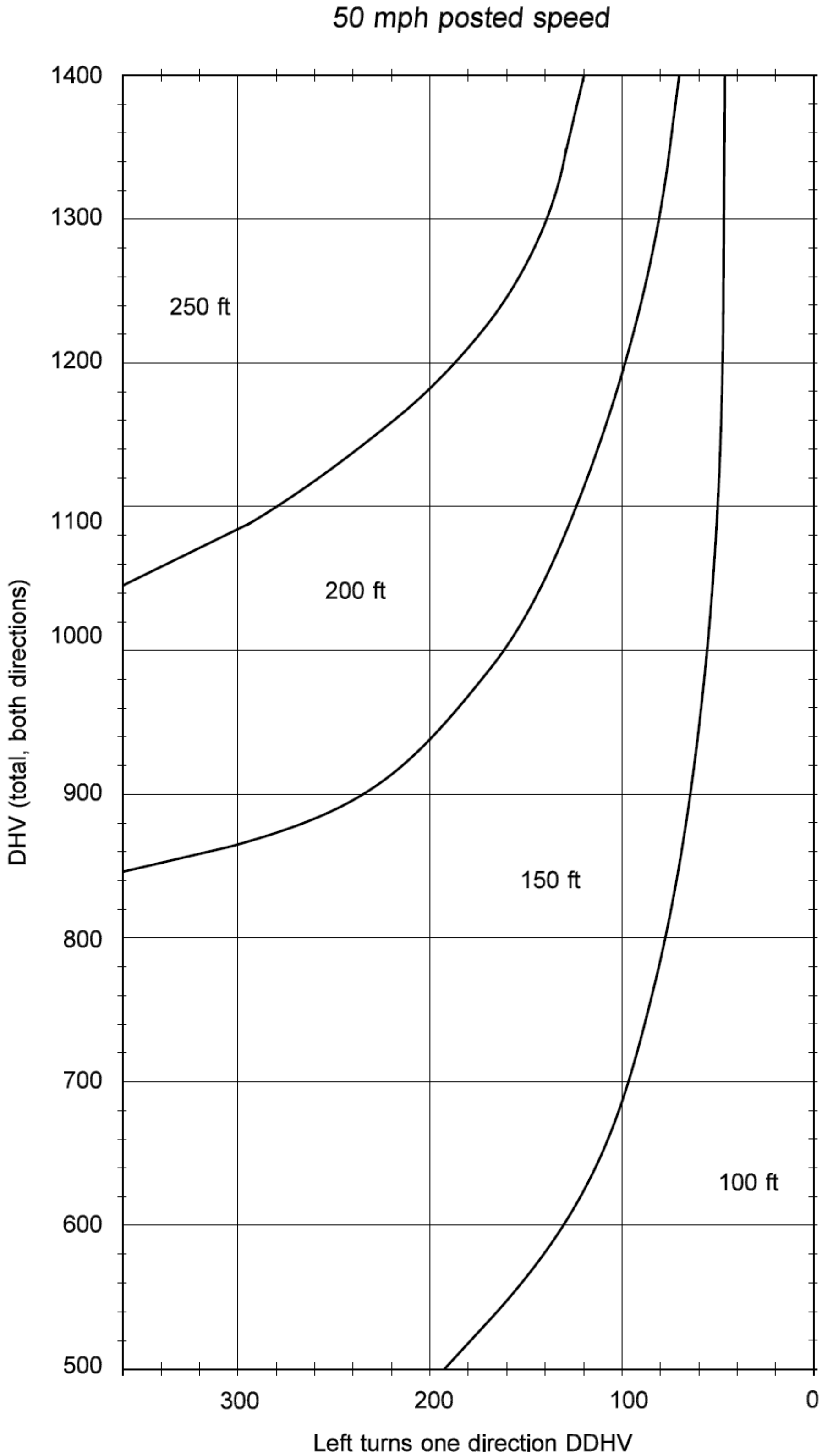


S = Left-turn storage length

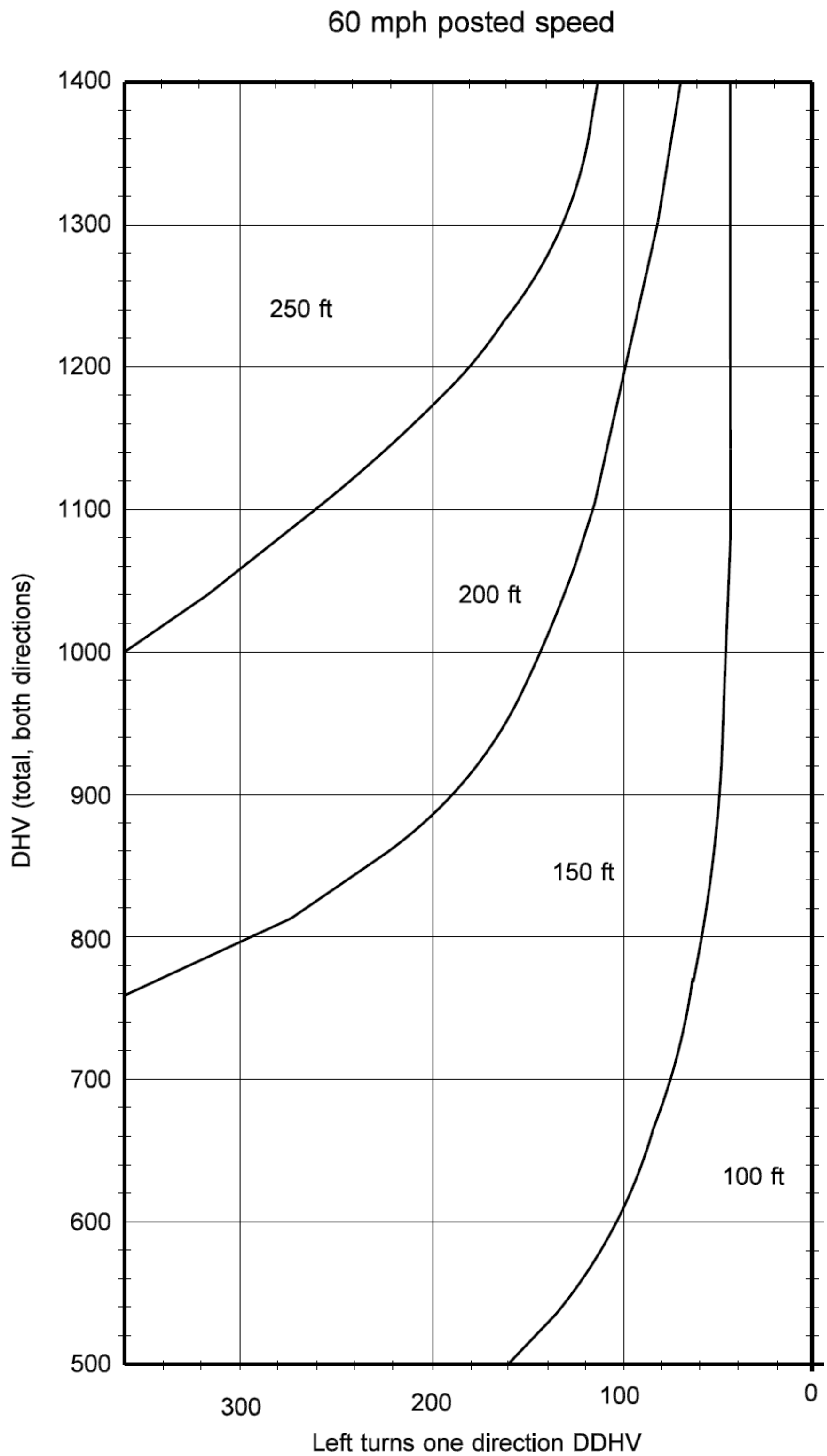
Left-Turn Storage Guidelines: Four-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-12b



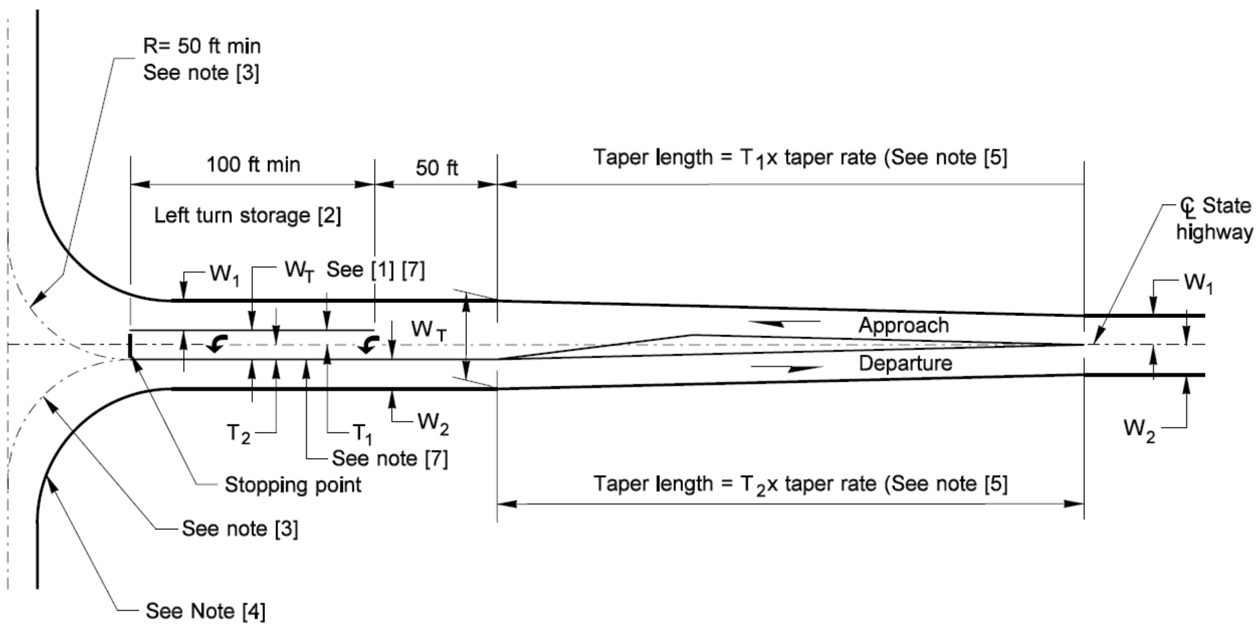
Left-Turn Storage Length: Two-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-13a



Left-Turn Storage Length: Two-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-13b



Left-Turn Storage Length: Two-Lane, Unsignalized
Exhibit 1310-13c



Notes:

[1] The minimum width of the left-turn storage lane (T1+T2) is 11 ft. The desirable width is 12 ft.

[2] For left-turn storage length, see Exhibits 1310-12b for 4-lane roadways or 1310-13a through 13c for 2-lane roadways.

[3] Desirable radius not less than 50 ft. Use templates to verify that the design vehicle can make the turn.

[4] For right-turn corner design, see Exhibit 1310-11.

[5] For desirable taper rates, see Table 1. With justification, taper rates from Table 2, Exhibit 1310-14c, may be used.

[6] For pavement marking details, see the *Standard Plans* and the MUTCD.

[7] When curb is provided, add the width of the curb and the shoulders to the left-turn lane width. For shoulder widths at curbs, see 1310.07(6) and Chapter 1240.

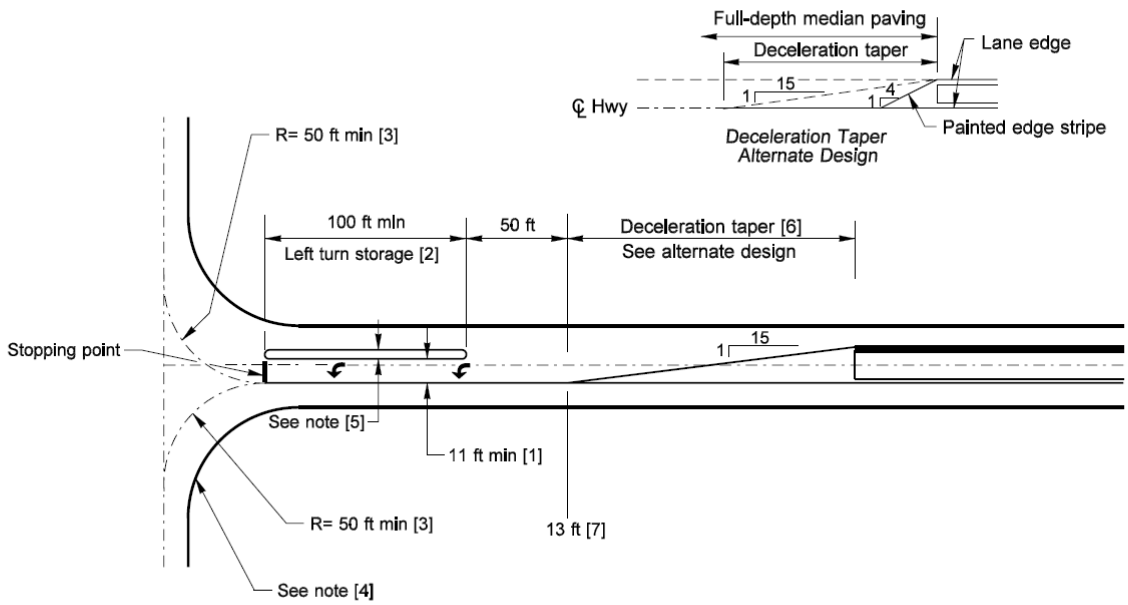
W_1 = Approaching through lane
W_2 = Departing lane
T_1 = Width of left-turn lane on approach side of centerline
T_2 = Width of left-turn lane on departure side of centerline
W_T = Total width of left-turn lane
W = Total width of channelization ($W_1+W_2+T_1+T_2$)

Posted Speed	Desirable Taper Rate[6]
55 mph	55:1
50 mph	50:1
45 mph	45:1
40 mph	40:1
35 mph	35:1
30 mph	30:1
25 mph	25:1

Table 1

Median Channelization: Widening

Exhibit 1310-14a



Notes:

[1] Lane width of 13 ft is desirable.

[2] For left-turn storage length, see Exhibits 1310-12b for 4-lane roadways or 1310-13a through 13c for 2-lane roadways.

[3] Desirable radius not less than 50 ft. Use templates to verify that the design vehicle can make the turn.

[4] For right-turn corner design, see Exhibit 1310-11.

[5] For median widths greater than 13 ft, it is desirable to locate the left-turn lane adjacent to the opposing through lane with excess median width between the same direction through lane and the turn lane.

[6] For increased storage capacity, the left-turn deceleration taper alternate design (see Exhibit 1310-14c) may be used.

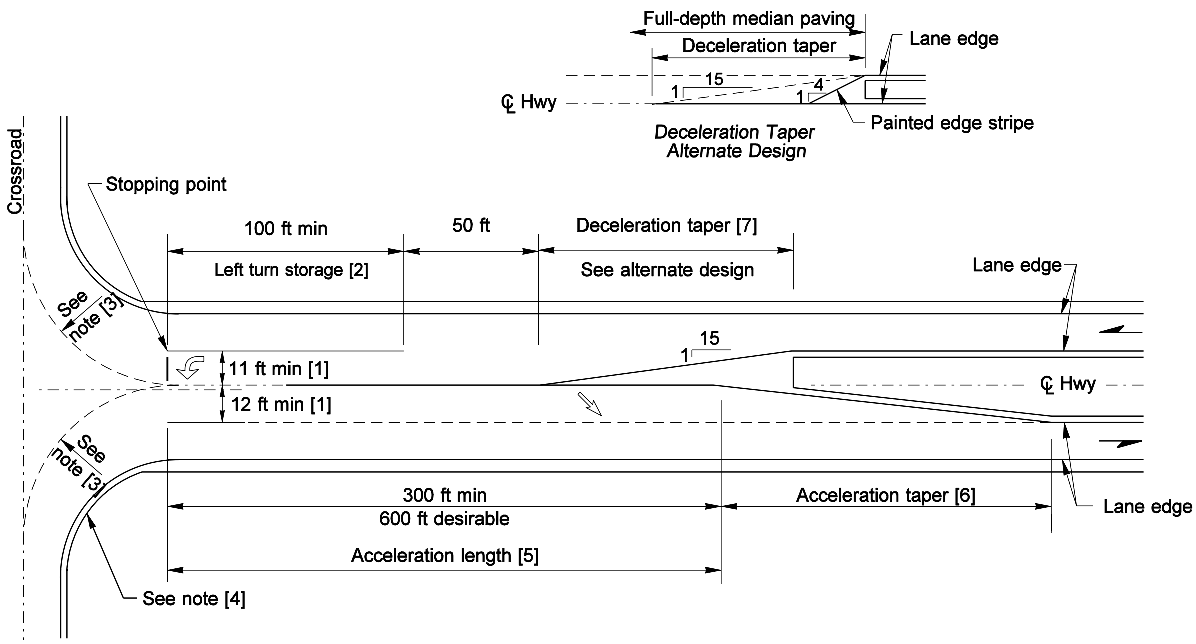
[7] Reduce to lane width for medians less than 13 ft wide.

General:

For pavement marking details, see the *Standard Plans* and the MUTCD.

Median Channelization: Median Width 11 ft or More

Exhibit 1310-14b



Notes:

[1] Lane widths of 13 ft are desirable for both the left-turn storage lane and the median acceleration lane.

[2] For left-turn storage length, see Exhibits 1310-12b for 4-lane roadways or 1310-13a through 13c for 2-lane roadways.

[3] Desirable radius not less than 50 ft. Use templates to verify that the design vehicle can make the turn.

[4] For right-turn corner design, see Exhibit 1310-11.

[5] The minimum total length of the median acceleration lane is shown in Exhibit 1310-18.

[6] For acceleration taper rate, see Table 2.

[7] For increased storage capacity, the left-turn deceleration taper alternate design may be used.

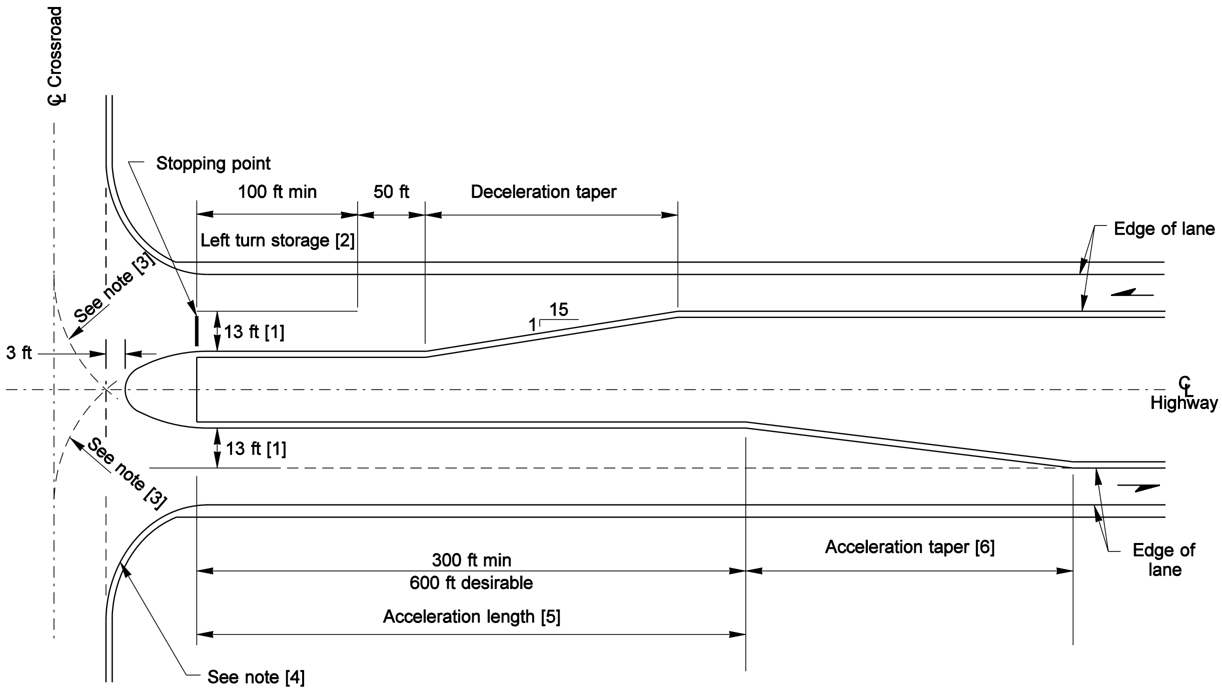
Posted Speed	Taper Rate
55 mph	55:1
50 mph	50:1
45 mph	45:1
40 mph	27:1
35 mph	21:1
30 mph	15:1
25 mph	11:1

Table 2

General:

For pavement marking details, see the *Standard Plans* and the MUTCD.

Median Channelization: Median Width 23 ft to 26 ft
Exhibit 1310-14c



Notes:

[1] May be reduced to 11 ft, with justification.

[2] For left-turn storage length, see Exhibits 1310-12b for 4-lane roadways or 1310-13a through 13c for 2-lane roadways.

[3] Desirable radius not less than 50 ft. Use templates to verify that the design vehicle can make the turn.

[4] For right-turn corner design, see Exhibit 1310-11.

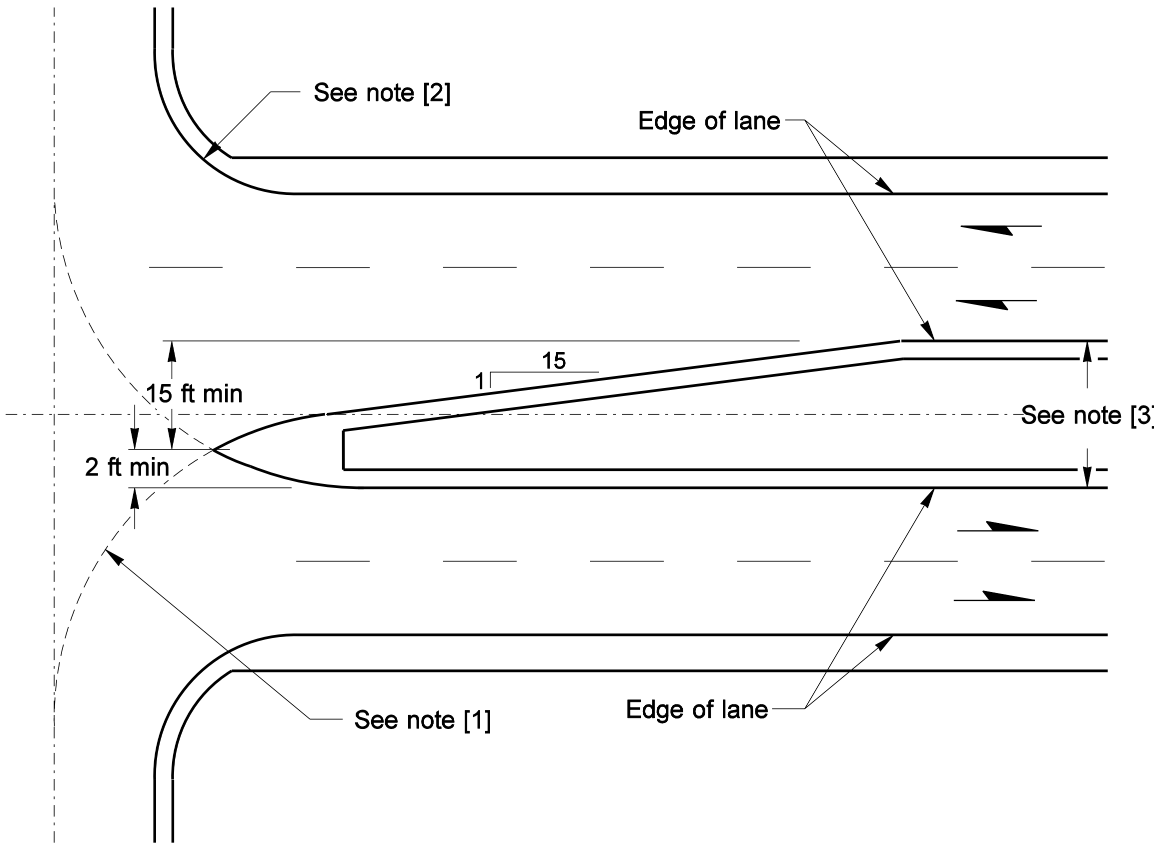
[5] The minimum length of the median acceleration lane is shown in Exhibit 1310-18.

[6] For acceleration taper rate, see Exhibit 1310-14c, Table 2.

General:

For pavement marking details, see the *Standard Plans* and the MUTCD.

Median Channelization: Median Width of More Than 26 ft
Exhibit 1310-14d



Notes:

[1] Desirable radius not less than 50 ft. Use templates to verify that the design vehicle can make the turn.

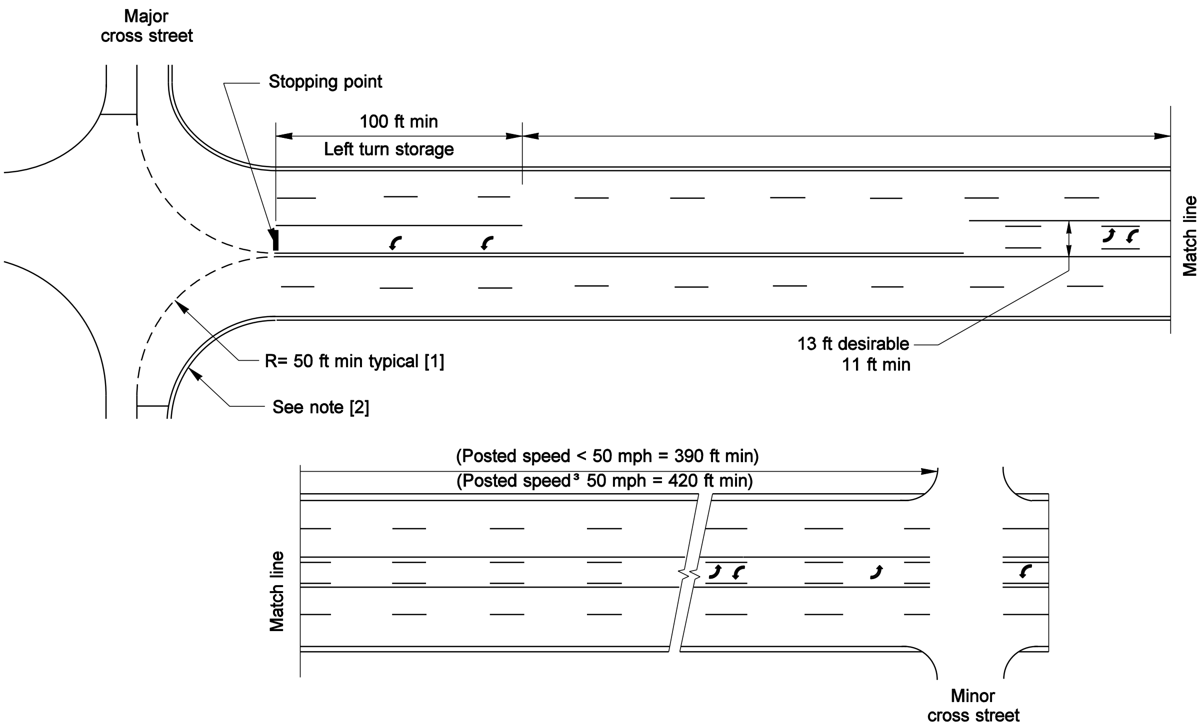
[2] For right-turn corner design, see Exhibit 1310-11.

[3] For median width 17 ft or more. For median width less than 17 ft, widen to 17 ft or use Exhibit 1310-14b.

General:

For pavement marking details, see the *Standard Plans* and the MUTCD.

Median Channelization: Minimum Protected Storage
Exhibit 1310-14e



Notes:

[1] Desirable radius not less than 50 ft. Use templates to verify that the design vehicle can make the turn.

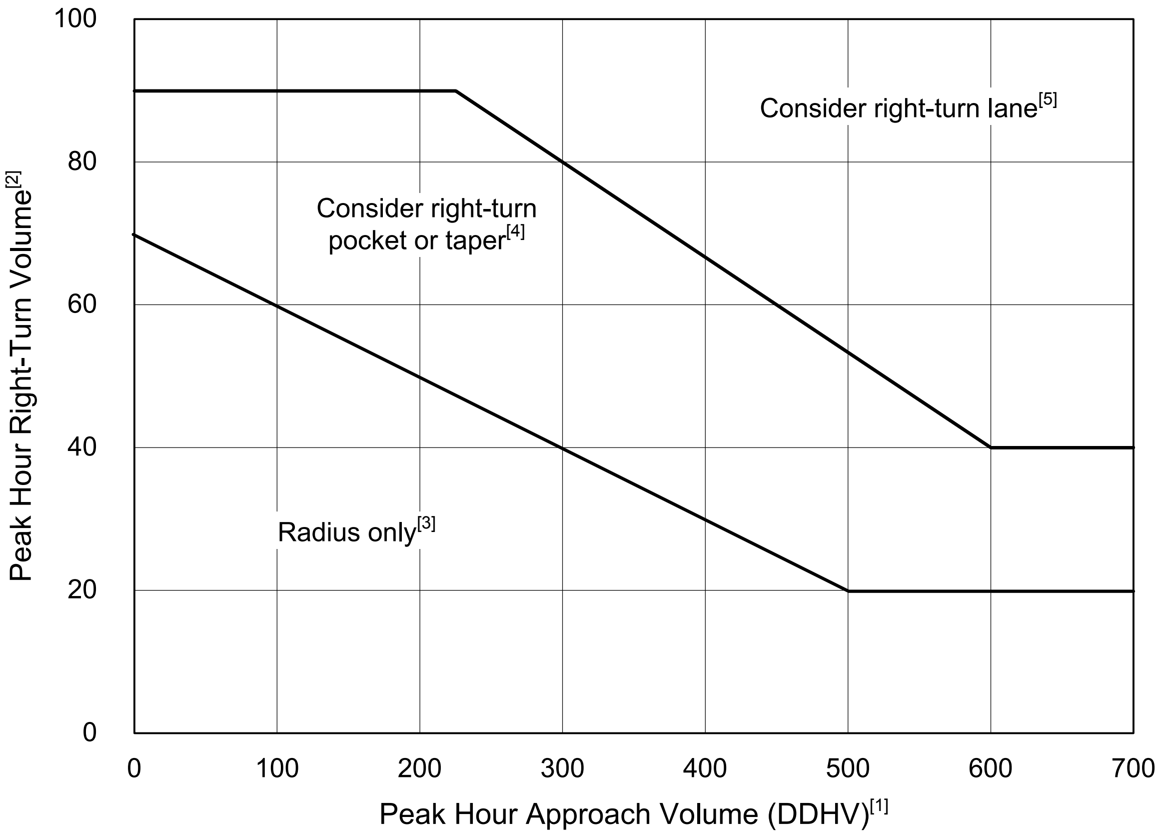
[2] For right-turn corner design, see Exhibit 1310-11.

General:

For pavement marking details and signing criteria, see the *Standard Plans* and the MUTCD.

Median Channelization: Two-Way Left-Turn Lane

Exhibit 1310-14f



Notes:

[1] For two-lane highways, use the peak hour DDHV (through + right-turn).
For multilane, high-speed highways (posted speed 45 mph or above), use the right-lane peak hour approach volume (through + right-turn).

[2] When all three of the following conditions are met, reduce the right-turn DDHV by 20.
- The posted speed is 45 mph or below
- The right-turn volume is greater than 40 VPH
- The peak hour approach volume (DDHV) is less than 300 VPH

[3] For right-turn corner design, see Exhibit 1310-11.

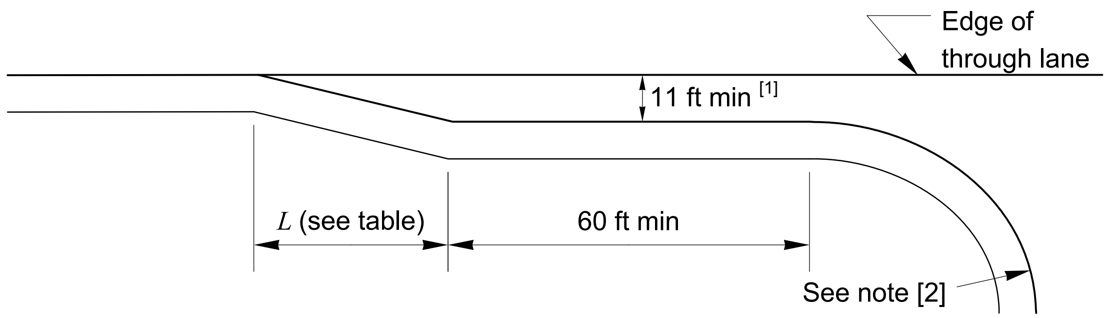
[4] For right-turn pocket or taper design, see Exhibit 1310-16.

[5] For right-turn lane design, see Exhibit 1310-17.

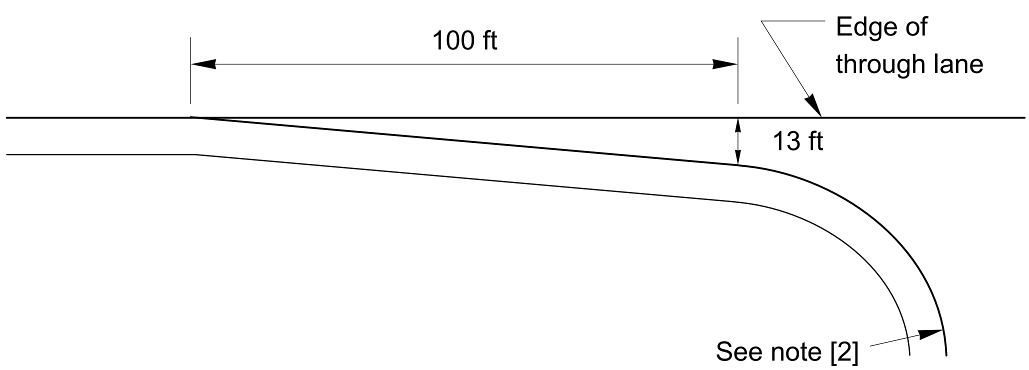
General:

For additional guidance, see 1310.07(3).

Right-Turn Lane Guidelines[6]
Exhibit 1310-15



Right-Turn Pocket



Right-Turn Taper

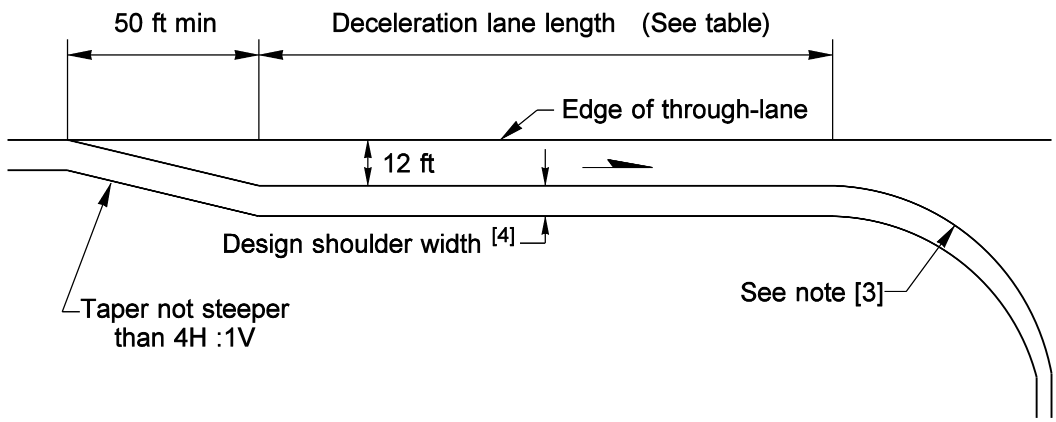
Posted Speed Limit	*L*
Below 40 mph	40 ft
40 mph or above	100 ft

Notes:

[1] 12 ft desirable.

[2] For right-turn corner design, see Exhibit 1310-11.

Right-Turn Pocket and Right-Turn Taper
Exhibit 1310-16



Highway Design Speed (mph)	Turning Roadway Design Speed (mph)		
	Stop[1]	15	20
30	235	200[2]	170[2]
35	280	250	210
40	320	295	265
45	385	350	325
50	435	405	385
55	480	455	440
60	530	500	480
65	570	540	520
70	615	590	570

Minimum Deceleration Lane Length (ft)

Grade	Upgrade	Downgrade
3% to less than 5%	0.9	1.2
5% or more	0.8	1.35

Adjustment Multiplier for Grades 3% or Greater

Notes:

[1] For use when the turning traffic is likely to stop before completing the turn (for example, where pedestrians are present).

[2] When adjusting for grade, do not reduce the deceleration lane to less than 150 ft.

[3] For right-turn corner design, see Exhibit 1310-11.

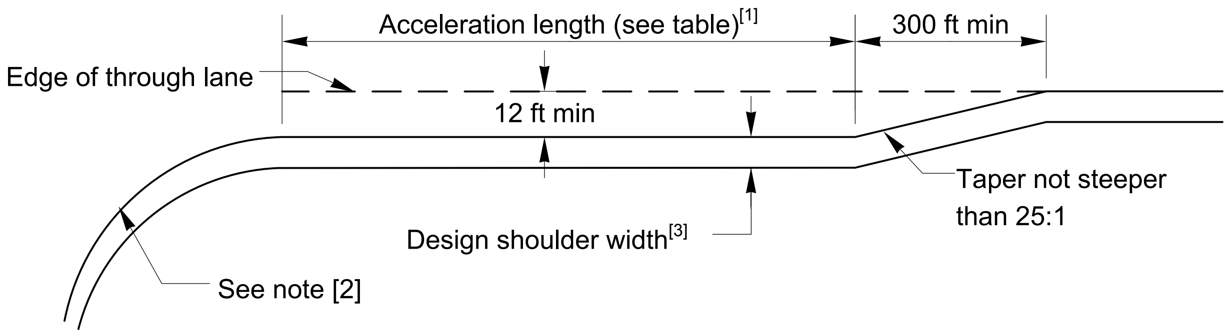
[4] May be reduced (see 1310.07).

General:

For pavement marking details, see the *Standard Plans* and the MUTCD.

Right-Turn Lane

Exhibit 1310-17



Highway Design Speed (mph)	Turning Roadway Design Speed (mph)		
	Stop	15	20
30	180	140	
35	280	220	160
40	360	300	270
45	560	490	440
50	720	660	610
55	960	900	810
60	1200	1140	1100
65	1410	1350	1310
70	1620	1560	1520

Minimum Acceleration Lane Length (ft)[1]

Highway Design Speed (mph)	% Grade	Upgrade	Downgrade
40	3% to less than 5%	1.3	0.7
50		1.3	0.65
60		1.4	0.6
70		1.5	0.6
40	5% or more	1.5	0.6
50		1.5	0.55
60		1.7	0.5
70		2.0	0.5

Adjustment Multiplier for Grades 3% or Greater

Notes:

[1] At free right turns (no stop required) and all left turns, the minimum acceleration lane length is not less than 300 ft.

[2] For right-turn corner design, see Exhibit 1310-11.

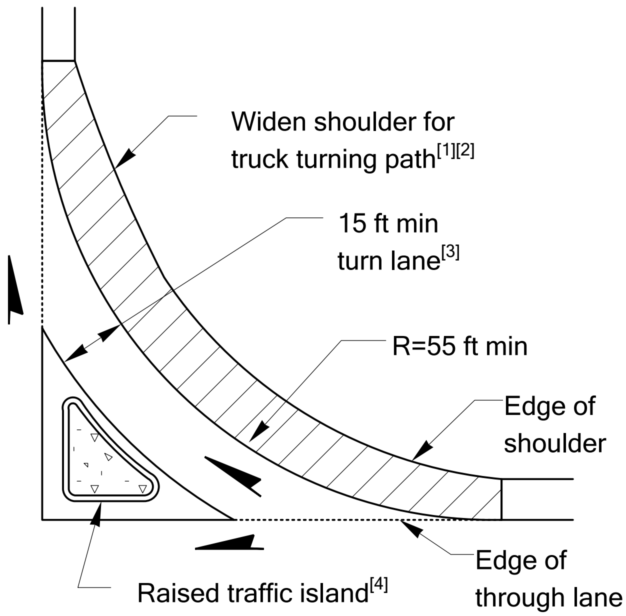
[3] May be reduced (see 1310.07(6)).

General:

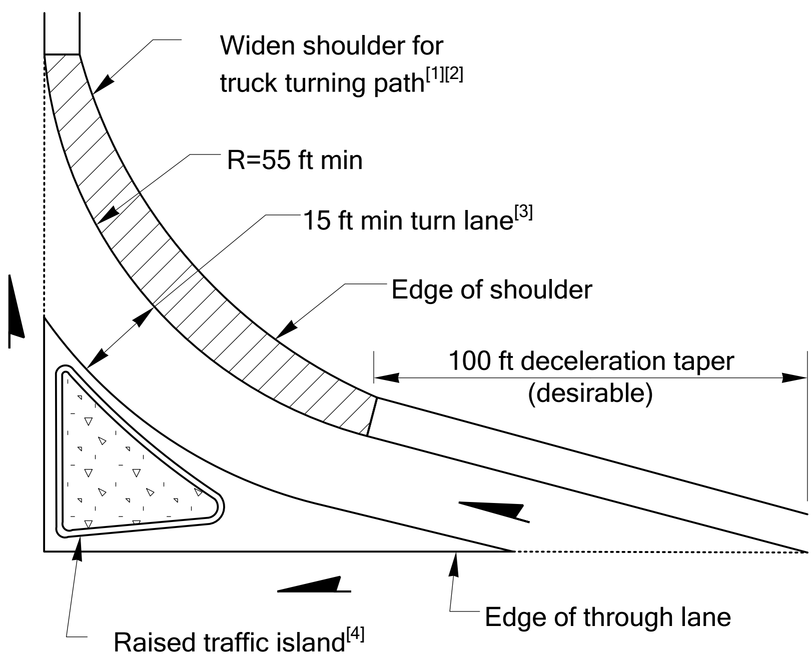
For pavement-marking details, see the *Standard Plans* and the MUTCD.

Acceleration Lane

Exhibit 1310-18



Small Traffic Island Design[5]



Large Traffic Island Design[5]

Notes:

[1] Widen shoulders when right-turn radii or roadway width cannot be provided for large trucks. Design widened shoulder pavement the same depth as the right-turn lane.

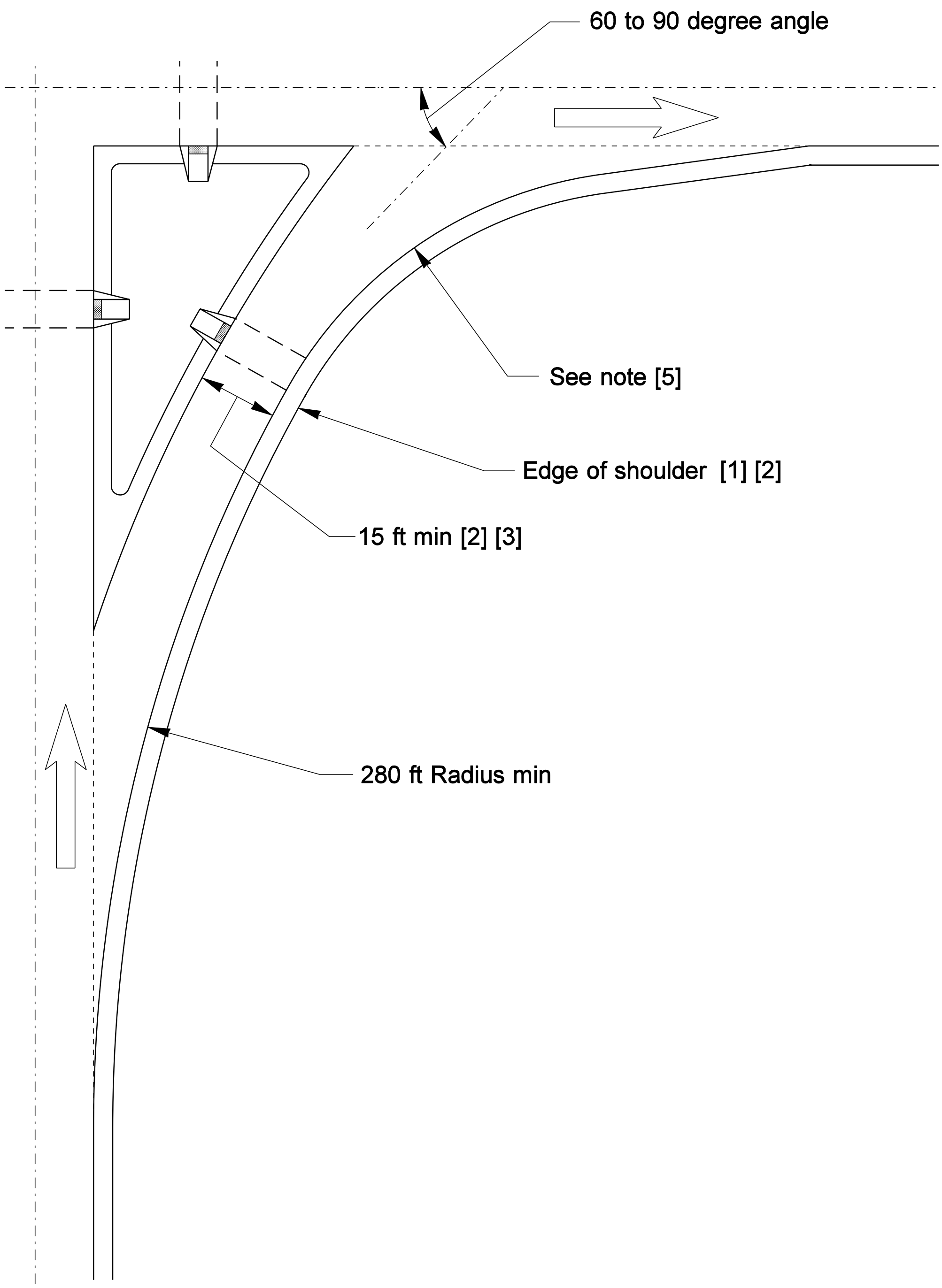
[2] Use the truck turning path templates for the design vehicle and a minimum of 2 ft clearance between the wheel paths and the face of curb or edge of shoulder to determine the width of the widened shoulder.

[3] For desirable turning roadway widths, see Chapter 1240.

[4] For additional details on island placement, see Exhibit 1310-19c.

[5] Small traffic islands have an area of 100 ft^2 or less; large traffic islands have an area greater than 100 ft^2.

Traffic Island Designs
Exhibit 1310-19a



Notes:

[1] Widen shoulders when right-turn radii and roadway width cannot be provided for large trucks. Design widened shoulder pavement the same depth as the right-turn lane.

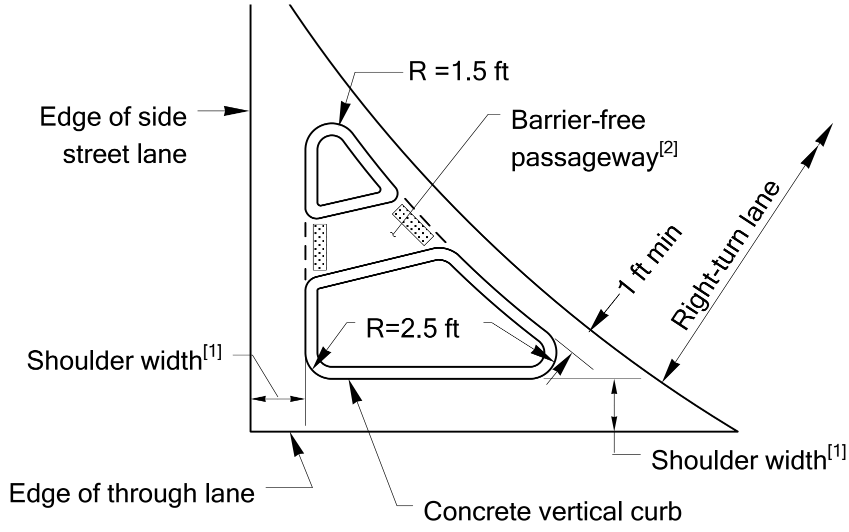
[2] Use the truck turning path templates for the design vehicle and a minimum of 2 ft clearance between the wheel paths and the face of curb or edge of shoulder to determine the width of the widened shoulder.

[3] For turning roadway widths, see Chapter 1240.

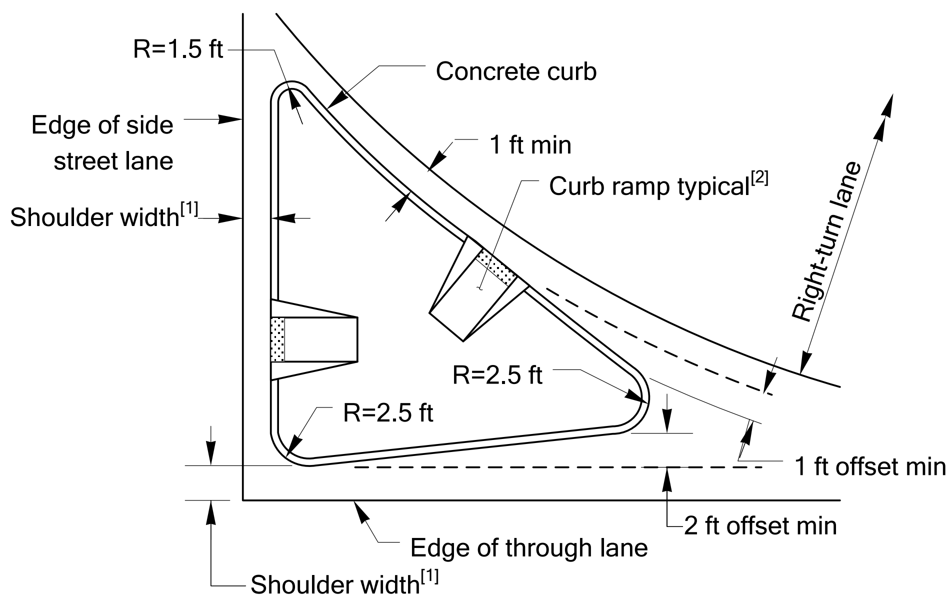
[4] For additional details on island placement, see Exhibit 1310-19c.

[5] For right-turn corner design, see Exhibit 1310-11.

Traffic Island Designs: Compound Curve
Exhibit 1310-19b



Small Raised Traffic Island[3]



Large Raised Traffic Island

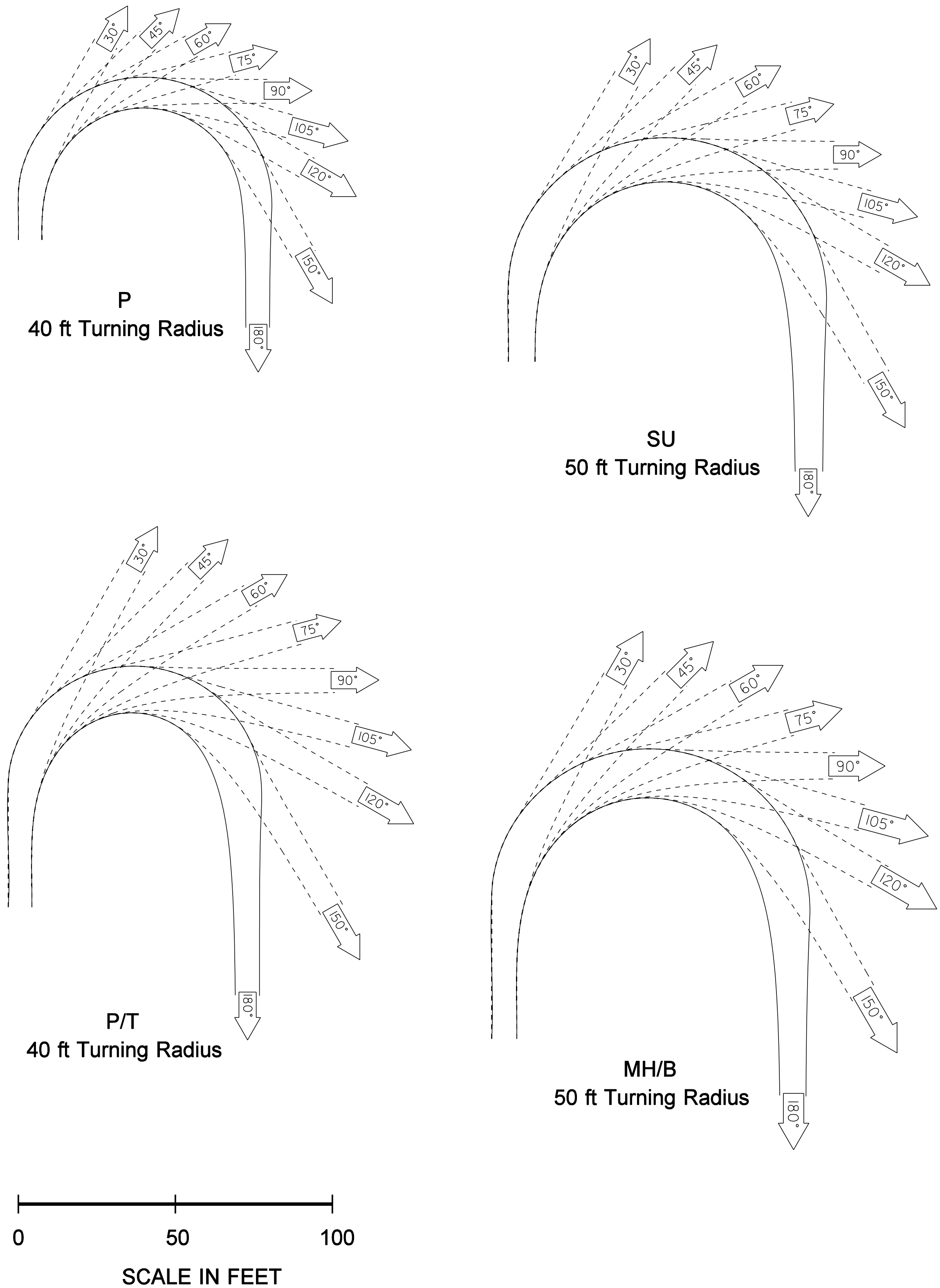
Notes:

[1] For minimum shoulder width at curbs, see Chapter 1140. For additional information on shoulders at turn lanes, see 1310.07(6).

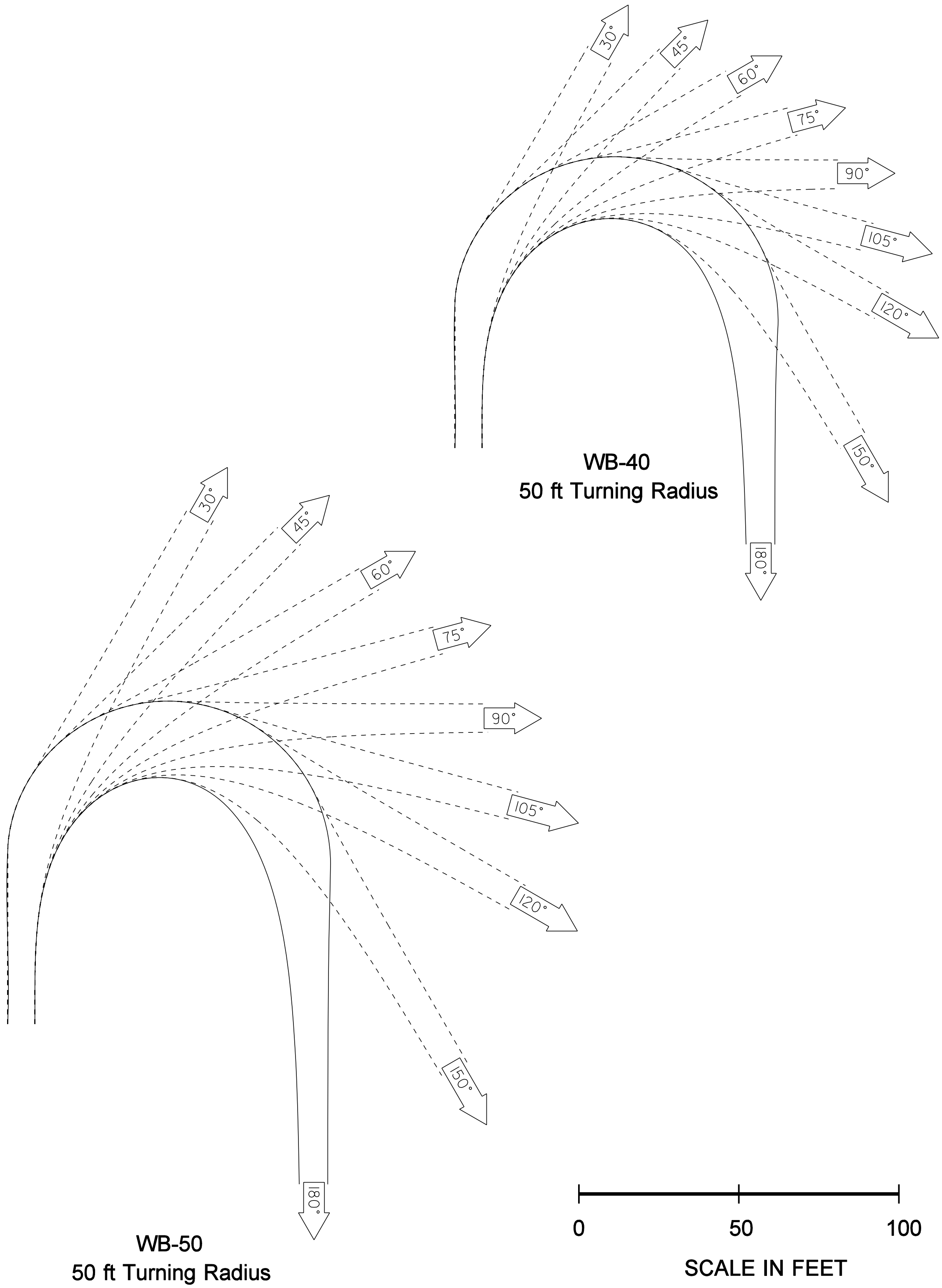
[2] Provide barrier-free passageways or curb ramps (see Chapter 1510).

[3] Small traffic islands have an area of 100 ft^2 or less; large traffic islands have an area greater than 100 ft^2.

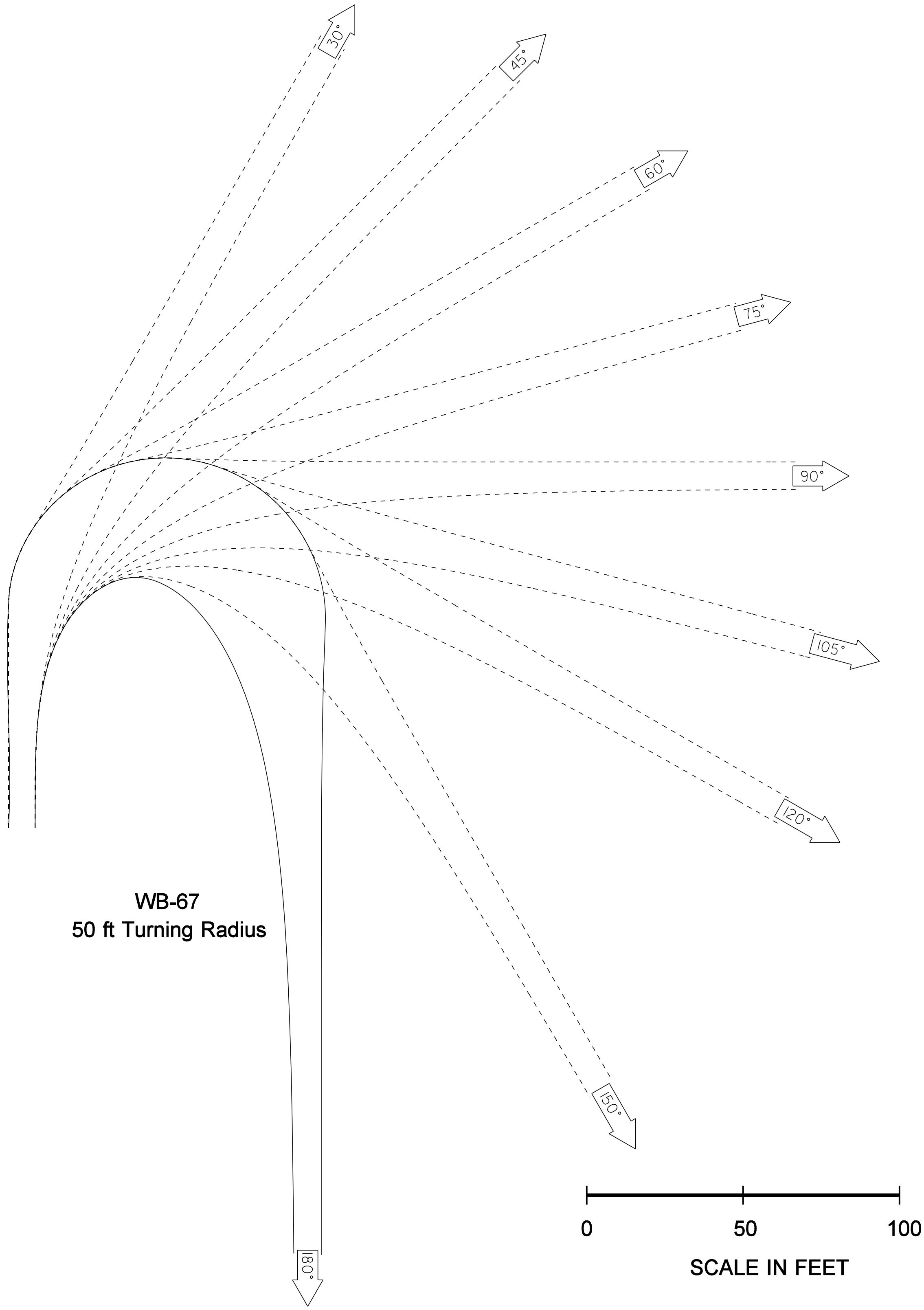
Traffic Island Designs
Exhibit 1310-19c



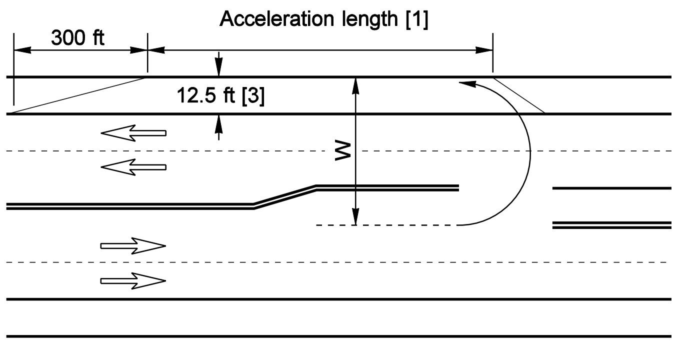
Turning Path Template
Exhibit 1310-20a

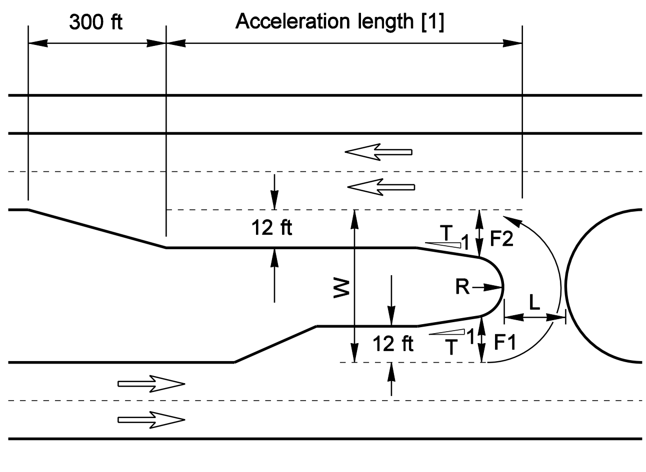


Turning Path Template
Exhibit 1310-20b



Turning Path Template
Exhibit 1310-20c





Vehicle	W	R	L	F1	F2	T
P	52	14	14	12	12	—
SU	87	30	20	13	15	10:1
BUS	87	28	23	14	18	10:1
WB-40	84	25	27	15	20	6:1
WB-50	94	26	31	16	25	6:1
WB-67	94	22	49	15	35	6:1
MH	84	27	20	15	16	10:1
P/T	52	11	13	12	18	6:1
MH/B	103	36	22	15	16	10:1

U-Turn Design Dimensions

Notes:

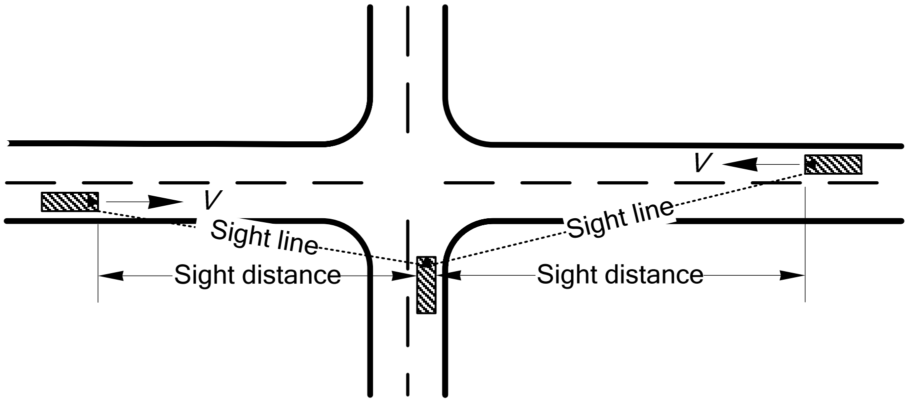
[1] The minimum length of the acceleration lane is shown in Exhibit 1310-18. Acceleration lane may be eliminated at signal-controlled intersections.

[2] All dimensions in feet.

[3] When U-turn uses the shoulder, provide 12.5-ft shoulder width and shoulder pavement designed to the same depth as the through lanes for the acceleration length and taper.

U-Turn Median Openings

Exhibit 1310-21



$S_i = 1.47Vt_g$
Where:
S_i = Intersection sight distance (ft)
V = Design speed of the through roadway (mph)
t_g = Time gap for the minor roadway traffic to enter or cross the through roadway (sec)

Intersection Sight Distance Equation
Table 1

Design Vehicle	Time Gap (t_g) in Sec
Passenger car (P)	7.5
Single-unit trucks and buses (SU & BUS)	9.5
Combination trucks (WB-40, WB-50, & WB-67)	11.5

Note:
Values are for a stopped vehicle to turn left onto a two-lane two-way roadway with no median and grades 3% or less.

Intersection Sight Distance Gap Times (t_g)
Table 2

Adjust the t_g values listed in Table 2 as follows:

Crossing or right-turn maneuvers:

All vehicles	subtract 1.0 sec

Multilane roadways:

Left turns, for each lane in excess of one, to be crossed and for medians wider than 4 ft:

Passenger cars	add 0.5 sec
All trucks and buses	add 0.7 sec

Crossing maneuvers, for each lane in excess of two, to be crossed and for medians wider than 4 ft:

Passenger cars	add 0.5 sec
All trucks and buses	add 0.7 sec

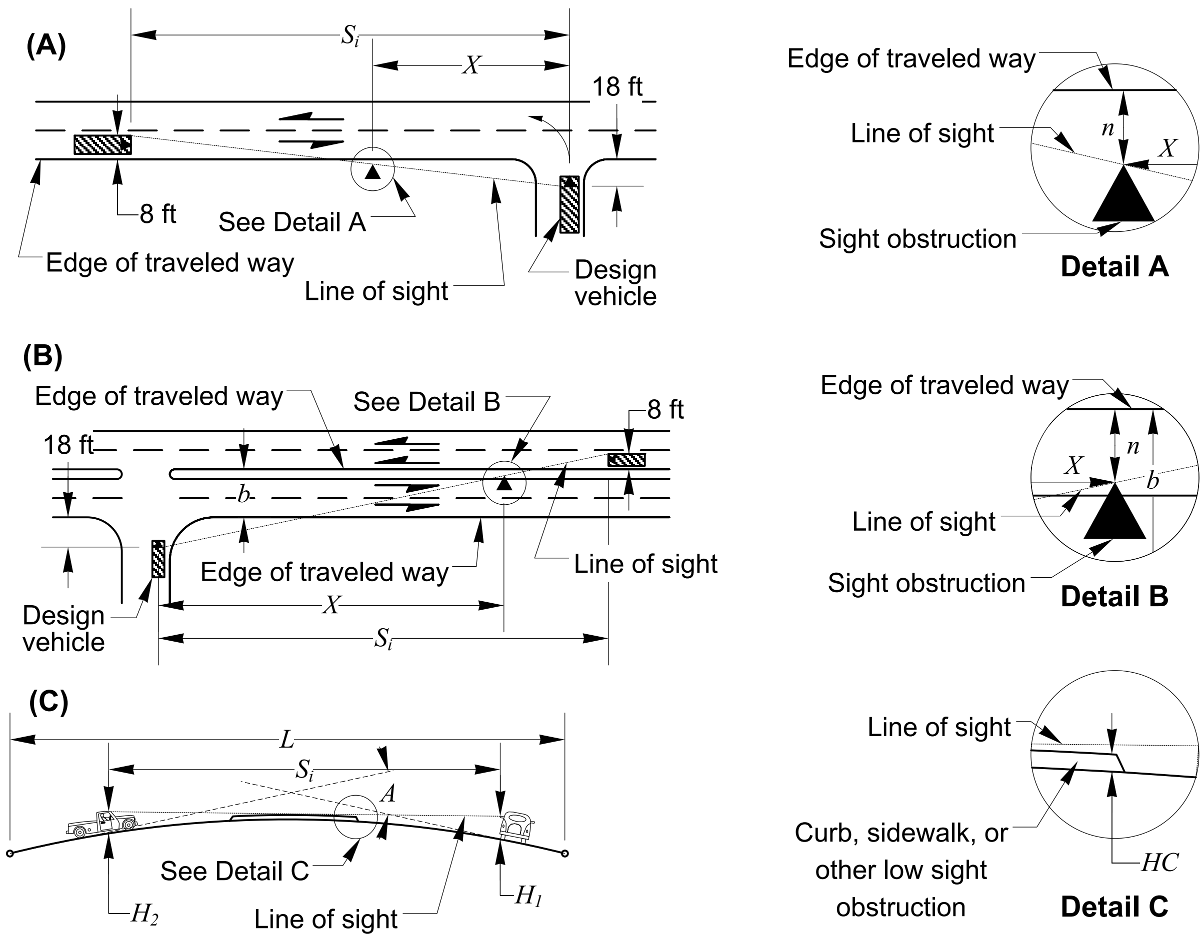
Note: Where medians are wide enough to store the design vehicle, determine the sight distance as two maneuvers.

Crossroad grade greater than 3%:

All movements upgrade for each percent that exceeds 3%:

All vehicles	add 0.2 sec

Sight Distance at Intersections
Exhibit 1310-22a



For sight obstruction driver cannot see over:

$$S_i = \frac{(26+b)(X)}{(18+b+n)}$$

Where:

- S_i = Available intersection sight distance (ft)
- n = Offset from sight obstruction to edge of lane (ft)
- b = Distance from near edge of traveled way to near edge of lane approaching from right (ft) (b=0 for sight distance to the left)
- X = Distance from centerline of lane to sight obstruction (ft)

For crest vertical curve over a low sight obstruction when $S<L$:

$$S_i = \sqrt{\frac{100L\left[\sqrt{2(H_1 - HC)} + \sqrt{2(H_2 - HC)}\right]^2}{A}}$$

$$L = \frac{AS_i^2}{100\left[\sqrt{2(H_1 - HC)} + \sqrt{2(h_2 - HC)}\right]^2}$$

Where:

- S = Available sight distance (ft)
- H_1 = Eye height (3.5 ft for passenger cars; 6 ft for all trucks)
- H_2 = Object height (3.5 ft)
- H_C = Sight obstruction height (ft)
- L = Vertical curve length (ft).
- A = Algebraic difference in grades (%)

Sight Distance at Intersections

Exhibit 1310-22b

Chapter 1320 Roundabouts

1320.01 General
1320.02 References
1320.03 Definitions Design Procedures
1320.04 Roundabout Types
1320.05 Capacity Analysis
1320.06 Geometric Design
1320.07 Pedestrians
1320.08 Bicycles
1320.09 Signing and Pavement Marking
1320.10 Illumination
1320.11 Access, Parking, and Transit Facilities
1320.12 Design Procedures
1320.13 Documentation

1320.01 General

Modern roundabouts are circular intersections at grade. They are an effective intersection type with fewer conflict points and lower speeds, and they provide for easier decision making than conventional intersections. They also require less maintenance than traffic signals. Well-designed roundabouts have been found to reduce crashes (especially fatal and severe injury collisions), traffic delays, fuel consumption, and air pollution. They also have a traffic-calming effect. For additional information and details on roundabouts, see *Roundabouts: An Informational Guide*.

Selection of a roundabout is based on an engineering analysis that examines traffic volumes, traffic patterns, space needs, and right of way availability.

Modern roundabouts differ from older circular intersections in three ways: they have splitter islands that provide entry deflection to slow down entering vehicles; they have yield-at-entry, which requires entering vehicles to yield to vehicles in the roundabout to allow free flow of circulating traffic; and they have a smaller diameter that constrains circulating speeds.

1320.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA)

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.05.021, Functional classification of highways

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-58-080, Guides for control of access on crossroads and interchange ramps

(2) Design Guidance

ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG), U.S. Access Board www.access-board.gov/adaag/html/adaag.htm

ADA Standards for Accessible Design, U.S. Department of Justice www.usdoj.gov/crt/ada/adahom1.htm

Local Agency Guidelines (LAG), M 36-63, WSDOT

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA, as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

"Crash Reductions Following Installation of Roundabouts in the United States," Insurance Institute for Highway Safety, March 2000 www.nysdot.gov/portal/page/portal/main/roundabouts/files/insurance_report.pdf

Guide to Traffic Engineering Practice, Part 6 – Roundabouts (Austroad Guide), Sydney, Australia: Austroad, 1993

Highway Capacity Manual (HCM), Special Report 209, Transportation Research Board, National Research Council

Modern Roundabout Practice in the United States, NCHRP Synthesis 264, Transportation Research Board, 1998 onlinepubs.trb.org/onlinepubs/nchrp/nchrp_syn_264.pdf

Roundabouts: An Informational Guide, FHWA-RD-00-067, USDOT, FHWA www.tfhrc.gov/safety/00068.htm

Roundabout Design Guidelines, Ourston & Doctors, Santa Barbara, California, 1995

The Traffic Capacity of Roundabouts, TRRL Laboratory Report 942, Kimber, R.M., Crowthorne, England: Transport and Road Research Laboratory, 1980

"Use of Roundabouts," ITE Technical Council Committee 5B-17, Feb. 1992 www.ite.org/traffic/documents/JBA92A42.pdf

The Design of Roundabouts: State of the Art Review, Brown, Mike, Transportation Research Laboratory, Department of Transport. London, HMSO, 1995

Understanding Flexibility in Transportation Design – Washington, WSDOT, 2005 www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/Urban/

1320.03 Definitions

Note: For definitions of ***design speed***, ***functional classification***, ***highway***, and ***roadway***, see Chapter 1140; for ***lane*** and ***lane width***, see Chapter 1230; for ***superelevation***, see Chapter 1250; for ***sight distance*** and ***stopping sight distance***, see Chapter 1260; for ***design vehicle***, ***intersection at grade***, ***intersection sight distance***, and ***island*** see Chapter 1310; and for ***detectable warning surface***, see Chapter 1510.

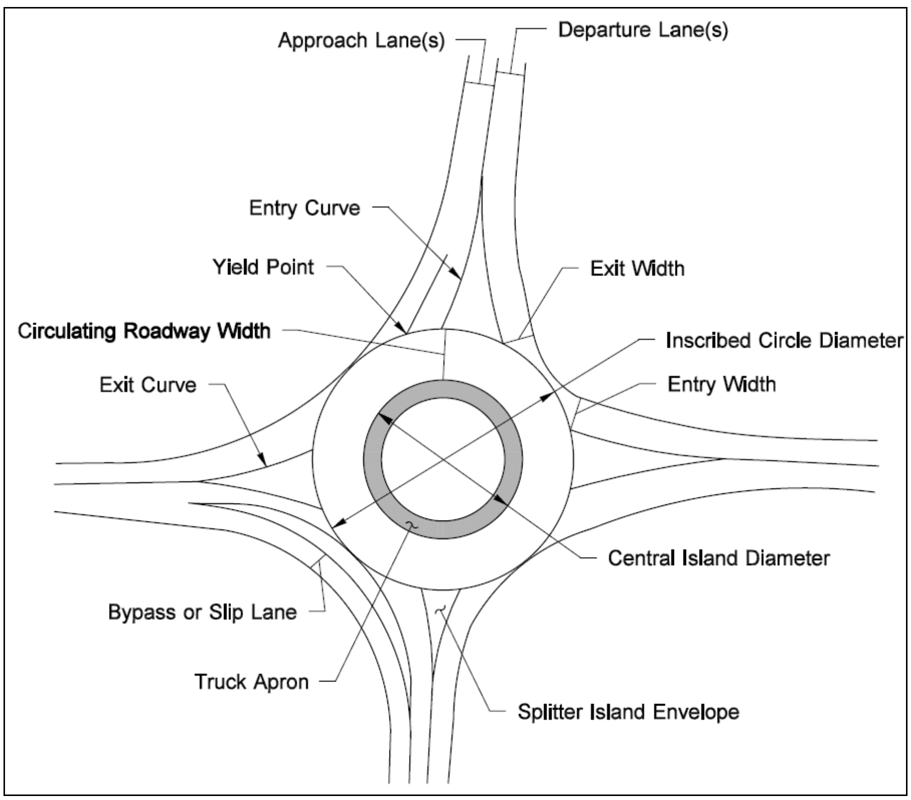
approach design speed The design speed of the roadway leading into the roundabout.

approach lanes The lane or set of lanes for traffic approaching the roundabout (see Exhibit 1320-1).

central island The area of the roundabout, including the truck apron, surrounded by the circulating roadway.

central island diameter The diameter of the central island, including the truck apron (see Exhibit 1320-1).

circulating lane A lane used by vehicles circulating in the roundabout.



Roundabout Elements
Exhibit 1320-1

circulating roadway The traveled lane(s) adjacent to the central island and outside the truck apron, including the entire 360° circumference of the circle.

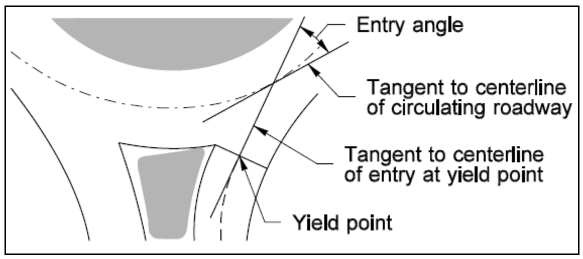
circulating roadway width The total width of the circulating lane(s) measured from inscribed circle to the central island (see Exhibit 1320-1).

conflict point A point where traffic streams cross, merge, or diverge.

deflection The change in the path of a vehicle imposed by the geometric features of a roundabout resulting in a slowing of vehicles (see Exhibit 1320-15a).

departure lanes The lane or set of lanes for traffic leaving the roundabout (see Exhibit 1320-1).

double-lane roundabout A roundabout with a two-lane circulating roadway and one or more entry or exit legs with two lanes.



Entry Angle
Exhibit 1320-2

entry angle The angle between the entry roadway and the circulating roadway measured at the yield point (see Exhibit 1320-2).

entry curve The curve of the left edge of the roadway that leads into the circulating roadway (see Exhibit 1320-1).

entry width The width of an entrance leg at the inscribed circle measured perpendicular to travel (see Exhibit 1320-1).

exit curve The curve of the left edge of the roadway that leads out of the circulating roadway (see Exhibit 1320-1).

exit width The width of an exit leg at the inscribed circle (see Exhibit 1320-1).

flare The widening of the approach to the roundabout to increase capacity and facilitate natural vehicle paths.

inscribed circle The outer edge of the circulating roadway.

inscribed circle diameter (ICD) The diameter of the inscribed circle (see Exhibit 1320-1).

natural vehicle path The natural path that a driver navigates a vehicle given the layout of the intersection and the ultimate destination.

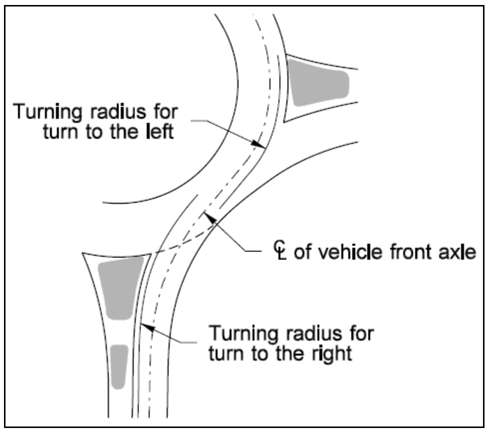
roundabout A circular intersection at grade with yield control of all entering traffic, channelized approaches with raised splitter islands, counter-clockwise circulation, and appropriate geometric curvature to force travel speeds on the circulating roadway generally to less than 25 mph.

single-lane roundabout A roundabout having single-lane entries at all legs and one circulating lane.

slip lane A lane that separates heavy right-turn movements from the roundabout circulating traffic (see Exhibit 1320-1).

splitter island The raised island at each two-way leg between entering and exiting vehicles, designed primarily to control the entry and exit speeds by providing deflection. They also discourage wrong-way movements, and provide pedestrian refuge.

truck apron The optional mountable portion of the central island of a roundabout between the raised nontraversable area of the central island and the circulating roadway (see Exhibit 1320-1).



Turning Radius (R)
Exhibit 1320-3

turning radius The radius that the front wheel of the design vehicle on the outside of the curve travels while making a turn (see Exhibit 1320-3).

yield-at-entry The requirement that vehicles on all entry lanes yield to vehicles within the circulating roadway.

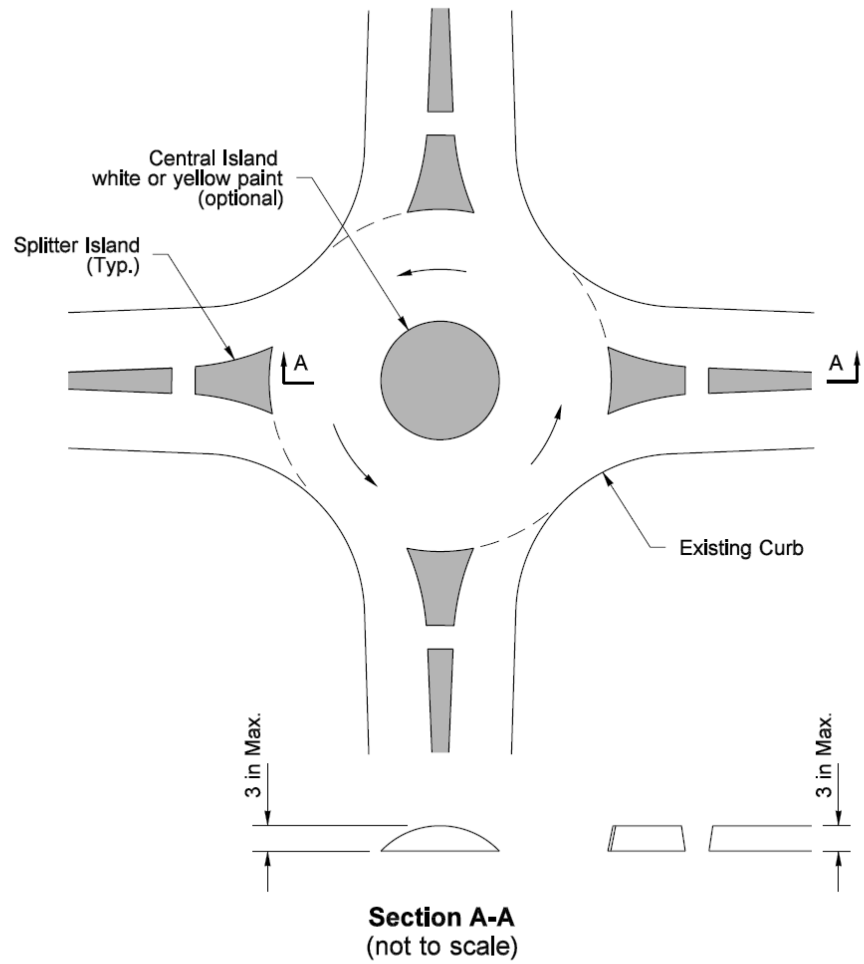
yield point The point at which entering traffic must yield to circulating traffic before entering the circulating roadway (see Exhibit 1320-1).

1320.04 Roundabout Types

There are four basic roundabout types: mini, single-lane, multilane, and teardrop.

(1) Mini Roundabouts

Mini roundabouts are small single-lane roundabouts that are used in low-speed (25 mph or less) urban environments where the design vehicle is the P vehicle (see Chapter 1310). Because of this, mini roundabouts are typically not suitable for use on state routes. In retrofit applications, mini roundabouts are relatively inexpensive because they normally require minimal additional pavement at the intersecting roads. A 3-inch mountable curb for the splitter islands and the central island is desirable because larger vehicles might be required to cross over it. A common application is to replace an all-way stop-controlled intersection with a mini roundabout to reduce delay and increase capacity. With mini roundabouts, the existing curb and sidewalk at the intersection can be left in place (see Exhibit 1320-4).



Notes:

- The central island and splitter island are mountable islands.
- A mini roundabout has similar details as a single-lane roundabout, except all islands are mountable and existing curb and sidewalk at the intersection can remain.

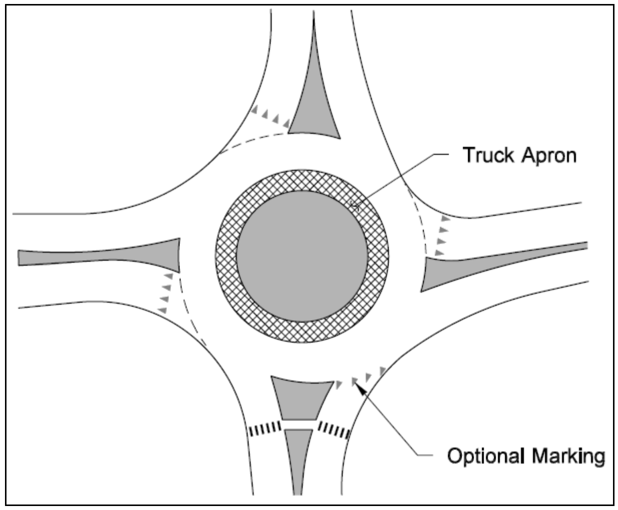
Mini Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-4

(2) Single-Lane Roundabouts

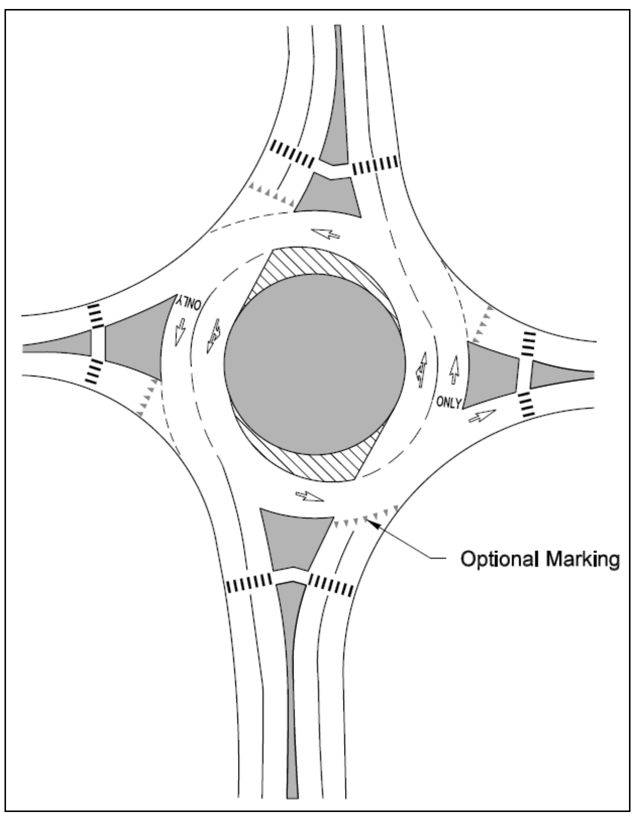
Single-lane roundabouts have single-lane entries at all legs and one circulating lane. They have nonmountable raised splitter islands, a mountable truck apron, and a nonmountable central island (see Exhibit 1320-5).

(3) Multilane Roundabouts

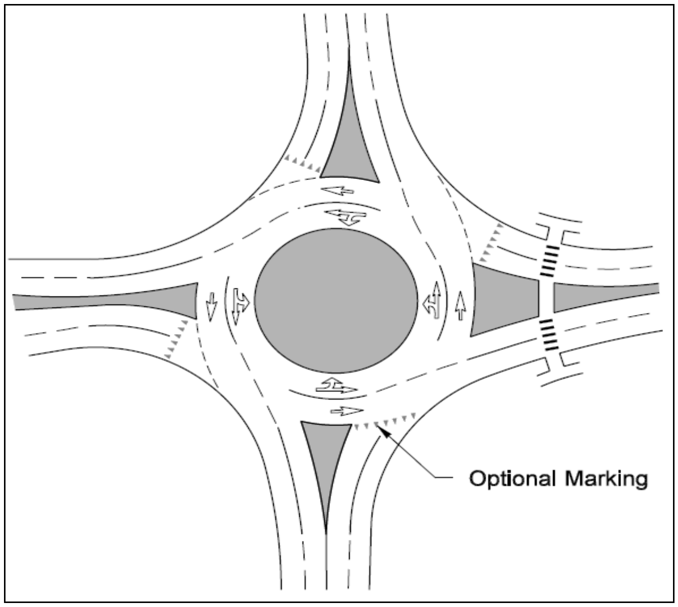
Multilane roundabouts have at least one entry or exit with two or more lanes and more than one circulating lane (see Exhibits 1320-6a, 6b, and 6c). To balance the needs of passenger cars and trucks and control speeds, the current operational practice is normally for trucks negotiating roundabouts to encroach on adjacent lanes (see Exhibit 1320-14b).



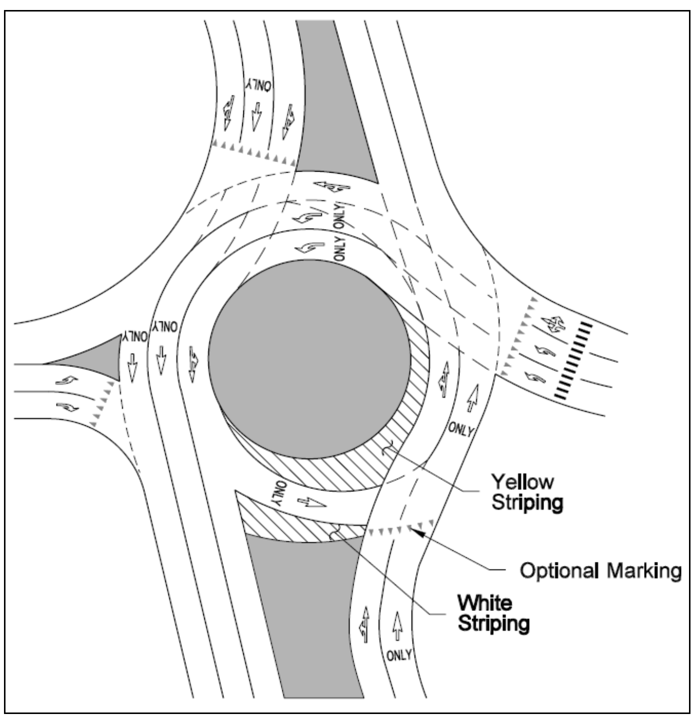
Single-Lane Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-5



Multilane Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-6a



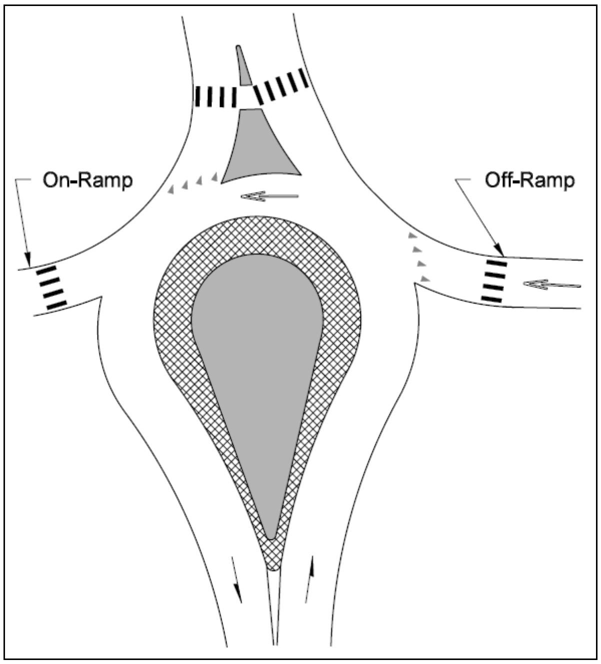
Multilane Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-6b



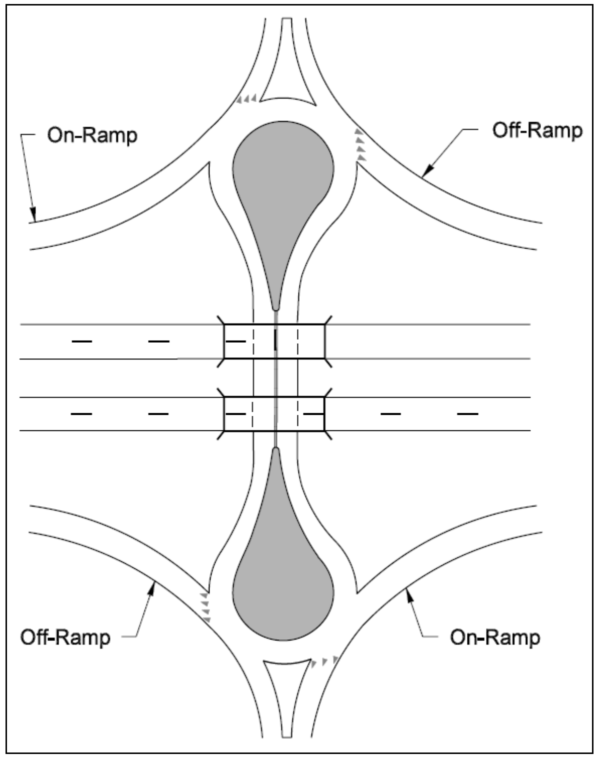
Multilane Roundabout
Exhibit 1320-6c

(4) Teardrop Roundabouts

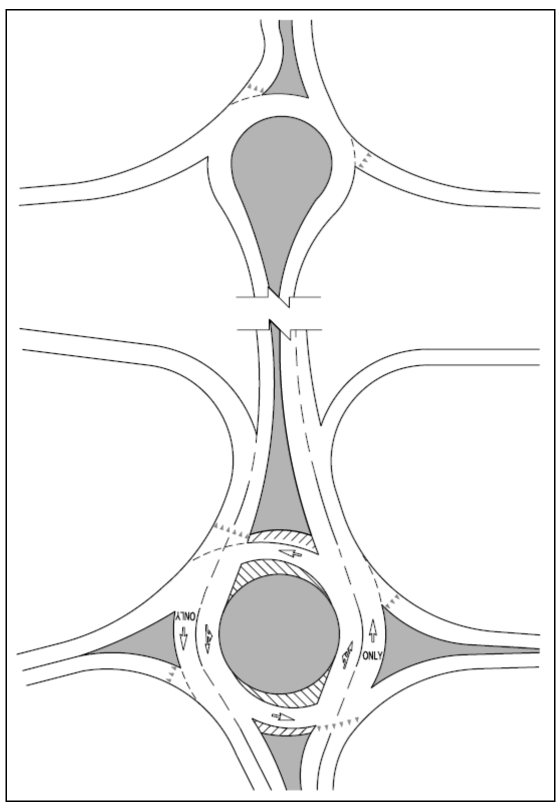
Teardrops are usually associated with ramp terminals at interchanges; typically, at diamond interchanges. Teardrop roundabouts allow the "wide node, narrow link" concept. Unlike circular roundabouts, teardrops do not allow for continuous 360° travel. This design offers some advantages at interchanges. Traffic traveling on the crossroad (link) between ramp terminal intersections (nodes) does not encounter a yield as it enters the teardrop intersections. Because this improves traffic throughput on the crossroad between the ramps, it reduces the need for additional lane capacity, thus keeping the cross section between the ramp terminals as narrow as possible (see Exhibits 1320-7a through 7b).



Teardrop Roundabout at Ramp Terminals
Exhibit 1320-7a



Double Teardrop
Exhibit 1320-7b



Teardrop Roundabout With Ramps
Exhibit 1320-7c

1320.05 Capacity Analysis

Complete a capacity analysis before choosing an intersection type and configuration. Use the capacity analysis to design the number of lanes for the traffic in the design year. Use SIDRA Solutions software or the guidance given in the *Highway Capacity Manual*. Contact the region or Headquarters (HQ) Traffic Office for capacity analysis assistance.

1320.06 Geometric Design

(1) Typical Design Process

Roundabout design is an iterative process in which small changes in geometry can result in substantial changes to operational performance. It is advisable to prepare the initial layout drawings at a sketch level of detail. Although it is easy to get caught up in the desire to design each of the individual components of the geometry, it is much more important that the individual components are compatible so the roundabout meets its overall performance objectives.

Roundabout design is a performance-based process. Design components are interrelated and changing one affects others, so it is important to evaluate the performance of the entire design as changes are made. There are often several acceptable roundabout designs for a given location that meet design performance objectives; however, this is rarely achieved on the first iteration. The location and size of the roundabout, angle of the approaches, and other design components will change as the adequacy of the roundabout design is assessed. Exhibits 1320-13a and 13b illustrate the steps to take on a scaled drawing when designing a roundabout.

Tools are available to the designer to transfer iteration designs into CADD, which can be useful in verifying the iteration design will work. Use of CADD for placing the design roundabout inscribed circle diameter and the central island, and establishing the circulating roadway, is a quick way to verify that the design vehicle can "drive" the roundabout.

Design Element	Mini[1]	Single-Lane	Multilane
Number of Lanes	1	1	2+
Inscribed Circle Diameter[2]	45′–80′	80′–150′[3]	150′ min
Circulating Roadway Width	N/A	14′–19′	29′ min
Entry Widths	N/A	12′–18′	25′ min

Notes:

[1] For use on low-speed residential urban streets. Mini roundabouts require a deviation on a state route.

[2] The given diameters assume a circular roundabout.

[3] Diameters of less than 100 feet are not appropriate on a state route.

Initial Ranges
Exhibit 1320-8

(2) Design Performance Objectives

General characteristics of different roundabout types are summarized in Exhibit 1320-8. These are not design limits but general guidelines to follow to begin the design process; final design values will vary.

(a) **Design Vehicle Turning Paths**

One of the elements that control the geometric design of a roundabout is the physical characteristics of the design vehicle. (See Chapter 1310 for guidance on the selection of a design vehicle.) As with other intersections, it is possible that the design vehicle may differ for each movement.

Design a roundabout such that the design vehicle can use it with a 1-foot clearance from the turning radius to any nonmountable curb face. If the curb face is mountable, no clearance is needed. Also, design such that the front wheels of the design vehicle do not encroach on the truck apron. The vehicle path through a roundabout contains multiple curves. Use computer-generated vehicle turning path templates (like Autoturn) to verify that each movement can be made by its identified design vehicle(s), including U-turns. Check the entire path of every route through the roundabout (see Exhibits 1320-14a and 14b).

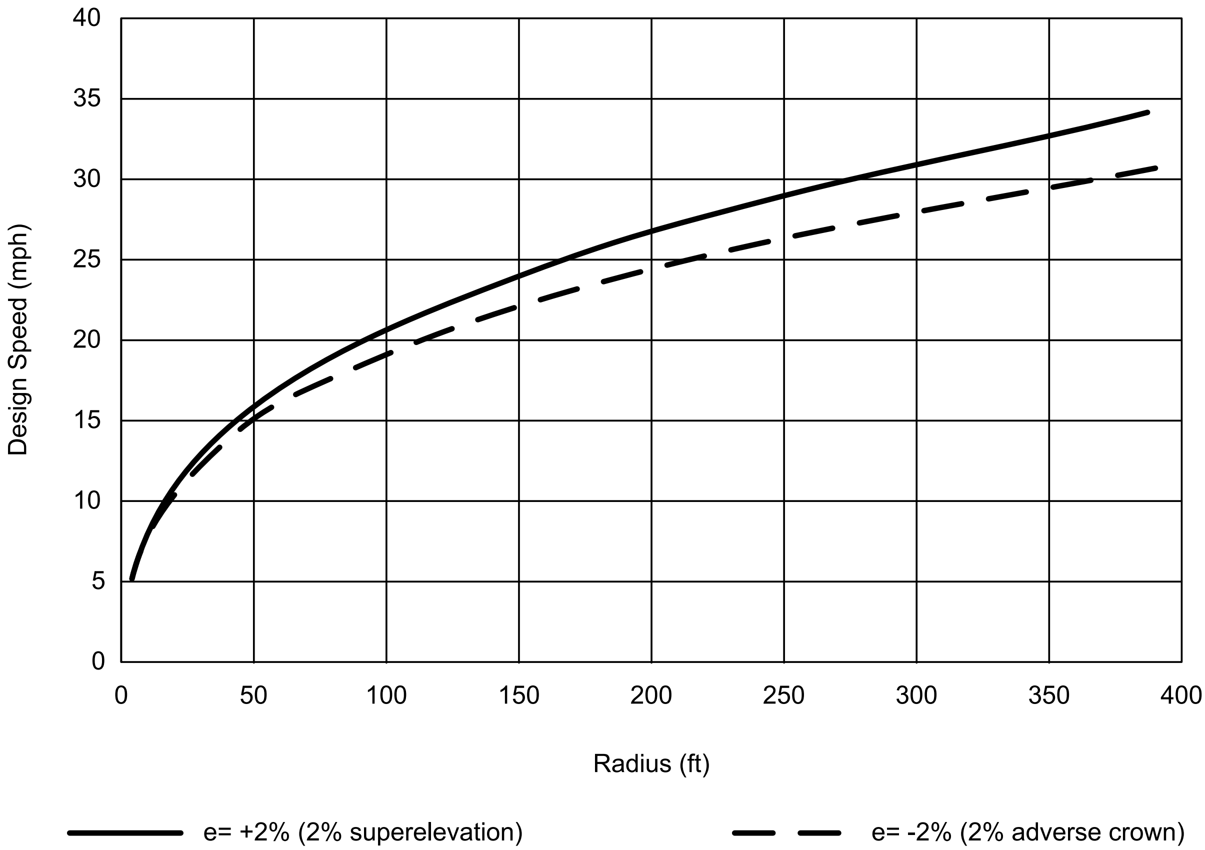
For multilane roundabouts (two or more circulating lanes), to balance the needs of passenger cars and trucks and control speeds, a design vehicle path may encroach into adjacent entry, circulating, and exit lanes. While the objective is to minimize overlap into the adjacent lanes whenever possible, the current operational practice is normally for trucks negotiating roundabouts to encroach onto adjacent lanes (see Exhibit 1320-14b). A truck apron is not normally required on a multilane roundabout; however, it is acceptable if site-specific considerations show it is beneficial.

(b) **Fastest Vehicle Paths**

For a roundabout to operate safely and efficiently, design it to reduce entry speeds. The most significant feature that controls the speed is entry deflection.

The deflection is evaluated by sketching the radius of the centerline of a vehicle traveling along the fastest path through the roundabout. The vehicle paths are drawn by hand for a more natural representation of the way a driver negotiates the roundabout (with smooth transitions connecting a series of reverse curves). Exhibits 1320-15a, 15b, and 15c illustrate the vehicle's fastest paths and depict all radii.

Exhibit 1320-9 shows the relationship between vehicle path radius and its fastest achievable speed. The speed achievable for larger exit radii (R_3) is usually not as fast as the speed shown in Exhibit 1320-9. In this case, the exit speed is controlled by the circulating radius (R_2) plus acceleration to the exit crosswalk.



Speed vs. Radius
Exhibit 1320-9

Check all of the fastest path speeds using Exhibit 1320-9 for curves (R_1 through R_5) from each approach and modify the design to provide a maximum speed of 25 mph; otherwise, provide justification. Single-lane roundabouts can usually achieve lower entry speeds than multilane roundabouts.

To maximize efficiency, it is important to minimize the relative speed differential between the consecutive geometric elements of each traffic stream and between conflicting traffic streams at each geometric element. Therefore, speed consistency for the through movement (R_1 to R_2 to R_3) and left-turn movement (R_1 to R_4 to R_3) on each approach is an important performance objective (see Exhibit 1320-16). Check speeds of each consecutive set of radii and modify the design such that the difference does not exceed 6 mph; otherwise, provide justification. Also, check the speed variation associated with all radii passing through the same point in the roundabout (R_1, R_3, R_4, and R_5), and modify the design such that it does not exceed 6 mph; otherwise, provide justification. Check the speeds at each conflict point (see Exhibit 1320-17).

(c) **Natural Vehicle Paths**

The speed and orientation of the vehicle at the yield point determines its natural path through the roundabout. At the yield point, a vehicle enters the circulatory roadway along its natural path and either exits to the right or continues around the central island to another exit. The key principle in drawing the natural path is to remember that drivers cannot change the direction or speed of their vehicles instantaneously. This means that the natural path does not have sudden changes in curvature; it has transitions between consecutive reversing curves. It also means that consecutive curves have similar radii and are long enough so that vehicles follow the radii of the curves.

To identify the natural path of a given design, sketch the natural paths over the geometric layout rather than using a computer drafting program. In sketching the path by hand, transitions between consecutive curves are similar to the way an operator drives a vehicle. Freehand sketching forces the designer to feel how changes in one curve affect the radius and orientation in the next. This sketching technique allows the designer to quickly obtain a smooth natural path and assess the adequacy of the geometry. Entry design that avoids overlapping paths or curb strikes is shown in Exhibit 1320-18.

If the natural path of a vehicle points the vehicle into a raised curb or interferes with the natural path of an adjacent vehicle, sideswipe crashes and curb strikes may occur (see Exhibit 1320-18).

(3) Design Components

(a) Inscribed Circle Diameter (ICD)

For typical ICD ranges based on the type of roundabout, see Exhibit 1320-8. The capacity analysis determines the number of circulating lanes needed. When sizing the roundabout, start on the higher end of the range for larger design vehicles, when there are more than four legs or when two approaches are skewed or close together. It is important to provide an inscribed diameter that accommodates the design vehicle for all movements. A different diameter may be needed if the selected diameter does not accommodate the design vehicle, the fastest paths are not within 6 mph of each other, or a vehicle path is over 25 mph.

The inscribed circle does not always have to be circular with a constant radius circulating roadway. Circular roundabouts are desirable, but ovals can be used when a circle is not possible due to site constraints. Oval roundabouts usually present more trouble with paths that are too fast.

The inscribed diameter consists of the circulating roadway width, a possible truck apron, and a central island. Typical ranges for the circulating roadway width are shown in Exhibit 1320-8.

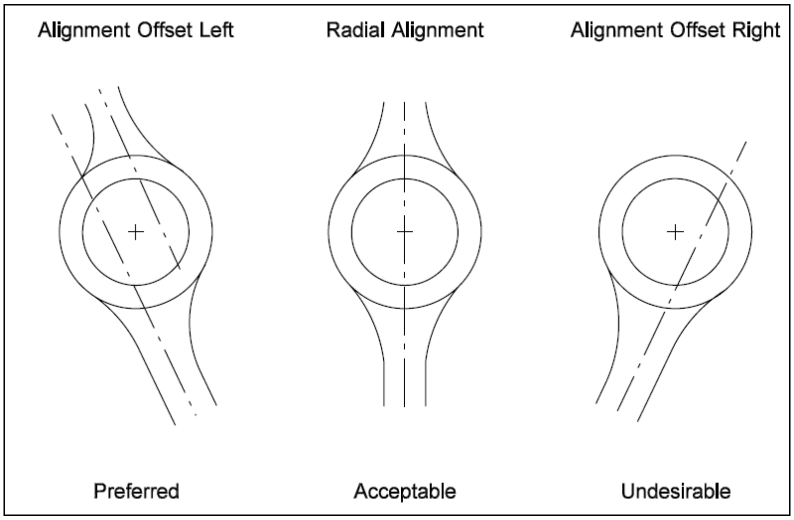
- For single-lane roundabouts, start by trying an 18-foot-wide circulating roadway and size the truck apron width to accommodate the design vehicle.
- For multilane roundabouts, start by trying 16-foot-wide circulating lanes. Truck aprons are not typically needed on multilane roundabouts because trucks may use all lanes of the circulating roadway.

(b) Approach Alignment

The desirable alignment of an approach leg to a roundabout is with the centerline passing to the left of the center of the circle (see Exhibit 1320-10). This alignment facilitates entry deflection and angle on the approaches. This reduces entry speeds and aligns entering vehicles into the circulating roadway, which is key to safety. An approach alignment offset to the right of the roundabout's center point is undesirable because it makes it more difficult to achieve adequate deflection. This could allow vehicles to enter the roundabout at a higher speed, which usually results in a reduction in safety.

When there are four or more approaches, it is desirable to equally space the angles between entries. When site conditions make equal spacing infeasible, evaluate the effect of closely spaced approaches on the roundabout operation.

When there are three approaches, it is desirable that they be put into a tee configuration instead of a wye configuration. If a wye intersection is converted to a roundabout, attempt to orient the legs into the tee configuration.



Approach Leg Alignment
Exhibit 1320-10

(c) **Entry**

The entry is the most critical component of the roundabout. The entry typically has a pedestrian refuge located one vehicle length (approximately 20 feet) back from the yield point. If provided, design the pedestrian refuge to meet the minimum ADA requirements. The key to good entry design is an entry curve several vehicle lengths long that extends to the inside of the circulating roadway just offset from the truck apron. The entry curve needs to be long enough to promote a smooth natural drive path into the roundabout. The entry curve delineates the edge of the splitter island. (See Exhibit 1320-19 for splitter island details.)

Prior to the pedestrian refuge, the minimum approach lane width is 12 feet. Widen the lane from this width until it matches the circulating lane width. Continuous curbing is needed on both sides of the entry roadway to achieve deflection and restrict the entry speed (see Exhibit 1320-19). On high-speed approaches, consider using longer splitter islands and reverse curves to reduce speed prior to the entry. Typically, the higher the speed, the longer the splitter island.

(d) **Exit**

The exit lane is designed to promote a smooth natural drive path for a right-turning vehicle. The exit curve starts at the central island where the entry curve to the left ends and extends past the pedestrian refuge to delineate the edge of the splitter island (see Exhibit 1320-13b, steps 5 and 6). Narrow the lane from the circulating roadway width past the pedestrian refuge to match with the departing lane (see Exhibit 1320-19). Generally, the radius of the exit curve is larger than the entry curve to improve the ease of exit. A design that reduces the probability of a vehicle braking in the circulating lane or at the exit minimizes the likelihood of crashes at the exits. This larger radius does not translate into a faster speed when the exit speed is controlled by the circulating speed (R_4) plus acceleration to the exit crosswalk.

(e) **Central Island**

The central island is a raised nontraversable area and may include a truck apron (see Exhibit 1320-20). The truck apron is the outer part of the central island, designed to allow for encroachment by the rear wheels of large trucks.

Design the texture and color of the truck apron pavement to be:

- Different from that of the circulating roadway so drivers can easily distinguish the difference.
- Different from that of the sidewalk pavement.

Use a roundabout truck apron cement concrete curb between the circulating roadway and the truck apron (see the *Standard Plans*).

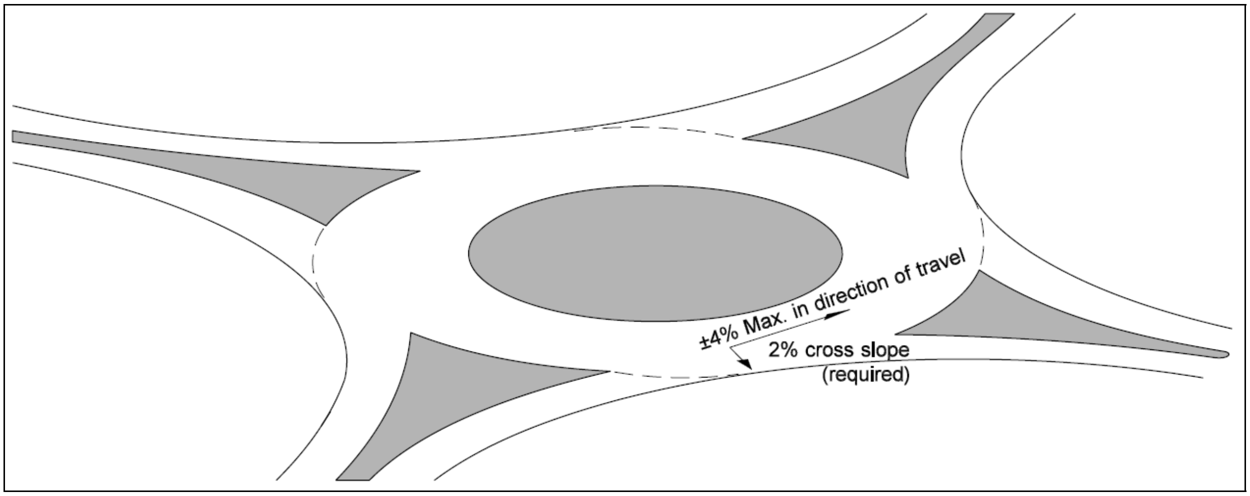
Use roundabout center island cement concrete curb between the truck apron and the nontraversable area (see the *Standard Plans*). A 6-inch mountable cement concrete traffic curb may be substituted for the roundabout center island cement concrete curb, with justification, when oversized trucks might encroach on the nontraversable area of the central island.

Landscape or mound the raised central island to improve the visual impact of the roundabout to approaching drivers. When designing landscaping and objects in the central island, consider sight distance and roadside safety. Contact the region or HQ Landscape Architect for guidance. The central island is not a pedestrian area. Do not place street furniture or other objects (such as benches or monuments with small text) that may attract pedestrian traffic to the central island. Consider maintenance needs for access to the landscaping in the central island.

(f) **Superelevation and Grades**

As a general practice, a cross slope of 2% away from the central island (negative 2% superelevation for circulating traffic) is used for the circulating roadway. Do not use a positive superelevation. If an approach has reverse curves, maintain the normal 2% crown away from the splitter island through the curves. The truck apron cross slope is equal to the 2% cross slope of the circulating roadway or may be increased to 3% (see Exhibit 1320-20).

The maximum allowable grade in the direction of travel along the circulating roadway is 4% (see Exhibit 1320-11). Grades in excess of 4% can result in increased difficulty slowing or stopping and a greater possibility of vehicle rollover. If the intersection is located on a steep slope, “bench” the roundabout to stay within this 4% maximum. When benching a roundabout, the minimum length of the approach landing is the length of the anticipated queue, but not less than 30 feet.



Circulating Roadway Slope
Exhibit 1320-11

(g) **Clear Zone**

Clear zone criteria are based on the operating speeds determined by the vehicle's fastest paths (R_1 through R_5). Within the circulating roadway, the clear zone is measured from the edge of the traveled way on both the right and left side. The truck apron, if present, is included as part of the clear zone, not part of the traveled way. (See Chapter 1600 for clear zone details.) When a 12-inch roundabout truck apron cement concrete curb is provided, additional clear zone in the central island is not needed.

(h) **Sight Distance**

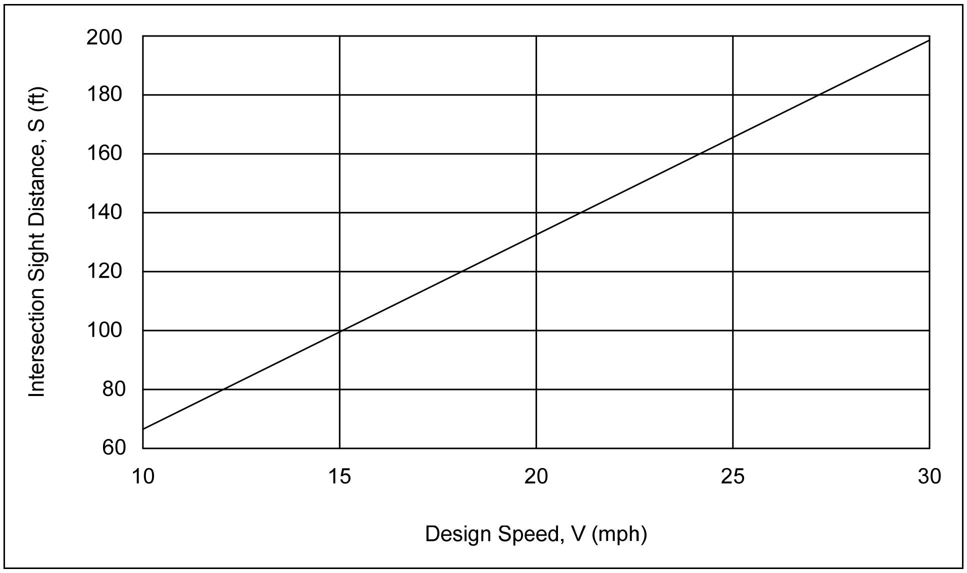
At roundabouts, provide stopping sight distance and intersection sight distance. Along with the intersection sight triangle distances described below, provide vertical sight distance as well (see Chapter 1260). Momentary sight obstructions that do not hide vehicles or pedestrians, such as poles and signposts, are acceptable in the intersection sight triangles.

Stopping sight distance is calculated and measured using the guidance given in Chapter 1260.

Three critical types of locations need to be evaluated for stopping sight distance:

- Approach stopping sight distance to crosswalk (see Exhibit 1320-21).
- Stopping sight distance on the circulatory roadway (see Exhibit 1320-22).
- Stopping sight distance to crosswalk on the exit (see Exhibit 1320-23).

For intersection sight distance at roundabouts, provide entering vehicles a clear view of traffic on the circulating roadway and on the immediate upstream approach in order to judge an acceptable gap (see Exhibit 1320-24). The intersection sight distance at roundabouts is given in Exhibit 1320-12. The S_1 intersection sight distance is based on the average of the R_1 and R_2 speeds, the S_2 intersection sight distance is based on the R_4 speed. The sight distance may also be calculated using the intersection's sight distance equation given in Chapter 1310 using a time gap (t_g) of 4.5 seconds.



Speed vs. Intersection Sight Distance
Exhibit 1320-12

For roundabouts, these distances are assumed to follow the curvature of the roadway, thus are not measured as straight lines but as distances along the vehicular path. The entering vehicle driver needs to determine whether a gap is acceptable 50 feet before reaching the yield point. Research has determined that excessive intersection sight distance results in a higher crash frequency. The 50-foot distance is intended to slow vehicles prior to entering the roundabout, which allows them to focus on the pedestrian crossing prior to entry. It may be advisable to add landscaping to restrict sight distance to the minimum. Exhibit 1320-25 combines stopping and intersection sight distances to identify landscaping height restrictions.

(i) **Right-Turn Slip Lane**

If a capacity analysis shows a heavy right-turn volume, consider using a right-turn slip lane. Right-turn slip lane fastest paths are measured as a right turn (R_5) plus acceleration to the merge point. Two ways to terminate a right-turn slip lane are: as a merge (lane drop) or as a yield (see Exhibit 1320-26). Make pedestrian refuge islands included with right-turn slip lanes ADA compliant (see Chapter 1510).

(j) **Add and Drop or Bypass Lanes**

When a lane is added prior to a roundabout entry to accommodate traffic volume, it can be much shorter than what is normally needed at a signal. Instead of the add lane needing to store enough vehicles to maintain two lanes of saturation flow during the signal's green time, the roundabout add lane only needs to be long enough to provide access to gaps in all circulating lanes as they become available (see Exhibit 1320-27). The same principle applies to drop lanes where additional lanes are provided at a roundabout exit. Instead of two dense platoons needing distance to spread out and merge downstream of a signal, vehicles exiting a roundabout are usually more evenly spaced, making merging easier and requiring less distance before beginning the taper (see Exhibit 1320-27). A practical way to end or drop the lane as it transitions from two exit lanes to one exit lane is to taper each lane symmetrically in order to indicate to drivers that the left exit lane is not prioritized over the other (right) exit lane. This type of lane strategy improves lane utilization for multilane roundabouts in both the entry and exit areas and the circulating roadway.

(k) **Railroad Crossings**

Although it is undesirable to locate any intersection near an at-grade railroad crossing, a crossing is acceptable near a roundabout as long as the roundabout does not force vehicles to stop on the tracks. The distance between the yield point and the tracks is sized to at least accommodate the design vehicle length, unless there is a gate on the circulating roadway that allows the roundabout entry to clear prior to the train's arrival (see Exhibit 1320-28).

The intersection analyses and site-specific conditions help determine the need for, and optimum placement of, a gate on the circulating roadway. Exhibit 1320-28 shows two example locations for railroad gates on the circulating roadway, however only one would be used. While a roundabout has a tendency to lock up as soon as the gates come down on the circulating roadway, the affected leg is very efficient at returning to normal operation.

1320.07 Pedestrians

Pedestrian crossings at roundabouts are unique in that the pedestrian crosses at a point behind the first vehicle waiting at the yield point. When pedestrian activity is anticipated, include a pedestrian refuge in the splitter island and mark all pedestrian crosswalks. Position the crosswalk one car length (approximately 20 feet) from the yield point and perpendicular to the entry and exit roadways (see Exhibit 1320-21). Consider landscaping strips to discourage pedestrians crossing at undesirable locations. Where possible, provide a buffer between the traveled way and sidewalk.

Provide a barrier-free passageway at least 10 feet wide (desirable) through all islands and buffers. Whenever a raised splitter island is provided, provide a 6-foot island width for pedestrian refuge. This facilitates pedestrians crossing in two separate movements.

Give special attention to assisting visually impaired pedestrians through design elements, such as providing truncated domes for tactile cues at curb ramps and splitter islands. Provide appropriate informational cues to pedestrians regarding the location of the sidewalk and the crosswalk.

For additional information on sidewalk ramps and pedestrian needs, see Chapter 1510.

1320.08 Bicycles

In most cases, the operating speed of vehicles within roundabouts is similar to the speed of bicyclists, and both can use the same roadway without conflict or special treatment. Less experienced cyclists may not feel comfortable riding with traffic and may want to use a sidewalk instead. End marked bicycle lanes or shoulders before they enter a roundabout in order to direct bicycles to either enter traffic and use the circulating roadway or leave the roadway onto a separate shared-use path or shared-use sidewalk. When using a shared-use sidewalk, the width is the same as a separate shared-use path. (See Exhibit 1320-29 for the recommended design for ending a bicycle lane with a shared-use sidewalk at a roundabout and Chapter 1520 for shared-use path widths.)

1320.09 Signing and Pavement Marking

A typical roundabout sign layout is shown in Exhibit 1320-30. A diagrammatic guide sign, as shown in the exhibit, can be used to provide the driver with destination information. Provide a route confirmation sign on state routes shortly after exiting the roundabout, but after the pedestrian crossing (if there is one) so that the sign will not distract drivers from watching for pedestrians. For multilane roundabouts, provide a lane use sign after the directional sign, but far enough before the crosswalk that changing lanes will not distract drivers from watching for pedestrians. If there is an add lane and it is short enough, it is desirable to place the lane use sign prior to the add lane to cut the number of lane changes.

Provide pavement markings to reinforce appropriate lane use adjacent to the lane use sign if there are two lanes at that point; otherwise, at the point at which there are two lanes and in the circulating roadway where appropriate. If lane use markings are used in the circulating roadway, make them visible to vehicles from the yield point. Contact the region or HQ Traffic Office for additional information when completing the channelization plan for a roundabout. Examples of pavement marking layouts for single and multilane roundabouts are shown in Exhibit 1320-31. For additional details on signing and pavement marking, see the MUTCD.

1320.10 Illumination

Provide illumination for each of the conflict points between circulating and entering traffic in the roundabout and at the beginning of the raised splitter islands. Illuminate raised channelization or curbing. Position the luminaires on the downstream side of each crosswalk to improve the visibility of pedestrians. Light the roundabout from the outside in toward the center. This improves the visibility of the central island and circulating vehicles to motorists approaching the roundabout. Ground-level lighting within the central island that shines upward toward objects in the central island can also improve their visibility. Exhibit 1320-32 depicts the light standard placement for a four-leg roundabout. (For additional information on illumination, see Chapter 1040.)

1320.11 Access, Parking, and Transit Facilities

No road approach connections to the circulating roadway are allowed at roundabouts unless they are designed as legs to the roundabout. It is desirable that road approaches not be located on the approach or departure legs within the length of the splitter island. The minimum distance from the circulating roadway to a road approach is controlled by corner clearance using the outside edge of the circulating roadway as the crossroad (see Chapter 550). If minimum corner clearance cannot be met, provide justification. (For additional information on limited access highways, see Chapter 530.)

If the parcel adjoins two legs of the roundabout, it is acceptable to provide a right-in/right-out driveway within the length of the splitter islands on both legs. This provides for all movements; design both driveways to accommodate their design vehicles (see Exhibit 1320-33a).

Roadways between roundabouts may have restrictive medians with left-turn access provided with U-turns at the roundabouts (see Exhibit 1320-33b).

Parking is not allowed in the circulating roadway or on the entry or exit roadway within the length of the splitter island.

Transit stops are not allowed in the circulating roadway, in the approach lanes within the length of the splitter island, or in the exit lanes prior to the crosswalk. Locate transit stops on the roadway before or after the roundabout, in a pullout or where the pavement is wide enough that a stopped bus does not block the through movement of traffic or impede sight distance.

1320.12 Design Procedures

Document roundabout design considerations and conclusions in accordance with Chapter 300.

(1) *Conceptual Design*

Early coordination between the design team, region Traffic and Project Development offices, and HQ Traffic and Design offices is essential for a roundabout design layout.

(a) **Conceptual Meeting**

Conduct a Conceptual Meeting with the region Traffic Office, the region Project Development Engineer or Engineering Manager, and the HQ Traffic and Design offices after the traffic analysis has been completed. The intent of this meeting is to review, discuss, and evaluate alternative layouts for a roundabout before too much time and resources have been expended. The outcome of the meeting will provide sufficient information that a designer can proceed with finalizing the geometric design.

As a minimum, consider, discuss, and document the following items for the Conceptual Meeting:

1. **Project Overview**
2. **Traffic Analysis Recommendations and Conclusions**

   In addition to Chapter 320, Traffic Analysis, the following items need to be documented:

   - Use 20 years after the year construction is scheduled to begin as the design year of the analysis.
   - Identify the approximate year a single-lane roundabout intersection level of service (LOS) will operate below the selected design LOS or require expansion.
   - Identify and justify growth rate(s) used for the design year analysis.
   - Provide peak hour (both a.m. and p.m.) turning movement volumes for each leg for the existing and design year.
   - Input an environmental factor of 1.1 if required by the analysis software.
   - Provide pertinent reports generated (such as level of service, queue length, delay, percent stopped, and degree of saturation) from the analysis software used. (Contact the region or HQ Traffic Office for currently approved capacity analysis software. Using older software versions is not acceptable).
   - Provide explanation of the impacts to traffic operations upstream and downstream of the intersection in situations where V/C exceeds 0.92.

3. **Preliminary Layout**

   Provide an existing plan sheet, base map, or aerial photo (non-CADD-generated is encouraged) with the preliminary roundabout sketched at the intersection for use in evaluating current or new concepts to the roundabout layout. The intent is for the designer to quickly develop the roundabout footprint for the intersection without expending a lot of time or resources drafting PS&E-quality plans to show the design of the roundabout. Typically, revisions are needed based upon the feedback received at the Conceptual Meeting.

   Use an existing plan sheet, base map, or aerial photo of sufficient scale to show existing roadway alignment and features, surrounding topographic information (may include aboveground and belowground utility elements), rights of way (existing), surrounding buildings, environmental constraints (such as wetlands), drainage, and other constraints that may impact the design of the roundabout.

4. **Design Vehicle**

   Identify the design vehicle for each leg of the intersection. Include the truck types and sizes (oversized vehicles) that travel through the area (currently and in the future) and whether the roundabout is on an existing or planned truck route.

5. **Other Topics for Discussion**

   Additional items that need to be discussed and considered in the design of the roundabout may include:

   - Vehicle turning path templates: Use approved software to validate the roundabout.
   - Fastest path speeds.
   - Splitter island design: Provide a smooth entry alignment into the roundabout.
   - Other roundabout shapes.
   - Bike and pedestrian design, including ADA requirements.
   - Central island design.
   - Curbing details.
   - Signing, illumination, and delineation considerations.
   - Vertical grade.
   - Adjacent posted speeds.
   - Existing and future corridor congestion.

(2) Geometric Design

The Design Documentation Package (DDP) is the documentation of the final roundabout design and the decisions that resulted in the design. Complete the DDP before intersection plan approval.

As a minimum, include the following items in the geometric Design Documentation Package:

(a) Intersection plan showing the roundabout channelization.

(b) A summary of the design decisions and deviations that pertain to the roundabout.

(c) Roundabout geometric data, including the following:

- Identify approach design speeds for all approach legs.
- Identify the design vehicle.
- Provide a table summarizing the roundabout design details, including inscribed diameter, central island diameter, truck apron width, fastest path (radius and speed) for each approach, and superelevation of the circulating roadway.
- Provide detailed drawings showing the fastest paths for each movement.
- Provide a table summarizing stopping and intersection sight distance on each leg.
- Provide auto turn paths showing design vehicle, WB-67, and largest oversize vehicle movements.

(d) Detailed drawings of the splitter islands on each leg.

(e) Preliminary signing, delineation, and illumination plans.

(f) Curb types used.

(g) Central island design.

(h) Bike and pedestrian design, including ADA requirements.

A roundabout review checklist and example package is located on the Project Development web page:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/ProjectDev

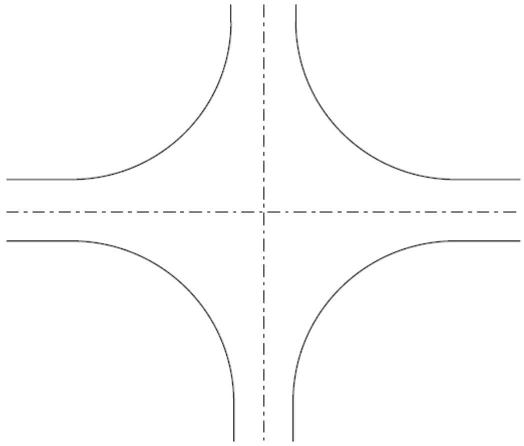
(3) Approvals

A roundabout is approved as an intersection in accordance with Chapter 1310. Document all design decisions as part of the Design Documentation Package (DDP).

If there are numerous design variances for a roundabout design, coordinate with the region Traffic Office, region Project Development Engineer or Engineering Manager, and Assistant State Design Engineer to determine whether a project analysis is needed.

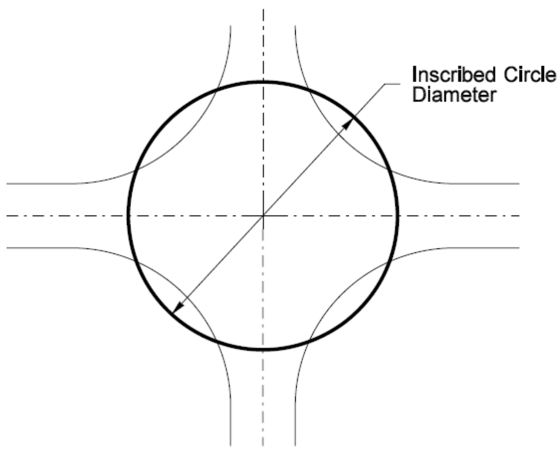
1320.13 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



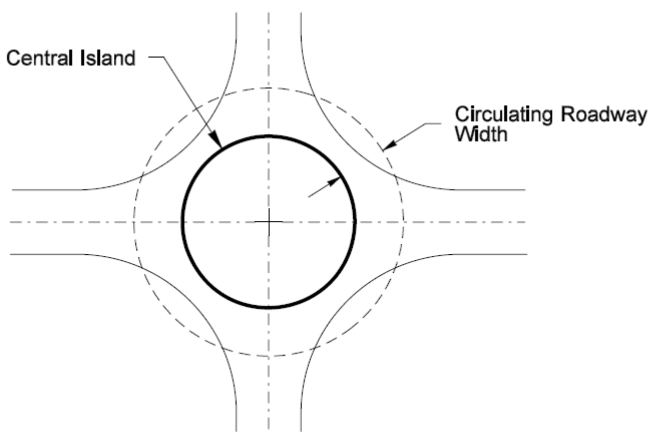
Step 1

Step 1
Start with a scale drawing of the intersection.



Step 2

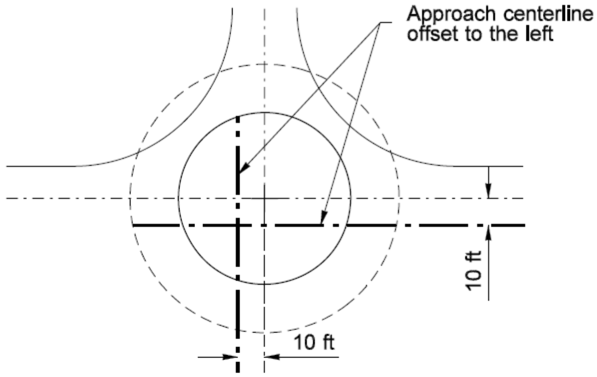
Step 2
Select a trial inscribed circle diameter based on the capacity analysis and Exhibit 1320-8 and place this at the intersection.



Step 3

Step 3
Establish the central island and circulating roadway width.

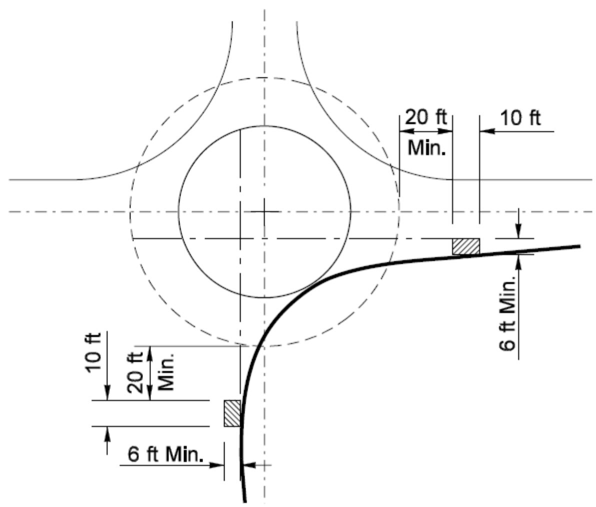
Design Iteration Steps
Exhibit 1320-13a



Step 4

Step 4

Draw each approach's centerline 10 feet to the left of the center of the circle.

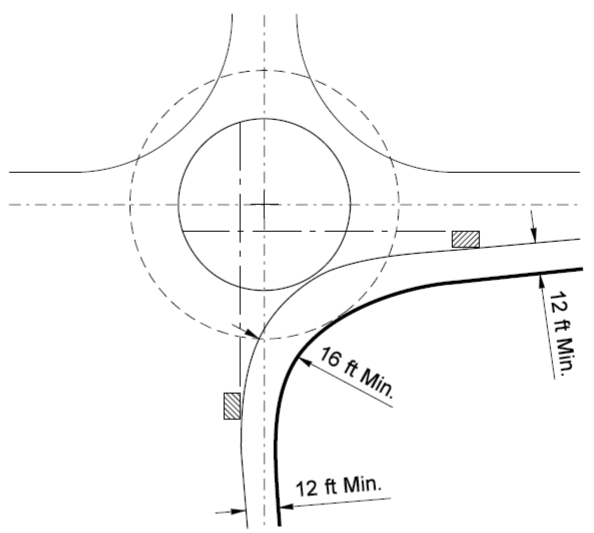


Step 5

Step 5

Draw a 10-foot x 6-foot-wide pedestrian refuge 20 feet from the inscribed circle centered on the leg's centerline.

Draw the design elements of the entry curve and the next exit curve to the right. Start with the entry and exit that are closest together and continue around the circle until completing the exit curve on the initial approach.



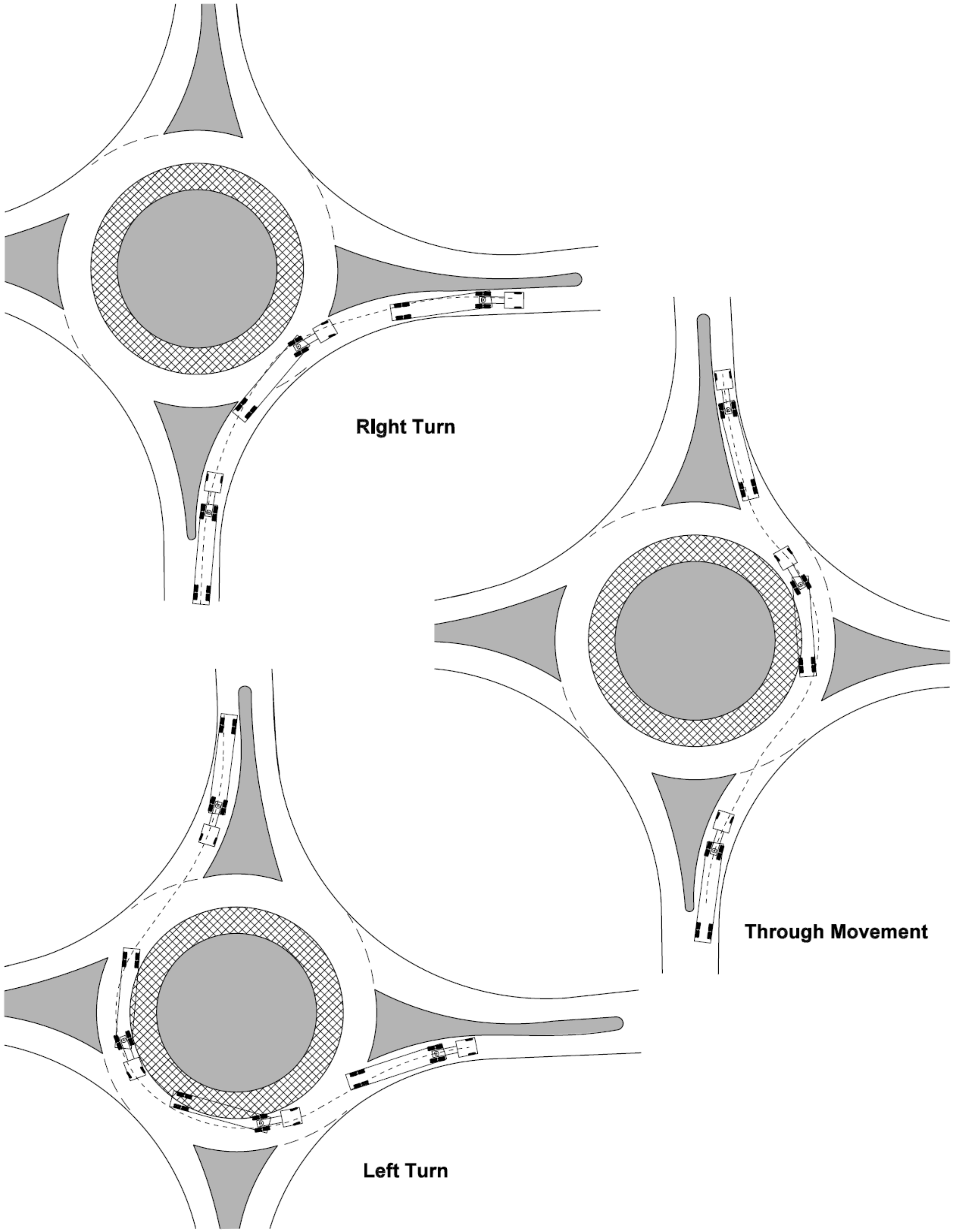
Step 6

Step 6

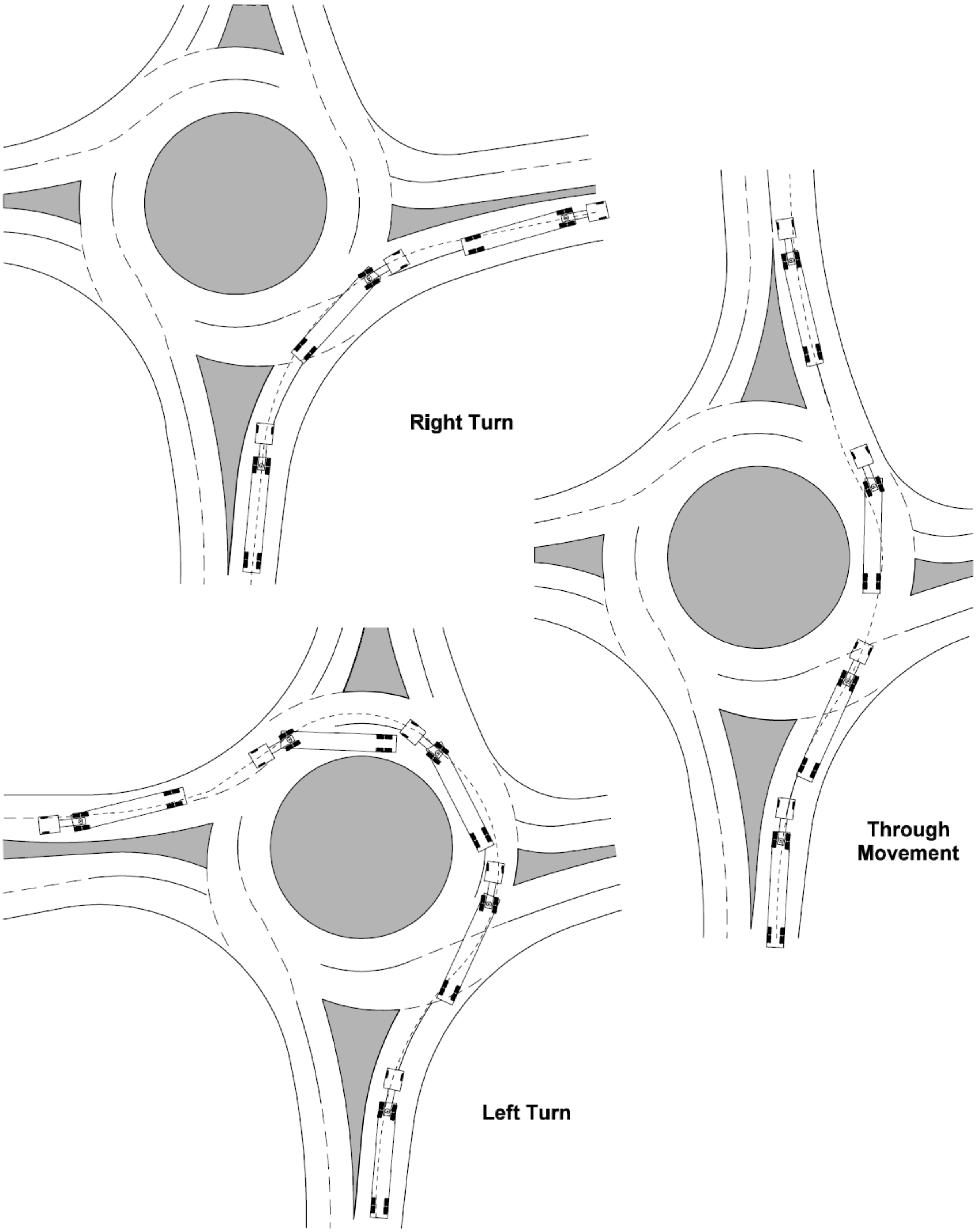
Evaluate the adequacy of the roundabout design (check vehicle turning path templates, entry angle, fastest paths, and natural vehicle paths).

Revise deficient design element(s), repeating the design steps above until design performance objectives are met.

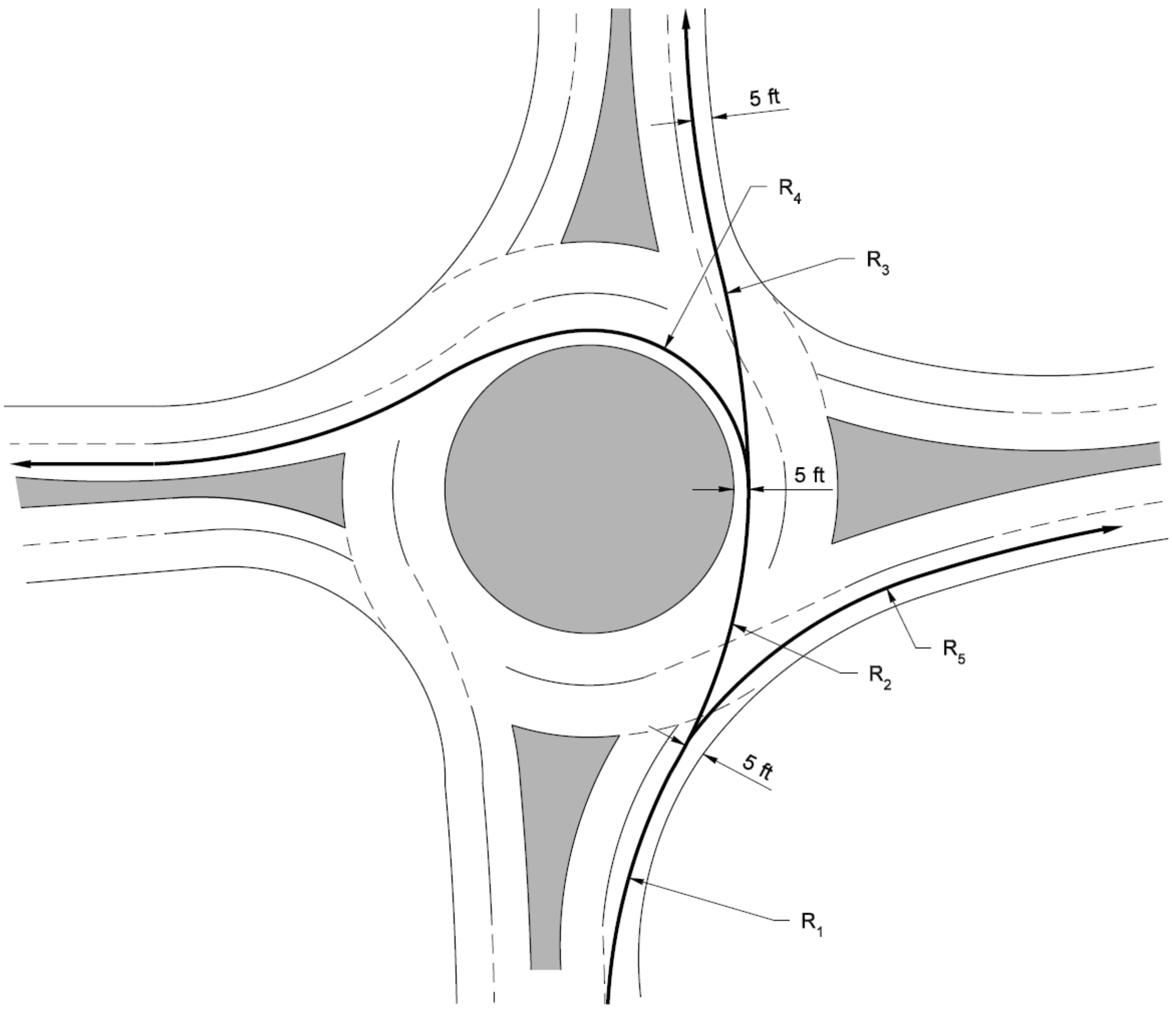
Design Iteration Steps
Exhibit 1320-13b



Truck Turning Paths
Exhibit 1320-14a



Truck Turning Paths
Exhibit 1320-14b



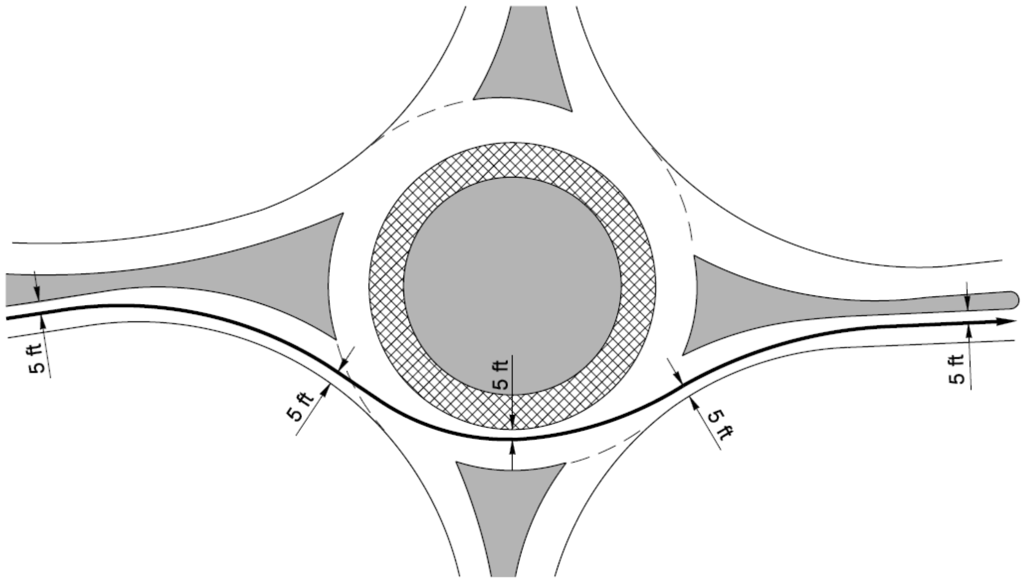
Where:

R_1 = Entry path radius
R_2 = Circulating path radius
R_3 = Exit path radius
R_4 = Left-turn path radius
R_5 = Right-turn path radius

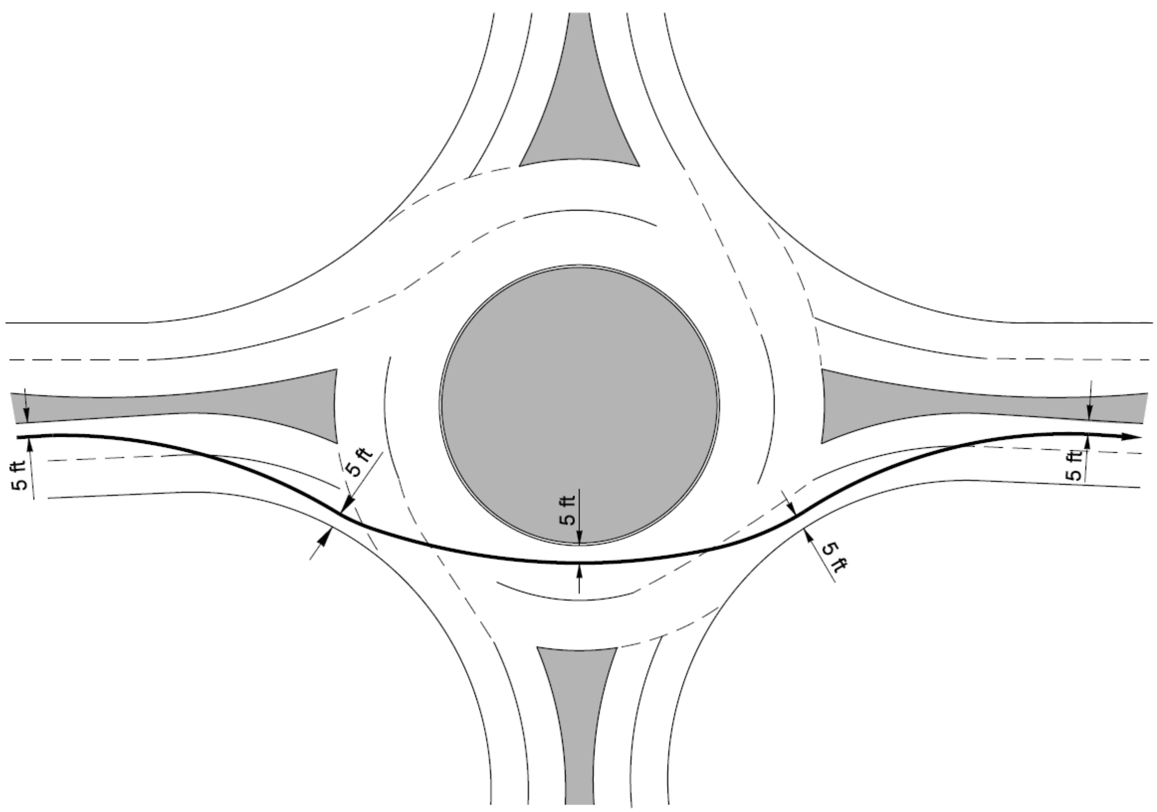
Notes:

- The 5-ft clearance is from raised curbing.
- Edge striping next to a curb is discouraged.

Fastest Path Radii
Exhibit 1320-15a

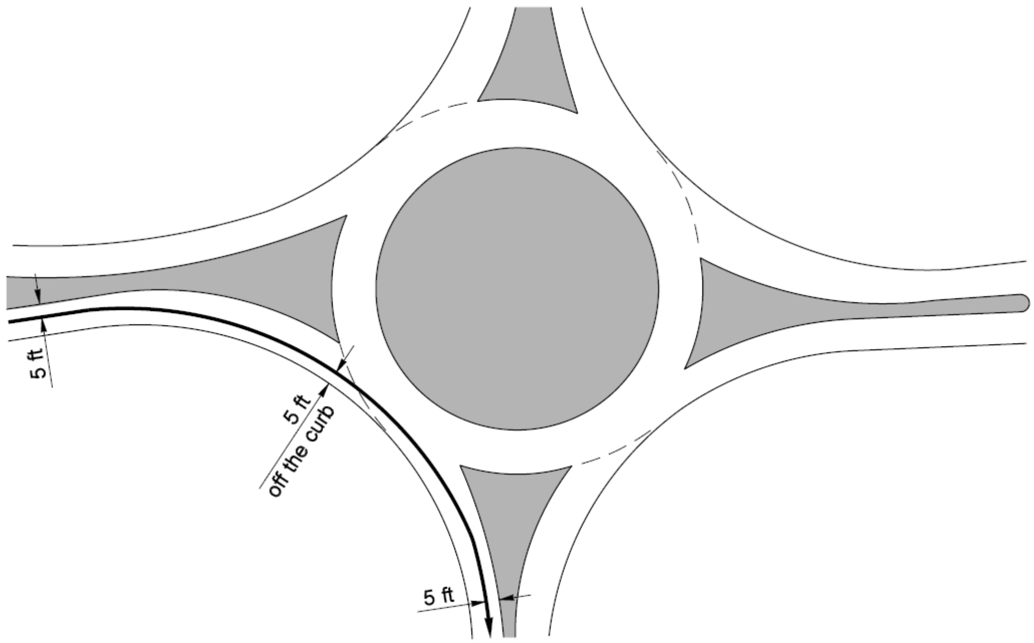


Single-Lane Roundabout

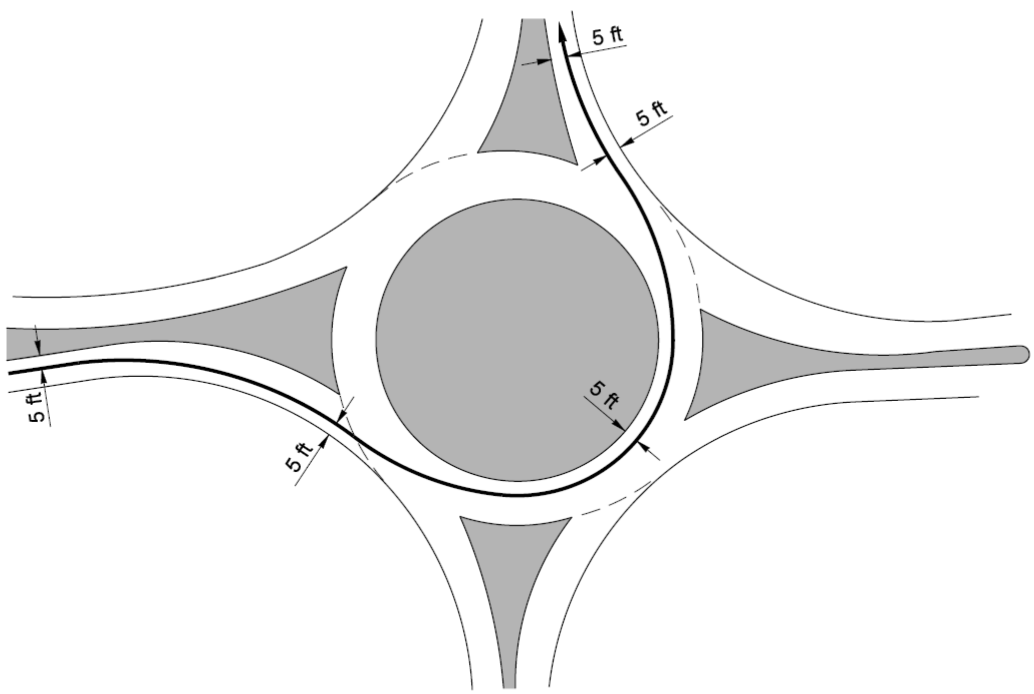


Multilane Roundabout

Fastest Path Radii
Exhibit 1320-15b

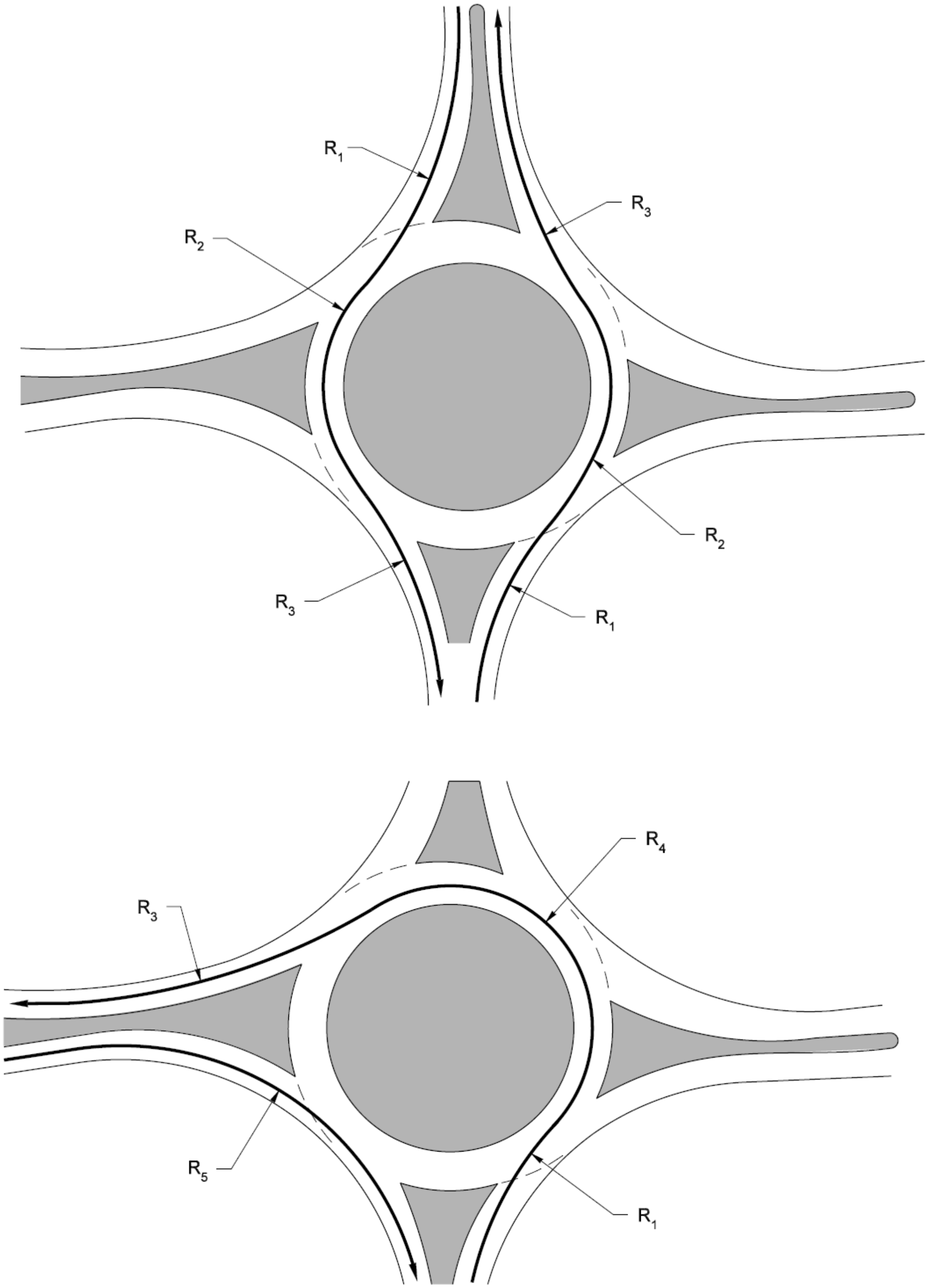


Right-Turn Movement

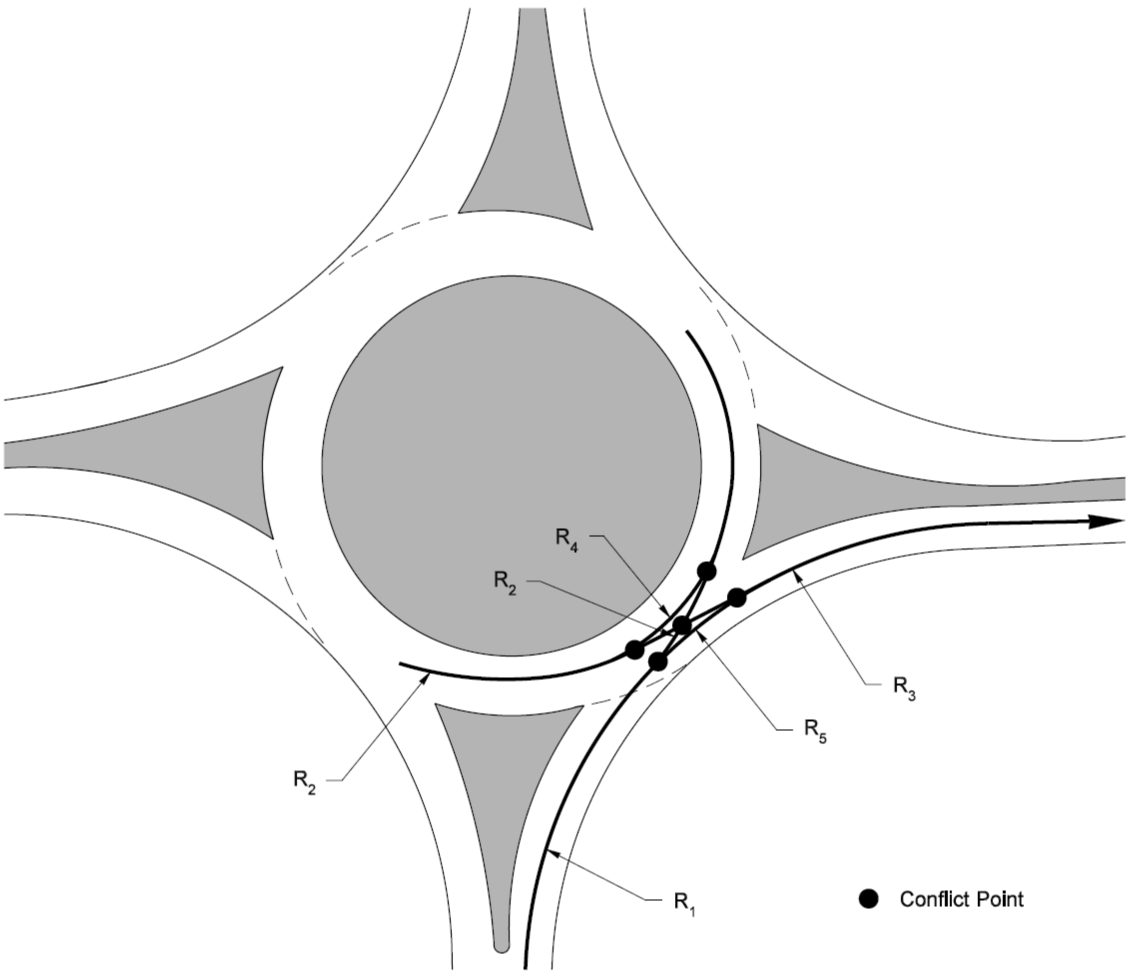


Left-Turn Movement

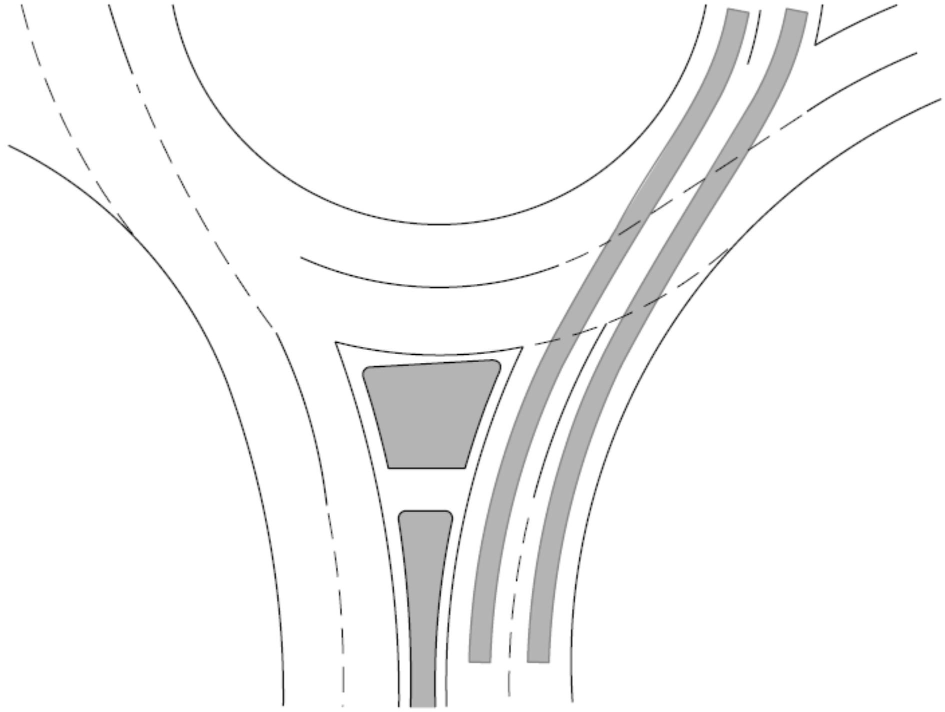
Fastest Path Radii
Exhibit 1320-15c



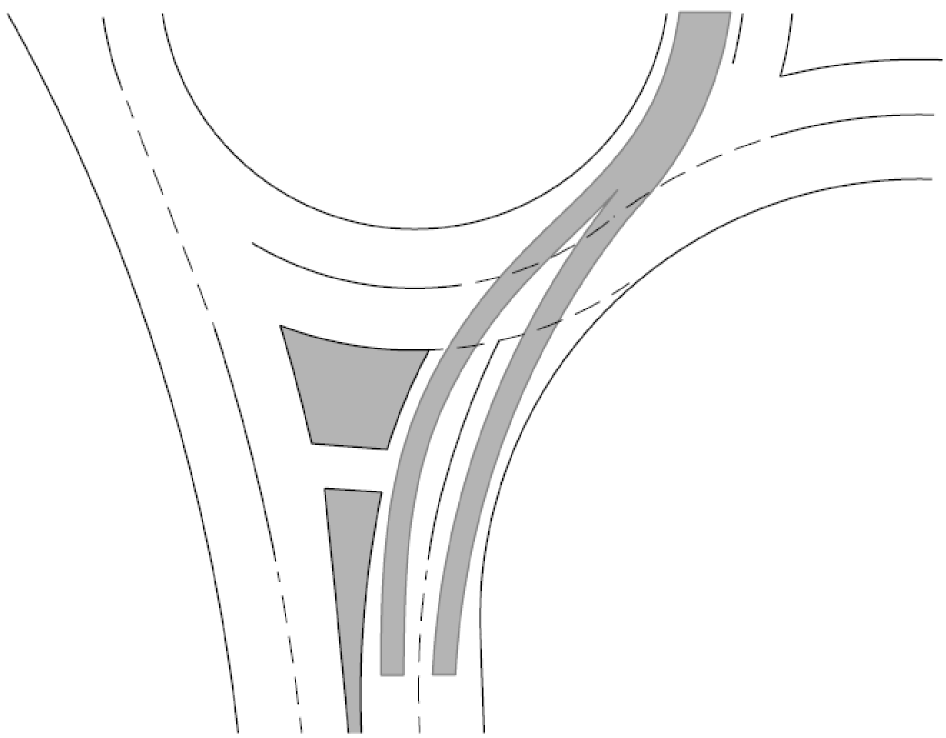
Consecutive Radii
Exhibit 1320-16



Coinciding Radii and Conflict Points
Exhibit 1320-17

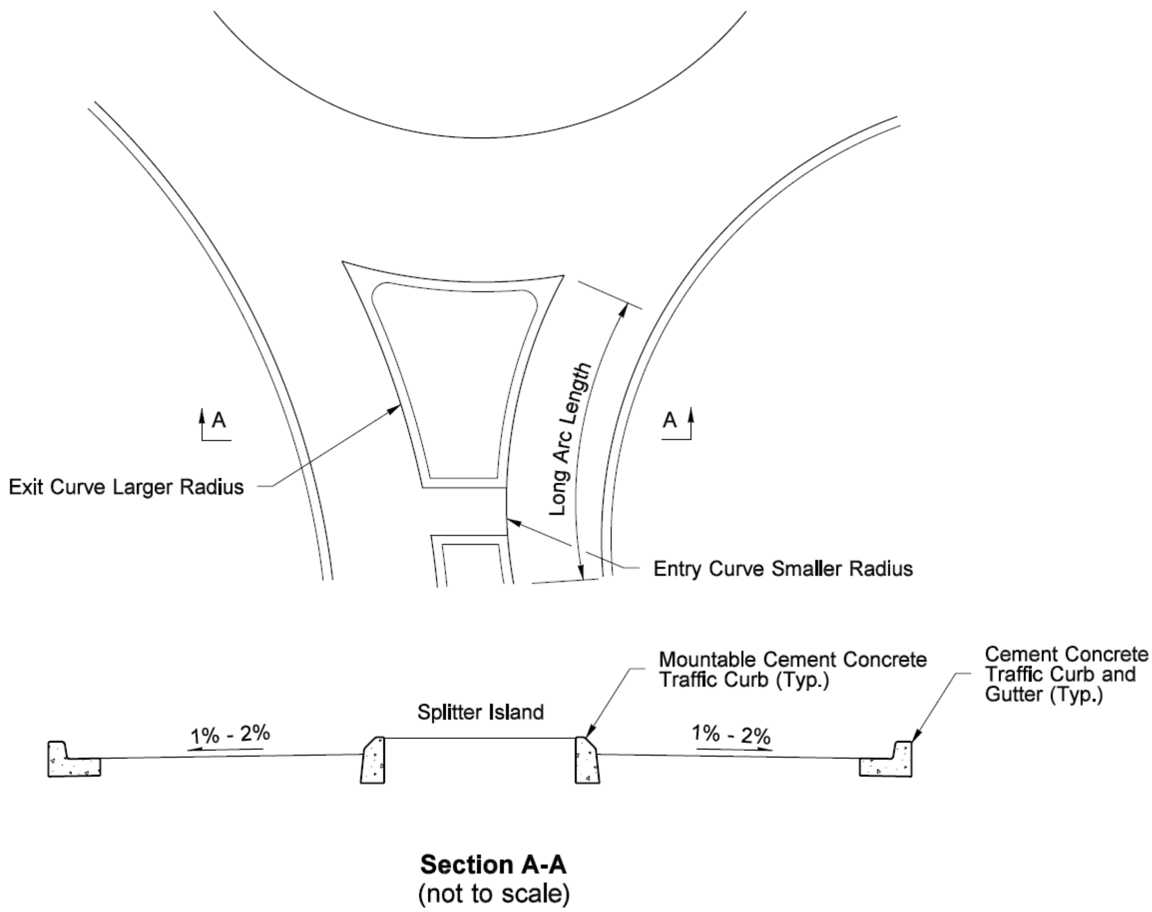


Entry Design Without Path Overlap (Desirable)

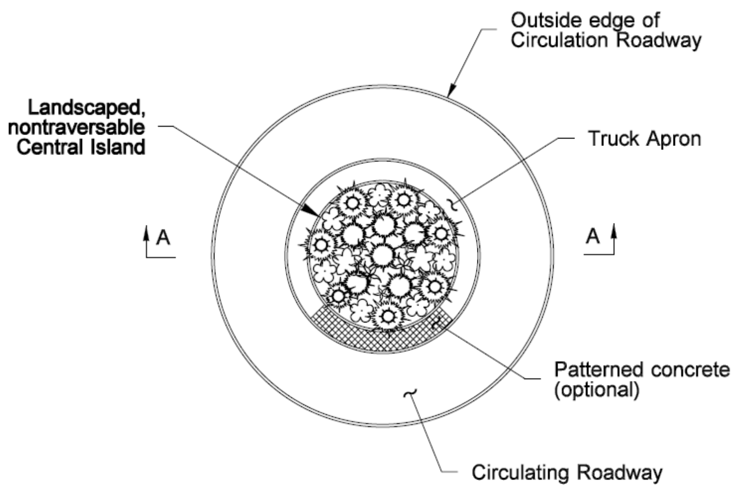


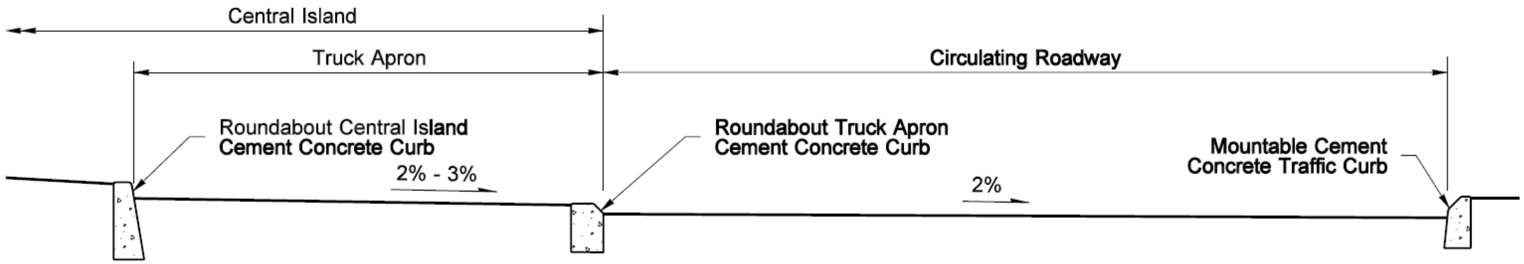
Entry Design With Path Overlap (Undesirable)

Entry Design Path
Exhibit 1320-18



Entry and Exit Curves
Exhibit 1320-19

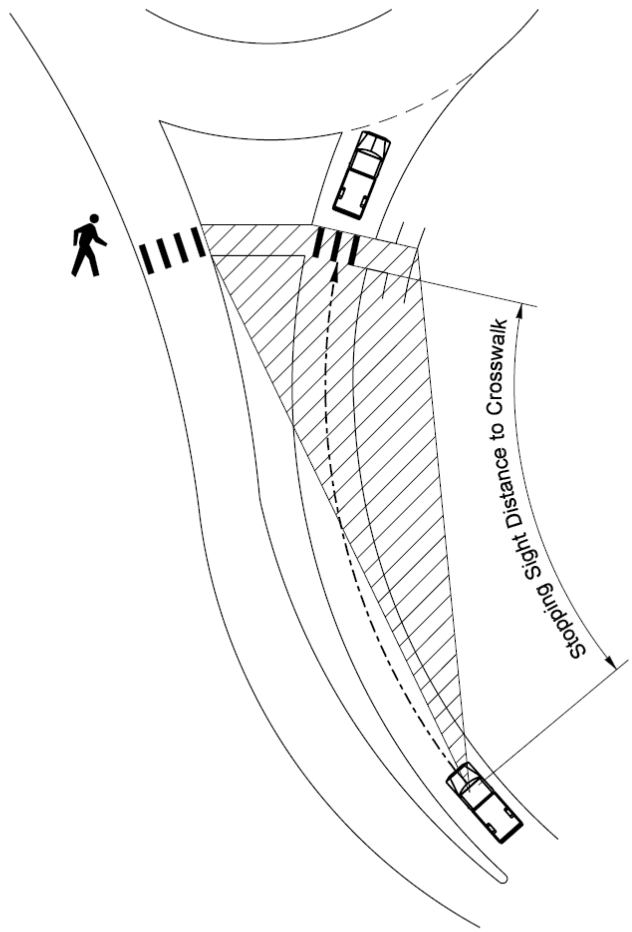




Section A-A
(not to scale)

Note: For roundabout curb details, see Cement Concrete Curbs in the *Standard Plans*.

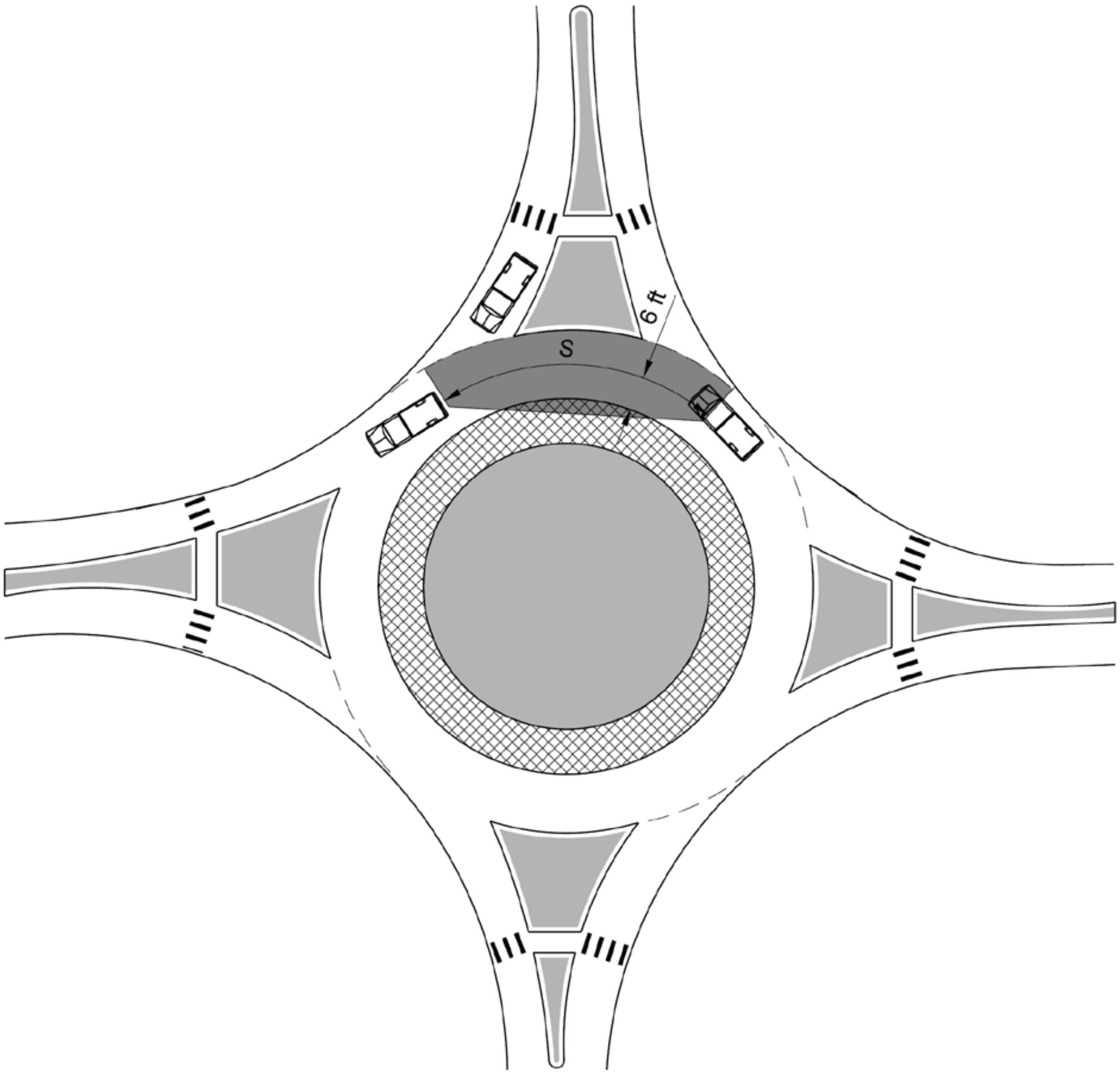
Central Island and Cross Section
Exhibit 1320-20



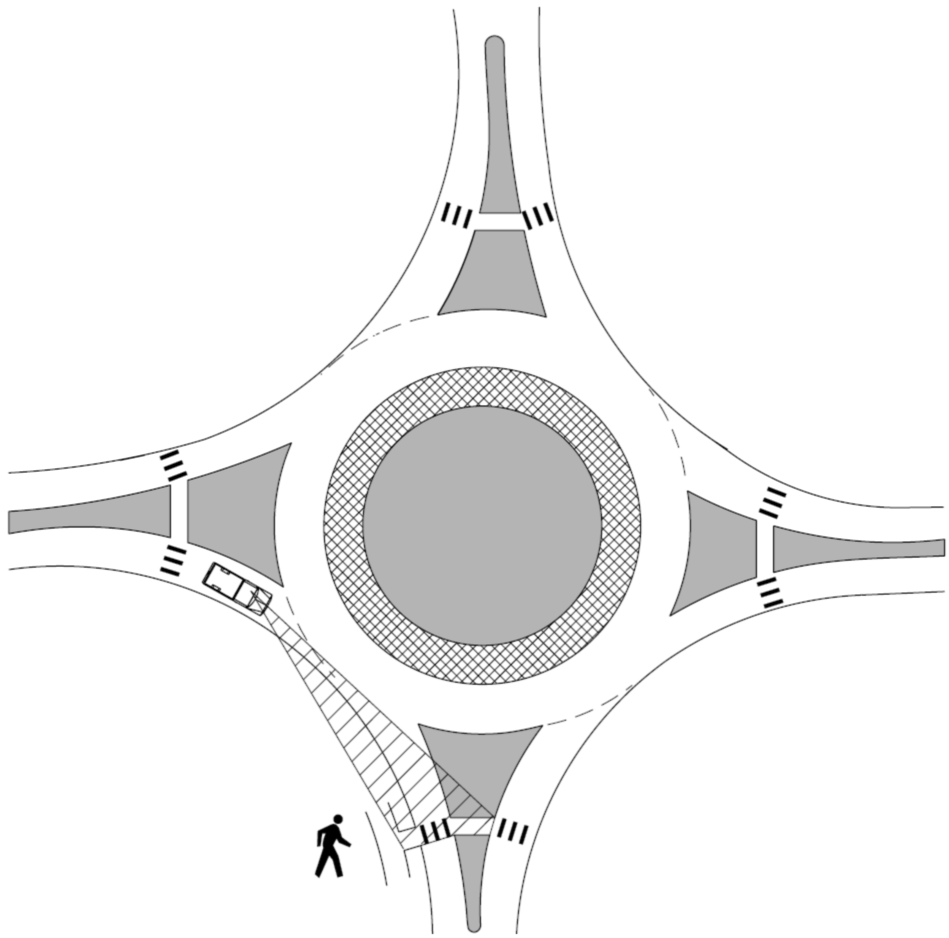
Note:

Position the crosswalk one car length (approximately 20 feet) in advance of the yield point.

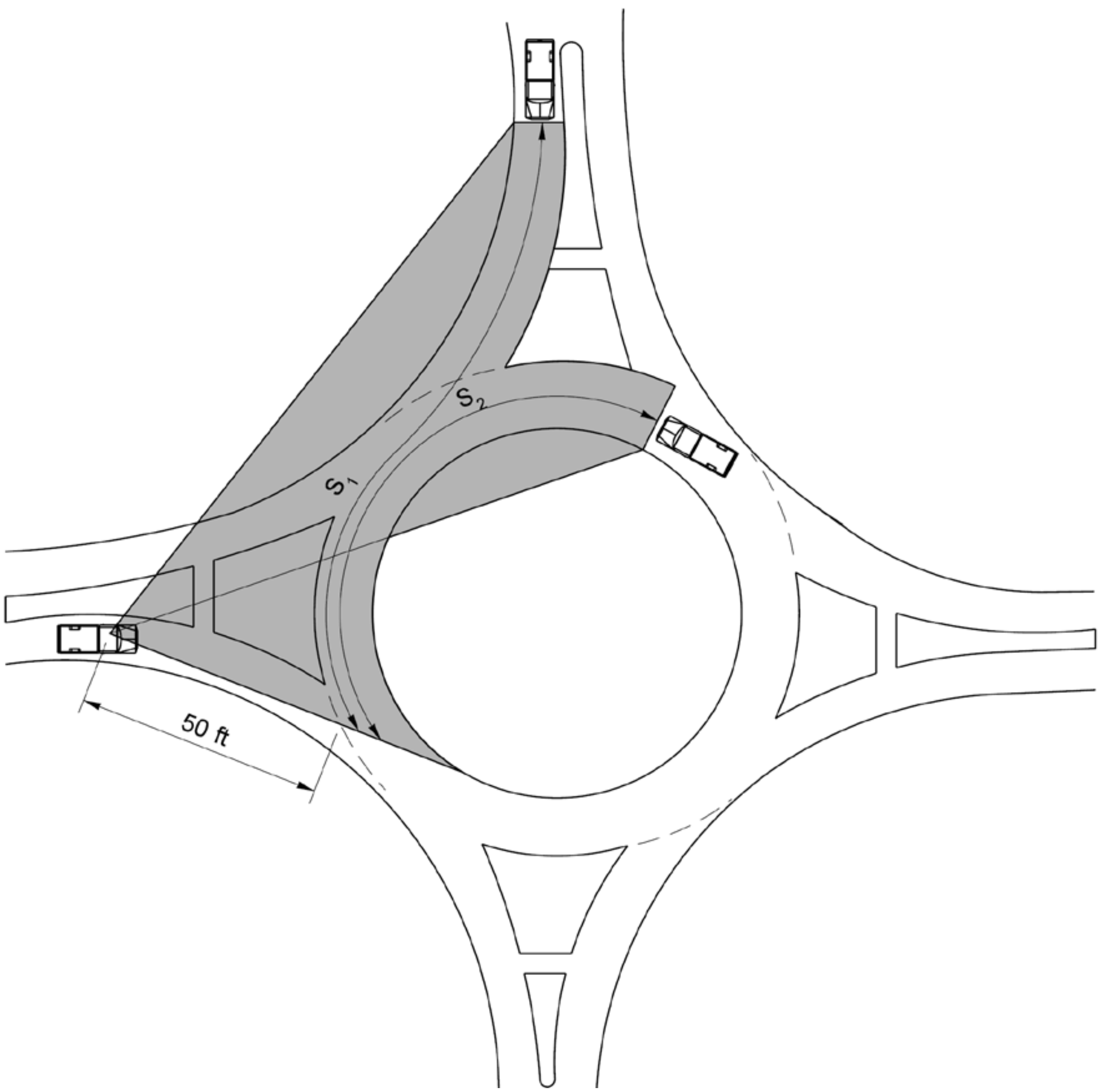
Approach Stopping Sight Distance to Crosswalk
Exhibit 1320-21



Stopping Sight Distance on Circulatory Roadway
Exhibit 1320-22



Exit Stopping Sight Distance to Crosswalk
Exhibit 1320-23

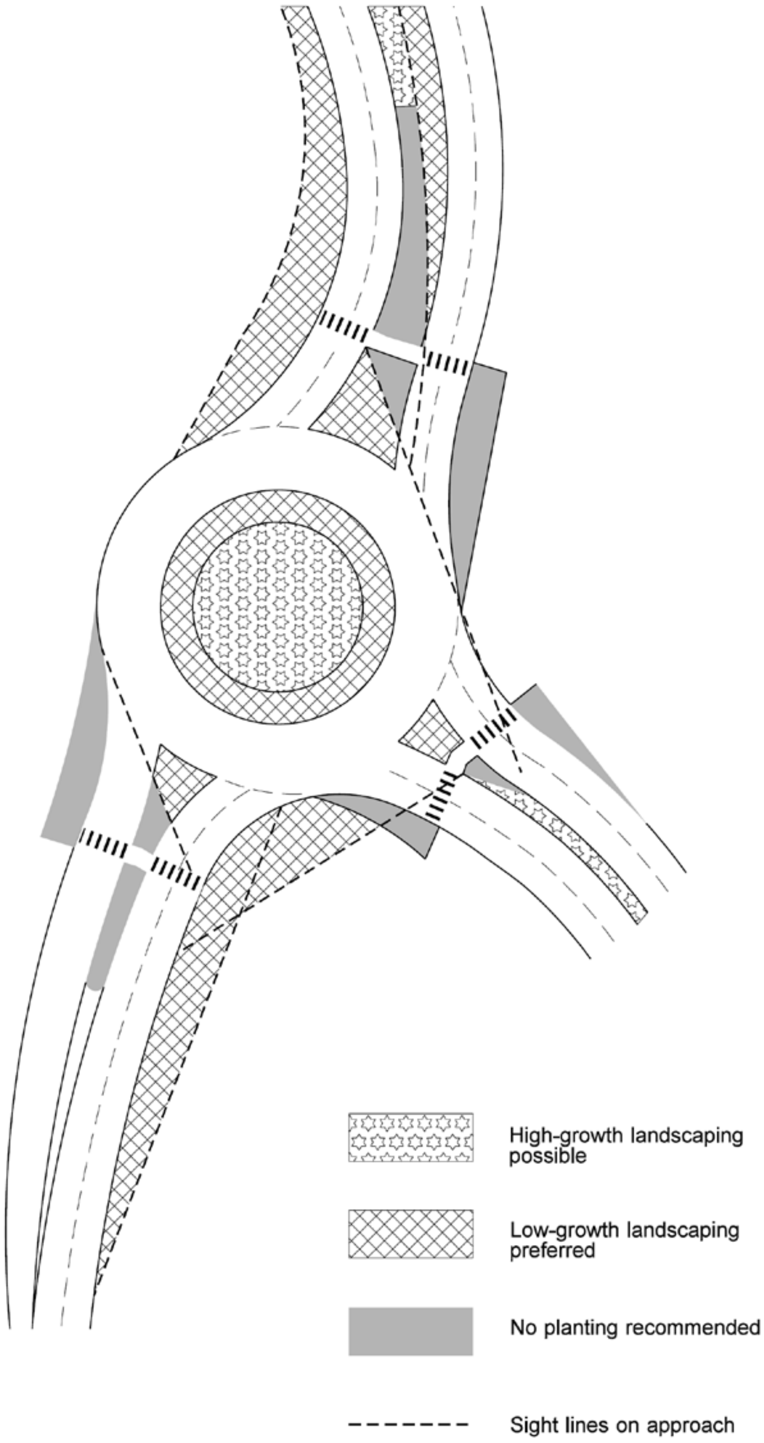


S_1 = Entering stream sight distance

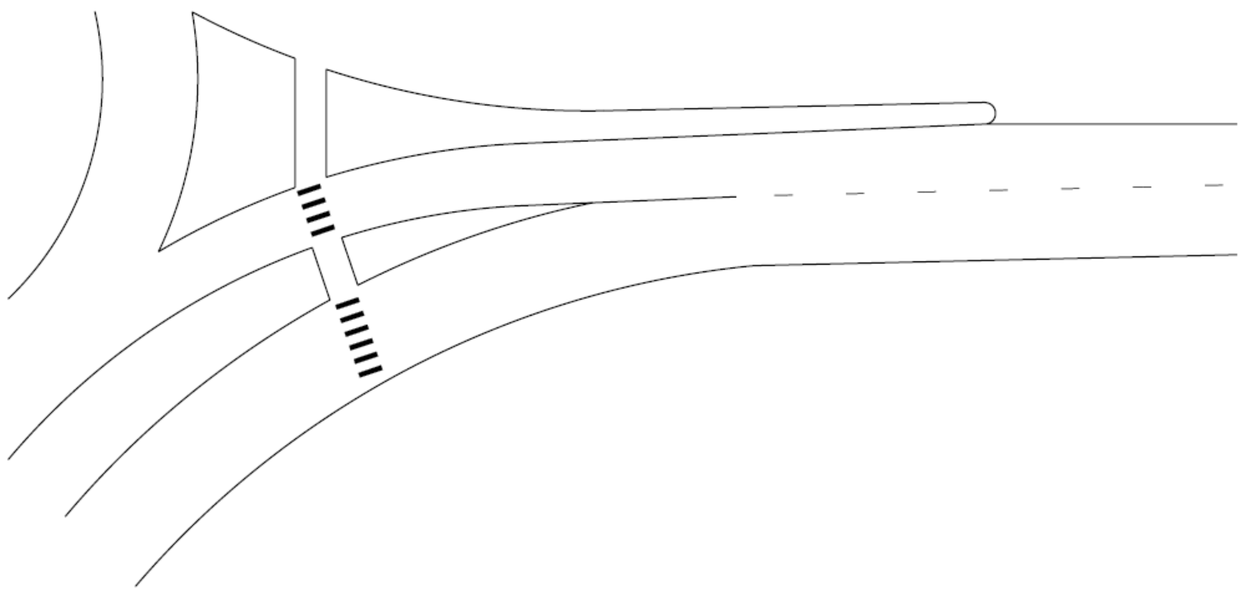
S_2 = Circulating stream sight distance

Intersection Sight Distance

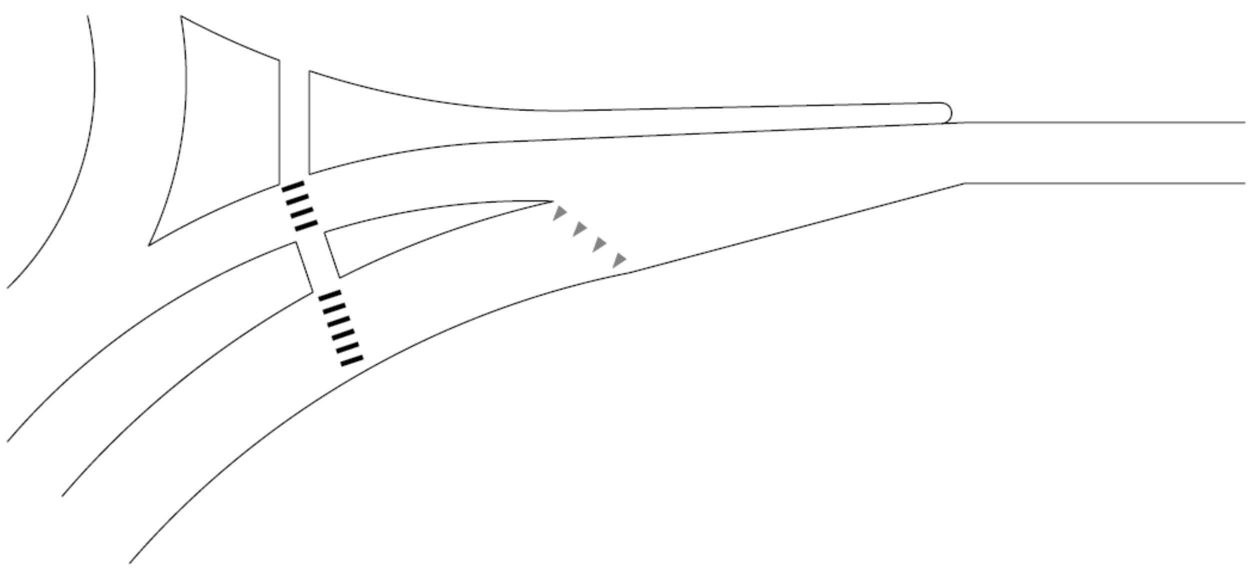
Exhibit 1320-24



Landscaping Height Restrictions for Intersection Sight Distance
Exhibit 1320-25

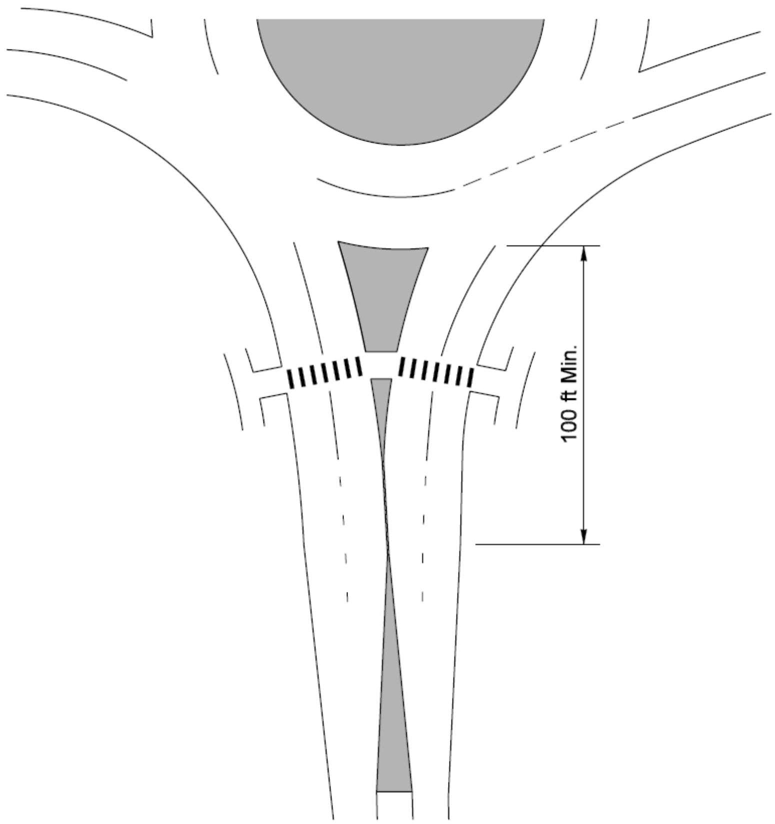


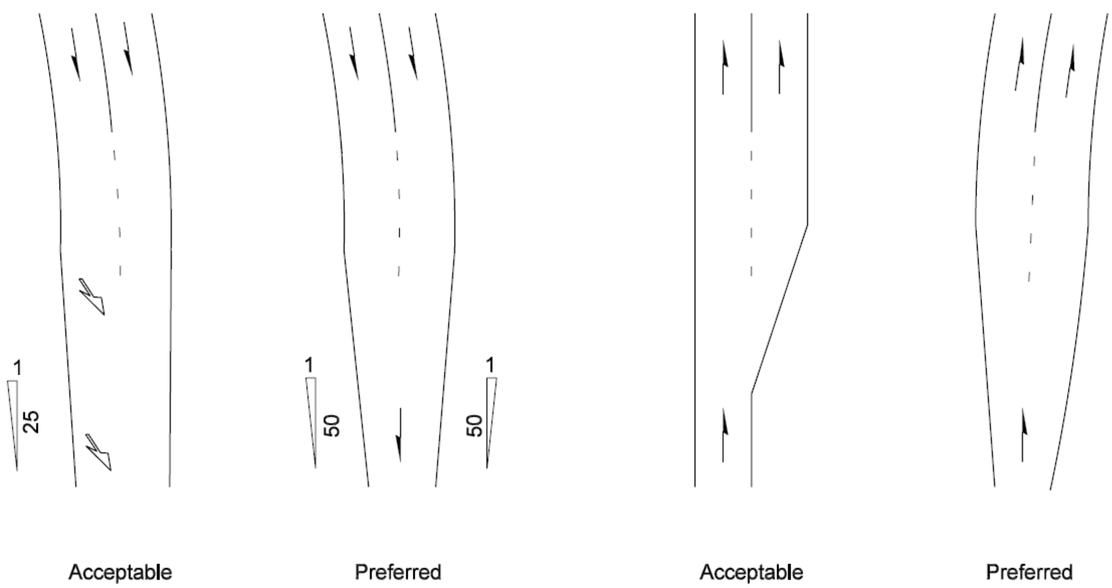
Merge Termination



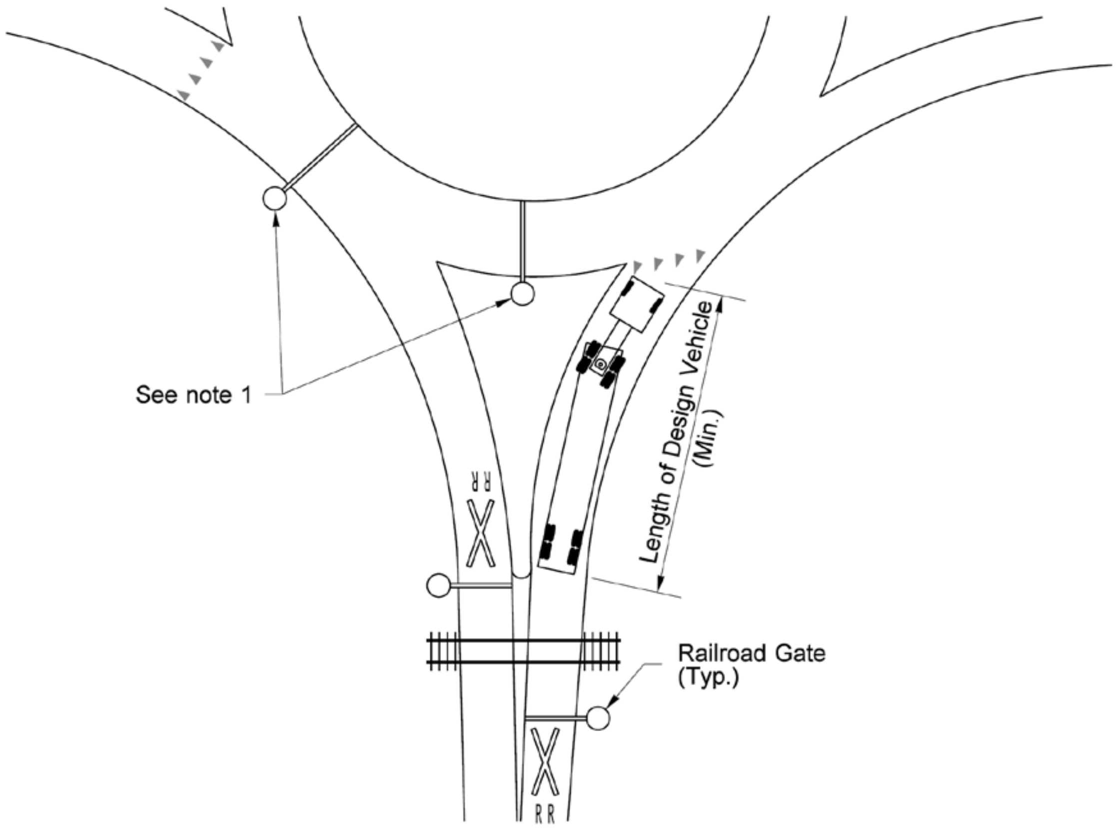
Yield Termination

Right-Turn Slip Lane Termination
Exhibit 1320-26





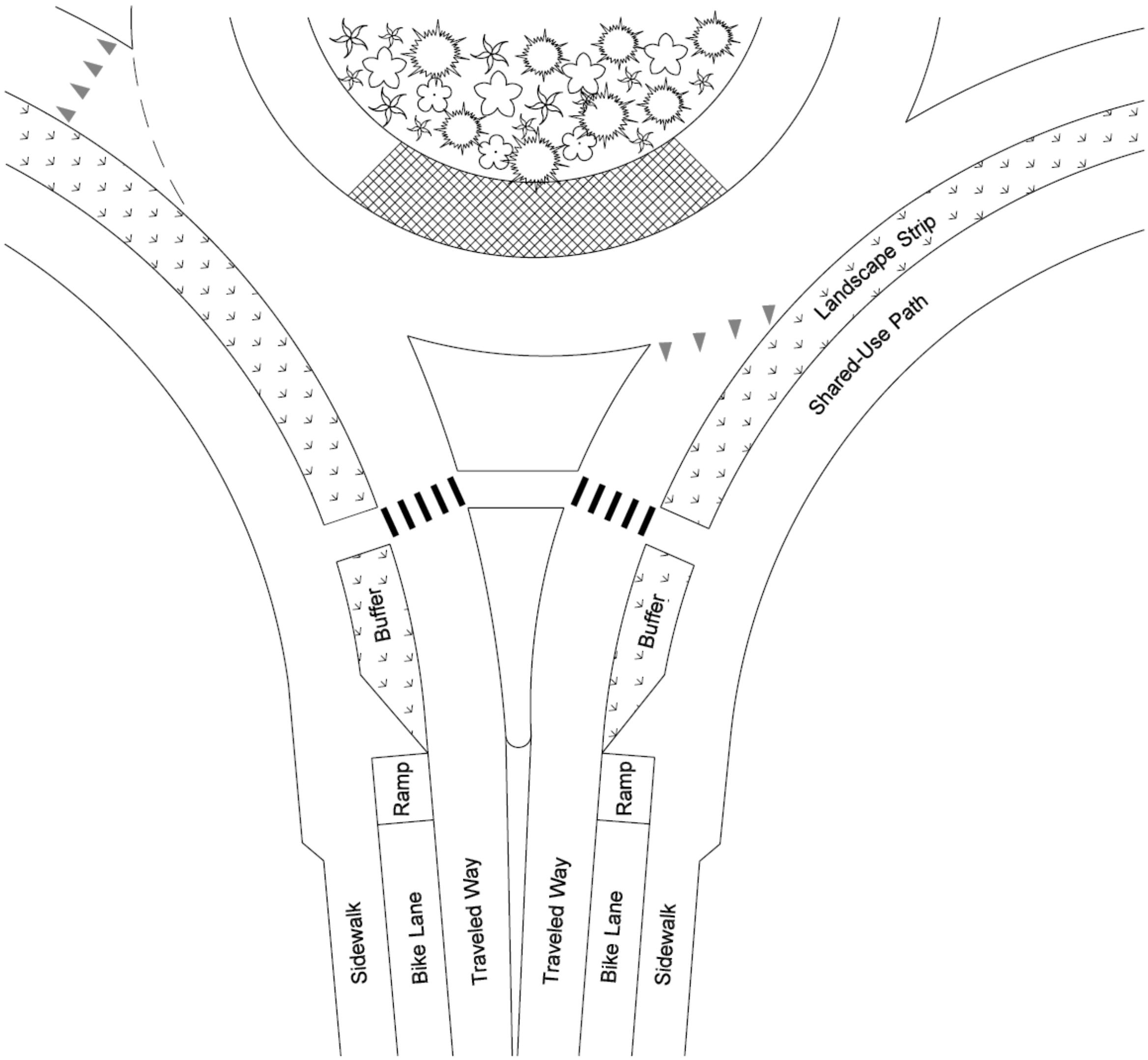
Add and Drop Lanes
Exhibit 1320-27



Note:

[1] Use the intersection analysis and site-specific conditions to help determine the need for, and optimum placement of, a gate on the circulating roadway (see 1320.06(3)(k))

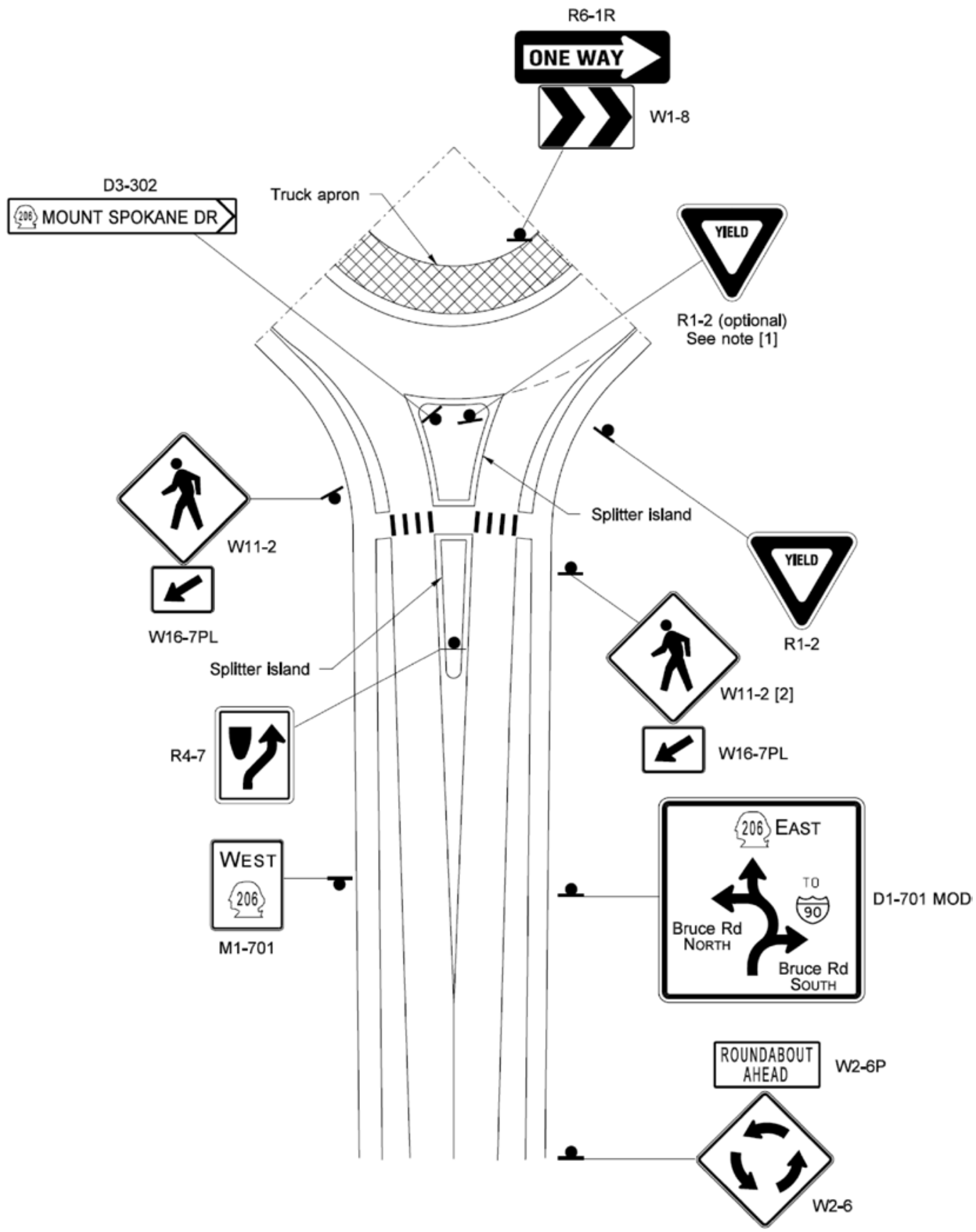
Railroad Gate Configuration
Exhibit 1320-28



Note:

For pedestrian and bicycle design guidance, see Chapters 1510 and 1520.

Bicycle Lanes
Exhibit 1320-29



Notes:

[1] Provide on two-lane entries; consider when view of right-side sign might become obstructed.

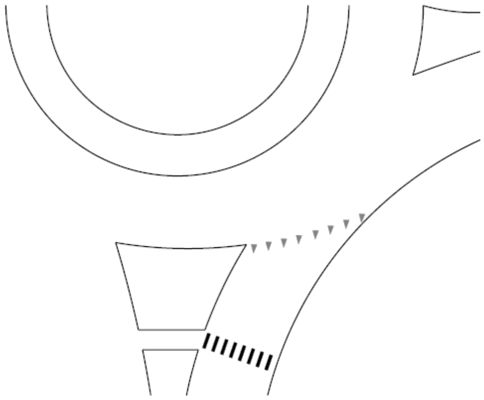
[2] Locate in such a way as to not obstruct view of yield sign.

General:

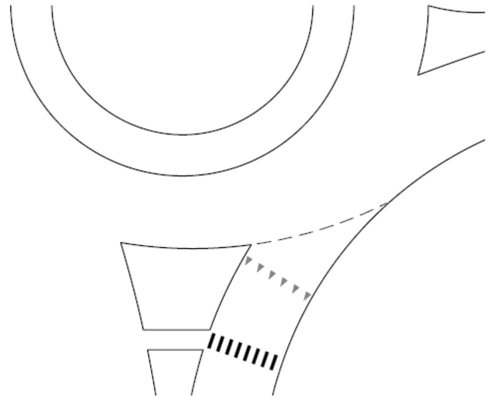
For additional information on sign installation, see Chapter 1020.

Roundabout Signing

Exhibit 1320-30



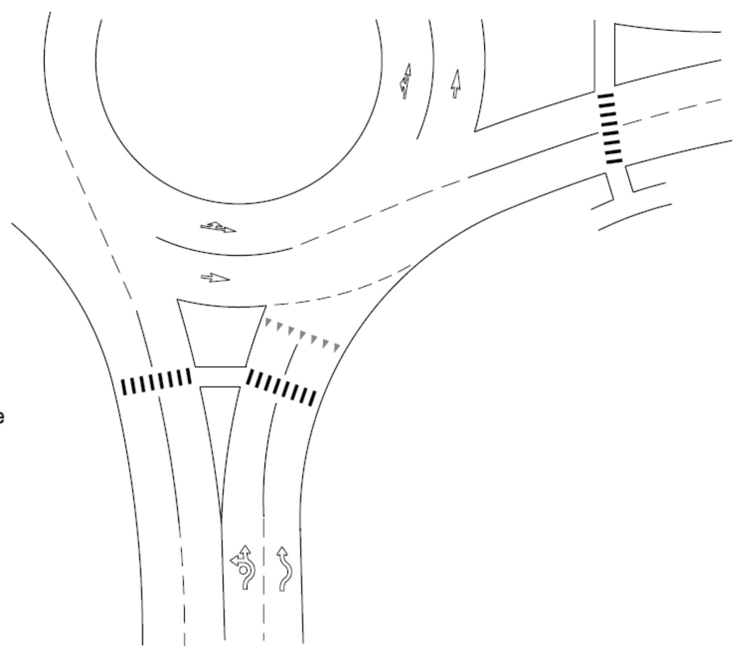
Single-Lane Striping Option 1



Single-Lane Striping Option 2

Note:

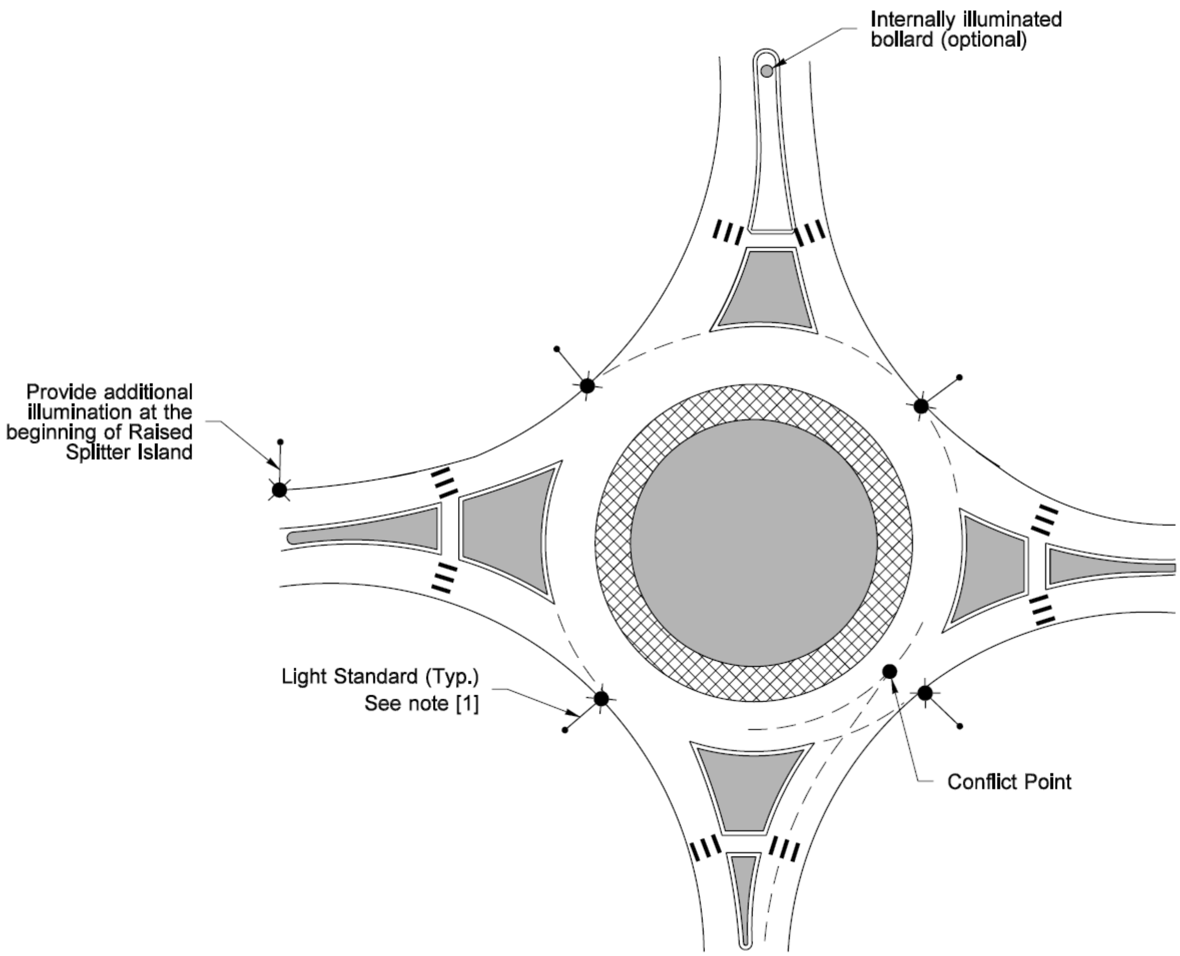
For Single and Multilane Roundabouts use Option 1 or Option 2 for placement of "yield symbols" at or near entry line.



Multilane Striping

Roundabout Striping and Pavement Marking

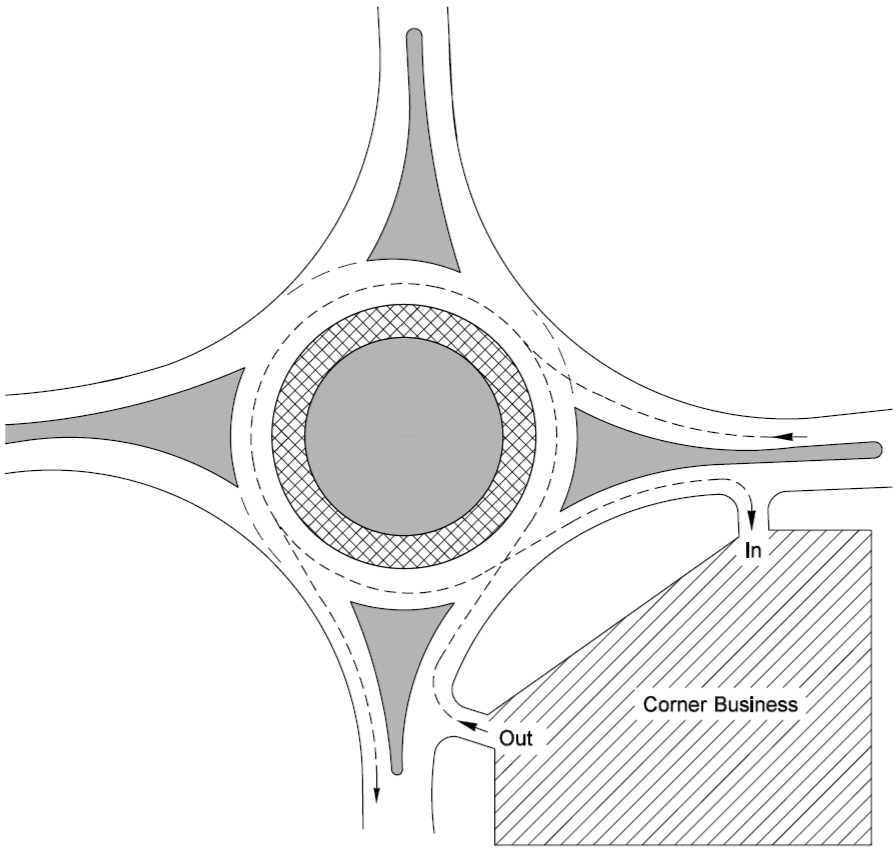
Exhibit 1320-31



Note:

[1] Consider additional lighting for walkways and crosswalks to provide visibility for pedestrians. Also use to provide illumination of the roadway behind the pedestrian from the driver's perspective.

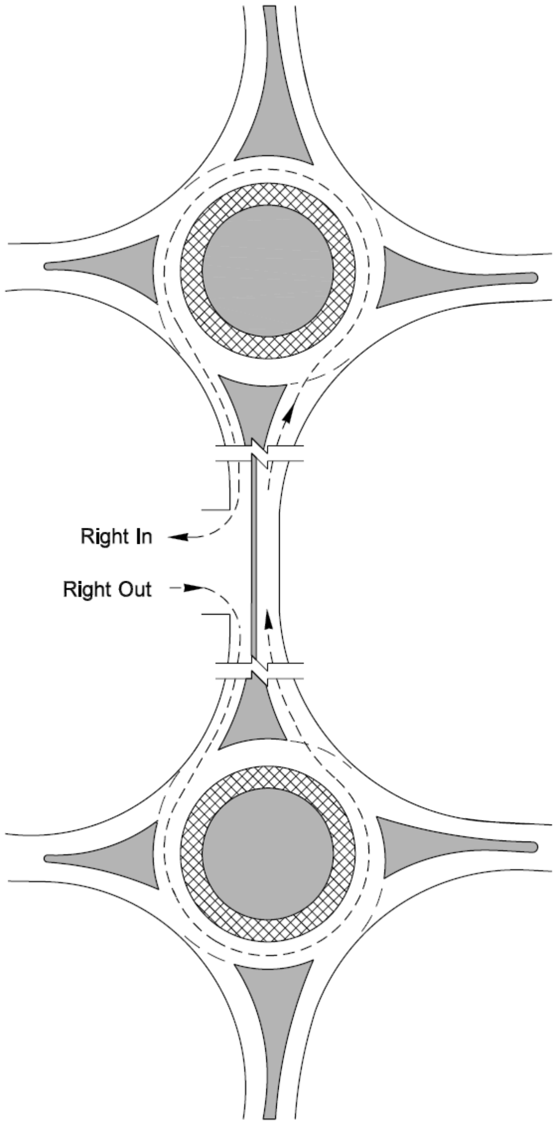
Roundabout Illumination
Exhibit 1320-32



Notes:

- For additional restrictions on limited access highways, see Chapter 530.
- For corner clearance criteria on managed access highways, see Chapter 540.

Multiple Access Circulation
Exhibit 1320-33a



Left-turn access between roundabouts using U-turns at the roundabouts.

Multiple Access Circulation
Exhibit 1320-33b

Chapter 1330 Traffic Control Signals

1330.01 General
1330.02 References
1330.03 Definitions
1330.04 Procedures
1330.05 Signal Warrants
1330.06 Conventional Traffic Signal Design
1330.07 Documentation

1330.01 General

Traffic control signals are power-operated traffic control devices that warn or direct motorists to take a specific action. They are used to control the assignment of right of way at locations where conflicts with motorists, bicyclists, and pedestrians exist or where passive devices such as signs and markings do not provide the necessary flexibility of control to move motorists, bicyclists, and pedestrians in an efficient manner.

The decision to install a traffic signal is the result of an analysis of alternatives that is approved by the region Traffic Engineer or other designated authority.

1330.02 References

The following references are used in the planning, design, construction, and operation of traffic control signals installed on state highways. The RCWs noted are specific state laws concerning traffic control signals, and conformance to these statutes is required.

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (23 CFR Part 36, Appendix A)

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 35.77, Streets – Planning, establishment, construction, and maintenance

RCW 46.04.450, Railroad sign or signal

RCW 46.04.600, Traffic control signal

RCW 46.04.62250, Signal preemption device

RCW 46.61.050, Obedience to and required traffic control devices

RCW 46.61.055, Traffic control signal legend

RCW 46.61.060, Pedestrian control signals

RCW 46.61.065, Flashing signals

RCW 46.61.070, Lane-direction-control signals

RCW 46.61.072, Special traffic control signals – Legend

RCW 46.61.075, Display of unauthorized signs, signals, or markings

RCW 46.61.080, Interference with official traffic-control devices or railroad signs or signals

RCW 46.61.085, Traffic control signals or devices upon city streets forming part of state highways – Approval by department of transportation

RCW 46.61.340, Approaching train signal

RCW 47.24.020(6) and (13), Jurisdiction, control

RCW 47.36.020, Traffic control signals

RCW 47.36.060, Traffic devices on county roads and city streets

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-18-040, Design standards for rearranged county roads, frontage roads, access roads, intersections, ramps and crossings

WAC 468-18-050, Policy on the construction, improvement and maintenance of intersections of state highways and city streets

"City Streets as Part of State Highways: Guidelines Reached by the Washington State Department of Transportation and the Association of Washington Cities on the Interpretation of Selected Topics of RCW 47.24 and Figures of WAC 468-18-050 for the Construction, Operations and Maintenance Responsibilities of WSDOT and Cities for Such Streets," April 30, 1997.

(2) Design Guidance

A Policy on the Geometric Design of Highways and City Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

Directive D 55-03, "Responsibility for Traffic Control Devices, Pavement Widening, and Channelization at Existing Intersections and Two-Way Left Turn Lanes in Cities"

Guide for Determining Time Requirements for Traffic Signal Preemption at Highway-Rail Grade Crossings, MNDOT, 2006

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Revised Draft Guidelines for Accessible Public Rights of Way, U.S. Access Board, Nov. 2005

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

WSDOT Traffic Design Resources
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Traffic/

1330.03 Definitions

The various types of traffic control signals are defined below. Warning beacons, pedestrian flashing beacons, emergency signals, and ramp meter signals are energized only at specific times of the day or upon detecting a user. All other signals remain in operation at all times.

conventional traffic signal A permanent or temporary installation providing alternating right of way assignments for conflicting traffic movements. At least two identical displays are required for the predominant movement on each approach.

emergency vehicle signal A special adaptation of a conventional traffic signal installed to allow for the safe movement of authorized emergency vehicles. Usually, this type of signal is installed on the highway at the entrance into a fire station or other emergency facility. The signal ensures protected entrance onto the highway for the emergency vehicle. When not providing for this movement, the signal either operates continuously (consistent with the requirements for a conventional traffic signal) or displays continuous green, which is allowed at nonintersection locations only. At least two identical displays are required per approach.

flasher warning assembly Flashing beacons that are used only to supplement an appropriate warning or regulatory sign or marker. The displays consist of two alternating flashing yellow indications.

high-speed roadway A roadway with a posted speed of 45 mph or higher.

intersection control beacon (also flashing beacon) A secondary control device, generally suspended over the center of an intersection, that supplements intersection warning signs and stop signs. One display per approach may be used; however, two displays per approach are desirable. Intersection control beacons are installed only at intersections that control two or more directions of travel.

lane control signal (reversible lanes) A special overhead signal that permits, prohibits, or warns of impending prohibition of lane use.

low-speed roadway A roadway with a posted speed of lower than 45 mph.

metering signal A signal used to control the predominant flow rate of traffic at an at-grade facility.

movable bridge signal (also drawbridge signal) A signal installed to notify traffic to stop when the bridge is opened for waterborne traffic. Movable bridge signals display continuous green when the roadway is open to vehicular traffic.

multilane approach An approach that has two or more lanes, regardless of the lane use designation.

overlapped displays Overlapped displays allow a traffic movement to operate with one or more nonconflicting phases. Most commonly, a minor street's exclusive right-turn phase is overlapped with the nonconflicting major street's left-turn phase. An overlapped display can be terminated after the parent phase (the main phase the overlap is associated with) terminates. An overlapped display programmed for two or more parent phases continues to display until all of the parent phases have terminated. An overlap is made up of two or more phases—not one phase controlling two movements.

pedestrian signal An adaptation of a conventional traffic signal installed at established pedestrian crossings. It is used to provide a protected phase for pedestrians by terminating the conflicting vehicular movements to allow for pedestrian crossings.

portable traffic signal A type of conventional traffic signal used in work zones to control traffic. This signal is most commonly used on two-way two-lane highways where one lane has been closed for roadwork. This signal is most commonly operated in pairs, with one signal at each end of the work zone. This eliminates the need for 24-hour flagger control. The traffic signal provides alternating right of way assignments for conflicting traffic movements. The signal has an adjustable vertical support with two three-section signal displays and is mounted on a mobile trailer with its own power source.

ramp meter signal A signal used to control the flow rate of traffic entering a freeway or similar facility. A minimum of two displays is required for each approach. On single-lane ramps, a Type RM signal pole with two three-section signal heads is normally installed. On double-lane ramps, a Type II signal pole with two three-section signal heads is normally installed. When not in use, ramp meter signals are not energized.

speed limit sign beacon A beacon installed with a fixed or variable speed limit sign. The preferred display is two flashing yellow indications.

stop sign beacon A beacon installed above a stop sign. The display is a flashing red indication.

temporary traffic signal A conventional traffic signal used during construction to control traffic at an intersection while a permanent signal system is being constructed. A temporary traffic signal is typically an inexpensive span-wire installation using timber strain poles.

queue cutter traffic signal A traffic signal used at highway-rail grade crossings where the queue from a downstream traffic signal is expected to extend within the Minimum Track Clearance Distance. It is used to keep vehicles from an adjacent signalized intersection from queuing on the railroad tracks.

warning beacon A beacon that supplements a warning or regulatory sign or marking. The display is a flashing yellow indication. These beacons are not used with STOP, YIELD, or DO NOT ENTER signs or at intersections that control two or more lanes of travel. A warning identification beacon is energized only during those times when the warning or regulation is in effect.

1330.04 Procedures

(1) Permit

State statutes (RCWs) require Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) approval for the design and location of all conventional traffic signals and some types of beacons located on city streets forming parts of state highways. Approval by WSDOT for the design, location, installation, and operation of all other traffic control signals installed on state highways is required by department policy.

The Traffic Signal Permit (DOT Form 242-014 EF) is the formal record of the department's approval of the installation and type of signal and must be included in the DDP. The permit is completed by the responsible agency and submitted, complete with supporting data, to the Regional Administrator for approval. The Regional Administrator approves or denies the application and sends it to the region Traffic Office. The region Traffic Office retains a record of the approved permit and supporting data and forwards a copy to the State Traffic Engineer at WSDOT Headquarters (HQ). Permits are required for the following types of signal installations:

- Conventional traffic signals
- Emergency vehicle signals
- Intersection control beacons
- Lane control signals
- Movable bridge signals
- Ramp meter signals
- Pedestrian signals
- Temporary traffic signals
- Queue-cutter traffic signals

Emergency vehicle signals require annual permit renewal. The region Traffic Office reviews the installation for compliance with requirements. If satisfactory, the permit is renewed by the Regional Administrator with a letter to the operating agency. A copy of this letter is also sent to the State Traffic Engineer.

Permits are not required for portable traffic signals, speed limit sign beacons, stop sign beacons, or lane assignment signals at toll facilities.

When it is necessary to increase the level of control, such as changing from an intersection control beacon to a conventional traffic signal, a new permit application is required. If the change results in a reduction in the level of control, as in the case of converting a conventional signal to a flashing intersection beacon, or if the change is the removal of the signal, submit the "Report of Change" portion of the traffic signal permit to the Regional Administrator, with a copy to the State Traffic Engineer. If an intersection approach is going to be signalized that was not signalized when the original signal permit was filed, a "Report of Change" is required.

If experimental systems are proposed, region Traffic Engineer review and approval is required. The region Traffic Office will send the approved proposal to the State Traffic Engineer for review, approval, and forwarding to FHWA for approval. The FHWA approval document is to be included in the DDP.

(2) Responsibility for Funding, Construction, Maintenance, and Operation

Responsibility for the funding, construction, maintenance, and operation of traffic signals on state highways has been defined by legislative action and Transportation Commission resolutions (see Exhibit 1330-1). Responsibilities vary depending on location, jurisdiction, and whether or not limited access control has been established. Limited access as used in this chapter refers to full, partial, or modified limited access control that has been established as identified in the *Access Control Tracking System*: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/accessandhearings/tracking.htm

Responsibility for Various Types of Facilities on State Highways				
Area	**Responsibility**	**Emergency Vehicle Signals**	**Traffic Signals, School Signals, & Intersection Control Beacons**	**Reversible Lane Signals & Movable Bridge Signals**
Cities with less than 25,000 population	Finance Construct Maintain Operate	ESD[1] ESD[1] ESD[1] ESD[1]	State State State State	State State State State
Cities with 25,000 or greater population	Finance Construct Maintain Operate	ESD[1] ESD[1] ESD[1] ESD[1]	City[2] City[2] City[2] City[2]	City[2] City[2] City[2] City[2]
Beyond corporate limits	Finance Construct Maintain Operate	ESD[1] ESD[1] ESD[1] ESD[1]	State/County[3] State State State	State State State State
Access control	Finance Construct Maintain Operate	ESD[1] ESD[1] ESD[1] ESD[1]	State State State State	State State State State

Notes:

[1] ESD refers to the applicable Emergency Service Department.

[2] State highways without established limited access control (see 1330.04(2)(b)).

[3] See 1330.04(2)d.

Responsibility for Facilities
Exhibit 1330-1

(a) **Inside the corporate limits of cities with a population of less than 25,000:** WSDOT is responsible for funding, construction, maintenance, and operation of traffic signals. Population figures can be found at: www.ofm.wa.gov/pop/

(b) **Inside the corporate limits of cities with a population of 25,000 or greater where there is no established limited access control:** The city is responsible for the funding, construction, maintenance, and operation of traffic signals. Population figures can be found at: www.ofm.wa.gov/pop/

(c) **Inside the corporate limits of cities with a population of 25,000 or greater where there is established limited access control:** WSDOT is responsible for funding, construction, maintenance, and operation of traffic signals. Population figures can be found at: www.ofm.wa.gov/pop/

(d) **Outside the corporate limits of cities and outside established limited access control areas:** WSDOT is responsible for funding, construction, maintenance, and operation of a traffic signal when a new state highway crosses an existing county road. When a new county road intersects an existing state highway, WSDOT is responsible for only the maintenance and operation of a traffic signal. The county is responsible for the construction costs of the traffic signal and associated illumination. When it is necessary to construct a traffic signal at an existing county road and state highway intersection, the construction cost distribution is based on the volume of traffic entering the intersection from each jurisdiction's roadway. The county's share of the cost, however, is limited to a maximum of 50%. The state is responsible for maintenance and operation (WAC 468-18-040).

(e) **Outside the corporate limits of cities and inside established limited access control areas:** WSDOT is responsible for funding, construction, maintenance, and operation of traffic signals.

(f) **Emergency vehicle signals:** The emergency service agency is responsible for all costs associated with emergency vehicle signals.

(g) **Third party agreement signals:** At those locations where WSDOT is responsible for traffic signals and agrees with the alternatives analysis that the proposed traffic signal is justified, but where funding schedules and priorities do not provide for the timely construction of the traffic signal requested by others, the following rules apply:

- The third party agrees to design and construct the traffic signal in conformance with WSDOT's guidelines and requirements.
- The third party agrees to submit the design and construction documents to WSDOT for review and approval by the region Traffic Engineer.
- The third party obtains a traffic signal permit.
- Third party agreement(s) with incorporated cities will be part of the DDP.

1330.05 Signal Warrants

A signal warrant is a minimum condition that is to be met before a signal may be installed. Satisfying a warrant does not mandate the installation of a traffic signal. The warranting condition indicates that an engineering study, including a comprehensive analysis of other traffic conditions or factors, is needed to determine whether the signal or another improvement is justified. For a list of the traffic signal warrants and information on how to use them, see the *Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices* (MUTCD) Include the selected signal warrants in the DDP.

A proposal to install a traffic signal on any state route with a posted speed of 45 mph or higher requires an alternatives analysis, approved by the region Traffic Engineer, with review and comment by the HQ Design Office.

1330.06 Conventional Traffic Signal Design

(1) General

The goal of any traffic signal design is to assign right of way in the most efficient manner possible and still be consistent with traffic volumes, intersection geometrics, and safety.

(2) Signal Phasing

With some exceptions, the fewer the traffic signal phases, the more efficient the operation of the traffic signal. The number of phases required for efficient operation is related to intersection geometrics, traffic volumes, composition of traffic flow, turning movement demands, and desired level of driver comfort. The traffic movements at an intersection have been standardized to provide a consistent system for designing traffic signals. (See Exhibit 1330-2 for standard intersection movements, signal head numbering, and standard phase operation, and see Exhibit 1330-3 for phase diagrams for various traffic signal operations.)

(a) **Left-Turn Phasing**

Left-turn phasing can either be permissive, protected/permissive, or protected. It is not necessary that the left-turn mode for an approach be the same throughout the day. Varying the left-turn mode on an approach among the permissive only, protected/permissive, and protected-only left-turn modes during different periods of the day is acceptable.

1. **Permissive Left-Turn Phasing**

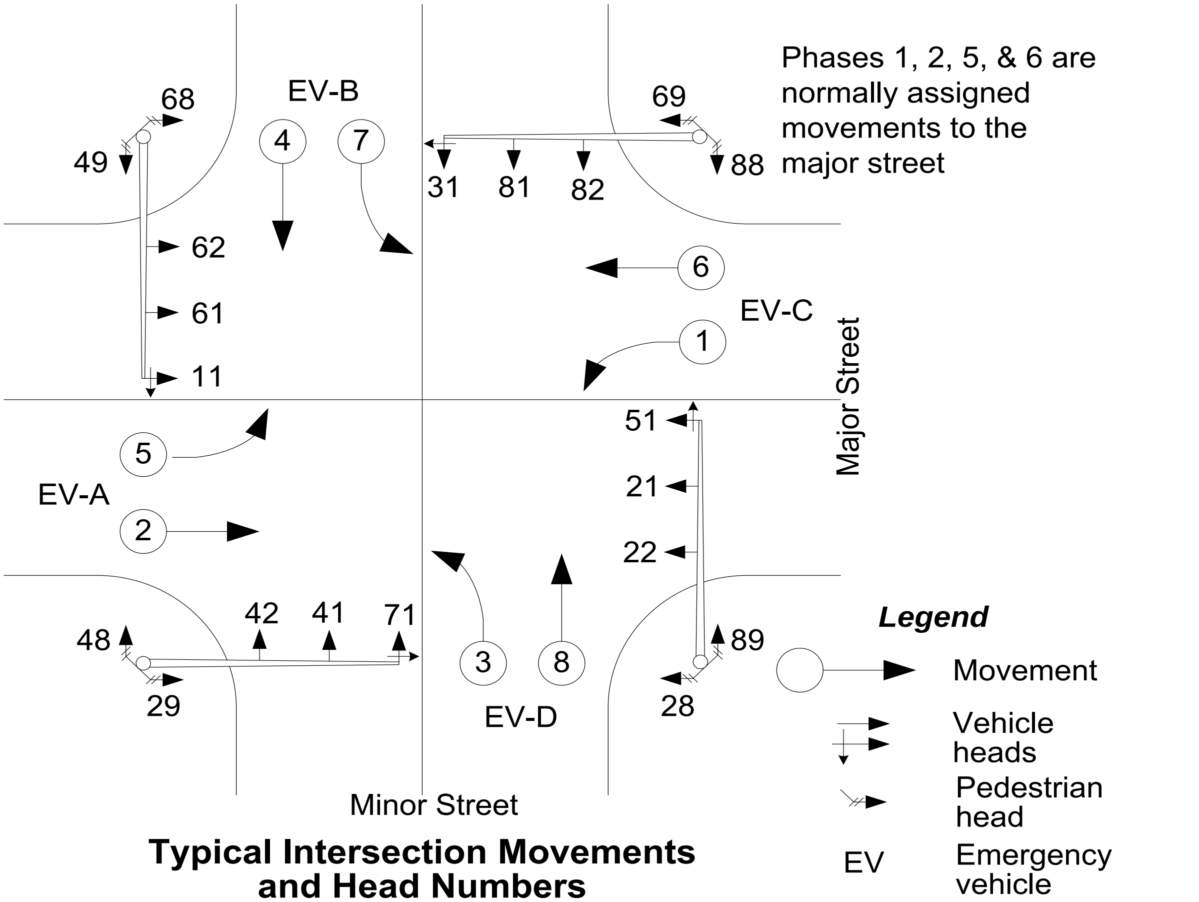
   Permissive left-turn phasing requires the left-turning vehicle to yield to opposing through traffic and pedestrians. Permissive left-turn phasing is used when the turning volume is minor and adequate gaps occur in the opposing through movement. This phasing is more effective on minor streets where providing separate protected turn phasing might cause significant delays to the higher traffic volume on the main street. On high-speed (posted speed of 45 mph or above) single-lane approaches or where sight distance is limited, the preferred channelization would include a separate left-turn storage lane for the permissive movement to reduce the potential for rear-end-type collisions and delay to through movements.

2. **Protected/Permissive Left-Turn Phasing**

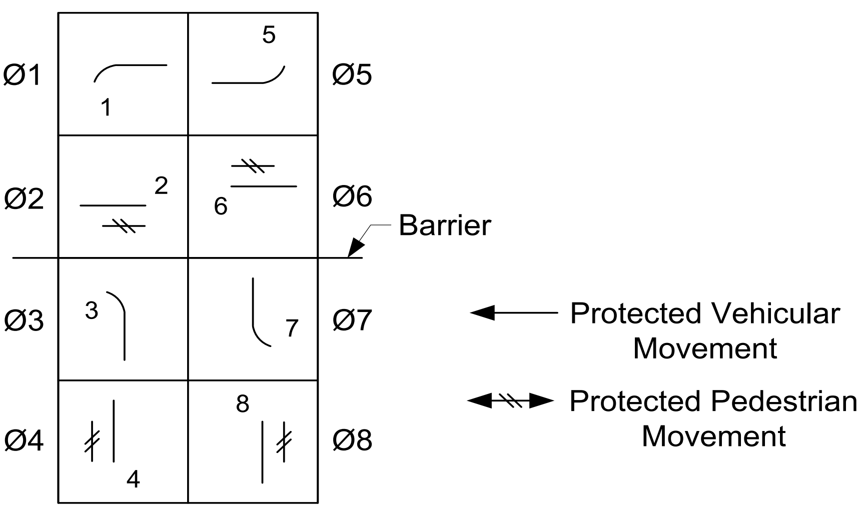
   Protected/permissive left-turn phasing provides the left-turn movements with an exclusive nonconflicting phase followed by a secondary phase when vehicles are required to yield to opposing traffic. The traffic signal can also operate with the permissive left-turn phase first followed by the protected left-turn phase. Where left-turn phasing will be installed and conditions do not warrant protected-only operation, consider protected/permissive left-turn phasing. Protected/permissive left-turn phasing can result in increased efficiency at some types of intersections, particularly “T” intersections, ramp terminal intersections, and intersections of a two-way street with a one-way street where there are no opposing left-turn movements.

   Protected/permissive left-turn phasing is not allowed under the following conditions:

   - On the approaches of a signal where Warrant 7 is met and there are five left-turning collisions on that approach included in the warranting collisions.
   - When documentation shows that existing protected left-turn phasing was installed due to left-turn collisions.

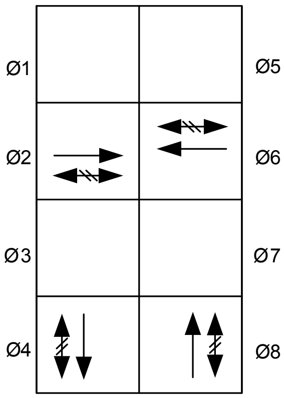


Typical Intersection Movements and Head Numbers

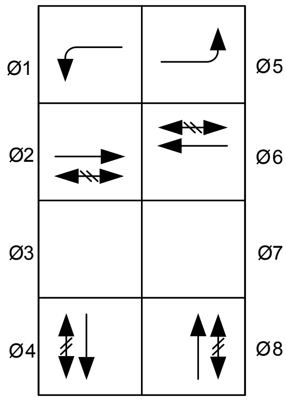


Typical Eight Phase Operation

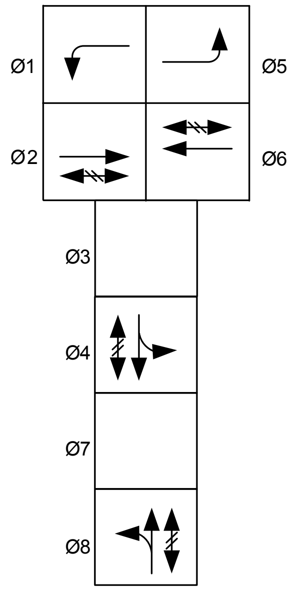
Standard Intersection Movements and Head Numbers
Exhibit 1330-2



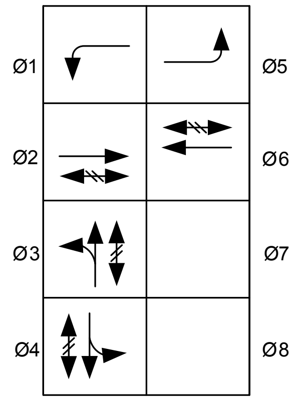
Four-Phase Operation
Permissive lefts



Six-Phase Operation
Main St. protected lefts
Minor St. permissive lefts

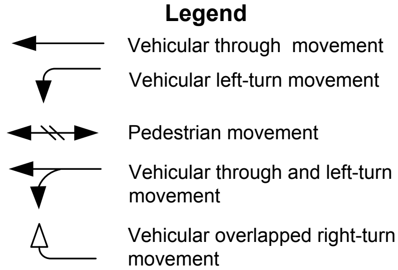


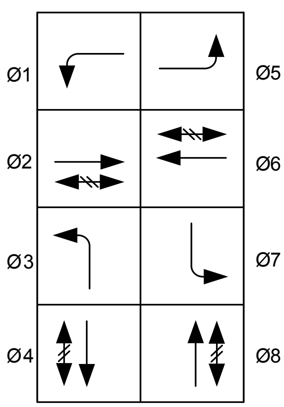
Six-Phase Operation
Main St. protected leading lefts
Minor St. split phasing
(Ø4 first, then Ø8)



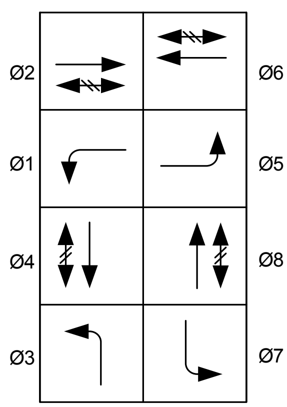
Six-Phase Operation
Alternate phasing
Main St. protected leading lefts
Minor St. split phasing

Legend

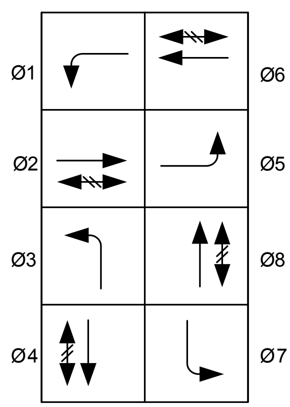




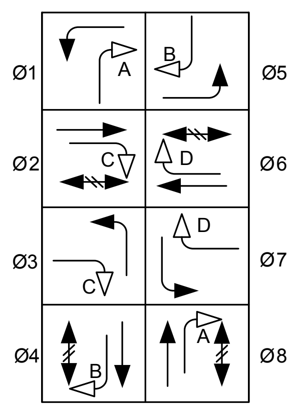
Eight-Phase Operation
Main St. protected leading lefts
Minor St. protected leading lefts



Eight-Phase Operation
Main St. protected lagging lefts
Minor St. protected lagging lefts



Eight-Phase Operation
Main St. protected lead & lag lefts
Minor St. protected lead & lag lefts



Eight-Phase Operation
Protected leading lefts
and overlapped rights
(A Minus Ped. overlap
shall be used for
Phases 2, 4, 6, & 8)

Phase Diagrams: Four-Way Intersections
Exhibit 1330-3

- When sight distance for left-turning vehicles, as outlined in AASHTO's *A Policy on the Geometric Design of Highways and City Streets,* cannot be met.
- On intersection approaches where the opposing approach has three or more lanes (including right-turn lanes) and either the posted speed limit or 85th percentile speeds for the opposing approach are at or above 45 mph.
- On intersection approaches that have dual left-turn lanes.
- At intersections where lead/lag phasing is employed.

A flashing yellow arrow is allowed for protected/permissive left-turn operations under the following conditions:

- The approach has a separate left-turn storage lane.
- At least one separate four-section signal face, in addition to the minimum of two signal faces for the primary traffic movement on the approach, is to be provided for the left-turn movement. The separate left-turn signal face is to display, from top to bottom (or left to right in a horizontally aligned face), the following set of indications: steady left-turn red arrow, steady left-turn yellow arrow, flashing left-turn yellow arrow, and steady left-turn green arrow. If the left-turn movement is always operated in the permissive-only mode, the green arrow signal section is to be omitted.
- During a protected left-turn movement, the left-turn signal face displays only a steady left-turn green arrow signal indication.
- During a permissive left-turn movement, the left-turn signal face displays only a flashing yellow arrow signal indication.
- During a prohibited left-turn movement, the left-turn signal face displays only a steady left-turn red arrow or a steady circular red.
- A steady left-turn yellow arrow signal indication is displayed following every steady left-turn green arrow signal indication.
- A steady left-turn yellow arrow signal indication is displayed following the flashing left-turn yellow arrow signal indication if the permissive left-turn movement is being terminated and the left-turn signal will subsequently display a steady red signal indication. The steady left-turn arrow signal indication and the flashing left-turn yellow arrow signal indication are to be separate displays for permissive left turns.
- When a permissive left-turn movement is changing to a protected left-turn movement, a steady left-turn green arrow signal indication is to be displayed immediately upon termination of the flashing left-turn yellow arrow signal indication. A steady left-turn yellow arrow signal indication is not to be displayed between the display of the flashing left-turn yellow arrow signal indication and the display of the steady left-turn green arrow signal indication.

3. **Protected Left-Turn Phasing**

Protected left-turn phasing provides the left-turning vehicle a separate phase, and conflicting movements are required to stop.

Protected phasing is always required for multilane left-turn movements.

Use protected left-turn phasing when left-turning-type collisions on any approach equal three per year or five in two consecutive years. This includes left-turning collisions involving pedestrians.

Use protected left-turn phasing when the peak-hour turning volume exceeds the storage capacity of the left-turn lane because of insufficient gaps in the opposing through traffic and where one or more of the following conditions is present:

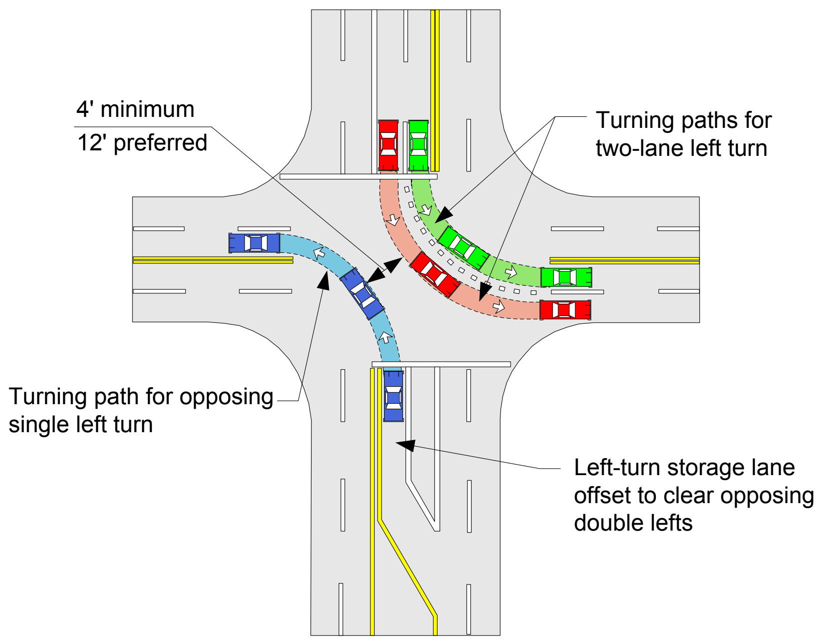
- Either the posted speed or the 85th percentile speed of the opposing traffic exceeds 45 mph.
- The sight distance to oncoming traffic is less than 250 feet when the 85th percentile speed is 35 mph or below, or less than 400 feet when the 85th percentile speed is above 35 mph.
- The left-turn movement crosses three or more lanes (including right-turn lanes) of opposing traffic.
- Geometry or channelization is confusing.

Typically, an intersection with protected left turns operates with leading left turns. This means that on the major street, the left-turn phases, phase 1 and phase 5, time before the through movement phases, phase 2 and phase 6. On the minor street, the left-turn phases, phase 3 and phase 7, time before phase 4 and phase 8. Lagging left-turn phasing means that the through phases time before the conflicting left-turn phases. In lead-lag left-turn phasing, one of the left-turn phases times before the conflicting through phases and the other left-turn phase times after the conflicting through phases. In all of these cases, the intersection phasing is numbered in the same manner. Leading, lagging, and lead-lag left-turn phasing are accomplished by changing the order in which the phases time internally within the controller. Check that all turning movements provide turning clearance for opposing turn phases. If the opposing left-turning vehicle paths do not have 4-foot minimum—12-foot desirable—separation between them, split or lead lag phasing is to be used.

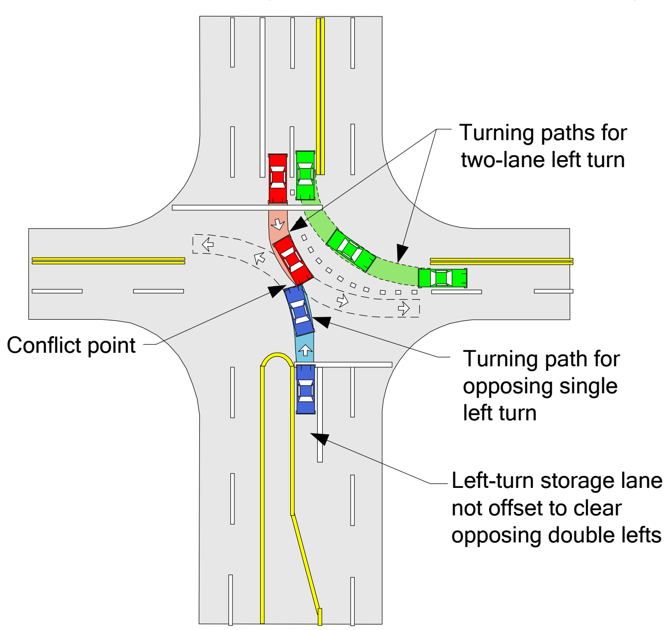
4. **Multilane Left-Turn Phasing**

Multilane left-turn phasing can be effective in reducing traffic signal delay at locations with high left-turning volumes or where the left-turn storage area is limited longitudinally. At locations with closely spaced intersections, a two-lane left-turn storage area might be the only solution to reduce the potential for the left-turn volume to back up into the adjacent intersection. Consider the turning paths of the vehicles when proposing multilane left turns. If the opposing left-turning vehicle paths do not have 4-foot minimum—12-foot desirable—separation between them, split or lead lag phasing is to be used. At smaller intersections, the opposing single-lane left-turn movement might not be able to turn during the two-lane left-turn phase and it might be necessary to reposition this lane. If the opposing left turns cannot time together, the reduction in delay from the two-lane left-turn phase might be nullified by the requirement for a separate opposing left-turn phase. Exhibit 1330-4 shows two examples of two-lane left turns with opposing single-left arrangements.

Two receiving lanes are required for two-lane left-turn movements. In addition, these receiving lanes are to extend well beyond the intersection before reducing to one lane. A lane reduction immediately beyond the intersection can cause delays and backups into the intersection because the left-turning vehicles usually move in dense platoons, which may make lane changes difficult. (See Chapter 1310 for guidance on lane reductions on intersection exits.)



Left-Turn Lane Configuration With Concurrent Phasing



Left-Turn Lane Configuration Preventing Concurrent Phasing

Left-Turn Lane Configuration Examples
Exhibit 1330-4

(b) **Right-Turn Phasing**

1. **Right-Turn Overlapped Phasing**

Consider right-turn overlapped phasing at locations with a dedicated right-turn lane where the intersecting street has a complementary protected left-turn movement and U-turns are prohibited. Several right-turn overlaps are shown in the Phase Diagrams in Exhibit 1330-3. The display for this movement is dependent on whether or not a pedestrian movement is allowed to time concurrently with the through movement adjacent to the right-turn movement.

For locations with a concurrent pedestrian movement, use a five-section signal head consisting of circular red, yellow, and green displays with yellow and green arrow displays. Connect the circular displays to the through phase adjacent to the right-turn movement and connect the arrow displays to an overlap using an auxiliary output file. The right-turn overlap is to be programmed so that the green arrow will not be shown during a conflicting pedestrian phase or emergency vehicle preemption. The capabilities of the signal controller software will determine how the right-turn overlap is to be set up. Some signal software allows use of a negative pedestrian overlap, which prevents the green arrow from being displayed when the conflicting pedestrian phase is being served, and it allows the green arrow when the conflicting pedestrian movement is not being served. If the negative pedestrian overlap can be used, the overlap for the right-turn arrows is driven by both the adjacent through phase and the associated side street left turn. If the software does not have this feature, the overlap for the right-turn arrows is to be driven by the associated side street left-turn phase only. Coordinate with the region Signal Operations Engineer regarding the software features.

For locations without a concurrent pedestrian movement, use a three-section signal head with all arrow displays or visibility-limiting displays (either optically programmed sections or louvered visors) with circular red, yellow arrow, and green arrow displays. This display is in addition to the adjacent through movement displays. Program this display as an overlap to both the complementary left-turn phase and the adjacent through phase.

2. **Two-Lane Right-Turn Phasing**

Two-lane right-turn phasing can be used for an extraordinarily heavy right-turn movement. It can cause operational challenges when "right turn on red" is permitted at the intersection. Verify that there is adequate sight distance and the correct exit lane selections are made to minimize the possibility of collisions. In most cases, a single unrestricted "right-turn-only" lane approach with a separate exit lane (auxiliary lane) will have a similar capacity as the two-lane right-turn phasing.

(c) **Phasing at Railroad Crossings**

Refer to 1330.06(12), Signal Design and Operation Near Railroad Crossings, for more information on phasing at railroad crossings.

(3) Intersection Design Considerations

Intersection design can have a considerable effect on how a traffic signal will operate, and careful consideration is to be given to this aspect of the design. (See Chapter 1310 for further guidance.)

Left-turning traffic can be better accommodated when the opposing left-turn lanes are directly opposite each other. When a left-turn lane is offset into the path of the approaching through lane, the left-turning driver might assume the approaching vehicles are also in a left-turn lane and fail to yield. To prevent this occurrence, less efficient split phasing may be necessary. (See Chapter 1310 for guidance on opposing left-turn clearance.)

Where a railroad crossing is within 88 feet of a signalized intersection, consider installing turn pockets for the movements leading to the leg of the intersection with the railroad crossing. This greatly improves the efficiency of the signal during railroad preemption when turns are restricted. Also consider providing a left-turn pocket for the minor leg opposing the railroad crossing. This will allow limited service during long periods of railroad preemption.

Consider providing an unrestricted through lane on the major street of a T intersection. This design allows for one traffic movement to flow without restriction. At high-speed intersections where this is used, the through lane is to be separated by a physical barrier or the through movement must also be signalized.

Skewed intersections, because of their geometry, are challenging to signalize and delineate. Where feasible, modify the skew angle to provide more normal approaches and exits. In many cases, the large paved areas for curb return radii at skewed intersections can be reduced when the skew angle is reduced. (See Chapter 1310 for requirements and design options.)

If roadway approaches and driveways are located too close to an intersection, the traffic from these facilities can affect signal operations. Consider eliminating the accesses or restricting them to "right in/right out." This should be determined early so it can be considered and addressed in the design. (See Chapters 530 and 540 for further guidance.) Consider shifting the location of the advance loops upstream to clear an access point so that vehicles entering from the access point will not affect the loops.

Transit stop and pullout locations can affect signal operation. (See Chapter 1430 for transit stop and pullout designs.) When feasible, locate these stops and pullouts on the far side of the intersection to:

- Minimize overall intersection conflict, particularly the right-turn conflict.
- Minimize impact to the signal operation when buses use preemption to pull out at a traffic signal with transit preemption.
- Provide extra pavement area where U-turn maneuvers are allowed.
- Eliminate sight distance obstructions for drivers attempting to turn right on red.
- Eliminate conflict with right-turn pockets.

Large right-turn curb radii at intersections sometimes have impacts on traffic signal operation. Larger radii allow faster turning speeds and might move the pedestrian entrance point farther away from the intersection area. Pedestrian crossing times are increased because of the longer crossing, thereby reducing the amount of time available for vehicular traffic. (See Chapter 1310 for guidance on determining these radii.)

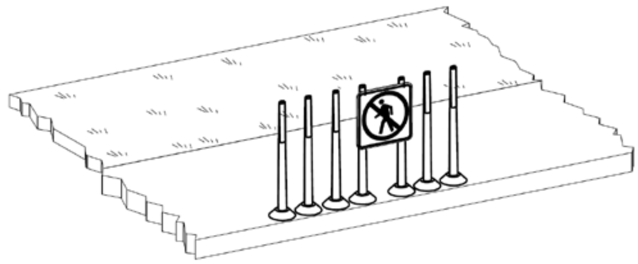
At intersections with large right-turn radii, consider locating signal standards on raised traffic islands to reduce mast arm lengths. These islands are primarily designed as pedestrian refuge areas. (See Chapter 1510 for pedestrian refuge islands and traffic island designs.) Locating signal standards on islands may decrease the required pedestrian clearance intervals; however, large radii and raised traffic islands may make it difficult for pedestrians to navigate the intersection. Place stop bars so they are out of the path of conflicting left turns. Check the geometric layout by using the turning path templates in Chapter 1310 or a computerized vehicle turning path program to determine whether the proposed layout and phasing can accommodate the design vehicles. Also, check the turning paths of opposing left-turn movements. In many cases, the phase analysis might recommend allowing opposing left turns to run concurrently, but the intersection geometrics are such that this operation cannot occur.

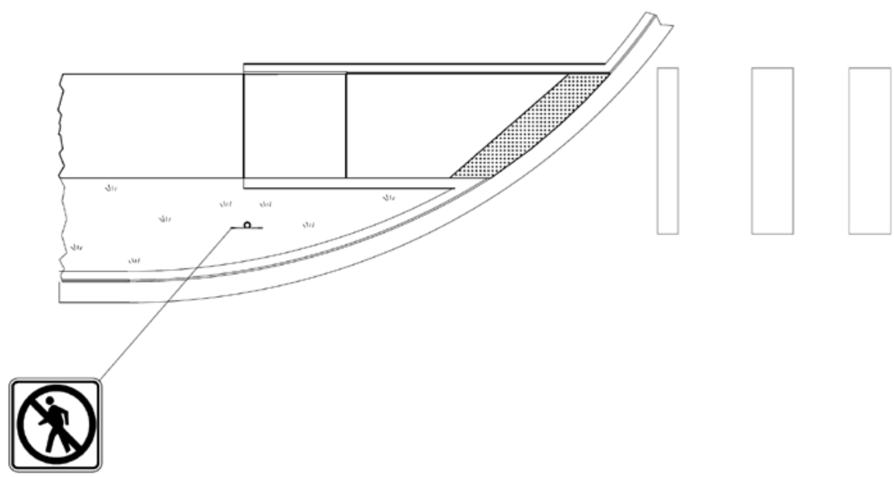
Coordinate with all stakeholders (Maintenance, Signal Operations, Civil Design Engineer, Drainage Engineer, and so on) in the placement of signal equipment to avoid any possible conflicts. Arrange field reviews with the appropriate stakeholders as necessary.

(4) Crosswalks and Pedestrians

Provide pedestrian displays per MUTCD requirements and accessible pedestrian push buttons for all signalized intersection pedestrian movements unless a specific pedestrian movement is prohibited. Accessible pedestrian push buttons shall have audible and vibrotactile features in accordance with MUTCD requirements. Providing countdown pedestrian displays and accessible push buttons is a federal requirement and is essential for efficient signal operations and improving safety for pedestrians that may need to cross the intersection. (See Chapter 1510 for more information on accessible pedestrian routes.)

Crosswalks, whether marked or not, exist at all intersections. If a pedestrian movement will be prohibited at an intersection, provide signing and a physical barrier for this prohibition. Examples of acceptable barriers are: a planter strip with a significantly different material that extends a minimum distance of 4 feet parallel to the accessible pedestrian route; flexible guideposts that extend the full width of the closed accessible route with a spacing of 12 inches between guideposts; and a breakaway fence as shown in Exhibit 1330-5. The signing and barriers are positioned on both the near side and far side of the street to be visible to pedestrians. When positioning these signs and barriers for visibility, consider the location of the stop bar where this crossing will be prohibited. Vehicles stopped at the stop bar might obstruct the view of the signing and barrier. There are normally three crosswalks at a “T” intersection and four crosswalks a at “four-leg” intersection. For pedestrian route continuity, the minimum number of crosswalks is two at T intersections and three at four-leg intersections. For Diamond interchanges with heavy left-turn movements from the off-ramp approach, consider deleting the crosswalk on the left side of the off-ramp approach. This will eliminate a conflict between pedestrians and left-turning vehicles from the off-ramp and increase traffic signal efficiency. There are situations where reducing the minimum number of crosswalks mentioned above is needed; however, approval from the region Traffic Engineer is required. Prohibiting a pedestrian movement requires an Engineering Study documenting the reasons for prohibiting the crossing, as well as region Traffic Engineer approval and inclusion in the DDP. Evaluate pedestrian exposure for all alternatives considered.





Examples of Acceptable Barriers Closing Pedestrian Crossings

Exhibit 1330-5

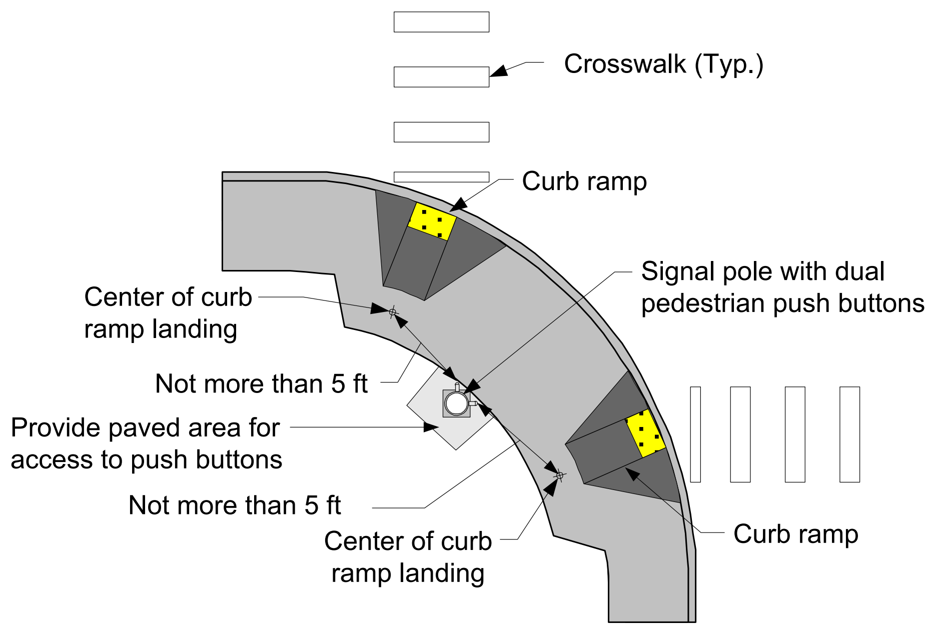
If a crosswalk is installed across the leg where right-turning or left-turning traffic enters, the vehicle display cannot have a green turn arrow indication during the pedestrian WALK phase. If this cannot be accomplished through a negative ped overlap, provide a separate pedestrian or vehicle turn phase. Use of exclusive pedestrian phases should be avoided because of the negative effect they can have on efficient traffic signal operations.

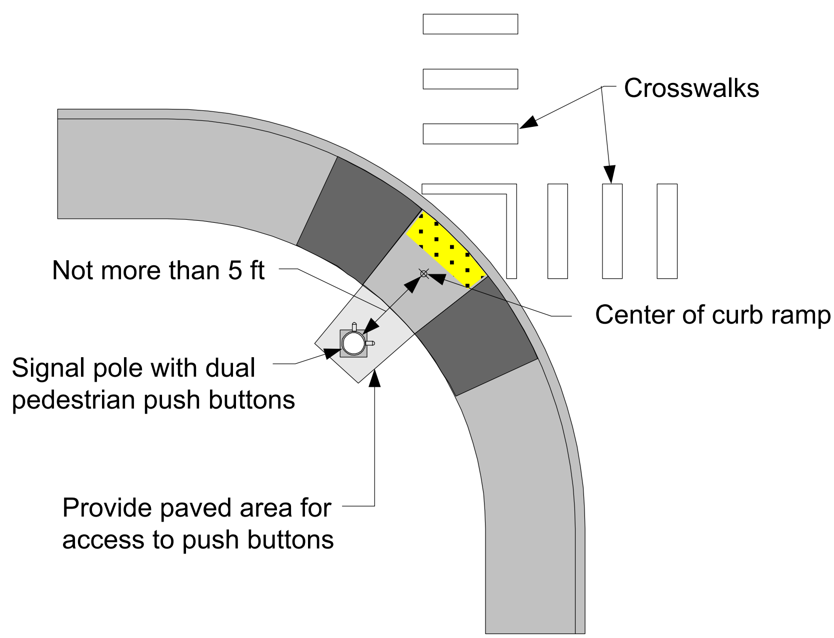
Locate crosswalks as close as practicable to the intersection to improve pedestrian visibility for right-turning traffic. Locate the push buttons inside an area no more than 5 feet from the extension of the crosswalk and no more than 10 feet from the curb or shoulder. Locate the push button no more than 5 feet from the center point of the sidewalk landing or the center point where the sidewalk landing meets the flat sidewalk. At curb and sidewalk areas, locate the pedestrian push buttons adjacent to the curb ramps to make them accessible to people with disabilities. (Exhibits 1330-6a and 6b show examples of the push button locations at raised sidewalk locations.) When pedestrian push buttons are installed on a vehicle signal standard that is not adjacent to a sidewalk, provide a paved path, not less than 4 feet in width, from the shoulder or sidewalk to the standard. If access to the signal standard is not possible, install the push buttons on Type PPB push button posts or on Type PS pedestrian display posts adjacent to the sidewalk. When pedestrian push buttons are installed behind guardrail, use Type PPB posts. Position these posts such that the push button assembly is flush with the face of the guardrail.

(5) Control Equipment

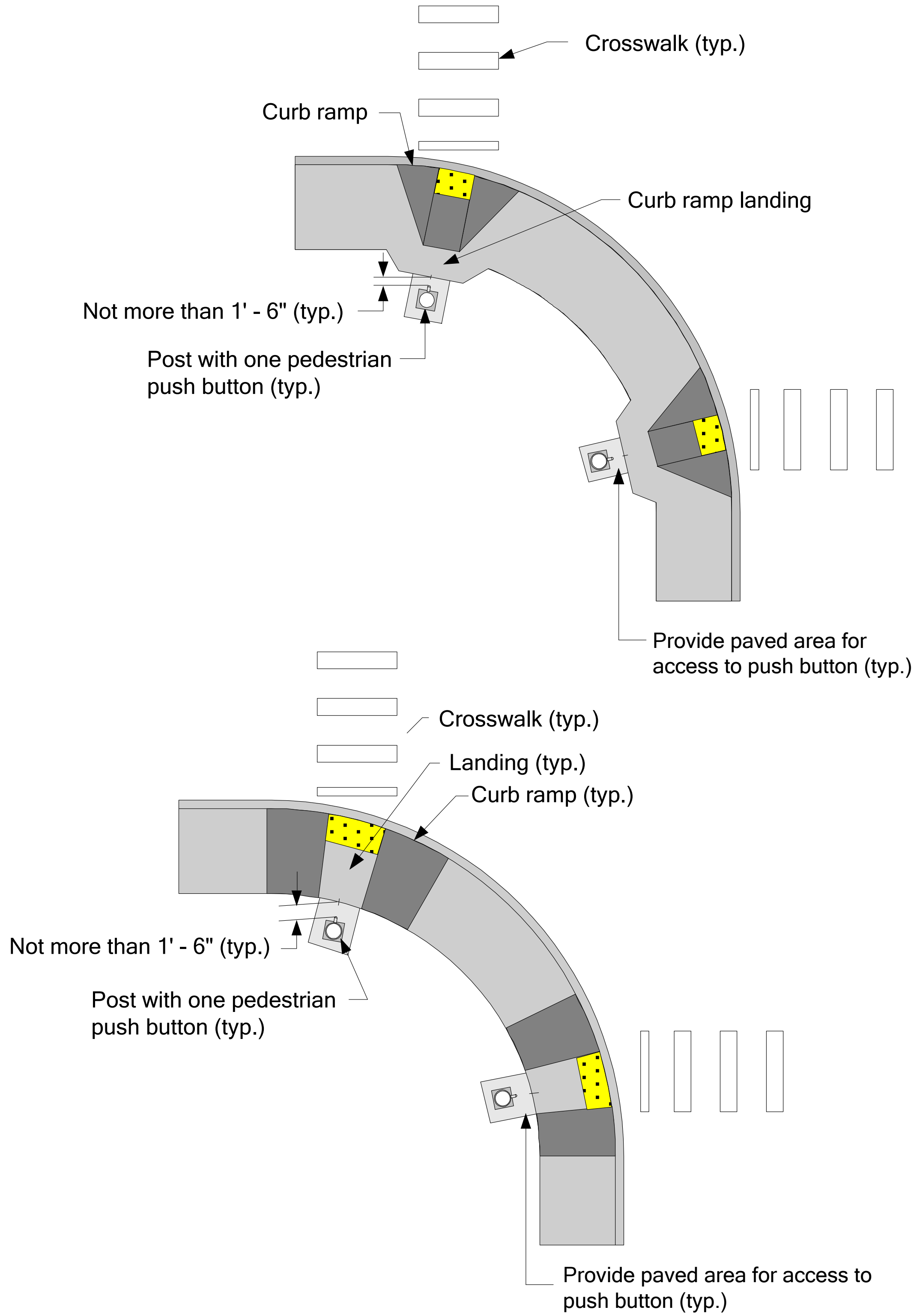
Controller assemblies can be Type 170, Type 2070, or National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) controllers with dual ring, eight vehicle phases, four pedestrian phases, four overlaps, emergency vehicle preemption, railroad preemption, transit preemption, and start and end daylight savings time dates operational capabilities. From a design perspective, identical operation can be obtained from each controller. Specify Type 2070 unless region policy is to use 170 or NEMA controllers. The local controller software can impact the brand and model of the control equipment installed. Contact the region Signal Operations Engineer for software and controller specifications. The designer needs to specify the type of controller and the operating software to be installed. Include documentation of selected control equipment in the Project File.

Intersections within ½ mile of each other on low-speed state highways should be interconnected. Intersections within 1 mile of each other on high-speed state highways should be interconnected. The preferred method for interconnection is fiber optic cable, but other methods such as IP over copper or wireless interconnect may be considered after discussion with the region Signal Operations Engineer and approval by the region Traffic Engineer. Add a construction note in the plans stating to coil additional cable in the adjacent junction box, not the controller cabinet. Consider using a separate vault or junction box for coiling the fiber optic interconnect cable to allow for the large-bend radii. This will save on space in the controller cabinet and also allow additional cable in case the cabinet is hit by an errant vehicle. In situations where it is necessary to coordinate the traffic movements with another agency, it is important that the agencies work together.





Pedestrian Push Button Locations
Exhibit 1330-6a



Pedestrian Push Button Locations
Exhibit 1330-6b

It is often beneficial for one of the agencies to assume responsibility for the operation of the traffic signals. This is accomplished by negotiating an agreement with the other agency. The designer needs to check region policy and make sure someone initiates the process for setting up an operational agreement with the other agency or modifying an existing agreement when applicable. (See the *Agreements Manual* for more information on signal systems and maintenance agreements.) At a new intersection, where the state owns the signal, but WSDOT has agreed to let another agency operate the signal, the controller should be compatible with that agency's system. When installing a new controller in an existing interconnected corridor, the controller should be capable of operating with the existing controllers in the corridor.

When it is necessary to install a NEMA controller in a 332 cabinet, this can be done by using a "C1" plug to NEMA "A" "B" "C" "D" adapters.

The model 210 conflict monitor in the Type 332 cabinet can be used with a NEMA controller by changing a switch setting. The NEMA conflict monitor is not used in this configuration. It does not fit in a Type 332 cabinet and the operation is not compatible. When a NEMA cabinet is used, specify rack mountings for the loop detector amplifiers and the preemption discriminators. Specify a power supply for the loop detectors. Coordinate with the region Signal Operations Engineer when selecting controller cabinets, controller, and controller assembly appurtenances.

Coordinate with the region Signal Operations Engineer and Transportation Systems Technician to determine the optimum controller cabinet location and the cabinet door orientation. The controller cabinet is positioned to provide maintenance personnel access. At this location, a clear view of the intersection, while facing the front of the controller, is desirable. The location is to have adequate room for a maintenance vehicle to park by the cabinet. Avoid placing the controller at locations where it might block the view of approaching traffic for a motorist turning right on red. Avoid locating the controller where flooding might occur or where the cabinet might be hit by errant vehicles. If possible, position the controller where it will not be affected by future highway construction.

If a telephone line, fiber optic, wireless, or other connection is desired for remote signal monitoring and timing adjustments by signal operations personnel, provide the appropriate equipment in the controller cabinet and/or nearby junction box or cable vault with separate conduits and junction boxes for the remote communications equipment.

Vehicle and pedestrian movements are standardized to provide uniformity in signal phase numbering, signal display numbering, preemption channel identification, detection numbering, and circuit identification. The following are general guidelines for the numbering system:

- Assign phases 2 and 6 to the major street through movements, orienting phase 2 to the northbound or eastbound direction of the major street, thereby aligning phase 2 with the direction of increasing mileposts.
- Phasing on new signals installed within an already signalized corridor should match the existing corridor phasing.
- Assign phases 1 and 5 to the major street protected left-turn movements.
- Assign phases 4 and 8 to the minor street through movements.
- Assign phases 3 and 7 to the minor street protected left-turn movements.

- At T intersections, the movement on the stem of the T is normally assigned to either phase 4 or phase 8.
- At intersections with four approaches using split phasing on the minor streets, where each minor street times separately, the minor streets are normally assigned as phases 4 and 8, and a note is added with the phase diagram to indicate that these phases time exclusively.
- Signal displays are numbered as follows: the first number indicates the signal phase and the second number is the number of the signal head counting from centerline to fog stripe. For example, signal displays for phase 2 are numbered 21, 22, 23, and so on. If the display is an overlap, the designation is the letter assigned to that overlap. For example, signal displays for overlap A are number A1, A2, A3, and so on. If the display is protected/permissive, the display is numbered with the phase number of the through display followed by the phase number of the left-turn phase. For example, a protected/permissive signal display for phase 1 (the left-turn movement) and phase 6 (the compatible through movement) is numbered 61/11. With a conventional protected/permissive left-turn display, the circular red, yellow, and green displays are connected to the phase 6 controller output and the steady yellow and green arrow displays are connected to the phase 1 controller output. When a flashing yellow arrow display is used, coordinate with the Signal Operations Engineer and signal maintenance group to determine appropriate wiring. When using flashing yellow operation, ensure an auxiliary output rack is specified in the controller cabinet.
- Pedestrian displays and detectors are numbered with the first number indicating the signal phase and the second number as either an 8 or 9. For example, pedestrian displays and detectors 28 and 29 are assigned to phase 2.
- Detection is numbered with the first number representing the phase. The second number represents the lane number from centerline out. The third number represents the loop number counting from the stop line back. Detection loops for phase 2 detectors are numbered 211, 212, 213 for lane 1; 221, 222, 223 for lane 2; and so on. (See Exhibit 1330-8 for standard detector numbering.)
- Emergency vehicle detectors are designated by letters: phase 2 plus phase 5 operation uses the letter "A," phase 4 plus phase 7 uses the letter "B," phase 1 plus phase 6 uses the letter "C," and phase 3 plus phase 8 uses the letter "D."

(6) Detection Systems

The detection system at a traffic-actuated signal installation provides the control unit with information regarding the presence or movement of vehicles, bicycles, and pedestrians. Vehicle detection systems perform two basic functions: queue clearance and the termination of phases. Depending on the specific intersection characteristics, either of these functions can take priority. The merits of each function are considered and a compromise might be necessary.

The following vehicle detection requirements vary depending on the speeds of the approaching vehicles:

- When the posted speed is below 35 mph, provide stop bar detection from the stop bar to a point 30 to 40 feet in advance of that location. Stop bar detection is usually assigned to detection input "extension/call" channels. Coordinate with the Signal Operations Engineer on detection assignments. When queue/advance loops are installed, calculate the distance traveled by a vehicle in two seconds at the 85th percentile speed and position the advance loops at this distance in advance of the stop bar.

- When the posted speed is at or above 35 mph, provide advance detection based on the “decision zone detection design.” When stop bar detection is installed, it should extend from the stop bar to a point 30 to 40 feet in advance of that location. Stop bar detection is required on minor streets. Stop bar detection is usually assigned to detection input “call” channels, and advance detection is usually assigned to detection input “extension/call” channels. Coordinate with the Signal Operations Engineer on detection assignments.

A decision zone is a location along the intersection approach where a motorist is forced to make a decision between two alternatives. As applied to vehicle detection design, this situation can occur when two vehicles are approaching a traffic signal and the signal indication turns yellow. The motorist in each vehicle must decide whether to continue through the intersection or stop prior to the intersection. If the lead vehicle decides to brake and the following vehicle does not, there may be a rear-end collision. Decision zone detection design has been developed to reduce the chances of this occurrence. This design increases the opportunity for a range of vehicles from the 90th percentile speed vehicle to the 10th percentile speed vehicle to either clear the intersection safely or decelerate to a complete stop before reaching the intersection. The method of calculating the decision zone and the required detection loops is shown in Exhibit 1330-7. Include the calculations in the Project File.

A study of the approach speeds at the intersection is necessary to design the decision zone detection. Speed study data is obtained at the approximate location or just upstream of the decision zone. Only the speed of the lead vehicle in each platoon is considered. Speed study data is gathered during off-peak hours in free-flow and favorable weather conditions. It is important that the person conducting the speed study remain inconspicuous so they do not influence drivers to slow down. Normal driving patterns are needed for proper speed studies. Prior speed-study information obtained at this location can be used if it is less than 18 months old and driving conditions have not changed significantly in the area.

When permissive left-turn phasing is installed on the major street with left-turn channelization, include provisions for switching the detector input for future protected left-turn phasing. Assign the detector a left-turn detector number and connect to the appropriate left-turn detector amplifier. Most controller software can do this internally. If the controller being specified cannot do this internally, then specify a jumper connector between that amplifier output and the extension input channel for the adjacent through movement detector. The jumper is removed when the left-turn phasing is changed to protected left-turn phasing in the future. Check with the Signal Operations Engineer to see whether this is available with the software being used.

Where:

V_{90} = 90th percentile speed in ft per second

V_{10} = 10th percentile speed in ft per second

UDZ_{90} = Upstream end of decision zone for 90th percentile speed

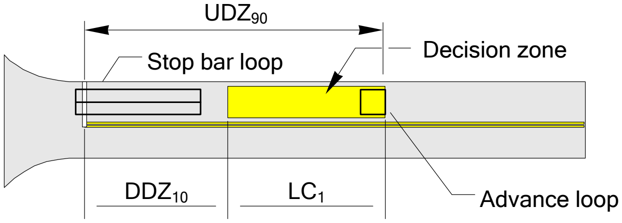
DDZ_{10} = Downstream end of decision zone for 10th percentile speed

LC_1 = V_{10} travel time to downstream DDZ_{10}

LC_2 = V_{10} travel time from 1st loop to 2nd loop

LC_3 = V_{10} travel time from 3rd loop to DDZ_{10}

G = Grade of roadway in decimal form (include + or -) Example: - 4% = -0.04



Single Advance Loop Design

Use when LC_1 is less than or equal to 3 seconds.

Use with grades less than +/- 4%:

$$UDZ_{90} = \frac{(V_{90})^2}{16} + V_{90}$$

$$DDZ_{10} = \frac{(V_{10})^2}{40} + V_{10}$$

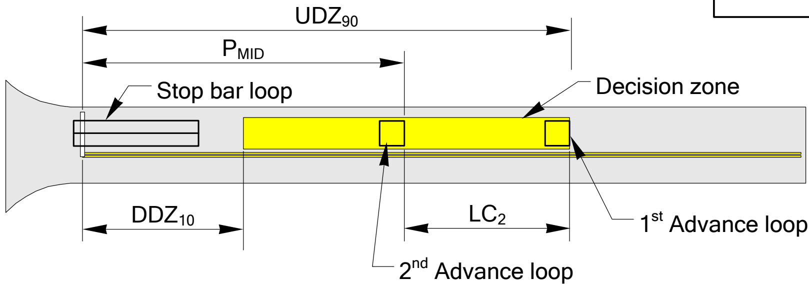
$$LC_1 = \frac{UDZ_{90} - DDZ_{10}}{V_{10}}$$

Use with grades +/- 4% or steeper:

$$UDZ_{90} = \frac{(V_{90})^2}{2(8 + 32.2G)} + V_{90}$$

$$DDZ_{10} = \frac{(V_{10})^2}{2(20 + 32.2G)} + V_{10}$$

$$LC_1 = \frac{UDZ_{90} - DDZ_{10}}{V_{10}}$$

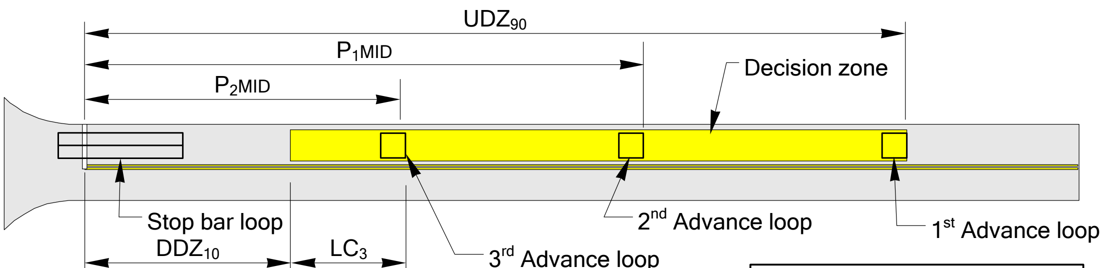


Double Advance Loop Design

Use when LC_2 is less than or equal to 3 seconds.

$$LC_2 = \frac{UDZ_{90} - P_{MID}}{V_{10}}$$

$$P_{MID} = \frac{UDZ_{90} + DDZ_{10}}{2}$$



Triple Advance Loop Design

Use when LC_3 is less than or equal to 3 seconds.

$$LC_3 = \frac{UDZ_{90} - DDZ_{10}}{3V_{10}}$$

$$P_{1\ MID} = \frac{[2(UDZ_{90}) + DDZ_{10}]}{3}$$

$$P_{2\ MID} = \frac{[UDZ_{90} + 2(DDZ_{10})]}{3}$$

Decision Zone Loop Placement

Exhibit 1330-7

In most cases, electromagnetic induction loops provide the most reliable method of vehicle detection. Details of the construction of these loops are shown in the *Standard Plans*. Video detection should be used only for temporary or portable traffic signals or locations with undesirable pavement conditions unless approved for other usage by the region Traffic Engineer. Other types of vehicle detection, such as in-pavement wireless magnetometers, may be used with approval from the region Traffic Engineer. Consider video detection systems for projects at the following locations: projects that have extensive stage construction with numerous alignment changes; on a private leg of an intersection where an easement is not available; and on existing bridge deck where loops or other types of in-pavement detection cannot be placed into the bridge deck.

Video detection functions best when the detectors (cameras) are positioned high above the intersection. In this position, the maximum effective detection area can be about ten times the mounting height in advance of the camera. (Contact the appropriate video detection equipment manufacturer for specific installation requirements.) When video detection is proposed, installation of the cameras on the luminaire mast arms can often provide good detection coverage. However, high wind can adversely affect the video equipment by inducing vibration in the luminaire mast arms. Also, areas that experience frequent high winds are not always suitable for video detection. Snow, fog, and rain can also adversely affect the operation of video detection equipment.

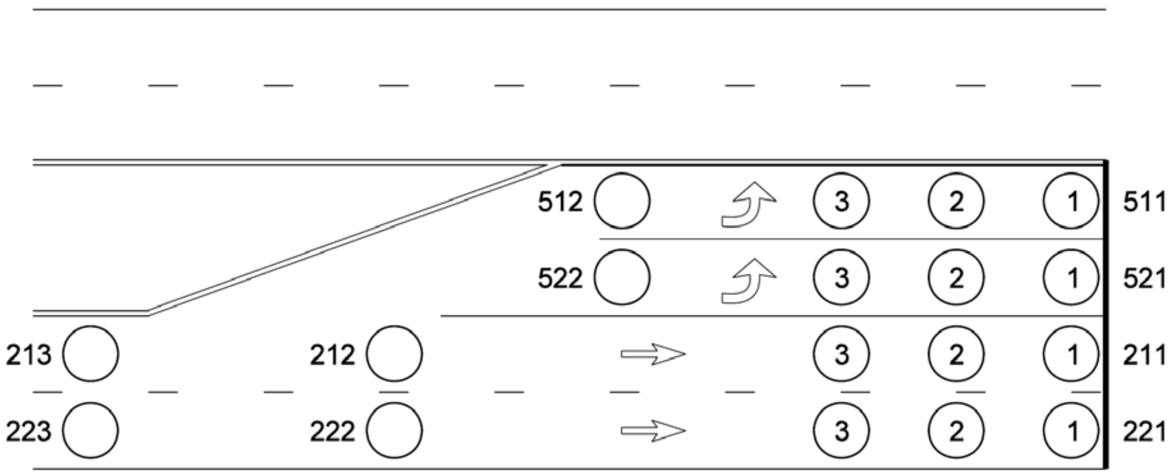
Provide temporary decision zone detection on projects where the decision zone detection will be disconnected for more than 48 hours, unless the designer concurs with the Signal Operations Engineer that the temporary detection is not necessary. The designer needs to find out whether there is a speed reduction during construction and place the temporary decision zone detection accordingly.

For loop numbering, see Exhibit 1330-8.

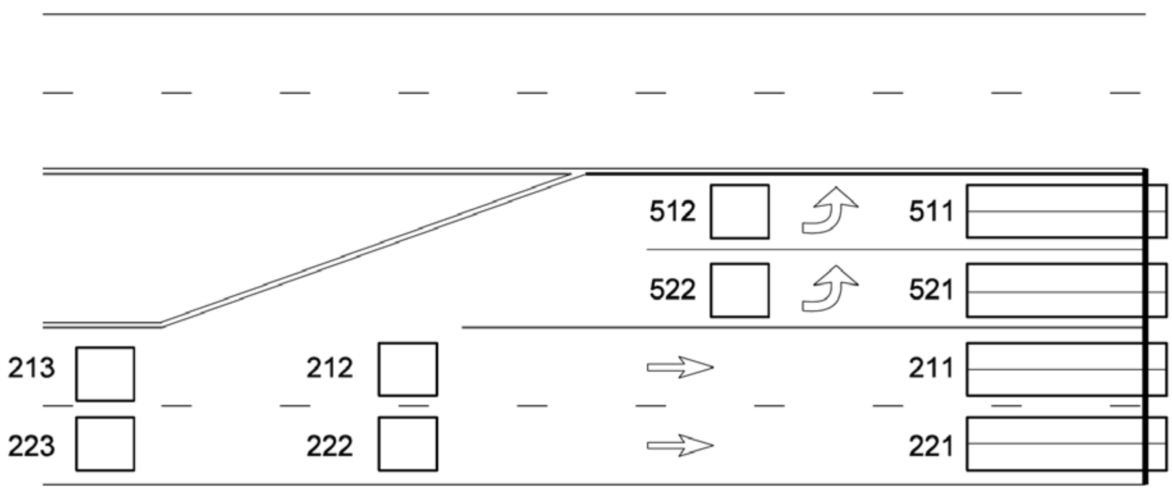
(7) Preemption Systems

(a) **Emergency Vehicle Preemption**

Emergency vehicle preemption is required for all traffic signals unless approved otherwise by the region Traffic Engineer. WSDOT is responsible for the preemption equipment that is permanently installed at the intersection for new construction or rebuild projects. The emergency service agency is responsible for preemption emitters in all cases. If the emergency agency requests additional preemption equipment at an existing signal, that agency is responsible for all installation costs for equipment installed permanently at the intersection. The standard emergency vehicle system is optically activated to be compatible with all area emergency service agency emitters. Approval by the State Traffic Engineer is required for the installation of any other type of emergency vehicle preemption system. Include emergency service vehicle preemption system documentation in the Project File.



Round Loop Layout Example



Square Loop Layout Example

Numbering Legend

Loop# X X X

First number denotes phase number

Second number denotes lane number
(counting from centerline out)

Third number denotes loop number
(counting from stop line back)

(Phases 2 and 5 shown)

Loop Numbering Layout

Exhibit 1330-8

Optically activated preemption detectors are positioned for each approach to the intersection. These detectors function best when the approach is straight and relatively level. When the approach is in a curve, either horizontal or vertical, it might be necessary to install additional detectors in or in advance of the curve to provide continuous coverage of that approach, as recommended by the region Operations Engineer. Consider the approximate speed of the approaching emergency vehicle and the amount of time necessary for phase termination and the beginning of the preemption phase when positioning these detectors.

(b) **Railroad Preemption**

The Railroad Crossing Evaluation Team will determine the level of preemption required at signalized intersections. (See 1330.06(12) for more information.)

(c) **Transit Priority Preemption**

Signal preemption is sometimes provided at intersections to give priority to transit vehicles. This can be included in mobility projects, but the transit company assumes all costs for providing, installing, and maintaining this preemption equipment. The department's role is limited to approving preemption operational strategies (phasing, timing, software, and so on) and verifying the compatibility of the transit company's equipment with the traffic signal control equipment. Transit priority preemption documentation is part of the Project File.

(8) Signal Displays

Signal displays are the devices used to convey right of way assignments and warnings from the signal controller to the motorists and pedestrians. When selecting display configurations and locations, the most important objective is the need to present these assignments and warnings to the motorists and pedestrians in a clear, concise, and uniform manner. Typical vehicle signal displays are shown in Exhibits 1330-14a through 14f. In addition to the display requirements contained in the MUTCD, the following also apply:

- Always provide a minimum of two identical indications for the through movement if one exists at an intersection, even if it is not the primary (predominant) movement. Provide a minimum of two indications for the major signalized turn movement of an intersection if no through movement exists, such as on the stem of a T intersection. These signal faces are to be spaced a minimum of 8 feet apart when viewed from the center of the approach. At a T intersection, select the higher-volume movement as the primary movement and provide displays accordingly. A green left-turn arrow on a primary display and a green ball on the other primary display do not comply with this rule.
- All displays of a phase on an approach are to be a minimum of 8 feet apart. Displays for different phases on an approach should be a minimum of 8 feet apart.
- Use steady arrow indications only when the associated movement is completely protected from conflict with other vehicular and pedestrian movements. This includes conflict with a permissive left-turn movement.
- Whenever possible, locate displays directly overhead and in line with the path of the applicable vehicular traffic as it moves through the intersection. (See Exhibits 1330-14a through 14f for signal head locations.)

- Locate displays a minimum of 40 feet and a maximum of 180 feet from the stop line. The preferred location of the signal heads is between 60 and 120 feet from the stop bar. When the nearest signal face is located between 150 and 180 feet beyond the stop line, engineering judgment of conditions, including worst-case visibility conditions, is to be used to determine whether the provision of a supplemental or near-side signal face would be beneficial.
- Installation of a near-side supplemental display is required when the visibility requirements of 1330.06(8) and the MUTCD cannot be met.
- Use vertical vehicle-signal display configurations. Horizontal displays are not allowed unless clearance requirements cannot be achieved with vertical displays or unless they are being installed at an intersection to match other displays in the intersection. Approval by the State Traffic Engineer is required for the installation of horizontal displays.
- Use 12-inch signal sections for all vehicle displays except the lower display for a post-mounted ramp meter signal.
- Use all arrow displays for protected left turns when the left turn operates independently from the adjacent through movement.
- The preferred layout is all arrow displays for protected left turns when the left turn operates independently from the adjacent through movement. When green and yellow arrows are used in combination with circular red for protected left turns operating independently from the adjacent through movement, use visibility-limiting displays (either optically programmed sections or louvered visors that are programmable for visibility angle and distance) for the circular red display. Contact the local Signal Maintenance Superintendent, Signal Operations Office, or Traffic Engineer to ensure correct programming of the head.
- Use a five-section cluster arrangement (dog house) or the four-section flashing yellow arrow signal head for protected/permitted operations.
- Use either Type M or Type N mountings for vehicle display mountings on mast arms. Provide only one type of mounting for each signal system. Mixing mounting types at an intersection is not acceptable except for supplemental displays mounted on the signal standard shaft.
- Use backplates for all overhead-mounted displays for new, updated, or rebuilt signal faces. Backplates are to have a 1-inch-wide to 3-inch-wide yellow stripe of retroreflective, Type IV, prismatic sheeting around the perimeter to project a rectangular image at night. The 3-inch-wide sheeting is the preferred width and should only be decreased to avoid overlapping the back plate louvers.
- With some exceptions, Type E mountings are to be used for pedestrian displays mounted on signal standard shafts.
- Supplemental signal displays are to be installed when the approach is in a horizontal or vertical curve and the intersection visibility requirements cannot be met unless approved otherwise by the region Traffic Engineer.

The minimum mounting height for cantilevered mast arm signal supports and span wire installations is 16.5 feet from the roadway surface to the bottom of the signal housing. There is also a maximum height for signal displays. The roof of a vehicle can obstruct the motorist’s view of a signal display. The maximum heights from the roadway surface to the bottom of the signal housing with 12-inch sections are shown in Exhibit 1330-9.

Distance	Signal Display	Maximum Height
Signal displays 40 feet from the stop bar	Vertical 3-section	17.5 ft
	Vertical 4-section	17.0 ft
	Vertical 5-section*	17.0 ft
Signal displays 45 feet from the stop bar	Vertical 3-section	19.2 ft
	Vertical 4-section	18.0 ft
	Vertical 5-section*	17.5 ft
Signal displays 50 feet from the stop bar	Vertical 3-section	20.9 ft
	Vertical 4-section	19.7 ft
	Vertical 5-section*	18.5 ft
Signal displays 53 to 180 feet from the stop bar	Vertical 3-section	22.0 ft
	Vertical 4-section	20.8 ft
	Vertical 5-section*	19.6 ft

*The 5-section cluster display is the same height as a vertical 3-section signal display.

Signal Display Maximum Heights
Exhibit 1330-9

An advanced signalized intersection warning sign assembly to warn motorists of a signalized intersection should be installed when either of the two following conditions exists:

- The visibility requirements in the MUTCD are not achievable.
- The 85th percentile speed is 55 mph or higher and the nearest signalized intersection is more than 2 miles away; this does not apply to freeway off-ramps.

This warning sign assembly consists of a W3-3 sign with Type IV reflective sheeting and two continuously flashing beacons. Locate the sign in advance of the intersection in accordance with Table 2C-4 (Condition A) of the MUTCD. Approval from the region Traffic Engineer is required if the sign is not installed.

(9) Signal Supports

Signal supports for vehicle displays consist of metal vertical shaft standards (Type I), cantilevered mast arm standards (Type II, Type III, and Type SD Signal Standards), metal strain poles (Type IV and Type V Signal Standards), or timber strain poles (see the *Standard Plans*). Vertical shaft signal standards are generally used for supplemental signal displays to meet visibility requirements. Mast arm installations are preferred because they generally provide better placement of the signal displays, greater stability for signal displays in high-wind areas, and reduced maintenance costs. The maximum length for mast arms on signal standards is 65 feet. Mast arm lengths over 65 feet are not allowed, so metal strain poles or a signal bridge will need to be considered. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for design of a signal bridge. The maximum attachment height for a signal mast arm on preapproved plans is 20 feet. Special design poles are required for a mast arm attachment height over

20 feet. Use mast arm signal standards for permanent installations unless display requirements cannot be met. Metal strain poles are allowed when signal display requirements cannot be achieved with mast arm signal standards or the installation is expected to be in place less than five years. Timber strain pole supports are generally used for temporary installations that will be in place less than two years.

Pedestrian displays can be mounted on the shafts of vehicle display supports or on individual vertical shaft standards (Type PS). The push buttons used for the pedestrian detection system can also be mounted on the shafts of other display supports or on individual pedestrian push button posts. Do not place the signal standard at a location that blocks pedestrian or wheelchair activities. Locate the pedestrian push buttons such that they are accessible to all.

Terminal cabinets mounted on the shafts of mast arm signal standards and steel strain poles are required. The cabinet provides electrical conductor termination points between the controller cabinet and signal displays that allow for easier construction and maintenance. Terminal cabinets are located on the back side of the pole and at a height that reduces the potential for conflicts with pedestrians and bicyclists.

(a) **Signal Standard Placement Considerations**

In the placement of signal standards, the primary consideration is the visibility of signal faces. Place the signal supports as far as feasible from the edge of the traveled way without adversely affecting signal visibility. (The MUTCD provides additional guidance on locating signal supports.) Initially, lay out the location for supports for vehicle display systems, pedestrian detection systems, and pedestrian display systems independently to determine the optimal location for each type of support. Consider the need for future right-turn lanes or intersection widening when choosing the final location of the signal standards. If conditions allow and optimal locations are not compromised, pedestrian displays and pedestrian detectors can be installed on the vehicular display supports.

Another important consideration that can influence the position of signal standards is the presence of overhead and underground utilities. Verify the location of these lines during the preliminary design stage to avoid costly changes during construction. After the underground utilities are located in the field, if they are within 10 feet of equipment being installed, consider potholing for the utility to find its actual location. Field locates are not always accurate and must be verified if a potential conflict exists. Verify aerial clearances. A minimum 10-foot circumferential clearance is required from all overhead power lines rated at 50Kv or below, including the neutral. For lines rated over 50Kv, the minimum clearance is 10 feet plus 0.4 inches for each Kv over 50Kv.

(b) **Mast Arm Signal Standards**

Mast arm signal standards are designed based on the total wind load moment on the mast arm. The moment is a function of the XYZ value, and this value is used to select the appropriate mast arm fabrication plan. The preapproved mast arm fabrication plans are listed in the contract special provisions. To determine the XYZ value for a signal standard, the cross-sectional area for each component mounted on the mast arm is determined. Each of these values is multiplied by its distance from the vertical shaft. These values are then totaled to determine the XYZ value. When determining the XYZ values, the worst-case scenarios on head and sign placements are to be used. All signal displays and mast arm-mounted signs, including street name signs, are included in this calculation. The effects of emergency preemption detectors and any required preemption indicator lights are negligible and can be excluded. For mast arm-mounted signs, use the actual sign area to determine the XYZ value. Cross-sectional areas for vehicle displays are shown in Exhibit 1330-10. Include traffic signal support calculations in the DDP.

Signal Display	Area
Vertical 3-section	9.2 sq ft
Vertical 4-section	11.6 sq ft
Vertical 5-section	14.1 sq ft
5-section cluster	14.4 sq ft

Signal Display Areas

Exhibit 1330-10

(c) **Foundation Design**

Foundation design is a critical component of the signal support. A soils investigation is required to determine the lateral bearing pressure, the friction angle of the soil, and whether groundwater may be encountered. The XYZ value is used in determining the foundation depth for the signal standard. A special foundation design for a mast arm signal standard is required if the lateral bearing pressure is less than 1,000 psf or the friction angle is less than 26°. The region materials group determines whether these unusual soil conditions are present and a special foundation design will be required. The region materials group then sends this information to the HQ Materials Laboratory for confirmation. The HQ Materials Laboratory forwards the findings to the HQ Bridge and Structures Office and requests the special foundation design. The HQ Bridge and Structures Office designs foundations for the regions and reviews designs submitted by others.

(d) **Steel Strain Poles**

Steel strain poles are used in span wire installations and are available in a range of pole classes. A pole class denotes the strength of the pole. The loads and resultant forces imposed on strain poles are calculated and a pole class greater than that load is specified. Exhibits 1330-11a and 1330-11b show the procedure for determining the metal strain pole class and foundation. Exhibit 1330-12 shows an example of the method of calculation. The foundation depth is a function of the pole class and the soil conditions. A special design is required for metal strain pole or timber strain pole support systems if the span exceeds 150 feet, the tension on the span exceeds 7,200 pounds, or the span wire attachment point exceeds 29 feet in height. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for assistance.

Selection Procedure

1. Determine span length.
2. Calculate the total dead load (P) per span. Use 40 pounds per signal section and 6.25 pounds per square ft of sign area.
3. Calculate the average load (G) per span. G = P/n where (n) is the number of signal head assemblies plus the number of signs.
4. Determine cable tension (T) per span. Enter the proper chart with the average load (G) and the number of loads (n). If (n) is less than minimum (n) allowed on chart, use minimum (n) on chart (see Exhibit 1330-11b).
5. Calculate the pole load (PL) per pole. If only one cable is attached to the pole, the pole load (PL) equals the cable tension (T). If more than one cable is attached, (PL) is obtained by computing the vector resultant of the (T) values.
6. Select the pole class from the "Foundation Design Table." Choose the pole class closest to but greater than the (PL) value.
7. Calculate the required foundation depth (D). Use the formula:

   $$D = a\frac{DT}{\sqrt{S}}$$

   Select the foundation depth (DT) from the "Foundation Design Table." Lateral soil bearing pressure (S) is measured in pounds per square ft (psf). The formula value (a) is a variable for the cross-sectional shape of the foundation. The values for these shapes are:

   a = 50 for a 3-ft round foundation
   a = 43 for a 4-ft round foundation
   a = 41 for a 3-ft square foundation

   Round (D) upward to nearest whole number if 0.10 ft or greater.
8. Check vertical clearance (16.5 ft minimum) assuming 29 ft maximum cable attachment height and 5% minimum span sag.

Notes:

A special design by the HQ Bridge and Structures Office is required if:

- The span length exceeds 150 ft.
- The (PL) value exceeds 7,200 lbs.
- The vertical distance between the base plate and the first cable attachment exceeds 29 ft.

1. Charts (see Exhibit 1330-11b) are based on a cable weight of 3 pounds per ft (1.25 lbs/ft for cable and conductors and 1.75 lbs/ft for ice load).
2. On timber strain pole designs, specify two down guy anchors when the (PL) value exceeds 4,500 lbs.

Foundation Design Table	
Pole Class (Pounds)	**Foundation Depth (DT)**
1,900	6'-0"
2,700	7'-0"
3,700	8'-0"
4,800	9'-6"
5,600	10'-0"
6,300	11'-0"
7,200	12'-0"

DT = initial foundation depth off chart
D = calculated foundation depth for use in contract

Strain Pole and Foundation Selection Procedure
Exhibit 1330-11a

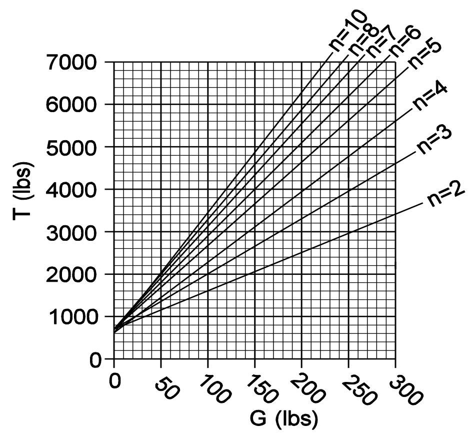


Chart 1 - Span Length 90' and Less

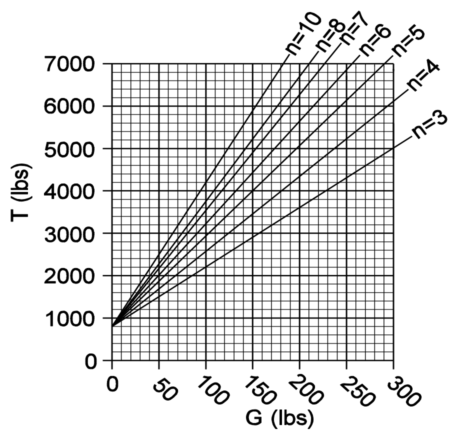


Chart 2 - Span Length 91' to 120'

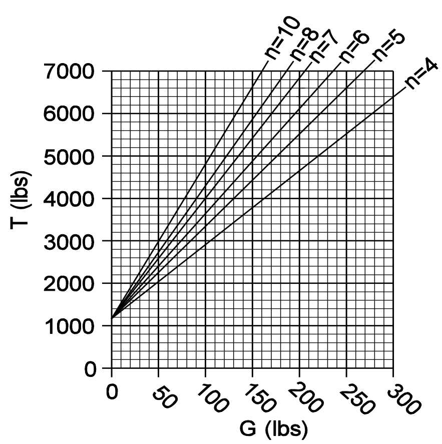
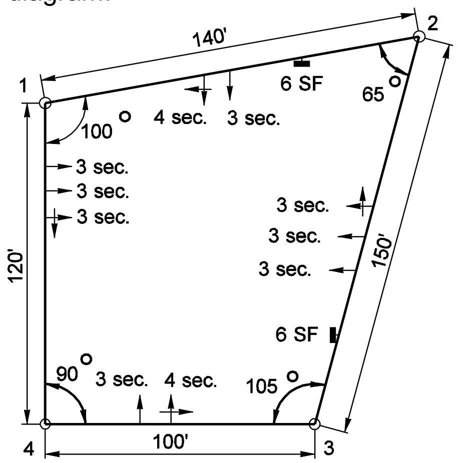


Chart 3 - Span Length 121' to 150'

Strain Pole and Foundation Selection Procedure

Exhibit 1330-11b

Given: Exhibits 1330-11a and 11b, and the following diagram:



Determine the following:

Cable Tensions (T)
Pole Loads (PL)
Pole Classes
Foundation Depths (D)

Step 1. Span lengths given above.

Step 2. Calculate (P) and (G) values.

Span 1-2, n = 3
7 sections x 40 lbs/sec = 280 lbs
6 s.f. sign x 6.25 lbs/s.f. = 38 lbs
Total (P) = 318 lbs
G = P/n = 318/3 = 106 lbs

Span 2-3, n = 4
9 sections x 40 lbs/sec = 360 lbs
6 s.f. sign x 6.25 lbs/s.f. = 38 lbs
Total (P) = 398 lbs
G = P/n = 398/4 = 100 lbs

Span 3-4, n = 2
7 sections x 40 lbs/sec = 280 lbs
Total (P) = 280 lbs
G = P/n = 280/2 = 140 lbs

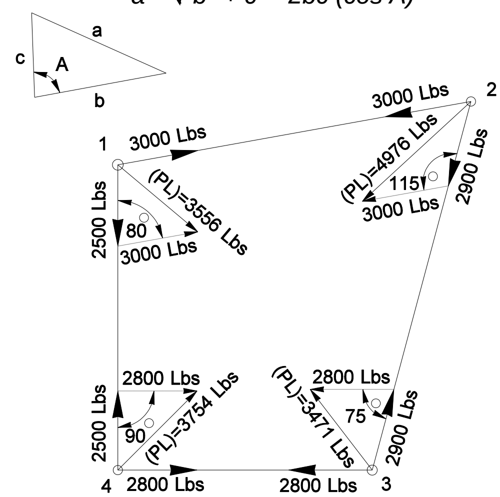
Span 4-1, n = 3
9 sections x 40 lbs/sec = 360 lbs
Total (P) = 360 lbs
G = P/n = 360/3 = 120 lbs

Step 3. Determine Cable Tensions (T) values.

Span	Length	G	Chart	n	min n	T
1-2	140'	106 lbs	3	3	4	3,000 lbs
2-3	150'	100 lbs	3	4	4	2,900 lbs
3-4	100'	140 lbs	2	2	3	2,800 lbs
4-1	120'	120 lbs	2	3	3	2,500 lbs

Step 4.
Calculate (PL) values by computing the vector resultant of the (T) values.

$$a = \sqrt{b^2 + c^2 - 2bc\,(\cos A)}$$



Step 5.
Select the pole class from the Foundation Design Table (see Exhibit 1330-11a).

Pole Number	(PL)	Pole Class
1	3,556 lbs	3,700 lbs
2	4,976 lbs	5,600 lbs
3	3,471 lbs	3,700 lbs
4	3,754 lbs	4,800 lbs

Step 6.
Calculate the required foundation depths.
Given: (S) = 1,000 psf

$$D = a\frac{DT}{\sqrt{S}}$$

Pole No.	Pole Class	DT	Foundation Depths (D) 3' Rd (a = 50)	4' Rd (a = 43)	3' Sq (a = 41)
1	3,700 lbs	8'	13'	11'	11'
2	5,600 lbs	10'	16'	14'	13'
3	3,700 lbs	8'	13'	11'	11'
4	4,800 lbs	9'-6"	15'	13'	13'

Strain Pole and Foundation Selection Example
Exhibit 1330-12

(10) Preliminary Signal Plan

Develop a preliminary signal plan for the Project File. Include a discussion of the issue that is being addressed by the project. Provide sufficient level of detail on the preliminary signal plan to describe all aspects of the signal installation, including proposed channelization modifications. Use a plan scale of "1 inch = 20 feet" and include:

- Stop bars.
- Crosswalks.
- Sidewalks locations, including curb ramps.
- Guardrail locations.
- Drainage items.
- Left-turn radii, including beginning and ending points.
- Corner radii, including beginning and ending points.
- Vehicle detector locations and proposed detector types.
- Pedestrian detector locations.
- Signal standard types and locations.
- Vehicle signal displays.
- Pedestrian signal displays.
- Phase diagram, including pedestrian movements.
- Emergency vehicle preemption requirements.
- Railroad preemption requirements.
- Illumination treatment, including a calculation summary showing the average light level, average/minimum uniformity ratio, and maximum veiling luminance ratio. (See Chapter 1040 for more information on illumination design requirements.)
- Cabinet locations with door orientations.
- Traffic counts, including left-turn movements.
- Speed study information indicating 90th and 10th percentile speeds for all approaches.
- Utilities information.

Submit a copy of the preliminary signal plan to the State Traffic Engineer for review and comment. Allow two to three weeks for review of the preliminary signal plan. After addressing all review comments, finalize the plan and preserve as noted in 1330.07, Documentation. Prepare the contract plans in accordance with the *Plans Preparation Manual*.

If HQ Traffic Design is preparing the contract Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) for the project, submit the above preliminary signal plan with the following additional items:

- Contact person.
- Charge numbers.
- Critical project schedule dates.
- Existing and proposed utilities, both underground and overhead.

- Existing intersection layout, if different from the proposed intersection.
- Turning movement traffic counts (peak hour for isolated intersections) and a.m., midday, and p.m. peak-hour counts if there is another intersection within 500 feet.
- Electrical service location, source of power, and utility company connection requirements.

After the PS&E is prepared, the entire package is transmitted to the region for incorporation into its contract documents.

(11) Electrical Design

(a) Circuitry Layout

Consider cost, flexibility, construction requirements, and ease of maintenance when laying out the electrical circuits for the traffic signal system. Consolidate roadway crossings (signal, illumination, ITS conduits, and so on) whenever possible to minimize the number of crossings. Include all electrical design calculations in the Project File.

(b) Junction Boxes

Provide junction boxes at each end of a roadway crossing, where the conduit changes size, where detection circuit splices are required, and at locations where the sum of the bends for the conduit run is equal to or exceeds 360°. Signal standard or strain pole bases are not to be used as junction boxes. Where possible, locate junction boxes out of paved areas and sidewalks. Junction boxes are not to be placed in the pedestrian curb ramp of a sidewalk or where it will impact the ADA requirements found in Chapter 1510. Placing the junction boxes within the traveled way is rarely an effective solution and will present long-term maintenance problems. Make every effort to locate new junction boxes and to relocate existing junction boxes outside the travel lane or paved shoulder. If there is no way to avoid locating the junction box in the traveled way or paved shoulder, use heavy-duty junction boxes. Avoid placing junction boxes in areas of poor drainage. Do not place junction boxes within 2 feet of ditch bottoms or drainage areas. The maximum conduit capacities for various types of junction boxes are shown in the *Standard Plans*. Consider using a pull box or cable vault instead of multiple Type 8 junction boxes by the controller cabinet.

(c) Conduit

Refer to the *Standard Specifications* for conduit installation requirements. At existing intersections, where roadway reconstruction is not proposed, conduits are to be placed beyond the paved shoulder or behind existing sidewalks to reduce installation costs. With the exception of the ½-inch conduit for the service grounding electrode conductor, the minimum-size conduit is as follows:

- For installations under a roadway in rural areas, 1½ inches on the legs of the intersection and 3 inches minimum for installations under a roadway near and around the intersection perimeter.
- For installations under a roadway inside urban boundaries, 2 inches on the legs of the intersection and 3 inches minimum for installations under a roadway near and around the intersection perimeter.

- The minimum size conduit for installations under a roadway at all other locations is 2 inches.

A 2-inch spare conduit is to be installed for all conduit crossings outside the core of the intersection. A 3-inch spare conduit is to be installed for all conduit crossings around the intersection perimeter. At least one 3-inch spare conduit is to be installed from the controller to the adjacent junction box to provide for future capacity. Size all conduits to provide 26% maximum conductor fill for new signal installations. A 40% fill area can be used when installing conductors in existing conduits. (See Exhibit 1330-13 for conduit and signal conductor sizes.)

Conduit Sizing Table			
Trade Size	Inside Diam. (inches)	Maximum Fill (inch^2)	
		26%	40%
1/2"	0.632	0.08	0.13
3/4"	0.836	0.14	0.22
1”	1.063	0.23	0.35
1 1/4"	1.394	0.40	0.61
1 1/2"	1.624	0.54	0.83
2”	2.083	0.89	1.36
2 1/2"	2.489	1.27	1.95
3”	3.09	1.95	3.00
3 1/2"	3.57	2.60	4.00
4”	4.05	3.35	5.15

Conductor Size Table			
Size (AWG)	Area (inch^2)	Size (AWG)	Area (inch^2)
# 14 USE	0.021	2cs (# 14)	0.090
# 12 USE	0.026	3cs (# 20)	0.070
# 10 USE	0.033	4cs (# 18)	0.060
# 8 USE	0.056	5c (# 14)	0.140
# 6 USE	0.073	7c (# 14)	0.170
# 4 USE	0.097	10c (# 14)	0.290
# 3 USE	0.113	6pcc (# 19)	0.320
# 2 USE	0.133		

Conduit and Conductor Sizes
Exhibit 1330-13

(d) **Electrical Service and Other Components**

Refer to Chapter 1040 for electrical service types, overcurrent protection, and descriptions and requirements for other components.

(e) **Roadway Conduit Crossings**

Minimize roadway crossings whenever possible; usually only three crossings are needed for a four-leg intersection and only two roadway crossings are needed for a T intersection. In most cases, the conduit should cross both the main line and side street from the corner where the controller is located. Directional boring is the method of choice when crossing the state route (main line). One main line crossing is usually sufficient; open cut trenching is acceptable on minor approaches. Open cut trenching to install conduits is allowed on existing roadways where substantial obstacles under the roadway will be encountered or where there is insufficient room for jacking or boring pits at the edges of the roadway. Open cut trenching is not permitted across limited access roadways unless the entire pavement surface is being replaced. Do not use sign or signal bridges for roadway crossings.

(12) Signal Design and Operation Near Railroad Crossings

If railroad tracks are within 500 feet of a signalized intersection, then a Railroad Crossing Evaluation Team is formed to determine the need (if any) for railroad preemption, interconnection, simultaneous preemption, advanced preemption, and so on. The Railroad Crossing Evaluation Team should consist of region and HQ Signal Design Engineers, region and HQ Signal Operations Engineers, HQ Railroad Liaison, region Utilities Engineer, region Traffic Design Engineer, region Maintenance Superintendent, and the affected railroad representative.

The Railroad Crossing Evaluation Team will determine what design considerations are needed at all signalized intersections near railroad crossings. A memo with each team member's concurrence with the PS&E documents is required for the Project File and is to be preserved as noted in 1330.07, Documentation. If railroad tracks are located within ¼ mile and are in excess of 500 feet from a signalized intersection, the same procedure will apply unless the region can demonstrate that 95% maximum queue lengths will not extend to within an area 200 feet from the tracks. Such demonstration is to be documented in the Project File and approved by the Railroad Crossing Evaluation Team.

The Railroad Crossing Evaluation Team has final review and approval authority for all PS&E documents for signal design and operation at all signalized intersections near railroad crossings.

Railroad preemption and interconnection are recommended when any of the following conditions occurs:

- The distance from the stop bar to the nearest rail is less than or equal to 200 feet.
- The 95% maximum queue lengths from the intersection stop bar are projected to cross the tracks. (Use a queue arrival/departure study or a traffic analysis "micro-simulation model" to determine 95% maximum queue lengths.)

- The 95% maximum queue lengths from the railroad are projected to affect an upstream traffic signal. (Use a queue arrival/departure study or a traffic analysis “micro-simulation model” to determine 95% maximum queue lengths.)

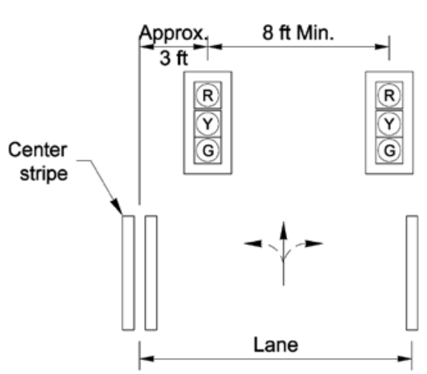
Railroad preemption, interconnection, and a presignal are recommended when any of the following conditions occurs:

- The distance from the stop bar to the nearest rail is less than 88 feet; the longest design vehicle permitted by statute is 75 feet, with 3 feet for front overhang, 4 feet for rear overhang, and 6 feet for downstream clear storage.
- The distance from the stop bar to the nearest rail is > 88 feet and < 120 feet and there are no gates for the railroad crossing.
- The sight distance triangle in Chapter 1350, Exhibit 1350-2, cannot be met, and the railroad crossing does not have active control (lights or gates).

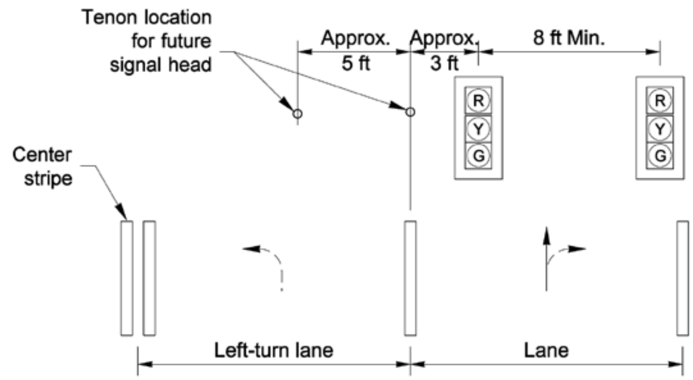
Use the *Guide for Determining Time Requirements for Traffic Signal Preemption at Highway-Rail Grade Crossings* to determine the amount of railroad preemption required at an intersection with a traffic signal.

1330.07 Documentation

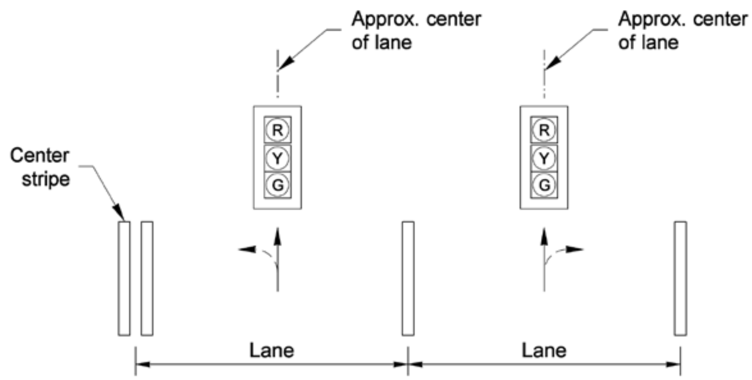
For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



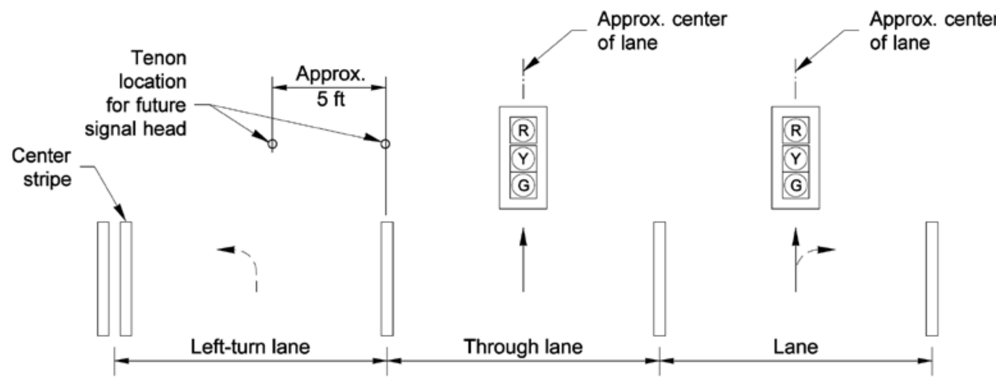
One Through Lane
With Permissive Left Turn



One Through Lane and One Left-Turn Storage Lane
With Permissive Left Turn



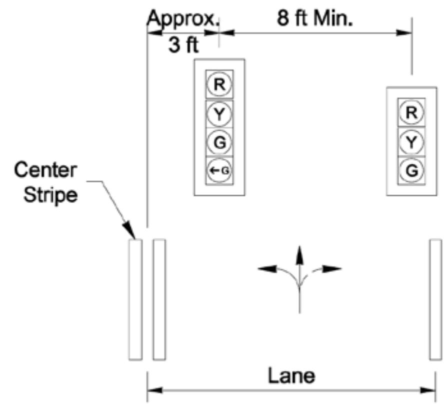
Two Through Lanes With Permissive Left Turn



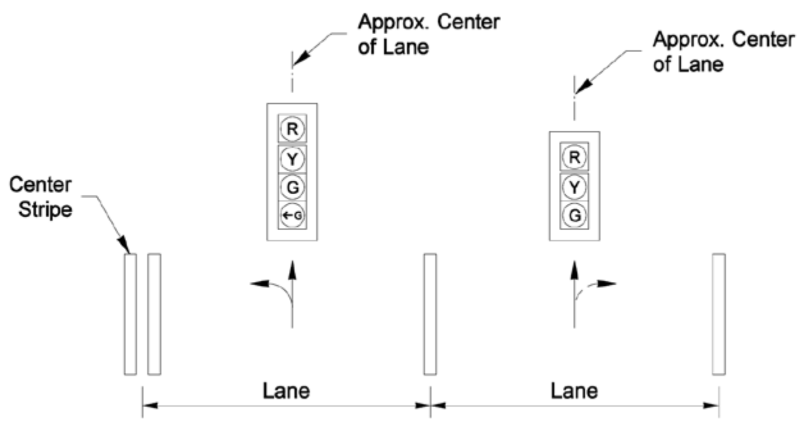
Two Through Lanes and One Left-Turn Storage Lane
With Permissive Left Turn

Note:
Include signal display calculations in the Project File.

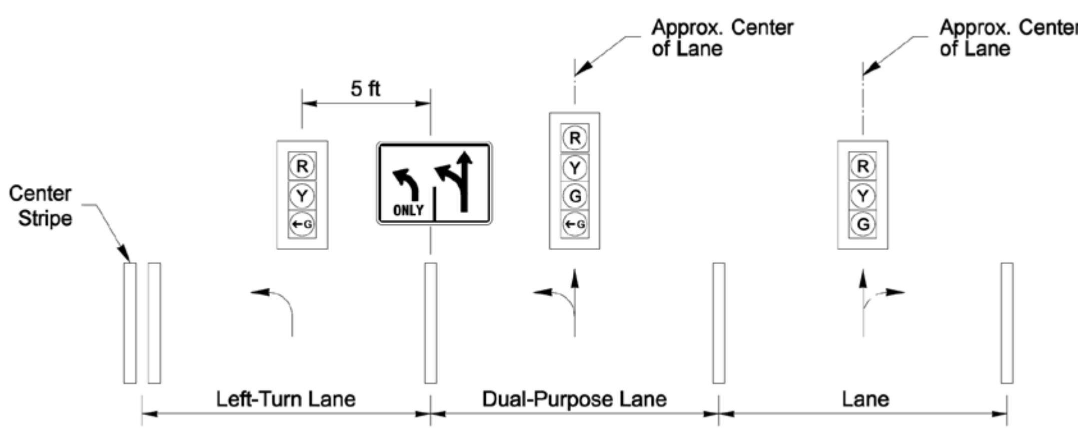
Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14a



One Through Lane With Split Phasing for Protected Left Turn
(Left-Turn and Through movements terminate together)

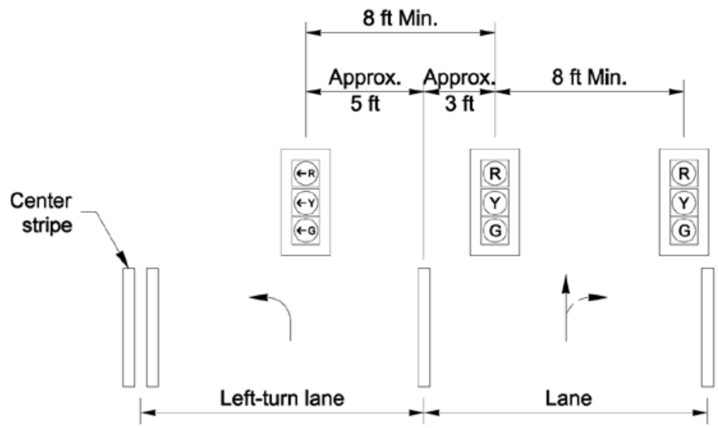


Two Through Lanes With Split Phasing for Protected Left Turn
(Left-Turn and Through movements terminate together)

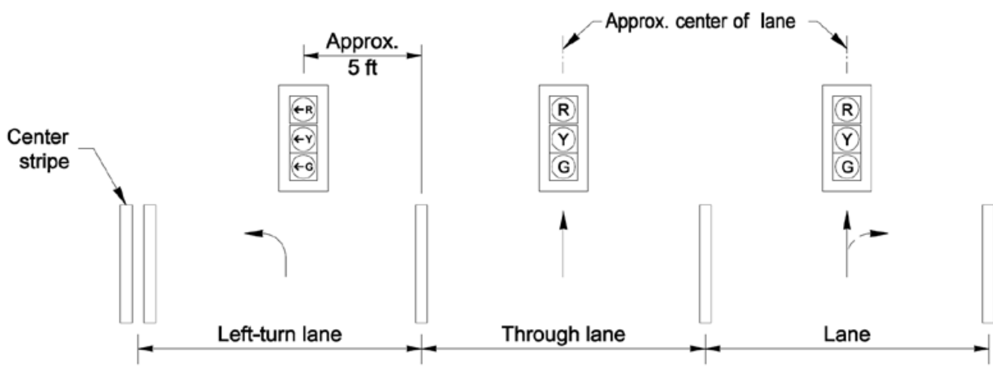


One Through Lane, a Dual-Purpose (Left or Through) Lane
and One Left-Turn Storage Lane with Split Phasing for Protected Left Turn
(Left-Turn and Through movements terminate together)

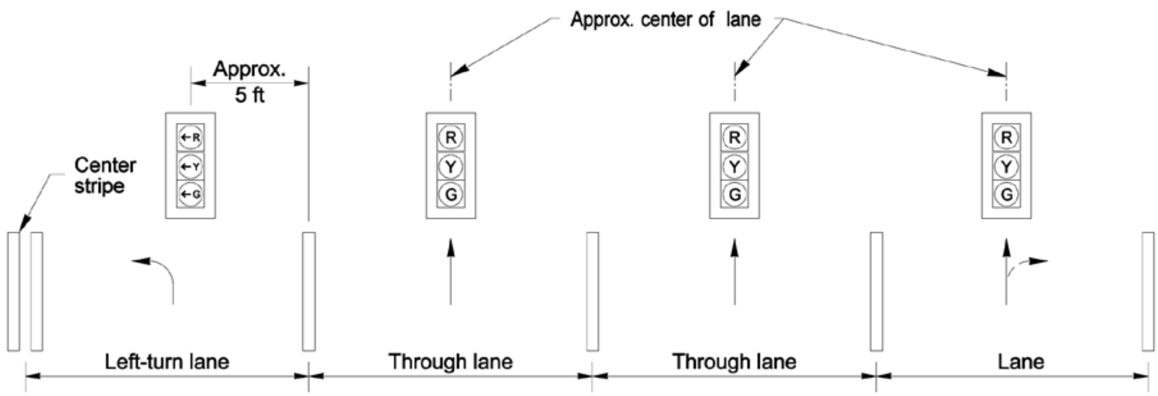
Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14b



One Through Lane and One Left-Turn Storage Lane
With Protected Left Turn
(Left-turn and through movements terminate independently)

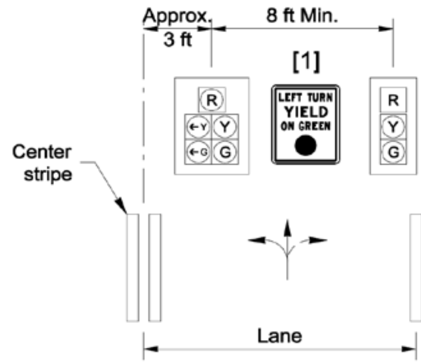


Two Through Lanes and One Left-Turn Storage Lane
With Protected Left Turn
(Left-turn and through movements terminate independently)

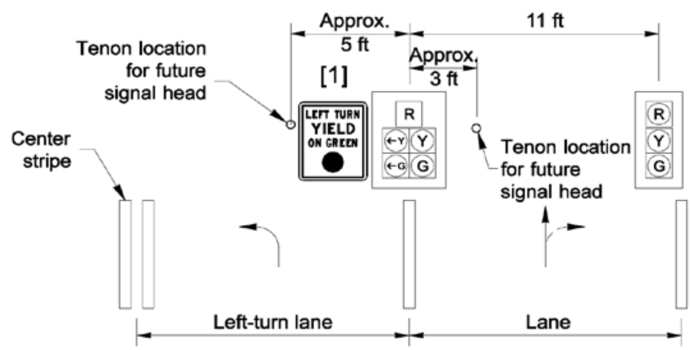


Three Through Lanes and One Left-Turn Storage Lane
With Protected Left Turn
(Left-turn and through movements terminate independently)

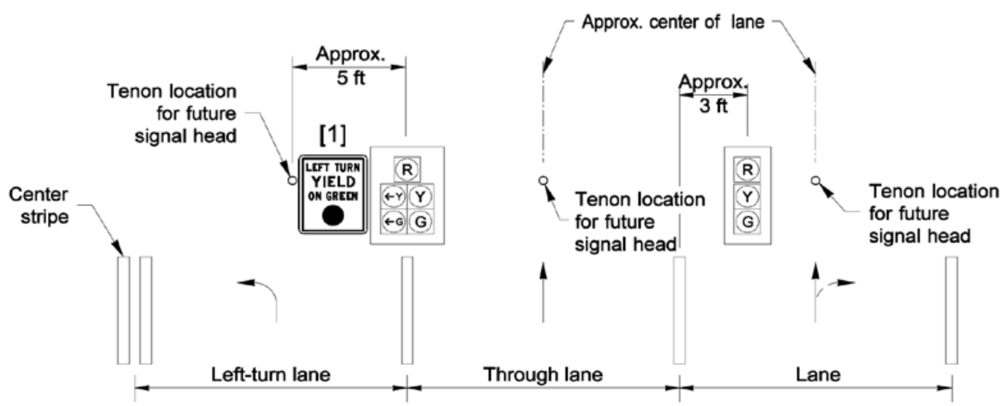
Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14c



One Through Lane
With Protected / Permissive Left Turn



One Through Lane and One Left-Turn Storage Lane
With Protected / Permissive Left Turn

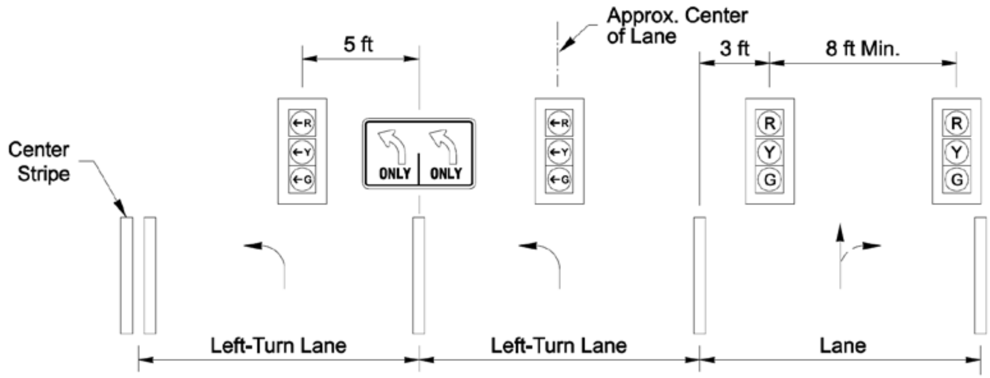


Two Through Lanes and One Left-Turn Storage Lane
With Protected / Permissive Left Turn

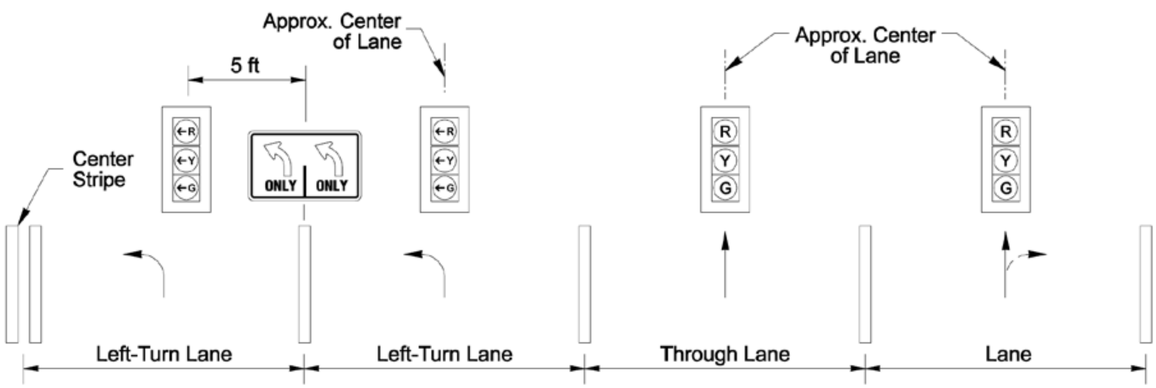
Note:

[1] The “Left-Turn Yield on Green Ball” sign is used for protected/permitted phasing, or permissive phasing, if a demonstrable problem of left-turning vehicles not yielding exists.

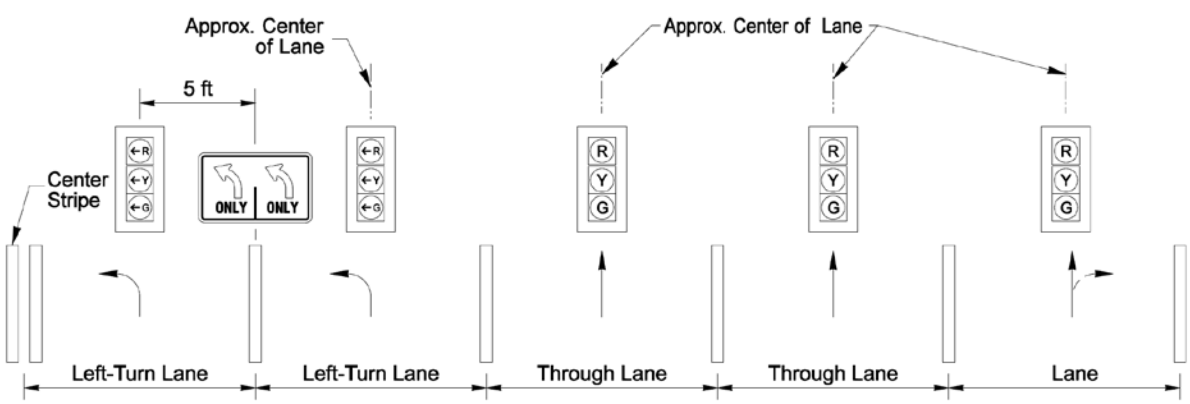
Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14d



One Through Lane and Two Left-Turn Storage Lanes
With Protected Left Turn
(Left-Turn and Through movements terminate independently)

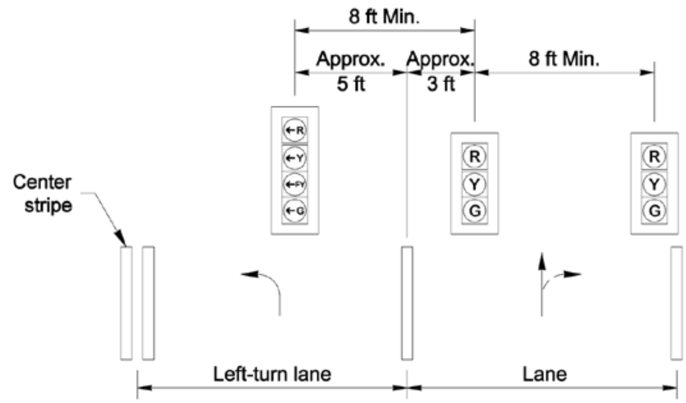


Two Through Lanes and Two Left-Turn Storage Lanes
With Protected Left Turn
(Left-Turn and Through movements terminate independently)

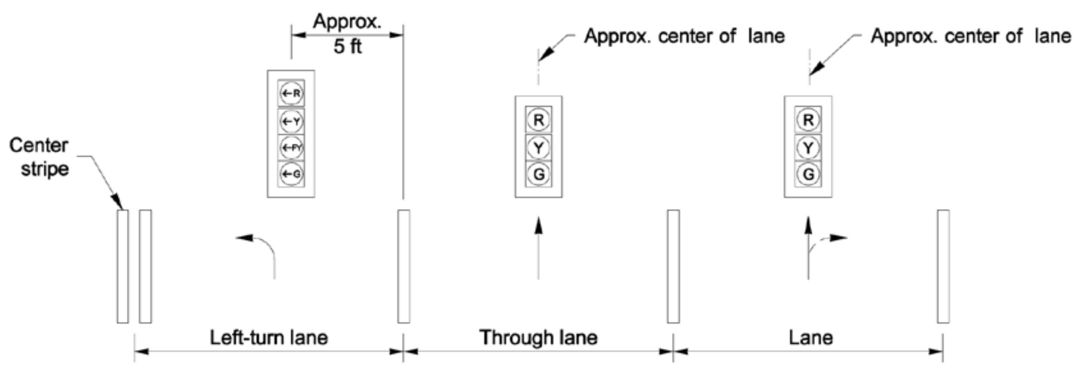


Three Through Lanes and Two Left-Turn Storage Lanes
(Left-Turn and Through movements terminate independently)

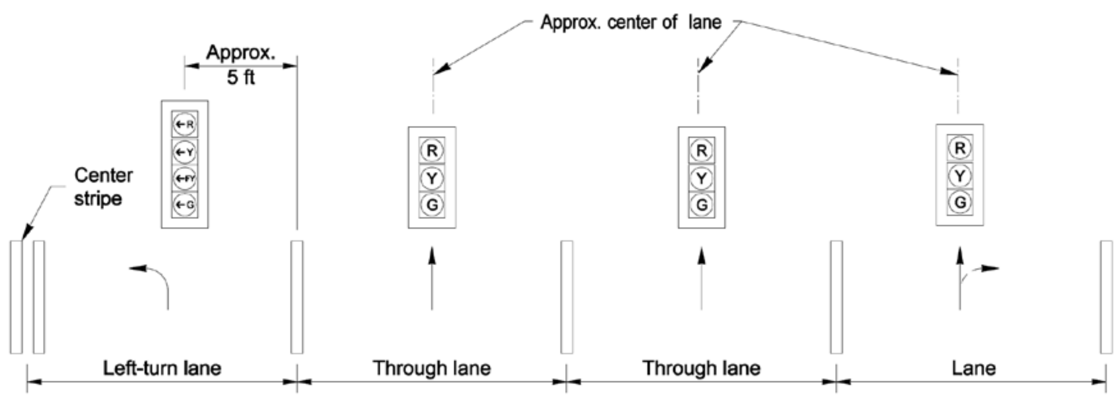
Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14e



One Through Lane and One Left-Turn Storage Lane
With Protected / Permissive Flashing Yellow Left-Turn Arrow



Two Through Lanes and One Left-Turn Storage Lane
With Protected / Permissive Flashing Yellow Left-Turn Arrow



Three Through Lanes and One Left-Turn Storage Lane
With Protected / Permissive Flashing Yellow Left-Turn Arrow

Traffic Signal Display Placements
Exhibit 1330-14f

Chapter 1340 Road Approaches

1340.01 General
1340.02 References
1340.03 Definitions
1340.04 Design Considerations
1340.05 Road Approach Design Template
1340.06 Sight Distance
1340.07 Road Approach Location
1340.08 Drainage
1340.09 Procedures
1340.10 Documentation

1340.01 General

Every owner of property that abuts the state highway system where limited access rights have not been acquired by the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) has a right to reasonable access to the state highway system. For considerations, requirements, and restrictions concerning road approaches on state highways where limited access rights have not been acquired, see Chapters 520 and 540.

For considerations, requirements, and restrictions concerning road approaches on state highways where limited access rights have been acquired from the abutting property owners, see Chapters 520 and 540.

Road approaches are designed and built on the state highway system to provide access at the locations provided for in Chapters 530 and 540. This chapter applies to road approaches on state highways in unincorporated areas and within incorporated areas where limited access rights have been acquired. Road approaches on state highways within incorporated areas where limited access rights have not been acquired are the jurisdiction of the local agency, but conformance to this chapter is required by statute (RCW 47.50.030).

1340.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.32.150, Approach roads, other appurtenances – Permit

RCW 47.32.160, Approach roads, other appurtenances – Rules – Construction, maintenance of approach roads

RCW 47.32.170, Approach roads, other appurtenances – Removal of installations from right of way for default

RCW 47.50, Highway Access Management

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-51, Highway access management access permits – Administrative process

WAC 468-52, Highway access management – Access control classification system and standards

WAC 468-58, Limited access highways

(2) Design Guidance

Right of Way Manual, M 26-01, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

1340.03 Definitions

access connection An access point, other than a public road/street, that permits access to or from a managed access highway on the state highway system.

approach An access point, other than a public road/street, that allows access to or from a limited access highway on the state highway system.

average weekday vehicle trip ends (AWDVTE) The estimated total of all trips entering plus all trips leaving a road approach on a weekday for the final stage of development of the property served by the road approach.

intersection at grade The general area where a state highway or ramp terminal is met or crossed at a common grade or elevation by another state highway, a county road, or a city street.

legal road approach A road approach that complies with the requirements of Chapter 530 for limited access facilities and Chapter 540 for managed access facilities.

limited access highway Highways where the rights of direct access to or from abutting lands have been acquired from the abutting land owners.

managed access highway Highways where the rights of direct access to or from abutting lands have not been acquired from the abutting land owners.

nonconforming road approach A road approach that does not meet current requirements for location, quantity, spacing, sight distance, or geometric elements.

road approach A road or driveway providing private access to or from the state highway system.

road approach design template The design geometric criteria for a road approach based on the usage, types of vehicles, and traffic volume.

1340.04 Design Considerations

Review all existing road approaches within the limits of a project to verify their legality (see Chapters 520, 530, and 540). Restore or replace legal road approaches impacted by a highway project. Evaluate road approaches that do not comply with access control requirements for ways to bring them into compliance.

New road approaches or upgrades to existing road approaches, requested by the property owner, may be included in the project at the expense of the property owner.

Design road approaches at transit facilities in accordance with Chapter 1430.

1340.05 Road Approach Design Template

The road approach design template is dependent upon the usage, types of vehicles, and traffic volume.

Exhibit 1340-1 lists the road approach design templates, the road approach usage, and the design vehicle that Exhibits 1340-3 through 1340-5 provide for. When providing for a larger design vehicle, use the turning path templates in Chapter 1310, or from another source, to determine what adjustments to make.

Design Template	Property Usage	Design Vehicle
A	Residential	P
B	Farm	SU & BUS
C	Utility and special use	SU & BUS
D	Commercial	varies*
* See Exhibit 1340-5.		

Road Approach Design Templates
Exhibit 1340-1

The road approach templates are divided by allowable access movement. Exhibit 1340-2 gives the movements allowed for each road approach access design.

Category	Access Allowed
1	Full access
2	Right in/Right out
3	Right in only
4	Right out only

Road Approach Access Category
Exhibit 1340-2

When designating a road approach template, include the access category. For example, a residential road approach with full access would be Design Template A1.

(1) Road Approach Design Template A: Residential

A Road Approach Design Template A is used for a noncommercial road approach to provide access for residential units. It is designed for low traffic volumes of primarily passenger cars. Design road approaches to fit the conditions within the limits shown in Exhibit 1340-3.

(a) **Limited Access Facilities**

Use Road Approach Design Template A when a Type A approach is specified.

(b) **Managed Access Facilities**

Use Road Approach Design Template A for connections to single-family residences, duplexes, or other small multifamily complexes. When the connection provides access to more than ten dwelling units, consider a commercial road approach (Design Template D).

(2) Road Approach Design Template B: Farm

A Road Approach Design Template B is used for a road approach for the normal operation of a farm, but not for retail marketing. A Design Template B can be used for the construction and maintenance of a wind farm. It is designed for the larger vehicles normal for farm operations. If there is a predominance of semitrailer traffic, modify the design to accommodate larger vehicles. Design road approaches to fit the conditions within the limits shown in Exhibit 1340-4.

(a) **Limited Access Facilities**

Use Road Approach Design Template B when a Type B approach is specified.

(b) **Managed Access Facilities**

Use Road Approach Design Template B for connections to farms and other agricultural facilities that do not include retail marketing.

(3) Road Approach Design Template C: Utility and Special Use

A Road Approach Design Template C is used to provide access to facilities owned by a utility for the purpose of maintenance of that facility and operation of the utility. Template C may also be used for other special agreed-upon uses. If there is a predominance of semitrailer traffic, modify the design to accommodate larger vehicles. Design road approaches to fit the conditions within the limits shown in Exhibit 1340-4.

(a) **Limited Access Facilities**

Use Road Approach Design Template C when a Type C or Type F approach is specified.

(b) **Managed Access Facilities**

Use Road Approach Design Template C for connections to utility facilities, wireless communication sites, and other locations where an agreement has been reached for a special purpose.

(4) Road Approach Design Template D: Commercial

A Road Approach Design Template D is used for commercial road approaches to provide access to businesses, farms with retail marketing, and other high-volume road approaches.

Determine the predominant type of vehicle and design the commercial road approach in accordance with Exhibit 1340-5. If the width of the frontage precludes such a road approach, use the turning path templates in Chapter 1310, or from another source, to determine what adjustments may be made to provide efficient access and to avoid encroachment upon the frontage of abutting property.

Locate and design commercial road approaches such that they do not cause undue interference to the free movement of highway traffic and, when not joint-use road approaches, they must not infringe on the frontage of adjoining property.

Where traffic volumes are heavy, such as for a shopping center or an industrial park, design the road approach as an intersection (see Chapter 1310).

(a) **Limited Access Facilities**

Use Road Approach Design Template D when a Type D approach is specified.

(b) **Managed Access Facilities**

Use Road Approach Design Template D for businesses, farms with retail marketing, and other high-volume road approaches.

1340.06 Sight Distance

The driver of a vehicle entering a roadway from a road approach needs obstruction-free sight triangles in order to see enough of the roadway to enter before an approaching vehicle can reach the road approach.

Locate the road approach where the sight distances shown in Exhibit 1340-6 are available.

1340.07 Road Approach Location

Locate road approaches as determined in Chapter 530 for limited access facilities and Chapter 540 for managed access facilities.

1340.08 Drainage

In a roadway section with a drainage ditch, a culvert pipe is placed under the road approach. The road approach is graded as shown in Exhibit 1340-5. Be careful that roadway runoff is not a problem.

Design foreslopes not steeper than 6H:1V. Bevel the culvert ends in accordance with Chapter 1600.

Locate culverts as far from the traveled way as possible. Minimum distances are shown in Exhibits 1340-3 through 1340-5.

A turnpike section (a roadway section with a shallow V-shaped paved gutter at the shoulder edge) may be used. Consider continuing the turnpike section throughout the area between the shoulder and the backslope. In the profile controls in Exhibit 1340-5, if the grade from the edge of shoulder to the right of way line is a flat or minus grade and roadway runoff is a consideration, curb may be placed as shown.

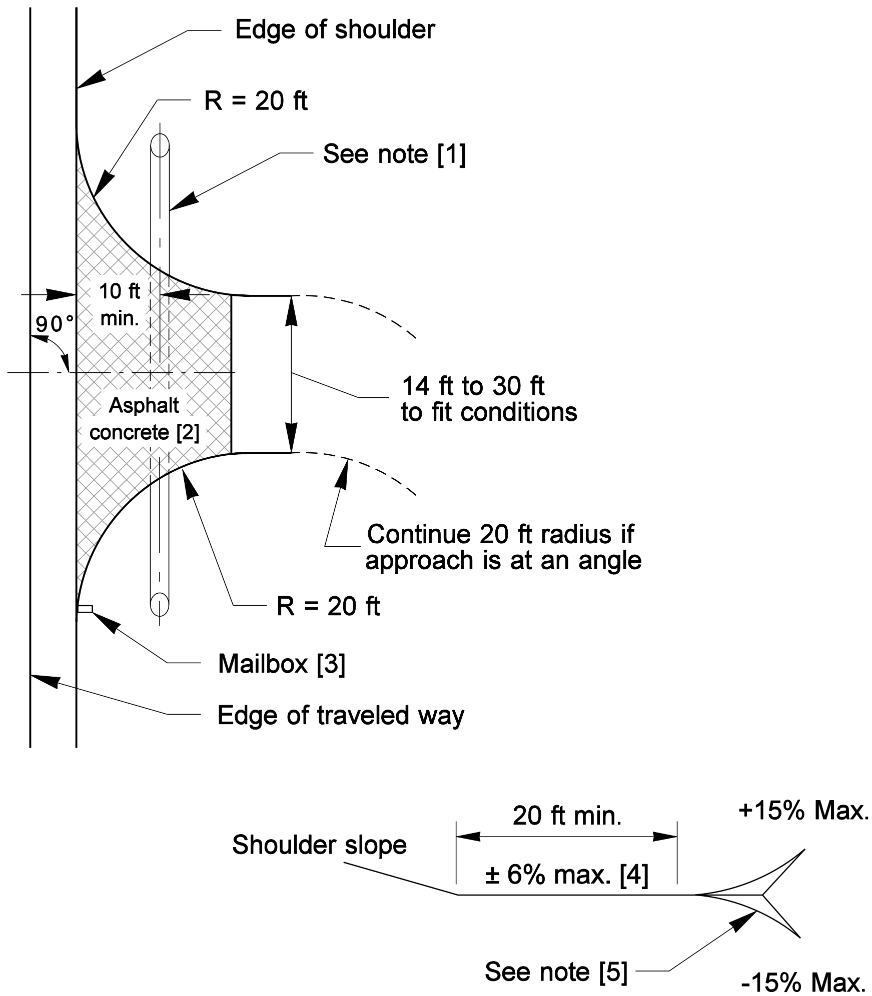
Construct road approaches and related areas such that they do not impair drainage within the right of way or alter the stability of the roadway subgrade.

1340.09 Procedures

Verify the legality of all road approaches (see Chapters 520, 530, and 540). Show on a plan or a list the location and template for all road approaches. Where road approaches are to be included in a project, consider location and function as early as possible, desirably in the preliminary planning stage.

1340.10 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



Notes:

[1] Culvert pipe with beveled end treatment (see Chapter 1600).

[2] When the travel lanes are bituminous, a similar type may be used on the approaches.

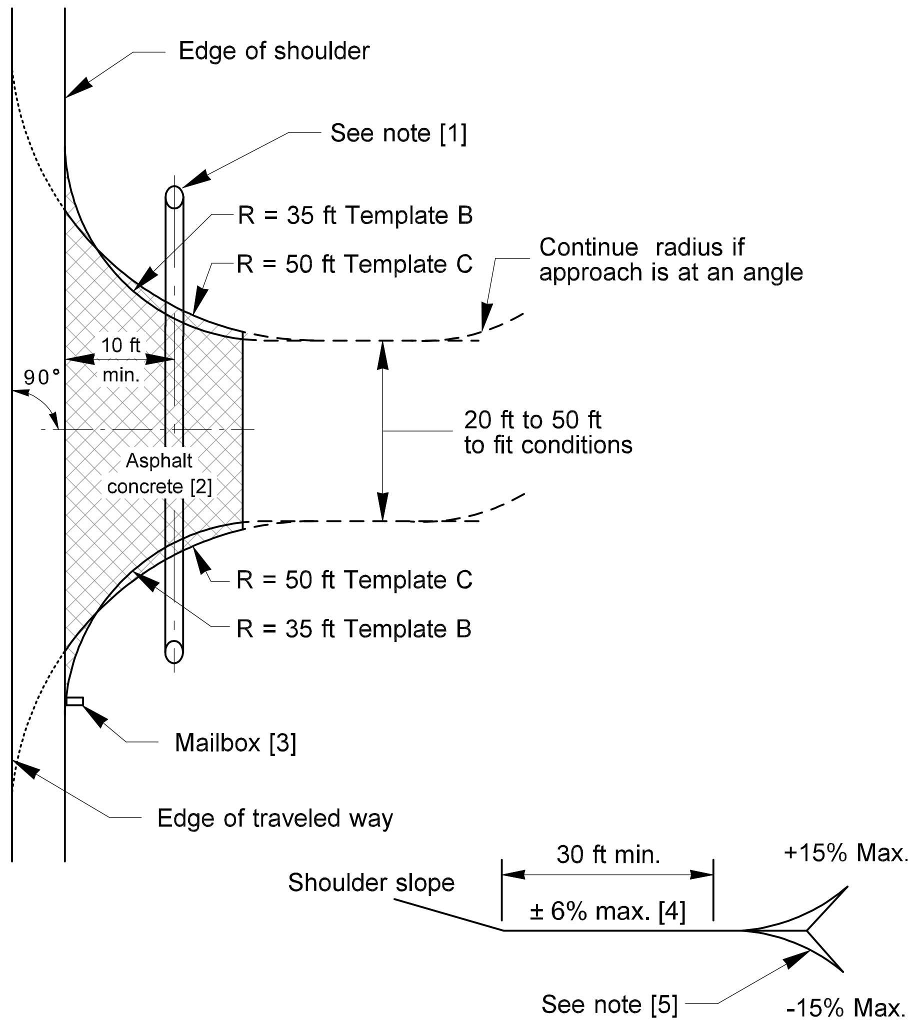
[3] For mailbox location, see Chapter 1600.

[4] ±8% difference from shoulder slope.

[5] Vertical curves not to exceed a 3¼-inch hump or a 2-inch depression in a 10-foot chord.

Road Approach Design Template A1

Exhibit 1340-3



Notes:

[1] Culvert pipe with beveled end treatment (see Chapter 1600).

[2] When the travel lanes are bituminous, a similar type may be used on the approaches.

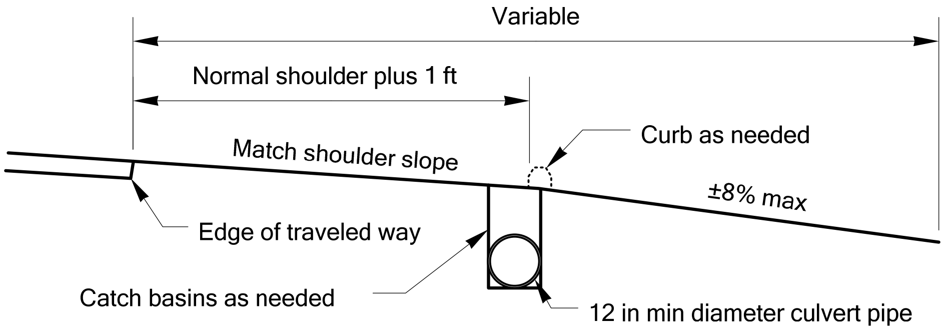
[3] For mailbox location, see Chapter 1600.

[4] ±8% difference from shoulder slope.

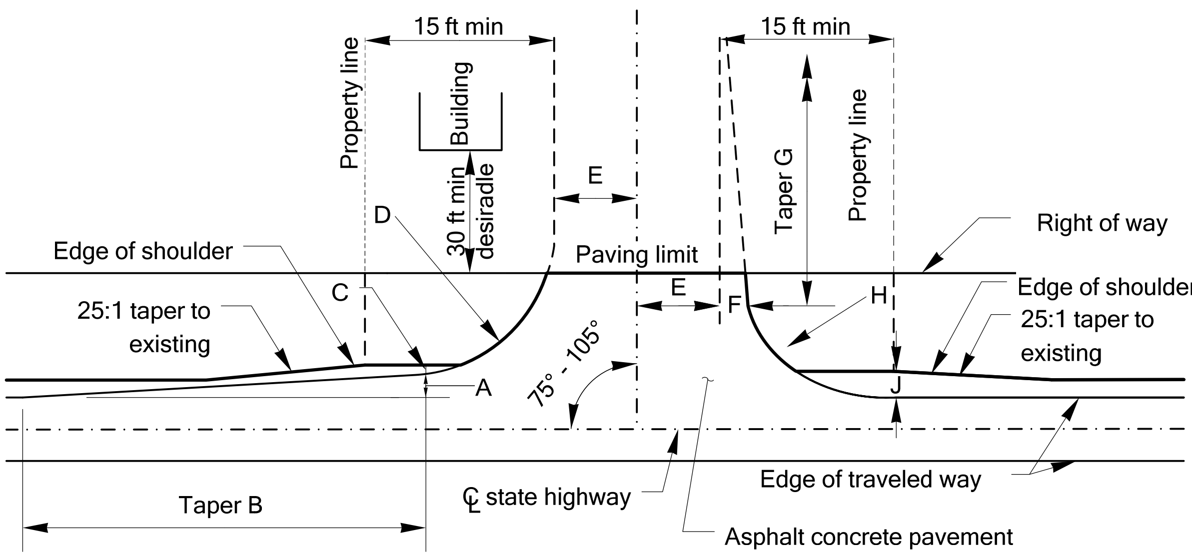
[5] Vertical curves not to exceed a 31/4-inch hump or a 2-inch depression in a 10-foot chord.

Road Approach Design Templates B1 and C1

Exhibit 1340-4



Profile Controls



Condition	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	J
Primary SU and less	—	—	[1]	30	15	—	—	30	[1]
Primary combination Vehicle WB 40	—	—	[1]	65	15	—	—	55	[1]
	4	25	[2]	50	15	7	25	45	[1]
Primary combination Vehicle WB 50 and doubles	—	—	[1]	70	20	—	—	50	[1]
	4	25	[3]	55	20	—	—	50	[1]

Notes:

[1] Normal shoulder width (see Chapter 1140).

[2] Normal shoulder width less A.

[3] For larger vehicles, use turning templates (see Chapter 1310).

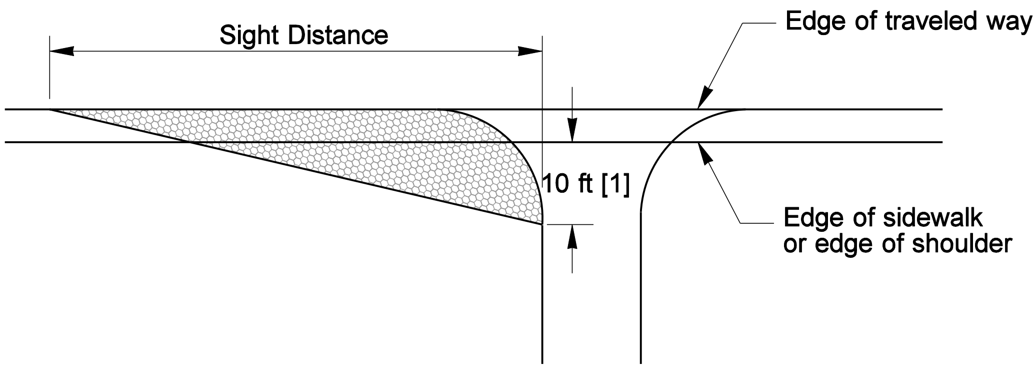
[4] Vertical curves between the shoulder slope and the road approach grade not to exceed a 3¼-inch hump or a 2-inch depression in a 10-ft cord.

General:

Values given are in ft.

Road Approach Design Template D1

Exhibit 1340-5



Posted Speed Limit (mph)	25	30	35	40	50	60	70
AWDVTE 100 or less	155	200	230	295	395	525	625
AWDVTE 100 to 1500	155	200	250	305	425	570	645

Road Approach Sight Distance (ft)

Note:

[1] Not to exceed 18 ft from the edge of traveled way.

General:

- These sight distances may require an approaching vehicle to reduce speed or stop to prevent a collision.
- Design road approach sight distance for road approaches with AWDVTE over 1500 as an intersection (see Chapter 1310).
- Provide decision sight distance (see Chapter 1260) for through traffic at all utility and special-use road approaches on facilities with full access control.
- For road approaches where left turns are not allowed, a sight triangle need only be provided to the left, as shown.
- For road approaches where left turns are allowed, provide a sight triangle to the right in addition to the one to the left. The sight distance to the right is measured along the center line of the roadway.
- For additional information on calculating the sight triangle, see Chapter 1310.

Road Approach Sight Distance
Exhibit 1340-6

Chapter 1350 Railroad Grade Crossings

1350.01 General
1350.02 References
1350.03 Plans
1350.04 Traffic Control Systems
1350.05 Pullout Lanes
1350.06 Crossing Surfaces
1350.07 Crossing Closure
1350.08 Traffic Control During Construction and Maintenance
1350.09 Railroad Grade Crossing Petitions and WUTC Orders
1350.10 Grade Crossing Improvement Projects
1350.11 Light Rail
1350.12 Documentation

1350.01 General

Most railroads in Washington were in operation long before our system of roads was developed, and they generally have prescriptive rights and underlying property interests that supersede those of road authorities. In general, right of way is not acquired in fee from a railroad company. Rather than selling property, railroads typically convey easements, access rights, and construction permits. Therefore, most roads exist on railroad property by easement from the railroads. Any widening or realignment of an existing roadway; construction upon, over, or under; or installation of wires or pipes on railroad property requires permission from the railroad in the form of a permit or an agreement.

Projects with work by the railroad, or for which they are to be reimbursed or compensated, will require an agreement. It is not unusual for a railroad agreement to take 6 months or more to be developed, reviewed, and executed; therefore, it is important for the designer to establish early contact with the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) Railroad Liaison at the Headquarters (HQ) Utilities, Railroad, and Agreements Section.

Agreements are developed and negotiated by the HQ Railroad Liaison. Permits are typically acquired directly from the railroad or its property manager by the region. Contact your region Utilities Engineer or the HQ Railroad Liaison for assistance. Include copies of any executed permits or agreements in the Design Documentation Package. Include a copy of the "Notice to Proceed" (required in the agreement to authorize the railroad to commence work) in the Project File.

Railroad grade crossings are, in effect, intersections with two legs of rail traffic that never stop. Give due consideration to traffic control for the rail crossing. Grade crossing traffic controls (railroad signals, gates, pavement markings, signs, and controllers) are typically located within the area of railroad property. Railroad signal and gate maintenance is the responsibility of the railroad. Railroads are also responsible for the maintenance of crossing surfaces for the 12 inches outside the edge of rail (WAC 480-62-225). Most railroads insist on designing and constructing their own signals, gates, and crossing surfaces.

The Washington Utilities and Transportation Commission (WUTC) has statutory authority over grade crossing safety in Washington State. Any changes to a grade crossing or the associated appurtenances require initial approval by the WUTC. This is accomplished by submitting a Petition to the WUTC. The HQ Railroad Liaison has copies of WUTC forms and can help with their preparation. The WUTC will review the Petition and issue an Order granting or denying the Petition, with or without conditions, depending on the situation. Include a copy of any Petition or Order in the Design Documentation Package.

1350.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 81.53, Railroad crossings

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 480-62-150, Grade crossing petitions

(2) Design Guidance

Agreements Manual, WSDOT M22-99

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

Guidance On Traffic Control Devices At Highway-Rail Grade Crossings, Highway/Rail Grade Crossing Technical Working Group (TWG), FHWA, November 2002
safety.fhwa.dot.gov/media/twgreport.htm#2

Railroad-Highway Grade Crossing Handbook, FHWA, TS-86-215

Traffic Control Devices Handbook, ITE, 2001

1350.03 Plans

Include plans for state-constructed improvements to existing crossings and any new crossings within the normal process. In addition to basic roadway dimensions, signs, and markings, indicate angle of the crossing, number of tracks, location of signals and other railway facilities (such as electrical/communications lines and control boxes). Also indicate railroad stationing at the point where the highway centerline crosses the center of the tracks.

For any project proposing to alter the horizontal or vertical alignment at a grade crossing, including grade separations, show the alignment and profile for both the railroad and the roadway for a minimum of 500 feet on all legs of the crossing. Show all other important features that might affect the safety, operation, and design of the crossing such as nearby crossroads, driveways/entrances, buildings, and highway structures on the plans.

(a) **Sight Distance**

Sight distance is a primary consideration at railroad grade crossings. A railroad grade crossing is comparable to the intersection of two highways where a sight triangle is kept clear of obstructions or it is protected by a traffic control device. The desirable sight distance allows an approaching driver to see an approaching train at such a distance that the vehicle can stop well in advance of the crossing if signals or gates and signals are not present (see Exhibit 1350-1, Case 2). Sight distances of the order shown are desirable at any railroad grade crossing not controlled by railroad signal lights or gates (active warning devices). Their attainment, however, is often difficult and impracticable due to topography and terrain. Even in flat, open terrain, the growth of crops or other seasonal vegetation can create a permanent or seasonal sight distance obstruction. Furthermore, the properties upon which obstructions might exist are commonly owned by the railroad or others. Evaluate installation of active devices at any location where adequate sight distances cannot be provided. Include communication with the railroad and the Washington Utilities and Transportation Commission in your evaluation.

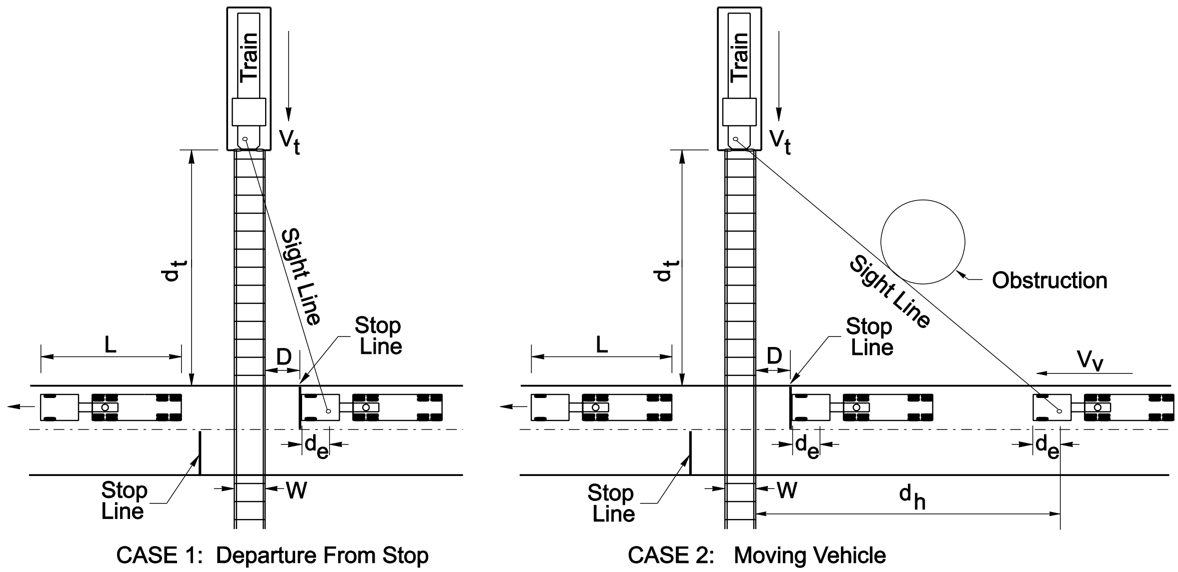
The driver of a vehicle stopped at a crossing with signal lights but no gates needs to be able to see far enough down the tracks from the stop bar to be able to cross the tracks before a train, approaching at maximum allowable speed, reaches the crossing (see Exhibit 1350-1, Case 1).

In some cases, lights and gates alone will not provide adequate safety for motorists whose impatience may encourage them to drive around a gate. Evaluate train and traffic volumes and accident history to assess the feasibility of installing a median separator to discourage vehicles from driving around gates. Close call incident logs are sometimes available from the railroad or WUTC, these too can provide an indication of need for additional active control devices. Consult with the railroad or the HQ Railroad Liaison since the railroad may have information on numbers of gate violators at the crossing. Where sufficient space is available, make median separators at least 60 feet in length.

(b) **Highway Grade**

Construct highway grades so that low-slung vehicles do not hang-up on tracks or damage them. (See Chapter 1220 for information on vertical alignment at railroad grade crossings.) Whenever possible, design the roadway to cross grade crossings at right angles. If bicycle traffic uses the crossing (this can be assumed for most roads), provide a shoulder through the grade crossing at least as wide as the approach shoulder width. If a skew is unavoidable, wider shoulders may be needed to permit bicycles to maneuver to cross the tracks at right angles. (See Chapter 1520 for information on bikeways crossing railroad tracks.) Consider installation of advance warning signs indicating the presence of a skewed crossing for crossings where engineering judgment suggests a benefit.

Include any engineering studies or sight distance measurements in the Design Documentation Package.



d_t	=	Sight distance along railroad tracks (ft)	V_v	=	Velocity of vehicle (mph)
d_h	=	Sight distance along highway (ft)	f	=	Coefficient of friction
d_e	=	Distance from driver to front of vehicle (8 ft)	V_t	=	Velocity of train (mph)
D	=	Distance from stop line to nearest rail (15 ft)	L	=	Length of vehicle (65 ft)
W	=	Distance between outer rails (single track W=5 ft)			

Notes:

- Adjust for skewed crossings.
- Assumed flat highway grades adjacent to and at crossings.

Train Speed (mph) V_t	Case 1: Departure From Stop	Case 2: Moving Vehicle						
		Vehicle Speed (mph) V_v						
		10	20	30	40	50	60	70
		f=0.40	0.40	0.35	0.32	0.30	0.29	0.28
	Distance Along Railroad from Crossing d_t (ft)							
10	240	150	100	100	100	110	120	130
20	480	290	210	200	210	220	240	270
30	720	440	310	300	310	340	370	400
40	960	580	410	390	410	450	490	540
50	1200	730	520	490	520	560	610	670
60	1440	870	620	590	620	670	730	810
70	1880	1020	720	690	720	790	860	940
80	1920	1160	830	790	830	900	980	1070
90	2160	1310	930	890	930	1010	1100	1210
		Distance Along Highway From Crossing d_h (ft)						
		69	135	220	324	447	589	751

Design sight distance for a combination of highway and train vehicle speeds and a 65-ft truck crossing a single set of tracks at 90° (AASHTO).

Sight Distance at Railroad Crossing
Exhibit 1350-1

1350.04 Traffic Control Systems

(1) Traffic Control System Elements

Traffic control systems improve the safety and efficiency of railroad-highway traffic crossing operations. These systems include passive and active controls.

(a) **Passive Elements**

1. The following signing elements are shown in the MUTCD, Part 8, Traffic Control for Highway-Rail Grade Crossings:
    - **Highway-Rail Grade Crossing** (Crossbuck) sign. The railroad is responsible for maintenance of the Crossbucks.
    - **Supplemental Number of Tracks** (inverted "T") sign. This sign is mounted below the Crossbuck sign to indicate the number of tracks when two or more tracks are involved. The railroad is responsible for maintenance of these signs.
    - **Highway-Rail Grade Crossing Advance Warning** signs (such as Rough Crossing or No Signal). The road authority installs and maintains these signs.
    - **Exempt** sign. This is a supplemental sign that, when authorized by the WUTC, may be mounted below the Crossbuck. When this sign is approved, certain classes of vehicles, otherwise required to stop before crossing the tracks, may proceed without stopping, provided no train is approaching. The road authority installs and maintains these signs.
    - **Do Not Stop on Tracks** sign. The road authority has responsibility for these signs.
2. Pavement markings on all paved approaches are the responsibility of the road authority and consist of **RR Crossing** markings in accordance with the *Standard Plans*, **No Passing** markings, and **Pullout Lanes**, as appropriate.
3. Consider the installation of illumination at and adjacent to railroad crossings where an engineering study determines that better nighttime visibility of the train and the grade crossing is needed. For example:
    - Where a substantial number of railroad operations are conducted at night.
    - Where grade crossings are blocked for long periods at night by slow-speed trains.
    - Where collision history indicates that drivers experience difficulty seeing trains during hours of darkness.

(b) **Active Elements**

1. **Railroad Signals and Gates:** Maintenance of these devices is the responsibility of the railroad. Funding for installation and upgrades to these devices, commonly comes from the road authority.
2. **Repeater Signals** (also known as "presignals")**:** These are traffic signals installed in advance of a railroad grade crossing when the grade crossing is adjacent to a parallel roadway with a far side traffic signal. They are installed and maintained by the road authority and used to discourage traffic from stopping on the tracks.

3. **Locomotive Horn:** By law, trains are required to sound their horn in advance of grade crossings. In some locations, this can be an annoyance to adjacent residents or businesses. This requirement may be waived provided current Federal Railroad Administration (FRA) requirements are met (see www.fra.dot.gov/us/Content/1318).
4. **Traffic Signal Interconnects** (also known as "railroad preemption")**:** These provide linkage between the railroad signals and adjacent traffic signals to allow vehicles to clear the tracks at a traffic signal as a train approaches. They are typically funded by the road authority and require cooperation with the railroad for installation. Include copies of any signal preemption timings or calculations in the Project File.

(c) **Traffic Control System Functions**

In general, passive controls notify drivers that they are approaching a grade crossing and to be on the lookout for trains. Passive controls are typically found at low-volume and low-speed train crossings.

For crossings of state highways with low-to-moderate train speeds and volumes or for crossings with limited sight distance in accordance with Exhibit 1350-1, Case 2, consider active controls. For crossings without vehicle stopped sight distance in accordance with Exhibit 1350-1, Case 1, consider including gates.

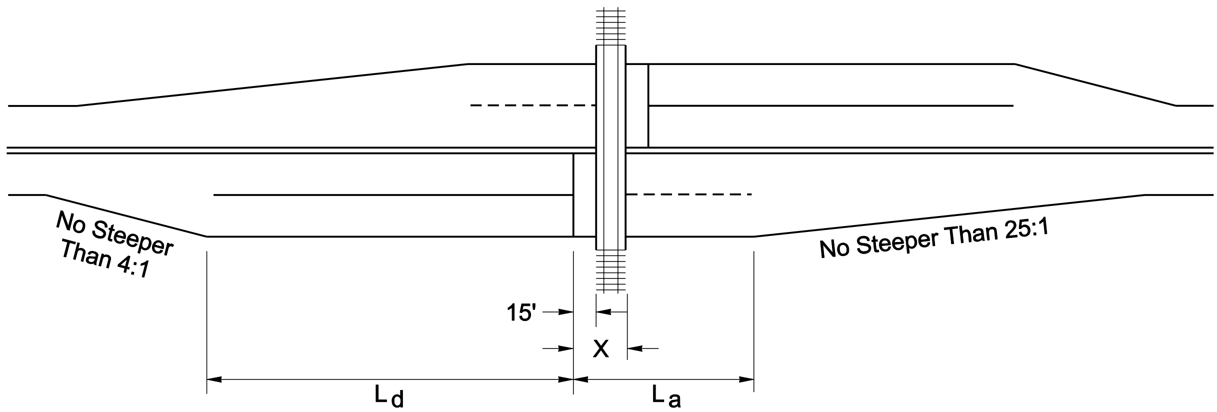
At the time of this writing, no national or state warrants have been developed for installation of traffic controls at grade crossings. Furthermore, due to the large number of significant variables that need to be considered, there is no single system of active traffic control devices universally applicable for grade crossings. Base the determination of the appropriate type of traffic control system on an engineering and traffic investigation, including input from the railroad and the WUTC. Significant factors to consider are train and highway volumes and speeds, pedestrian volume, accident history, and sight distance restrictions.

Evaluate railroad signal supports and gate mechanisms as roadside features to be considered for mitigation. Use traffic barrier or impact attenuators as appropriate (see Division 16).

1350.05 Pullout Lanes

In accordance with RCW 46.61.350, certain vehicles are required to stop at all railroad crossings without signals or not posted with an "Exempt" sign. Evaluate the installation of "pullout" lanes when grade crossings have no active protection. Some school districts have a policy that school buses must stop at all grade crossings regardless of the type of control. Consider the installation of pullout lanes at any public grade crossing used regularly by school buses and for which the school buses must stop.

Design pullout lane geometrics in accordance with Exhibit 1350-2. The minimum shoulder width adjacent to the pullout lane is 3 feet.



L_d = Total length of pullout lane, approach
L_a = Total length of pullout lane, exit
X = Distance from stopping point to downstream side of crossing surface

Approach Length of Pullout Lane, L_d		Downstream Length of Pullout Lane, L_a	
Vehicle Speed (mph)	**Length (ft)**	**Vehicle Speed (mph)**	**Length (ft)**
30	175	30	0
40	265	40	80
50	385	50	460
60	480	60	870

Typical Pullout Lane at Railroad Crossing
Exhibit 1350-2

1350.06 Crossing Surfaces

Railroads are responsible for the maintenance of crossing surfaces up to 12 inches outside the edge of rail (WAC 480-62-225). Crossing surfaces can be constructed of a number of different materials, including asphalt, concrete, steel, timber, rubber, or plastic. The most common surface types used on state highway crossings are asphalt, precast concrete, and rubber. Timbered crossings are frequently used for low-volume roads and temporary construction crossings.

The life of a crossing surface depends on the volume and weight of highway and rail traffic using it. Highway traffic not only dictates the type of crossing surface, but it also has a major influence on the life of the crossing. Rough crossing surfaces impact the motoring public far more than the railroad. Therefore, when a highway project passes through a railroad grade crossing, consider the condition of the crossing surface. While the existing condition might not warrant railroad investment in replacing it, the surface might have deteriorated sufficiently to increase vehicle operating costs and motorist inconvenience. In such cases, it may be effective to partner with the railroad to replace the crossing as part of the highway project. Such partnerships typically consist of the state reimbursing the railroad for all or a portion of the cost of the work.

1350.07 Crossing Closure

The MUTCD states, "Any highway-rail grade crossing that cannot be justified should be eliminated." Coordination with the appropriate railroad and the Washington Utilities and Transportation Commission is required before any changes can be made to track structure or railroad signal systems. If a state route grade crossing appears unused, consult the HQ Railroad Liaison before taking any action. Close at-grade crossings that are replaced by grade separations.

1350.08 Traffic Control During Construction and Maintenance

Provide work zone traffic control for projects at highway-rail grade crossings, which need protection from train traffic. When highway construction or maintenance activities affects a railroad crossing, the railroad company must be notified at least ten days before performing the work (WAC 480-62-305(4)). Furthermore, whenever highway construction or maintenance crews or equipment are working within 25 feet of an active rail line or grade crossing, consult the railroad to determine whether a railroad flagger is required. Current contact numbers for railroads may be obtained by contacting your region Utilities Engineer. Railroad flaggers differ from highway flaggers in that they have information on train schedules and can generally communicate with trains by radio. When flaggers are required, the railroad generally sends the road authority a bill for the cost of providing this service.

Do not allow work zone traffic to stop or queue up on a nearby rail-highway grade crossing unless railroad flaggers are present. Without proper protection, vehicles might be trapped on the tracks when a train approaches. (See the MUTCD for more detailed guidance.)

For projects requiring temporary access across a set of railroad tracks, contact the HQ Railroad Liaison early in the design process since a railroad agreement will likely be required.

1350.09 Railroad Grade Crossing Petitions and WUTC Orders

The Washington Utilities and Transportation Commission (WUTC) is authorized by statute (Title 81 RCW) to have regulatory authority over railroad crossings. Any modifications to grade crossings or safety equipment, including grade separations, widening, realignment, and profile, must be approved by the WUTC (WAC 480-62-150). This is accomplished by submitting a formal Petition to the WUTC for a formal Order. Provide Section, Township, and Range; posted speed limit; ADT, percentage of trucks; number of daily school bus trips; and a 20-year projection of the ADT, truck percentage, and school bus trips. The HQ Railroad Liaison can help in the preparation and submittal of this petition. Include a copy of the Petition and WUTC findings and order in the Design Documentation Package.

1350.10 Grade Crossing Improvement Projects

The HQ Highway and Local Programs Office administers the Section 130 Grade Crossing safety improvement program. Project proposals are submitted by local agencies, railroads, and WSDOT. Funding is provided from the Surface Transportation 10% “Safety Set Aside” authorized by the TEA-21.

All public railroad grade crossing safety improvements are eligible for funding. Project types include signing and pavement markings; active warning devices; illumination; crossing surfaces; grade separations (new and reconstructed); sight-distance improvements; geometric improvements to the roadway approaches; and closing and/or consolidating crossings. Section 130 funds are generally available at a 90% federal share and up to 100% for signing, pavement markings, active warning devices, elimination of hazards, and crossing closures.

Most Section 130 projects on state highways are low-cost grade crossing signal upgrades entirely within existing railroad right of way. Work is typically done by the railroad under agreement and usually takes a very short time. Consider Section 130 grade crossing signal upgrade projects, constructed by the railroad or its contractor and not part of a larger state highway project, to be Minor Operational Enhancements funded under Program Q barring extenuating circumstances.

Contact the Railroad Liaison in the HQ Utilities, Railroads, and Agreements Section for more information.

1350.11 Light Rail

Light rail (also known as streetcars) is developing in some urban areas of the state. For the most part, criteria for light rail are very similar to those for freight and passenger rail with the exception of locations where light rail shares a street right of way with motor vehicles. The MUTCD now includes a chapter devoted exclusively to light rail transit and can be consulted as the situation warrants:
mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/HTM/2003/part10/part10-toc.htm

1350.12 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Chapter 1360 Interchanges

1360.01 General
1360.02 References
1360.03 Definitions
1360.04 Interchange Design
1360.05 Ramps
1360.06 Interchange Connections
1360.07 Ramp Terminal Intersections at Crossroads
1360.08 Interchanges on Two-Lane Highways
1360.09 Interchange Plans for Approval
1360.10 Documentation

1360.01 General

The primary purpose of an interchange is to reduce conflicts caused by vehicle crossings and minimize conflicting left-turn movements. Provide interchanges on all Interstate highways and freeways, and at other locations where traffic cannot be controlled efficiently by intersections at grade.

For additional information, see the following chapters:

Chapter	Subject
520	Access control
550	Interchange justification report
560	Limited access
1230	Ramp sections
1240	Turning widths
1250	Superelevation
1310	Intersections
1410	HOV lanes
1420	HOV direct access connections

1360.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Specifications), M 41-10, WSDOT

(2) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

A Policy on Design Standards – Interstate System, AASHTO, 2005

Highway Capacity Manual (Special Report 209), Transportation Research Board

Procedure for Analysis and Design of Weaving Sections: A User's Guide, Jack E. Leisch, October 1985

1360.03 Definitions

Note: For definitions of ***frontage road, design speed, divided multilane, expressway, highway, outer separation, roadway, rural design area, suburban area, traveled way, undivided multilane***, and ***urban design area***, see Chapter 1140; for ***basic number of lanes***, see Chapter 1210; for ***lane***, ***median***, and ***shoulder***, see Chapter 1230; for ***decision sight distance***, ***sight distance***, and ***stopping sight distance***, see Chapter 1260; for ***auxiliary lane***, see Chapter 1270; and for ***intersection at grade***, see Chapter 1310.

collector-distributor road (C-D road) A parallel roadway designed to remove weaving from the main line and reduce the number of main line entrances and exits.

gore The area downstream from the intersection of the shoulders of the main line and exit ramp. Although generally referring to the area between a main line and an exit ramp, the term may also be used to refer to the area between a main line and an entrance ramp.

gore nose At an exit ramp, the point at the end of the gore area where the paved shoulders of the main line and the ramp separate (see Exhibits 1360-11a and 11b) or the beginning of traffic barrier, not including any impact attenuator. Also, the similar point at an entrance ramp.

Interstate System A network of routes selected by the state and the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) under terms of the federal-aid acts as being the most important to the development of a national transportation system. The Interstate System is part of the principal arterial system.

interchange A system of interconnecting roadways, in conjunction with one or more grade separations, providing for the exchange of traffic between two or more intersecting highways or roadways.

painted nose The point where the main line and ramp lanes separate.

physical nose The point, upstream of the gore, with a separation between the roadways of 16 to 22 feet (see Exhibits 1360-11a and 11b).

ramp A short roadway connecting a main lane of a freeway with another facility.

ramp connection The pavement at the end of a ramp that connects it to a main lane of a freeway.

ramp meter A traffic signal at a freeway entrance ramp that allows a measured or regulated amount of traffic to enter the freeway.

ramp terminal An intersection at the end of a ramp.

weaving section A length of highway over which one-way traffic streams cross by merging and diverging maneuvers.

1360.04 Interchange Design

(1) General

All freeway exits and entrances, except HOV direct access connections, are to connect on the right of through traffic. Deviations from this will be considered only for special conditions.

HOV direct access connections may be constructed on the left of through traffic when they are designed in accordance with Chapter 1420.

Provide complete ramp facilities for all directions of travel wherever possible. However, give primary consideration to the basic traffic movement function that the interchange is to fulfill.

Complications are rarely encountered in the design and location of rural interchanges that simply provide a means of exchanging traffic between a limited access freeway and a local crossroad. Carefully consider the economic and operational effects of locating traffic interchanges along a freeway through a community, particularly with respect to local access, to provide convenient local service without reducing the capacity of the major route(s).

Where freeway-to-freeway interchanges are involved, do not provide ramps for local access unless they can be added conveniently and without detriment to efficient traffic flow or reduction of capacity, either ramp or freeway main line. When exchange of traffic between freeways is the basic function, and local access is prohibited by access control restrictions or traffic volume, separate interchanges for local service may be needed.

(2) Interchange Patterns

Basic interchange patterns have been established that can be used under certain general conditions and modified or combined to apply to many more. Consider alternatives in the design of a specific facility; however, the conditions in the area and on the highway involved govern the final design of the interchange.

Selection of the final design is based on a study of projected traffic volumes, site conditions, geometric controls, criteria for intersecting legs and turning roadways, driver expectancy, consistent ramp patterns, continuity, and cost.

The patterns most frequently used for interchange design are those commonly described as directional, semidirectional, cloverleaf, partial cloverleaf, diamond, and single point (urban) interchange (see Exhibit 1360-1).

(a) Directional

A directional interchange is the most effective design for connection of intersecting freeways. The directional pattern has the advantage of reduced travel distance, increased speed of operation, and higher capacity. These designs eliminate weaving and have a further advantage over cloverleaf designs in avoiding the loss of sense of direction drivers experience in traveling a loop. This type of interchange is costly to construct, commonly using a four-level structure.

(b) **Semidirectional**

A semidirectional interchange has ramps that loop around the intersection of the highways. This results in multiple single-level structures and more area than the directional interchange.

(c) **Cloverleaf**

The full cloverleaf interchange has four loop ramps for the left-turning traffic. Outer ramps provide for the right turns. A full cloverleaf is the minimum type interchange for a freeway-to-freeway interchange. Cloverleaf designs often incorporate a C-D road to minimize signing difficulties and remove weaving conflicts from the main roadway.

The principal advantage of this design is the elimination of all left-turn conflicts with one single-level structure. Because all movements are merging movements, it is adaptable to any grade line arrangement.

The cloverleaf has some major disadvantages. The left-turn movement has a circuitous route on the loop ramp, the speeds are low on the loop ramp, and there are weaving conflicts between the loop ramps. The cloverleaf also needs a large area. The weaving and the radius of the loop ramps are a capacity constraint on the left-turn movements.

(d) **Partial Cloverleaf (PARCLO)**

A partial cloverleaf has loop ramps in one, two, or three quadrants that are used to eliminate the major left-turn conflicts. These loops may also serve right turns for interchanges where ramp cannot be built in one or two quadrants. Outer ramps are provided for the remaining turns. Design the grades to provide sight distance between vehicles approaching these ramps.

(e) **Diamond**

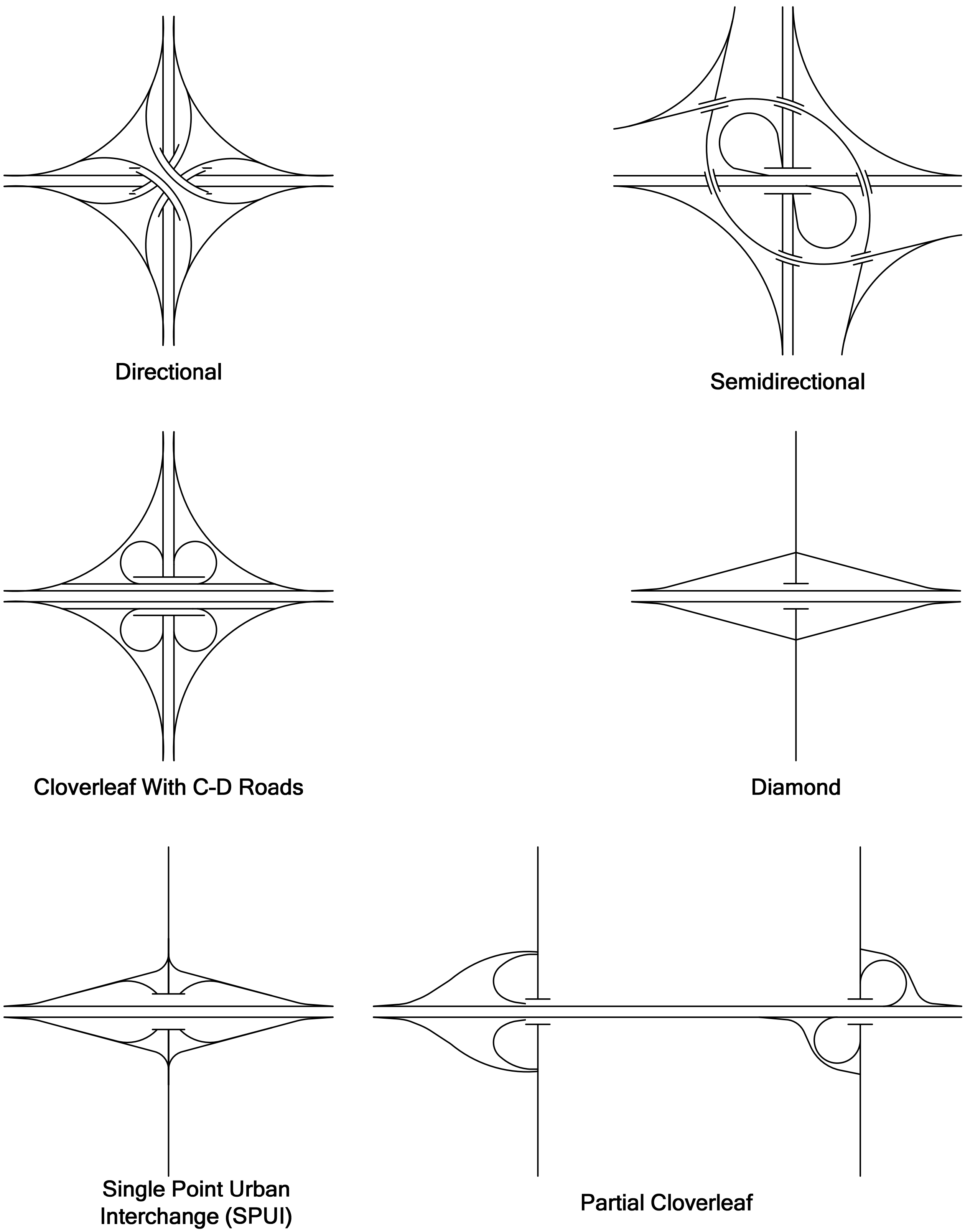
A diamond interchange has four ramps that are essentially parallel to the major arterial. Each ramp provides for one right-turn and one left-turn movement. Because left turns are made at grade across conflicting traffic on the crossroad, intersection sight distance is a primary consideration.

The diamond design is the most generally applicable and serviceable interchange configuration and usually has a smaller footprint than any other type. Consider this design first unless another design is clearly dictated by traffic, topography, or special conditions.

(f) **Single Point Urban (SPUI)**

A single point urban interchange is a modified diamond with all of its ramp terminals on the crossroad combined into one signalized at-grade intersection. This single intersection accommodates all interchange and through movements.

A single point urban interchange can improve the traffic operation on the crossroad with less right of way than a typical diamond interchange, but a larger structure.



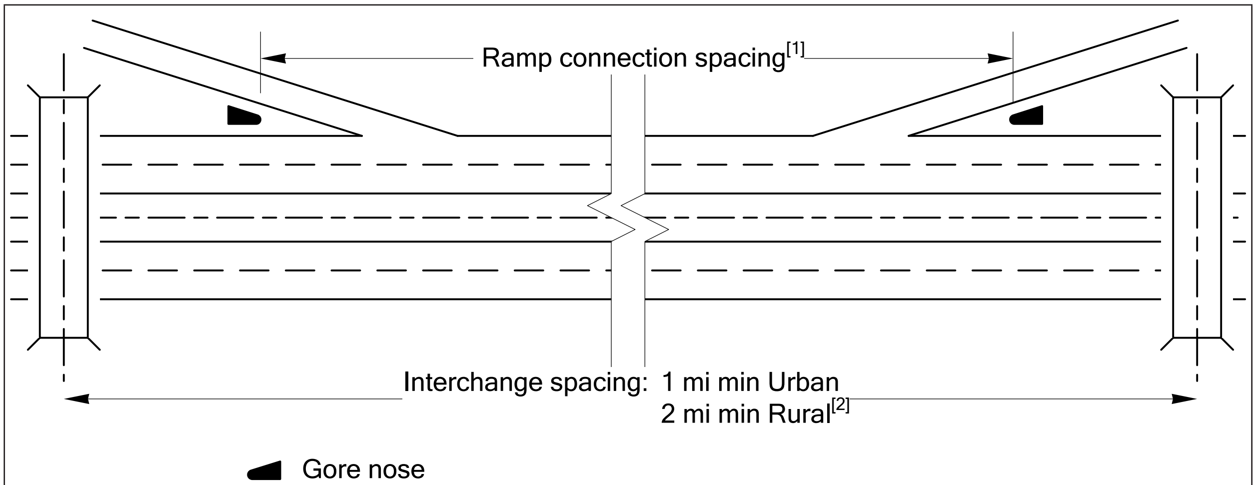
Basic Interchange Patterns
Exhibit 1360-1

(3) Spacing

To avoid excessive interruption of main line traffic, consider each proposed facility in conjunction with adjacent interchanges, intersections, and other points of access along the route as a whole.

The minimum spacing between adjacent interchanges is 1 mile in urban areas, 3 miles on the Interstate in rural areas, and 2 miles on non-Interstate in rural areas (see Exhibit 1360-2). In urban areas, spacing less than 1 mile may be used with C-D roads or grade-separated (braided) ramps. Interchange spacing is measured along the freeway centerline between the centerlines of the crossroads.

The spacing between interchanges may also be dependent on the spacing between ramp connections. The minimum spacing between the gore noses of adjacent ramps is given in Exhibit 1360-3.



Notes:

[1] As a minimum, provide length for weaving and signing, but not less than given in Exhibit 1360-3.

[2] 3 miles on the Interstate System.

Interchange Spacing
Exhibit 1360-2

Consider either frontage roads or C-D roads to facilitate the operation of near-capacity volumes between closely spaced interchanges or ramp terminals. C-D roads may be needed where cloverleaf loop ramps are involved or where a series of interchange ramps have overlapping speed change lanes. Base the distance between successive ramp terminals on capacity. Check the intervening sections by weaving analyses to determine whether capacity, sight distance, and effective signing can be provided without the use of auxiliary lanes or C-D roads.

Provide justifications for existing interchanges with less-than-desirable spacing or ramp connection spacing to remain in place.

(4) Route Continuity

Route continuity is providing the driver of a through route a path on which lane changes are minimized and other traffic operations occur to the right.

In maintaining route continuity, interchange configuration may not favor the heavy traffic movement, but rather the through route. In this case, design the heavy traffic movements with multilane ramps, flat curves, and reasonably direct alignment.

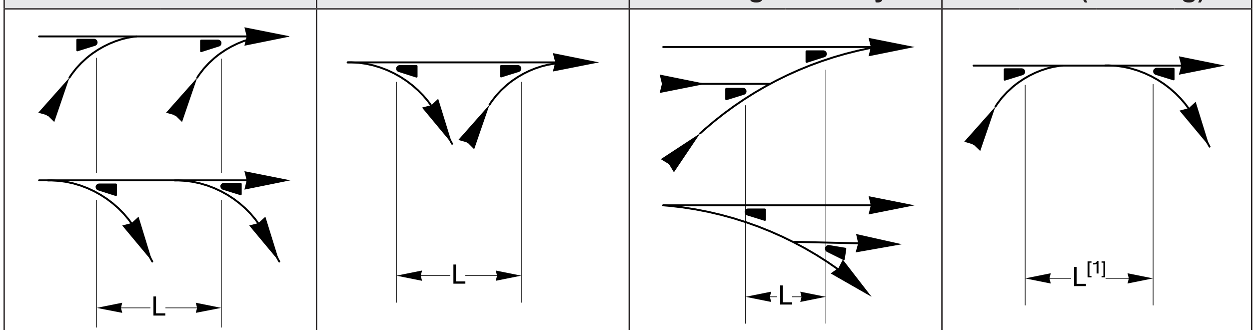
(5) Drainage

Avoid interchanges located in proximity to natural drainage courses. These locations often result in complex and unnecessarily costly hydraulic structures.

The open areas within an interchange can be used for stormwater detention facilities.

(6) Uniformity of Exit Pattern

While interchanges are of necessity custom-designed to fit specific conditions, it is desirable that the pattern of exits along a freeway have some degree of uniformity. From the standpoint of driver expectancy, it is desirable that each interchange have only one point of exit, located in advance of the crossroad.



On-On or Off-Off		**Off-On**		**Turning Roadways**		**On-Off (Weaving)**			
Freeway	C-D Road	Freeway	C-D Road	System[2] Interchange	Service[3] Interchange	A	B	C	D
1000	800	500	400	800	600	2000	1600	1600	1000

Gore nose

L = Minimum distance in feet from gore nose to gore nose.
A Between two interchanges connected to a freeway: a system interchange[2] and a service interchange.[3]
B Between two interchanges connected to a C-D road: a system interchange[2] and a service interchange.[3]
C Between two interchanges connected to a freeway: both service interchanges.[3]
D Between two interchanges connected to a C-D road: both service interchanges.[3]

Notes:

These values are based on operational experience, need for flexibility, and signing. Check them in accordance with Exhibit 1360-12 and the procedures outlined in the *Highway Capacity Manual* and use the larger value.

[1] With justification, these values may be reduced for cloverleaf ramps.
[2] A system interchange is a freeway-to-freeway interchange.
[3] A service interchange is a freeway-to-local road interchange.

Minimum Ramp Connection Spacing
Exhibit 1360-3

1360.05 Ramps

(1) Ramp Design Speed

The design speed for a ramp is based on the design speed for the freeway main line.

It is desirable that the ramp design speed at the connection to the freeway be equal to the free-flow speed of the freeway. Meet or exceed the upper range values from Exhibit 1360-4 for the design speed at the ramp connection to the freeway. Transition the ramp design speed to provide a smooth acceleration or deceleration between the speeds at the ends of the ramp. However, do not reduce the ramp design speed below the lower-range speed of 25 mph. For loop ramps, use a design speed as high as feasible, but not lower than 25 mph.

These design speed guidelines do not apply to the ramp in the area of the ramp terminal at-grade intersection. In the area of the intersection, use a design speed of 15 mph for turning traffic or 0 mph for a stop condition. Use the allowed skew at the ramp terminal at-grade intersection to minimize ramp curvature.

For freeway-to-freeway ramps and C-D roads, the design speed at the connections to both freeways is the upper range values from Exhibit 1360-4; however, with justification, the midrange values from Exhibit 1360-4 may be used for the remainder of the ramp. When the design speed for the two freeways is different, use the higher design speed.

Existing ramps meet design speed criteria if acceleration or deceleration criteria are met (see Exhibit 1360-9 or 1360-10) and superelevation meets the criteria in Chapter 1250.

Main Line Design Speed (mph)		50	55	60	65	70	80
Ramp Design Speed (mph)	Upper Range	45	50	50	55	60	70
	Midrange	30	40	45	45	50	60
	Lower Range	25	25	25	25	25	25

Ramp Design Speed
Exhibit 1360-4

(2) Sight Distance

Design ramps in accordance with the provisions in Chapter 1260 for stopping sight distances.

(3) Grade

The maximum grade for ramps for various design speeds is given in Exhibit 1360-5.

Ramp Design Speed (mph)		25–30	35–40	45 and above
Ramp Grade (%)	Desirable	5	4	3
	Maximum*	7	6	5
* On one-way ramps, downgrades may be 2% greater.				

Maximum Ramp Grade
Exhibit 1360-5

(4) Cross Section

Provide the minimum ramp widths given in Exhibit 1360-6. Ramp traveled ways may need additional width to these minimums as one-way turning roadways. (See Chapters 1230 and 1240 for additional information and roadway sections.)

Cross slope and superelevation criteria for ramp traveled ways and shoulders are as given in Chapters 1230 and 1240 for roadways. At ramp terminals, the intersection lane and shoulder width design guidance shown in Chapter 1310 may be used.

Whenever feasible, make the ramp cross slope at the ramp beginning or ending station equal to the cross slope of the through lane pavement. Where space is limited and superelevation runoff is long, or when parallel connections are used, the superelevation transition may be ended beyond (for on-ramps) or begun in advance of (for off-ramps) the ramp beginning or ending station, provided that the algebraic difference in cross slope at the edge of the through lane and the cross slope of the ramp does not exceed 4%. In such cases, provide smooth transitions for the edge of traveled way.

Number of Lanes			1	2
Ramp Width (ft)	Traveled Way[1]		15[2]	25[3]
	Shoulders	Right	8	8
		Left	2	4
	Medians[4]		6	8

Notes:

[1] For turning roadway widths, see Chapter 1240, and for additional width when an HOV lane is present, see Chapter 1410.

[2] May be reduced to 12 ft on tangents.

[3] Add 12 ft for each additional lane.

[4] The minimum median width is not less than that for traffic control devices and their respective clearances.

Ramp Widths
Exhibit 1360-6

Ramp shoulders may be used by large trucks for offtracking and by smaller vehicles cutting to the inside of curves. To accommodate this increased use, pave shoulders full depth.

(5) Ramp Lane Increases

When off-ramp traffic and left-turn movement volumes at the ramp terminal at-grade intersection cause excessive queue length, it may be desirable to add lanes to the ramp to reduce the queue length caused by congestion and turning conflicts. Make provision for the addition of ramp lanes whenever ramp exit or entrance volumes are expected, after the design year, to result in an undesirable level of service (LOS). (See Chapter 1210 for width transition design.)

(6) Ramp Meters

Ramp meters are used to allow a measured or regulated amount of traffic to enter the freeway. When operating in the "measured" mode, they release traffic at a measured rate to keep downstream demand below capacity and improve system travel times. In the "regulated" mode, they break up platoons of vehicles that occur naturally or result from nearby traffic signals. Even when operating at near capacity, a freeway main line can accommodate merging vehicles one or two at a time, while groups of vehicles will cause main line flow to break down.

The location of the ramp meter is a balance between the storage and acceleration criteria. Locate the ramp meter to maximize the available storage and so that the acceleration lane length, from a stop to the freeway main line design speed, is available from the stop bar to the merging point. With justification, the average main line running speed during the hours of meter operation may be used for the highway design speed to determine the minimum acceleration lane length from the ramp meter. (See 1360.06(4) for information on the design of on-connection acceleration lanes and Chapter 1050 for additional information on the design of ramp meters.)

Driver compliance with the signal is required for the ramp meter to have the desired results. Consider enforcement areas with metered ramps.

Consider HOV bypass lanes with ramp meters. (See Chapter 1410 for design data for ramp meter bypass lanes.)

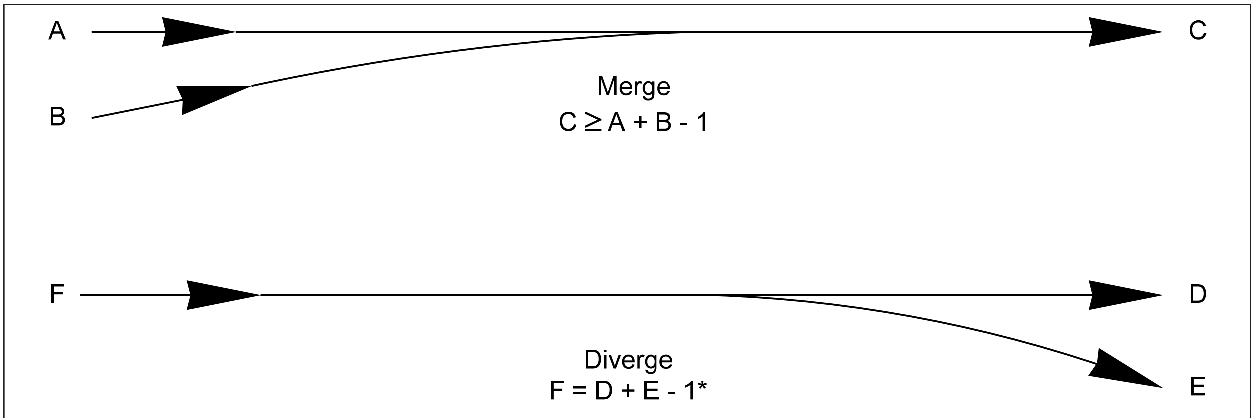
1360.06 Interchange Connections

To the extent practicable, provide uniform geometric design and uniform signing for exits and entrances in the design of a continuous freeway. Do not design an exit ramp as an extension of a main line tangent at the beginning of a main line horizontal curve.

Provide spacing between interchange connections as given in Exhibit 1360-3.

Avoid on-connections on the inside of a main line curve, particularly when the ramp approach angle is accentuated by the main line curve, the ramp approach results in areverse curve to connect to the main line, or the elevation difference will cause the cross slope to be steep at the nose.

Keep the use of mountable curb at interchange connections to a minimum. Provide justification when curb is used adjacent to traffic with a design speed of 40 mph or higher.



* Number of lanes (F) may increase by one lane, when the lane is an auxiliary lane between closely spaced entrance and exit ramps.

Lane Balance
Exhibit 1360-7a

(1) Lane Balance

Design interchanges to the following principles of lane balance:

(a) **Entrances**

At entrances, make the number of lanes beyond the merging of two traffic streams not less than the sum of all the lanes on the merging roadways less one (see Exhibit 1360-7a).

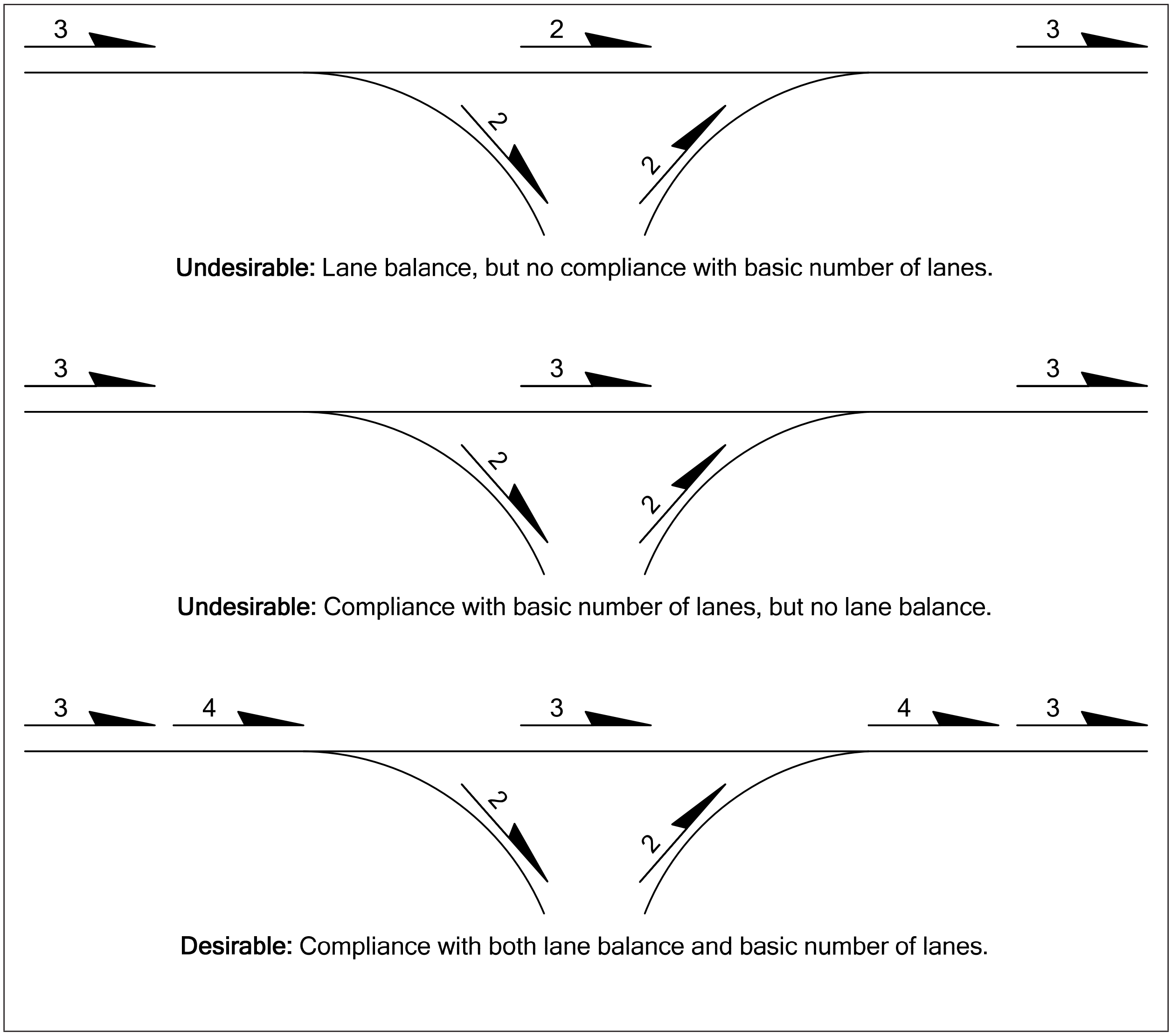
(b) **Exits**

At exits, make the number of approach lanes equal the number of highway lanes beyond the exit plus the number of exit lanes less one (see Exhibit 1360-7a). Exceptions to this are:

- At a cloverleaf.
- At closely spaced interchanges with a continuous auxiliary lane between the entrance and exit.

In these cases, the auxiliary lane may be dropped at a single-lane, one-lane reduction off-connection (Exhibit 1360-14c), with the number of approach lanes being equal to the sum of the highway lanes beyond the exit and the number of exit lanes. Closely spaced interchanges have a distance of less than 2100 feet between the end of the acceleration lane and the beginning of the deceleration lane.

Maintain the basic number of lanes, as described in Chapter 1210, through interchanges. When a two-lane exit or entrance is used, maintain lane balance with an auxiliary lane (see Exhibit 1360-7b). The exception to this is when the basic number of lanes is changed at an interchange.



Lane Balance
Exhibit 1360-7b

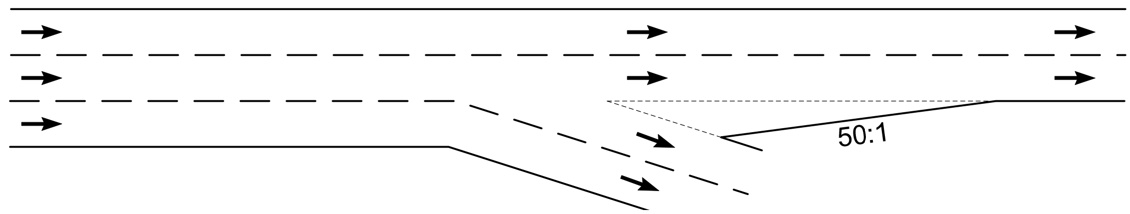
(2) Main Line Lane Reduction

The reduction of a basic lane or an auxiliary lane may be made at a two-lane exit or may be made between interchanges. When a two-lane exit is used, provide a recovery area with a normal acceleration taper. When a lane is dropped between interchanges, drop it 1,500 to 3,000 feet from the end of the acceleration taper of the previous interchange. This allows for signing but will not be so far that the driver becomes accustomed to the number of lanes and will be surprised by the reduction (see Exhibit 1360-8).

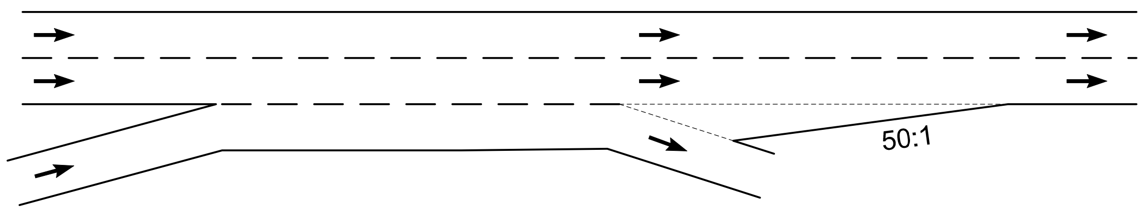
Reduce the traveled way width of the freeway by only one lane at a time.

(3) Sight Distance

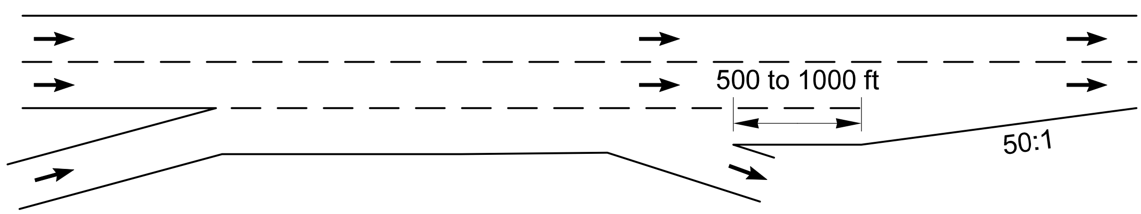
Locate off-connections and on-connections on the main line to provide decision sight distance for a speed/path/direction change as described in Chapter 1260.



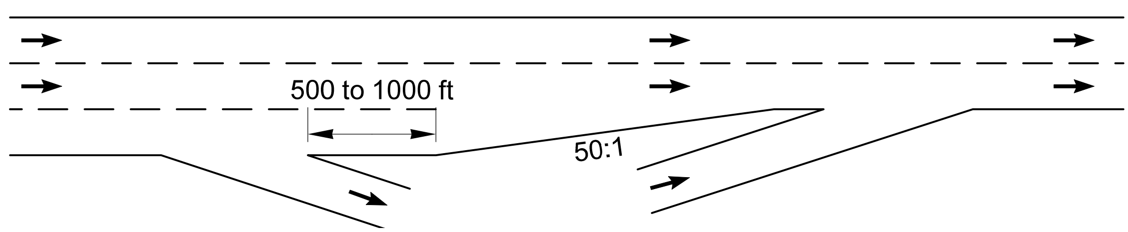
Lane dropped at two-lane off-connection



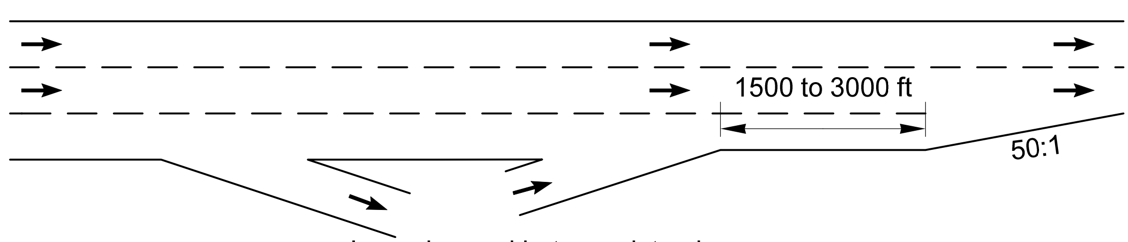
Lane between closely spaced ramps
dropped at single-lane off-connection
(lane imbalance for weaving)



Lane between closely spaced ramps
dropped at single-lane off-connection
(lane balance for weaving)



Lane dropped within intersection



Lane dropped between interchanges

Main Line Lane Reduction Alternatives
Exhibit 1360-8

(4) On-Connections

On-connections are the paved areas at the end of on-ramps that connect them to the main lane of a freeway. They have two parts: an acceleration lane and a taper. The acceleration lane allows entering traffic to accelerate to the freeway speed and evaluate gaps in the freeway traffic. The taper is for the entering vehicle to maneuver into the through lane.

On-connections are either tapered or parallel. The tapered on-connection provides direct entry at a flat angle, reducing the steering control needed. The parallel on-connection adds a lane adjacent to the through lane for acceleration with a taper at the end. Vehicles merge with the through traffic with a reverse curve maneuver similar to a lane change. While less steering control is needed for the taper, the parallel is narrower at the end of the ramp and has a shorter taper at the end of the acceleration lane.

(a) **Acceleration Lane**

Provide the minimum acceleration lane length, given in Exhibit 1360-9, for each ramp design speed on all on-ramps. When the average grade of the acceleration lane is 3% or greater, multiply the distance from the Minimum Acceleration Lane Length table by the factor from the Adjustment Factor for Grades table.

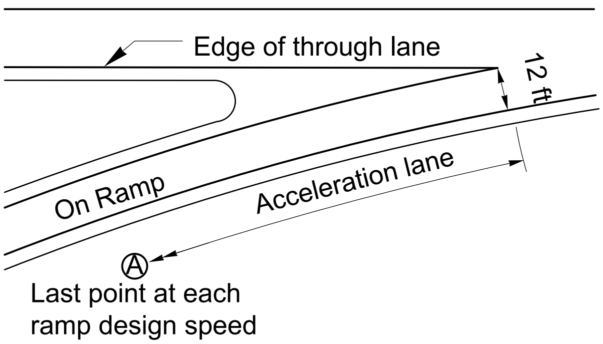
For existing ramps that do not have significant collisions in the area of the connection with the freeway, the freeway posted speed may be used to calculate the acceleration lane length for Preservation projects. If corrective action is indicated, use the freeway design speed to determine the length of the acceleration lane.

Document as a design exception the existing ramps that will remain in place and that have an acceleration lane length less than the design speed. Also, document in the Project File the ramp location, the acceleration length available, and the accident analysis that shows there are not significant accidents in the area of the connection.

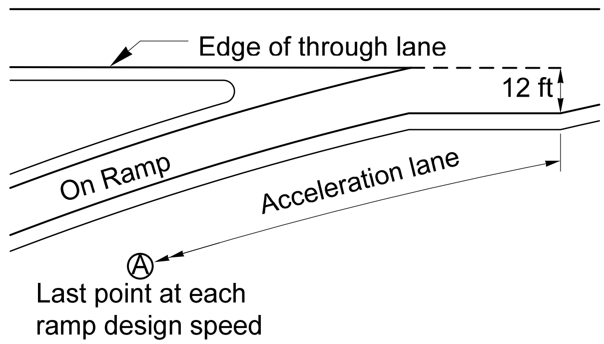
The acceleration lane is measured from the last point designed at each ramp design speed (usually the PT of the last curve for each design speed) to the last point with a ramp width of 12 feet. Curves designed at higher design speeds may be included as part of the acceleration lane length.

(b) **Gap Acceptance**

For parallel on-connections, provide the minimum gap acceptance length (Lg) to allow entering motorists to evaluate gaps in the freeway traffic and position their vehicles to use the gap. The length is measured beginning at the point that the left edge of traveled way for the ramp intersects the right edge of traveled way of the main line to the ending of the acceleration lane (see Exhibits 1360-13b and 13c). The gap acceptance length and the acceleration length overlap, with the ending point controlled by the longer of the two.



Tapered On-Connection



Parallel On-Connection

Highway Design Speed (mph)	Ramp Design Speed (mph)										
	0	**15**	**20**	**25**	**30**	**35**	**40**	**45**	**50**	**60**	**70**
30	180	140									
35	280	220	160								
40	360	300	270	210	120						
45	560	490	440	380	280	160					
50	720	660	610	550	450	350	130				
55	960	900	810	780	670	550	320	150			
60	1200	1140	1100	1020	910	800	550	420	180		
65	1410	1350	1310	1220	1120	1000	770	600	370		
70	1620	1560	1520	1420	1350	1230	1000	820	580	210	
80	2000	1950	1890	1830	1730	1610	1380	1200	970	590	210

Minimum Acceleration Lane Length (ft)

Highway Design Speed (mph)	Grade	Upgrade				Downgrade
		Ramp Design Speed				All Ramp Design Speeds
		20	**30**	**40**	**50**	
40	3% to less than 5%	1.3	1.3			0.70
45		1.3	1.35			0.675
50		1.3	1.4	1.4		0.65
55		1.35	1.45	1.45		0.625
60		1.4	1.5	1.5	1.6	0.60
70		1.5	1.6	1.7	1.8	0.60
40	5% or more	1.5	1.5			0.60
45		1.5	1.6			0.575
50		1.5	1.7	1.9		0.55
55		1.6	1.8	2.05		0.525
60		1.7	1.9	2.2	2.5	0.50
70		2.0	2.2	2.6	3.0	0.50

Adjustment Factors for Grades Greater Than 3%

Acceleration Lane Length

Exhibit 1360-9

(c) **Single-Lane On-Connections**

Single-lane on-connections may be either tapered or parallel. The tapered is desirable; however, the parallel may be used with justification. Design single-lane tapered on-connections as shown in Exhibit 1360-13a and single-lane parallel on-connections as shown in Exhibit 1360-13b.

(d) **Two-Lane On-Connections**

For two-lane on-connections, the parallel is desirable. Design two-lane parallel on-connections as shown in Exhibit 1360-13c. A capacity analysis will normally be the basis for determining whether a freeway lane or an auxiliary lane is to be provided.

When justification is documented, a two-lane tapered on-connection may be used. Design two-lane tapered on-connections in accordance with Exhibit 1360-13d.

(5) Off-Connections

Off-connections are the paved areas at the beginning of an off-ramp, connecting it to a main lane of a freeway. They have two parts: a taper for maneuvering out of the through traffic and a deceleration lane to slow to the speed of the first curve on the ramp. Deceleration is not assumed to take place in the taper.

Off-connections are either tapered or parallel. The tapered is desirable because it fits the normal path for most drivers. When a parallel connection is used, drivers tend to drive directly for the ramp and not use the parallel lane. However, when a ramp is on the outside of a curve, the parallel off-connection is desirable. An advantage of the parallel connection is that it is narrower at the beginning of the ramp.

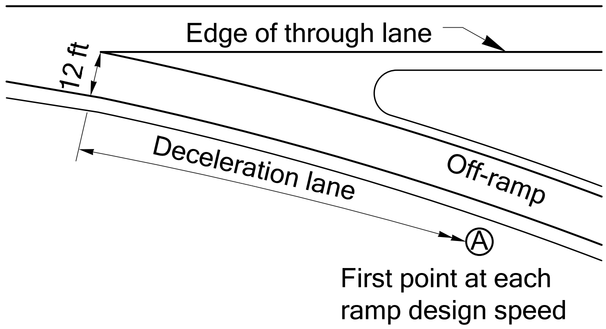
(a) **Deceleration Lane**

Provide the minimum deceleration lane length given in Exhibit 1360-10 for each design speed for all off-ramps. Also, provide deceleration lane length to the end of the anticipated queue at the ramp terminal. When the average grade of the deceleration lane is 3% or greater, multiply the distance from the Minimum Deceleration Lane Length table by the factor from the Adjustment Factor for Grades table.

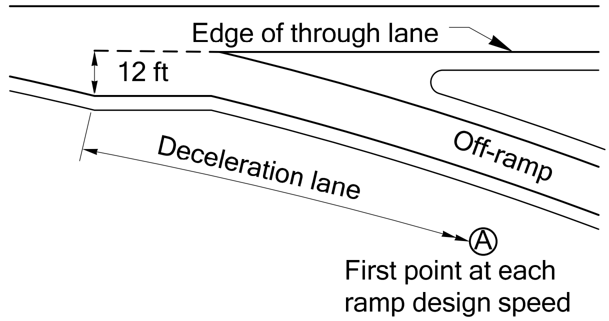
For existing ramps that do not have significant accidents in the area of the connection with the freeway, the freeway posted speed may be used to calculate the deceleration lane length for Preservation projects. If corrective action is indicated, use the freeway design speed to determine the length of the deceleration lane.

Document as a design exception the existing ramps that will remain in place and that have a deceleration lane length less than the design speed. Also, document in the Project File the ramp location, the deceleration length available, and the accident analysis that shows there are not significant accidents in the area of the connection.

The deceleration lane is measured from the point where the taper reaches a width of 12 feet to the first point designed at each ramp design speed (usually the PC of the first curve for each design speed). Curves designed at higher design speeds may be included as part of the deceleration lane length.



Tapered Off-Connection



Parallel Off-Connection

Highway Design Speed (mph)	Ramp Design Speed (mph)										
	0	**15**	**20**	**25**	**30**	**35**	**40**	**45**	**50**	**60**	**70**
30	235	200	170	140							
35	280	250	210	185	150						
40	320	295	265	235	185	155					
45	385	350	325	295	250	220	155				
50	435	405	385	355	315	285	225	175			
55	480	455	440	410	380	350	285	235	180		
60	530	500	480	460	430	405	350	300	240		
65	570	540	520	500	470	440	390	340	280	185	
70	615	590	570	550	520	490	440	390	340	240	
80	735	710	690	670	640	610	555	510	465	360	265

Minimum Deceleration Lane Length (ft)

Grade	Upgrade	Downgrade
3% to less than 5%	0.9	1.2
5% or more	0.8	1.35

Adjustment Factors for Grades Greater Than 3%

Deceleration Lane Length

Exhibit 1360-10

(b) **Gores**

Gores (see Exhibits 1360-11a and 11b) are decision points. Design them to be clearly seen and understood by approaching drivers. In a series of interchanges along a freeway, it is desirable that the gores be uniform in size, shape, and appearance.

The paved area between the physical nose and the gore nose is the reserve area. It is reserved for the installation of an impact attenuator. The minimum length of the reserve area is controlled by the design speed of the main line (see Exhibits 1360-11a and 11b).

In addition to striping, raised pavement marker rumble strips may be placed for additional warning and delineation at gores. (See the *Standard Plans* for striping and rumble strip details.)

Keep the unpaved area beyond the gore nose as free of obstructions as possible to provide a clear recovery area. Grade this unpaved area as nearly level with the roadways as possible. Avoid placing obstructions such as heavy sign supports, luminaire poles, and structure supports in the gore area.

When an obstruction is placed in a gore area, provide an impact attenuator (see Chapter 1620) and barrier (see Chapter 1610). Place the beginning of the attenuator as far back in the reserve area as possible, desirably after the gore nose.

(c) **Single-Lane Off-Connections**

For single-lane off-connections, the tapered is desirable. Use the design shown in Exhibit 1360-14a for tapered single-lane off-connections. When justification is documented, a parallel single-lane off-connection, as shown in Exhibit 1360-14b, may be used.

(d) **Single-Lane Off-Connection With One Lane Reduction**

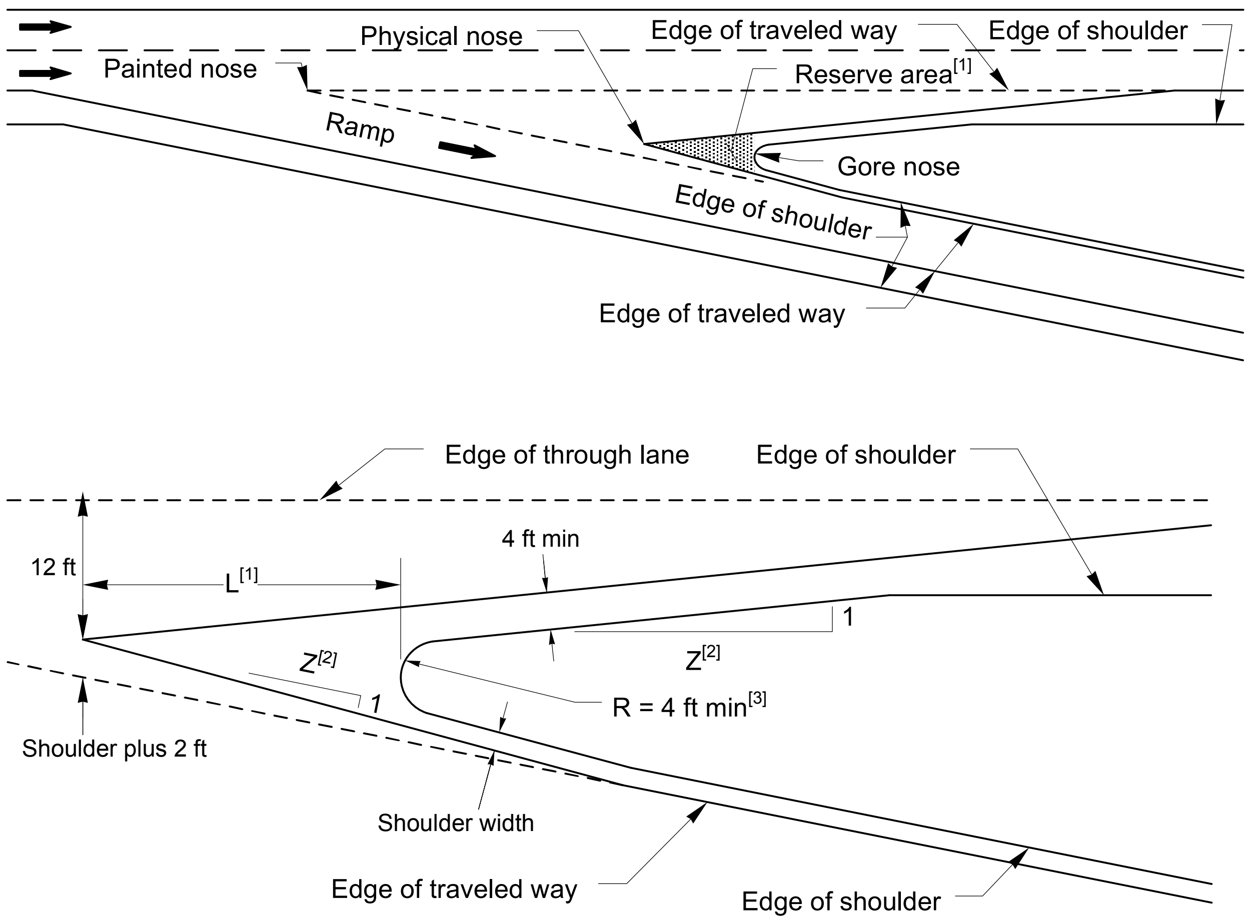
The single-lane off-connection with one lane reduction, shown in Exhibit 1360-14c, is used when the conditions from lane balance for a single-lane exit, one-lane reduction, are met.

(e) **Tapered Two-Lane Off-Connection**

The tapered two-lane off-connection design, shown in Exhibit 1360-14d, is desirable where the number of freeway lanes is reduced or where high-volume traffic operations will be improved by the provision of a parallel auxiliary lane and the number of freeway lanes is unchanged.

(f) **Parallel Two-Lane Off-Connection**

The parallel two-lane off-connection, shown in Exhibit 1360-14e, allows less operational flexibility than the taper, requiring more lane changes. Provide justification for use of a parallel two-lane off-connection.



Single-Lane Off-Connections: No Lane Reduction

Notes:

[1] The reserve area length (L) is not less than:

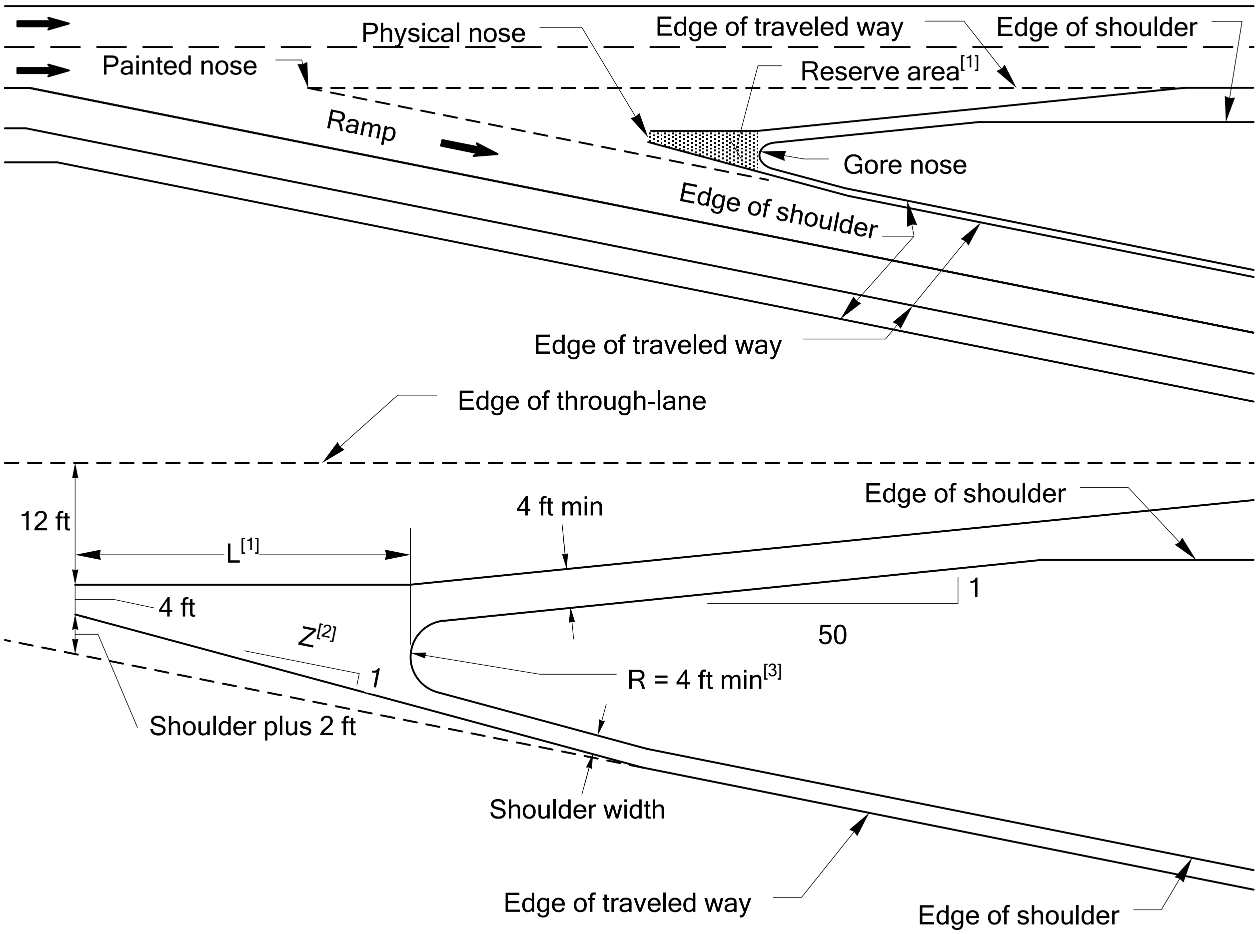
Main Line Design Speed (mph)	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	80
L (ft)	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	70

[2] $Z = \frac{\text{Design Speed}}{2}$, design speed is for the main line.

[3] Radius may be reduced, when protected by an impact attenuator.

Gore Area Characteristics

Exhibit 1360-11a



Single-Lane, One-Lane Reduction Off-Connections and All Two-Lane Off-Connections

Notes:

[1] The reserve area length (L) is not less than:

Main Line Design Speed (mph)	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	80
L (ft)	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	70

[2] $Z = \frac{\text{Design Speed}}{2}$, design speed is for the main line.

[3] Radius may be reduced, when protected by an impact attenuator.

Gore Area Characteristics

Exhibit 1360-11b

(6) Collector-Distributor (C-D) Roads

A C-D road can be within a single interchange, through two closely spaced interchanges, or continuous through several interchanges. Design C-D roads that connect three or more interchanges to be two lanes wide. Other C-D roads may be one or two lanes in width, depending on capacity. Consider intermediate connections to the main line for long C-D roads.

(a) Exhibit 1360-15a shows the designs for collector-distributor outer separations. Use Design A, with concrete barrier, when adjacent traffic in either roadway is expected to exceed 40 mph. Design B, with mountable curb, may be used when adjacent posted speed does not exceed 40 mph.

(b) The details shown in Exhibit 1360-15b apply to single-lane C-D road off-connections. Design a two-lane C-D road off-connection, with the reduction of a freeway lane or an auxiliary lane, as a normal two-lane off-connection in accordance with 1360.06(5).

(c) Design C-D road on-connections in accordance with Exhibit 1360-15c.

(7) Loop Ramp Connections

Loop ramp connections at cloverleaf interchanges are distinguished from other ramp connections by a low-speed ramp on-connection, followed closely by an off-connection for another low-speed ramp. The loop ramp connection design is shown in Exhibit 1360-16. The minimum distance between the ramp connections is dependent on a weaving analysis. When the connections are spaced far enough apart that weaving is not a consideration, design the on-connection in accordance with 1360.06(4) and the off-connection in accordance with 1360.06(5).

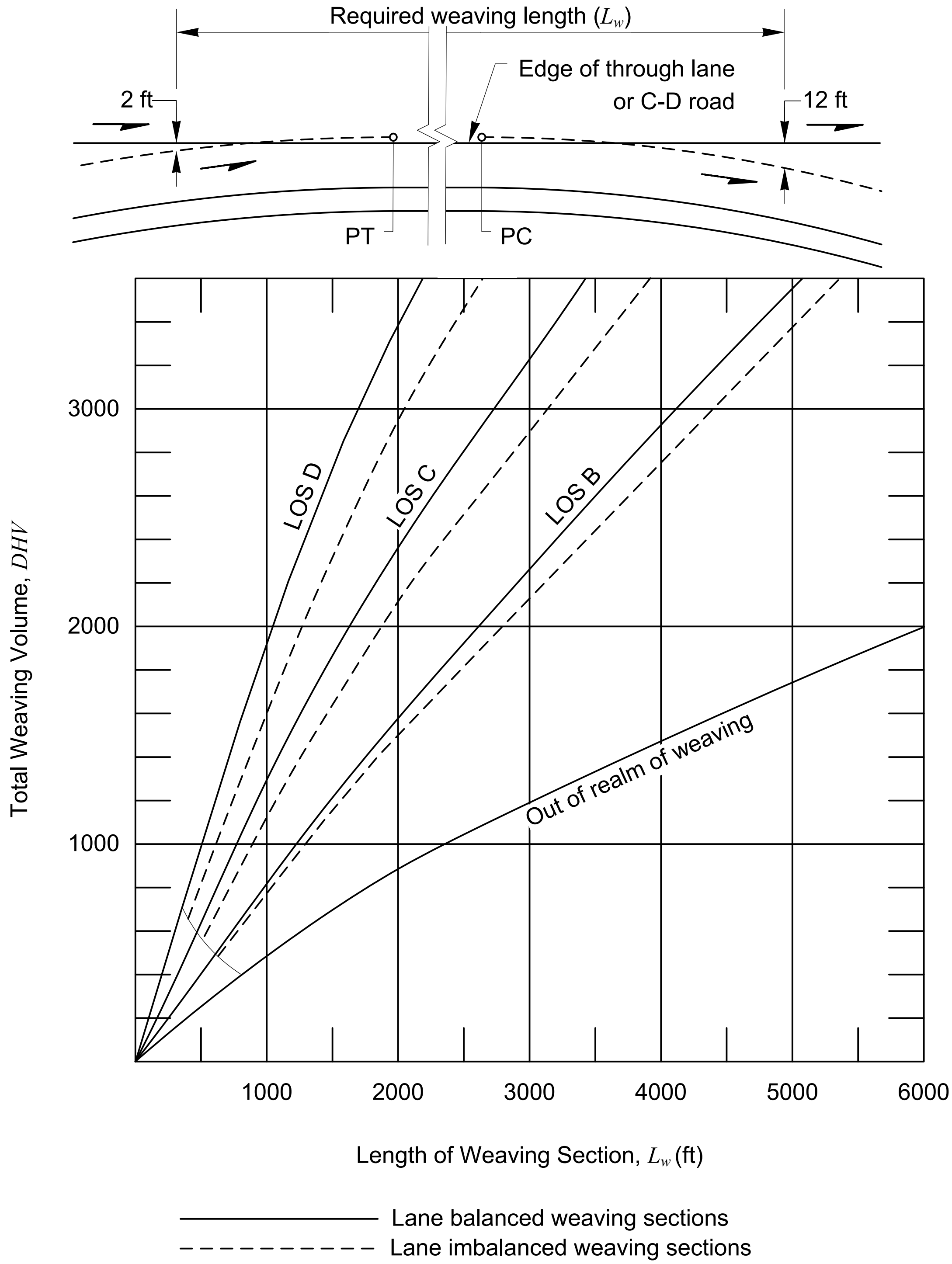
(8) Weaving Sections

Weaving sections may occur within an interchange, between closely spaced interchanges, or on segments of overlapping routes. Exhibit 1360-12 gives the length of the weaving section for preliminary design. The total weaving traffic is the sum of the traffic entering from the ramp to the main line and the traffic leaving the main line to the exit ramp in equivalent passenger cars. For trucks, a passenger car equivalent of two may be estimated. Use the *Highway Capacity Manual* for the final design of weaving sections.

Because weaving sections cause considerable turbulence, interchange designs that eliminate weaving or remove it from the main roadway are desirable. Use C-D roads for weaving between closely spaced ramps when adjacent to high-speed highways. C-D roads are not needed for weaving on low-speed roads.

1360.07 Ramp Terminal Intersections at Crossroads

Design ramp terminal intersections at grade with crossroads as intersections at grade (see Chapters 1310 and 1320). Whenever possible, design ramp terminals to discourage wrong-way movements. Locate ramp terminal intersections at grade with crossroads to provide signal progression if the intersection becomes signalized in the future. Provide intersection sight distance as described in Chapter 1310 or 1320.



Note:
To determine whether or not lane balance for weaving exists, see Exhibit 1360-8.

Length of Weaving Sections
Exhibit 1360-12

1360.08 Interchanges on Two-Lane Highways

Occasionally, the first stage of a conventional interchange will be built with only one direction of the main roadway and operated as a two-lane two-way roadway until the ultimate roadway is constructed.

The design of interchanges on two-lane two-way highways may vary considerably from traditional concepts due to the following conditions:

- The potential for cross-centerline collisions due to merge conflicts or motorist confusion.
- The potential for wrong-way or U-turn movements.
- Future construction considerations.
- Traffic type and volume.
- The proximity to multilane highway sections that might influence a driver's impression that these roads are also multilane.

Provide the deceleration taper for all interchange exit ramps on two-lane highways. Design the entering connection with either the normal acceleration taper or a "button hook" configuration with a stop condition before entering the main line. Consider the following items:

- Design the stop condition connection in accordance with a tee (T) intersection as shown in Chapter 1310. Use this type of connection when an acceleration lane is not possible. Provide decision sight distance as described in Chapter 1260.
- Since designs may vary from project to project, analyze each project for the most efficient signing placement, such as one-way, two-way, no passing, do not enter, directional arrows, guideposts, and traffic buttons.
- Prohibit passing through the interchange area on two-lane highways by means of signing, pavement marking, or a combination of both. The desirable treatment is a 4-foot median island, highlighted with raised pavement markers and diagonal stripes. When using a 4-foot median system, extend the island 500 feet beyond any merging ramp traffic acceleration taper. The width for the median can be provided by reducing each shoulder 2 feet through the interchange (see Exhibit 1360-17).
- Include signing and pavement markings to inform both the entering and through motorists of the two-lane two-way characteristic of the main line.
- Use as much of the ultimate roadway as possible. Where this is not possible, leave the area for future lanes and roadway ungraded.
- Design and construct temporary ramps as if they were permanent unless second-stage construction is planned to rapidly follow the first stage. Design the connection to meet the needs of the traffic.

1360.09 Interchange Plans for Approval

Exhibit 1360-18 is a sample showing the general format and data for interchange design plans.

Compass directions (W-S Ramp) or crossroad names (E-C Street) may be used for ramp designations.

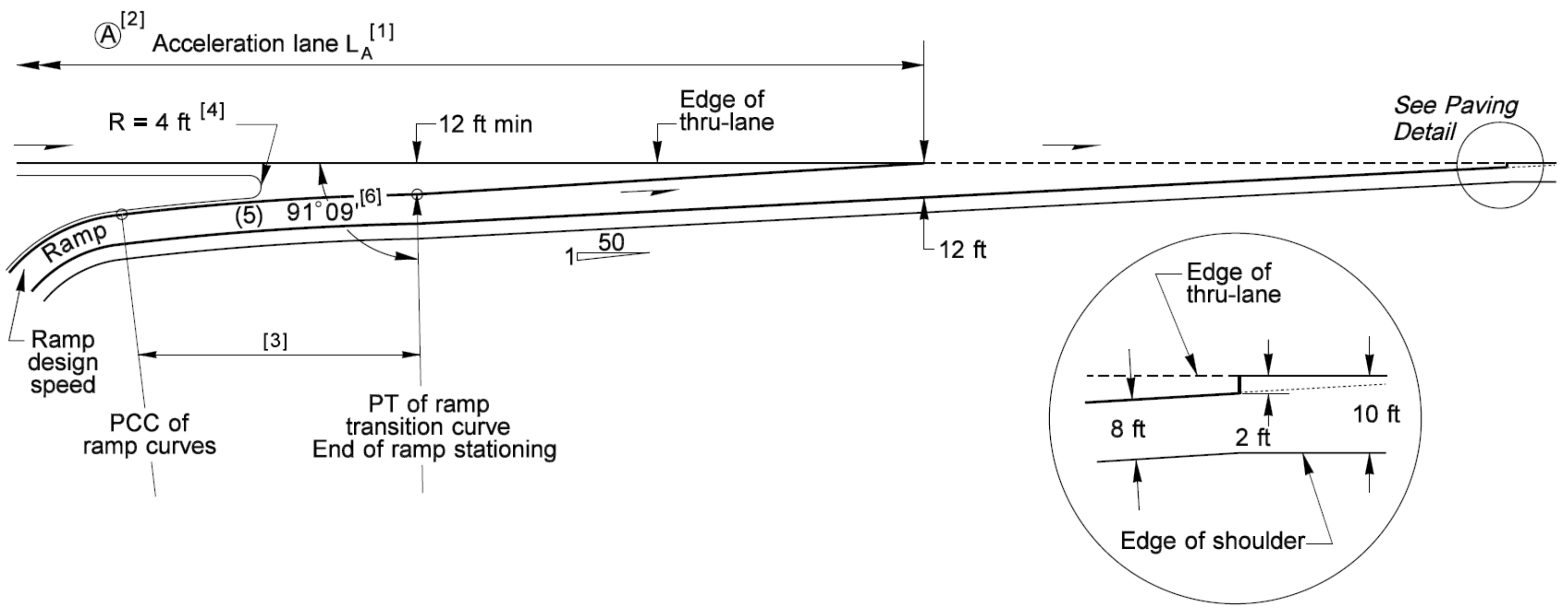
Include the following, as applicable:

- Classes of highway and design speeds for main line and crossroads (see Chapter 1140).
- Curve data on main line, ramps, and crossroads.
- Numbers of lanes and widths of lanes and shoulders on main line, crossroads, and ramps.
- Superelevation diagrams for the main line, the crossroad, and all ramps; these may be submitted on separate sheets.
- Channelization (see Chapter 1310).
- Stationing of ramp connections and channelization.
- Proposed right of way and access control treatment (see Chapters 510, 520, and 530).
- Delineation of all crossroads, existing and realigned (see Chapter 1310).
- Traffic data to justify the proposed design; include all movements.
- For HOV direct access connections on the left, include the statement that the connection will be used solely by HOVs or will be closed.

Prepare a preliminary contour grading plan for each completed interchange. Show the desired contours of the completed interchange, including details of basic land formation, slopes, graded areas, or other special features. Coordinate the contour grading with the drainage design and the roadside development plan.

1360.10 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/ProjectDev/



Paving Detail

Notes:

[1] For acceleration lane length L_A, see Exhibit 1360-9.

[2] Point Ⓐ is the point controlling the ramp design speed.

[3] A transition curve with a minimum radius of 3000 ft is desirable. The desirable length is 300 ft. When the main line is on a curve to the left, the transition may vary from a 3000-ft radius to tangent to the main line.

[4] Radius may be reduced when concrete barrier is placed between the ramp and main line.

[5] For ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Exhibit 1360-6.

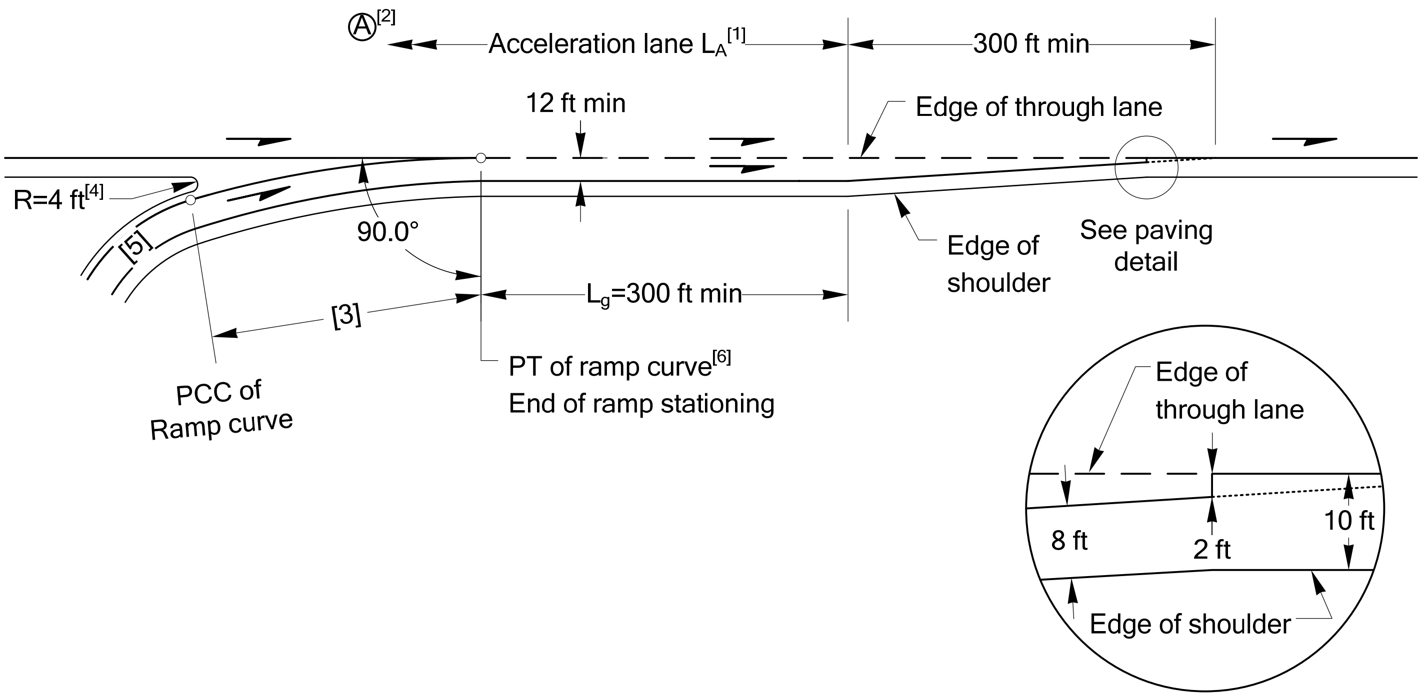
[6] Approximate angle to establish ramp alignment.

General:

For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

On-Connection: Single-Lane, Tapered

Exhibit 1360-13a



Paving detail

Notes:

[1] For acceleration lane length L_A, see Exhibit 1360-9.

[2] Point Ⓐ is the point controlling the ramp design speed.

[3] A transition curve with a minimum radius of 3000 ft is desirable. The desirable length is 300 ft. When the main line is on a curve to the left, the transition may vary from a 3000-ft radius to tangent to the main line. The transition curve may be replaced by a 50:1 taper with a minimum length of 300 ft.

[4] Radius may be reduced when concrete barrier is placed between the ramp and main line.

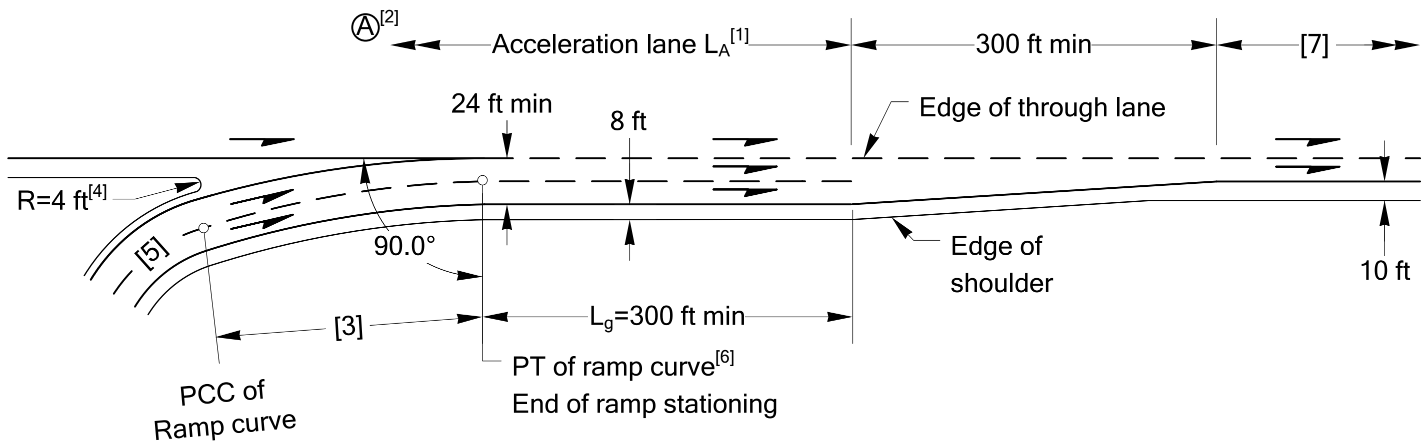
[5] For ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Exhibit 1360-6.

[6] Ramp stationing may be extended to accommodate superelevation transition.

General:

For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

On-Connection: Single-Lane, Parallel
Exhibit 1360-13b



Notes:

[1] For acceleration lane length L_A, see Exhibit 1360-9.

[2] Point Ⓐ is the point controlling the ramp design speed.

[3] A transition curve with a minimum radius of 3000 ft is desirable. The desirable length is 300 ft. When the main line is on a curve to the left, the transition may vary from a 3000-ft radius to tangent to the main line. The transition curve may be replaced by a 50:1 taper with a minimum length of 300 ft.

[4] Radius may be reduced when concrete barrier is placed between the ramp and main line.

[5] For ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Exhibit 1360-6.

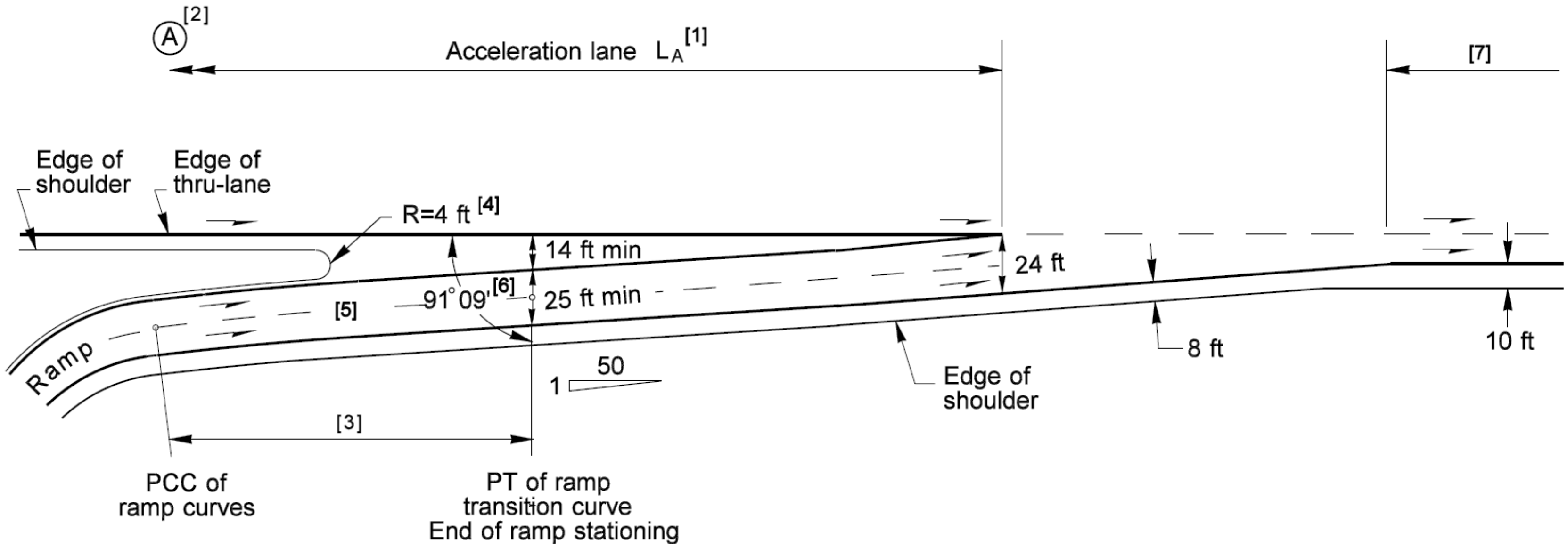
[6] Ramp stationing may be extended to accommodate superelevation transition.

[7] Added lane or 1,500-ft auxiliary lane plus 600-ft taper.

General:

For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

On-Connection: Two-Lane, Parallel
Exhibit 1360-13c



Notes:

[1] For acceleration lane length L_A, see Exhibit 1360-9.

[2] Point Ⓐ is the point controlling the ramp design speed.

[3] A transition curve with a minimum radius of 3000 ft is desirable. The desirable length is 300 ft. When the main line is on a curve to the left, the transition may vary from a 3000-ft radius to tangent to the main line.

[4] Radius may be reduced when concrete barrier is placed between the ramp and main line.

[5] For ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Exhibit 1360-6.

[6] Approximate angle to establish ramp alignment.

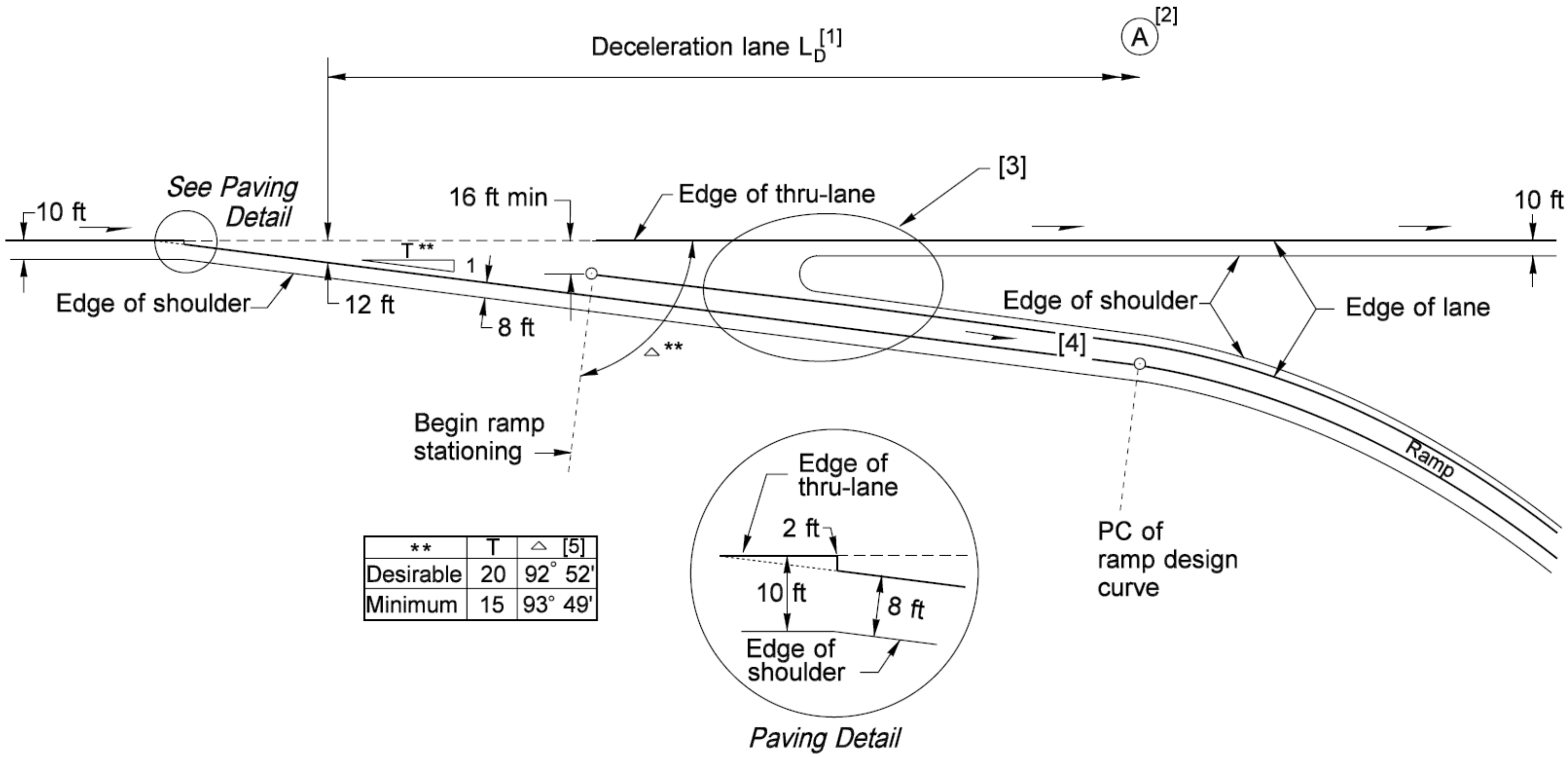
[7] Added lane or 1,500-ft auxiliary lane plus 600-ft taper.

General:

For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

On-Connection: Two-Lane, Tapered

Exhibit 1360-13d



**	T	△ [5]
Desirable	20	92° 52'
Minimum	15	93° 49'

Notes:

[1] For deceleration lane length L_D, see Exhibit 1360-10.

[2] Point Ⓐ is the point controlling the ramp design speed.

[3] For gore details, see Exhibit 1360-11a.

[4] For ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Exhibit 1360-6.

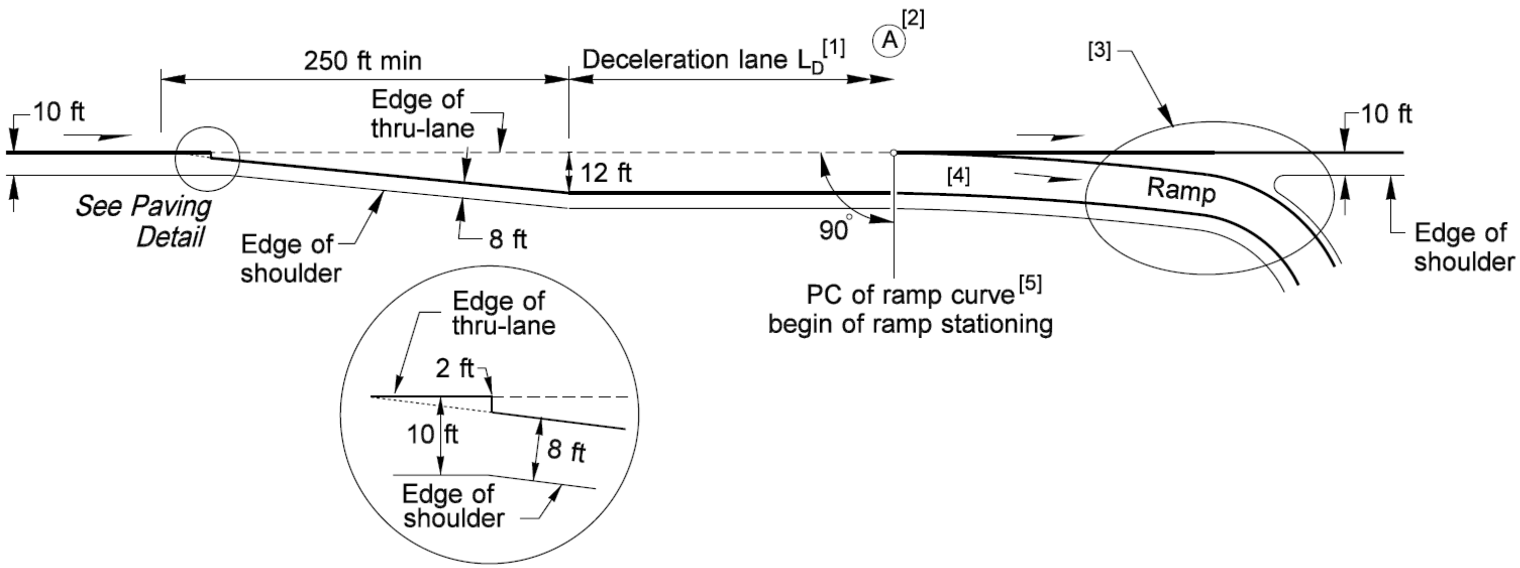
[5] Approximate angle to establish ramp alignment.

General:

For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

Off-Connection: Single-Lane, Tapered

Exhibit 1360-14a



Paving Detail

Notes:

[1] For deceleration lane length L_D, see Exhibit 1360-10.

[2] Point Ⓐ is the point controlling the ramp design speed.

[3] For gore details, see Exhibit 1360-11a.

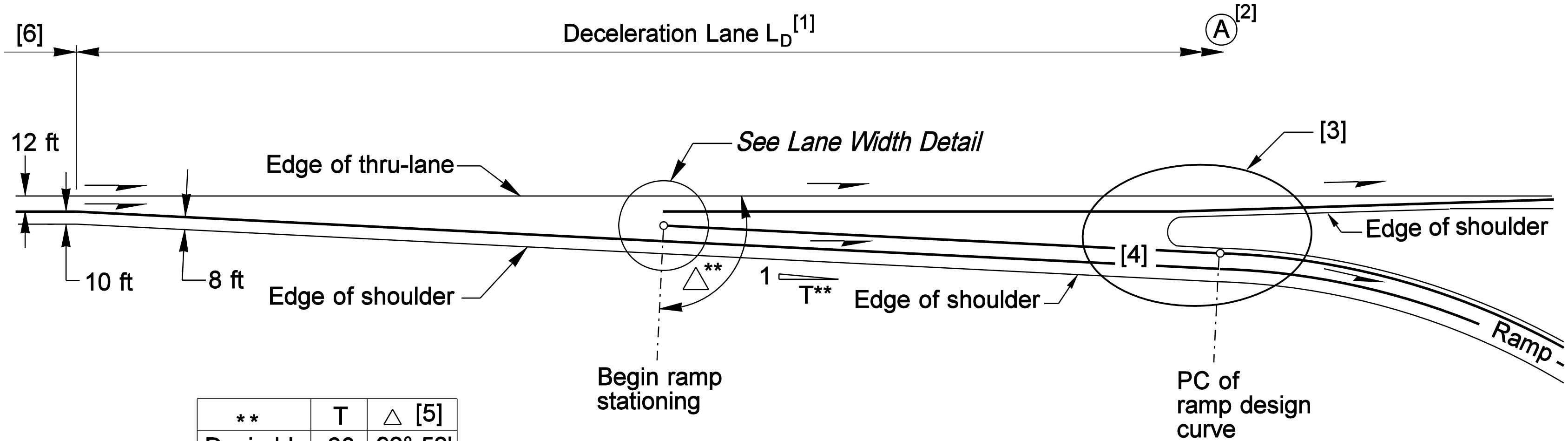
[4] For ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Exhibit 1360-6.

[5] Ramp stationing may be extended to accommodate superelevation transition.

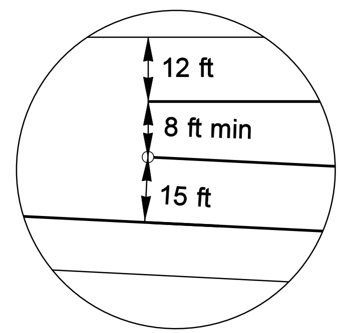
General:

For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

Off-Connection: Single-Lane, Parallel
Exhibit 1360-14b



**	T	△ [5]
Desirable	20	92° 52'
Minimum	15	93° 49'



Lane Width Detail

Notes:

[1] For deceleration lane length L_D, see Exhibit 1360-10.

[2] Point Ⓐ is the point controlling the ramp design speed.

[3] For gore details, see Exhibit 1360-11b.

[4] For ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Exhibit 1360-6.

[5] Approximate angle to establish ramp alignment.

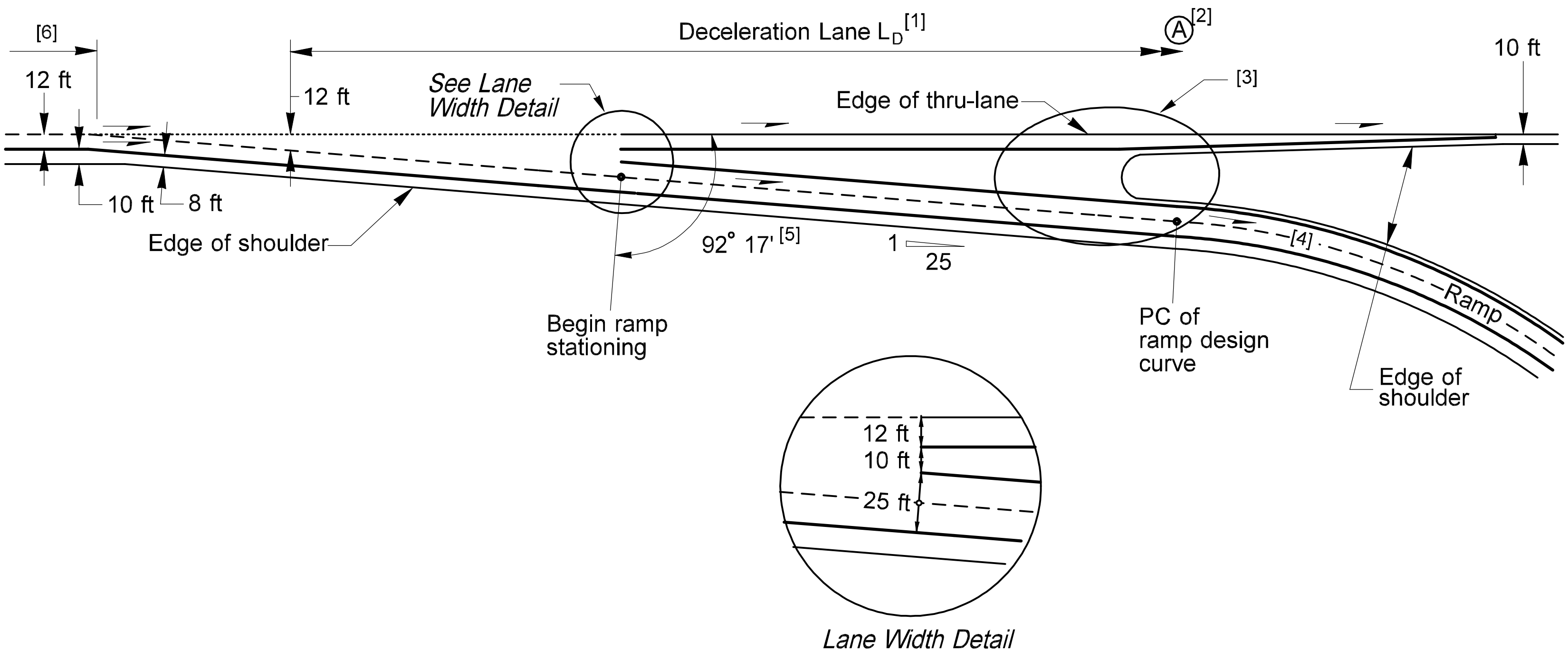
[6] Auxiliary lane between closely spaced interchanges to be dropped.

General:

For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

Off-Connection: Single-Lane, One-Lane Reduction

Exhibit 1360-14c



Lane Width Detail

Notes:

[1] For deceleration lane length L_D, see Exhibit 1360-10.

[2] Point Ⓐ is the point controlling the ramp design speed.

[3] For gore details, see Exhibit 1360-11b.

[4] For ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Exhibit 1360-6.

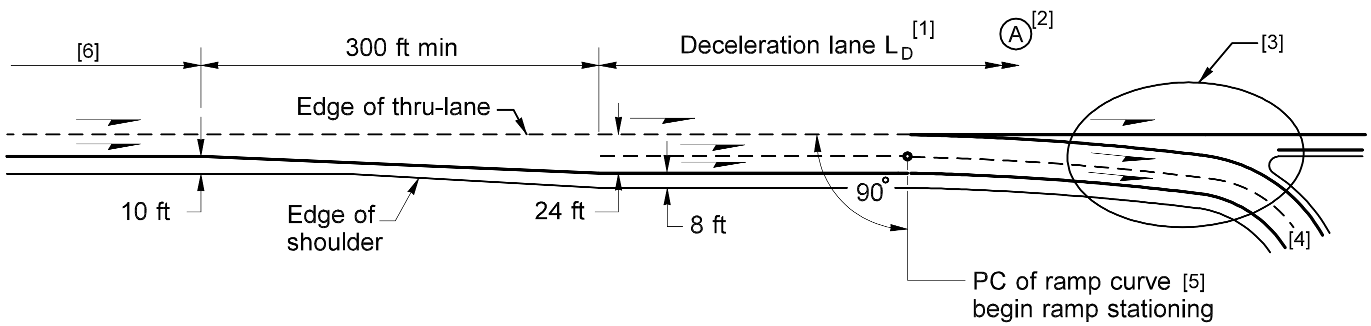
[5] Approximate angle to establish ramp alignment.

[6] Lane to be dropped or auxiliary lane with a minimum length of 1,500 ft with a 300-ft taper.

General:

For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

Off-Connection: Two-Lane, Tapered
Exhibit 1360-14d



Notes:

[1] For deceleration lane length L_D, see Exhibit 1360-10.

[2] Point A is the point controlling the ramp design speed.

[3] For gore details, see Exhibit 1360-11b.

[4] For ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Exhibit 1360-6.

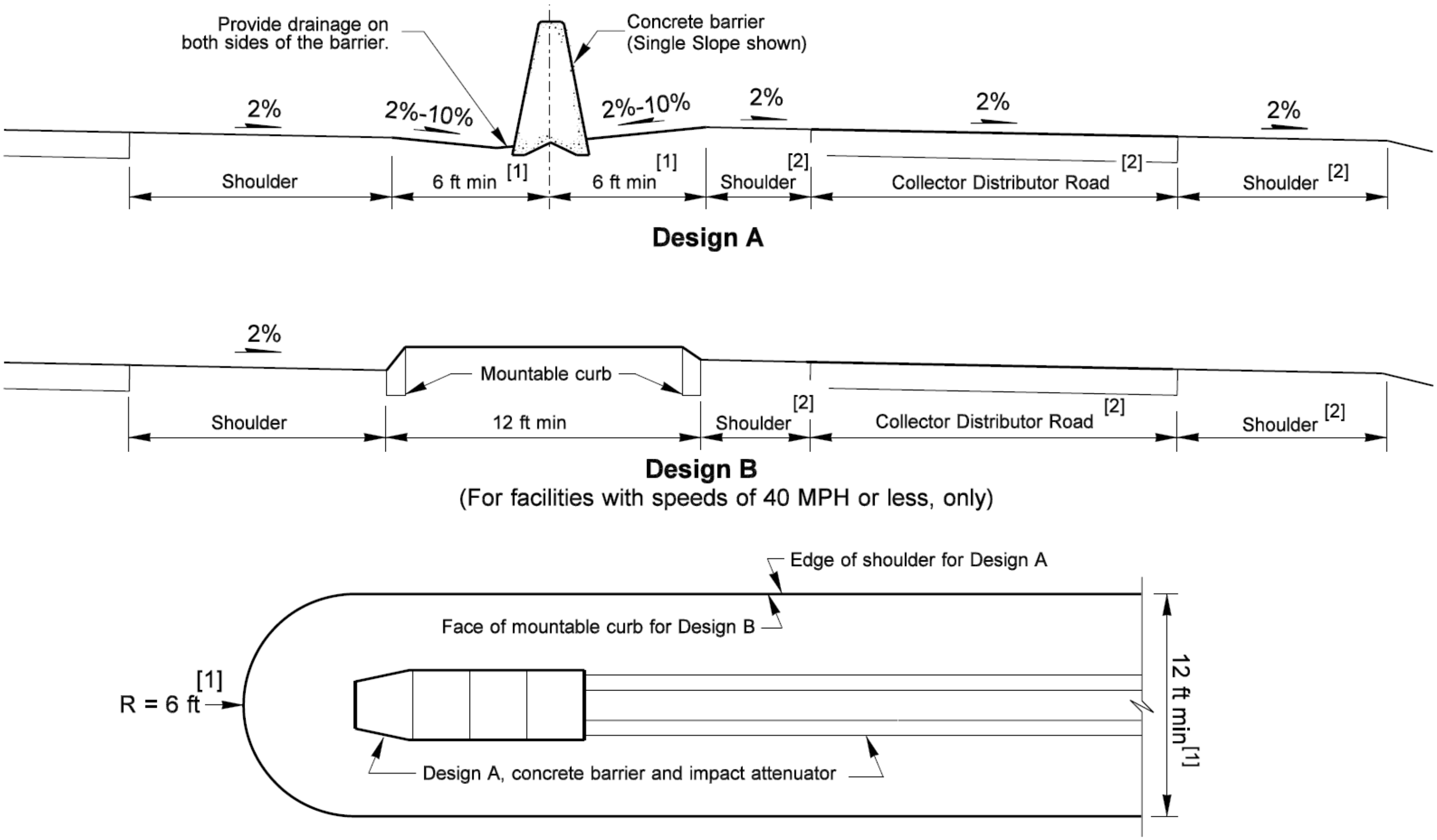
[5] Ramp stationing may be extended to accommodate superelevation transition.

[6] Lane to be dropped or auxiliary lane with a minimum length of 1,500 ft with a 300-ft taper.

General:

For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

Off-Connection: Two-Lane, Parallel
Exhibit 1360-14e



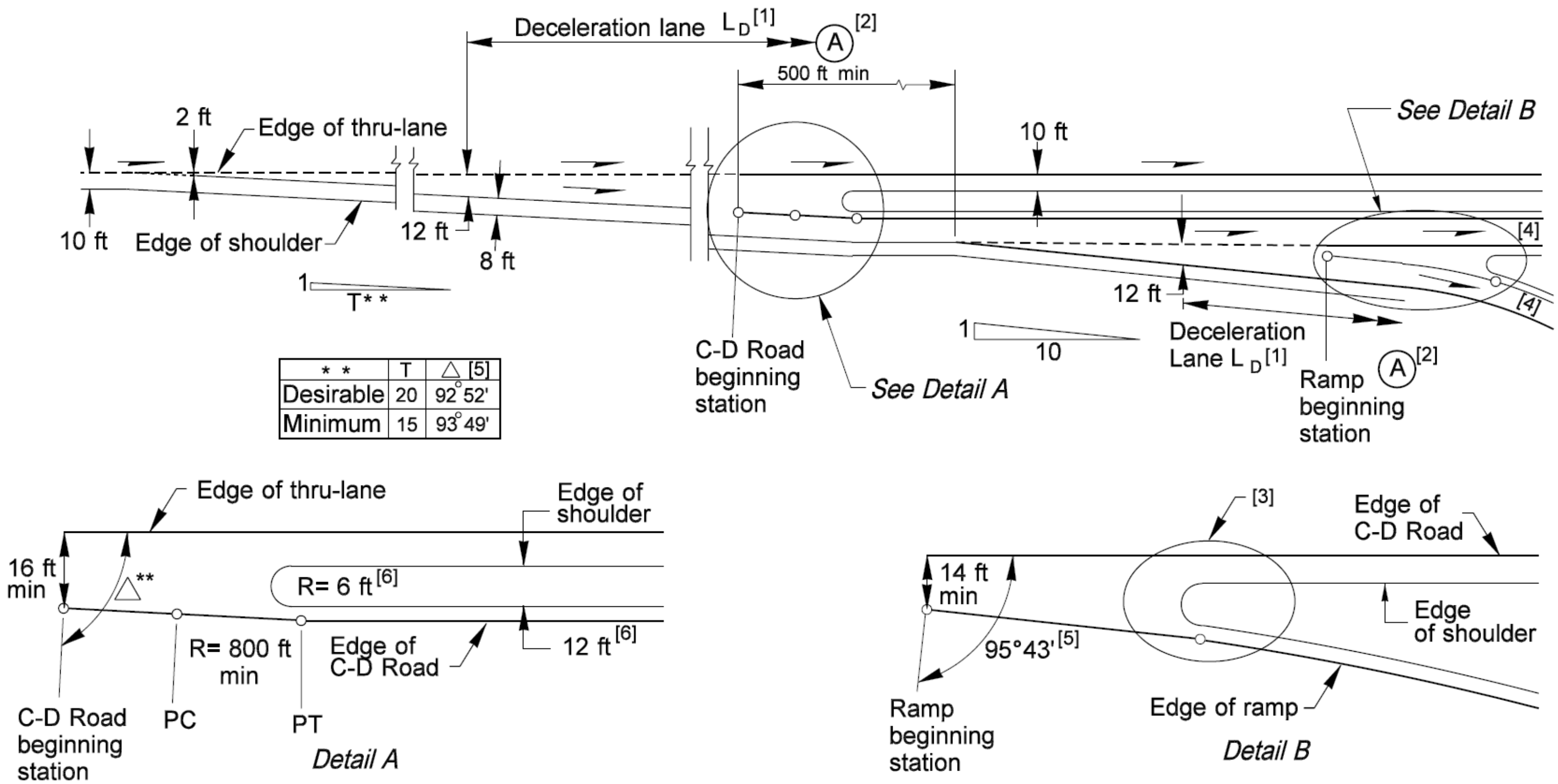
Notes:

[1] With justification, the concrete barrier may be placed with 2 ft between the edge of either shoulder and the face of barrier. This reduces the width between the edge of through-lane shoulder and the edge of C-D road shoulder to 6 ft and the radius at the nose to 3 ft.

[2] For collector-distributor road lane and shoulder widths, see ramp lane and shoulder widths, Exhibit 1360-6.

Collector-Distributor: Outer Separations

Exhibit 1360-15a



**	T	△ [5]
Desirable	20	92°52'
Minimum	15	93°49'

Notes:

[1] For deceleration lane length L_D, see Exhibit 1360-10.

[2] Point Ⓐ is the point controlling the C-D road or ramp design speed.

[3] For gore details, see Exhibit 1360-11a.

[4] For C-D road and ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Exhibit 1360-6.

[5] Approximate angle to establish alignment.

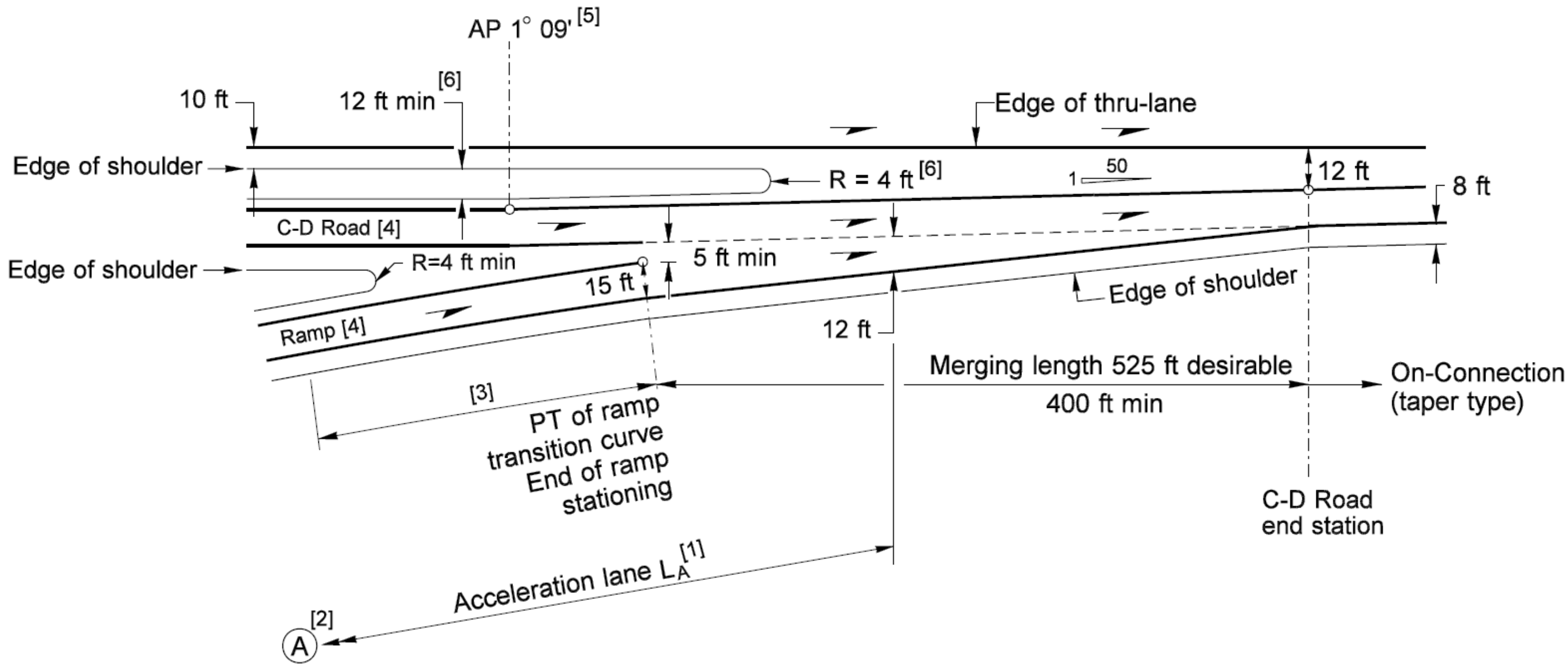
[6] May be reduced with justification (see Exhibit 1360-15a).

General:

For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

Collector Distributor: Off-Connections

Exhibit 1360-15b



Notes:

[1] For acceleration lane length L_A, see Exhibit 1360-9.

[2] Point Ⓐ is the point controlling the ramp design speed.

[3] A transition curve with a minimum radius of 3000 ft is desirable. The desirable length is 300 ft. When the C-D road is on a curve to the left, the transition may vary from a 3000-ft radius to tangent to the C-D road.

[4] For C-D road and ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Exhibit 1360-6.

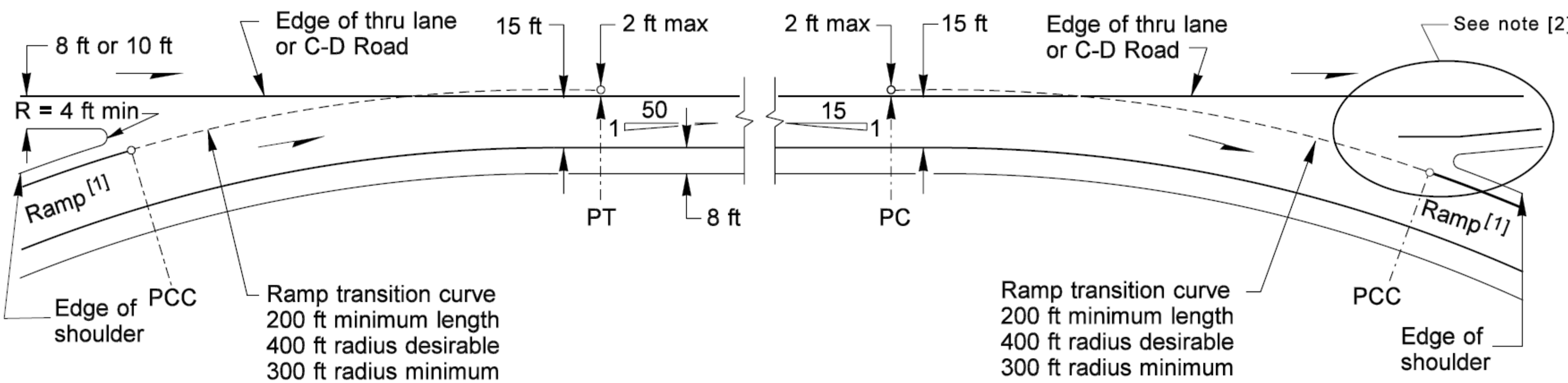
[5] Approximate angle to establish alignment.

[6] May be reduced with justification (see Exhibit 1360-15a).

General:

For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

Collector Distributor: On-Connections
Exhibit 1360-15c



Notes:

[1] For minimum weaving length, see Exhibit 1360-12.

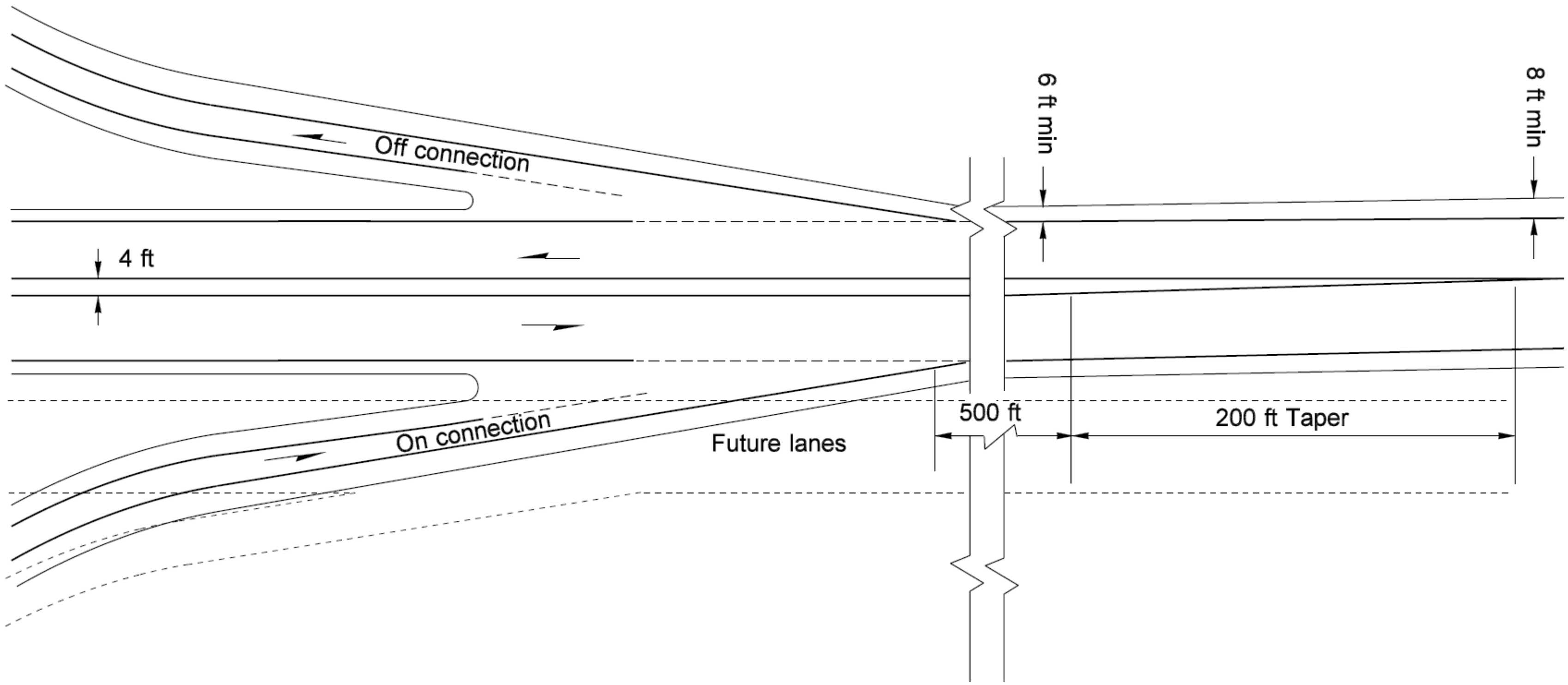
[2] For minimum ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Exhibit 1360-6.

[3] For gore details, see Exhibit 1360-11b.

General:

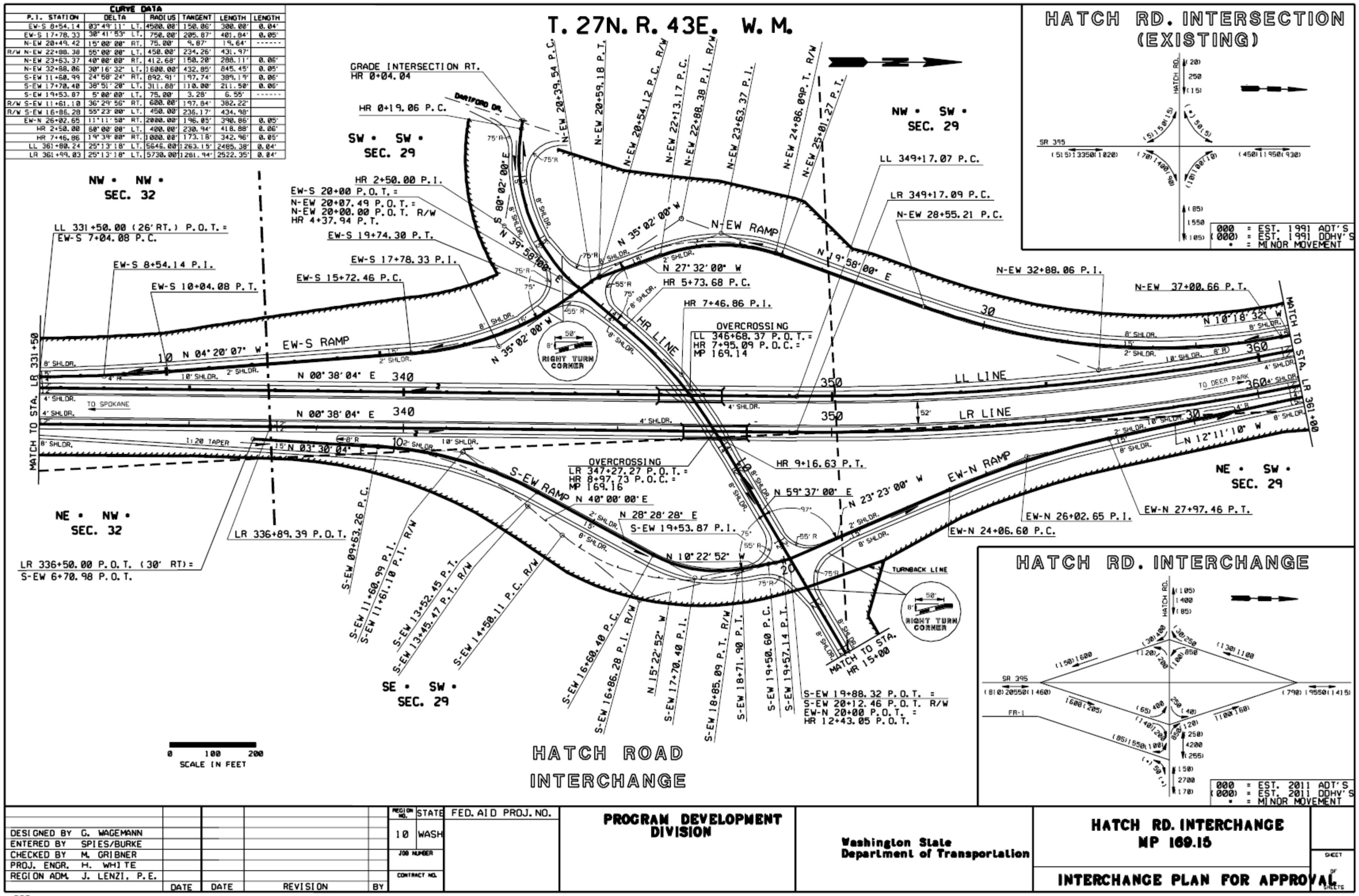
For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

Loop Ramp Connections
Exhibit 1360-16



Temporary Ramps
Exhibit 1360-17

CURVE DATA					
P.I. STATION	DELTA	RADIUS	TANGENT	LENGTH	LENGTH
EW-S 8+54.14	03°49'11" LT.	4500.00'	150.06'	300.00'	0.04'
EW-S 17+78.33	30°41'53" LT.	750.00'	205.87'	401.84'	0.05'
N-EW 20+49.42	15°00'00" RT.	75.00'	9.87'	19.64'	------
R/W N-EW 22+88.38	55°00'00" LT.	450.00'	234.26'	431.97'	
N-EW 23+63.37	40°00'00" RT.	412.68'	150.20'	288.11'	0.06'
N-EW 32+88.06	30°16'32" LT.	1600.00'	432.85'	845.45'	0.05'
S-EW 11+60.99	24°58'24" RT.	892.91'	197.74'	389.19'	0.06'
S-EW 17+70.40	38°51'20" LT.	311.88'	110.00'	211.50'	0.06'
S-EW 19+53.87	5°00'00" LT.	75.00'	3.28'	6.55'	------
R/W S-EW 11+61.10	36°29'56" RT.	600.00'	197.84'	382.22'	
R/W S-EW 16+86.28	55°23'00" LT.	450.00'	236.17'	434.98'	
EW-N 26+02.65	11°11'50" RT.	2000.00'	196.05'	390.86'	0.05'
HR 2+50.00	60°00'00" LT.	400.00'	230.94'	418.88'	0.06'
HR 7+46.86	19°39'00" RT.	1000.00'	173.18'	342.96'	0.05'
LL 361+80.24	25°13'18" LT.	5646.00'	1263.15'	2485.38'	0.04'
LR 361+99.03	25°13'18" LT.	5730.00'	1281.94'	2522.35'	0.04'



Interchange Plan
Exhibit 1360-18

Chapter 1370 Median Crossovers

1370.01 General
1370.02 Analysis
1370.03 Design
1370.04 Approval
1370.05 Documentation

1370.01 General

This chapter provides guidance for locating and designing median crossovers.

Median crossovers are provided at selected locations on divided highways for crossing by maintenance, traffic service, emergency, and law enforcement vehicles. The use of any median crossover is restricted to these users.

Crossovers may be provided:

- Where analysis demonstrates that access through interchanges or intersections is not practical.
- As part of region maintenance operations.
- As necessary for law enforcement functions.

For median openings to provide turning movements for public access to both sides of the roadway, see Chapter 1310, Intersections at Grade.

1370.02 Analysis

A list of existing median crossovers is available from the Headquarters (HQ) Access and Hearings Section. The Statewide Master Plan for Median Crossovers website is:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/accessandhearings/tracking.htm

The general categories of vehicles recognized as legitimate users of median crossovers are law enforcement and official services vehicles, which include emergency, traffic service, and maintenance vehicles.

In both urban and rural areas, crossovers may be necessary for law enforcement operations. In urban areas with a high-occupancy vehicle (HOV) lane adjacent to the median, crossovers may be considered for law enforcement (see Chapter 1410).

In areas where there are three or more miles between access points, providing an unobtrusive crossover can improve emergency service or improve efficiency for traffic service and maintenance forces.

Where crossovers are justified and used for winter maintenance operations such as snow and ice removal, the recommended minimum distance from the ramp merge or diverge point should be 1000 feet to accommodate future ramp improvements. This distance may be decreased to improve winter maintenance efficiency based on an operational analysis. Include an operational analysis in the Design Documentation Package (DDP).

1370.03 Design

Use the following design criteria for all median crossovers, taking into consideration the intended vehicle usage. Some of these criteria may not apply to crossovers intended primarily for law enforcement.

- Adequate median width at the crossover location is required to allow the design vehicle to complete a U-turn maneuver without backing. Use of the shoulder area is allowed for the execution of the U-turn maneuver. The typical design vehicles for this determination are a passenger car and a single-unit truck.
- Consider the type of vehicles using the median crossover.
- The minimum recommended throat width is 30 feet.
- Use grades and radii that are suitable for all authorized user vehicles (see Chapter 1340).
- In most cases, 10-foot inside shoulders are adequate. Consider full 10-foot shoulders for a distance of 450 feet upstream of the crossover area to accommodate deceleration, and extend downstream of the crossover area for a distance of 600 feet to allow acceleration prior to entering the travel lane. Where inside shoulders can be constructed wide enough to allow vehicle deceleration and acceleration to occur off the travel lanes, documentation is not required.
- Provide adequate stopping sight distance for vehicles approaching the crossover area. Because of the unexpected maneuvers associated with these inside access points and higher operating speeds commonly experienced in the inside travel lanes, use conservative values for stopping sight distance (see Chapter 1260).
- Provide adequate intersection sight distance at crossover locations where authorized user vehicles must encroach on the travel lanes (see Chapter 1310).
- For the crossing, use sideslopes no steeper than 10H:1V. Grade for a relatively flat and gently contoured appearance that is inconspicuous to the public.
- Consider impacts to existing drainage.
- Do not use curbs or pavement markings.
- Flexible guideposts may be provided for night reference, as shown in the *Standard Plans*.
- Consider the terrain and locate the crossover to minimize visibility to the public.
- Vegetation may be used to minimize visibility of the crossover. Low vegetation with a 3-foot year-round maximum height is recommended for this purpose (see Chapter 900).
- In locations where vegetation cannot be used to minimize visibility by the traveling public and there is a high incidence of unauthorized use, appropriate signing such as “No U-Turns” may be used to discourage unauthorized use.
- A stabilized all-weather surface is required. Urban crossovers for an HOV enforcement plan are usually paved. Paving at other types of crossovers may be paved when justified. Paving of crossings is determined on a case-by-case basis.

1370.04 Approval

All approved crossover locations will be designated on the Statewide Master Plan for Median Crossovers. A committee consisting of the Assistant Regional Administrator for Operations or Project Development, the Washington State Patrol Assistant District Commander, the HQ Access Engineer, and the FHWA Area Engineer (or their designees) will be responsible for establishing and updating this plan as appropriate. Contact the HQ Access and Hearings Section for interim review and approvals for the following: proposed new crossings, relocation of previously approved crossings, or removal of crossings that are no longer needed.

To expedite the team process, provide pictures of the existing crossings and the interchanges on a strip map. Include MP locations and spacing between existing and planned crossings and interchanges. The use of SR view at the team meeting helps the members determine which crossings may remain, which need to be relocated, and which to eliminate.

Regional Administrators (or their designees) are responsible for the design and construction of median crossovers. Prior to construction of the opening, submit the documentation of the crossover need and the design data (together with a right of way plan showing the opening in red) to the State Design Engineer for right of way or limited access plan approval. Construction may not proceed prior to approval.

After notification of approval, the HQ Right of Way Plans Section sends the region a revised reproducible Right of Way or limited access plan which includes the approved crossover location.

1370.05 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Chapter 1410 High-Occupancy Vehicle Facilities

1410.01 General
1410.02 References
1410.03 Definitions
1410.04 Preliminary Design and Planning
1410.05 Operations
1410.06 Design Criteria
1410.07 Documentation

1410.01 General

High-occupancy vehicle (HOV) facilities include separate HOV roadways, HOV lanes, transit lanes, HOV direct access ramps, and flyer stops. The objectives for the HOV facilities are:

- Improve the capability of corridors to move more people by increasing the number of people per vehicle.
- Provide travel time savings and a more reliable trip time to HOV lane users.
- Provide travel options for HOVs without adversely affecting the general-purpose lanes.

Plan, design, and construct HOV facilities that provide intermodal linkages. Give consideration to future highway system capacity needs. Whenever possible, design HOV lanes so that the level of service for the general-purpose lanes is not degraded.

In urban corridors that do not currently have planned or existing HOV lanes, complete an analysis of the need for HOV lanes before proceeding with any projects for additional general-purpose lanes. In corridors where both HOV and general-purpose facilities are planned, construct the HOV lane before or simultaneously with the construction of new general-purpose lanes.

For additional information, see the following chapters:

Chapter	Subject
1130	General-purpose roadway widths for modified design level
1140	General-purpose roadway widths for full design level
1230	Other cross section data
1240	General-purpose turning roadway widths
1420	HOV direct access

1410.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 46.61.165, High-occupancy vehicle lanes

RCW 47.52.025, Additional powers – Controlling use of limited access facilities –High occupancy vehicle lanes

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-510-010, High occupancy vehicles (HOVs)

(2) Design Guidance

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Traffic Manual, M 51-02, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

Design Features of High-Occupancy Vehicle Lanes, Institute of Traffic Engineers (ITE)

Guide for the Design of High-Occupancy Vehicle Facilities, American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

High-Occupancy Vehicle Facilities, Parsons Brinkerhoff, Inc., 1990

HOV Systems Manual, NCHRP Report 414, 1998

1410.03 Definitions

buffer-separated HOV lane An HOV lane that is separated from the adjacent same direction general-purpose freeway lanes by a designated buffer.

bus rapid transit (BRT) An express rubber tired transit system operating predominantly in roadway managed lanes. It is generally characterized by separate roadway or buffer-separated HOV lanes, HOV direct access ramps, and a high-occupancy designation (3+ or higher).

business access transit (BAT) lanes A transit lane that allows use by other vehicles to access abutting businesses.

enforcement area A place where vehicles may be stopped for ticketing by law enforcement. It also may be used as an observation point and for emergency refuge.

enforcement observation point A place where a law enforcement officer may park and observe traffic.

flyer stop A transit stop inside the limited access boundaries.

high-occupancy toll (HOT) lane A managed lane that combines a high-occupancy vehicle lane and a toll lane.

high-occupancy vehicle (HOV) A vehicle that meets the occupancy requirements of the facility as authorized by WAC 468-510-010.

HOV direct access ramp An on- or off-ramp exclusively for the use of HOVs that provides access between a freeway HOV lane and a street, transit support facility, or another freeway HOV lane without weaving across general-purpose lanes.

HOV facility A priority treatment for HOVs.

level of service A qualitative measure describing operational conditions within a traffic stream, incorporating factors of speed and travel time, freedom to maneuver, traffic interruptions, comfort and convenience, and safety.

managed lane A lane that increases efficiency by packaging various operational and design actions. Lane management operations may be adjusted at any time to better match regional goals.

nonseparated HOV lane An HOV lane that is adjacent to and operates in the same direction as the general-purpose lanes with unrestricted access between the HOV lane and the general-purpose lanes.

occupancy designation The minimum number of occupants required for a vehicle to use the HOV facility.

separated HOV facility An HOV roadway that is physically separated from adjacent general-purpose lanes by a barrier or median, or is on a separate right of way.

single-occupant vehicle (SOV) Any motor vehicle other than a motorcycle carrying one occupant.

transit lane A lane for the exclusive use of transit vehicles.

violation rate The total number of violators divided by the total number of vehicles on an HOV facility.

1410.04 Preliminary Design and Planning

(1) Planning Elements for Design

In order to determine the appropriate design options for an HOV facility, establish the travel demand and capacity, identify suitable corridors, evaluate the HOV facility location and length, and estimate the HOV demand. A viable HOV facility satisfies the following criteria:

- It is part of an overall transportation plan.
- It has the support of the community and public.
- It responds to demonstrated congestion or near-term anticipated congestion: Level of Service E or F for at least one hour of peak period (traffic approaching a capacity of 1700 to 2000 vehicles per hour per lane) or average speeds less than 30 mph during peak periods over an extended distance.
- Except for a bypass of a local bottleneck, it is of sufficient length to provide a travel time saving of at least five minutes during the peak periods.
- It has sufficient numbers of HOV users for a cost-effective facility and avoids the perception of under-utilization (HOV volumes of 400 to 500 vehicles per hour on nonseparated lanes and 600 to 800 on separated facilities).
- It provides a safe, efficient, and enforceable operation.

A queue or bottleneck bypass can be effective without satisfying all of the above. An isolated bypass can be viable when there is localized, recurring traffic congestion, and such treatment can provide a travel time saving to a sufficient number of HOV users.

The efficiency of the HOV facility can be affected by the access provisions. Direct access between park & ride/transit facilities and an HOV lane is the most desirable, but it is also an expensive alternative. Direct access options are discussed in Chapter 1420.

Document the need for the HOV lane and how the proposed lane will meet those needs.

(2) HOV Facility Type

Make a determination as to the type of HOV lane. The three major choices are: separated roadway, buffer-separated lane, and nonseparated HOV lane.

(a) **Separated Roadway**

The separated roadway can be either a one-way reversible or a two-way operation. The directional split in the peak periods, available space, and operating logistics are factors to be considered. A separated HOV roadway may be located in the median of the freeway, next to the freeway, or on an independent alignment. Separated HOV facilities are more effective for:

- Large HOV volumes.
- Large merging and weaving volumes.
- Long-distance HOV travel.

Reversible separated roadways operate effectively where there are major directional splits during peak periods. Consider potential changes in this traffic pattern and design the facility to accommodate possible conversion to a two-way operation. The separated roadway is normally more efficient, provides for the higher level of safety, and is more easily enforced. However, it is generally the most expensive type of HOV facility.

(b) **Buffer-Separated Lane**

A buffer-separated HOV lane is similar to a freeway nonseparated HOV lane on the left, but with a buffer between the HOV lane and the general-purpose lanes. The addition of a buffer provides better delineation between the lanes and controls access between the HOV lane and general-purpose lanes to improve operations.

(c) **Nonseparated Lane**

Nonseparated HOV lanes operate in the same direction and immediately adjacent to the general-purpose lanes. They are located either to the left (desirable) or to the right of the general-purpose lanes. Nonseparated HOV lanes are normally less expensive and easier to implement, and they provide more opportunity for frequent access. However, the ease of access can create more problems for enforcement and a greater potential for conflicts.

(3) Freeway Operational Alternatives

For an HOV lane on a limited access facility, consider the following operational alternatives:

- Inside (desirable) or outside HOV lane
- Lane conversion
- Use of existing shoulder—not recommended for permanent operations
- HOV direct access ramps
- Queue bypasses
- Flyer stops
- Hours of operation

When evaluating alternatives, consider a combination of alternatives to provide the optimum solution for the corridor. Also, incorporate flexibility into the design in order not to preclude potential changes in operation, such as changing an outside lane to an inside lane or a reversible facility to two-way operations. Access, freeway-to-freeway connections, and enforcement will have to be accommodated for such changes. Document the operational alternatives.

(a) **Inside vs. Outside HOV Lane**

System continuity and consistency of HOV lane placement along a corridor are important, and they influence facility development decisions. Other issues include land use, trip patterns, transit vehicle service, HOV volume, ramp volume, congestion levels, enforcement, and direct access to facilities.

The inside (left) HOV lane is most appropriate for a corridor with long-distance trip patterns, such as a freeway providing mobility to and from a large activity center. These trips are characterized by long-distance commuters and express transit service. Maximum capacity for an effective inside HOV lane is approximately 1,500 vehicles per hour. When HOVs weaving across the general-purpose lanes cause severe congestion, consider providing HOV direct access ramps, separated HOV roadways, or a higher-occupancy designation. Inside lanes are preferred for HOV lanes on freeways.

The outside (right) HOV lane is most appropriate for a corridor with shorter, more widely dispersed trip patterns. These trip patterns are characterized by transit vehicle routes that exit and enter at nearly every interchange. The maximum capacity for an effective outside HOV lane is reduced and potential conflicts are increased by heavy main line congestion and large entering and exiting general-purpose volumes.

(b) **Conversion of a General-Purpose Lane**

The use of an existing general-purpose lane for an HOV lane is an undesirable option; however, conversion of a lane to an HOV lane might be justified when the conversion provides greater people-moving capability on the roadway. Use of an existing freeway lane as an HOV lane will be considered only with a deviation.

Given sufficient existing capacity, converting a general-purpose lane to an HOV lane can provide for greater people moving capability in the future without significantly affecting the existing roadway operations. The fastest and least expensive method for providing an HOV lane is through conversion of a general-purpose lane. Restriping and signing are sometimes all that is needed. Converting a general-purpose lane to HOV use will likely have environmental benefits. This method, however, is controversial from a public acceptance standpoint. Public support might be gained through an effective public involvement program (see Chapter 210).

Do not convert a general-purpose lane to an HOV lane unless it enhances the corridor's people-moving capacity. Conduct an analysis that includes:

- Public acceptance of the lane conversion.
- Current and long-term traffic impacts on the adjacent general-purpose lanes and the HOV lane.
- Impacts to the neighboring streets and arterials.
- Legal, environmental, and safety impacts.

(c) **Use of Existing Shoulder**

When considering the alternatives in order to provide additional width for an HOV lane, the use of the existing shoulder is an undesirable option. Use of the shoulder on a freeway or freeway ramp as an HOV lane will be considered only with a deviation.

Consider shoulder conversion to an HOV lane when traffic volumes are heavy and the conversion is a temporary measure. Another alternative is to use the shoulder as a permanent measure to serve as a transit-only or queue bypass lane during peak hours and then revert to a shoulder in off-peak hours.

The use of the shoulder creates special signing, operational, and enforcement issues. An agreement is required with the transit agency to limit transit vehicle use of the shoulder to peak hours. Provide signing that clearly defines the use of the shoulder. Institute special operations to clear the shoulder for the designated hours.

The existing shoulder pavement is often not designed to carry heavy volumes of vehicles, especially transit vehicles. As a result, repaving and reconstruction of the shoulder might be required.

(d) **HOV Direct Access Ramps**

To improve the efficiency of an HOV system, exclusive HOV access connections for an inside HOV lane may be considered. (See Chapter 1420 for information on HOV direct access connections.) Direct access reduces the need for HOVs to cross the general-purpose lanes from right-side ramps. Transit vehicles will be able to use the HOV lane and provide service to park & ride lots, flyer stops, or other transit stops by the HOV direct access ramps.

(e) **Queue Bypass Lanes**

A queue bypass lane allows HOVs to save time by avoiding congestion at an isolated bottleneck. An acceptable time saving for a queue bypass is one minute or more. Typical locations for queue bypasses are at ramp meters, signalized intersections, toll plaza or ferry approaches, and locations with isolated main line congestion. By far the most common use is with ramp metering. Queue bypass lanes can be built along with a corridor HOV facility or independently. In most cases, they are relatively low cost and easily implemented. Where feasible, include HOV bypasses on ramp metering sites, or make provisions for their future accommodation unless specific location conditions dictate otherwise.

(f) **Flyer Stops**

Flyer stops reduce the time required for express transit vehicles to serve intermediate destinations. However, passengers must travel greater distances to reach the loading platform. (See Chapter 1420 for information on flyer stops.)

(g) **Hours of Operation**

An HOV designation on freeway HOV lanes 24 hours a day provides benefits to users during off-peak periods, minimizes potential confusion, makes enforcement easier, and simplifies signing and striping. However, 24-hour operation also might result in a lane not used during off-peak periods, negative public opinion, and the need for full-time enforcement.

(4) Arterial Street Operational Alternatives

Arterial street HOV lanes also have a variety of HOV alternatives to be considered. Some of these alternatives are site-specific or have limited applications. Arterial HOV lanes differ from freeway HOV lanes in slower speeds, little access control (turning traffic can result in right-angle conflicts), and traffic signals. Arterial HOV lanes are occasionally designated for transit vehicles only, especially in cities with a large concentration of transit vehicles. When evaluating alternatives, consider traffic signal queues and managed access highway class. The alternatives include the following:

- Type of lane
- Left-side or right-side HOV lane
- Hours of operation
- Spot treatments
- Bus stops

When evaluating alternatives, consider a combination of alternatives to provide the optimum solution for the corridor. Also, incorporate flexibility into the design in order not to preclude potential changes in operation. Document the operational alternatives.

(a) **Type of Lane**

Lanes can be transit-only or include all HOVs. Transit-only lanes are desirable where bus volumes are high with a high level of congestion. They increase the speed of transit vehicles through congested areas and improve the reliability of the transit service. Lanes that allow use by all HOVs are appropriate on corridors with high volumes of carpools and vanpools. They can collect carpools and vanpools in business and industrial areas and connect them to the freeway system.

(b) **Left-Side or Right-Side HOV Lane**

Continuity of HOV lane location along a corridor is an important consideration when making the decision whether to locate an arterial street HOV lane on the left or right side of the street. Other issues include land use, trip patterns, transit vehicle service, safety, enforcement, and presence of parking.

The right side is desirable for arterial street HOV lanes on transit routes with frequent stops. It is the most convenient for passenger boarding at transit stops. It is also the most common location for HOV lanes on arterial streets. General-purpose traffic must cross the HOV lane to make a right turn at intersections and to access driveways. These turns across the HOV lane can create conflicts. Minimizing access points that create these conflict locations is recommended. Other issues to consider are on-street parking, stopping areas for delivery vehicles, and enforcement areas.

Left-side arterial street HOV lanes are less common than right-side lanes. HOV lanes on the left eliminate the potential conflicts with driveway access, on-street parking, and stopping areas for delivery vehicles. The result is fewer delays and higher speeds, making left-side arterial street HOV lanes appropriate for longer-distance trips. The disadvantages include the difficulty providing transit stops and the need to provide for left-turning general-purpose traffic.

(c) **Hours of Operation**

An arterial street HOV lane can either operate as an HOV lane 24 hours a day or during peak hours only. Factors to consider in determining which to use include type of HOV lane, level of congestion, continuity, and enforcement.

HOV lanes operating 24 hours a day are desirable when congestion and HOV demand exists for extended periods throughout the day. The 24-hour operation provides benefits to users during off-peak periods, minimizes potential confusion, makes enforcement easier, and simplifies signing and striping. The disadvantages include negative public opinion if the lane is not used during off-peak periods, the need for full-time enforcement, and the loss of on-street parking.

Peak period HOV lanes are appropriate for arterial streets with HOV demand or congestion existing mainly during the peak period. Peak period HOV lanes provide HOV priority at the critical times of the day, lessen negative public perception of the HOV lane, and allow on-street parking or other shoulder uses at other times. The disadvantages include possible confusion to drivers, more difficult enforcement, increased signing, and the need to institute special operations to clear the shoulder or lane for the designated period.

(d) **Spot Treatments**

An HOV spot treatment is used to give HOVs priority around a bottleneck. It can provide time savings, travel time reliability, and improved access to other facilities. Examples include a short HOV lane to provide access to a freeway on-ramp, one lane of a dual turn lane, a priority lane at ferry terminals, and priority at traffic signals.

Signal priority treatments that alter the sequence or duration of a traffic signal are techniques for providing preferential treatment for transit vehicles. The priority treatments can range from timing and phasing adjustments to signal preemption. Consider the overall impact on traffic. Preemption would normally not be an appropriate treatment where traffic signal timing and coordination are being utilized or where there are high traffic volumes on the cross streets.

(e) **Bus Stops**

Normally, with arterial HOV lanes, there is not a shoulder suitable for a bus to use while stopped to load and unload passengers without blocking the lane. Therefore, bus stops are either in-lane or in a pullout. In-lane bus stops are the simplest type of bus stop. However, stopped buses will block the HOV lane; therefore, in-lane bus stops are only allowed in transit lanes. Bus pullouts provide an area for buses to stop without blocking the HOV lane. Disadvantages include higher cost, reduced width for the sidewalk or other roadside area, and possible difficulty reentering the HOV lane. (See Chapter 1430 for additional information on bus stop location and design.)

1410.05 Operations

(1) Vehicle Occupancy Designation

Select the vehicle occupancy designation to provide the maximum movement of people in a corridor, provide free-flow HOV operations, reduce the empty lane perception, provide for the ability to accommodate future HOV growth within a corridor, and be consistent with the regional transportation plan and the policies adopted by the Metropolitan Planning Organization (MPO).

Establish an initial occupancy designation. It is Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) policy to use the 2+ designation as the initial occupancy designation. Consider a 3+ occupancy designation if it is anticipated during initial operation that the volumes will be 1,500 vehicles per hour for a left-side HOV lane, or 1200 vehicles per hour for a right-side HOV lane, or that a 45 mph operating speed cannot be maintained for more than 90% of the peak hour.

(2) Enforcement

Enforcement is necessary for the success of an HOV facility. Coordination with the Washington State Patrol (WSP) is critical when the operational characteristics and design alternatives are being established. This involvement ensures the project is enforceable and will receive their support.

Provide both enforcement areas and observation points for high-speed HOV lanes and ramp facilities.

Barrier-separated facilities, because of the limited access, are the easiest facilities to enforce. Shoulders provided to accommodate breakdowns may also be used for enforcement. Reversible facilities have ramps for the reverse direction that may be used for enforcement. Gaps in the barrier may be needed so emergency vehicles can access barrier-separated HOV lanes.

Buffer-separated and nonseparated HOV lanes allow violators to easily enter and exit the HOV lane. Provide strategically located enforcement areas and observation points.

Consider the impact on safety and visibility for the overall facility during the planning and design of enforcement areas and observation points. Where HOV facilities do not have enforcement areas, or where officers perceive that the enforcement areas are inadequate, enforcement on the facility will be difficult and less effective.

(3) Intelligent Transportation Systems

The objective of Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS) is to make more efficient use of our transportation network. This is done by collecting data, managing traffic, and relaying information to the motoring public.

It is important that an ITS system be incorporated into the HOV project and that the HOV facility fully utilize the ITS features available. This includes providing a strategy of incident management since vehicle breakdowns and accidents have a significant impact on the efficient operation of the HOV facilities. (For more information on ITS, see Chapter 1050.)

1410.06 Design Criteria

(1) Design Procedures

For the required design level for the elements of an HOV project, see the design matrices in Chapter 1100.

(2) Design Considerations

HOV lanes are designed to the same criteria as the facilities to which they are attached. Design nonseparated and buffer-separated HOV lanes to match the vertical alignment, horizontal alignment, and cross slope of the adjacent lane. A deviation is required when any proposed or existing design element does not meet the applicable design level for the project.

(3) Adding an HOV Lane

The options for adding an HOV lane are: reconstruction, restriping, combined reconstruction and restriping, and possibly lane conversion.

(a) **Reconstruction**

Reconstruction involves creating roadway width. Additional right of way may be required. Restriping involves reallocating the existing paved roadway to create enough space to provide an additional HOV lane.

(b) **Restriping**

Restriping of lane or shoulder widths to less than the design level and functional class of the highway is a design deviation and approval is required.

(c) **Combined Reconstruction and Restriping**

Reconstruction and restriping can be combined to maximize use of the available right of way. For example, a new lane can be created through a combination of median reconstruction, shoulder reconstruction, and lane restriping. Handle each project on a case-by-case basis. Generally, consider the following reductions in order of preference:

- Reduction of the inside shoulder width, provided the enforcement and safety mitigation issues are addressed. (Give consideration to not precluding future HOV direct access ramps by over-reduction of the available median width.)
- Reduction of the interior general-purpose lane width to 11 feet.
- Reduction of the outside general-purpose lane width to 11 feet.
- Reduction of the HOV lane to 11 feet.
- Reduction of the outside shoulder width to 8 feet.

(d) **Lane Conversion**

If lane width adjustments are made, thoroughly eradicate the old lane markings. It is desirable that longitudinal joints (new or existing) not conflict with tire track lines. If they do, consider overlaying the roadway before restriping.

(4) Design Criteria for Types of HOV Facilities

(a) Separated Roadway HOV Facilities

The separated HOV facility can be single-lane or multilane and directional or reversible (see Exhibit 1410-2).

1. **Lane Widths**

   For traveled way width (WR) on turning roadways, see Exhibit 1410-1.

2. **Shoulder Widths**

   The shoulder width requirements are as follows:

   - The minimum width for the sum of the two shoulders is 12 feet for one-lane facilities and 14 feet for two-lane facilities.
   - Provide a width of at least 10 feet for one of the shoulders for disabled vehicles. The minimum for the other shoulder is 2 feet for one-lane facilities and 4 feet for two-lane facilities.
   - The wider shoulder may be on the left or the right. Maintain the wide shoulder on the same side throughout the facility.

3. **Total Widths**

   To reduce the probability of blocking the HOV facility, make the total width (lane width plus paved shoulders) wide enough to allow an A-BUS to pass a stalled A-BUS. For single-lane facilities, the traveled way widths (WR), given in Exhibit 1410-1, plus the 12-foot total shoulder width will provide for this passing for radii (R) 100 feet or greater. For R of 75 feet, a total roadway width of 33 feet is needed, and for R of 50 feet, a total roadway width of 41 feet is needed to provide for the passing.

R (ft)[1]	W_R (ft)	
	1-Lane	2-Lane
3,001 to Tangent	13[2]	24
3,000	14	24
2,000	14	25
1,000	15	26
500	15	27
300	15	28
200	16	29
150	17	31
100	18	34
75	19	37
50	22	45

Notes:

[1] Radius (R) is on the outside edge of traveled way on 1-lane and centerline on 2-lane roadways.

[2] May be reduced to 12 ft on tangent.

Minimum Traveled Way Widths for Articulated Buses
Exhibit 1410-1

(b) **Nonseparated Freeway HOV Lanes**

For both inside and outside HOV lanes, the minimum lane width is 12 feet and the minimum shoulder width is 10 feet (see Exhibit 1410-2).

When a left shoulder less than 10 feet wide is proposed for distances exceeding 1.5 miles, provide enforcement and observation areas at 1- to 2-mile intervals (see 1410.06(7)).

Where left shoulders less than 8 feet wide are proposed for lengths of roadway exceeding 0.5 mile, provide safety refuge areas at 0.5- to 1-mile intervals. These can be in addition to or in conjunction with the enforcement areas.

Allow general-purpose traffic to cross HOV lanes at on- and off-ramps.

(c) **Buffer-Separated HOV Lanes**

Design buffer-separated HOV lanes the same as for inside nonseparated HOV lanes, except for a buffer 2 to 4 feet in width or 10 feet or greater in width with pavement marking, with supplemental signing, to restrict crossing. For buffer-separated HOV lanes with a buffer at least 4 feet wide, the left shoulder may be reduced to 8 feet. Buffer widths between 4 and 10 feet are undesirable because they may appear to be wide enough for a refuge area, but they are too narrow. Provide gaps in the buffer to allow access to the HOV lane.

(d) **Arterial Street HOV Lanes**

The minimum width for an arterial street HOV lane is 12 feet. Allow general-purpose traffic to cross the HOV lanes to turn at intersections and to access driveways (see Exhibit 1410-2).

For right-side HOV lanes adjacent to curbs, provide a 4-foot shoulder between the HOV lane and the face of curb. The shoulder may be reduced to 2 feet with justification.

For HOV lanes on the left, a 1-foot left shoulder between the HOV lane and the face of curb is required. When concrete barrier is adjacent to the HOV lane, the minimum shoulder is 2 feet.

(e) **HOV Ramp Meter Bypass**

An HOV bypass may be created by widening an existing ramp, constructing a new ramp where right of way is available, or reallocating the existing pavement width (provided the shoulders are full depth).

Ramp meter bypass lanes may be located on the left or right of metered lanes. Typically, bypass lanes are located on the left side of the ramp. Consult with local transit agencies and the region Traffic Office for guidance on which side to place the HOV bypass.

Consider the existing conditions at each location when designing a ramp meter bypass. Design a single-lane ramp with a single metered lane and an HOV bypass as shown in Exhibit 1410-4a. Make the total width of the metered and bypass lanes equal to a 2-lane ramp (see Chapters 1240 and 1360). Design a ramp with two metered lanes and an HOV bypass as shown in Exhibit 1410-4b. Make the width of the two metered lanes equal to a 2-lane ramp (see Chapters 1240 and 1360) and the width of the bypass lane as shown in Exhibit 1410-3. The design shown in Exhibit 1410-4b requires that the ramp operate as a single-lane ramp when the meter is not in operation.

Both Exhibits 1410-4a and 4b show an observation point/enforcement area. Document any other enforcement area design as a design exception. One alternative, which is a design exception, is to provide a 10-foot outside shoulder from the stop bar to the main line.

(5) HOV Direct Access Ramps

HOV direct access ramps provide access between an HOV lane and another freeway, a local arterial street, a flyer stop, or a park & ride facility. Design HOV direct access ramps in accordance with Chapter 1420.

(6) HOV Lane Termination

Locate the beginning and end of an HOV lane at logical points. Provide decision sight distance, signing, and pavement markings at the termination points.

The desirable method of terminating an inside HOV lane is to provide a straight through move for the HOV traffic, ending the HOV restriction and dropping a general-purpose lane on the right. However, analyze volumes for both the HOV lanes and general-purpose lanes, as well as the geometric conditions, to optimize the overall operational performance of the facility.

(7) Enforcement Areas

Enforcement of the inside HOV lane can be done with a minimum 10-foot inside shoulder. For continuous lengths of barrier exceeding 2 miles, a 12-foot shoulder is recommended for the whole length of the barrier.

For inside shoulders less than 10 feet, locate enforcement and observation areas at 1 to 2-mile intervals or based on the recommendations of the WSP. These areas can also serve as refuge areas for disabled vehicles (see Exhibits 1410-5a and 5b).

Provide observation points approximately 1300 feet before enforcement areas. They can be designed to serve both patrol cars and motorcycles or motorcycles only. Coordinate with the WSP during the design stage to provide effective placement and utilization of the observation points. Median openings give motorcycle officers the added advantage of being able to quickly respond to emergencies in the opposing lanes (see Exhibit 1410-5b). The ideal observation point places the motorcycle officer 3 feet above the HOV lane and outside the shoulder so the officer can look down into a vehicle.

Locate the enforcement area on the right side for queue bypasses and downstream from the stop bar so the officer can be an effective deterrent (see Exhibits 1410-4a and 4b).

An optional signal status indicator for enforcement may be placed at HOV lane installations that are metered. The indicator faces the enforcement area so that a WSP officer can determine whether vehicles are violating the ramp meter. The indicator allows the WSP officer to simultaneously enforce two areas: the ramp meter and the HOV lane. Consult with the WSP regarding use at all locations.

For additional information on enforcement signal heads, see the *Traffic Manual* regarding HOV metered bypasses.

(8) Signs and Pavement Markings

(a) **Signs**

Provide post-mounted HOV preferential lane signs next to the HOV lane or overhead-mounted signs over the HOV lane. Make the sign wording clear and precise, stating which lane is restricted, the type of HOVs allowed, and the HOV vehicle occupancy designation for that section of road. The sign size, location, and spacing are dependent upon the conditions under which the sign is used. Roadside signs can also be used to convey other HOV information such as the HERO program, carpool information, telephone numbers, and violation fines. Some situations may call for the use of variable message signs.

Place overhead signs directly over the HOV lane to provide maximum visibility. Use a sequence of overhead signs at the beginning and end of freeway HOV facilities. Overhead signs can also be used in conjunction with roadside signs along the roadway.

(b) **Pavement Markings**

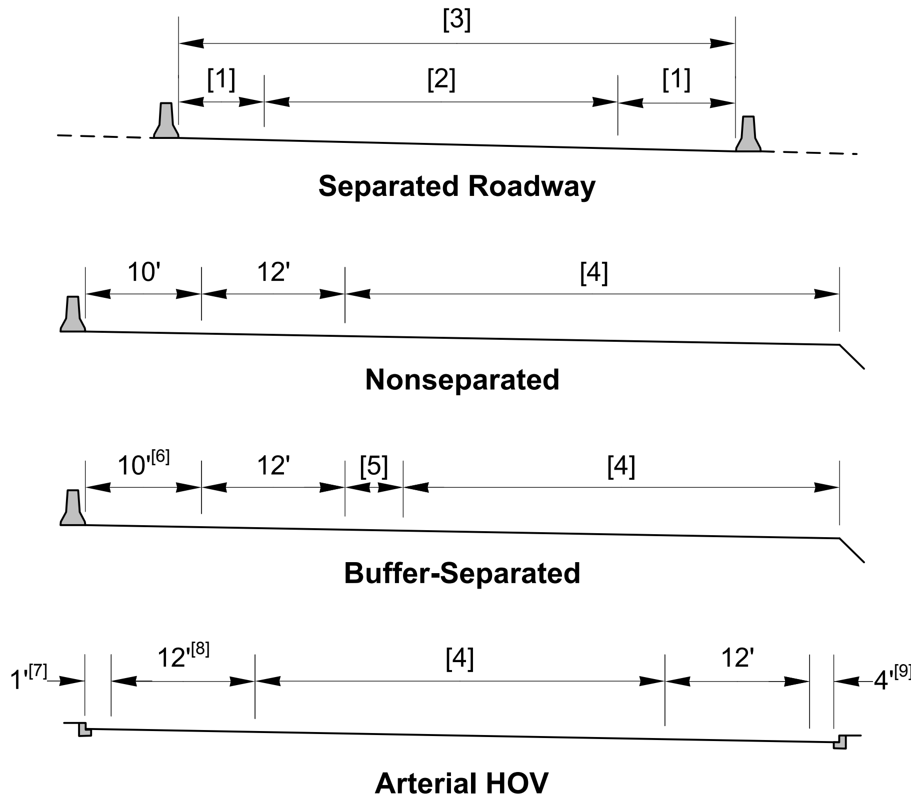
Provide pavement markings that conform to the *Traffic Manual* and the *Standard Plans*.

(c) **Interchanges**

In the vicinity of interchange on- and off-connections where merging or exiting traffic crosses an HOV lane, make provisions for general-purpose traffic using the HOV lane. These provisions include signing and striping that clearly show the changes in HOV versus general traffic restrictions. (See the *Standard Plans* for pavement markings and signing.)

1410.07 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



Notes:

[1] The sum of the two shoulders is 12 ft for one-lane and 14 ft for two-lane facilities. Provide one shoulder with a width of at least 10 ft for disabled vehicles. The wider shoulder may be on the left or the right. Maintain the wide shoulder on the same side throughout the facility (see 1410.06(4)(a)2).

[2] 12-ft minimum for single lane, 24-ft minimum for two lanes. Wider width is required on curves (see 1410.06(4)(a)1 and Exhibit 1410-1).

[3] For total width requirements, see 1410.06(4)(a)3.

[4] Width as required for the design level, functional class, and the number of lanes.

[5] Buffer 2 to 4 ft or 10 ft or more.

[6] When buffer width is 4 ft or more, may be reduced to 8 ft.

[7] 2 ft when adjacent to concrete barrier.

[8] Arterial HOV lanes on the left operate in the same direction as the adjacent general-purpose lane.

[9] May be reduced to 2 ft with justification.

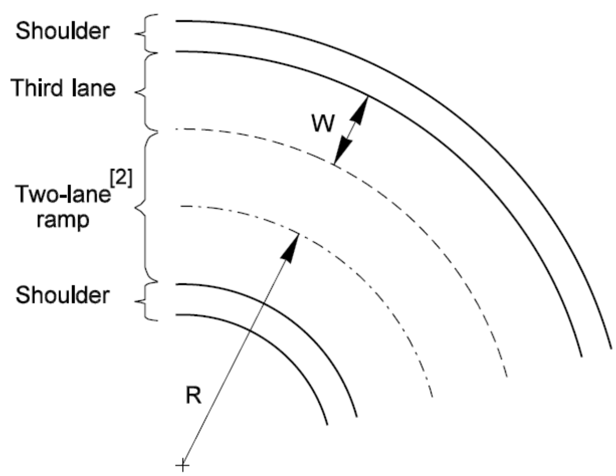
Typical HOV Lane Sections
Exhibit 1410-2

Radius of Two-Lane Ramp R (ft)	Design Width of Third Lane[1] W (ft)
1,000 to Tangent	12
999 to 500	13
499 to 250	14
249 to 200	15
199 to 150	16
149 to 100	17

Notes:

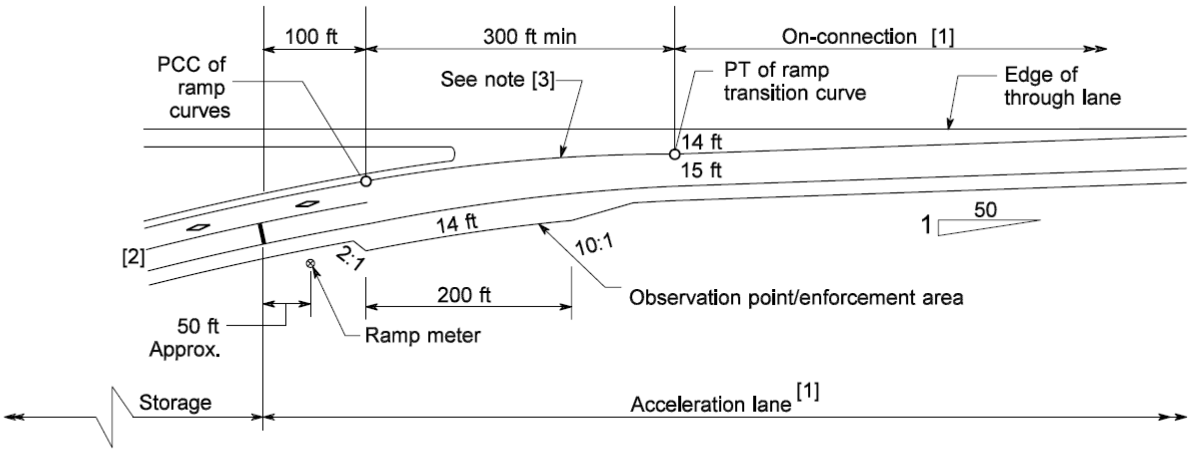
[1] Apply additional width to two-lane ramp widths.

[2] For turning roadway widths, see traveled way width for two-lane one-way turning roadways in Chapter 1240.



Roadway Widths for Two-Lane Ramps With an HOV Lane

Exhibit 1410-3



Notes:

[1] For on-connection details and for acceleration lane length, see Chapter 1360.

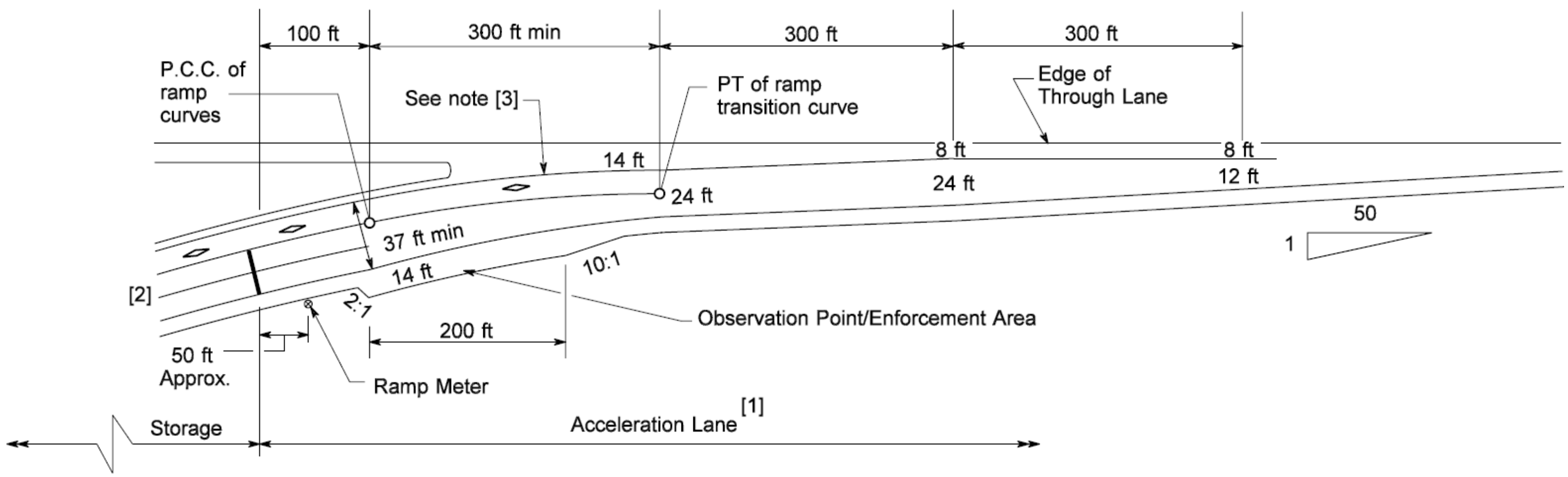
[2] For ramp lane and shoulder widths for a 2-lane ramp, see Chapters 1240 and 1360.

[3] A transition curve with a minimum radius of 3,000 ft is desirable. The minimum length is 300 ft. When the main line is on a curve to the left, the transition may vary from a 3,000 ft radius to tangent to the main line.

General:

For striping details, see the *Standard Plans*.

Single-Lane Ramp Meter With HOV Bypass
Exhibit 1410-4a



Notes:

[1] For acceleration lane length, see Chapter 1360.

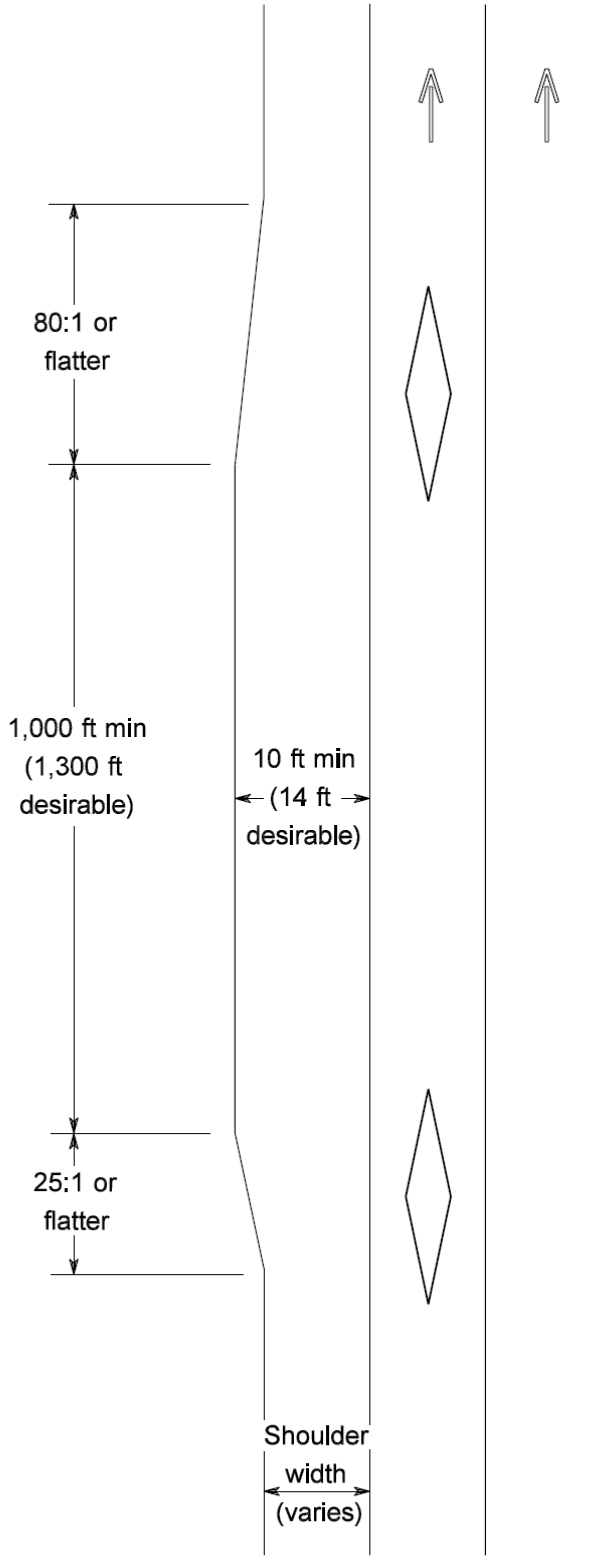
[2] For 2-lane ramp lane and shoulder widths, see Chapters 1240 and 1360. For 3rd lane width, see Exhibit 1410-3.

[3] A transition curve with a minimum radius of 3000 ft is desirable. The minimum length is 300 ft. When the main line is on a curve to the left, the transition may vary from a 3000 ft radius to tangent to the main line.

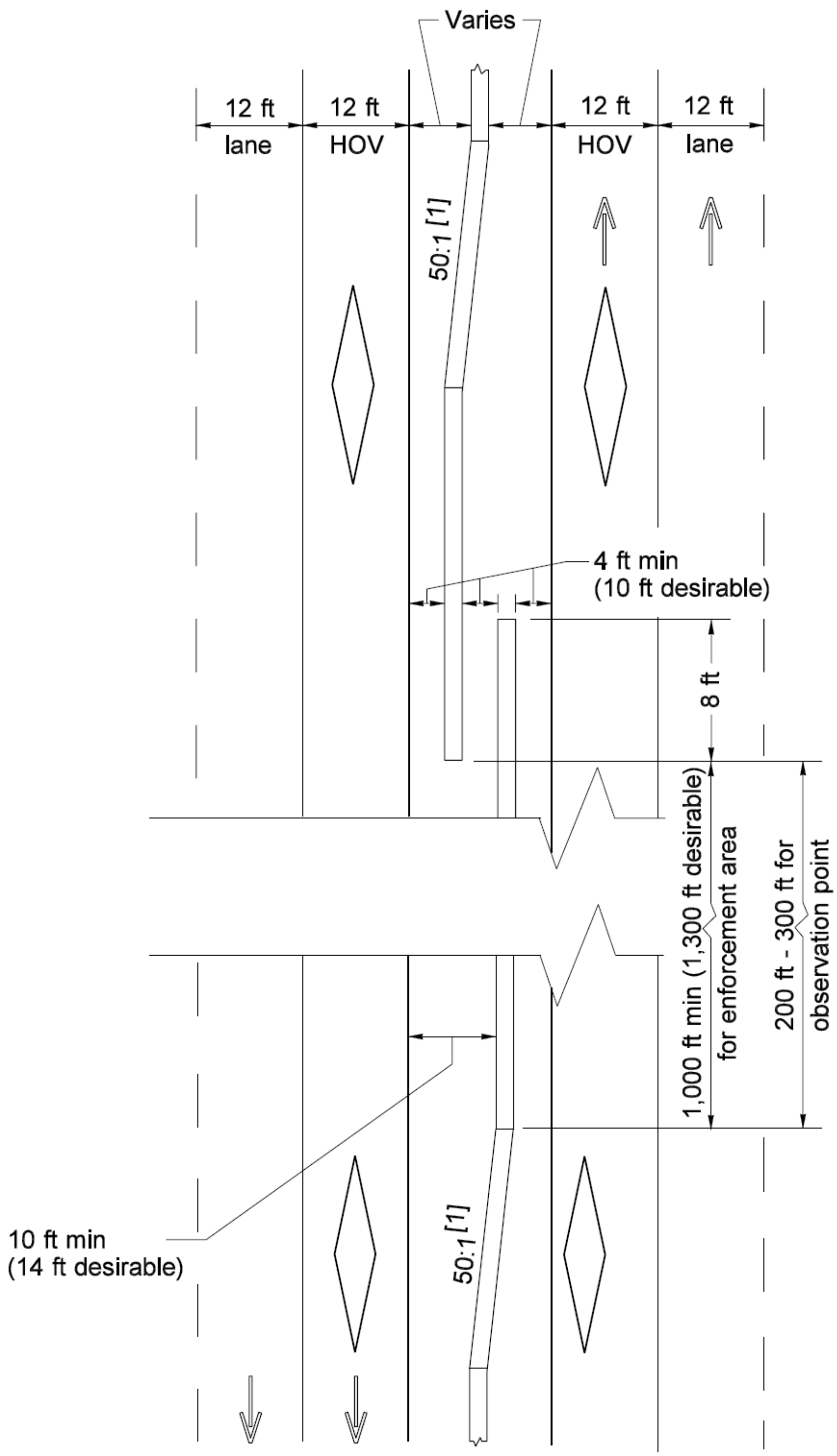
General:

For striping details, see the *Standard Plans*.

Two-Lane Ramp Meter With HOV Bypass
Exhibit 1410-4b



Enforcement Area: One Direction Only
Exhibit 1410-5a



Note:

[1] For median width transition, see Chapter 1210.

Enforcement Area: Median

Exhibit 1410-5b

Chapter 1420 HOV Direct Access

1420.01 General
1420.02 References
1420.03 Definitions
1420.04 HOV Access Types and Locations
1420.05 Direct Access Geometrics
1420.06 Passenger Access
1420.07 Traffic Design Elements
1420.08 Documentation

1420.01 General

This chapter provides Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) design guidance for left-side direct access facilities for high-occupancy vehicles (HOVs) between freeway HOV lanes and flyer stops within the freeway right of way or facilities outside of the right of way. Design right-side HOV-only access facilities in accordance with Chapter 1360.

Direct access eliminates the need for left-side HOV lane users to cross the general-purpose lanes to right-side general-purpose ramps. Also, transit vehicles can use the HOV lane and provide service to the HOV direct access facility.

Providing the HOV user access to the inside HOV lane without mixing with the general-purpose traffic saves the user additional travel time and aids in safety, enforcement, incident handling, and overall operation of the HOV facility.

Locations for direct access ramps include HOV facilities on intersecting routes, park & ride lots, flyer stops, and locations with a demonstrated demand. Coordinate with the local transit agencies to identify these key locations. Give priority to locations that serve the greatest number of transit vehicles and other HOVs.

(1) Existing Facilities

Design HOV direct access facilities such that they do not degrade the existing general-purpose facilities.

When an HOV direct access facility project includes work on the existing facilities, apply the guidance from the New/Reconstruction row of the Interstate Design Matrices and the HOV row of the other matrices in Chapter 1100.

(2) Reviews, Studies, and Reports

The normal project development process is to be followed when developing an HOV direct access project. Despite the unusual nature of the projects that are the focus of this chapter, most facets of the project development process remain unchanged. For example, early coordination with others is a vital part of developing a project. There are also environmental considerations, public involvement, and value engineering studies (see Chapter 310). There may also be reviews, studies, and reports required by agreements with regional transit authorities or other agencies.

Provide an interchange justification report (see Chapter 550) when there is a proposal to add, delete, or change an access point. Provide the operational analysis from the report for all flyer stops. For left-side connections, include the commitment that the connection will be used solely by HOVs or will be closed.

Throughout the project development phase, make sure the project:

- Definition and cost estimate are correct.
- Development process is on schedule.
- Documents are biddable.
- Will be constructible.
- Will be maintainable.

Constructibility of HOV direct access facilities is an important consideration during the design phase. These facilities will typically be constructed on existing highways with traffic maintained on-site. Key goals are to:

- Provide a project that can be built.
- Plan a construction strategy.
- Provide a safe work zone.
- Minimize construction delays.

Consider access to these facilities by maintenance crews. Avoid items that require a significant maintenance effort and might result in lane closure for routine maintenance or repair.

(3) Left-Side Connections

Left-side connections are allowed only when they serve HOVs exclusively and connect to an HOV lane. The higher traffic volume associated with general-purpose traffic is not acceptable for left-side connections. If the demand for an HOV direct access decreases to the point that the HOV direct access connection is no longer desirable, the connection must be closed.

1420.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA)

ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG), The Access Board www.access-board.gov/adaag/html/adaag.htm

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 468-510-010, High occupancy vehicles (HOV)

(2) Design Guidance

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC “Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways” (MUTCD)

Sign Fabrication Manual, M 55-05, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

FHWA/PB, *HOV Interactive 1.0 High Occupancy Vehicle Data Base from the U.S., Canada and Europe* (CD ROM), USDOT, FHWA and Parsons Brinkerhoff

Bus Use of Highways: Planning and Design Guidelines, NCHRP 155

Guide for the Design of High-Occupancy Vehicle (HOV) Facilities, AASHTO

High-Occupancy Vehicle Facilities: A Planning, Design, and Operation Manual, Parsons Brinckerhoff

HOV Systems Manual, NCHRP 414

"Transit Implications of HOV Facility Design," WA-RD 396.1, September 1996, WSDOT and USDOT, Federal Transit Administration

1420.03 Definitions

flyer stop A transit stop inside the limited access boundaries.

high-occupancy vehicle (HOV) A vehicle that meets the occupancy requirements of the facility as authorized by WAC 468-510-010.

HOV direct access facility A ramp and its connection directly to an HOV lane, exclusively for the use of high-occupancy vehicles to move between the ramp and the HOV lane without weaving across general-purpose lanes.

intelligent transportation systems (ITS) An integrated system of advanced sensor, computer, electronics, and communication technologies and management strategies, used to increase the safety and efficiency of the surface transportation system.

ramp A short roadway connecting a main lane of a highway with another facility, such as a road, parking lot, or transit stop, for vehicular use.

ramp connection The pavement at the end of a ramp, connecting to a main lane of a highway.

ramp terminal The end of a ramp at a local street or road, transit stop, or park & ride lot.

transit stop A facility for loading and unloading passengers that is set aside for the use of transit vehicles only.

transit vehicle A bus or other motor vehicle that provides public transportation (usually operated by a public agency).

1420.04 HOV Access Types and Locations

To provide direct access for high-occupancy vehicles from the HOV lane to a passenger loading facility, there are many options and many constraints. Following are some of the options (selected as being usable on Washington's freeways) and constraints regarding their use.

To select an option, first establish the need, choose possible locations, evaluate site features (such as terrain, existing structures, median widths), and evaluate existing HOV information (such as lanes, park & ride facilities, transit routes and schedules, and origin and destination studies). Choose a location that meets access point spacing requirements and will not degrade traffic operations on the main line.

Important constraints to transit stop designs are:

- Passenger access routes and waiting areas are separated from freeway traffic.
- Passenger access to a bus is on its right side only.
- Passenger access to a loading platform must accommodate the disabled.

(1) Freeway Ramp Connection Locations

(a) Spacing

For minimum ramp connection spacing, see Chapter 1360. When evaluating the spacing of left-side direct access ramps, include only left-side connections.

Traffic operations can be degraded by the weaving caused by a left-side on-connection followed closely by a right-side off-connection (or a right-side on-connection followed by a left-side off-connection). As a general rule, if the spacing between the HOV direct access ramp and the general-purpose ramp is less than one gap acceptance length (see 1420.05(6)(c)) per lane, make the HOV lane buffer-separated (see Chapter 1410).

Conduct an analysis to make certain that the new ramp will not degrade traffic operations. (See Chapter 550 for the studies and report required for a new access point.)

When an off-connection follows an on-connection, provide full speed-change lane lengths and tapers or at least sufficient distance for full speed-change lanes that connect at full width with no tapers (see 1420.05(6) and (7)). An auxiliary lane can be used to connect full-width speed-change lanes if there is not sufficient distance for both tapers.

(b) Sight Distance

Locate both on- and off-connections to the main line where decision sight distance exists on the main line (see Chapter 1260).

(2) Ramp Terminal Locations

(a) Local Streets and Roads

Access to the hov lane can be provided by a ramp that terminates at a local street or road. The local street or road may incorporate HOV lanes, but they are not required. (See 1420.07 for signing and pavement markings.)

Consider traffic operations on the local road. locate the terminal where:

- It has the least impact on the local road.
- Intersection spacing criteria are satisfied.
- Queues from adjacent intersections do not block the ramp.
- Queues at the ramp do not block adjacent intersections.
- Wrong-way movements are discouraged.

When off-ramps and on-ramps are opposite each other on the local road, consider incorporating a transit stop with the intersection.

(b) **Park & Ride Lots**

HOV direct access ramps that connect the hov lane with a park & ride lot provide easy access for express transit vehicles between the hov lane and a local service transit stop at the park & ride facility. Other hov traffic using the access ramp enters through the park & ride lot, which can create operational conflicts.

(c) **Flyer Stops**

Median flyer stops do not provide general access to the HOV lane. Access is from the HOV lane to the transit stop and back to the HOV lane. No other vehicle access is provided. Ramps to and from the flyer stops are restricted to transit vehicles only.

(3) Ramp Types

(a) **Drop Ramps**

Drop ramps are generally straight, stay in the median, and connect the HOV lane with a local road or flyer stop (see Exhibit 1420-3).

(b) **T Ramps**

A T ramp is a median ramp that serves all four HOV access movements and comes to a T intersection within the median, usually on a structure. The structure then carries the HOV ramp over the freeway to a local road or directly to a park & ride lot (see Exhibit 1420-4). Through traffic is not permitted at the T; therefore, flyer stops are not allowed.

(c) **Flyover Ramps**

A flyover ramp is designed to accommodate high-speed traffic by using flat curves as the ramp crosses from the median over one direction of the freeway to a local road, a park & ride lot, or an HOV lane on another freeway (see Exhibit 1420-5).

(4) Transit Stops

(a) **Flyer Stops**

Flyer stops are transit stops inside the limited access boundaries for use by express transit vehicles using the freeway. They may be located in the median at the same grade as the main roadway or on a structure, on a ramp, or on the right-side of the main line.

The advantage of a median flyer stop is that it reduces the time for express transit vehicles to serve intermediate destinations. A disadvantage is that passengers travel greater distances to reach the loading platform.

With left-side HOV lanes, flyer stops located on the right side increase the delay to the express transit vehicles by requiring them to cross the general-purpose lanes. However, these stops improve passenger access from that side of the freeway.

For additional design information, see Chapter 1430.

1. **Side-Platform Flyer Stops**

   Side-platform flyer stops are normally located in the median (Exhibit 1420-6) and have two passenger loading platforms, one on each side between the bus loading lane and the through HOV lane. This design provides the most direct movement for the express transit vehicle and is the desirable design for median flyer stops.

   This design is relatively wide. Where space is a concern, consider staggering the loading platforms longitudinally.

   Consider tall barrier to divide the directions of travel or staggering the loading platforms to discourage unauthorized at-grade movement of passengers from one platform to the other (see 1420.07(1)).

2. **At-Grade Passenger Crossings**

   This design is similar to the side-platform flyer stop, except that passengers are allowed to cross, from one platform to the other, at grade (Exhibit 1420-7). This design might eliminate the need for passenger access to one of the loading platforms with a ramp or an elevator, and it simplifies transfers. The passenger crossing necessitates providing a gap in the barrier for the crosswalk.

   Only transit vehicles are allowed. Passenger/pedestrian accommodations must comply with the ADA.

   Consider an at-grade passenger crossing flyer stop only when passenger volumes are expected to be low. Design at-grade passenger crossing flyer stops as the first stage of the stop, with the ultimate design being side-platform flyer stops with grade-separated access to both platforms.

3. **Ramp Flyer Stops**

   When ramp flyer stops are located on an HOV direct access drop ramp (see Exhibit 1420-8), the delay for the express transit vehicle will not be much more than for a median stop, and passenger access and connectivity to local service transit routes, on the local street or road, are improved. A flyer stop on a right-side ramp works well with right-side HOV lanes and diamond interchanges in which express transit vehicles can use the off-ramp to connect with a bus route on the local road and the on-ramp to return to the HOV lane. However, a stop on a general-purpose right-side ramp with a left-side HOV lane will increase the delay by requiring the express transit vehicle to use the general-purpose lanes and possibly degrade main line traffic operations by increasing weaving movements.

(b) **Off-Line Transit Stops**

1. **Park & Ride Stops**

   Transit stops located at park & ride lots provide transfer points between the express transit system and the local transit system, and there is convenient passenger access to the park & ride lot. When a direct access ramp is provided, express transit delays from the HOV lane to the stop are reduced. These delays can be reduced more by providing a median flyer stop with passenger access facilities connecting the park & ride lot to the flyer stop; however, this might be more inconvenient for the passengers.

2. **Stops at Flyer Stop Passenger Access Points**

   To minimize the passenger travel distance between express and local service transit stops, locate local system transit stops near passenger access facilities for the flyer stops (see Exhibit 1420-9).

(5) Enforcement Areas

Enforcing the vehicle occupancy requirement helps the HOV facilities function as intended. Law enforcement officers need areas for observation that are near pull-out areas where both the violator and the officer can pull safely out of the traffic flow.

Consider locating observation and pull-out areas near any point where violators can enter or exit an HOV direct access facility. Examples of potential locations are:

- Freeway on- and off-connections for HOV direct access ramps.
- HOV direct access ramp terminals at parking lots.

For freeway HOV lanes, locate enforcement areas on the adjacent shoulders so officers and violators are not required to cross several lanes of traffic.

Enforcement area guidance and designs are in Chapter 1410.

1420.05 Direct Access Geometrics

HOV direct access ramps are different than other ramps because they are frequently on the left side of the through lanes and they have a high percentage of buses. Design right-side HOV direct access using the procedures given in Chapter 1360. The following procedures are for the design of left-side HOV direct access.

Because left-side ramps are rare and therefore less expected, signing is an important issue. (For signing guidance, see 1420.07(2).)

When the bus percentage is high, there are several considerations:

- When a bus enters the through lanes from the left, the driver has a relatively poor view of the through traffic.
- A bus requires a longer distance to accelerate than other vehicles.
- A bus requires a longer deceleration length for passenger comfort.

(1) Design Vehicles

Use the following design vehicles for left-side HOV direct access facilities:

- Use AASHTO’s A-BUS vehicle for horizontal design.
- Use AASHTO’s BUS vehicle for vertical clearance 13.5 feet.
- Use AASHTO’s P vehicle for stopping sight distance.

Refer to Chapters 1310 and 1430 for vehicle descriptions, dimensions, and turning templates.

(2) Design Speeds

Refer to Chapter 1360 for the design speeds for ramps. Use the design speed of the general-purpose lanes for the main line design speed.

(3) Sight Distance

Provide stopping sight distance in accordance with Chapter 1260. This provides sight distance for an automobile. The longer distance needed for a bus to stop is compensated for by the greater eye height of the driver, with the resulting vertical curve length about equal to that for an automobile.

Sag vertical curves may be shortened where necessary. (See Chapter 1220 for guidance.)

(4) Grades

Grades for ramps are covered in Chapter 1360. Deviations will be considered for:

- Downgrade on-ramps with grades increased by an additional 1%.
- Upgrade off-ramps with grades increased by an additional 2%.

These increased grades help when geometrics are restricted and assist transit vehicles with the acceleration when entering and the deceleration when exiting the freeway.

(5) Ramp Widths

(a) Lane Widths

Use widths for separated roadway HOV facilities. (See Minimum Traveled Way Widths for Articulated Buses in Chapter 1410.)

On tangents, the minimum lane width may be reduced to 12 feet.

(b) Shoulder Widths

Ramp shoulder width criteria are modified as follows:

- The minimum width for the sum of the two shoulders is 10 feet for one-lane ramps and 12 feet for two or more lanes.
- The minimum width for one of the shoulders is 8 feet for disabled vehicles. The minimum for the other shoulder is 2 feet. (See Chapter 1610 for shy distance at barrier.)
- The wider shoulder may be on the left or the right. Maintain the wide shoulder on the same side throughout the ramp.

(c) Total Ramp Widths

Make the total width of the ramp (lane width plus shoulders) wide enough to allow an A-BUS to pass a stalled A-BUS. This width has two components:

- The vehicle width (U = 8.5 feet on tangent) for each vehicle.
- Lateral clearance (C = 2 feet) for each vehicle.

The vehicle width and the lateral clearance are about the width of an A-BUS from edge of mirror to edge of mirror.

Exhibit 1420-1 gives the minimum ramp width (W_R), including shoulders, at various radii (R) for an articulated bus. For ramp locations on a tangent section or on a curve with a radius greater than 150 feet, consider the W_R width when requesting a reduced lane or shoulder width. For ramp curves with a radius less than 150 feet, check the total ramp width and, if necessary, widen the shoulders to provide the W_R width.

R (ft)*	W_R (ft)
Tangent	21
500	23
400	23
300	24
200	26
150	27
100	30
75	34
50	40

* R is to the curve inside edge of traveled way

Minimum Ramp Widths for Articulated Buses
Exhibit 1420-1

(6) On-Connections

(a) Parallel On-Connections

For left-side on-connections, use the parallel on-connection (see Exhibit 1420-10).

A parallel on-connection adds a parallel lane that is long enough for the merging vehicle to accelerate in the lane and then merge with the through traffic. This merge is similar to a lane change and the driver can use side and rear view mirrors to advantage.

(b) Acceleration Lanes

Exhibit 1420-11 gives the minimum acceleration lane length (L_A) for left-side HOV direct access on-connections.

The buses using HOV direct access ramps merge with high-speed traffic. Acceleration lanes that are longer than normally used are needed.

For left-side on-connections, provide at least the normal 10 feet (14 feet desirable) wide left shoulder for the main line for a minimum length of 500 feet (1000 feet desirable) beyond the end of the on-connection taper. This gives additional room for enforcement, merging, and erratic maneuvers.

(c) Gap Acceptance Length

Gap acceptance length is a minimum distance traveled while a merging driver finds a gap in the through traffic and begins the merge. For left-side parallel on-connections, the gap acceptance length is added to the acceleration length. The L_g values are given in Exhibit 1420-2. These values are larger than for right-side on-connections to account for drivers' visibility constraints.

Highway Posted Speed (mph)	Gap Acceptance Length, Lg (ft)
45	550
50	625
55	700
60	775
65	850
70	925

Gap Acceptance Length for Parallel On-Connections
Exhibit 1420-2

(d) **Urban On-Connection Design**

Design left-side HOV direct access on-connections in urban areas as follows:

1. Use the parallel design for left-side on-connections.
2. Add the Gap Acceptance Length for Parallel On-Connections (see Exhibit 1420-2) for a freeway speed of 60 mph to the acceleration length.
3. Use Acceleration Length for Buses (see Exhibit 1420-11) with a 60 mph freeway speed and the ramp design speed (see 1420.05(2)) for acceleration length.

(e) **Rural On-Connection Design**

Design left-side HOV direct access on-connections in rural areas using a freeway design speed as given in Chapter 1140.

(7) Off-Connections

(a) **Parallel Off-Connection**

The parallel off-connection (see Exhibit 1420-12) is desirable for left-side direct access off-connections. For freeway-to-freeway off-connections, provide a parallel lane with a length sufficient for signing and deceleration. The desirable minimum length is not less than the gap acceptance length (see Exhibit 1420-2).

(b) **Tapered Off-Connection**

The tapered off-connection may be used, with justification, for off-connections. (See Chapter 1360 for the design of tapered off-connections.)

(c) **Deceleration Lanes**

Bus passenger comfort requires longer deceleration lanes. Use the deceleration lane lengths from Exhibit 1420-14 for HOV direct access facilities.

(d) **Urban Off-Connection Design**

Design left-side HOV direct access off-connections in urban areas as follows:

1. Either the parallel (desirable) or the taper (with justification) design may be used.
2. Use the longer deceleration length of: the Deceleration Length for Buses (see Exhibit 1420-14) from a 60 mph freeway speed to the ramp design speed (see 1420.05(2)) or the Minimum Deceleration Length given in Chapter 1360 from the freeway design speed to the ramp design speed.

(e) **Rural Off-Connection Design**

Design left-side HOV direct access off-connections in rural areas using a freeway design speed as given in Chapter 1140.

(8) Vertical Clearance

Vertical clearance for a structure over a road is measured from the lower roadway surface, including the usable shoulders, to the bottom of the overhead structure.

Refer to Chapter 720 for information on vertical clearance. For a new structure and for a new ramp under an existing structure, the minimum vertical clearance is 16.5 feet. A deviation will be considered for a 14.5-foot minimum vertical clearance for a new HOV direct access ramp under an existing bridge.

The minimum vertical clearance for a pedestrian grade separation over any road is 17.5 feet.

(9) Flyer Stops

Design flyer-stop ramp on-connections as given in 1420.05(6), and design off-connections as given in 1420.05(7). Flyer stop connections are included in the access point spacing discussed in 1420.04(1)(a).

Design the ramp to the flyer stop in accordance with 1420.05(3), 1420.05(4), and 1420.05(5).

The minimum width for the roadway at a flyer stop is 24 feet.

When a flyer stop is in the median, provide enough median width for the flyer stop roadway, the passenger facilities, and barrier separation without reducing the width of the through lanes or shoulders (see 1420.06).

The approval of a flyer stop requires the operational analysis portion of the interchange justification report (see Chapter 550).

(10) T Ramps

A T ramp example and design is shown in Exhibit 1420-15.

1420.06 Passenger Access

When designing transit stops, include accessibility (compliance with the ADA), safety, and the comfort of passengers. Minimize pedestrian/vehicle conflict points. Design the whole facility with security in mind by keeping lines of sight as open as possible. Traffic barriers, fencing, illumination, landscaping, seating, windscreens, shelters, enclosed walkways, telephones, and posted schedules are examples of items that contribute to passenger safety and well-being. (See Chapter 1430 for passenger amenities at transit stops.)

(1) Passengers

To encourage use of the passenger access facility for an express transit stop, provide a route that is the shortest distance to travel from the park & ride lot or local transit stop. Failure to do so might generate the use of undesirable shortcuts. To encourage local use of the passenger access facilities, provide direct access from surrounding neighborhoods.

Provide grade separations for pedestrian access to transit stops in the median. Consider stairways, ramps, elevators, and escalators, but provide at least one access for the disabled at every loading platform, as required by the American with Disabilities Act of 1990. (See Chapter 1510 for guidance when designing pedestrian grade separations.)

The ADA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities states: "Platform edges bordering a drop-off and not protected by platform screens or guard rails shall have a detectable warning … 24 inches wide running the full length of the platform drop-off." (See the *Standard Plans* for the detectable warning pattern.)

At transit stops, at-grade crosswalks are only permitted in the at-grade crossing flyer stop layout described in 1420.04(4)(a)2. Use traffic calming techniques, such as horizontal alignment, textured pavement and crosswalk markings, barrier openings, and other treatments, to channelize pedestrian movements and slow the transit vehicle's movements. Illuminate transit stop crosswalks (see Chapter 1040).

Where at-grade crosswalks are not permitted, take steps to minimize unauthorized at-grade crossings. Fencing, taller concrete traffic barrier, enclosed walkways, and ramps are examples of steps that may be taken.

(2) Bicycles

Bike lanes on nearby streets and separate trails encourage people to bicycle from surrounding neighborhoods. Provide these bicyclists direct access to passenger access facilities.

Design bicycle access facilities in conjunction with the access for the disabled (see Chapters 1510 and 1520).

Locate bicycle parking outside of the passenger walkways (see Chapter 1430).

Locations near colleges and universities and locations with good bicycle access, especially near trails, will attract bicyclists. Contact the region Bicycle Coordinator for information on the predicted number of bicycle parking spaces needed and the types of bicycle racks available.

1420.07 Traffic Design Elements

Traffic design elements are critical to the safe and efficient use of HOV direct access facilities. The following discusses the elements of traffic design that might be different for HOV direct access facilities.

(1) Traffic Barriers

Separate the main line from the HOV direct access facilities with a traffic barrier. Whenever possible, separate opposing traffic lanes in the facility by using traffic barrier (see Chapter 1610). This is especially important in areas where opposing traffic is changing speeds to or from main line speeds. Concrete barrier is generally desirable on these facilities due to lower maintenance requirements.

Provide crashworthy end treatments to the approach ends of traffic barriers. In areas where the operating speed is greater than 35 mph, provide an impact attenuator (see Chapter 1620). Consider concrete barrier and low-maintenance impact attenuators, such as the REACT 350 or QuadGuard Elite, where there is a potential for frequent impacts (such as in gore areas).

When the operating speed is 25 mph or lower, and where an at-grade pedestrian crossing transit stop has an opening in a concrete barrier, a sloped-down end as shown in the *Standard Plans* is acceptable.

When providing a break in the barrier for turning maneuvers, consider sight distance when determining the location for stopping the barrier (see Chapter 1260).

In areas where headlight glare is a concern, consider glare screens such as taller concrete barrier. Other glare screen options that mount on the top of a barrier tend to be high-maintenance items and are discouraged.

Taller barrier might also be desirable in areas where pedestrian access is discouraged, such as between opposing flyer stops or between a flyer stop and the main line.

(2) Signing

Design and place HOV signing to clearly indicate whether the signs are intended for motorists in the HOV lane or the general-purpose lanes. The purposes of the signs are to:

- Enhance safety.
- Convey the message that HOV lanes are restricted to HOVs.
- Provide clear directions for entrances and exits.
- Define vehicle occupancy requirements or other restrictions.

Because HOV facilities are not found in many regions, the signing not only considers the commuter but also the occasional user of the facility who might be unfamiliar with the HOV facility and its operation.

(a) **Safety**

Much of HOV signing relates to enhancing safety for motorists. Not only are geometrics often minimized due to the lack of right of way, but there are unusual operational characteristics such as the differential speed between the HOV vehicle and the adjacent general-purpose traffic. To allow for the lack of passing opportunities in the HOV lane and the necessity for frequent merging and weaving actions, use messages that are clear and concise, and use symbols wherever possible.

Because left-side off-connections are unusual, advance warning signing alerting the motorist that an exit is on the left becomes more important.

For T ramps, provide traffic control at the T to assign priority to one of the conflicting left-turn movements and to avert wrong-way movements.

(b) **Diamond Symbols**

The diamond symbol is used to designate HOV facilities where carpools are allowed. For all signs, whether regulatory, guide, or warning, the symbol is white on a black background to convey the restrictive nature of the HOV lane and to make the signs more uniformly recognizable. The use of the symbol with all HOV signs also informs drivers that the message is intended for HOVs. The diamond symbol is only for HOV lanes where carpools are allowed; it is not used for bus, taxi, or bicycle preferential lanes.

(c) **Selection and Location**

The signing details given in Exhibits 1420-16 through 20 provide for the HOV geometric configurations used within the right of way. Signing for other types of HOV facilities (such as those used for reversible-flow and for HOV direct access between freeways and temporary HOV lanes used during construction) is designed on a case-by-case basis and requires consultation with the appropriate Headquarters and region traffic personnel. In addition to the normal regulatory signs, include HOV guide signs, both advance and action, in the design of signing for HOV direct access between freeways.

(d) **Regulatory Signs**

Regulatory signs for HOV facilities follow the normal regulatory signing principles: black legend with a white reflective background on a rectangular panel. Keep in mind that messages conveyed by the HOV signs (such as signs concerning violations and those indicating the beginning of an HOV lane downstream) are not necessarily intended only for the HOV vehicle. Therefore, it might be prudent to place additional signs on the right side of the freeway where this conforms to sound engineering practice.

(e) **Guide Signs**

Guide signs for HOV facilities are generally used at intermediate on and off locations to inform HOV motorists of upcoming freeway exits and the appropriate location to exit the HOV lane. For HOV direct access to and from arterials, guide signs are used in a fashion similar to normal arterial interchange signing practice. The guide signs for HOV facilities have a black nonreflective legend on a white reflective background. The exception is the diamond, where the white reflective symbol is on a black nonreflective background. For all HOV-related guide signs, the diamond is placed in the upper left-hand corner of the sign.

(3) Lighting

Provide illumination of HOV direct access ramps, loading platforms at transit stops, major parking lots, and walkways as defined in Chapter 1040.

(4) Intelligent Transportation Systems

Intelligent Transportation Systems (ITS) are used to collect traffic data, maintain freeway flow, and disseminate traveler information. Transit information systems for passengers and transit facility surveillance are not normally a part of WSDOT's system, but implementation of these components may be considered for some locations.

Fully utilize available ITS elements in the design of HOV direct access facilities. Need for ITS elements vary depending on project features, such as facility design and operation, and whether the site has existing ITS components.

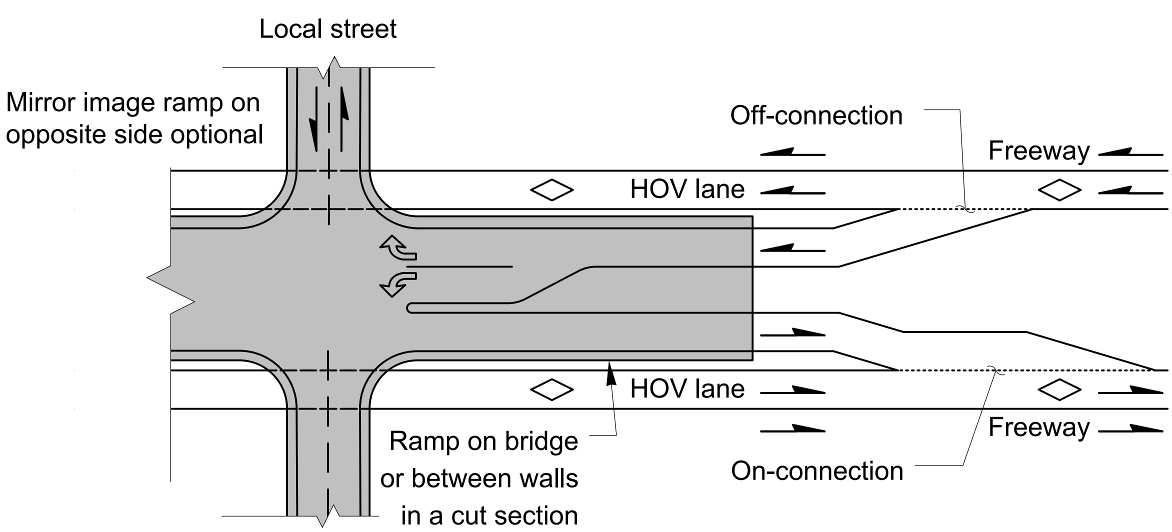
ITS elements that might be applicable to HOV direct access facilities include: closed circuit television surveillance; ramp metering; data collection; exit queue detection and override; dynamic signing; transit signal priority; and automatic vehicle identification and location.

Guidance on the development of ITS elements is found in Chapter 1050. Include the region Traffic Office, transit operator, and affected local agency in the coordination for the design and implementation of ITS.

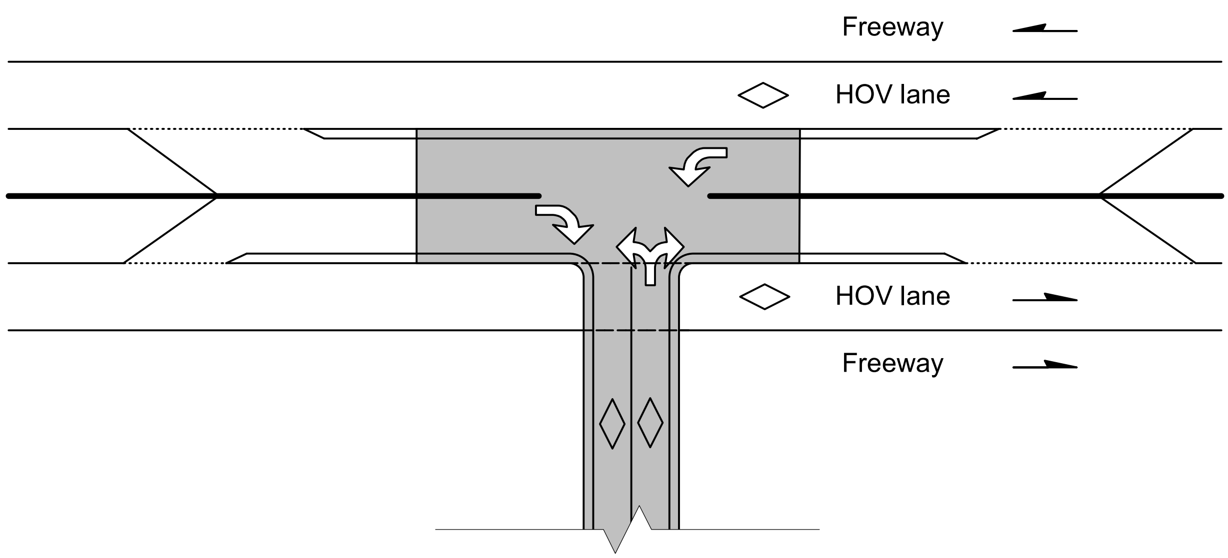
1420.08 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Photograph from FHWA/PB *HOV Interactive 1.0 High Occupancy Vehicle Data Base from the U.S., Canada and Europe*



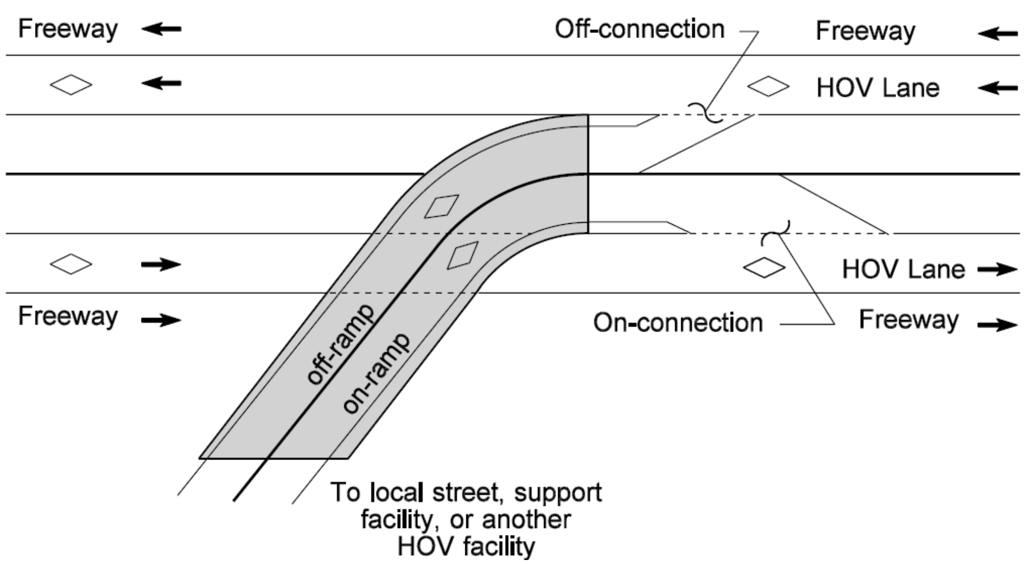
Drop Ramp
Exhibit 1420-3



Note:
Refer to Exhibit 1420-15 for additional design information.

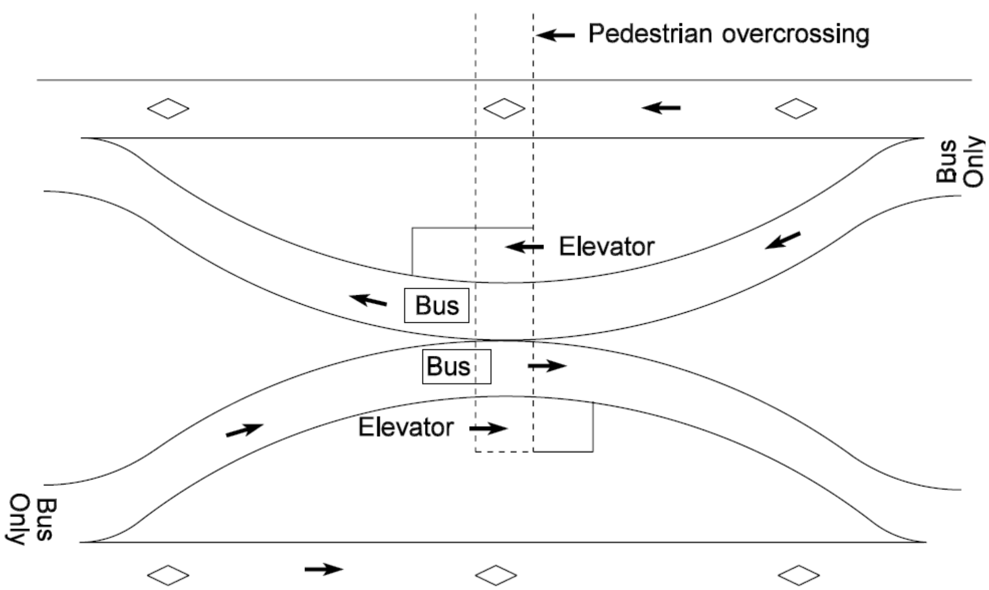
T Ramp
Exhibit 1420-4

Photograph from FHWA/PB *HOV Interactive 1.0 High Occupancy Vehicle Data Base from the U.S., Canada and Europe*



Flyover Ramp
Exhibit 1420-5

Photograph from FHWA/PB *HOV Interactive 1.0 High Occupancy Vehicle Data Base from the U.S., Canada and Europe*

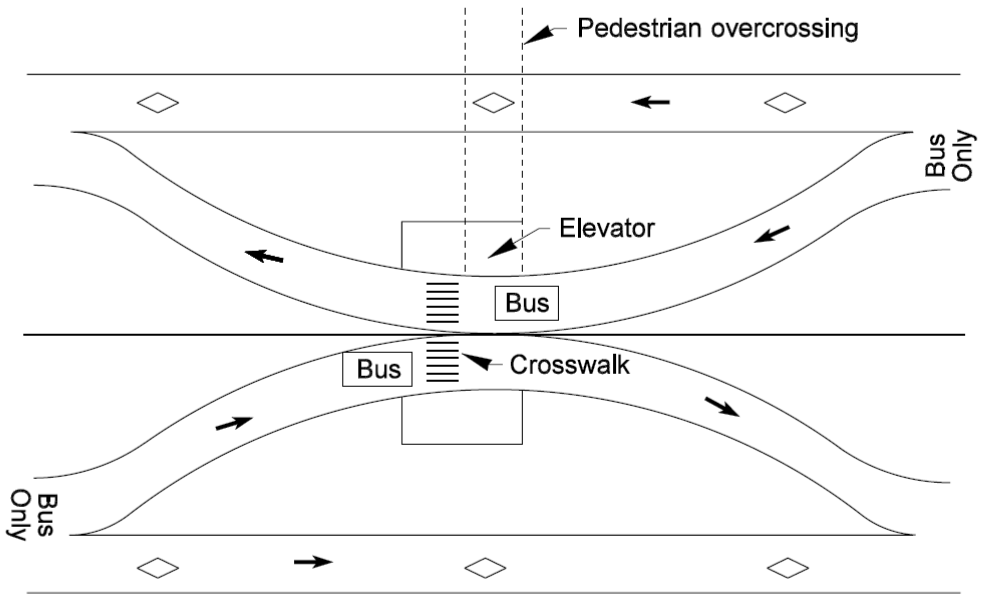


Note:

The side platform flyer stop with grade-separated access to each platform is the preferred design.

Side Platform Flyer Stop

Exhibit 1420-6

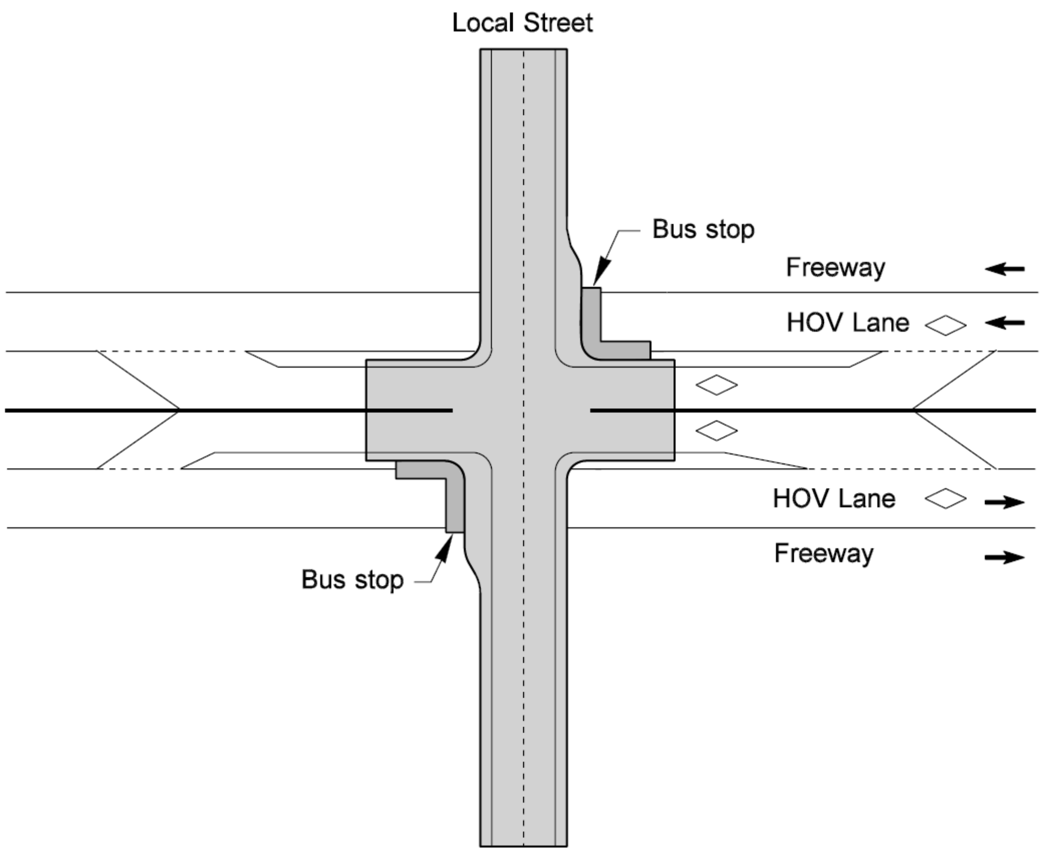


Note:

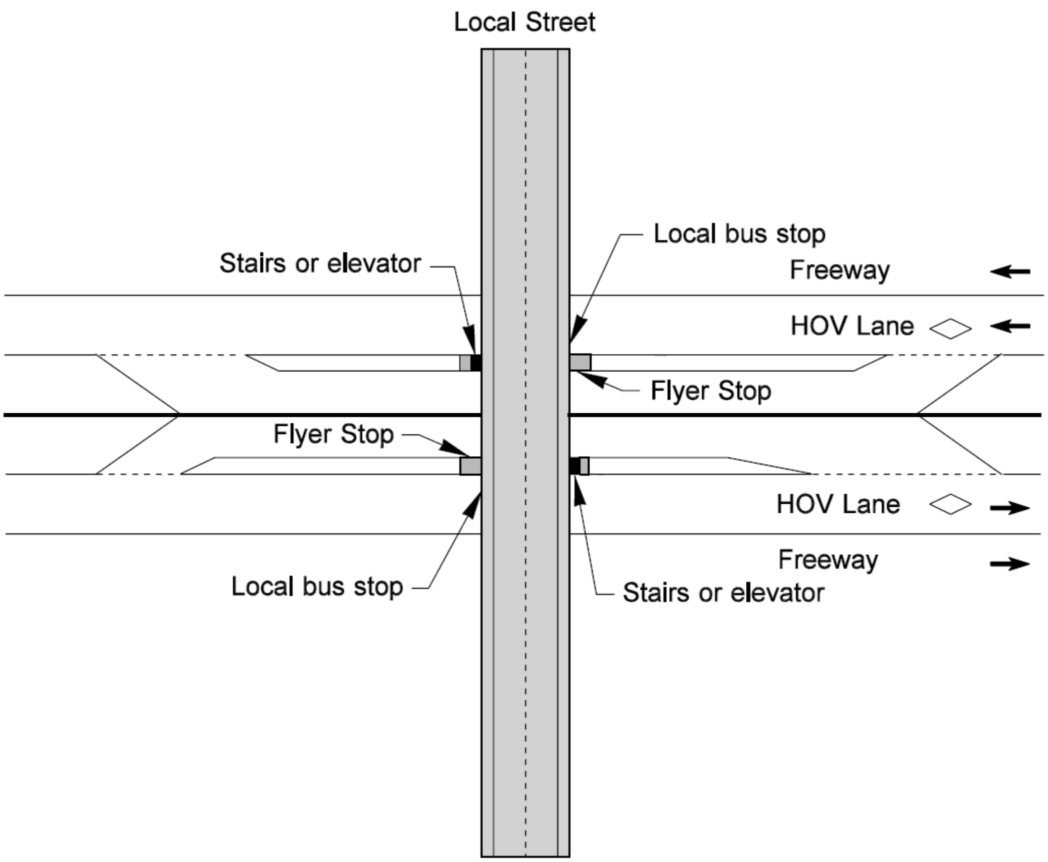
Consider flyer stops with at-grade pedestrian crossing only when anticipated volumes are low. Design to allow for the future addition of grade-separated access to both platforms. (See side platform flyer stop design, Exhibit 1420-6.)

Photograph from FHWA/PB *HOV Interactive 1.0 High Occupancy Vehicle Data Base from the U.S., Canada and Europe*

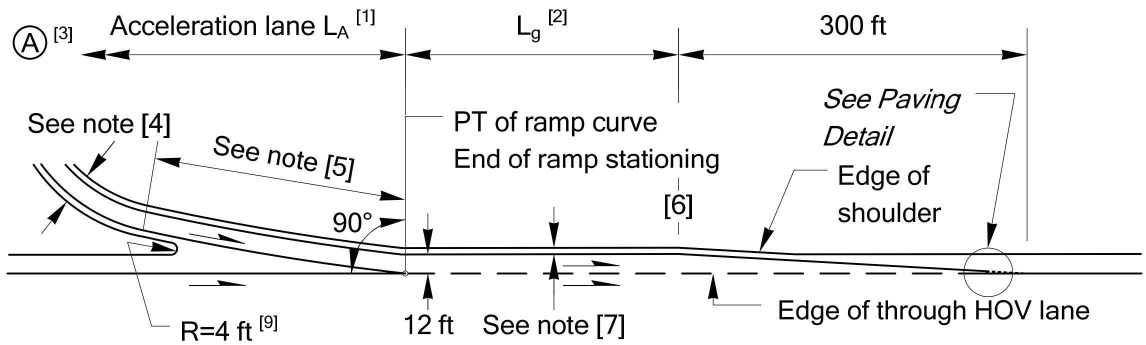
At-Grade Crossing Flyer Stop
Exhibit 1420-7

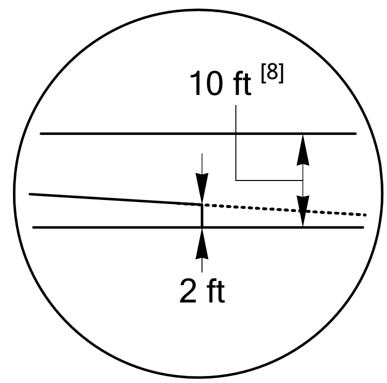


Transit Stops at Ramps
Exhibit 1420-8



Other Transit Stops
Exhibit 1420-9





Paving Detail

Notes:

[1] For acceleration lane length L_A, see Exhibit 1420-11. Check L_A for each ramp design speed.

[2] L_g is the gap acceptance length. Begin L_g at the beginning of the parallel lane, as shown, but not before the end of the acceleration lane L_A. (See Exhibit 1420-2 for the length L_g.)

[3] Point A is the point controlling the ramp design speed or the end of the transit stop zone or other stopping point.

[4] For ramp lane and shoulder widths, see 1420.05(5).

[5] A transition curve with a minimum radius of 3000 ft is desirable. The desirable length is 300 ft. When the main line is on a curve to the right, the transition may vary from a 3000 ft radius to tangent to the main line. The transition curve may be replaced by a 50:1 taper with a minimum length of 300 ft.

[6] Angle point for width transitions, when required. (See Chapter 1210 for pavement transitions.)

[7] For ramp shoulder width, see 1420.05(5)(b).

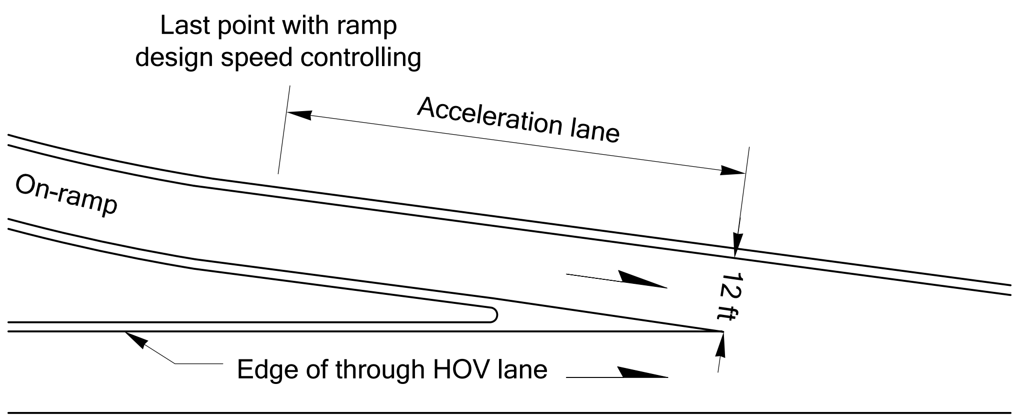
[8] The 10 ft left shoulder is the minimum width; 14 ft is desirable. Maintain this shoulder width for at least 500 ft; 1000 ft is desirable.

[9] Radius may be reduced when concrete barrier is placed between the ramp and main line.

General:

For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

Single-Lane Parallel On-Connection
Exhibit 1420-10



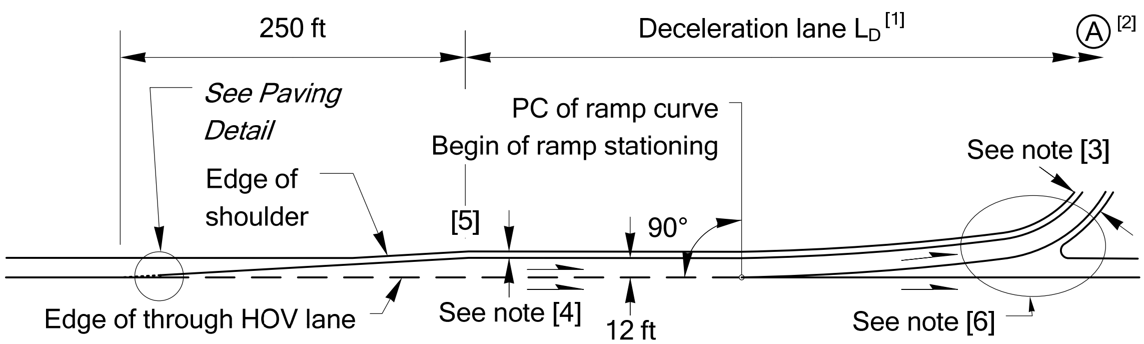
Freeway Speed (mph)	Ramp Design Speed								
	0	**15**	**20**	**25**	**30**	**35**	**40**	**45**	**50**
40	555	480	420	340	185				
45	835	760	700	615	470	290			
50	1230	1160	1100	1020	865	685	310		
55	1785	1715	1655	1575	1420	1235	875	410	
60	2135	2085	2040	1985	1875	1735	1440	995	460
70	3045	3015	2985	2945	2860	2745	2465	2050	1515
80	4505	4465	4420	4370	4250	4095	3745	3315	2780

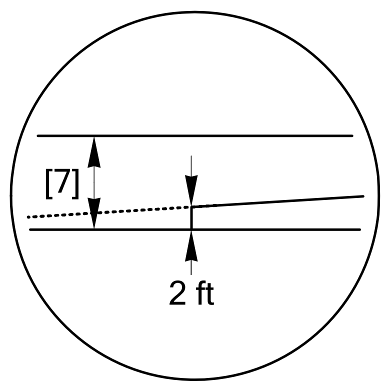
Acceleration Length (L_A) for Buses (ft)

Note:

For the adjustment factors for grade, see acceleration lane in Chapter 1360.

HOV Direct Access Acceleration Lane Length
Exhibit 1420-11





Notes:

[1] For deceleration lane length L_D, see Exhibit 1420-14. Check L_D for each ramp design speed.

[2] Point Ⓐ is the point controlling the ramp design speed or the end of the transit stop zone or other stopping point.

[3] For ramp lane and shoulder widths, see 1420.05(5).

[4] For ramp shoulder width, see 1420.05(5)(b).

[5] Angle point for width transitions, when required. (See Chapter 1210 for pavement transitions.)

[6] Gore area details at drop ramp connections (see Exhibit 1420-3) are shown on Exhibit 1420-13. (See Chapter 1360 for gore details at other connection types.)

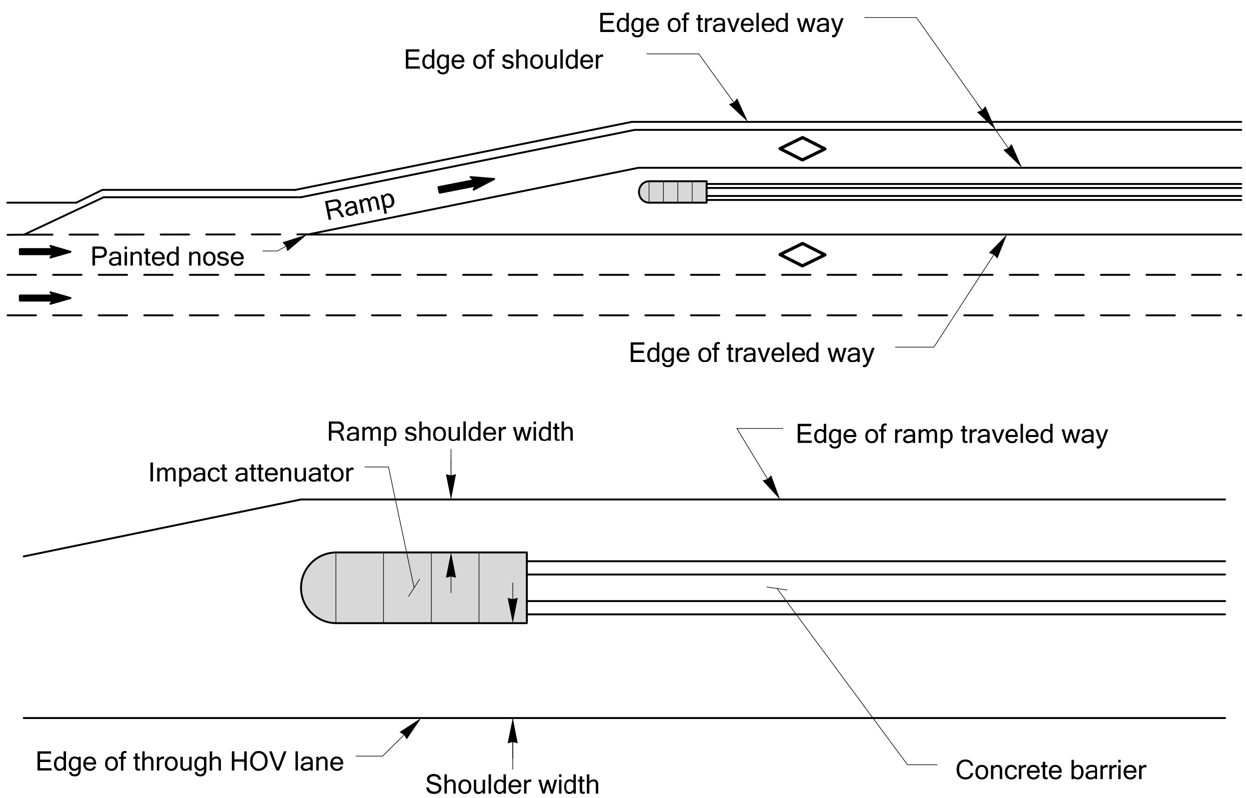
[7] The desirable shoulder width is 10 ft.

General:

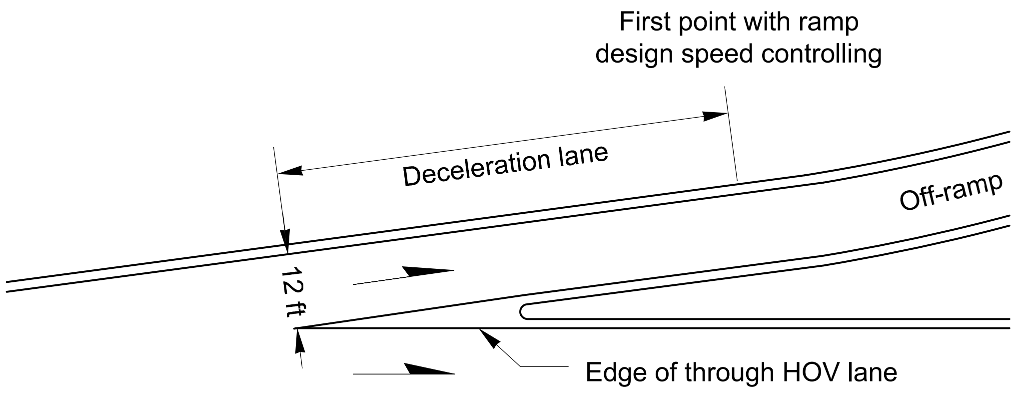
For striping, see the *Standard Plans*.

Single-Lane Parallel Off-Connection

Exhibit 1420-12



Drop Ramp Gore Area Characteristics
Exhibit 1420-13

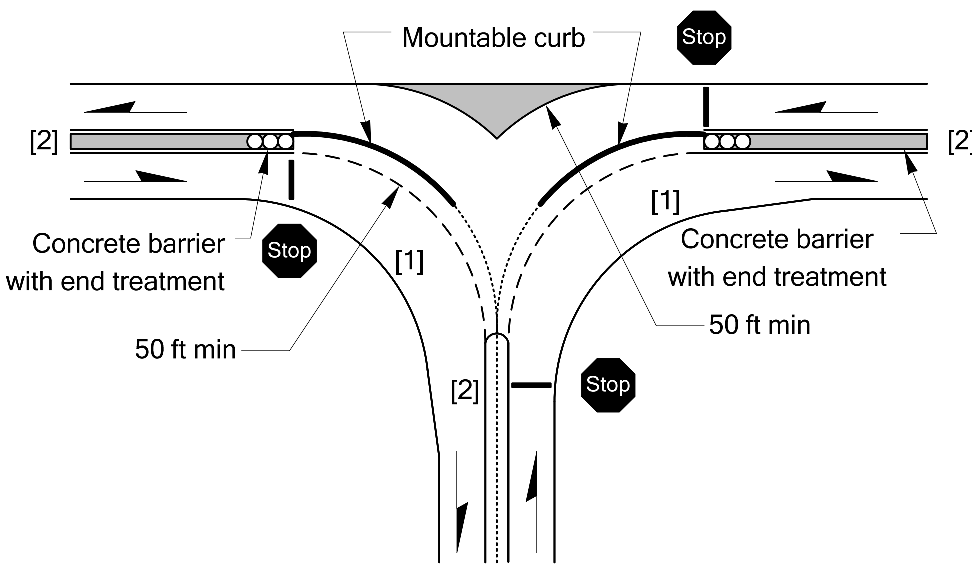


Highway Speed (mph)	Ramp Design Speed (mph)								
	0	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
40	390	330	290	240	170	100			
45	470	420	380	330	260	190	90		
50	570	520	480	430	360	290	190	100	
55	680	620	590	540	470	400	300	210	110
60	800	740	700	660	580	520	420	330	230
70	990	930	900	850	780	710	610	520	420
80	1210	1150	1110	1060	990	920	830	740	640

Deceleration Length (L_D) for Buses (ft)

Note:
For the adjustment factors for grade, see deceleration lane in Chapter 1360.

Deceleration Lane Length for Buses
Exhibit 1420-14

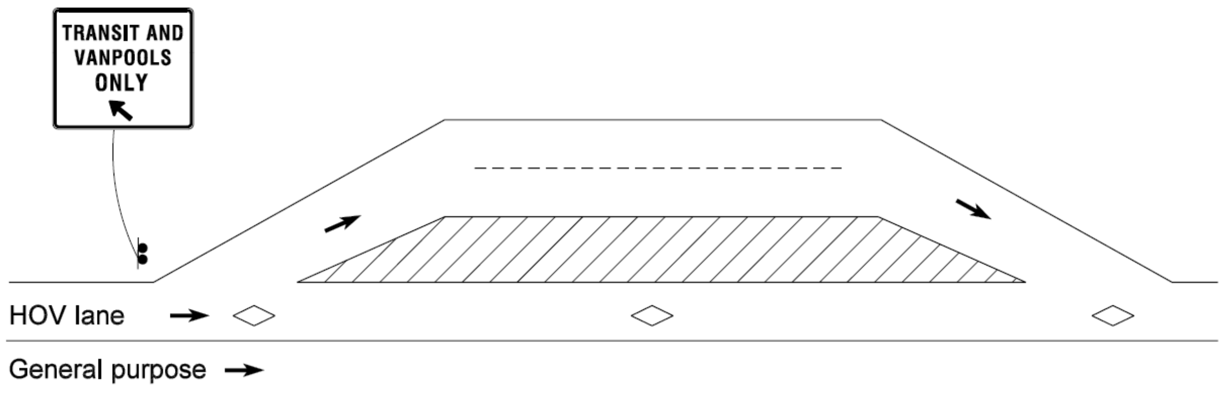


Notes:

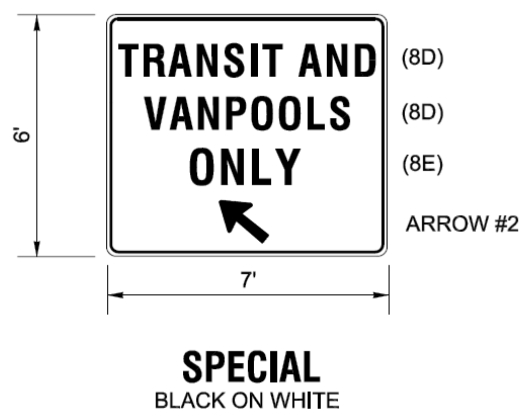
[1] For intersection corner design, see Chapter 1310. Use the right-turn corner design for the WB-40 for both the left and right turns.

[2] For ramp lane and shoulder widths, see 1420.05(5).

T Ramp Design
Exhibit 1420-15

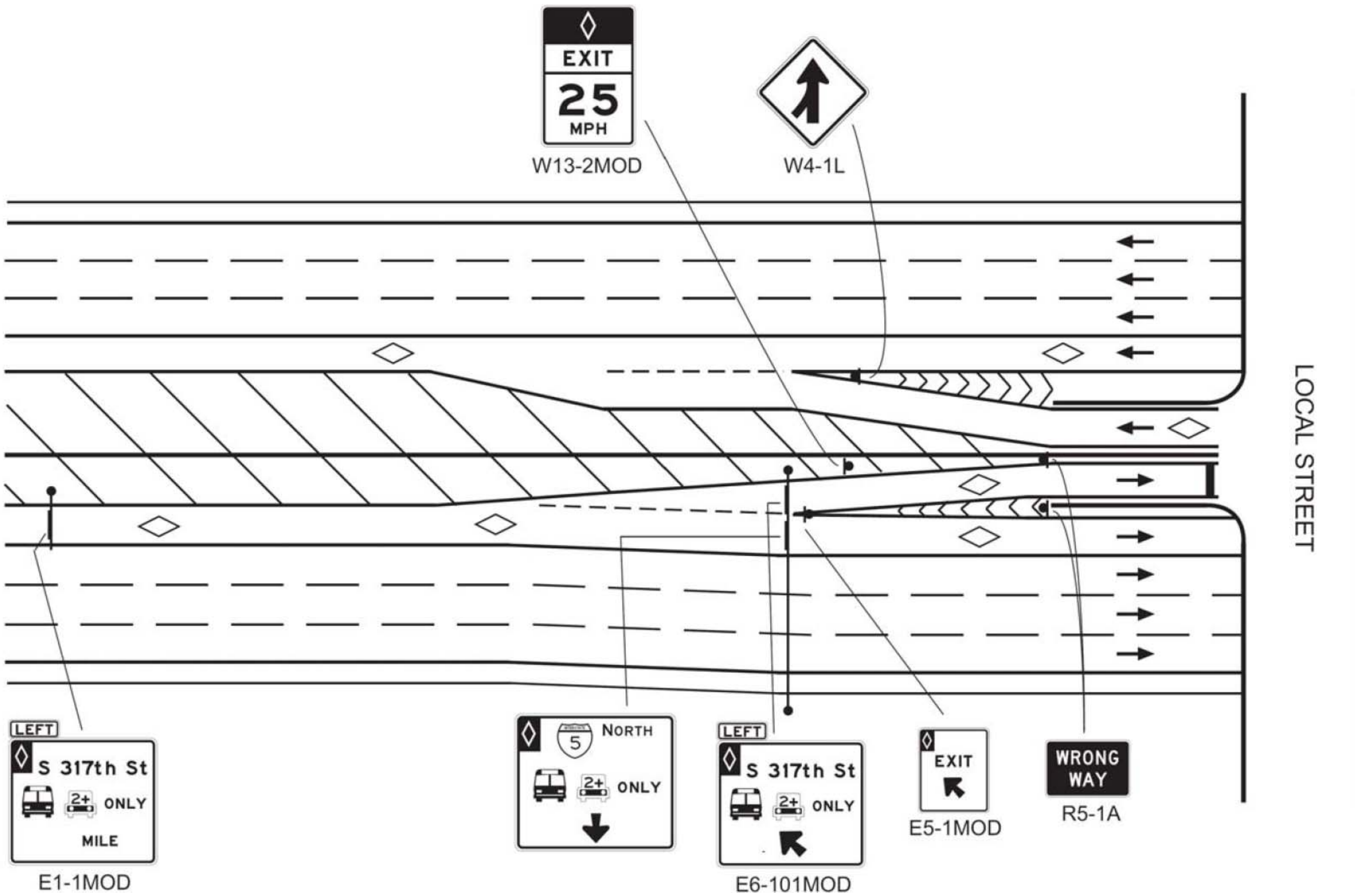


Typical Signing for Flyer Stop



Special Flyer Stop Sign

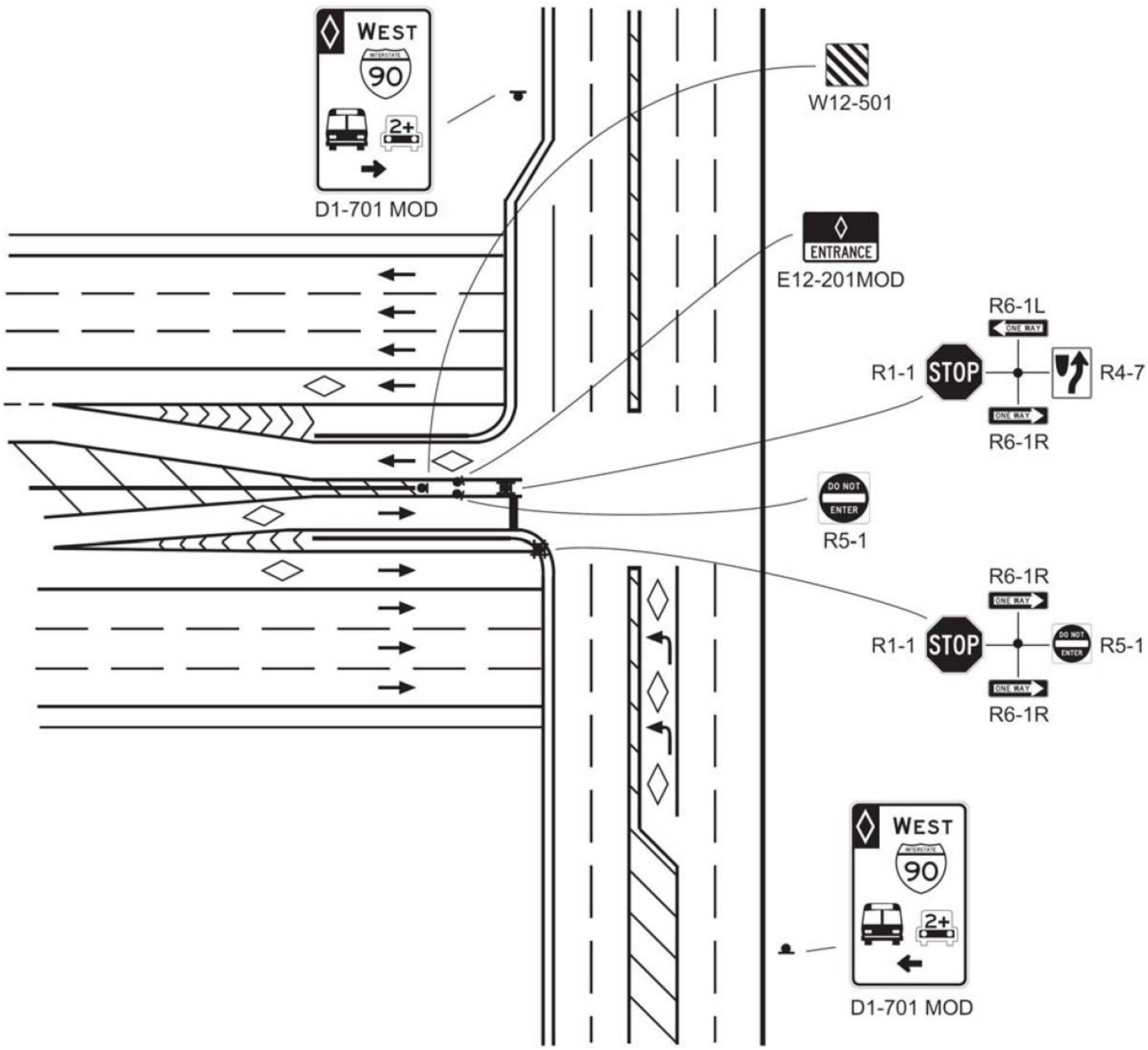
Flyer Stop Signing
Exhibit 1420-16



Notes:

- Place signs in accordance with the MUTCD.
- For non-HOV sign details, see the *Sign Fabrication Manual*.
- For modified sign details, see Exhibits 1420-19 and 1420-20.

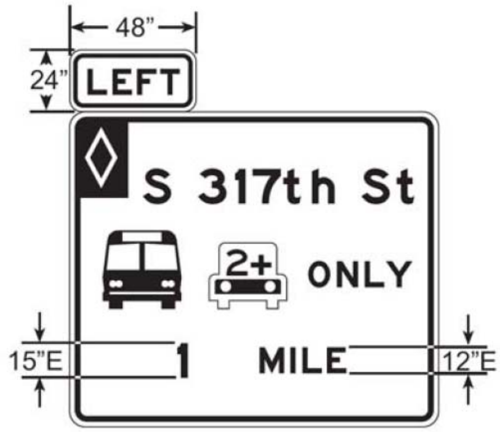
HOV Direct Access Signing: Main Line
Exhibit 1420-17



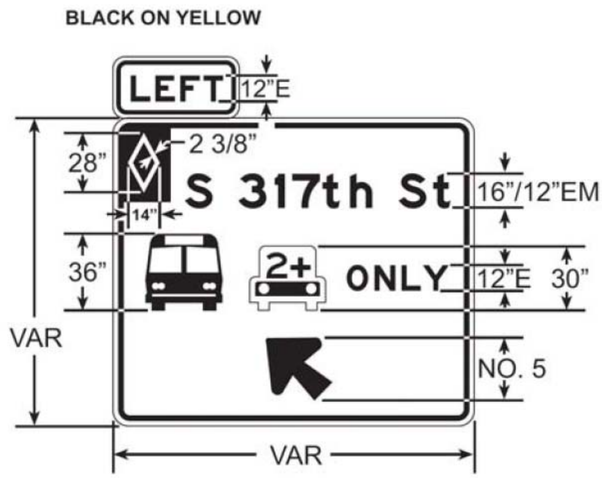
Notes:

- Sign placement shall be in accordance with the MUTCD.
- For non-HOV sign details, see the *Sign Fabrication Manual*.
- For modified sign details, see Exhibits 1420-19 and 1420-20.

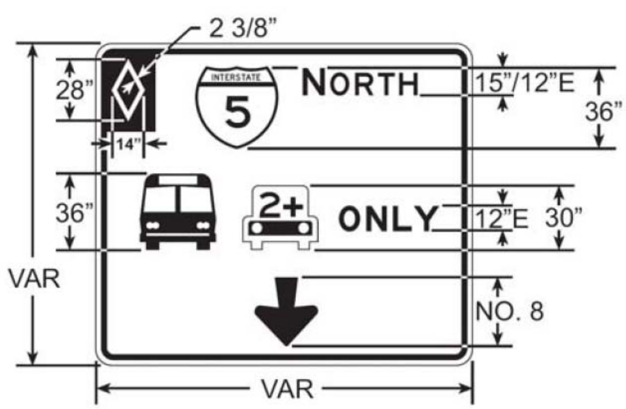
HOV Direct Access Signing: Local Street and Ramp Terminal
Exhibit 1420-18



E1-1 MOD.
BLACK ON WHITE

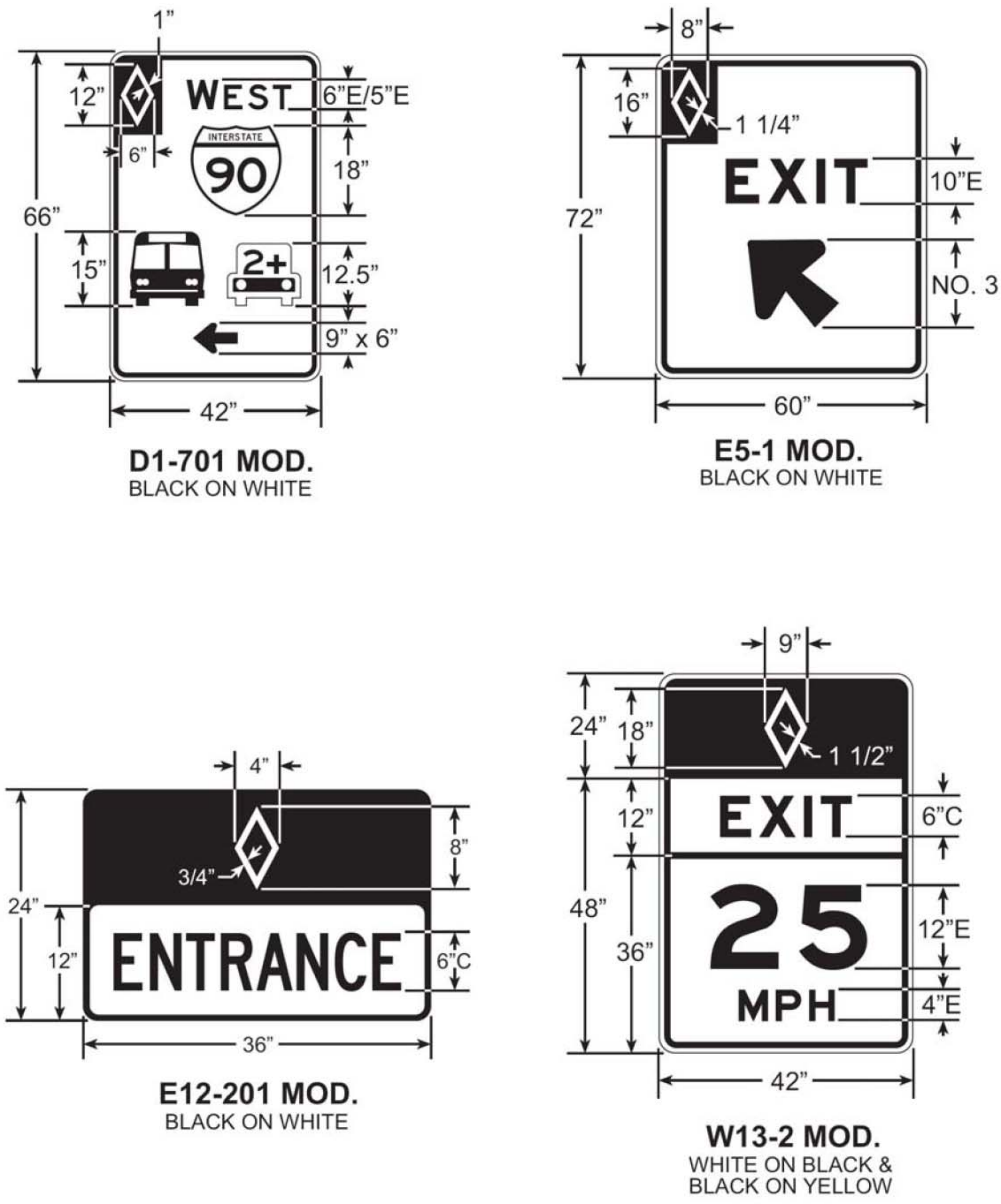


E6-101 MOD.
BLACK ON WHITE



E6-2 MOD.
BLACK ON WHITE

HOV Direct Access Overhead Signs
Exhibit 1420-19



HOV Direct Access Shoulder-Mounted Signs
Exhibit 1420-20

Chapter 1430 Transit Facilities

1430.01 General
1430.02 References
1430.03 Definitions
1430.04 Park & Ride Lots
1430.05 Transfer/Transit Centers
1430.06 Bus Stops and Pullouts
1430.07 Passenger Amenities
1430.08 Roadway Design and Design Vehicle Characteristics
1430.09 Intersection Radii
1430.10 Universal Access
1430.11 Documentation

1430.01 General

This chapter provides guidance and information for designing transit facilities in Washington State.

The design criteria provided represent recognized principles and are primarily based on criteria developed by AASHTO. Some situations are beyond the scope of this chapter as it is not a comprehensive textbook on public transportation engineering.

When private developers incorporate transit facilities into their designs, it is desirable that they use this chapter as a guide, at the direction of staff from the appropriate public jurisdictions.

Consider each of the following before developing plans for transit facilities:

- The multimodal strategies in the comprehensive plans of applicable local jurisdictions.
- The multimodal strategies in the regional plans of applicable Regional Transportation Planning Organizations (RTPOs).
- The strategies and plans of the applicable transit providers for the site under development.

The design information that follows can help the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT), local jurisdictions, and developers provide efficient and cost-effective transit services to the public.

For additional information, see the following chapters:

Chapter	Subject
530	Limited access
1340	Road approach design and spacing
1410	High-occupancy vehicle facilities
1420	HOV direct access
1510	Pedestrian facilities

1430.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (28 Code of Federal Regulations [CFR] Part 36, Appendix A, as revised July 1, 1994)

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 46.61.581, Parking spaces for persons with disabilities – Indication, access – Failure, penalty

RCW 70.92.120, Handicap symbol – Display – Signs showing location of entrance for handicapped

Washington Administrative Code (WAC) Chapter 468-46, Transit vehicle stop zones

WAC 468-510-010, High occupancy vehicles (HOVs)

(2) Design Guidance

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Plans Preparation Manual, M 22-31, WSDOT

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Traffic Manual, M 51-02, WSDOT

Understanding Flexibility in Transportation Design – Washington, WSDOT, 2005
www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/Urban/Default.htm

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

ADA Standards for Accessible Design, U.S. Department of Justice
www.ada.gov/stdspdf.htm

Bus Use of Highways: Planning and Design Guidelines, National Cooperative Highway Research Program Report 155, Transportation Research Board, 1975

Guide for the Design of High-Occupancy Vehicle and Public Transfer Facilities, AASHTO, 1983

Guidelines for the Location and Design of Bus Stops, Transit Cooperative Research Program (TCRP) Report 19, Transportation Research Board, 1996

Revised Draft Guidelines for Accessible Public Rights-of-Way, U.S. Access Board
www.access-board.gov/

1430.03 Definitions

articulated bus A two-section bus that is permanently connected at a joint.

bus A rubber-tired motor vehicle used for transportation, designed to carry more than ten passengers.

bus pullout A bus stop with parking area designed to allow transit vehicles to stop wholly off the roadway.

bus shelter A facility that provides seating and protection from the weather for passengers waiting for a bus.

bus stop A place designated for transit vehicles to stop and load or unload passengers.

carpool/vanpool A group of people who share the use and cost of a car or van for transportation on a regular basis.

detectable warning surface A tactile surface feature of truncated dome material built into or applied to the walking surface to alert persons with impairments of vehicular ways (see Chapter 1510).

drop and ride An area of a park & ride lot or other multimodal facility where patrons are dropped off or picked up by private auto or taxi.

feeder service Bus service that provides connections with other bus or rail services.

flyer stop A transit stop inside the limited access boundaries.

high-occupancy vehicle (HOV) A vehicle that meets the occupancy requirements of the facility as authorized by WAC 468-510-010.

HOV direct access facility A ramp and its connection to an HOV lane, exclusively for the use of high-occupancy vehicles to move between the ramp and the HOV lane without weaving across general-purpose lanes.

pedestrian access route A continuous, unobstructed pedestrian route where all components comply with the ADA requirements for accessible design. (See Chapter 1510 and the *ADA Standards for Accessible Design* for more information.)

public transportation Passenger transportation services available to the public, including buses, ferries, rideshare, and rail transit.

sawtooth berth A series of bays that are offset from one another by connecting curb lines, constructed at an angle from the bus bays. This configuration minimizes the amount of space needed for vehicle pull in and pull out.

transit A general term applied to passenger rail and bus service used by the public.

transit facility A capital facility that improves the efficiency of public transportation or encourages the use of public transportation.

1430.04 Park & Ride Lots

Park & ride lots provide parking for people who wish to transfer from private vehicles to public transit or carpools/vanpools. Most park & ride lots located within urban areas are served by transit. Leased lots, such as at churches or shopping centers, may have no bus service and only serve carpools and vanpools. Park & ride lots located in rural areas not served by buses serve carpools and vanpools.

For the larger park & ride lots, consider HOV facilities to improve access for transit and carpools (see Chapter 1410).

Early and continual coordination with the local transit authority and local government agencies is critical. When a memorandum of understanding (MOU) or other formal agreement exists that outlines the design, funding, maintenance, and operation of park & ride lots, it must be reviewed for requirements pertaining to new lots. If the requirements in the MOU or other formal agreement cannot be met, the MOU must be renegotiated.

(1) Site Selection

Current and future needs are the main considerations in determining the location of a park & ride lot. Public input is a valuable tool. The demand for and the size of a park & ride lot are dependent on a number of factors. Many of these factors vary with the state of the economy; energy availability and cost; perceived congestion; and public attitude, which are difficult to predict. Therefore, consider sizing the facility to allow for a conservative first-stage construction with expansion possibilities. As a rule of thumb, 1 acre can accommodate approximately 90 vehicles in a park & ride lot. This allows approximately 40% of the area for borders, landscaping, passenger amenities, bus facilities for larger lots, and future expansion.

Contact the local transit authority for input, which is critical, as the need for a park & ride lot and its location may already have been determined in the development of its comprehensive transit plan. Failure to obtain transit input could result in a site that does not work well for transit vehicle access.

Develop a list of potential sites. This can be simplified by the use of existing aerial photos, detailed land use maps, or property maps. The goal is to identify properties that can be most readily developed for parking and that have suitable access.

Factors influencing site selection and design of a park & ride facility include:

- Local transit authority master plan
- Regional transportation plan
- Local public input
- Demand
- Traffic
- Local government zoning
- Social and environmental impacts
- Cost and benefit/cost
- Access by all modes of travel
- Security and lighting impacts
- Maintenance

- Stormwater outfall
- Available utilities
- Existing right of way or sundry site
- Potential for future expansion

Purchasing or leasing property increases costs substantially. Therefore, the first choice is state-owned right of way, assuming the other selection criteria are favorable. Also give prime consideration to the use of city- or county-owned right of way. Select a site that does not jeopardize the current and future integrity of the highway.

Investigate each potential site in the field. The field survey serves to confirm or revise impressions gained from the office review. When conducting the investigation, consider the following:

- Physical characteristics of the site.
- Current use and zoning of the area.
- Whether the site is visible from adjacent streets (to enhance security).
- Potential for additional expansion.
- Accessibility for motorists and other modes of travel, including transit.
- Proximity of any existing parking facilities (such as church or shopping center parking lots) that are underutilized during the day.
- Potential for joint use of facilities with businesses (such as day care centers or dry cleaners) or land uses compatible with park & ride patrons.
- Congestion and other design considerations.
- Avoid locations that encourage noncommuter use (such as proximity to a high school).

The desirable location for park & ride lots along one-way couplets is between the two one-way streets, with access from both streets. When this is not practicable, provide additional signing to guide users to and from the facility.

Establish potential sites, with transit agency input, and complete public meetings and environmental procedures prior to finalizing the design. Follow the procedures outlined in Chapters 210 and 220.

(2) Design

Design features to be in compliance with any local requirements that may apply. In some cases, variances to local design requirements may be needed to provide for the safety and security of facility users.

Include the following design components when applicable:

- Geometric design of access points.
- Efficient traffic flows, both internal and external circulation, for transit, carpools, vanpools, pedestrians, and bicycles.
- Parking space layout.
- Pavements.
- Shelters.
- Exclusive HOV facilities.
- Bicycle facilities.

- Motorcycle facilities.
- Traffic control devices, including signs, signals, and permanent markings.
- Illumination.
- Drainage and erosion control.
- Security of facility users and vehicles.
- Environmental mitigation.
- Landscape preservation and development.
- Restroom facilities.
- Telephone booths.
- Trash receptacles.
- Traffic data.
- Facilities that accommodate elderly and disabled users and meet barrier-free design requirements.

The degree to which the desirable attributes of any component are sacrificed to obtain the benefits of another component can only be determined on a site-specific basis. However, these guidelines present the optimum design elements of each factor.

Large park & ride lots are transfer points from private automobiles to transit buses. The same basic principles are used in designing all park & ride lots.

(a) **Access**

Six basic transportation modes are used to arrive at and depart from park & ride lots: walking, bicycle, motorcycle, private automobile (including carpools), vanpool, and bus. Provide for all these modes.

It is desirable that access to a park & ride lot not increase congestion on the facility it serves. The desirable access point to a park & ride lot is on an intersecting collector or local street. Locate entrances and exits with regard to adjacent intersections, so that signal control at these intersections can be reasonably installed at a later time. Provide storage for vehicles entering the lot and for exiting vehicles. Ease of access will encourage use of the facility.

When access is provided to an arterial, carefully consider the location and locate the access to avoid queues from nearby intersections.

The minimum width of entrances and exits used by buses is 15 feet per lane. (See 1430.09 for corner radii for buses and Chapter 1340 and the *Standard Plans* for design of other access points.)

Design entrances and exits to conform to Chapter 1340 or other published design guidelines used by the local agency.

Design the access route for transit to a park & ride lot, the circulation patterns within the lot, and the return route to minimize transit travel time. Exclusive direct access connections for buses, vanpools, and carpools between park & ride lots and freeway or street HOV lanes may be justified by time savings to riders and reduced transit costs. (See Chapter 1420 for information on direct access design.) Coordinate routing for transit with the transit authority.

(b) **Internal Circulation**

Locate major circulation routes within a park & ride lot at the periphery of the parking area to minimize vehicle-pedestrian conflicts. Accommodate all modes using that part of the facility. Take care that an internal intersection is not placed too close to a street intersection. Consider a separate loading area with priority parking for vanpools. Whenever possible, do not mix buses with cars.

Design bus circulation routes to provide for easy movement, with efficient terminal operations and convenient passenger transfers. A one-way roadway with two lanes to permit the passing of stopped buses is desirable, with enough curb length and/or sawtooth-type loading areas to handle the number of buses using the facility under peak conditions (see 1430.05). Close coordination with the local transit authority is critical in the design of internal circulation for buses and vanpools.

Locate the passenger loading zone either in a central location to minimize the pedestrian walking distance or near the end of the facility to minimize the transit travel time.

Large lots may need more than one waiting area for multiple buses.

In an undersized or oddly-shaped lot, circulation may have to be compromised in order to maximize utilization of the lot. Base the general design for the individual user modes on the priority sequence of: pedestrians, bicycles, feeder buses, and park & ride area. Design traffic circulation to minimize vehicular travel distances, conflicting movements, and the number of turns. Disperse vehicular movements within the parking area by the strategic location of entrances, exits, and aisles. Align aisles to facilitate convenient pedestrian movement toward the bus loading zone.

Design bus routes within the internal layout, including entrance and exit driveways, to the turning radius of the bus. Additional considerations for internal circulation are:

- Design the lot to be understandable to all users (auto, pedestrian, bicycle, and bus).
- Do not confront drivers with more than one decision at a time.
- Provide adequate capacity at entrances and exits.
- Make signing clear and ADA-compliant.
- Provide for future expansion.

(c) **Parking Area Design**

Normally, internal circulation is two way with 90° parking. However, due to the geometrics of smaller lots, one-way aisles with angled parking may be advantageous.

For additional information on parking requirements for the disabled, see 1430.10. For information on parking area design, see the *Roadside Manual*.

(d) **Pedestrian Movement**

Pedestrian movement in parking areas is normally by way of the drive aisles. Make a pedestrian's path from any parking stall to the loading zone as direct as possible.

Provide walkways to minimize pedestrian use of a circulation road or an aisle and to minimize the number of points at which pedestrians cross a circulation road. Where pedestrian movement originates from an outlying part of a large parking lot, consider a walkway that extends toward the loading zone in a straight line.

For additional criteria for pedestrian movement, see Chapter 1510 and the *Roadside Manual*.

Include facilities for disabled patrons. For additional information on accessibility for the disabled, see 1430.10.

(e) **Bicycle Facilities**

Encouraging the bicycle commuter is important. Provide lots that are served by public transit, with lockers or with a rack that will support the bicycle frame and allow at least one wheel to be locked. Locate the bike-parking area relatively close to the transit passenger-loading area, separated from motor vehicles by curbing or other physical barriers, and with a direct route from the street. Design the bicycle-parking area to discourage pedestrians from inadvertently walking into the area and tripping. Consider providing shelters for bicycle racks. For bicycles, the layout normally consists of stalls 2.5 feet x 6 feet, at 90° to aisles, with a minimum aisle width of 4 feet. For additional information on bicycle facilities, see Chapter 1520.

(f) **Motorcycle Facilities**

Provide parking for motorcycles. For information on motorcycle parking, see the *Roadside Manual*.

(g) **Drainage**

Provide sufficient slope for surface drainage, as ponding of water in a lot is undesirable for both vehicles and pedestrians. This is particularly true in cold climates where freezing may create icy spots. The maximum grade is 2%. Install curb, gutter, and surface drains and grates where needed. Coordinate drainage design with the local agency to make sure appropriate codes are followed. For additional drainage information, see Chapter 800 and the *Roadside Manual*.

(h) **Pavement Design**

Design pavement to conform to design specifications for each of the different uses and loadings that a particular portion of a lot or roadway is expected to handle. For pavement type selection, see Chapter 620.

(i) **Traffic Control**

Control of traffic movement can be greatly improved by proper pavement markings. Typically, reflectorized markings for centerlines, lane lines, channelizing lines, and lane arrows are needed to guide or separate patron and transit traffic. Install park & ride identification signs. For signing and pavement markings, see Chapters 1020 and 1030 and the MUTCD.

(j) **Shelters**

Consider pedestrian shelters in areas where environmental conditions make their use desirable. To satisfy local needs, shelters may be individually designed or selected from a variety of commercially available designs. Consider the following features in shelter design:

- Design shelters to accommodate the disabled (see 1430.10).
- Select open locations with good visibility to minimize the potential for criminal activity.
- If enclosed, locate the open side away from nearby vehicle splashing.
- Select materials and locations where the bus driver can see waiting passengers.
- Do not provide doors, unless need dictates otherwise, because of maintenance and vandalism potential.
- Allow for a small air space below side panels to permit air circulation and reduce the collection of debris.
- Optional features that may be provided are lighting, heat, telephone, travel information (schedules), and trash receptacles.
- Coordinate shelter design and placement with the local transit authority. Shelters are usually provided by the local transit agency, with the state providing the shelter pad.

For additional information on passenger amenities, see 1430.07.

(k) **Illumination**

Lighting is important from a safety standpoint and as a deterrent to criminal activity in both the parking area and the shelters. For guidance, see Chapter 1040 and the *Roadside Manual*.

(l) **Planting Areas**

Selectively preserve existing vegetation and provide new plantings to give a balanced environment for the park & ride lot user. For guidance, see the *Roadside Manual*.

(m) **Fencing**

For fencing guidelines, see Chapter 560.

(n) **Maintenance**

Develop a maintenance plan, either as part of a memorandum of understanding with the local authority or for use by state maintenance forces. Maintenance of park & ride lots outside state right of way is the responsibility of the local transit authority. Encourage the local transit authority to maintain park & ride lots inside state right of way by agreement. Negotiate agreements for maintenance by others during the design phase and document in the Design Documentation Package (DDP) (see Chapter 300).

Consider the following in the maintenance plan:

- Cost estimate
- Periodic inspection

- Pavement repair
- Traffic control devices (signs and pavement markings)
- Lighting
- Mowing
- Cleaning of drainage structures
- Sweeping/trash pickup
- Landscaping
- Shelters
- Snow and ice control

When the maintenance is not by state forces, include funding source and legal responsibilities.

1430.05 Transfer/Transit Centers

Transfer centers are basically large multimodal bus stops where buses on a number of routes converge to allow riders the opportunity to change buses or transfer to other modes. Transfer centers are of particular importance in many transit systems, since riders in many areas are served by a "feeder" route; to travel to area destinations not served by the feeder, residents must transfer.

Transit centers are frequently major activity centers. In this case, the activity is beyond a simple transfer between buses; it involves the transit center as a destination point.

When designing a transit center, consider such features as passenger volume; number of buses on the site at one time; local auto and pedestrian traffic levels; and universal access (see 1430.10). These factors dictate the particular needs of each center.

(1) Bus Berths

Where several transit routes converge and where buses congregate, multiple bus berths or spaces are sometimes needed. Parallel and shallow sawtooth designs are the options available when considering multiple berths.

An important aspect in multiple bus berthing is proper signing and marking for the bus bays. Clearly delineate the route served by each bay. Consider pavement marking to indicate stopping positions.

Portland cement concrete pavement is desirable for pedestrian walkways, for ease of cleaning.

Where buses are equipped with a bicycle rack, provide for the loading and unloading of bicycles.

Exhibit 1430-1 shows typical parallel and sawtooth designs for parking 40-foot buses for loading and unloading passengers at a transfer center. The sawtooth design does not require buses to arrive or depart in any order. The parallel design shown may require that buses arrive and/or depart in order. Where space is a consideration, the sawtooth design can be modified for independent arrival but dependent departure.

Exhibit 1430-2 is an example of a sawtooth transit center. In an in-line berthing design, space requirements are excessive if this same access is to be provided. More commonly in an in-line design, buses pull into the forward-most available berth. Buses must then leave in the order of arrival. Involve the local transit authority throughout the design process, and obtain its concurrence for the final design.

In the design of parallel bus berths, additional roadway width is needed for swing-out maneuvers if shorter bus loading platforms are utilized. The roadway width and the amount of lineal space at the bus loading platform are directly related where designs allow departing buses to pull out from the platform around a standing bus. The shorter the berth length allowed, the wider the roadway. Check the final design with a template for the design vehicle.

Considerable length is needed in a parallel design to permit a bus to pass and pull into a platform in front of a parked bus.

Parallel designs, even when properly signed, require strict parking enforcement, since they give the appearance of general curbside parking areas. Pavement marking is most critical for parallel design. Sawtooth designs offer the advantage of appearing more like a formal transit facility, which tends to discourage unauthorized parking.

(2) Flow/Movement Alternatives

Two primary alternatives for vehicle and passenger movement are possible for transfer centers, regardless of the type of bus berths used. As shown in Exhibit 1430-3, buses may line up along one side of the transfer center. This type of arrangement is generally only suitable for a limited number of buses due to the walking distances for transferring passengers. For a larger number of buses, an arrangement similar to Exhibit 1430-4 can minimize transfer time by consolidating the buses in a smaller area.

1430.06 Bus Stops and Pullouts

The bus stop is the point of contact between the passenger and the transit services. The simplest bus stop is a location by the side of the road. The highest-quality bus stop is an area that provides passenger amenities (such as a bench) and protection from the weather. Bus stops must meet the requirements for universal access (see 1430.10).

Bus pullouts allow the transit vehicle to pick up and discharge passengers in an area outside the traveled way. The interference between buses and other traffic can be reduced by providing bus pullouts.

(1) Bus Stop Designation and Location

It is desirable to locate bus stops uniformly to promote predictability. However, do not substitute uniformity for sound judgment.

Consider the following when locating bus stops:

- Bus stop placement needs the consent of the local transit authority and the jurisdiction with authority over the affected right of way.
- The physical location of any bus zone is primarily determined by safety, operational efficiency, the minimization of adjacent property impacts, and user destination points.
- Public transportation agencies are typically responsible for maintenance of transit facilities within the public right of way.

On limited access facilities, bus stops are only allowed at designated locations. (See Chapter 530 for guidance.)

Work with the local transit agencies to locate bus stops at acceptable locations. For additional information on bus stop locations, see *Understanding Flexibility in Transportation Design – Washington*.

(2) Bus Stop Placement

On roadways where traffic volume is low and on-street parking is prohibited, the bus stop may simply be a designated location where the bus can pull up to the curb or the edge of the roadway. The location is to be dictated by patronage, the intersecting bus routes or transfer points, the security of the rider, and the need for convenient service.

The specific bus stop location is influenced not only by convenience to patrons, but also by the design characteristics and operational considerations of the highway or street. Bus stops are usually located in the immediate vicinity of intersections. Where blocks are exceptionally long or where bus patrons are concentrated well away from intersections, midblock bus stops and midblock crosswalks may be used. Consider pedestrian refuge islands at midblock crosswalks on multilane roadways.

The bus stop capacity of one bus is typically enough for up to 30 buses per hour.

Where on-street auto parking is permitted, provide a designated area where the bus can pull in, stop, and pull out. Exhibit 1430-5 illustrates the following types of bus stops:

- Far-side, with a stop located just past an intersection
- Near-side, with a stop located just prior to an intersection
- Midblock, with a stop located away from an intersection

In general, a far-side stop is preferred. However, examine each case separately and determine the most suitable location, giving consideration to service to patrons, efficiency of transit operations, and traffic operation in general. Near-side and midblock bus stops may be suitable in certain situations. Bus stops normally utilize sites that discourage unsafe pedestrian crossings, offer proximity to activity centers, and satisfy the general spacing discussed previously. Following are descriptions of the advantages and disadvantages of each type of site.

(a) **Far-Side Bus Stops**

Advantages:

- Right turns can be accommodated with less conflict.
- A minimum of interference is caused at locations where traffic is heavier on the approach side of the intersection.
- They cause less interference where the cross street is a one-way street from left to right.
- Stopped buses do not obstruct sight distance for vehicles entering or crossing from a side street.
- At a signalized intersection, buses can find a gap to enter the traffic stream without interference, except where there are heavy turning movements onto the street with the bus route.
- Waiting passengers assemble at less-crowded sections of the sidewalk.
- Buses in the bus stop do not obscure traffic control devices or pedestrian movements at the intersection.

Disadvantages:

- Intersections may be blocked if other vehicles park illegally in the bus stop or if the stop is too short for occasional heavy demand.
- Stops on a narrow street or within a traffic lane may block the intersection.

(b) **Near-Side Bus Stops**

Advantages:

- A minimum of interference is caused at locations where traffic is heavier on the departure side than on the approach side of the intersection.
- They cause less interference where the cross street is a one-way street from right to left.
- Passengers generally exit the bus close to the crosswalk.
- There is less interference with traffic turning onto the bus route street from a side street.

Disadvantages:

- Heavy vehicular right turns can cause conflicts, especially where a vehicle makes a right turn from the left side of a stopped bus.
- Buses often obscure sight distance to stop signs, traffic signals, or other control devices, as well as to pedestrians crossing in front of the bus.
- Where the bus stop is too short for occasional heavy demand, the overflow may obstruct the traffic lane.

(c) **Midblock Bus Stops**

Advantages:

- Buses cause a minimum of interference with the sight distance of both vehicles and pedestrians.
- Stops can be located adjacent to major bus passenger generators.
- Waiting passengers assemble at less-crowded sections of the sidewalk.

Disadvantages:

- Pedestrian jaywalking is more prevalent.
- Patrons from cross streets walk farther.
- Buses may have difficulty reentering the flow of traffic.
- Driveway access may be negatively impacted.

(d) **General Guidelines**

Some general guidelines for locating bus stops include:

- At intersections where heavy left or right turns occur, a far-side bus stop is desirable. If a far-side bus stop is infeasible, move the stop to an adjacent intersection or to a midblock location in advance of the intersection.
- It is important that the bus stop be clearly marked as a NO PARKING zone with signs and/or curb painting.
- At intersections where bus routes and heavy traffic movements diverge, a far-side stop can be used to advantage.

- Midblock stop areas are desirable under the following conditions: where traffic or physical street characteristics prohibit a near- or far-side stop adjacent to an intersection, or where large factories, commercial establishments, or other large bus passenger generators exist. Locate a midblock stop at the far side of a pedestrian crosswalk (if one exists), so that standing buses do not block an approaching motorist's view of pedestrians in the crosswalk.
- Sight distance conditions generally favor far-side bus stops, especially at unsignalized intersections. A driver approaching a cross street on the through lanes can see any vehicles approaching from the right. With near-side stops, the view to the right may be blocked by a stopped bus. Where the intersection is signalized, the bus may block the view of one of the signal heads.
- For security purposes, the availability of off-street lighting is an important consideration.

(3) Bus Pullouts

Bus pullouts are generally most appropriate when one or more of the following situations exists:

- Traffic in the curb lane exceeds 250 vehicles during the peak hour.
- Passenger volume at the stop exceeds 20 boardings per hour.
- Traffic speed is above 45 mph.
- Accident patterns are recurrent.

The separation of transit and passenger vehicles is critical in cases of high bus or traffic volumes or speeds. Bus stops in the travel lane might impede the free flow of traffic. Consider bus pullouts at locations with high passenger loading volumes that cause traffic to back up behind the stopped bus.

To be fully effective, incorporate a deceleration lane or taper with the pullout, a staging area for all anticipated buses, and a merging lane or taper. As roadway operating speeds increase, increase the taper length accordingly.

Exhibit 1430-6 illustrates the dimensions and design features of bus pullouts associated with near-side, far-side, and midblock bus pullouts.

There are no absolute criteria for locating bus pullouts. Where a pullout is being considered, involve the local transit agency. Factors controlling the appropriate location and eventual success of a pullout include:

- Operating speed
- Traffic volume
- Number of passenger boardings
- Available right of way
- Roadway geometrics (horizontal and vertical)
- Construction costs
- Location of curb ramps

Exhibit 1430-7 illustrates the dimension and design of far-side bus zones and pullouts where buses stop after making a right turn. Adherence to these designs allow buses to stop with minimal interference to legally parked vehicles.

It is important in the design of bus pullouts to consider the need to provide pavement structure to support a bus (see Chapter 620); otherwise, the surfacing may be damaged by the weight of the buses.

1430.07 Passenger Amenities

(1) Bus Stop Waiting Areas

Bus passengers desire a comfortable place to wait for the bus. Providing an attractive, pleasant setting for the passenger waiting area is an important factor in attracting bus users.

Important elements of a bus stop include:

- Universal access (see 1430.10)
- Protection from passing traffic
- Lighting
- Security
- Paved surface
- Protection from the environment
- Seating (if the wait may be long)
- Information about routes serving the stop

Providing protection from passing traffic involves locating stops where there is enough space, so passengers can wait away from the edge of the traveled roadway. The buffering distance from the roadway increases with traffic speed and traffic volume. Where vehicle speeds are 30 mph or below, 5 feet is a satisfactory distance. In a heavy-volume arterial with speeds up to 45 mph, a distance of 10 feet provides passenger comfort.

Passengers arriving at bus stops, especially infrequent riders, want information and reassurance. Provide information that includes the numbers or names of routes serving the stop. Other important information may include a system route map, the hours and days of service, schedules, and a phone number for information. The information provided and format used is typically the responsibility of the local transit system.

At busier stops, including park & ride lots, provide a public telephone. For all paved park & ride lots, select a desirable site for a public telephone and provide conduit, whether or not a telephone is currently planned. Where shelters are not provided, a bus stop sign and passenger bench are desirable, depending on weather conditions. The sign indicates to passengers where to wait and can provide some basic route information.

(2) Passenger Shelters

Passenger shelters provide protection for waiting transit users. Locate the shelter conveniently for users, without blocking the sidewalk or the drivers' line of sight. Exhibit 1430-8 illustrates a clear sight triangle that permits shelter siting with minimal impact on sight distances at urban arterial intersections without traffic controls. The dimensions and locations may vary by local jurisdiction; check local zoning ordinances or with the appropriate officials.

Providing shelters (and footing for shelters) is normally the responsibility of the local transit agency; contact them for shelter design and footing needs. State motor vehicle funds cannot be used for design or construction of shelters, except for the concrete pad.

Provide lighting to enhance passenger security. Lighting makes the shelter visible to passing traffic and allows waiting passengers to read the information provided. General street lighting is usually sufficient. Where streetlights are not in place, consider streetlights or transit shelter lights. For information on illumination, see Chapter 1040.

A properly drained paved surface is needed so passengers do not traverse puddles and mud in wet weather. Protection from the environment is typically provided by a shelter, which offers shade from the sun, protection from rain and snow, and a wind break. Shelters can range from simple to elaborate. The latter type may serve as an entrance landmark for a residential development or business complex and be designed to carry through the architectural theme of the complex. If a nonpublic transportation entity shelter is provided, its design and siting must be approved by the local transit agency. The reasons for this approval include safety, barrier-free design, and long-term maintenance concerns.

Simple shelters, such as the one illustrated in Exhibit 1430-9, may be designed and built by the transit agency or purchased from commercial vendors. The State Bridge and Structures Architect may be contacted for more complex designs.

Consider shelters at bus stops in new commercial and office developments and in places where large numbers of elderly and disabled persons wait, such as at hospitals and senior centers. In residential areas, shelters are placed only at the highest-volume stops.

1430.08 Roadway Design and Design Vehicle Characteristics

(1) Roadway Design

(a) **Paving Sections**

Coordinate the pavement design (type and thickness) of a transit project, whether initiated by a public transportation agency or a private entity, with WSDOT or the local agency public works department, depending on highway, street, or road jurisdiction. These agencies play a major role in determining the paving section for the particular project.

Paving section design is determined by the volume and type of traffic, design speed, soil characteristics, availability of materials, and construction and maintenance costs. Important characteristics of good pavement design include the ability to retain shape and dimension, drain, and maintain skid resistance.

For guidance on the design of pavements, see Chapters 610 and 620.

(b) **Grades**

Roadway grades refer to the maximum desirable slope or grade, or the maximum slope based on the minimum design speed that a 40-foot bus can negotiate efficiently. For roadway grade criteria, see Chapter 1140 or the *Local Agency Guidelines*.

Bus speed on grades is directly related to the weight/horsepower ratio. Select grades that permit uniform operation at an affordable cost. In cases where the roadway is steep, a climbing lane for buses and trucks may be needed. Avoid abrupt changes in grade due to bus overhangs and ground clearance.

(c) **Lane Widths**

Roadway and lane width criteria are given in Chapter 1140 or the *Local Agency Guidelines*, based on the functional class of highway or road and jurisdiction.

The desirable lane width for lanes used by HOVs, buses, vanpools, and carpools is 12 feet. Chapter 1410 provides additional information on HOV facilities.

(2) Design Vehicle Characteristics

Most transit agencies operate several types of buses within their systems. Vehicle sizes range from articulated buses to passenger vans operated for specialized transportation purposes and vanpooling.

Vehicles within each of the general classifications may vary dimensions such as wheelbase, height, and vehicle overhang. The total gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) varies considerably among manufacturers. Because of these differences, obtain more specific design information from the local transit authority.

The principal dimensions affecting design are the minimum turning radius, tread width, wheelbase, and path of the inner rear tire. The effects of driver characteristics and the slip angle of the wheels are minimized by assuming that the speed of the vehicle for the minimum radius (sharpest) turn is lower than 10 mph.

(a) **City Buses (CITY-BUS)**

These traditional urban transit vehicles are typically 40 feet long and have a wheelbase of approximately 25 feet. Many of these vehicles are equipped with either front or rear door wheelchair lifts or a front “kneeling” feature that reduces the step height for mobility impaired patrons.

(b) **Articulated Buses (A-BUS)**

Because articulated buses are hinged between two sections, these vehicles can turn on a relatively short radius. Articulated buses are typically 60 feet in length, with a wheelbase of 22 feet from the front axle to the midaxle and 19 feet from the midaxle to the rear axle.

(c) **Small Buses**

Some transit agencies operate small buses, which are designed for use in low-volume situations or for driving on lower-class roads. Small buses are also used for transportation of elderly and disabled persons and for shuttle services. Passenger vans are a type of small bus used for specialized transportation and vanpooling. Since the vehicle specifications vary so widely within this category, consult the local transit authority for the specifications of the particular vehicle in question.

1430.09 Intersection Radii

A fundamental characteristic of transit-accessible development is convenient access and circulation for transit vehicles. It is important that radii at intersections be designed to accommodate turning buses. Radii that accommodate turning buses reduce conflicts between automobiles and buses, reduce bus travel time, and provide maximum comfort for the passengers.

Take the following factors into consideration in designing intersection radii:

- Right of way availability
- Angle of intersection
- Width and number of lanes on the intersecting streets
- Design vehicle turning radius
- Intersection parking
- Allowable bus encroachment
- Operating speed and speed reductions
- Pedestrians
- Bicycles

Because of space limitations and generally lower operating speeds in urban areas, curve radii for turning movements may be smaller than those normally used in rural areas. It is assumed that buses making turns are traveling at speeds lower than 10 mph. Exhibits 1430-10 and 1430-11 illustrate the turning templates and design vehicle specifications for a city bus and an articulated bus.

Exhibit 1430-12 gives radii at intersections for four types of parking configurations that may be associated with an intersection. Radii less than the minimum result in encroachment onto adjoining lanes or curbs. As intersection radii increase, pedestrian crossing distances increase.

When other intersection types are encountered, use turning templates (such as those given in Exhibits 1430-10 and 1430-11) to develop designs the design vehicle can use.

To provide efficient transit operation on urban streets, it is desirable to provide corner radii from 35 to 50 feet (based on the presence of curb parking on the streets) for right turns to and from the through lanes. Where there are curb parking lanes on both the intersecting streets and parking is restricted for some distance from the corner, the extra width provided serves to increase the usable radius.

The angle of intersection also influences the turning path of the design vehicle. Exhibit 1430-13 shows the effect of the angle of intersection on the turning path of the design vehicle on streets without parking. Exhibit 1430-13 also illustrates when a vehicle turns from the proper lane and swings wide on the cross street and when the turning vehicle swings equally wide on both streets.

1430.10 Universal Access

Public transportation providers have an obligation under both state and federal laws to create and operate capital facilities and vehicles that are usable by the wide variety of residents in a service area. A major need arising from this obligation is to provide transportation service to transit-dependent patrons, among whom are disabled individuals.

Barrier-free design means more than just accommodating wheelchairs. Care needs to be given not to create hazards or barriers for people who have vision or hearing impairments. The key is to design clear pathways with no obstacles and provide simple signs with large print.

(1) Park & Ride Lots

Locate accessible parking stalls close to the transit loading and unloading area. Two accessible parking stalls may share a common access aisle. For information on the number and design of accessible stalls, see the *Roadside Manual* and the parking space layouts in the *Standard Plans*.

Sign accessible parking stalls in accordance with the requirements of RCW 46.61.581.

Design pedestrian access routes in accordance with the following:

- Pedestrian access routes must meet the requirements for sidewalks (see Chapter 1510).
- If possible, do not cross access roads en route to the bus loading zone.
- When feasible, do not route behind parked cars (in their circulation path).
- Curb ramps are required.
- Parking stall and access aisle surfaces shall be even and smooth, with surface slopes not exceeding 2%.

(2) Bus Stops and Shelters

In order to use buses that are accessible, bus stops must also be accessible. The nature and condition of streets, sidewalks, passenger loading pads, curb ramps, and other bus stop facilities can constitute major obstacles to mobility and accessibility. State, local, public, and private agencies need to work closely with public transportation officials to provide universal access.

Provide a bus stop boarding and alighting "pad" (see Exhibit 1430-14) for the deployment of wheelchair lifts that meets the following criteria:

- **Surface:** Construct the pad of Portland cement concrete, hot mix asphalt (HMA), or other approved firm, stable, and slip-resistant surface.
- **Dimensions:** Provide a clear area of 10.0 feet in length by 8.0 feet in width. When right of way or other limitations restrict the pad size, it may be reduced—with justification and transit concurrence—to a minimum of 8.0 feet measured perpendicular to the curb or roadway edge by 5.0 feet measured parallel to the roadway.
- **Connection:** Connect the pad to streets, sidewalks, or pedestrian paths with a pedestrian access route (see Chapter 1510).

- **Grade:** Design the grade of the pad parallel to the street or highway the same as the street or highway. The maximum slope perpendicular to the street or highway is not steeper than 2%.

For examples of pads with and without shelters, see Exhibit 1430-14.

Involve the local transit agency in the pad design and location so that lifts can actually be deployed at the site.

In order to access a bus stop, it is important that the path to the stop also be accessible. This can be accomplished by the use of sidewalks with curb ramps. For sidewalk design and curb ramp information, see Chapter 1510 and the *Standard Plans*.

Design bus shelters (when provided) with a minimum clear space of 30 inches by 48 inches, entirely within the shelter. Connect to the bus stop pad by a pedestrian access route.

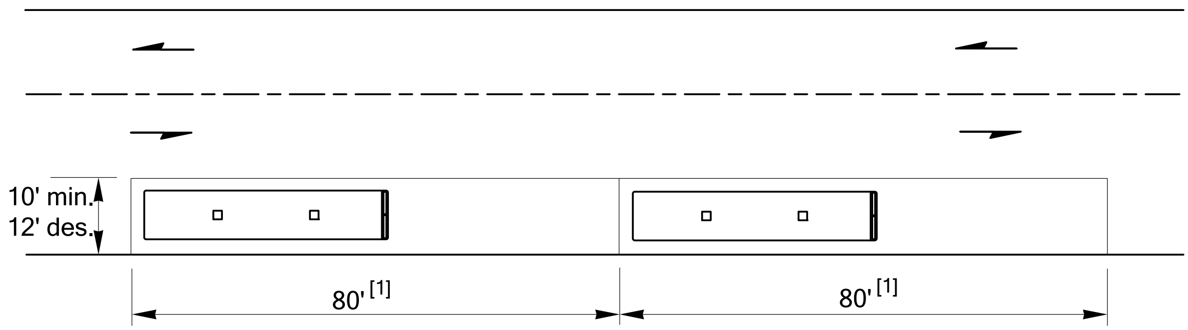
At bus stops where a shelter is provided, the bus stop pad may be located either inside or outside the shelter.

In the design of bus stops and shelters, consider the following:

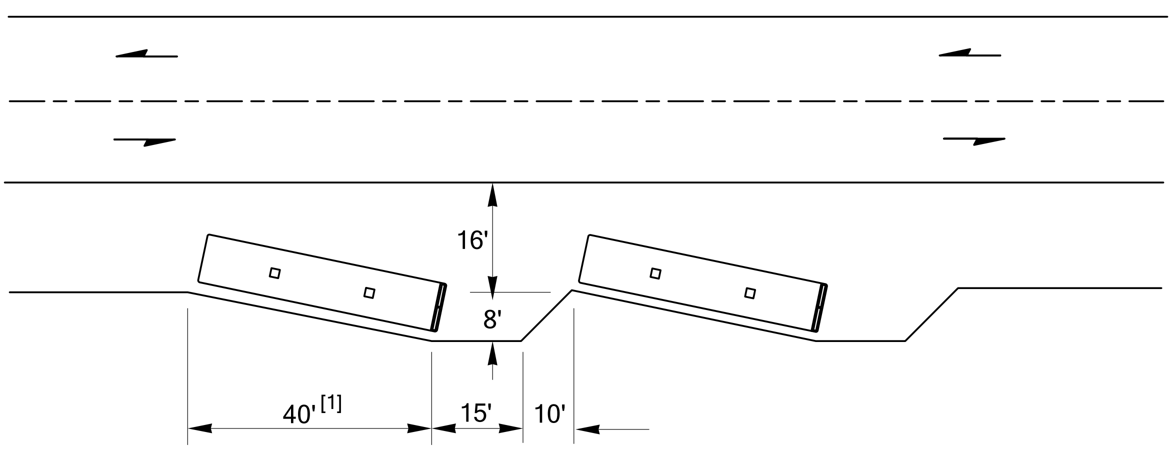
- Provide universal access for pedestrian facilities within the limits of a project.
- Provide properly sloped and sized curb ramps with detectable warning surfaces (see the *Standard Plans*).
- Identify sidewalk needs.
- Encourage and emphasize designs for new street construction or reconstruction that include sidewalks or pedestrian walkways and curb ramps.
- Identify bus stops with curb painting and/or bus stop signs.
- When practicable, make bus stops accessible.
- Along a route served by accessible vehicles, mark all bus stop signs with the blue international accessibility symbol conforming to the requirements of RCW 70.92.120, for easier identification by users.
- Existing as well as future park & ride locations must, by state law, include reserved parking for disabled persons, marked with signs as outlined in RCW 46.61.581.

1430.11 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



Parallel Design



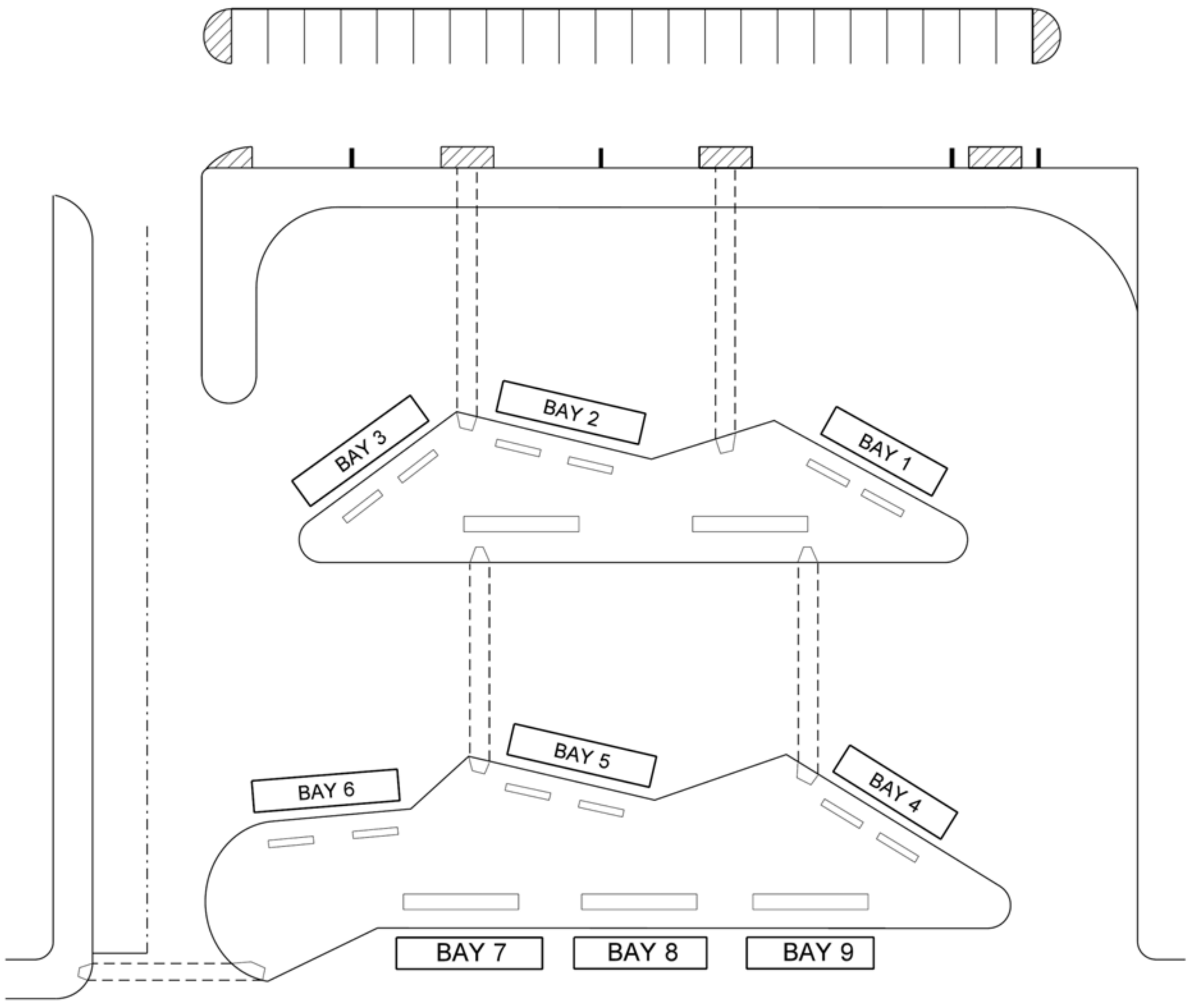
Sawtooth Design[2]

Notes:

[1] Dimensions shown are for a 40-ft bus; adjust the length when designing for a longer bus.

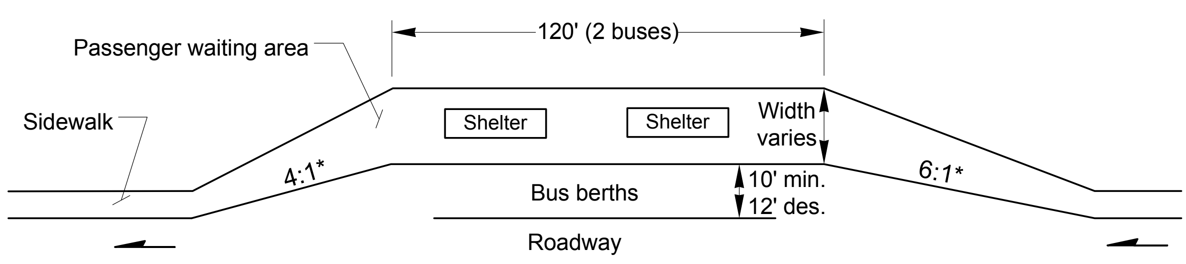
[2] Design shown is an example; contact the local transit agency for additional information.

Bus Berth Designs
Exhibit 1430-1



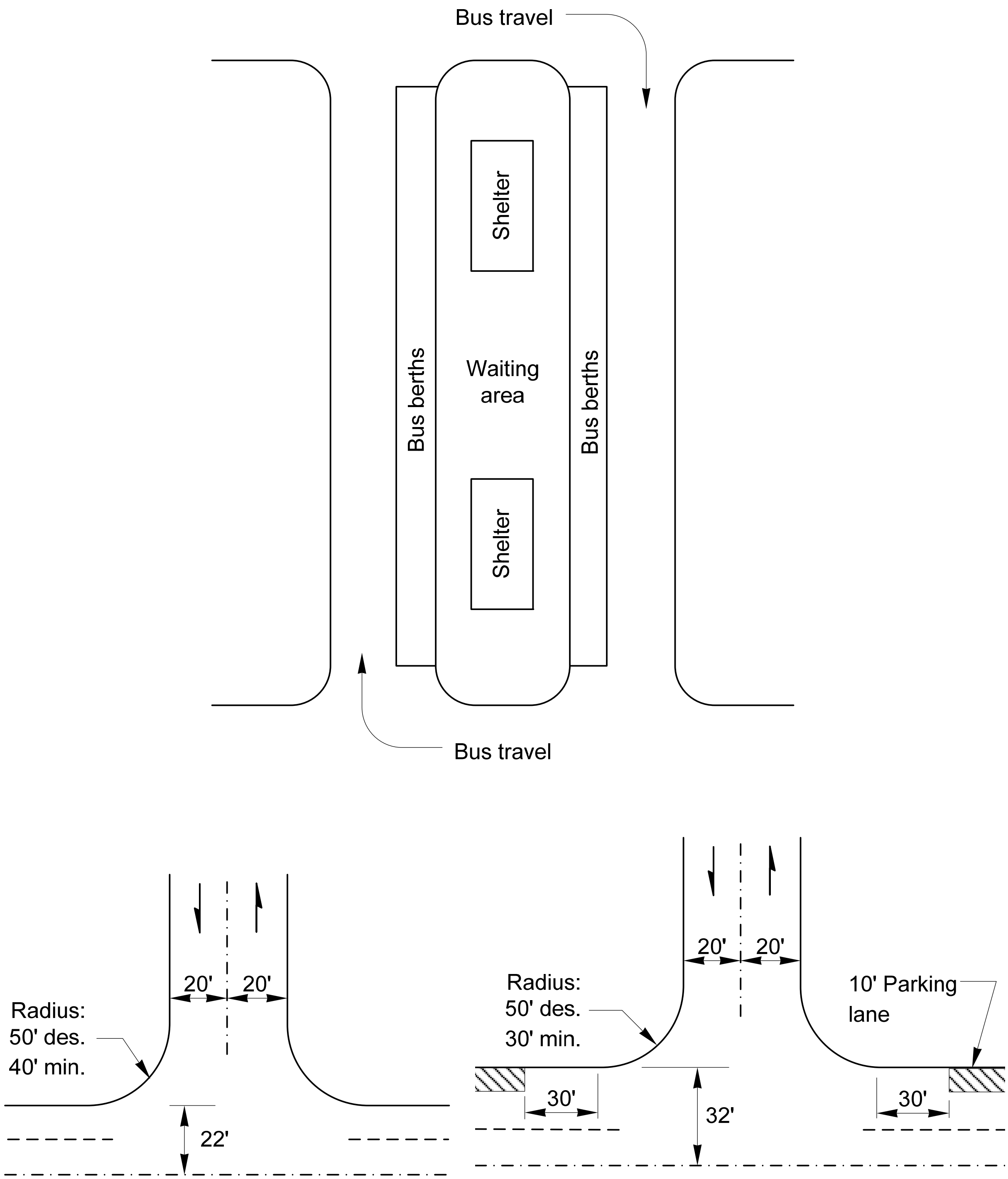
Not to Scale

Transit Center Sawtooth Bus Berth
Exhibit 1430-2

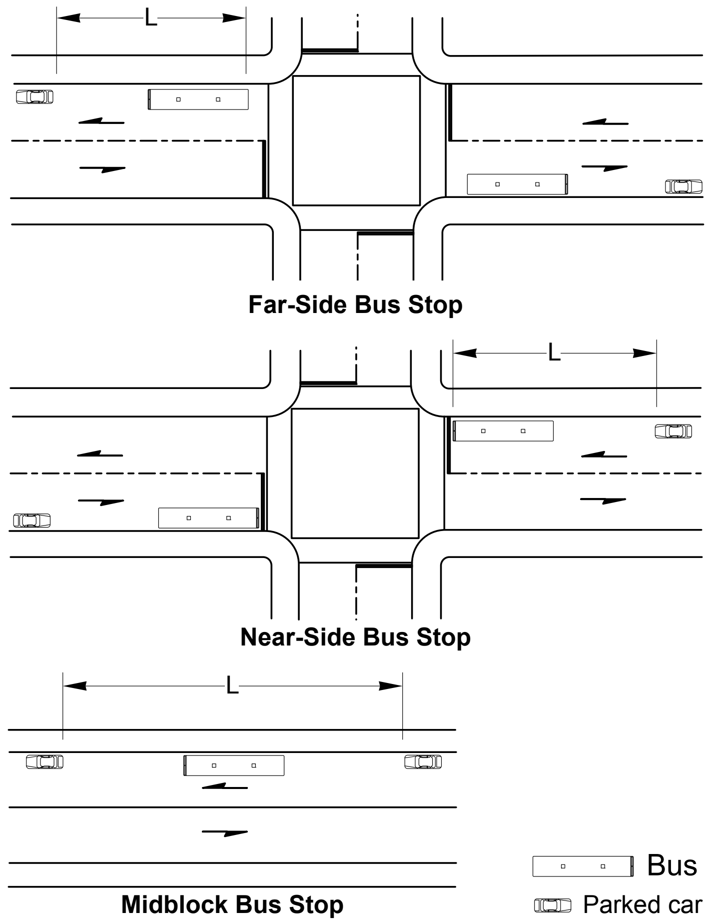


*On higher-speed facilities, it may be necessary to provide a greater acceleration/deceleration transition.

Bus Turnout Transfer Center
Exhibit 1430-3



Off-Street Transfer Center
Exhibit 1430-4



Minimum Lengths for Bus Curb Loading Zones (L)[1]						
Approx Bus Length	Loading Zone Length (feet)					
	One-Bus Stop			Two-Bus Stop		
	Far-Side[2]	Near-Side[2][3]	Midblock	Far-Side[2]	Near-Side[2][3]	Midblock
25	65	90	125	90	120	150
30	70	95	130	100	130	160
35	75	100	135	110	140	170
40	80	105	140	120	150	180
60	100	125	160	160	190	220

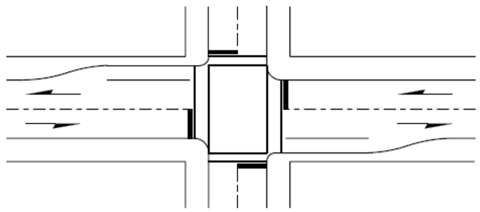
Notes:

[1] Based on bus 1 ft from curb on 40 ft wide streets. When bus is 0.5 ft from curb, add 20 ft near-side, 15 ft far-side, and 20 ft midblock. Add 15 ft when street is 35 ft wide and 30 ft when street is 32 ft wide.

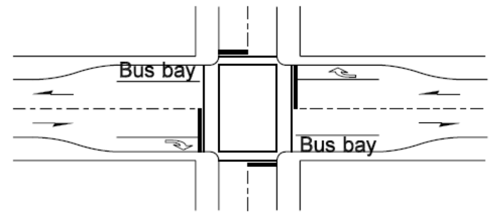
[2] Measured from extension of building line or established stop line. Add 15 ft where buses make a right turn.

[3] Add 30 ft where right-turn volume is high for other vehicles.

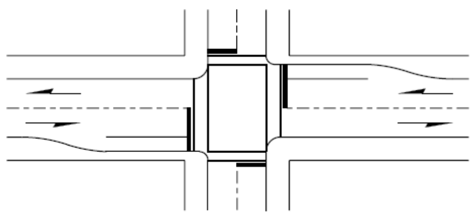
Minimum Bus Zone Dimensions
Exhibit 1430-5



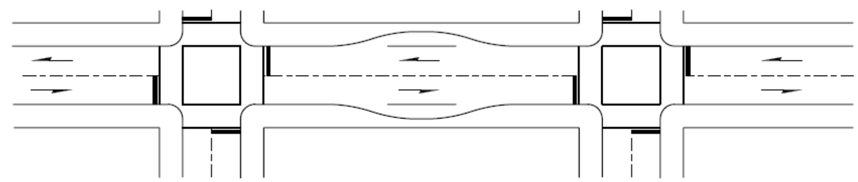
A. Far-Side



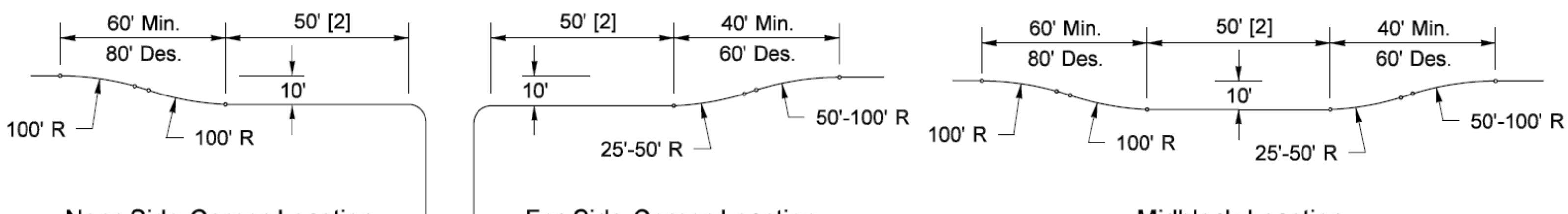
C. Near-Side Right-Turn Lane and Far-Side Bus Bays[1]



B. Near-Side



D. Midblock Bus Bays



Near-Side Corner Location | Far-Side Corner Location | Midblock Location

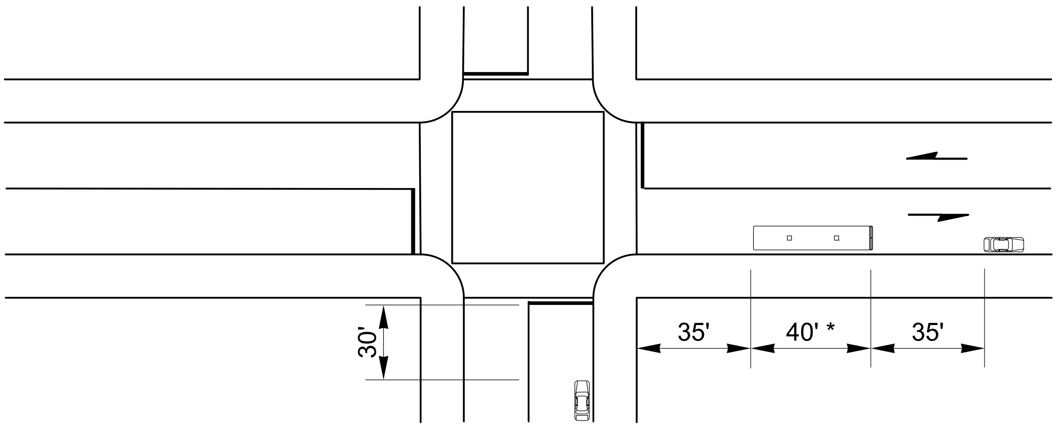
Notes:

[1] For right-turn lane design, see Chapter 1310.

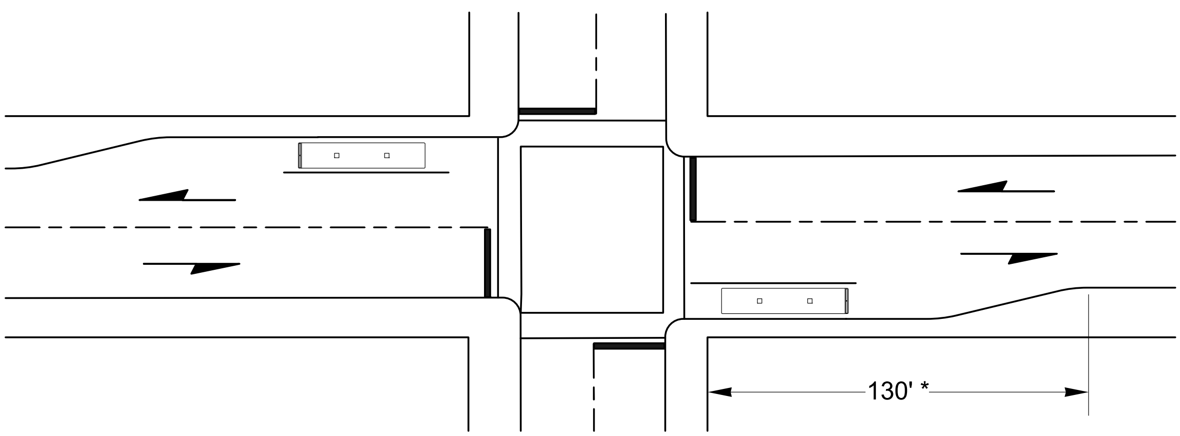
[2] Based on a 40 ft bus. Add 20 ft for articulated bus. Add 45 ft (65 articulated) for each additional bus.

Bus Stop Pullouts: Arterial Streets

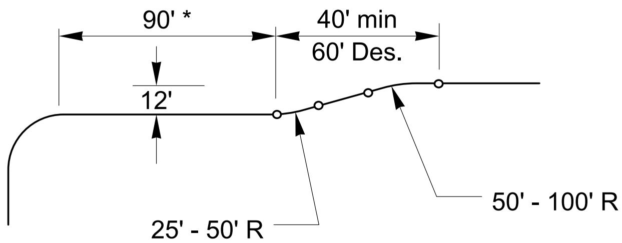
Exhibit 1430-6

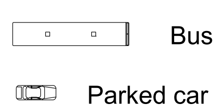


Far-Side Bus Stop



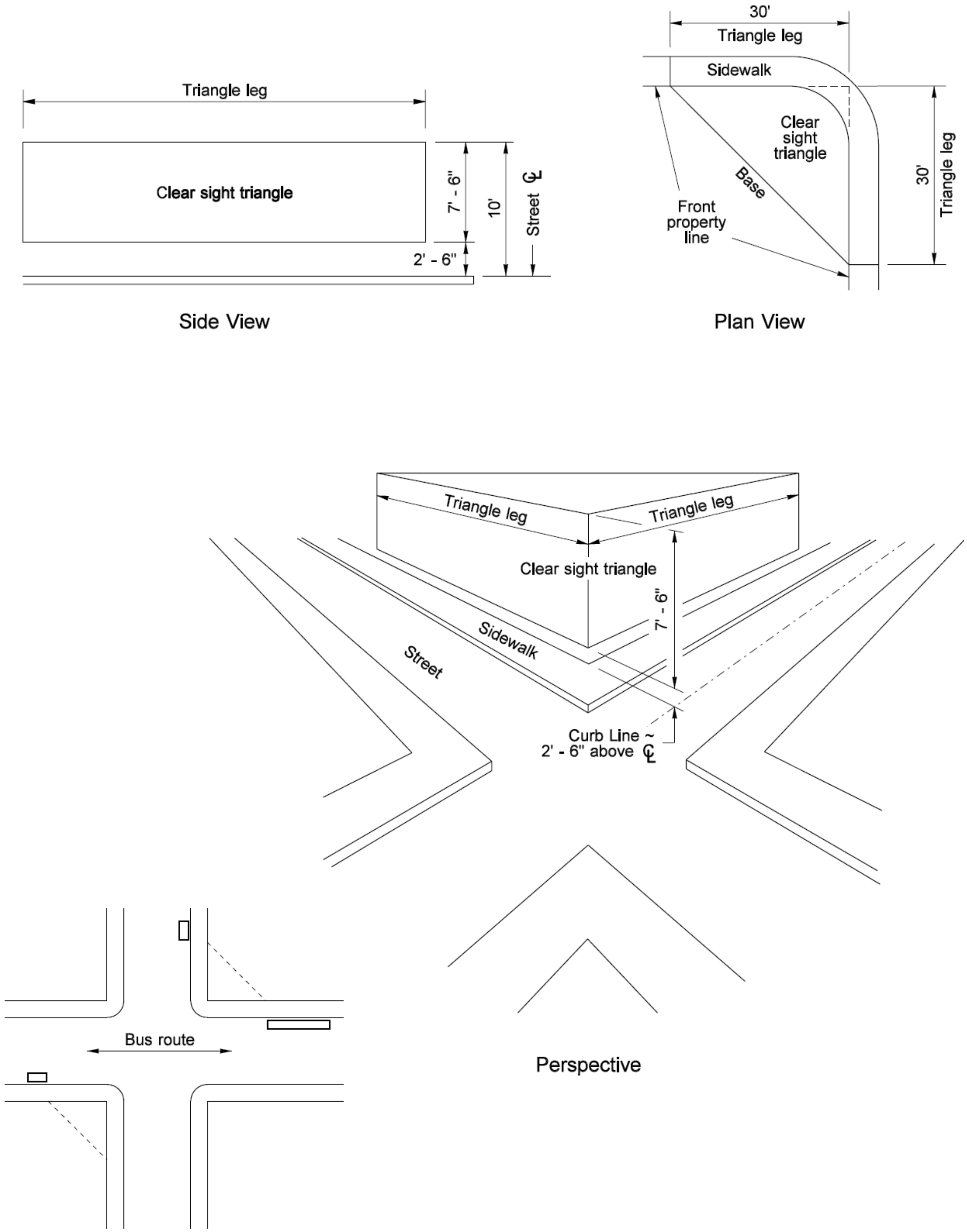
Far-Side Bus Pullout
After Right Turn



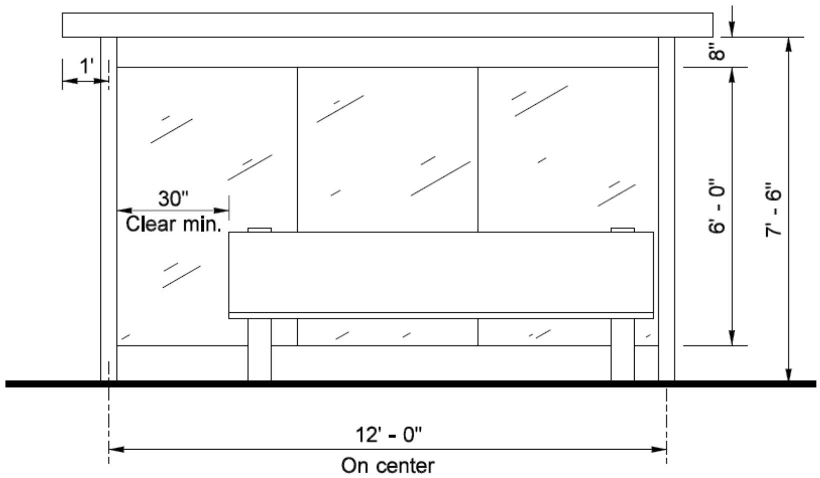


* Based on 40' bus. Add 20' for articulated bus.

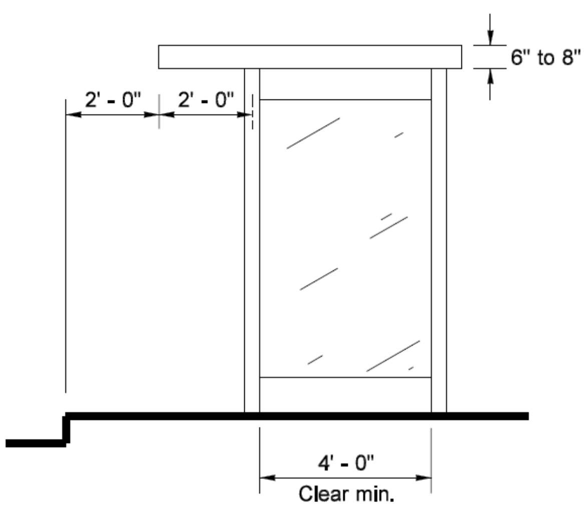
Minimum Bus Zone and Pullout After Right-Turn Dimensions
Exhibit 1430-7



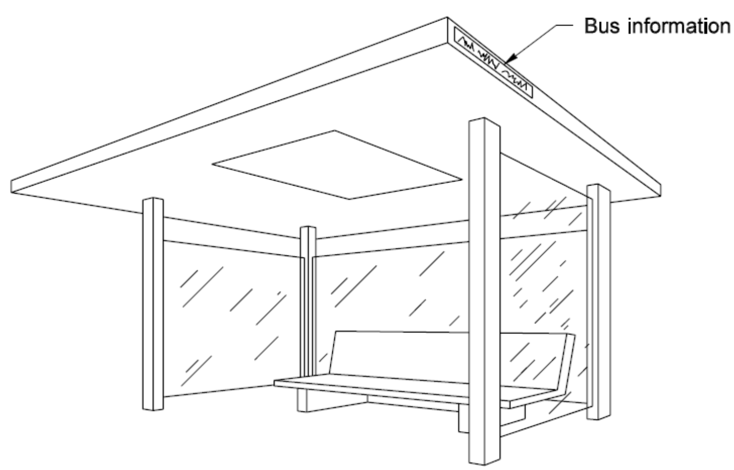
Shelter Siting
Exhibit 1430-8



Front View



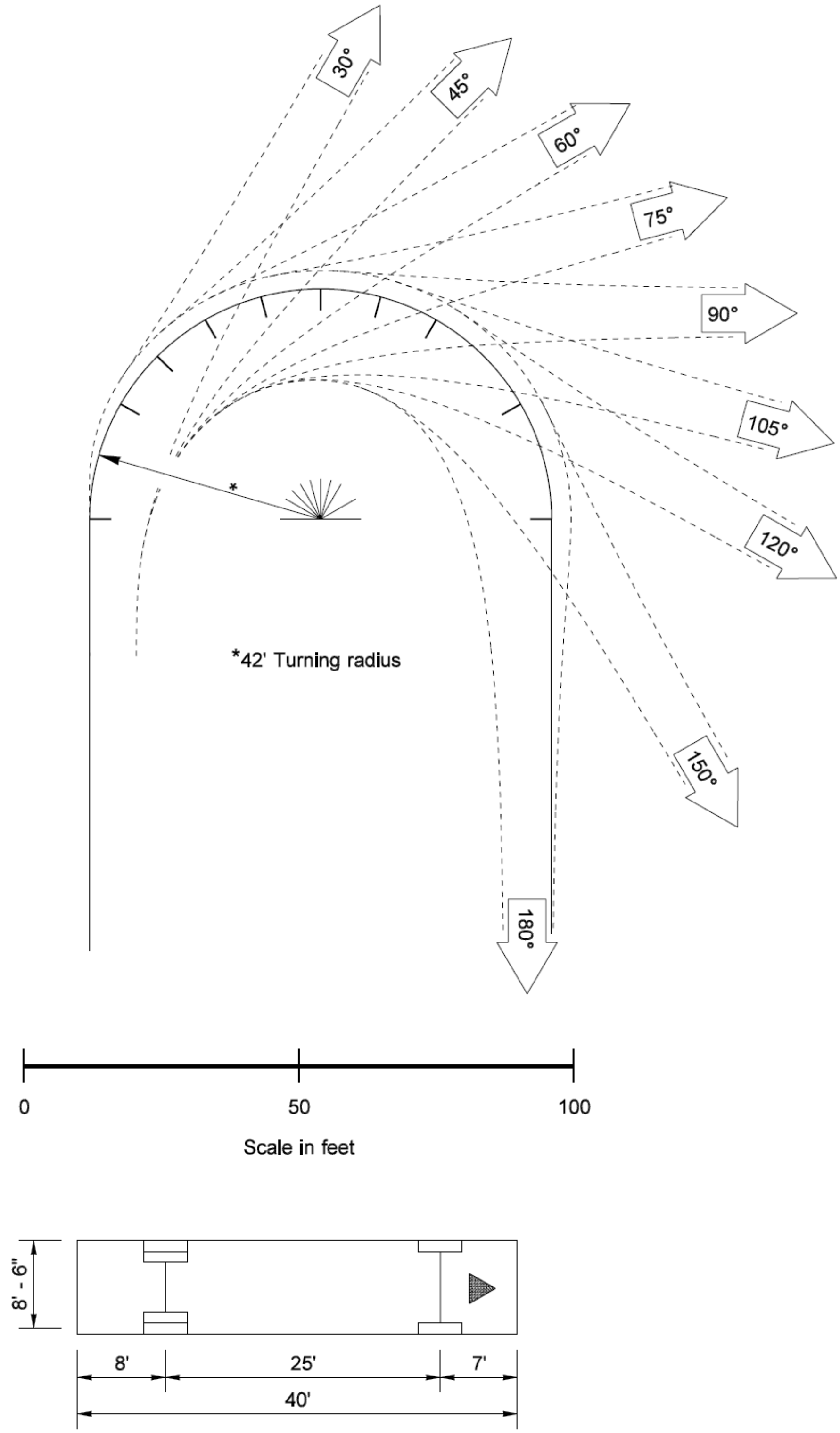
Side View



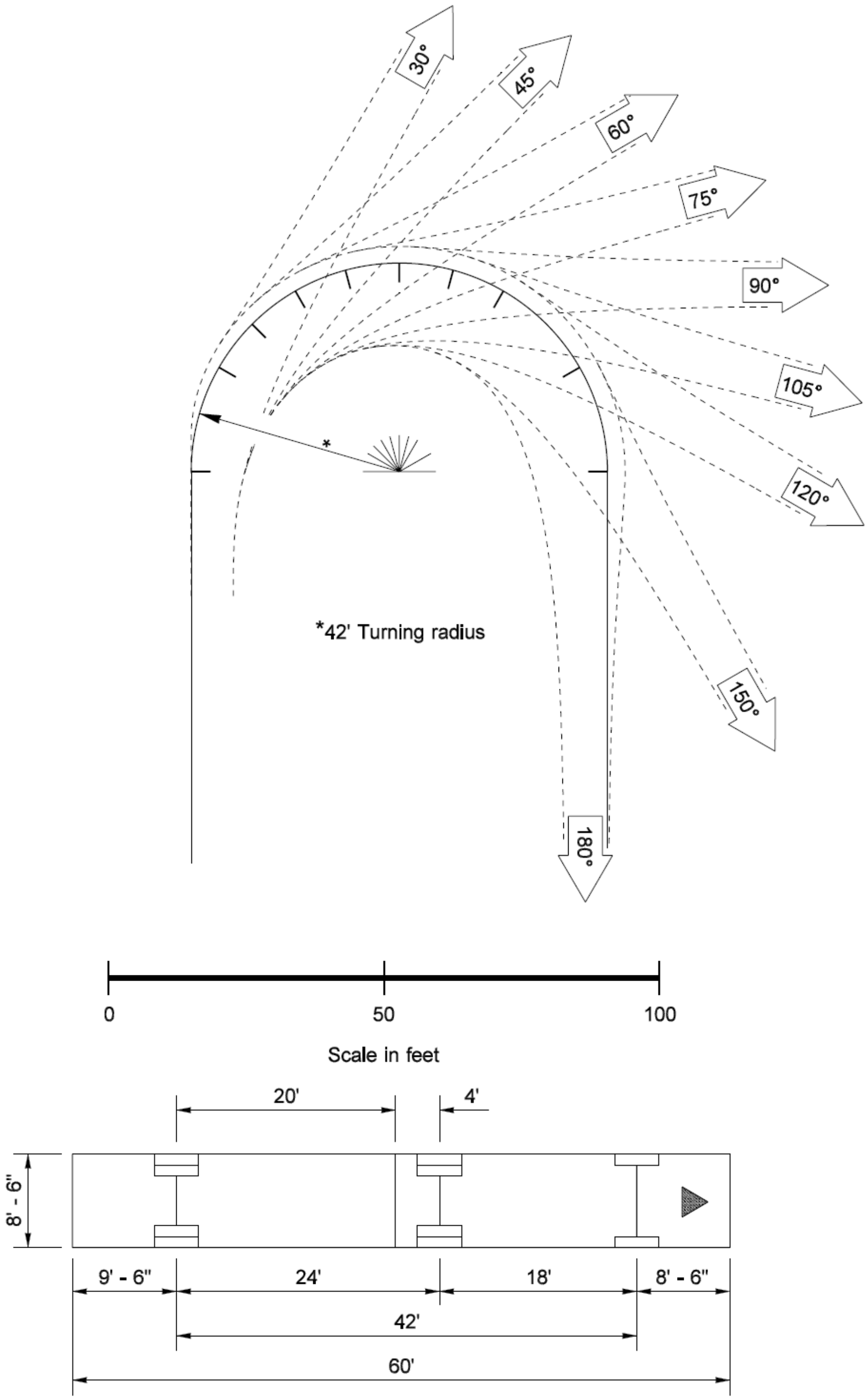
Note:

Bench style can vary.

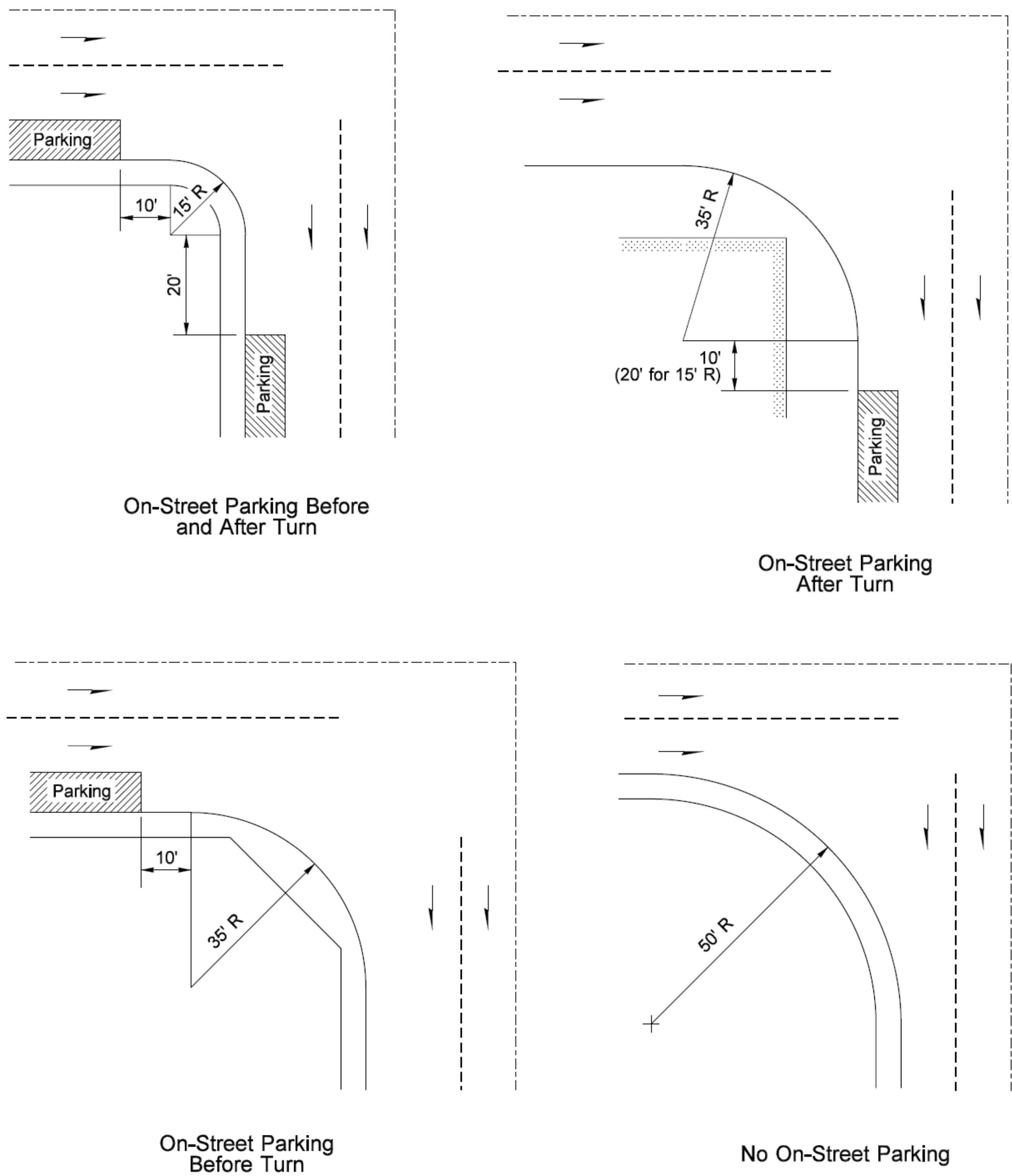
Typical Bus Shelter Design
Exhibit 1430-9



Turning Template for a 40-Foot Bus
Exhibit 1430-10

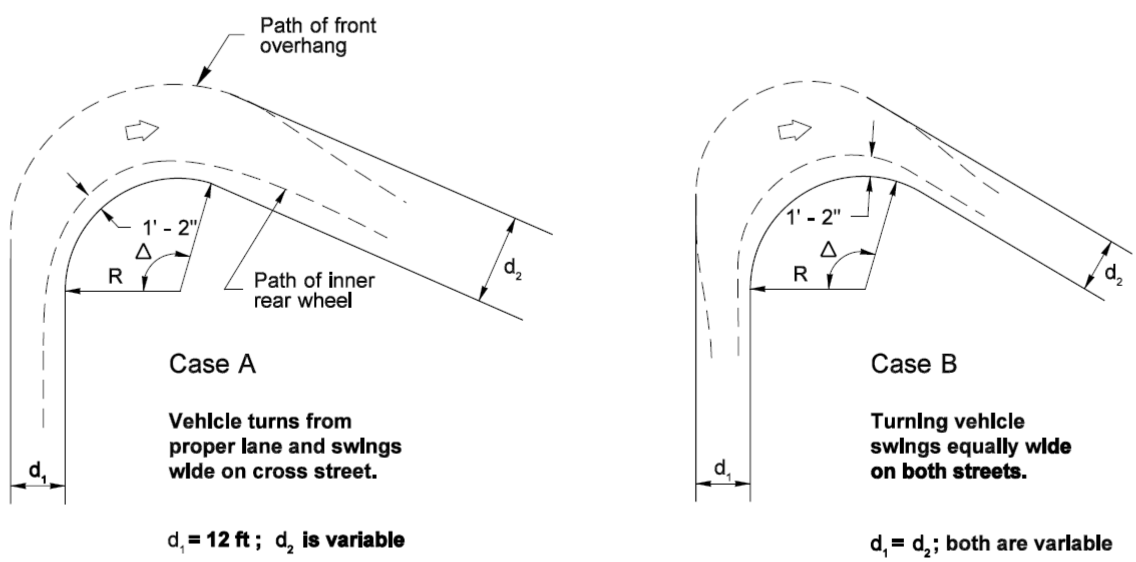


Turning Template for an Articulated Bus
Exhibit 1430-11

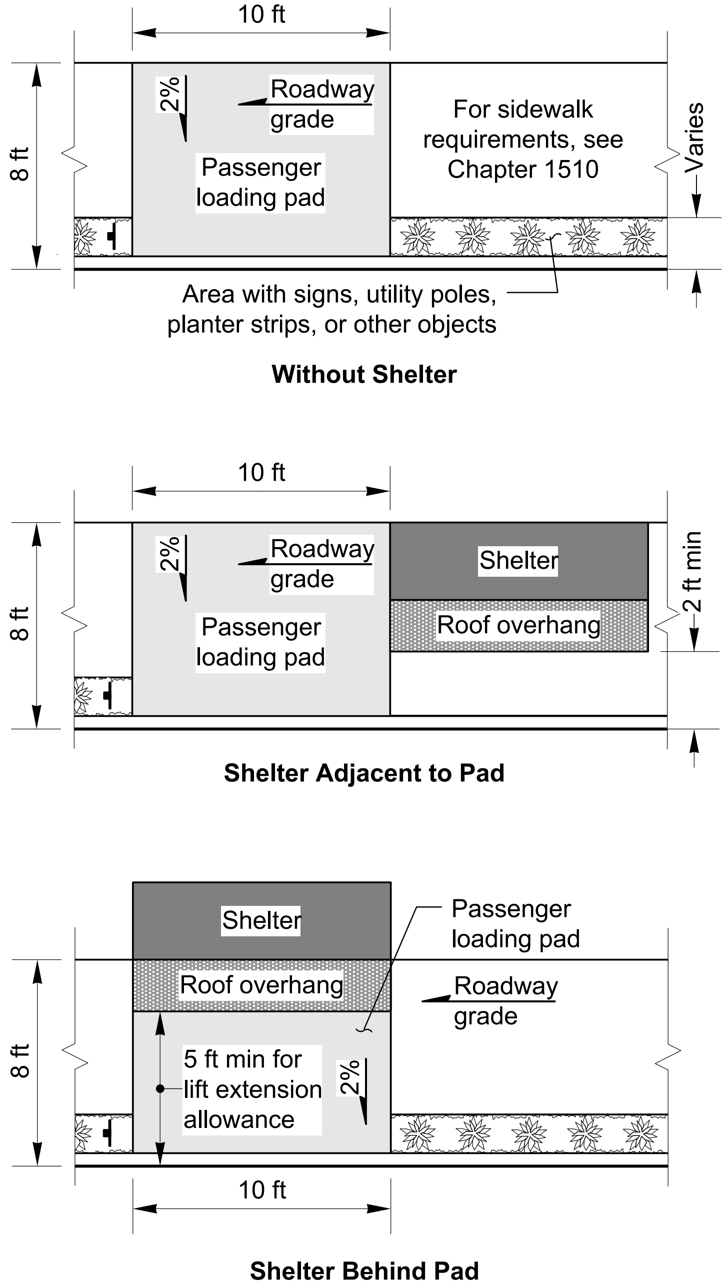


Intersection Design
Exhibit 1430-12

Δ	d_2 for Cases A and B Where:									
	R=15'		R=20'		R=25'		R=30'		R=40'	
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
30	22	17	19	17	19	17	19	17	18	17
60	28	21	26	20	24	20	23	19	22	18
90	38	23	33	22	30	22	25	21	21	18
120	46	28	40	25	32	23	26	19	19	18
150	48	28	40	25	32	23	22	18	17	16



Cross-Street Width Occupied by Turning Vehicle
for Various Angles of Intersection and Curb Radii
Exhibit 1430-13



Notes:

- The passenger loading pad must be free of obstructions. For additional information, see 1430.10(2).
- A minimum-width pedestrian access route must be maintained. For pedestrian design criteria, see Chapter 1510.
- Shelter dimensions may vary. For additional information, see 1430.07(2). For an example of a shelter design, see Exhibit 1430-9.

Passenger Loading Pad
Exhibit 1430-14

Chapter 1510 Pedestrian Facilities

1510.01 General
1510.02 References
1510.03 Definitions
1510.04 Policy
1510.05 Pedestrian Facility Design
1510.06 Pedestrian Facility Design: Structures
1510.07 Other Pedestrian Facilities
1510.08 Illumination and Signing
1510.09 Work Zone Pedestrian Considerations
1510.10 Documentation

1510.01 General

Pedestrian travel is a vital transportation mode. It is used at some point by nearly all citizens and is the main link to everyday life for many. Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) designers must be aware of the various physical needs and abilities of pedestrians. Accommodate this variation in design to allow universal access.

The Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) requires that pedestrian facilities be designed and constructed such that they are readily accessible and usable by individuals with disabilities. This chapter provides accessibility criteria for the design of pedestrian facilities that meet state and national standards.

In addition to the ADA requirements, design pedestrian facilities using guidance in the *Roadside Manual*, the *Design Manual*, and the *Standard Plans*.

Designers face multiple challenges developing facilities that address pedestrian needs within a limited amount of right of way. Designers must:

- Become familiar with all the accessibility criteria requirements.
- Evaluate all pedestrian facilities within project limits for compliance with ADA.
- Recognize those features and elements in existing pedestrian facilities that meet or do not meet accessibility criteria.
- Design facilities that meet accessibility criteria.
- Balance intersection designs to meet the needs of pedestrians and vehicles.
- Design pedestrian access routes to be free of obstacles.
- Avoid the use of pedestrian space for snow storage in areas of heavy snowfall. (Coordinate with region maintenance personnel.)

Consider the maintainability of all designs for all pedestrian facilities and accessible features. Coordinate designs with the responsible WSDOT or local agency maintenance entity to ensure the understanding of maintenance requirements. Title II of the Americans with Disabilities Act requires that all necessary features be accessible and maintained in operable working condition for use by individuals with disabilities.

1510.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) (28 Code of Federal Regulations [CFR] Part 36, Appendix A, as revised July 1, 1994)

23 CFR Part 652

28 CFR Part 35

49 CFR Part 27 (Authority: Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended – 29 USC 794)

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 35.68, Sidewalks, gutters, curbs and driveways – All cities and towns

RCW 35.68.075, Curb ramps for persons with disabilities – Required – Standards and requirements

RCW 35.78, Streets – Classification and design standards

RCW 46.04.160, Crosswalk

RCW 46.61.235, Crosswalks

RCW 46.61.240, Crossing at other than crosswalks

RCW 46.61.261, Sidewalks, crosswalks – Pedestrians, bicycles

RCW 47.24.010, City streets as part of state highways, Designation – Construction, maintenance – Return to city or town

RCW 47.24.020, City streets as part of state highways – Jurisdiction, control

RCW 47.30.030, Facilities for nonmotorized traffic

RCW 47.30.050, Expenditures for paths and trails

(2) Design Guidance

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, Current version

Accessible Rights-of-Way: A Design Guide, U.S. Access Board, Washington D.C.
http://www.access-board.gov/prowac/guide/PROWGuide.htm

Americans with Disabilities Act and Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG), July 23, 2004, U.S. Access Board (The 1991 ADAAG is the current standard for buildings & on-site facilities adopted by US Department of Justice, the 2004 ADA-ABAAG is expected to be adopted.)
www.wbdg.org/ccb/ASTAND/ada_aba.pdf

"Design Guidance, Accommodating Bicycle and Pedestrian Travel: A Recommended Approach," USDOT Policy Statement, 2001
www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/bikeped/Design.htm

Designing Sidewalks and Trails for Access – Parts I & II, USDOT, FHWA, 2001
http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/environment/sidewalk2/index.htm

Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities, AASHTO, 2004. Provides guidance on the planning, design, and operation of pedestrian facilities along streets and highways. Specifically, the guide focuses on identifying effective measures for accommodating pedestrians on public rights of way. It can be purchased through the AASHTO website.

Highway Capacity Manual, Transportation Research Board (TRB), 2000

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Pedestrian Facilities Guidebook: Incorporating Pedestrians Into Washington's Transportation System, OTAK, 1997
www.wsdot.wa.gov/publications/manuals/fulltext/M0000/PedFacGB.pdf

Pedestrian Facilities User's Guide – Providing Safety and Mobility, FHWA, 2002. Provides useful information regarding walkable environments, pedestrian crashes and their countermeasures, and engineering improvements for pedestrians.
www.drusilla.hsrc.unc.edu/cms/downloads/PedFacility_UserGuide2002.pdf

Revised Draft Guidelines for Accessible Public Rights-of-Way (PROWAG), Nov. 23, 2005, U.S. Access Board
www.access-board.gov/prowac/draft.htm

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT

"Special Report: Accessible Public Rights-of-Way – Planning & Designing for Alterations," Public Rights-of-Way Access Advisory Committee, July 2007
www.access-board.gov/PROWAC/alterations/guide.htm

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Understanding Flexibility in Transportation Design – Washington, WSDOT, 2005

Washington State Bicycle and Pedestrian Plan
www.wsdot.wa.gov/bike/Bike_Plan.htm

1510.03 Definitions

accessible A facility in the public right of way that is usable by persons with disabilities.

accessible pedestrian signals A device that communicates information about the "WALK" phase in audible and vibrotactile (vibrating surface that communicates information through touch, located on the accessible pedestrian signal button) formats.

accessible route See ***pedestrian access route***.

ADA An abbreviation for the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990. The ADA is a civil rights law that identifies and prohibits discrimination based on disability. Title II of the ADA requires public entities to design new facilities or alter existing facilities, including sidewalks and trails, to be accessible to people with disabilities.

alternate pedestrian access route A temporary accessible route to be used when the existing pedestrian access route is blocked by construction, alteration, maintenance, or other temporary condition.

alterations A change to a facility in the public right of way that affects or could affect access, circulation, or use.

Alterations include, but are not limited to, renovation; rehabilitation; reconstruction; historic restoration; resurfacing of circulation paths or vehicular ways; or changes or rearrangement of structural parts or elements of a facility.

Alterations *do not* include:

- Pavement pothole patching.
- Liquid-asphalt sealing, chip seal, or crack sealing.
- Lane restriping that does not involve roadway widening.

bituminous surface treatment (BST) Also known as a seal coat or chip seal, a BST is a thin, protective wearing surface that is applied to the pavement.

blended transition A connection with a grade of 5% or less between the level of the pedestrian walkway and the level of the crosswalk.

buffer A space at least 3 feet wide from the back of the curb to the edge of sidewalk that could be treated with planting or alternate pavement.

clear width The required 4-foot minimum width to provide the pedestrian access route.

counter slope Any slope opposite the running slope of a curb ramp, such as the roadway slope or landing slope.

cross slope The slope measured perpendicular to the direction of travel.

crosswalk A marked or unmarked pedestrian crossing, typically at an intersection, that connects the designated pedestrian access route (such as a sidewalk, shoulder, or pathway) on opposite sides of a roadway. A crosswalk must meet accessibility standards.

A crosswalk is also defined as:

- "…the portion of the roadway between the intersection area and a prolongation or connection of the farthest sidewalk line or in the event there are no sidewalks then between the intersection area and a line ten feet therefrom, except as modified by a marked crosswalk" (RCW 46.04.160).
- "(a) That part of a roadway at an intersection included within the connections of the lateral lines of the sidewalks on opposite sides of the highway measured from the curbs or in the absence of curbs, from the edges of the traversable roadway, and in the absence of a sidewalk on one side of the roadway, the part of the roadway included within the extension of the lateral lines of the sidewalk at right angles to the center line; (b) Any portion of a roadway at an intersection or elsewhere distinctly indicated as a pedestrian crossing by lines on the surface, which may be supplemented by contrasting pavement texture, style, or color" (MUTCD, 2003; *Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities*, AASHTO, 2004).

curb extension A curb and sidewalk bulge or extension out into the parking lane or shoulder used to decrease the length of a pedestrian crossing and increase visibility for the pedestrian and driver.

curb flare The sloped area that may occur between the curb ramp and the sidewalk to accommodate the change in grade.

curb line A line at the face of the curb that marks the transition between the curb and the gutter, street, or highway.

curb ramp A combined ramp and landing to accomplish a change in level at a curb. This element provides street and sidewalk access to pedestrians using wheelchairs. Curb ramp is the term used in the ADA. (The WSDOT *Standard Plans* and *Standard Specifications* use the term "sidewalk ramp.")

parallel curb ramp A curb ramp design where the sidewalk slopes down to a landing at road level and then slopes back up to the sidewalk so that the running slope is in line with the direction of sidewalk travel.

perpendicular curb ramp A curb ramp design where the ramp path is perpendicular to the curb or meets the gutter grade break at right angles.

design area

rural design area An area that meets none of the conditions to be an urban area (see Chapter 1140).

suburban design area A term for the area at the boundary of an urban area. Suburban settings may combine the higher speeds common in rural areas with activities that are associated with urban settings.

urban design area An area defined by one or more of the following:

- Adjacent to and including a municipality or other urban place having a population of 5,000 or more, as determined by the latest available published official federal census (decennial or special), within boundaries to be fixed by a state highway department, subject to the approval of the FHWA.
- Within the limits of an incorporated city or town.
- Characterized by intensive use of the land for the location of structures and receiving such urban services as sewer, water, and other public utilities and services normally associated with an incorporated city or town.
- With not more than 25% undeveloped land (see Chapter 1140).

detectable warning surface A tactile surface feature of truncated dome material built into or applied to the walking surface to alert persons with impairments of vehicular ways. Detectable warning surfaces shall contrast visually with the adjacent gutter, street or highway, and walkway surface. Note: The only acceptable detectable warnings are truncated domes as detailed in the *Standard Plans*.

driveway A vehicular access point to a roadway or parking facility with a curb or a slope (typically perpendicular to the curb) that cuts through or is built up to the curb to allow vehicles to effectively negotiate the elevation change between the street and the sidewalk.

element An architectural or mechanical component or design feature of a space, site, or public right of way.

facility All or any portion of buildings, structures, improvements, elements, and pedestrian or vehicular routes located in a public right of way.

feature A component of a pedestrian access route, such as a curb ramp, driveway, crosswalk, or sidewalk.

flangeway gap The space between the inner edge of a rail and the crossing surface or the gap for the train wheel.

grade break The intersection of two adjacent surface planes of different grade.

gutter slope The counter slopes of adjoining gutters and road surfaces immediately adjacent to the curb ramp.

hand rail A narrow rail for support along walking surfaces, ramps, and stairs.

landing A level (0 to 2% grade in any direction) paved area, within or at the top and bottom of a stair or ramp, designed to provide turning and maneuvering space for wheelchair users and as a resting place for pedestrians.

maximum extent feasible From the U.S. Department of Justice, 28 CFR Part 36.402, Alterations: The phrase "to the maximum extent feasible" applies to the occasional case where the nature of the existing facility makes it virtually impossible to comply fully with applicable accessibility standards through a planned alteration.

midblock pedestrian crossing A marked pedestrian crossing located between intersections.

passenger loading zone An area where persons can enter a vehicle safely.

pedestrian Any person afoot or using a wheelchair, power wheelchair, or means of conveyance (other than a bicycle) propelled by human power, such as skates or a skateboard.

pedestrian access route (same as ***accessible route***) A continuous, unobstructed walkway within a pedestrian circulation path that provides accessibility.

The pedestrian access route is connected to street crossings by curb ramps or blended transitions. It may include walkways; sidewalks; street crossings and crosswalks; overpasses and underpasses; courtyards; elevators; platform lifts; stairs; ramps; and landings. Where sidewalks are not provided, pedestrian circulation paths may be provided in the shoulder unless pedestrian use is prohibited.

Not all transportation facilities need to accommodate pedestrians. However, those that do accommodate pedestrians need to have an accessible route.

pedestrian circulation path A prepared exterior or interior way of passage provided for pedestrian travel.

pedestrian facilities Walkways such as sidewalks, walking and hiking trails, shared-use paths, pedestrian grade separations, crosswalks, and other improvements provided for the benefit of pedestrian travel. Pedestrian facilities are intended to be accessible routes.

pedestrian overpass or underpass A grade-separated pedestrian facility, typically a bridge or tunnel structure, over or under a major highway or railroad, that allows pedestrians to cross at a different level.

pedestrian refuge island An island in the roadway that physically separates the directional flow of traffic, provides pedestrians with a place of refuge, and reduces the crossing distance. Note: Islands with cut-through paths are more accessible to persons with disabilities than are raised islands.

pedestrian travel zone (same as ***pedestrian access route***) A continuous, unobstructed walkway within a pedestrian circulation path that provides accessibility.

person with disability An individual who has an impairment, including a mobility, sensory, or cognitive impairment, that results in a functional limitation in access to and use of a building or facility.

rail platform A level area for entering and exiting a light rail, commuter rail, and intercity rail system.

railroad track crossings Locations where a pedestrian access route intersects and crosses a railroad track.

raised median A raised island in the center of a road used to restrict vehicle left turns and side street access. Note: Islands with cut-through paths are more accessible to persons with disabilities than are raised islands.

ramp A ramp is defined as:

- A sloped transition between two elevation levels (AASHTO).
- A walking surface between two level landings with a running slope steeper than 20H:1V (*Americans with Disabilities Act and Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines*, July, 2004).

roadway See Chapter 1140.

running slope A slope measured in the direction of travel, normally expressed as a percent.

sidewalk That portion of a highway, road, or street between the curb line, or the edge of a roadway and the adjacent property line that is paved or improved and intended for use by pedestrians.

sidewalk ramp See ***curb ramp***.

site A parcel of land bounded by a property line or a designated portion of a public right of way.

street furniture Sidewalk equipment or furnishings, including garbage cans, benches, parking meters, and telephone booths.

traffic calming Design techniques that have been shown to reduce traffic speeds and unsafe maneuvers. These techniques can be stand-alone or used in combination, and they include lane narrowing, sidewalk extensions, surface variations, and visual clues in the vertical plane.

train dynamic envelope The clearance required for a train and its cargo overhang due to any combination of loading, lateral motion, or suspension failure.

transit stop An area designed for bus boarding and disembarking.

traveled way (same as ***vehicular way***) A route provided for vehicular traffic. The portion of the roadway intended for the movement of vehicles, exclusive of shoulders and lanes for parking, turning, and storage for turning.

truncated domes Small raised protrusions of a detectible warning surface that are between ⅞ inch and 1 $^{7}/_{16}$ inch in diameter and $^{3}/_{16}$ inch in height arranged in a distinctive pattern that is readily detected and understood by a vision-impaired person using the sense of touch guidance. The *Standard Plans* shows the appropriate pattern and dimensions.

universal access A facility that provides access to all persons regardless of ability or stature.

walk interval That phase of a traffic signal cycle during which the pedestrian is to begin crossing, typically indicated by a WALK message or the walking person symbol and its audible equivalent.

walkway The continuous portion of the pedestrian access route that is connected to street crossings by curb ramps or blended transitions (*Revised Draft Guidelines for Accessible Public Rights-of-Way*, 11-23-05, and *Pedestrian Facilities Guidebook*, WSDOT et al., 1997).

wheeled mobility device A wheelchair, scooter, walker, or other wheeled device that provides mobility to those with limited physical abilities.

1510.04 Policy

(1) General

Provide pedestrian facilities along and across sections of state routes and city streets as an integral part of the transportation system. Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) and WSDOT policy is that bicycle and pedestrian facilities be given full consideration on all highway Improvement projects. Coordinate with the region Planning and Traffic offices to identify planning studies that detail current traffic and forecast growth and pedestrian generators in the project vicinity. FHWA is designated by the Department of Justice to ensure compliance with the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA) for transportation projects. Design pedestrian facilities to provide universal access for all people. Provide pedestrian facilities on highway projects unless one or more of the following conditions are met:

- Pedestrians are prohibited by law from using the facility.
- Planning/land use documents indicate that low population density is projected for the area in the 20-year planning horizon.

Consider whether or not the project is within a city or an urban growth area that is ultimately intended to be developed as an urban density area with urban services, including transit. Inside incorporated cities, design pedestrian facilities in accordance with the city design standards adopted in accordance with RCW 35.78.030 on the condition they comply with the most current ADA requirements. Exceptions to adopted design standards—other than ADA (see below)—require a deviation approved by the designated authority identified in Chapter 300.

Title II of the Americans with Disabilities Act requires that a public entity shall maintain in operable working condition those features of facilities and equipment that are required to be readily accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities. Consider the maintenance needs of accessible pedestrian facilities during the design of those elements.

(2) ADA Compliance

Wherever pedestrian facilities are intended to be a part of the transportation facility, 28 CFR Part 35 requires that those pedestrian facilities meet ADA guidelines. Federal regulations require that all new construction, reconstruction, or alteration of existing transportation facilities be designed and constructed to be accessible and useable by those with disabilities and that existing facilities be retrofitted to be accessible. Design pedestrian facilities to accommodate all types of pedestrians, including children, adults, the elderly, and persons with mobility, sensory, or cognitive impairments.

(a) **Improvement Projects**

Improvement projects address the construction of a new roadway, reconstruction such as roadway widening to add an additional lane, and modal (transit or bicycle) or lane configuration changes that widen the existing roadway cross section. For these projects, pedestrians' needs are assessed and included in the project. Develop pedestrian facilities consistent with the accessibility criteria listed in Exhibits 1510-23 and 1510-27.

(b) **Pavement Preservation (Alteration) Projects**

Preservation projects are considered alterations. Alterations include, but are not limited to, renovation; rehabilitation; reconstruction; historic restoration; lane restriping as part of an overlay; resurfacing of circulation paths or vehicular ways; or changes or rearrangement of structural parts or elements of a facility. The following guidance applies to alteration projects:

- All existing curb ramps and crosswalks (marked or not) need to be assessed to determine whether curb ramp and crosswalk design elements meet the accessibility criteria in Exhibit 1510-27.
- Modify existing and proposed crosswalk slopes to meet the accessibility criteria by grinding or preleveling. Justify the reasons for not meeting the accessibility criteria for crosswalks slopes and document in the DDP. (See Chapter 300 for discussion of the DDP.)
- Modify existing curb ramps that do not meet the accessibility criteria to the maximum extent feasible. Where some curb ramps exist at intersections, it is also necessary to make sure they exist on both ends of a crosswalk. A crosswalk must be accessible from both ends. This also may require reconstruction or modification of other ADA features (see Exhibit 1510-27) to ensure all elements of a curb ramp will meet the accessibility criteria. It is not always possible to build a curb ramp to full ADA standards. If such a situation is encountered, the designer needs to contact the appropriate Assistant State Design Engineer (ASDE) to confirm the finding. After the ASDE confirms the finding that it is not possible to build the curb ramp to full ADA standards, the designer then designs the curb ramp to the maximum extent feasible and documents which elements were and which were not designed to ADA standards; include documentation in the DDP. If the project is within a city, coordinate with the city to develop an assessment of ADA compliance.

The following are not considered alterations and therefore are not subject to accessibility requirements:

- Pavement pothole patching.
- Liquid-asphalt sealing, chip seal, or crack sealing.
- Lane restriping that does not involve roadway widening.

(3) Jurisdiction

When city streets form a part of the state highway system within the corporate limits of cities and towns, the city has full responsibility for and control over any facilities beyond the curbs and, if no curb is installed, beyond that portion of the highway used for highway purposes (RCW 47.24.020). When proposed projects will damage or remove existing sidewalks or other pedestrian access routes or features within a city's jurisdiction, work with the city to reconstruct the affected facilities to meet accessibility criteria. When proposed alteration projects are within the city limits, curb ramps will be assessed, and any that do not meet the accessibility criteria for alterations will need to be modified.

The title to limited access facilities within incorporated cities and towns remains with the state. If a turnback agreement has not been completed, the state maintains full jurisdiction within these areas (see Chapters 510, 520, and 530).

(4) Access Control

Access control on highways is either *limited* or *managed* and is discussed in detail in Division 5. Various designations of access control affect how and where pedestrian facilities are located, as follows:

(a) **Full Limited Access Control**

On roadways designated as having full limited access control, pedestrian access routes, hiking trails, and shared-use paths within the right of way are separated from vehicular traffic with physical barriers. These facilities can connect with other facilities outside the right of way once proper documentation has been obtained. Contact the Headquarters (HQ) Access and Hearings Section and HQ Real Estate Services to determine the required documentation. Grade separations are provided when the trail or path crosses the highway. (See Chapter 530 for limited access.)

(b) **Partial or Modified Limited Access Control**

On these facilities, pedestrian access routes and shared-use paths may be located between the access points of interchanges or intersections. Pedestrian crossings are usually either at grade or grade-separated. Consider midblock pedestrian crossings at pedestrian generators when the roadway has the characteristics associated with an urban or suburban area and has appropriate operational and geometric characteristics that allow for a crossing. Note that the installation of a midblock pedestrian crossing on a state highway is a design deviation that requires approval and documentation. Pedestrian circulation paths must include a pedestrian access route.

Consider providing sidewalks at signalized intersections. Evaluate extending sidewalks on a project-by-project basis. (See Chapter 530 for limited access.)

(c) **Managed Access Control Highways**

On these routes, in rural areas, paved shoulders are normally used for pedestrian travel. When pedestrian activity is high, separate walkways may be provided. Sidewalks are typically used in urban growth areas where there is an identified need for pedestrian facilities.

Consider providing sidewalks at signalized intersections. Evaluate extending sidewalks on a project-by-project basis.

Trails and shared-use paths, separated from the roadway alignment, are used to connect areas of community development. Pedestrian crossings are typically at grade.

1510.05 Pedestrian Facility Design

(1) Facilities

The type of pedestrian facility provided is based on access control of the highway; local transportation plans; comprehensive plans and other plans (such as Walk Route Plans) developed by schools and school districts; the roadside environment; pedestrian volumes; user age group(s); safety-economic analyses; and the continuity of local walkways along or across the roadway. Pedestrian access routes can either be immediately adjacent to streets and highways or separated from them by a buffer.

(2) Pedestrian Travel Along Streets and Highways

Examples of various types of pedestrian access routes are shown in Exhibit 1510-23. A generalized method of assessing the need for and adequacy of pedestrian facilities is shown in Exhibit 1510-24.

To determine what type of pedestrian facility to use, consider a study that addresses roadway classification, traffic speed, collision data, pedestrian generators, school zones, transit routes, and land use designation.

Chapter 1600 provides guidance on the design clear zone, based on various conditions such as rural or urban routes, speeds, traffic volumes, and jurisdiction.

(a) **Basic Criteria for Pedestrian Accessible Routes**

1. **Surfacing**

   The surface of the pedestrian access route needs to be firm, stable, slip-resistant, and smooth. Use cement or asphalt concrete surfaces; crushed gravel is not considered to be a stable, firm surface.

   Locate utility vaults and junction boxes outside the sidewalk. Where this is not practicable, use utility vaults and junction boxes with lids designed to reduce tripping and slipping (see the *Standard Plans*).

2. **Vertical Clearance**

   Hanging or protruding objects within the walkway may present obstacles for pedestrians with visual impairments. The minimum vertical clearance for objects (including signs) overhanging a walkway is 7 feet (84 inches).

3. **Horizontal Encroachment**

   The minimum clear width for an ADA pedestrian accessible route is 4 feet. Where the pedestrian access route is less than 5 feet wide, provide a 5-foot x 5-foot passing space at 200-foot intervals.

   Fixtures located in the sidewalk are obstacles for pedestrians, and they reduce the clear width of the sidewalk. Provide a continuous, unobstructed route for pedestrians. When an unobstructed route is not possible, provide the minimum clear width for an accessible route around obstructions.

Objects that protrude more than 4 inches into the walkway are considered to be obstacles, and warning devices are necessary wherever feasible. Equip wall-mounted and post-mounted objects that protrude 4 inches or more into the walkway between 27 inches and 80 inches above the sidewalk with warning devices detectable by persons with impaired vision using a cane (see Exhibit 1510-1).

When relocation of utility poles and other fixtures is necessary for a project, determine the impact of their new location on all pedestrian walkways. Look for opportunities to eliminate obstructions, including existing utilities that obstruct the pedestrian route.

Acceptable Pedestrian Access Route

Unacceptable Pedestrian Access Route

Accessible Sidewalk

Sidewalk With Obstructions

Pedestrian Route Geometrics

Exhibit 1510-1

4. **Geometrics of the Pedestrian Accessible Route**

   When considering both new and existing pedestrian-accessible routes, the geometric elements need to be evaluated for the running slope of the route, cross slope, width, amount of vertical rise over the length of the route, vertical differences at changes in surface grades (tripping hazards), and access across and through a vertical barrier (curb ramps).

   Where the walkway is located behind guardrail, address guardrail bolts or install a rub rail to prevent snagging. Consider the installation of "W" beam guardrail on the pedestrian side of the posts to reduce snagging and as a guide for sight-impaired pedestrians. Specify these construction requirements in the contract.

   Provide a nonsnagging finish to vertical surfaces adjacent to a pedestrian facility to prevent snagging or abrasive injuries from accidental contact with the surface.

(3) Shoulders

Paved shoulders are an extension of the roadway and are not considered pedestrian facilities; however they can be used by pedestrians and may serve as a pedestrian access route. Although pedestrians are allowed to travel along the shoulder, its main purpose is to provide an area for disabled vehicles, a recovery area for errant vehicles, and positive drainage away from the roadway.

Determine whether the roadway shoulders are of sufficient width and condition to permit travel for pedestrians. Paved shoulders are preferable. A 4-foot-wide shoulder is acceptable where pedestrian activity is minimal and where school and other pedestrian generators are not present. Wider shoulders are desirable along high-speed highways, particularly when truck volumes or pedestrian activities are high.

Longitudinal travel along shoulders with cross slopes greater than 2% can be difficult for people with disabilities. Horizontal curves are usually superelevated and can have cross slopes steeper than 2%. The shoulders on these curves often have the same cross slope as the roadway. If pedestrians will use the shoulder frequently, consider a separate pedestrian access route.

(4) Shared-Use Paths

Shared-use paths are used by pedestrians and bicyclists (see Exhibit 1510-2). Comply with accessibility criteria in their design. Pedestrian facilities differ from bicycle facilities in their design criteria and goals, and they are not always compatible. When it is determined that a shared-use path is in the best interests of both groups, see Chapter 1520, Bicycle Facilities, AASHTO's *Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities,* and FHWA's *Designing Sidewalks and Trails for Access, Part II*.

Shared-Use Path
Exhibit 1510-2

(5) Sidewalks

Plan the design of sidewalks carefully to include a pedestrian access route that provides universal access. Sidewalk design elements are found in Exhibits 1510-23 and 1510-27, and details for raised sidewalks are shown in the *Standard Plans*. Wherever appropriate, make sidewalks continuous and provide access to side streets. The most desirable installation for the pedestrian is a sidewalk separated from the traveled way by a planted buffer. This provides a greater separation between vehicles and pedestrians than curb alone.

(a) **Buffers and Widths**

Where a sidewalk is separated from the travelled way with only a curb, the WSDOT minimum sidewalk width is 6 feet.

The WSDOT minimum width for a sidewalk is 5 feet, when used with a buffer at least 3 feet wide. (See the *Standard Plans* and Exhibit 1510-23).

Driveway/Sidewalk Crossings
Exhibit 1510-4

Wider sidewalks are preferable in areas of high pedestrian traffic, such as a central business district (CBD) and along parks, schools, and other major pedestrian generators. Coordinate with the city for appropriate sidewalk and buffer designs and funding participation in these cases.

Consider buffers of 4 feet for collector routes and 6 feet for arterial routes. If trees or shrubs are included, coordinate with the region or HQ Landscape Architect and refer to the *Roadside Manual*. Plants should not limit the visibility of motorists or pedestrians or pose obstructions on the pedestrian access route (see Chapter 1340). Design subsurface infrastructure (such as structural soils), and select plants whose root systems do not cause sidewalks to buckle or heave. Coordinate buffer planting with maintenance personnel.

In areas with snowfall consider wider sidewalks or a sidewalk with a buffer to accommodate snow storage while at the same time keeping the pedestrian route free of snow accumulation. Make sure maintenance access is not obstructed.

Shoulders, bike lanes, and on-street parking are not considered buffer, but they do offer the advantage of further separation between vehicles and pedestrians.

(b) **Alignment, Grade, and Cross Slope**

Where the walkway (sidewalk) of a pedestrian access route is adjacent to a street or highway, its running slope can match, but not exceed, the general grade established for the adjacent street or highway. On roadways with prolonged grades greater than 8.3%, consider providing hand railings* and level landings adjacent to the sidewalk as resting areas.

**Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities*, AASHTO, 2004

If the sidewalk follows a separate horizontal or vertical alignment, the running slope must comply with ADA standards. The maximum running slope allowed is 8.3%.

Design sidewalks with cross slopes no more than 2%. Steeper cross slopes are difficult for people in wheelchairs to negotiate.

(c) **Driveways**

Driveways can be a barrier for persons with disabilities. Provide accessible crossings in locations where a sidewalk meets a driveway. An accessible route is 4 feet wide minimum with a cross slope of 2% or less. (See Exhibit 1510-4 for examples of driveway/sidewalk crossings.)

Consider limiting or consolidating driveways (vehicle access points). Construct driveways in accordance with ADA requirements, or provide an ADA accessible route. (See Chapter 520 for access control information and the *Standard Plans* for vehicle approach details and ADA requirements.) Where a driveway is present within the longitudinal limits of the sidewalk, provide a pedestrian-accessible route to maintain continuity along the sidewalk. (See Exhibit 1510-27 for design element requirements.)

Driveway/Sidewalk Crossings
Exhibit 1510-4

(d) **Sideslopes, Railing, and Barriers**

The sideslope adjacent to the sidewalk is a critical design element. Exhibit 1510-23 provides guidance on slope rounding and railings for various conditions. When there is a vertical drop-off of 2 feet 6 inches or more directly behind the sidewalk, provide a pedestrian railing when embankment widening is not possible (see Exhibit 1510-23).

The pedestrian railing is installed between the walkway and the vertical drop-off. Ensure pedestrian railing does not encroach on the sidewalk width.

Pedestrian railings are not always designed to withstand vehicular impacts or redirect errant vehicles. Chapter 1600 addresses the Design Clear Zone for vehicles. A crashworthy traffic barrier is required if the drop-off is within the Design Clear Zone.

Where the walkway is adjacent to a vertical drop-off and is separated from the roadway, consider installing the traffic barrier between the traveled way and the walkway. The pedestrian railing is installed between the walkway and the vertical drop-off.

(6) Curb Ramps (Sidewalk Ramps)

Curb ramps provide an accessible connection from a raised sidewalk down to the roadway surface. A curb ramp is required at every corner of all intersections where curbs and sidewalks are present, except where pedestrian crossing is prohibited. (See 1510.05(8)(b), Exhibit 1510-7, and Chapter 1330 for guidance on closed crossings.) For new construction, a curb ramp oriented in each direction of pedestrian travel aligned with the crosswalk it serves is required. For alterations, a separate curb ramp oriented in each direction of pedestrian travel aligned with the crosswalk it serves is required if feasible. Every curb ramp must have a curb ramp at the other end of the crosswalk it serves unless there is no curb or sidewalk on the opposite side. Curb ramps are also required at midblock crossings where sidewalks are present.

(a) **Types of Curb Ramps**

Different types of curb ramps can be used: perpendicular, parallel, and combination. Wherever possible, it is desirable to provide a buffer around the corner to separate the sidewalk from the curb, allowing the curb ramp to be installed with curb returns that facilitate direction-finding for the visually impaired.

1. **Perpendicular**

   This curb ramp is commonly used to provide access from the sidewalk to the street. The landing is to be located at the top of the curb ramp.

   a. **Advantages**

   - Ramp aligned with the crosswalk.
   - Straight path of travel on tight radius.
   - Two ramps per corner.

   b. **Disadvantage**

   - May not provide a straight path of travel on larger-radius corners.
   - May not fit with the required flares on small radius corners.

2. **Parallel**

   This curb ramp works well in a narrower area with right of way limitations or where blending a curb ramp into steep grades is required. The landing is to be located at the bottom of the curb ramp.

   a. **Advantages**

   - Requires minimal right of way.
   - Provides a level area that aligns with the crossing. The landing is contained in the sidewalk and not the street.
   - Allows ramps to be extended to reduce ramp grade or blend into steep grades of sidewalk.
   - Provides edges on the side of the ramp that are clearly defined for pedestrians with vision impairments.

   b. **Disadvantages**

   - Pedestrians need to negotiate two or more ramp grades possibly making it more difficult to traverse.
   - Improper design/construction of the landing can result in the accumulation of water or debris at the bottom of the ramp.

3. **Combination**

   This combines the use of perpendicular and parallel types of curb ramps. The landing may be shared in this application.

   a. **Advantages**

   - Works well in areas where grades may be a problem.
   - Does not require turning or maneuvering on the ramp.
   - Ramp aligned perpendicular to the crosswalk.
   - Level maneuvering area between ramps.
   - Allows transition of running slopes in steep terrain

b. **Disadvantage**

- Generally require more space.
- Might require more extensive alterations in retrofits.

(b) **Curb Ramp Common Elements**

To comply with ADA requirements, the following represents the design requirements for curb ramps:

1. **Clear Width**

- 4 feet wide minimum

2. **Landings**

A level landing is necessary at the top of a perpendicular ramp or the bottom of a parallel curb ramp as noted above for the type of curb ramp used. The top landing is provided to allow a person in a wheelchair room to maneuver into a position to use the ramp or bypass it. The lower landing allows a wheelchair user to transition from the ramp to the roadway crossing.

- The width of the landing matches the width of the curb ramp.
- In Preservation projects on existing landings, the length of the landing must be at least 3 feet. The width of the landing needs to match the width of the curb ramps.
- In new construction, provide a 4-foot-square landing.
- When right of way constraints are not an issue, it is desirable to provide a larger landing.
- If the landing is next to a vertical wall, a 5-foot-wide clear area is desirable to allow a person in a wheelchair more room to maneuver and change directions.
- The running and cross slopes of landings for curb ramps on midblock crossings are permitted to be warped to meet street or highway grade.

3. **Running Slope**

- 12H:1V or flatter (in new construction and Preservation projects).

4. **Cross Slope**

- Not greater than 2%.

5. **Curb Ramp Flares**

- Do not exceed 10%.

6. **Counter Slope**

- Provide a counter slope of the gutter or street at the foot of the curb ramp or landing of 5% maximum. When the algebraic difference between the counter slope of the gutter or street and ramp running slope is equal to or greater than 11%, consider a 2-foot level strip at the base of the ramp (see Exhibits 1510-8 and 1510-27).

7. **Detectable Warning Surfaces**

- Are to be installed where curb ramps or landings connect to a roadway.

In all cases, detectable warning surfaces are to be installed, including at channelizing islands (median and right-turn lanes as shown in Exhibit 1510-14). Detectable warning surfaces must contrast visually with the background material. ADAAG requires that detectable warnings “shall contrast visually with adjoining surfaces either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.” WSDOT requires the use of federal yellow as the visual contrast on its projects. Other contrasting colors may be used on projects where cities have jurisdiction.

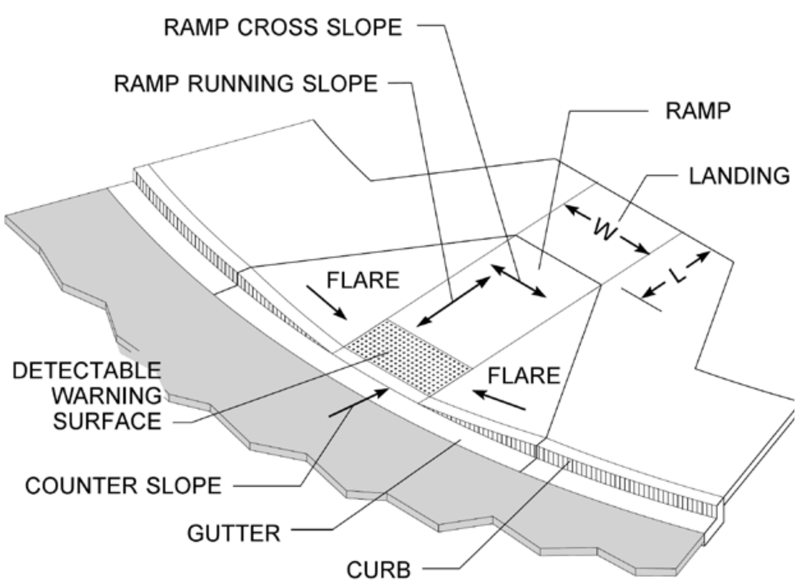
At signalized intersections, it is desirable to provide pedestrian push buttons on separate poles located near each curb ramp landing for ADA accessibility. Provide paved access to the pedestrian push button. (See Chapter 1330 for information on pedestrian guidelines at traffic signal locations.)

Perpendicular Ramps

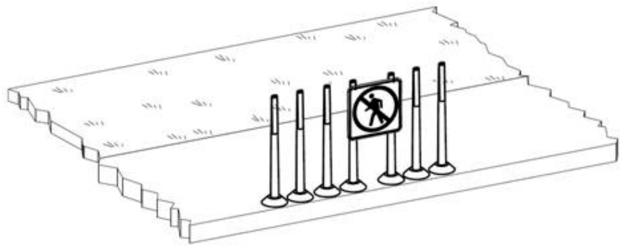
Parallel Ramp

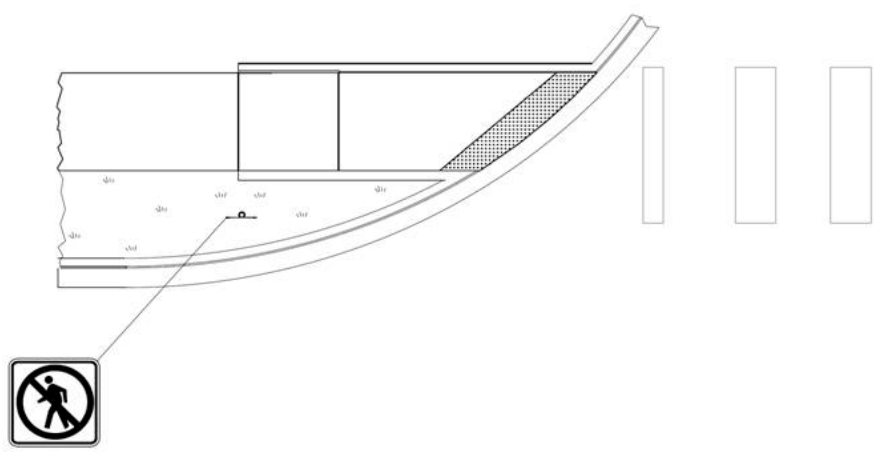
Combination Ramp

Curb Ramps
Exhibit 1510-5

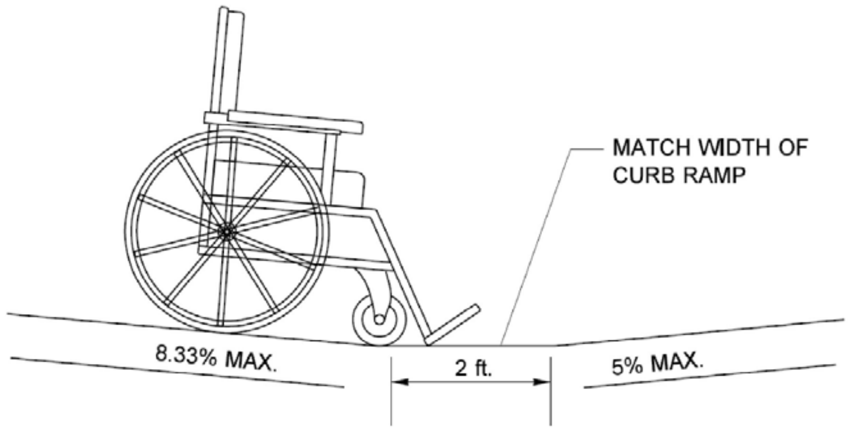


Curb Ramp Common Elements
Exhibit 1510-6





Examples of Acceptable Barriers Closing Pedestrian Crossings
Exhibit 1510-7

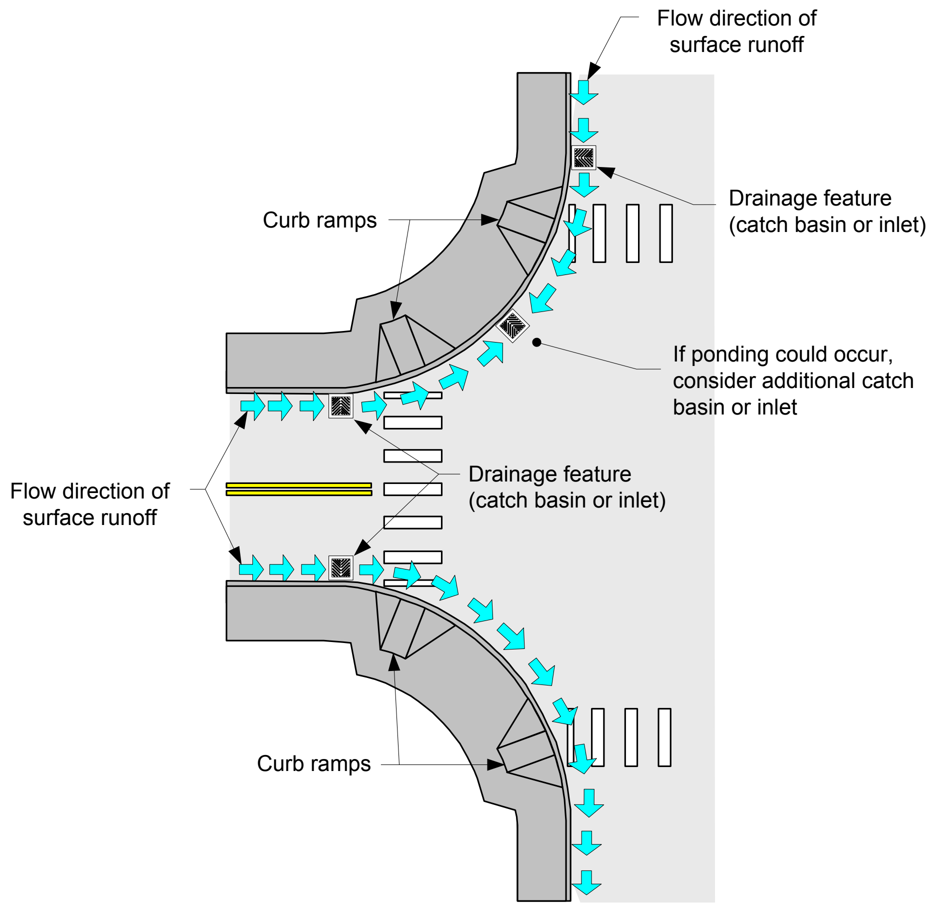


Consider a 2-foot level strip if algebraic difference ≥ 11%.

Source: *Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities,* AASHTO

Counter Slope Alternative
Exhibit 1510-8

The lower terminus of the curb ramp is located at the beginning of a marked or unmarked crosswalk. Surface water runoff from the roadway can flood the lower end of a curb ramp. Determine the grades along the curb line and verify that the base of the curb ramp is not the lowest point of the gutter. Provide catch basins or inlets to prevent the flooding of the ramps. Exhibit 1510-9 shows examples of how drainage structures are located. Verify that drainage structures will not be in the pedestrian access route.



Curb Ramp Drainage
Exhibit 1510-9

(7) Vehicle Bridges and Underpasses

Provide for pedestrians on vehicle bridges and underpasses where pedestrians are allowed (contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office). Provide either raised sidewalks or ramps on the approaches to bridges when there are raised sidewalks on the bridge. The ramp is constructed of either asphalt or cement concrete and has a slope of 20H:1V or flatter. These ramps can also be used as a transition from a raised sidewalk down to a paved shoulder. The ramp provides pedestrian access and mitigates the raised, blunt end of the concrete sidewalk for vehicles.

In underpasses where pedestrians are allowed, it is desirable to provide sidewalks and to maintain the full shoulder width. When bridge columns are placed on either side of the roadway, consider placing the walkway between the roadway and the columns for pedestrian visibility and security. Provide adequate lighting and drainage for pedestrian safety and comfort.

(8) Pedestrian Crossings at Grade

(a) **Design Considerations for Crossing Facilities**

Designing intersections for the needs of all users, including pedestrians, requires various considerations and tradeoffs. The following list presents design considerations for creating crossing facilities that meet pedestrian needs:

- Minimize turning radii to keep speeds low (see Chapter 1310 for design vehicle guidance).
- Place crosswalks such that they are visible and adjacent to the pedestrian facility.
- Use a separate left-turn phase along with a "WALK/DON'T WALK" signal.
- Restrict or prohibit turns.
- Shorten crossing distance.
- Use a raised median for a pedestrian refuge in the median.
- Use pedestrian signals (APS).
- Use signage.
- Place crosswalks as close as practicable to the intersection traveled way.
- Provide pedestrian-level lighting.

(b) **Closed Crossings**

To meet ADA requirements, equal access to cross the highway shall be provided to all pedestrians unless pedestrian crossing is prohibited. Consult with the region Traffic Office when considering a prohibited crossing. Also:

- Provide an accessible alternative to the closed crossing.
- Make the leg on each side of the crossing inaccessible to all pedestrians.
- Install signs and a barrier detectable to persons with visual disabilities, restricting all pedestrians from crossing at that location (see Exhibit 1510-7).

All pedestrian crossings need to provide a pedestrian access route that meets ADA guidelines. Exhibit 1510-25 provides recommendations for determining pedestrian markings based on vehicular traffic volume and speed. Pedestrian crossings at grade are permitted along the length of most highways. Pedestrian crossing on all legs of an intersection is also permitted. An illegal pedestrian crossing only occurs when signs prohibit a particular crossing at an intersection or the crossing occurs between two adjacent signalized intersections (RCW 46.61.240).

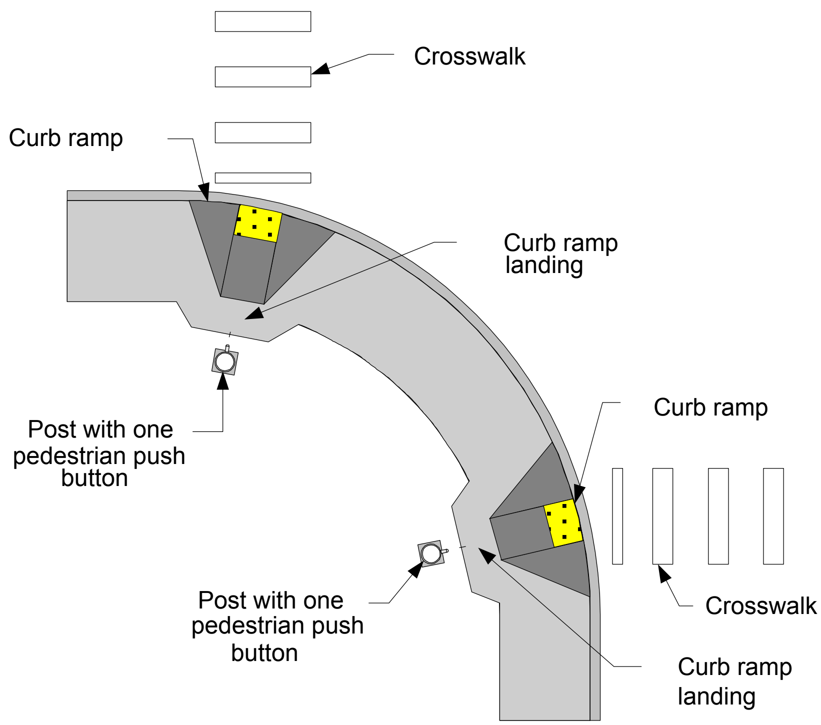
(c) **Accessible Pedestrian Signals (APS)**

In locations of pedestrian facilities, use ADA-compliant audible/vibrotactile pedestrian signals at all locations where pedestrian signals are newly installed or replaced. Consult with region and city maintenance personnel regarding maintenance requirements for these devices. Installation of these devices may require improvements to existing sidewalks and ramps to ensure ADA compliance. (See Chapter 1330 and the MUTCD for additional information.)

When designing pedestrian signals, consider the needs of older pedestrians and pedestrians with disabilities as they might walk at a significantly slower pace than the average pedestrian. Determine whether there are pedestrian generators in the project vicinity that might attract older and disabled pedestrians. Adjust signal timing accordingly, and include countdown clocks where appropriate. Consult with region and city maintenance personnel regarding maintenance requirements for these devices.

- Locate pedestrian push buttons within reasonable proximity to the curb ramp and crosswalk (see Exhibit 1510-10, Chapter 1330 and the MUTCD).
- Clearly identify which crossing is controlled by the push button.
- Provide a level surface at each push button for wheelchair users.
- Locate push button a maximum height of 3 feet 6 inches from level landing surface.*

*FHWA, Designing Sidewalks and Trails for Access, Pedestrian-Actuated Traffic Controls, 1999



Pedestrian Push Button Locations
Exhibit 1510-10

(9) Crosswalks at Intersections

Legal crosswalks, whether marked or not, exist at all intersections. An unmarked crosswalk is the 10-foot-wide area across the intersection behind a prolongation of the curb or edge of the through traffic lane (RCW 46.04.160). At roundabouts and intersections with triangular refuge islands or slip lanes (see Chapter 1310), the desired pedestrian crossings are not consistent with the definition of an unmarked crosswalk, and marked crossings are necessary. Inside city limits where the population exceeds 25,000, coordinate the decision to mark crosswalks with the city. WSDOT approves the installation and type only (RCW 47.24.020(13)). In unincorporated areas and within cities with populations less than 25,000, WSDOT has decision authority. WSDOT maintains decision authority in limited access areas. Coordinate with the city regardless of population.

ADA requires that a pedestrian access route be provided at all marked and unmarked pedestrian crossings. This can be part or all of the crosswalk width. The accessibility criteria require a pedestrian access route within crosswalks of 4 feet minimum, with a running slope less than or equal to 5% and a cross slope less than or equal to 2% (see Exhibits 1510-26 and 1510-27).

Marked crosswalks are not to be used indiscriminately. Marked crosswalks are used at signalized intersections, intersections with triangular refuge islands, and roundabouts so pedestrians know where they are to cross. Perform an engineering study before installing marked crosswalks away from highway traffic signals or stop signs. Note that the installation of a midblock pedestrian crossing on a state highway is a design deviation that requires approval and documentation. When considering a marked crosswalk, at a minimum evaluate the following factors:

- The crosswalk would serve 20 pedestrians per hour during the peak hour, 15 elderly and/or children per hour, or 60 pedestrians total for the highest consecutive 4-hour period.
- The crossing is on a direct route to or from a pedestrian generator such as a school, library, hospital, senior center, community center, shopping center, park, employment center, or transit center (see the MUTCD). Generators in the immediate proximity of the highway are of primary concern. Pedestrian travel distances greater than ¼ mile do not generally attract many pedestrians.
- The local agency's comprehensive plan includes the development of pedestrian facilities in the project vicinity.
- The location is 300 or more feet from another crossing.
- Safety considerations do not preclude a crosswalk.

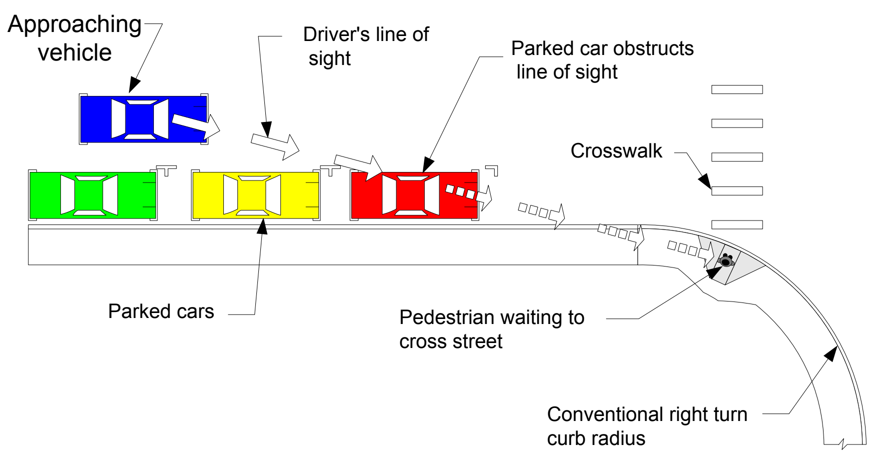
Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities, AASHTO, 2004: 6 feet minimum, 10 feet desirable.

*MUTCD crosswalks should be at least 6 feet wide.

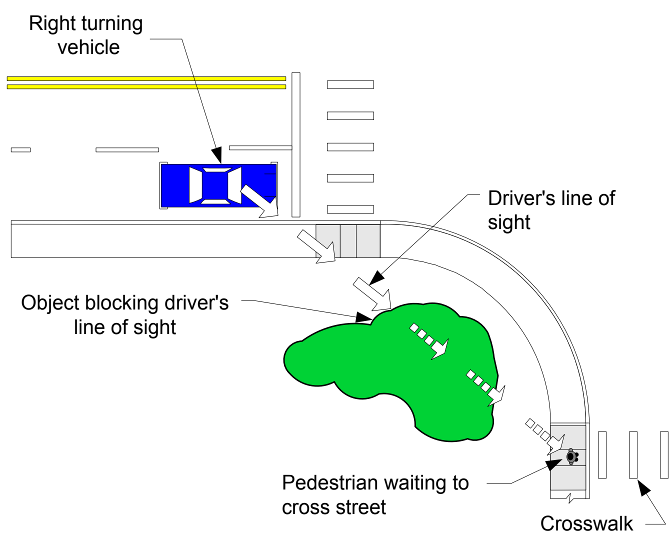
For marked crosswalks, the standard crosswalk marking consists of a series of wide white lines parallel with the longitudinal axis of the roadway. Crosswalk widths are at least 8 feet. A width of 10 feet is preferred in central business districts.* The lines are positioned at the edges and centers of the traffic lanes to place them out of the normal wheel path of vehicles. The preferred type of crosswalk is a longitudinal pattern known as a Ladder Bar and is shown in the *Standard Plans*. Set back "stop" and "yield" lines to provide for sight distance to all approaches to an intersection. Stop and yield line dimensions and placement must conform to the MUTCD and are shown in the *Standard Plans*.

Communities sometimes request specially textured crosswalks (such as colored pavement, bricks, or other materials). Consider that some textured materials may cause confusion for visually impaired pedestrians and can create discomfort for wheelchair users. These crosswalks do not always fall within the legal definition of a marked crosswalk, and parallel white crosswalk lines are recommended to enhance visibility and delineate the crosswalk (see the MUTCD or Local Agency Crosswalk Options website: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Standards/PlanSheet/PM-2.htm). Provide a nonslip surface on crosswalk markings appropriate for wheelchair use.

When locating crosswalks at intersections, consider the visibility of the pedestrian from the motorist's point of view. Shrubbery, signs, parked cars, and other roadside appurtenances can block the motorist's view of the pedestrian. Exhibit 1510-11 illustrates these sight distance considerations.



Parked car blocking line of sight



Obstructed line of sight

Obstructed Line of Sight at Intersection
Exhibit 1510-11

(10) Midblock Crossings

On roadways with pedestrian crossing traffic caused by nearby pedestrian generators, consider a midblock pedestrian crossing. (See 1510.05(9) for crosswalk criteria and Exhibit 1510-25 for marked crosswalk recommendations at unsignalized intersections.) For midblock crossings, the pedestrian access route may have a cross slope that matches the running slope of the roadway (PROWAG R305.2.2.3). Note that the installation of a midblock pedestrian crossing on a state highway is a design deviation that requires ASDE approval and documentation. An example of a midblock crossing is shown in Exhibit 1510-12.

Midblock Pedestrian Crossing
Exhibit 1510-12

Conditions that might favor a midblock crossing include the following:

- Significant pedestrian crossings demand.
- Pedestrians fail to recognize the best or safest place to cross along a highway and it is advisable to delineate the optimal location.
- The adjacent land use creates high concentrations of pedestrians needing to cross the highway at that location.
- The proposed crossing can concentrate or channel multiple pedestrian crossings to a single location.
- The crossing is at an approved school crossing on a school walk route.
- There is adequate sight distance for motorists and pedestrians.
- It is farther than 300 feet from an existing intersection.
- Speeds are less than 40 mph.

Consider the use of a warning beacon, as shown in Exhibit 1510-13.

Midblock Crossing With Beacon
Exhibit 1510-13

(11) Raised Medians/Traffic Islands

Wide, multilane streets are often difficult for pedestrians to cross, particularly when there are insufficient gaps in vehicular traffic because of heavy volumes. Consider the use of raised medians and traffic islands with a pedestrian refuge area (see Exhibit 1510-14) on roadways with the following conditions:

- Two-way, multilane arterial with high speeds (above 45 mph), high average daily traffic (ADT), and large pedestrian volumes.
- Significant pedestrian collision history, especially near a school or other community center.
- Crossing distance exceeds 60 feet.
- Complex or irregularly shaped intersections.

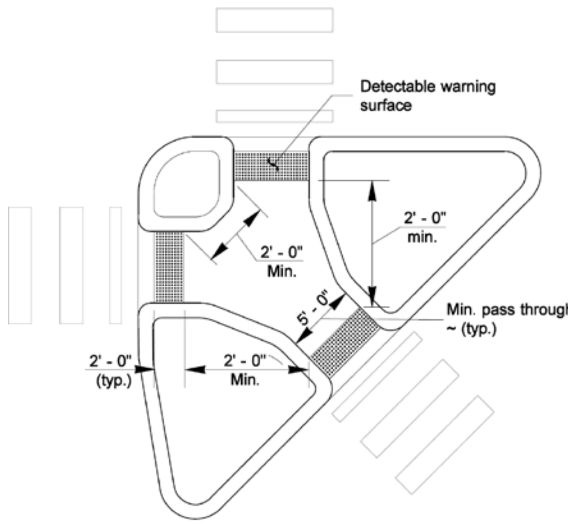
The pedestrian access route through a raised median or traffic island can be either raised with curb ramps or a pass-through type (see Exhibit 1510-14). The edges of pass-throughs and curb ramps are useful as cues to the direction of a crossing. Consider this when designing an angled route through a median or island. Curb ramps in medians and islands can add difficulty to the crossing for some users. There are many factors to consider when deciding whether to ramp up to the median or island grade or create a pass-through median or island matching the roadway grade. Those factors may include profile grade and cross slope of the road, drainage and width, and length of the median or island.

The minimum length of a pedestrian access route through a raised median or traffic island is 6 feet. This provides for a 2-foot detectable warning surface, 2 feet of pedestrian refuge, and 2 feet for another detectable warning surface. Lengths greater than the 6-foot minimum provide more refuge and pedestrian comfort. The width of the pedestrian access route is 5 feet minimum, with a running slope not to exceed 5% (with the exception of curb ramps, if used) and a cross slope not steeper than 2%. When the pedestrian access route of a shared-use path goes through a raised median or traffic island, the width should be the same as the shared-use path.

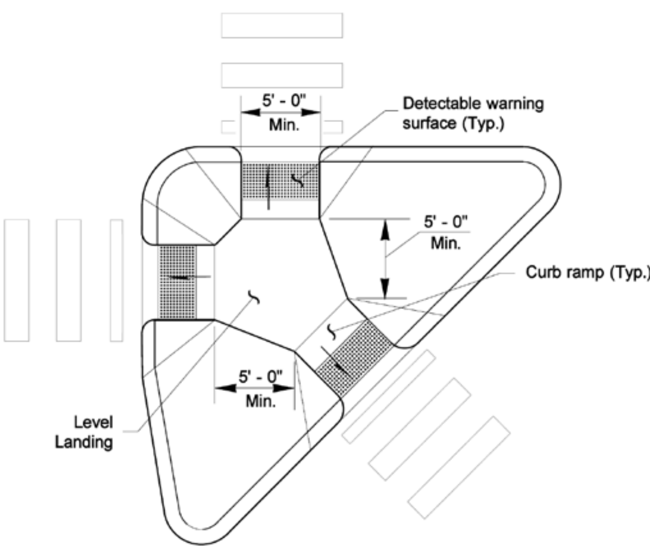
Detectable warning surfaces are located at each curb ramp or roadway entrance of a pedestrian access route through a raised median or traffic island. The detectable warning surface shall be located at the back of curb line or at the edge of the roadway where there is no curb.

A traffic island used for channelized right-turn slip lanes can provide a pedestrian refuge, but may promote faster turning speeds. Minimize turning radii as much as possible to keep speeds as low as possible. To reduce conflicts, keep the slip lane as narrow as practicable and attempt to maintain a 90º crosswalk angle. (See Chapter 1310 for turn lanes, Chapter 1360 for interchange ramps, and Chapter 1320 for pedestrian accommodations in roundabouts.)

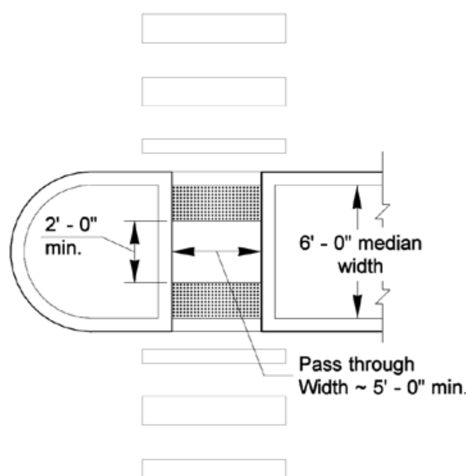
Island Pass-Through



Island Pass-Through



Raised Traffic Island With Curb Ramps



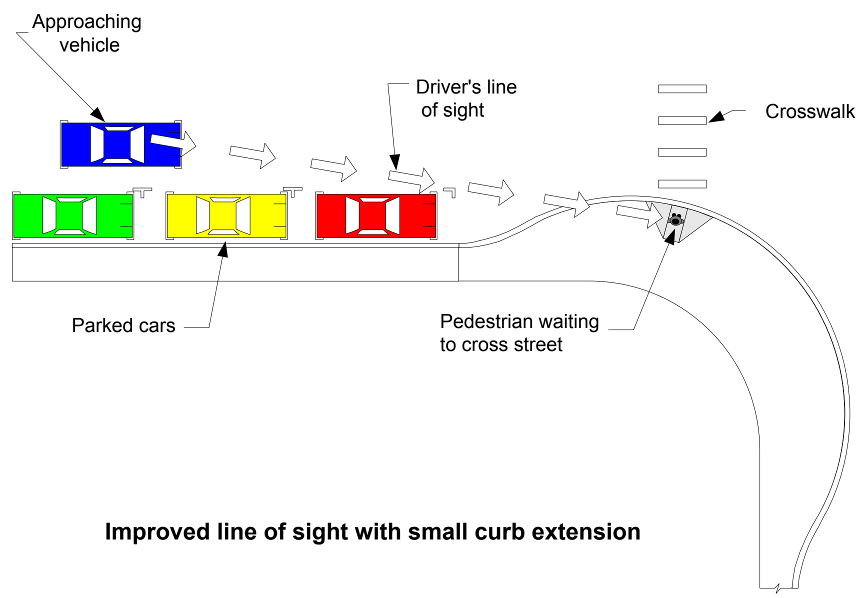
Median Island Pass-Through

Raised Island With Pedestrian Pass-Through
Exhibit 1510-14

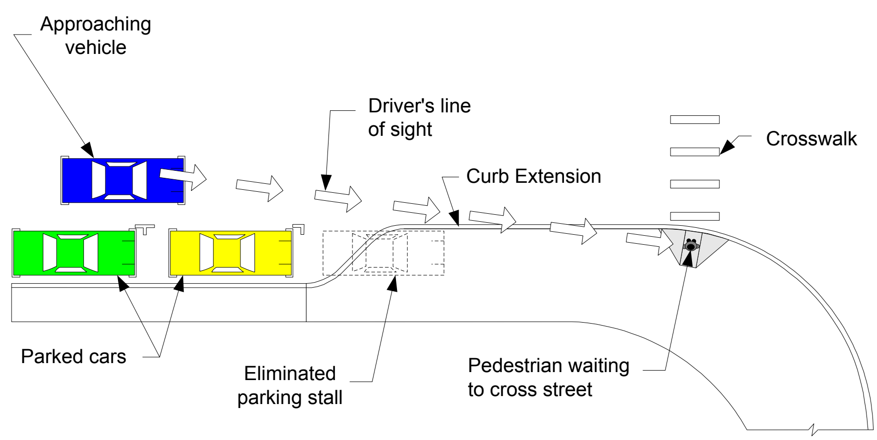
(12) Curb Extensions

Curb extensions are traffic calming measures that may improve sight distance and reduce pedestrian crossing times, which limits pedestrian exposure. Designing a curb extension will help eliminate the sight distance problem with parked cars that limit driver/pedestrian visibility. Curb extensions may allow for better curb ramp design.

Extend the curb no farther than the width of the parking lane. (See Chapter 1140 for shoulder width guidance.) Consider an approach nose and low-level landscaping that does not create a sight obstruction. At intersections with traffic signals, the curb extensions can be used to reduce pedestrian signal timing. Examples of sidewalk curb extensions are shown in Exhibits 1510-15 and 1510-16.



Improved line of sight with small curb extension



Improved line of sight with longer curb extension

Improved Line of Sight at Intersection
Exhibit 1510-15

Curb Extension Examples
Exhibit 1510-16

The right-turn path of the design vehicle or the vehicle most likely to make this turn is a critical element in determining the size and shape of the curb extension. Sidewalk curb extensions tend to restrict the width of the roadway and can make right turns difficult for large trucks.

Avoid interrupting bicycle traffic with curb extensions. Do not use curb extensions on state highways when:

- The design vehicle (see Chapter 1310) is required to encroach on curbs, opposing lanes, or same-direction lanes, and mountable curbs or other solutions will not improve the circumstances.
- Parking is not present.
- The posted speed is above 35 mph.

Plantings that do not obstruct the vision of pedestrians or drivers may be used within curb extension areas. Consider motorist and pedestrian visibility and Design Clear Zone guidelines (see Chapter 1600).

(13) Railroad Crossings at Grade

The design of pedestrian facilities across railroad tracks often presents challenges due to the conflicting needs of pedestrians and trains. In particular, the flangeway gap required for trains to traverse a crossing surface may create a significant obstacle for a person who requires a wheelchair, crutches, or walking aids for mobility. Whenever practicable, make crossings perpendicular to the tracks in order to minimize potential problems related to flangeway gaps (see Exhibit 1510-18). Crossing surfaces may be constructed of timber planking, rubberized materials, or concrete. Concrete materials generally provide the smoothest and most durable crossing surfaces. When detectable warning surfaces are used at railroad crossings, place them according to the stop line placement requirements in the MUTCD.

There are a number of railroad crossing warning devices intended specifically for pedestrian facilities (see the MUTCD). When selecting warning devices, consider such factors as train and pedestrian volumes, train speeds, available sight distance, number of tracks, and other site-specific characteristics. Coordinate with the HQ Design Office Railroad Liaison early in the design process so that all relevant factors are considered and agreement may be reached regarding design of warning devices and crossing surfaces.

Pedestrian Railroad Warning Device
Exhibit 1510-17

Except for crossings located within the limits of first-class cities,* the Washington Utilities and Transportation Commission (WUTC) must approve proposals for any new railroad at-grade crossings or changes to warning devices or geometry at existing crossings. Additionally, any project that requires the railroad to perform work such as installation of warning devices or crossings surfaces will require a railroad construction and maintenance agreement. Contact the HQ Design Office Railroad Liaison to coordinate with both WUTC and the railroad company. Coordinate with the HQ Utilities, Railroad, and Agreements Section.

*RCW 35.10.010: A first class city is a city with a population of ten thousand or more at the time of its organization or reorganization that has a charter adopted under Article XI, section 10, of the state Constitution.

There are few first-class cities in the state of Washington. Consult with the HQ Railroad Liaison.

Undesirable

Recommended

Pedestrian Railroad Crossings
Exhibit 1510-18

1510.06 Pedestrian Facility Design: Structures

(1) Pedestrian Grade Separations

In extreme cases where there is a pedestrian collision history and the roadway cannot be redesigned to accommodate pedestrians at grade, consider providing a pedestrian grade separation along freeways and other high-speed facilities. When considering a pedestrian structure, determine whether the conditions that require the crossing are permanent. If there is a likelihood that pedestrians will not use a grade separation, consider less-costly solutions.

Locate the grade-separated crossing where pedestrians are most likely to cross the roadway. A crossing might not be used if the pedestrian is required to deviate significantly from a more direct route.

It is sometimes necessary to install fencing or other physical barriers to channel the pedestrians to the structure and reduce the possibility of undesired at-grade crossings. The HQ Bridge and Structures Office is responsible for the design of pedestrian structures.

Consider grade-separated crossings where:

- There is moderate-to-high pedestrian demand to cross a freeway or expressway.
- There are large numbers of young children, particularly on school routes, who regularly cross high-speed or high-volume roadways.
- The traffic conflicts that would be encountered by pedestrians are considered unacceptable (such as on wide streets with high pedestrian volumes combined with high-speed traffic).*
- The crossing conditions are extremely hazardous for pedestrians.
- *There are documented collisions or close calls involving pedestrians* and vehicles.
- One or more of the conditions stated above exists in conjunction with a well-defined pedestrian origin and destination (such as a residential neighborhood across a busy street from a school).*

Sidenote: **Guide for the Planning, Design, and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities*, AASHTO, 2004

(2) Pedestrian Bridges

Pedestrian grade-separation bridges (see Exhibit 1510-19) are more effective when the roadway is below the natural ground line, as in a “cut” section. Elevated grade separations, where pedestrians are required to climb stairs or use long approach ramps, tend to be underutilized. Pedestrian bridges require adequate right of way to accommodate accessible ramps.

For the minimum vertical clearance from the bottom of the pedestrian structure to the roadway beneath, see Chapter 720. This minimum height requirement can affect the length of the pedestrian ramps to the structure. To comply with ADA requirements, the approaches to the pedestrian bridge are identified as either a pedestrian access route or a pedestrian access ramp and shall meet the requirements of 1510.07(2). When ramps are not feasible, provide both elevators and stairways. Stairways are to be designed in accordance with the *Standard Plans*.

Railings are provided on pedestrian bridges. Protective screening is sometimes desirable to deter objects from being thrown from an overhead pedestrian structure (see Chapter 720). The minimum clear width for pedestrian bridges is 8 feet.

Consider a clear width of 14 feet where a pedestrian bridge is enclosed or shared with bicycles or equestrians.

Pedestrian Bridges

Exhibit 1510-19

(3) Pedestrian Tunnels

Tunnels are an effective method of providing crossings for roadways located in embankment sections. Well-designed tunnels can be a desirable crossing for pedestrians. When possible, design the tunnel with a nearly level profile to provide complete vision from portal to portal (see Exhibit 1510-20). Some pedestrians may be reluctant to enter a tunnel with a depressed profile because they are unable to see whether the tunnel is occupied. Police officers also have difficulty patrolling depressed profile tunnels.

Provide vandal-resistant daytime and nighttime illumination within the pedestrian tunnel. Installing gloss-finished tile walls and ceilings can also enhance light levels within the tunnel. The minimum overhead clearance for a pedestrian tunnel is 10 feet. The minimum width for a pedestrian tunnel is 12 feet. Consider a tunnel width between 14 and 18 feet depending on usage and the length of the tunnel.

The approaches to the pedestrian tunnel are identified as either a pedestrian access route or a pedestrian access ramp and shall comply with ADA requirements as outlined in 1510.07(2).

Pedestrian Tunnel

Exhibit 1510-20

1510.07 Other Pedestrian Facilities

(1) Transit Stops and School Bus Stops

The location of transit stops is an important consideration in providing appropriate pedestrian facilities. (Coordinate with the local transit provider.) Newly constructed transit stops must conform to ADA requirements (see Chapter 1430). On new construction, design the transit stop such that it is accessible from the sidewalk or paved shoulder. A transit stop on one side of a street usually has a counterpart on the opposite side because transit routes normally function in both directions on the same roadway. Provide adequate crossing facilities for pedestrians.

When locating transit stops, consider transit ridership and land use demand for the stop. Also, consider compatibility with the following roadway/traffic characteristics:

- ADT
- Traffic speed
- Crossing distance
- Collision history
- Sight distance
- Connectivity to a pedestrian access route
- Traffic generator density

If any of these suggests an undesirable location for a pedestrian crossing, consider a controlled crossing or another location for the transit stop.

When analyzing locations with high pedestrian collision rates, consider the presence of nearby transit stops and opportunities for pedestrians to reasonably safely cross the street. At-grade midblock pedestrian crossings may be effective at transit stop locations on roadways with lower vehicular volumes. Pedestrian grade separations are appropriate at midblock locations when vehicular traffic volumes prohibit pedestrian crossings at grade. (See Exhibit 1510-25 for recommendations for marked crosswalks at unsignalized intersections.)

School bus stops are typically adjacent to sidewalks in urban areas and along shoulders in rural areas. Determine the number of children using the stop and provide a waiting area that allows the children to wait for the bus. Coordinate with the local school district. Because of their smaller size, children might be difficult for motorists to see at crossings or stops. Determine whether utility poles, vegetation, and other roadside features interfere with the motorist's ability to see the children. When necessary, remove or relocate the obstructions or move the bus stop. Parked vehicles can also block visibility, and parking prohibitions might be advisable near the bus stop.

(2) Access Ramps Within Transit, Park & Ride, Rest Areas, and Buildings and Facilities

An access ramp provides an accessible pedestrian route from a sidewalk to a facility such as a transit stop, park & ride, rest area, pedestrian overcrossing/undercrossing structure, building, or other facilities. When the running slope is 5% or less, it is a pedestrian access route; when the running slope is greater than 5%, it is a pedestrian access ramp. (See Exhibit 1510-27 for the design requirements.)

- Provide a running slope not steeper than 12H:1V (8.3%) on newly constructed pedestrian access ramps. The cross slope is not to exceed 2%.
- The minimum clear width of ramps is 3 feet; however, it is desirable to match the width of the connecting pedestrian facility.
- Do not exceed 2 feet 6 inches on the vertical rise of ramps between landings.
- Provide landings at the top and bottom of each access ramp run.
- Provide handrails on all ramp runs with a rise greater than 6 inches.

Match ramp landing widths to the widest ramp entering the landing. Landings must have a minimum clear length of 5 feet with a 2% maximum cross slope. If a change in direction is needed, a 5-foot x 5-foot landing is required (see Exhibit 1510-27).

Pedestrian Access Ramp
Exhibit 1510-21

1510.08 Illumination and Signing

In Washington State, the highest number of collisions between vehicles and pedestrians occur during November through February when there is poor visibility and fewer daylight hours. Illumination of pedestrian crossings and other walkways is an important design consideration because lighting has a major impact on a pedestrian's safety and sense of security. Illumination provided solely for vehicular traffic is not always effective in lighting parallel walkways for pedestrians. Consider pedestrian-level (mounted at a lower level) lighting for walkways, intersections, and other pedestrian crossing areas with high nighttime pedestrian activity, such as shopping districts, transit stops, schools, community centers, and other major pedestrian generators or areas with a history of pedestrian collisions (See Chapter 1040 for design guidance on illumination and Chapter 1020 and the MUTCD for pedestrian-related signing.)

1510.09 Work Zone Pedestrian Considerations

Providing access and mobility for pedestrians through and around work zones is an important design concern and must be addressed in the temporary traffic control plans if the project occurs in a location accessible to pedestrians. The designer must determine pedestrian needs in the proposed work zone during the public process and through field visits. In work zones:

- Separate pedestrians from conflicts with work zone equipment and operations.
- Separate pedestrians from traffic moving through or around the work zone.
- Provide pedestrians with alternate routes that provide accessible and convenient travel paths duplicating, as closely as feasible, the characteristics of the existing pedestrian facilities.

Provide walkways that are clearly marked and pedestrian barriers that are continuous, nonbendable, and detectable to persons with impaired vision using a cane. Also, keep:

- The pedestrian head space clear.
- Walkways free from pedestrian hazards such as holes, debris, and abrupt changes in grade or terrain.
- Access along sidewalks clear of obstructions such as construction traffic control signs.
- A minimum clear width path throughout: 4 feet for pedestrians or 10 feet for pedestrians and bicyclists.

Temporary pedestrian facilities within the work zone must meet accessibility criteria (see Exhibits 1510-22 and 1510-27).

Consider the use of flaggers if pedestrian generators such as schools are in the work zone vicinity. Consider spotters prepared to help pedestrians through the work zone.

Provide the requirement of advance public notification of sidewalk closures in the contract special provisions and plans.

Where transit stops are affected or relocated because of work activity, provide an accessible route to temporary transit stops.

For further information or guidance on work zone pedestrian considerations, see Chapter 1010 and the MUTCD.

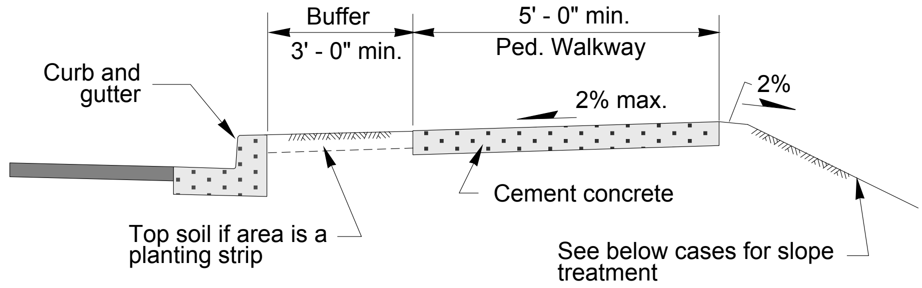
Meets ADA Requirements

Does Not Meet ADA Requirements

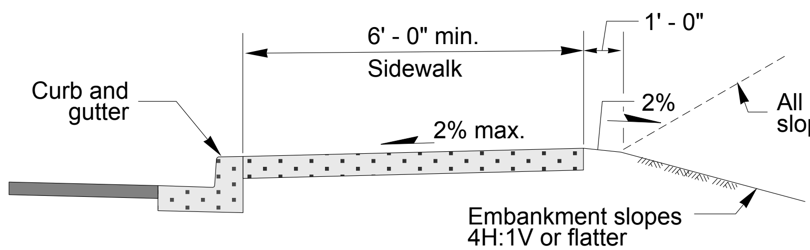
Work Zones and Pedestrian Facilities
Exhibit 1510-22

1510.10 Documentation

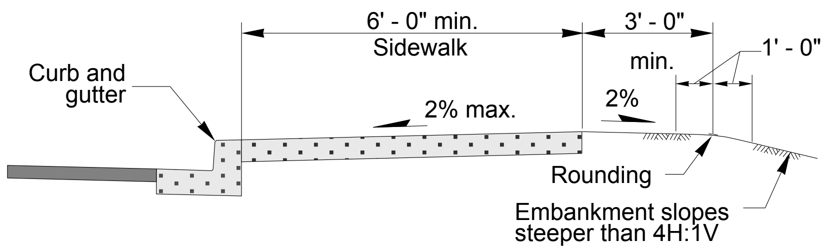
For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



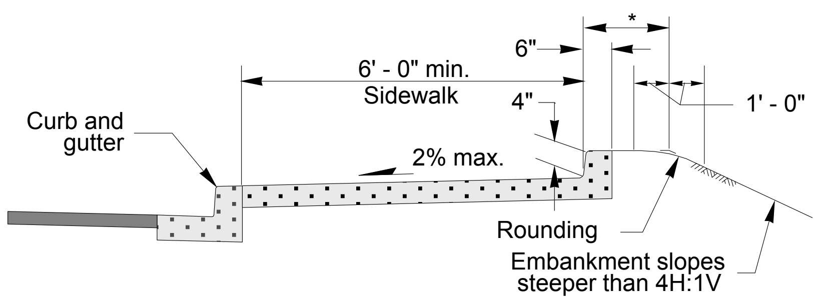
Case A



Case B



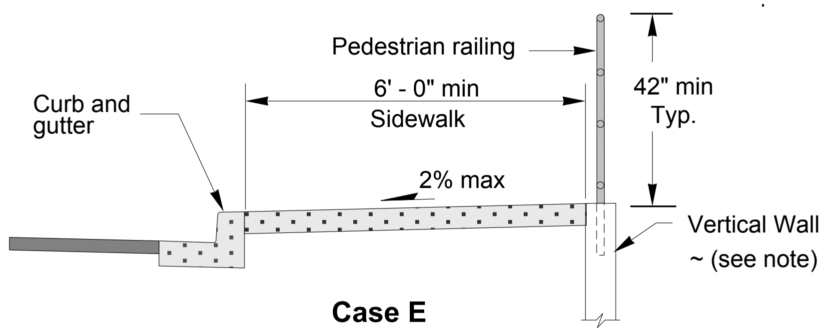
Case C



Case D

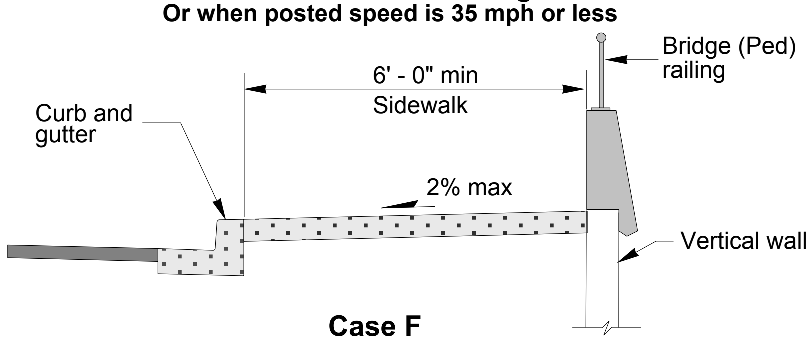
*See the *Standard Plans*.

Pedestrian Access Route
Exhibit 1510-23



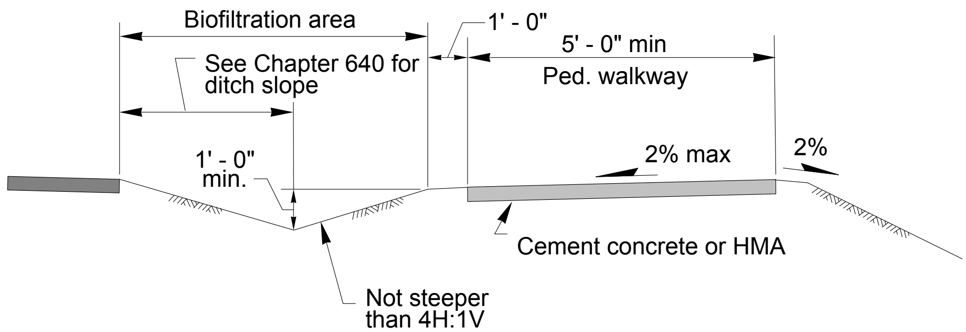
Case E

When the wall is outside the Design Clear Zone
Or when posted speed is 35 mph or less

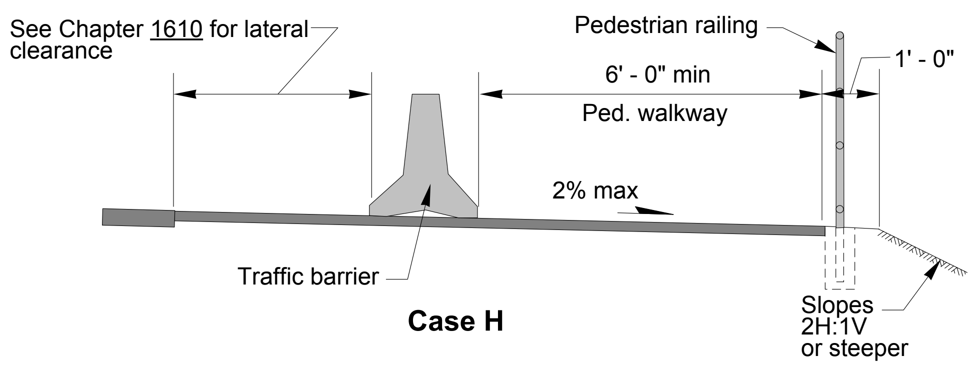


Case F

When the wall is within the Design Clear Zone



Case G



Case H

Notes for Case E:

- If vertical drop is >2 feet 6 inches, railing is indicated.
- If vertical drop is < 2 feet 6 inches, a 4-inch curb is adequate.

Pedestrian Access Route
Exhibit 1510-23 (continued)

Roadway Classification and Land Use Designation	Sidewalk Recommendations					
			Desirable		Recommended	
	No sidewalk recommended	4-foot-wide paved shoulders adequate	Sidewalk on one side	Sidewalks on both sides	Sidewalk on one side	Sidewalks on both sides
Rural highways/interchanges outside urban growth areas	X[1]	X[1]				
Suburban highways with 1 or less dwelling unit per acre		X	X			
Suburban highways with 2–4 dwelling units per acre				X	X	
Major arterial in residential area						X
Collector or minor arterial in residential area						X
Local street in residential area with less than 1 dwelling unit per acre		X	X			
Local street in residential area with 1–4 dwelling units per acre				X	X	
Local street in residential area with more than 4 dwelling units per acre						X
Streets in commercial area						X
Streets in industrial area				X	X	

Note:
[1] Consider an engineering study to identify a need.

Sidewalk Recommendations
Exhibit 1510-24

Traffic Volume (ADT)	Posted Speed	Roadway Type			
		2 lanes	2 lanes, raised median[1]	4 lanes, raised median[1]	6 lanes, raised median[1]
Less than or equal to 9,000	30 mph and lower	Marked crosswalk	Marked crosswalk	Additional enhancement	
	35 mph to 40 mph	Marked crosswalk	Marked crosswalk	Additional enhancement	
	45 mph and higher	Additional enhancement	Additional enhancement	Active enhancement	
9,000 to 15,000	30 mph and lower	Marked crosswalk	Marked crosswalk	Additional enhancement	
	35 mph to 40 mph	Marked crosswalk	Marked crosswalk	Additional enhancement	
	45 mph and higher	Additional enhancement	Additional enhancement	Active enhancement	
15,000 to 30,000	30 mph and lower	Additional[2] enhancement	Additional enhancement	Additional[2] enhancement	Active[4] enhancement
	35 mph to 40 mph	Additional[2] enhancement	Additional enhancement	Active enhancement	Active[4] enhancement
	45 mph and higher	Active[5] enhancement	Active enhancement	See note[3]	See note[3]
Greater than 30,000	45 mph and lower	Active[5] enhancement	Active enhancement	Pedestrian[6] traffic signal	Pedestrian[6] traffic signal

Inside city limits where the population exceeds 25,000, the decision to mark crosswalks resides with the city, subject to WSDOT approval of the installation and type. Provide documentation for all marked crosswalks.

For additional considerations that may be appropriate based on site-specific engineering analyses, see 1510.05(3).

Notes:

[1] Raised median/traffic island with a pass-through path minimum width of 5 feet and a median width of 6 feet..

[2] Consider active enhancement treatment for roadways exceeding 20,000 ADT.

[3] Provide alternate routes for pedestrian crossings or construct a grade-separated facility.

[4] Location may be approaching the need for a controlled crossing. A pedestrian signal may be appropriate, based on engineering analysis.

[5] Raised median/traffic island required.

[6] Refer to region Traffic Engineer for approval and design of a pedestrian traffic signal. Midblock pedestrian crossings are deviations that require ASDE approval.

Minimum Guidelines (additive for each level):

“Marked crosswalk”

- Marked/signed in accordance w/MUTCD (signed @ crossing only)
- Pedestrian-view warning signs
- Illumination

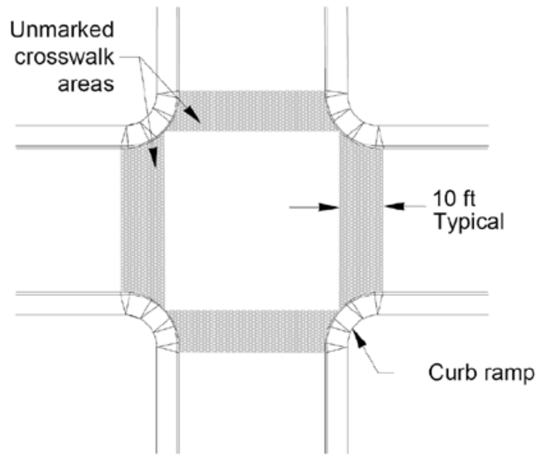
“Additional enhancement”

- Minimum guidelines listed under “Marked crosswalk”
- Stop line in accordance w/MUTCD
- Advance signing in accordance w/MUTCD

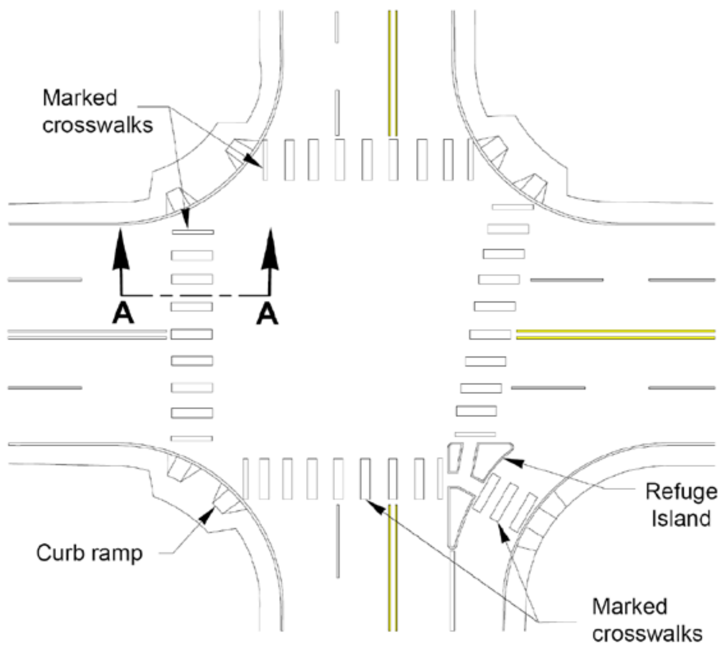
“Active enhancement”

- Minimum guidelines listed under “Additional enhancement”
- Pedestrian-actuated warning beacons—overhead for roadway w/4 or more lanes

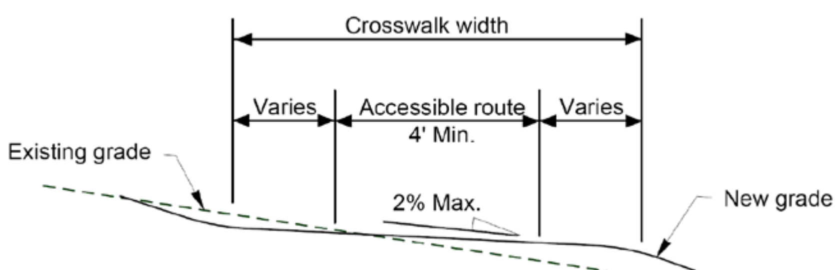
Crosswalk Guidelines
Exhibit 1510-25



Unmarked Crosswalks



Marked Crosswalk



Crosswalk

Section A - A

Crosswalks and Pedestrian Access Route Cross Slope

Exhibit 1510-26

Design Feature / Design Element	Curb Ramp	Sidewalk	Driveway Crossing	Crosswalk	Landing	Crossing Through Island/Median	Pedestrian Circulation Path (Inc. Shared-Use Paths)	Building and Facilities Ramp[1][2]
Clear Width	4 ft Min [1510.05(6)]	4 ft Min for accessible route within sidewalk width[3][5] [1510.05(5)]	4 ft Min – See Std Plans	4 ft Min for accessible route within crosswalk[4] [1510.05(8),(9),(10)]	See **Curb Ramp** or **Building and Facilities Ramp** requirements	Pass-through: 5 ft Min – Island: 6 ft Min [1510.05(11)]	4 ft Min[5] [1510.05(2)] [1510.05(4)]	At least the width of widest ramp run connected to landing – 3 ft Min
Cross Slope	2% Max [1510.05(6)]	2% Max [1510.05(5)]	2% Max – See Std Plans	2% Max for accessible portion	2% Max	2% Max	2% Max	2% Max
Running Slope	8.3% Max[7] (12H:1V) [1510.05(4)]	5% Max[6] [1510.05(5)]	See Note 6 [1510.05(5)]	5% Max	2% Max	5% Max [1510.05(11)] If curb ramp is used, see **Curb Ramp** requirements	5% Max[6] [1510.05(2)] [1510.05(4)]	8.3% Max[7]
Maximum Vertical Rise	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	2.5 ft[6] when grade is greater than 5%	Landing every 2.5 ft vertical rise [1510.07(2)]
Grade Break	Flush – See Std Plans	Flush	½ inch between roadway gutter & curb	Flush	Flush	Flush	Flush	Flush
Surface Discontinuities	N/A	**New:** Flush **Existing:** See Note 8	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	**New:** Flush **Existing:** See Note 8	**New:** Flush **Existing:** See Note 8
Curb Flare Slope	10% Max	N/A	10% Max[9]	N/A	N/A	If curb ramp is used, see **Curb Ramp** requirements	N/A	N/A
Horizontal [12] Encroachment	4 inches Max [1510.05(2)(a)(3)]	4 inches Max	4 inches Max	4 inches Max	4 inches Max	4 inches Max	4 inches Max	4 inches Max

U.S. Access Board Accessibility Requirements for Pedestrian Facility Design
(For WSDOT guidance, see referenced chapter sections in table)
Exhibit 1510-27

Design Feature / Design Element	Curb Ramp	Sidewalk	Driveway Crossing	Crosswalk	Landing	Crossing Through Island/Median	Pedestrian Circulation Path (Inc. Shared-Use Paths)	Building and Facilities Ramp[1][2]
Vertical Clear Area	80 inches Min[10] [1510.05(2)]	80 inches Min[10] [1510.05(2)]	80 inches Min[10]	80 inches Min[10]	80 inches Min[10]	80 inches Min[10]	80 inches Min[10]	80 inches Min[10]
Counter Slope	5% Max [1510.05(6)]	N/A	N/A	See **Curb Ramp**	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Landing	Width: Min match curb ramp width Length: **New:** 4 ft min **Alteration:** 3 ft [1510.05(6)]	N/A	N/A	Diag. curb ramp: Provide 4 ft by 4 ft clear area within crosswalk markings or outside traveled way [1510.05(6)]	– – – –	N/A unless a curb ramp is used – See **Curb Ramp** requirements	When grade > 5% & for separate alignment, provide level landing every 2.5 ft vertical rise[6]	Level landing required for every 2.5 ft vertical rise – Match landings to the width of the widest ramp leading into the landing[11]
Detectable Warning Surface	2 ft wide, 6 inches behind face of curb, full width of ramp	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	2 ft wide, each side, 6 inches behind face of curb, full width of opening	2 ft wide, full width when path joins roadway shoulder	N/A

Notes:

[1] A ramp with a rise greater than 6 inches in this context is on a walkway on a separate alignment that is not adjacent to or parallel to a roadway; ramps may have slopes greater than 5% and 8.3% max.

[2] Ramps with a rise greater than 6 inches. Also, ramps require edge protection and shall have handrails.

[3] Required sidewalk width: 5 ft where buffer is included, 6 ft when sidewalk is next to curb.

[4] Unmarked crosswalks require a 10 ft wide area across intersection. Marked crosswalks are required to be 8 ft min., 10 ft desirable. (See RCW 46.04.160 and the MUTCD for crosswalks.)

[5] If less than 5 ft wide, provide 5 ft x 5 ft passing areas every 200 ft.

[6] Allowed to match the roadway grade when located adjacent to and parallel to the roadway; landings would not be required.

[7] For Preservation projects: 10H:1V to 12H:1V for rises to 6 inches; 8H:1V to 10H:1V for rises to 3 inches.

[8] Changes in level of ¼ inch max are allowed to be vertical; changes between ¼ inch and ½ inch max to be beveled at 2H:1V.

[9] Required when sidewalk is provided behind the driveway.

[10] 7 ft min. vertical clearance required to bottom of signs (see the MUTCD and the *Standard Plans*).

[11] Change of direction requires 5 ft x 5 ft landing.

[12] Shall not reduce the clear width required for pedestrian access routes.

Access Board Accessibility Requirements for Pedestrian Facility Design
(For WSDOT guidance, see referenced chapter sections in table)
Exhibit 1510-27 (continued)

1520.01 General
1520.02 References
1520.03 Definitions
1520.04 Facility Selection
1520.05 Project Requirements
1520.06 Shared-Use Path Design
1520.07 Bike Lane Design
1520.08 Shared Roadway Design
1520.09 Signed Shared Roadway
1520.10 Documentation

1520.01 General

The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) encourages bicycle use on its facilities except where prohibited by law. Bicycle facilities, or improvements for bicycle transportation, are included in the project development and highway programming processes.

This chapter is a guide for designing useful, cost-effective, and safe bicycle facilities when the design matrices (see Chapter 1100) indicate full design level for bicycle and pedestrian design elements. These guidelines apply to normal situations encountered during project development. Unique design problems are resolved on a project-by-project basis using guidance from the region's Bicycle Coordinator or bicycle and pedestrian expert.

State law (RCW 46.61.710) prohibits the operation of mopeds on facilities specifically designed for bicyclists, pedestrians, and equestrians. Mopeds and other motorized personal assistive mobility devices (excluding power wheelchairs) are not considered in the design process for the purposes of this chapter.

In general, do not mix equestrian and bicycle traffic on a shared-use path. Consider designing an equestrian trail that is separate from the shared-use path in common equestrian corridors.

1520.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (ADA)

23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 652, Pedestrian and Bicycle Accommodations and Projects

Revised Code of Washington (RCW), Chapter 35.75, Streets – Bicycles – Paths

RCW 46.04, Definitions

RCW 46.61, Rules of the road

RCW 46.61.710, Mopeds, electric-assisted bicycles – General requirements and operation

RCW 47.26.300, Bicycle routes – Legislative declaration

(2) Design Guidance

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Selecting Roadway Design Treatments to Accommodate Bicycles, USDOT, Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), 1994

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (*Standard Plans*), M 21-01, WSDOT
www.wsdot.wa.gov/Publications/Manuals/M21-01.htm

Understanding Flexibility in Transportation Design – Washington, WSDOT, 2005
www.wsdot.wa.gov/eesc/design/Urban/Default.htm

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

Designing Sidewalks and Trails for Access: Part I of II, FHWA, 2001

Guide for the Development of Bicycle Facilities, AASHTO, 1999

1520.03 Definitions

bicycle Any device propelled solely by human power upon which a person or persons may ride, having two tandem wheels, either of which is 16 inches or more in diameter, or three wheels, any one of which is more than 20 inches in diameter.

bicycle route A system of facilities that are used or have a high potential for use by bicyclists or that are designated as such by the jurisdiction having the authority. A series of bicycle facilities may be combined to establish a continuous route and may consist of any or all types of bicycle facilities.

bike lane A portion of a highway or street identified by signs and pavement markings as reserved for bicycle use.

shared roadway A roadway that is open to both bicycle and motor vehicle travel. This may be an existing roadway, a street with wide curb lanes, or a road with paved shoulders.

signed shared roadway A shared roadway that has been designated by signing as a route for bicycle use.

shared-use or multiuse path A facility physically separated from motorized vehicular traffic within the highway right of way or on an exclusive right of way with minimal crossflow by motor vehicles. It is designed and built primarily for use by bicycles, but is also used by pedestrians, joggers, skaters, wheelchair users (both nonmotorized and motorized), equestrians, and other nonmotorized users.

wye (Y) connection An intersecting one-way roadway, intersecting at an angle less than 60°, in the general form of a "Y."

1520.04 Facility Selection

(1) Facility Location

Provide bicycle facilities on routes that have been identified as a local, state, or regional significant bike route. Fill gaps in the existing network of bicycle facilities when the opportunity is available. For other roadways, provide full design level shoulders for bicycle needs unless:

- Bicyclists are prohibited by law from using the facility.
- The cost is excessively disproportionate to the need or probable use.
- Other factors indicate there is no need.

Refer to *Understanding Flexibility in Transportation Design - Washington* for further information.

(2) Selection of the Type of Facility

Selection of the facility type includes consideration of community needs and safe, efficient bicycle travel. Exhibit 1520-1 provides a generalized method of assessing the type of bicycle facility needed.

Roadway Classification, Land Use, Speed, and ADT	Facility Recommendation
Rural and suburban highways and streets (less than four dwelling units per acre), speeds above 25 mph, and ADT above 2000.	Full design level shoulder (see Chapter 1140) on both sides (4 ft minimum width), or shared-use path.
Major arterial in residential area, school zones, or streets in commercial or industrial areas.	Bike lanes on both sides (see 1520.07), or shared-use path.
Local street in residential area where speed is 25 mph or below, or ADT is 2000 or less. Rural highways and streets where passing sight distance is available and speed is 25 mph or below, or ADT is 2000 of less. Collector or minor arterial where speed is 25 mph or below, or ADT is 2000 or less.	Shared roadway.

Bike Facility Selection
Exhibit 1520-1

An important consideration is route continuity. Change facility types at logical locations. For additional information, see *Understanding Flexibility in Transportation Design – Washington*.

1520.05 Project Requirements

For urban bicycle mobility Improvement projects (see Bike/Ped connectivity projects in the matrices, Chapter 1100), apply the guidance in this chapter to the bicycle facility.

For highway design elements affected by the project, apply the appropriate design level from the matrices (see Chapter 1100) and as found in the applicable chapters.

For highway design elements not affected by the project, no action is required.

1520.06 Shared-Use Path Design

When designing shared-use paths (see Exhibit 1520-2), accommodate all users and minimize conflicts. When equestrians are present, provide a separate bridle trail along a shared-use path to minimize conflicts with horses. Some common locations are along rivers, streams, ocean beachfronts, canals, utility rights of way, and abandoned railroad rights of way; within college campuses; and within and between parks. Another common application of shared-use paths is to close gaps in the bicycle network. There might also be situations where such facilities can be provided as part of planned developments.

Shared-use paths often provide recreational opportunities. They also serve to minimize motor vehicle interference by providing direct bicycle commute routes.

Shared-Use Path
Exhibit 1520-2

(1) Widths

The desirable width of a shared-use path is 12 feet. The minimum width is 10 feet. Use 12 to 14 feet when maintenance vehicles use a shared-use path as an access road for utilities. Use of 12- to 14-foot paths is desirable when substantial use by both bicyclists and pedestrians is expected. Contact the region's Bicycle Coordinator for bicycle use information. (See Exhibits 1520-11a and 11b for additional information and cross sections.)

An existing path with a width of 8 feet may remain when all of the following conditions apply:

- Bicycle traffic is expected to be low.
- Pedestrian use is not expected to be more than occasional.
- The horizontal and vertical alignments provide frequent passing opportunities.
- Normal maintenance activities can be performed without damaging the pavement edge.

For path width on structures, see 1520.06(14).

(2) Horizontal Clearance to Obstructions

The desirable horizontal clearance from the edge of pavement to an obstruction (such as bridge piers or guardrail) is at least 2 feet. Where this clearance cannot be obtained, install signs and pavement markings to warn bicyclists of the condition. (For pavement marking details, see the MUTCD and the *Standard Plans*.)

Where a shared-use path is adjacent to canals, ditches, fill slopes steeper than 3H:1V, or where obstacles that present a risk exist at the bottom of an embankment, consider a minimum 5-foot separation from the edge of the pavement. A physical barrier, such as dense shrubbery, railing, or chain link fencing, is needed at the top of a high embankment. When barrier or railing is installed, see 1520.06(6).

(3) Vertical Clearance

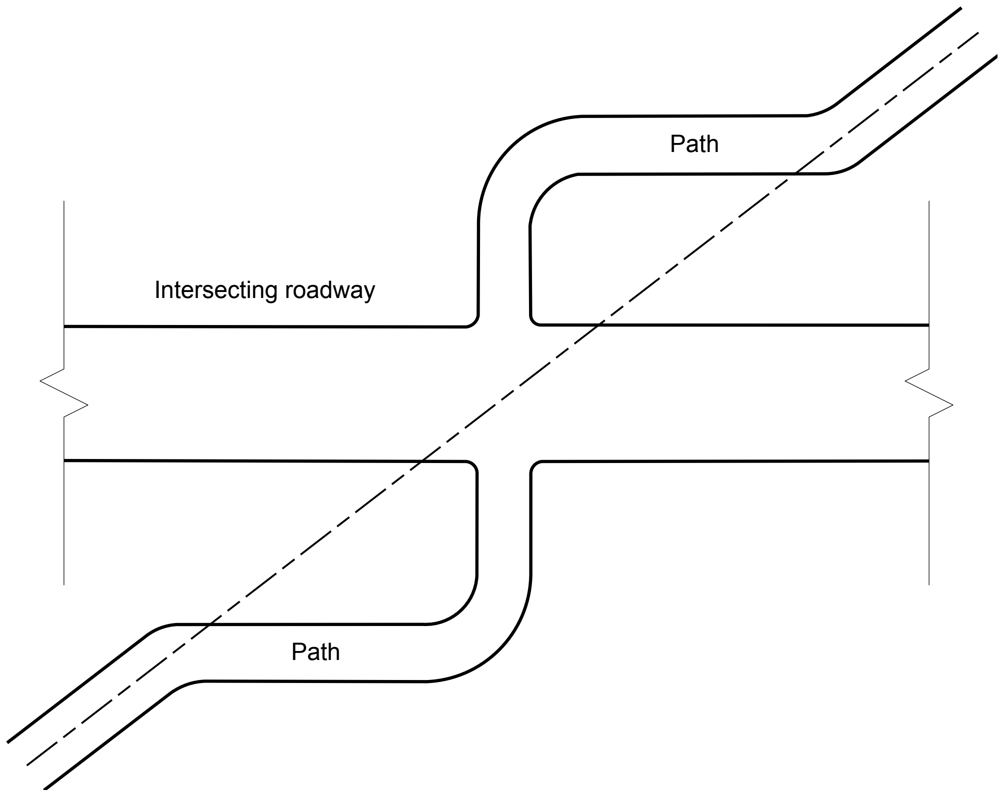
Provide a vertical clearance of 10 feet or more from bikeway pavement to overhead obstructions. The vertical clearance may be reduced to an 8-foot minimum, with justification. A 10-foot or higher vertical clearance is needed for the passage of equestrians and for maintenance and emergency vehicles.

(4) Intersections With Roadways

Clearly define who has the right of way and provide sight distance for all users at shared-use path and roadway intersections. There are three types of shared-use path/roadway at-grade intersection crossings: adjacent path, midblock, and complex. Only at-grade adjacent and midblock crossings are addressed here. Consider complex intersections that involve special designs on a case-by-case basis. Contact the region's Bicycle Coordinator for assistance.

Adjacent path crossings are located adjacent to the at-grade intersections of two roadways. These crossings are normally placed with pedestrian crossings, where motorists can be expected to stop. If alternate intersection locations for a shared-use path are available, select the one with the greatest sight distance.

Midblock crossings are located between roadway intersections. They are the least complex of the crossing types. When possible, locate the path crossings far enough away from intersections to minimize conflicts between the path crossing and the intersection motor vehicle traffic. A 90° crossing is desirable; however, a 75° angle is acceptable. A 45° angle is the minimum acceptable to minimize the right of way needed. A diagonal midblock crossing can be altered as shown in Exhibit 1520-3. (See Chapter 1510 for pedestrian and ADA requirements.)



Note:
For path and highway signing and markings, see the MUTCD and the *Standard Plans*.

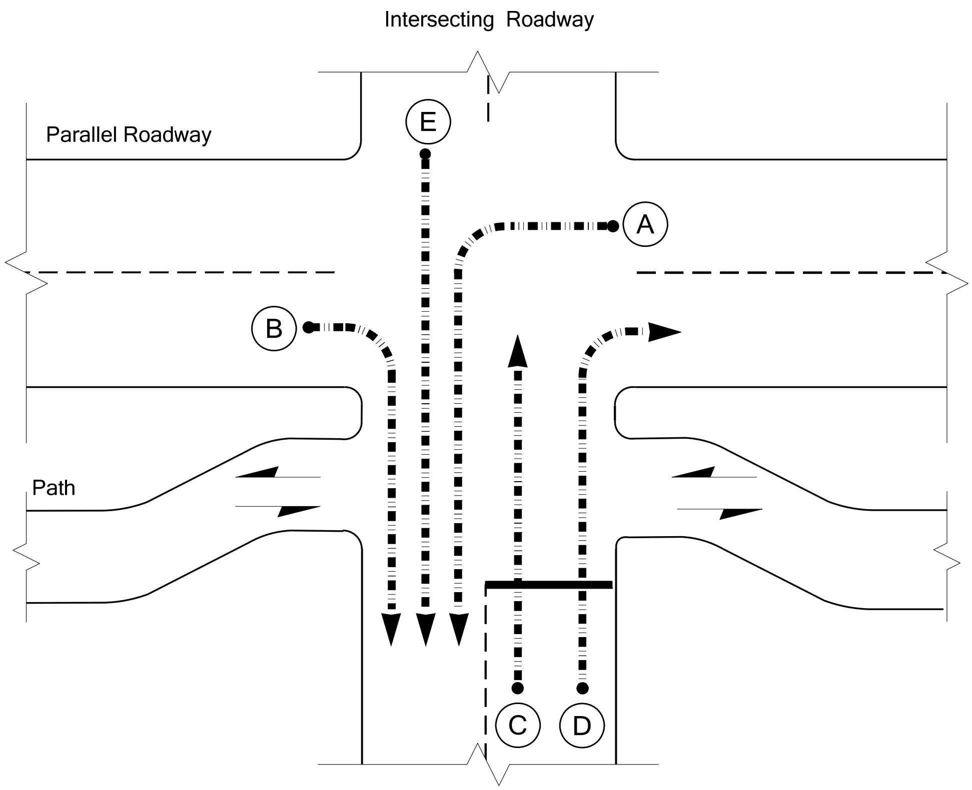
Typical Redesign of a Diagonal Midblock Crossing
Exhibit 1520-3

There are other considerations when designing midblock crossings, including traffic right of way assignments; traffic control devices; sight distances for both bicyclists and motor vehicle operators; refuge island use; access control; and pavement markings.

Adjacent path crossings occur where a path crosses an existing intersection of two roadways, a T intersection (including driveways), or a four-way intersection, as shown in Exhibit 1520-4. It is desirable to integrate this type of crossing close to an intersection so that motorists and path users recognize one another as intersecting traffic. The path user faces potential conflicts with motor vehicles turning left (A) and right (B) from the parallel roadway and on the crossed roadway (C, D, and E).

Complex intersection crossings are all other types of path/roadway or driveway junctions. These include a variety of configurations where the path crosses directly through an existing intersection of two or more roadways and where there can be any number of motor vehicle turning movements.

Consider improvements to complex crossings on a case-by-case basis. Suggested improvements include: move the crossing, install a signal, change signalization timing, or provide a refuge island and make a two-step crossing for path users.



Note:
For signing, see the MUTCD and the *Standard Plans*.

Adjacent Shared-Use Path Intersection
Exhibit 1520-4

The major road might be either the parallel or the crossed roadway. Important elements that greatly affect the design of these crossings are traffic right of way assignments, traffic control devices, and the separation distance between path and roadway.

(a) **Other Roadway/Path Intersection Designs**

Other roadway/path intersection design considerations include the following:

1. **Traffic Signals/Stop Signs**

   Determine the need for traffic control devices at path/roadway intersections by using MUTCD warrants and engineering judgment. Bicycles are considered vehicles in Washington State, and bicycle path traffic can be classified as vehicular traffic for MUTCD warrants. Provide traffic signal timing set for bicycle speeds.

2. **Signal Actuation Mechanisms**

   Place the manually operated signal button in a location that complies with ADA requirements. For additional information, see Chapters 1330 and 1510. A detector loop in the path pavement may be provided in addition to the manually operated signal button. Consider MUTCD bicycle detector symbol pavement marking when a detector loop is placed in the path.

3. **Signing**

   Provide sign type, size, and location in accordance with the MUTCD. Place path STOP or YIELD signs as close to the intended stopping point as possible. Do not place the shared-use path signs where they may confuse motorists or place roadway signs where they may confuse bicyclists. For additional information on signing, see the MUTCD and Chapter 1020.

4. **Approach Treatments**

   Design shared-use path and roadway intersections with flat grades and sight distances. Provide advance warning signs and pavement markings (see the MUTCD) that alert and direct bicyclists to yield or stop before reaching the intersection, as appropriate, especially on downgrades. Provide unpaved shared-use paths with paved aprons extending a minimum of 10 feet from the paved road surfaces. Do not use speed bumps or other similar surface obstructions intended to cause bicyclists to slow down.

5. **Sight Distance**

   Sight distance is a principal element of roadway and path intersection design. At a minimum, provide stopping sight distance for both the roadway and the path at the crossing. Decision sight distance is desirable for the roadway traffic. (See Chapter 1260 for stopping sight distance for the roadway and 1520.06(9) for shared-use path stopping sight distance.)

6. **Transition Zones**

   Integrate the shared-use path into the roadway where the path terminates. Design these terminals to transition the bicycle traffic into a merging or diverging condition. Provide signing to warn and direct both bicyclists and motorists.

7. **Curb Ramp Widths**

   Design curb ramps with a width equal to the shared-use path width. Curb ramps and barrier-free passageways are to provide a smooth transition between the shared-use path and the roadway. Consider a 5-foot radius or flare to facilitate right turns for bicycles. This same consideration applies to the intersections of two shared-use paths. Curb ramps at path/roadway intersections must meet the requirements for sidewalk curb ramp at a crosswalk. For design requirements, see Chapter 1510, and for curb ramp treatments at roundabouts, see Chapter 1320.

8. **Refuge Islands**

   Consider refuge islands when one or more of the following applies: high motor vehicle traffic volume and speeds; wide roadways; or use by the elderly, children, the disabled, or other slow-moving users. (See Exhibit 1520-12 for details.)

(5) At-Grade Railroad Crossings

Whenever a bikeway crosses railroad tracks, continue the crossing at least as wide as the approach bikeway. Use special construction and materials to keep the flangeway depth and width to a minimum. Wherever possible, design the crossing at right angles to the rails (see Exhibit 1520-13). For on-street bikeways where a skew is unavoidable, widen the shoulder (or bike lane) to permit bicyclists to cross at right angles (see Exhibit 1520-13). For signing and pavement marking for a shared-use path crossing a railroad track, see the MUTCD and the *Standard Plans*.

(6) Separation, Barrier, and Fencing

When possible, provide a wide separation between a shared-use path and the roadway's traveled way where the path is located near a roadway (see 1520.06(2)).

If the shared-use path is inside the Design Clear Zone, provide a concrete traffic barrier (see Exhibit 1520-11b). A concrete barrier presents a lower risk to bicyclists than beam guardrail and is preferred. However, if the edge of the path is farther than 10 feet from the barrier, a beam guardrail is also acceptable. For Design Clear Zone guidance, see Chapter 1600, and for barrier location and deflection, see Chapter 1610.

All barrier and railing adjacent to a shared-use path must meet the criteria for pedestrians (see Chapter 1510). When the edge of the path is within 5 feet of a barrier or railing, provide a taller barrier (a minimum of 42 inches) to reduce the potential for bicyclists falling over the barrier. For barrier between the path and a roadway, if the roadway shoulder is 6 feet or wider, additional barrier height is not needed (see Exhibits 1520-14a and 14b).

Where the path is to be located next to a limited access facility, provide an access barrier. Where space permits, provide fencing as described in Chapter 560, in conjunction with a normal height barrier. Otherwise, provide a taller barrier (54-inch minimum height).

Fencing between a shared-use path and adjacent property may also be installed to restrict access to the private property. Discuss the need for fencing and the appropriate height with the property owners during project design.

On structures, the bridge railing type and height are part of the structure design. Contact the Headquarters (HQ) Bridge and Structures Office for additional information. (See Chapter 720 for further considerations.)

Evaluate the impacts of barriers and fencing on sight distances.

(7) Design Speed

The design speed for a shared-use path is dependent on the terrain and the expected conditions of use. Design the path to encourage bicycles to maintain speeds at or below the speeds shown in Exhibit 1520-5. Higher speeds are inappropriate in a mixed-use setting.

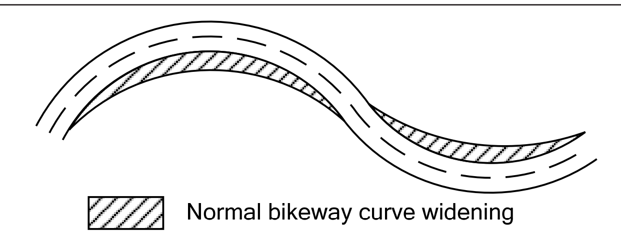
Conditions	Design Speed (mph)	Minimum Curve Radius (ft)
Open country (level or rolling); shared-use path in urban areas	20	90
Long downgrades (steeper than 4% and longer than 500 ft)	30	260

Bicycle Design Speeds
Exhibit 1520-5

(8) Horizontal Alignment and Cross Section

On tangent path sections, the desirable cross slope is 2%. The maximum superelevation is also 2%. A greater superelevation can cause maneuvering difficulties for adult tricyclists and wheelchair users (see Exhibits 1520-11a and 11b).

When radii less than given in Exhibit 1520-5 are needed, increase pavement width by up to 4 feet on the inside of a curve to compensate for bicyclist lean (see Exhibit 1520-6). For sharp curves on two-way facilities, consider providing centerline pavement markings.



Radius (ft)	Additional Pavement Width (ft)
0 – 25	4
25 – 50	3
50 – 75	2
75 – 100	1
100 +	0

Bikeway Curve Widening
Exhibit 1520-6

(9) Stopping Sight Distance

Exhibit 1520-15 gives the minimum stopping sight distances for various design speeds and grades.

(10) Sight Distance on Crest Vertical Curves

Exhibit 1520-16 gives the minimum lengths of crest vertical curves for varying design speeds. The values are based on a 4.5-foot eye height for the bicyclist and a 0-foot height for the object (roadway surface).

(11) Sight Distance on Horizontal Curves

Exhibit 1520-17 gives the minimum clearances to line-of-sight obstructions for sight distance on horizontal curves. Provide lateral clearance based on the sum of stopping sight distances from Exhibit 1520-15 for bicyclists traveling in both directions and the proposed horizontal curve radius. Where this minimum clearance cannot be obtained, provide curve warning signs and use centerline pavement markings in accordance with the MUTCD.

(12) Grades

Some pedestrians, people with disabilities, and bicyclists are unable to negotiate long, steep grades. The desirable maximum grade for a shared-use path is 5%. It is desirable that sustained grades (800 feet or longer) be limited to 2% to accommodate a wide range of users. When shared-use paths are steeper, minimize the lengths of segments greater then 5% and keep them free of other access barriers. It is desirable that the running slope not exceed 8.3% for 30% or more of the path. A shared-use path must meet the grade and resting area criteria for a sidewalk on an independent alignment (see Chapter 1510).

Grades steeper than 3% might not be feasible for shared-use paths with crushed stone or other unpaved surfaces for both bicycle handling and traction and for drainage and erosion reasons.

Options to mitigate steep grades are:

- When using a steeper grade, add an additional 4 to 6 feet of width to permit slower-speed maneuverability and to provide a place where bicyclists can dismount and walk.
- Use signing in accordance with the MUTCD to alert bicyclists of the steep downgrades and the need to control their speeds.
- Provide stopping sight distance.
- Increase horizontal path-side clearances (4 to 6 feet is desirable), and provide a recovery area or railing.

(13) Pavement Structural Section

Design the pavement structural section of a shared-use path in the same manner as a highway, considering the quality of the subgrade and the anticipated loads on the bikeway. (Design loads are normally from maintenance and emergency vehicles.) Provide a smooth pavement surface to address comfort.

Unless otherwise justified, use hot mix asphalt (HMA) pavement or Portland cement concrete pavement in the construction of a shared-use path. The desirable minimum HMA thickness is 0.20 feet. Design the final pavement structural section as recommended by the Region Materials Engineer. Contact the HQ Materials Laboratory for determination of the subgrade R value.

R Value	Subsurfacing Thickness (ft)
< 40	0.35
40 to 65	0.25
> 65	0.20

R Values and Subsurfacing Needs
Exhibit 1520-7

(14) Structures

Structures intended to carry a shared-use path only are designed using pedestrian loads and emergency and maintenance vehicle loading for live loads. Provide the same minimum clear width as the approach paved shared-use path plus the graded clear areas (see Exhibits 1520-11a and 11b).

Carrying full widths across structures has two advantages:

- The clear width provides a minimum horizontal shy distance from the railing or barrier.
- It provides needed maneuvering room to avoid pedestrians and other bicyclists.

For undercrossings and tunnels, provide a minimum vertical clearance of 10 feet from the bikeway pavement to the structure. This allows access by emergency, patrol, and maintenance vehicles on the shared-use path.

Consult the region Maintenance Office and the HQ Bridge Preservation Office to verify that the planned path width meets their needs. If not, widen to their specifications.

Provide a smooth, nonskid surface for bicycles to traverse bridges with metal grid bridge decking. A sidewalk meeting the width criteria of a shared-use path may be used for a bicycle facility on a bridge with this type of decking when no other practical alternative exists, or signs may be placed instructing the bicyclist to dismount and walk for the length of the bridge.

Use bicycle-safe expansion joints for decks with bicycle facilities.

On structures, the bridge railing type and height are part of the structure design. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for further information. (See Chapter 720 for additional considerations.)

(15) Drainage

Sloping the pavement surface to one side usually simplifies longitudinal drainage design and surface construction, and it is desirable. (For cross slope, see 1520.06(8).) Generally, surface drainage from the path is dissipated as it flows down the side slope. However, a shared-use path constructed on the side of a hill might need a drainage ditch on the uphill side to intercept the hillside drainage. Install catch basins with drains as needed to carry intercepted water under the path. (See Chapter 800 for other drainage criteria.)

Locate drainage inlet grates and manhole covers off the pavement of shared-use paths. If manhole covers are needed on a path, install them such that they minimize the effect on bicyclists. Design manhole covers level with the surface of the path.

Provide drainage inlet grates on bicycle facilities that have openings narrow enough and short enough that bicycle tires will not drop into the grates. Replace existing grates that are not bicycle-safe with grates designed for bicycles: a WSDOT vaned grate, herringbone grate, or other grate with an opening perpendicular to the direction of travel, 4 inches or less center to center.

(16) Bollards

Install bollards at entrances to shared-use paths to discourage motor vehicles from entering. Do not use bollards to divert or slow path traffic. When locating such installations, stripe an envelope around bollards and paint and reflectorize them to be visible to bicyclists both day and night. Bollards located in or adjacent to bike paths represent an object that needs to be avoided by a cyclist. To increase the potential for appropriate maneuvering to occur by the bicyclist, provide designs where the post is clearly visible and recognizable.

When designing bollards, the following information applies:

- The desirable design is to provide a single bollard, installed in the middle of the path to reduce confusion.
- When multiple bollard posts are used in wide path sections, use a minimum 5-foot spacing between bollard posts to permit passage of bicycle-towed trailers, wheelchairs, and adult tricycles, with room for bicycle passage without dismounting.
- Provide 4 feet (5 feet desirable) between face of bollard and edge of path.
- At a minimum, provide stopping sight distance to bollards. An ideal location for bollard placement is in a relatively straight area of the path where the post placement has the stopping sight distance given in Exhibit 1520-15. Do not place bollards in difficult-to-see locations (for example, immediately upon entering a tunnel).
- For cases where multiple posts are used longitudinally along the path, locate them at least 20 feet apart, with the first post in line from each direction having stopping sight distance.
- Use a contrasting striping pattern on the post.
- Use reflective materials on the post, such as a band at the top and at the base.
- Design all bollards along a corridor to be uniform in appearance. Frequent bikers can become familiar with the posts and recognize them easily.
- Provide pavement markings in accordance with the *Standard Plans* at all bollards on paved paths.
- Use removable bollards (Bollard Type 1) to permit access by emergency and service vehicles. Use bollard sleeve that are flush with the pavement surface.
- Nonremovable bollards (Bollard Type 2) may be used where access is not needed.

Refer to the *Standard Plans* for bollard designs and the MUTCD for pavement markings at bollards.

(17) Signing and Pavement Markings

For guidance and directions regarding signing and pavement markings on bicycle facilities, see the MUTCD. Consider centerline markings to separate opposing directions of travel where there is heavy use, on curves where there is restricted sight distance, and where the path is unlighted and nighttime riding is expected. An edge line helps delineate the path if nighttime use is expected.

(18) Lighting

The level of illumination on a bicycle facility is dependent upon the amount of nighttime use expected and the nature of the area surrounding the facility. Provide illumination at intersections. (See Chapter 1040 for guidance on bicycle facility illumination.)

1520.07 Bike Lane Design

Bike lanes are established along streets in corridors where there is current or anticipated bicycle demand and where it would be risky for bicyclists to ride in the travel lane. Provide bike lanes where it is desirable to delineate available road space for preferential use by bicyclists (see Exhibit 1520-8). Consider bike lanes in and around schools, parks, libraries, and other locations where young cyclists are present.

Bike lanes delineate the rights of way assigned to bicyclists and motorists and provide for movements that are more predictable by each. Bike lanes can be provided by reducing the number or width of lanes or prohibiting parking, if an analysis shows that traffic will not be unduly degraded and adjacent businesses will not be excessively impacted by the loss of parking.

Bike Lane
Exhibit 1520-8

Where street improvements are not possible, improve the bicyclist's environment by providing shoulder-sweeping programs and special signal facilities.

(1) Widths

The minimum width for a bike lane is 4 feet. Some typical bike lane configurations are illustrated in Exhibit 1520-18 and are described below:

- **Design A** depicts bike lanes on an urban-type curbed street where parking stalls (or continuous parking stripes) are marked. Locate bike lanes between the parking area and the traffic lanes. Minimum widths are shown. When the combined width of the bike lane and the parking lane is less than 15 feet, an increased probability of bicycle/car door collisions exists. When wider widths are not available, consider eliminating bike lane marking and signing.

  Do not place bike lanes between the parking area and the curb. Such facilities increase the potential conflicts for bicyclists, such as the opening of car doors and poor visibility at intersections. Also, they restrict bicyclists leaving the bike lane to turn left and they cannot be effectively maintained.
- **Design B** depicts bike lanes on an urban-type curbed street where parking is permitted without pavement markings between the bike lane and the parking lane. Establish bike lanes in conjunction with the parking areas. 12 feet (15 feet desirable) is the minimum total width of the bike lane and parking lane. This design is satisfactory where parking is not extensive and where the turnover of parked cars is infrequent. However, an additional width of 1 to 2 feet is desirable if parking is substantial or the turnover of parked cars is high. Delineated parking lanes are desirable.
- **Design C** depicts bike lanes along the outer portions of a roadway, with and without curb, where parking is prohibited. This configuration eliminates potential conflicts (such as the opening of car doors) with motor vehicle parking. Minimum widths are shown. With curb, guardrail, or barrier, the minimum bike lane width is 5 feet. When a gutter is present, the width may need to be increased to provide a minimum width of 3 feet from the edge of the gutter. Additional width is desirable, particularly where motor vehicle operating speeds exceed 40 mph. Consider prohibiting parking.

Increase shoulder widths to accommodate large vehicles and bicycle traffic when truck, bus, or recreational vehicle traffic makes up 5% or more of the daily traffic.

Bike lanes are not advisable on long, steep downgrades where bicycle speeds greater than 30 mph can be expected. As grades increase, downhill bicycle speeds increase, which increases the handling difficulty if bicyclists are riding near the edge of the roadway. In such situations, bicycle speeds can approach those of motor vehicles, and experienced bicyclists will generally move into the motor vehicle lanes to increase sight distance and maneuverability. However, this situation might place other bicyclists in a risky position. When steep downgrades are unavoidable, provide full design-level shoulder width and signing in accordance with the MUTCD to alert bicyclists of the grade and the need to control their speeds.

Bike lanes are usually placed on the right side of one-way streets. Consider placing the bike lane on the left side when it produces fewer conflicting movements between bicycles and motor vehicles.

(2) Intersection Design

Design bike lanes at intersections in a manner that minimizes confusion for motorists and bicyclists and permits both users to operate in accordance with the Rules of the Road (RCW 46.61).

Exhibit 1520-19 illustrates a typical intersection of multilane streets with bike lanes on all approaches. Some common movements of motor vehicles and bicycles are shown.

Exhibits 1520-20a and 20b illustrate two design options where bike lanes cross off- and on-ramps or wye connections. Option 1 provides a defined crossing point for bicyclists who want to stay on their original course. This option is desirable where bicyclists do not have a good view of traffic. Use Option 2 where bicyclists normally have a good view of traffic entering or exiting the roadway and will adjust their path to cross-ramp traffic. A bike-crossing sign to warn motorists of the possibility of bicyclists crossing the roadway is desirable.

Exhibit 1520-21 illustrates options where bike lanes cross a channelized right-turn-only lane. When approaching such intersections, bicyclists merge with right-turning motorists. Since bicyclists are typically traveling at speeds less than motorists, they can signal and merge where there is a sufficient gap in right-turning traffic, rather than at any predetermined location. For this reason, it is most effective to end bike lane markings at the approach of the right-turn lane or to extend a single dotted bike lane line across the right-turn lane. Parallel lines (delineating a bike lane crossing) to channelize the bike merge are undesirable, as they encourage bicyclists to cross at predetermined locations. In addition, some motorists might assume they have the right of way and neglect to yield to bicyclists continuing straight.

A dotted line across the right-turn-only lane is undesirable where there are double right-turn-only lanes. For these types of intersections, drop all pavement markings to permit judgment by the bicyclists to prevail.

For signing and pavement marking, see the MUTCD and the *Standard Plans*.

(3) Traffic Signals

At signalized intersections, consider bicycle traffic needs and intersection geometry when timing the traffic signal cycle and when selecting the method of detecting the presence of the bicyclist. Contact the region's Bicycle Coordinator for assistance in determining the timing criteria. Consider the installation of effective loop detectors or other methods of detecting a bicycle within the bike lane (in advance of the intersection) and turn lanes, in addition to push button actuators. Select loop detectors sensitive enough to detect bicycles. Bicyclists generally choose not go out of their way to use push button actuators. For additional guidance on signal design, see Chapter 1330.

(4) Signing and Pavement Markings

Use the MUTCD and the *Standard Plans* for signing and pavement marking criteria. (See Chapter 1020 for additional information on signing and Chapter 1030 for information on pavement markings.)

(5) Drainage Grates and Manhole Covers

Locate drainage inlet grates and manhole covers to avoid bike lanes. When drainage grates or manhole covers are located in a bike lane, minimize the effect on bicyclists. A minimum of 3 feet of lateral clearance is needed between the edge of a drainage inlet grate and the shoulder stripe. Install and maintain grates and manhole covers level with the surface of the bike lane.

For additional information on drainage, see 1520.06(15).

1520.08 Shared Roadway Design

Generally, lower-speed/lower-volume streets can provide for bicycle travel without additional signing and pavement markings for bicycles (see Exhibit 1520-9).

The region Traffic Engineer is responsible for determining which sections of state highways are inappropriate for bicycle traffic. The State Traffic Engineer, after consultation with the Bicycle Advisory Committee, prohibits bicycling on sections of state highways through the traffic regulation process. Contact the region Traffic Office for further information.

Shared Roadway
Exhibit 1520-9

Bicyclists traveling between cities or on recreational trips may use many rural highways. Providing and maintaining paved shoulders, with or without an edge stripe, can significantly improve convenience for bicyclists and motorists along such routes.

A shared roadway bike route with improvements for bicycles can offer a greater degree of service to bicyclists than other roadways. Improvements on shared roadways to facilitate better bicycle travel include widening the shoulders to full design level width (a minimum of 4 feet), adding pavement markings, improving roadside maintenance (including periodic sweeping), and removing surface obstacles such as drain grates not compatible with bicycle tires.

Where public transport and cycling facilities meet, an integrated design that does not inconvenience either mode is desirable. When buses and bicyclists share the same roadway, consider the following:

- Where bus speeds and volumes are high, separate facilities for buses and bicyclists are desirable.
- Where bus speeds and volumes are low, consider a shared-use bus/bicycle lane.

Consider providing bicycle parking facilities near public transportation stops.

1520.09 Signed Shared Roadway

Signed shared roadways are shared roadways that have been identified as preferred bike routes by posting bike route signs (see Exhibit 1520-10). Provide connections for continuity to other bicycle facilities. Designate preferred routes through high bicycle-demand corridors. As with bike lanes, signing shared roadways as bike routes is an indication to bicyclists that there are advantages to using these bike routes as compared with alternative routes. (Signing also alerts motor vehicle operators that bicycles are present.) Provide improvements to make these routes suitable as bike routes, and maintain in a manner consistent with the needs of bicyclists.

Signed Shared Roadway: Designated Bike Route
Exhibit 1520-10

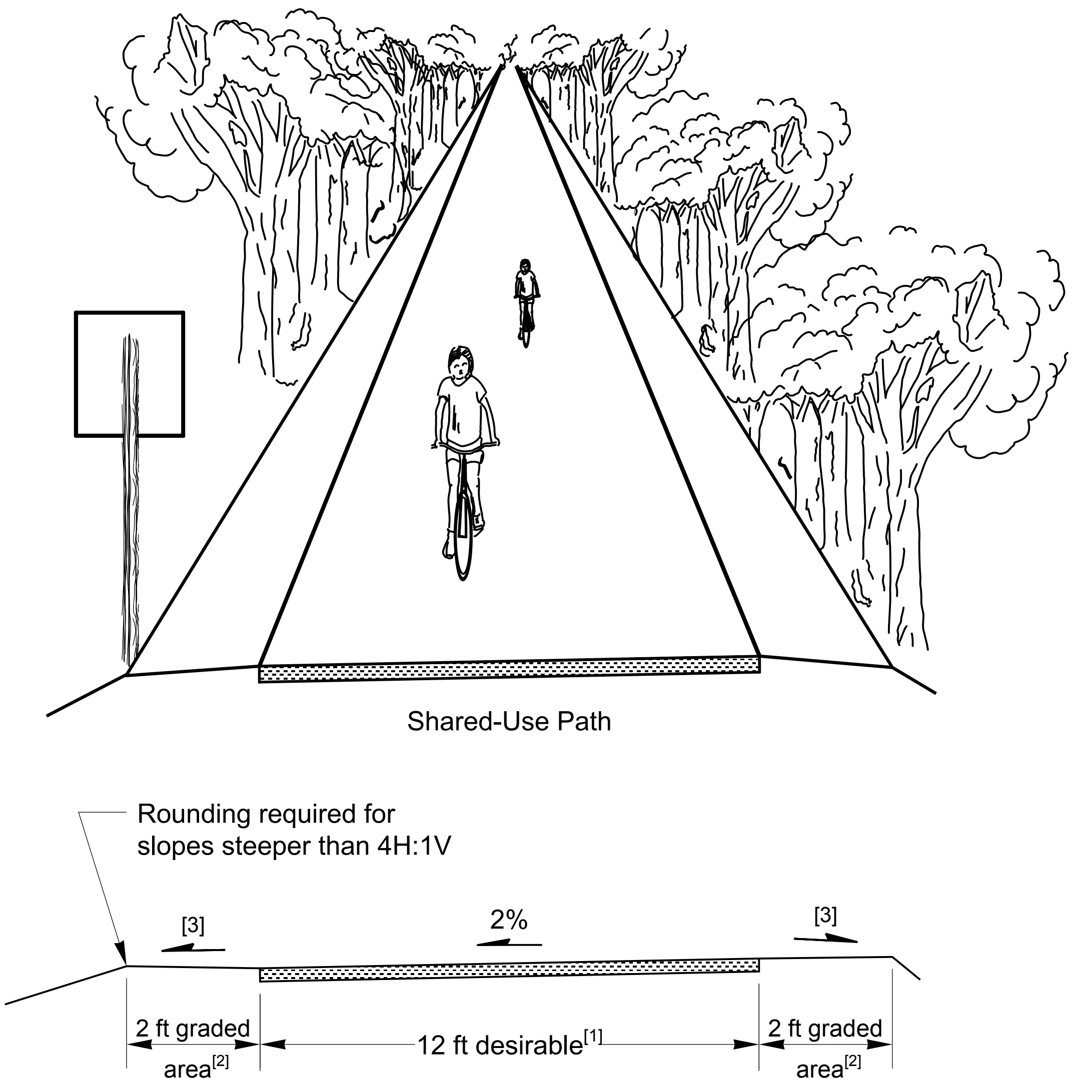
Use the following criteria to aid in determining whether or not to designate and sign a bike route:

- The route offers a higher degree of service than alternative streets.
- The route provides for through and direct travel in bicycle corridors.
- The route connects bicycle facilities.
- Traffic control devices have been adjusted to accommodate bicyclists.
- Street parking is prohibited where lane width is critical.
- Surface obstacles to bicyclists have been addressed.
- Maintenance of the route is at a higher level than comparable streets, such as more frequent street sweeping and repair.

Establish a signed shared roadway bike route by placing the MUTCD Bicycle Route signs or markers along the roadways. When the signed shared roadway designates an alternate route, consider destination signing.

1520.10 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



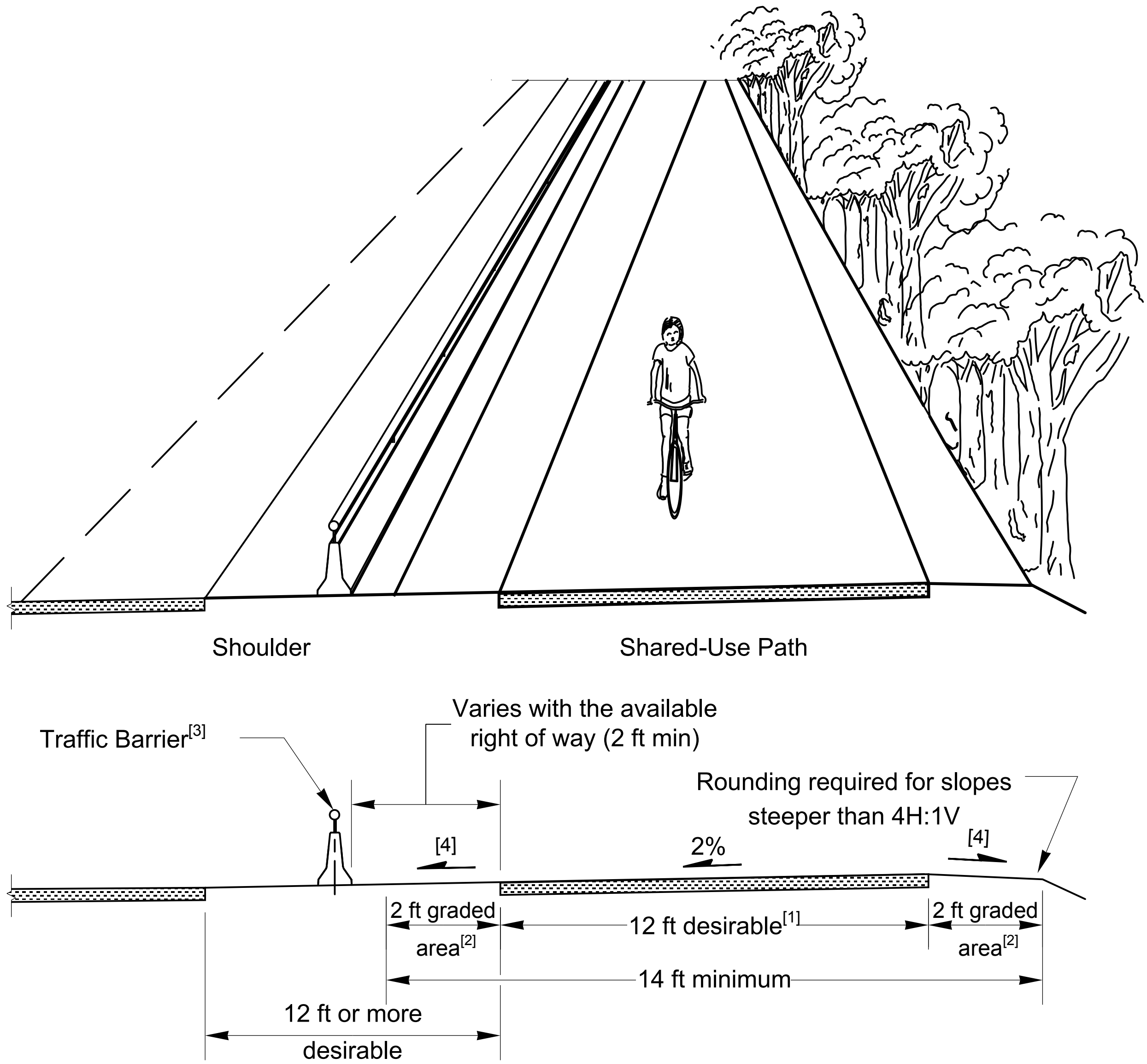
Notes:

[1] For further discussion on bicycle path widths, see 1520.06(1).

[2] Where the paved width is wider than 10 ft, the graded area may be reduced accordingly.

[3] Not steeper than 6H:1V.

Two-Way Shared-Use Path: Independent Alignment
Exhibit 1520-11a



Notes:

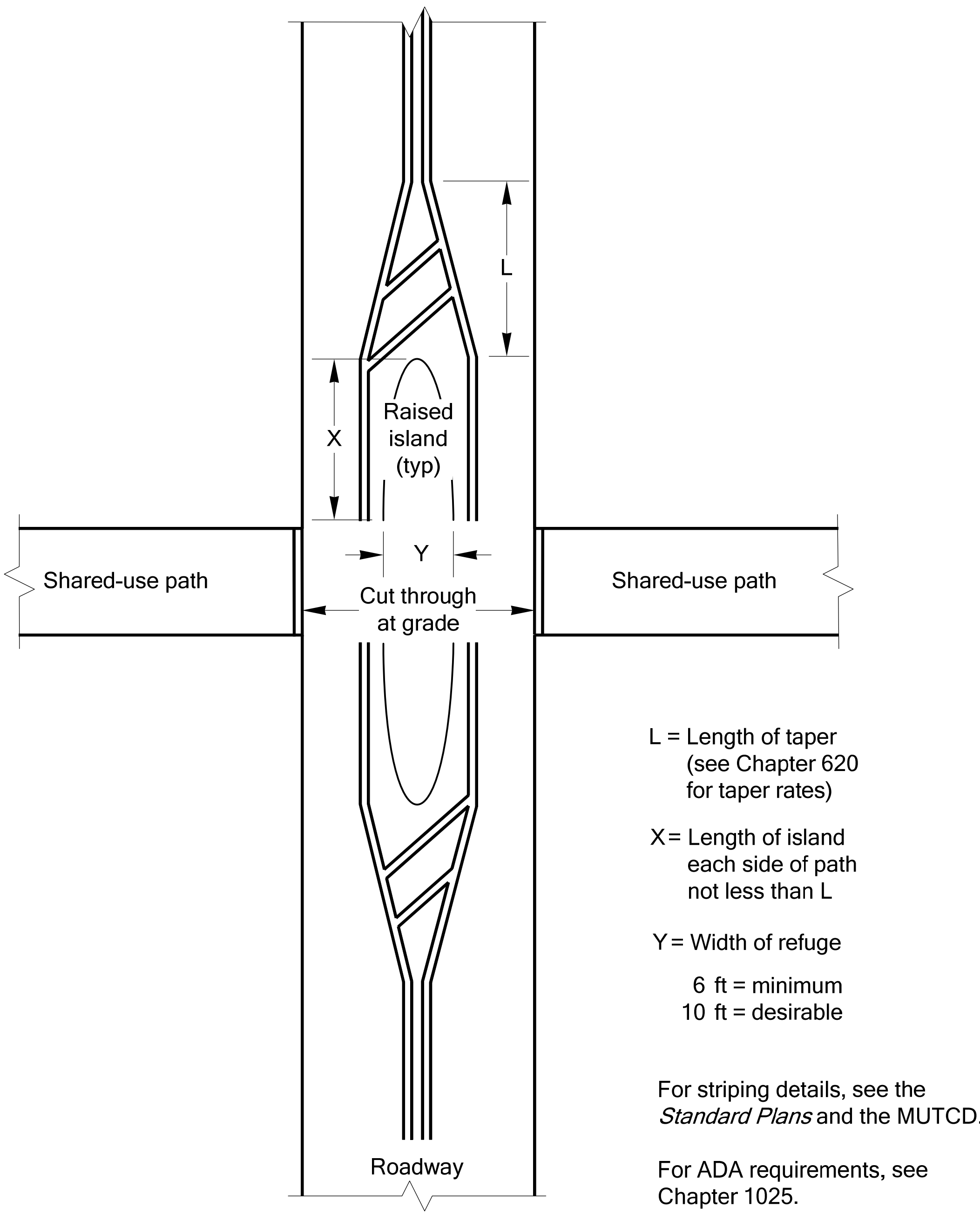
[1] For further discussion on bicycle path widths, see 1520.06(1).

[2] Where the paved width is wider than 10 ft, the graded area may be reduced accordingly.

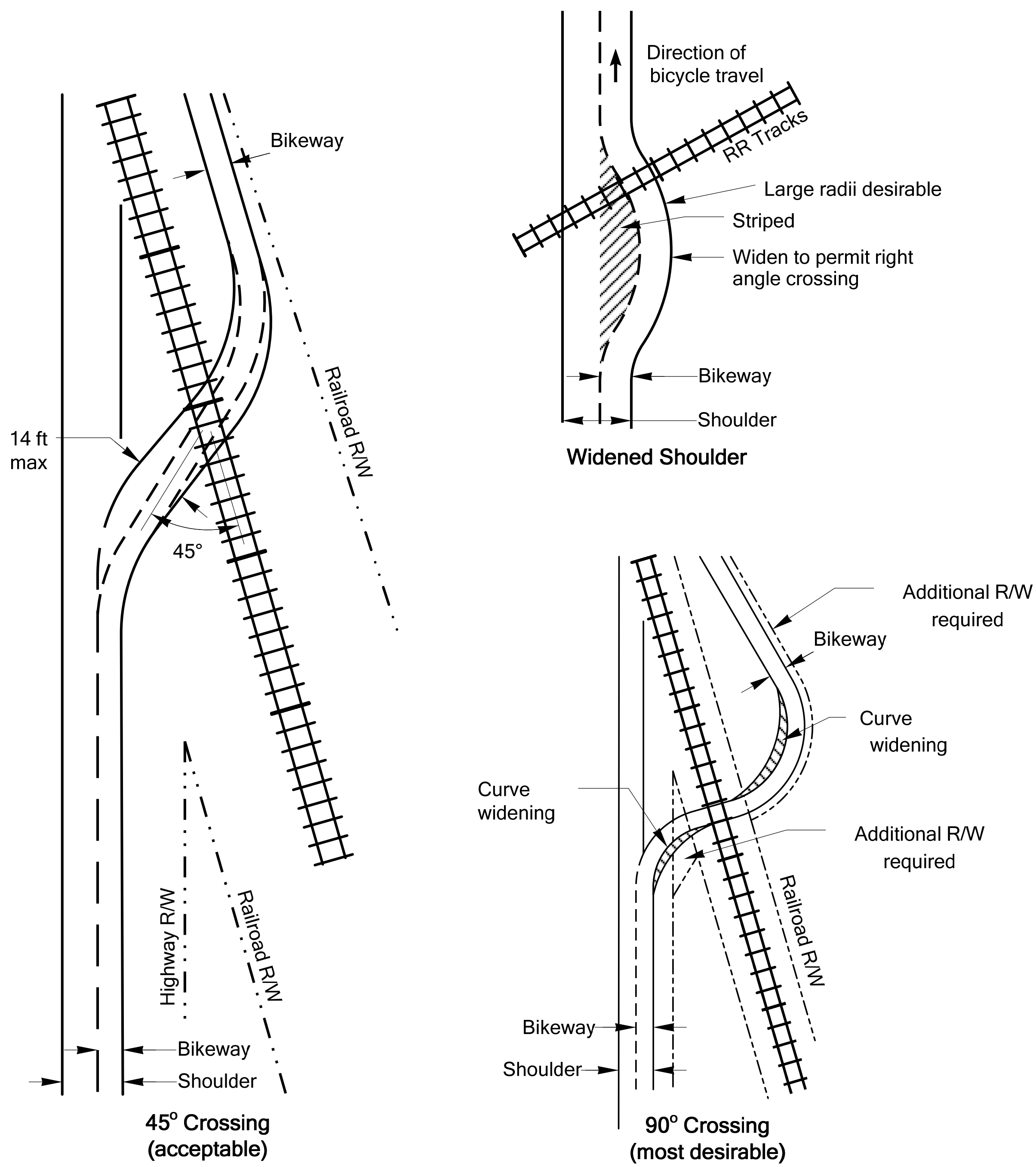
[3] For selecting barriers between bicycle path and shoulder, and for determining the need for fencing on limited access roadways, see 1520.06(6).

[4] Not steeper than 6H:1V.

Two-Way Shared-Use Path: Adjacent to Roadway
Exhibit 1520-11b

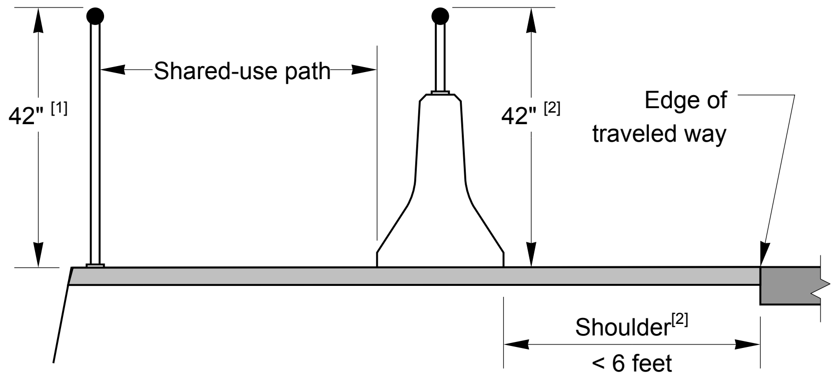


Refuge Area
Exhibit 1520-12



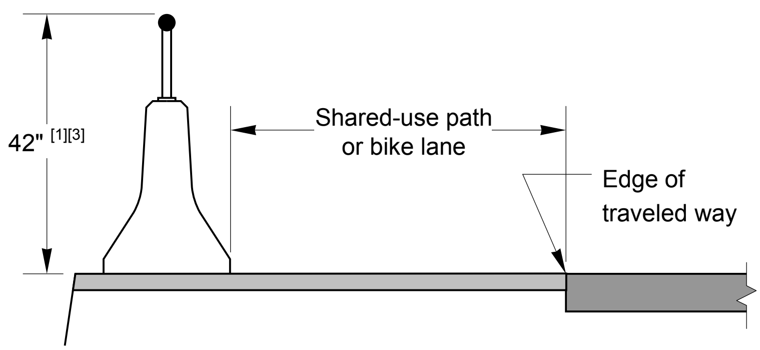
Note:
Provide additional width to a maximum total width of 14 ft at railroad crossing to allow bicyclists to choose their own crossing routes.

At-Grade Railroad Crossings
Exhibit 1520-13



Separated (shared-use paths)

Bicyclists and pedestrians use a path separated from the roadway with barrier.



Unseparated (bike lanes)[4]

Bicyclists use the shoulder/bike lane between the edge of traveled way and the barrier.

Notes:

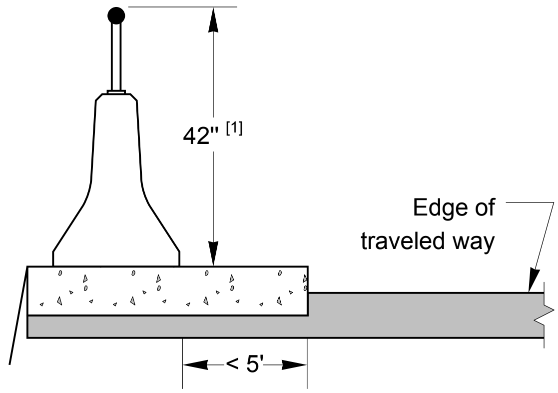
[1] Height does not apply to bridge rail. On structures, the bridge railing type and height are part of the structure design. (Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for additional information.)

[2] When shoulder width is 6 ft or more, additional height for bicycles is not needed. (See 1520.06(6) for additional information.)

[3] Applies to bike lanes. Additional height is not needed for shared-use roadways.

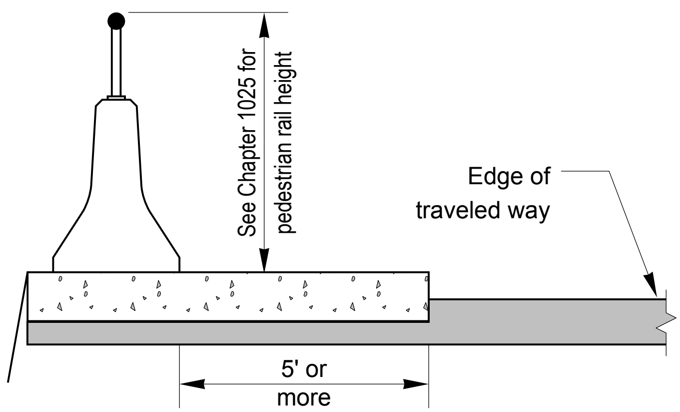
[4] Includes exceptional conditions where sidewalks are used by bicyclists.

Barrier Adjacent to Bicycle Facilities
Exhibit 1520-14a



Unseparated (bike lanes) with a sidewalk less than 5 ft wide

Bicyclists use the shoulder between the edge of traveled way and the sidewalk.



Unseparated (bike lanes) with a sidewalk 5 ft or more wide

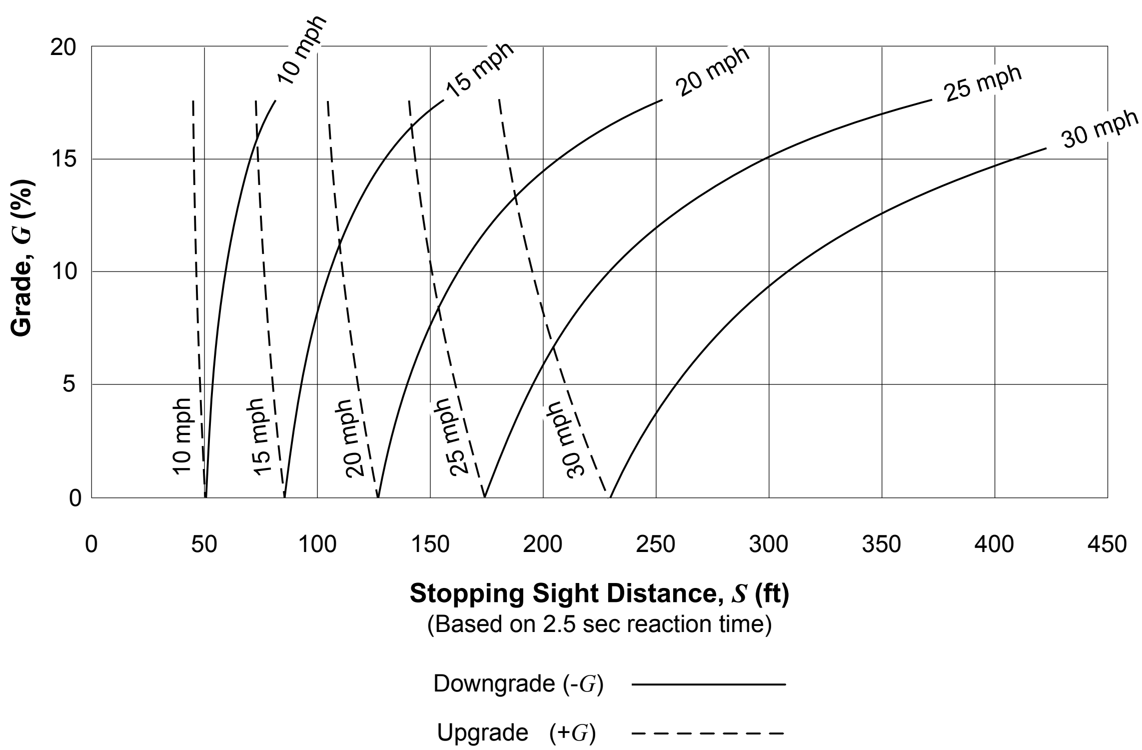
Bicyclists use the shoulder between the edge of traveled way and the sidewalk.

Note:

[1] Height does not apply to bridge rail. On structures, the bridge railing type and height are part of the structure design. (Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for additional information.)

Barrier Adjacent to Bicycle Facilities

Exhibit 1520-14b



Where:

S = Stopping sight distance (ft)

V = Speed (mph)

f = Coefficient of friction (use 25)

G = Grade (%)

Stopping Sight Distance

Exhibit 1520-15

A (%)	Stopping Sight Distance, S (ft)													
	40	**60**	**80**	**100**	**120**	**140**	**160**	**180**	**200**	**220**	**240**	**260**	**280**	**300**
2	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	30	70	110	150
3	3	3	3	3	3	3	20	60	100	140	180	220	260	300
4	3	3	3	3	15	55	95	135	175	215	256	300	348	400
5	3	3	3	20	60	100	140	180	222	269	320	376	436	500
6	3	3	10	50	90	130	171	216	267	323	384	451	523	600
7	3	3	31	71	111	152	199	252	311	376	448	526	610	700
8	3	8	48	88	128	174	228	288	356	430	512	601	697	800
9	3	20	60	100	144	196	256	324	400	484	576	676	784	900
10	3	30	70	111	160	218	284	360	444	538	640	751	871	1000
11	3	38	78	122	176	240	313	396	489	592	704	826	958	1100
12	5	45	85	133	192	261	341	432	533	645	768	901	1045	1200
13	11	51	92	144	208	283	370	468	578	699	832	976	1132	1300
14	16	56	100	156	224	305	398	504	622	753	896	1052	1220	1400
15	20	60	107	167	240	327	427	540	667	807	960	1127	1307	1500
16	24	64	114	178	256	348	455	576	711	860	1024	1202	1394	1600
17	27	68	121	189	272	370	484	612	756	914	1088	1277	1481	1700
18	30	72	128	200	288	392	512	648	800	968	1152	1352	1568	1800
19	33	76	135	211	304	414	540	684	844	1022	1216	1427	1655	1900
20	35	80	142	222	320	436	569	720	889	1076	1280	1502	1742	2000
21	37	84	149	233	336	457	597	756	933	1129	1344	1577	1829	2100
22	39	88	156	244	352	479	626	792	978	1183	1408	1652	1916	2200
23	41	92	164	256	368	501	654	828	1022	1237	1472	1728	2004	2300
24	43	96	171	267	384	523	683	864	1067	1291	1536	1803	2091	2400
25	44	100	178	278	400	544	711	900	1111	1344	1600	1878	2178	2500

Minimum Length of Vertical Curve, L (ft)

$$L = \frac{AS^2}{900} \quad \text{when } S < L$$

$$L = 2S - \frac{900}{A} \quad \text{when } S > L$$

Shaded area represents $S \leq L$.

Where:

S = Stopping sight distance (ft)
A = Algebraic difference in grade (%)
L = Minimum vertical curve length (ft)

Based on an eye height of 4.5 ft and an object height of 0 ft.

Sight Distances for Crest Vertical Curves
Exhibit 1520-16

Height of eye: 4.50 ft

Height of object: 0.0 ft

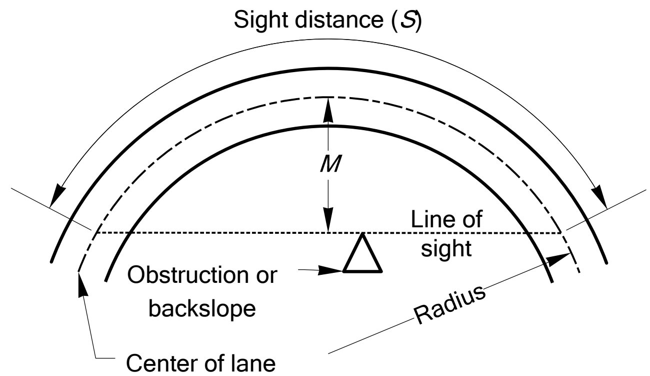
Line of sight at the M distance is normally 2.25 ft above centerline of inside lane at point of obstruction, provided no vertical curve is present in horizontal curve.

$$M = R\left(1 - \cos\frac{S\,28.65}{R}\right)$$

$$S = \frac{R}{28.65}\left[\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{R-M}{R}\right)\right]$$

$S \leq$ Length of curve

Angle is expressed in degrees.



Where:

S = Sight distance (ft)

R = Centerline radius of inside lane (ft)

M = Distance from inside lane centerline (ft)

R (ft)	Stopping Sight Distance, S (ft)[1]													
	40	**60**	**80**	**100**	**120**	**140**	**160**	**180**	**200**	**220**	**240**	**260**	**280**	**300**
25	7.6	15.9												
50	3.9	8.7	15.2	23.0	31.9	41.5								
75	2.7	5.9	10.4	16.1	22.7	30.4	38.8	47.8	57.4	67.2				
95	2.1	4.7	8.3	12.9	18.3	24.6	31.7	39.5	47.9	56.9	66.2	75.9	85.8	
125	1.6	3.6	6.3	9.9	14.1	19.1	24.7	31.0	37.9	45.4	53.3	61.7	70.5	79.7
150	1.3	3.0	5.3	8.3	11.8	16.0	20.8	26.2	32.1	38.6	45.5	52.9	60.7	69.0
175	1.1	2.6	4.6	7.1	10.2	13.8	18.0	22.6	27.8	33.4	39.6	46.1	53.1	60.4
200	1.0	2.2	4.0	6.2	8.9	12.1	15.8	19.9	24.5	29.5	34.9	40.8	47.0	53.7
225	0.9	2.0	3.5	5.5	8.0	10.8	14.1	17.8	21.9	26.4	31.2	36.5	42.2	48.2
250	0.8	1.8	3.2	5.0	7.2	9.7	12.7	16.0	19.7	23.8	28.3	33.0	38.2	43.7
275	0.7	1.6	2.9	4.5	6.5	8.9	11.6	14.6	18.0	21.7	25.8	30.2	34.9	39.9
300	0.7	1.5	2.7	4.2	6.0	8.1	10.6	13.4	16.5	19.9	23.7	27.7	32.1	36.7
350	0.6	1.3	2.3	3.6	5.1	7.0	9.1	11.5	14.2	17.1	20.4	23.9	27.6	31.7
400	0.5	1.1	2.0	3.1	4.5	6.1	8.0	10.1	12.4	15.0	17.9	20.9	24.3	27.8
500	0.4	0.9	1.6	2.5	3.6	4.9	6.4	8.1	10.0	12.1	14.3	16.8	19.5	22.3
600	0.3	0.7	1.3	2.1	3.0	4.1	5.3	6.7	8.3	10.1	12.0	14.0	16.3	18.7
700	0.3	0.6	1.1	1.8	2.6	3.5	4.6	5.8	7.1	8.6	10.3	12.0	14.0	16.0
800	0.2	0.6	1.0	1.6	2.2	3.1	4.0	5.1	6.2	7.6	9.0	10.5	12.2	14.0
900	0.2	0.5	0.9	1.4	2.0	2.7	3.6	4.5	5.5	6.7	8.0	9.4	10.9	12.5
1000	0.2	0.4	0.8	1.2	1.8	2.4	3.2	4.0	5.0	6.0	7.2	8.4	9.8	11.2

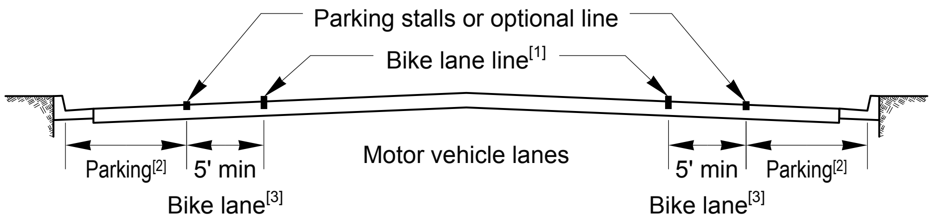
Minimum Lateral Clearance, M (ft)

Note:

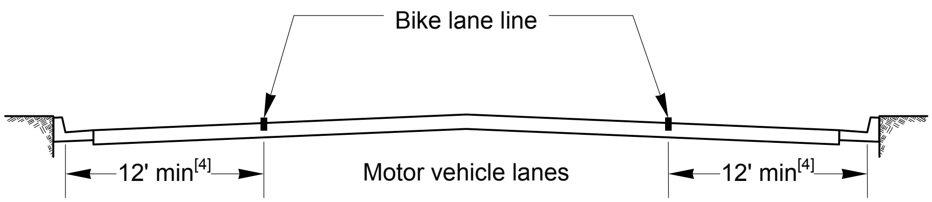
[1] S is the sum of the distances (from Exhibit 1520-15) for bicyclists traveling in both directions.

Lateral Clearance on Horizontal Curves

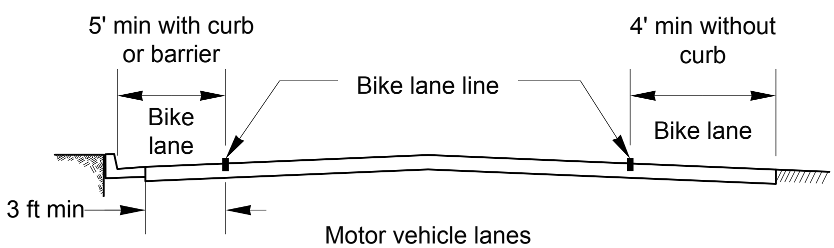
Exhibit 1520-17



Design A: Marked Parking



Design B: Parking Permitted Without Parking Line or Stall



Design C: Parking Prohibited

Post NO PARKING signs as required.

Notes:

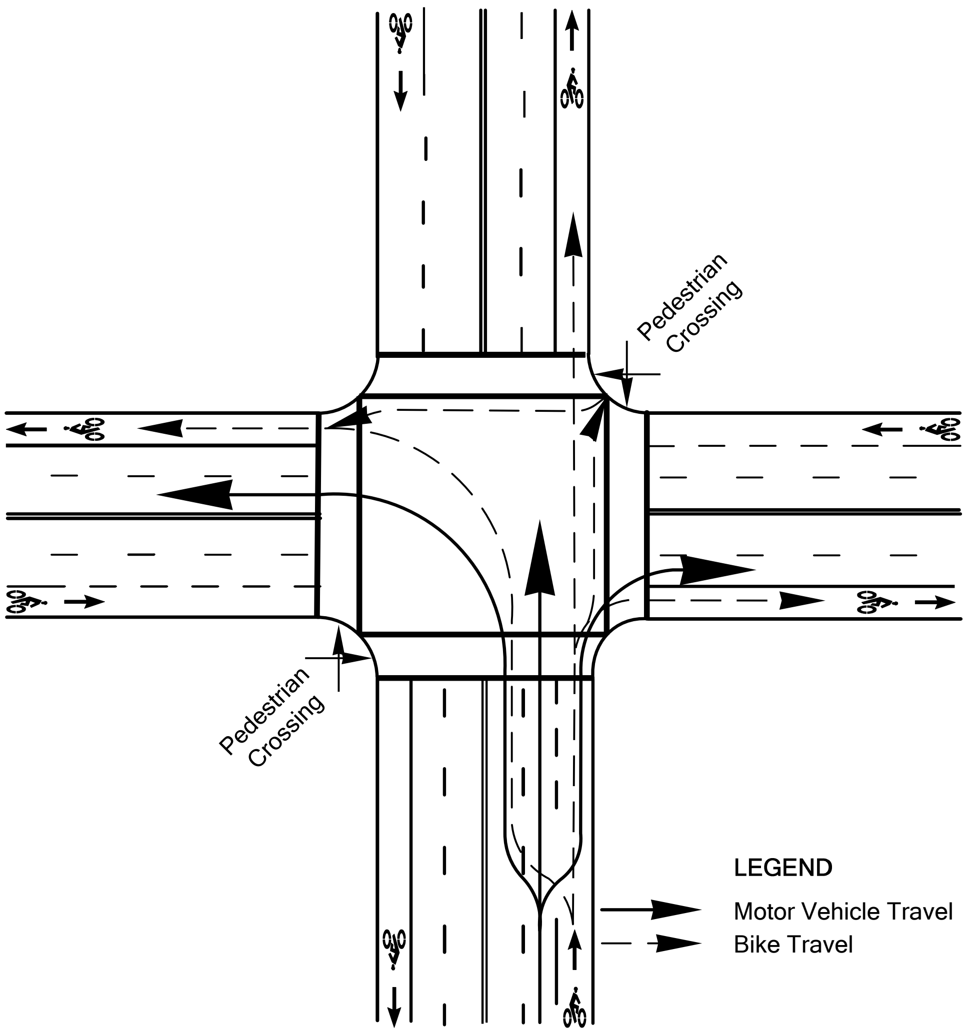
[1] The optional line between the bike lane and the parking lane might be advisable where stalls are not needed (because parking is light), but there is concern that motorists might misconstrue the bike lane to be a traffic lane. (See the MUTCD and the *Standard Plans* for pavement marking.)

[2] For parking lane width, see Chapter 1140. Consider a combined bike lane/parking lane width of 15 ft to reduce the risk of bicycle/car door collisions.

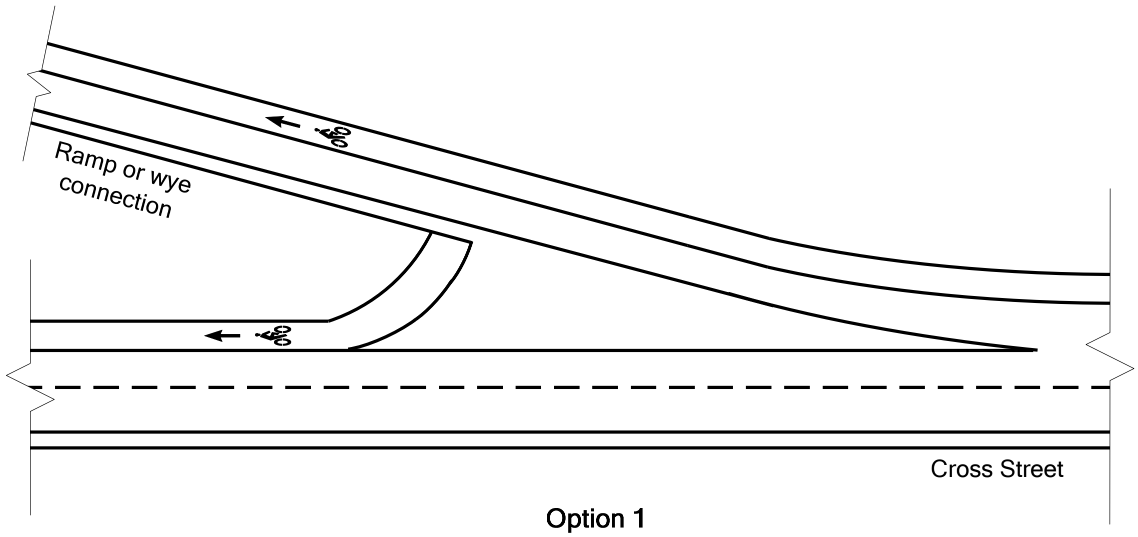
[3] 6 ft is the minimum width when parking lane is less than 10 ft.

[4] 13–14 ft is desirable where there is substantial parking or the turnover of parked cars is high. Consider a width of 15 ft to reduce the risk of bicycle/car door collisions.

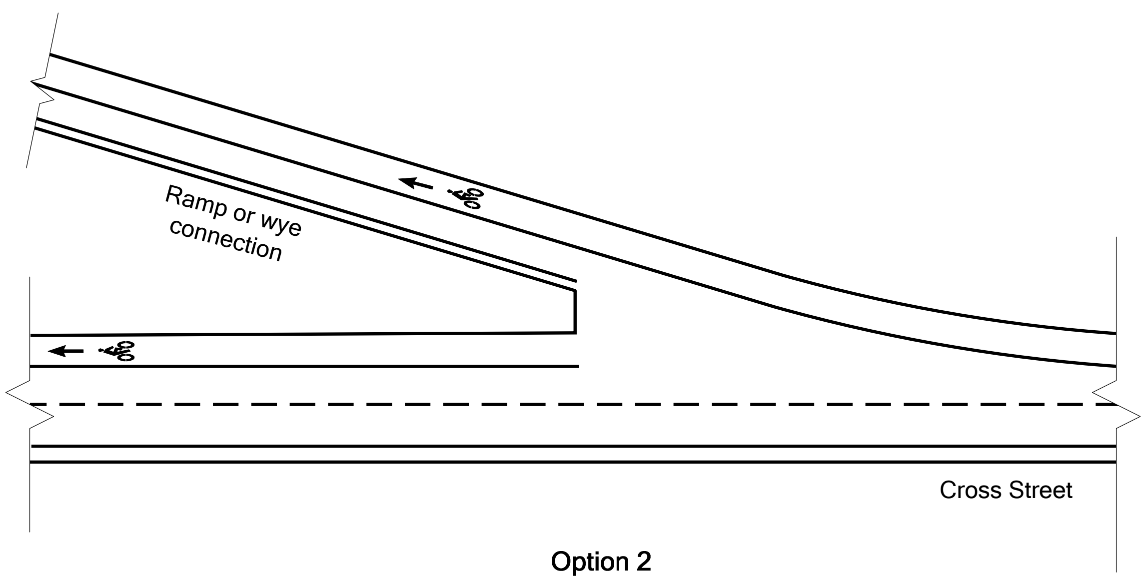
Typical Bike Lane Cross Sections
Exhibit 1520-18



Typical Bicycle/Auto Movements at Intersection of Multilane Streets
Exhibit 1520-19

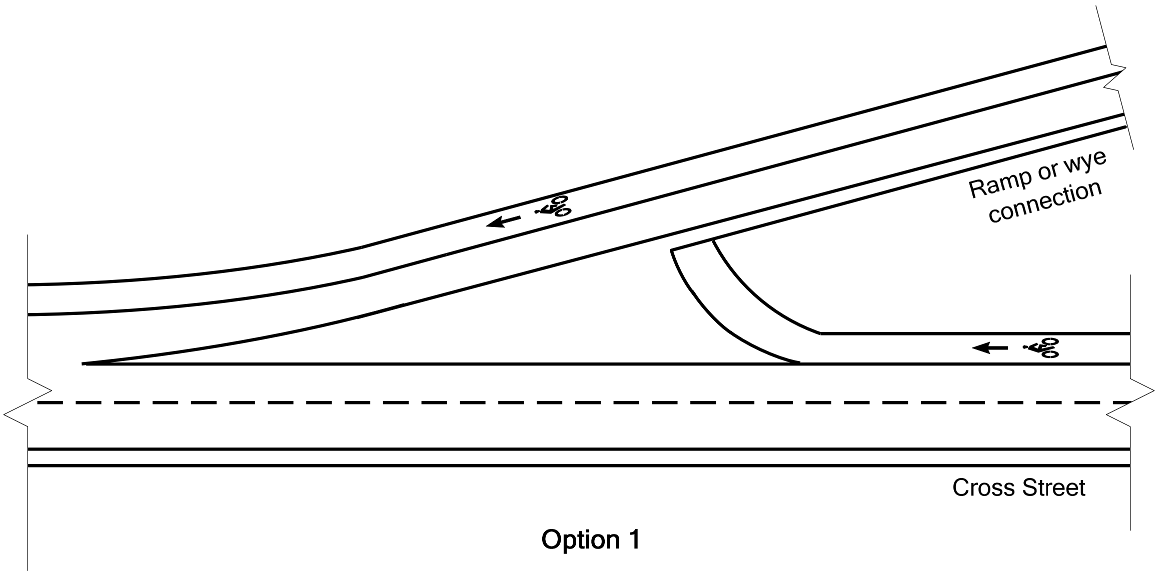


Option 1

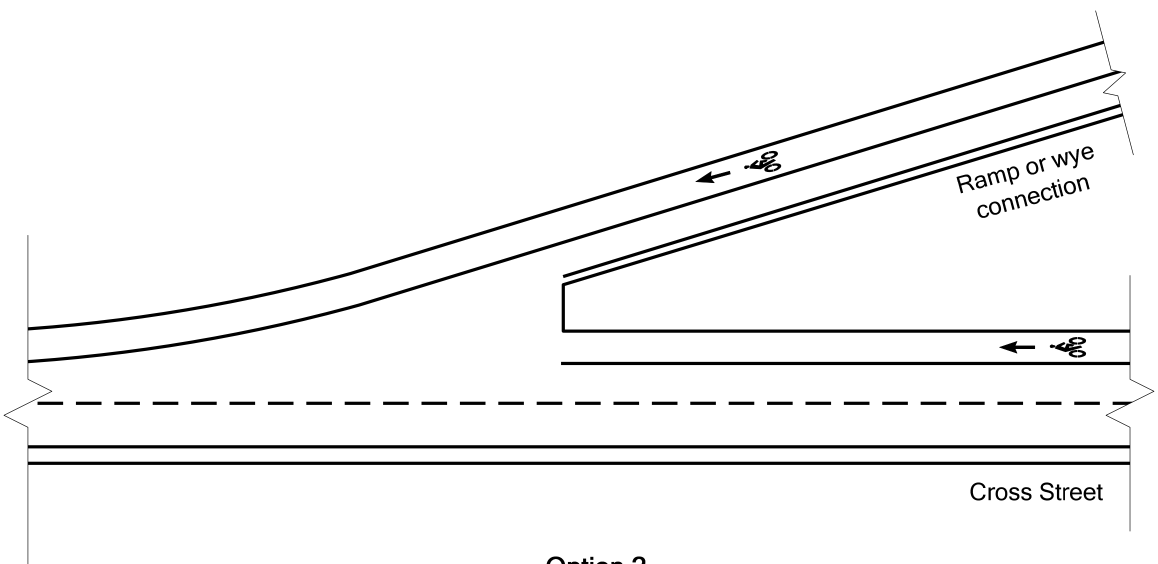


Option 2

Bicycle Crossing of Interchange Ramp
Exhibit 1520-20a

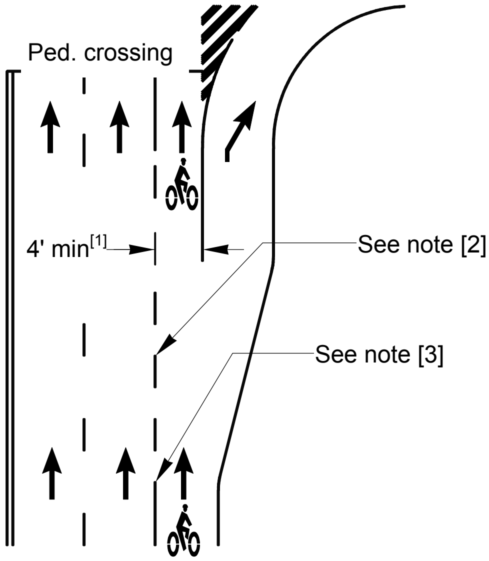


Option 1

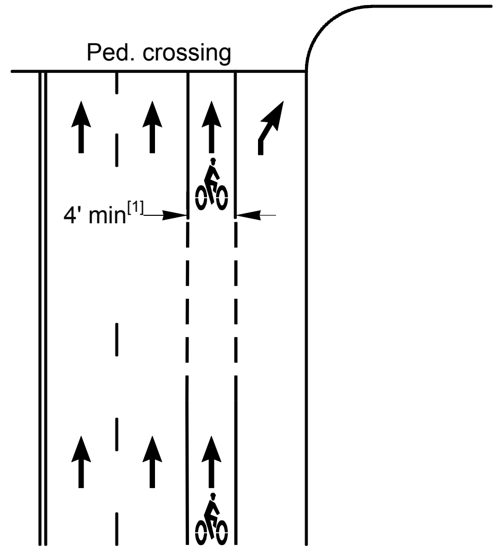


Option 2

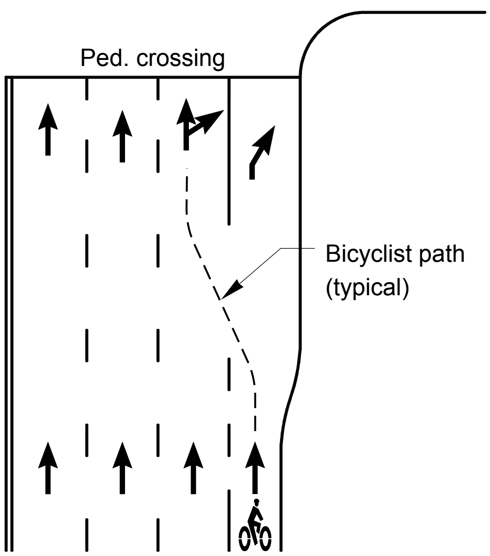
Bicycle Crossing of Interchange Ramp
Exhibit 1520-20b



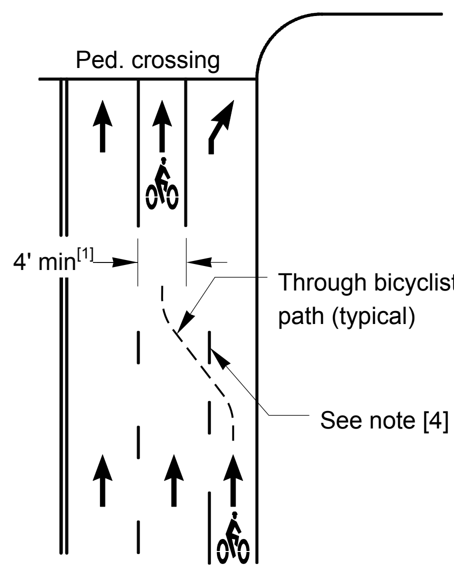
Right-Turn-Only Lane



Parking Area Becomes Right-Turn-Only Lane



Optional Double Right-Turn-Only Lane



Right Lane Becomes Right-Turn-Only Lane

Notes:

[1] If space is available.

[2] Optional dashed line. Undesirable where a long right-turn-only lane or double turn lanes exist.

[3] When optional dashed line is not used, drop all bike lane delineation at this point.

[4] Drop bike lane line where right-turn-only is designated.

Bike Lanes Approaching Motorists' Right-Turn-Only Lanes
Exhibit 1520-21

Chapter 1600 Roadside Safety

1600.01 General
1600.02 References
1600.03 Definitions
1600.04 Clear Zone
1600.05 Features to Be Considered for Mitigation
1600.06 Median Considerations
1600.07 Other Roadside Safety Features
1600.08 Documentation

1600.01 General

Roadside safety addresses the area outside the roadway and is an important component of total highway design. There are numerous reasons why a vehicle leaves the roadway. Regardless of the reason, a forgiving roadside can reduce the seriousness of the consequences of a roadside encroachment. From a safety perspective, the ideal highway has roadsides and median areas that are flat and unobstructed by objects.

Elements such as sideslopes, fixed objects, and water are features that a vehicle might encounter when it leaves the roadway. These features present varying degrees of danger to the vehicle and its occupants. Unfortunately, geography and economics do not always allow ideal highway conditions. The mitigative measures to be taken depend on the probability of a collision occurring, the likely severity, and the available resources.

In order of priority, the mitigative measures the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) uses are: removal, relocation, reduction of impact severity (using breakaway features or making it traversable), and shielding with a traffic barrier. Consider cost (initial and life cycle costs) and maintenance needs in addition to collision severity when selecting a mitigative measure. Use traffic barriers when other measures cannot reasonably be accomplished. (See Chapter 1610 for additional information on traffic barriers.)

1600.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 47.24.020(2), Jurisdiction, control

RCW 47.32.130, Dangerous objects and structures as nuisances

(2) Design Guidance

Local Agency Guidelines (City and County Design Standards), M 36-63, WSDOT

Roadside Design Guide, AASHTO, 2006

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

(3) Supporting Information

A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (Green Book), AASHTO, 2004

1600.03 Definitions

ADT The average daily traffic for the design year under consideration.

backslope A sideslope that goes up as the distance increases from the roadway (cut slopes).

clear run-out area The area beyond the toe of a nonrecoverable slope available for use by an errant vehicle.

clear zone The total roadside border area, starting at the edge of the traveled way, available for use by errant vehicles. This area may consist of a shoulder, a recoverable slope, a nonrecoverable slope, and/or a clear run-out area. The clear zone cannot contain a critical fill slope.

critical fill slope A slope on which a vehicle is likely to overturn. Slopes steeper than 3H:1V are considered critical fill slopes.

Design Clear Zone The minimum target value used in highway design.

foreslope A sideslope that goes down as the distance increases from the roadway (fill slopes and ditch inslopes).

fixed feature (object to be mitigated) A fixed object, a side slope, or water that, when struck, can result in impact forces on a vehicle's occupants that may result in injury or place the occupants in a situation that has a high likelihood of injury. A fixed feature can be either constructed or natural.

nonrecoverable slope A slope on which an errant vehicle might continue until it reaches the bottom, without having the ability to recover control. Fill slopes steeper than 4H:1V, but not steeper than 3H:1V, are considered nonrecoverable.

recoverable slope A slope on which the driver of an errant vehicle can regain control of the vehicle. Slopes of 4H:1V or flatter are considered recoverable.

recovery area The minimum target value used in highway design when a fill slope between 4H:1V and 3H:1V starts within the Design Clear Zone.

traffic barrier A longitudinal barrier, including bridge rail or an impact attenuator, used to redirect vehicles from fixed features located within an established Design Clear Zone, help mitigate median crossovers, reduce the potential for errant vehicles to travel over the side of a bridge structure, or (occasionally) protect workers, pedestrians, or bicyclists from vehicular traffic.

traveled way The portion of the roadway intended for the movement of vehicles, exclusive of shoulders and lanes for parking, turning, and storage for turning.

1600.04 Clear Zone

A clear roadside border area is a primary consideration when analyzing potential roadside and median features (as defined in 1600.05). The intent is to provide as much clear, traversable area for a vehicle to recover as practicable. The Design Clear Zone is used to evaluate the adequacy of the existing clear area and proposed modifications of the roadside. When considering the placement of new objects along the roadside or median, evaluate the potential for impacts and try to select locations with the least likelihood of an impact by an errant vehicle.

(1) Design Clear Zone on Limited Access State Highways and Other State Highways Outside Incorporated Cities and Towns

Evaluate the Design Clear Zone when the Clear Zone column on the design matrices (see Chapter 1100) indicates evaluate upgrade (EU) or Full Design Level (F) or when considering the placement of a new fixed object on the roadside or median. Use the Design Clear Zone Inventory form (Exhibit 1600-2) to identify potential features to be mitigated and propose corrective actions.

Guidance for establishing the Design Clear Zone for highways outside incorporated cities is provided in Exhibit 1600-1. This guidance also applies to limited access state highways within the city limits. Providing a clear recovery area that is consistent with this guidance does not require any additional documentation. However, there might be situations where it is not practicable to provide these recommended distances. In these situations, document the decision as an evaluate upgrade or deviation as discussed in Chapter 300.

For additional Design Clear Zone guidance relating to roundabouts, see Chapter 1320.

While not required, the designer is encouraged to evaluate potential objects to be mitigated even when they are beyond the Design Clear Zone distances.

For state highways that are in an urban environment, but outside an incorporated city, evaluate both median and roadside clear zones as discussed above using Exhibit 1600-1. However, there might be some flexibility in establishing the Design Clear Zone in urbanized areas adjacent to incorporated cities and towns. To achieve this flexibility, an evaluation of the impacts, including safety, aesthetics, the environment, economics, modal needs, and access control, can be used to establish the Design Clear Zone. This discussion, analysis, and agreement must take place early in the consideration of the median and roadside designs. An agreement on the responsibility for these median and roadside sections must be formalized with the city and/or county. The justification for the design decision for the selected Design Clear Zone must be documented as part of a project or corridor analysis (see Chapter 300).

(2) Design Clear Zone Inside Incorporated Cities and Towns

For managed access state highways within an urban area, it is recognized that in many cases it might not be practicable to provide the Design Clear Zone distances shown in Exhibit 1600-1. Roadways within an urban area generally have curbs and sidewalks and might have objects such as trees, poles, benches, trash cans, landscaping, and transit shelters along the roadside.

(a) **Roadside**

For managed access state highways, it is the city's responsibility to establish an appropriate Design Clear Zone in accordance with guidance contained in the City and County Design Standards. Document the Design Clear Zone established by the city in the Design Documentation Package.

(b) **Median**

For managed access state highways with raised medians, the median's Design Clear Zone is evaluated using Exhibit 1600-1. In some instances, a median analysis may show that certain median designs provide significant benefits to overall corridor or project operations. In these cases, flexibility in establishing the Design Clear Zone is appropriate. To achieve this flexibility, an evaluation of the impacts, including safety, aesthetics, the environment, economics, modal needs, and access control, can be used to establish the median clear zone. This discussion, analysis, and agreement must take place early in the consideration of the flexible median design. An agreement on the responsibility for these median sections must be formalized with the city. The justification for the design decision for the selected Design Clear Zone must be documented as part of a project or corridor analysis (see Chapter 300).

(3) Design Clear Zone and Calculations

The Design Clear Zone guidance provided in Exhibit 1600-1 is a function of the posted speed, sideslope, and traffic volume. There are no distances in the table for 3H:1V fill slopes. Although fill slopes between 4H:1V and 3H:1V are considered traversable if free of fixed objects, these slopes are defined as nonrecoverable slopes. A vehicle might be able to begin recovery on the shoulder, but likely will not be able to further this recovery until reaching a flatter area (4H:1V or flatter) at the toe of the slope. Under these conditions, the Design Clear Zone distance is called a recovery area. The method used to calculate the recovery area and an example are shown in Exhibit 1600-3.

For ditch sections, the following criteria determine the Design Clear Zone:

(a) For ditch sections with foreslopes 4H:1V or flatter (see Exhibit 1600-4, Case 1, for an example), the Design Clear Zone distance is the greater of the following:

- The Design Clear Zone distance for a 10H:1V cut section based on speed and the average daily traffic (ADT).
- A horizontal distance of 5 feet beyond the beginning of the backslope.

When a backslope steeper than 3H:1V continues for a horizontal distance of 5 feet beyond the beginning of the backslope, it is not necessary to use the 10H:1V cut slope criteria.

(b) For ditch sections with foreslopes steeper than 4H:1V and backslopes steeper than 3H:1V, the Design Clear Zone distance is 10 feet horizontal beyond the beginning of the backslope (see Exhibit 1600-4, Case 2, for an example).

(c) For ditch sections with foreslopes steeper than 4H:1V and backslopes 3H:1V or flatter, the Design Clear Zone distance is the distance established using the recovery area formula (see Exhibit 1600-3; also see Exhibit 1600-4, Case 3, for an example).

1600.05 Features to Be Considered for Mitigation

There are three general categories of features to be mitigated: sideslopes, fixed objects, and water. The following sections provide guidance for determining when these obstacles present a significant risk to an errant motorist. In addition, several conditions need special consideration:

- Locations with high collision rate histories.
- Locations with pedestrian and bicycle usage. (See Chapters 1510, Pedestrian Design Considerations, and 1520, Bicycle Facilities.)
- Playgrounds, monuments, and other locations with high social or economic value.
- Redirectional land forms, also referred to as earth berms, were installed to mitigate objects located in depressed medians and at roadsides. They were constructed of materials that provided support for a traversing vehicle. With slopes in the range of 2H:1V to 3H:1V, they were intended to redirect errant vehicles. The use of redirectional land forms has been discontinued as a means for mitigating fixed objects. Where redirectional land forms currently exist as mitigation for a fixed object, ensure the feature they were intended to mitigate is removed, relocated, made crashworthy, or shielded with barrier. Landforms may be used to provide a smooth surface at the base of a rock cut slope.

Use of a traffic barrier for features other than those described below requires justification in the Design Documentation Package.

(1) Side Slopes

(a) **Fill Slopes**

Fill slopes can present a risk to an errant vehicle with the degree of severity dependent upon the slope and height of the fill. Providing fill slopes that are 4H:1V or flatter can mitigate this condition. If flattening the slope is not feasible or cost-effective, the installation of a barrier might be appropriate. Exhibit 1600-5 represents a selection procedure used to determine whether a fill side slope constitutes a condition for which a barrier is a cost-effective mitigation. The curves are based on the severity indexes and represent the points where total costs associated with a traffic barrier are equal to the predicted collision cost associated with selected slope heights without traffic barrier. If the ADT and height of fill intersect on the "Barrier Recommended" side of the embankment slope curve, then provide a barrier if flattening the slope is not feasible or cost-effective.

Do not use Exhibit 1600-5 for slope design. Design guidance for slopes is in Chapters 1130 and 1230. Also, if the exhibit indicates that barrier is not recommended at an existing slope, that result is not justification for a deviation. For example, if the ADT is 4000 and the embankment height is 10 feet, barrier might be cost-effective for a 2H:1V slope, but not for a 2.5H:1V slope. This process only addresses the potential risk of exposure to the slope. Obstacles on the slope can compound the condition. Where barrier is not cost-effective, use the recovery area formula to evaluate fixed objects on critical fill slopes less than 10 feet high.

(b) **Cut Slopes**

A cut slope is usually less of a risk than a traffic barrier. The exception is a rock cut with a rough face that might cause vehicle snagging rather than providing relatively smooth redirection.

Analyze the potential motorist risk and the benefits of treatment of rough rock cuts located within the Design Clear Zone. Conduct an individual investigation for each rock cut or group of rock cuts. A cost-effectiveness analysis that considers the consequences of doing nothing, removal, smoothing of the cut slope, and other viable options to reduce the severity of the condition can be used to determine the appropriate treatment. Some potential options are:

- Graded landform along the base of a rock cut.
- Flexible barrier.
- More rigid barrier.
- Rumble strips.

(2) Fixed Objects

Consider the following objects for mitigation:

- Wooden poles or posts with cross-sectional areas greater than 16 square inches that do not have breakaway features.
- Nonbreakaway steel sign posts.
- Nonbreakaway light standards.
- Trees with a diameter of 4 inches or more, measured at 6 inches above the ground surface.
- Fixed objects extending above the ground surface by more than 4 inches; for example, boulders, concrete bridge rails, signal and electrical cabinets, piers, and retaining walls.
- Existing guardrail that does not conform to current design guidance (see Chapter 1610).
- Drainage items such as culvert and pipe ends.

Mitigate fixed features that exist within the Design Clear Zone when feasible. Although limited in application, there may be situations where removal of an object outside the right of way is appropriate. The possible mitigative measures are listed as follows in order of preference:

- Remove.
- Relocate.
- Reduce impact severity (using a breakaway feature).
- Shield the object by using longitudinal barrier or impact attenuator.

(a) **Trees**

When evaluating new plantings or existing trees, consider the maximum allowable diameter of 4 inches, measured at 6 inches above the ground when the tree has matured. When removing trees within the Design Clear Zone, complete removal of stumps is preferred. However, to avoid significant disturbance of the roadside vegetation, larger stumps may be mitigated by grinding or cutting them flush to the ground and grading around them. (See the *Roadside Manual* for further guidance on the treatment of disturbed roadside.)

(b) **Mailboxes**

For mailboxes located within the Design Clear Zone, provide supports and connections as shown in the *Standard Plans*. The height from the ground to the bottom of the mailbox is 3 feet 3 inches. This height may vary from 3 feet 3 inches to 4 feet if requested by the mail carrier. If the desired height is to be different from 3 feet 3 inches, provide the specified height in the contract plans. (See Exhibit 1600-6 for installation guidelines.)

In urban areas where sidewalks are prevalent, contact the postal service to determine the most appropriate mailbox location. Locate mailboxes on limited access highways in accordance with Chapter 530, Limited Access. A turnout, as shown in Exhibit 1600-6, is not needed on limited access highways with shoulders of 6 feet or more where only one mailbox is to be installed. On managed access highways, mailboxes are to be on the right-hand side of the road in the postal carrier's direction of travel. Avoid placing mailboxes along high-speed, high-volume highways. Locate Neighborhood Delivery and Collection Box Units (NDCBUs) outside the Design Clear Zone.

(c) **Culvert Ends**

Provide a traversable end treatment when the culvert end section or opening is on the roadway sideslope and within the Design Clear Zone. This can be accomplished for small culverts by beveling the end to match the sideslope, with a maximum of 4 inches extending out of the sideslope.

Bars might be needed to provide a traversable opening for larger culverts. Place bars in the plane of the culvert opening in accordance with the *Standard Plans* when:

- Single cross-culvert opening exceeds 40 inches, measured parallel to the direction of travel.
- Multiple cross-culvert openings that exceed 30 inches each, measured parallel to the direction of travel.
- Culvert approximately parallel to the roadway that has an opening exceeding 24 inches, measured perpendicular to the direction of travel.

Bars are permitted where they will not significantly affect the stream hydraulics and where debris drift is minor. Consult the region Maintenance Office to verify these conditions. If debris drift is a concern, consider options to reduce the amount of debris that can enter the pipe (see the *Hydraulics Manual*). Other treatments are extending the culvert to move the end outside the Design Clear Zone or installing a traffic barrier.

(d) **Sign Posts**

Whenever possible, locate signs behind existing or planned traffic barrier installations to eliminate the need for breakaway posts. Place them at least 25 feet from the end of the barrier terminal and with the sign face behind the barrier. When barrier is not present, use terrain features to reduce the likelihood of an errant vehicle striking the signposts. Whenever possible, depending on the type of sign and the sign message, adjust the sign location to take advantage of barrier or terrain features. This might reduce collision potential and, possibly, future maintenance costs. (See Chapter 1020 for additional information regarding the placement of signs.)

Signposts with cross-sectional areas greater than 16 square inches that are within the Design Clear Zone and not located behind a barrier are to have breakaway features as shown in the *Standard Plans*.

(e) **Traffic Signal Standards/Posts/Supports**

Breakaway signal posts generally are not feasible or desirable. Since these supports are generally located at intersecting roadways, there is a higher potential for a falling support to impact vehicles and/or pedestrians. In addition, signal supports that have overhead masts may be too heavy for a breakaway design to work properly. Other mitigation, such as installing a traffic barrier, is also very difficult. With vehicles approaching the support from many different angles, a barrier would have to surround the support and would be subject to impacts at high angles. Additionally, barrier can inhibit pedestrian movements. Therefore, barrier is generally not an option. However, since speeds near signals are generally lower, the potential for a severe impact is reduced. For these reasons, locate the support as far from the traveled way as possible.

In locations where signals are used for ramp meters, the supports can be made breakaway as shown in the *Standard Plans*.

(f) **Fire Hydrants**

Fire hydrants are allowed on WSDOT right of way by franchise or permit. Fire hydrants that are made of cast iron can be expected to fracture on impact and can therefore be considered a breakaway device. Any portion of the hydrant that will not be breakaway must not extend more then 4 inches above the ground. In addition, the hydrant must have a stem that will shut off water flow in the event of an impact. Mitigate other hydrant types.

(g) **Utility Poles**

Since utilities often share the right of way, utility objects such as poles are often located along the roadside. It is undesirable/infeasible to install barrier for all of these objects, so mitigation is usually in the form of relocation (underground or to the edge of the right of way) or delineation. In some instances where there is a history of impacts with poles and relocation is not possible, a breakaway design might be appropriate.

Contact the Headquarters (HQ) Design Office for information on breakaway features. Coordinate with the HQ Utilities Unit when appropriate.

(h) **Light Standards**

Provide breakaway light standards unless fixed light standards can be justified. Fixed light standards may be appropriate in areas of extensive pedestrian concentrations, such as adjacent to bus shelters. Document the decision to use fixed bases in the Design Documentation Package.

(3) Water

Water with a depth of 2 feet or more and located with a likelihood of encroachment by an errant vehicle is to be considered for mitigation on a project-by-project basis. Consider the length of time traffic is exposed to this feature and its location in relationship to other highway features such as curves.

Analyze the potential risk to motorists and the benefits of treating bodies of water located within the Design Clear Zone. A cost-effectiveness analysis that considers the consequences of doing nothing versus installing a longitudinal barrier can be used to determine the appropriate treatment.

For fencing considerations along water features, see Chapter 560.

1600.06 Median Considerations

Medians are to be analyzed for the potential of an errant vehicle to cross the median and encounter oncoming traffic. Median barriers are normally used on limited access, multilane, high-speed, high-volume highways. These highways generally have posted speeds of 45 mph or greater. Median barrier is not normally placed on collectors or other state highways that do not have limited access control. Providing access through median barrier results in openings; therefore, end-treatments are needed.

Provide median barrier on full access control multilane highways with median widths of 50 feet or less and posted speeds of 45 mph or more. Consider median barrier on highways with wider medians or lower posted speeds when there is a history of cross-median collisions.

When installing a median barrier, provide left-side shoulder widths as shown in Chapters 1130 and 1140 and shy distance as shown in Chapter 1610. Consider a wider shoulder area where the barrier might cast a shadow on the roadway and hinder the melting of ice. (See Chapter 1230 for additional criteria for placement of median barrier, Chapter 1610 for information on the types of barriers that can be used, and Chapter 1260 for lateral clearance on the inside of a curve to provide the needed stopping sight distance.)

When median barrier is being placed in an existing median, identify the existing crossovers and enforcement observation points. Provide the needed median crossovers in accordance with Chapter 1370, considering enforcement needs. Chapter 1410 provides guidance on HOV enforcement.

1600.07 Other Roadside Safety Features

(1) Rumble Strips

Rumble strips are grooves or rows of raised pavement markers placed perpendicular to the direction of travel to alert inattentive drivers.

There are three kinds of rumble strips: roadway, shoulder, and centerline.

(a) **Roadway Rumble Strips**

Roadway rumble strips are placed across the traveled way to alert drivers who are approaching a change of roadway condition or object that requires substantial speed reduction or other maneuvering. Examples of locations where roadway rumble strips may be used are in advance of:

- Stop-controlled intersections.
- Port of entry/customs stations.
- Lane reductions where collision history shows a pattern of driver inattention.

They may also be placed at locations where the character of the roadway changes, such as at the end of a freeway.

Contact the HQ Design Office for additional guidance on the design and placement of roadway rumble strips.

Document justification for using roadway rumble strips.

(b) **Shoulder Rumble Strips**

Shoulder rumble strips (SRS) are placed on the shoulders just beyond the traveled way to warn drivers when they are entering a part of the roadway not intended for routine traffic use. Shoulder rumble strips may be used when an analysis indicates run-off-the-road collisions due to inattentive or fatigued drivers. A comparison of rolled-in and milled-in shoulder rumble strips has determined that milled-in rumble strips, although more expensive, are more cost-effective. Milled-in rumble strips are recommended.

When shoulder rumble strips are used, discontinue them where no edge stripe is present, such as at intersections and where curb and gutter are present. Where bicycle travel is allowed, discontinue shoulder rumble strips at locations where shoulder width reductions can cause bicyclists to move into or across the area where rumble strips would normally be placed, such as shoulders adjacent to bridges with reduced shoulder widths.

Shoulder rumble strip patterns vary depending on the likelihood of bicyclists being present along the highway shoulder and whether they are placed on divided or undivided highways. Rumble strip patterns for undivided highways are shallower and may be narrower than patterns used on divided highways. They also provide gaps in the pattern, providing opportunities for bicycles to move across the pattern without having to ride across the grooves. There are four shoulder rumble strip patterns. Consult the *Standard Plans* for the patterns and construction details.

1. **Divided Highways**

   Shoulder rumble strips are needed on both the right and left shoulders of rural Interstate highways. Consider them on both shoulders of rural divided highways. Use the Shoulder Rumble Strip Type 1 pattern on divided highways.

   Omitting shoulder rumble strips on rural highways is a design exception (DE) under any of the following conditions:

   - When another project scheduled within two years of the proposed project will overlay or reconstruct the shoulders or will use the shoulders for detours.
   - When a pavement analysis determines that installing shoulder rumble strips will result in inadequate shoulder strength.
   - When overall shoulder width will be less than 4 feet wide on the left and 6 feet wide on the right.

2. **Undivided Highways**

   Shoulder rumble strips are not needed on undivided highways, but may be used where run-off-the-road collision experience is high. Shoulder rumble strip usage on the shoulders of undivided highways demands strategic application because bicycle usage is more prevalent along the shoulders of the undivided highway system. Rumble strips affect the comfort and control of bicycle riders; consequently, their use is to be limited to highway corridors that experience high levels of run-off-the-road collisions. Apply the following criteria in evaluating the appropriateness of rumble strips on the shoulders of undivided highways.

   - Use on rural roads only.
   - Ensure shoulder pavement is structurally adequate to support milled rumble strips.
   - Posted speed is 45 mph or higher.
   - Provide for at least 4 feet of usable shoulder between the rumble strip and the outside edge of shoulder. If guardrail or barrier is present, increase the dimension to 5 feet of usable shoulder.
   - Preliminary evaluation indicates a run-off-the-road collision experience of approximately 0.6 crashes per mile per year, or approximately 34 crashes per 100 million miles of travel. (These values are intended to provide relative comparison of crash experience and are not to be used as absolute guidance on whether rumble strips are appropriate.)
   - Do not place shoulder rumble strips on downhill grades exceeding 4% for more than 500 feet in length along routes where bicyclists are frequently present.
   - An engineering analysis indicates a run-off-the-road collision experience considered correctable by shoulder rumble strips.
   - Consult the regional members of the Washington Bicycle and Pedestrian Advisory Committee to determine bicycle usage along a route, and involve them in the decision-making process when considering rumble strips along bike touring routes or other routes where bicycle events are regularly held.

The Shoulder Rumble Strip Type 2 or Type 3 pattern is used on highways with minimal bicycle traffic. When bicycle traffic on the shoulder is high, the Shoulder Rumble Strip Type 4 pattern is used.

Shoulder rumble strip installation considered at any other locations must involve the WSDOT Bicycle and Pedestrian Advisory Committee as a partner in the decision-making process.

Consult the following website for guidance on conducting an engineering analysis: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Policy/RoadsideSafety.htm

(c) **Centerline Rumble Strips**

Centerline rumble strips are placed on the centerline of undivided highways to alert drivers that they are entering the opposing lane. They are applied as a countermeasure for crossover collisions. Centerline rumble strips are installed with no differentiation between passing permitted and no passing areas. Refresh pavement markings when removed by centerline rumble strips.

Drivers tend to move to the right to avoid driving on centerline rumble strips. Narrow lane and shoulder widths may lead to dropping a tire off the pavement when drivers have shifted their travel path. Centerline rumble strips are inappropriate when the combined lane and shoulder widths in each direction are less than twelve feet. (See Chapters 1130 and 1140 for guidance on lane and shoulder width.) Consider short sections of roadway that are below this width when they are added for route continuity.

Apply the following criteria when evaluating the appropriateness of centerline rumble strips:

- An engineering analysis indicates a crossover collision history with collisions considered correctable by centerline rumble strips. Review the collision history to determine the frequency of collisions with contributing circumstances such as inattention, apparently fatigued, apparently asleep, over the centerline, or on the wrong side of the road.
- Centerline rumble strips are most appropriate on rural roads, but with special consideration may also be appropriate for urban roads. Some concerns specific to urban areas are noise in densely populated areas, the frequent need to interrupt the rumble strip pattern to accommodate left-turning vehicles, and a reduced effectiveness at lower speeds (35 mph and below).
- Ensure the roadway pavement is structurally adequate to support milled rumble strips. Consult the Region Materials Engineer to verify pavement adequacies.
- Centerline rumble strips are not appropriate where two-way left-turn lanes exist.

(2) Headlight Glare Considerations

Headlight glare from opposing traffic can cause potential safety problems. Glare can be reduced by the use of wide medians, separate alignments, earth mounds, plants, concrete barrier, and glare screens. Consider long-term maintenance when selecting the treatment for glare. When considering earth mounds and plantings to reduce glare, see the *Roadside Manual* for additional guidance. When considering glare screens, see Chapter 1260 for lateral clearance on the inside of a curve to provide the necessary stopping sight distance. In addition to reducing glare, taller concrete barriers also provide improved crash performance for larger vehicles such as trucks.

Glare screen is relatively expensive, and its use is to be justified and documented. It is difficult to justify the use of glare screen where the median width exceeds 20 feet, the ADT is less than 20,000 vehicles per day, or the roadway has continuous lighting. Consider the following factors when assessing the need for glare screen:

- Higher rate of night collision compared to similar locations or statewide experience.
- Higher than normal ratio of night-to-day collisions.
- Unusual distribution or concentration of nighttime collisions.
- Over-representation of older drivers in night collisions.
- Combination of horizontal and vertical alignment, particularly where the roadway on the inside of a curve is higher than the roadway on the outside of the curve.
- Direct observation of glare.
- Public complaints concerning glare.

The most common area with the potential for glare is between opposing main line traffic. Other conditions for which glare screen might be appropriate are:

- Between a highway and an adjacent frontage road or parallel highway, especially where opposing headlights might seem to be on the wrong side of the driver.
- At an interchange where an on-ramp merges with a collector-distributor and the ramp traffic might be unable to distinguish between collector and main line traffic. In this instance, consider other solutions such as illumination.
- Where headlight glare is a distraction to adjacent property owners. Playgrounds, ball fields, and parks with frequent nighttime activities might benefit from screening if headlight glare interferes with these activities.

There are currently three basic types of glare screen available: chain link (see the *Standard Plans*), vertical blades, and concrete barrier (see Exhibit 1600-7).

When the glare is temporary (due to construction activity), consider traffic volumes, alignment, duration, presence of illumination, and type of construction activity. Glare screen may be used to reduce rubbernecking associated with construction activity, but less expensive methods, such as plywood that seals off the view of the construction area, might be more appropriate.

1600.08 Documentation

For the list of documents that need to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev

Posted Speed (mph)	Average Daily Traffic	Cut Section (Backslope) (H:V) 3:1	4:1	5:1	6:1	8:1	10:1	Fill Section (H:V) 3:1	4:1	5:1	6:1	8:1	10:1
35 or Less		**The Design Clear Zone Distance is 10 ft**											
40	Under 250	10	10	10	10	10	10	*	13	12	11	11	10
	251-800	11	11	11	11	11	11	*	14	14	13	12	11
	801-2000	12	12	12	12	12	12	*	16	15	14	13	12
	2001-6000	14	14	14	14	14	14	*	17	17	16	15	14
	Over 6000	15	15	15	15	15	15	*	19	18	17	16	15
45	Under 250	11	11	11	11	11	11	*	16	14	13	12	11
	251-800	12	12	13	13	13	13	*	18	16	14	14	13
	801-2000	13	13	14	14	14	14	*	20	17	16	15	14
	2001-6000	15	15	16	16	16	16	*	22	19	17	17	16
	Over 6000	16	16	17	17	17	17	*	24	21	19	18	17
50	Under 250	11	12	13	13	13	13	*	19	16	15	13	13
	251-800	13	14	14	15	15	15	*	22	18	17	15	15
	801-2000	14	15	16	17	17	17	*	24	20	18	17	17
	2001-6000	16	17	17	18	18	18	*	27	22	20	18	18
	Over 6000	17	18	19	20	20	20	*	29	24	22	20	20
55	Under 250	12	14	15	16	16	17	*	25	21	19	17	17
	251-800	14	16	17	18	18	19	*	28	23	21	20	19
	801-2000	15	17	19	20	20	21	*	31	26	23	22	21
	2001-6000	17	19	21	22	22	23	*	34	29	26	24	23
	Over 6000	18	21	23	24	24	25	*	37	31	28	26	25
60	Under 250	13	16	17	18	19	19	*	30	25	23	21	20
	251-800	15	18	20	20	21	22	*	34	28	26	23	23
	801-2000	17	20	22	22	23	24	*	37	31	28	26	25
	2001-6000	18	22	24	25	26	27	*	41	34	31	29	28
	Over 6000	20	24	26	27	28	29	*	45	37	34	31	30
65	Under 250	15	18	19	20	21	21	*	33	27	25	23	22
	251-800	17	20	22	22	24	24	*	38	31	29	26	25
	801-2000	19	22	24	25	26	27	*	41	34	31	29	28
	2001-6000	20	25	27	27	29	30	*	46	37	35	32	31
	Over 6000	22	27	29	30	31	32	*	50	41	38	34	33
70	Under 250	16	19	21	21	23	23	*	36	29	27	25	24
	251-800	18	22	23	24	26	26	*	41	33	31	28	27
	801-2000	20	24	26	27	28	29	*	45	37	34	31	30
	2001-6000	22	27	29	29	31	32	*	50	40	38	34	33
	Over 6000	24	29	31	32	34	35	*	54	44	41	37	36

Notes:

This exhibit applies to:

- All state highways outside incorporated cities.
- Limited access state highways within cities.
- Median areas on managed access state highways within cities. (See 1600.04 for guidance on managed access state highways within incorporated cities.)

Design Clear Zone distances are given in feet, measured from the edge of traveled way (see 1600.03.)

* When the fill section slope is steeper than 4H:1V, but not steeper than 3H:1V, the Design Clear Zone distance is modified by the recovery area formula (see Exhibit 1600-3) and is referred to as the recovery area. The basic philosophy behind the recovery area formula is that the vehicle can traverse these slopes but cannot recover (control steering); therefore, the horizontal distance of these slopes is added to the Design Clear Zone distance to form the recovery area.

Design Clear Zone Distance Table
Exhibit 1600-1

Design Clear Zone Inventory Form
Exhibit 1600-2

Washington State Department of Transportation

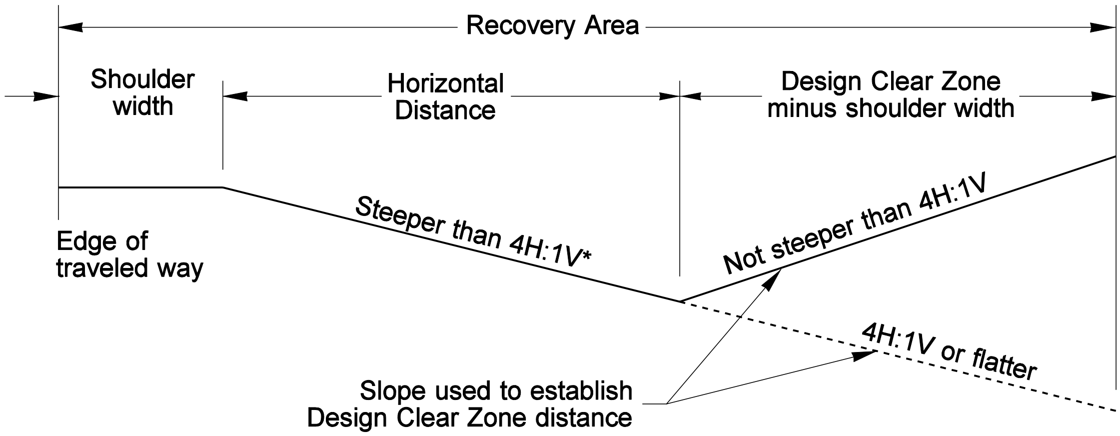
Design Clear Zone Inventory

Region	SR	Control Section	MP to MP	Date
Project Number	Project Title		Responsible Unit	

Item Number	MP to MP	Distance From Traveled Way L	Distance From Traveled Way R	Description	Corrective Actions Considered (2)	Estimated Cost to Correct	Correction Planned (1) Yes	Correction Planned (1) No

(1) Only one “Yes” or “No” per item number. Corrections not planned must be explained on reverse side.
(2) A list of Location 1 & 2 Utility Objects to be forwarded to the region Utility Office for coordination per Control Zone Guidelines.

DOT Form 410-026 EF
Revised 4/05



* Recovery area normally applies to slopes steeper than 4H:1V, but not steeper than 3H:1V. For steeper slopes, the recovery area formula may be used as a guide if the embankment height is 10 ft or less.

Formula:

Recovery area = (shoulder width) + (horizontal distance)
+ (Design Clear Zone distance - shoulder width)

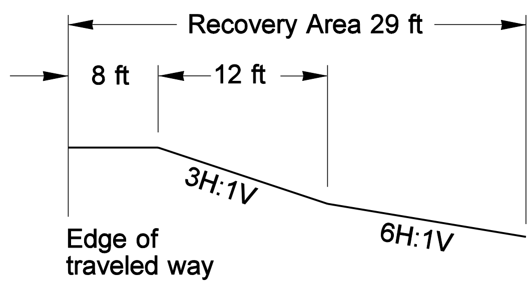
Example:

Fill section (slope 3H:1V or steeper)

Conditions: Speed – 45 mph
Traffic – 3000 ADT
Slope – 3H:1V

Criteria: Slope 3H:1V – Use recovery area formula

Recovery area = (shoulder width) + (horizontal distance)
+ (Design Clear Zone distance - shoulder width)
= 8 + 12 + (17-8)
= 29 feet



Recovery Area
Exhibit 1600-3

Cut section with ditch (foreslope 4H:1V or flatter)

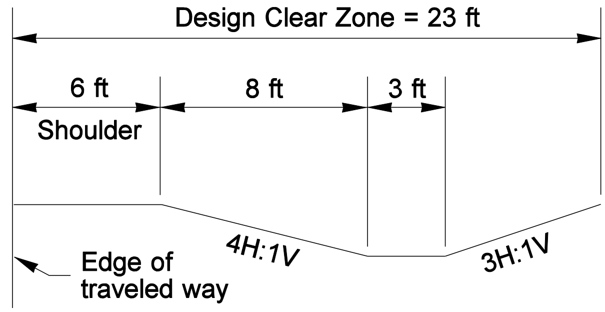
Conditions: Speed – 55 mph
Traffic – 4200 ADT
Slope – 4H:1V

Criteria: Greater of:

(1) Design Clear Zone for 10H:1V cut section, 23 feet

(2) 5 feet horizontal beyond beginning of backslope, 22 feet

Design Clear Zone = 23 feet



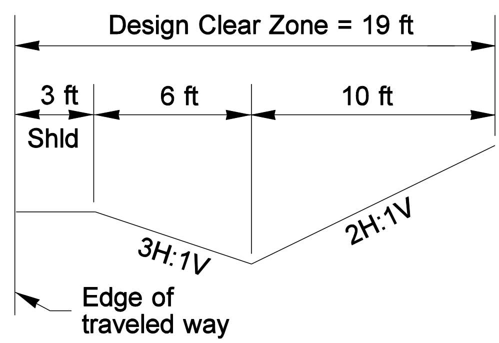
Case 1

Cut section with ditch (foreslope steeper than 4H:1V and backslope steeper than 3H:1V)

Conditions: NA

Criteria: 10 feet horizontal beyond beginning of backslope

Design Clear Zone = 19 feet



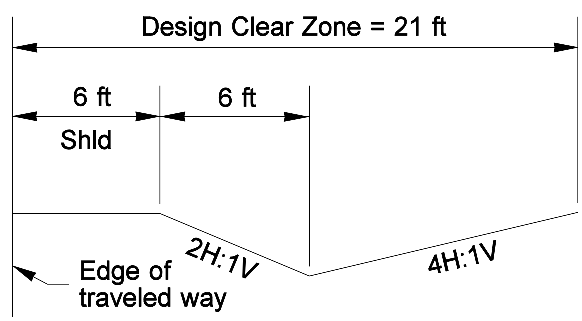
Case 2

Cut section with ditch (foreslope 3H:1V or steeper and backslope not steeper than 3H:1V)

Conditions: Speed – 45 mph
Traffic – 3000 ADT
Foreslope – 2H:1V
Backslope – 4H:1V

Criteria: Use recovery area formula

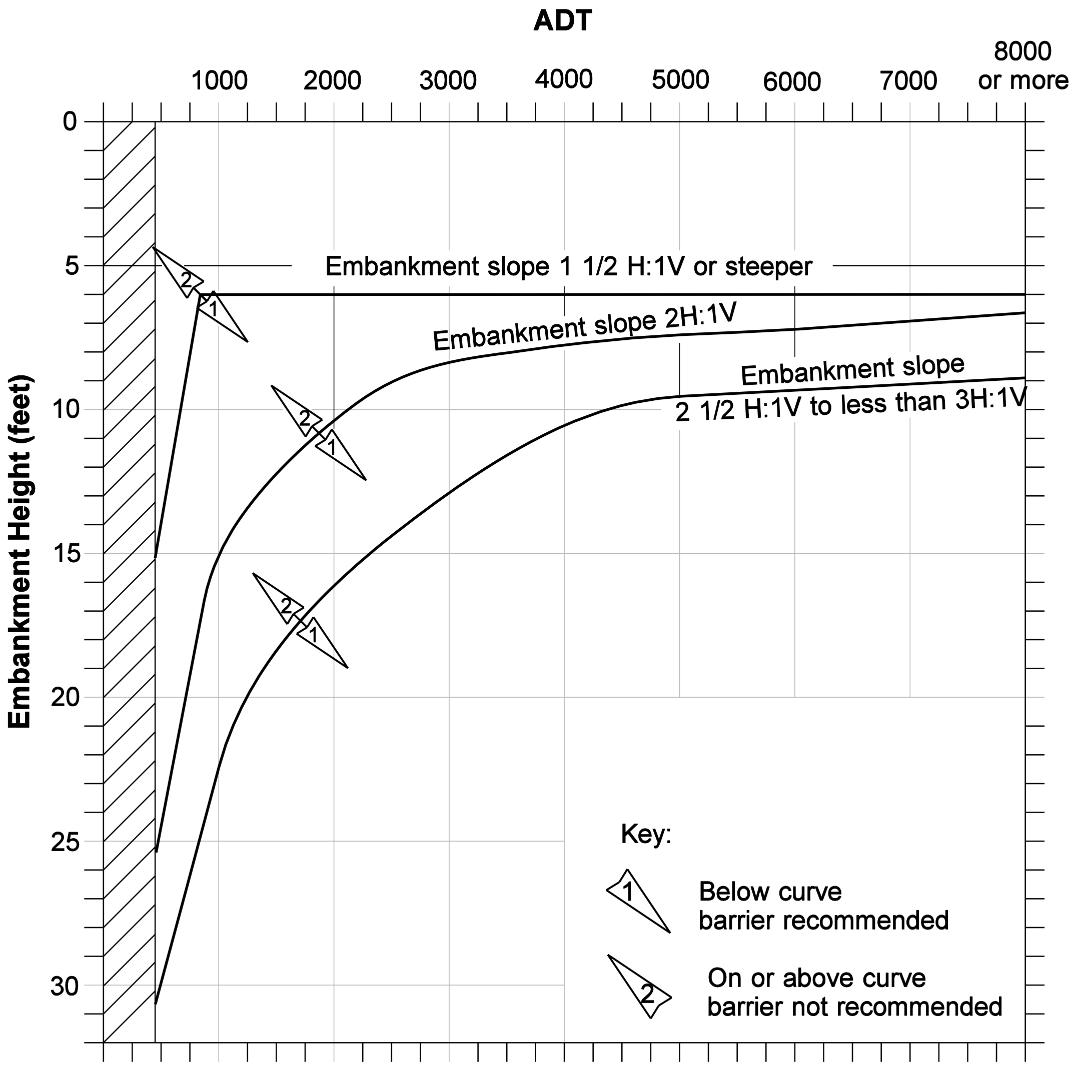
Recovery Area = (shoulder width) + (horizontal distance) + (Design Clear Zone distance – shoulder width)
= 6 + 6 + (15 – 6)
= 21 feet



Case 3

Design Clear Zone for Ditch Sections

Exhibit 1600-4

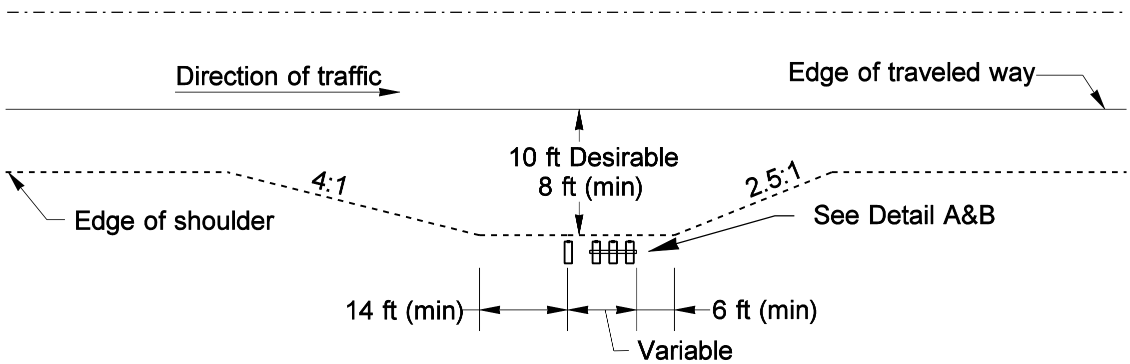


Note:

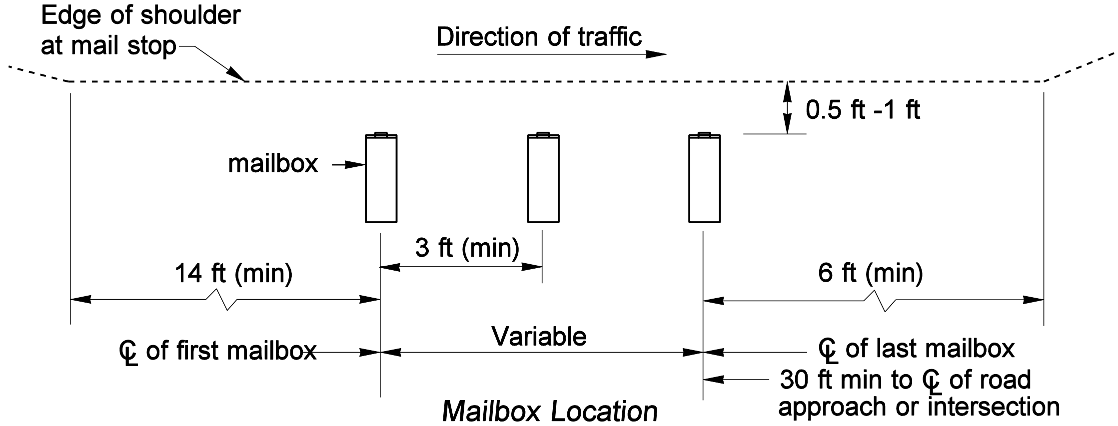
Routes with ADTs under 400 may be evaluated on a case-by-case basis.

Guidelines for Embankment Barrier

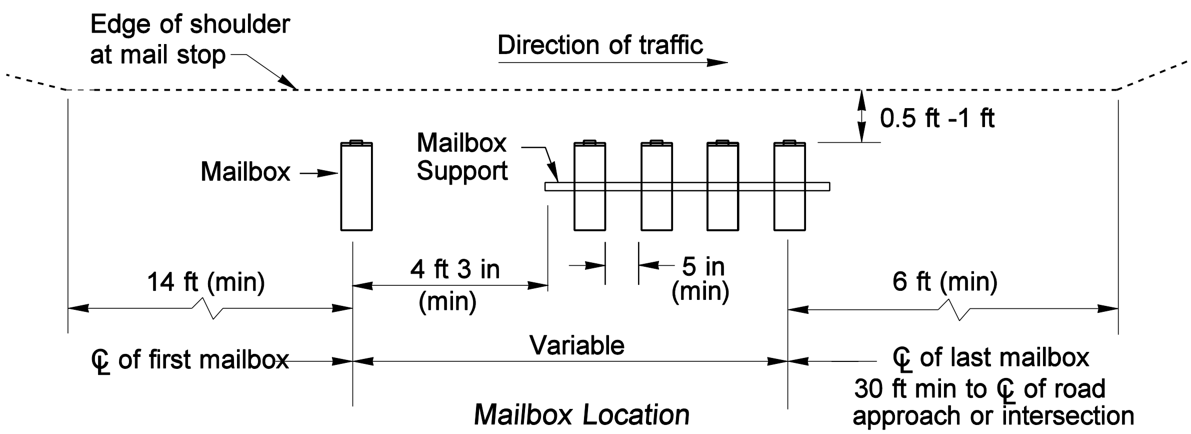
Exhibit 1600-5



Mailbox Turnout

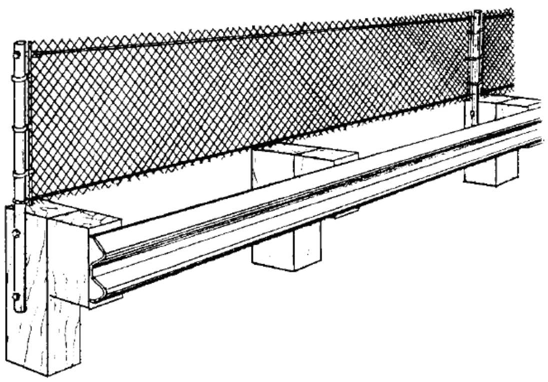


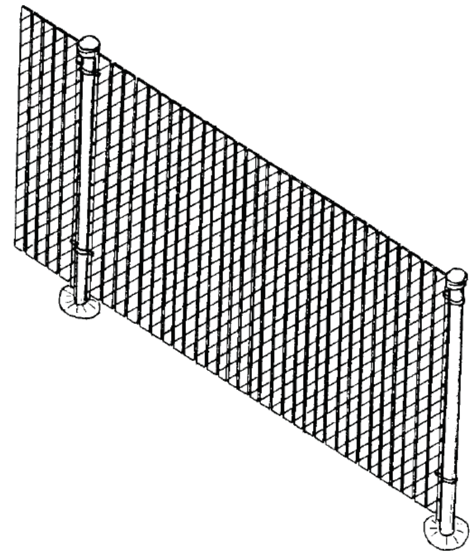
Mailbox Location
Single Box Design
Detail A



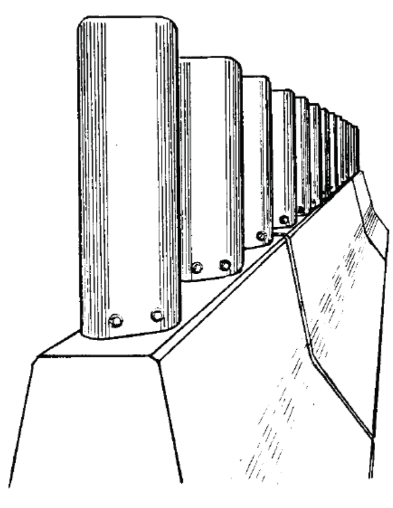
Mailbox Location
Multiple Box Design
Detail B

Mailbox Location and Turnout Design
Exhibit 1600-6

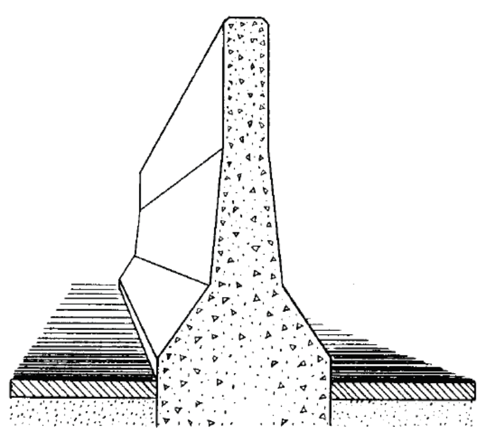




Chain Link



Vertical Blades



Concrete Barrier

Glare Screens
Exhibit 1600-7

Chapter 1610 Traffic Barriers

1610.01 General
1610.02 References
1610.03 Definitions
1610.04 Project Criteria
1610.05 Barrier Design
1610.06 Beam Guardrail
1610.07 Cable Barrier
1610.08 Concrete Barrier
1610.09 Special-Use Barriers
1610.10 Bridge Traffic Barriers
1610.11 Other Barriers
1610.12 Documentation

1610.01 General

The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) uses traffic barriers to reduce the overall severity of collisions that occur when a vehicle leaves the traveled way. Consider whether a barrier is preferable to the recovery area it replaces. In some cases, installation of a traffic barrier may result in more collisions, as it presents an object that can be struck. Barriers are designed so that such encounters might be less severe and not lead to secondary or tertiary collisions. However, when impacts occur, traffic barriers are not guaranteed to redirect vehicles without injury to the occupants or additional collisions.

Barrier performance is affected by the characteristics of the types of vehicles that collide with them. For example, motor vehicles with large tires and high centers of gravity are commonplace on our highways and they are designed to mount obstacles. Therefore, they are at greater risk of mounting barriers or of not being decelerated and redirected as conventional vehicles would be.

When barriers are crash-tested, it is impossible to replicate the innumerable variations in highway conditions. Therefore, barriers are crash-tested under standardized conditions. Barriers are not placed with the assumption that the system will restrain or redirect all vehicles in all conditions. They are placed with the assumption that under normal conditions, they might provide an improved safety condition for most collisions. Consequently, barriers should not be used unless an improved safety situation is likely. No matter how well a barrier system is designed, optimal performance is dependent on drivers' proper use, maintenance, and operation of their vehicles and the proper use of vehicle restraint systems.

At the time of installation, the ultimate choice of barrier type and placement is made by using engineering judgment and having a thorough understanding of and using the criteria presented in Chapters 1600 and 1610.

1610.02 References

(1) Design Guidance

Bridge Design Manual, M 23-50, WSDOT

Roadside Design Guide, AASHTO, 2006

Standard Plans for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction (Standard Plans), M 21-01, WSDOT

Traffic Manual, M 51-02, WSDOT

1610.03 Definitions

barrier terminal A crash-tested end treatment for longitudinal barriers that is designed to reduce the potential for spearing, vaulting, rolling, or excessive deceleration of impacting vehicles from either direction of travel. Barrier terminals include applicable anchorage.

controlled releasing terminal (CRT) post A standard-length guardrail post that has two holes drilled through it so it might break away when struck.

crash-accepted device A feature that has been proven acceptable for use under specified conditions, either through crash testing or in-service performance.

fixed feature (object to be mitigated) A fixed object, a sideslope, or water that, when struck, can result in impact forces on a vehicle's occupants that may result in injury or place the occupants in a situation that has a high likelihood of injury. A fixed feature can be either constructed or natural.

impact attenuator system A device that acts primarily to bring an errant vehicle to a stop at a deceleration rate tolerable to the vehicle's occupants or to redirect the vehicle away from a fixed feature.

length of need The length of a traffic barrier used to shield a fixed feature.

shy distance The distance from the edge of the traveled way beyond which a roadside object might not be perceived by a typical driver as an immediate feature to be avoided to the extent that the driver will change the vehicle's placement or speed.

traffic barrier/longitudinal barrier A device oriented parallel or nearly parallel to the roadway whose primary function is to contain or safely redirect errant vehicles away from fixed features or to (occasionally) protect workers, pedestrians, or bicyclists from vehicular traffic. Beam guardrail, cable barrier, bridge rail concrete barrier, and impact attenuators are barriers, and they are categorized as rigid, unrestrained rigid, semirigid, and flexible. They can be installed as roadside or median barriers.

transition A section of barrier used to produce the gradual stiffening of a flexible or semirigid barrier as it connects to a more rigid barrier or fixed object.

1610.04 Project Criteria

This section identifies the barrier elements that are addressed according to the Design Matrices in Chapter 1100. Remove barrier that is not needed. Use the criteria in Chapter 1600 as the basis for removal.

(1) Barrier Terminals and Transitions

Install, replace, or upgrade transitions as discussed in 1610.06(5), Transitions and Connections.

Impact attenuator criteria can be found in Chapter 1620, Impact Attenuator Systems. Concrete barrier terminal criteria can be found in 1610.08(3).

When installing new terminals, consider extending the guardrail to meet the length-of-need criteria found in 1610.05(4) as a spot safety enhancement, which is a modification to isolated roadway or roadside features that, in the engineer's judgment, reduce potential for collision frequency or severity.

When the end of a barrier has been terminated with a small mound of earth, remove and replace with a crash-tested terminal, except as noted in 1610.09.

Redirectional landforms, also referred to as earth berms, were formerly installed to help mitigate collisions with fixed objects located in depressed medians and at roadsides. They were constructed of materials that provided support for a traversing vehicle. With slopes in the range of 2H:1V to 3H:1V, they were intended to redirect errant vehicles. The use of redirectional landforms has been discontinued. Where redirectional land forms currently exist as mitigation for a fixed object, provide alternative means of mitigation of the fixed object, such as remove, relocate, upgrade with crash-tested systems, or shield with barrier. Landforms may be used to provide a smooth surface at the base of a rock cut slope.

Replace guardrail terminals that do not have a crash-tested design with crash-tested guardrail terminals (see 1610.06(5), Terminals and Anchors). Common features of systems that *do not* meet current crash-tested designs include:

- No cable anchor.
- A cable anchored into concrete in front of the first post.
- Second post not breakaway (CRT).
- Design A end section (Design C end sections may be left in place—see the *Standard Plans* for end section details).
- Terminals with beam guardrail on both sides of the posts (two-sided).
- Buried guardrail terminals that slope down such that the guardrail height is reduced to less than 26 inches.

When the height of a standard terminal will be reduced to less than 26 inches from the ground to the top of the rail element, adjust the height to a minimum of 26 inches and a maximum of 28 inches. A rail height of 28 inches is desirable to accommodate future overlays. Terminals are equipped with CRT posts with drilled holes that need to remain at the surface of the ground.

One terminal that was used extensively on Washington's highways was the Breakaway Cable Terminal (BCT). This system used a parabolic flare similar to the Slotted Rail Terminal (SRT) and a Type 1 anchor. (Type 1 anchor posts are wood set in a steel tube or a concrete foundation.)

Replace BCTs on Interstate routes. On non-Interstate routes, BCTs that have at least a 3-foot offset may remain in place unless the guardrail run or anchor is being reconstructed or reset. (Raising the rail element is not considered reconstruction or resetting.)

Existing transitions that do not have a curb but are otherwise consistent with the designs shown in the *Standard Plans* may remain in place.

For Preservation projects, terminal and transition work may be programmed under a separate project, as described in Chapter 1120.

(2) Standard Run of Barrier

In Chapter 1100, the Design Matrices offer guidance on how to address standard barrier runs for different project types. A "Standard Run" of barrier consists of longitudinal barrier as detailed in the *Standard Plans*.

(a) **Basic Design Level (B)**

When the basic design level (B) is indicated in the Standard Run column of a Design Matrix, and the height of W-beam guardrail is or would be reduced to less than 26 inches from the ground to the top of the rail element, adjust the height to a minimum of 26 inches and a maximum of 28 inches. A rail height of 28 inches is desirable to accommodate future overlays.

If Type 1 Alternate W-beam guardrail is present, raise the rail element after each overlay. If Type 1 Alternate is not present, raise the existing blockout up to 4 inches higher than the top of the existing post by boring a new hole in the post.

Overlays in front of safety shape concrete barriers can extend to the top of the lower, near-vertical face of the barrier before adjustment is necessary.

- Allow no more than 1 foot 1 inch from the pavement to the beginning of the top near-vertical face of the safety shape barriers.
- Allow no less than 2 feet 8 inches from the pavement to the top of the single-slope barrier.
- Allow no less than 2 feet 6 inches to the center of the top cable for three-cable systems and 35 inches to the center of the top cable for four-cable high-tension cable barriers.

Note: There are new high-tension cable barrier systems under development, which may change the selection and placement criteria. The Headquarters (HQ) Design Office will circulate guidance on these new developments as they are adopted as WSDOT policy.

(b) **Full Design Level (F)**

When the full design level (F) is indicated, in addition to the criteria for the basic design level, the barrier is to meet the criteria in the following:

Chapter	Subject
1600.06	Median considerations
1610.05(1)	Shy distance
1610.05(2)	Barrier deflections
1610.05(3)	Flare rate
1610.05(4)	Length of need
1610.05(5)	Median barrier selection and placement considerations
1610.06	Beam guardrail
1610.07	Cable barrier
1610.08	Concrete barrier

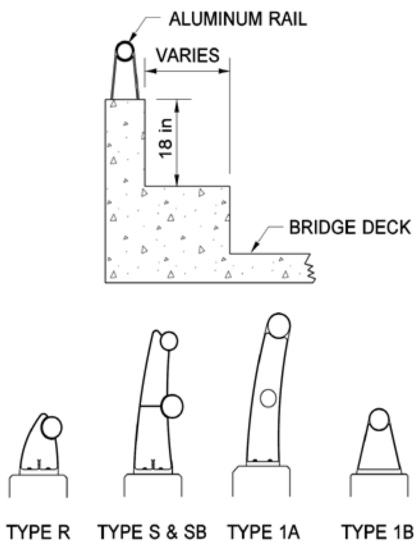
Examples of barriers that *are not* acceptable as a "Standard Run" are:

- W-beam guardrail with 12-foot-6-inch post spacing or no blockouts, or both.
- W-beam guardrail on concrete posts.
- Cable barrier on wood or concrete posts.
- Half-moon or C-shaped rail elements.

(3) Bridge Rail

When the Bridge Rail column of a Design Matrix applies to the project, the bridge rails, including crossroad bridge rail, are to meet the following criteria:

- Use an approved, crash-tested concrete bridge rail on new bridges or bridges to be widened. The *Bridge Design Manual* provides examples of typical bridge rails. Consult the HQ Bridge and Structures Office regarding bridge rail selection and design and for design of the connection to an existing bridge.
- An existing bridge rail on a highway with a posted speed of 30 mph or below may remain in place if it is not located on a bridge over a National Highway System (NHS) highway. When Type 7 bridge rail is present on a bridge over an NHS highway with a posted speed of 30 mph or below, it may remain in place regardless of the type of metal rail installed. Other bridge rails are to be evaluated for strength and geometrics. (See 1610.10 for guidance on retrofit techniques.)
- The Type 7 bridge rail is common. Type 7 bridge rails have a curb, a vertical-face parapet, and an aluminum top rail. The curb width and the type of aluminum top rail are factors in determining the adequacy of the Type 7 bridge rail, as shown in Exhibit 1610-1. Consult the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for assistance in evaluating other bridge rails.



Aluminum Rail Type	Curb Width: 9 Inches or Less	Curb Width: Greater Than 9 Inches*
Type R, S, or SB	Bridge rail adequate	Bridge rail adequate
Type 1B or 1A	Bridge rail adequate	Upgrade bridge rail
Other	Consult the HQ Bridge and Structures Office	

*When the curb width is greater than 9 inches, the aluminum rail must be able to withstand a 5 kip load.

Type 7 Bridge Rail Upgrade Criteria
Exhibit 1610-1

1610.05 Barrier Design

When selecting a barrier, consider the flexibility, cost, and maintainability of the system. It is generally desirable to use the most flexible system possible to minimize damage to the impacting vehicle and injury to the vehicle's occupant(s). However, since nonrigid systems sustain more damage during an impact, the exposure of maintenance crews to traffic might be increased with the more frequent need for repairs.

Maintenance costs for concrete barrier are lower than for other barrier types. In addition, deterioration due to weather and vehicle impacts is less than most other barrier systems. Unanchored precast concrete barrier can usually be realigned or repaired when moved from its alignment. However, heavy equipment may be necessary to reposition or replace barrier segments. Therefore, in medians, consider the shoulder width and the traffic volume when determining the acceptability of unanchored precast concrete barrier versus rigid concrete barrier.

Drainage, alignment, and drifting snow or sand are considerations that can influence the selection of barrier type. Beam guardrail and concrete barrier can contribute to snow drifts. Consider long-term maintenance costs associated with snow removal at locations prone to snow drifting. Slope flattening is recommended when the safety benefit justifies the additional cost to eliminate the need for the barrier. Cable barrier is not an obstruction to drifting snow and can be used if slope flattening is not feasible.

With some systems, such as concrete and beam guardrail, additional shoulder widening or slope flattening is common. However, selection of these types of barriers is sometimes limited due to the substantial environmental permitting and highway reconstruction needs. Permits issued under the SEPA and NEPA processes may lead to the use of a barrier design such as cable barrier, which has fewer potential environmental impacts and costs.

When designing a barrier for use on a Scenic Byway, consider barriers that are consistent with the recommendations in the associated corridor management plan (if one is available). Contact the region Landscape Architect or the Scenic Byways Coordinator in the HQ Highways and Local Programs Office to determine whether the project is on such a designated route. Low-cost options, such as using weathering steel beam guardrail (see 1610.06) or cable barrier (see 1610.07), might be feasible on many projects. Higher-cost options, such as steel-backed timber rail and stone guardwalls (see 1610.09), might necessitate a partnering effort to fund the additional costs. Grants might be available for this purpose if the need is identified early in the project definition phase (see Chapter 120).

(1) Shy Distance

Provide 2 feet of additional widening for shy distance when a barrier is to be installed in areas where the roadway is to be widened and the shoulder width will be less than 8 feet. This shy distance is not needed when the section of roadway is not being widened or the shoulders are at least 8 feet wide. (See criteria in Chapter 1140 for exceptions.)

(2) Barrier Deflections

Expect all barriers except rigid barriers (such as concrete bridge rails) to deflect when hit by an errant vehicle. The amount of deflection is primarily dependent on the stiffness of the system. However, vehicle speed, angle of impact, and weight also affect the amount of barrier deflection. For flexible and semirigid roadside barriers, the deflection distance is designed to help prevent the impacting vehicle from striking the object being shielded. For unrestrained rigid systems (unanchored precast concrete barrier), the deflection distance is designed to help prevent the barrier from being knocked over the side of a drop-off or steep fill slope (2H:1V or steeper).

In median installations, design systems such that the anticipated deflection will not enter the lane of opposing traffic using deflection values that were determined from crash tests. When evaluating new barrier installations, consider the impacts where significant traffic closures are necessary to accomplish maintenance. Use a rigid system where deflection cannot be tolerated, such as in narrow medians or at the edge of bridge decks or other vertical drop-off areas. Runs of rigid concrete barrier can be cast in place or extruded with appropriate footings.

In some locations where deflection distance is limited, anchor precast concrete barrier. Unless the anchoring system has been designed to function as a rigid barrier, some movement can be expected and repairs may be more expensive. Use of a nonrigid barrier on top of a retaining wall requires approval from the HQ Design Office.

Refer to Exhibit 1610-2 for barrier deflection design values when selecting a longitudinal barrier. The deflection distances for cable and beam guardrail are the minimum measurements from the face of the barrier to the fixed feature. The deflection distance for unanchored concrete barrier is the minimum measurement from the back edge of the barrier to the drop-off or slope break.

Barrier Type	System Type	Deflection
Cable barrier or beam guardrail, Types 20 and 21, on G-2 posts	Flexible	Up to 12 ft (face of barrier to object)
Beam guardrail, Types 1, 1a, 2, 10, and 31	Semirigid	3 ft (face of barrier to object)
Two-sided W-beam guardrail, Types 3 and 4	Semirigid	2 ft (face of barrier to object)
Permanent concrete barrier, unanchored	Unrestrained Rigid	3 ft[1] (back of barrier to object)
Temporary concrete barrier, unanchored	Unrestrained Rigid	2 ft[2] (back of barrier to object)
Precast concrete barrier, anchored	Rigid	6 inches (back of barrier to object)
Rigid concrete barrier	Rigid	No deflection

Notes:

[1] When placed in front of a 2H:1V or flatter fill slope, the deflection distance can be reduced to 2 feet.

[2] When used as temporary bridge rail, anchor all barrier within 3 feet of a drop-off.

Longitudinal Barrier Deflection
Exhibit 1610-2

(3) Flare Rate

Flare the ends of longitudinal barriers where possible. The four functions of a flare are to:

- Locate the barrier and its terminal as far from the traveled way as feasible.
- Reduce the length of need.

- Redirect an errant vehicle.
- Minimize a driver's reaction to the introduction of an object near the traveled way.

Keeping flare rates as flat as practicable preserves the barrier's redirectional performance and minimizes the angle of impact. However, it has been shown that an object (or barrier) close to the traveled way might cause a driver to shift laterally, slow down, or both. The flare reduces this reaction by gradually introducing the barrier so the driver does not perceive the barrier as an object to be avoided. The flare rates in Exhibit 1610-3 are intended to satisfy the four functions listed above. More gradual flares may be used. Flare rates are offset parallel to the edge of the traveled way. Transition sections are not normally flared.

Posted Speed (mph)	Rigid System	Unrestrained Rigid System	Semirigid System
65–70	20:1	18:1	15:1
60	18:1	16:1	14:1
55	16:1	14:1	12:1
50	14:1	12:1	11:1
45	12:1	11:1	10:1
40 or below	11:1	10:1	9:1

Longitudinal Barrier Flare Rates
Exhibit 1610-3

(4) Length of Need

The length of traffic barrier needed to shield a fixed feature (length of need) is dependent on the location and geometrics of the object, direction(s) of traffic, posted speed, traffic volume, and type and location of traffic barrier. When designing a barrier for a fill slope (see Chapter 1600), the length of need begins at the point where the need for barrier is recommended. For fixed objects and water, Exhibits 1610-10a and 10b show design parameters for determining the needed length of a barrier for both adjacent and opposing traffic on relatively straight sections of highway.

When barrier is to be installed on the outside of a horizontal curve, the length of need can be determined graphically, as shown in Exhibit 1610-10c. For installations on the inside of a curve, determine the length of need as though it were straight. Also, consider the flare rate, barrier deflection, and barrier end treatment to be used.

When beam guardrail is placed in a median, consider the potential for impact from opposing traffic when conducting a length of need analysis. When guardrail is placed on either side of objects in the median, consider whether the trailing end of each run of guardrail will shield the leading end of the opposing guardrail. Shield the leading end when it is within the Design Clear Zone of opposing traffic (see Exhibit 1610-10d).

Before the actual length of need is determined, establish the lateral distance between the proposed barrier installation and the object shielded. Provide a distance that is greater than or equal to the anticipated deflection of the longitudinal barrier. (See Exhibit 1610-2 for barrier deflections.) Place the barrier as far from the edge of the traveled way as possible while maintaining the deflection distance.

If the end of the length of need is near an adequate cut slope, extend the barrier and embed it in the slope (see 1610.06(5)). Avoid gaps of 300 feet or less. Short gaps are acceptable when the barrier is terminated in a cut slope. If the end of the length of need is near the end of an existing barrier, it is recommended that the barriers be connected to form a continuous barrier. Consider maintenance access issues when determining whether or not to connect barriers.

(5) Median Barrier Selection and Placement Considerations

The most desirable barrier installation uses the most flexible system appropriate for the location and one that is placed as far from the traveled way as practicable. Engineers are faced with the fact that barrier systems and vehicle fleets continue to evolve. What may be an optimal choice of barrier based on the majority of vehicles on the road today may not be the best selection for vehicles on the road in the foreseeable future. This continuum of change does not allow engineers to predict the future with any degree of certainty. Consequently, engineering decisions need to be made based on the most reliable and current information.

Engineers are constantly striving to develop more effective design features to improve highway safety. However, economics and feasibility do not permit new designs to be employed as soon as they are invented. The fact that a new design has been developed does not mean that the old design is unsafe. Although new designs may have been tested under controlled conditions, their performance under relevant applications may demonstrate unexpected performance aspects. Therefore there may be a need to modify application methods based on that practical experience.

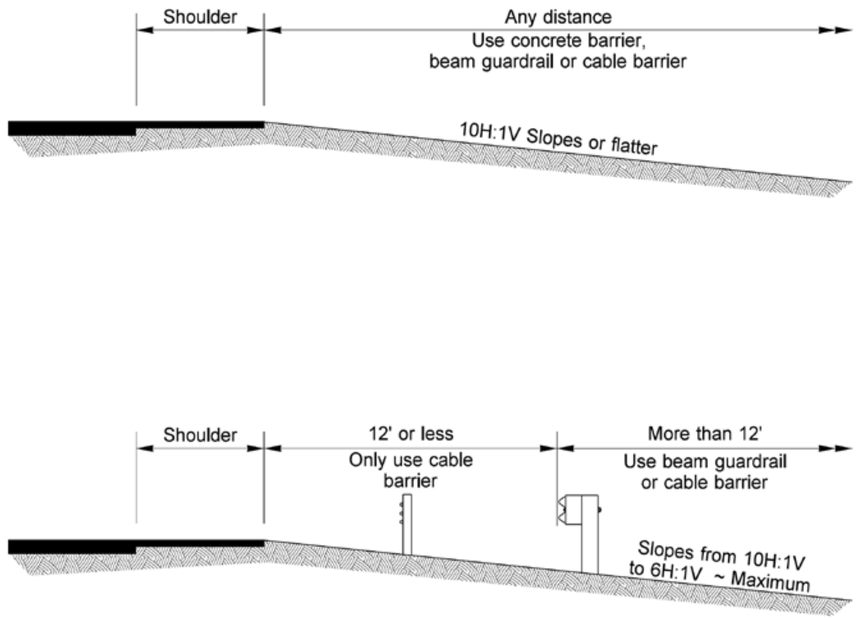
Good engineering judgment is called for in determining the appropriate placement of barrier systems. Solutions may need to be arrived at while considering competing factors such as accident frequency and severity. As discussed previously, performance of the system relies on the interaction of the vehicle, driver, and system design at any given location.

With median barriers, the deflection characteristics and placement of the barrier for a traveled way in one direction can have an impact on the traveled way in the opposing direction. In addition, the median slopes and environmental issues often influence the type of barrier that is appropriate.

In narrow medians, avoid placement of barrier where the design deflection extends into oncoming traffic. Narrow medians provide little space for maintenance crews to repair or reposition the barrier. Therefore, avoid installing deflecting barriers in medians that provide less than 8 feet from the edge of the traveled way to the face of the barrier.

In wider medians, the selection of barrier might depend on the slopes in the median. At locations where the median slopes are relatively flat (10H:1V or flatter), unrestrained precast concrete barrier, beam guardrail, and cable barrier can be used depending on the available deflection distance. At these locations, position the barrier as close to the center as possible so that the recovery distance can be maximized for both directions. There may be a need to offset the barrier from the flow line to avoid impacts to the drainage flow.

<u>In general, cable</u> barrier is recommended with medians that are 30 feet or wider. <u>However, cable barrier may be appropriate for narrower medians if adequate deflection distance exists.</u> In wide medians where the slopes are steeper than 10H:1V but not steeper than 6H:1V, cable barrier placed near the center of the median is preferable. Place beam guardrail at least 12 feet from the slope breakpoint, as shown in Exhibit 1610-4. Do not use concrete barrier at locations where the foreslope into the face of the barrier is steeper than 10H:1V.



Traffic Barrier Locations on Slopes
Exhibit 1610-4

At locations where the roadways are on independent alignments and there is a difference in elevation between the roadways, the slope from the upper roadway might be steeper than 6H:1V. In these locations, position the median barrier along the upper roadway and provide deflection and offset distance as discussed previously. Barrier is generally not needed along the lower roadway except where there are fixed features in the median.

When W-beam barrier is placed in a median as a countermeasure for cross-median collisions, design the barrier to be struck from either direction of travel. For example, the installation of beam guardrail might be double-sided (Types 3, 4, or 31-DS).

1610.06 Beam Guardrail

(1) Beam Guardrail Systems

Beam guardrail systems are shown in the *Standard Plans*.

Strong post W-beam guardrail (Types 1 through 4, and 31) and thrie beam guardrail (Types 10 and 11) are semirigid barriers used predominantly on roadsides. They have limited application as median barrier. Installed incorrectly, strong post W-beam guardrail can cause vehicle snagging or spearing. This can be avoided by lapping the rail splices in the direction of traffic (as shown in the *Standard Plans*), by using crash-tested end treatments, and by blocking the rail away from the strong posts. However, avoid the use of blockouts that extend from the post to the rail element for a distance exceeding 16 inches. Placement of curb at guardrail installation also requires careful consideration.

W-beam guardrail has typically been installed with a rail height of 27 inches. However, there are some newer designs that use a 31-inch rail height. One is the 31-inch-high WSDOT Type 31. The Type 31 system uses many of the same components as the WSDOT Type 1 system. However, the main differences are that the blockouts extend 12 inches from the posts, the rail height is 31 inches from the ground, and the rail elements are spliced between posts.

The 31-inch-high system offers tolerance for future HMA overlays. The Type 31 system allows a 4-inch tolerance from 31 inches to 27 inches without adjustment of the rail element.

(2) W-Beam Barrier Selection and Placement

During the project development processes, consult with maintenance staff to help identify guardrail runs that may need to be upgraded.

- Use the 31-inch-high guardrail design for new runs. When guardrail is installed along existing shoulders with a width greater than 4 ft, the shoulder width may be reduced by 4 inches to accommodate the 12-inch blockout without processing a deviation.
- Existing runs with rail height at 27 inches are acceptable to leave in place and can be extended if the design height of 27 inches is maintained in the extended section. Where future overlays are anticipated, extend with Type 1 alternate or the 31-inch design.
- For existing runs below 26 inches, adjust or replace the rail to a height of 26 inches minimum to 28 inches maximum, or replace the run with the 31-inch-high guardrail design.
- Some 31-inch-high proprietary guardrail designs that do not incorporate the use of blockouts have been successfully crash-tested. The use of this type of system may be appropriate for some applications. Contact the HQ Design Office for further details.

Some designs for Type 31 applications are under development and will be added to the HQ Design Standards (Plan Sheet Library) as soon as they are completed (www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Standards/PlanSheet). Plans will be housed at this location until they are transitioned into the *Standard Plans*. Note: If a design is not available for the Type 31 guardrail system, a Type 1 guardrail design may be used without processing a deviation.

(3) Beam Guardrail Post Selection Criteria

- Use steel posts for new beam guardrail runs. (Note: For projects with Design Approval prior to December 2009, wood posts may remain as an option for new installations.)
- Existing runs of guardrail with wooden posts are acceptable to leave in place if in good condition and minimum height criteria can be maintained. (See 1610.06(2) for additional guidance.)
- Posts in an existing wooden guardrail run may be replaced in kind.
- It is acceptable to extend existing guardrail runs with like materials.
- When removing and resetting guardrail runs, consider using steel posts and reusing or replacing other components and hardware depending on condition.

(4) Additional Guidance

Weak post W-beam guardrail (Type 20) and thrie beam guardrail (Type 21) are flexible barrier systems that can be used where there is adequate deflection distance. These systems use weak steel posts. The primary purpose of these posts is to position the guardrail vertically, and they are designed to bend over when struck. These more flexible systems will likely result in less damage to the impacting vehicle. Since the weak posts will not result in snagging, blockouts are not necessary.

Keep the slope of the area between the edge of the shoulder and the face of the guardrail 10H:1V or flatter. On fill slopes between 6H:1V and 10H:1V, avoid placing within 12 feet of the break point. Do not place beam guardrail on a fill slope steeper than 6H:1V. (See Exhibit 1610-4 for additional guidance on beam guardrail slope placement.)

On the high side of superelevated sections, place beam guardrail at the edge of shoulder prior to the slope break.

For W-beam guardrail installed at or near the shoulder, 2 feet of shoulder widening behind the barrier is generally provided from the back of the post to the beginning of a fill slope (see Exhibit 1610-11, Case 2). If the slope is 2H:1V or flatter, this distance can be measured from the face of the guardrail rather than the back of the post (see Exhibit 1610-11, Case 1).

On projects where no roadway widening is proposed and the minimum 2-foot shoulder widening behind the barrier is not practicable, long post installations are available as shown in Exhibit 1610-11, Cases 3, 4, 5, and 6. When guardrail is to be installed in areas where the roadway is to be widened or along new alignments, the use of Cases 4, 5, and 6 requires a design deviation.

Rail washers on beam guardrail are not normally used. If rail washers are present, removal is not necessary except for posts 2 through 8 of an existing BCT installation. However, if the rail element is removed for any reason, do not reinstall rail washers. In areas where heavy snow accumulations are expected to cause the bolts to pull out, specify snowload post washers and rail washers in the contract documents. (Snowload post washers are used to help prevent the bolts from pulling through the posts, and snowload rail washers are used to help prevent the bolt head from pulling through the rail.) In other installations, it is normal to have the rail pull loose from the bolt head when impacted. Do not use rail washers within the limits of a guardrail terminal except at the end post where they are needed for anchorage of the rail.

The use of curb in conjunction with beam guardrail is discouraged. If a curb is needed, the 3-inch-high curb is preferred. If necessary, the 4-inch-high extruded curb can be used behind the face of rail at any posted speed. The 6-inch-high extruded curb can be used at locations where the posted speed is 50 mph or below. When replacing extruded curb at locations where the posted speed is above 50 mph, use 3-inch-high or 4-inch-high curb. (See the *Standard Plans* for extruded curb designs.)

When curb is used in conjunction with 31-inch-high Type 31 W-beam guardrail, it is acceptable to place a 6-inch-high curb at a 7-inch offset outside the face of the rail.

Beam guardrail is usually galvanized and has a silver color. It can also be provided in weathering steel that has a brown or rust color. Along Scenic Byways, Heritage Tour Routes, state highways through national forests, or other designated areas, consider using weathering steel guardrail, weathering steel terminals, and colored steel posts (galvanized weathering steel, etched galvanized steel, or powder-coated galvanized steel) to minimize the barrier's visual impact (see 1610.05).

Note: In areas where weathering steel will be used and the steel post options cannot be used, the wood post option may be used with justification (Design Decision Memo).

(5) Terminals and Anchors

A guardrail anchor is needed at the end of a run of guardrail to develop tensile strength throughout its length. In addition, when the end of the guardrail is subject to head-on impacts, a crash-tested guardrail terminal is needed (see the *Standard Plans*).

(a) Buried Terminal (BT)

A buried terminal is designed to terminate the guardrail by burying the end in a backslope. The BT is the preferred terminal because it eliminates the exposed end of the guardrail.

The BT uses a Type 2 anchor to develop the tensile strength in the guardrail. The backslope needed to install a BT is to be 3H:1V or steeper and at least 4 feet in height above the roadway. The entire BT can be used within the length of need for backslopes of 1H:1V or steeper if the barrier remains at full height in relation to the roadway shoulder to the point where the barrier enters the backslope. For backslopes between 1H:1V and 3H:1V, design the length of need beginning at the point where the W-beam remains at full height in relation to the roadway shoulder—usually beginning at the point where the barrier crosses the ditch line. If the backslope is flatter than 1H:1V, provide a minimum 20-foot-wide by 75-foot-long distance between the beginning length of need point at the terminal end to the mitigated object to be protected.

For new BT installations, use the Buried Terminal Type 2. Note: Previously, another BT option (the Buried Terminal Type 1) was an available choice. For existing situations, it is acceptable to leave this option in service.

1. Buried Terminal Type 2

Flare the guardrail to the foreslope/backslope intersection using a flare rate that meets the criteria in 1610.05(3). Provide a 4H:1V or flatter foreslope into the face of the guardrail and maintain the full guardrail height to the foreslope/backslope intersection in relation to a 10H:1V line extending from edge of shoulder breakpoint. (See the *Standard Plans* for details.)

(b) Nonflared Terminal

If a BT terminal cannot be installed as described above, consider a nonflared terminal (see Exhibit 1610-12a). There are currently two acceptable sole source proprietary designs: the ET–PLUS 31 and the SKT-MGS. These systems use W-beam guardrail with a special end piece that fits over the end of the guardrail. Steel posts are used throughout the length of the terminal. When hit head on, the end piece is forced over the rail and either flattens or bends the rail and then forces it away from the impacting vehicle.

Both the SKT-MGS and the ET-PLUS 31 terminals include an anchor for developing the tensile strength of the guardrail. The length of need begins at the third post for both terminals.

While these terminals do not need to have an offset at the end, a flare is recommended so that the end piece does not protrude into the shoulder. These terminals may have a 2-foot offset to the first post. Four feet of widening is needed at the end posts to properly anchor the system. For each foot of embankment height, 3 cubic yards of embankment are needed. (See the *Standard Plans* for widening details.)

When the entire barrier run is located farther than 12 feet beyond the shoulder break point and the slopes are greater than 10H:1V and 6H:1V or flatter, additional embankment at the terminal is not needed.

No snowload rail washers are allowed within the limits of these terminals.

When a Beam Guardrail Type 1 nonflared terminal is needed, two sole source proprietary terminals, the ET-PLUS or the Sequential Kinking Terminal (SKT), may be used (see Exhibit 1610-12b). Both of these Type 1 barrier terminals are available in two designs based on the posted speed of the highway. The primary difference in these designs is the length of the terminal. For highways with a posted speed of 45 mph or above, use the 50-foot-long ET PLUS TL3 or the SKT 350 terminal. For lower-speed highways (a posted speed of 40 mph or below), use the 25-foot-long ET PLUS TL2 or SKT-TL2.

The FHWA has granted approval to use the above sole source proprietary terminals without justification.

(c) **Flared Terminal**

WSDOT does not use a flared terminal system for the Type 31 system. However, if a flared terminal is needed for other applications, there are currently two acceptable sole source proprietary designs: the Slotted Rail Terminal (SRT) and the FLared Energy Absorbing Terminal (FLEAT). Both of these designs include an anchor for developing the tensile strength of the guardrail. The length of need begins at the third post for both flared terminals.

1. The SRT uses W-beam guardrail with slots cut into the corrugations and posts throughout the length of the terminal. The end of the SRT is offset from the tangent guardrail run by the use of a parabolic flare. When struck head on, the first two posts are designed to break away, and the parabolic flare gives the rail a natural tendency to buckle, minimizing the possibility of the guardrail end entering the vehicle. The buckling is facilitated by the slots in the rail. The remaining posts provide strength to the system for redirection and deceleration without snagging the vehicle. The SRT has a 4-foot offset of the first post.

   The SRT terminal can be supplied with wood or steel posts. Match the type of SRT posts with those of the longitudinal barrier run to which the terminal will be connected.

2. The FLEAT uses W-beam guardrail with a special end piece that fits over the end of the guardrail and posts. The end of the FLEAT is offset from the tangent guardrail run by the use of a straight flare. When struck head on, the end piece is forced over the rail, bending the rail and forcing it away from the impacting vehicle.

The FLEAT is available in two designs based on the posted speed of the highway. For highways with a posted speed of 45 mph or above, use a FLEAT 350, which has a 4-foot offset at the first post. For lower-speed highways (a posted speed of 40 mph or below), use a FLEAT TL-2, which has a 1-foot-8-inch offset at the first post.

The FLEAT terminal can be supplied with wood or steel posts. Match the type of FLEAT posts with those of the longitudinal barrier run to which the terminal will be connected.

When a flared terminal is specified, it is critical that embankment quantity also be specified so that the area around the terminal can be constructed as shown in the *Standard Plans*. For each foot of height of the embankment, 13 cubic yards of embankment are needed.

When the entire barrier run is located greater than 12 feet beyond the shoulder break point and the slopes are greater than 10H:1V and 6H:1V or flatter, additional embankment at the terminal is not needed.

Snowload rail washers are not allowed within the limits of these terminals.

The FHWA has granted approval to use these sole source proprietary terminals without justification.

(d) **Terminal Evolution Considerations**

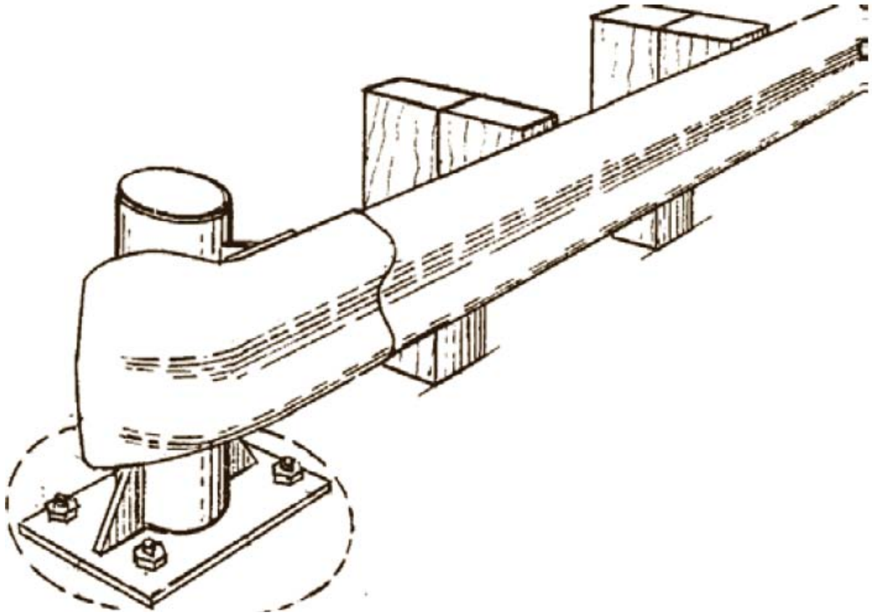
Some currently approved terminals have been in service for a number of years. During this time, there have been minor design changes. However, these minor changes have not changed the devices' approval status. Previous designs for these terminals may remain in place. (For guidance on BCT terminals, see 1610.04(1).) If questions arise concerning the current approval status of a device, contact the HQ Design Office for clarification when replacement is being considered.

(e) **Other Anchor Applications**

Use the Type 10 anchor to develop the tensile strength of the guardrail on the end of Type 31 guardrail runs where a crash-tested terminal is not needed. The Type 1 or Type 4 anchor is currently used for Beam Guardrail Type 1 where a crash-tested terminal is not needed. Use the Type 5 anchor with the Weak Post Intersection Design (see 1610.06(7)(b), Cases 12 and 13). Use the Type 7 anchor to develop tensile strength in the middle of a guardrail run when the guardrail curves and weak posts are used (see 1610.06(7)(b), Cases 9, 12, and 13).

The old Type 3 anchor was primarily used at bridge ends (see Exhibit 1610-5). This anchor consisted of a steel pipe mounted vertically in a concrete foundation. Bridge approach guardrail was then mounted on the steel pipe.

- On one-way highways, these anchors were usually positioned so that neither the anchor nor the bridge rail posed a snagging potential. When these cases are encountered, the anchor may remain in place if a stiffened transition section is provided at the connection to the post.
- On two-way highways, the anchor may present a snagging potential. In these cases, install a connection from the anchor to the bridge rail if the offset from the bridge rail to the face of the guardrail is 1 foot 6 inches or less. If the offset is greater than 1 foot 6 inches, remove the anchor and install a new transition and connection.



Old Type 3 Anchor
Exhibit 1610-5

Locations where crossroads and driveways cause gaps in the guardrail create situations for special consideration. Elimination of the need for the barrier is the preferred solution. Otherwise, a barrier flare might be needed to provide sight distance. If the slope is 2H:1V or flatter and there are no fixed features on or at the bottom of the slope, a terminal can be used to end the rail. Place the anchor of this installation as close as possible to the road approach radius PC. If there is a feature at or near the bottom of the slope that cannot be mitigated, then the Weak Post Intersection Design (see 1610.06(7)(b) and the *Standard Plans*) can be used. This system can also be used at locations where a crossroad or road approach is near the end of a bridge and where installing a bridge approach guardrail placement, including guardrail transition and terminal, is not possible.

(6) Transitions and Connections

When there is an abrupt change from one barrier type to a more rigid barrier type, a vehicle hitting the more flexible barrier is likely to be caught in the deflected barrier pocket and directed into the more rigid barrier. This is commonly referred to as "pocketing." A transition stiffens the more flexible barrier by decreasing the post spacing, increasing the post size, and using stiffer beam elements to eliminate the possibility of pocketing.

When connecting beam guardrail to a more rigid barrier or a structure, or when a rigid object is within the deflection distance of the barrier, use the transitions and connections that are shown in Exhibits 1610-6 and 1610-9 and detailed in the *Standard Plans*. The transition pay item includes the connection.

Condition	Connection
Unrestrained concrete barrier	A
Rigid untapered safety shape bridge rails or barriers[1]	B
Bridge rails with curbs 9 inches or less in width	B
Bridge rails with curbs between 9 and 18 inches wide	C
Vertical walls or tapered safety shape barrier[1]	D

Note:
[1] New safety shape bridge rails are designed with the toe of the barrier tapered so that it does not project past the face of the approach guardrail.

Guardrail Connections
Exhibit 1610-6

(7) Guardrail Placement Cases

The *Standard Plans* contains placement cases that show beam guardrail elements needed for typical situations. For some applications, the *Standard Plans* provides options for both Type 1 and Type 31 guardrail for similar installations. For new applications, use the appropriate Type 31 placement option. Additional placement cases incorporate other combinations of barrier types.

(a) **Beam Guardrail Type 31 Placements**

- **Case 1-31** is used with Type 31 barrier where there is one-way traffic. It uses a crash-tested terminal on the approach end and a Type 10 anchor on the trailing end.
- **Case 2-31** is used with Type 31 barrier where there is two-way traffic. A crash-tested terminal is used on both ends.
- **Case 3-31** is used at railroad signal supports on one-way or two-way roadways. A terminal is used on the approach end, but usually cannot be used on the trailing end because of its proximity to the railroad tracks. If there is a history of crossover accidents, consider additional protection such as an impact attenuator.
- **Case 4-31** is used where guardrail on the approach to a bridge is to be shifted laterally to connect with the bridge rail. A terminal is used on the approach end and a transition is needed at the bridge end. A curve in the guardrail is shown to shift it to the bridge rail. However, the length of the curve is not critical. The criterion is to provide a smooth curve that is not more abrupt than the allowable flare rate (see Exhibit 1610-3).
- **Case 5-31** is a typical bridge approach where a terminal and a transition are needed.
- **Case 6** is used on bridge approaches where opposing traffic is separated by a median that is 36 feet or wider. This case is designed so that the end of the guardrail will be outside the Design Clear Zone for the opposing traffic.

- **Case 10 (A-31, B-31, and C-31)** is used at roadside fixed features (such as bridge piers) when 3 or more feet are available from the face of the guardrail to the feature. The approach end is the same for one-way or two-way traffic. Case 10A-31 is used with two-way traffic; therefore, a terminal is needed on the trailing end. Case 10B-31 is used for one-way traffic when there is no need to extend guardrail past the bridge pier and a Type 10 anchor is used to end the guardrail. Case 10C-31 is used for one-way traffic when the guardrail will extend for a distance past the bridge pier.
- **Case 11 (A-31, B-31, and C-31)** is used at roadside fixed features (such as bridge piers) when the guardrail is to be placed within 3 feet of the feature. Since there is no room for deflection, the rail in front of the feature is to be considered a rigid system and a transition is needed. The trailing end cases are the same as described for Case 10.
- **Beam Guardrail Type 31 (12'6", 18'9", or 25' Span)** is used when it is necessary to omit one, two, or three posts. This application is typically used when guardrail is installed over drainage structures but may have other applications if adequate deflection distance is present. Three CRT posts are provided on each end of the omitted post(s).
- **Guardrail Placement Strong Post – Type 31** is the “Strong Post Intersection Design for Type 31 barrier” that provides a stiff barrier. This design is to be used as a last resort at crossroads or road approaches where a barrier is needed and there isn’t a clear area behind the nose or minimum distances for a “Weak Post Intersection Design” (see Cases 12 and 13).

Note: Some placement cases for use with Beam Guardrail Type 31 are currently under development. As plans become available, they will be housed in the HQ Design Standards (Plan Sheet Library) until they become Standard Plans (www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Standards/PlanSheet).

(b) **Additional Placement Cases**

- **Case 1** is used where there is one-way traffic. It uses a crash-tested terminal on the approach end and a Type 4 anchor on the trailing end.
- **Case 2** is used where there is two-way traffic. A crash-tested terminal is used on both ends. When flared terminals are used on both ends, use a minimum of 25 feet of guardrail between the terminal limits when feasible.
- **Case 3** is used at railroad signal supports on one-way or two-way roadways. A terminal is used on the approach end, but usually cannot be used on the trailing end because of its proximity to the railroad tracks. If there is a history of crossover accidents, consider additional protection such as an impact attenuator.
- **Case 4** is used where guardrail on the approach to a bridge is to be shifted laterally to connect with the bridge rail. A terminal is used on the approach end and a transition is needed at the bridge end. A curve in the guardrail is shown to shift it to the bridge rail. However, the length of the curve is not critical. The criterion is to provide a smooth curve that is not more abrupt than the allowable flare rate (see Exhibit 1610-3).
- **Case 5** is a typical bridge approach where a terminal and a transition are needed.

- **Case 6** is used on bridge approaches where opposing traffic is separated by a median that is 36 feet or wider. This case is designed so that the end of the guardrail will be outside the Design Clear Zone for the opposing traffic.
- **Cases 7 and 8** are used with beam guardrail median barrier when median fixed features such as bridge piers are encountered. A transition is needed on the approach end for each direction, and the flare rate is not to be more abrupt than the allowable flare rate (see Exhibit 1610-3).
- **Case 9 (A, B, and C)** is used on bridge approaches where opposing traffic is separated by a median less than 36 feet wide. This design, called a "Bull Nose Terminal," treats both bridge ends and the opening between the bridges. The "nose" is designed to collapse when struck head on, and the ribbon strength of the rail brings the vehicle to a controlled stop. Type 7 anchors are installed on each side of the nose to develop the ribbon strength.
- Since an impacting vehicle might penetrate into the system, it is critical that no fixed feature be located within the first 65 feet of the system.
- **Case 10 (A, B, and C)** is used at roadside fixed features (such as bridge piers) when 3 or more feet are available from the face of the guardrail to the object. The approach end is the same for one-way or two-way traffic. Case 10A is used with two-way traffic; therefore, a terminal is needed on the trailing end. Case 10B is used for one-way traffic when there is no need to extend guardrail past the bridge pier and a Type 4 anchor is used to end the guardrail. Case 10C is used for one-way traffic when the guardrail will extend for a distance past the bridge pier.
- **Case 11 (A, B, and C)** is used at roadside fixed features (such as bridge piers) when the guardrail is to be placed within 3 feet of the object. Since there is no room for deflection, the rail in front of the feature is to be considered a rigid system and a transition is needed. The trailing end cases are the same as described for Case 10.
- **Cases 12 and 13** are called "Weak Post Intersection Designs." They are used where an intersection design needs a gap in the guardrail or there is not adequate space for a bridge approach installation that includes a transition, a terminal, or both. These placements are designed to collapse when hit at the nose, and the ribbon strength of the rail brings the vehicle to a stop. A Type 7 anchor is used to develop the ribbon strength. These designs include a Type 5 transition for connection with bridge rail and a Type 5 anchor at the other end of the rail. The Type 5 anchor is not a breakaway anchor and therefore can typically be used only on low-speed side roads and driveways.

Since an impacting vehicle might penetrate into the system, it is critical that no fixed feature be located within the clear area shown in the *Standard Plans*. The 25 feet of barrier length beyond the PC along the side road are critical for the operation of this system.

These designs were developed for intersections that are approximately perpendicular. Evaluate installation on skewed intersections on a case-by-case basis. Use the Case 22 placement if it is not feasible to install this design according to the *Standard Plans*.

- **Case 14** shows the approach rail layout for a Service Level 1 bridge rail system. Type 20 guardrail is used on the approach and no transition is needed between the Type 20 guardrail and the Service Level 1 bridge rail since they are both weak post systems. A Type 6 transition is used when connecting the Type 20 to a strong post guardrail or a terminal.
- **Case 15** is used to carry guardrail across a box culvert where there is insufficient depth to install standard posts for more than 17 feet 8 inches. This design uses steel posts anchored to the box culvert to support the rail. Newer designs—Cases 19, 20, and 21—have replaced this design for shorter spans.
- **Cases 16 and 17** are similar to Cases 1 and 2, except that they flare the rail and terminal as far from the road as possible and reduce the length of need.
- **Case 18** is used on the trailing end of bridge rail on a one-way roadway. No transition is needed.
- **Case 19 (A and B)** is used where it is not possible to install a post at the 6-foot-3-inch spacing. This design omits one post (resulting in a span of 11 feet 6 inches, which is consistent with a post spacing of 12 feet 6 inches) and uses nested W-beam to stiffen the rail. The cases differ by the location of the splice. No cutting of the rail or offsetting of the splices is needed or desirable.
- **Case 20** is similar to Cases 19A and 19B, except that it allows for two posts to be omitted, which results in a span consistent with post spacing of 18 feet 9 inches.
- **Case 21** has a similar intent as Cases 19A, 19B, and 20 in that it allows for the omission of posts to span an obstruction. This design uses CRT posts with additional post blocks for three posts before and after the omitted posts. The design allows for three posts to be omitted, which results in a span consistent with a post spacing of 25 feet.
- **Case 22** is the “Strong Post Intersection Design” that provides a stiff barrier. This design is to be used as a last resort at crossroads or road approaches where a barrier is needed and there isn’t a clear area behind the nose or minimum distances for a “Weak Post Intersection Design” (see Cases 12 and 13).

Note: Some placement cases for use with Beam Guardrail Type 31 are currently under development. As plans become available, they will be housed in the HQ Design Standards (Plan Sheet Library) until they become Standard Plans (www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Standards/PlanSheet).

1610.07 Cable Barrier

Cable barrier is a flexible barrier system that can be used on a roadside or as a median barrier. It is used primarily in medians and is preferred for many installations due in part to its high benefit-to-cost ratio. Some of the advantages of cable barrier are:

- It provides effective vehicle containment and redirection while imposing the lowest deceleration forces on the vehicle’s occupant(s).

- It reduces the severity of collisions, which is of significant importance on high-speed facilities.
- After it is struck, it has a tendency not to redirect vehicles back into traffic, which can help reduce the frequency of secondary collisions.
- It can often be placed on existing facilities without the delay of extended environmental permitting and the expense of complex highway reconstruction that might be needed for other barrier system choices.
- It has advantages in heavy snowfall areas because it has minimal potential to create snowdrifts.
- In crucial wildlife habitats, it can aid in some types of animal movements.
- It does not present a visual barrier, which may make it desirable on Scenic Byways (see 1610.05).
- The effort (time and materials) needed to maintain and repair cable barrier systems is much less than the effort needed for a W-beam system.

Deflection is a consideration in narrower median areas. In many urban and other limited-width situations, use of cable barrier may not be possible or may require special designs.

For new installations, use four-cable high-tension (H.T.) cable barrier systems, which are available from several manufacturers.

(1) High-Tension Cable Barrier Placement

- For shoulder applications of single-runs of cable median barrier, with at least 13 feet from edge of the nearest traveled lane to the slope breakpoint, place the cable median barrier at least 1 foot in front of the slope breakpoint. Any four-cable high-tension barrier system may be used in this location (see Exhibit 1610-13a).
- Typically, double-runs of cable median barrier are not needed. However, if this type of application is used on shoulders with at least 11 feet from edge of the nearest traveled lane to the slope breakpoint, place the cable median barrier at least 1 foot in front of the slope breakpoint. Any approved four-cable high-tension barrier system may be used in this location.
- For non-median shoulder applications, cable barrier can be installed up to 1 foot in front of slope breakpoints as steep as 2H:1V. Cable barrier is the barrier option that can be placed on a sideslope steeper than 10H:1V within the 12-foot area immediately beyond the slope breakpoint. Do not place this barrier on a sideslope steeper than 6H:1V. Exhibit 1610-13b shows the placement of cable barrier for shoulder applications.
- Narrow medians provide little space for maintenance crews to repair or reposition the barrier. Wherever site conditions permit, provide at least 14 feet of clearance from the adjacent lane edge to the cable barrier.
- When cable barrier is to be connected to a more rigid barrier, a transition section is needed. Contact the HQ Design Office for further details.

Note: There are approved high-tension cable barrier systems that can be placed on slopes as steep as 4H:1V. The use of these systems requires special placement considerations. Contact the HQ Design Office for guidance when selecting these systems.

(2) High-Tension Cable Barrier Deflection Distances

Depending on the system and post spacing, deflection distances for high-tension barrier systems may range from approximately 6 to 12 feet. Provide deflection distance guidance in the contract documents. (See Exhibits 1610-13a and 13b for placement details.)

Note: There are new high-tension cable barrier systems under development that may change selection and placement criteria. The HQ Design Office will circulate guidance on these new developments as they are adopted as WSDOT policy.

(3) High-Tension Cable Barrier Termination

Do not connect the cables directly to beam guardrail runs when terminating new runs of high-tension cable barrier. Instead, use a separate anchorage system. Note: Existing runs connected to beam guardrail may remain in place.

(4) High-Tension Cable Barrier Height Criteria

Select a high-tension four-cable barrier system with a height to the center of the top cable of not less than 35 inches and a height to the center of the bottom cable not greater than 19 inches.

Note: There are high-tension cable barrier systems under development that may change selection and placement criteria. The HQ Design Office will circulate guidance on these new developments as they are adopted as WSDOT policy.

1610.08 Concrete Barrier

Concrete barriers are rigid or unrestrained rigid systems. Commonly used in medians, they are also used as shoulder barriers. These systems are stiffer than beam guardrail or cable barrier, and impacts with these barriers tend to be more severe.

Light standards mounted on top of concrete median barrier must not have breakaway features. (See the concrete barrier light standard section in the *Standard Plans*.)

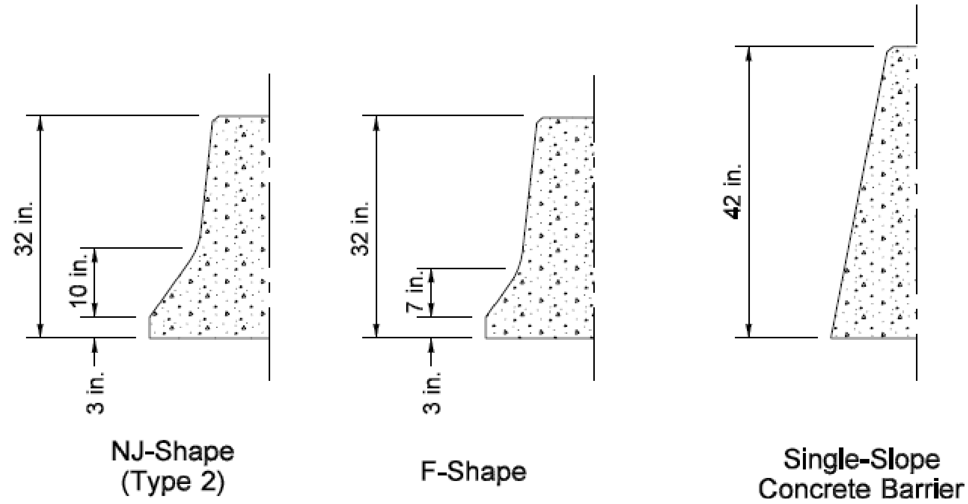
When concrete barrier is considered for use in areas where drainage and environmental issues (such as stormwater, wildlife, or endangered species) might be adversely impacted, contact the HQ Hydraulics Office and the appropriate environmental offices for guidance.

(1) Concrete Barrier Shapes

Concrete barriers use a single-slope or safety shape (New Jersey or F-Shape) to redirect vehicles while minimizing vehicle vaulting, rolling, and snagging. A comparison of these barrier shapes is shown in Exhibit 1610-7.

The single-slope barrier face is the recommended option for embedded rigid concrete barrier applications.

Note: There are new precast concrete barrier systems under development that may change future selection and placement criteria. The HQ Design Office will circulate guidance on these new developments as they are adopted as WSDOT policy.



Concrete Barrier Shapes
Exhibit 1610-7

When the single-slope or F-Shape face is used on structures, and precast barrier is selected for use on the approaches, a cast-in-place transition section is needed so that no vertical edges of the barrier are exposed to oncoming traffic. For details on bridge rail designs, see the *Bridge Design Manual*.

For aesthetic reasons, avoid changes in the shape of the barrier face within a project or corridor.

(a) **New Jersey Shape Barrier**

The New Jersey shape face is primarily used on precast concrete barrier.

Concrete barrier Type 2 (see the *Standard Plans*) is a precast barrier that has the New Jersey shape on two sides and can be used for both median and shoulder installations. This barrier is 2 feet 8 inches in height, which includes 3 inches for future pavement overlay.

The cost of precast Type 2 barrier is significantly less than the cost of the cast-in-place barriers. Therefore, consider the length of the barrier run and the deflection needs to determine whether transitioning to precast Type 2 barrier is desirable. If precast Type 2 barrier is used for the majority of a project, use the New Jersey face for small sections that need cast-in-place barrier, such as for a light standard section.

Concrete barrier Type 4 is also a precast, single-faced New Jersey shape barrier. These units are not freestanding and are to be placed against a rigid structure or anchored to the pavement. If Type 4 barriers are used back to back, consider filling any gap between them to prevent tipping.

Concrete barrier Type 5 is a precast barrier that has a single New Jersey face and is intended for use at bridge ends where the flat side is highly visible. Both Type 2 and Type 5 designs are freestanding, unanchored units connected with steel pins through wire rope loops. For permanent installation, this barrier is placed on a paved surface and a 2-foot-wide paved surface is provided beyond the barrier for its displacement during impact (see Chapter 1230).

Precast barrier can be anchored where a more rigid barrier is needed. (Anchoring methods are shown in the *Standard Plans*.) The Type 1 and Type 2 anchors are for temporary installations on a rigid pavement. Type 3 anchors can be used in temporary or permanent installations on an asphalt pavement. Consult the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for details when anchoring permanent precast concrete barrier to a rigid pavement.

Precast barrier used on the approach to bridge rail is to be connected to the bridge rail by installing wire rope loops embedded 1 foot 3 inches into the bridge rail with epoxy resin.

Place unrestrained (unanchored) precast concrete barrier on foundation slopes of 5% or flatter. In difficult situations, a maximum slope of 8% may be used. Keep the slope of the area between the edge of the shoulder and the face of the traffic barrier as flat as possible. The maximum slope is 10H:1V (10%).

(b) **Single-Slope Barrier**

The single-slope concrete barrier can be cast in place, slipformed, or precast. The most common construction technique for this barrier has been slipforming, but some precast single-slope barrier has been installed. The primary benefit of using precast barrier is that it can be used as temporary barrier during construction and then reset into a permanent location.

Single-slope barrier is considered a rigid system regardless of the construction method used. For new installations, the minimum height of the barrier above the roadway is 2 feet 10 inches, which allows 2 inches for future overlays. The minimum total height of the barrier section is 3 feet 6 inches, with a minimum of 3 inches embedded in the roadway wearing surface. This allows for use of the 3-foot-6-inch barrier between roadways with grade separations of up to 5 inches. A grade separation of up to 10 inches is allowed when using a 4-foot-6-inch barrier section, as shown in the *Standard Plans*. The barrier is to have a depth of embedment equal to or greater than the grade separation. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for grade separations greater than 10 inches.

(c) **Low-Profile Barrier**

Low-profile barrier designs are available for median applications where the posted speed is 45 mph or below. These barriers are normally used in urban areas. They are typically 18 to 20 inches high and offer sight distance benefits. For barrier designs, terminals, and further details, contact the HQ Design Office.

(2) High-Performance Concrete Barrier

High-Performance Concrete Barrier (HP Barrier) is a rigid 42-inch-high barrier designed to function more effectively during heavy-vehicle collisions. This taller barrier may also offer the added benefits of reducing headlight glare and reducing noise in surrounding environments. HP Barrier is generally considered single-slope barrier. (See the *Standard Plans* for barrier details.) For additional available shapes, contact the HQ Design Office.

For new/reconstruction, use HP Barrier in freeway medians of 22 feet or less. Also, use HP Barrier on Interstate or freeway routes where accident history suggests a need or where roadway geometrics increase the possibility of larger trucks hitting the barrier at a high angle (for example, on-ramps for freeway-to-freeway connections with sharp curvature in the alignment).

Consider the use of HP Barrier at other locations such as nonfreeway narrow medians, near highly sensitive environmental areas, near densely populated areas, over or near mass transit facilities, or on vertically divided highways.

(3) Concrete Barrier Terminals

Whenever possible, bury the end of the concrete barrier in the backslope. The backslope needed to bury the end is to be 3H:1V or steeper and at least 4 feet in height above the roadway. Flare the concrete barrier into the backslope using a flare rate that meets the criteria in 1610.05(3). Provide a 10H:1V or flatter foreslope into the face of the barrier and maintain the full barrier height to the foreslope/backslope intersection. This might create the need to fill ditches and install culverts in front of the barrier face.

The 7-foot-long precast concrete terminal end section for concrete barrier Type 2 and the 10- to 12-foot single-slope barrier terminal may be used:

- Outside the Design Clear Zone.
- On the trailing end of the barrier when it is outside the Design Clear Zone for opposing traffic.
- On the trailing end of one-way traffic.
- Where the posted speed is 25 mph or below.

Another available end treatment for Type 2 barriers is a precast or cast-in-place tapered terminal section with a minimum length of 48 feet and a maximum length of 80 feet. It is used infrequently for special applications and is designed to be used for posted speeds of 35 mph or below. For details, contact the HQ Design Office or refer to the Plan Sheet Library: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Standards/PlanSheet/

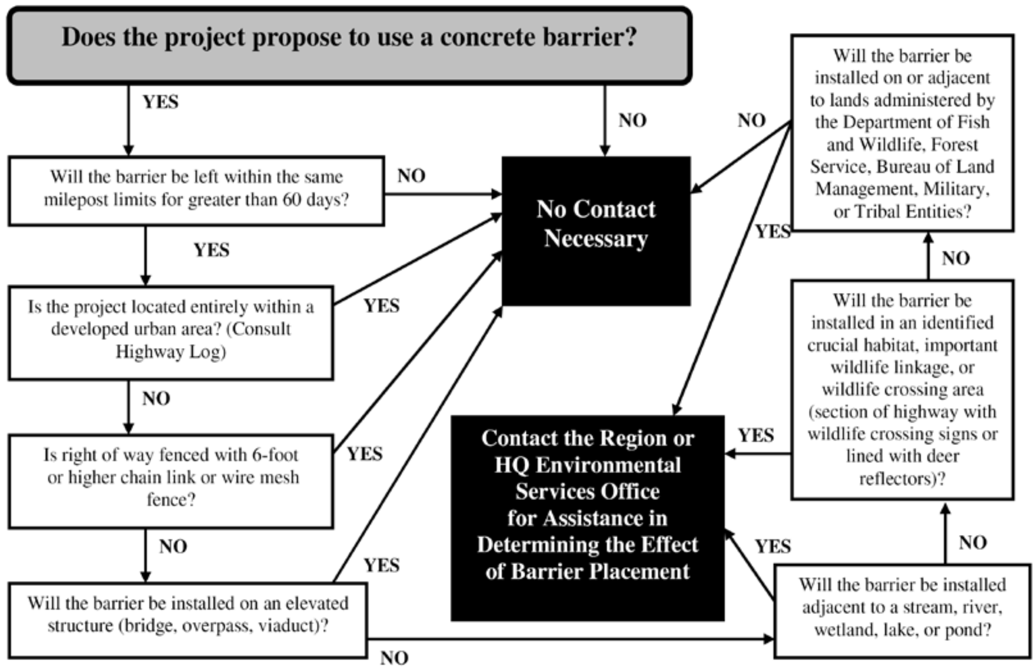
When the “Barrier Terminals and Transitions” column of a Design Matrix applies to a project, existing sloped-down concrete terminals that are within the Design Clear Zone are to be replaced when they do not meet the above criteria.

When the end of a concrete barrier cannot be buried in a backslope or terminated as described above, terminate the barrier using a guardrail terminal and transition or an impact attenuator (see Chapter 1620).

(4) Assessing Impacts to Wildlife

The placement of concrete barriers in locations where wildlife frequently cross the highway can influence traffic safety and wildlife mortality. When wildlife encounter physical barriers that are difficult to cross, they often travel parallel to those barriers. With traffic barriers, this means that they often remain on the highway for a longer period, increasing the risk of wildlife/vehicle collisions or vehicle/vehicle collisions as motorists attempt avoidance.

Traffic-related wildlife mortality may play a role in the decline of some species listed under the Endangered Species Act. To address public safety and wildlife concerns, see Exhibit 1610-8 to assess whether concrete barrier placement needs to have an evaluation by the HQ Environmental Services Office to determine its effect on wildlife. Conduct this evaluation early in the project development process to allow adequate time for discussion of options.



Concrete Barrier Placement Guidance: Assessing Impacts to Wildlife
Exhibit 1610-8

(5) Assessing Impacts to Stormwater and Wetlands

In locations where medians or roadsides are used for drainage, the retention of stormwater or the existence of wetlands can influence the choice and use of barrier systems. For example, the placement of concrete barrier and beam guardrail in many of these cases may create the need for additional impervious material, which can result in complete retrofit and reconstruction of the existing systems. When water is drained, stored, or treated, and where wetlands exist, the ability to provide alternative facilities that replace the functions of the existing ones may be nonexistent or prohibitively expensive to provide elsewhere.

To address public safety, stormwater, and wetland concerns, assess whether concrete barrier or beam guardrail placement will cause the need for an evaluation by the HQ Environmental Services Office. Conduct this evaluation early in the project development process to allow adequate time for discussion of options.

1610.09 Special-Use Barriers

The following barriers may be used on designated Scenic Byway and Heritage Tour routes if funding can be arranged (see 1610.05 and Chapter 120).

(1) Steel-Backed Timber Guardrail

Steel-backed timber guardrails consist of a timber rail with a steel plate attached to the back to increase its tensile strength. There are several variations of this system that have passed crash tests. The nonproprietary systems use a beam with a rectangular cross section that is supported by either wood or steel posts. A proprietary (patented) system called the Ironwood Guardrail is also available. This system uses a beam with a round cross section and is supported by steel posts with a wood covering to give the appearance of an all-wood system from the roadway. The Ironwood Guardrail can be allowed as an alternative to the nonproprietary system. However, specifying this system exclusively needs approval by an Assistant State Design Engineer of a public interest finding for the use of a sole source proprietary item.

The most desirable method of terminating the steel-backed timber guardrail is to bury the end in a backslope, as described in 1610.06(5). When this type of terminal is not possible, use of the barrier is limited to highways with a posted speed of 45 mph or below. On these lower-speed highways, the barriers can be flared away from the traveled way and terminated in a berm.

For details on these systems, contact the HQ Design Office.

(2) Stone Guardwalls

Stone guardwalls function like rigid concrete barriers but have the appearance of natural stone. These walls can be constructed of stone masonry over a reinforced concrete core wall or of simulated stone concrete. These types of barriers are designed to have a limited projection of the stones to help aid in the redirectional characteristics of the barrier. The most desirable method of terminating this barrier is to bury the end in a backslope, as described in 1610.08(3). When this type of terminal is not possible, use of the barrier is limited to highways with a posted speed of 45 mph or below. On these lower-speed highways, the barrier can be flared away from the traveled way and terminated in a berm outside the Design Clear Zone.

For details on these systems, contact the HQ Design Office.

1610.10 Bridge Traffic Barriers

Bridge traffic barriers redirect errant vehicles and help to keep them from going over the side of the structure. (See the *Bridge Design Manual* for information regarding bridge barrier on new bridges and replacement bridge barrier on existing bridges.)

For new bridge rail installations, use a 2-foot-10-inch-high single slope or a 2-foot-8-inch-high safety shape (F-Shape) bridge barrier. A transition is available to connect the New Jersey shape (Type 2 concrete barrier) and the F-Shape bridge barrier. (See the *Standard Plans* for further details.) Use taller 3-foot-6-inch safety shape or single-slope bridge barriers on Interstate or freeway routes where accident history suggests a need or where roadway geometrics increase the possibility of larger trucks hitting the barrier at a high angle (such as on-ramps for freeway-to-freeway connections with sharp curvature in the alignment).

For further guidance on bridges where high volumes of pedestrian traffic are anticipated, see Chapter 1520.

Approach barriers, transitions, and connections are usually needed on all four corners of bridges carrying two-way traffic and on both corners of the approach end for one-way traffic. (See 1610.06(6) for guidance on transitions.)

If the bridge barrier system does not meet the criteria for strength and geometrics, modifications to improve its redirectional characteristics and its strength may be needed. The modifications can be made using one of the retrofit methods described below.

(1) Concrete Safety Shape

Retrofitting with a new concrete bridge barrier is costly and needs to have justification when no widening is proposed. Consult the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for design details and to determine whether the existing bridge deck and other superstructure elements are of sufficient strength to accommodate this bridge barrier system.

(2) Thrie Beam Retrofit

Retrofitting with thrie beam is an economical way to improve the strength and redirectional performance of bridge barriers. The thrie beam can be mounted to steel posts or the existing bridge barrier, depending on the structural adequacy of the bridge deck, the existing bridge barrier type, the width of curb (if any), and the curb-to-curb roadway width carried across the structure.

The HQ Bridge and Structures Office is responsible for the design of thrie beam bridge barrier. Exhibit 1610-14 shows typical retrofit criteria. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for assistance with thrie beam retrofit design.

Consider the Service Level 1 (SL-1) system on bridges with wooden decks and for bridges with concrete decks that do not have the needed strength to accommodate the thrie beam system. Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for information needed for the design of the SL-1 system.

A sidewalk reduction of up to 6 inches as a result of a thrie beam retrofit can be documented as a design exception.

The funding source for retrofit of existing bridge rail is dependent on the length of the structure. Bridge rail retrofit, for bridges less than 250 feet in length, or a total bridge rail length of 500 feet, is funded by the project (Preservation or Improvement). For longer bridges, the retrofit can be funded by the I-2 subprogram. Contact the HQ Program Development Office to determine whether funding is available.

1610.11 Other Barriers

(1) Dragnet

The Dragnet Vehicle Arresting Barrier consists of chain link or fiber net that is attached to energy absorbing units. When a vehicle hits the system, the Dragnet brings the vehicle to a controlled stop with limited damage. Possible uses for this device include the following:

- Reversible lane entrances and exits
- Railroad crossings
- Truck escape ramps (instead of arrester beds—see Chapter 1270)
- T-intersections
- Work zones
- Swing span bridges

For permanent installations, this system can be installed between towers that lower the unit into position when needed and lift it out of the way when it is no longer needed. For work zone applications, it is critical to provide deflection space for stopping the vehicle between the system and the work zone. For additional information on the Dragnet, contact the HQ Design Office.

1610.12 Documentation

For the list of documents needed to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

Connecting W-Beam Guardrail to: Transitions and Connections			Transition Type*	Connection
Bridge Rail	New Installation		20, 21, 4[4]	D
	Existing Concrete	Concrete Parapet > 20 inches	20, 21, 4[4]	Exhibit 1610-6
		Concrete Parapet < 20 inches	2, 4[4]	Exhibit 1610-6
		Existing W-Beam Transition	2[1][5], 4[4]	[1]
	Thrie Beam at Face of Curb[3]	Approach End	23	n/a
		Trailing End (two-way traffic only)	23	n/a
	Thrie Beam at Bridge Rail (curb exposed)[3]	Approach End	22	n/a
		Trailing End (two-way traffic only)	22	n/a
	Weak Post Intersection Design (see 1610.06(7)(b), Cases 12 & 13)		5	Exhibit 1610-6
Concrete Barrier	Rigid Restrained		21, 4[4]	Exhibit 1610-6
	Unrestrained		2, 4[4]	A
Weak Post Barrier Systems (Type 20 and 21)			6	n/a
Rigid Structures such as Bridge Piers	New Installation (see Cases 11–31)		21	n/a
	Existing W-Beam Transition		[2]	n/a
Connecting Thrie Beam Guardrail to:			**Transition Type***	**Connection**
Bridge Rail or Concrete Barrier	New Installation (example: used with thrie beam bull nose)		1B	Exhibit 1610-6

*Consult Section C of the *Standard Plans* for details on transition types.

Notes:

[1] If work creates the need for reconstruction or resetting of the transition, upgrade as shown above. Raising the guardrail is not considered reconstruction. If the transition is not being reconstructed, the existing connection may remain in place. When Type 3 anchors are encountered, see 1610.06(5)(e) for guidance.

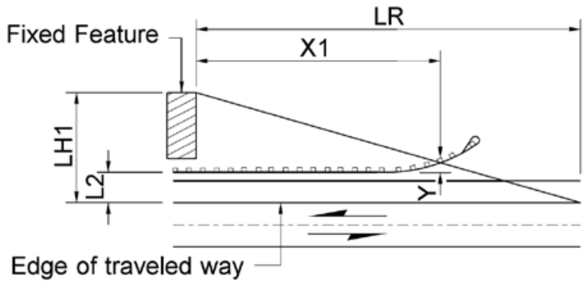
[2] For new/reconstruction, use Case 11 (thrie beam). For existing Case 11 with W-beam, add a second W-beam rail element.

[3] For Service Level 1 bridge rail, see 1610.06(7)(b), Case 14.

[4] Use on highways with speeds 45 mph or below.

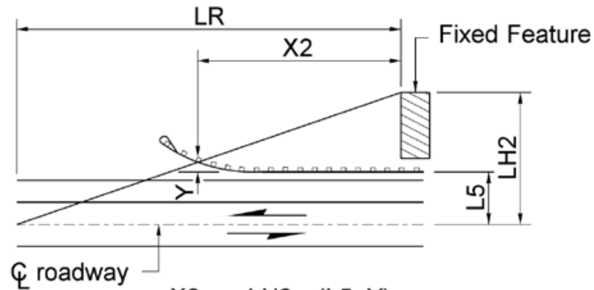
[5] If existing transition has the needed guardrail height—three 10″ x 10″ (nominal) posts and three 6″ x 8″ (nominal) posts spaced 3′-1.5″ apart—it is acceptable to nest existing single W-beam element transitions.

Transitions and Connections
Exhibit 1610-9



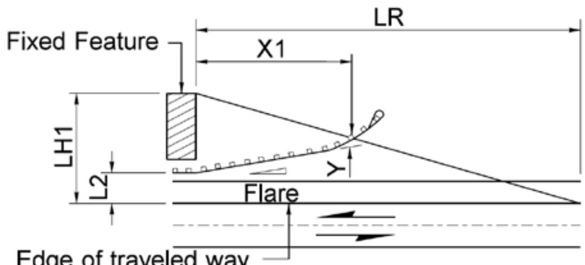
$$X1 = \frac{LH1 - (L2+Y)}{(LH1/LR)}$$

Adjacent-Side Fixed Feature
Barrier Parallel to Roadway



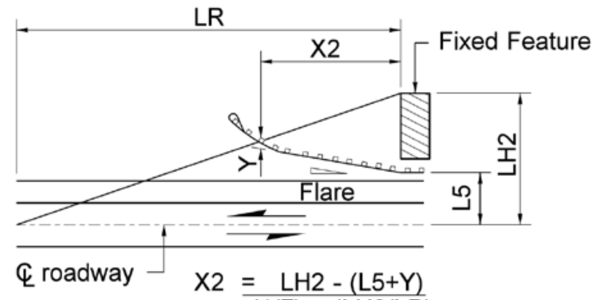
$$X2 = \frac{LH2 - (L5+Y)}{(LH2/LR)}$$

Opposite-Side Fixed Feature
Barrier Parallel to Roadway



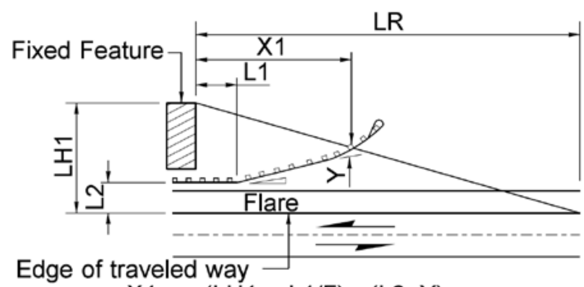
$$X1 = \frac{LH1 - (L2+Y)}{(1/F) + (LH1/LR)}$$

Adjacent-Side Fixed Feature
Barrier Flare Begins at Fixed Feature



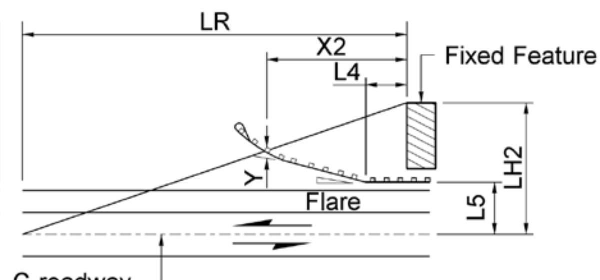
$$X2 = \frac{LH2 - (L5+Y)}{(1/F) + (LH2/LR)}$$

Opposite-Side Fixed Feature
Barrier Flare Begins at Fixed Feature



$$X1 = \frac{(LH1 + L1/F) - (L2+Y)}{(1/F) + (LH1/LR)}$$

Adjacent-Side Fixed Feature
Barrier Flare Begins Before Fixed Feature



$$X2 = \frac{(LH2 + L4/F) - (L5+Y)}{(1/F) + (LH2/LR)}$$

Opposite-Side Fixed Feature
Barrier Flare Begins Before Fixed Feature

Note:
For supporting length of need equation factors, see Exhibit 1610-10b.

Barrier Length of Need on Tangent Sections
Exhibit 1610-10a

Posted Speed (mph)	Design Parameters						
	ADT				Barrier Type		
	Over 10,000	5,000 to 10,000	1,000 to 4,999	Under 1,000	Rigid Barrier	Unrestrained Barrier	Semirigid Barrier
	LR (ft)	LR (ft)	LR (ft)	LR (ft)	F	F	F
65 & 70	460	395	345	295	20	18	15
60	360	295	260	230	18	16	14
55	310	260	230	195	16	14	12
50	260	215	180	165	14	12	11
45	245	195	165	150	12	11	10
40	215	180	150	130	11	10	9
35	185	155	130	115	11	10	9
30	165	135	115	105	11	10	9
25	150	125	105	95	11	10	9

L1 = Length of barrier parallel to roadway from adjacent-side fixed feature to beginning of barrier flare. This is used if a portion of the barrier cannot be flared (such as a bridge rail and the transition).

L2 = Distance from adjacent edge of traveled way to portion of barrier parallel to roadway.

L4 = Length of barrier parallel to roadway from opposite-side fixed feature to beginning of barrier flare.

L5 = Distance from centerline of roadway to portion of barrier parallel to roadway. Note: If the fixed feature is outside the Design Clear Zone when measured from the centerline, it may only be necessary to provide a crash-tested end treatment for the barrier.

LH1 = Distance from outside edge of traveled way to back side of adjacent-side fixed feature. Note: If a fixed feature extends past the Design Clear Zone, the Design Clear Zone can be used as LH1.

LH2 = Distance from centerline of roadway to back side of opposite-side fixed feature. Note: If a fixed feature extends past the Design Clear Zone, the Design Clear Zone can be used as LH2.

LR = Runout length, measured parallel to roadway.

X1 = Length of need for barrier to shield an adjacent-side fixed feature.

X2 = Length of need for barrier to shield an opposite-side fixed feature.

F = Flare rate value.

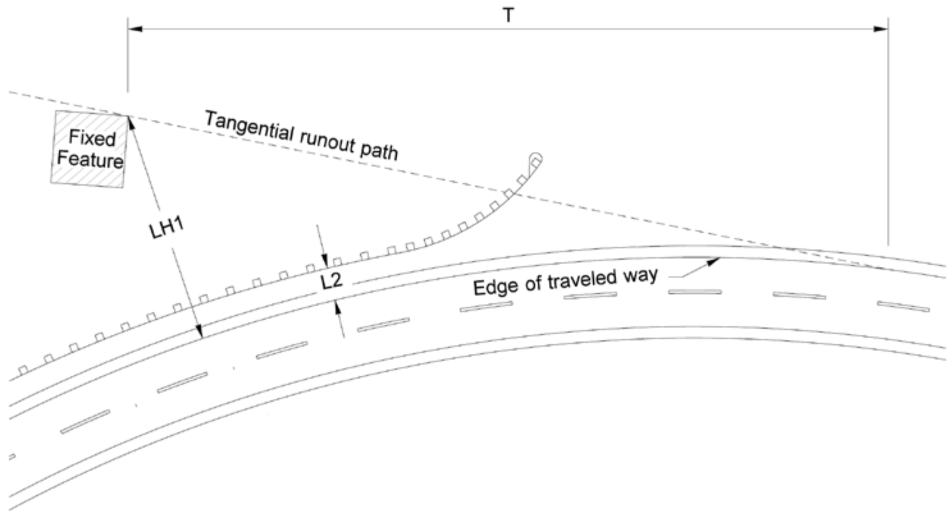
Y = Offset distance needed at the beginning of the length of need.

Different end treatments need different offsets:

- For the SRT 350 and FLEAT 350, use Y = 1.8 feet.
- For evaluating existing BCTs, use Y = 1.8 feet.
- For the FLEAT TL-2, use Y = 0.8 feet.
- No offset is needed for the nonflared terminals or impact attenuator systems. Use Y = 0.
- Buried terminal end treatments are used with barrier flares and have no offset. Use Y = 0.

Barrier Length of Need

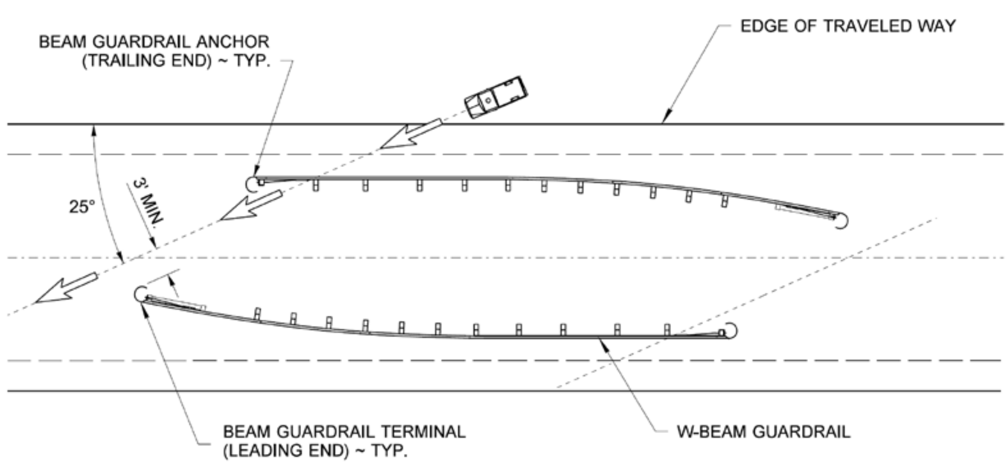
Exhibit 1610-10b



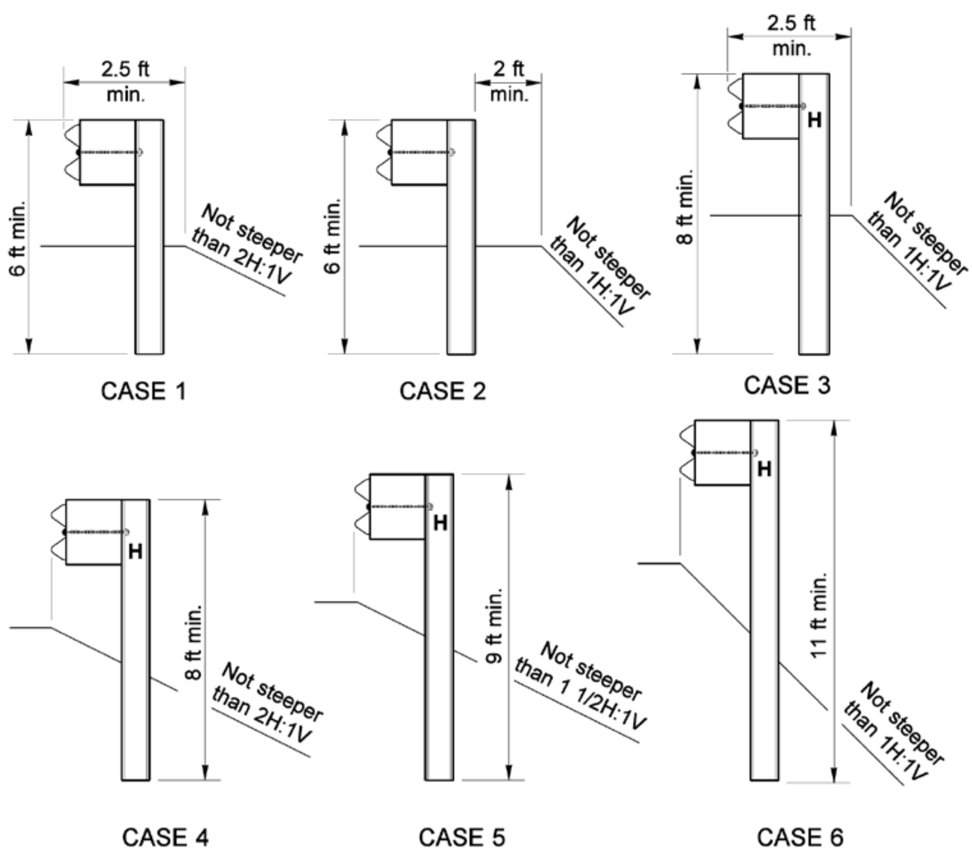
Notes:

- This is a graphical method for determining the length of need for barrier on the outside of a curve.
- On a scale drawing, draw a tangent from the curve to the back of the fixed feature. Compare T to LR from Exhibit 1610-10b and use the shorter value.
- If using LR, follow Exhibits 1610-10a and 10b.
- If using T, draw the intersecting barrier run to scale and measure the length of need.

Barrier Length of Need on Curves
Exhibit 1610-10c



W-Beam Guardrail Trailing End Placement for Divided Highways
Exhibit 1610-10d

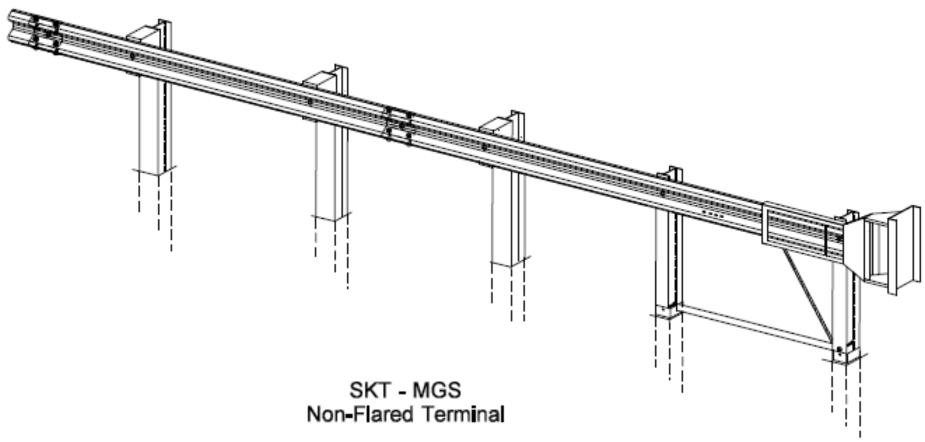


Type 31 Shown

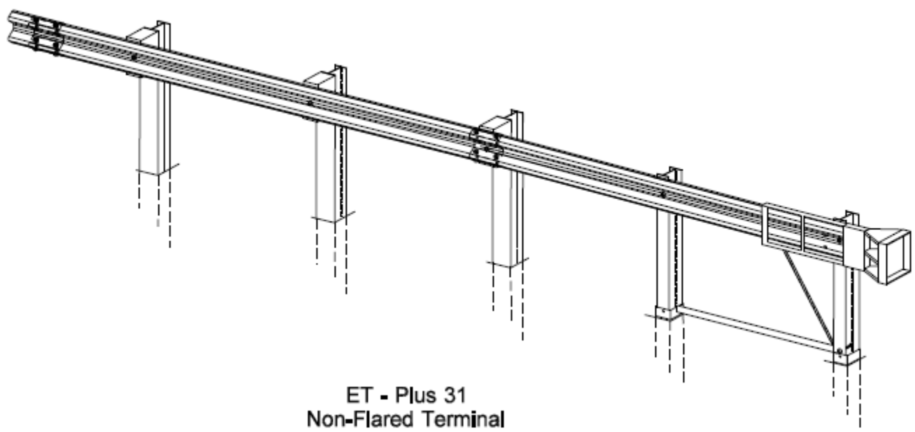
Notes:

- Use Cases 1 and 3 when there is a 2.5-foot or greater shoulder widening from face of guardrail to the breakpoint.
- Use Case 2 when there is a 4.0-foot or greater shoulder widening from the face of the guardrail to the breakpoint.
- Use Cases 4, 5, and 6 when there is less than a 2.5-foot shoulder widening from face of guardrail to the breakpoint.

Beam Guardrail Post Installation
Exhibit 1610-11

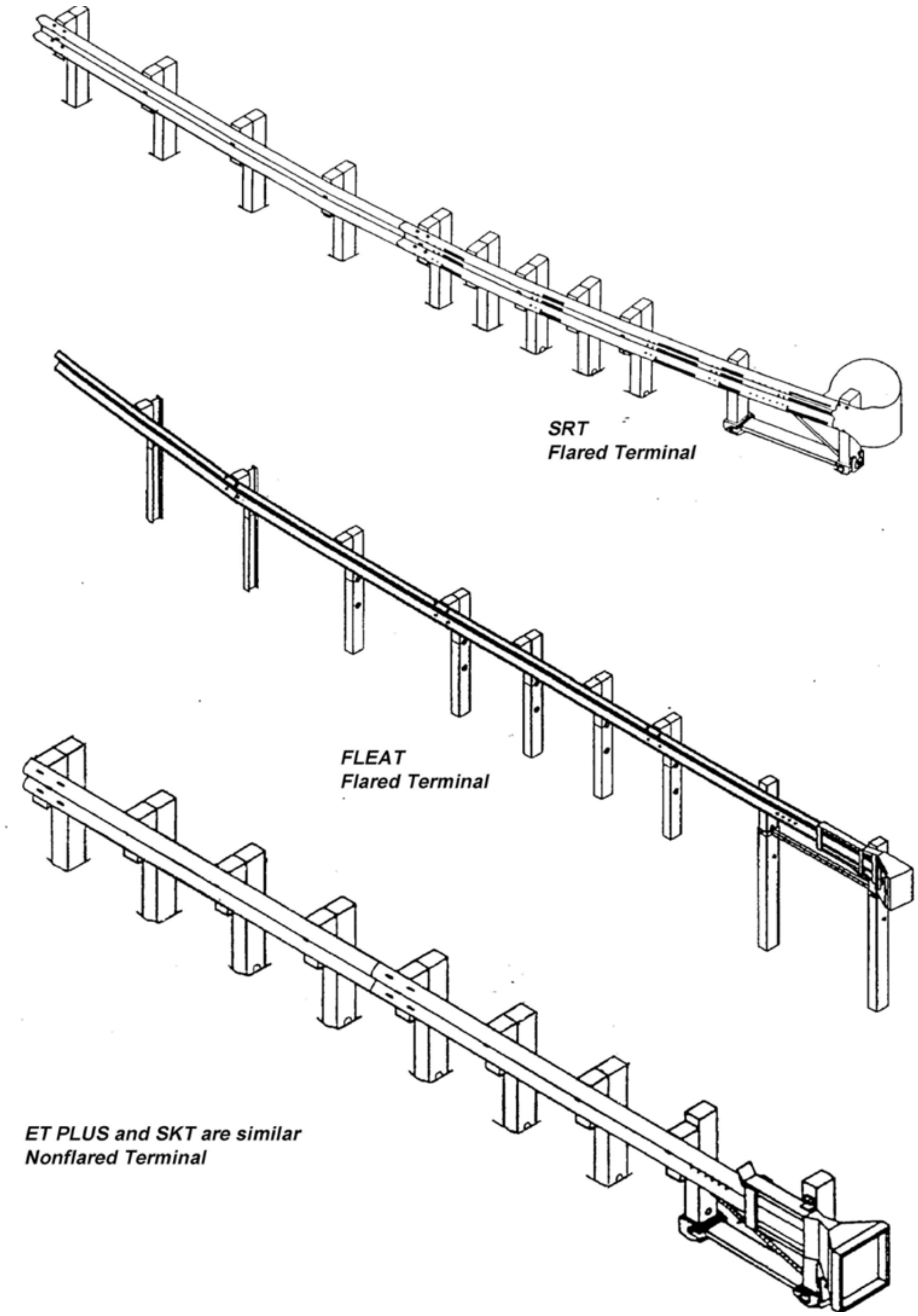


SKT - MGS
Non-Flared Terminal

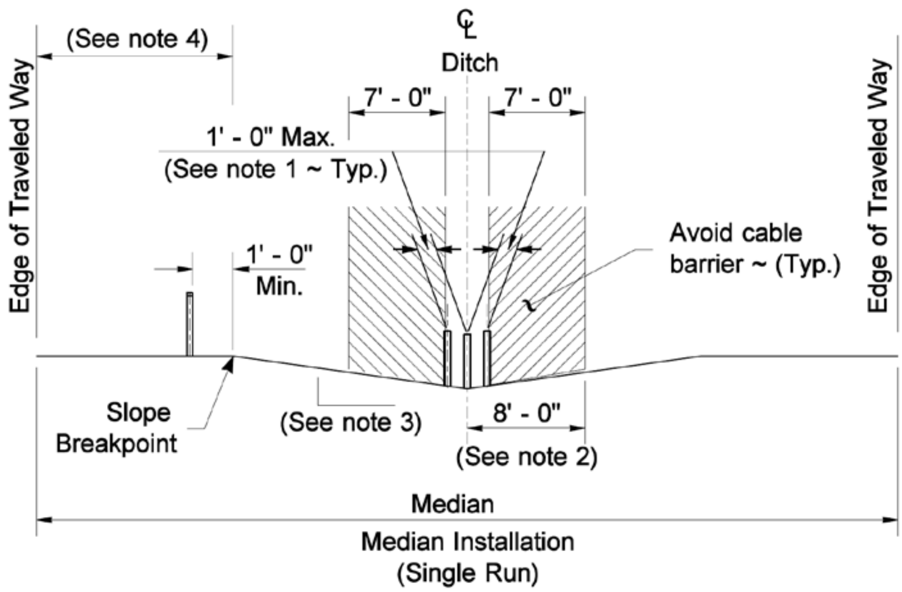


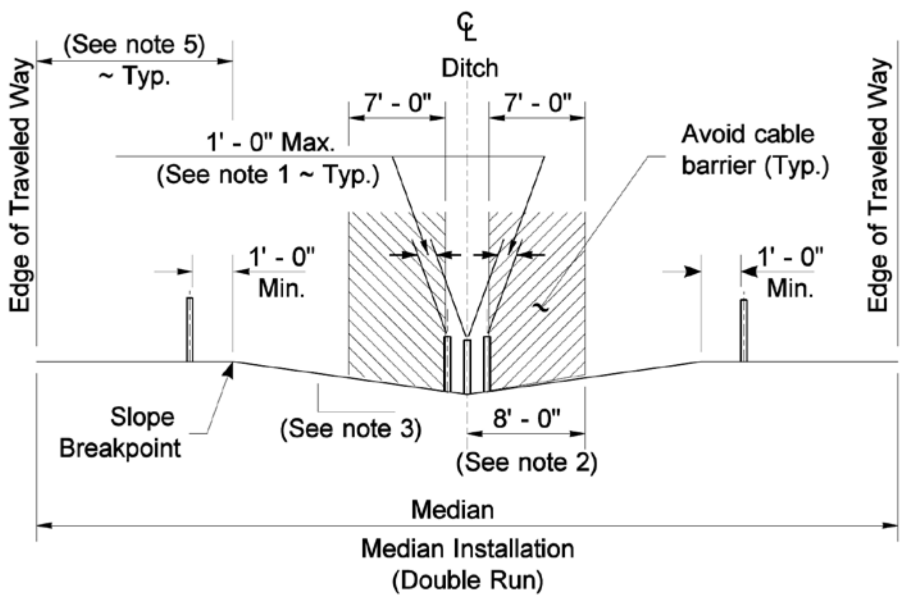
ET - Plus 31
Non-Flared Terminal

Beam Guardrail Terminals
Exhibit 1610-12a



Beam Guardrail Terminals
Exhibit 1610-12b





Notes:

[1] Cable barrier may be installed in the center of the ditch. The cable barrier may be offset from the ditch centerline a maximum of 1 foot in either direction.

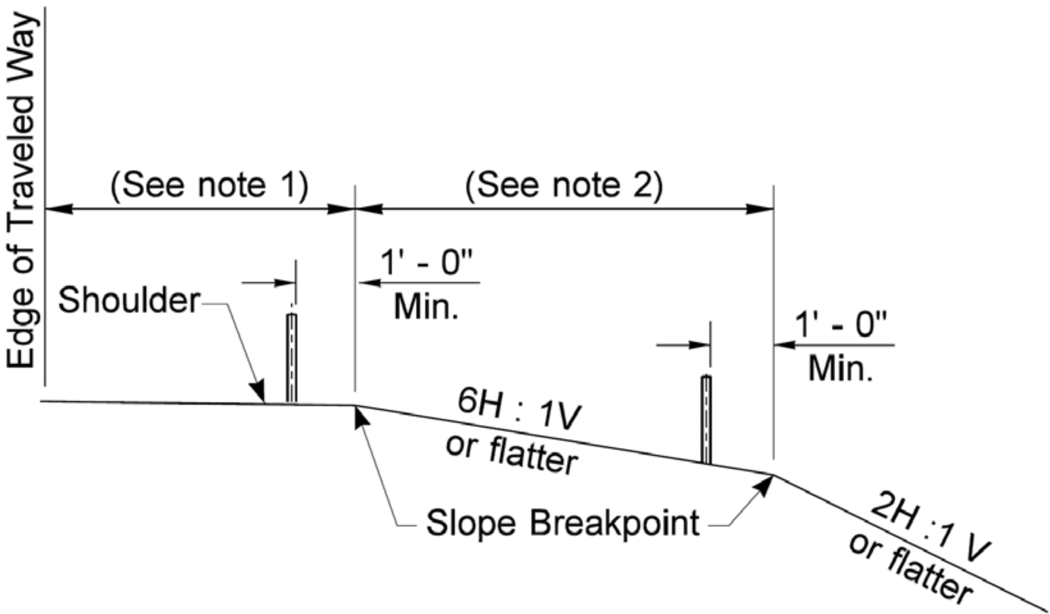
[2] Avoid installing cable barrier within a 1-foot to 8-foot offset from the ditch centerline.

[3] Applies to slopes between 10H:1V and 6H:1V.

[4] For single-runs of cable median barrier, with at least 13 feet from edge of the nearest traveled lane to the slope breakpoint, place the cable median barrier at least 1 foot in front of the slope breakpoint. Any approved four-cable high-tension barrier system may be used in this location.

[5] Double runs of cable barrier are typically not needed. However, if used in situations with at least 11 feet from edge of the nearest traveled lane to the slope breakpoint, place the cable median barrier at least 1 foot in front of the slope breakpoint. Any approved four-cable high-tension barrier system may be used in this location.

Cable Barrier Locations on Median Slopes
Exhibit 1610-13a



Shoulder Installation

Notes:

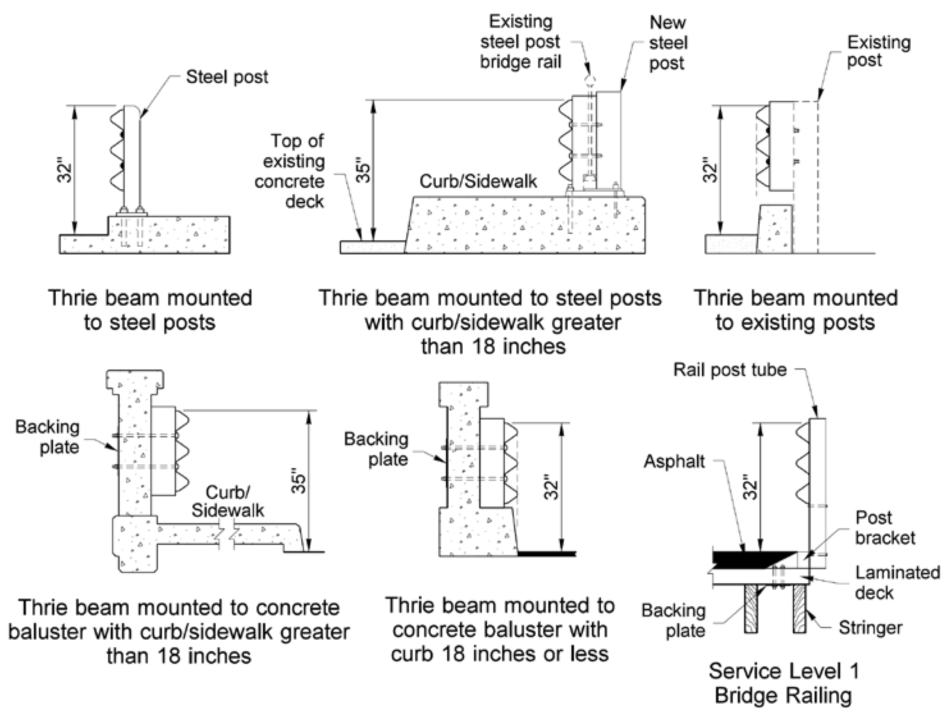
[1] Any approved four-cable high-tension barrier system may be used in this location.

[2] Use an approved four-cable high-tension cable barrier system within the acceptable locations shown between slope breakpoints.

Cable Barrier Locations on Shoulder Slopes

Exhibit 1610-13b

Curb Width	Bridge Width	Concrete Bridge Deck: Concrete Bridge Rail (existing)	Concrete Bridge Deck: Steel or Wood Post Bridge Rail (existing)	Wood Bridge Deck or Low-Strength Concrete Deck
<18 inches		Thrie beam mounted to existing bridge rail[2] and blocked out to the face of curb. Height = 32 inches	Thrie beam mounted to steel posts[2] at the face of curb. Height = 32 inches	• Service Level 1 Bridge Rail[2] • Height = 32 inches • Curb or wheel guard needs to be removed
>18 inches	**> 28 ft (curb to curb)**	Thrie beam mounted to steel posts[2] at the face of curb.[1] Height = 32 inches		
>18 inches	**< 28 ft (curb to curb)**	Thrie beam mounted to existing bridge rail.[2] Height = 35 inches	Thrie beam mounted to steel posts[2] in line with existing rail. Height = 35 inches	



Thrie beam mounted to steel posts

Thrie beam mounted to steel posts with curb/sidewalk greater than 18 inches

Thrie beam mounted to existing posts

Thrie beam mounted to concrete baluster with curb/sidewalk greater than 18 inches

Thrie beam mounted to concrete baluster with curb 18 inches or less

Service Level 1 Bridge Railing

Notes:

[1] Where needed, thrie beam may be mounted to the bridge rail to accommodate pedestrians (height = 35 inches).

[2] Contact the HQ Bridge and Structures Office for design details on bridge rail retrofit projects.

Thrie Beam Rail Retrofit Criteria

Exhibit 1610-14

Chapter 1620 Impact Attenuator Systems

1620.01 General
1620.02 Design Criteria
1620.03 Selection
1620.04 Documentation

1620.01 General

Impact attenuator systems are protective systems that help aid an errant vehicle from impacting an object by either gradually decelerating the vehicle to a stop when hit head-on or by redirecting it away from the feature when struck on the side. These barriers are used for rigid objects or other features that cannot be removed, relocated, or made breakaway.

Approved systems are shown in Exhibits 1620-2a through 1620-4b and on the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) Headquarters (HQ) Design Office web page: www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Policy/RoadsideSafety.htm

Approved systems shall meet standardized testing defined in NCHRP Report 350 or the *Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware* (MASH). In addition, these devices shall have an acceptance letter from FHWA that documents that the device meets the appropriate crash test criteria and can be used on the National Highway System (NHS).

(1) Permanent Installations

For systems used in permanent installations, a description of the system's purpose, parts, and function, as well as transition needs, foundation, and slope, are provided as follows and in Exhibit 1620-5.

(a) Crash Cushion Attenuating Terminal (CAT-350)

1. **Purpose:** The CAT-350 is an end treatment for W-beam guardrail. It can also be used for concrete barrier if a transition is provided.
2. **Description:** The system consists of slotted W-beam guardrail mounted on both sides of breakaway timber posts. Steel sleeves with soil plates hold the timber posts in place (see Exhibit 1620-2a).
3. **Function:** When hit head-on, the slotted guardrail is forced over a pin that shears the steel between the slots. This shearing dissipates the energy of the impact.
4. **Foundation:** Concrete footings or foundations are not needed.
5. **Slope:** 10H:1V or flatter slope between the edge of the traveled way and the near face of the unit.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Trinity Industries, Inc.

(b) Brakemaster 350

1. **Purpose:** The Brakemaster 350 system is an end treatment for W-beam guardrail. It can also be used for concrete barrier if a transition is provided.
2. **Description:** The system contains an embedded anchor assembly, W-beam fender panels, transition strap, and diaphragm (see Exhibit 1620-2a).

3. **Function:** The system uses a brake and cable device for head-on impacts and for redirection. The cable is embedded in a concrete anchor at the end of the system.
4. **Foundation:** A concrete foundation is not needed for this system, but a paved surface is recommended.
5. **Slope:** 10H:1V or flatter slope between the edge of the traveled way and the near face of the unit.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Energy Absorption Systems

(c) **QuadTrend 350**

1. **Purpose:** The QuadTrend 350 is an end treatment for 2-foot-8-inch-high concrete barriers. The system's short length allows it to be used at the ends of bridges where the installation of a beam guardrail transition and terminal is not feasible.
2. **Description:** This system consists of telescoping quadruple corrugated fender panels mounted on steel breakaway posts (see Exhibit 1620-2a).
3. **Function:** Sand-filled boxes attached to the posts dissipate a portion of the energy of an impact. An anchored cable installed behind the fender panels directs the vehicle away from the barrier end.
4. **Foundation:** The system is installed on a concrete foundation to support the steel posts.
5. **Slope:** A 6H:1V or flatter slope is needed behind the barrier to allow for vehicle recovery.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Energy Absorption Systems

(d) **Universal TAU-II**

1. **Purpose:** The Universal TAU-II crash cushion system is an end treatment for concrete barrier, beam guardrail, and fixed objects up to 8 feet wide.
2. **Description:** The system is made up of independent collapsible bays containing energy-absorbing cartridges that are guided and supported during a head-on hit by high-strength galvanized steel cables and thrie beam rail panels. Each bay is composed of overlapping thrie beam panels on the sides and structural support diaphragms on the ends. Structural support diaphragms are attached to two cables running longitudinally through the system and attached to foundations at each end of the system (see Exhibit 1620-2c).
3. **Function:** Overlapping panels, structural support diaphragms, cable supports, cables, and foundation anchors allow the system to resist angled impacts and mitigate head-on impacts.
4. **Foundation:** The system is installed on a concrete foundation or asphaltic concrete foundations conforming to the manufacturer's recommendations.
5. **Slope:** 10H:1V or flatter slope between the edge of the traveled way and the near face of the unit.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Barrier Systems, Inc.

(e) **QuadGuard**

1. **Purpose:** The QuadGuard is an end treatment for concrete barrier and beam guardrail and is also used to mitigate fixed objects up to 10 feet wide.
2. **Description:** The system consists of a series of Hex-Foam cartridges surrounded by a framework of steel diaphragms and quadruple corrugated fender panels (see Exhibit 1620-2b).
3. **Function:** The internal shearing of the cartridges and the crushing of the energy absorption material absorb impact energy from end-on hits. The fender panels redirect vehicles impacting the attenuator on the side.
4. **Foundation:** The system is installed on a concrete foundation.
5. **Slope:** If the site has excessive grade or cross slope, additional site preparation or modification to the units in accordance with the manufacturer's literature is needed. "Excessive" is defined as steeper than 8% for the QuadGuard.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Energy Absorption Systems

(f) **QuadGuard Elite**

1. **Purpose:** The QuadGuard Elite is an end treatment for concrete barrier and beam guardrail and is also used for fixed objects up to 7 feet 6 inches wide.
2. **Description:** The system consists of telescoping quadruple corrugated fender panels mounted on both sides of a series of polyethylene cylinders (see Exhibit 1620-2b).
3. **Function:** The cylinders are compressed during a head-on impact and return to their original shape when the system is reset. It is anticipated that this system will need very few replacement parts or extensive repair.
4. **Foundation:** The system is installed on a concrete foundation.
5. **Slope:** If the site has excessive grade or cross slope, additional site preparation or modification to the units in accordance with the manufacturer's literature is needed. "Excessive" is defined as steeper than 8% for the QuadGuard Elite.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Energy Absorption Systems

(g) **Reusable Energy Absorbing Crash Terminal (REACT 350)**

1. **Purpose:** The REACT 350 is an end treatment for concrete barriers and is also used for fixed objects up to 3 feet wide.
2. **Description:** The system consists of polyethylene cylinders with varying wall thickness, redirecting cables, a steel frame base, and a backup structure (see Exhibit 1620-2d).
3. **Function:** The redirecting cables are anchored in the concrete foundation at the front of the system and in the backup structure at the rear of the system. When hit head-on, the cylinders compress, absorb the impact energy, and immediately return to much of their original shape, position, and capabilities. For side impacts, the cables restrain the system enough to help prevent penetration and redirect the vehicle. It is anticipated that this system will need very few replacement parts or extensive repair.

4. **Foundation:** The system is installed on a concrete foundation.
5. **Slope:** If the site has excessive grade or cross slope, additional site preparation or modification to the units in accordance with the manufacturer's literature is needed. "Excessive" is defined as steeper than 8% for the REACT 350.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Energy Absorption Systems

(h) REACT 350 Wide

1. **Purpose:** The REACT 350 Wide is a device that can be used to shield objects with widths up to 10 feet wide.
2. **Description:** The system consists of polyethylene cylinders with varying wall thickness, internal struts, space frame diaphragms, and a monorail (see Exhibit 1620-2d).
3. **Function:** When hit head-on, the cylinders compress, absorb the impact energy, and immediately return to much of their original shape, position, and capabilities. For side impacts, the system is designed to restrain and redirect the vehicle. It is anticipated that this system will need very few replacement parts or extensive repairs.
4. **Foundation:** The system is installed on a concrete foundation.
5. **Slope:** If the site has excessive grade or cross slope, additional site preparation or modification to the units in accordance with the manufacturer's literature is needed. "Excessive" is defined as steeper than 8% for the REACT 350 Wide.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Energy Absorption Systems

(i) Inertial Barrier

Inertial barrier configurations are shown in the *Standard Plans*. If a situation is encountered where the configurations in the *Standard Plans* are not appropriate, contact the HQ Design Office for further information.

1. **Purpose:** Inertial barrier is an end treatment for concrete barrier and is used to mitigate fixed objects. This system does not provide redirection from a side impact.
2. **Description:** This system consists of an array of plastic containers filled with varying weights of sand (see Exhibit 1620-2d).
3. **Function:** The inertial barriers slow an impacting vehicle by the transfer of the momentum of the vehicle to the mass of the barrier. This system is not suitable where space is limited to less than the widths shown in the *Standard Plans*. Whenever possible, align inertial barriers so that an errant vehicle deviating from the roadway by 10° would be on a parallel path with the attenuator alignment (see the *Standard Plans*). In addition, inertial barriers do not provide any redirection and are not appropriate where high-angle impacts are likely.

4. **Foundation:** A concrete or paved surface is recommended.
5. **Slope:** If the site has excessive grade or cross slope, additional site preparation or modification to the units in accordance with the manufacturer's literature is needed. "Excessive" is defined as steeper than 5% for inertial barriers.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Approved Inertial Barrier systems (sand barrel arrays) are listed in the Qualified Products List.

(j) **SCI100GM / SCI70GM**

1. **Purpose:** The SCI100GM / SCI70GM are end treatments that can be used for concrete barrier and beam guardrail with widths up to 2 feet.
2. **Description:** The system for both models consists of telescoping quadruple corrugated fender panels mounted on both sides of a series of tubular steel support frames (see Exhibit 1620-2e).
3. **Function:** A hydraulic cylinder is compressed during a head-on impact.
4. **Foundation:** The system is installed on a concrete or asphalt foundation. (See manufacturer's installation information for details.)
5. **Slope:** 12H:1V or flatter slope between the edge of the traveled way and the near face of the unit.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Work Area Protection Corp.

(2) Work Zone (Temporary) Installation

Several of the impact attenuators previously listed under the heading "Permanent Installations" are also appropriate for use in work zones or other temporary locations. The following is a list of these devices:

- QuadGuard
- QuadGuard Elite
- REACT 350
- REACT 350 Wide
- Inertial Barriers
- SCI100GM
- SCI70GM

The following systems are appropriate only in work zones or other temporary installations. However, the TRACC impact attenuator may be considered for permanent use, with the concurrence of WSDOT Maintenance personnel.

A description of each work zone (or other temporary) system's purpose, parts, and functionality, as well as guidance for transition, foundation, and slope, are provided as follows and in Exhibit 1620-5:

(a) **ABSORB 350**

1. **Purpose:** The ABSORB 350 is an end treatment limited to temporary installations for both concrete barrier and the Quickchange Moveable Barrier (QMB).
2. **Description:** The system contains water-filled Energy Absorbing Elements. Each element is 2 feet wide, 2 feet 8 inches high, and 3 feet 3½ inches long (see Exhibits 1620-3a and 3b).
3. **Function:** The low-speed (below 45 mph) system uses five Energy Absorbing Elements, and the high-speed (45 mph and above) system uses eight. The energy of an impact is dissipated as the elements are crushed.
4. **Foundation:** The system does not need a paved foundation.
5. **Slope:** 10H:1V or flatter slope between the edge of the traveled way and the near face of the unit.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Barrier Systems, Inc.

(b) **Advanced Dynamic Impact Extension Module 350 (ADIEM 350)**

1. **Purpose:** The ADIEM 350 is limited to temporary installations where vehicle speeds are 45 mph or lower. It is generally used as an end treatment for concrete barrier. Currently, there are a few existing permanent units in service. It is permissible to reset these existing devices. However, some of these units may exhibit significant deterioration, and replacement may be the appropriate option.
2. **Description:** The system is 30 feet long and consists of ten lightweight concrete modules on an inclined base (see Exhibit 1620-3a).
3. **Function:** An inclined base provides a track for placement of the modules and provides redirection for side impacts for roughly half the length. The energy of an impact is dissipated as the concrete modules are crushed.
4. **Foundation:** The system does not need a paved foundation.
5. **Slope:** If the site has excessive grade or cross slope, additional site preparation or modification to the units in accordance with the manufacturer's literature is needed. Excessive is defined as steeper than 8% for the ADIEM 350.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Trinity Industries, Inc.

(c) **QuadGuard CZ**

This system is like the permanent QuadGuard listed for permanent systems above, except that it can be installed on a 6-inch-minimum-depth asphalt concrete surface that has a 6-inch-minimum-depth compacted base (see Exhibit 1620-3a).

(d) **Reusable Energy Absorbing Crash Terminal (REACT 350)**

This is the same system listed for permanent systems above except that it can be installed on a 6-inch-minimum-depth asphalt concrete surface that has a 6-inch-minimum-depth compacted base (see Exhibit 1620-2d).

(e) **Non-Redirecting Energy Absorbing Terminal (N-E-A-T)**

1. **Purpose:** The N-E-A-T system is an end treatment for temporary concrete barrier where vehicle speeds are 45 mph or lower.
2. **Description:** The N-E-A-T system's cartridge weighs about 300 pounds and is 9 feet 8 inches long. The system consists of aluminum cells encased in an aluminum shell with steel backup, attachment hardware, and transition panels. It can be attached to the ends of New Jersey shaped portable concrete barrier and the Quickchange Moveable Barrier (see Exhibit 1620-3b).
3. **Function:** The energy of an impact is dissipated as the aluminum cells are crushed.
4. **Foundation:** The system does not need a paved foundation.
5. **Slope:** 10H:1V or flatter slope between the edge of the traveled way and the near face of the unit.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Energy Absorption Systems

(f) **Trinity Attenuating Crash Cushion (TRACC)**

1. **Purpose:** The TRACC is an end treatment for concrete barriers. It is limited to use in construction or other work zones on a temporary basis.
2. **Description:** The 21-foot-long TRACC includes four major components: a pair of guidance tracks, an impact sled, intermediate steel frames, and 10-gauge W-beam fender panels (see Exhibit 1620-3b).
3. **Function:** The sled (impact face) is positioned over the upstream end of the guidance tracks and contains a hardened steel blade that cuts the metal plates on the sides of the guidance tracks as it is forced backward when hit head-on.
4. **Foundation:** The system needs a concrete foundation.
5. **Slope:** 10H:1V or flatter slope between the edge of the traveled way and the near face of the unit.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Trinity Industries, Inc.

(g) **Inertial Barrier**

This is the same system listed for permanent systems above. It is not suitable where space is limited to less than the widths shown in the *Standard Plans* (see Exhibit 1620-2d).

(h) **Truck-Mounted Attenuator (TMA)**

TMAs are portable systems mounted on trucks. They are intended for use in work zones and for temporary applications.

(i) Triton CET

1. **Purpose:** The Triton CET is an end treatment limited to temporary concrete barrier installations.
2. **Description:** The system contains water-filled Energy Absorbing Elements (see Exhibit 1620-3b).
3. **Function:** The system uses six Energy Absorbing Elements. The energy of an impact is dissipated as the elements are crushed.
4. **Foundation:** The system does not need a paved foundation.
5. **Slope:** 10H:1V or flatter slope between the edge of the traveled way and the near face of the unit.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Energy Absorption, Inc.

(j) **QUEST**

1. **Purpose:** The QUEST is an end treatment limited to temporary applications. This system is designed to shield features 2 feet or less in width.
2. **Description:** The system consists of two front anchor assemblies; a nose assembly containing an integrated trigger assembly; two shaper rail assemblies; a support rail assembly with two energy-absorbing tube shapers; a diaphragm assembly; a bridge assembly; two rear rails; a freestanding backup assembly; and W-beam fender panels (see Exhibit 1620-3b). Transition panels are needed when traffic approaches from the rear of the unit.
3. **Function:** During head-on impacts, the Quest system telescopes rearward and energy is absorbed through momentum transfer, friction, and deformation. When impacted from the side, the QUEST system restrains lateral movement by dynamic tension developed between the end restraints.
4. **Foundation:** The system is installed on a concrete or asphalt foundation. (See manufacturer's installation information for details.) The unit is attached to the road surface with 30 to 34 anchors.
5. **Slope:** 12H:1V (8%) or flatter slope between the edge of the traveled way and the near face of the unit is needed. In addition, if the slope varies (twists) more than 2% over the length of the system, a concrete leveling pad may be needed.
6. **Manufacturer/Supplier:** Energy Absorption Systems, Inc.

(3) Older Systems

The following systems are in use on Washington State highways and may be left in place or reset. New installations of these systems need approval from the HQ Design Office.

(a) Sentre

The Sentre is a guardrail end treatment. Its overall length of 17 feet allowed it to be used where space was not available for a guardrail transition and terminal. The system is very similar to the QuadTrend 350 in both appearance and function except that it uses thrie beam fender panels instead of the quadruple corrugated panels. This system needs a transition when used to terminate rigid barriers (see Exhibit 1620-4a).

(b) TREND

The TREND is an end treatment with a built-in transition and was used at the end of rigid barriers including bridge rails. The system is similar to the QuadTrend 350 except that it uses thrie beam fender panels (see Exhibit 1620-4a).

(c) Guard Rail Energy Absorption Terminal (G-R-E-A-T)

This system was primarily used as an end treatment for concrete barrier. It is similar to the QuadGuard except that it uses thrie beam fender panels (see Exhibit 1620-4a).

(d) Low-Maintenance Attenuator System (LMA)

The LMA is an end treatment for concrete barrier and beam guardrail and was used for fixed objects up to 3 feet wide. The system is similar to the QuadGuard Elite except that it uses thrie beam fender panels and rubber cylinders (see Exhibit 1620-4b).

(e) Hex-Foam Sandwich

The Hex-Foam Sandwich system (see Exhibit 1620-4b) is an end treatment for beam guardrail and concrete barrier and was also used for fixed objects 3 feet or more in width. This system consists of a number of Hex-Foam cartridges containing an energy absorption material separated by a series of diaphragms and restrained by anchor cables. It is installed on a concrete slab. Impact energy is absorbed by the internal shearing of the cartridges and crushing of the energy absorption material. The lapped panels on the perimeter serve to redirect vehicles for side impacts. If the site has grade or cross slope in excess of 5%, additional site preparation or modification to the units in accordance with the manufacturer’s literature is needed.

1620.02 Design Criteria

The following design criteria apply to new or reset permanent and temporary impact attenuators. The design criteria also apply to existing systems to be left in place when the Barrier Terminals and Transition Sections columns on a design matrix apply to the project (see Chapter 1100).

Impact attenuators are placed so that they do not present a feature that needs mitigating in relation to opposing traffic. For median and reversible lane locations, the backup structure or attenuator-to-object connection is designed to help in aiding opposing traffic from being snagged. It is desirable that existing curbing be removed and the surface smoothed with asphalt or cement concrete pavement before an impact attenuator is installed. However, curbs 4 inches or less in height may be retained depending on the feasibility of their removal.

In general, attenuators are aligned parallel to the roadway except the inertial barriers.

1620.03 Selection

When selecting an impact attenuator system, consider the:

- Posted speed.
- Available space (length and width).
- Maintenance costs.
- Initial cost.
- Duration (permanent or temporary use).
- Portion of the impact attenuator that is redirective/nonredirective (see Exhibits 1620-5 and 1620-6).

It is very important for designers to consider the portion of an impact attenuator that is designed to redirect vehicles during a side impact of the unit. It is crucial to consider that fixed objects, either permanent or temporary (such as construction equipment), not be located behind the nonredirective portion of these devices.

The posted speed is a consideration in the selection of the QuadGuard, REACT 350, Universal TAU-II, and Inertial Barrier systems. Use Exhibit 1620-1 to select the permanent system sizes needed for the various posted speeds.

Posted Speed (mph)	Quad Guard (Bays)	Universal TAU-II* (Bays)	REACT 350 (Cylinders)	Inertial Barrier (Type)
40 or less	3	2–3	4	1
45	4	3–4	6	2
50	5	4–5	6	3
55	6	5–7	6	4
60	6	7–8	9	5
65	8	7–8	9	6
70	9	7–8	9	6

* Dependent on the width of the system.

Impact Attenuator Sizes
Exhibit 1620-1

If it is anticipated that a large volume of traffic will be traveling at speeds higher than the posted speed limit, then the next larger unit may be specified.

For a comparison summary of space and initial cost information related to the impact attenuator systems, see Exhibit 1620-5.

When maintenance costs are considered, anticipate the average annual impact rate. If few impacts are anticipated, lower-cost devices such as inertial barriers might meet the need. Inertial barriers have the lowest initial cost and initial site preparation. However, maintenance will be costly and necessary after each impact. Labor and equipment are needed to clean up the debris and install new containers (barrels). Also, inertial barriers are not be used where flying debris might be a danger to pedestrians.

The REACT 350 and the QuadGuard Elite have a higher initial cost, requiring substantial site preparation, including a backup or anchor wall in some cases and cable anchorage at the front of the installation. However, repair costs are comparatively low, with labor being the main expense. Maintenance might not be needed after minor side impacts with these systems.

For new installations where at least one impact is anticipated per year, limit the selection of impact attenuators to the low-maintenance devices. The QuadGuard Elite and REACT 350 are considered to be low-maintenance devices. Consider upgrading existing ADIEM, G-R-E-A-T, and Hex-Foam impact attenuators with these low-maintenance devices when the repair history shows one to two impacts per year over a three- to five-year period.

Approved attenuator systems that have little or no performance history in Washington State may be considered for trial service as low-maintenance devices if their usage has concurrence from the HQ Design Office and the Area Maintenance Superintendant, or a designated contact, responsible for maintaining the device. Product vendors or distributors are responsible for obtaining the concurrence from HQ Design Office representatives. Attenuators selected for trial service as low-maintenance devices will:

- Be approved for use in Washington State (see 1620.01).
- Have been in use in other states for a minimum of six months.
- Have a point of contact and documented repair cost data from other states representing at least five impacts as a basis for the repair costs.
- Be limited to no more than four devices under the trial service clause.

Permanent status as a low-maintenance device will be considered after reviewing repair costs once a system has obtained a minimum of five impacts, provided the collision repair history includes side impacts and leading end impacts.

In selecting a system, one consideration is how dangerous it will be for the workers making repairs. In areas with high exposure to danger, a system that can be repaired quickly is most desirable. Some systems need nearly total replacement or replacement of critical components (such as cartridges or braking mechanisms) after a head-on impact, while others simply need resetting.

It is very important to consider that each application is unique when selecting impact attenuators for use in particular applications. This applies to both permanent and temporary installations. When specifying the system or systems that can be used at a specific location, the list shown in Exhibit 1620-5 is to be used as a starting point.

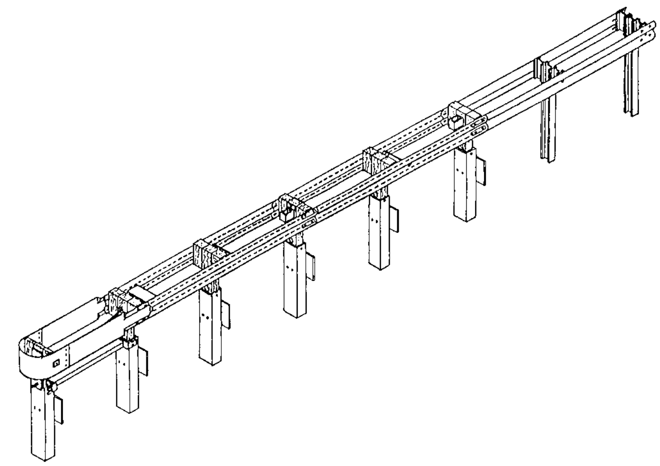
As the considerations discussed previously are analyzed, inappropriate systems may be identified and eliminated from further consideration. Systems that are not eliminated may be appropriate for the project. When the site conditions vary, it might be necessary to have more than one list of acceptable systems within a contract. Systems are not to be eliminated without documented reasons. Also, wording such as "or equivalent" is not to be used when specifying these systems. If only one system is found to be appropriate, then approval from the Assistant State Design Engineer of a public interest finding for the use of a sole source proprietary item is needed.

When a transition to connect with a concrete barrier (see Exhibit 1620-5) is needed, the transition type and connection are to be specified and are included in the cost of the impact attenuator. (See Chapter 1610 for information on the transitions and connections to use.)

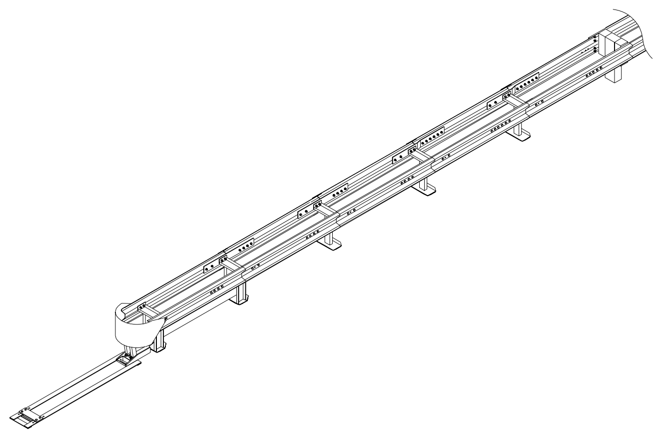
Contractors can be given more flexibility in the selection of work zone (temporary) systems, since long-term maintenance and repair are not a consideration.

1620.04 Documentation

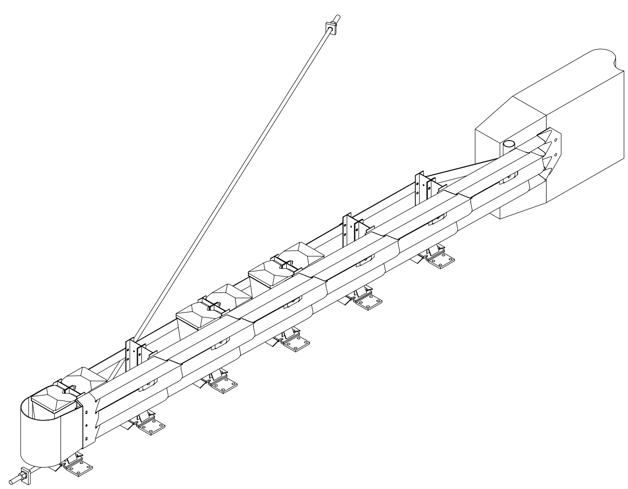
For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



CAT - 350

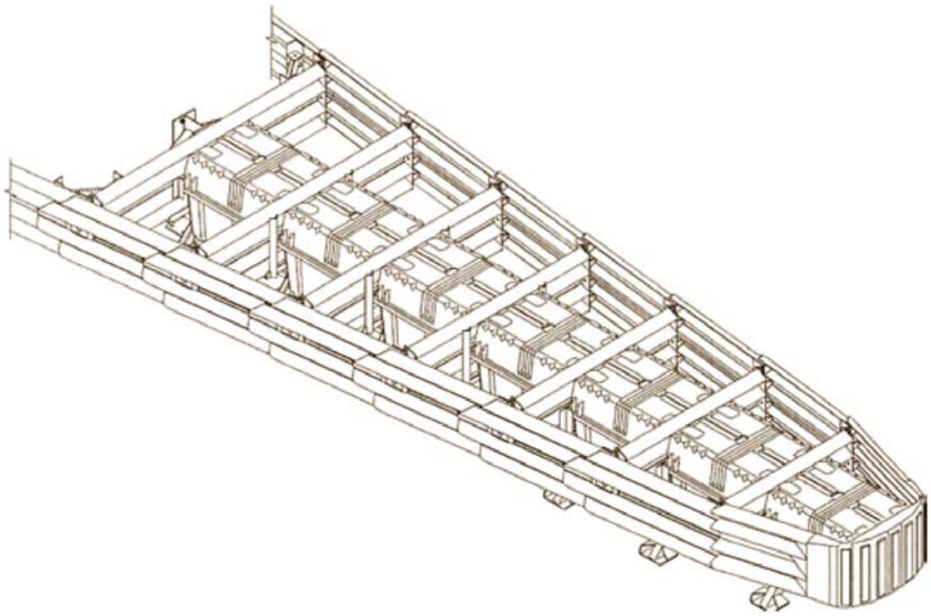


Brakemaster

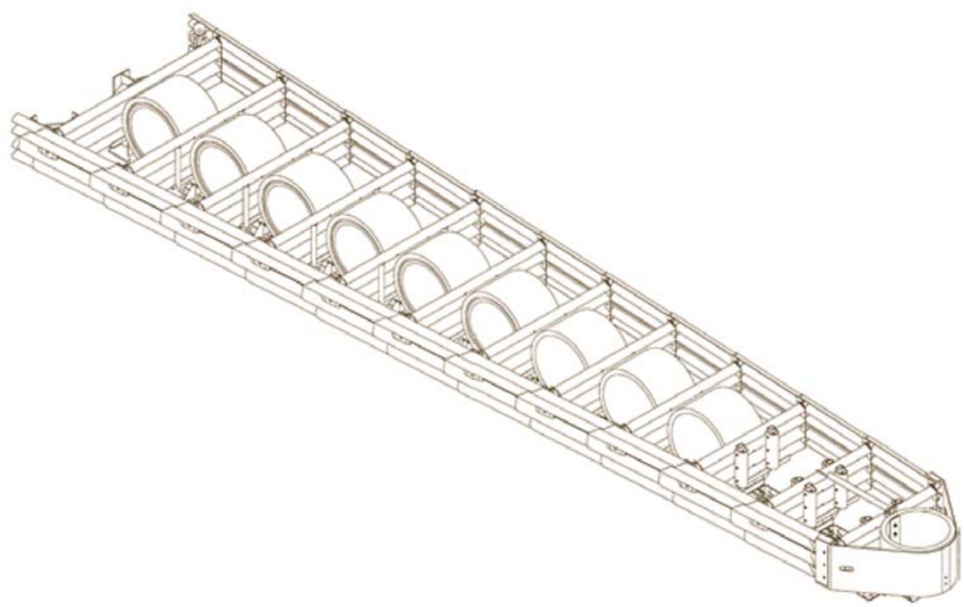


QuadTrend 350

Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-2a



QuadGuard

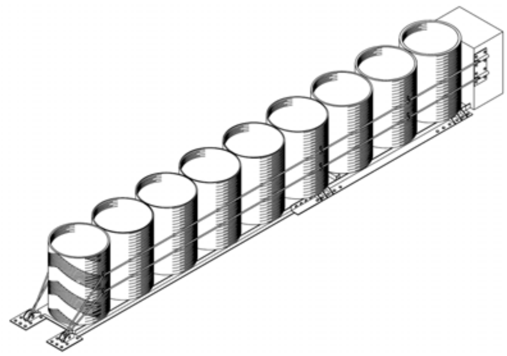


QuadGuard Elite

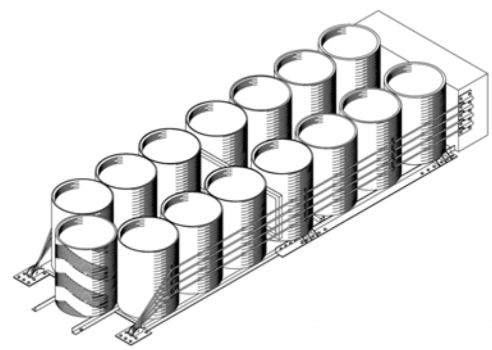
Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-2b

Universal TAU - II

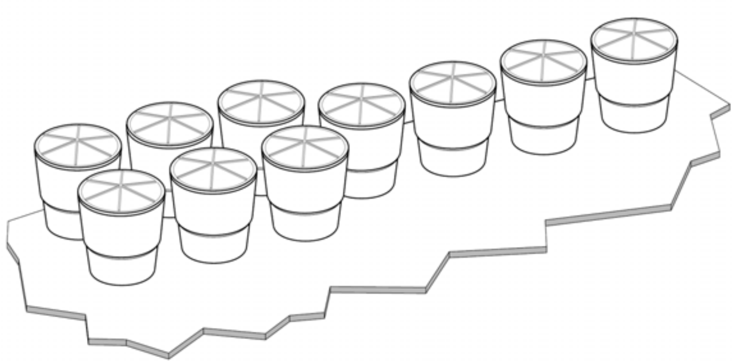
Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-2c



REACT 350



REACT 350 WIDE



INERTIAL BARRIER

Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations

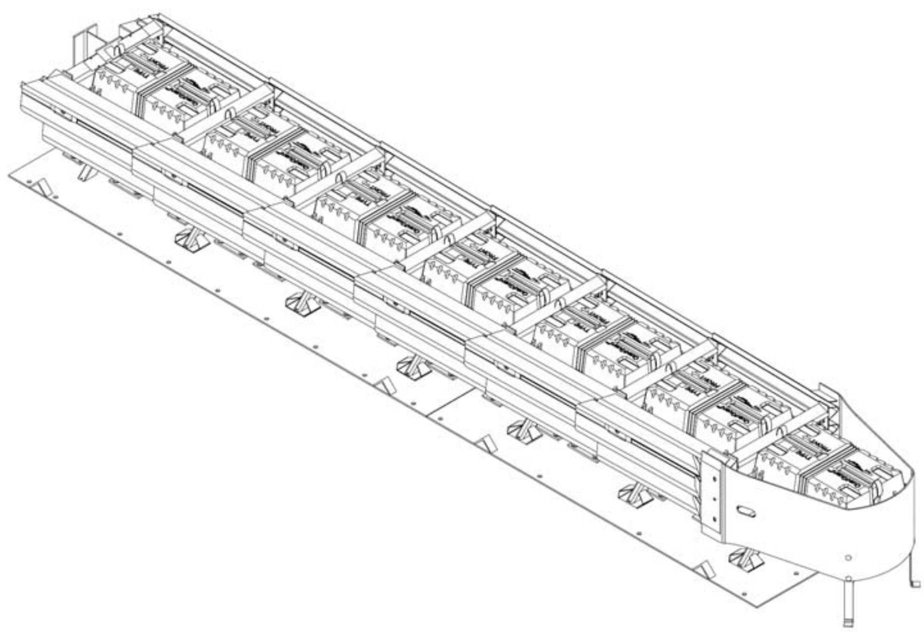
Exhibit 1620-2d

SCI100GM / SCI70GM

Impact Attenuator Systems: Permanent Installations
Exhibit 1620-2e

ABSORB 350

ADIEM 350



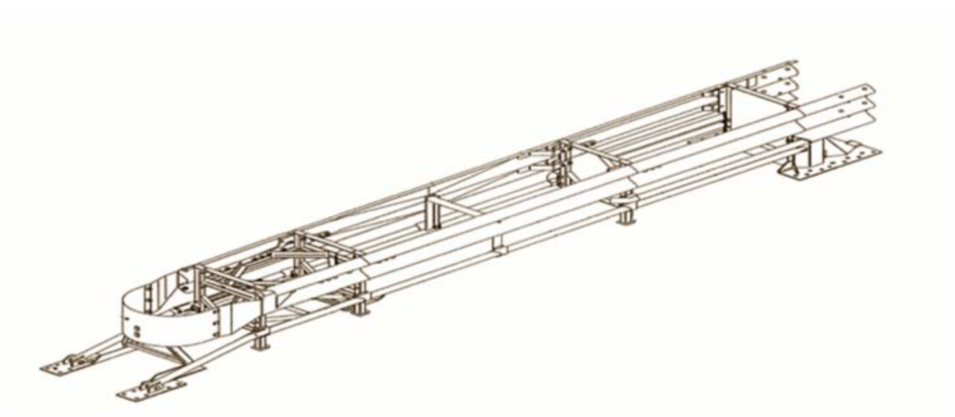
QuadGuard CZ

Impact Attenuator Systems: Work Zone Installations
Exhibit 1620-3a

N-E-A-T

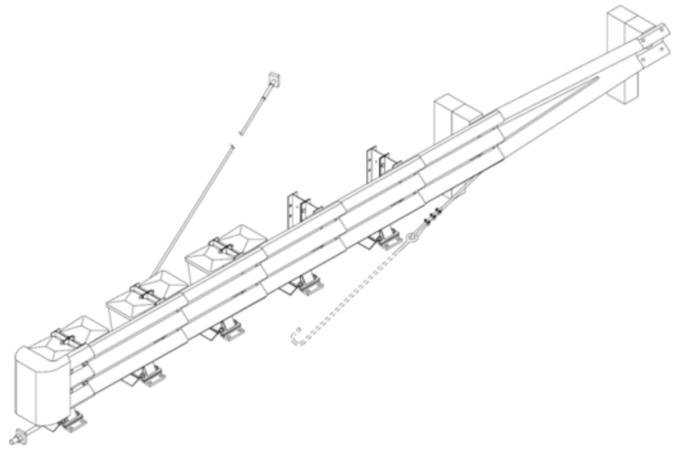
TRACC

Triton CET

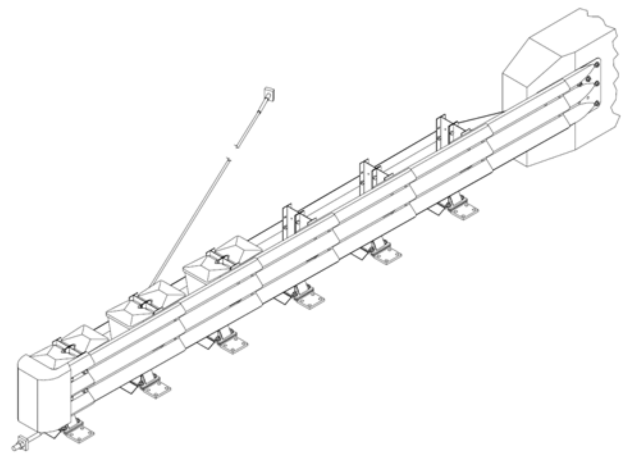


QUEST

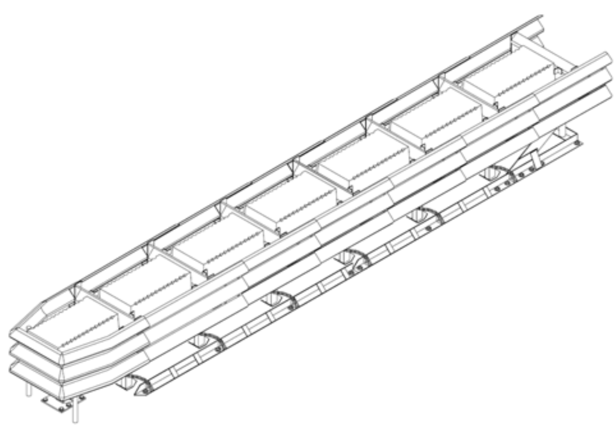
Impact Attenuator Systems: Work Zone Installations
Exhibit 1620-3b



Sentre

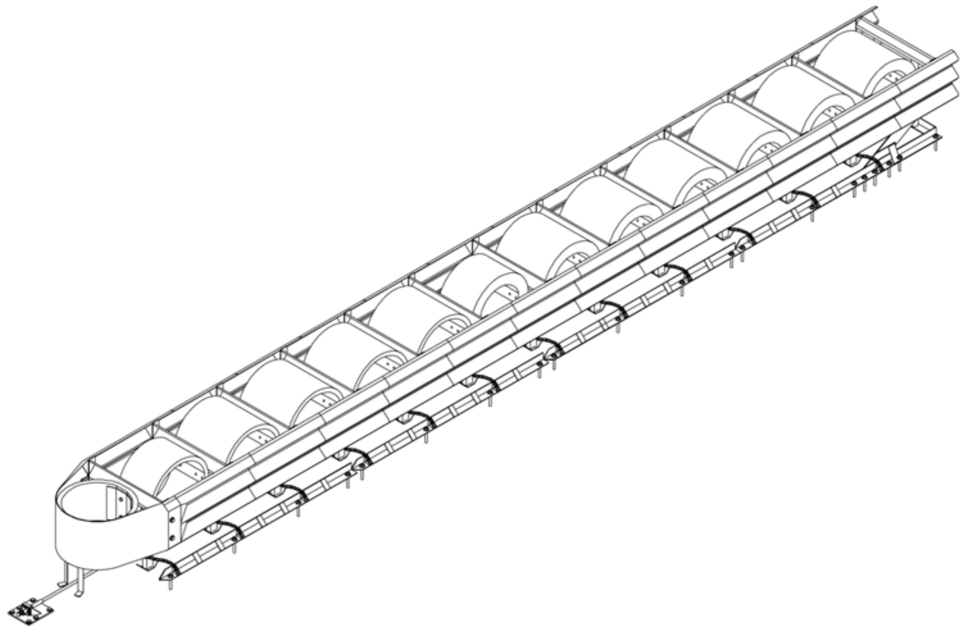


TREND

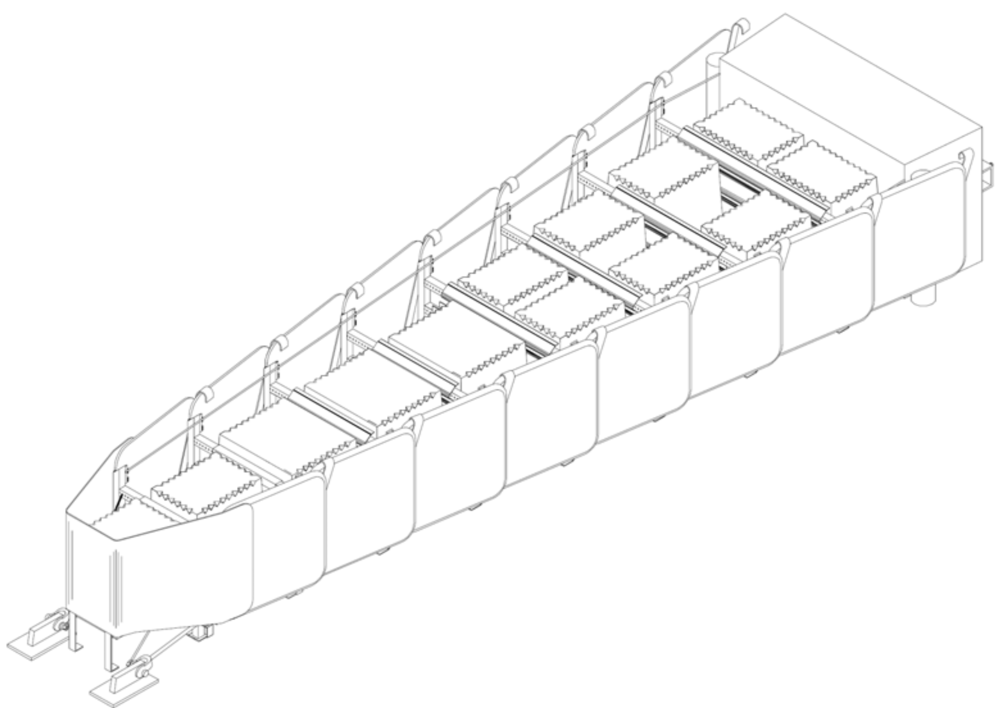


G-R-E-A-T

Impact Attenuator Systems: Older Systems
Exhibit 1620-4a



LMA



Hex-Foam Sandwich

Impact Attenuator Systems: Older Systems
Exhibit 1620-4b

Impact Attenuator Systems (All dimensions in feet)

System	(P) Permanent (T) Temporary (B) Both	Approximate Outside Width[10]	Approximate System Length[11]	Transition to Rigid System Needed?	Distance Beyond Length of Need (See Exhibit 1620-6)	Initial Cost Category[1]
CAT 350[2]	P	2.5	31.3	Y	18.8	A
Brakemaster 350[2]	P	2.1	31.5	Y	15.8	A
QuadTrend – 350[6]	P	1.3	20.0	N	10.5	A
Universal TAU-II	P	2.9–8.7	12.0–26.0[4]	N	3.0	B[5]
QuadGuard	B	2.8–10.8	13.1–32.5[4]	N	3.3	B[5]
QuadGuard Elite	B	2.8–8.3	23.8–35.5	N	3.3	D
REACT 350	B	4	13.8–30.2[4]	N	4.3	C[5]
REACT 350 Wide	B	5.7–10.7	30.8–34.8	Y	4.3	D[5]
Inertial Barriers	B	7	17.0–34.5[4]	N	[3]	A[5]
SCI100GM	B	3.1	21.5	Y	3	C
SCI70GM[8]	B	2.8	13.5	Y	3	B
ABSORB 350[9]	T	2	19.0–32.0	Y	[3]	A[5]
ADIEM 350[7][8]	T	2.7	30	N	14.1	B
QuadGuard CZ	T	2.75–3.25	13.1–22.1	N	3.3	C[5]
N-E-A-T[8]	T	1.9	9.7	N	[3]	A[5]
TRACC[12]	T	2.6	21.3	N	8	B
Triton CET[9]	T	1.8	40	N	[3]	A
QUEST	T	2.8	22.2	Y	3.5	B

For table notes, see the following page.

Impact Attenuator System Comparison
Exhibit 1620-5

Notes:

[1] A ($5,000 to $10,000); B ($10,000 to $15,000); C ($15,000 to $25,000); D ($25,000 to $50,000). These are rough initial cost estimates; verify actual costs through manufacturers/suppliers. Some products are priced very close to the margin between cost categories.

[2] Generally for use with double-sided beam guardrail. Usage as an end treatment for concrete barrier needs a transition.

[3] The N-E-A-T, Inertial Barriers, Triton CET, and ABSORB 350 may only be used beyond the length of need.

[4] For sizes or configuration type, see Exhibit 1620-1.

[5] The lengths of the Universal TAU-II, QuadGuard, QuadGuard Elite, REACT 350, REACT 350 Wide, ABSORB 350, QuadGuard CZ, and Inertial Barriers vary because their designs are dependent upon speed. Costs indicated are for a typical 60 mph design. In addition to length, several of the systems also vary in width. For estimating purposes, the following model widths were considered.

- Universal TAU II – 24”
- QuadGuard – 24”
- QuadGuard Elite – 24”
- REACT 350 Wide – 60”
- QuadGuard CZ – 24”

[6] Generally for use at the ends of bridges where installation of a beam guardrail transition and terminal is not feasible.

[7] Generally for use with concrete barrier. Other uses may need a special transition design.

[8] Use limited to highways with posted speeds of 45 mph or lower.

[9] Test Level 3 version on high-speed facilities should be limited to locations where the likelihood of being hit is low.

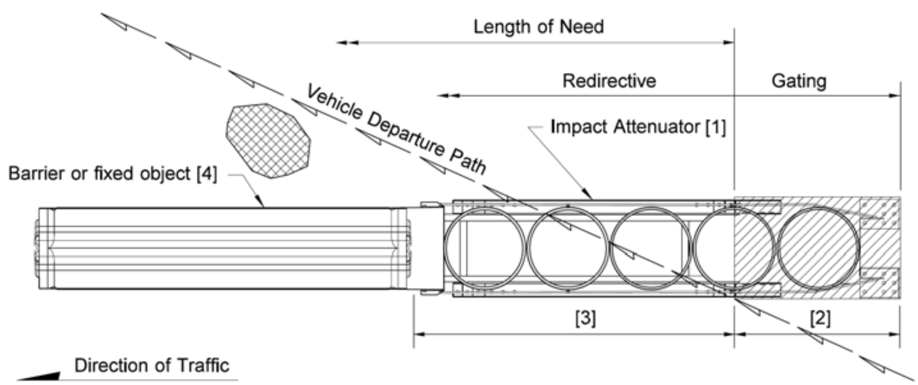
[10] The given dimension is the approximate outside width of each system. In most cases, this width is slightly wider than the effective width. To determine the width of an object that may be shielded, refer to the manufacturer’s specifications. (See the WSDOT Design Policy, Standards, & Safety Research Unit’s website for links to this information.)

[11] The given dimension is the approximate system length. The effective length may vary depending on such factors as the physical design and type of anchorage used. To determine the total length needed, refer to the manufacturer’s specifications. (See the WSDOT Design Policy, Standards, & Safety Research Unit’s website for links to this information.)

[12] May be considered for permanent installations with concurrence of Maintenance personnel.

Impact Attenuator System Comparison

Exhibit 1620-5 (continued)



Notes:

[1] Impact attenuator type and manufacturer varies with application (see Exhibit 1620-5).

[2] Distance beyond the length of need (see Exhibit 1620-5). This portion is nonredirective (gating).

[3] This portion is redirective and can be included as part of the barrier needed to satisfy length of need.

[4] Concrete barrier shown for illustration purposes only. Type of object varies.

Impact Attenuator Distance Beyond Length of Need
Exhibit 1620-6

Chapter 1710 Safety Rest Areas and Traveler Services

1710.01 General
1710.02 References
1710.03 Documentation

1710.01 General

The Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) has developed a statewide system of traveler services on Interstate highways and state routes. This system includes safety rest areas, roadside parks, points of interest, and traveler information centers. These traveler services provide the opportunity for rest and orientation. Benefits include improved safety, reduced driver fatigue, refuge from adverse driving conditions, and increased tourism.

Traveler services are planned and designed by a multidisciplinary team lead through the Safety Rest Area Program Planner in the Headquarters (HQ) Maintenance and Operations Office.

Safety rest areas and roadside parks are spaced approximately every 60 miles on the National Highway System and on Scenic and Recreational Highways. Use the Safety Rest Area Program Strategic Plan as a guide when selecting a site location.

For detailed information on planning, design, construction, and maintenance of safety rest areas and other traveler services, see the *Roadside Manual*, Division 6.

1710.02 References

(1) Federal/State Laws and Codes

23 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) 1.23, Rights-of-way

23 CFR 752, Landscape and roadside development

42 United States Code (USC) Section 12101 et seq., Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990

Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 46.16.063, Additional fee for recreational vehicles

RCW 46.68.170, RV account – Use for sanitary disposal systems

RCW 47.06.040, State-wide multimodal transportation plan

RCW 47.28.030, Contracts – State forces

RCW 47.38, Roadside areas – Safety rest areas

RCW 47.39, Scenic and Recreational Highway Act of 1967

Washington State Building Code
www.sbcc.wa.gov/page.aspx?nid=4

(2) Design Guidance

Highway Runoff Manual, M 31-16, WSDOT

Highway System Plan, WSDOT

Hydraulics Manual, M 23-03, WSDOT

Maintenance Manual, M 51-01, WSDOT

Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, USDOT, FHWA; as adopted and modified by Chapter 468-95 WAC "Manual on uniform traffic control devices for streets and highways" (MUTCD)

Right of Way Manual, M 26-01, WSDOT

Roadside Classification Plan, M 25-31, WSDOT

Roadside Manual, M 25-30, WSDOT

Traffic Manual, M 51-02, WSDOT

Safety Rest Area and Program Strategic Plan
http://wwwi.wsdot.wa.gov/MaintOps/facilities/newpdf/SRAStrategicPlan.pdf

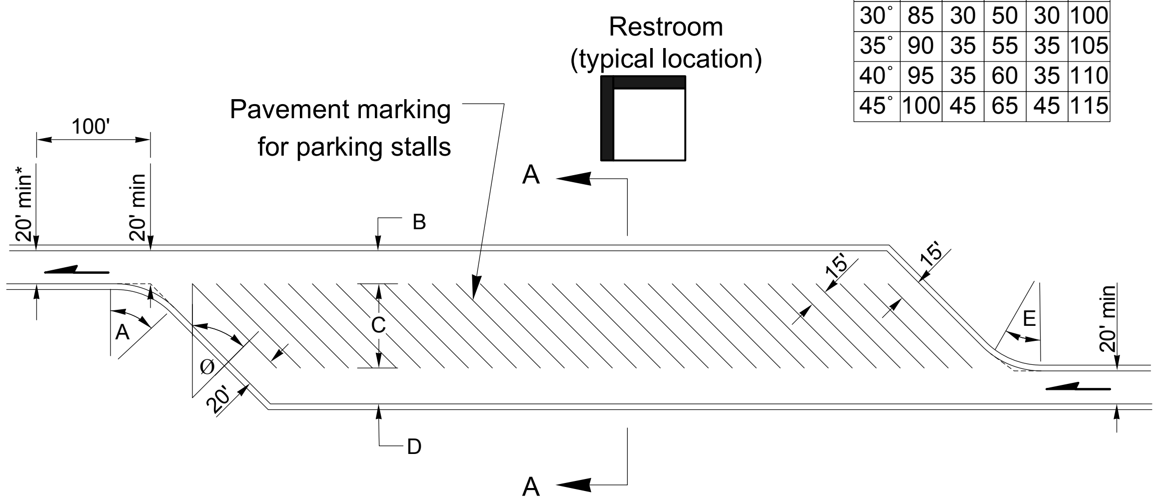
(3) Supporting Information

"Safety Rest Areas: Planning, Location and Design," USDOT, FHWA, 1981

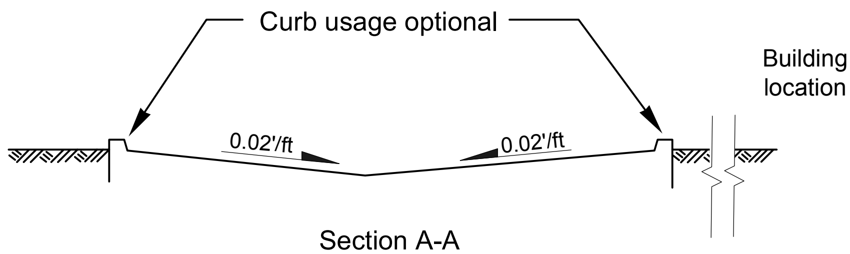
1710.03 Documentation

For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/

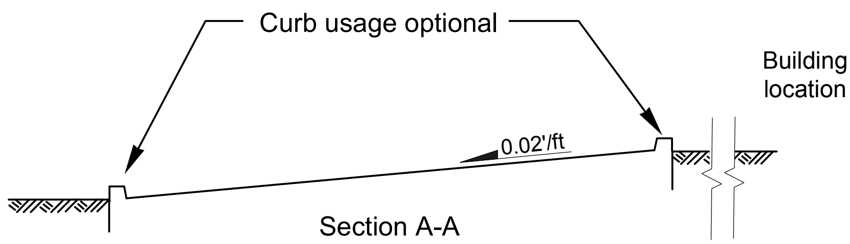
	Variables (ft)				
Ø	A	B	C	D	E
30˚	85	30	50	30	100
35˚	90	35	55	35	105
40˚	95	35	60	35	110
45˚	100	45	65	45	115



* If exit ramp is tangent or has curve radii greater than 1000', this width may be reduced to 14'.

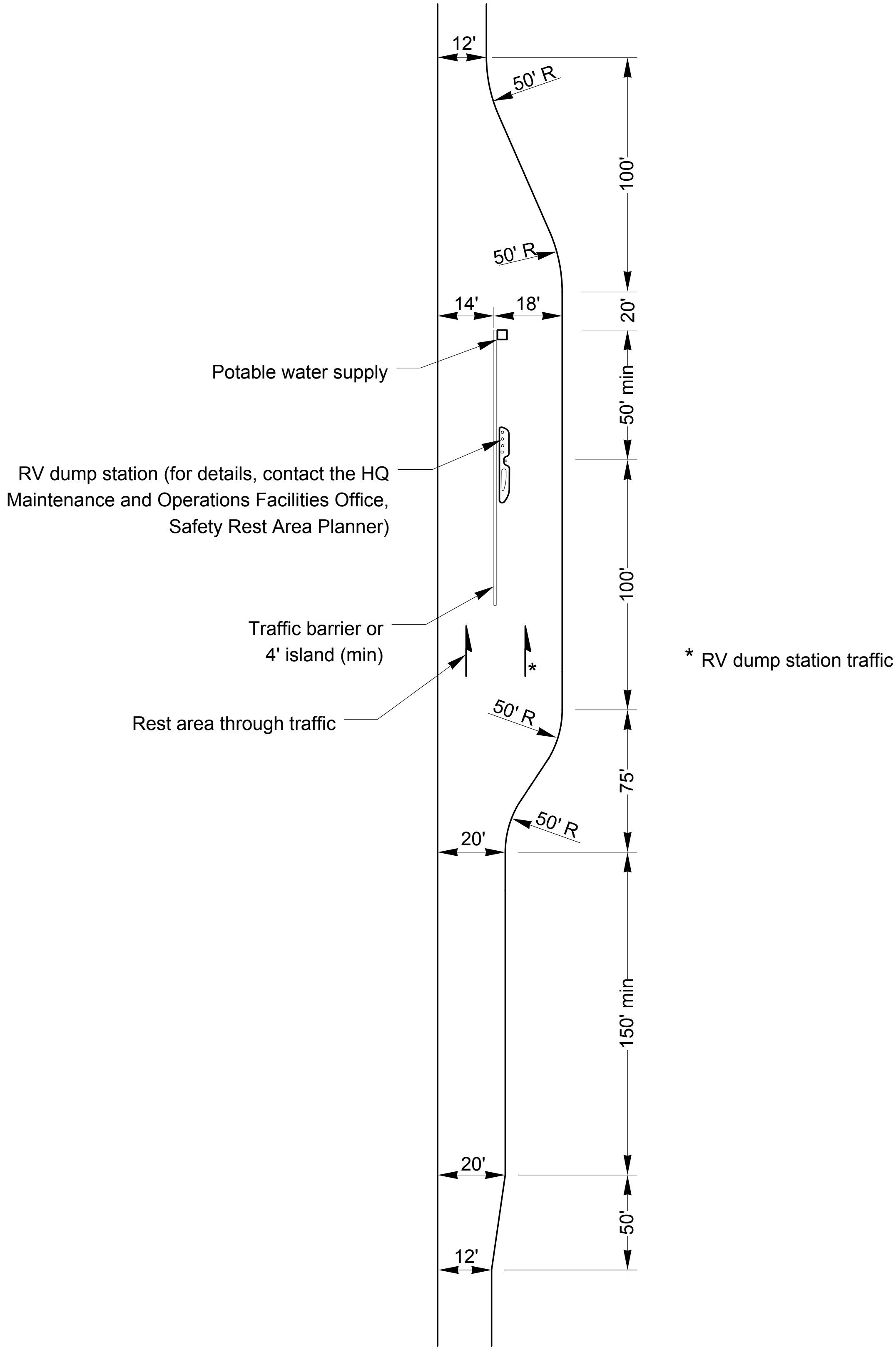


Section A-A

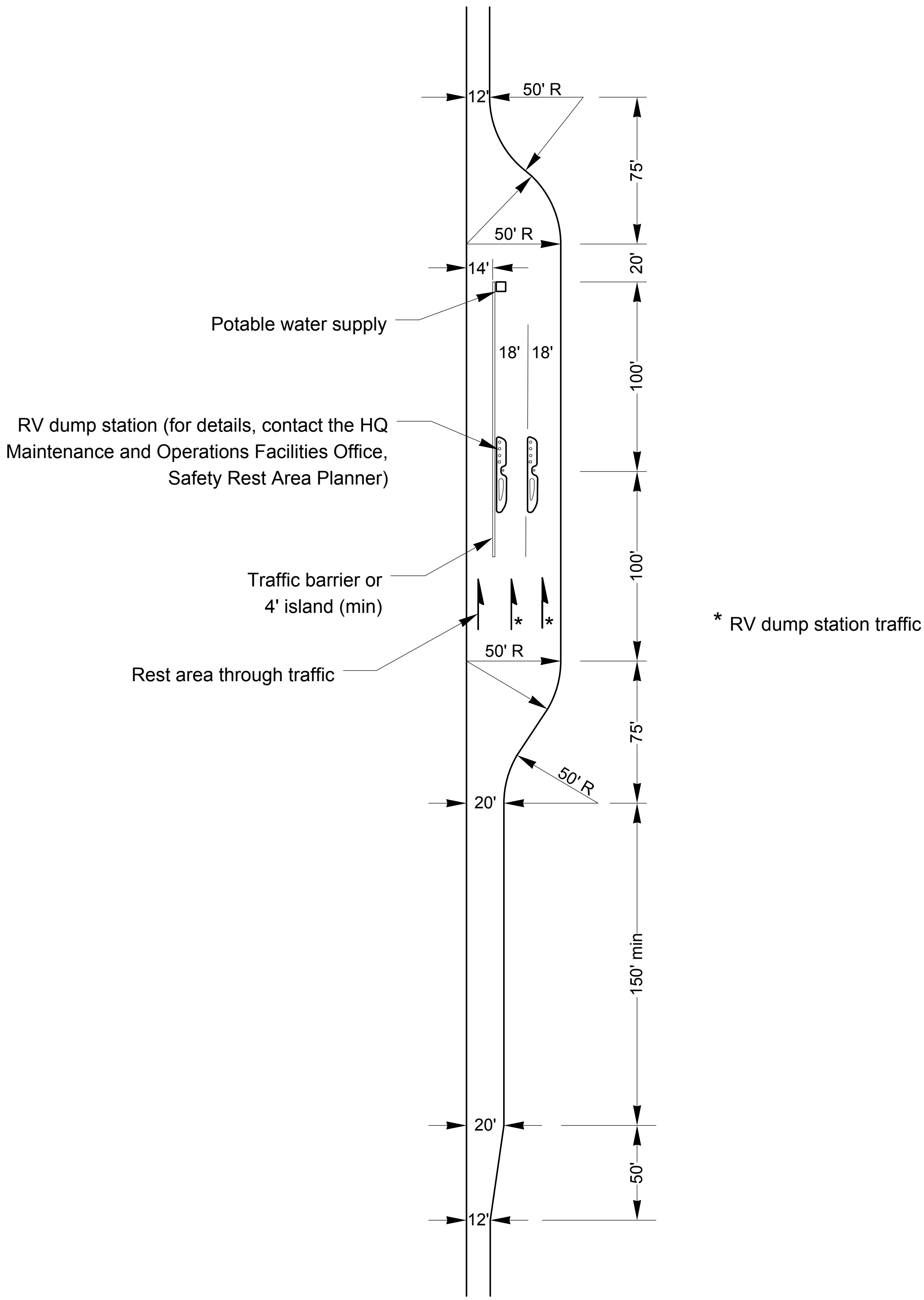


Section A-A
Alternate

Typical Truck Storage
Exhibit 1710-1



Typical Single RV Dump Station Layout
Exhibit 1710-2



Typical Two RV Dump Station Layout
Exhibit 1710-3

Chapter 1720 Weigh Sites

1720.01 General
1720.02 Definitions
1720.03 Planning, Development, and Responsibilities
1720.04 Permanent Facilities
1720.05 Portable Facilities
1720.06 Shoulder Sites
1720.07 Federal Participation
1720.08 Procedures
1720.09 Documentation

1720.01 General

Truck weighing facilities are needed to protect state highways from overweight vehicles, to provide for vehicle safety inspection, and to provide a source of data for planning and research. The development, construction, and maintenance of these facilities is a cooperative effort between the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) and the Washington State Patrol (WSP).

1720.02 Definitions

Note: For definitions of ***roadway*** and ***traveled way***, see Chapter 1140; for ***lane***, ***median***, ***outer separation***, and ***shoulder***, see Chapter 1230; and for ***decision sight distance***, ***sight distance***, and ***stopping sight distance***, see Chapter 1260.

Commercial Vehicle Information Systems and Networks (CVISN) A network that links intelligent transportation systems (ITS) to share information on commercial vehicles. When in operation at a weigh site, it can enable commercial vehicles to clear the facility without stopping.

frontage road An auxiliary road that is a local road or street located beside a highway for service to abutting property and adjacent areas and for control of access.

functional classification The grouping of streets and highways according to the character of the service they are intended to provide (see Chapter 1140).

static scale A scale that requires a vehicle to stop for weighing.

usable shoulder The width of the shoulder that can be used by a vehicle for stopping.

weigh in motion (WIM) A scale facility capable of weighing a vehicle without the vehicle stopping.

1720.03 Planning, Development, and Responsibilities

The WSP works with WSDOT Strategic Planning and Programming to develop a prioritized list of weigh facility needs for each biennium. The list includes:

- New permanent facilities.
- New portable facilities.
- New shoulder sites.
- WIM equipment.

- Vehicle inspection facilities.
- Scale approach slab reconstruction.

The WSP provides the Program Management Office of Strategic Planning and Programming a Project Definition, which includes:

- A statement of need, the purpose of the project, and the type of work.
- The general location of the project.

Program Management sends this information to the region for preparation of a Project Summary. The region works with the WSP to identify the specific location of the facility. The region then prepares a design decision estimate and submits it to Program Management.

The region negotiates and the Regional Administrator executes any formal agreements with the WSP required for the design, construction, or maintenance of vehicle weighing and inspection facilities.

The Memorandum of Understanding Related to Vehicle Weighing and Equipment: Inspection Facilities on State Highways, Exhibit 1720-8, contains details about the various responsibilities of WSDOT and the WSP.

1720.04 Permanent Facilities

Permanent truck weighing facilities have permanent scales and may have buildings. When these facilities are in operation, trucks are required stop. However, when Weigh In Motion (WIM) and Commercial Vehicle Information Systems and Networks (CVISN) capabilities have been installed, the driver may be notified to continue without stopping. The notification to continue may be through the use of signs or transponders.

(1) Site Locations

The exact location of a truck weighing facility is generally controlled by topography, highway alignment, and geometrics. It is also desirable to select a site where adequate right of way is already available. Select the most economical site to minimize site preparation, expense, and impact on the environment. Water, electricity availability, and sewage treatment and disposal are other considerations for site selection. Additionally, use the following criteria:

- Locate the facility such that its operation will not hinder the operation of the highway or other related features such as intersections and interchanges.
- To the extent feasible, eliminate options for truck traffic to bypass the weigh site.
- Base the site selection on the type and volume of trucks using the route.

An interchange justification report is required for weigh sites on multilane divided highways with access control (see Chapter 550).

(2) Design Features

On multilane highways, provide off- and on-connections as shown in Chapter 1360. Exhibit 1720-1 is the minimal design of a weigh site on multilane highways.

Design weigh facilities on two-lane highways to best fit the existing conditions, with particular consideration given to the matter of access to and from the site. Off- and on-connections, as shown in Chapter 1360, are preferred. However, with justification, on-connections may be designed as intersections (see Chapter 1310). Exhibit 1720-2 is a guide for the design of weigh sites on two-lane highways.

The following special design features apply to weigh sites:

- Level cement concrete approach slabs are required at both ends of the scales.
- Hot mix asphalt (HMA) approach slabs will be allowed only when adequate soil conditions exist, projected truck volume is light, and benefit/cost analysis justifies the HMA based on the small percentage of time the scales will be in operation.
- The approach slabs must be level and in the same plane as the scale.
- Provide adequate parking and storage to ensure trucks do not impede the main line through traffic. The WSDOT Regional Administrator and the WSP agree on the area to be provided.
- On multilane divided highways, install illuminated electronically controlled “open” and “closed” message signs that can be operated from the scalehouse or the control cabinet. Provide permanent signing for the facility, as requested by the WSP.
- The need for a vehicle safety inspection facility at any site is identified by the WSP. Exhibit 1720-3 is a guide for a site plan for a single-bay vehicle inspection facility. Additional bays and site adaptation will be on a site-by-site basis. The WSDOT Regional Administrator and the WSP agree on the area to be provided.
- The need for some form of approach protective treatment for the scale house or a protective fence between the scale and roadway is identified by the WSP and agreed upon by the WSDOT Regional Administrator and the WSP. The need for the device is to protect the scale house from errant vehicles. (See Chapter 1600 for additional clear zone considerations.)
- The need for WIM or CVISN capabilities is identified by the WSP. Design the in-place facilities to provide the ability to notify drivers whether to continue on or to stop for further investigation before they reach the exit for the static scale. The design is agreed upon by the WSDOT Regional Administrator and the WSP.
- When WIM and CVISN are not included in the project, provide conduit for their future installation.
- With justification, at locations where space is limited, the depressed outer separation between the weigh facility and the through lanes may be replaced with concrete traffic barrier. (See the Collector-Distributor: Outer Separations exhibit in Chapter 1360.)
- Provide a clear view of the entire weigh site for the facility’s operator and the driver of an approaching vehicle.
- Hot mix asphalt is acceptable for use on the ramp and storage areas. Design the depth in accordance with the surfacing report.
- To optimize scale efficiency, make the storage area flat; however, to facilitate drainage, the slope may be up to 2%.
- Provide illumination when requested by the WSP. Illumination is required if the facility is to be operated during the hours of darkness and may be desirable at other locations to deter unauthorized use of the facility. (See Chapter 1040 for additional information on illumination.)

1720.05 Portable Facilities

Portable truck weighing facilities have no permanent scales or buildings. When these facilities are in operation, they operate in the same manner as permanent facilities.

(1) Site Locations

Design portable truck weighing facilities located on two-lane and multilane roadways to best fit the existing conditions. Minor portable scale sites, as shown in Exhibit 1720-4, are used with two-way traffic and on multilane highways with low traffic volumes. Major portable scale sites (see Exhibit 1720-5) are for use on expressways, freeways, and where traffic volumes are high.

Locate the weighing facility such that its operation will not hinder the operation of the highway or other related features such as intersections.

An interchange justification report is required for weigh sites on multilane divided highways with access control (see Chapter 550).

(2) Design Features

The following special design features apply to portable facilities:

- Off- and on-connections, as shown in Exhibits 1720-4 and 1720-5, are preferred; however, with justification on highways with no access control, on-connections may be designed as intersections (see Chapter 1310).
- With justification, at locations where space is limited, the depressed outer separation between the weigh facility and the through lanes may be replaced with concrete traffic barrier. (See the Collector-Distributor: Outer Separation exhibit in Chapter 1360.)
- Provide adequate parking and storage to ensure trucks do not impede the main line through traffic. The WSDOT Regional Administrator and the WSP agree on the area to be provided.
- Hot mix asphalt is acceptable for use on the ramp and storage areas. Design the depth in accordance with the surfacing report.
- To optimize portable scale efficiency, make the storage area flat; however, to facilitate drainage, the slope may be up to 2%.
- Provide permanent signing for the facility, as requested by the WSP.
- Provide illumination when requested by the WSP. Illumination is required if the facility is to be operated during the hours of darkness and may be desirable at other locations to deter unauthorized use of the facility. (See Chapter 1040 for additional information on illumination.)

1720.06 Shoulder Sites

Shoulder sites are used by the WSP to pull a truck over for inspection and weighing with portable scales.

(1) Site Locations

Design shoulder sites to best fit the existing conditions. Small shoulder sites (see Exhibit 1720-6) are for use on lower-volume roadways (ADT 5000 or less) with two-way traffic. Large shoulder sites (see Exhibit 1720-7) are to be used with higher-volume two-way roadways and multilane highways.

Locate the weighing facility so that its operation will not hinder the operation of the highway or other related features such as intersections.

(2) Design Features

Shoulder sites are designed in coordination with the WSP. Input from the local WSP Commercial Vehicle Enforcement personnel will ensure the proposed site will meet their needs without over-building the facility. Obtain written concurrence from the WSP for the length, width, and taper rates before the design is finalized.

When the ADT is 1,500 or less, and with the written approval of the WSP, the tapers at small shoulder sites may be eliminated. The shoulders on either side of the site may be used as acceleration and deceleration lanes, whether or not they were designed for this use. Therefore, provide adequate strength to support truck traffic.

Hot mix asphalt is acceptable for use on all shoulder sites. Design the depth in accordance with the surfacing report. Design the shoulder pavement at this depth for a length not less than the deceleration lane length before, and the acceleration lane length after, the site (see Chapter 1360).

When the shoulders are designed to be used for deceleration and acceleration lanes, the minimum width is 12 feet with full pavement depth for the deceleration/acceleration lane lengths (see Chapter 1360).

Use a maximum 2% slope in order to optimize portable scale efficiency and facilitate drainage.

1720.07 Federal Participation

Federal funds appropriate to the system being improved may be used for the acquisition of right of way and the construction of truck weighing facilities and vehicle inspection facilities. This includes, but is not limited to, on- and off-ramps, deceleration/acceleration lanes, passing lanes, driveways, parking areas, scale approach slabs, vehicle inspection facilities, roadway illumination, and signing.

1720.08 Procedures

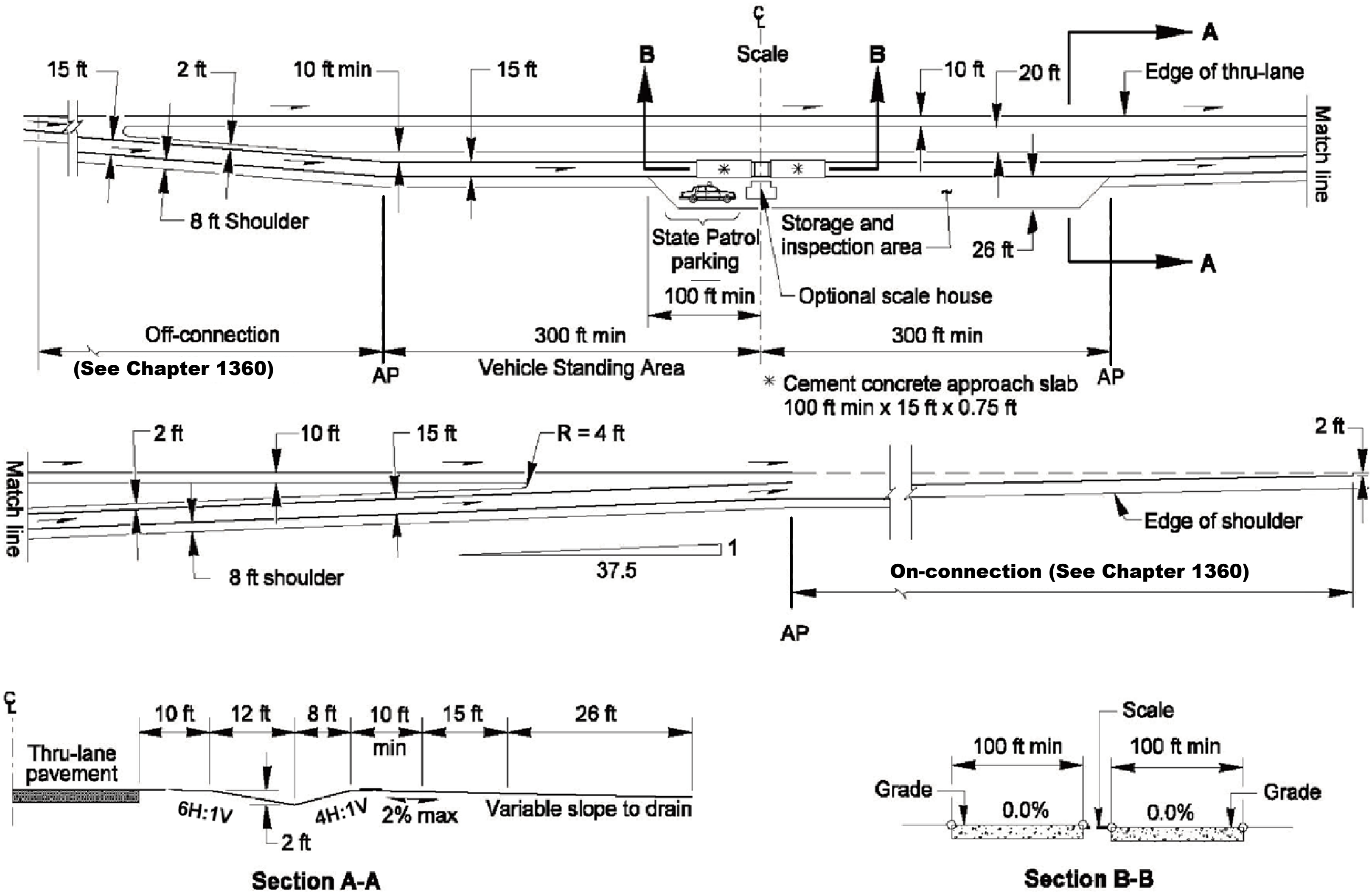
Prepare site plans for all truck weighing facilities that include:

- Class of highway and design speed for main line (see Chapter 1140).
- Curve data on main line and weigh site.
- Number of lanes and width of lanes and shoulders on main line and weigh site.
- Superelevation diagrams for the main line and weigh site.
- Stationing of ramp connections and channelization.
- Illumination.
- Signing.
- Water supply and sewage treatment.
- Roadside development.

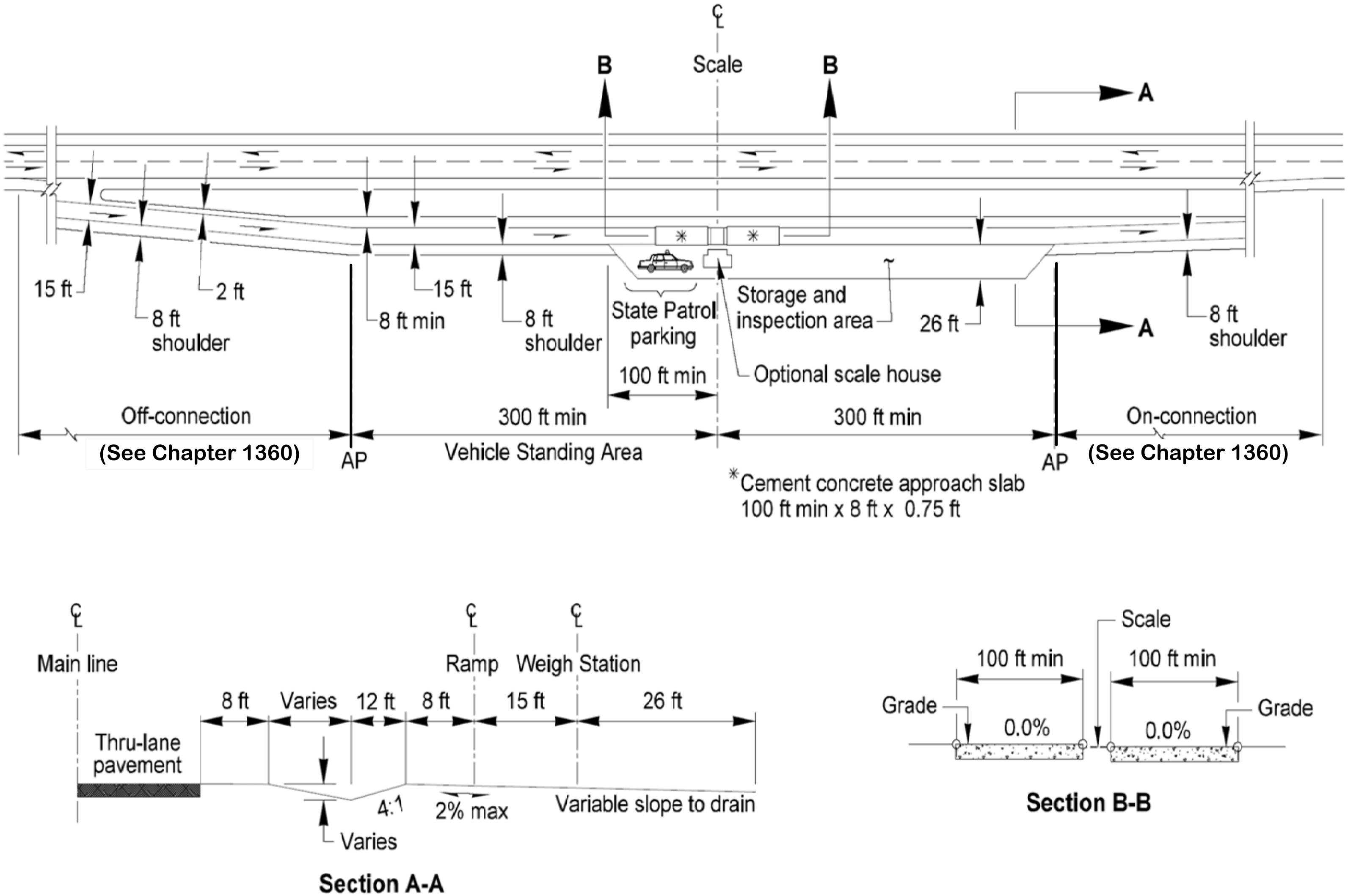
Get WSP approval of the site plans before the final plan approval.

1720.09 Documentation

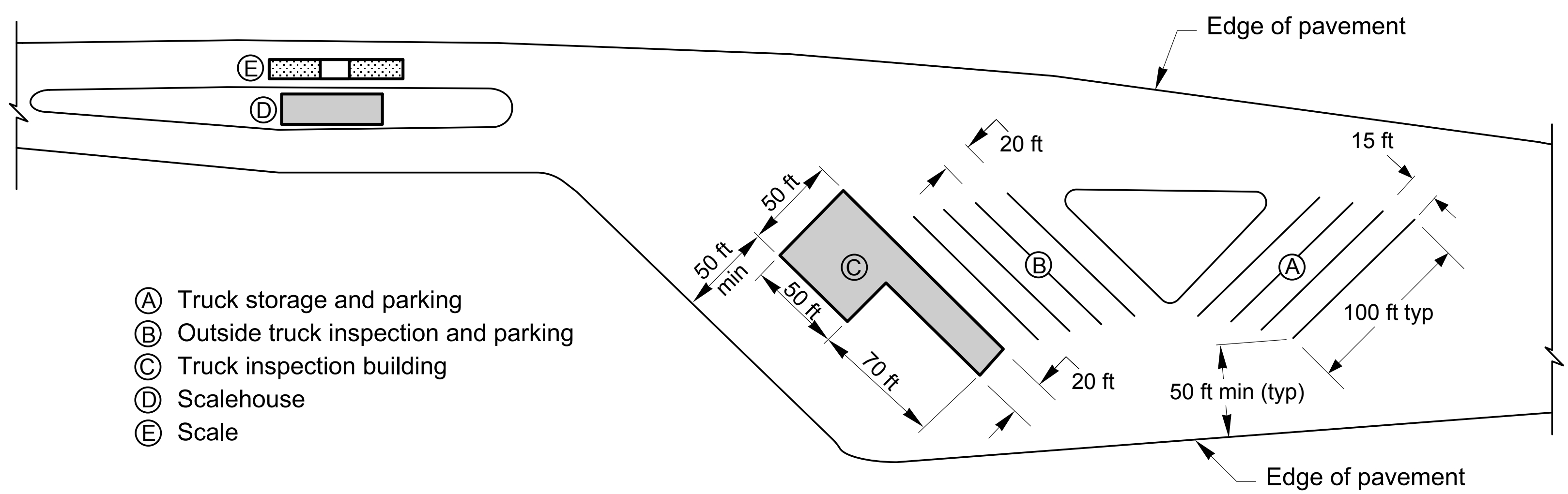
For the list of documents required to be preserved in the Design Documentation Package and the Project File, see the Design Documentation Checklist:
www.wsdot.wa.gov/design/projectdev/



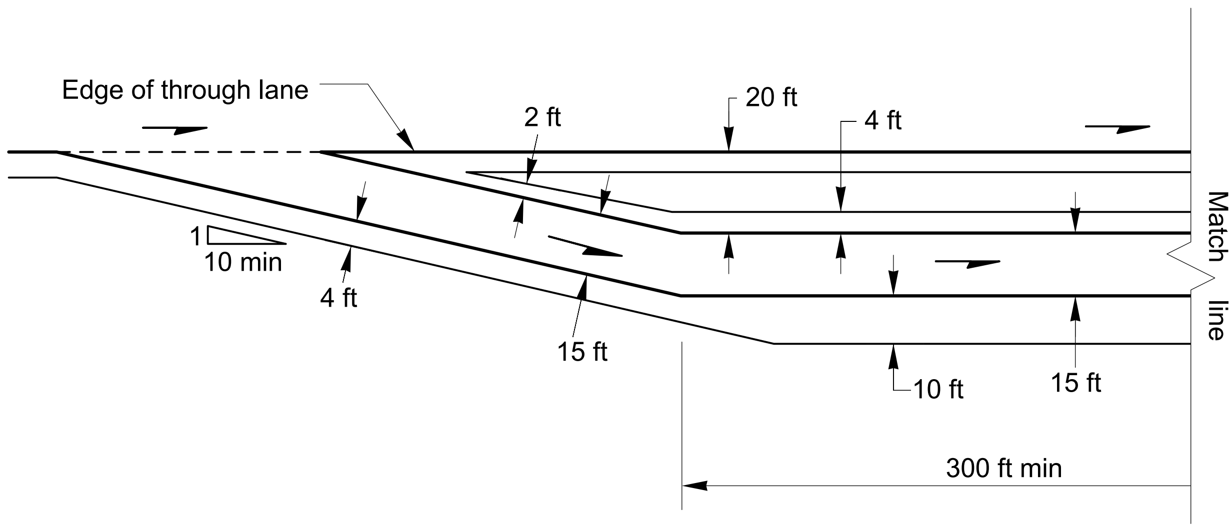
Truck Weigh Site: Multilane Highways
Exhibit 1720-1



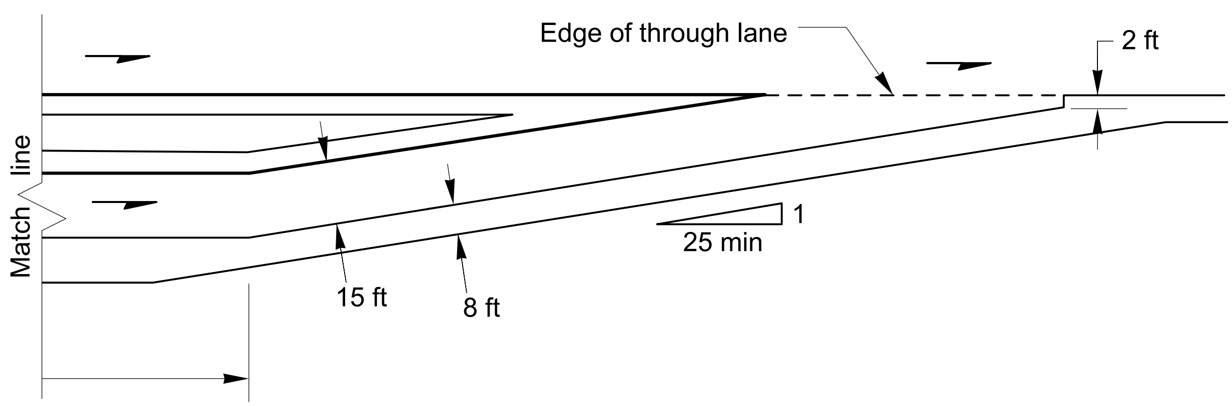
Truck Weigh Site: Two-Lane Highways
Exhibit 1720-2



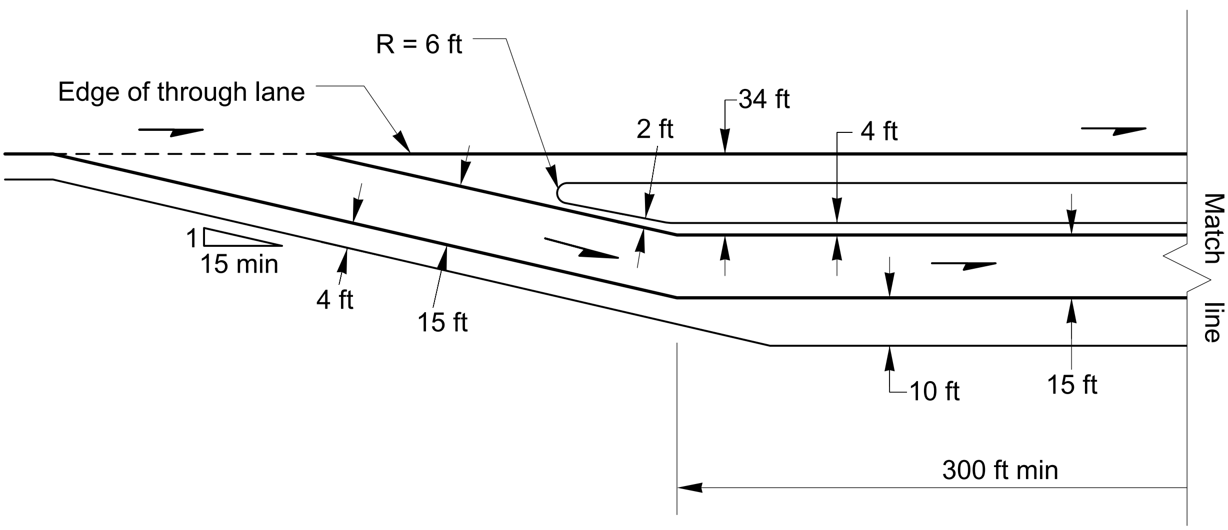
Vehicle Inspection Installation
Exhibit 1720-3



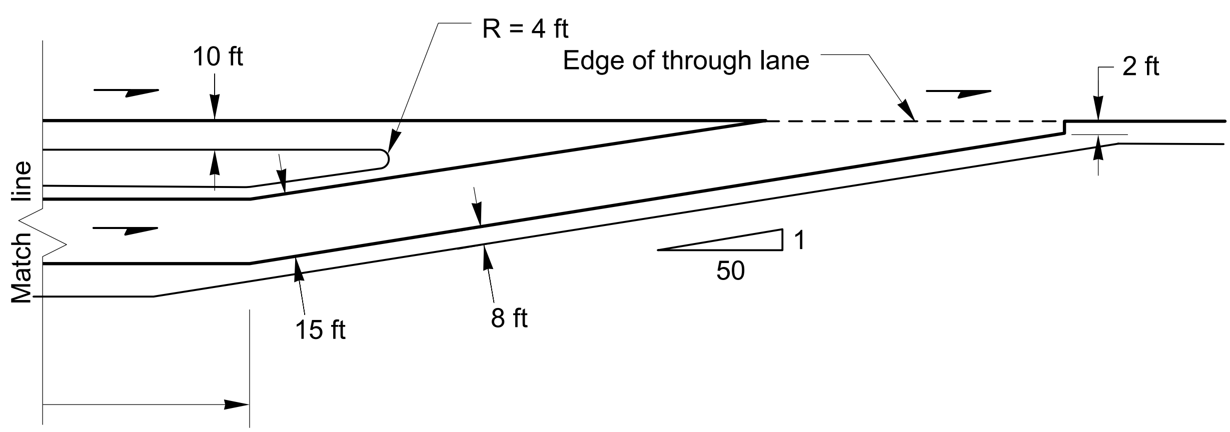
(Not to Scale)



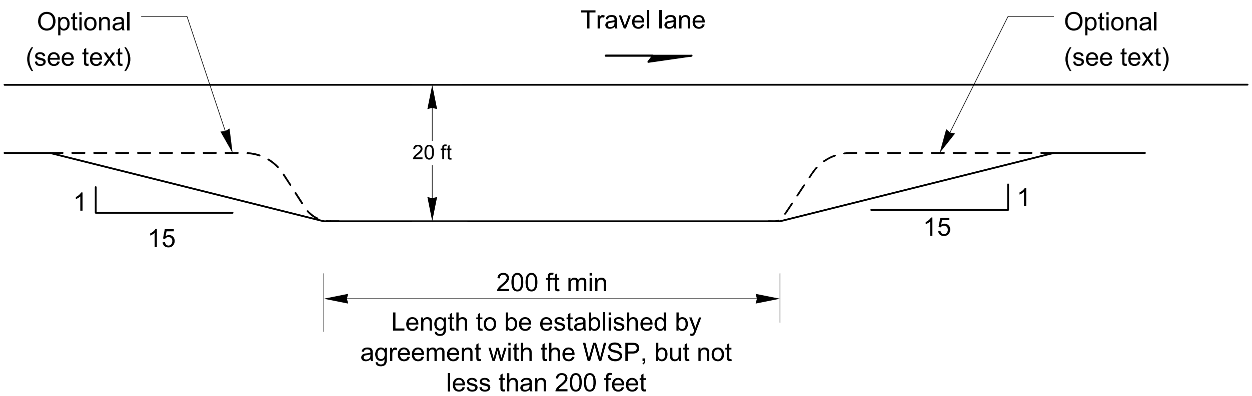
Minor Portable Scale Site
Exhibit 1720-4



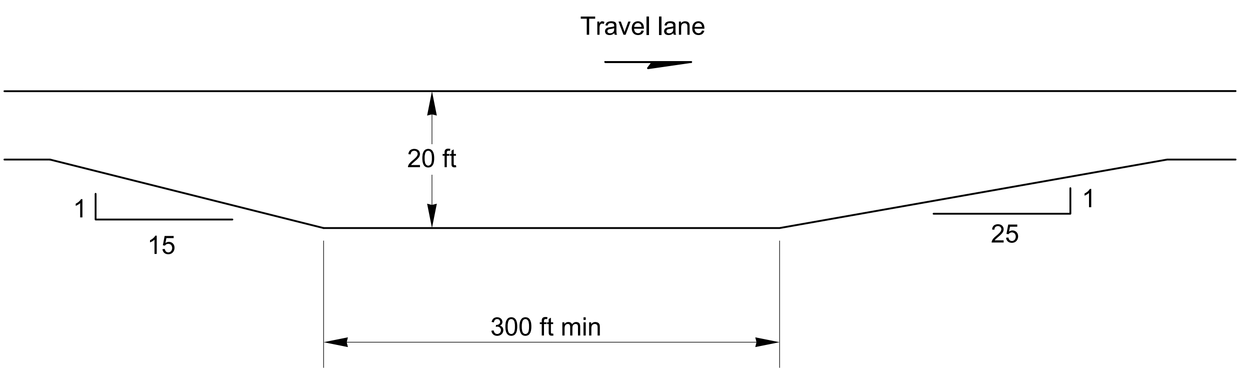
(Not to Scale)



Major Portable Scale Site
Exhibit 1720-5



Small Shoulder Site
Exhibit 1720-6



Large Shoulder Site
Exhibit 1720-7

C990477GSC

Memorandum of Understanding

Related to Vehicle Weighing and
Equipment Inspection Facilities on State Highways

This Memorandum of Understanding by and between the Washington State Department of Transportation hereinafter called the "Department of Transportation," and the Washington State Patrol, hereinafter called the "State Patrol," establishes procedures for coordinating and delineating the responsibilities for the location, design, construction, maintenance, signing, and other matters related to vehicle weighing and equipment inspection facilities and the state highway improvements needed as a result of these facilities.

It is mutually recognized that:

The Department of Transportation is responsible for planning, designing, constructing, and perpetuating public highways of the State Highway system for the safety and benefit of the traveling public;

The State Patrol is responsible for enforcement of the laws of the state of Washington regarding vehicle weight enforcement programs and vehicle safety inspection programs;

Nothing in this agreement is to be construed as conflicting with existing laws, regulations, and prescribed responsibilities, and

In recognition of the responsibilities, interest, and limitations set forth above and of the mutual benefits of established procedures to facilitate agreement on specific matters, the Department of Transportation and the State Patrol mutually agree as follows:

I. Planning

A. The State Patrol will work with the Department of Transportation's Planning and Programming Service Center to develop a prioritized list of weigh station needs at each biennium. The list will include:

- New permanent facilities
- New portable facilities
- Weigh-in-Motion (WIM) equipment
- Vehicle inspection facilities
- Scale approach slab construction

B. The State Patrol will provide the Planning and Programming Service Center with a project definition for each project, which will include statement of need, purpose of project, type of work, and general location of the project.

C. The Planning and Programming Center will send the information to the Regional Administrator for preparation of a project summary. The Regional Administrator will work with the State Patrol to identify the specific location of the facility, prepare a design decision estimate, and submit it to the Planning and Programming Service Center for inclusion in the biennial program.

D. The Regional Administrator will negotiate and execute any formal agreements required for design, construction, or maintenance of vehicle weighing and inspection sites.

MOU Related to Vehicle Weighing and Equipment: Inspection Facilities on State Highways
Exhibit 1720-8

C990477GSC

II. Responsibilities

Vehicle weighing and equipment inspection facilities shall meet highway standards for acceleration and deceleration lanes, on and off ramps, illumination, and other related equipment. These facilities will be provided through the cooperative efforts of the State Patrol and Department of Transportation as needed on state highways.

A. The State Patrol will:

1. Initiate the action and submit recommendations for the addition of a new facility or expansion of an existing facility or the relocation of an existing facility, and negotiate agreements, e.g. siting of a new facility, etc. with the Department of Transportation through the appropriate region and the Olympia Service Center.

2. Perform the preliminary engineering and submit the design and PS&E documents for the scale, WIM, scalehouse, and inspection facility to the Department of Transportation for review and processing for approval with the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA), if applicable, at the State Patrol's expense.

3. Construct, operate, and maintain the weigh station scale, WIM, scalehouse, and equipment inspection facility with all related equipment thereto including lighting, water, heat, telephone, and toilet facilities at the State Patrol's expense.

4. For WIM facilities and for facilities deploying Commercial Vehicle Information Systems and Networks (CVISN), select sites in cooperation with DOT that minimize the need for pavement reconstruction, and, at the State Patrol's expense, install, operate, and maintain any weigh-in-motion signs and related equipment, purchase and install all WIM hardware and software, and provide electrical conduit and an equipment storage room within the scale facility.

5. In the event the State Patrol cannot fulfill the responsibilities specified above for preliminary engineering (design and PS&E documents), construction, or maintenance, they may request that the Department of Transportation perform the work on the basis of a written agreement that includes reimbursement to the Department of Transportation for the costs.

6. Construct the CVISN roadside apparatus at the same time as WIM equipment is installed, e.g.; cantilevered mounting poles, guard rail, conduit/raceway installation at DOT expense. All construction in the state or interstate right-of-way will be under the responsibility of a DOT region engineer.

B. The Department of Transportation will:

1. Initiate action for the relocation of an existing installation when necessary because of the relocation of a highway or expansion of an existing highway, and obtain concurrence of the State Patrol.

2. Negotiate agreements with the State Patrol regarding addition, expansion, and relocation of facilities.

MOU Related to Vehicle Weighing and Equipment: Inspection Facilities on State Highways
Exhibit 1720-8 (continued)

C990477GSC

3. On all newly located or existing highways, at Department of Transportation expense, acquire the necessary right of way, construct and maintain the required acceleration and deceleration lanes, on and off ramps, driveways, passing lanes, scale approach slabs, and parking areas, including the surfacing thereof, excavate the scale pit, and construct and maintain the inspection, parking, and roadway illumination and standard signing at approved locations.

4. For WIM facilities and for facilities deploying Commercial Vehicle Information Systems and Networks (CVISN), at Department of Transportation's expense, construct the special approaches, provide maintenance of CVISN hardware and software located within the facility, and provide traffic control for installation of the scale and, when closure of any lane is required, for maintenance of the scale.

5. For facilities deploying Commercial Vehicle Information Systems and Networks (CVISN), at WSDOT's expense install mainline hardware (Automated Vehicle Identification equipment) and software for conformance with CVISN standards and provide maintenance of CVISN hardware and software located within the facility.

6. Upon request of the State Patrol, in accordance with a written agreement and on a reimbursement basis, perform other preliminary engineering, construction, and maintenance, which is the sole responsibility of the State Patrol.

Additionally, the State Patrol and the Department of Transportation agree to follow the Federal Highway Administration's *Guidance for Local Agency Roadway Projects within Interstate Rights-of-Way*, as outlined in Attachment A.

III. Conclusions and Approvals

A. The Regional Administrators for the Department of Transportation and the Commercial Vehicle Division Commander for the State Patrol are encouraged to consult with each other and to agree on such matters that fall within their scope of responsibility.

B. This memorandum may be amended or supplemented by mutual agreement between the signers or their successors.

C. Either party may terminate this MOU upon thirty- (30) days' written notification. If this MOU is so terminated, the terminating party shall be liable only for performance in accordance with the terms of the MOU for performance rendered prior to the effective date of the termination.

D. In the event a dispute arises under this MOU, it shall be resolved as follows: The Secretary of WSDOT and the Chief of the WSP shall each appoint a member, not affiliated with either agency, to a conflict resolution board. Then these two members shall appoint a third member. The decision made by this board shall be final and binding on the parties to the MOU.

E. In the event funding from state, federal, or other sources is withdrawn, reduced, or limited in any way after the effective date of this MOU and prior to normal completion, the WSDOT or WSP may terminate the MOU under the TERMINATION clause, subject to renegotiation under those new funding limitations and conditions.

MOU Related to Vehicle Weighing and Equipment: Inspection Facilities on State Highways
Exhibit 1720-8 (continued)

C990477GSC

F. We have read the foregoing and agree to accept and abide by the procedures herein.

Annette M. Sandberg, Chief
Washington State Patrol

Date 12/16/99

Sid Morrison, Secretary
Washington State
Department of Transportation

Date 3/9/00

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

Assistant Attorney General

Date 9/7/99

Washington State Patrol
Budget and Fiscal Services

Date 12/27/99

MOU Related to Vehicle Weighing and Equipment: Inspection Facilities on State Highways
Exhibit 1720-8 (continued)

L99U47/GSL

ATTACHMENT A
Guidance for Local Agency Roadway Projects within Interstate Rights-of-Way

Since all projects within the Interstate rights-of-way (ROW) have the potential to impact safety and operations on the Interstate route, they must incorporate Interstate design criteria and construction quality. It is the Federal Highway Administration's (FHWA) policy that the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) should administer all projects within the Interstate ROW. However, given the scope and extent of non-Interstate projects within the Interstate ROW, it is recognized that local agency administration of some projects may be desirable.

Whenever a local agency proposes a project within the Interstate ROW, they must develop an agreement with WSDOT that clearly outlines their duties and responsibilities to maintain the integrity of the Interstate facility, from both the safety and quality perspectives. The agreement must be executed prior to beginning design and must incorporate the following requirements:

Responsibilities: WSDOT and the local agency must each assign a responsible Project Engineer.

Design: WSDOT must review and approve all highway plans, profiles, deviations structural plans false-work plans, shoring plans, and traffic control plans for any work within the Interstate ROW.

Plans, specification and estimates: WSDOT must review and approve the plans and specifications for any work within Interstate ROW.

Advertising and aware: The local agency must confer with the WSDOT Project Engineer on any pre-aware issues affecting the quality and timing of the contract.

Construction: All construction, materials, and quality control requirements contained in the current editions of the WSDOT Standard Specifications and Construction Manual must be incorporated into the agreement.

Contract changes: All contract changes affecting work within the Interstate ROW must have the prior concurrence of the WSDOT Project Engineer.

Final inspection: The final inspection of the project must be performed by WSDOT Olympia Service Center and must evidence their approval.

Only local agencies with full certification acceptance authority may enter into such an agreement with the WSDOT.

The agreement must be submitted to FHWA for approval. FHWA reserves the right to assume full oversight of the project.

MOU Related to Vehicle Weighing and Equipment: Inspection Facilities on State Highways
Exhibit 1720-8 (continued)